# Humble Independent School District
# Timberwood Middle School (TMS) Additions & Renovations

BRW Project No.: 223005.00

# PROJECT MANUAL

**ISSUED FOR COMPETITIVE SEALED PROPOSAL (CSP)**
CSP# 2006-03

JUNE 13, 2025

**Board of Trustees**

| | |
|---|---|
| Oscar Silva | Position 1 |
| Robert Scarfo | Position 2 |
| Chris Parker | Position 3 |
| Ken Kirchhofer | Position 4 |
| Elizabeth Shaw | Position 5 |
| Marques Holmes | Position 6 |
| Micheal Grabowski | Position 7 |

**Executive Leadership**

| | |
|---|---|
| Dr. Roger Brown | Superintendent |
| Terry Perkins | Deputy Superintendent |
| Donnie Bodron | Assistant Superintendent – Middle Schools |
| Jason Seybert | Associate Superintendent – Operational Support Services |
| Thomas Haggerty | Executive Director – Construction and Facilities Planning |

**Humble Independent School District**
**Timberwood Middel School (TMS) Additions & Renovations**

CSP# 2026-03
BRW Project No.: 223005.00

Project Manual

**Issued for Competitive Sealed Proposal (CSP)**
June 13, 2025


**Architect:**
**Brown Reynolds Watford Architects**
4501 Magnolia Cove Dr., Suite 250
Kingwood, Texas 77345
281 / 361-3800

**Consultants:**
Structural and Civil
**Dally & Associates**
9800 Richmond Ave. #460
Houston, Texas 77042
713 / 337-8881

Mechanical/ Electrical/ Plumbing / Technology
**Salas O'Brien**
10930 West Sam Houston Pkwy N Suite 900
Houston, Texas 77064
281 / 664-1900

Acoustics / Noise Control
**Wrightson, Johnson, Haddon, & Williams, Inc.**
3424 Midcourt Road, Suite 124
Carrollton, TX 75006
972 / 934-3700

Food Service
**Food Service Design Professional, LLC**
25317 Interstate 45
The Woodlands, TX 77380
281 / 350-2323


7/13/25

06/13/2025

## SECTION 00 00 10 – TABLE OF CONTENTS


INTRODUCTORY INFORMATION

00 00 01 - COVER
00 00 02 - TITLE PAGE 01
00 00 10 - TABLE OF CONTENTS 01 - 06
00 00 15 - LIST OF DRAWINGS 01 - 05

PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

00 11 19 - REQUEST FOR COMPETITIVE SEALED PROPOSAL 01 - 01
00 21 16 - INSTRUCTIONS TO PROPOSERS 01 - 03
00 30 00 - INFORMATION AVAILABLE TO PROPOSERS 01
00 30 00.10 - ASBESTOS SURVEY
00 31 32.50 - GEOTECHNICAL REPORT
00 42 13 - BASE PROPOSAL FORM – STIPULATED SUM 01 - 04
00 42 14 - ALTERNATES PROPOSAL FORM 01 - 03
00 43 13 - BID BOND 01 - 02
00 43 36 - PROPOSED SUBCONTRACTORS FORM 01 - 02
00 45 19 - CERTIFICATE OF INTERESTED PARTIES FORM 1295 01
00 45 21 - CONFLICT OF INTEREST QUESTIONNAIRE 01 - 03
00 45 46 - W9 REQUEST FOR TAXPAYER ID AND CERTIFICATION
00 45 50 - ASBESTOS-SHORT TERM WORKER NOTIFICATION 01
00 45 51 - SELECTIN CRITERIA FORM
00 52 13 - STANDARD FORM OF AGREEMENT 01
00 52 13.10 - A101-2017 STANDARD FORM AGREEMENT
00 52 13.20 - EXHIBIT A – OWNER'S CONSTRUCTION BOND & INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS
00 72 13 - GENERAL CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT 01
00 72 13.10 - A201-2017 GENERAL CONDITIONS
00 73 00 - SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS 01 - 26
00 73 43 - WAGE RATE REQUIREMENTS 01

DIVISION 01 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

01 10 00 - SUMMARY 01 - 08
01 14 00 - WORK RESTRICTIONS 01 - 02
01 21 00 - ALLOWANCES 01 - 02
01 22 00 - UNIT PRICES 01 - 02
01 23 00 - ALTERNATES 01 - 02
01 25 00 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES 01 - 03
01 25 00A - ATTACHMENT A (SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM)
01 26 00 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES 01 - 02
01 29 00 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES 01 - 04
01 31 00 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION 01 - 09
01 32 00 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION 01 - 05
01 32 33 - PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION 01 - 02
01 33 00 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES 01 - 10
01 40 00 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS 01 - 09
01 42 00 - REFERENCE STANDARDS 01 - 12
01 45 19 - WEATHERIZATION SYSTEM QUALITY REQUIREMENTS 01 – 06
01 50 00 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS 01 - 13
01 60 00 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS 01 - 05

01 73 00 - EXECUTION 01 - 08
01 73 29 - CUTTING AND PATCHING 01 - 03
01 77 00 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES 01 - 06
01 78 23 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA 01 - 06
01 78 39 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS 01 - 04
01 79 00 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING 01 - 04

DIVISION 02 – EXISTING CONDITIONS

02 41 19 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION 01 - 08
02 80 00 - HAZARDOUS MATERIAL ABATEMENT 01 - 02

DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE

03 05 80 - UNDER-SLAB VAPOR BARRIER/RETARDER 01 - 03
03 10 00 - CONCRETE FORMING AND ACCESSORIES 01 - 09
03 20 00 - CONCRETE REINFORCING 01 – 07
03 21 00 - SITE CONCRETE REINFORCEMENT 01 - 07
03 30 00 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE 01 - 21

DIVISION 04 – MASONRY

04 20 00 - UNIT MASONRY ASSEMBLIES 01 - 19
04 72 00 - CAST STONE MASONRY 01 - 06

DIVISION 05 – METALS

05 12 00 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING 01 - 11
05 21 00 - STEEL JOIST FRAMING 01 - 06
05 31 13 - STEEL FLOOR DECKING 01 - 09
05 31 23 - STEEL ROOF DECKING 01 - 08
05 40 00 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING 01 - 08
05 50 00 - METAL FABRICATIONS 01 - 05

DIVISION 06 – WOOD AND PLASTICS

06 10 00 - ROUGH CARPENTRY 01 - 08
06 16 00 - SHEATHING 01 - 05
06 64 00 - PLASTIC PANELING 01 - 02

DIVISION 07 – THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

07 21 00 - THERMAL INSULATION 01 - 04
07 27 27 - FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIER 01 - 06
07 42 13 - METAL WALL AND SOFFIT PANELS 01 - 06
07 46 46 - Mineral Fiber Cement Siding 01 - 04
07 50 00 - WHITE POLYESTER REINFORCED FLEECE BLANKET ADHERED ELVALOY MEMBRANE ROOF SYSTEM 01 - 12
07 62 00 – SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM 01 - 07
07 71 00 - ROOF SPECIALTIES 01 - 06
07 72 00 - ROOF ACCESSORIES 01 - 04
07 84 13 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING 01 - 03
07 92 00 - JOINT SEALANTS 01 - 05
07 95 00 - EXPANSION CONTROL 01 - 04

DIVISION 08 – DOORS AND WINDOWS

08 11 13 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES 01 - 07
08 14 16 - WOOD DOORS 01 - 03
08 31 13 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES 01 - 03
08 33 23 - OVERHEAD COILING DOORS 01 - 06
08 41 13 - ALUMINUM ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS 01 - 09
08 44 13 - ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALL SYSTEM 01 - 09
08 63 00 - INSULATED STRUCTURAL SKYLIGHT SYSTEM 01 - 05
08 71 00 - DOOR HARDWARE 01 - 14
08 80 00 - GLAZING 01 - 12
08 90 00 - LOUVERS AND VENTS 01 - 03

DIVISION 09 – FINISHES

09 21 00 - GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES 01 - 10
09 22 26 - METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS 01 - 02
09 30 13 - CERAMIC TILING 01 - 09
09 51 00 - ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS 01 - 03
09 64 66 - WOOD ATHLETIC FLOORING 01 - 06
09 65 66 - ATHLETIC RUBBER FLOORING 01 - 04
09 66 23 - RESINOUS MATRIX TERRAZZO FLOORING 01 - 08
09 67 23 - RESINOUS FLOORING 01 - 05
09 77 00 - SPECIAL WALL SURFACES 01 - 04
09 91 00 - PAINTING 01 - 15

DIVISION 10 – SPECIALTIES

10 11 00 – VISUAL DISPLAY SURFACES 01 – 02
10 14 00 – SIGNAGE 01 – 04
10 40 00 – SAFETY SPECIALTIES 01 – 02
10 56 13 – HEAVY DUTY STORAGE SHELVING 01 – 03

DIVISION 11 – EQUIPMENT
11 40 00 - FOOD SERVICE EQUIPMENT 01 - 50

DIVISION 12 – FURNISHINGS

12 20 00 - WINDOW TREATMENTS 01 - 04
12 24 00 - MOTORIZED & MANUAL ROLLER SHADES 01 - 07
12 66 06 - TELESCOPING BLEACHERS (MANUAL) 01 - 02

DIVISION 13 – SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION (NOT USED)

DIVISION 14 – CONVEYING EQUIPMENT (NOT USED)

DIVISION 21 – FIRE PROTECTION

21 01 00 – FIRE PROTECTION OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS 01 – 04
21 05 00 – FIRE PROTECTION GENERAL PROVISIONS 01 – 07
21 05 10 – FIRE PROTECTION CONTRACT QUALITY CONTROL 01 – 02
21 05 12 - FIRE PROTECTION SHOP DRAWINGS, COORD DRAWINGS & PRODUCT DATA 01 – 06
21 05 13 – ELECTRICAL PROVISIONS OF FIRE PROTECTION WORK 01 – 03
21 05 14 – FIRE PROTECTION ALTERATIONS PROJECT PROCEDURES 01 – 04

21 10 00 – FIRE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS 01 – 15

DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING

22 01 00 – PLUMBING OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS 01 – 04
22 05 00 – PLUMBING GENERAL PROVISIONS 01 – 07
22 05 10 – PLUMBING CONTRACT QUALITY CONTROL 01 – 02
22 05 12 – PLUMBING SHOP DRAWINGS, COORD DRAWINGS & PRODUCT DATA 01 – 06
22 05 13 – ELECTRICAL PROVISIONS OF PLUMBING WORK 01 – 03
22 05 14 – PLUMBING ALTERATIONS PROJECT PROCEDURES 01 – 05
22 05 15 – PLUMBING EARTHWORK 01 – 02
22 05 16 – EXCAVATING, BACKFILLING AND COMPACTING FOR UTILITIES OUTSIDE BUILDING SLAB 01 – 04
22 05 17 – PLUMBING ACCESS DOORS 01 – 02
22 05 19 – PRESSURE AND TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENTS 01 – 03
22 05 23 – VALVES, STRAINERS AND VENTS 01 – 06
22 07 19 – PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION 01 – 07
22 08 00 – PLUMBING COMMISSIONING COORDINATION 01 – 03
22 11 16 – DOMESTIC WATER PIPING AND APPURTENANCES 01 – 04
22 11 19 – PIPING AND PIPING APPURTENANCES FOR COLD WATER 01 – 02
22 13 16 – SOIL, WASTE AND SANITARY DRAIN PIPING, VENT PIPING AND APPURTENANCES 01 – 06
22 14 13 – ROOF DRAINAGE PIPING AND APPURTENANCES 01 – 03
22 15 00 – SHOP COMPRESSED AIR SYSTEM 01 – 02
22 20 00 – PLUMBING PIPE AND PIPE FITTINGS – GENERAL 01 – 09
22 40 00 – PLUMBING FIXTURES AND FIXTURE CARRIERS 01 – 05
22 63 11 – GAS PIPING AND APPURTENANCES 01 – 04

DIVISION 23 – HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING (HVAC)

23 01 00 – HVAC OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS 01 – 04
23 05 00 – MECHANICAL GENERAL PROVISIONS 01 – 08
23 05 10 – HVAC CONTRACT QUALITY CONTROL 01 – 04
23 05 11 – MECHANICAL ALTERATIONS PROJECT PROCEDURES 01 – 05
23 05 12 – SHOP DRAWINGS, COORDINATION DRAWINGS & PRODUCT DATA 01 – 06
23 05 13 – ELECTRICAL PROVISIONS OF HVAC WORK 01 – 04
23 05 14 – HVAC CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING SYSTEM 01 – 01
23 05 17 – HVAC ACCESS DOORS 01 – 02
23 05 18 – VARIABLE FREQUENCY INVERTER 01 – 07
23 05 19 – HVAC PRESSURE AND TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENTS 01 – 03
23 05 23 – HVAC VALVES, STRAINERS AND VENTS 01 – 06
23 05 33 – HVAC PIPE HEAT TRACING 01 – 03
23 05 48 – VIBRATION ISOLATION 01 – 03
23 05 93 – TAB OF ENVIRONMENTAL SYSTEMS 01 – 14
23 05 94 – COORDINATION OF TESTING AND BALANCING 01 – 03
23 07 13 – EXTERNAL DUCT INSULATION 01 – 06
23 07 16 – VESSEL INSULATION 01 – 04
23 07 19 – HVAC PIPING INSULATION 01 – 09
23 08 00 – MECHANICAL COMMISSIONING COORDINATION 01 – 09
23 09 33 – BUILDING MANAGEMENT AND CONTROL SYSTEM (GENERAL) 01 – 42
23 09 34 – COORDINATION OF BMCS 01 – 01
23 20 00 – HVAC PIPE AND PIPE FITTINGS – GENERAL 01 – 08
23 21 13 – HOT WATER AND CHILLED WATER PIPING, VALVES AND APPURTENANCES 01 – 03
23 21 23 – HVAC PUMPS 01 – 08

23 25 13 – CIRCULATING WATER SYSTEM CHEMICAL TREATMENT 01 – 05
23 31 13 – DUCTWORK 01 – 16
23 31 14 – FABRIC AIR DISPERSION SYSTEM 01 – 04
23 34 16 – FANS 01 – 05
23 36 16 – VARIABLE VOLUME TERMINAL UNITS 01 – 08
23 37 13 – AIR DEVICES 01 – 02
23 41 00 – AIR FILTRATION 01 – 02
23 43 00 – AIR PURIFICATION SYSTEM 01 – 06
23 52 35 – GAS-FIRED MODULATING HOT WATER BOILER 01 – 07
23 65 27 – AIR-COOLED ROTARY SCROLL CHILLER 01 – 10
23 73 13 – AIR HANDLING UNITS 01 – 07
23 81 24 – WEATHERPROOF ROOF-MOUNTED AIR HANDLING UNIT 01 – 08
23 82 16 – HEATING AND COOLING COILS 01 – 02
23 82 19 – FAN COIL UNITS 01 – 04

DIVISIONS 24 – 25 (NOT USED)

DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL

26 01 05 – ELECTRICAL OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS 01 – 04
26 05 00 – ELECTRICAL GENERAL PROVISIONS 01 – 19
26 05 05 – ELECTRICAL ALTERATIONS PROJECT PROCEDURES 01 – 09
26 05 09 – ELEC UTILITY COORDINATION & SERVICE ENTRANCE 01 – 02
26 05 10 – CONTRACT QUALITY CONTROL 01 – 03
26 05 12 – ELECTRICAL SHOP AND COORDINATION DRAWINGS 01 – 06
26 05 16 – EXCAVATING, BACKFILLING AND COMPACTING FOR ELECTRICAL 01 – 03
26 05 19 – CONDUCTORS AND CONNECTORS – 600 VOLT 01 – 06
26 05 27 – EXPANSION OF EXISTING ELECTRICAL GROUNDING 01 – 06
26 05 33 – CONDUIT SYSTEMS 01 – 18
26 05 35 – ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS FOR EQUIPMENT 01 – 03
26 05 37 – ELECTRICAL BOXES AND FITTINGS 01 – 06
26 05 40 – ELECTRICAL GUTTERS AND WIREWAYS 01 – 02
26 05 50 – FIRESTOPS 01 – 02
26 08 00 – ELECTRICAL COMMISSIONING 01 – 03
26 09 25 – ELECTRICAL CONTACTORS 01 – 03
26 09 44 – LIGHTING CONTROLS 01 – 11
26 12 17 – ULTRA HIGH EFFICIENCY K-RATED TRANSFORMERS 01 – 07
26 19 13 – COMBINATION MOTOR CONTROLLERS 01 – 04
26 24 14 – TESTING, MAINTENANCE, AND MODIFICATIONS TO EXISTING SWITCHBOARDS 01 – 05
26 24 16 – PANELBOARDS AND ENCLOSURES 01 – 05
26 24 25 – ENCLOSED SWITCHES (CIRCUIT BREAKERS) 01 – 04
26 24 30 – FUSES 01 – 02
26 27 73 – LINE VOLTAGE WIRING DEVICES 01 – 10
26 32 16 – DUAL PURPOSE MANUAL TRANSFER SWITCHES 01 – 09
26 36 00 – NEW AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES 01 – 08
26 43 00 – SURGE PROTECTION DEVICES 01 – 06
26 51 13 – LIGHTING FIXTURES 01 – 07

DIVISION 27 – COMMUNICATIONS

27 01 00 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE (O&M) MANULAS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS 01 - 04
27 05 00 - COMMUNICATIONS BASIC MATERIALS, METHODS, AND GENERAL PROVISIONS 01 – 27

27 05 07 - COMMUNICATIONS SHOP DRAWINGS, COORDINATION DRAWINGS & PRODUCT DATA 01 – 06
27 05 09 - CONTRACT QUALITY CONTROL 01 – 02
27 05 10 - FIRESTOPS 01 – 01
27 05 50 - TELECOMMUNICATIONS GROUNDING AND BONDING 01 – 13
27 10 00 - STRUCTURED CABLING SYSTEM (SCS) 01 – 28
27 41 16.10 - AUDIO AND VIDEO DISTRIBUTON FOR INSTRUCTIONAL SPACES 01 – 11
27 41 16.20 - AUDIO AND VIDEO DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS FOR SPECIAL VENUES 01 – 14
27 50 00 - BUILDING INTERCOMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM (EXPAND EXISTING) 01 – 09

DIVISION 28 – ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

28 01 00 - OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUALS OF ELECTRONIC SAFETY & SECURITY SYSTEMS 01 - 05
28 05 00 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY BASIC MATERIALS, METHODS, & GENERAL PROVISIONS 01 - 24
28 05 07 - SHOP DRAWINGS, COORDINATION DRAWINGS & PRODUCT DATA 01 - 06
28 05 10 - CONTRACT QUALITY CONTROL 01 - 02
28 05 50 - FIRESTOPS 01 - 01
28 10 00 - ACESS CONTROL SYSTEM (ACS) 01 - 21
28 15 00 - INTRUSION DETECTION SYSTEM 01 - 11
28 46 00 - FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM SYSTEM 01 - 43
28 55 00 - RF SURVEY 01 - 07

DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK

31 00 00 - SITE EARTHWORK 01 - 06
31 11 00 - CLEARING AND GRUBBING 01 - 03
31 23 00 - GRADING EXCAVATION AND FILL 01 - 05
31 25 00 - EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL 01 - 10

DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

32 13 13 - PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE PAVING 01 - 06
32 13 19 - CONCRETE PAVEMENT JOINTS 01 - 06
32 16 13 - CONCRETE CURBS AND CURB AND GUTTER 01 - 06
32 18 23 - SYNTHETIC TRACK SURFACING 01 - 06
32 31 12 - CHAIN LINK FENCING AND GATES 01 - 05
32 92 00 - TURF AND GRASSES 01 - 04

DIVISION 33 – UTILITIES

33 05 16 - UTILITY STRUCTURES 01 - 07
33 05 28 -TRENCHING AND BACKFILL FOR UTILITIES 01 - 07
33 11 13 - WATER LINES 01 - 09
33 16 53 - TRAFFIC PAINT STRIPING 01 - 06
33 41 00 - STORM SEWAGE SYSTEMS 01 - 07

END OF SECTION 00 00 10

# SECTION 00015 - LIST OF DRAWINGS

**TIMBERWOOD MIDDLE SCHOOL (TMS) ADDITIONS & RENOVATIONS**

| | |
|---|---|
| G1.1 | TITLE SHEET |
| G1.2 | MASTER KEYNOTE LIST |
| G1.3 | TYPICAL MOUNTING HEIGHTS / ACCESSIBILITY |
| G1.4 | HARRIS COUNTY FIRE REVIEW SHEET |
| G1.7 | LIFE SAFETY PLAN |
| | |
| AS1.1 | DEMO SITE PLAN |
| AS1.2 | ARCHITECTURAL SITE PLAN |
| AS1.3 | SITE DETAILS |
| AS1.4 | SITE DETAILS |
| | |
| C0.00 | HARRIS COUNTY CIVIL COVER SHEET |
| C0.01 | HARRIS COUNTY EXPRESS REVIEW SHEET |
| C0.02 | HARRIS COUNTY FLOOD CONTROL DISTRICT REVIEW SHEET |
| C1.01 | OVERALL SITE PLAN |
| C1.02 | FIRE ACCESS PLAN |
| C2.01 | DEMOLITION PLAN – BUILDING EXPANSION |
| C2.02 | DEMOLITION PLAN – PARKING EXPANSION |
| C3.01 | LAYOUT PLAN – BUILDING EXPANSION |
| C3.02 | LAYOUT PLAN – PARKING EXPANSION |
| C4.01 | PAVING PLAN – BUILDING EXPANSION |
| C4.02 | PAVING PLAN – PARKING EXPANSION |
| C5.01 | UTILITY PLAN – BUILDING EXPANSION |
| C5.02 | UTILITY PLAN – PARKING EXPANSION |
| C6.01 | GRADING PLAN – BUILDING EXPANSION |
| C6.02 | GRADING PLAN – PARKING EXPANSION |
| C7.01 | SWPPP – BUILDING EXPANSION |
| C7.02 | SWPPP – PARKING EXPANSION |
| C8.00 | SWPPP DETAILS |
| C9.01 | MISCELLANIOUS DETAILS 1 OF 3 |
| C9.02 | MISCELLANIOUS DETAILS 2 OF 3 |
| C9.03 | MISCELLANIOUS DETAILS 3 OF 3 |
| C10.01 | TOPOGRAPHIC SURVEY 1 OF 2 (FOR REFERENCE ONLY) |
| C10.02 | TOPOGRAPHIC SURVEY 2 OF 2 (FOR REFERENCE ONLY) |
| | |
| S001 | 3D VIEW AND SHEET LIST |
| S101 | GENERAL STRUCTURAL CRITERIA |
| S102 | GENERAL STRUCTURAL CRITERIA |
| S201 | FOUNDATION PLAN – OVERALL |
| S201G | FOUNDATION PLAN – AREA G |
| S202 | SECOND FLOOR AND LOW ROOF FRAMING PLAN – OVERALL |
| S202G | LOW ROOF FRAMING PLAN – AREA G |
| S203 | ROOF FRAMING PLAN – OVERALL |
| S203G | ROOF FRAMING PLAN – AREA G |
| S204 | ROOF FRAMING PLAN – OVERALL |
| S204G | HIGH ROOF FRAMING PLAN – AREA G |
| S301 | DRILLED PIER & PLINTH SCHEDULE & DETAILS |

| | |
|---|---|
| S302 | GRADE BEAM SCHEDULE AND DETAILS |
| S303 | COLUMN SCHEDULE & DETAILS |
| S401 | TYPICAL FOUNDATION DETAILS |
| S402 | TYPICAL SITE FOUNDATION DETAILS |
| S403 | FOUNDATION DETAILS (PIER) |
| S501 | TYPICAL FRAMING DETAILS |
| S502 | TYPICAL FRAMING DETAILS |
| S503 | TYPICAL COMPOSITE FRAMING DETAILS |
| S504 | TYPICAL ROOF FRAMING DETAILS |
| S505 | TYPICAL COLD FORMED METAL FRAMING DETAILS |
| S506 | TYPICAL CMU DETAILS |
| S601 | COMPOSITE FRAMING DETAILS |
| S701 | ROOF FRAMING DETAILS |
| S702 | ROOF FRAMING DETAILS |
| S703 | ROOF FRAMING DETAILS |

| | |
|---|---|
| A0.1 | COMPOSITTE FLOOR PLAN |
| A1.1A | DEMOLITION PLAN – AREA A |
| A1.1B | DEMOLITION PLAN – AREA B |
| A1.1C | DEMOLITION PLAN – AREA C |
| A1.1D | DEMOLITION PLAN – AREA D |
| A1.1E & F | DEMOLITION PLAN – AREA E & F |
| A2.0 | PARTITION TYPES |
| A2.1A | FLOOR PLAN – AREA A |
| A2.1B | FLOOR PLAN – AREA B |
| A2.1C | FLOOR PLAN – AREA C |
| A2.1D | FLOOR PLAN – AREA D |
| A2.1E & F | FLOOR PLAN – AREA E & F |
| A2.1G | FLOOR PLAN – AREA G |
| A2.2G | MEZZANINE & CLERESTORY PLAN – AREA G |
| A2.3 | ROOF PLAN |
| A2.4 | ROOF DETAILS |
| A3.1 | EXTERIOR ELEVATIONS |
| A3.2 | BUILDING SECTIONS |
| A3.3 | WALL SECTIONS & DETAILS |
| A3.4 | WALL SECTIONS |
| A3.5 | WALL SECTIONS |
| A3.6 | PLAN DETAILS |
| A4.1 | DOOR SCHEDULE & DETAILS |
| A4.2 | WINDOW TYPES |
| A4.3 | DOOR & WINDOW DETAILS |
| A5.1 | ENLARGED PLANS |
| A5.3 | INTERIOR ELEVATIONS |
| A5.4 | INTERIOR ELEVATIONS |
| A5.9 | MILLWORK DETAILS |
| A6.1A | REFLECTED CEILING PLAN – AREA A |
| A6.1B | REFLECTED CEILING PLAN – AREA B |
| A6.1C | REFLECTED CEILING PLAN – AREA C |
| A6.1D | REFLECTED CEILING PLAN – AREA D |
| A6.1E & F | REFLECTED CEILING PLAN – AREA E & F |
| A6.1G | REFLECTED CEILING PLAN – AREA G |
| A7.A | FINISH PLAN – AREA A |

| | |
|---|---|
| A7.B | FINISH PLAN – AREA B |
| A7.C | FINISH PLAN – AREA C |
| A7.D | FINISH PLAN – AREA D |
| A7.E & F | FINISH PLAN – AREA E & F |
| A7.G | FINISH PLAN – AREA G |
| | |
| QF1 | FS GENERAL COORDINATION NOTES |
| QF1.1 | FS EQUIPMENT PLAN |
| QF1.2 | FS SPECIAL CONDITIONS & MECHANICAL PLAN |
| QF1.3 | FS PLUMBING PLAN |
| QF1.4 | FS ELECTRICAL PLAN |
| QF1.5 | FS EXHAUST HOODS |
| QF1.6 | FS ELEVATIONS |
| QF1.7 | FS SECTIONS & DETAILS |
| | |
| M0.1 | MECHANICAL COMPOSITE FLOOR PLAN |
| M1.1 | MECHANICAL DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN – AREA A |
| M1.2 | MECHANICAL DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN – AREA B |
| M1.3 | MECHANICAL DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN – AREA C |
| M1.4 | MECHANICAL DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN – AREA D |
| M1.5 | MECHANICAL DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN – AREA E & F |
| M1.6 | MECHANICAL DEMOLITION ENLARGED FLOOR PLAN |
| M1.7 | MECHANICAL DEMOLITION ENLARGED FLOOR PLAN |
| M2.1 | MECHANICAL FLOOR PLAN – AREA A |
| M2.2 | MECHANICAL FLOOR PLAN – AREA B |
| M2.3 | MECHANICAL FLOOR PLAN – AREA C |
| M2.4 | MECHANICAL FLOOR PLAN – AREA D |
| M2.5 | MECHANICAL FLOOR PLAN – AREA E & F |
| M2.6 | MECHANICAL FLOOR PLAN – AREA G |
| M2.7 | MECHANICAL ROOF PLAN |
| M3.1 | MECHANICAL ENLARGED FLOOR PLAN |
| M3.2 | MECHANICAL ENLARGED FLOOR PLAN |
| M4.1 | MECHANICAL PIPING DIAGRAM |
| M5.1 | MECHANICAL DETAILS |
| M5.2 | MECHANICAL DETAILS |
| M5.3 | MECHANICAL DETAILS |
| M6.1 | MECHANICAL SCHEDULES |
| | |
| P1.0 | PLUMBING SITE PLAN |
| P1.1 | PLUMBING DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN – AREA A |
| P1.2 | PLUMBING DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN – AREA B |
| P1.3 | PLUMBING DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN – AREA C |
| P1.4 | PLUMBING DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN – AREA D |
| P1.5 | PLUMBING DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN – AREA E & F |
| P1.6 | PLUMBING DEMOLITION ROOF PLAN |
| P2.1 | PLUMBING UNDERFLOOR PLAN – AREA A |
| P2.2 | PLUMBING UNDERFLOOR PLAN – AREA B |
| P2.3 | PLUMBING UNDERFLOOR PLAN – AREA C |
| P2.4 | PLUMBING UNDERFLOOR PLAN – AREA G |
| P3.1 | PLUMBING FLOOR PLAN – AREA A |
| P3.2 | PLUMBING FLOOR PLAN – AREA B |
| P3.3 | PLUMBING FLOOR PLAN – AREA C |

| | |
|---|---|
| P3.4 | PLUMBING FLOOR PLAN – AREA D |
| P3.5 | PLUMBING FLOOR PLAN – AREA E & F |
| P3.6 | PLUMBING FLOOR PLAN – AREA G |
| P3.7 | PLUMBING ROOF PLAN |
| P4.0 | PLUMBING ENLARGED PLANS – CULINARY |
| P4.1 | PLUMBING ENLARGED PLAN – MEZZANINE |
| P5.0 | PLUMBING RISER DIAGRAM – CULINARY |
| P6.0 | PLUMBING DETAILS |
| P6.1 | PLUMBING SCHEDULES |
| | |
| E1.0 | ELECTRICAL SITE PLAN |
| E1.1 | ELECTRICAL DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN – AREA A |
| E1.2 | ELECTRICAL DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN – AREA B |
| E1.3 | ELECTRICAL DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN – AREA C |
| E1.4 | ELECTRICAL DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN – AREA D |
| E1.5 | ELECTRICAL DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN – AREA E & F |
| E2.1 | ELECTRICAL LIGHTING FLOOR PLAN – AREA A |
| E2.2 | ELECTRICAL LIGHTING FLOOR PLAN – AREA B |
| E2.3 | ELECTRICAL FLOOR PLAN – AREA C |
| E2.4 | ELECTRICAL LIGHTING FLOOR PLAN – AREA D |
| E2.5 | ELECTRICAL LIGHTING FLOOR PLAN – AREA E & F |
| E2.6 | ELECTRICAL LIGHTING FLOOR PLAN – AREA G AND MEZZANINE |
| E3.1 | ELECTRICAL POWER FLOOR PLAN – AREA A |
| E3.2 | ELECTRICAL POWER FLOOR PLAN – AREA B |
| E3.3 | ELECTRICAL POWER FLOOR PLAN – AREA C |
| E3.4 | ELECTRICAL POWER FLOOR PLAN – AREA D |
| E3.5 | ELECTRICAL POWER FLOOR PLAN – AREA E & F |
| E3.6 | ELECTRICAL POWER FLOOR PLAN – AREA G AND MEZZANINE |
| E4.1 | ELECTRICAL FLOOR PLAN – CULINARY ARTS |
| E4.2 | ELECTRICAL ROOF PLAN |
| E5.1 | ELECTRICAL ONE-LINE DIAGRAM |
| E6.1 | ELECTRICAL PANEL SCHEDULE |
| E6.2 | ELECTRICAL PANEL SCHEDULE |
| E7.1 | ELECTRICAL DETAILS & SCHEDULES |
| | |
| T0.0 | TECHNOLOGY LEGENDS AND NOTES |
| T0.1 | TECHNOLOGY DEMOLITION SITE PLAN |
| T1.0 | TECHNOLOGY SITE PLAN |
| T1.1 | TECHNOLOGY DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN – AREA A |
| T1.2 | TECHNOLOGY DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN – AREA B |
| T1.3 | TECHNOLOGY DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN – AREA C |
| T1.4 | TECHNOLOGY DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN – AREA D |
| T1.5 | TECHNOLOGY DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN – AREA E & F |
| T2.0 | TECHNOLOGY COMPOSTIE FLOOR PLAN |
| T2.1 | TECHNOLOGY FLOOR PLAN – AREA A |
| T2.2 | TECHNOLOGY FLOOR PLAN – AREA B |
| T2.3 | TECHNOLOGY FLOOR PLAN – AREA C |
| T2.4 | TECHNOLOGY FLOOR PLAN – AREA D |
| T2.5 | TECHNOLOGY FLOOR PLAN – AREA E & F |
| T2.6 | TECHNOLOGY FLOOR PLAN – AREA G |
| T3.1 | TECHNOLOGY ENLARGED PLAN |
| T5.1 | TECHNOLOGY DETAILS |

| | |
|---|---|
| T5.2 | TECHNOLOGY DETAILS |
| T5.3 | TECHNOLOGY DETAILS |
| T5.4 | TECHNOLOGY DETAILS |
| | |
| AV0.00 | GENERAL NOTES AND LEGENDS |
| AV2.1B | FLOOR PLAN – AREA B |
| AV2.1G | FLOOR PLAN – AREA G |
| AV3.1 | ELEVATIONS |
| AV6.1B | REFLECTED CEILING PLAN – AREA B |
| AV6.IG | REFLECTED CEILING PLAN – AREA G |
| AV11.00 | AUDIO-VIDEO FUNCTIONAL LEGEND AND STANDARD DETAILS |

END OF SECTION 00 00 15

# SECTION 00 11 19 - REQUEST FOR COMPETITIVE SEALED PROPOSALS

Competitive Sealed Proposals for the work identified below in accordance with Proposal Documents and addenda as may be issued prior to date of proposal opening will be received by the Board of Trustees, Humble Independent School District, until proposal closing date and time, as identified below. Proposals from Offerors will then be opened in public and read aloud.

**OWNER:** Humble Independent School District
10203 Birchridge Drive
Humble, Texas 77338
Phone: (281) 641-1000
Representative:
Bryan Applegate, Project Manager
Jason Seybert, Assistant Superintendent of Support Services
Tom Haggerty, Executive Director of Construction

**PROJECT:** CSP# 2026-03 HUMBLE ISD TIMBERWOOD MIDDLE SCHOOL

**EST. BUDGET:** $9,250,000.00

**PRE-PROPOSAL CONFERENCE:** 11:00 AM – Tuesday, August 19, 2025
Representatives of the Architect and Owner will be present at this meeting.
All proposers are encouraged to attend.

**PROPOSAL DATE AND TIME:** 1:00 PM – Thursday September 11, 2025 – Base Bid
2:00 PM – Thursday September 11, 2025 – Alternate Bids
3:00 PM – Thursday September 11, 2025 – Public Bid Opening
All proposals are submitted electronically via Ion Wave @
https://humbleisd.ionwave.net

**LOCATION OF PROPOSAL OPENING:** Large Conference Room
Humble ISD Maintenance and Construction facility
1703 Wilson Road, Building B
Humble, Texas 77396
Join Zoom Meeting
https://humbleisd.zoom.us/j/82975654330?pwd=VHmS4wruHzXa6cNIH7Hvw5DRWPds0h.1

Meeting ID: 829 7565 4330
Passcode: 874242

One tap mobile
+13462487799,,82975654330#,,,,*874242# US (Houston)
+12532050468,,82975654330#,,,,*874242# US

**ARCHITECT:** BRW Architects
4501 Magnolia Cove Dr. Ste. 250
Kingwood, TX 77345
(281) 361-3800

END OF SECTION 00 11 19

# SECTION 00 21 16 - INSTRUCTIONS TO PROPOSERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 SUMMARY

A. Contract Documents (drawings and specifications) in the form of a download link may be obtained beginning Tuesday, August 5, 2025 on Ion Wave @ https://humbleisd.ionwave.net

B. Proposer may withdraw his Proposal at any time prior to the last date and time specified for submission of Proposals. A Proposer may resubmit his Proposal at any time prior to the deadline for submission of Proposals, pursuant to the Proposal procedures requirements stated herein. Once Proposals are opened, no Proposer may modify or withdraw his Proposal within ninety (90) days after the actual date of the Proposal opening.

C. Sealed proposals in conformity with the Proposal Procedures for the project will be received electronically by the Humble Independent School District via the Ion Wave Bid Submission Portal located at https://humbleisd.ionwave.net on Thursday, September 11, 2025. Base due at 1:00 PM, Alternates due at 2:00 PM.

D. A non-mandatory Pre-Proposal Conference will occur at **11:00 AM on Tuesday, August 19, 2025**, in the Large Conference Room at the Humble ISD Maintenance and Construction facility, 1703 Wilson Road, Building B, Humble, Texas, 77396. In addition, a non-mandatory job site walk to follow immediately after pre-proposal meeting.

E. Proposal is invalid if it has not been received by Owner by the last time and date for receipt of Proposals indicated herein, or prior to any written extension thereof issued to the Proposer. Proposals received after the deadline will be returned unopened.

F. Proposal Bond: A Proposal Bond from a bonding company acceptable to the District or a certified check in the amount of equal to 5% pf the greatest amount proposal **must** accompany each Offeror's proposal.

### 1.02 QUALIFIED OFFERORS

A. Competitive Sealed Proposals will be accepted from qualified Offerors (General Contractors) only for the entire scope of work described in the Contract Documents. As a prerequisite to an Offeror's qualifying for the award of contract on this work, the Offeror must complete each item of the Contractor's Qualification Statement (AIA Document A305). Contractor must use the current A305 form. The Statement forms may be obtained from the Houston Chapter of the American Institute of Architects, 902 Commerce St., Houston, Texas 77002, (713) 520-0155 or at https://shop.aiacontracts.com/. In addition to the information contained in the Statement form, offerors shall also address the selection criteria issues listed under the paragraph below for Determination of Successful Respondent and Award of contract.

B. Proposers shall submit Contractor's Qualification Statement (AIA Document A305) to Brown Reynolds Watford Architects no later than 4:00 PM on Monday, August 25, 2025. Documents may be submitted electronically via email to linda.collier2@humbleisd.net. Include with AIA Document A305 a resume for each of the Proposers team to include Project Manager, Project Superintendent, and other support staff proposed for this project. In addition, include a written summary describing the role each team member will have on the project and what percentage of time each team member will dedicate to this project on a weekly basis.

C. A PDF copy of the completed A305 document must be submitted with Proposal on the District's online bidding system.

D. The primary purposes of the evaluation process will be:
   1. Gather information for the Owner's evaluation procedure.

2. Enable the Owner and/or Architect to evaluate the Offeror's qualifications.

E. The Contract shall be awarded to the Contractor offering the "best value" to the Owner, in addition to the purchase price, based on the published selection criteria and on its ranking evaluation.

## 1.03 REJECTION OF PROPOSALS

A. The Proposer acknowledges the right of the Owner to reject any and all Proposals and to waive any informality or irregularity in any Proposal received. Owner reserves the right to accept or reject any or all Alternates, to accept any combination of Alternates, and to accept any Proposal considered advantageous. Owner shall have all other rights with regard to the Proposal provided by law.

B. In addition, the Proposer recognizes the right of the Owner to reject a Proposal if the Proposer failed to submit the data required by the Proposal Documents, or if the Proposal is in any way incomplete or irregular.

C. The Owner may reject a Proposal due to any irregularity, informality or non-responsiveness, including, but not limited to, any of the following:
   1. Proposals which are not timely submitted
   2. Proposals which are not signed.
   3. More than one Proposal for same project from an individual, firm, partnership, or corporation.
   4. Proposals containing omissions, alteration of form, additions, qualifications, or conditions not called for by the Owner, or incomplete Proposals may be considered in non-compliance and may be rejected. In any case of ambiguity or lack of clarity in the Proposal, Owner reserves the right to determine the most advantageous Proposal or to reject the Proposal
   5. Any other cause requiring or permitting rejection under applicable law.

## 1.04 DISCREPANCIES AND AMBIGUITIES

A. No oral explanation regarding the meaning of the drawings and specifications will be made and no oral instructions will be given before award of the contract. Each Proposer shall examine the Proposal documents carefully and, not later than ten days prior to the date for receipt of Proposals, shall make written request to the Architect for interpretation or correction of any ambiguity, inconsistency, or error therein which he may discover. Any interpretation or correction will be issued as an Addendum by the Architect. Only a written interpretation or correction by Addendum shall be binding. No Proposer shall rely upon any interpretation or correction given by any other method.

B. Prior to the receipt of Proposals, Addenda will be mailed or delivered to each person or firm recorded by the Architect as having received the Proposal documents and will be available for inspection wherever the Proposal documents are kept for that purpose. It is the obligation of each Proposer to make sure that it has received any and all addenda prior to submitting its Proposal.

## 1.05 SUBMISSION OF POST-BID INFORMATION

A. Upon request by the Architect/Owner, each Proposer shall, within seven days thereafter, submit any additional information required to evaluate the Proposal, including any information on subcontractors. The Architect/Owner may discuss with any Proposer any subcontractor that Owner has reasonable objection to, or which has been disbarred from performing services for Owner.

**1.06 PROPOSER'S ACCEPTANCE OF EVALUATION METHODOLOGY**

A. **WAIVER OF CLAIMS: EACH PROPOSER BY SUBMISSION OF A RESPONSE TO THIS REQUEST FOR PROPOSALS ("RFP") WAIVES ANY CLAIMS IT HAS OR MAY HAVE AGAINST THE ARCHITECT, ITS CONSULTING ENGINEERS, OR ANY OTHER CONSULTANTS, AND THEIR RESPECTIVE EMPLOYEES, OFFICERS, MEMBERS, DIRECTORS AND PARTNERS, AND THE OWNER, ITS EMPLOYEES, OFFICERS, AGENTS, REPRESENTATIVES, AND THE MEMBERS OF OWNER'S GOVERNING BODY, CONNECTED WITH OR ARISING OUT OF THIS RFP, INCLUDING THE ADMINISTRATION OF THE RFP, THE RFP EVALUATION, SUBMISSION OF A PROPOSAL INDICATES PROPOSER'S ACCEPTANCE OF THE EVALUATION TECHNIQUE AND PROPOSER'S RECOGNITION THAT SOME SUBJECTIVE JUDGMENTS MUST BE MADE BY THE OWNER DURING THE EVALUATION OF PROPOSALS, WITHOUT LIMITING THE GENERALITY OF THE FOREGOING. EACH PROPOSER ACKNOWLEDGES THAT THE BASIS OF SELECTION AND THE VALUATIONS SHALL BE MADE PUBLIC AFTER THE CONTRACT IS AWARDED AND WAIVES ANY CLAIM IT HAS OR MAY HAVE AGAINST THE ABOVE-NAMED PERSONS, DUE TO INFORMATION CONTAINED IN SUCH EVALUATIONS.**

END OF SECTION 00 21 16

# SECTION 00 30 00 - INFORMATION AVAILABLE TO PROPOSERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATION

A. A Geotechnical Investigation for the project site has been performed by QC Laboratories, Inc., 10810 Northwest Freeway, Houston TX 77092. A copy of QCL Project No. 23G20369 dated January 5, 2024, is bound herein.

B. Log of borings indicates materials penetrated at specific locations. Owner and/or Architect assume no responsibility for any conclusions of interpretations made by Contractor related to information included in the Report. Should contractor require additional information concerning subsurface conditions, he may without cost to Owner, make additional investigations. Should additional investigations produce information different from that in Soil Report, promptly notify Owner in writing.

C. Contractor shall read and otherwise become completely familiar with contents of Soil Report, including but not limited to its recommendations for preparation of subsoil, bases, sub-bases and fill and construction of building foundations and parking surfaces in compliance with recommendations in Report. Should discrepancy be found between the requirements of Soil Report and the drawings and/or specifications, notify Owner in writing prior to beginning work.

### 1.03 ASBESTOS SURVEY

A. An Asbestos Survey for the project building has been performed by Loflin Environmental Services, Inc., 2020 Montrose, Houston, TX 77006. A copy of Loflin survey reports are bound herein:
   1. Timberwood Middle School
      a. Project No. 06-21-10-1C, dated May 20, 2011
      b. Project No 062-09-07, dated July 15, 2011

### 1.04 EXISTING CONDITIONS

A. Proposers shall visit the site of work, existing buildings, review any available existing drawings, and all conditions affecting the work of this project. Any claims after contract award for difficulties encountered which could have been foreseen by such site review will not be recognized by the Owner.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

Not used.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

Not used.

END OF SECTION 00 30 00

Assistant Superintendent
for Support Services

MAY 23 2011

Received
Humble ISD

# LOFLIN ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES, INC.

May 20, 2011

Humble Independent School District
P.O. Box 2000
Humble, Texas 77347

Attention: Mr. Stephen Cooper

Subject: Results of Limited Survey for Asbestos Containing Materials
Kitchen at Timberwood Middle School located at
18450 Timber Forest Drive in Humble, Texas
Loflin Environmental Services, Inc. Project Number 0621101C

Dear Mr. Cooper,

Loflin Environmental Services, Inc. (LOFLIN) has completed a limited asbestos survey of the planned renovation areas of the Kitchen at Timberwood Middle Elementary School located at 18450 Timber Forest Drive in Humble, Texas. The survey was to identify possible asbestos containing materials associated within the Kitchen scheduled for the upgrade and assess those which may become friable during renovation. This survey was performed on May 18, 2011.

The areas of planned Kitchen renovations were visually inspected to identify suspect asbestos containing materials present. Suspect materials identified and sampled included domestic and chilled water pipe fitting insulation sealant, HVAC duct mastic (white) and floor tile and associated mastic. Representative samples of these materials were collected and submitted to LOFLIN's Houston laboratory (NVLAP #2044). Samples were analyzed using Polarized Light Microscopy coupled with dispersion staining in accordance with the US EPA "Method for the Determination of Asbestos in Bulk Samples" (EPA 600/R-93/116, July 1993).

Based upon laboratory analysis, the sampled materials were not determined to be asbestos containing. This survey was conducted in general accordance with the Texas Asbestos Health Protection Rules (TAHPR) and the EPA Asbestos Hazard Emergency Response Act (AHREA) for the area being renovated.

Loflin Environmental Services, Inc. appreciates this opportunity to provide these testing services for Humble Independent School District. Should you have any questions regarding this inspection, please do not hesitate to contact us.

Sincerely,
Loflin Environmental Services, Inc.

W. Joseph Loflin
DSHS Consultant # 10-5140
DSHS Lab # 30-0031

2020 MONTROSE • HOUSTON,TEXAS 77006 • (713)521-3300 • FAX (713)523-0829 • www.loflinenvironmental.com

**Loflin Environmental Services, Inc.** 2020 Montrose Blvd., Houston, Texas 77006
(713) 521-3300 Fax (713)523-0829

LOFLIN

NVLAP 10-2044
TDH Lab 30-0031

# Report of Bulk Sample Analysis For Asbestos Identification

Polarized Light Microscopy (PLM)
EPA 600/R-93/116, July 1994

Client: HUMBLE ISD
Client Address: PO BOX 2000, HUMBLE, TX 77347
Project No: 62-11-01C
Project Name: TIMBERWOOD MIDDLE SCHOOL, 18450 TIMBER FOREST DR., HUMBLE, TX- KITCHEN

Date Received: 5/18/2011
Date Analyzed: 5/18/2011


| Lab Number | Field Number | Sample Description (Components) | Sample Location | Asbestos Detected | Additional Constituents |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| L180596 | T1 | WHITE, GRANULAR NONHOM (FLOOR TILE) | | NONE DETECTED | CALCITE, VINYL, QUARTZ |
| | | BLACK, TARRY (MASTIC) | | NONE DETECTED | 5% CELLULOSE TAR |
| L180597 | T2 | WHITE, GRANULAR NONHOM (FLOOR TILE) | | NONE DETECTED | CALCITE, VINYL, QUARTZ |
| | | BLACK, TARRY (MASTIC) | | NONE DETECTED | 5% CELLULOSE TAR |
| L180598 | T3 | WHITE, GRANULAR NONHOM (FLOOR TILE) | | NONE DETECTED | CALCITE, VINYL, QUARTZ |
| | | BLACK, TARRY (MASTIC) | | NONE DETECTED | 5% CELLULOSE TAR |
| L180599 | T4 | WHITE, GUMMY HOMOGENEOUS (HVAC DUCT MASTIC) | | NONE DETECTED | 5% WOLLASTONITE OTHER |
| L180600 | T5 | WHITE, GUMMY HOMOGENEOUS (HVAC DUCT MASTIC) | | NONE DETECTED | 5% WOLLASTONITE OTHER |
| L180601 | T6 | WHITE, GUMMY HOMOGENEOUS (HVAC DUCT MASTIC) | | NONE DETECTED | 5% WOLLASTONITE OTHER |

Laboratory Manager

*Asbestos-containing materials - The type and percentage of various fibrous components was determined by the microscopist in accordance with U.S. Environmental Protection Agency "Method For The Determination Of Asbestos In Bulk Samples" EPA/600/R-93/116, July 1993.
Departures from the test method: **None**
The above test report must not be used by the client to claim product endorsement by NVLAP or any other agency of the U.S. Government.
Analysis results on this test report pertain only to those materials tested.
Disclaimers: PLM analysis has been known to be inaccurate for materials with low concentrations of asbestos. Negative PLM results cannot be guaranteed. LES recommends using TEM analysis for materials reported as <1% or none detected. This report may not be reproduced, except in full, without written approval by LES.

LOFLIN
NVLAP 10-2044
TDH Lab 30-0031

(713) 521-3300 Fax (713)523-0829

# Report of Bulk Sample Analysis For Asbestos Identification

Polarized Light Microscopy (PLM)
EPA 600/R-93/116, July 1994

Client: HUMBLE ISD
Client Address: PO BOX 2000, HUMBLE, TX 77347
Project No: 62-11-01C
Project Name: TIMBERWOOD MIDDLE SCHOOL, 18450 TIMBER FOREST DR., HUMBLE, TX- KITCHEN

Date Received: 5/18/2011
Date Analyzed: 5/18/2011


| Lab Number | Field Number | Sample Description (Components) | Sample Location | Asbestos Detected | Additional Constituents |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| L180602 | T7 | WHITE, GUMMY HOMOGENEOUS (PIPE FITTING MASTIC) | | NONE DETECTED | QUARTZ OTHER |
| L180603 | T8 | WHITE, GUMMY HOMOGENEOUS (PIPE FITTING MASTIC) | | NONE DETECTED | QUARTZ OTHER |
| L180604 | T9 | WHITE, GUMMY HOMOGENEOUS (PIPE FITTING MASTIC) | | NONE DETECTED | QUARTZ OTHER |

Laboratory Manager

*Asbestos-containing materials - The type and percentage of various fibrous components was determined by the microscopist in accordance with U.S. Environmental Protection Agency "Method For The Determination Of Asbestos In Bulk Samples" EPA/600/R-93/116, July 1993.
Departures from the test method: **None**
The above test report must not be used by the client to claim product endorsement by NVLAP or any other agency of the U.S. Government. Analysis results on this test report pertain only to those materials tested.
Disclaimers: PLM analysis has been known to be inaccurate for materials with low concentrations of asbestos. Negative PLM results cannot be guaranteed. LES recommends using TEM analysis for materials reported as <1% or none detected. This report may not be reproduced, except in full, without written approval by LES.

# LOFLIN ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES, INC.

*July 15, 2011*

*Humble Independent School District*
*P.O. Box 2000*
*Humble, Texas 77347*

*Attention: Mr. Steve Cooper*
*Director, Safe and Secure Schools*

*Subject: Review of Signed Notarized Affidavits of the General Contractor and All Sub-Contractors Regarding Use of Non-Asbestos Containing Materials For Construction of Timberwood Middle School located at 18450 Timber Forest Drive in Humble, Texas*
*Loflin Environmental Services, Inc. Project Number 0620907*

*Dear Mr. Cooper,*

*Loflin Environmental Services, Inc. (LOFLIN) has completed a review of the signed, notarized affidavits of the General Contractor and all Sub-Contractors that performed construction activities in the building Timberwood Middle School located at 18450 Timber Forest Drive in Humble, Texas. The General Contractor and 55 Sub-Contractors provided a signed affidavit. These affidavits affirm that, to the best of the General Contractor and Sub-Contractor's knowledge, no asbestos containing materials were used in the construction of the middle school facility.*

*Based upon this information, it can be presumed that the school building that makes up Timberwood Middle School, which opened in 1999, is not constructed with asbestos containing materials. The signed affidavits along with plans to perform asbestos inspections prior to any planned renovation or demolition should fulfill the requirements of the EPA's Asbestos Hazard Emergency Response Act (AHERA) and the Texas Department of State Health Services (DSHS) regulations for Timberwood Middle School. It is the recommendation of this state of Texas Licensed Asbestos Consultant that, for any areas of the school facility scheduled to be renovated and/or demolished, an asbestos survey of that specific area be conducted prior to the performance of the renovation or demolition project.*

*Loflin Environmental Services, Inc. appreciates this opportunity to provide these testing services. Should you have any further questions regarding this matter, please do not hesitate to contact us.*

*Sincerely,*
*Loflin Environmental Services, Inc.*

*W. Joseph Loflin, CIH, CSP*
*DSHS Consultant # 10-5140*

2020 Montrose ◆ Houston, Texas 77006 ◆ (713)521-3300 ◆ FAX (713)523-0829

# GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING STUDY

**Proposed Renovations at Timberwood Middle School**
**18450 Timber Forest Drive**
**Humble, Texas**

***Reported to:***
***Humble Independent School District***
***Humble, Texas***

***Prepared by:***
**QC Laboratories, Inc.**
**10810 Northwest Freeway**
**Houston, Texas 77092**
**(713) 695-1133**

**PROJECT NO.: 23G20369**
**January 2024**

QC LABORATORIES, INC.
Engineering and Testing Services

QC LABORATORIES, INC.
Engineering and Testing Services

January 5, 2024

Humble ISD
1703 Wilson Road Bldg. B
Humble, Texas 77396

Attn: Mr. Bryan Applegate
Construction Project Manager

Re: Geotechnical Engineering Study
Proposed Renovations at Timberwood Middle School
18450 Timber Forest Drive - Humble, Texas
QCL No. 23G20369

Dear Mr. Applgate:

We are pleased to submit our revised geotechnical engineering report for the above referenced project. This study was authorized through a Humble ISD's Purchase Order No. 90448547 dated October 12, 2023, and performed in general accordance with scope of services of QCL Proposal No. 40961, dated September 25, 2023.

We appreciate the opportunity to be of service to you on this phase of the project. If we may be of additional assistance, please call us.

Sincerely,
**QC LABORATORIES, INC.**
(Texas Registered Engineering Firm F-3601)

Peng Sia Tang, P.E.
Senior Geotechnical Engineer

1/5/24

Copies Submitted: Addressee - (1) Electronic

# Table of Contents

1.0 INTRODUCTION ..... 1
1.1 Project Description ..... 1
1.2 Scope of Services ..... 1
2.0 INVESTIGATION TECHNIQUES ..... 2
2.1 Field Exploration ..... 2
2.2 Laboratory Tests ..... 3
3.0 GENERAL SITE AND SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS ..... 3
3.1 Site and Subsurface Conditions ..... 3
3.2 Water Level Measurements ..... 4
4.0 FINDINGS AND RECOMMENDATIONS ..... 5
4.1 Geotechnical Considerations ..... 5
4.1.1 Potential Seasonal Soil Movements ..... 5
4.1.2 Fill and Erosion Prone Soils ..... 5
4.1.3 Connection between Existing Building and Proposed Building Addition ..... 6
4.2 Foundation Recommendations for Proposed Building Addition ..... 6
4.2.1 Recommendations for Slab-on-Grade Subgrade Improvements ..... 6
4.2.2 Design of Drilled-and-Underreamed Footings ..... 7
4.2.3 Installation of Drilled-and-Underreamed Footings ..... 8
4.3 Foundation Recommendations for Proposed Concession Stand ..... 11
4.3.1 Recommended Slab-on-Grade Subgrade Improvements ..... 11
4.3.2 Design of Conventionally Reinforced Slab-on-Grade ..... 11
4.3.3 Construction of Slab-On-Grade Foundations ..... 13
4.4 Measures to Improve Long Term Performance of Buildings and Structures ..... 14
4.5 Site Preparation and Earthwork ..... 14
4.6 Wet Weather/Weak Subgrade Considerations ..... 16
4.7 Site Drainage ..... 17
4.8 Vegetation Control ..... 17
4.9 Fire Lane Pavement ..... 17
4.9.1 Preventative Maintenance ..... 20
4.10 Relocated Track and Track Construction ..... 20
5.0 OBSERVATION DURING CONSTRUCTION ..... 20
5.1 Construction Materials Testing ..... 21
5.2 Liability Limitation ..... 21
6.0 GENERAL COMMENTS ..... 21

# Appendix

Vicinity Map ..... Plate 1
Plan of Borings ..... Plate 2
Logs of Borings ..... Plates 3 through 8
Key to Soil Symbols and Terms ..... Plate 9

# 1.0 INTRODUCTION

## 1.1 Project Description

We understand that this project consists of the proposed renovations to the existing Timberwood Middle School campus of the Humble Independent School District (ISD), located at 18450 Timber Forest Drive in Humble, Texas. A vicinity map of the project site is provided on Plate 1 in the Appendix of this report.

The layout of the existing site and the proposed building and parking lots and driveways are shown on Plate 2 in the Appendix. Based on information provided by the, we understand the proposed renovations to the existing Timberwood Middle School campus consists of the following:

- A building addition on the east side of the existing campus building to house a practive gym, a dance hall and a weight room. We anticipate that the proposed building will be a single story wood or steel frame structure, with CMU facade. We estimate that the column loads will be on the order of about 50 to 150 kips, with floor pressures on the order of about 125 psf. Finished floor elevation (FFE) of the proposed structures are anticipate to match those of the existing building.
- Relocation of the existing track further east, including construction of the new concession stand building. We anticipate that understand the reconstruction will include removal of the existing ones and prepare the subgrade with a designed potential vertical movement (PVR) of one inch or less, followed by the placement of a new track system.
- Construction of a fire lane.

## 1.2 Scope of Services

Our scope of services included drilling and sampling soil borings, performing laboratory tests on selected soil samples, and providing a written report that presents the results of our engineering analyses and field and laboratory services. Our report provides discussions and recommendations with respect to:

- Logs of Borings, Plan of Borings, water observations, and laboratory test results.
- The onsite soil properties and groundwater conditions as found at the boring locations.

- Site and subgrade preparation, excavation and fill placement.
- Recommendations for feasible foundation types and bearing depths, foundation design and construction for the proposed building addition.
- Recommendations for the subgrade preparation for the proposed (relocated) track to achieve a PVR movement of about one inch.
- Reinforced concrete pavement design and construction guidelines for the proposed fire lane.

# 2.0 INVESTIGATION TECHNIQUES

## 2.1 Field Exploration

For this study, the subsurface conditions at this site were evaluated by drilling and sampling three soil borings (Borings B-1 and B-2) to a depth of about 20 feet within the proposed building addition area, and one soil borings (B-3) to a depth of about 15 feet below the existing grade at the location of the proposed concession stand area, and three soil borings (B-4 through B-6) to a depth of 5 feet below the existing grade in the proposed relocated track and fire lane areas. The approximate boring locations are shown on the Plan of Borings, Plate 2 in the Appendix of this report.

The soil sample intervals are shown on the boring logs. Soil samples were obtained continuously to a depth of about 12 feet, at 13 to 15 feet, and at 5-foot intervals thereafter to the termination depth of the borings.

Cohesion soil samples were obtained with a 3-inch diameter tube sampler. Each soil sample was extruded from the sampler in the field, examined, and visually classified by an experienced technician. Pocket penetrometer tests were performed in the field on extruded tube samples to serve as a general measure of consistency.

Cohesionless soils and soils for which good quality tube samples could not be obtained were sampled using a split-spoon sampler by means of the Standard Penetration Test (SPT). The SPT test consists of measuring the number of blows required for a 140-pound hammer (falling 30 inches) to drive the split-spoon sampler 12 inches into the subsurface soils, after being seated 6 inches. For this project, a conventional hammer (cat head and rope) was used to perform the Standard Penetration Test.

At the completion of drilling, the boreholes were backfilled with soil cuttings. Following completion of our field services, the samples were transported to our laboratory in Houston. Samples not consumed by testing will be retained in our laboratory for at least 30 days and then discarded unless the Client requests otherwise.

### 2.2 Laboratory Tests

In the laboratory, each sample was observed and classified by an engineer. Laboratory tests were performed on selected soil samples to evaluate the physical properties of the soils. The following laboratory tests were performed for this project:

- Moisture Content (ASTM D2216);
- Atterberg Limits (ASTM D4318 - Method B);
- Unconfined Compression (ASTM D2166); and
- Percent Finer than No. 200 Sieve (ASTM D 1140).

Detailed soil descriptions and results of the tests are presented on the boring logs, Plates 3 through 8 in the Appendix of this report.

## 3.0 GENERAL SITE AND SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS

### 3.1 Site and Subsurface Conditions

The site is the existing Timberwood Middle School campus containing the main campus building, driveways and parking lots and an existing track. The layout of the existing site is shown on Plate 2. The area of the proposed building addition is currently consisting of both grassy and concrete paving areas The area of the proposed (relocated) track is currently an open grassy area. Topographically, the site appears to be relatively flat.

The subsurface soils found at the boring locations generally consist of a surface stratum fill consisting of mostly Lean Clays (CL) with slight to medium plasticity up to a depth of about 2 feet below the existing grade. At Boring B-5 and B-6, Sandy Silty Clays (CL-ML) and Clayey Sands (SC) with limited plasticity are found up to a depth of 2 feet below the existing grade.

Below the surface fill stratum, the soils are highly variable:

- **At Borings B-1 and B-4:** Below the surface fill stratum, mostly Lean Clays (CL) with medium to high plasticity are found to a depth of about 13 feet below the existing grade (a stratum of Silty Sands (SM) are found between depths of about 4 and 6 feet at Boring B-2), followed by a stratum of high plasticity Fat Clay (CH), and then a stratum of Lean Clays (CL) with medium plasticity to the bottom of the borings at 20 feet.

- **At Boring B-3:** Below the surface fill stratum, Silty Sands (SM), Sandy Silty Clays (CL-ML) and Sand with Silt (SP-SM), with limited to no plasticity, are found to the bottom of the boring at 15 feet.

- **At Boring B-4 and B-6:** Below the surface fill stratum, Lean Clays (CL) are found to the bottom of the borings at 5 feet below the existing grade.

- **At Boring B-5:** Below the surface fill stratum, a stratum of Silty Sands (SM) is found to a depth of 4 feet, followed by Lean Clays (CL) to the bottom of the boring at 5 feet below the existing grade.

Some of the subsurface soils up to a depth of about 4 feet below the existing grade may be reworked and compacted soils from previous construction.

More detailed stratigraphic information is presented on the Logs of Borings attached to this report. The boring logs contain our field and laboratory test results, as well as our Field Technician's and Engineer's interpretation of conditions believed to exist between actual samples retrieved. Therefore, these boring logs contain both factual and interpretive information. Lines delineating subsurface strata on the boring logs are intended to group soils having similar engineering properties and characteristics. They should be considered approximate as the actual transition between soil types (strata) may be gradual. A key to the soil symbols and terms used on the boring logs is provided on Plate 9, in Appendix of this report.

## 3.2 Water Level Measurements

The borings for this study were drilled using dry-auger techniques to their termination depth (approximately 6 to 20 feet) in an effort to evaluate groundwater conditions at this site. Free water was only observed at the 20-ft deep Boring B-3 during drilling at a depth of about 13 feet, and was measured at a depth of about 13 feet after 30 minutes. Groundwater was not observed at the remaining borings during or upon completion of drilling.

It should be noted, however, that fluctuations in the groundwater levels or perched water conditions may occur due to variations in rainfall, surface water run-off, and/or nearby construction activities. The actual depth of groundwater should be evaluated prior to construction.

# 4.0 FINDINGS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

The findings and recommendations contained in this report were prepared based on conditions encountered at the borings drilled at this site, our field and laboratory test results, and our experience with geotechnical conditions similar to those at this site. In the event that any changes in the nature, design, or location of the structures are made from those discussed herein, the conclusions and recommendations contained in this report shall not be considered valid until the changes are reviewed and the conclusions are verified in writing by QCL.

## 4.1 Geotechnical Considerations

### 4.1.1 Potential Seasonal Soil Movements

The near surface soils at this site exhibited a low potential for shrink/swell behavior with changes in moisture content. These soils can subject ground-supported structures to significant movement and distress. Potential vertical soil movements have been estimated using Method TEX-124-E in the Texas Department of Transportation (TxDOT) Manual of Testing Procedures, engineering judgment, and our experience. Based on TEX-124-E, we estimate that the subgrade soils at this site exhibit a potential vertical rise (PVR) less than 1 inch.

In general, soil-related potential seasonal movements on the order of about 1 inch are considered acceptable by local structural engineers and do not require soil improvement methods to reduce the magnitude further. It should be noted however, that the use of any slab-on-grade foundation system will experience some vertical movement (about 1 inch) associated with seasonal moisture variations.

### 4.1.2 Fill and Erosion Prone Soils

About 2 feet of the surface soils at the site of the proposed renovations are fill soils consisting of mostly Lean Clays (CL) with slight to medium plasticity, as well as Sandy Silty Clays (CL-ML) and Clayey Sands (SC) with limited plasticity at Boring B-5 and B-6. These fill soils are variable in properties and contain roots and organic matters at the surface, and they are very sandy/silty with limited limited plasticity soils and are susceptible to saturation and erosion when exposed and subjected to surface flow or other hydraulic forces.

### 4.1.3 Connection between Existing Building and Proposed Building Addition

We understand that the proposed building addition will adjoin the existing building. Potential differential movements may occur between the two independent foundation systems of the existing and the adjoining proposed building addition. The magnitude of the differential movement will depend primarily upon the properties and uniformity of the moisture content of the near-surface soils, the quality of subgrade preparation and foundation construction of the two adjoining buildings, and the performance of the foundation system of the existing and proposed building during their service lives. Therefore, all structural connections between the proposed building addition and the adjoining existing building should be designed such that they can tolerate and accommodate potential differential movements between the foundation systems.

Special care should be exercised when conducting construction excavation next to the existing building. The existing building where excavation is carried out should be properly shored or underpinned where necessary; the Structural Engineer should be consulted on proper shoring or underpinning, as well as bracing of superstructures, as necessary.

## 4.2 Foundation Recommendations for Proposed Building Addition

Based on information from Borings B-1 and B-2, the subsurface soils in the area of the proposed building addition consist of a 2 feet stratum of fill consisting of Sandy Lean Clays (CL) with low plasticity, with sand pockets and partings, and roots and organic matters, and underlain by Lean Clays (CL) with local Fat Clay (CH) stratum to the bottom of the 20-ft deep borings.

### 4.2.1 Recommendations for Slab-on-Grade Subgrade Improvements

The near surface soils in the proposed building addition are fill soils containing roots and organic matters, possess low potential for shrink-swell behavior but are susceptible to saturation and erosion.

To improve the foundation soils supporting the slab-on-grade of the proposed building addition, we recommend the following subgrade improvements to provide a competent and uniform foundation bearing stratum that is more likely to retain stability corresponding to moisture variations and more erosion resistant during its service life:

1. Clear and strip the surface soils to remove topsoil and other deleterious material within the building pad for the proposed building addition, as recommended in the **Section 4.5** of this report.

2. Within the proposed building pad area, excavate the cleared and stripped subgrade soils to a depth of at least 24 inches below the existing grade.

3. Inspect the excavated and exposed subgrade for deleterious and/or weak material. Such material should be removed and replaced with compacted clean and similar onsite soils, as recommended in **Section 4.5**.

4. Proofroll the inspected subgrade as recommended in **Section 4.5**. Remove any soft/wet/weak soils identified during the proofrolling.

5. Place and compact select fill on the subgrade that passed the proofroll criteria, to the design top of subgrade elevation. The select fill should meet the material and placement and compaction criteria as recommended in **Section 4.5**.

6. The select fill pad should extend horizontally a minimum distance of 5 feet beyond the exterior sides of the proposed building addition and be sloped to provide positive drainage away from the structure.

7. All grade adjustments beneath the building should be made with select fill.

### 4.2.2 Design of Drilled-and-Underreamed Footings

Based on the subsurface soils from Borings B-1 and B-2, we recommend that the proposed building addition be supported on a foundation system consisting of drilled-and-underreamed footings. Our recommendations for this type of foundation system are provided below.

| Parameter | Recommendation | Comment |
|---|---|---|
| Bearing depth, feet | 12 feet | Below the existing grade. |
| Bearing material | Stiff to very stiff Lean Clays (CL) | |
| Net allowable bearing pressure, $q_{all}$ | | |
| Dead load plus sustained live load | 3,250 psf | Includes a factor of safety (F.S.) of 3 |
| Total Load | 4,875 psf | Includes a F.S. of 2 |
| Estimated uplift pressure | 500 psf (average value for 0’ to 8’) | At soil-shaft interface, due to post-construction heave of the clay soils |

| Parameter | Recommendation | Comment |
|---|---|---|
| Uplift resistance | Foundation weight (150 pcf) and Soil weight (120 pcf) | Resisted by the dead weight of the footings and supported structure plus the weight of a soil wedge (1 vertical to 1 horizontal) above the footing base |
| Allowable Passive Pressure | [500 + 50*(Z-3)] psf<br>Note: Z is the depth being considered, below the ground surface | Includes F.S. of 2<br>The upper 3 feet should be neglected due to surface effects |
| Spacing | At least two underream diameters of the larger of two footings | Measured center-to-center |
| Maximum Underream to Shaft Diameter Ratio | 3:1<br>(reduce to 2.5:1 or 2:1 if cave-in occurs during belling) | --- |
| Reinforcement for Potential Expansion | > 1.0% or per the latest applicable foundation design code | Should extend to the full depth of the footings |

Settlement of the footings will occur due to elastic deformation and some consolidation in the foundation soils. We anticipate that individual footings designed and constructed in accordance with the recommendations provided in this report will settle about one inch or less.

The information provided in this paragraph applies to two adjacent shafts connected to the same structural grade beam system only (in clay soils, and with no underlying weaker soils), if the shaft group under consideration is more than two shafts, it should be evaluated on a case-by-case basis. The minimum center-to-center spacing between adjacent footings should be at least three times the larger underream diameter ($D_{max}$) to develop the full recommended bearing pressure. If the minimum center-to-center spacing of 3 times $D_{max}$ cannot be maintained, the allowable bearing capacity values provided above should be reduced by 20 percent for a center-to-center spacing between 1½ to 2 times $D_{max}$, and reduced by 15 percent when center-to-center spacing is between 2 and 3 $D_{max}$. A center-to-center spacing less than 1½ times $D_{max}$ is not recommended.

### 4.2.3 Installation of Drilled-and-Underreamed Footings

Installation considerations for drilled-and-underreamed footings include provisions for subsurface water conditions, reinforcing steel and concrete placement, and monitoring. Each of these topics is discussed in the following paragraphs.

**Groundwater Conditions:** As mentioned previously, groundwater was not observed at locations of Borings B-1 and B-2 at or above the recommended bearing depth of 12 feet below the existing grade (grade existing at the time of our field program). Thus, groundwater is not anticipated during construction based on information from our field investigation. However, depending on climatic conditions, groundwater may vary from the levels observed during our field investigation, or perched water conditions may occur after heavy rainfall within areas with a significant amount of pockets/seams/layers of granular material. Free water, if encountered, should not be allowed to accumulate at the bottom of the footings. To reduce the potential for water accumulation and cave-in, concrete and steel should be placed in a timely manner. The bottom of the footings should be evaluated prior to concrete placement.

**Foundation Excavation Stability:** The drilled shaft excavations within the predominantly clay soils will likely be stable. However, the sand stratum that exists between depths of about 4 and 6 feet at Boring B-2, or if the clay soils within the foundation bell zone contain a significant amounts of pockets/seams/layers of sands/silts/calcareous nodules/soils with limited cohesion, may cave-in locally during drilled pier excavation and belling.

If caving occurs during foundation installation, the following mitigating measures are recommended:

1) If caving occurs along the shaft portion of the footing due to presence granular soils with limited to no cohesion (especially at the sand stratum found between depths of about 4 and 6 feet at Boring B-2), a temporary steel casing may be used to stabilize the excavation sidewalls.

2) If caving occurs during belling, reduce the underream-to-shaft diameter ratio to 2.5 or 2:1.

3) If caving that occurs in the underream portion of the footings cannot be controlled by Items (1) and (2) above, drilled straight shafts, with use of a temporary casing (if needed) should be installed.

**Reinforcing and Concrete Placement:** Reinforcing steel should be clean and free of any bond-inhibiting coating or mud. Reinforcing steel should be properly positioned and supported to ensure the design cover around the reinforcing steel is achieved.

As mentioned previously, concrete should be placed in footing excavations as soon as practical after completion of drilling to reduce the potential for groundwater seepage and caving soils. Drilled-and-underreamed footings should not be allowed to remain open overnight. If excavation and concrete placement cannot be completed the same day, the excavation for the footing should be backfilled and re-excavated when excavation and concrete placement can be completed on the same day.

Concrete should conform to applicable ACI standards. In general, the concrete slump should be between 6 to 8 inches. Concrete should be placed with a tremie so that the concrete is directed toward the bottom of the foundation excavation. The concrete should not be allowed to ricochet off the walls of the foundation excavation or off the reinforcing steel. Footing design and construction should comply with applicable ACI Standards.

**Monitoring:** Depth to competent bearing soils are based on conditions encountered only at the boring locations; however, significant variations can occur over short horizontal distances. Prior to concrete placement, each footing should be inspected to include the following:

(1) The footings bear within the proper bearing strata at the depth recommended in this report.

(2) Footing shafts are constructed to the proper dimensions and steel reinforcements are placed as shown on the structural drawings.

(3) The underreamed portion of the footing is concentric with the shaft and the shaft has been drilled plumb and within the specified tolerance.

(4) Excessive cutting, build up of cuttings, and any other soft compressible materials have been removed from the bottom of the excavations.

An experienced QCL soil technician should be present during foundation installation to verify that the proper bearing stratum has been reached, the footing dimensions are as designed, and that the excavations are clean and dry before placing reinforcing steel and concrete.

## 4.3 Foundation Recommendations for Proposed Concession Stand

Based on information from Boring B-3, the near surface soils found in the area of the proposed concession stand consist of a surface layer of fill consisting of Lean Clays (CL) with roots and organic matters, underlain by sands to the bottom of the boring at 15 feet below the existing grade.

Considering the presence of surface fill material and the predominantly sandy subsurface soils, we recommend that the proposed concession stand building be supported on a conventionally reinforced and monolithically poured concrete slab-on-grade foundation on a stratum of engineered building pad.

### 4.3.1 Recommended Slab-on-Grade Subgrade Improvements

The same slab-on-grade subgrade improvements recommended in **Section 4.2.1** may be carried out.

### 4.3.2 Design of Conventionally Reinforced Slab-on-Grade

Design recommendations for a conventionally reinforced slab-on-grade are recommended in this section. The proposed slab-on-grade subgrade improvements are recommended in **Section 4.3.1.**

| **SLAB-ON-GRADE DESIGN PARAMETERS** | |
|---|---|
| Recommended Building Pad Improvements: | At least 24 inches<br>(See recommended foundation soil improvement in **Section 4.3.1** of this report) |
| Estimated PVR: | Less than one inch |
| Climatic Rating: | 25 |
| Design Plasticity Index: | 10 |
| Soil Support Index: | 1.0 |
| Minimum Perimeter Grade Beam Embedment Depth: | **For Building Supported on Slab-on-Grade Foundation:**<br>Exterior Grade Beams: Minimum 30 inches below final exterior ground elevation<br>Interior Grade Beams: Minimum 24 inches below finished floor elevation (FFE) |
| Net Allowable Bearing Capacity for Slab-on-Grade Grade Beams: | 1,000 psf (Dead Load Plus Sustained Live Load)<br>1,500 psf (Total Load, inclusive of dead and live load including wind load) |
| Recommended Subgrade Modulus (k) for Finite Element Method (FEM) Analyses | $K = K1\ [(1+B/L)] / 1.5$<br>where, |

| SLAB-ON-GRADE DESIGN PARAMETERS | |
|---|---|
| | K is the subgrade reaction to be used for the slab/mat foundation being analyzed, lbs/in3<br>$K_1$ is the estimated subgrade modulus of the subgrade soils using plate load test, use 50 lbs/in$^3$<br>B is the width of the slab/mat foundation, ft<br>L is the length of the slab/mat foundation, ft |
| Coefficient of Sliding at the Bottom of Slab | 0.25<br>[A minimum factor of safety of 1.5 against sliding is recommended; limit allowable frictional resistance to 500 psf] |

The parameters provided for the conventionally reinforced slab-on-grade are based on criteria published by the Building Research Advisory Board (B.R.A.B.). The B.R.A.B. method is essentially an empirical design technique and the parameters provided are based on our interpretation of the project soil boring and criteria published in the B.R.A.B. design manual.

The slab-on-grade foundation system should be designed to tolerate the anticipated soil movement and provide satisfactory support to the proposed building. The foundations should have adequate exterior and interior grade beams to provide sufficient rigidity to the foundation system such that the slab deflections that result are considered tolerable to the supported building. Grade beams may be thickened and widened at column locations to serve as spread footings at areas of concentrated loadings.

Post construction settlements should be one inch or less, provided that the subgrade soils are properly prepared and that select fill is properly placed and compacted in accordance with the recommendations contained in this report. Differential settlements typically range between about ½ of the total settlements, depending on the structural rigidity of the grade beam system. Settlement response of the foundation system is expected to be influenced greatly by the quality of construction and fill placement than by soil-structure interaction.

### 4.3.3 Construction of Slab-On-Grade Foundations

After the recommended slab-on-grade subgrade preparation and improvements, the slab-on-grade foundation should be neatly excavated to the designed dimensions and depth. Excavations should be accomplished with a smooth-mouth bucket. If a toothed bucket is used, excavation with this bucket should be stopped 6 inches above the foundation depth and the excavation completed with a smooth-mouthed bucket or by hand labor.

Steel should be placed and the foundation concreted the same day of excavation. Sloughed soils and other debris in the bottom of the excavation should be removed prior to steel placement.

**Water Conditions:** Based on the subsurface soil conditions observed at this site, groundwater seepage into the foundation excavations is not anticipated. If seepage or surface water runoff should enter the excavations, the water should be pumped out prior to concreting. A series of surface ditches and sumps and pumps can be used for this purpose.

**Reinforcing Steel:** Reinforcing steel should be clean and free of any bond-inhibiting coating or mud. Reinforcing steel should be properly positioned and supported to assure the design cover around the reinforcing steel is achieved.

**Construction Monitoring:** Depth of footing to competent bearing soils is based on soil conditions encountered at the locations of the borings; however, significant variations can occur across horizontal distances across the borings. Prior to placement of concrete, the footings should be observed to determine that:

- The footing bears in the proper bearing strata at the depth recommended in this report.
- The footing is constructed to the proper dimensions and steel reinforcements are placed as shown on the structural drawings.
- Excessive cutting, build up of cuttings, and any other soft compressible materials have been removed from the bottom of the excavations.

An experienced QC Laboratories, Inc. soil technician should be present during foundation installation to verify that the proper bearing stratum has been reached, the footing dimensions are properly excavated, and that the excavation is clean and dry before reinforcing and concrete placement.

## 4.4 Measures to Improve Long Term Performance of Buildings and Structures

**Mitigative Measures:** We recommend that the following additional mitigative measures be implemented in the project design to promote foundation soils, where feasible:

(1) Discharge roof downspouts onto protected surface that lead to inlets and storm sewers.

(2) Keep vegetation at least 10-feet from the slab-on-grade.

(3) Keep trees a "drip line" distance away from the slab-on-grade.

(4) Seal surface of utility trenches next to building.

(5) Place flatwork next to the building.

(6) Keep irrigation systems at least 5-feet away from the face of the building exterior.

(7) Maintain a positive slope away from the building.

**Long-Term Maintenance**: Following the completion of the building addition slab, the building owner/operator must maintain the grounds in and around the buildings as recommended in this report. Vegetation type and location will be critical to the proper slab performance and the recommendations in this report should be followed. Maintaining uniformity of the foundation soil moisture below and near the slab will be critical to a good foundation performance over the long term. Positive slopes, a good surface and subsurface drain system, and vegetation should be provided and maintained. Pavement and sidewalk joints must all be maintained so that the joint material is pliable and helps shed water. Decorative drainage material or flower beds that are bordered in such way as to obstruct the flow of water to/from from the floor slabs should not be installed without a discussion with the Geotechnical Engineer and a full understanding by the owner/operator of the effects of such features.

We recommend that the owner and facility operator be made aware of the long-term maintenance recommendations in this report. If they should have any questions, they should contact the Geotechnical Engineer.

## 4.5 Site Preparation and Earthwork

In general, site preparation should consist of, where needed, removing trees, sawcutting and removing concrete existing pavements and flatwork, and stripping vegetation and any other

debris or weak or unsuitable material. Tree roots, if present, should be grubbed to full depth and backfilled with properly placed and compacted on-site soils or select fill.

- Existing concrete slabs and foundations/footings, paving and base material, that are designated to be removed, should be completely removed. Existing concrete structures buried to deeper depths (that are no longer needed in the current design), that are not in conflict with the new construction, should be broken off at an elevation of approximately 2 feet below the bottom of the proposed grade beams. Completely removing deeply buried existing structures will significantly disturb the foundation soils and should be avoided if possible.

- All utilities and associated bedding material that are designated to be abandoned should be completely removed from within the proposed construction area. As an alternative to complete removal, the existing utilities may be pressure grouted and left in place if they do not interfere with the planned development.

- If excavations for removal of the existing structures and utilities is located right next to existing structures, or exceed a depth of 5 feet, shoring will be required; onsite soils should be classified as OSHA Soil Type "C".

- Portions of the existing building adjoining the proposed building addition may be removed to facilitate the proposed building addition construction. If conducted, the removal process and the necessary bracing and shoring should be carried out as instructed by the Project Structural Engineer.

After the clearing and grubbing, the subgrade should be excavated to the design subgrade elevation. Prior to placement of any fill and before paving subgrade stabilization, the exposed subgrade should be proof-rolled with a 20-ton pneumatic roller or equivalent equipment to detect soft or weak areas. Weak areas detected as well as zones containing organics should be removed and replaced with soils exhibiting similar classification, moisture content, and density as the adjacent in-situ soils. Wet/weak soils observed should be addressed as outlined in **Section 4.6** of this report.

Subsequent to proofrolling, the exposed subgrade within the construction areas should be evaluated for moisture and density. The subgrade should be within 3 percent of the optimum moisture content, and have an in-place dry density of at least 95 percent standard proctor (ASTM D 698). If the moisture or density does not meet the above criteria, the subgrade should be scarified to a minimum depth of 8 inches; moisture adjusted to within 3 percent of the

optimum moisture content and compacted to at least 95 percent standard proctor (ASTM D 698).

Select fill to be placed in structural areas should consist of clean lean clay and sandy lean clay soils with a Liquid Limit less than 40 and a Plasticity Index (PI) between 12 and 20. Select fill should be placed in loose lifts of approximately eight-inches in thickness and compacted to a minimum of 95 percent standard proctor density (ASTM D 698) at moisture contents within 3 percent of the optimum moisture content.

Samples of the subgrade, select fill, and stabilized materials should be obtained prior to the compaction operations for laboratory moisture/density testing (Proctor tests). The tests will then provide a basis for evaluating the in-place density requirements during compaction operations. A qualified soil technician should perform sufficient in-place density tests during the filling operations to verify that proper levels of compaction are being attained.

## 4.6 Wet Weather/Weak Subgrade Considerations

During wet weather, the surface soils may become wet and/or weak. This may result in difficult ground conditions for construction traffic and pumping action may occur during compaction, thus affecting the overall construction schedule and associated costs. Such weather and ground conditions will require special care. We recommend that the project team (including the Contractor) should have a contingency plan in-place to mitigate the adverse effects of the above-mentioned conditions, should the grounds become wet/weak during construction. The following mitigative measures should be implemented:

- Promote good site drainage as discussed in **Section 4.7** to dry the site and the surface soils. Good site drainage is of prime importance for a site to pass the proofrolling criteria and to provide a firm and stable platform to support the construction activities and traffic.
- Organic matters or other deleterious material should be removed and replaced with compacted similar and clean onsite material or select fill.
- Soft/loose soils that are too wet should be scarified to sufficient depth to dry the soils to a moisture content that allows for successful compaction, and recompacted to pass proofrolling and the subsequent compaction.
- Alternatively, soft/weak/wet soils may be removed and replaced with clean similar onsite soils at moisture contents that can be successfully compacted to pass the proofrolling and the subsequent compaction.

- Alternatively, chemical treatment of the onsite soils with lime and fly ash can be carried out to aid in drying and stability/compaction of the subgrade soils and to provide a working surface.

Once the surface/near surface water have been controlled and the surface soils have been adequately dried or treated, the surface soils should be compacted as recommended in **Section 4.5**. However, even when properly placed and compacted, these soils will not have enough shear strength to hold up to construction traffic or weathering when exposed at the ground surface. As such, these soils would require continual repair and maintenance until the concrete slabs and/or pavements could be constructed.

## 4.7 Site Drainage

We recommend that site drainage be well developed. As mentioned previously, the Contractor should grade the site in such a way that the ground surface is well drained to maintain a dry site. During site preparation, surface swales or ditches should be dug to drain surface/near surface water, and to dry the surface soils to moisture contents that can be successfully compacted to a density that can pass proofrolling, and to facilitate construction traffic.

Surface water should be directed away from the building foundations by using a minimum slope of 5% within 10 feet of foundation. No ponding of surface water should be allowed near the structures.

## 4.8 Vegetation Control

We recommend that trees be planted no closer than about 20 feet from the building or approximately one-half of a canopy diameter of a mature tree. This will reduce possible foundation distress caused by the tree root system.

## 4.9 Fire Lane Pavement

Based on information from Borings B-5 and B-6, we anticipate the proposed fire lane subgrade will consist of Sandy Silty Clays (CL-ML) and Clayey Sands (SC) with slight to low plasticity. These soils will require chemical stabilization to allow for long-term pavement performance. Chemical stabilization will increase the supporting value of the subgrade and decrease the effect of moisture on subgrade soils. We recommend that the top 8 inches of the finished subgrade soils directly beneath the pavement be chemically stabilized.

The on-site soils consisting of low plasticity silty clays and low to medium plasticity clay soils should be cleared and grubbed, and the subgrade inspected for unsuitable and deleterious material, proofrolled and prepared and compacted as recommended in **Section 4.5** of this report.

The top 8 inches of the compacted subgrade should then be chemically stabilized using lime and fly ash in accordance with TxDOT 2014 Standard Specifications Item 265. For estimating purposes, we recommend 3 percent lime and 7 percent fly ash by dry weight. These percentages are typically equivalent to about 21 pounds of lime and 48 pounds of fly ash, per square yard of 8-inch treated depth, utilizing a dry unit weight of 115 pcf.

The optimum percentage of lime and fly ash should be determined after sampling the rough-graded site and running laboratory tests. The pulverization, mixing, and curing of the treated subgrade is critical to proper stabilization. The subgrade should be compacted to a minimum of 95 percent of the Standard Proctor (ASTM D 698) at a moisture content between optimum and 3 percent of optimum. We recommend that chemical stabilization of the subgrade be extended 2 feet outside the limits of the pavement.

Traffic information was not available for the design of the fire lane pavement at this site. However, we assume traffic will consist primarily of lightly-loaded passenger vehicles, with some fire truck and multi-axle delivery trucks. The assumptions utilized in our pavement thickness analysis are summarized in the table below. <u>If the actual traffic conditions are different from that assumed, the client should contact QCL so that we can revise and provide appropriate recommendations.</u>

| **Traffic Assumptions** | |
|---|---|
| **Proposed Fire Lane** | Medium Duty - Maximum 300 loaded two axle trucks or lightly loaded larger vehicles per day. No more than 30 heavily loaded trucks with more than three axles per day. (EAL = 21 to 75) |
| EAL = Equivalent daily 18-kip single-axle load. | |

Outlined in the table below are the recommended concrete pavement thickness for the proposed fire lane pavement planned for this site based on the traffic assumptions above.

| **Component** | **Recommended Fire Lane Fire Lane Concrete Pavement Section** |
|---|---|
| Reinforced Concrete | 7” |
| Stabilized Subgrade | 8” |

It is estimated that the service life for a properly constructed and maintained pavement will be on the order of about 20 years. Related civil design factors such as subgrade drainage, shoulder support, cross-sectional configurations, and surface elevations must be included in the preparation of the construction drawings/specifications. These pavements will require normal periodic maintenance.

Outlined below are the material requirements for the paving layers.

(1) **Concrete:** The materials and properties of concrete shall meet the applicable requirements in the ACI Manual of Concrete Practice. The concrete shall have a minimum compressive strength of 3,500 psi.

(2) **Reinforcing Steel:**

| Pavement Thickness (inches) | Bar Size | Bar Spacing (On-center and in both directions) |
|---|---|---|
| 7 | #4 | 18 |

(3) **Control (Contraction) Joint Spacing:**

| Pavement Thickness (inches) | Maximum Spacing (feet) |
|---|---|
| 7 | 15 |

(4) **Expansion Joint Spacing:** Regularly spaced expansion joints may be deleted from concrete pavements per ACI. However, expansion or isolation joints should be provided where the pavements abut existing structures, and at regular intervals based on the pavement designer's objectives. Therefore, the installation of expansion joints is optional and should be evaluated by the design team.

(5) **Dowels at Expansion Joints:**

| Pavement Thickness (inches) | Diameter (inches) | Length (inches) | Embedment (inches) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 7 | 7/8 | 14 | 6 |
| Note: Dowels should be spaced on 12-inch centers. | | | |

### 4.9.1 Preventative Maintenance

The long-term performance of the pavement will be dependent upon maintaining subgrade moisture levels and preventative maintenance. We recommend that the following items be implemented to help promote long-term pavement performance:

## 4.10 Relocated Track and Track Construction

The existing track is proposed to be relocated to just east of its current location. The existing site where the relocated track would be is currently an open grassy field similar to the existing track. Thus, the field of the relocated track will not require addition work.

Based on information from Borings B-3 and B-4, we anticipate the proposed subgrade soils below the relocated track will consist of Sandy Lean Clays (CL) with low to medium plasticity. These soils will require chemical stabilization to allow for long-term pavement performance. Chemical stabilization will increase the supporting value of the subgrade and decrease the effect of moisture on subgrade soils. We recommend that the top 6 inches of the finished subgrade soils directly beneath the pavement be chemically stabilized.

For the construction of the synthetic track for the relocated track, we recommend that the on-site subgrade soils consisting of low to medium plasticity clays should be cleared and grubbed, and the subgrade inspected for unsuitable and deleterious material, proofrolled and prepared and compacted as recommended in **Section 4.5** of this report.

The top 6 inches of the compacted subgrade should then be chemically stabilized using lime and fly ash in accordance with TxDOT 2014 Standard Specifications Item 265. For estimating purposes, we recommend 3 percent lime and 7 percent fly ash by dry weight. These percentages are typically equivalent to about 16 pounds of lime and 36 pounds of fly ash, per square yard of 7-inch treated depth, utilizing a dry unit weight of 115 pcf.

The systhetic track components should then be constructed on top of the stabilized subgrade, per the design and manufacturer's construction specifications.

# 5.0 OBSERVATION DURING CONSTRUCTION

The recommendations are based on the subsoil data in the field exploration and laboratory testing. Due to the geological deposition of the soils in the area, variances may occur between boring locations. Therefore, the excavations should be observed under the supervision of a QCL

geotechnical engineer to confirm that the bearing soils are similar to those observed during our field exploration and that the footing areas have been properly prepared.

The QCL geotechnical engineer should be immediately notified should any subsoil conditions be uncovered that will alter the conclusions and recommendations contained in this report. Further investigation and supplemental recommendations may be required if such a condition is encountered.

### 5.1 Construction Materials Testing

The recommendations provided in this geotechnical report were based on the assumption that QCL would be employed to monitor the installation of the building foundations and pavements and to provide Construction Material Testing (CMT) services during construction. It may be occasionally required that QCL provide addendums to the original geotechnical recommendations based on the CMT observations or CMT test results which uncover site conditions that were not known when the geotechnical report as originally issued. New or changed site information, which is not properly communicated to the Geotechnical Engineer of Record, may result in a foundation that does not perform as originally intended.

### 5.2 Liability Limitation

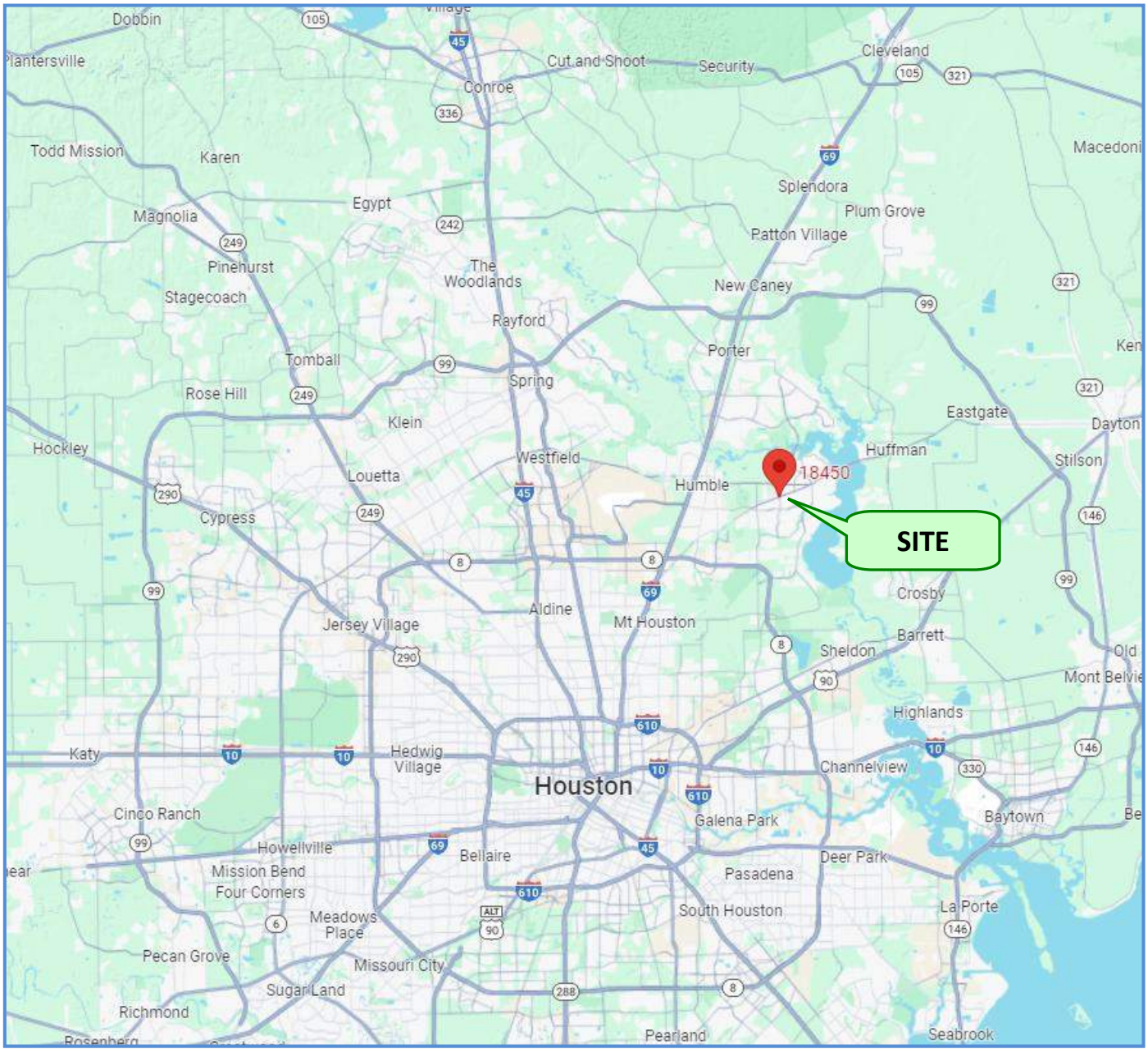
QC Laboratories, Inc. cannot assume responsibility or liability for recommendations provided in this report if the construction phase inspection and testing recommended in this report are performed by another party.

## 6.0 GENERAL COMMENTS

The information provided in this report is based on data obtained from the borings drilled at this site and project information provided to us. Regardless of the thoroughness of a Geotechnical exploration, there is always a possibility that conditions away from the borings will be different from those at the specific boring locations. The nature and extent of such variations may not become evident unless further exploration is performed or until during or after construction. If conditions vary, we should be immediately notified so that further evaluation and supplemental information can be provided.

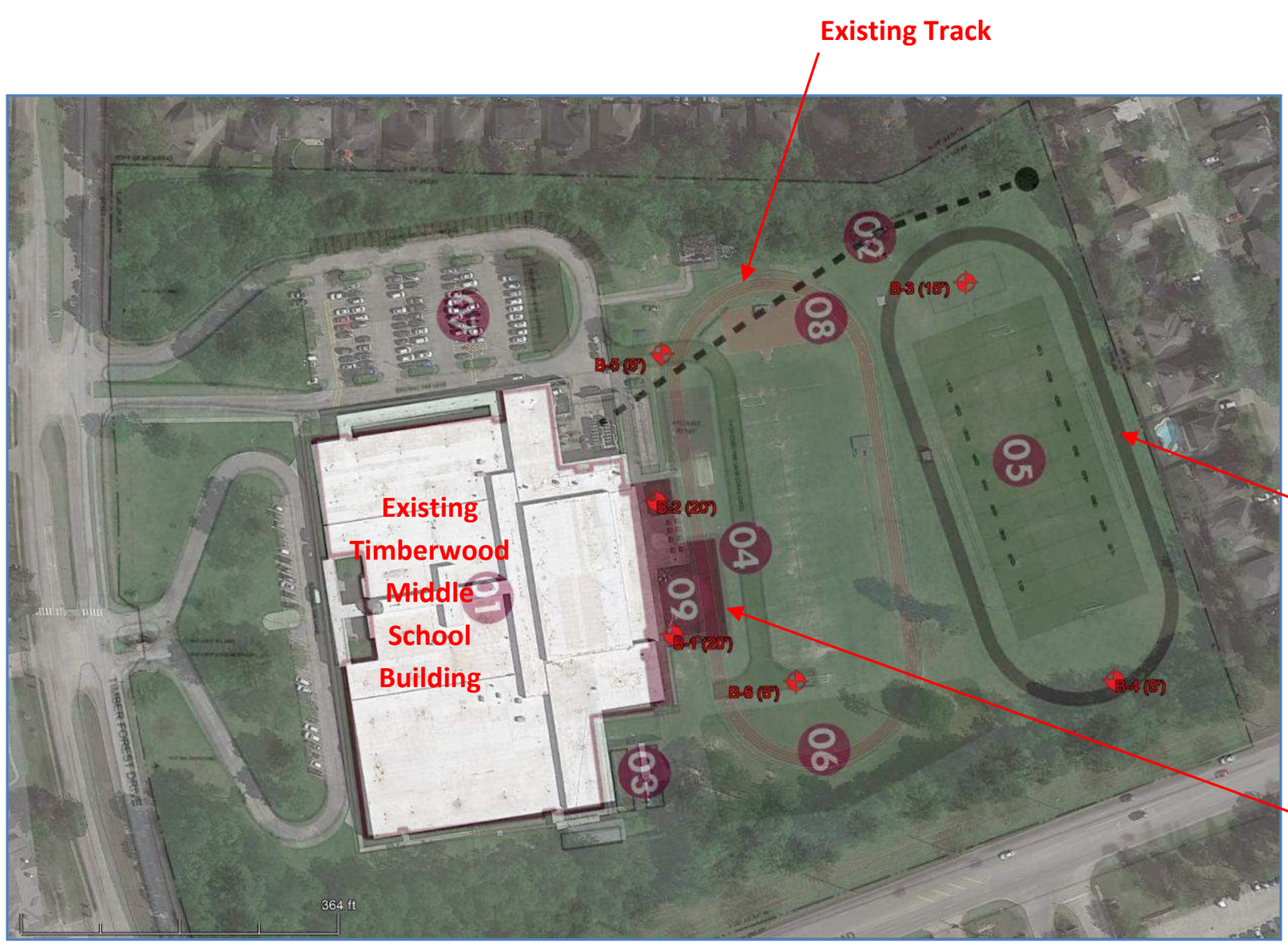
This report has been prepared for the exclusive use of our client for specific application to the project discussed and has been prepared in accordance with generally accepted geotechnical engineering practices. No warranties (either express or implied) are intended or made.

# APPENDIX




# VICINITY MAP

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | **Proposed Renovations at Timberwood Middle School**<br>**18450 Timber Forest Drive**<br>**Humble, Texas** | **QCL PROJECT NO.**<br>**23G20369**<br><br>**Plate 1** |




## PLAN OF BORINGS

Proposed Renovations at Timberwood Middle School
18450 Timber Forest Drive
Humble, Texas

QCL PROJECT NO.
23G20369

Plate 2

# LOG OF BORING NO. **B-1**



**QC LABORATORIES, INC.**
Geotechnical & Materials Engineers

PROJECT: Proposed Renovations at Timberwood Middle School
18450 Timber Forest Drive
Humble, Texas

QCL NO.: 23G20369 DATE DRILLED: 12-15-23

| ELEVATION, feet | DEPTH, feet | SYMBOL | DESCRIPTION | SAMPLES | HAND PENETROMETER (tsf) | SPT N-VALUE (bpf) | DRY UNIT WEIGHT (pcf) | NATURAL MOISTURE CONTENT (%) | ATTERBERG LIMITS (%) LIQUID LIMIT | PLASTIC LIMIT | PLASTICITY INDEX | PERCENT PASSING NO. 200 SIEVE | UNCONFINED COMPRESSION (tsf) | STRAIN AT FAILURE (%) | CONFINING PRESSURE (psi) | OTHER TESTS |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | SURFACE ELEVATION: Existing Grade | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 0–1 | | **FILL: SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL)** firm, dark gray, with sand partings and pockets -with roots and organic matters at surface | | 1.0 | | | 14 | 22 | 13 | 9 | 64 | | | | |
| | 2–3 | | **SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL)** very stiff, gray and tan | | 4.5 | | | 9 | | | | | | | | |
| | 4–5 | | -gray with sand pockets below 4' | | 4.5 | | | 13 | 25 | 14 | 11 | | | | | |
| | 6–7 | | **LEAN CLAY w/ SAND (CL)** stiff to very stiff, tan and light gray, with sand pockets and partings | | 4.0 | | 109 | 15 | | | | 84 | 1.2 | 5 | 0 | |
| | 8–9 | | | | 4.5 | | 116 | 14 | 34 | 10 | 24 | | 1.5 | 5 | 0 | |
| | 10–11 | | | | 4.0 | | 115 | 14 | | | | 79 | 1.3 | 8 | 0 | |
| | 12–13 | | **FAT CLAY w/ SAND (CH)** stiff, tan and light gray | | 2.0 | | 108 | 19 | | | | | 1.8 | 10 | 0 | |
| | 14–15 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 16–17 | | **LEAN CLAY w/ SAND (CL)** firm, light gray | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 18–19 | | | | 1.0 | | 106 | 21 | 28 | 17 | 11 | 73 | 0.4 | 3 | 0 | |
| | 20 | | Boring Terminated at 20 feet | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

**WATER OBSERVATIONS:** No free water observed during dry drilling

**DRILLING METHOD:** Dry augered to 20 feet.

# LOG OF BORING NO. **B-2**



**QC LABORATORIES, INC.**
Geotechnical & Materials Engineers

PROJECT: Proposed Renovations at Timberwood Middle School
18450 Timber Forest Drive
Humble, Texas

QCL NO.: 23G20369 DATE DRILLED: 12-15-23

| ELEVATION, feet | DEPTH, feet | SYMBOL | DESCRIPTION | SAMPLES | HAND PENETROMETER (tsf) | SPT N-VALUE (bpf) | DRY UNIT WEIGHT (pcf) | NATURAL MOISTURE CONTENT (%) | ATTERBERG LIMITS (%) LIQUID LIMIT | PLASTIC LIMIT | PLASTICITY INDEX | PERCENT PASSING NO. 200 SIEVE | UNCONFINED COMPRESSION (tsf) | STRAIN AT FAILURE (%) | CONFINING PRESSURE (psi) | OTHER TESTS |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | SURFACE ELEVATION: Existing Grade | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 0 | | **FILL: SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL)** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | | stiff, gray. with sand layers and pockets<br>-with roots and organic matters at surface | | 2.0 | | | 13 | 22 | 13 | 9 | | | | | |
| | 2 | | **SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL)** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 3 | | very stiff, gray and tan | | 3.0 | | | 16 | 22 | 14 | 8 | 69 | | | | |
| | 4 | | **SILTY SAND (SM)** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 5 | | gray and tan | | 4.5 | | 115 | 14 | 19 | 16 | 3 | | 0.6 | 4 | 0 | |
| | 6 | | **LEAN CLAY w/ SAND (CL)** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 7 | | very stiff, gray and tan | | 4.0 | | | 15 | | | | 73 | | | | |
| | 8 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 9 | | | | 3.5 | | 115 | 15 | 35 | 10 | 25 | | 2.3 | 13 | 0 | |
| | 10 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 11 | | -light gray, tan with reddish brown below 10' | | 4.0 | | | 14 | | | | | | | | |
| | 12 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 13 | | **FAT CLAY w/ SAND (CH)** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 14 | | stiff, light tan and light gray | | 2.0 | | 112 | 17 | 68 | 13 | 55 | 85 | 1.6 | 5 | 0 | |
| | 15 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 16 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 17 | | **LEAN CLAY (CL)** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 18 | | firm, light gray | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 19 | | | | 2.0/1.0 | | 112 | 15 | | | | | 0.8 | 6 | 0 | |
| | 20 | | Boring Terminated at 20 feet | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

**WATER OBSERVATIONS:** No free water observed during dry drilling

**DRILLING METHOD:** Dry augered to 20 feet.

# LOG OF BORING NO. **B-3**



**QC LABORATORIES, INC.**
Geotechnical & Materials Engineers

PROJECT: Proposed Renovations at Timberwood Middle School
18450 Timber Forest Drive
Humble, Texas

QCL NO.: 23G20369 DATE DRILLED: 12-15-23

| ELEVATION, feet | DEPTH, feet | SYMBOL | DESCRIPTION | SAMPLES | HAND PENETROMETER (tsf) | SPT N-VALUE (bpf) | DRY UNIT WEIGHT (pcf) | NATURAL MOISTURE CONTENT (%) | ATTERBERG LIMITS (%) LIQUID LIMIT | PLASTIC LIMIT | PLASTICITY INDEX | PERCENT PASSING NO. 200 SIEVE | UNCONFINED COMPRESSION (tsf) | STRAIN AT FAILURE (%) | CONFINING PRESSURE (psi) | OTHER TESTS |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | SURFACE ELEVATION: Existing Grade | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 0 | | **FILL: LEAN CLAY w/ SAND (CL)** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | | very stiff, gray, with roots and organic matters | | 3.0 | | | 13 | 24 | 14 | 10 | 72 | | | | |
| | 2 | | **SILTY SAND (SM)** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 3 | | gray and tan, with lean clay seams | | 1.0 | | | 13 | | | | | | | | |
| | 4 | | **SANDY SILTY CLAY (CL-ML)** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 5 | | stiff, light gray and light tan<br>-with sand pockets at 4' to 6' | | 2.0 | | | 11 | 23 | 16 | 7 | | | | | |
| | 6 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 7 | | -tan and light gray below 6' | | 2.0 | | | 17 | | | | 69 | | | | |
| | 8 | | **SAND w/ SILT (SP-SM)** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 9 | | medium dense, tan | | 1.0 | | 119 | 15 | NP | NP | NP | | 0.3 | 3 | 0 | |
| | 10 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 11 | | | | 12 | | | 21 | | | | 12 | | | | |
| | 12 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| ▼ | 13 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 14 | | -wet below 13' | | 14 | | | 22 | | | | | | | | |
| | 15 | | Boring Terminated at 15 feet | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

**WATER OBSERVATIONS:**

▽ 13' While Drilling

▼ 13' After waiting 30 minutes

**DRILLING METHOD:** Dry augered to 15 feet.

**SPT HAMMER:** Cat Head and Rope

# LOG OF BORING NO. **B-4**



**QC LABORATORIES, INC.**
Geotechnical & Materials Engineers

PROJECT: Proposed Renovations at Timberwood Middle School
18450 Timber Forest Drive
Humble, Texas

QCL NO.: 23G20369 DATE DRILLED: 12-15-23

| ELEVATION, feet | DEPTH, feet | SYMBOL | DESCRIPTION | SAMPLES | HAND PENETROMETER (tsf) | SPT N-VALUE (bpf) | DRY UNIT WEIGHT (pcf) | NATURAL MOISTURE CONTENT (%) | ATTERBERG LIMITS (%) LIQUID LIMIT | ATTERBERG LIMITS (%) PLASTIC LIMIT | ATTERBERG LIMITS (%) PLASTICITY INDEX | PERCENT PASSING NO. 200 SIEVE | UNCONFINED COMPRESSION (tsf) | STRAIN AT FAILURE (%) | CONFINING PRESSURE (psi) | OTHER TESTS |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | SURFACE ELEVATION: Existing Grade | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 0 | | **FILL: LEAN CLAY w/ SAND (CL)** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | | very stiff, gray with tan, with roots and organic matters at surface | | 3.0 | | | 14 | 27 | 13 | 14 | 71 | | | | |
| | 2 | | **SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL)** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 3 | | stiff to very stiff, gray and tan | | 2.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 4 | | -light gray and tan below 4' | | 4.5 | | | 13 | | | | | | | | |
| | 5 | | Boring Terminated at 5 feet | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

**WATER OBSERVATIONS:** No free water observed during dry drilling

**DRILLING METHOD:** Dry augered to 5 feet.

# LOG OF BORING NO. **B-5**



**QC LABORATORIES, INC.**
Geotechnical & Materials Engineers

PROJECT: Proposed Renovations at Timberwood Middle School
18450 Timber Forest Drive
Humble, Texas

QCL NO.: 23G20369 DATE DRILLED: 12-15-23

| ELEVATION, feet | DEPTH, feet | SYMBOL | DESCRIPTION | SAMPLES | HAND PENETROMETER (tsf) | SPT N-VALUE (bpf) | DRY UNIT WEIGHT (pcf) | NATURAL MOISTURE CONTENT (%) | ATTERBERG LIMITS (%) LIQUID LIMIT | ATTERBERG LIMITS (%) PLASTIC LIMIT | ATTERBERG LIMITS (%) PLASTICITY INDEX | PERCENT PASSING NO. 200 SIEVE | UNCONFINED COMPRESSION (tsf) | STRAIN AT FAILURE (%) | CONFINING PRESSURE (psi) | OTHER TESTS |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | SURFACE ELEVATION: Existing Grade | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 0 | | **FILL: SANDY SILTY CLAY (CL-ML)** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | | gray and tan, with sand seams<br>-with roots and organic matters at surface | | 0.5 | | | 10 | 20 | 13 | 7 | 57 | | | | |
| | 2 | | **SILTY SAND (SM)** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 3 | | loose, tan | | | 9 | | | | | | 34 | | | | |
| | 4 | | **SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL)** | | 2.5 | | | 14 | | | | | | | | |
| | 5 | | very stiff, tan<br>Boring Terminated at 5 feet | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

**WATER OBSERVATIONS:** No free water observed during dry drilling

**DRILLING METHOD:** Dry augered to 5 feet.

**SPT HAMMER:** Cat Head and Rope

# LOG OF BORING NO. **B-6**



**QC LABORATORIES, INC.**
Geotechnical & Materials Engineers

PROJECT: Proposed Renovations at Timberwood Middle School
18450 Timber Forest Drive
Humble, Texas

QCL NO.: 23G20369 DATE DRILLED: 12-15-23

| ELEVATION, feet | DEPTH, feet | SYMBOL | DESCRIPTION | SAMPLES | HAND PENETROMETER (tsf) | SPT N-VALUE (bpf) | DRY UNIT WEIGHT (pcf) | NATURAL MOISTURE CONTENT (%) | ATTERBERG LIMITS (%) LIQUID LIMIT | ATTERBERG LIMITS (%) PLASTIC LIMIT | ATTERBERG LIMITS (%) PLASTICITY INDEX | PERCENT PASSING NO. 200 SIEVE | UNCONFINED COMPRESSION (tsf) | STRAIN AT FAILURE (%) | CONFINING PRESSURE (psi) | OTHER TESTS |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | SURFACE ELEVATION: Existing Grade | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 0 | | **FILL: CLAYEY SAND (SC)** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | | dark gray and gray, with sand pockets, roots and organic matters | | 1.0 | | | 16 | 26 | 16 | 10 | 29 | | | | |
| | 2 | | **LEAN CLAY w/ SAND (CL)** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 3 | | very stiff, dark tan and gray, with sand pockets | | 4.0 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 4 | | -tan and gray below 4' | | 4.0 | | | 11 | | | | | | | | |
| | 5 | | Boring Terminated at 5 feet | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

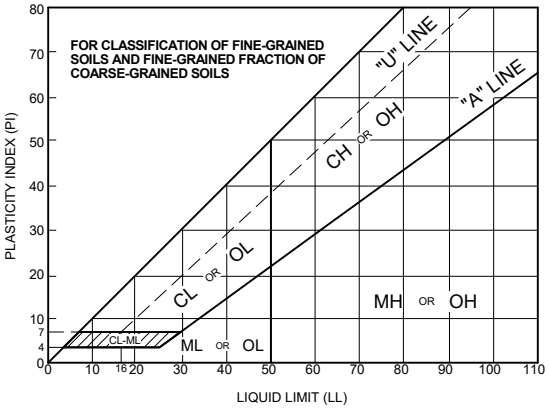
**WATER OBSERVATIONS:** No free water observed during dry drilling

**DRILLING METHOD:** Dry augered to 5 feet.

# UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION (ASTM D-2487)

| MATERIAL TYPES | CRITERIA FOR ASSIGNING SOIL GROUP NAMES | | | GROUP SYMBOL | SOIL GROUP NAMES & LEGEND |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| COARSE-GRAINED SOILS >50% RETAINED ON NO. 200 SIEVE | GRAVELS >50% OF COARSE FRACTION RETAINED ON NO 4. SIEVE | CLEAN GRAVELS <5% FINES | Cu≥ 4 AND 1≤ Cc≤ 3 | GW | WELL-GRADED GRAVEL |
| | | | Cu< 4 AND/OR 1 > Cc > 3 | GP | POORLY-GRADED GRAVEL |
| | | GRAVELS WITH FINES >12% FINES | FINES CLASSIFY AS ML OR MH | GM | SILTY GRAVEL |
| | | | FINES CLASSIFY AS CL OR CH | GC | CLAYEY GRAVEL |
| | SANDS >50% OF COARSE FRACTION PASSES ON NO 4. SIEVE | CLEAN SANDS <5% FINES | Cu≥ 6 AND 1≤ Cc≤ 3 | SW | WELL-GRADED SAND |
| | | | Cu < 6 AND/OR 1 > Cc > 3 | SP | POORLY-GRADED SAND |
| | | SANDS AND FINES >12% FINES | FINES CLASSIFY AS ML OR MH | SM | SILTY SAND |
| | | | FINES CLASSIFY AS CL OR CH | SC | CLAYEY SAND |
| FINE-GRAINED SOILS >50% PASSES NO. 200 SIEVE | SILTS AND CLAYS LIQUID LIMIT<50 | INORGANIC | PI > 7 AND PLOTS≥ "A" LINE | CL | LEAN CLAY |
| | | | PI < 4 AND PLOTS < "A" LINE | ML | SILT |
| | | ORGANIC | LL (oven dried); LL (not dried)<0.75 | OL | ORGANIC CLAY OR SILT |
| | SILTS AND CLAYS LIQUID LIMIT>50 | INORGANIC | PI PLOTS ≥ "A" LINE | CH | FAT CLAY |
| | | | PI PLOTS < "A" LINE | MH | ELASTIC SILT |
| | | ORGANIC | LL (oven dried); LL (not dried)<0.75 | OH | ORGANIC CLAY OR SILT |
| HIGHLY ORGANIC SOILS | | PRIMARILY ORGANIC MATTER, DARK IN COLOR, AND ORGANIC ODOR | | PT | PEAT |

## PLASTICITY CHART




Equation of "A" Line
Horizontal at PI=4 to LL=25.5, then PI=0.73 (LL-20)

Equation of "U" Line
Vertical at LL=16 to PI=7, then PI=0.9 (LL-8)

| PLASTICITY DESCRIPTION | |
|---|---|
| TERM | PLASTICITY INDEX |
| NON-PLASTIC | 0 |
| LOW | 1 - 10 |
| MEDIUM | 11 - 20 |
| HIGH | OVER 20 |

**SOIL CLASSIFICATION**

Soil classification is based on the Unified Soil Classification System (as presented in ASTM D2487). Coarse-grained soils have more than 50% of their dry weight retained on a #200 sieve; their principal descriptors are: boulders, cobbles, gravel or sand. Coarse-grained soils are described on the basis of their in-place RELATIVE DENSITY.

Fine-grained soils have less than 50% of their dry weight retained on a #200 sieve; they are described as clays if they plot above the "A" line and silts if the plot below the "A" line; they are further described as low or high plasticity, depending upon their liquid limit (below or above 50). Clays are defined on the basis of their CONSISTENCY. Silts are defined on the basis of their in-place RELATIVE DENSITY.

| RELATIVE DENSITY OF COARSE-GRAINED SOILS | | CONSISTENCY OF FINE-GRAINED SOILS | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| RELATIVE DENSITY | N-VALUE (BLOWS/FOOT*) | CONSISTENCY | BLOWS/FOOT* | COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH (TSF) |
| VERY LOOSE | 0 - 3 | VERY SOFT | WOH - 2 | 0 - 0.25 |
| LOOSE | 4 - 9 | SOFT | 2 - 4 | 0.25 - 0.50 |
| MEDIUM DENSE | 10 - 29 | FIRM | 4 - 8 | 0.50 - 1.0 |
| DENSE | 30 - 50 | STIFF | 8 - 15 | 1.0 - 2.0 |
| VERY DENSE | OVER 50 | VERY STIFF | 15 - 30 | 2.0 - 4.0 |
| | | HARD | OVER 30 | OVER 4.0 |

* NUMBER OF BLOWS OF 140 LB HAMMER FALLING 30 INCHES TO DRIVE A 2 INCH O.D. (1-3/8 INCH I.D.) SPLIT-BARREL SAMPLER THE LAST 12 INCHES OF AN 18-INCH DRIVE (ASTM-1586 STANDARD PEN. TEST).
* WOH = WEIGHT OF HAMMER

SAMPLE TYPES

- Standard Penetration Test
- Shelby Tube

OTHER MATERIAL SYMBOLS

- Asphalt
- Base Material
- Concrete
- Fill

QC LABORATORIES, INC.
Geotechnical & Materials Engineers

KEY TO SOIL SYMBOLS AND TERMS

Plate 9

# SECTION 00 42 13 - BASE PROPOSAL FORM - STIPULATED SUM

**PROJECT: Humble ISD Timberwood Middle School Additions & Renovations**

**CONTRACTOR: _____**

The undersigned proposer does hereby declare and stipulate that this proposal is made in good faith, without collusion or connection with any other person or persons proposing for the same work, and that it is made in pursuance of and subject to all the terms and conditions of the advertisements, proposal requirements, the proposed construction contract, and the contract documents, including the plans pertaining to the work to be done, all of which have been examined by the undersigned. The undersigned hereby declares that he has visited the site, has had sufficient time to make all tests and investigations to arrive at an intelligent estimate of the cost of doing the work, and has carefully examined the plans, specifications, and contract documents relating to the work covered by his proposal, and that he agrees to do the work, and that no representation made by the city are in any sense a warranty, but are mere estimates for guidance of the contractor.

The undersigned further agrees that he will provide all necessary tools and apparatus, do all work, furnish all materials, and do everything required to carry out the work covered by this proposal, in strict accordance with the contract documents, and the requirements pertaining thereto, for the sum of sums set forth.

**TIME AND PLACE OF RECEIVING PROPOSALS:**
Sealed proposals in conformity with the Proposal Procedures for the project will be received electronically by the Humble Independent School District via the Ion Wave Bid Submission Portal located at https://humbleisd.ionwave.net until 1:00 PM on Thursday, September 11, 2025**.** Alternates due at 2:00.

A non-mandatory Pre-Proposal Conference will occur at 11:00 AM on Tuesday, August 19, 2025, in the Large Conference Room at the Humble ISD Maintenance Center (MC) 1703 Wilson Road, Building B, Humble, Texas, 77396. Job site walk to follow immediately after pre-proposal meeting.

Received proposals will be read aloud in person beginning at 3:00 PM on Thursday, September 11, 2025, in the Large Conference Room at the Humble ISD Maintenance and Construction facility, 1703 Wilson Road, Building B, Humble, Texas, 77396. Can join via zoom Meeting: https://humbleisd.zoom.us/j/82975654330?pwd=VHmS4wruHzXa6cNIH7Hvw5DRWPds0h.1

Meeting ID: 829 7565 4330
Passcode: 874242

One tap mobile
+13462487799,,82975654330#,,,,*874242# US (Houston)
+12532050468,,82975654330#,,,,*874242# US

**PROJECT DESCRIPTION:**
**Humble ISD Timberwood Middle School Additions & Renovations**
Approximately 15,000 square foot addition and renovation to portions of the existing 139,000 square foot one-story occupied middle school building. See Drawings and Specifications for additional details.

**LOCATION OF PROJECT:**
**Humble ISD Timberwood Middle School (TMS)**

**BONDS:** Within ten days, the contractor will deliver the Contract and Performance and Payment Bonds as required in the specifications. The name and address of the corporate surety with which the proposer proposes to furnish the specific Performance and Payment bond is as follows:

Full Surety Company Name: _____
Address: _____

_____
Name of Representative: _____
Telephone: _____
Fax: _____

**TIME OF COMPLETION:** The undersigned Bidder proposes and agrees hereby to commence the Work of the Contract Documents on a date specified in a written Notice to Proceed to be issued by Architect, and shall fully complete the Work within _____ calendar days.

**LIQUIDATED DAMAGES:** Undersigned understands that liquidated damages as defined in the Supplementary Conditions will be included in the form of Agreement between Owner and Contractor and that the contractor will be bound thereto.

**LUMP SUM PROPOSAL:** This is a lump sum proposal. The prices in the lump sum proposal shall include all labor, equipment, materials, services, transportation, shoring, removal, de-watering, overhead, profit, insurance, bonding, etc., to cover the completed work in place.

**BASE PROPOSAL:** Base proposal for the stipulated lump sum of **$**_____

**ADDENDA:** The undersigned hereby acknowledges receipt of the following addenda to the Drawings and Specifications, all of the provisions and requirements of which addenda have been taken into consideration in the preparation of this Proposal.

Addendum No. _____ Dated _____

Addendum No. _____ Dated _____

Addendum No. _____ Dated _____

**UNIT PRICES:** Unit price is an amount incorporated in the Agreement, applicable during the duration of the Work as a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment, or services, or a portion of the Work, added to or deducted from the Contract Sum by appropriate modification, if the scope of Work or estimated quantities of Work required by the Contract Documents are increased or decreased. Unit prices include all necessary material, plus cost for delivery, installation, insurance, overhead, and profit.

Unit Price No.1: Cutting and patching of concrete floor slabs _____
Unit: Square feet of concrete removal

Unit Price No.2: Miscellaneous and structural steel _____
Unit: Cost in place of pounds of fabricated steel as indicated on itemized invoice of steel supplier and verified by Architect.

Unit Price No.3: Drilled Piers _____
Unit: Liner feet of pier.

Unit Price No.4: Drilled Pier Casings _____
Unit: Liner feet of pier.

**PROPOSAL DOCUMENTS**

Proposal Documents Include:

- 00 21 16 Instructions to Proposers
- 00 42 10 Base Proposal Form - Stipulated Sum
- 00 43 13 Bid Bond
- 00 43 14 Alternates Proposal Form
- 00 43 46 Proposed Subcontractors Form
- 00 45 16 AIA A305-1986 Contractors Qualification Statement
- 00 45 19 Certificate of Interested Parties Form 1295
- 00 45 21 Conflict of Interest Questionnaire
- 00 45 46 W9 Request for Taxpayer Id
- 00 45 50 Asbestos-Short Term Worker Notification
- The resume of the Project Managerp
- The resume of the Superintendent
- The proposed project schedule

**CORRELATION OF DOCUMENTS:** Initial:_____

1. Any discrepancy in the documents shall be interpreted to include the most restrictive or costly solution. In case of discrepancy, either in figures or Drawings or Specifications, the matter must be promptly submitted by the Contractor to the Architect, who will promptly make a determination in writing. Any adjustment by the Contractor without such a determination by the Architect will be at the Contractor's own risk and expense. The Architect will furnish, as necessary, additional detailed Drawings and information for clarification.
2. If a document discrepancy is identified prior to bidding, the Architect is to be notified so a written clarification may be issued.
3. Any survey drawing documents included herein are for convenience of the Contractor and Owner. The Architect assumes no responsibility as to their completeness or accuracy.
4. Anything mentioned in the Specifications and not shown on the Drawings or shown on the Drawings and not mentioned in the Specifications, is of like effect as if shown or mentioned in both.
5. On any of the Drawings in which a portion of the work is detailed or drawn out and the remainder is shown in outline, the parts detailed or drawn out will apply also to all other like portions of the work.
6. When the word "similar" appears on Drawings, it has a general meaning and must not be interpreted as meaning identical. All details must be worked out in relation to their location and connection with other parts of the work.
7. Refer to Architectural Drawings for verification of locations, sizes and dimensions.

Respectfully Submitted,

Legal Name of Proposer Firm or Corporation

Street Address

City, State Zip

Telephone

Fax

E-Mail

WITNESS:

Name of Witness (Printed or Typed)

Signature

Address

City, State Zip

Date

Affix Seal of Corporation
(if Proposer is a Corporation)

State of Incorporation

Tax ID Number

OR

Social Security Number

Name of Officer (Typed or Printed)

Signature of Officer

Title of Officer

Date

NOTE: Fill in with ink or type and submit complete with attached papers.

END OF SECTION 00 40 10

# SECTION 00 42 14 - ALTERNATES PROPOSAL FORM

**PROJECT: CSP# 2026-03 Humble ISD Timberwood Middle School Additions & Renovations**

**CONTRACTOR: _____**

The undersigned proposer does hereby declare and stipulate that this proposal is made in good faith, without collusion or connection with any other person or persons proposing for the same work, and that it is made in pursuance of and subject to all the terms and conditions of the advertisements, proposal requirements, the proposed construction contract, and the contract documents, including the plans pertaining to the work to be done, all of which have been examined by the undersigned. The undersigned hereby declares that he has visited the site, has had sufficient time to make all tests and investigations to arrive at an intelligent estimate of the cost of doing the work, and has carefully examined the plans, specifications, and contract documents relating to the work covered by his proposal, and that he agrees to do the work, and that no representation made by the city are in any sense a warranty, but are mere estimates for guidance of the contractor.

The undersigned further agrees that he will provide all necessary tools and apparatus, do all work, furnish all materials, and do everything required to carry out the work covered by this proposal, in strict accordance with the contract documents, and the requirements pertaining thereto, for the sum of sums set forth.

**TIME AND PLACE OF RECEIVING PROPOSALS:**
Sealed proposals in conformity with the Proposal Procedures for the project will be received electronically by the Humble Independent School District via the Ion Wave Bid Submission Portal located at https://humbleisd.ionwave.net until 1:00 PM on Thursday, September 11, 2025**.** Alternates due at 2:00.

A non-mandatory Pre-Proposal Conference will occur at 11:00 AM on Tuesday, August 19, 2025, in the Large Conference Room at the Humble ISD Maintenance Center (MC) 1703 Wilson Road, Building B, Humble, Texas, 77396. Job site walk to follow immediately after pre-proposal meeting.

Received proposals will be read aloud in person beginning at 3:00 PM on Thursday, September 11, 2025, in the Large Conference Room at the Humble ISD Maintenance and Construction facility, 1703 Wilson Road, Building B, Humble, Texas, 77396. Can join via zoom Meeting: https://humbleisd.zoom.us/j/82975654330?pwd=VHmS4wruHzXa6cNIH7Hvw5DRWPds0h.1

Meeting ID: 829 7565 4330
Passcode: 874242

One tap mobile
+13462487799,,82975654330#,,,,*874242# US (Houston)
+12532050468,,82975654330#,,,,*874242# US

**PROJECT DESCRIPTION:**
**Humble ISD Timberwood Middle School Additions & Renovations**
Approximately 15,000 square foot addition and renovation to portions of the existing 139,000 square foot one-story occupied middle school building. See Drawings and Specifications for additional details.

**LOCATION OF PROJECT:**
**Humble ISD Timberwood Middle School (TMS)**

**ALTERNATES PROPOSAL:** The prices for each Alternate in this Alternate Proposal Form shall include all labor, equipment, materials, services, transportation, shoring, removal, dewatering, overhead, profit, insurance, bonding, etc. to cover the completed work.

A. Alternate No. 1: Staff Parking - Parking lot and sidewalk modifications to parking on north side of school, as shown in the drawings: $_____

B. Alternate No. 2: Visitor Parking - Parking lot and sidewalk modifications to parking on west side of school, as shown on the drawings. $_____

C. Alternate No. 3: Daylighting – New skylights at existing school. New exterior windows at building areas C and D to include window treatment. $_____

D. Alternate No. 4: Base Bid Corrections – This alternate shall establish the amount to be added to/deducted from the Base Bid Proposal in the event the Contractor has discovered an error in their Base Bid Proposal amount. $_____

**PROPOSAL DOCUMENTS**
Proposal Documents Include:
- 00 21 16 Instructions to Proposers
- 00 42 13 Base Proposal Form - Stipulated Sum
- 00 42 14 Alternates Proposal Form
- 00 43 13 Bid Bond
- 00 43 46 Proposed Subcontractors Form
- 00 45 16 AIA A305-1986 Contractors Qualification Statement
- 00 45 19 Certificate of Interested Parties Form 1295
- 00 45 21 Conflict of Interest Questionnaire
- 00 45 46 W9 Request for Taxpayer Id
- 00 45 50 Asbestos-Short Term Worker Notification
- The resume of the Project Manager
- The resume of the Superintendent
- The proposed project schedule

**CORRELATION OF DOCUMENTS:** Initial:_____

1. Any discrepancy in the documents shall be interpreted to include the most restrictive or costly solution. In case of discrepancy, either in figures or Drawings or Specifications, the matter must be promptly submitted by the Contractor to the Architect, who will promptly make a determination in writing. Any adjustment by the Contractor without such a determination by the Architect will be at the Contractor's own risk and expense. The Architect will furnish, as necessary, additional detailed Drawings and information for clarification.
2. If a document discrepancy is identified prior to bidding, the Architect is to be notified so a written clarification may be issued.
3. Any survey drawing documents included herein are for convenience of the Contractor and Owner. The Architect assumes no responsibility as to their completeness or accuracy.
4. Anything mentioned in the Specifications and not shown on the Drawings or shown on the Drawings and not mentioned in the Specifications, is of like effect as if shown or mentioned in both.

5. On any of the Drawings in which a portion of the work is detailed or drawn out and the remainder is shown in outline, the parts detailed or drawn out will apply also to all other like portions of the work.
6. When the word "similar" appears on Drawings, it has a general meaning and must not be interpreted as meaning identical. All details must be worked out in relation to their location and connection with other parts of the work.
7. Refer to Architectural Drawings for verification of locations, sizes and dimensions.

Respectfully Submitted,

Legal Name of Proposer Firm or Corporation

Street Address

City, State Zip

Telephone

Fax

E-Mail

WITNESS:

Name of Witness (Printed or Typed)

Signature

Address

City, State Zip

Date

Affix Seal of Corporation
(if Proposer is a Corporation)

State of Incorporation

Tax ID Number

OR

Social Security Number

Name of Officer (Typed or Printed)

Signature of Officer

Title of Officer

Date

NOTE: Fill in with ink or type and submit complete with attached papers.

END OF SECTION 00 42 14

## SECTION 00 43 13 - BID BOND

**STATE OF TEXAS )**
**)**
**COUNTY OF HARRIS )**

**KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS**, that we, the undersigned, _____, whose address is_____, hereinafter called Principal, and_____, a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of_____, and fully licensed to transact business in the State of Texas, as Surety, are held and firmly bound unto the Humble Independent School District, a home-rule municipal corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of Texas, hereinafter referred to as "Owner," in the penal sum of $_____as the proper measure of liquidated damages arising out of or connected with the submission of a Proposal for the construction of a public work project, in lawful money of the United States, to be paid in Harris County, Texas, for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made, we bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators and successors jointly and severally, firmly by these presents. The condition of the above obligation is such that whereas the Principal has submitted to Owner a certain Proposal, attached hereto and hereby made a part hereof, to enter into a contract in writing, for the construction of **"Proposal # CSP 2026-03 – HUMBLE ISD TIMBERWOOD MIDDLE SCHOOL ADDITIONS".**

**NOW, THEREFORE**, if the Principal's Proposal shall be rejected or, in the alternative, if the Principal's Proposal shall be accepted and the Principal shall execute and deliver a contract in the form of the Contract attached hereto (properly completed in accordance with said Proposal) and shall furnish performance, payment and maintenance bonds required by the Contract Documents for the Project and provide proof of all required insurance coverages for the Project and shall in all other respects perform the agreement created by the acceptance of said Proposal, then this obligation shall be void, otherwise the same shall remain in full force and affect; it being expressly understood and agreed that the liability of the Surety for any breach of condition hereunder shall be in the face amount of this bond and forfeited as a proper measure of liquidated damages.

**PROVIDED FURTHER**, that if any legal action were filed on this Bond, exclusive venue shall lie in Harris County, Texas.

**AND PROVIDED FURTHER**, the Surety, for value received, hereby stipulates and agrees that the obligations of said Surety and its bond shall be in no way impaired or affected by an extension of the time within which the Owner may accept such Proposal; and said Surety does hereby waive notice of any such extension.

The undersigned and designated agent is hereby designated by the Surety herein as the Resident Agent for service of process in Texas to whom any requisite notices may be delivered and on whom service of process may be had in matters arising out of such suretyship, as provided by Article 7.19-1 of the Insurance Code, Vernon's Annotated Civil Statutes of the State of Texas.

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF,** this instrument is executed in two copies, each one of which shall be deemed an original, this, the____day of_____, 20____.

PRINCIPAL: _____

BY: _____
Name

ATTEST:

_____ TITLE: _____

SURETY: _____

BY: _____
Name

ATTEST:

_____ TITLE: _____

The Resident Agent of the Surety in Texas, for delivery of notice and service of the process is:

NAME:_____
STREET ADDRESS: _____
CITY, STATE, ZIP: _____

**NOTE**: If Resident Agent is not a corporation, give a person's name.

IMPORTANT – Surety companies executing BONDS must appear on the Treasury Department's most current list (Circular 570 as amended) and be authorized to transact business in the State of Texas.

# SECTION 00 43 46 - PROPOSED SUBCONTRACTORS FORM

PROJECT:
Humble Independent School District
Timberwood Middle School Additions & Renovations
1703 Wilson Road, Building B
Humble, Texas 77396

ARCHITECT:
Brown Reynolds Watford Architects, Inc.
4501 Magnolia Cove Drive, Suite 250
Houston, Texas 77345

CONTRACTOR: _____ DATE:_____
(Company)

_____
(Street)

_____
(City, State, Zip)

List Subcontractors and others proposed to be employed on the above Project as required by the proposal documents. This document is to be filled out by the Contractor and submitted via Ion Wave @ https://humbleisd.ionwave.net no later than 2:00 PM – Thursday, September 11, 2024.

List all subcontractors performing work in excess of $30,000.00 including work self-performed by the general contractor.

**TRADE:**_____
Firm_____
Address_____
Phone_____
Email_____

_____
Amount of Subcontractor Bid

**TRADE:**_____
Firm_____
Address_____
Phone_____
Email_____

_____
Amount of Subcontractor Bid

**TRADE:**_____
Firm_____
Address_____
Phone_____
Email_____

_____
Amount of Subcontractor Bid

**TRADE:**_____
Firm_____
Address_____
Phone_____
Email_____

_____
Amount of Subcontractor Bid

**TRADE:**_____
Firm_____
Address_____
Phone_____
Email_____

_____
Amount of Subcontractor Bid

**TRADE:**_____
Firm_____
Address_____
Phone_____
Email_____

_____
Amount of Subcontractor Bid

**TRADE:**_____
Firm_____
Address_____
Phone_____
Email_____

_____
Amount of Subcontractor Bid

**TRADE:**_____
Firm_____
Address_____
Phone_____
Email_____

_____
Amount of Subcontractor Bid

(Include multiple pages of this exhibit if needed) Page ___ of ___ Pages of this Section

# SECTION 00 45 19 - CERTIFICATE OF INTERESTED PARTIES (FORM 1295)

## PART 1 - GENERAL

A. CERTIFICATE OF INTERESTED PARTIES (Form 1295): The Texas Government Code §2252.908, and the rules issued by the Texas Ethics Commission found in Title 1, Sections 46.1, 46.3 and 46.5 of the Texas Administrative Code, require a business entity to submit a completed Form 1295 to the HUMBLE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT before the HUMBLE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT may enter into a contract with that business entity.

1. Form 1295 must be completed online. It is available from the Texas Ethics Commission by accessing the following web address: https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/elf_info_form1295.htm

2. Print your completed Form 1295 and the certification of filing. Submit signed and notarized 1295, along with the certification of filing, with your response to this solicitation. In Box 3 of Form 1295, provide the solicitation number shown on the cover page of this solicitation (CSP# 2026-03).

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

Not used.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

Not used.

END OF SECTION 00 45 19

# SECTION 00 45 21 - CONFLICT OF INTEREST QUESTIONNAIRE

Any vendor who does business with the District or who seeks to do business with the District must fill out the Conflict of Interest Questionnaire (CIQ) whether or not a conflict of interest exists. A conflict of interest exists in the following situations:

1) If the vendor has an employment or other business relationship with a local government officer of the District or a family member of the officer, as described by section 176.003(a)(2)(A) of the Texas Local Government Code; or
2) If the vendor has given a local government officer of the District, or a family member of the officer, one or more gifts with the aggregate value of $100, excluding any gift accepted by the officer or a family member of the officer if the gift is: (a) a political contribution as defined by Title 15 of the Election Code; or (b) a gift of food accepted as a guest; or
3) If the vendor has a family relationship with a local government officer of the District.

See below for further definitions.

**If no conflict of interest exists, you must fill out Box 1 and type N/A on Box 3 of the CIQ form, sign and date it.** If circumstances change, an updated CIQ must be filed within seven (7) business days after the vendor becomes aware that a conflict of interest exists.

Be advised that under federal law, no employee, officer, or agent may participate in the selection, award, or administration of a contract paid with federal grant funds if he or she has a real or apparent conflict of interest. Such a conflict of interest would arise when the employee, officer, or agent, any member of his or her immediate family, his or her partner, or an organization which employs or is about to employ any of the parties indicated herein, has a financial or other interest in or a tangible personal benefit from a firm considered for a contract.

The officers, employees, and agents of Humble ISD may neither solicit nor accept gratuities, favors, or anything of monetary value from vendors or subcontractors. Gifts valued at $50 per year are considered *de minimis* value if unsolicited, of minimal value, or promotional items. Violations of this prohibition shall be reviewed pursuant to Board Policies DBD and CHE.

# CONFLICT OF INTEREST QUESTIONNAIRE

**FORM CIQ**

**For vendor doing business with local governmental entity**

**This questionnaire reflects changes made to the law by H.B. 23, 84th Leg., Regular Session.**

This questionnaire is being filed in accordance with Chapter 176, Local Government Code, by a vendor who has a business relationship as defined by Section 176.001(1-a) with a local governmental entity and the vendor meets requirements under Section 176.006(a).

By law this questionnaire must be filed with the records administrator of the local governmental entity not later than the 7th business day after the date the vendor becomes aware of facts that require the statement to be filed. *See* Section 176.006(a-1), Local Government Code.

A vendor commits an offense if the vendor knowingly violates Section 176.006, Local Government Code. An offense under this section is a misdemeanor.

**OFFICE USE ONLY**

Date Received

1 **Name of vendor who has a business relationship with local governmental entity.**

2 ☐ **Check this box if you are filing an update to a previously filed questionnaire.** (The law requires that you file an updated completed questionnaire with the appropriate filing authority not later than the 7th business day after the date on which you became aware that the originally filed questionnaire was incomplete or inaccurate.)

3 **Name of local government officer about whom the information is being disclosed.**

Name of Officer

4 **Describe each employment or other business relationship with the local government officer, or a family member of the officer, as described by Section 176.003(a)(2)(A). Also describe any family relationship with the local government officer. Complete subparts A and B for each employment or business relationship described. Attach additional pages to this Form CIQ as necessary.**

A. Is the local government officer or a family member of the officer receiving or likely to receive taxable income, other than investment income, from the vendor?

☐ Yes ☐ No

B. Is the vendor receiving or likely to receive taxable income, other than investment income, from or at the direction of the local government officer or a family member of the officer AND the taxable income is not received from the local governmental entity?

☐ Yes ☐ No

5 **Describe each employment or business relationship that the vendor named in Section 1 maintains with a corporation or other business entity with respect to which the local government officer serves as an officer or director, or holds an ownership interest of one percent or more.**

6 ☐ Check this box if the vendor has given the local government officer or a family member of the officer one or more gifts as described in Section 176.003(a)(2)(B), excluding gifts described in Section 176.003(a-1).

7 X

Signature of vendor doing business with the governmental entity

Date

Form provided by Texas Ethics Commission www.ethics.state.tx.us Revised 11/30/2015

## CONFLICT OF INTEREST QUESTIONNAIRE
## For vendor doing business with local governmental entity

A complete copy of Chapter 176 of the Local Governmetn Code may be found at http://www.statutes.legis.state.tx.us/Docs/LG/htm/LG.176.htm. For easy reference, below are some of the sections cited on this form.

**Local Government Code § 176.001(1-a):** "Business relationship" means a connection between two or more parties based on commercial activity of one of the parties. The term does not include a connection based on:

(A) a transaction that is subject to rate or fee regulation by a federal, state, or local governmental entity or an agency of a federal, state, or local governmental entity;

(B) a transaction conducted at a price and subject to terms available to the public; or

(C) a purchase or lease of goods or services from a person that is chartered by a state or federal agency and that is subject to regular examination by, and reporting to, that agency.

**Local Government Code § 176.003(a)(2)(A) and (B):**

(a) A local government officer shall file a conflicts disclosure statement with respect to a vendor if:

***

(2) the vendor:

(A) has an employment or other business relationship with the local government officer or a family member of the officer that results in the officer or family member receiving taxable income, other than investment income, that exceeds $2,500 during the 12-month period preceding the date that the officer becomes aware that

(i) a contract between the local governmental entity and vendor has been executed; or

(ii) the local governmental entity is considering entering into a contract with the vendor;

(B) has given to the local government officer or a family member of the officer one or more gifts that have an aggregate value of more than $100 in the 12-month period preceding the date the officer becomes aware that:

(i) a contract between the local governmental entity and vendor has been executed; or

(ii) the local governmental entity is considering entering into a contract with the vendor.

**Local Government Code § 176.006(a) and (a-1)**

(a) A vendor shall file a completed conflict of interest questionnaire if the vendor has a business relationship with a local governmental entity and:

(1) has an employment or other business relationship with a local government officer of that local governmental entity, or a family member of the officer, described by Section 176.003(a)(2)(A);

(2) has given a local government officer of that local governmental entity, or a family member of the officer, one or more gifts with the aggregate value specified by Section 176.003(a)(2)(B), excluding any gift described by Section 176.003(a-1); or

(3) has a family relationship with a local government officer of that local governmental entity.

(a-1) The completed conflict of interest questionnaire must be filed with the appropriate records administrator not later than the seventh business day after the later of:

(1) the date that the vendor:

(A) begins discussions or negotiations to enter into a contract with the local governmental entity; or

(B) submits to the local governmental entity an application, response to a request for proposals or bids, correspondence, or another writing related to a potential contract with the local governmental entity; or

(2) the date the vendor becomes aware:

(A) of an employment or other business relationship with a local government officer, or a family member of the officer, described by Subsection (a);

(B) that the vendor has given one or more gifts described by Subsection (a); or

(C) of a family relationship with a local government officer.

Form provided by Texas Ethics Commission www.ethics.state.tx.us Revised 11/30/2015

# SECTION 00 45 50 - ASBESTOS-SHORT TERM WORKER NOTIFICATION

1703 Wilson Rd, Bldg B
Humble, TX 77347
281.641.8768

## Asbestos-Short Term Worker Notification

To Whom It May Concern:

In accordance with the Asbestos Hazard Emergency Response Act (AHERA), Humble Independent School District (Humble ISD) would like to inform you that asbestos containing building material (ACBM) had been identified in various district-owned buildings.

Humble ISD wishes to protect all students, employees, and workers. Therefore, before any work is performed within Humble ISD buildings, your representative should contact the Environmental Compliance Manager, our District's Asbestos Designated Person, to verify if any ACBM is present in the project work area. If work is performed before receiving authorization, your company will assume all liability for damage and resulting contamination.

Please feel free to contact the Environmental Compliance Manager with any questions or concerns in regards to this notification memo.

Sincerely,

Leigh Ann Mann
Director of Operation Business
1703 Wilson Road Building B
Humble, Texas 77338
Office: 281-641-8748
Cell: 713-540-8004
lmann@humbleisd.net

Acknowledged by:_____ Title:_____
(Signature of Authorized Company Officer (Provide Title)

Vendor/Contractor Name: _____

Address:_____, _____
(Street) (City,State, Zip)

email Address:_____

**DOCUMENT 00 45 51 - SELECTION CRITERIA AND CONTRACTOR INFORMATION SHEET**

Proposals are to include the information requested in this of this Request in the sequence and format prescribed. In addition to and separate from the requested information, offerors submitting proposals may provide supplementary materials further describing their capabilities and experience.

Following the deadline for receipt, the District's staff will receive, publicly open, and read aloud the names of the offerors and, if any are required to be stated, all prices stated in the proposals. The District's staff will recommend that the District select a construction contractor from the respondents to this Request for Proposals or reject all proposals.

The recommended ranking shall be based on the data furnished by the offerors in response to the request for CSPs. The following is a list of criteria and weight for each criterion. Unless modified by addendum prior to opening of the proposals, the following listing of criteria and weight of criteria shall be utilized by the District pursuant to Texas Government Code Chapter 2269, Subchapter D:

| |
|---|
| 1. Extent of the firm's experience in the construction/renovation of educational facilities of comparable size and complexity in the greater Houston area construction market.<br>Possible Points: 15<br>Location/ Page #_____ |
| 2. Whether the team personnel proposed have the appropriate experience and capabilities for the project. Also provide the proposed team's current commitments.<br>Possible Points: 10<br>Location/ Page #_____ |
| 3. Whether the firm has demonstrated the capability to meet project schedules and budgets. Provide the following project information for the last 5 years: original contractual completion date, original contract amount and final contract amount.<br>Possible Points: 10<br>Location/ Page #_____ |
| 4. How long the firm has been in business, and whether the firm's organizational structure, licensing and financial information indicate that the firm is capable of successfully completing this project.<br>Possible Points: 10<br>Location/ Page #_____ |
| 5. The firm's responsiveness and completeness regarding the Request for Qualifications submittal.<br>Possible Points: 5<br>Location/ Page #_____ |
| 6. The firm's safety and drug abuse programs, and history of safety performance.<br>Possible Points: 3<br>Location/ Page #_____ |
| 7. Whether the firm has previously worked for the District, and whether the work was satisfactory to the District.<br>Possible Points: 2<br>Location/ Page #_____ |
| 8. Responses from the firm's references. Do not enter score on this sheet. Score will be inserted on summary sheet.<br>Possible Points: 5<br>Location/ Page #_____ |
| 9. Price<br>Possible Points: 40<br>Location/ Page #_____ |

Contract award is based on qualifications (60 pts) and Price (40 pts)

All responses in the proposal may be used to help the District select a contractor based on these criteria. The District reserves the right to verify the accuracy and completeness of all response by utilizing any information available to the District without regard to whether such information appears in the proposal.

# SECTION 00 52 13 - STANDARD FORM OF AGREEMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

A. A modified form of AIA Document A101, 2017 edition, Agreement Between Owner and Contractor when the basis of payment is a stipulated sum, shall be the agreement for this work. A sample copy of the contract is bound into the project manual. By submitting a proposal each proposer agrees to use the contract form modified, as necessary, to incorporate the terms of this Request for Proposals and the proposer's proposal as the same may be modified by the Owner and proposer as part of the selection process.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

Not used.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

Not used.

END OF SECTION 00 52 13

# AIA® Document A101® – 2017

## *Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor where the basis of payment is a Stipulated Sum*

**AGREEMENT** made as of the Thirty-first day of July in the year Two Thousand Twenty-Five
*(In words, indicate day, month and year.)*

**BETWEEN** the Owner:
*(Name, legal status, address and other information)*

Humble Independent School District
10203 Birchridge Drive
Humble, TX 77338

and the Contractor:
*(Name, legal status, address and other information)*

for the following Project:
*(Name, location and detailed description)*

Timberwood Middle School Additions Project
18450 Timber Forest Drive
Humble, TX 77346

The Architect:
*(Name, legal status, address and other information)*

Brown Reynolds Watford Architects, Inc. ("BRW")
3535 Travis Street, Suite 250
Dallas, TX 75204

The Owner and Contractor agree as follows.

**ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**
The author of this document may have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

The parties should complete A101®–2017, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds, contemporaneously with this Agreement. AIA Document A201®–2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, is adopted in this document by reference. Do not use with other general conditions unless this document is modified.

AIA Document A101 – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 10:55:16 CDT on 07/31/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:**
(68810996437b2c820ac0e421)

TABLE OF ARTICLES

1 THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

2 THE WORK OF THIS CONTRACT

3 DATE OF COMMENCEMENT AND SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

4 CONTRACT SUM

5 PAYMENTS

6 DISPUTE RESOLUTION

7 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION

8 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

9 ENUMERATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

EXHIBIT A INSURANCE AND BONDS

## ARTICLE 1 THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

The Contract Documents consist of this Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary, and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of this Agreement, other documents listed in this Agreement, and Modifications issued after execution of this Agreement, all of which form the Contract, and are as fully a part of the Contract as if attached to this Agreement or repeated herein. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. An enumeration of the Contract Documents, other than a Modification, appears in Article 9.

## ARTICLE 2 THE WORK OF THIS CONTRACT

The Contractor shall fully execute the Work described in the Contract Documents, except as specifically indicated in the Contract Documents to be the responsibility of others.

## ARTICLE 3 DATE OF COMMENCEMENT AND SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

**§ 3.1** The date of commencement of the Work shall be:
*(Check one of the following boxes.)*

[ ] The date of this Agreement.

[ ] A date set forth in a notice to proceed issued by the Owner.

[ X ] Established as follows:
*(Insert a date or a means to determine the date of commencement of the Work.)*

The date of commencement shall be the day that the Contractor receives a Notice to Proceed from the Owner. If a permit, or other approvals, are not available for the entire Project, the Contractor must commence work on those portions of the Project that do not require a permit or other approvals on receipt of a Notice to Proceed. Work at the Project site shall not begin until Owner has received all required payment and performance bonds and insurance.

If a date of commencement of the Work is not selected, then the date of commencement shall be the date of this Agreement.

**§ 3.2** The Contract Time shall be measured from the date of commencement of the Work.

### § 3.3 Substantial and Final Completion

**§ 3.3.1** Subject to adjustments of the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall achieve Substantial Completion of the entire Work:

AIA Document A101 – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 10:55:16 CDT on 07/31/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810996437b2c820ac0e421)

*(Check one of the following boxes and complete the necessary information.)*

[ ] Not later than ( ) calendar days from the date of commencement of the Work.

[ X ] By the following date: December 01, 2026

**§ 3.3.2** Subject to adjustments of the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Documents, if portions of the Work are to be completed prior to Substantial Completion of the entire Work, the Contractor shall achieve Substantial Completion of such portions by the following dates:

| Portion of Work | Substantial Completion Date |
|---|---|

**§ 3.3.3** If the Contractor fails to achieve Substantial Completion or Final Completion as provided in this Section 3.3, liquidated damages, if any, shall be assessed as set forth in Section 4.5.

**§ 3.3.4** Subject to adjustments of the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Documents, Final Completion shall be forty-five (45) calendar days after the date of Substantial Completion.

## ARTICLE 4 CONTRACT SUM

**§ 4.1** The Owner shall pay the Contractor the Contract Sum in current funds for the Contractor's performance of the Contract. The Contract Sum shall be ($ ), subject to additions and deductions as provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2 Alternates**

**§ 4.2.1** Alternates, if any, included in the Contract Sum:

| Item | Price |
|---|---|
| 1. Staff Parking | |
| 2. Visitor Parking | |
| 3. Daylighting | |

**§ 4.2.2** Subject to the conditions noted below, the following alternates may be accepted by the Owner following execution of this Agreement. Upon acceptance, the Owner shall issue a Modification to this Agreement.
*(Insert below each alternate and the conditions that must be met for the Owner to accept the alternate.)*

| Item | Price | Conditions for Acceptance |
|---|---|---|

**§ 4.3** Allowances, if any, included in the Contract Sum:
*(Identify each allowance.)*

| Item | Price |
|---|---|
| Owner's Contingency Allowance: $500,000.00 | |

**§ 4.4** Unit prices, if any:
*(Identify the item and state the unit price and quantity limitations, if any, to which the unit price will be applicable.)*

| Item | Units and Limitations | Price per Unit ($0.00) |
|---|---|---|
| Cutting and patching of concrete floor slabs | sq. ft. of concrete removed | |

AIA Document A101 – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 10:55:16 CDT on 07/31/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:**
(68810996437b2c820ac0e421)

| | |
|---|---|
| Miscellaneous and structural steel | pounds of fabricated steel |
| Drilled Piers | linear ft. of pier |
| Drilled Piers Casings | linear ft. of pier |

**§ 4.5** Liquidated damages, if any:
*(Insert terms and conditions for liquidated damages, if any.)*

$1,500.00 per day as set forth in Paragraphs 8.3.4 and 8.3.5 of the Supplementary Conditions of the A201-2017.

**§ 4.6** Other:
*(Insert provisions for bonus or other incentives, if any, that might result in a change to the Contract Sum.)*

N/A

## ARTICLE 5 PAYMENTS

### § 5.1 Progress Payments

**§ 5.1.1** Based upon Applications for Payment submitted to the Architect by the Contractor and Certificates for Payment issued by the Architect, the Owner shall make progress payments on account of the Contract Sum to the Contractor as provided below and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

**§ 5.1.2** The period covered by each Application for Payment shall be one calendar month ending on the last day of the month, or as follows:

N/A

**§ 5.1.3** Provided that an Application for Payment is properly executed by the Architect , the Owner shall make payment of the amount certified to the Contractor no later than forty-five (45) days . If an Application for Payment is received by the Architect after the application date fixed above, payment of the amount certified shall be made by the Owner no later than Forty-Five ( 45 ) days after the Architect properly executes the Application for Payment, except that no payment shall be considered not paid when due or past due except in accordance with Section 2251.021 of the Texas Government Code.
*(Federal, state or local laws may require payment within a certain period of time.)*

**§ 5.1.4** Each Application for Payment shall be based on the most recent schedule of values submitted by the Contractor in accordance with the Contract Documents. The schedule of values shall allocate the entire Contract Sum among the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in such form, and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy, as the Architect may require. This schedule of values shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment.

**§ 5.1.5** Applications for Payment shall show the percentage of completion of each portion of the Work as of the end of the period covered by the Application for Payment.

**§ 5.1.6** In accordance with AIA Document A201™–2017, as amended by the Owner, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, and subject to other provisions of the Contract Documents, the amount of each progress payment shall be providing using the AIA G702 and G703 format and computed as follows:

**§ 5.1.6.1** The amount of each progress payment shall first include:

.1 That portion of the Contract Sum properly allocable to completed Work;

.2 That portion of the Contract Sum properly allocable to materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the completed construction, or, if approved in advance by the Owner, suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing; and

.3 That portion of Construction Change Directives that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified.

**§ 5.1.6.2** The amount of each progress payment shall then be reduced by:

AIA Document A101 – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 10:55:16 CDT on 07/31/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810996437b2c820ac0e421)

.1 The aggregate of any amounts previously paid by the Owner;

.2 The amount, if any, for Work that remains uncorrected and for which the Architect has previously withheld a Certificate for Payment as provided in Article 9 of AIA Document A201–2017, as amended by the Owner;

.3 Any amount for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or material supplier, unless the Work has been performed by others the Contractor intends to pay;

.4 For Work performed or defects discovered since the last payment application, any amount for which the Architect may withhold payment, or nullify a Certificate of Payment in whole or in part, as provided in Article 9 of AIA Document A201–2017, as amended by the Owner; and

.5 Retainage withheld pursuant to Section 5.1.7.

**§ 5.1.6.3** The progress payment amount determined in accordance with Section 5.1.6 shall be further modified under the following circumstances:

.1 If Owner is entitled to deduct liquidated damages, or any other damages or amounts provided in the Contract Documents, including clean-up fees, then the Owner shall be entitled to deduct such liquidated damages, amounts and fees due to the Contractor at any time.

.2 If Contractor fails or refuses to complete the Project or portions of the Work pursuant to Section 3.3.2 and Section 3.3.3, any final payment to the Contractor shall be subject to deduction for such amounts as the Architect and Owner, if applicable, shall determine as the cost for completing incomplete Work.

**§ 5.1.7 Retainage**

**§ 5.1.7.1** For each progress payment made prior to Final Completion of the Work, the Owner may withhold the following amount, as retainage, from the payment otherwise due:
*(Insert a percentage or amount to be withheld as retainage from each Application for Payment. The amount of retainage may be limited by governing law.)*

10% if contract valued at < $5,000,000; 5% if contract is valued at $5,000,000+

**§ 5.1.7.1.1** The following items are not subject to retainage:
*(Insert any items not subject to the withholding of retainage, such as general conditions, insurance, etc.)*

None.

**§ 5.1.7.2** Reduction or limitation of retainage, if any, shall be as follows:
*(If the retainage established in Section 5.1.7.1 is to be modified prior to Substantial Completion of the entire Work, including modifications for Substantial Completion of portions of the Work as provided in Section 3.3.2, insert provisions for such modifications.)*

Unless authorized in writing by the Owner, retainage is not due and owing until Final Payment.

**§ 5.1.7.3** Except as set forth in this Section 5.1.7.3, upon Final Completion of the Work, the Contractor may submit an Application for Payment that includes the retainage withheld from prior Applications for Payment pursuant to this Section 5.1.7. The Application for Payment submitted at Final Completion shall not include retainage as follows:
*(Insert any other conditions for release of retainage upon Final Completion.)*

N/A

**§ 5.1.8** If Final Completion of the Work is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor, the Owner shall pay the Contractor amounts due and owing in accordance with Article 9 of AIA Document A201–2017, as amended by the Owner.

**§ 5.1.9** Except with the Owner's prior written approval or as otherwise provided in Section 9.3.2 of the AIA Document A2017-2017, as amended by the Owner, the Contractor shall not make advance payments to suppliers for materials or equipment which have not been delivered and stored at the site.

AIA Document A101 – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 10:55:16 CDT on 07/31/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810996437b2c820ac0e421)

### § 5.2 Final Payment

**§ 5.2.1** Final payment, constituting the entire unpaid balance of the Contract Sum, minus disputed sums, authorized deductions and liquidated damages, shall be made by the Owner to the Contractor after:

.1 the Contractor has provided all close-out documentation required by the Contract Documents, and fully performed the Contract except for the Contractor's responsibility to correct nonconforming Work as provided in Article 12 of AIA Document A201–2017, as amended by the Owner, and to satisfy other requirements, if any, which extend beyond final payment;

.2 Contractor has submitted a final Application for Payment to the Architect; and has provided all documents required by Section 3.5 and Section 9.10.2 of the AIA Document A201-2017 as amended by the Owner; and

.3 a final Certificate for Payment has been properly executed by the Architect.

**§ 5.2.2** The Owner's final payment to the Contractor shall be made no later than 45 days after the issuance of the Architect's final Certificate for Payment, except that no payment shall be considered not paid when due or past due except in accordance with Section 2251.021 of the Texas Government Code.

### § 5.3 Interest

Undisputed payments due and unpaid under the Contract shall bear interest at a rate set forth by Texas Government Code 2251.021, or similarly applicable law from the date payment is due at the rate stated below, or in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located.
*(Insert rate of interest agreed upon, if any.)*

0.00 %

## ARTICLE 6 DISPUTE RESOLUTION

### § 6.1 Initial Decision Maker

The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker pursuant to Article 15 of AIA Document A201–2017, as amended by the Owner, unless the parties appoint below another individual, not a party to this Agreement, to serve as the Initial Decision Maker.
*(If the parties mutually agree, insert the name, address and other contact information of the Initial Decision Maker, if other than the Architect.)*

### § 6.2 Binding Dispute Resolution

For any Claim subject to, but not resolved by, mediation pursuant to Article 15 of AIA Document A201–2017, as amended by the Owner, the method of binding dispute resolution shall be as follows:
*(Check the appropriate box.)*

[ ] Arbitration pursuant to Section 15.4 of AIA Document A201–2017

[ X ] Litigation in a court of competent jurisdiction

[ ] Other *(Specify)*

If the Owner and Contractor do not select a method of binding dispute resolution, or do not subsequently agree in writing to a binding dispute resolution method other than litigation, Claims will be resolved by litigation in a court of competent jurisdiction.

## ARTICLE 7 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION

**§ 7.1** The Contract may be terminated by the Owner or the Contractor as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document A201–2017, as amended by the Owner.

**§ 7.1.1**
*INTENTIONALLY DELETED.*

AIA Document A101 – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 10:55:16 CDT on 07/31/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810996437b2c820ac0e421)

**§ 7.2** The Work may be suspended by the Owner as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document A201–2017, as amended by the Owner.

## ARTICLE 8 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

**§ 8.1** Where reference is made in this Agreement to a provision of AIA Document A201–2017 or another Contract Document, the reference refers to that provision as amended or supplemented by other provisions of the Contract Documents.

**§ 8.2** The Owner's representative:
*(Name, address, email address, and other information)*

Dr. Jason Seybert
Associate Superintendent of Operational Support Services
1703 Wilson, Bldg. B
Humble, TX 773
jason.seybert@humbleisd.net
281-641-871

**§ 8.3** The Contractor's representative:
*(Name, address, email address, and other information)*

**§ 8.4** The Contractor's representative shall be changed without ten days' prior notice to the other party.

**§ 8.5 Insurance and Bonds**

**§ 8.5.1** The Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance as set forth in Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds, and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

**§ 8.5.2** The Contractor shall provide bonds as set forth in AIA Document A101™–2017 Exhibit A, and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

**§ 8.6**
*INTENTIONALLY DELETED*

**§ 8.7** Other provisions:

As designated by the Owner, Contractor will be responsible for inputting project documentation related to the services provided under this Agreement into the Owner's project management software. Owner will be responsible for providing all necessary licenses.

## ARTICLE 9 ENUMERATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

**§ 9.1** This Agreement is comprised of the following documents; in the event of any inconsistency or conflict between or among the documents that comprise this Agreement, the other of precedence shall be:

.1 AIA Document A101™–2017, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor, as amended by the Owner

.2 Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds

.3 AIA Document A201™–2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction

.4 Supplementary Conditions to the AIA Document A201-2017 General Conditions

.5 Drawings

| Number | Title | Date |
|---|---|---|

AIA Document A101 – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 10:55:16 CDT on 07/31/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810996437b2c820ac0e421)

.6 Specifications

| Section | Title | Date | Pages |
|---|---|---|---|

.7 Addenda, if any:

| Number | Date | Pages |
|---|---|---|

Portions of Addenda relating to bidding or competitive purchasing requirements are not part of the Contract Documents unless the bidding or competitive purchasing requirements are also enumerated in this Article 9.

.8 Other Exhibits:
*(Check all boxes that apply and include appropriate information identifying the exhibit where required.)*

[ ] AIA Document E204™–2017, Sustainable Projects Exhibit, dated as indicated below:
*(Insert the date of the E204-2017 incorporated into this Agreement.)*

[ ] The Sustainability Plan:

| Title | Date | Pages |
|---|---|---|

[ X ] Supplementary and other Conditions of the Contract:

| Document | Title | Date | Pages |
|---|---|---|---|
| Supplementary Conditions to the AIA A201-2017 General Conditions | Supplementary Conditions to the AIA A201-2017 General Conditions | | 24 |

.9 Other documents, if any, listed below:
*(List here any additional documents that are intended to form part of the Contract Documents. AIA Document A201™–2017 provides that the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, the Contractor's bid or proposal, portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements, and other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, are not part of the Contract Documents unless enumerated in this Agreement. Any such documents should be listed here only if intended to be part of the Contract Documents.)*

.1 EDGAR Certifications (executed; on file in Purchasing Dept.)
.2 FEMA Certifications (if applicable)
.3 The Project Manual for the Project, including all sections to same, whether issued or created prior to or after the execution of this Agreement.
.4 Statutory Payment and Performance Bonds.
.5 Certificates of Insurance required of the Contractor.
.6 Scale/Schedule of Prevailing Wages.
.7 Modifications to any Contract Documents executed by duly authorized representatives of both the Parties.
.8 Any documents stated in thisAgreement as being a part of or incorporated into this Agreement or theContract.

AIA Document A101 – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 10:55:16 CDT on 07/31/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:**
(68810996437b2c820ac0e421)

This Agreement entered into as of the day and year first written above.

| | |
|---|---|
| **OWNER** *(Signature)* | **CONTRACTOR** *(Signature)* |
| BY: Dr. Roger Brown, Superintendent | BY: TBD |
| *(Printed name and title)* | *(Printed name and title)* |

AIA Document A101 – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 10:55:16 CDT on 07/31/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:**
(68810996437b2c820ac0e421)

# *Additions and Deletions Report for*
## *AIA® Document A101® – 2017*

This Additions and Deletions Report, as defined on page 1 of the associated document, reproduces below all text the author has added to the standard form AIA document in order to complete it, as well as any text the author may have added to or deleted from the original AIA text. Added text is shown underlined. Deleted text is indicated with a horizontal line through the original AIA text.

Note: This Additions and Deletions Report is provided for information purposes only and is not incorporated into or constitute any part of the associated AIA document. This Additions and Deletions Report and its associated document were generated simultaneously by AIA software at 10:55:16 CDT on 07/31/2025.

**Changes to original AIA text**

**PAGE 2**

**§ 3.3 Substantial and Final Completion**

**PAGE 3**

| Portion of Work | Substantial Completion Date |
|---|---|
| | - |

**§ 3.3.3** If the Contractor fails to achieve Substantial Completion or Final Completion as provided in this Section 3.3, liquidated damages, if any, shall be assessed as set forth in Section 4.5.

**§ 3.3.4** Subject to adjustments of the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Documents, Final Completion shall be forty-five (45) calendar days after the date of Substantial Completion.

| Item | Price |
|---|---|
| 1. Staff Parking | |
| 2. Visitor Parking | |
| 3. Daylighting | |

| Item | Price |
|---|---|
| Owner's Contingency Allowance: $500,000.00 | |

| Item | Units and Limitations | Price per Unit ($0.00) |
|---|---|---|
| Cutting and patching of concrete floor slabs | sq. ft. of concrete removed | |
| Miscellaneous and structural steel | pounds of fabricated steel | |
| Drilled Piers | linear ft. of pier | |
| Drilled Piers Casings | linear ft. of pier | |

Additions and Deletions Report for AIA Document A101 – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 10:55:16 CDT on 07/31/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810996437b2c820ac0e421)

**PAGE 4**

**§ 5.1.3** Provided that an Application for Payment is ~~received~~ properly executed by the Architect ~~not later than the day of a month~~, the Owner shall make payment of the amount certified to the Contractor not later than ~~the~~ forty-five (45) days ~~of the month~~. If an Application for Payment is received by the Architect after the application date fixed above, payment of the amount certified shall be made by the Owner not later than Forty-Five ( 45 ) days after the Architect properly executes~~receives~~ the Application for Payment, except that no payment shall be considered not paid when due or past due except in accordance with Section 2251.021 of the Texas Government Code.
*(Federal, state or local laws may require payment within a certain period of time.)*

**§ 5.1.6** In accordance with AIA Document A201™–2017, as amended by the Owner, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, and subject to other provisions of the Contract Documents, the amount of each progress payment shall be providing using the AIA G702 and G703 format and computed as follows:

**PAGE 5**

**.2** The amount, if any, for Work that remains uncorrected and for which the Architect has previously withheld a Certificate for Payment as provided in Article 9 of AIA Document A201–2017, as amended by the Owner;

**.4** For Work performed or defects discovered since the last payment application, any amount for which the Architect may withhold payment, or nullify a Certificate of Payment in whole or in part, as provided in Article 9 of AIA Document A201–2017, as amended by the Owner; and

**.5** Retainage withheld pursuant to Section 5.1.7.

**§ 5.1.6.3** The progress payment amount determined in accordance with Section 5.1.6 shall be further modified under the following circumstances:

.1 If Owner is entitled to deduct liquidated damages, or any other damages or amounts provided in the Contract Documents, including clean-up fees, then the Owner shall be entitled to deduct such liquidated damages, amounts and fees due to the Contractor at any time.

.2 If Contractor fails or refuses to complete the Project or portions of the Work pursuant to Section 3.3.2 and Section 3.3.3, any final payment to the Contractor shall be subject to deduction for such amounts as the Architect and Owner, if applicable, shall determine as the cost for completing incomplete Work.

**§ 5.1.7.1** For each progress payment made prior to ~~Substantial~~ Final Completion of the Work, the Owner may withhold the following amount, as retainage, from the payment otherwise due:
*(Insert a percentage or amount to be withheld as retainage from each Application for Payment. The amount of retainage may be limited by governing law.)*

**§ 5.1.7.3** Except as set forth in this Section 5.1.7.3, upon ~~Substantial~~ Final Completion of the Work, the Contractor may submit an Application for Payment that includes the retainage withheld from prior Applications for Payment pursuant to this Section 5.1.7. The Application for Payment submitted at Final ~~Substantial~~ Completion shall not include retainage as follows:
*(Insert any other conditions for release of retainage upon ~~Substantial~~ Final Completion.)*

**§ 5.1.8** If F~~f~~inal C~~c~~ompletion of the Work is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor, the Owner shall pay the Contractor ~~any additional~~ amounts due and owing in accordance with Article 9 of AIA Document A201–2017, as amended by the Owner.

**PAGE 6**

**§ 5.1.9** Except with the Owner's prior written approval or as otherwise provided in Section 9.3.2 of the AIA Document A2017-2017, as amended by the Owner, the Contractor shall not make advance payments to suppliers for materials or equipment which have not been delivered and stored at the site.

Additions and Deletions Report for AIA Document A101 – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 10:55:16 CDT on 07/31/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810996437b2c820ac0e421)

§ 5.2.1 Final payment, constituting the entire unpaid balance of the Contract Sum, minus disputed sums, authorized deductions and liquidated damages, shall be made by the Owner to the Contractor after: ~~when~~

.1 the Contractor has provided all close-out documentation required by the Contract Documents, and fully performed the Contract except for the Contractor's responsibility to correct nonconforming Work as provided in Article 12 of AIA Document A201–2017, as amended by the Owner, and to satisfy other requirements, if any, which extend beyond final payment; ~~and~~

.2 Contractor has submitted a final Application for Payment to the Architect; and has provided all documents required by Section 3.5 and Section 9.10.2 of the AIA Document A201-2017 as amended by the Owner; and

.3 a final Certificate for Payment has been ~~r~~issued~~d~~properly executed by the Architect.

§ 5.2.2 The Owner's final payment to the Contractor shall be made no later than 45~~30~~ days after the issuance of the Architect's final Certificate for Payment, except that no payment shall be considered not paid when due or past due except in accordance with Section 2251.021 of the Texas Government Code.~~or as follows:~~

Undisputed p~~P~~ayments due and unpaid under the Contract shall bear interest at a rate set forth by Texas Government Code 2251.021, or similarly applicable law from the date payment is due at the rate stated below, or in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located.
*(Insert rate of interest agreed upon, if any.)*

The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker pursuant to Article 15 of AIA Document A201–2017, as amended by the Owner, unless the parties appoint below another individual, not a party to this Agreement, to serve as the Initial Decision Maker.
*(If the parties mutually agree, insert the name, address and other contact information of the Initial Decision Maker, if other than the Architect.)*

For any Claim subject to, but not resolved by, mediation pursuant to Article 15 of AIA Document A201–2017, as amended by the Owner, the method of binding dispute resolution shall be as follows:
*(Check the appropriate box.)*

§ 7.1 The Contract may be terminated by the Owner or the Contractor as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document A201–2017, as amended by the Owner.

**PAGE 7**

§ 7.1.1 ~~If the Contract is terminated for the Owner's convenience in accordance with Article 14 of AIA Document A201–2017, then the Owner shall pay the Contractor a termination fee as follows:~~
~~*(Insert the amount of, or method for determining, the fee, if any, payable to the Contractor following a termination for the Owner's convenience.)*~~*INTENTIONALLY DELETED.*

§ 7.2 The Work may be suspended by the Owner as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document A201–2017, as amended by the Owner.

§ 8.4 ~~Neither the Owner's nor t~~The Contractor's representative shall be changed without ten days' prior notice to the other party.

§ 8.5.1 The ~~Owner and the~~ Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance as set forth in ~~AIA Document A101™–2017, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor where the basis of payment is a Stipulated Sum,~~ Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds, and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 8.6 ~~Notice in electronic format, pursuant to Article 1 of AIA Document A201–2017, may be given in accordance with a building information modeling exhibit, if completed, or as otherwise set forth below:~~
~~*(If other than in accordance with a building information modeling exhibit, insert requirements for delivering notice in electronic format such as name, title, and email address of the recipient and whether and how the system will be required to generate a read receipt for the transmission.)*~~*INTENTIONALLY DELETED*

Additions and Deletions Report for AIA Document A101 – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 10:55:16 CDT on 07/31/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810996437b2c820ac0e421)

§ 9.1 This Agreement is comprised of the following documents; in the event of any inconsistency or conflict between or among the documents that comprise this Agreement, the other of precedence shall be:

.1 AIA Document A101™–2017, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor, as amended by the Owner

.2 ~~AIA Document A101™–2017,~~ Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds

.4 Supplementary Conditions to the AIA Document A201-2017 General Conditions~~Building information modeling exhibit, dated as indicated below:~~
~~*(Insert the date of the building information modeling exhibit incorporated into this Agreement.)*~~

**PAGE 8**

| Number | Title | Date | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | - | | |
| **Section** | **Title** | **Date** | **Pages** |
| | | | |
| **Number** | **Date** | **Pages** | |
| | | | |

Portions of Addenda relating to bidding or ~~proposal~~ competitive purchasing requirements are not part of the Contract Documents unless the bidding or ~~proposal~~ competitive purchasing requirements are also enumerated in this Article 9.

| Document | Title | Date | Pages |
|---|---|---|---|
| Supplementary Conditions to the AIA A201-2017 General Conditions | Supplementary Conditions to the AIA A201-2017 General Conditions | | 24 |

**Variable Information**

**PAGE 1**

**AGREEMENT** made as of the Thirty-first day of July in the year Two Thousand Twenty-Five
*(In words, indicate day, month and year.)*

Humble Independent School District

10203 Birchridge Drive

Humble, TX 77338

Timberwood Middle School Additions Project

18450 Timber Forest Drive

Additions and Deletions Report for AIA Document A101 – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 10:55:16 CDT on 07/31/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810996437b2c820ac0e421)

Humble, TX 77346

Brown Reynolds Watford Architects, Inc. ("BRW")

3535 Travis Street, Suite 250

Dallas, TX 75204

**PAGE 2**

[ ] The date of this Agreement.

[ ] A date set forth in a notice to proceed issued by the Owner.

[ X ] Established as follows:
*(Insert a date or a means to determine the date of commencement of the Work.)*

The date of commencement shall be the day that the Contractor receives a Notice to Proceed from the Owner. If a permit, or other approvals, are not available for the entire Project, the Contractor must commence work on those portions of the Project that do not require a permit or other approvals on receipt of a Notice to Proceed. Work at the Project site shall not begin until Owner has received all required payment and performance bonds and insurance.

**PAGE 3**

[ ] Not later than ( ) calendar days from the date of commencement of the Work.

[ X ] By the following date: December 01, 2026

**PAGE 4**

$1,500.00 per day as set forth in Paragraphs 8.3.4 and 8.3.5 of the Supplementary Conditions of the A201-2017.

N/A

N/A

**§ 5.1.3** Provided that an Application for Payment is properly executed by the Architect , the Owner shall make payment of the amount certified to the Contractor no later than forty-five (45) days . If an Application for Payment is received by the Architect after the application date fixed above, payment of the amount certified shall be made by the Owner no later than Forty-Five ( 45 ) days after the Architect properly executes the Application for Payment, except that no payment shall be considered not paid when due or past due except in accordance with Section 2251.021 of the Texas Government Code.
*(Federal, state or local laws may require payment within a certain period of time.)*

**PAGE 5**

10% if contract valued at < $5,000,000; 5% if contract is valued at $5,000,000+

None.

Unless authorized in writing by the Owner, retainage is not due and owing until Final Payment.

N/A

**PAGE 6**

0.00 %

Additions and Deletions Report for AIA Document A101 – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 10:55:16 CDT on 07/31/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810996437b2c820ac0e421)

[ ] Arbitration pursuant to Section 15.4 of AIA Document A201–2017

[ X ] Litigation in a court of competent jurisdiction

[ ] Other *(Specify)*

**PAGE 7**

Dr. Jason Seybert

Associate Superintendent of Operational Support Services

1703 Wilson, Bldg. B

Humble, TX 773

jason.seybert@humbleisd.net

281-641-871

As designated by the Owner, Contractor will be responsible for inputting project documentation related to the services provided under this Agreement into the Owner's project management software. Owner will be responsible for providing all necessary licenses.

**PAGE 8**

[ X ] Supplementary and other Conditions of the Contract:

.1 EDGAR Certifications (executed; on file in Purchasing Dept.)
.2 FEMA Certifications (if applicable)
.3 The Project Manual for the Project, including all sections to same, whether issued or created prior to or after the execution of this Agreement.
.4 Statutory Payment and Performance Bonds.
.5 Certificates of Insurance required of the Contractor.
.6 Scale/Schedule of Prevailing Wages.
.7 Modifications to any Contract Documents executed by duly authorized representatives of both the Parties.
.8 Any documents stated in thisAgreement as being a part of or incorporated into this Agreement or theContract.

Additions and Deletions Report for AIA Document A101 – 2017. Copyright © 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1967, 1974, 1977, 1987, 1991, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 10:55:16 CDT on 07/31/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810996437b2c820ac0e421)

# *Certification of Document's Authenticity*

*AIA® Document D401™ – 2003*

I, , hereby certify, to the best of my knowledge, information and belief, that I created the attached final document simultaneously with its associated Additions and Deletions Report and this certification at 10:55:16 CDT on 07/31/2025 under Order No. 20250143828 from AIA Contract Documents software and that in preparing the attached final document I made no changes to the original text of AIA® Document A101™ - 2017, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor where the basis of payment is a Stipulated Sum, other than those additions and deletions shown in the associated Additions and Deletions Report.

_____

*(Signed)*

_____

*(Title)*

_____

*(Dated)*

AIA Document D401 – 2003. Copyright © 1992 and 2003. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 10:55:16 CDT on 07/31/2025 under Order No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810996437b2c820ac0e421)

**EXHIBIT A to A101-2017**

**OWNER'S CONSTRUCTION BOND & INSURANCE REQUIREMENTS**

*It is suggested that this Exhibit be provided to the Contractor's insurance provider.*

Contractor shall not commence work until all required bonds and insurance coverages have been obtained and such insurance has been reviewed and accepted by the District. Certificates of Insurance on the current ACORD form shall be issued to the District showing all required insurance coverages.

**Bonds Required**

Construction, installation and service contracts (including repair and alteration) exceeding $100,000 requires that a 100% Performance Bond be furnished by the successful bidder (contractor). Contracts exceeding $25,000 require that a 100% Payment Bond be furnished by the successful bidder (contractor). All such bids must include a 5% Bid Bond.

Bonds shall be issued by a company authorized to do business in the State of Texas with an A.M. Best Company rating of at least A- X and included on the U.S. Department of the Treasury Listing of Approved Sureties (Dept. Circular 570). The contractor shall be responsible for obtaining bonds and shall absorb any and all costs of such Bonds.

| **Insurance Required** | **Limit Required** |
|---|---|
| **Automobile Liability** insurance covering Any Auto | $1,000,000 Combined Single Limit |
| **Comprehensive (Commercial) General Liability** insurance including Products, Completed Operations, Independent Contractors, Broad Form Property Damage, Pollution and Blanket Contractual Liability coverages. Any XCU exclusions to be removed when underground work is performed. | $1,000,000 Aggregate, Occurrence and Personal Injury<br>$ 500,000 Fire Damage<br>$ 5,000 Medical Payments<br>Per Project Aggregate (CG 70 49)<br>Evidence of coverage must be shown on certificates of insurance. |
| **Professional Errors & Omissions Liability** insurance is required from all professionals consultants; e.g., architects and engineers. | $2,000,000 Per Claim<br>Retroactive Date preceding date of contract must be shown<br>Extended Reporting Period three years past completion of contract |
| **Workers Compensation** insurance with limits to comply with the requirements of the Texas Workers' Compensation Act<br>Employers Liability insurance | Statutory Limits<br>$1,000,000 |
| **Umbrella or Excess Liability** insurance (excess of primary General Liability, Automobile Liability and WC Coverage B) | $5,000,000 |

Limits for primary policies may differ from those shown when Umbrella or Excess Liability insurance is provided.

| | |
|---|---|
| **All Risk Builders Risk Property Insurance** shall be required for all construction contracts when property of the owner is at risk or in the care, custody and control of the Contractor. Builders Risk insurance shall be required for all construction contracts requiring a bond. All Property insurance shall include coverage against the perils of Flood and Earthquake and Domestic Terrorism. (Installation Floater may be substituted when contract involves installation only.) | Contract Limit or Replacement Cost Value of Scope of Work which ever is greater<br><br>Permission to Occupy granted<br><br>Deductible: 1% of contract,<br>$50,000 maximum, unless otherwise approved by the Owner. |

**Insurance Conditions**

All insurance coverages shall be issued on an Occurrence basis (except Professional Liability) by companies acceptable to District and licensed to do business in the State of Texas by the Texas Department of Insurance. Such companies shall have a Best's Key rating of at least "A- X".

All certificates must include:

1. The location or description and the bid number, CSP number or Purchase Order number,
2. A 60 day notice of cancellation of any non-renewal, cancellation or material change to any of the policies, and copies of CG 02 05, TE 02 02A and WC 42 06 01 or their equivalents specifically naming the District,
3. "Additional Insured" on the Property, General Liability, Automobile Liability and Umbrella (Excess) Liability policies naming the District.
4. A "Waiver of Subrogation" clause in favor of the District will be attached to the Workers Compensation, General Liability, Automobile Liability, Umbrella Liability and the Property insurance policies.
5. In addition to certificates of insurance, copies of policy endorsements specifically naming the District must be provided (a) listing the District as Additional Insured: CG 20 10, CG 20 37, CA 04 03 and (b) showing waivers of subrogation in favor of the District: CG 24 04, TE 20 46A, WC 42 03 04A, or their equivalents.

All insurance must be maintained for one year following substantial completion with Certificates of Insurance provided.

Contractor shall be responsible for payment of all deductibles; the District shall approve the deductibles selected.

If any policy has aggregate limits, a statement of claims against the aggregate limits is required.

The District reserves the right to review the insurance requirements during the effective period of any contract to make reasonable adjustments to insurance coverages and limits when deemed reasonably prudent by District based upon changes in statutory laws, court decisions or potential increase in exposure to loss.

# SECTION 00 72 13 - GENERAL CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

A. The General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, AIA Document A201, 2017 edition, hereinafter referred to as the "General Conditions" is hereby made a part of this Specification, to the same extent as if reproduced in full except as modified, revised,or rescinded by the Supplementary Conditions. Copies of the General Conditions may be obtained from the American Institute of Architects, or may be examined at the office of the Architect.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

Not used.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

Not used.

END OF SECTION 00 72 13

# AIA® Document A201® – 2017

## *General Conditions of the Contract for Construction*

**for the following PROJECT:**
*(Name and location or address)*

Timberwood Middle School Additions Project
18450 Timber Forest Drive
Humble, TX 77346

**THE OWNER:**
*(Name, legal status and address)*

Humble Independent School District
10203 Birchridge Drive
Humble, TX 77338

**THE ARCHITECT:**
*(Name, legal status and address)*

Brown Reynolds Watford Architects, Inc. ("BRW")
3535 Travis Street, Suite 250
Dallas, TX 75204

**ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**
The author of this document may have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

For guidance in modifying this document to include supplementary conditions, see AIA Document A503™–2017, Guide for Supplementary Conditions.

**TABLE OF ARTICLES**


1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

2 OWNER

3 CONTRACTOR

4 ARCHITECT

5 SUBCONTRACTORS

6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS

7 CHANGES IN THE WORK

8 TIME

9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

11 INSURANCE AND BONDS

12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK

13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS



AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

## 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

## 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

**INDEX**
(Topics and numbers in bold are Section headings.)


**Acceptance of Nonconforming Work**
9.6.6, 9.9.3, **12.3**
Acceptance of Work
9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.3
**Access to Work**
**3.16**, 6.2.1, 12.1
Accident Prevention
10
Acts and Omissions
3.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.8, 3.18, 4.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 10.2.5, 10.2.8, 13.3.2, 14.1, 15.1.2, 15.2
Addenda
1.1.1
Additional Costs, Claims for
3.7.4, 3.7.5, 10.3.2, 15.1.5
**Additional Inspections and Testing**
9.4.2, 9.8.3, 12.2.1, **13.4**
**Additional Time, Claims for**
3.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 8.3.2, **15.1.6**
**Administration of the Contract**
3.1.3, **4.2**, 9.4, 9.5
Advertisement or Invitation to Bid
1.1.1
Aesthetic Effect
4.2.13
**Allowances**
**3.8**
**Applications for Payment**
4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.5.4, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.10
Approvals
2.1.1, 2.3.1, 2.5, 3.1.3, 3.10.2, 3.12.8, 3.12.9, 3.12.10.1, 4.2.7, 9.3.2, 13.4.1
**Arbitration**
8.3.1, 15.3.2, **15.4**
**ARCHITECT**
**4**
**Architect**, Definition of
**4.1.1**
Architect, Extent of Authority
2.5, 3.12.7, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.3, 7.1.2, 7.3.4, 7.4, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.8, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.1, 12.2.1, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.4, 15.2.1
Architect, Limitations of Authority and Responsibility
2.1.1, 3.12.4, 3.12.8, 3.12.10, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.10, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 5.2.1, 7.4, 9.4.2, 9.5.4, 9.6.4, 15.1.4, 15.2
Architect's Additional Services and Expenses
2.5, 12.2.1, 13.4.2, 13.4.3, 14.2.4
Architect's Administration of the Contract
3.1.3, 3.7.4, 15.2, 9.4.1, 9.5
Architect's Approvals
2.5, 3.1.3, 3.5, 3.10.2, 4.2.7
Architect's Authority to Reject Work
3.5, 4.2.6, 12.1.2, 12.2.1
Architect's Copyright
1.1.7, 1.5
Architect's Decisions
3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 4.2.14, 6.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.4.2, 15.2
Architect's Inspections
3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4
Architect's Instructions
3.2.4, 3.3.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 13.4.2
Architect's Interpretations
4.2.11, 4.2.12
Architect's Project Representative
4.2.10
Architect's Relationship with Contractor
1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.9.3, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3, 12, 13.3.2, 13.4, 15.2
Architect's Relationship with Subcontractors
1.1.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 11.3
Architect's Representations
9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1
Architect's Site Visits
3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4
Asbestos
10.3.1
Attorneys' Fees
3.18.1, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3
Award of Separate Contracts
6.1.1, 6.1.2
**Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work**
**5.2**
**Basic Definitions**
**1.1**
Bidding Requirements
1.1.1
Binding Dispute Resolution
8.3.1, 9.7, 11.5, 13.1, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.2.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6.1, 15.3.1, 15.3.2, 15.3.3, 15.4.1
Bonds, Lien
7.3.4.4, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.3
**Bonds, Performance, and Payment**
7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**, 11.1.3, **11.5**
**Building Information Models Use and Reliance**
**1.8**
Building Permit
3.7.1
**Capitalization**
**1.3**
Certificate of Substantial Completion
9.8.3, 9.8.4, 9.8.5
**Certificates for Payment**
4.2.1, 4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.4
Certificates of Inspection, Testing or Approval
13.4.4
Certificates of Insurance
9.10.2
**Change Orders**



AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.8.2.3, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 5.2.3, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, **7.2**, 7.3.2, 7.3.7, 7.3.9, 7.3.10, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 9.10.3, 10.3.2, 11.2, 11.5, 12.1.2
**Change Orders**, Definition of **7.2.1**
**CHANGES IN THE WORK**
2.2.2, 3.11, 4.2.8, **7**, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 11.5
**Claims**, Definition of **15.1.1**
Claims, Notice of
1.6.2, 15.1.3
**CLAIMS AND DISPUTES**
3.2.4, 6.1.1, 6.3, 7.3.9, 9.3.3, 9.10.4, 10.3.3, **15**, 15.4
Claims and Timely Assertion of Claims
15.4.1
**Claims for Additional Cost**
3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 7.3.9, 9.5.2, 10.2.5, 10.3.2, **15.1.5**
**Claims for Additional Time**
3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 6.1.1, 8.3.2, 9.5.2, 10.3.2, **15.1.6**
**Concealed or Unknown Conditions, Claims for 3.7.4**
Claims for Damages
3.2.4, 3.18, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.2.5, 10.3.3, 11.3, 11.3.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.7
Claims Subject to Arbitration
15.4.1
**Cleaning Up**
**3.15**, 6.3
Commencement of the Work, Conditions Relating to
2.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.4.1, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12.6, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 6.2.2, 8.1.2, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 11.1, 11.2, **15.1.5**
**Commencement of the Work**, Definition of **8.1.2**
**Communications**
3.9.1, **4.2.4**
Completion, Conditions Relating to
3.4.1, 3.11, 3.15, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 8.2, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10, 12.2, 14.1.2, 15.1.2
**COMPLETION, PAYMENTS AND 9**
Completion, Substantial
3.10.1, 4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.3, 12.2, 15.1.2
Compliance with Laws
2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14.1.1, 14.2.1.3, 15.2.8, 15.4.2, 15.4.3
Concealed or Unknown Conditions
3.7.4, 4.2.8, 8.3.1, 10.3
Conditions of the Contract
1.1.1, 6.1.1, 6.1.4
Consent, Written
3.4.2, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 13.2, 15.4.4.2
**Consolidation or Joinder**
**15.4.4**
**CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS**
1.1.4, **6**
**Construction Change Directive**, Definition of **7.3.1**
**Construction Change Directives**
1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1.1, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, **7.3**, 9.3.1.1
Construction Schedules, Contractor's
3.10, 3.11, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2
**Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts**
**5.4**, 14.2.2.2
**Continuing Contract Performance**
**15.1.4**
**Contract**, Definition of
**1.1.2**
**CONTRACT, TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE**
5.4.1.1, 5.4.2, 11.5, **14**
Contract Administration
3.1.3, 4, 9.4, 9.5
Contract Award and Execution, Conditions Relating to
3.7.1, 3.10, 5.2, 6.1
Contract Documents, Copies Furnished and Use of
1.5.2, 2.3.6, 5.3
**Contract Documents**, Definition of
**1.1.1**
**Contract Sum**
2.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.8, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 7.3, 7.4, **9.1**, 9.2, 9.4.2, 9.5.1.4, 9.6.7, 9.7, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.1.2, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, **15.1.5, 15.2.5**
**Contract Sum**, Definition of
**9.1**
Contract Time
1.1.4, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 6.1.5, 7.2.1.3, 7.3.1, 7.3.5, 7.3.6, 7, 7, 7.3.10, 7.4, 8.1.1, 8.2.1, 8.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 12.1.1, 12.1.2, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, 15.1.6.1, 15.2.5
**Contract Time**, Definition of
8.1.1
**CONTRACTOR**
**3**
Contractor, Definition of
**3.1, 6.1.2**
**Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules**
**3.10**, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 4.2.3, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2
Contractor's Employees
2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2, 10.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1
**Contractor's Liability Insurance**
**11.1**
Contractor's Relationship with Separate Contractors and Owner's Forces
3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 6, 11.3, 12.2.4
Contractor's Relationship with Subcontractors
1.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.18.1, 3.18.2, 4.2.4, 5, 9.6.2, 9.6.7, 9.10.2, 11.2, 11.3, 11.4
Contractor's Relationship with the Architect
1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2, 3.5.1, 3.7.4, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6,

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

10.3, 11.3, 12, 13.4, 15.1.3, 15.2.1
Contractor's Representations
3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.6, 6.2.2, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.8.2
Contractor's Responsibility for Those Performing the Work
3.3.2, 3.18, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 9.5.1, 10.2.8
Contractor's Review of Contract Documents
3.2
Contractor's Right to Stop the Work
2.2.2, 9.7
Contractor's Right to Terminate the Contract
14.1
Contractor's Submittals
3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3
Contractor's Superintendent
3.9, 10.2.6
Contractor's Supervision and Construction Procedures
1.2.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.6, 8.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4
Coordination and Correlation
1.2, 3.2.1, 3.3.1, 3.10, 3.12.6, 6.1.3, 6.2.1
Copies Furnished of Drawings and Specifications
1.5, 2.3.6, 3.11
Copyrights
1.5, **3.17**
Correction of Work
2.5, 3.7.3, 9.4.2, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 12.1.2, **12.2**, 12.3, 15.1.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1
**Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents**
**1.2**
**Cost**, Definition of
**7.3.4**
Costs
2.5, 3.2.4, 3.7.3, 3.8.2, 3.15.2, 5.4.2, 6.1.1, 6.2.3, 7.3.3.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.8, 7.3.9, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 10.3.6, 11.2, 12.1.2, 12.2.1, 12.2.4, 13.4, 14
**Cutting and Patching**
**3.14**, 6.2.5
Damage to Construction of Owner or Separate Contractors
3.14.2, 6.2.4, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4
Damage to the Work
3.14.2, 9.9.1, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4
Damages, Claims for
3.2.4, 3.18, 6.1.1, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.3.3, 11.3.2, 11.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.7
Damages for Delay
6.2.3, 8.3.3, 9.5.1.6, 9.7, 10.3.2, 14.3.2
**Date of Commencement of the Work**, Definition of
**8.1.2**
**Date of Substantial Completion**, Definition of
**8.1.3**
**Day**, Definition of
**8.1.4**
Decisions of the Architect
3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 6.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.4.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1, 15.2
**Decisions to Withhold Certification**
9.4.1, **9.5**, 9.7, 14.1.1.3
Defective or Nonconforming Work, Acceptance, Rejection and Correction of
2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.3, 9.5.1, 9.5.3, 9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.1
Definitions
1.1, 2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.5, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 3.12.3, 4.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.1, 9.1, 9.8.1, 15.1.1
**Delays and Extensions of Time**
**3.2**, **3.7.4**, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, **7.4**, **8.3**, 9.5.1, **9.7**, 10.3.2, **10.4**, 14.3.2, **15.1.6**, 15.2.5
**Digital Data Use and Transmission**
**1.7**
Disputes
6.3, 7.3.9, 15.1, 15.2
**Documents and Samples at the Site**
**3.11**
**Drawings**, Definition of
**1.1.5**
Drawings and Specifications, Use and Ownership of
3.11
Effective Date of Insurance
8.2.2
**Emergencies**
**10.4**, 14.1.1.2, **15.1.5**
Employees, Contractor's
3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2, 10.3.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1
Equipment, Labor, or Materials
1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2
Execution and Progress of the Work
1.1.3, 1.2.1, 1.2.2, 2.3.4, 2.3.6, 3.1, 3.3.1, 3.4.1, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12, 3.14, 4.2, 6.2.2, 7.1.3, 7.3.6, 8.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.1, 10.2, 10.3, 12.1, 12.2, 14.2, 14.3.1, 15.1.4
Extensions of Time
3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3, 7.4, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3, 15.1.6, **15.2.5**
**Failure of Payment**
9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2
Faulty Work
(See Defective or Nonconforming Work)
**Final Completion and Final Payment**
4.2.1, 4.2.9, 9.8.2, **9.10**, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3
Financial Arrangements, Owner's
2.2.1, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4
**GENERAL PROVISIONS**
**1**
**Governing Law**
**13.1**
Guarantees (See Warranty)
**Hazardous Materials and Substances**
10.2.4, **10.3**
Identification of Subcontractors and Suppliers
5.2.1
**Indemnification**
3.17, **3.18**, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3, 11.3
**Information and Services Required of the Owner**

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

2.1.2, **2.2**, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10.1, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5, 9.6.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4
**Initial Decision**
**15.2**
**Initial Decision Maker, Definition of**
1.1.8
Initial Decision Maker, Decisions
14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5
Initial Decision Maker, Extent of Authority
14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5
**Injury or Damage to Person or Property**
**10.2.8**, 10.4
Inspections
3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 12.2.1, 13.4
Instructions to Bidders
1.1.1
Instructions to the Contractor
3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.8.1, 5.2.1, 7, 8.2.2, 12, 13.4.2
**Instruments of Service**, Definition of
**1.1.7**
Insurance
6.1.1, 7.3.4, 8.2.2, 9.3.2, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.2.5, **11**
Insurance, Notice of Cancellation or Expiration
11.1.4, 11.2.3
**Insurance, Contractor's Liability**
**11.1**
Insurance, Effective Date of
8.2.2, 14.4.2
**Insurance, Owner's Liability**
**11.2**
**Insurance, Property**
**10.2.5**, 11.2, 11.4, 11.5
Insurance, Stored Materials
9.3.2
**INSURANCE AND BONDS**
**11**
Insurance Companies, Consent to Partial Occupancy
9.9.1
Insured loss, Adjustment and Settlement of
11.5
Intent of the Contract Documents
1.2.1, 4.2.7, 4.2.12, 4.2.13
**Interest**
**13.5**
**Interpretation**
1.1.8, 1.2.3, **1.4**, 4.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 15.1.1
Interpretations, Written
4.2.11, 4.2.12
Judgment on Final Award
15.4.2
**Labor and Materials, Equipment**
1.1.3, 1.1.6, **3.4**, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2
Labor Disputes
8.3.1
Laws and Regulations
1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8, 15.4
Liens
2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8
Limitations, Statutes of
12.2.5, 15.1.2, 15.4.1.1
Limitations of Liability
3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.10, 3.12.10.1, 3.17, 3.18.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 6.2.2, 9.4.2, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 9.6.8, 10.2.5, 10.3.3, 11.3, 12.2.5, 13.3.1
Limitations of Time
2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2.7, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4.1, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14, 15, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5
**Materials, Hazardous**
10.2.4, **10.3**
Materials, Labor, Equipment and
1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4.1, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2
Means, Methods, Techniques, Sequences and Procedures of Construction
3.3.1, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 9.4.2
Mechanic's Lien
2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8
**Mediation**
8.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6, **15.3**, 15.4.1, 15.4.1.1
**Minor Changes in the Work**
1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1, **7.4**
**MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**
**13**
**Modifications**, Definition of
**1.1.1**
Modifications to the Contract
1.1.1, 1.1.2, 2.5, 3.11, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 5.2.3, 7, 8.3.1, 9.7, 10.3.2
**Mutual Responsibility**
**6.2**
**Nonconforming Work, Acceptance of**
9.6.6, 9.9.3, **12.3**
Nonconforming Work, Rejection and Correction of
2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4, 12.2
**Notice**
**1.6**, 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 2.1.2, 2.2.2., 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.5, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.12.9, 3.12.10, 5.2.1, 7.4, 8.2.2 9.6.8, 9.7, 9.10.1, 10.2.8, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1, 14.2.2, 14.4.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5, 15.1.6, 15.4.1
Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Insurance
11.1.4, 11.2.3
**Notice of Claims**
1.6.2, 2.1.2, 3.7.4, 9.6.8, 10.2.8, **15.1.3**, 15.1.5, 15.1.6, 15.2.8, 15.3.2, 15.4.1
Notice of Testing and Inspections
13.4.1, 13.4.2
Observations, Contractor's

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

3.2, 3.7.4
Occupancy
2.3.1, 9.6.6, 9.8
Orders, Written
1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9.2, 7, 8.2.2, 11.5, 12.1, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.2, 14.3.1
**OWNER**
**2**
**Owner**, Definition of
**2.1.1**
**Owner, Evidence of Financial Arrangements**
**2.2**, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4
**Owner, Information and Services Required of the**
2.1.2, **2.2**, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5, 9.3.2, 9.6.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4
Owner's Authority
1.5, 2.1.1, 2.3.32.4, 2.5, 3.4.2, 3.8.1, 3.12.10, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.9, 5.2.1, 5.2.4, 5.4.1, 6.1, 6.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 9.3.2, 9.5.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 11.4, 11.5, 12.2.2, 12.3, 13.2.2, 14.3, 14.4, 15.2.7
**Owner's Insurance**
**11.2**
Owner's Relationship with Subcontractors
1.1.2, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 9.6.4, 9.10.2, 14.2.2
**Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work**
**2.5**, 14.2.2
**Owner's Right to Clean Up**
**6.3**
**Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts**
**6.1**
**Owner's Right to Stop the Work**
**2.4**
Owner's Right to Suspend the Work
14.3
Owner's Right to Terminate the Contract
14.2, 14.4
**Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications and Other Instruments of Service**
1.1.1, 1.1.6, 1.1.7, **1.5**, 2.3.6, 3.2.2, 3.11, 3.17, 4.2.12, 5.3
**Partial Occupancy or Use**
9.6.6, **9.9**
**Patching, Cutting and**
**3.14**, 6.2.5
Patents
3.17
**Payment, Applications for**
4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.8.5, 9.10.1, 14.2.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3
**Payment, Certificates for**
4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4
**Payment, Failure of**
9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2
Payment, Final
4.2.1, 4.2.9, **9.10**, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3
**Payment Bond, Performance Bond and**
7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**
**Payments, Progress**
9.3, **9.6**, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4
**PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION**
**9**
Payments to Subcontractors
5.4.2, 9.5.1.3, 9.6.2, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 14.2.1.2
PCB
10.3.1
**Performance Bond and Payment Bond**
7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**
**Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws**
2.3.1, **3.7**, 3.13, 7.3.4.4, 10.2.2
**PERSONS AND PROPERTY, PROTECTION OF**
**10**
Polychlorinated Biphenyl
10.3.1
**Product Data**, Definition of
**3.12.2**
**Product Data and Samples, Shop Drawings**
3.11, **3.12**, 4.2.7
**Progress and Completion**
4.2.2, **8.2**, 9.8, 9.9.1, 14.1.4, 15.1.4
**Progress Payments**
9.3, **9.6**, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4
**Project**, Definition of
**1.1.4**
Project Representatives
4.2.10
**Property Insurance**
10.2.5, **11.2**
**Proposal Requirements**
1.1.1
**PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY**
**10**
Regulations and Laws
1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8, 15.4
Rejection of Work
4.2.6, 12.2.1
Releases and Waivers of Liens
9.3.1, 9.10.2
Representations
3.2.1, 3.5, 3.12.6, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1
Representatives
2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.9, 4.1.1, 4.2.10, 13.2.1
Responsibility for Those Performing the Work
3.3.2, 3.18, 4.2.2, 4.2.3, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 6.3, 9.5.1, 10
Retainage
9.3.1, 9.6.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3
**Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor**
**3.2**, 3.12.7, 6.1.3
Review of Contractor's Submittals by Owner and Architect
3.10.1, 3.10.2, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2, 5.2, 6.1.3, 9.2, 9.8.2
Review of Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples by Contractor

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

3.12
**Rights and Remedies**
1.1.2, 2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.15.2, 4.2.6, 5.3, 5.4, 6.1, 6.3, 7.3.1, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.2.5, 10.3, 12.2.1, 12.2.2, 12.2.4, **13.3**, 14, 15.4
**Royalties, Patents and Copyrights**
**3.17**
Rules and Notices for Arbitration
15.4.1
**Safety of Persons and Property**
**10.2**, 10.4
**Safety Precautions and Programs**
3.3.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 5.3, **10.1**, 10.2, 10.4
**Samples**, Definition of
**3.12.3**
**Samples, Shop Drawings, Product Data and**
3.11, **3.12**, 4.2.7
**Samples at the Site, Documents and**
**3.11**
**Schedule of Values**
**9.2**, 9.3.1
Schedules, Construction
3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2
Separate Contracts and Contractors
1.1.4, 3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.7, 6, 8.3.1, 12.1.2
**Separate Contractors**, Definition of
**6.1.1**
**Shop Drawings**, Definition of
**3.12.1**
**Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples**
3.11, **3.12**, 4.2.7
**Site, Use of**
**3.13**, 6.1.1, 6.2.1
Site Inspections
3.2.2, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 3.7.4, 4.2, 9.9.2, 9.4.2, 9.10.1, 13.4
Site Visits, Architect's
3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4
Special Inspections and Testing
4.2.6, 12.2.1, 13.4
**Specifications**, Definition of
**1.1.6**
**Specifications**
1.1.1, **1.1.6**, 1.2.2, 1.5, 3.12.10, 3.17, 4.2.14
Statute of Limitations
15.1.2, 15.4.1.1
Stopping the Work
2.2.2, 2.4, 9.7, 10.3, 14.1
Stored Materials
6.2.1, 9.3.2, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4
**Subcontractor**, Definition of
**5.1.1**
**SUBCONTRACTORS**
**5**
Subcontractors, Work by
1.2.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.1, 3.18, 4.2.3, 5.2.3, 5.3, 5.4, 9.3.1.2, 9.6.7
**Subcontractual Relations**
**5.3**, 5.4, 9.3.1.2, 9.6, 9.10, 10.2.1, 14.1, 14.2.1
Submittals
3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 7.3.4, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3
Submittal Schedule
3.10.2, 3.12.5, 4.2.7
**Subrogation, Waivers of**
6.1.1, **11.3**
**Substances, Hazardous**
**10.3**
**Substantial Completion**
4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, **9.8**, 9.9.1, 9.10.3, 12.2, 15.1.2
**Substantial Completion**, Definition of
**9.8.1**
Substitution of Subcontractors
5.2.3, 5.2.4
Substitution of Architect
2.3.3
Substitutions of Materials
3.4.2, 3.5, 7.3.8
**Sub-subcontractor**, Definition of
**5.1.2**
Subsurface Conditions
3.7.4
**Successors and Assigns**
**13.2**
**Superintendent**
**3.9**, 10.2.6
**Supervision and Construction Procedures**
1.2.2, **3.3**, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3, 7.3.4, 8.2, 8.3.1, 9.4.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4
Suppliers
1.5, 3.12.1, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 5.2.1, 9.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.4, 9.6, 9.10.5, 14.2.1
Surety
5.4.1.2, 9.6.8, 9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 11.1.2, 14.2.2, 15.2.7
Surety, Consent of
9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3
Surveys
1.1.7, 2.3.4
**Suspension by the Owner for Convenience**
**14.3**
Suspension of the Work
3.7.5, 5.4.2, 14.3
Suspension or Termination of the Contract
5.4.1.1, 14
**Taxes**
3.6, 3.8.2.1, 7.3.4.4
**Termination by the Contractor**
**14.1**, 15.1.7
**Termination by the Owner for Cause**
5.4.1.1, **14.2**, 15.1.7
**Termination by the Owner for Convenience**
**14.4**
Termination of the Architect
2.3.3
Termination of the Contractor Employment
14.2.2

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

**TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT**
**14**
**Tests and Inspections**
3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 10.3.2, 12.2.1, **13.4**
**TIME**
**8**
**Time, Delays and Extensions of**
3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, **8.3**, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.6, 15.2.5
Time Limits
2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.4
**Time Limits on Claims**
3.7.4, 10.2.8, 15.1.2, 15.1.3
Title to Work
9.3.2, 9.3.3
**UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK**
**12**
**Uncovering of Work**
**12.1**
Unforeseen Conditions, Concealed or Unknown
3.7.4, 8.3.1, 10.3
Unit Prices
7.3.3.2, 9.1.2
Use of Documents
1.1.1, 1.5, 2.3.6, 3.12.6, 5.3
**Use of Site**
**3.13**, 6.1.1, 6.2.1
**Values, Schedule of**
**9.2**, 9.3.1
Waiver of Claims by the Architect
13.3.2
Waiver of Claims by the Contractor
9.10.5, 13.3.2, **15.1.7**
Waiver of Claims by the Owner
9.9.3, 9.10.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.2.1, 13.3.2, 14.2.4, **15.1.7**
Waiver of Consequential Damages
14.2.4, 15.1.7
Waiver of Liens
9.3, 9.10.2, 9.10.4
**Waivers of Subrogation**
6.1.1, **11.3**
**Warranty**
**3.5**, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 12.2.2, 15.1.2
Weather Delays
8.3, 15.1.6.2
**Work**, Definition of
**1.1.3**
Written Consent
1.5.2, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.12.8, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.3.2, 9.10.3, 13.2, 13.3.2, 15.4.4.2
Written Interpretations
4.2.11, 4.2.12
Written Orders
1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9, 7, 8.2.2, 12.1, 12.2, 13.4.2, 14.3.1

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

## ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

### § 1.1 Basic Definitions

#### § 1.1.1 The Contract Documents

The Contract Documents are enumerated in the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor (hereinafter the Agreement) and consist of the Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of the Contract, other documents listed in the Agreement, and Modifications issued after execution of the Contract. A Modification is (1) a written amendment to the Contract signed by both parties, (2) a Change Order, (3) a Construction Change Directive, or (4) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Architect. Unless specifically enumerated in the Agreement, the Contract Documents do not include the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, the Contractor's bid or proposal, or portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements.

#### § 1.1.2 The Contract

The Contract Documents form the Contract for Construction. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. The Contract may be amended or modified only by a Modification. The Contract Documents shall not be construed to create a contractual relationship of any kind (1) between the Contractor and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, (2) between the Owner and a Subcontractor or a Sub-subcontractor, (3) between the Owner and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, or (4) between any persons or entities other than the Owner and the Contractor. The Architect shall, however, be entitled to performance and enforcement of obligations under the Contract intended to facilitate performance of the Architect's duties.

#### § 1.1.3 The Work

The term "Work" means the construction and services required by the Contract Documents, whether completed or partially completed, and includes all other labor, materials, equipment, and services provided or to be provided by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor's obligations. The Work may constitute the whole or a part of the Project.

#### § 1.1.4 The Project

The Project is the total construction of which the Work performed under the Contract Documents may be the whole or a part and which may include construction by the Owner and by Separate Contractors.

#### § 1.1.5 The Drawings

The Drawings are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules, and diagrams.

#### § 1.1.6 The Specifications

The Specifications are that portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, systems, standards and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services.

#### § 1.1.7 Instruments of Service

Instruments of Service are representations, in any medium of expression now known or later developed, of the tangible and intangible creative work performed by the Architect and the Architect's consultants under their respective professional services agreements. Instruments of Service may include, without limitation, studies, surveys, models, sketches, drawings, specifications, and other similar materials.

#### § 1.1.8 Initial Decision Maker

The Initial Decision Maker is the person identified in the Agreement to render initial decisions on Claims in accordance with Section 15.2. The Initial Decision Maker shall not show partiality to the Owner or Contractor and shall not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

### § 1.2 Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents

**§ 1.2.1** The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all items necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work by the Contractor. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all; performance by the Contractor shall be required only to the extent consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from them as being necessary to produce the indicated results.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

**§ 1.2.1.1** The invalidity of any provision of the Contract Documents shall not invalidate the Contract or its remaining provisions. If it is determined that any provision of the Contract Documents violates any law, or is otherwise invalid or unenforceable, then that provision shall be revised to the extent necessary to make that provision legal and enforceable. In such case the Contract Documents shall be construed, to the fullest extent permitted by law, to give effect to the parties' intentions and purposes in executing the Contract.

**§ 1.2.2** Organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections and articles, and arrangement of Drawings shall not control the Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of Work to be performed by any trade.

**§ 1.2.3** Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, words that have well-known technical or construction industry meanings are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meanings.

### § 1.3 Capitalization

Terms capitalized in these General Conditions include those that are (1) specifically defined, (2) the titles of numbered articles, or (3) the titles of other documents published by the American Institute of Architects.

### § 1.4 Interpretation

In the interest of brevity the Contract Documents frequently omit modifying words such as "all" and "any" and articles such as "the" and "an," but the fact that a modifier or an article is absent from one statement and appears in another is not intended to affect the interpretation of either statement.

### § 1.5 Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications, and Other Instruments of Service

**§ 1.5.1** The Architect and the Architect's consultants shall be deemed the authors and owners of their respective Instruments of Service, including the Drawings and Specifications, and retain all common law, statutory, and other reserved rights in their Instruments of Service, including copyrights. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers shall not own or claim a copyright in the Instruments of Service. Submittal or distribution to meet official regulatory requirements or for other purposes in connection with the Project is not to be construed as publication in derogation of the Architect's or Architect's consultants' reserved rights.

**§ 1.5.2** The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers are authorized to use and reproduce the Instruments of Service provided to them, subject to any protocols established pursuant to Sections 1.7 and 1.8, solely and exclusively for execution of the Work. All copies made under this authorization shall bear the copyright notice, if any, shown on the Instruments of Service. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers may not use the Instruments of Service on other projects or for additions to the Project outside the scope of the Work without the specific written consent of the Owner, Architect, and the Architect's consultants.

### § 1.6 Notice

**§ 1.6.1** Except as otherwise provided in Section 1.6.2, where the Contract Documents require one party to notify or give notice to the other party, such notice shall be provided in writing to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed and shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person, by mail, by courier, or by electronic transmission if a method for electronic transmission is set forth in the Agreement.

**§ 1.6.2** Notice of Claims as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be provided in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly served only if delivered to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed by certified or registered mail, or by courier providing proof of delivery.

### § 1.7 Digital Data Use and Transmission

The parties shall agree upon written protocols governing the transmission and use of, and reliance on, Instruments of Service or any other information or documentation in digital form.

### § 1.8 Building Information Models Use and Reliance

Any use of, or reliance on, all or a portion of a building information model without agreement to written protocols governing the use of, and reliance on, the information contained in the model shall be at the using or relying party's sole risk and without liability to the other party and its contractors or consultants, the authors of, or contributors to, the building information model, and each of their agents and employees.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

## ARTICLE 2 OWNER

### § 2.1 General

**§ 2.1.1** The Owner is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Owner shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Owner with respect to all matters requiring the Owner's approval or authorization. Except as otherwise provided in Section 4.2.1, the Architect does not have such authority. The term "Owner" means the Owner or the Owner's authorized representative.

**§ 2.1.2** The Owner shall furnish to the Contractor, within fifteen days after receipt of a written request, information necessary and relevant for the Contractor to evaluate, give notice of, or enforce mechanic's lien rights. Such information shall include a correct statement of the record legal title to the property on which the Project is located, usually referred to as the site, and the Owner's interest therein.

### § 2.2 Evidence of the Owner's Financial Arrangements

**§ 2.2.1** Prior to commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract. The Contractor shall have no obligation to commence the Work until the Owner provides such evidence. If commencement of the Work is delayed under this Section 2.2.1, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately.

**§ 2.2.2** Following commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract only if (1) the Owner fails to make payments to the Contractor as the Contract Documents require; (2) the Contractor identifies in writing a reasonable concern regarding the Owner's ability to make payment when due; or (3) a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum. If the Owner fails to provide such evidence, as required, within fourteen days of the Contractor's request, the Contractor may immediately stop the Work and, in that event, shall notify the Owner that the Work has stopped. However, if the request is made because a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum under (3) above, the Contractor may immediately stop only that portion of the Work affected by the change until reasonable evidence is provided. If the Work is stopped under this Section 2.2.2, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 2.2.3** After the Owner furnishes evidence of financial arrangements under this Section 2.2, the Owner shall not materially vary such financial arrangements without prior notice to the Contractor.

**§ 2.2.4** Where the Owner has designated information furnished under this Section 2.2 as "confidential," the Contractor shall keep the information confidential and shall not disclose it to any other person. However, the Contractor may disclose "confidential" information, after seven (7) days' notice to the Owner, where disclosure is required by law, including a subpoena or other form of compulsory legal process issued by a court or governmental entity, or by court or arbitrator(s) order. The Contractor may also disclose "confidential" information to its employees, consultants, sureties, Subcontractors and their employees, Sub-subcontractors, and others who need to know the content of such information solely and exclusively for the Project and who agree to maintain the confidentiality of such information.

### § 2.3 Information and Services Required of the Owner

**§ 2.3.1** Except for permits and fees that are the responsibility of the Contractor under the Contract Documents, including those required under Section 3.7.1, the Owner shall secure and pay for necessary approvals, easements, assessments and charges required for construction, use or occupancy of permanent structures or for permanent changes in existing facilities.

**§ 2.3.2** The Owner shall retain an architect lawfully licensed to practice architecture, or an entity lawfully practicing architecture, in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. That person or entity is identified as the Architect in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number.

**§ 2.3.3** If the employment of the Architect terminates, the Owner shall employ a successor to whom the Contractor has no reasonable objection and whose status under the Contract Documents shall be that of the Architect.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
User Notes: (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

**§ 2.3.4** The Owner shall furnish surveys describing physical characteristics, legal limitations and utility locations for the site of the Project, and a legal description of the site. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely on the accuracy of information furnished by the Owner but shall exercise proper precautions relating to the safe performance of the Work.

**§ 2.3.5** The Owner shall furnish information or services required of the Owner by the Contract Documents with reasonable promptness. The Owner shall also furnish any other information or services under the Owner's control and relevant to the Contractor's performance of the Work with reasonable promptness after receiving the Contractor's written request for such information or services.

**§ 2.3.6** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor one copy of the Contract Documents for purposes of making reproductions pursuant to Section 1.5.2.

### § 2.4 Owner's Right to Stop the Work

If the Contractor fails to correct Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents as required by Section 12.2 or repeatedly fails to carry out Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Owner may issue a written order to the Contractor to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, the right of the Owner to stop the Work shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the Owner to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity, except to the extent required by Section 6.1.3.

### § 2.5 Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work

If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails within a ten-day period after receipt of notice from the Owner to commence and continue correction of such default or neglect with diligence and promptness, the Owner may, without prejudice to other remedies the Owner may have, correct such default or neglect. Such action by the Owner and amounts charged to the Contractor are both subject to prior approval of the Architect and the Architect may, pursuant to Section 9.5.1, withhold or nullify a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to reimburse the Owner for the reasonable cost of correcting such deficiencies, including Owner's expenses and compensation for the Architect's additional services made necessary by such default, neglect, or failure. If current and future payments are not sufficient to cover such amounts, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. If the Contractor disagrees with the actions of the Owner or the Architect, or the amounts claimed as costs to the Owner, the Contractor may file a Claim pursuant to Article 15.

## ARTICLE 3 CONTRACTOR

### § 3.1 General

**§ 3.1.1** The Contractor is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Contractor shall be lawfully licensed, if required in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Contractor shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Contractor with respect to all matters under this Contract. The term "Contractor" means the Contractor or the Contractor's authorized representative.

**§ 3.1.2** The Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.1.3** The Contractor shall not be relieved of its obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents either by activities or duties of the Architect in the Architect's administration of the Contract, or by tests, inspections or approvals required or performed by persons or entities other than the Contractor.

### § 3.2 Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor

**§ 3.2.1** Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become generally familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.2.2** Because the Contract Documents are complementary, the Contractor shall, before starting each portion of the Work, carefully study and compare the various Contract Documents relative to that portion of the Work, as well as the information furnished by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.4, shall take field measurements of any existing conditions related to that portion of the Work, and shall observe any conditions at the site affecting it. These obligations are for the purpose of facilitating coordination and construction by the Contractor and are not for the

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
User Notes: (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

purpose of discovering errors, omissions, or inconsistencies in the Contract Documents; however, the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any errors, inconsistencies or omissions discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require. It is recognized that the Contractor's review is made in the Contractor's capacity as a contractor and not as a licensed design professional, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.2.3** The Contractor is not required to ascertain that the Contract Documents are in accordance with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, but the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any nonconformity discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require.

**§ 3.2.4** If the Contractor believes that additional cost or time is involved because of clarifications or instructions the Architect issues in response to the Contractor's notices or requests for information pursuant to Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall submit Claims as provided in Article 15. If the Contractor fails to perform the obligations of Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall pay such costs and damages to the Owner, subject to Section 15.1.7, as would have been avoided if the Contractor had performed such obligations. If the Contractor performs those obligations, the Contractor shall not be liable to the Owner or Architect for damages resulting from errors, inconsistencies or omissions in the Contract Documents, for differences between field measurements or conditions and the Contract Documents, or for nonconformities of the Contract Documents to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities.

### § 3.3 Supervision and Construction Procedures

**§ 3.3.1** The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work, using the Contractor's best skill and attention. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for, and have control over, construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures, and for coordinating all portions of the Work under the Contract. If the Contract Documents give specific instructions concerning construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures, the Contractor shall evaluate the jobsite safety thereof and shall be solely responsible for the jobsite safety of such means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. If the Contractor determines that such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures may not be safe, the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Owner and Architect, and shall propose alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect shall evaluate the proposed alternative solely for conformance with the design intent for the completed construction. Unless the Architect objects to the Contractor's proposed alternative, the Contractor shall perform the Work using its alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures.

**§ 3.3.2** The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons or entities performing portions of the Work for, or on behalf of, the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors.

**§ 3.3.3** The Contractor shall be responsible for inspection of portions of Work already performed to determine that such portions are in proper condition to receive subsequent Work.

### § 3.4 Labor and Materials

**§ 3.4.1** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for labor, materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work.

**§ 3.4.2** Except in the case of minor changes in the Work approved by the Architect in accordance with Section 3.12.8 or ordered by the Architect in accordance with Section 7.4, the Contractor may make substitutions only with the consent of the Owner, after evaluation by the Architect and in accordance with a Change Order or Construction Change Directive.

**§ 3.4.3** The Contractor shall enforce strict discipline and good order among the Contractor's employees and other persons carrying out the Work. The Contractor shall not permit employment of unfit persons or persons not properly skilled in tasks assigned to them.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

### § 3.5 Warranty

**§ 3.5.1** The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Architect that materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality and new unless the Contract Documents require or permit otherwise. The Contractor further warrants that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents and will be free from defects, except for those inherent in the quality of the Work the Contract Documents require or permit. Work, materials, or equipment not conforming to these requirements may be considered defective. The Contractor's warranty excludes remedy for damage or defect caused by abuse, alterations to the Work not executed by the Contractor, improper or insufficient maintenance, improper operation, or normal wear and tear and normal usage. If required by the Architect, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment.

**§ 3.5.2** All material, equipment, or other special warranties required by the Contract Documents shall be issued in the name of the Owner, or shall be transferable to the Owner, and shall commence in accordance with Section 9.8.4.

### § 3.6 Taxes

The Contractor shall pay sales, consumer, use and similar taxes for the Work provided by the Contractor that are legally enacted when bids are received or negotiations concluded, whether or not yet effective or merely scheduled to go into effect.

### § 3.7 Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws

**§ 3.7.1** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit as well as for other permits, fees, licenses, and inspections by government agencies necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work that are customarily secured after execution of the Contract and legally required at the time bids are received or negotiations concluded.

**§ 3.7.2** The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to performance of the Work.

**§ 3.7.3** If the Contractor performs Work knowing it to be contrary to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, the Contractor shall assume appropriate responsibility for such Work and shall bear the costs attributable to correction.

### § 3.7.4 Concealed or Unknown Conditions

If the Contractor encounters conditions at the site that are (1) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions that differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or (2) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature that differ materially from those ordinarily found to exist and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character provided for in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall promptly provide notice to the Owner and the Architect before conditions are disturbed and in no event later than 14 days after first observance of the conditions. The Architect will promptly investigate such conditions and, if the Architect determines that they differ materially and cause an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or time required for, performance of any part of the Work, will recommend that an equitable adjustment be made in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. If the Architect determines that the conditions at the site are not materially different from those indicated in the Contract Documents and that no change in the terms of the Contract is justified, the Architect shall promptly notify the Owner and Contractor, stating the reasons. If either party disputes the Architect's determination or recommendation, that party may submit a Claim as provided in Article 15.

**§ 3.7.5** If, in the course of the Work, the Contractor encounters human remains or recognizes the existence of burial markers, archaeological sites or wetlands not indicated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall immediately suspend any operations that would affect them and shall notify the Owner and Architect. Upon receipt of such notice, the Owner shall promptly take any action necessary to obtain governmental authorization required to resume the operations. The Contractor shall continue to suspend such operations until otherwise instructed by the Owner but shall continue with all other operations that do not affect those remains or features. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time arising from the existence of such remains or features may be made as provided in Article 15.

### § 3.8 Allowances

**§ 3.8.1** The Contractor shall include in the Contract Sum all allowances stated in the Contract Documents. Items covered by allowances shall be supplied for such amounts and by such persons or entities as the Owner may direct,

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

but the Contractor shall not be required to employ persons or entities to whom the Contractor has reasonable objection.

**§ 3.8.2** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents,

.1 allowances shall cover the cost to the Contractor of materials and equipment delivered at the site and all required taxes, less applicable trade discounts;

.2 Contractor's costs for unloading and handling at the site, labor, installation costs, overhead, profit, and other expenses contemplated for stated allowance amounts shall be included in the Contract Sum but not in the allowances; and

.3 whenever costs are more than or less than allowances, the Contract Sum shall be adjusted accordingly by Change Order. The amount of the Change Order shall reflect (1) the difference between actual costs and the allowances under Section 3.8.2.1 and (2) changes in Contractor's costs under Section 3.8.2.2.

**§ 3.8.3** Materials and equipment under an allowance shall be selected by the Owner with reasonable promptness.

### § 3.9 Superintendent

**§ 3.9.1** The Contractor shall employ a competent superintendent and necessary assistants who shall be in attendance at the Project site during performance of the Work. The superintendent shall represent the Contractor, and communications given to the superintendent shall be as binding as if given to the Contractor.

**§ 3.9.2** The Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the name and qualifications of a proposed superintendent. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor, stating whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to the proposed superintendent or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

**§ 3.9.3** The Contractor shall not employ a proposed superintendent to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not change the superintendent without the Owner's consent, which shall not unreasonably be withheld or delayed.

### § 3.10 Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules

**§ 3.10.1** The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract, shall submit for the Owner's and Architect's information a Contractor's construction schedule for the Work. The schedule shall contain detail appropriate for the Project, including (1) the date of commencement of the Work, interim schedule milestone dates, and the date of Substantial Completion; (2) an apportionment of the Work by construction activity; and (3) the time required for completion of each portion of the Work. The schedule shall provide for the orderly progression of the Work to completion and shall not exceed time limits current under the Contract Documents. The schedule shall be revised at appropriate intervals as required by the conditions of the Work and Project.

**§ 3.10.2** The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract and thereafter as necessary to maintain a current submittal schedule, shall submit a submittal schedule for the Architect's approval. The Architect's approval shall not be unreasonably delayed or withheld. The submittal schedule shall (1) be coordinated with the Contractor's construction schedule, and (2) allow the Architect reasonable time to review submittals. If the Contractor fails to submit a submittal schedule, or fails to provide submittals in accordance with the approved submittal schedule, the Contractor shall not be entitled to any increase in Contract Sum or extension of Contract Time based on the time required for review of submittals.

**§ 3.10.3** The Contractor shall perform the Work in general accordance with the most recent schedules submitted to the Owner and Architect.

### § 3.11 Documents and Samples at the Site

The Contractor shall make available, at the Project site, the Contract Documents, including Change Orders, Construction Change Directives, and other Modifications, in good order and marked currently to indicate field changes and selections made during construction, and the approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar required submittals. These shall be in electronic form or paper copy, available to the Architect and Owner, and delivered to the Architect for submittal to the Owner upon completion of the Work as a record of the Work as

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

constructed.

**§ 3.12 Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples**

**§ 3.12.1** Shop Drawings are drawings, diagrams, schedules, and other data specially prepared for the Work by the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier, or distributor to illustrate some portion of the Work.

**§ 3.12.2** Product Data are illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams, and other information furnished by the Contractor to illustrate materials or equipment for some portion of the Work.

**§ 3.12.3** Samples are physical examples that illustrate materials, equipment, or workmanship, and establish standards by which the Work will be judged.

**§ 3.12.4** Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals are not Contract Documents. Their purpose is to demonstrate how the Contractor proposes to conform to the information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents for those portions of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittals. Review by the Architect is subject to the limitations of Section 4.2.7. Informational submittals upon which the Architect is not expected to take responsive action may be so identified in the Contract Documents. Submittals that are not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

**§ 3.12.5** The Contractor shall review for compliance with the Contract Documents, approve, and submit to the Architect, Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals required by the Contract Documents, in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner or of Separate Contractors.

**§ 3.12.6** By submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals, the Contractor represents to the Owner and Architect that the Contractor has (I) reviewed and approved them, (2) determined and verified materials, field measurements and field construction criteria related thereto, or will do so, and (3) checked and coordinated the information contained within such submittals with the requirements of the Work and of the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.12.7** The Contractor shall perform no portion of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, until the respective submittal has been approved by the Architect.

**§ 3.12.8** The Work shall be in accordance with approved submittals except that the Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from the requirements of the Contract Documents by the Architect's approval of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, unless the Contractor has specifically notified the Architect of such deviation at the time of submittal and (1) the Architect has given written approval to the specific deviation as a minor change in the Work, or (2) a Change Order or Construction Change Directive has been issued authorizing the deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, by the Architect's approval thereof.

**§ 3.12.9** The Contractor shall direct specific attention, in writing or on resubmitted Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, to revisions other than those requested by the Architect on previous submittals. In the absence of such notice, the Architect's approval of a resubmission shall not apply to such revisions.

**§ 3.12.10** The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services that constitute the practice of architecture or engineering unless such services are specifically required by the Contract Documents for a portion of the Work or unless the Contractor needs to provide such services in order to carry out the Contractor's responsibilities for construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures. The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services in violation of applicable law.

**§ 3.12.10.1** If professional design services or certifications by a design professional related to systems, materials, or equipment are specifically required of the Contractor by the Contract Documents, the Owner and the Architect will specify all performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the performance and design criteria provided in the Contract Documents. The

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

Contractor shall cause such services or certifications to be provided by an appropriately licensed design professional, whose signature and seal shall appear on all drawings, calculations, specifications, certifications, Shop Drawings, and other submittals prepared by such professional. Shop Drawings, and other submittals related to the Work, designed or certified by such professional, if prepared by others, shall bear such professional's written approval when submitted to the Architect. The Owner and the Architect shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the services, certifications, and approvals performed or provided by such design professionals, provided the Owner and Architect have specified to the Contractor the performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. Pursuant to this Section 3.12.10, the Architect will review and approve or take other appropriate action on submittals only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.12.10.2** If the Contract Documents require the Contractor's design professional to certify that the Work has been performed in accordance with the design criteria, the Contractor shall furnish such certifications to the Architect at the time and in the form specified by the Architect.

### § 3.13 Use of Site

The Contractor shall confine operations at the site to areas permitted by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, lawful orders of public authorities, and the Contract Documents and shall not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment.

### § 3.14 Cutting and Patching

**§ 3.14.1** The Contractor shall be responsible for cutting, fitting, or patching required to complete the Work or to make its parts fit together properly. All areas requiring cutting, fitting, or patching shall be restored to the condition existing prior to the cutting, fitting, or patching, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.14.2** The Contractor shall not damage or endanger a portion of the Work or fully or partially completed construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors by cutting, patching, or otherwise altering such construction, or by excavation. The Contractor shall not cut or otherwise alter construction by the Owner or a Separate Contractor except with written consent of the Owner and of the Separate Contractor. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Contractor shall not unreasonably withhold, from the Owner or a Separate Contractor, its consent to cutting or otherwise altering the Work.

### § 3.15 Cleaning Up

**§ 3.15.1** The Contractor shall keep the premises and surrounding area free from accumulation of waste materials and rubbish caused by operations under the Contract. At completion of the Work, the Contractor shall remove waste materials, rubbish, the Contractor's tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus materials from and about the Project.

**§ 3.15.2** If the Contractor fails to clean up as provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so and the Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor.

### § 3.16 Access to Work

The Contractor shall provide the Owner and Architect with access to the Work in preparation and progress wherever located.

### § 3.17 Royalties, Patents and Copyrights

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. The Contractor shall defend suits or claims for infringement of copyrights and patent rights and shall hold the Owner and Architect harmless from loss on account thereof, but shall not be responsible for defense or loss when a particular design, process, or product of a particular manufacturer or manufacturers is required by the Contract Documents, or where the copyright violations are contained in Drawings, Specifications, or other documents prepared by the Owner or Architect. However, if an infringement of a copyright or patent is discovered by, or made known to, the Contractor, the Contractor shall be responsible for the loss unless the information is promptly furnished to the Architect.

### § 3.18 Indemnification

**§ 3.18.1** To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

Work, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), but only to the extent caused by the negligent acts or omissions of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, regardless of whether or not such claim, damage, loss, or expense is caused in part by a party indemnified hereunder. Such obligation shall not be construed to negate, abridge, or reduce other rights or obligations of indemnity that would otherwise exist as to a party or person described in this Section 3.18.

**§ 3.18.2** In claims against any person or entity indemnified under this Section 3.18 by an employee of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, the indemnification obligation under Section 3.18.1 shall not be limited by a limitation on amount or type of damages, compensation, or benefits payable by or for the Contractor or a Subcontractor under workers' compensation acts, disability benefit acts, or other employee benefit acts.

## ARTICLE 4 ARCHITECT

### § 4.1 General

**§ 4.1.1** The Architect is the person or entity retained by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.2 and identified as such in the Agreement.

**§ 4.1.2** Duties, responsibilities, and limitations of authority of the Architect as set forth in the Contract Documents shall not be restricted, modified, or extended without written consent of the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld.

### § 4.2 Administration of the Contract

**§ 4.2.1** The Architect will provide administration of the Contract as described in the Contract Documents and will be an Owner's representative during construction until the date the Architect issues the final Certificate for Payment. The Architect will have authority to act on behalf of the Owner only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2.2** The Architect will visit the site at intervals appropriate to the stage of construction, or as otherwise agreed with the Owner, to become generally familiar with the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and to determine in general if the Work observed is being performed in a manner indicating that the Work, when fully completed, will be in accordance with the Contract Documents. However, the Architect will not be required to make exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work. The Architect will not have control over, charge of, or responsibility for the construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, or for the safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work, since these are solely the Contractor's rights and responsibilities under the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2.3** On the basis of the site visits, the Architect will keep the Owner reasonably informed about the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and promptly report to the Owner (1) known deviations from the Contract Documents, (2) known deviations from the most recent construction schedule submitted by the Contractor, and (3) defects and deficiencies observed in the Work. The Architect will not be responsible for the Contractor's failure to perform the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. The Architect will not have control over or charge of, and will not be responsible for acts or omissions of, the Contractor, Subcontractors, or their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

### § 4.2.4 Communications

The Owner and Contractor shall include the Architect in all communications that relate to or affect the Architect's services or professional responsibilities. The Owner shall promptly notify the Architect of the substance of any direct communications between the Owner and the Contractor otherwise relating to the Project. Communications by and with the Architect's consultants shall be through the Architect. Communications by and with Subcontractors and suppliers shall be through the Contractor. Communications by and with Separate Contractors shall be through the Owner. The Contract Documents may specify other communication protocols.

**§ 4.2.5** Based on the Architect's evaluations of the Contractor's Applications for Payment, the Architect will review and certify the amounts due the Contractor and will issue Certificates for Payment in such amounts.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
User Notes: (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

**§ 4.2.6** The Architect has authority to reject Work that does not conform to the Contract Documents. Whenever the Architect considers it necessary or advisable, the Architect will have authority to require inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with Sections 13.4.2 and 13.4.3, whether or not the Work is fabricated, installed or completed. However, neither this authority of the Architect nor a decision made in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of the Architect to the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, their agents or employees, or other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

**§ 4.2.7** The Architect will review and approve, or take other appropriate action upon, the Contractor's submittals such as Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples, but only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. The Architect's action will be taken in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness while allowing sufficient time in the Architect's professional judgment to permit adequate review. Review of such submittals is not conducted for the purpose of determining the accuracy and completeness of other details such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the responsibility of the Contractor as required by the Contract Documents. The Architect's review of the Contractor's submittals shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligations under Sections 3.3, 3.5, and 3.12. The Architect's review shall not constitute approval of safety precautions or of any construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component.

**§ 4.2.8** The Architect will prepare Change Orders and Construction Change Directives, and may order minor changes in the Work as provided in Section 7.4. The Architect will investigate and make determinations and recommendations regarding concealed and unknown conditions as provided in Section 3.7.4.

**§ 4.2.9** The Architect will conduct inspections to determine the date or dates of Substantial Completion and the date of final completion; issue Certificates of Substantial Completion pursuant to Section 9.8; receive and forward to the Owner, for the Owner's review and records, written warranties and related documents required by the Contract and assembled by the Contractor pursuant to Section 9.10; and issue a final Certificate for Payment pursuant to Section 9.10.

**§ 4.2.10** If the Owner and Architect agree, the Architect will provide one or more Project representatives to assist in carrying out the Architect's responsibilities at the site. The Owner shall notify the Contractor of any change in the duties, responsibilities and limitations of authority of the Project representatives.

**§ 4.2.11** The Architect will interpret and decide matters concerning performance under, and requirements of, the Contract Documents on written request of either the Owner or Contractor. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness.

**§ 4.2.12** Interpretations and decisions of the Architect will be consistent with the intent of, and reasonably inferable from, the Contract Documents and will be in writing or in the form of drawings. When making such interpretations and decisions, the Architect will endeavor to secure faithful performance by both Owner and Contractor, will not show partiality to either, and will not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

**§ 4.2.13** The Architect's decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect will be final if consistent with the intent expressed in the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2.14** The Architect will review and respond to requests for information about the Contract Documents. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness. If appropriate, the Architect will prepare and issue supplemental Drawings and Specifications in response to the requests for information.

## ARTICLE 5 SUBCONTRACTORS

### § 5.1 Definitions

**§ 5.1.1** A Subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct contract with the Contractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Subcontractor. The term "Subcontractor" does not include a Separate Contractor or the subcontractors of a Separate Contractor.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
User Notes: (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

**§ 5.1.2** A Sub-subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct or indirect contract with a Subcontractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Sub-subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Sub-subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Sub-subcontractor.

**§ 5.2 Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work**

**§ 5.2.1** Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the persons or entities proposed for each principal portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to any such proposed person or entity or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

**§ 5.2.2** The Contractor shall not contract with a proposed person or entity to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not be required to contract with anyone to whom the Contractor has made reasonable objection.

**§ 5.2.3** If the Owner or Architect has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Contractor, the Contractor shall propose another to whom the Owner or Architect has no reasonable objection. If the proposed but rejected Subcontractor was reasonably capable of performing the Work, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be increased or decreased by the difference, if any, occasioned by such change, and an appropriate Change Order shall be issued before commencement of the substitute Subcontractor's Work. However, no increase in the Contract Sum or Contract Time shall be allowed for such change unless the Contractor has acted promptly and responsively in submitting names as required.

**§ 5.2.4** The Contractor shall not substitute a Subcontractor, person, or entity for one previously selected if the Owner or Architect makes reasonable objection to such substitution.

**§ 5.3 Subcontractual Relations**

By appropriate written agreement, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor, to the extent of the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor, to be bound to the Contractor by terms of the Contract Documents, and to assume toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities, including the responsibility for safety of the Subcontractor's Work that the Contractor, by these Contract Documents, assumes toward the Owner and Architect. Each subcontract agreement shall preserve and protect the rights of the Owner and Architect under the Contract Documents with respect to the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor so that subcontracting thereof will not prejudice such rights, and shall allow to the Subcontractor, unless specifically provided otherwise in the subcontract agreement, the benefit of all rights, remedies, and redress against the Contractor that the Contractor, by the Contract Documents, has against the Owner. Where appropriate, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to enter into similar agreements with Sub-subcontractors. The Contractor shall make available to each proposed Subcontractor, prior to the execution of the subcontract agreement, copies of the Contract Documents to which the Subcontractor will be bound, and, upon written request of the Subcontractor, identify to the Subcontractor terms and conditions of the proposed subcontract agreement that may be at variance with the Contract Documents. Subcontractors will similarly make copies of applicable portions of such documents available to their respective proposed Sub-subcontractors.

**§ 5.4 Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts**

**§ 5.4.1** Each subcontract agreement for a portion of the Work is assigned by the Contractor to the Owner, provided that

.1 assignment is effective only after termination of the Contract by the Owner for cause pursuant to Section 14.2 and only for those subcontract agreements that the Owner accepts by notifying the Subcontractor and Contractor; and

.2 assignment is subject to the prior rights of the surety, if any, obligated under bond relating to the Contract.

When the Owner accepts the assignment of a subcontract agreement, the Owner assumes the Contractor's rights and obligations under the subcontract.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

**§ 5.4.2** Upon such assignment, if the Work has been suspended for more than 30 days, the Subcontractor's compensation shall be equitably adjusted for increases in cost resulting from the suspension.

**§ 5.4.3** Upon assignment to the Owner under this Section 5.4, the Owner may further assign the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity. If the Owner assigns the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity, the Owner shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all of the successor contractor's obligations under the subcontract.

## ARTICLE 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS

### § 6.1 Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts

**§ 6.1.1** The term "Separate Contractor(s)" shall mean other contractors retained by the Owner under separate agreements. The Owner reserves the right to perform construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, and with Separate Contractors retained under Conditions of the Contract substantially similar to those of this Contract, including those provisions of the Conditions of the Contract related to insurance and waiver of subrogation.

**§ 6.1.2** When separate contracts are awarded for different portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site, the term "Contractor" in the Contract Documents in each case shall mean the Contractor who executes each separate Owner-Contractor Agreement.

**§ 6.1.3** The Owner shall provide for coordination of the activities of the Owner's own forces and of each Separate Contractor with the Work of the Contractor, who shall cooperate with them. The Contractor shall participate with any Separate Contractors and the Owner in reviewing their construction schedules. The Contractor shall make any revisions to its construction schedule deemed necessary after a joint review and mutual agreement. The construction schedules shall then constitute the schedules to be used by the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner until subsequently revised.

**§ 6.1.4** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, when the Owner performs construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces or with Separate Contractors, the Owner or its Separate Contractors shall have the same obligations and rights that the Contractor has under the Conditions of the Contract, including, without excluding others, those stated in Article 3, this Article 6, and Articles 10, 11, and 12.

### § 6.2 Mutual Responsibility

**§ 6.2.1** The Contractor shall afford the Owner and Separate Contractors reasonable opportunity for introduction and storage of their materials and equipment and performance of their activities, and shall connect and coordinate the Contractor's construction and operations with theirs as required by the Contract Documents.

**§ 6.2.2** If part of the Contractor's Work depends for proper execution or results upon construction or operations by the Owner or a Separate Contractor, the Contractor shall, prior to proceeding with that portion of the Work, promptly notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that would render it unsuitable for proper execution and results of the Contractor's Work. Failure of the Contractor to notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects prior to proceeding with the Work shall constitute an acknowledgment that the Owner's or Separate Contractor's completed or partially completed construction is fit and proper to receive the Contractor's Work. The Contractor shall not be responsible for discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that are not apparent.

**§ 6.2.3** The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for costs the Owner incurs that are payable to a Separate Contractor because of the Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities or defective construction. The Owner shall be responsible to the Contractor for costs the Contractor incurs because of a Separate Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities, damage to the Work or defective construction.

**§ 6.2.4** The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage that the Contractor wrongfully causes to completed or partially completed construction or to property of the Owner or Separate Contractor as provided in Section 10.2.5.

**§ 6.2.5** The Owner and each Separate Contractor shall have the same responsibilities for cutting and patching as are described for the Contractor in Section 3.14.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

### § 6.3 Owner's Right to Clean Up

If a dispute arises among the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner as to the responsibility under their respective contracts for maintaining the premises and surrounding area free from waste materials and rubbish, the Owner may clean up and the Architect will allocate the cost among those responsible.

## ARTICLE 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK

### § 7.1 General

**§ 7.1.1** Changes in the Work may be accomplished after execution of the Contract, and without invalidating the Contract, by Change Order, Construction Change Directive or order for a minor change in the Work, subject to the limitations stated in this Article 7 and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

**§ 7.1.2** A Change Order shall be based upon agreement among the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. A Construction Change Directive requires agreement by the Owner and Architect and may or may not be agreed to by the Contractor. An order for a minor change in the Work may be issued by the Architect alone.

**§ 7.1.3** Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall proceed promptly with changes in the Work, unless otherwise provided in the Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or order for a minor change in the Work.

### § 7.2 Change Orders

**§ 7.2.1** A Change Order is a written instrument prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner, Contractor, and Architect stating their agreement upon all of the following:

.1 The change in the Work;

.2 The amount of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum; and

.3 The extent of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Time.

### § 7.3 Construction Change Directives

**§ 7.3.1** A Construction Change Directive is a written order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner and Architect, directing a change in the Work prior to agreement on adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. The Owner may by Construction Change Directive, without invalidating the Contract, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions, or other revisions, the Contract Sum and Contract Time being adjusted accordingly.

**§ 7.3.2** A Construction Change Directive shall be used in the absence of total agreement on the terms of a Change Order.

**§ 7.3.3** If the Construction Change Directive provides for an adjustment to the Contract Sum, the adjustment shall be based on one of the following methods:

.1 Mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation;

.2 Unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon;

.3 Cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee; or

.4 As provided in Section 7.3.4.

**§ 7.3.4** If the Contractor does not respond promptly or disagrees with the method for adjustment in the Contract Sum, the Architect shall determine the adjustment on the basis of reasonable expenditures and savings of those performing the Work attributable to the change, including, in case of an increase in the Contract Sum, an amount for overhead and profit as set forth in the Agreement, or if no such amount is set forth in the Agreement, a reasonable amount. In such case, and also under Section 7.3.3.3, the Contractor shall keep and present, in such form as the Architect may prescribe, an itemized accounting together with appropriate supporting data. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, costs for the purposes of this Section 7.3.4 shall be limited to the following:

.1 Costs of labor, including applicable payroll taxes, fringe benefits required by agreement or custom, workers' compensation insurance, and other employee costs approved by the Architect;

.2 Costs of materials, supplies, and equipment, including cost of transportation, whether incorporated or consumed;

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

.3 Rental costs of machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, whether rented from the Contractor or others;

.4 Costs of premiums for all bonds and insurance, permit fees, and sales, use, or similar taxes, directly related to the change; and

.5 Costs of supervision and field office personnel directly attributable to the change.

**§ 7.3.5** If the Contractor disagrees with the adjustment in the Contract Time, the Contractor may make a Claim in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

**§ 7.3.6** Upon receipt of a Construction Change Directive, the Contractor shall promptly proceed with the change in the Work involved and advise the Architect of the Contractor's agreement or disagreement with the method, if any, provided in the Construction Change Directive for determining the proposed adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time.

**§ 7.3.7** A Construction Change Directive signed by the Contractor indicates the Contractor's agreement therewith, including adjustment in Contract Sum and Contract Time or the method for determining them. Such agreement shall be effective immediately and shall be recorded as a Change Order.

**§ 7.3.8** The amount of credit to be allowed by the Contractor to the Owner for a deletion or change that results in a net decrease in the Contract Sum shall be actual net cost as confirmed by the Architect. When both additions and credits covering related Work or substitutions are involved in a change, the allowance for overhead and profit shall be figured on the basis of net increase, if any, with respect to that change.

**§ 7.3.9** Pending final determination of the total cost of a Construction Change Directive to the Owner, the Contractor may request payment for Work completed under the Construction Change Directive in Applications for Payment. The Architect will make an interim determination for purposes of monthly certification for payment for those costs and certify for payment the amount that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified. The Architect's interim determination of cost shall adjust the Contract Sum on the same basis as a Change Order, subject to the right of either party to disagree and assert a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

**§ 7.3.10** When the Owner and Contractor agree with a determination made by the Architect concerning the adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time, or otherwise reach agreement upon the adjustments, such agreement shall be effective immediately and the Architect will prepare a Change Order. Change Orders may be issued for all or any part of a Construction Change Directive.

### § 7.4 Minor Changes in the Work

The Architect may order minor changes in the Work that are consistent with the intent of the Contract Documents and do not involve an adjustment in the Contract Sum or an extension of the Contract Time. The Architect's order for minor changes shall be in writing. If the Contractor believes that the proposed minor change in the Work will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor shall notify the Architect and shall not proceed to implement the change in the Work. If the Contractor performs the Work set forth in the Architect's order for a minor change without prior notice to the Architect that such change will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor waives any adjustment to the Contract Sum or extension of the Contract Time.

## ARTICLE 8 TIME

### § 8.1 Definitions

**§ 8.1.1** Unless otherwise provided, Contract Time is the period of time, including authorized adjustments, allotted in the Contract Documents for Substantial Completion of the Work.

**§ 8.1.2** The date of commencement of the Work is the date established in the Agreement.

**§ 8.1.3** The date of Substantial Completion is the date certified by the Architect in accordance with Section 9.8.

**§ 8.1.4** The term "day" as used in the Contract Documents shall mean calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

### § 8.2 Progress and Completion

**§ 8.2.1** Time limits stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence of the Contract. By executing the Agreement, the Contractor confirms that the Contract Time is a reasonable period for performing the Work.

**§ 8.2.2** The Contractor shall not knowingly, except by agreement or instruction of the Owner in writing, commence the Work prior to the effective date of insurance required to be furnished by the Contractor and Owner.

**§ 8.2.3** The Contractor shall proceed expeditiously with adequate forces and shall achieve Substantial Completion within the Contract Time.

### § 8.3 Delays and Extensions of Time

**§ 8.3.1** If the Contractor is delayed at any time in the commencement or progress of the Work by (1) an act or neglect of the Owner or Architect, of an employee of either, or of a Separate Contractor; (2) by changes ordered in the Work; (3) by labor disputes, fire, unusual delay in deliveries, unavoidable casualties, adverse weather conditions documented in accordance with Section 15.1.6.2, or other causes beyond the Contractor's control; (4) by delay authorized by the Owner pending mediation and binding dispute resolution; or (5) by other causes that the Contractor asserts, and the Architect determines, justify delay, then the Contract Time shall be extended for such reasonable time as the Architect may determine.

**§ 8.3.2** Claims relating to time shall be made in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

**§ 8.3.3** This Section 8.3 does not preclude recovery of damages for delay by either party under other provisions of the Contract Documents.

## ARTICLE 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

### § 9.1 Contract Sum

**§ 9.1.1** The Contract Sum is stated in the Agreement and, including authorized adjustments, is the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.1.2** If unit prices are stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon, and if quantities originally contemplated are materially changed so that application of such unit prices to the actual quantities causes substantial inequity to the Owner or Contractor, the applicable unit prices shall be equitably adjusted.

### § 9.2 Schedule of Values

Where the Contract is based on a stipulated sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, the Contractor shall submit a schedule of values to the Architect before the first Application for Payment, allocating the entire Contract Sum to the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in the form, and supported by the data to substantiate its accuracy, required by the Architect. This schedule, unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment. Any changes to the schedule of values shall be submitted to the Architect and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy as the Architect may require, and unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's subsequent Applications for Payment.

### § 9.3 Applications for Payment

**§ 9.3.1** At least ten days before the date established for each progress payment, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect an itemized Application for Payment prepared in accordance with the schedule of values, if required under Section 9.2, for completed portions of the Work. The application shall be notarized, if required, and supported by all data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment that the Owner or Architect require, such as copies of requisitions, and releases and waivers of liens from Subcontractors and suppliers, and shall reflect retainage if provided for in the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.3.1.1** As provided in Section 7.3.9, such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work that have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives, or by interim determinations of the Architect, but not yet included in Change Orders.

**§ 9.3.1.2** Applications for Payment shall not include requests for payment for portions of the Work for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or supplier, unless such Work has been performed by others

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
User Notes: (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

whom the Contractor intends to pay.

**§ 9.3.2** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, payments shall be made on account of materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the Work. If approved in advance by the Owner, payment may similarly be made for materials and equipment suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing. Payment for materials and equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, and shall include the costs of applicable insurance, storage, and transportation to the site, for such materials and equipment stored off the site.

**§ 9.3.3** The Contractor warrants that title to all Work covered by an Application for Payment will pass to the Owner no later than the time of payment. The Contractor further warrants that upon submittal of an Application for Payment all Work for which Certificates for Payment have been previously issued and payments received from the Owner shall, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information, and belief, be free and clear of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances, in favor of the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, or other persons or entities that provided labor, materials, and equipment relating to the Work.

### § 9.4 Certificates for Payment

**§ 9.4.1** The Architect will, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, either (1) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment in the full amount of the Application for Payment, with a copy to the Contractor; or (2) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment for such amount as the Architect determines is properly due, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reasons for withholding certification in part as provided in Section 9.5.1; or (3) withhold certification of the entire Application for Payment, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reason for withholding certification in whole as provided in Section 9.5.1.

**§ 9.4.2** The issuance of a Certificate for Payment will constitute a representation by the Architect to the Owner, based on the Architect's evaluation of the Work and the data in the Application for Payment, that, to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information, and belief, the Work has progressed to the point indicated, the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, and that the Contractor is entitled to payment in the amount certified. The foregoing representations are subject to an evaluation of the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents upon Substantial Completion, to results of subsequent tests and inspections, to correction of minor deviations from the Contract Documents prior to completion, and to specific qualifications expressed by the Architect. However, the issuance of a Certificate for Payment will not be a representation that the Architect has (1) made exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work; (2) reviewed construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures; (3) reviewed copies of requisitions received from Subcontractors and suppliers and other data requested by the Owner to substantiate the Contractor's right to payment; or (4) made examination to ascertain how or for what purpose the Contractor has used money previously paid on account of the Contract Sum.

### § 9.5 Decisions to Withhold Certification

**§ 9.5.1** The Architect may withhold a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to protect the Owner, if in the Architect's opinion the representations to the Owner required by Section 9.4.2 cannot be made. If the Architect is unable to certify payment in the amount of the Application, the Architect will notify the Contractor and Owner as provided in Section 9.4.1. If the Contractor and Architect cannot agree on a revised amount, the Architect will promptly issue a Certificate for Payment for the amount for which the Architect is able to make such representations to the Owner. The Architect may also withhold a Certificate for Payment or, because of subsequently discovered evidence, may nullify the whole or a part of a Certificate for Payment previously issued, to such extent as may be necessary in the Architect's opinion to protect the Owner from loss for which the Contractor is responsible, including loss resulting from acts and omissions described in Section 3.3.2, because of

- .1 defective Work not remedied;
- .2 third party claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such claims, unless security acceptable to the Owner is provided by the Contractor;
- .3 failure of the Contractor to make payments properly to Subcontractors or suppliers for labor, materials or equipment;
- .4 reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
- .5 damage to the Owner or a Separate Contractor;
- .6 reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance would not be adequate to cover actual or liquidated damages for the anticipated delay;

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

or

.7 repeated failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.5.2** When either party disputes the Architect's decision regarding a Certificate for Payment under Section 9.5.1, in whole or in part, that party may submit a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

**§ 9.5.3** When the reasons for withholding certification are removed, certification will be made for amounts previously withheld.

**§ 9.5.4** If the Architect withholds certification for payment under Section 9.5.1.3, the Owner may, at its sole option, issue joint checks to the Contractor and to any Subcontractor or supplier to whom the Contractor failed to make payment for Work properly performed or material or equipment suitably delivered. If the Owner makes payments by joint check, the Owner shall notify the Architect and the Contractor shall reflect such payment on its next Application for Payment.

**§ 9.6 Progress Payments**

**§ 9.6.1** After the Architect has issued a Certificate for Payment, the Owner shall make payment in the manner and within the time provided in the Contract Documents, and shall so notify the Architect.

**§ 9.6.2** The Contractor shall pay each Subcontractor, no later than seven days after receipt of payment from the Owner, the amount to which the Subcontractor is entitled, reflecting percentages actually retained from payments to the Contractor on account of the Subcontractor's portion of the Work. The Contractor shall, by appropriate agreement with each Subcontractor, require each Subcontractor to make payments to Sub-subcontractors in a similar manner.

**§ 9.6.3** The Architect will, on request, furnish to a Subcontractor, if practicable, information regarding percentages of completion or amounts applied for by the Contractor and action taken thereon by the Architect and Owner on account of portions of the Work done by such Subcontractor.

**§ 9.6.4** The Owner has the right to request written evidence from the Contractor that the Contractor has properly paid Subcontractors and suppliers amounts paid by the Owner to the Contractor for subcontracted Work. If the Contractor fails to furnish such evidence within seven days, the Owner shall have the right to contact Subcontractors and suppliers to ascertain whether they have been properly paid. Neither the Owner nor Architect shall have an obligation to pay, or to see to the payment of money to, a Subcontractor or supplier, except as may otherwise be required by law.

**§ 9.6.5** The Contractor's payments to suppliers shall be treated in a manner similar to that provided in Sections 9.6.2, 9.6.3 and 9.6.4.

**§ 9.6.6** A Certificate for Payment, a progress payment, or partial or entire use or occupancy of the Project by the Owner shall not constitute acceptance of Work not in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.6.7** Unless the Contractor provides the Owner with a payment bond in the full penal sum of the Contract Sum, payments received by the Contractor for Work properly performed by Subcontractors or provided by suppliers shall be held by the Contractor for those Subcontractors or suppliers who performed Work or furnished materials, or both, under contract with the Contractor for which payment was made by the Owner. Nothing contained herein shall require money to be placed in a separate account and not commingled with money of the Contractor, create any fiduciary liability or tort liability on the part of the Contractor for breach of trust, or entitle any person or entity to an award of punitive damages against the Contractor for breach of the requirements of this provision.

**§ 9.6.8** Provided the Owner has fulfilled its payment obligations under the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall defend and indemnify the Owner from all loss, liability, damage or expense, including reasonable attorney's fees and litigation expenses, arising out of any lien claim or other claim for payment by any Subcontractor or supplier of any tier. Upon receipt of notice of a lien claim or other claim for payment, the Owner shall notify the Contractor. If approved by the applicable court, when required, the Contractor may substitute a surety bond for the property against which the lien or other claim for payment has been asserted.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

### § 9.7 Failure of Payment

If the Architect does not issue a Certificate for Payment, through no fault of the Contractor, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, or if the Owner does not pay the Contractor within seven days after the date established in the Contract Documents, the amount certified by the Architect or awarded by binding dispute resolution, then the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and Architect, stop the Work until payment of the amount owing has been received. The Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided for in the Contract Documents.

### § 9.8 Substantial Completion

**§ 9.8.1** Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work or designated portion thereof is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use.

**§ 9.8.2** When the Contractor considers that the Work, or a portion thereof which the Owner agrees to accept separately, is substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Architect a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected prior to final payment. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.8.3** Upon receipt of the Contractor's list, the Architect will make an inspection to determine whether the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete. If the Architect's inspection discloses any item, whether or not included on the Contractor's list, which is not sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work or designated portion thereof for its intended use, the Contractor shall, before issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, complete or correct such item upon notification by the Architect. In such case, the Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by the Architect to determine Substantial Completion.

**§ 9.8.4** When the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete, the Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion that shall establish the date of Substantial Completion; establish responsibilities of the Owner and Contractor for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance; and fix the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the list accompanying the Certificate. Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Substantial Completion.

**§ 9.8.5** The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall be submitted to the Owner and Contractor for their written acceptance of responsibilities assigned to them in the Certificate. Upon such acceptance, and consent of surety if any, the Owner shall make payment of retainage applying to the Work or designated portion thereof. Such payment shall be adjusted for Work that is incomplete or not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

### § 9.9 Partial Occupancy or Use

**§ 9.9.1** The Owner may occupy or use any completed or partially completed portion of the Work at any stage when such portion is designated by separate agreement with the Contractor, provided such occupancy or use is consented to by the insurer and authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Project. Such partial occupancy or use may commence whether or not the portion is substantially complete, provided the Owner and Contractor have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, retainage, if any, security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance, and have agreed in writing concerning the period for correction of the Work and commencement of warranties required by the Contract Documents. When the Contractor considers a portion substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit a list to the Architect as provided under Section 9.8.2. Consent of the Contractor to partial occupancy or use shall not be unreasonably withheld. The stage of the progress of the Work shall be determined by written agreement between the Owner and Contractor or, if no agreement is reached, by decision of the Architect.

**§ 9.9.2** Immediately prior to such partial occupancy or use, the Owner, Contractor, and Architect shall jointly inspect the area to be occupied or portion of the Work to be used in order to determine and record the condition of the Work.

**§ 9.9.3** Unless otherwise agreed upon, partial occupancy or use of a portion or portions of the Work shall not constitute acceptance of Work not complying with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

### § 9.10 Final Completion and Final Payment

**§ 9.10.1** Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice that the Work is ready for final inspection and acceptance and upon receipt of a final Application for Payment, the Architect will promptly make such inspection. When the Architect finds the Work acceptable under the Contract Documents and the Contract fully performed, the Architect will promptly issue a final Certificate for Payment stating that to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information and belief, and on the basis of the Architect's on-site visits and inspections, the Work has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents and that the entire balance found to be due the Contractor and noted in the final Certificate is due and payable. The Architect's final Certificate for Payment will constitute a further representation that conditions listed in Section 9.10.2 as precedent to the Contractor's being entitled to final payment have been fulfilled.

**§ 9.10.2** Neither final payment nor any remaining retained percentage shall become due until the Contractor submits to the Architect (1) an affidavit that payrolls, bills for materials and equipment, and other indebtedness connected with the Work for which the Owner or the Owner's property might be responsible or encumbered (less amounts withheld by Owner) have been paid or otherwise satisfied, (2) a certificate evidencing that insurance required by the Contract Documents to remain in force after final payment is currently in effect, (3) a written statement that the Contractor knows of no reason that the insurance will not be renewable to cover the period required by the Contract Documents, (4) consent of surety, if any, to final payment, (5) documentation of any special warranties, such as manufacturers' warranties or specific Subcontractor warranties, and (6) if required by the Owner, other data establishing payment or satisfaction of obligations, such as receipts and releases and waivers of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract, to the extent and in such form as may be designated by the Owner. If a Subcontractor refuses to furnish a release or waiver required by the Owner, the Contractor may furnish a bond satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify the Owner against such lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance. If a lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance remains unsatisfied after payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the Owner all money that the Owner may be compelled to pay in discharging the lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance, including all costs and reasonable attorneys' fees.

**§ 9.10.3** If, after Substantial Completion of the Work, final completion thereof is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor or by issuance of Change Orders affecting final completion, and the Architect so confirms, the Owner shall, upon application by the Contractor and certification by the Architect, and without terminating the Contract, make payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed, corrected, and accepted. If the remaining balance for Work not fully completed or corrected is less than retainage stipulated in the Contract Documents, and if bonds have been furnished, the written consent of the surety to payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Architect prior to certification of such payment. Such payment shall be made under terms and conditions governing final payment, except that it shall not constitute a waiver of Claims.

**§ 9.10.4** The making of final payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the Owner except those arising from

- .1 liens, Claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;
- .2 failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents;
- .3 terms of special warranties required by the Contract Documents; or
- .4 audits performed by the Owner, if permitted by the Contract Documents, after final payment.

**§ 9.10.5** Acceptance of final payment by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a supplier, shall constitute a waiver of claims by that payee except those previously made in writing and identified by that payee as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment.

## ARTICLE 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

### § 10.1 Safety Precautions and Programs

The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining, and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the performance of the Contract.

### § 10.2 Safety of Persons and Property

**§ 10.2.1** The Contractor shall take reasonable precautions for safety of, and shall provide reasonable protection to prevent damage, injury, or loss to

- .1 employees on the Work and other persons who may be affected thereby;

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

.2 the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the site, under care, custody, or control of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a Sub-subcontractor; and

.3 other property at the site or adjacent thereto, such as trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, and utilities not designated for removal, relocation, or replacement in the course of construction.

**§ 10.2.2** The Contractor shall comply with, and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities, bearing on safety of persons or property or their protection from damage, injury, or loss.

**§ 10.2.3** The Contractor shall implement, erect, and maintain, as required by existing conditions and performance of the Contract, reasonable safeguards for safety and protection, including posting danger signs and other warnings against hazards; promulgating safety regulations; and notifying the owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities of the safeguards.

**§ 10.2.4** When use or storage of explosives or other hazardous materials or equipment, or unusual methods are necessary for execution of the Work, the Contractor shall exercise utmost care and carry on such activities under supervision of properly qualified personnel.

**§ 10.2.5** The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage and loss (other than damage or loss insured under property insurance required by the Contract Documents) to property referred to in Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3 caused in whole or in part by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts they may be liable and for which the Contractor is responsible under Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3. The Contractor may make a Claim for the cost to remedy the damage or loss to the extent such damage or loss is attributable to acts or omissions of the Owner or Architect or anyone directly or indirectly employed by either of them, or by anyone for whose acts either of them may be liable, and not attributable to the fault or negligence of the Contractor. The foregoing obligations of the Contractor are in addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.18.

**§ 10.2.6** The Contractor shall designate a responsible member of the Contractor's organization at the site whose duty shall be the prevention of accidents. This person shall be the Contractor's superintendent unless otherwise designated by the Contractor in writing to the Owner and Architect.

**§ 10.2.7** The Contractor shall not permit any part of the construction or site to be loaded so as to cause damage or create an unsafe condition.

**§ 10.2.8 Injury or Damage to Person or Property**

If either party suffers injury or damage to person or property because of an act or omission of the other party, or of others for whose acts such party is legally responsible, notice of the injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party within a reasonable time not exceeding 21 days after discovery. The notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter.

**§ 10.3 Hazardous Materials and Substances**

**§ 10.3.1** The Contractor is responsible for compliance with any requirements included in the Contract Documents regarding hazardous materials or substances. If the Contractor encounters a hazardous material or substance not addressed in the Contract Documents and if reasonable precautions will be inadequate to prevent foreseeable bodily injury or death to persons resulting from a material or substance, including but not limited to asbestos or polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), encountered on the site by the Contractor, the Contractor shall, upon recognizing the condition, immediately stop Work in the affected area and notify the Owner and Architect of the condition.

**§ 10.3.2** Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice, the Owner shall obtain the services of a licensed laboratory to verify the presence or absence of the material or substance reported by the Contractor and, in the event such material or substance is found to be present, to cause it to be rendered harmless. Unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish in writing to the Contractor and Architect the names and qualifications of persons or entities who are to perform tests verifying the presence or absence of the material or substance or who are to perform the task of removal or safe containment of the material or substance. The Contractor and the Architect will promptly reply to the Owner in writing stating whether or not either has reasonable objection to the persons or entities proposed by the Owner. If either the Contractor or Architect has an objection to a person or entity proposed

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

by the Owner, the Owner shall propose another to whom the Contractor and the Architect have no reasonable objection. When the material or substance has been rendered harmless, Work in the affected area shall resume upon written agreement of the Owner and Contractor. By Change Order, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable additional costs of shutdown, delay, and start-up.

**§ 10.3.3** To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Owner shall indemnify and hold harmless the Contractor, Subcontractors, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work in the affected area if in fact the material or substance presents the risk of bodily injury or death as described in Section 10.3.1 and has not been rendered harmless, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), except to the extent that such damage, loss, or expense is due to the fault or negligence of the party seeking indemnity.

**§ 10.3.4** The Owner shall not be responsible under this Section 10.3 for hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site unless such materials or substances are required by the Contract Documents. The Owner shall be responsible for hazardous materials or substances required by the Contract Documents, except to the extent of the Contractor's fault or negligence in the use and handling of such materials or substances.

**§ 10.3.5** The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for the cost and expense the Owner incurs (1) for remediation of hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site and negligently handles, or (2) where the Contractor fails to perform its obligations under Section 10.3.1, except to the extent that the cost and expense are due to the Owner's fault or negligence.

**§ 10.3.6** If, without negligence on the part of the Contractor, the Contractor is held liable by a government agency for the cost of remediation of a hazardous material or substance solely by reason of performing Work as required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all cost and expense thereby incurred.

### § 10.4 Emergencies

In an emergency affecting safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall act, at the Contractor's discretion, to prevent threatened damage, injury, or loss. Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of an emergency shall be determined as provided in Article 15 and Article 7.

## ARTICLE 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS

### § 11.1 Contractor's Insurance and Bonds

**§ 11.1.1** The Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Owner, Architect, and Architect's consultants shall be named as additional insureds under the Contractor's commercial general liability policy or as otherwise described in the Contract Documents.

**§ 11.1.2** The Contractor shall provide surety bonds of the types, for such penal sums, and subject to such terms and conditions as required by the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

**§ 11.1.3** Upon the request of any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of bonds covering payment of obligations arising under the Contract, the Contractor shall promptly furnish a copy of the bonds or shall authorize a copy to be furnished.

**§ 11.1.4 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Contractor's Required Insurance.** Within three (3) business days of the date the Contractor becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide notice to the Owner of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Upon receipt of notice from the Contractor, the Owner shall, unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Owner, have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by the Contractor. The furnishing of notice by the Contractor shall not relieve

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

the Contractor of any contractual obligation to provide any required coverage.

**§ 11.2 Owner's Insurance**

**§ 11.2.1** The Owner shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Owner shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

**§ 11.2.2 Failure to Purchase Required Property Insurance.** If the Owner fails to purchase and maintain the required property insurance, with all of the coverages and in the amounts described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall inform the Contractor in writing prior to commencement of the Work. Upon receipt of notice from the Owner, the Contractor may delay commencement of the Work and may obtain insurance that will protect the interests of the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-Subcontractors in the Work. When the failure to provide coverage has been cured or resolved, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be equitably adjusted. In the event the Owner fails to procure coverage, the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent the loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance to have been procured by the Owner. The cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by a Change Order. If the Owner does not provide written notice, and the Contractor is damaged by the failure or neglect of the Owner to purchase or maintain the required insurance, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all reasonable costs and damages attributable thereto.

**§ 11.2.3 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Owner's Required Property Insurance.** Within three (3) business days of the date the Owner becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any property insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall provide notice to the Contractor of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Contractor: (1) the Contractor, upon receipt of notice from the Owner, shall have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by either the Owner or the Contractor; (2) the Contract Time and Contract Sum shall be equitably adjusted; and (3) the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent any loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance had it not expired or been cancelled. If the Contractor purchases replacement coverage, the cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by an appropriate Change Order. The furnishing of notice by the Owner shall not relieve the Owner of any contractual obligation to provide required insurance.

**§ 11.3 Waivers of Subrogation**

**§ 11.3.1** The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, each of the other; (2) the Architect and Architect's consultants; and (3) Separate Contractors, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, for damages caused by fire, or other causes of loss, to the extent those losses are covered by property insurance required by the Agreement or other property insurance applicable to the Project, except such rights as they have to proceeds of such insurance. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require similar written waivers in favor of the individuals and entities identified above from the Architect, Architect's consultants, Separate Contractors, subcontractors, and sub-subcontractors. The policies of insurance purchased and maintained by each person or entity agreeing to waive claims pursuant to this section 11.3.1 shall not prohibit this waiver of subrogation. This waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to a person or entity (1) even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, (2) even though that person or entity did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly, or (3) whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the damaged property.

**§ 11.3.2** If during the Project construction period the Owner insures properties, real or personal or both, at or adjacent to the site by property insurance under policies separate from those insuring the Project, or if after final payment property insurance is to be provided on the completed Project through a policy or policies other than those insuring the Project during the construction period, to the extent permissible by such policies, the Owner waives all rights in accordance with the terms of Section 11.3.1 for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss covered by this separate property insurance.

**§ 11.4 Loss of Use, Business Interruption, and Delay in Completion Insurance**

The Owner, at the Owner's option, may purchase and maintain insurance that will protect the Owner against loss of use of the Owner's property, or the inability to conduct normal operations, due to fire or other causes of loss. The Owner waives all rights of action against the Contractor and Architect for loss of use of the Owner's property, due to

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

fire or other hazards however caused.

**§11.5 Adjustment and Settlement of Insured Loss**

**§ 11.5.1** A loss insured under the property insurance required by the Agreement shall be adjusted by the Owner as fiduciary and made payable to the Owner as fiduciary for the insureds, as their interests may appear, subject to requirements of any applicable mortgagee clause and of Section 11.5.2. The Owner shall pay the Architect and Contractor their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Owner, and by appropriate agreements the Architect and Contractor shall make payments to their consultants and Subcontractors in similar manner.

**§ 11.5.2** Prior to settlement of an insured loss, the Owner shall notify the Contractor of the terms of the proposed settlement as well as the proposed allocation of the insurance proceeds. The Contractor shall have 14 days from receipt of notice to object to the proposed settlement or allocation of the proceeds. If the Contractor does not object, the Owner shall settle the loss and the Contractor shall be bound by the settlement and allocation. Upon receipt, the Owner shall deposit the insurance proceeds in a separate account and make the appropriate distributions. Thereafter, if no other agreement is made or the Owner does not terminate the Contract for convenience, the Owner and Contractor shall execute a Change Order for reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work in the amount allocated for that purpose. If the Contractor timely objects to either the terms of the proposed settlement or the allocation of the proceeds, the Owner may proceed to settle the insured loss, and any dispute between the Owner and Contractor arising out of the settlement or allocation of the proceeds shall be resolved pursuant to Article 15. Pending resolution of any dispute, the Owner may issue a Construction Change Directive for the reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work.

## ARTICLE 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK

### § 12.1 Uncovering of Work

**§ 12.1.1** If a portion of the Work is covered contrary to the Architect's request or to requirements specifically expressed in the Contract Documents, it must, if requested in writing by the Architect, be uncovered for the Architect's examination and be replaced at the Contractor's expense without change in the Contract Time.

**§ 12.1.2** If a portion of the Work has been covered that the Architect has not specifically requested to examine prior to its being covered, the Architect may request to see such Work and it shall be uncovered by the Contractor. If such Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be entitled to an equitable adjustment to the Contract Sum and Contract Time as may be appropriate. If such Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the costs of uncovering the Work, and the cost of correction, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

### § 12.2 Correction of Work

**§ 12.2.1 Before Substantial Completion**

The Contractor shall promptly correct Work rejected by the Architect or failing to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, discovered before Substantial Completion and whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. Costs of correcting such rejected Work, including additional testing and inspections, the cost of uncovering and replacement, and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

**§ 12.2.2 After Substantial Completion**

**§ 12.2.2.1** In addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.5, if, within one year after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof or after the date for commencement of warranties established under Section 9.9.1, or by terms of any applicable special warranty required by the Contract Documents, any of the Work is found to be not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall correct it promptly after receipt of notice from the Owner to do so, unless the Owner has previously given the Contractor a written acceptance of such condition. The Owner shall give such notice promptly after discovery of the condition. During the one-year period for correction of Work, if the Owner fails to notify the Contractor and give the Contractor an opportunity to make the correction, the Owner waives the rights to require correction by the Contractor and to make a claim for breach of warranty. If the Contractor fails to correct nonconforming Work within a reasonable time during that period after receipt of notice from the Owner or Architect, the Owner may correct it in accordance with Section 2.5.

**§ 12.2.2.2** The one-year period for correction of Work shall be extended with respect to portions of Work first performed after Substantial Completion by the period of time between Substantial Completion and the actual completion of that portion of the Work.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
User Notes: (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

**§ 12.2.2.3** The one-year period for correction of Work shall not be extended by corrective Work performed by the Contractor pursuant to this Section 12.2.

**§ 12.2.3** The Contractor shall remove from the site portions of the Work that are not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and are neither corrected by the Contractor nor accepted by the Owner.

**§ 12.2.4** The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting destroyed or damaged construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors, whether completed or partially completed, caused by the Contractor's correction or removal of Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

**§ 12.2.5** Nothing contained in this Section 12.2 shall be construed to establish a period of limitation with respect to other obligations the Contractor has under the Contract Documents. Establishment of the one-year period for correction of Work as described in Section 12.2.2 relates only to the specific obligation of the Contractor to correct the Work, and has no relationship to the time within which the obligation to comply with the Contract Documents may be sought to be enforced, nor to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish the Contractor's liability with respect to the Contractor's obligations other than specifically to correct the Work.

### § 12.3 Acceptance of Nonconforming Work

If the Owner prefers to accept Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so instead of requiring its removal and correction, in which case the Contract Sum will be reduced as appropriate and equitable. Such adjustment shall be effected whether or not final payment has been made.

## ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

### § 13.1 Governing Law

The Contract shall be governed by the law of the place where the Project is located, excluding that jurisdiction's choice of law rules. If the parties have selected arbitration as the method of binding dispute resolution, the Federal Arbitration Act shall govern Section 15.4.

### § 13.2 Successors and Assigns

**§ 13.2.1** The Owner and Contractor respectively bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives to covenants, agreements, and obligations contained in the Contract Documents. Except as provided in Section 13.2.2, neither party to the Contract shall assign the Contract as a whole without written consent of the other. If either party attempts to make an assignment without such consent, that party shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all obligations under the Contract.

**§ 13.2.2** The Owner may, without consent of the Contractor, assign the Contract to a lender providing construction financing for the Project, if the lender assumes the Owner's rights and obligations under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall execute all consents reasonably required to facilitate the assignment.

### § 13.3 Rights and Remedies

**§ 13.3.1** Duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of duties, obligations, rights, and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law.

**§ 13.3.2** No action or failure to act by the Owner, Architect, or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of a right or duty afforded them under the Contract, nor shall such action or failure to act constitute approval of or acquiescence in a breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed upon in writing.

### § 13.4 Tests and Inspections

**§ 13.4.1** Tests, inspections, and approvals of portions of the Work shall be made as required by the Contract Documents and by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules, and regulations or lawful orders of public authorities. Unless otherwise provided, the Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests, inspections, and approvals with an independent testing laboratory or entity acceptable to the Owner, or with the appropriate public authority, and shall bear all related costs of tests, inspections, and approvals. The Contractor shall give the Architect timely notice of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. The Owner shall bear costs of tests, inspections, or approvals that do not become requirements until after bids are received or negotiations concluded. The Owner shall directly arrange and pay for tests, inspections, or

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
User Notes: (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

approvals where building codes or applicable laws or regulations so require.

**§ 13.4.2** If the Architect, Owner, or public authorities having jurisdiction determine that portions of the Work require additional testing, inspection, or approval not included under Section 13.4.1, the Architect will, upon written authorization from the Owner, instruct the Contractor to make arrangements for such additional testing, inspection, or approval, by an entity acceptable to the Owner, and the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Architect of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. Such costs, except as provided in Section 13.4.3, shall be at the Owner's expense.

**§ 13.4.3** If procedures for testing, inspection, or approval under Sections 13.4.1 and 13.4.2 reveal failure of the portions of the Work to comply with requirements established by the Contract Documents, all costs made necessary by such failure, including those of repeated procedures and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

**§ 13.4.4** Required certificates of testing, inspection, or approval shall, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, be secured by the Contractor and promptly delivered to the Architect.

**§ 13.4.5** If the Architect is to observe tests, inspections, or approvals required by the Contract Documents, the Architect will do so promptly and, where practicable, at the normal place of testing.

**§ 13.4.6** Tests or inspections conducted pursuant to the Contract Documents shall be made promptly to avoid unreasonable delay in the Work.

### § 13.5 Interest

Payments due and unpaid under the Contract Documents shall bear interest from the date payment is due at the rate the parties agree upon in writing or, in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located.

## ARTICLE 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

### § 14.1 Termination by the Contractor

**§ 14.1.1** The Contractor may terminate the Contract if the Work is stopped for a period of 30 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, for any of the following reasons:

.1 Issuance of an order of a court or other public authority having jurisdiction that requires all Work to be stopped;

.2 An act of government, such as a declaration of national emergency, that requires all Work to be stopped;

.3 Because the Architect has not issued a Certificate for Payment and has not notified the Contractor of the reason for withholding certification as provided in Section 9.4.1, or because the Owner has not made payment on a Certificate for Payment within the time stated in the Contract Documents; or

.4 The Owner has failed to furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence as required by Section 2.2.

**§ 14.1.2** The Contractor may terminate the Contract if, through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, repeated suspensions, delays, or interruptions of the entire Work by the Owner as described in Section 14.3, constitute in the aggregate more than 100 percent of the total number of days scheduled for completion, or 120 days in any 365-day period, whichever is less.

**§ 14.1.3** If one of the reasons described in Section 14.1.1 or 14.1.2 exists, the Contractor may, upon seven days' notice to the Owner and Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for Work executed, as well as reasonable overhead and profit on Work not executed, and costs incurred by reason of such termination.

**§ 14.1.4** If the Work is stopped for a period of 60 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or their agents or employees or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work because the Owner has repeatedly failed to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract Documents with respect to matters important to the progress of the Work, the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and the Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner as provided in

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
User Notes: (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

Section 14.1.3.

**§ 14.2 Termination by the Owner for Cause**

**§ 14.2.1** The Owner may terminate the Contract if the Contractor

.1 repeatedly refuses or fails to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper materials;

.2 fails to make payment to Subcontractors or suppliers in accordance with the respective agreements between the Contractor and the Subcontractors or suppliers;

.3 repeatedly disregards applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of a public authority; or

.4 otherwise is guilty of substantial breach of a provision of the Contract Documents.

**§ 14.2.2** When any of the reasons described in Section 14.2.1 exist, and upon certification by the Architect that sufficient cause exists to justify such action, the Owner may, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner and after giving the Contractor and the Contractor's surety, if any, seven days' notice, terminate employment of the Contractor and may, subject to any prior rights of the surety:

.1 Exclude the Contractor from the site and take possession of all materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery thereon owned by the Contractor;

.2 Accept assignment of subcontracts pursuant to Section 5.4; and

.3 Finish the Work by whatever reasonable method the Owner may deem expedient. Upon written request of the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor a detailed accounting of the costs incurred by the Owner in finishing the Work.

**§ 14.2.3** When the Owner terminates the Contract for one of the reasons stated in Section 14.2.1, the Contractor shall not be entitled to receive further payment until the Work is finished.

**§ 14.2.4** If the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds costs of finishing the Work, including compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, and other damages incurred by the Owner and not expressly waived, such excess shall be paid to the Contractor. If such costs and damages exceed the unpaid balance, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. The amount to be paid to the Contractor or Owner, as the case may be, shall be certified by the Initial Decision Maker, upon application, and this obligation for payment shall survive termination of the Contract.

**§ 14.3 Suspension by the Owner for Convenience**

**§ 14.3.1** The Owner may, without cause, order the Contractor in writing to suspend, delay or interrupt the Work, in whole or in part for such period of time as the Owner may determine.

**§ 14.3.2** The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted for increases in the cost and time caused by suspension, delay, or interruption under Section 14.3.1. Adjustment of the Contract Sum shall include profit. No adjustment shall be made to the extent

.1 that performance is, was, or would have been, so suspended, delayed, or interrupted, by another cause for which the Contractor is responsible; or

.2 that an equitable adjustment is made or denied under another provision of the Contract.

**§ 14.4 Termination by the Owner for Convenience**

**§ 14.4.1** The Owner may, at any time, terminate the Contract for the Owner's convenience and without cause.

**§ 14.4.2** Upon receipt of notice from the Owner of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall

.1 cease operations as directed by the Owner in the notice;

.2 take actions necessary, or that the Owner may direct, for the protection and preservation of the Work; and

.3 except for Work directed to be performed prior to the effective date of termination stated in the notice, terminate all existing subcontracts and purchase orders and enter into no further subcontracts and purchase orders.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

**§ 14.4.3** In case of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Owner shall pay the Contractor for Work properly executed; costs incurred by reason of the termination, including costs attributable to termination of Subcontracts; and the termination fee, if any, set forth in the Agreement.

## ARTICLE 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

### § 15.1 Claims

#### § 15.1.1 Definition

A Claim is a demand or assertion by one of the parties seeking, as a matter of right, payment of money, a change in the Contract Time, or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The term "Claim" also includes other disputes and matters in question between the Owner and Contractor arising out of or relating to the Contract. The responsibility to substantiate Claims shall rest with the party making the Claim. This Section 15.1.1 does not require the Owner to file a Claim in order to impose liquidated damages in accordance with the Contract Documents.

#### § 15.1.2 Time Limits on Claims

The Owner and Contractor shall commence all Claims and causes of action against the other and arising out of or related to the Contract, whether in contract, tort, breach of warranty or otherwise, in accordance with the requirements of the binding dispute resolution method selected in the Agreement and within the period specified by applicable law, but in any case not more than 10 years after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work. The Owner and Contractor waive all Claims and causes of action not commenced in accordance with this Section 15.1.2.

#### § 15.1.3 Notice of Claims

**§ 15.1.3.1** Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered prior to expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party and to the Initial Decision Maker with a copy sent to the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker. Claims by either party under this Section 15.1.3.1 shall be initiated within 21 days after occurrence of the event giving rise to such Claim or within 21 days after the claimant first recognizes the condition giving rise to the Claim, whichever is later.

**§ 15.1.3.2** Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party. In such event, no decision by the Initial Decision Maker is required.

#### § 15.1.4 Continuing Contract Performance

**§ 15.1.4.1** Pending final resolution of a Claim, except as otherwise agreed in writing or as provided in Section 9.7 and Article 14, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract and the Owner shall continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 15.1.4.2** The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted in accordance with the Initial Decision Maker's decision, subject to the right of either party to proceed in accordance with this Article 15. The Architect will issue Certificates for Payment in accordance with the decision of the Initial Decision Maker.

#### § 15.1.5 Claims for Additional Cost

If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Sum, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given before proceeding to execute the portion of the Work that is the subject of the Claim. Prior notice is not required for Claims relating to an emergency endangering life or property arising under Section 10.4.

#### § 15.1.6 Claims for Additional Time

**§ 15.1.6.1** If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Time, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given. The Contractor's Claim shall include an estimate of cost and of probable effect of delay on progress of the Work. In the case of a continuing delay, only one Claim is necessary.

**§ 15.1.6.2** If adverse weather conditions are the basis for a Claim for additional time, such Claim shall be documented by data substantiating that weather conditions were abnormal for the period of time, could not have been reasonably anticipated, and had an adverse effect on the scheduled construction.

#### § 15.1.7 Waiver of Claims for Consequential Damages

The Contractor and Owner waive Claims against each other for consequential damages arising out of or relating to this Contract. This mutual waiver includes

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

.1 damages incurred by the Owner for rental expenses, for losses of use, income, profit, financing, business and reputation, and for loss of management or employee productivity or of the services of such persons; and

.2 damages incurred by the Contractor for principal office expenses including the compensation of personnel stationed there, for losses of financing, business and reputation, and for loss of profit, except anticipated profit arising directly from the Work.

This mutual waiver is applicable, without limitation, to all consequential damages due to either party's termination in accordance with Article 14. Nothing contained in this Section 15.1.7 shall be deemed to preclude assessment of liquidated damages, when applicable, in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

**§ 15.2 Initial Decision**

**§ 15.2.1** Claims, excluding those where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2 or arising under Sections 10.3, 10.4, and 11.5, shall be referred to the Initial Decision Maker for initial decision. The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker, unless otherwise indicated in the Agreement. Except for those Claims excluded by this Section 15.2.1, an initial decision shall be required as a condition precedent to mediation of any Claim. If an initial decision has not been rendered within 30 days after the Claim has been referred to the Initial Decision Maker, the party asserting the Claim may demand mediation and binding dispute resolution without a decision having been rendered. Unless the Initial Decision Maker and all affected parties agree, the Initial Decision Maker will not decide disputes between the Contractor and persons or entities other than the Owner.

**§ 15.2.2** The Initial Decision Maker will review Claims and within ten days of the receipt of a Claim take one or more of the following actions: (1) request additional supporting data from the claimant or a response with supporting data from the other party, (2) reject the Claim in whole or in part, (3) approve the Claim, (4) suggest a compromise, or (5) advise the parties that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim if the Initial Decision Maker lacks sufficient information to evaluate the merits of the Claim or if the Initial Decision Maker concludes that, in the Initial Decision Maker's sole discretion, it would be inappropriate for the Initial Decision Maker to resolve the Claim.

**§ 15.2.3** In evaluating Claims, the Initial Decision Maker may, but shall not be obligated to, consult with or seek information from either party or from persons with special knowledge or expertise who may assist the Initial Decision Maker in rendering a decision. The Initial Decision Maker may request the Owner to authorize retention of such persons at the Owner's expense.

**§ 15.2.4** If the Initial Decision Maker requests a party to provide a response to a Claim or to furnish additional supporting data, such party shall respond, within ten days after receipt of the request, and shall either (1) provide a response on the requested supporting data, (2) advise the Initial Decision Maker when the response or supporting data will be furnished, or (3) advise the Initial Decision Maker that no supporting data will be furnished. Upon receipt of the response or supporting data, if any, the Initial Decision Maker will either reject or approve the Claim in whole or in part.

**§ 15.2.5** The Initial Decision Maker will render an initial decision approving or rejecting the Claim, or indicating that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim. This initial decision shall (1) be in writing; (2) state the reasons therefor; and (3) notify the parties and the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker, of any change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time or both. The initial decision shall be final and binding on the parties but subject to mediation and, if the parties fail to resolve their dispute through mediation, to binding dispute resolution.

**§ 15.2.6** Either party may file for mediation of an initial decision at any time, subject to the terms of Section 15.2.6.1.

**§ 15.2.6.1** Either party may, within 30 days from the date of receipt of an initial decision, demand in writing that the other party file for mediation. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for mediation within 30 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to mediate or pursue binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

**§ 15.2.7** In the event of a Claim against the Contractor, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety, if any, of the nature and amount of the Claim. If the Claim relates to a possibility of a Contractor's default, the Owner

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety and request the surety's assistance in resolving the controversy.

**§ 15.2.8** If a Claim relates to or is the subject of a mechanic's lien, the party asserting such Claim may proceed in accordance with applicable law to comply with the lien notice or filing deadlines.

**§ 15.3 Mediation**

**§ 15.3.1** Claims, disputes, or other matters in controversy arising out of or related to the Contract, except those waived as provided for in Sections 9.10.4, 9.10.5, and 15.1.7, shall be subject to mediation as a condition precedent to binding dispute resolution.

**§ 15.3.2** The parties shall endeavor to resolve their Claims by mediation which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Mediation Procedures in effect on the date of the Agreement. A request for mediation shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the mediation. The request may be made concurrently with the filing of binding dispute resolution proceedings but, in such event, mediation shall proceed in advance of binding dispute resolution proceedings, which shall be stayed pending mediation for a period of 60 days from the date of filing, unless stayed for a longer period by agreement of the parties or court order. If an arbitration is stayed pursuant to this Section 15.3.2, the parties may nonetheless proceed to the selection of the arbitrator(s) and agree upon a schedule for later proceedings.

**§ 15.3.3** Either party may, within 30 days from the date that mediation has been concluded without resolution of the dispute or 60 days after mediation has been demanded without resolution of the dispute, demand in writing that the other party file for binding dispute resolution. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for binding dispute resolution within 60 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

**§ 15.3.4** The parties shall share the mediator's fee and any filing fees equally. The mediation shall be held in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. Agreements reached in mediation shall be enforceable as settlement agreements in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

**§ 15.4 Arbitration**

**§ 15.4.1** If the parties have selected arbitration as the method for binding dispute resolution in the Agreement, any Claim subject to, but not resolved by, mediation shall be subject to arbitration which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Arbitration Rules in effect on the date of the Agreement. The Arbitration shall be conducted in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. A demand for arbitration shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the arbitration. The party filing a notice of demand for arbitration must assert in the demand all Claims then known to that party on which arbitration is permitted to be demanded.

**§ 15.4.1.1** A demand for arbitration shall be made no earlier than concurrently with the filing of a request for mediation, but in no event shall it be made after the date when the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim would be barred by the applicable statute of limitations. For statute of limitations purposes, receipt of a written demand for arbitration by the person or entity administering the arbitration shall constitute the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim.

**§ 15.4.2** The award rendered by the arbitrator or arbitrators shall be final, and judgment may be entered upon it in accordance with applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

**§ 15.4.3** The foregoing agreement to arbitrate and other agreements to arbitrate with an additional person or entity duly consented to by parties to the Agreement, shall be specifically enforceable under applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

**§ 15.4.4 Consolidation or Joinder**

**§ 15.4.4.1** Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may consolidate an arbitration conducted under this Agreement with any other arbitration to which it is a party provided that (1) the arbitration agreement governing the other arbitration permits consolidation, (2) the arbitrations to be consolidated substantially involve common questions of law or fact, and (3) the arbitrations employ materially

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
User Notes: (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

similar procedural rules and methods for selecting arbitrator(s).

**§ 15.4.4.2** Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may include by joinder persons or entities substantially involved in a common question of law or fact whose presence is required if complete relief is to be accorded in arbitration, provided that the party sought to be joined consents in writing to such joinder. Consent to arbitration involving an additional person or entity shall not constitute consent to arbitration of any claim, dispute or other matter in question not described in the written consent.

**§ 15.4.4.3** The Owner and Contractor grant to any person or entity made a party to an arbitration conducted under this Section 15.4, whether by joinder or consolidation, the same rights of joinder and consolidation as those of the Owner and Contractor under this Agreement.

AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

# *Additions and Deletions Report for*
## *AIA® Document A201® – 2017*

This Additions and Deletions Report, as defined on page 1 of the associated document, reproduces below all text the author has added to the standard form AIA document in order to complete it, as well as any text the author may have added to or deleted from the original AIA text. Added text is shown underlined. Deleted text is indicated with a horizontal line through the original AIA text.

Note: This Additions and Deletions Report is provided for information purposes only and is not incorporated into or constitute any part of the associated AIA document. This Additions and Deletions Report and its associated document were generated simultaneously by AIA software at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025.

**Changes to original AIA text**

**There are no edits to the original text**

**Variable Information**

**PAGE 1**

Timberwood Middle School Additions Project

18450 Timber Forest Drive
Humble, TX 77346

Humble Independent School District

10203 Birchridge Drive
Humble, TX 77338

Brown Reynolds Watford Architects, Inc. ("BRW")

3535 Travis Street, Suite 250
Dallas, TX 75204

Additions and Deletions Report for AIA Document A201 – 2017. Copyright © 1911, 1915, 1918, 1925, 1937, 1951, 1958, 1961, 1963, 1966, 1970, 1976, 1987, 1997, 2007 and 2017. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Subscription No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

# *Certification of Document's Authenticity*

*AIA® Document D401™ – 2003*

I, , hereby certify, to the best of my knowledge, information and belief, that I created the attached final document simultaneously with its associated Additions and Deletions Report and this certification at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Order No. 20250143828 from AIA Contract Documents software and that in preparing the attached final document I made no changes to the original text of AIA® Document A201™ - 2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, other than those additions and deletions shown in the associated Additions and Deletions Report.

_____

*(Signed)*

_____

*(Title)*

_____

*(Dated)*

AIA Document D401 – 2003. Copyright © 1992 and 2003. All rights reserved. "The American Institute of Architects," "American Institute of Architects," "AIA," the AIA Logo, and "AIA Contract Documents" are trademarks of The American Institute of Architects. This document was produced at 11:04:56 CDT on 07/23/2025 under Order No.20250143828 which expires on 07/12/2026, is not for resale, is licensed for one-time use only, and may only be used in accordance with the AIA Contract Documents® Terms of Service. To report copyright violations, e-mail docinfo@aiacontracts.com.
**User Notes:** (68810608437b2c820ac0e3d8)

**SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS TO THE AIA DOCUMENT A201-2017 GENERAL CONDITIONS**
**Owner: Humble Independent School District**
**Contractor: _____**
**Project:** Timberwood Middle School ("TMS") Additions Project

The following supplements modify the "General Conditions of the Contract for Construction", AIA Document A201, Sixteenth Edition, 2017. Where a portion of the General Conditions is modified or deleted by these Supplementary Conditions, the unaltered portions of the General Conditions shall remain in effect. As appropriate, for purposes of this Request for Proposal, the term "Bid" shall mean "Proposal" and the term "Bidder" shall mean "Offeror", wherever they appear in the Construction Documents.

## ARTICLE 1 -- GENERAL PROVISIONS

### 1.1 BASIC DEFINITIONS

#### 1.1.1 THE CONTRACT DOCUMENT

Delete Section **1.1.1** in its entirety and substitute the following:

**1.1.1** The Contract Documents are enumerated in the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor (hereinafter the Agreement) and consist of the Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Performance Bond, Labor and Material Payment Bond, Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of the Contract, executed EDGAR or FEMA certifications if applicable, and other documents listed in the Agreement and Modifications issued after execution of the Contract. A Modification is (1) a written amendment to the Contract executed by both Parties, (2) a Change Order, (3) a Construction Change Directive or (4) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Architect. Unless specifically enumerated in the Agreement, the Contract Documents do not include the advertisement or invitation to propose, instructions to Proposers, sample forms, other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, the Contractor's Proposal or portions of Addenda relating to proposal requirements).

To the extent any provision in the Supplementary Conditions to these AIA Document A201-2017 General Conditions, issued by Owner, conflicts with any provision in the Supplementary Conditions issued by the Architect; the Supplementary Conditions to these AIA Document A201-2017 General Conditions issued by Owner shall control.

#### 1.1.3 THE WORK

Add the following sentence at the end of this section:

It also includes all supplies, skill, supervision, transportation services and other facilities and things necessary, proper or incidental to the carrying out and completion of the terms of the contract and all other items of cost or value needed to produce, construct and fully complete the public work identified by the Contract Documents.

### 1.2 CORRELATION AND INTENT OF THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

Add the following Sections:

**1.2.1.2** Precedence of the Contract Documents: The most recently issued Document takes precedence over previous issues of the same Document. The order of precedence is as follows with the highest authority listed as "1".

- **.1** Contract Modifications (such as Change Orders) signed by the Contractor and Owner.
- **.2** The Agreement. (AIA Document A101-2017 or AIA Document A133-2019)
- **.3** The Supplementary Conditions to the AIA A201-2017 as amended by Owner
- **.4** The General Conditions of the Contract for Construction (AIA Document A201-2017)
- .**5** Addenda, with those of later date having precedence over those of earlier date
- **.6** Drawings and Specifications

Should these Documents disagree in themselves, the Architect and Owner will select the appropriate method for performing the Work, to facilitating avoiding increase in the Contract cost.

**1.2.1.3** Relation of Specifications and Drawings: To be equivalent in authority and priority. Should they disagree in themselves, or with each other, prices shall be based on the most expensive combination of quality and quantity of Work indicated. In the event of the above mentioned disagreements, the resolution shall be determined by the Architect and Owner.

## 1.6 NOTICE

Delete the text of Section **1.6.1** in its entirety and substitute the following:

**1.6.1** Written notice shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person to the individual or a member of the firm or entity or to an officer at the corporation for which is was intended, or if delivered at or sent by certified mail, or by registered or certified mail, or by courier service providing proof of delivery, to the last business address known to the party giving notice, or if delivered by facsimile or other electronic communications to the offices of the person or corporation for which it was intended. For facsimiles or other electronic communications received after 5:00 p.m. on a business day, or on a weekend or legal holiday on which the recipient's offices are closed, notice shall be deemed to have been duly served on the next business day. Either Party may change its address for notice by giving notice of the change of address in accordance with this provision. The Architect must be copied on notices sent to the Owner.

Delete the text of Section **1.6.2** in its entirety.

Add Section **1.9** as follows:

## 1.9 MISCELLANEOUS OTHER DEFINITIONS

### 1.9.1 ADDENDA, ADDENDUM

Documents issued by the Architect prior to execution of the Owner Contractor Agreement for this Project that modify or clarify the Proposal Documents. All addenda become a part of the Contract Documents.

### 1.9.2 ALTERNATE PROPOSAL(S)

A separate amount stated on a separate Proposal Form which, if accepted by the Owner, will be added to or deducted from the Base Proposal. If accepted, the work that corresponds to the alternate proposal will become part of the agreement between Owner and Contractor. Alternate proposals shall remain valid for the same period of time as the Base Proposal after receipt of proposals, regardless if an Owner Contractor Agreement has been executed, unless indicated otherwise herein.

### 1.9.3 APPROVED, APPROVED EQUIVALENT, APPROVED EQUAL, OR EQUAL

The terms Approved, Approved Equivalent, Approved Equal, and Or Equal, relate to the substitution of products or systems approved in writing by the Architect. Refer to Paragraph 3.4.2, Substitution of Products and Systems, for procedures which must be followed after award of contract. The substitution procedure process to be followed prior to receipt of proposals is described in the Instructions to Bidders.

### 1.9.4 BASE PROPOSAL

The Contractor's proposal for the Work, not including any Alternates.

### 1.9.5 CONTRACT TIME

The period of time which is established in the Contract Documents for Substantial Completion of the Work.

### 1.9.6 DATE OF AGREEMENT

The date of the Agreement is upon the execution by all Parties. See also Date of Commencement of Work.

### 1.9.7 DATE OF COMMENCEMENT OF THE WORK

The date of a written Notice to Proceed to the Contractor for a given portion of the Work. This date constitutes day zero (0) of the stated Contract Time. The Notice to Proceed will be issued after the District has received and validated the Contractor's Payment Bond, Performance Bond and Insurance.

### 1.9.8 DATE OF FINAL COMPLETION

The end of construction. See AIA Document A201, Section 9.10.

**1.9.9 DAY**

The following days are referenced in the documents:

.1 For the purpose of this agreement, "days" shall be defined as calendar days unless otherwise specified.

.2 Calendar Days. Extensions of time granted for Regular Work Days lost, if any, will be converted to Calendar Days.

.3 Holidays: The days officially recognized by the construction industry in this area as a holiday; normally limited to the observance days of New Year's Day, Memorial Day, Fourth of July, Labor Day, Thanksgiving Day and the day after and Christmas Day.

.4 Regular Work Days: All calendar days except holidays, Saturdays, and Sundays. Requests for extensions of time shall be requested on the basis of Regular Work Days, and those days, if approved, will be converted to calendar days by multiplying by a factor of one and four-tenths (1.4).

.5 No time extensions will be allowed due to inclement or adverse weather days.

**1.9.10 NOTICE TO PROCEED**

A notice that may be given by the Owner to the Contractor that directs the Contractor to start the Work. It may also establish the Date of Commencement of the Work.

**1.9.11 PROVIDE**

Whenever the word "provide" is used in these documents, it shall mean the same as "furnish and install".

**1.9.12 PUNCH LIST**

A comprehensive list prepared by the Contractor prior to Substantial Completion to establish all items to be completed or corrected; this list may be supplemented by the Architect or Owner. See AIA Document A201, Section 9.8.

**1.9.13 UNIT PRICES**

A cost for a unit of work as described in the Contract Documents. The Owner may add or deduct Unit Price work at the amounts stated on the Proposal Form and such amounts shall not be subject to additional mark up by the Contractor or his subcontractors.

## ARTICLE 2 – OWNER

**2.1 GENERAL**

Delete the text of Section **2.1.1** in its entirety and substitute the following:

**2.1.1** The Owner is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. All parties understand that only the Board of Trustees for the Owner acting as a body corporate has the authority to bind the Owner with respect to all matters requiring the Board's approval under current policy of the Board of Trustees for the Owner, including, but not limited to, Change Orders. Except as otherwise provided in Section 4.2.1, the Architect does not have authority to bind the Owner with respect to matters requiring the Owner's approval or authorization. The term "Owner" means the Owner or the Owner's authorized representative.

Delete the text of Section **2.1.2** in its entirely.

**2.2 EVIDENCE OF THE OWNER'S FINANCIAL ARRANGEMENTS**

After the first sentence of Section **2.2.1,** delete the remainder of Section **2.2.1** in its entirety.

Delete Sections **2.2.2** and **2.2.3** in their entirety.

**2.3 INFORMATION AND SERVICES REQUIRED OF THE OWNER**

Delete Section **2.3.6** in its entirety and replace it with the following:

**2.3.6** The Contractor will be furnished free of charge 25 copies of the Drawings and 25 copies of the Project Manual. These copies may have been used during the Bid/Proposal process and it is the Contractor's responsibility to determine their completeness and to request replacement of any missing portions. Additional new copies will be furnished at the cost of reproduction, postage, and handling.

**2.5 OWNER'S RIGHT TO CARRY OUT THE WORK**

Delete the text of Section **2.5.** in its entirety and substitute the following:

If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails, after receipt of written notice from the Owner, to commence and continue correction of such

default or neglect with diligence and promptness, the Owner may, without prejudice to other remedies the Owner may have, correct such deficiencies. In such case, an appropriate Change Order shall be issued deducting from payments then or thereafter due the Contractor the actual cost of correcting such deficiencies, including the Owner's expenses and compensation for the Architect's additional services and expenses made necessary by such default, neglect or failure. Such action by the Owner and amounts charged to the Contractor are both subject to the prior approval of the Architect. If payments then or thereafter due the Contractor are not sufficient to cover such amounts, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner within thirty (30) days of receipt of written notice from the Owner therefor.

Add Section **2.6** as follows:

**2.6 OWNER'S LACK OF LIABILITY TO THIRD PARTY**

**2.6.1** The Owner is not responsible for the acts and/or omissions of, or contractually involved with, any subcontractors, suppliers of labor or materials, and/or their respective employees or agents or any other third-party claimants. Such claimants shall not constitute third party beneficiaries under this contract. The Contractor and/or his Surety solely shall deal with, take responsibility for, and be liable to such parties under this Contract. Contractor will indemnify and defend the Owner from any legal actions against Owner for unpaid bills of subcontractors.

Add Section **2.7** as follows:

**2.7 OWNER'S RIGHT TO OCCUPY THE PROJECT**

**2.7.1** The Owner shall have the right to occupy or use without prejudice to the right of either party, any completed or largely completed portions of the project, notwithstanding the time for completing the entire work or such portions may not yet have expired. Such occupancy and use shall not constitute acceptance of any work not in accordance with the Contract Documents. If the Contractor determines that said occupancy may cause a delay to the completion of the project, the Contractor shall notify the Owner in writing immediately.

**2.7.2** Refer to Article 11 Insurance and Bonds regarding property insurance requirements in the event of such occupancy.

**2.7.3** If Contractor has not completed the obligations of the Contract Documents by the dates established by subsequent Amendments to the Agreement Between Owner and Contractor or Construction Manager, the Owner shall have the right to occupy or use the entire project.

## ARTICLE 3 -- CONTRACTOR

### 3.1 GENERAL

Add Section **3.1.4** as follows:

**3.1.4** The Contractor must be fully qualified under any state or local licensing laws for Contractors in effect at the time and at the location of the work. The Contractor is responsible for determining that all of his subcontractors and prospective subcontractors are duly licensed in accordance with the law. As used herein, the term "Contractor" means the Construction Manager-at-Risk under a Construction Manager-at-Risk project.

### 3.2 REVIEW OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS AND FIELD CONDITIONS BY CONTRACTOR

Delete the last sentence of Section **3.2.4** in its entirety and substitute the following:

If the Contractor performs those obligations, the Contractor shall not be liable to the Owner or Architect for damages resulting from errors, inconsistencies or omissions in the Contract Documents, for differences between field measurements or conditions and the Contract Documents, or for nonconformities of the Contract Documents to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities provided such errors, inconsistencies, omissions, differences, or nonconformities could not have been ascertained from a careful study of the Contract Documents.

Add Sections **3.2.5, 3.2.6** and **3.2.7** as follows:

**3.2.5** The Contractor shall make a reasonable attempt to interpret the Contract Documents before asking the Architect for assistance in interpretation. The Contractor shall not ask the Architect for observation of work prior to the Contractor's field superintendent's personal inspection of the work and his determination that the work of all major subcontractors, to allow the subcontractor to demonstrate his understanding of the documents to the Architect and to allow the subcontractor to ask for any interpretation he may require.

**3.2.6** If, in the opinion of the Architect, the Contractor does not make a reasonable effort to comply with the above requirements of the Contract Documents and this causes the Architect or his Consultants to expend an unreasonable amount of time in the discharge of the duties imposed on him by the Contract Documents, then the Contractor shall bear the cost of compensation for the Architect's additional services made necessary by such failure. The Architect will give the Contractor prior notice of intent to bill for additional services related to Sections 3.2.5, 3.2.6 and 3.7 before additional services are performed.

**3.2.7** If the Contractor has knowledge that any of the products or systems specified will perform in a manner that will limit the Contractor's ability to satisfactorily perform the work or to honor his Warranty, he shall promptly notify the Architect in writing, providing substantiation for his position. Any necessary changes, including substitutions of materials, shall be accomplished by appropriate Modification.

**3.3 SUPERVISION AND CONSTRUCTION PROCEDURES**

Delete the last sentence of Section **3.3.1** in its entirety and substitute the following:
If the Contractor is then instructed to proceed with the required means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures without acceptance of changes proposed by the Contractor, the Owner shall be solely responsible for any resulting loss or damage arising solely from those Owner-required means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, but only to the extent the Owner would be responsible for any such losses or damages under state and/or federal law.

Add Sections **3.3.4** and **3.3.5** as follows:
**3.3.4** The Contractor is especially cautioned to coordinate the routing of mechanical and electrical items prior to commencing these operations.
**3.3.5** Contractor shall bear sole responsibilities for design and execution of acceptable trenching and shoring procedures, in accordance with Texas Government Code, Section 2166.303 and Texas Health and Safety Code, Subchapter C, Sections 756.021, et seq. On trench excavations in excess of 5 feet in depth, Contractor shall pay a qualified engineer, experienced in the engineering design and preparation of drawings and specifications for compliance with state requirements for trenching and shoring, to prepare and professionally seal detailed drawings and specifications directing Contractor in the safe execution of trenching and shoring.
**3.3.6** Any time that the Contractors' employees, subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons or entities performing portions of the work for or on behalf of the Contractor or any of its subcontractors are on site, the work shall be supervised by a qualified employee of the Contractor.

**3.4 LABOR AND MATERIALS**

Delete Section **3.4.2** in its entirety and replace it with the following:
**3.4.2** The materials, products, and the systems covered by these specifications have been selected as a standard because of quality, particular suitability, or record of satisfactory performance. It is not intended to preclude the use of equivalent or better materials, products, or systems provided that same meets the requirements of the particular project and have been approved in an addendum as a substitution prior to the submission of bids. If prior written approval in an addendum has not been obtained, it will be assumed that the Bid is based upon the materials, products, and systems described in the Bidding Documents and no substitutions will be permitted, except as provided hereinafter.

**.1** If, after award of contract, the Contractor of one of his Subcontractors, or Suppliers determines that any of the products or systems specified will perform in a manner that will limit the Contractor's ability to satisfactorily perform the work or to honor the Warranty, the Contractor shall promptly notify the Architect, in writing, providing detailed substantiation for his position. Any changes deemed necessary by the Owner and Architect, including

substitution of materials and change in Contract Sum, either upward or downward, if any, shall be accompanied by appropriate Modification.

**.2** After the Contract has been executed, the Owner and Architect will consider a formal request for the substitution of products on the Work in place of those specified only under the conditions set forth in specification referring to Product Options and Substitutions.

**.3** Requests for substitution, received by the Architect later than forty five (45) days after "Notice to Proceed" or "Date of Commencement of the Work" (whichever occurs first), may result in additional costs to the Owner. Contractor agrees to reimburse the Owner through deductive Change Order to the Contract, for all costs associated with such requests.

**.4** By making request for substitutions based on Subparagraph 3.4.2 above, the Contractor

**.1** represents that the Contractor has personally investigated the proposed substitute product and determined that it is equivalent or superior in all respects to that specified, and is suitable for the intended purpose;

**.2** represents that the Contractor will provide the same warranty for the substitution that the Contractor would for that specified;

**.3** certifies that the cost data presented is complete and includes all related costs under this Contract except the Architect's redesign costs, and waives all claims for additional costs related to the substitution which subsequently become apparent; and

**.4** will coordinate the installation of the accepted substitute, making such changes as may be required for the Work to be complete in all respects.

**.5** Substitution requests shall be submitted on the forms included herein and in accordance with the process established in specification referring to Product Options and Substitutions.

Add the following Sections after Section **3.4.3**

**3.4.3** **.1** State law prohibits possession and/or use of alcohol and tobacco products on school property at all times.

**.2** State law prohibits weapons or firearms on school property.

**.3** There shall be zero tolerance for fraternization with students, teachers and any other school district personnel, Contractor will immediately remove any employee that violates this provision from the project.

**.4** No glass bottles shall be brought on the construction site or Owner's property by any construction personnel.

**3.5 WARRANTY**

Delete the text of Section 3.5.1 in its entirety and substitute the following:

**3.5.1** The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Architect that materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality and new, unless the Contract Documents require or permit otherwise. The Contractor further warrants that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents and will be free from defects, except for those inherent in the quality of Work the Contract Documents require or permit. Work, materials, or equipment not conforming to these requirements may be considered defective. The Contractor's warranty excludes remedy for damage or defect cause by abuse, material alteration to the Work not executed by the Contractor, insufficient maintenance or maintenance not in compliance with written instructions therefor, operation not in compliance with written instructions therefor, or normal wear and tear and normal usage. If required by the Architect, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment.

Add Sections **3.5.3, 3.5.4** and **3.5.5** as follows:

**3.5.3** In the event of failure in the Work, including a specified product, whether during construction, or the correction period (which shall be one (1) year from the Date of Substantial Completion, except where a longer period is specified), the Contractor shall take prompt and appropriate measures to assure correction or replacement of the defective Work or any portion thereof, including manufactured products, whether notified by the Owner or the Architect. Upon correction of warranty items, the Contractor shall provide the Owner and Architect with written notification of said correction (including a brief description of

the defect and corrective measures taken). This obligation shall survive acceptance of the Work under the Construction Contract.

**3.5.4** The Contractual Correction Period for this Project is one (1) year from the date of Substantial Completion, except for any extended warranties as specified within the Contract Documents. Items of Work not completed until after the deadline for Substantial Completions shall have their warranties (general and any extended warranty periods) extended by the period of time between the deadline for Substantial Completion and the actual completion of the Work. Such warranties shall be submitted to the Owner in writing, documenting such time extensions. This correction period shall not restrict or modify extended warranties called for or provided on systems, equipment or other specific portions of the Work.

**3.5.5** The Contractor shall accompany the Owner and Architect for a complete reinspection of the Project approximately eleven (11) months after the Date of Substantial Completion and shall promptly complete any observed or reported deficiencies in the Work, including any uncompleted Punch List items or outstanding and incomplete warranty items. The contractor shall provide written notification to the Owner and Architect when said Punch List items and/or additional deficiencies observed have been corrected. This obligation shall survive acceptance of the Work under the Construction Contract.

## 3.6 TAXES

Delete Section **3.6** in its entirety and substitute the following:

The Owner qualifies for exemption from State and Local Sales and Use Taxes pursuant to the provision of Article 20.04(f) of the Texas Limited Sales, Excise and Use Tax Act. Taxes normally levied on the purchase, rental and lease of materials, supplies and equipment used or consumed in performance of the Contract may be exempted by issuing to suppliers an exemption certificate in lieu of tax. Exemption certificates comply with State Comptroller of Public Accounts Ruling No. 95-0.07. Any such exemption certificate issued in lieu of tax shall be subject to State Comptroller of Public Accounts Ruling No. 95-0.09, as amended. Failure by the Contractor or Subcontractors to take advantage of the Owner's exemption and to obtain such exemption certificate shall make him responsible for paying taxes incurred on materials furnished on the Project without additional cost to or reimbursement by the Owner.

## 3.7 PERMITS, FEES, NOTICES AND COMPLIANCES WITH LAWS

After Section **3.7.1**, add the following Sections:

**3.7.1** **.1** The Owner shall pay directly to the governing authority the cost of all permanent property utility assessments and similar utility connection charges.

**.2** The Contractor shall pay directly all utility charges through Substantial Completion, utility district/company inspection fees, temporary tap charges, and temporary water meter charges and any other similar fees assessed by jurisdictional authority having control over this Project. The Contractor shall secure and pay for all governing authorities' permit fees.

**.3** Fees payable to the Texas Department of Licensing and Regulation (TDLR) for document review relative to the Elimination of Architectural Barriers Act shall be paid by the Owner and the Architect will submit the documents to the TDLR for review and approval.

**.4** The Contractor shall pay for all measures required for the SWPPP.

.**5** The Contractor shall be responsible for contacting the governing utility authority and/or independent line locating contractor prior to the commencement of any underground digging and shall be responsible for all fees associated. Contractor shall adhere to utility line restrictions identified by the governing utility authority and/or independent line locating contractor. In the event Contractor fails to notify the proper governing utility authority and/or independent line locating contractor or abide by utility line restrictions, Contractor shall be responsible for any and all fees associated with costs to repair damages.

## 3.8 ALLOWANCES

Delete Section **3.8** in its entirety and substitute the following:

**3.8.1** The Contractor shall include in the Contract Sum all allowances stated in the Contract documents. Items covered by allowances shall be supplied for such amounts and by such persons or entities as the Owner may direct and approve in writing.

## 3.9 SUPERINTENDENT

Delete Section 3.9.1 in its entirety and substitute the following:

**3.9.1** The Contractor shall employ a competent superintendent, project manager and necessary assistants who shall be in attendance at the Project site during performance of the Work, including Punch List work. The superintendent and project manager shall represent the Contractor, and unless provided otherwise in Section 3.1.1, communications given to the superintendent or project manager shall be binding as if given to the Contractor.

## 3.10 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION AND SUBMITTAL SCHEDULES

Delete Section **3.10.1** and substitute the following:

**3.10.1** Within 30 days of being awarded a Contract, the Contractor shall prepare and submit for the Owner and Architect's review, a construction schedule for the Work, with critical path clearly defined. The schedule shall not exceed time limits current under the Contract Documents. For further schedule requirements refer to specification section regarding project schedules in the Project Manual.

Add the following clause to Section **3.10.2**:

**3.10.2** Requirements for the submittal schedule are outlined in specification section 01 32 00, Construction Progress Schedules. If the Contractor fails to submit a submittal schedule or fails to provide submittals in accordance with the approved submittal schedule, the Contractor shall not be entitled to any increase in the Contract Sum or extension of the Contract Time based on the time required for review of submittals.

Add Section **3.10.4** as follows:

**3.10.4** The Contractor shall submit to the Architect, with each monthly Application for Payment; a copy of the progress schedule updated to reflect the current status of the project. The Contractor shall take whatever action necessary to assure that the project completion schedule is met.

## 3.11 DOCUMENTS AND SAMPLES AT THE SITE

Add Section **3.11.1** as follows:

**3.11.1** The Contractor shall post all Addenda on Construction Documents prior to commencing work in the site.

## 3.12 SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES

At Section **3.12.5**, add the following Sections:

**3.12.5** **.1** If, in the opinion of the Architect, the Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and similar submittals are incomplete, indicate an inadequate understanding of the work covered by the submittals, or indicate a lack of study and review by the Contractor prior to submittal to the Architect, the submittals will be returned, unchecked, to the Contractor for correction of these three deficiencies and subsequent resubmittal. Additional service charges as outlined in 3.2.6 may be charged by the Architect in this event.

**.2** The Architect will take no action on Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples that have not first been certified, by stamped and signed as having been checked and approved by the Contractor for use in the Work, or that are not specifically required by the Contract Documents.

**.3** Any increases to the Contract Sum based on IFC drawings must be submitted to the Owner for review and approval within thirty (30) days of receipt of IFC drawings from the Architect.

At Section **3.12.7**, correct the word "approved" in the last line to read "accepted".

At Section **3.12.8**, correct "Architect's approval" in the last line to read "Architect's acceptance".

At Section **3.12.9**, correct "Architect's approval" in the last line to read "Architect's acceptance" and add the following Section:

**3.12.9.1** Deviation from the requirements of the Contract Documents indicated on shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples, does not constitute the required notification "in writing.

Add Sections **3.12.11** and **3.12.12** as follows:

**3.12.11** The Contractor shall submit complete Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples and similar submittals required by the Contract Documents to the Architect at least thirty (30) days prior to the date the Contractor needs the reviewed submittals returned. Where colors are to be selected by the Owner, submit all Samples within sixty (60) days of the Notice to Proceed to allow the Architect to prepare a complete selection schedule. In general, all submittals requiring color selection shall be submitted to the Architect within four weeks of the date of the contact for construction.
**3.12.12** The Contractor shall submit digital PDF's of Shop Drawings, Product Data, and similar submittals in the proper format according to the procedures stipulated within the Contract Documents. Digitally submitted Shop Drawings will be reviewed and marked by the Architect and/or his consultants and returned to the Contractor for his use, distribution, correction or resubmittal as required. Contractor corrections or revisions shall be resubmitted to the Architect in accordance with same procedures. The digitally marked up prints will be retained by the Architect and his consultants. Samples shall be submitted directly to the Architect for review.

Add Section **3.12.13** as follows:
**3.12.13** The Contractor shall provide MEP coordination drawings within a schedule mutually agreed upon by the Owner, Architect and MEP Engineer and prior to installing the Work, showing how all piping, ductwork, lights, conduit, equipment, etc. will fit into the ceiling space allotted, including clearances required by the manufacturer, by code, or in keeping with good construction practice. Space for all trade elements must be considered on the same drawing. Drawings shall be at ¼ inch per foot minimum scale and shall include invert elevations and sections required to meeting intended purpose. The Contractor may propose an alternate method of accomplishing MEP coordination. If the alternate method is approved by the Team, it may be utilized.

### 3.14 CUTTING AND PATCHING
Add Section **3.14.3** as follows:
**3.14.3** Leave all chases, holes and openings, straight and true, of proper size, and cut them into existing work as may be necessary for the proper installation of the work. Consult with all Subcontractors concerned, regarding proper locations and size. In case of conflict between requirement for cutting and patching and any other requirement of the Work, submit request for direction before proceeding with the Work. In case of failure to leave or cut them in the proper place, openings shall be cut afterward at no expense to the Owner. No excessive cutting will be permitted, nor shall any piers or other structural members be cut without prior approval. After such work has been installed, satisfactorily and carefully fit around, close up, repair, patch, and point up all cuts. Work shall be done with proper tools by workmen of the particular trade to which work belongs and shall be done without extra expense to the Owner. No description of specific cutting, patching, digging, etc., required for the work under a Specification Section that may be required for the proper accommodation of that work to the work of other trades shall relieve the Contractor from responsibility described above.

### 3.15 CLEANING UP
Add Section **3.15.3** as follows:
**3.15.3** Prior to the Architect's inspection for Substantial Completion the Contractor shall clean exterior and interior surfaces exposed to view; remove temporary labels, stains, and foreign substances; polish transparent and glossy surfaces; clean equipment and fixtures to a sanitary condition; replace air filters in mechanical equipment; camera the underground plumbing lines to detect and resolve any potential issues and include video in close-out documentation, clean roof, gutters, and downspouts; remove obstructions and flush debris from drainage systems; clean site; sweep paved areas and rake clean other surfaces; remove trash and surplus materials from the site.

### 3.18 INDEMNIFICATION
Delete Sections **3.18.1** and **3.18.2** in their entirety and replace them with the following:
**3.18.1 TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, CONTRACTOR SHALL INDEMNIFY DEFEND AND HOLD HARMLESS THE OWNER AND ITS TRUSTEES, OFFICERS, AGENTS, AND EMPLOYEES (COLLECTIVELY, THE "INDEMNIFIED**

**PARTIES") FROM AND AGAINST ALL CLAIMS, LOSSES, EXPENSES, COSTS, DEMANDS, SUITS, CAUSES OF ACTION, AND DAMAGES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, ATTORNEYS' FEES AND EXPENSES, ATTRIBUTABLE TO BODILY INJURY, SICKNESS, DISEASE OR DEATH OF ANY EMPLOYEE OF CONTRACTOR, ITS AGENTS, OR ITS SUBCONTRACTORS OF EVERY TIER, EVEN IF THE BODILY INJURY, SICKNESS, DISEASE OR DEATH IS CAUSED BY OR ALLEGED TO HAVE BEEN CAUSED BY THE NEGLIGENCE, FAULT OR STRICT LIABILITY OF ANY OF THE INDEMNIFIED PARTIES.**

**FOR ALL CLAIMS NOT ADDRESSED IN THE ABOVE PARAGRAPH, CONTRACTOR SHALL INDEMNIFY, DEFEND AND HOLD HARMLESS THE OWNER AND ITS TRUSTEES, OFFICERS, AGENTS, AND EMPLOYEES AND (COLLECTIVELY, THE "INDEMNIFIED PARTIES"), FROM AND AGAINST ALL CLAIMS, LOSSES, EXPENSES, COSTS, DEMANDS, SUITS, CAUSES OF ACTION, AND DAMAGES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, ATTORNEYS' FEES AND EXPENSES, OF ANY NATURE WHATSOEVER ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THIS AGREEMENT OR THE WORK TO BE PERFORMED UNDER THIS AGREEMENT, BUT ONLY TO THE EXTENT OF THE NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER FAULT OF THE CONTRACTOR, ITS AGENTS, REPRESENTATIVES, EMPLOYEES OR SUBCONTRACTORS OF ANY TIER.**

**3.18.2** It is understood and agreed that Subparagraph 3.18 above is subject to, and expressly limited by, the terms and conditions of TEX. CIV. PRACT. & REM. CODE ANN. 130.001-130.005 (Vernon Supp. 1989), as amended or modified, or any successor statute. Contractor shall not be obligated under Subparagraph 3.18 to indemnify or hold harmless Architect or any agent, servant of employee of Architect from liability or damage that is caused by or results from:

**.1** defects in plans, designs or specifications prepared, approved or used by the Architect; or

**.2** negligence of the Architect in the rendition or conduct of professional duties called for or arising out of the Contract Documents and the plans, designs or specifications that are a part of the Contract Documents; and arises from:

**.1** personal injury or death;

**.2** property injury; or

**.3** any other expense that arises from personal injury, death or property injury.

Add Section **3.18.3** as follows:

**3.18.3** It is agreed with respect to any legal limitations, now or hereafter in effect and affecting the validity or enforceability of the indemnification obligation under Paragraph 3.18, such legal limitations are made a part of the indemnification obligation and shall operate to amend the indemnification obligation to the minimum extent necessary to bring the provision into conformity with the requirements of such limitations, and as so modified, the indemnification obligation shall continue in full force and effect.

Add Sections **3.19**, **3.20,** and **3.21** as follows:

**3.19 RECORD DRAWINGS**

Add the following Paragraphs in their entirety:

**3.19** REPRODUCTIBLE RECORD DRAWINGS

**3.19.1** At the completion of the Project, the Contractor shall submit to the Owner one (1) complete set of drawings with all changes made during construction, including concealed mechanical, electrical and plumbing items. Drafting shall be compatible with original drawings and the Contractor shall submit these as hard copies. The record drawings shall exclude the seal of the Architect and/or Engineer and shall have a statement added to indicate the purpose of the drawings (i.e, "RECORD DRAWING"). The Contractor shall also submit to the Owner one (1) mutually agreeable electronic format containing the following:

.1 Final Record Drawings;

.2 Final Specifications;

.3 Copy of final Construction Contract, including all Change Orders.
.4 CPR;
.5 AEA;
.6 Copies of minutes to all Project meetings.

**3.19.2** The Contractor shall also provide the Owner with one (1) set of Record Drawings on a mutually agreeable electronic format. The record drawings including specifications shall be 100% complete (including properly dated and executed warranties, complete technical instructions to the Owner, etc.) prior to delivery to the Architect for review. The record documents must be delivered to the Architect thirty (30) days prior to receipt of the Contractor's Final Application for Payment. The record drawings shall exclude the seal of the Architect and/or Engineer and shall have a statement added to indicate the purpose of the drawings (i.e., "RECORD DRAWING").

### 3.20 PREVAILING WAGE RATES

**3.20.1** As required by Chapter 2258 of the Texas Government Code Title 10 Prevailing Wage Rate, no employee used in this construction may be paid less than the minimum prevailing wage rate in effect for the Owner.

**3.20.2** The Contractor and each Subcontractor and Sub-subcontractor shall pay to all laborers, workmen, and mechanics employed in execution of this Contract not less than rates set forth by law and as noted in the following Wage Rate Scale (See CB-23 through CB-25), for each craft or type of workman or mechanic needed to execute Contract.

**3.20.3** Determination of prevailing wages shall not be construed to prohibit payment of more than the rates identified.

### 3.21 ANTITRUST VIOLATIONS

**3.21.1** Contractor hereby assigns to Owner any and all claims for overcharges associated with this Contract which arise under the antitrust laws of the United States, 15 U.S.C.A. Section 1 et.seq. (1973). The Contractor shall include this provision in his contracts with each Subcontractor and Supplier. Each Subcontractor shall include such provision in contracts with Sub-subcontractors and suppliers.

### 3.22 THIRD-PARTY BENEFICIARY

**3.22.1** No person or entity shall be deemed to be a third-party beneficiary of any provision(s) of this Contract; nor shall any provision(s) hereof be interpreted to create a right of action or otherwise permit anyone not a signatory party to the Contract to maintain an action for personal injury or property damage.

## ARTICLE 4 – ARCHITECT

### 4.2 Administration of the Contract

Delete Section **4.2.2** in its entirety and substitute the following:

**4.2.2** The Architect, as a representative of the Owner, will visit the site at intervals appropriate to the stage of the Contractor’s operations (1) to become generally familiar with and to keep the Owner informed about the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, (2) to endeavor to guard the Owner against defects and deficiencies in the work, and (3) to determine in general if the work is being performed in a manner indicating that the work, when fully completed, will be in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Architect will be required to make on-site inspections as necessary to keep the Owner informed of the progress of the Work and as necessary to guard the Owner against defects and deficiencies in the Work. The Architect will neither have control over or charge of, not be responsible for, the construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, or for the safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work, since these are solely the Contractor’s rights and responsibilities under the Contract Documents, except as provided in Section 3.3.1.

Delete Section **4.2.6** in its entirety and substitute the following:

**4.2.6** The Architect or Owner shall have authority to reject Work that does not conform to the Contract Documents. The Architect shall be required to promptly notify the Owner of any non-conforming Work and shall reject such non-conforming Work unless the Owner objects to the rejection in writing within twenty-four (24) hours of such notification. Whenever the Architect considers it necessary or advisable

for implementation of the intent of the Contract documents, the Architect will have authority to require inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with the provisions of the Contract Documents, whether or not such Work is fabricated, installed or completed. Performance of any additional inspection or testing, which would result in additional cost to the Owner, shall require advance notice to and approval of the Owner. However, neither this authority of the Architect nor a decision made in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of the Architect to the Contractor, Subcontractors, material and equipment suppliers, their agents or employees, or other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, except when the Contractor's inability to perform the Work is a result of design flaw, error or omission.

Add the following Section **4.2.8.1**:
**4.2.8.1** Allowance Expenditure will be authorized using Allowance Expenditure authorizations (AEA) executed by the Owner, the Architect and the Contractor. All Allowance Expenditure Authorizations will be incorporated into the contract by Change Order at the completion of the project. Work authorized by an AEA may be invoiced as it is completed.

Delete Section **4.2.13** in its entirety and substitute the following:
**4.2.13** All decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect shall initially be made by the Architect; however, all such decisions are subject to the Owner's written approval.

## ARTICLE 5 – SUBCONTRACTORS

### 5.1 DEFINITIONS

At the end of Section **5.1.1** add the following sentence:
Wherever relevant, the term "Subcontractor" shall also include a person, or entity who supplies material or equipment for the Project.
At the end of Section **5.2.4**, add the following sentence:
Prior to such change the Contractor shall notify the Architect of his intent and reasons for such proposed changes.

### 5.4 CONTINGENT ASSIGNMENT OF SUBCONTRACTS

Delete the last sentence of Section **5.4.1** in its entirety and substitute the following:
When the Owner accepts the assignment of a subcontract agreement, the Owner assumes the Contractor's rights and obligations under the subcontract, but only to the extent permitted by law.
Delete the last sentence of Section **5.4.3** in its entirety.

## ARTICLE 7 -- CHANGES IN THE WORK

### 7.1 GENERAL

Delete the text of Section **7.1.2** in its entirety and substitute the following:
**7.1.2** A Change Order shall be based on agreement among the Owner, Contractor, and Architect, except when the Contract balance is amended as a result of Owner's Right to Carry out the Work under Section 2.4.1 or the Owner's assessment of liquidated damages as allowed by the Contract Documents. A Construction Change Directive requires agreement by the Owner and Architect, and may or may not be agreed to by the Contractor; an order for a minor change may be issued by the Architect alone.

### 7.2 CHANGE ORDERS

Add the following Subparagraph 7.2.2:

**7.2.2** Methods used in determining adjustments to the Contract Sum shall be determined in one or more of the ways listed below. For deductive change orders, the same amounts used below for markups on additional Work shall also be used for credits on deductions. The first method listed shall be used unless the Architect determines that the method is inappropriate, in which case another method shall be selected:

**.1** By mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation. Where additional Work is involved, any lump sum over the amount of $100.00 shall be broken down to

represent the estimated cast of labor and materials plus mark-ups to cover overhead and profit.

**.2** To compensate the Contractor, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor actually performing a part of the Work for the combined cost of overhead and profit, the performing party shall be entitled to a single mark-up not to exceed 10% of the estimated cost of that part of the Work.

**.3** To compensate (a) the Contractor for the combined cost of overhead and profit on Work performed by Subcontractors, or (b) Subcontractors for the combined cost of overhead and profit on Work performed by Sub-subcontractors, the Contractor or Subcontractor each shall be entitled to a single mark-up not to exceed 5% of the subcontract amount. On a Construction Manager-at Risk project, the Contractor's markup shall not exceed the CM Fee, and no additional CM Fee shall be permitted on self-performed Work or Work performed by a Related Party.

**.4** When a Sub-subcontractor performs the Work of a change, the maximum mark-up not to exceed 10% for combined overhead and profit shall be used only by the Sub-subcontractor. The Contractor and Subcontractor would each be entitled to a single mark-up not to exceed 5% of the cost to them for the Subcontractor and Sub-subcontractor, respectively.

**.5** By Unit Prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon. Additional mark-ups for overhead and profit will not be allowed in Unit Price work.

**.6** By cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee.

**.7** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, costs for the purposes of this Section 7.2.2 shall be limited to the costs established in Sections 7.3.4.1 through 7.3.4.5.

## 7.3 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVES

Delete text of Subparagraph 7.3.3 in its entirety and substitute the following:

**7.3.3** The cost or credit to the Owner resulting from a change in the Work shall be determined in one or more ways listed below. For deductive change orders, the same amounts used below for markups on additional Work shall also be used for credits on deductions. The first method listed shall be used unless the Architect determines that the method is inappropriate, in which case another method shall be selected.

**.1** By mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation. Where additional Work is involved, the lump sum shall represent the estimated cost of labor and materials plus markups to cover overhead and profit:

To compensate the Contractor or Subcontractor actually performing a part of the Work for the combined cost of overhead and profit, the performing party shall be entitled to a single markup not to exceed 10% of the estimated cost of that part of the Work.

To compensate the Contractor for the combined cost of overhead and profit on work performed by Subcontractors, the Contractor shall be entitled to a single markup not to exceed 10% of the subcontract amount. On a Construction Manager-at Risk project, the Contractor's markup shall not exceed the CM Fee, and no additional CM Fee shall be permitted on self-performed Work or Work performed by a Related Party.

When a Sub-subcontract performs the Work of a change, the 10% markup for combined overhead and profit shall be used only by the Sub-subcontractor. The Contractor and Subcontractor would each be entitled to a single markup not to exceed 10% of the cost to

them from the Subcontractor and Sub-subcontractor respectively.

**.2** By unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon. Additional markups for overhead and profit will not be allowed in Unit Price Work.

**.3** By cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee.

Add Section **7.5** as follows:

**7.5 ALLOWABLE MARKUPS FOR CHANGES IN THE WORK**

**7.5.1** Unless otherwise directed, the procedure and markup of the costs for additional work shall be determined in the following manner:

**.1** Upon Change Proposal Request ("CPR"), prior to the commencement of the Work, the Contractor shall quote the cost for changes in the work showing separately, credits and additional costs broken down by headings used in the Schedule of Values. Further breakdown into units of labor and materials may be required if agreement on cost cannot be reached using the breakdown by headings. The final cost shall be the amount of the Total Contract Value Change shown on the Change Proposal signed by the Contractor and Owner. For general construction work, not subcontracted, the Contractor shall consider as costs the actual invoice amount for additional materials, the sales tax on additional materials when applicable, the wages paid for additional direct labor, plus the Contractor's usual markup of wages to cover additional labor related costs such as insurance, taxes and fringe benefits.

**.2** On changes executed within the Owner's Contingency Allowance, prior to the commencement of the Work, Contractor shall have included costs for combined overhead and profit, to the extent permitted by the Contract Documents, and General Conditions costs, including the cost of superintendents, field office expense, temporary facilities and services, small hand tools, construction equipment not specifically provided for the change in hand, home office expense, bond and building insurance premiums, and managing the Subcontractor's work, in his Base Contract amount. Allowed overhead and profit fee on Owner's Contingency Allowance changes to be included in the total cost to the Owner shall be based as follows:

**.1** For each Subcontractor or Sub-subcontractor involved, for Work performed by that Subcontractor's of Sub-subcontractor's own forces, ten percent (10%) of the cost.

**.2** For each Subcontractor, for Work performed by the Subcontractor's Sub-subcontractors, five percent (5%) of the amount due the Sub-subcontractors.

**7.5.2** If any additional Work is authorized outside of or in excess of the Owner's Contingency Allowance, the combined overhead and profit for this work shall be based as follows:

**.1** For the Contractor, for Work performed by the Contractor's own forces, a maximum total markup of ten percent (10%) of the actual cost. On a Construction Manager-at Risk project, the Contractor's markup shall not exceed the CM Fee, and no additional CM Fee shall be permitted on self-performed Work or Work performed by a Related Party.

**.2** For Work performed by the Contractor's Subcontractor(s), five percent (5%) of the amount due the Subcontractor(s). On a Construction Manager-at Risk project, the Contractor's markup shall not exceed the CM Fee, and no additional CM Fee shall be permitted on self-performed Work or Work performed by a Related Party

**.3** For each Subcontractor or Sub-subcontractor involved, for work performed by that Subcontractor's or Sub-subcontractor's own forces, a maximum markup of ten percent (10%) of the actual cost.

**.4** For each Subcontractor, for work performed by the Subcontractor's Sub-subcontractors, five percent (5%) of the amount due the Sub-subcontractor.

**.5** The combined total markup from all categories and tiers above shall not exceed fifteen percent (15%).

**.6** Cost to which overhead and profit is to be applied shall be determined in accordance with Section 7.3.7.

**7.5.3** In order to facilitate checking of quotations for extras or credits, all proposals, (except those so minor that their propriety can be seen by inspection), shall be accompanied by a complete and detailed itemization of costs including labor, materials, and Subcontracts. Labor and materials shall be itemized in the manner prescribed above. Where major cost items are Subcontracts, they shall be itemized also. In no case will a change be approved without such itemization.

**7.5.4** Change orders, as they are accepted by the Owner, shall be entered under heading "Change Orders" in the next current Request for Payment.

**7.5.5** All credits to or deductions from the Contract Sum, a Contingency or an Allowance shall be calculated using the same methodology set forth in this Section 7.5, including a credit of ten percent (10%) for the Contractor's overhead and profit included in the Contract Sum.

## ARTICLE 8 -- TIME

### 8.1 DEFINITIONS

At Section **8.1.4**, add the following sentence:
See further definition of "Day" in Section **1.9.10**.

### 8.3 DELAYS AND EXTENSIONS OF TIME

Delete Section **8.3.1** in its entirety and substitute the following:

**8.3.1** If the Contractor is delayed at any time in the commencement or progress of the Work by an act or neglect of the Owner or Architect, or of an employee of either, or of a separate contractor employed by the Owner, or by changes ordered in the Work, or by labor disputes, fire, unusual delay in deliveries, unavoidable casualties or other unforeseeable causes beyond the Contractor's control, or by other causes which the Owner determines may justify delay, then the Contract Time shall be extended by Change Order for such reasonable time as the Owner may determine. **There shall be no extension of the Contract Time for inclement or adverse weather**. For any excusable delays, Contractor will be solely responsible for its own costs arising in connection with any such delay, and no adjustment will be made to the Contract Sum (including extended general conditions) to account for damages to the Contractor.

Add Sections **8.3.4** and **8.3.5** as follows:

**8.3.4** The parties hereto agree that time is of the essence of this Contract and that pecuniary damages would be suffered by the Owner if the Contractor does not substantially complete the Work called for in the Contract Document by the specified dates, which damages are, by their very nature, difficult of ascertainment. It is therefore expressly agreed, as a part of the consideration inducing the Owner to execute this Contract that the Owner may deduct from the final payment made to the Contractor a sum equal to the amount stated in the Contract Documents, per phase for each and every Calendar Day beyond the agreed date which the Contractor has agreed to for Substantial Completion of the Work included in the Contract Documents. In the event that Substantial Completion of each portion of the Work as defined in the Contract Documents is not achieved by the date specified for that portion of the Work, liquidated damages as specified in Section 4.5 of the AIA Document A101-2017, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor, as modified by Owner for the Project, shall be deducted from the current and future pay applications for each calendar day beyond that portion's Substantial Completion date until the missed portion of Work is completed. In the event that the Contractor completes the missed portion of Work on or before the next Substantial Completion date, in addition to completing the portion of Work specified for that next Substantial Completion date, the liquidated damages accrued for that specific missed portion of Work may be included in the next pay application for Owner's review and payment pursuant to the terms of this Agreement. Liquidated damages for missed portions of the Work as specified in this subsection shall be in addition to any liquidated damages which may accrue for the failure to reach Substantial Completion of the entire Work. It is expressly understood that said sums per day are agreed upon as a fair estimate of the pecuniary damages which will be sustained by the Owner in the event that the Work is not substantially completed within the agreed time, or with the legally extended time, if any, otherwise provided for herein. Said sums shall be considered as

liquidated damages only, and in no sense shall be considered a penalty or forfeiture; said damage being caused by additional compensation to personnel, and other miscellaneous increased costs, all of which are difficult of exact ascertainment. Except as otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the liquidated damages assessed herein shall be Owner's sole remedy for time delays between the deadlines for substantial completion for all or a portion of the Work and Contractor's achievement of substantial completion.

**8.3.5** Failure to complete and close-out the Project, and complete all Punch List items, within sixty (60) days after the scheduled Substantial Completion date will additionally entitle the Owner to deduct from the final payment made to the Contractor a sum equal to the amount stated in the Contract Documents, per phase, for each and every Calendar Day beyond the 60-day close-out period for each phase. It is expressly understood that said sum per day is agreed upon as a fair estimate of the pecuniary damages which will be sustained by the Owner in the event that the Project close-out does not occur on a timely basis. Said sum shall be considered as liquidated damages only and in no sense shall be considered a penalty or forfeiture; said damage being caused by additional compensation to personnel, and other miscellaneous increased costs, all of which are difficult of exact ascertainment. If the Contractor is delayed through no fault of the Owner, the Substantial Completion is not achieved by the agreed contract completion date, the Project close-out period of sixty (60) days will not be extended by the number of days of delay past the actual Substantial completion date and will remain based upon the agreed contract completion date.

Add Sections **8.3.6, 8.3.7, 8.3.8** and **8.3.9** as follows:
**8.3.6** Extensions of time granted for causes described herein will be granted on the basis of 1.4 Calendar Days extension for each Regular Working Day lost.
**8.3.7** Each Bidder shall include in his proposed Contract Time an adequate allowance of inclement or adverse weather days. **Contractor shall not be entitled to any extension of the Contract Time adjustment to the Contract Sum due to inclement or adverse weather.**

## ARTICLE 9 -- PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

### 9.1 CONTRACT SUM

Add Section **9.1.1.1** as follows:
**9.1.1.1** The Owner is exempt from payment of Texas State Sales Tax on materials required for the Work. Therefore, to comply with the law, the Contract Sum shall be broken down into the amount of cost for labor and the amount of cost for materials. This breakdown shall be provided by the Contractor within ten (10) days of award of Contract.

### 9.2 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

Add the following Sections:

**9.2.1** General Contractor's cost for Contractor's fee, bonds and insurance, General Conditions, etc., shall be listed as individual line items.

**9.2.2** Schedule of Values shall break each line into materials and labor. Once approved by the Owner and Architect, it shall be used as basis for reviewing Application for Payment but not be taken as evidence of market or other value.

**9.2.3** Contractor's cost for various construction items shall be detailed. For example, concrete work shall be subdivided into footings, grade beams, floor slabs, paving, etc. These subdivisions shall appear as individual line items**.**

**9.2.4** On major subcontracts, such as mechanical, electrical, and plumbing, the Schedule shall indicated line items and amounts in detail, (for example; underground, major equipment, fixtures, installation of fixtures, start up, etc.)

**9.2.5** Costs for subcontract work shall be listed without any addition of General Contractor's costs for overhead, profit or supervision.

**9.2.6** The Contractor shall include a value for the coordination documents/drawings on the schedule of values.

**9.2.7** The Contractor shall include a value for the correction of deficiencies noted by the Commissioning Agent and the Test, Adjust and Balance consultant on the schedule of values for each sub-contractor subject to commissioning and test, adjust and balance requirements.

**9.3 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT**

Delete Sections **9.3.1** and **9.3.2** in their entirety and replace them with the following:

**9.3.1** No later than 3 working days prior to the first Wednesday of each month, submit an itemized Application for Payment, supported by such data sustaining the Contractor's right to payment as the Owner or Architect may require, and reflecting retainage, as provided elsewhere in the Construction Documents. Information on the form shall be divided into the same last day of the month preceding, which shall also be the basis of payment or as agreed by the Owner, Contractor and Architect by verification at the site, prior to submittal.

**9.3.1.1** As provided in Section 7.3.9, such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work which have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives but not yet included in Change Orders.

**9.3.2** Payments will be made on account of materials or equipment 1) incorporated in the Work; 2) suitably stored at the site; or 3) suitably stored at some off-site location, provided the following conditions are met for off-site storage:

**.1** The location must be agreed to, in writing, by the Owner and Surety.

**.2** Surety must agree, in writing, to each request for payment.

**.3** The Contractor must bear the cost of the Owner's and Architect's expenses related to visiting the offsite storage area for confirmation.

**.4** The Contractor must provide evidence of purchase and delivery in good order without damage, and a certificate of insurance listing Humble ISD as an additional insured, specifically covering the materials or equipment identified by way of serial numbers, bill of lading, and copy of signature of receipt of materials and photography showing materials or equipment.

Payments for materials or equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon submission by the Contractor of bills of sale or such other procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's ownership and title to such materials or equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, including applicable insurance (naming the Owner as insured) and transportation to the site for those materials and equipment stored off the site. Under no circumstances will the Owner reimburse the Contractor for down payments, deposits, or other advance payments for materials or equipment. Security and protection from theft and damage remains on the Contractor as the first line of accountability and financial responsibility. Delays due to issues arising from stored materials shall be not considered as reasonable justification to release the Contractor from meeting the schedule unless the Owner agrees to such delay in writing in advance of any delay. The Contractor acknowledges that the review of materials and/or equipment stored off the side is an additional service of the Architect, and the Contractor shall be charged for that service. The cost for such service will be established by the Architect and is not subject to appeal.

Add Section **9.3.4** as follows:

**9.3.4** The Contractor shall submit requests for payment in quadruplicate, using AIA Document G702, Application and Certificate of Payment, as the cover sheet. Continuation sheets showing in detail the amounts requested, etc., shall be submitted using AIA Document G703, Continuation Sheet, or a computerized version of these documents previously approved for use. The information provided on the continuation sheets in the Description of the Work and Scheduled Values columns shall match the corresponding information shown on the approved Schedule of Values. All blank spaces on AIA Document G702, Application and Certificate of Payment, must be completed and the signatures of the Contractor and Notary Public shall be original on each form. By submitting his application for payment, the Contractor certifies that the individual signing the application is authorized to do so.

**9.7 FAILURE OF PAYMENT**

Delete the phrase “or awarded by binding dispute resolution.” Replace all references to “seven days” to “ten days.”

**9.8 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

At Section **9.8.2**, add the following sentence at the end:

Should the Architect determine that the Contractor’s List of Items to be Completed or Corrected lacks sufficient detail or requires extensive supplementation, the list will be returned to the Contractor for revision, and inspection for determining the Date of Substantial Completion will be delayed until the List submitted is a reasonable representation of the work to be done.

Add Sections **9.8.6** and **9.8.7** as follows:

**9.8.6** In order for the project or a major portion thereof to be considered substantially complete, the following conditions must be met:

**.1** All inspections by governmental authorities having jurisdiction over the project must have been finalized, any remedial work required by those authorities must have been completed, and Certificates of Occupancy and similar governmental approval forms must have been issued and copies delivered to the Owner and Architect.

**.2** All work, both interior and exterior, shall have been completed and cleaned except minor items which if completed after occupancy, will not, in the Owner’s opinion, cause interference to the Owner’s use of the building or any portion thereof. A significantly large number of items to be completed or corrected will preclude the Architect from issuing a Certificate of Substantial Completion. The Owner and Architect will be the sole judge of what constitutes a significantly large number of items.

The following items are a partial specific list of requirements, as applicable to the Project, that must be completed prior to established Substantial Completion of all portions of the work (Including the Substantial Completion of the commissioning phase).

1. All fire alarm system components must be completed and demonstrated to the Owner.
2. Local fire marshal approval certificate, or similar Certificate of Occupancy from the governing agency, must be delivered to the Owner.
3. All exterior clean-up and landscaping must be complete.
4. All final interior clean-up must be complete.
5. All Building Automation Systems must be complete and fully operational and demonstrated to the Owner.
6. All communications equipment, telephone system, and P.A. systems must be complete and demonstrated to the Owner.
7. All final lockset cores must be installed and all final Owner directed keying completed.
8. All room plaques and exterior signage must be completed.
9. All Owner demonstrations must be completed including kitchen equipment, HVAC equipment, plumbing equipment, and electrical equipment.
10. A final certificate of occupancy must be signed by the Contractor and delivered to the Owner.

**9.8.7** After the date of Substantial Completion of the Project is evidenced by the Certificate of Substantial Completion, the Contractor will be allowed a period of time within which to correct all deficiencies attached to the Certificate of Substantial Completion as outlined in Section 8.3.4 of these supplementary conditions. Failure of the Contractor to complete such corrections within the stipulated time will be reported to the contractor’s surety. In this report, the Contractor and surety will be informed that, should correction remain incomplete for fifteen (15) days, the Owner may initiate action to complete corrective work out of the remaining Contract funds in accordance with Article 14.2.

**.1** Should corrective work following Substantial Completion require more than one reinspection after notification by the Contractor that corrections are complete, the cost of subsequent inspections may also be deducted from the Contract funds remaining unpaid to the Contractor.

**9.10 FINAL COMPLETION AND FINAL PAYMENT**

Add Section **9.10.6** as follows:

**9.10.6** Final Payment, constituting the entire unpaid balance of the Contract Sum, shall be paid by the Owner to the Contractor forty-five (45) days after Substantial Completion of the Work unless otherwise stipulated in the Certificate of Substantial Completion, provided the Work has then been completed, the Contract fully performed, all Contract Close Out Documents have been submitted, reviewed and approved by the Architect and Owner, and the Final Certificate for Payment has been issued by the Architect. The final payment will not be made until all of these conditions have been satisfied.

## ARTICLE 10 -- PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

Add Section 10.2.1 as follows:
If a building will be used or occupied by the Owner or members of the public, the Contractor shall be responsible for maintaining safe routes of travel from sidewalks and parking areas to the building and shall notify the Owner in the event rerouting access is necessary to maintain safe access during construction at no additional cost beyond the agreed contract amount.
Add Sections **10.2.9** and **10.2.10** as follows:
**10.2.9** The performance of the foregoing services by the Contractor shall not relieve the Subcontractors of their responsibilities for the safety of persons and property and for compliance with all applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to the conduct of the Work.
**10.2.10** The Contractor shall be responsible for taking all precautions necessary to protect the Work in place from any foreseeable weather conditions which could cause any potential damage to portions or all Work in place. The Contractor shall be responsible for performing all repairs and/or replacement of any Work that results from foreseeable weather conditions, with no extension to the Contract Time or Contract Sum.

### 10.3 HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

Delete the text of Section **10.3.1** in its entirety and substitute the following:
**10.3.1** The Contractor is responsible for compliance with any requirements included in the Contract Documents regarding hazardous materials. If the Contractor encounters a hazardous material or substance not addressed in the Contract Documents and if reasonable precautions will be inadequate to prevent foreseeable bodily injury or death to persons resulting from a material or substance encountered on the site by the Contractor, the Contractor shall, upon recognizing the condition, immediately stop Work in the affected area and report the condition to the Owner and Architect in writing. The Owner, Contractor and Architect shall then proceed in the same manner described in section 10.3.2.
Delete the text of Sections **10.3.3, 10.3.4** and **10.3.5** in their entirety.
Delete the text of Section **10.3.6** in its entirely and substitute the following:
**10.3.6** If, without negligence on the part of the Contractor, the Contractor is held liable by a governmental agency for the cost of remediation of a hazardous material or substance solely by reason of performing Work as required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall indemnify the Contractor for all costs and expenses thereby incurred, but only to the extent provided by law.
Add Section **10.3.7** as follows:

**10.3.7** As part of the construction contract close out process, and prior to receiving payment of any of the retainage, the Contractor and his subcontractors shall submit notarized statements pertaining to the above referenced hazardous materials.

## ARTICLE 11 -- INSURANCE AND BONDS

Delete the text of Section **11.1.1** its entirety and replace with the following:

**11.1.1** The Contractor agrees and acknowledges that will comply with and provide all requirements set forth in Exhibit A to the A101 or A133 Agreement (whichever is used for the Project).

Delete the text of Section **11.3** in its entirety.

Delete the text of Section **11.4** in its entirety and replace with the following:

**11.4 PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND**

Add the following Sections:

**11.4.1** The Contractor shall provide a Performance Bond, in the penal sum equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the Contract Sum, if the formal Contract is in excess of One Hundred Thousand Dollars ($100,000.00) and a Labor and Material Payment bond, in the penal sum equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the Contract sum if the formal contract is in excess of Twenty-Five Thousand Dollars ($25,000.00).

**11.4.2** The Work will not be started until the bonds and issuing companies have been accepted as satisfactory by the Owner. The original bonds will be delivered to the Owner with an attached authorized power of attorney. Such Bonds shall be issued by a company authorized to do business in the State of Texas with an A.M. Best Company rating of a least A-X and included on the U.S. Department of the Treasury Listing of Approved Sureties (Dept. Circular 570).

**11.4.3** The Performance Bond Form and the Payment Bond Form included herein shall be executed and submitted to the Architect in duplicate prior to commencement of the work. The surety companies must be acceptable to the Owner and licensed admitted carriers in the State of Texas; and the companies must appear in a current Federal Treasury list as Companies Holding Certificates of Authority as Acceptable Sureties on Federal Bonds land as Acceptable Reinsuring companies.

**11.4.4** Each bond shall be of penal sum equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the Contract Sum and shall be compatible with the provisions of the governing authority. The Contractor shall file copies of each bond with the county clerk and furnish the Owner with a file receipt. The bonds shall remain in force throughout the warranty period of the contract. The Work will not be started until the bonds and issuing companies have been accepted as satisfactory by the Owner. The original bonds will be delivered to the Owner with an authorized power of attorney attached.

**11.4.5** Claims must be sent to the Contractor and his Surety in accordance with Article 5160, Revised Civil Statutes. The Owner will furnish in accordance with such Article, a copy of the Payment Bond as provided therein to claimants upon request. All claimants are cautioned that no lien exists on the funds unpaid to the contractor on such Contract, and that reliance on notices sent to the Owner may result in loss of their rights against the Contractor and/or his Surety. The Owner is not responsible in any manner to a claimant for collection of unpaid bills, and accepts no responsibility because of any representation by any agent or employee.

**11.5 WORKER'S COMPENSATION INSURANCE COVERAGE**

Delete the text of Section **11.5** in its entirety. Refer to Exhibit A.

**11.6 BUILDER'S RISK COVERAGE**

11.6.1 Contractor shall be responsible for obtaining Builders Risk Property Insurance which shall be required for all construction contracts when the property of the Owner is at risk or in the care, custody, and control of the Contractor. Builder's Risk insurance shall be required for all construction contracts requiring a bond. All Property insurance shall include coverage against the perils of Flood and Earthquake and Domestic Terrorism. (Installation Floater may be substituted when contract involves installation only). Coverage limits shall be the Contract Limit or Replacement Cost of Value of Scope of Work, whichever is greater. Permission to Occupy granted. Deductible: 1% of contract, $50,000 maximum, unless otherwise approved by the Owner.

## ARTICLE 12—UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK

**12.2.1 BEFORE SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

After Section **12.2.1** add the following Sections:

**12.2.1.1** In the event of failure of a specified project, either during construction or the correction period, the Contractor shall take appropriate measures with the manufacturer of the product to assure correction or replacement of the defective products.

**12.2.1.2** Refer to 01 78 00, Closeout Procedures in Division One for further terms regarding warranties which will be required prior to final payment.

### 12.2.2 AFTER SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

After Section **12.2.2** add the following Section:

**12.2.2.1** Approximately eleven months after Substantial Completion, the Contractor shall accompany the Owner and Architect on an "end of the one year correction period" reinspection of the Project. Additional deficiencies observed or reported shall be corrected by the Contractor.

### 12.3 ACCEPTANCE OF NONCONFORMING WORK

Number the existing provision as Section **12.3.1**, and add Section **12.3.2** as follows:

**12.3.2** The Owner's use and/or occupancy of any or all of the Project site shall never be construed as an acceptance of Work not in conformance with Contract Documents. The Owner reserves the right to enforce provisions of the Contract unless the Owner's acceptance is provided to the Contractor in writing.

## ARTICLE 13—MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

Add Sections **13.7** and **13.8** as follows:

### 13.7 EQUAL OPPORTUNITY

**13.7.1** The contractor shall maintain policies of employment as follows:

**.1** The Contractor and the Contractor's Subcontractors shall not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, religion, color, sex or national origin. The Contractor shall take affirmative action to insure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment without regard to their race, religion, color, sex or national origin. Such action shall include, but not be limited to, the following: employment, upgrading, demotion transfer; recruitment or recruitment advertising; layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship. The Contractor agrees to post in conspicuous places, available to employees and applicants for employment, notices setting forth the policies of non-discrimination.

### 13.8 CRIMINAL BACKGROUND CHECKS

The Contractor/Subcontractor shall certify the Criminal Background Check, as stated in Board Policy CJA and the form included herein, as required by Texas Education Code Section 22.0834 and Texas Administrative Code Section 153.1101 and 153.1117, and shall comply with all requirements of such laws and policy. If Contractor/Subcontractor does not have access to the results of the Criminal Background Check, Contractor/Subcontractor will ensure all documents necessary for use of the Owner's LEE Fast Pass are submitted to the Owner for the required Criminal Background Check.

### 13.9 REQUIRED CERTIFICATIONS AND VERIFICATIONS

Contractor hereby certifies that it is not a company identified on the Texas Comptroller's list of companies known to have contracts with, or provide supplies or services to, a foreign organization designated as a Foreign Terrorist Organization by the U.S. Secretary of State under federal law. Contractor further verified

that it is not a prohibited foreign-owned company as defined by Texas Government Code Sections 2274.0101; 2274.0102.

Contractor certifies and verifies that, as defined and set forth in Texas Government Code Chapters 2270, 2271 and 2274, Consultant or any affiliate, subsidiary, or parent company of Consultant, if any, does not boycott Israel, does not boycott energy companies, or discriminate against a firearm entity or firearm trade association; and will not boycott Israel, will not boycott energy companies, or discriminate against a firearm entity or firearm trade association during the term of the contract.

The requirements of the Texas Public Information Act, Chapter 552 of the Texas Government Code, Subchapter J, including requirements to preserve "contracting information defined in 552.003) may apply to this contract if it is valued at more than $1 million.

## ARTICLE 14—TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

Delete the text of Section 14.1.3 in its entirety and substitute the following:

**14.1.3** If one of the reasons described in Section 14.1.1 or 14.1.2 exists, the Contractor may, upon seven day's written notice to the Owner and Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for Work executed as of the date of the notice, plus costs of demobilization.

### 14.4 TERMINATION BY THE OWNER FOR CONVENIENCE

Delete the text of Section **14.4.3** in its entirety and substitute the following:

**14.4.3** In the case of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall be entitled to receive payment for Work executed up to date of receipt of the notice of termination, plus costs of demobilization.

## ARTICLE 15—CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

### 15.1 CLAIMS

Delete the text of Section **15.1.1** in its entirety and substitute the following:

### 15.1.1 DEFINITION

A Claim is a demand or assertion by one of the parties seeking, as a matter of right, adjustment or interpretation of contract terms, payment of money, extension of time or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The term "Claim" also includes other disputes and matters in question between the Owner, Architect, and Contractor arising out of or relating to the Contract. The responsibility to substantiate Claims shall rest with the party making the Claim. Nothing herein shall require the Owner to make or file a Claim in order to assess liquidated damages provided for in the Contract Documents.

### 15.1.2 TIME LIMITS ON CLAIMS

Delete the last sentence of Section **15.1.2** in its entirety.

### 15.1.3 NOTICE OF CLAIMS

Delete the second sentence of Section **15.1.3** in its entirety and substitute the following:

Claims by either party must be initiated within ninety (90) days after occurrence of the event giving rise to such Claim or within ninety (90) days after the claimant first recognizes the condition giving rise to the Claim, whichever is later.

### 15.1.6 CLAIMS FOR ADDITIONAL TIME

Delete the text of **Section 15.1.6.2** in its entirety and substitute the following:

**15.1.6 .2** Adverse weather conditions shall not be the basis for a Claim for additional time or additions to the Contract Sum.

**15.1.7 CLAIMS FOR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES**

Delete the text of Section **15.1.7** in its entirety.

**15.2 INITIAL DECISION**

Delete the text of Section **15.2.1** in its entirety and substitute the following:

**15.2.1** Claims, excluding those alleging an error or omission by the Architect or those arising after expiration of the period for correction of the Work, shall be referred to the Initial Decision Maker for initial decision. The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker, unless otherwise indicated in the Agreement. If the parties are unable to agree, any claim, dispute or matters arising out of the contract between the Architect, Owner and Contractor or any combination of those parties shall be submitted to a court of appropriate jurisdiction.

Delete the text of Section **15.2.5** in its entirety and substitute the following:

**15.2.5** The Initial Decision Maker will render an initial decision approving or rejecting the Claim, or indicating that the initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim. This initial decision shall (1) be in writing; (2) state the reasons therefore; and (3) notify the parties and the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker, of any change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time or both. The initial decision shall be final and binding on the parties, but subject to mediation, if both parties so agree, and subject to legal or equitable proceedings in a court having jurisdiction thereof. It is understood and agreed that, in the event that any dispute, controversy, or conflict arises during the design and construction of the Project or following its completion, the parties hereto will cooperate in good faith, if possible, to resolve the issues without resorting to litigation.

Delete the text of Sections **15.2.6** and **15.2.6.1** in their entirety.

Add the following Section **15.2.9**

**15.2.9** The prevailing party in any judicial proceeding arising from the Contract Documents shall recover its reasonable and necessary attorneys' fees.

**15.3 MEDIATION**

**15.3.1** Delete the text of **15.3.1** in its entirety.

Delete Section **15.3.2** in its entirety and replace with the following:

**15.3.2** The parties may mutually agree to resolve their claims by mediation which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be in accordance with the Construction Industry Mediation Rules of the American Arbitration Association currently in effect. Request for mediation shall be filed in writing with the other party to the Contract. Mediation shall proceed in advance of legal or equitable proceedings, which shall be stayed pending mediation for a period of 60 days from the date of filing unless stayed for a longer period of agreement of the parties or court order.

**15.4 ARBITRATION**

Delete the text of Sections **15.4.1** through **15.4.3** and **15.4.4.1** through **15.4.4.3** in their entirety.

These Additional Supplementary Conditions are entered into as of the date indicated on the AIA Standard Form of Agreement.

| OWNER: | CONTRACTOR: |
| --- | --- |
| **HUMBLE INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT** | _____ |
| By: _____ | By: _____ |
| Name: Dr. Roger Brown | Name: _____ |
| Title: Superintendent | Title: _____ |
| Date: _____ | Date: _____ |

# Prevailing Wage Rate
# Determination Information

*The following information is from Chapter 2258 Texas Government Code:*

**Sec. 2258.021. Right to be Paid Prevailing Wage Rates.**

(a) A worker employed on a public work by or on behalf of the state or a political subdivision of the state shall be paid:
    (1) not less than the general prevailing rate of per diem wages for work of a similar character in the locality in which the work is performed; and
    (2) not less than the general prevailing rate of per diem wages for legal holiday and overtime work.
(b) Subsection (a) does not apply to maintenance work.
(c) A worker is employed on a public work for the purposes of this section if the worker is employed by a contractor or subcontractor in the execution of a contract for the public work with the state, a political subdivision of the state, or any officer or public body of the state or a political subdivision of the state.

**Sec. 2258.023. Prevailing Wage Rates to be paid by Contractor and Subcontractor; Penalty.**

(a) The contractor who is awarded a contract by a public body or a subcontractor of the contractor shall pay not less than the rates determined under Section 2258.022 to a worker employed by it in the execution of the contract.
(b) A contractor or subcontractor who violates this section shall pay to the state or a political subdivision of the state on whose behalf the contract is made, $60 for each worker employed for each calendar day or part of the day that the worker is paid less than the wage rates stipulated in the contract. A public body awarding a contract shall specify this penalty in the contract.
(c) A contractor or subcontractor does not violate this section if a public body awarding a contract does not determine the prevailing wage rates and specify the rates in the contract as provided by Section 2258.022.
(d) The public body shall use any money collected under this section to offset the costs incurred in the administration of this chapter.
(e) A municipality is entitled to collect a penalty under this section only if the municipality has a population of more than 10,000.

**Sec. 2258.051. Duty of Public Body to Hear Complaints and Withhold Payment.**

A public body awarding a contract, and an agent or officer of the public body, shall:

(1) take cognizance of complaints of all violations of this chapter committed in the execution of the contract; and
(2) withhold money forfeited or required to be withheld under this chapter from the payments to the contractor under the contract, except that the public body may not withhold money from other than the final payment without a determination by the public body that there is good cause to believe that the contractor has violated this chapter.

# Prevailing Wage Rates – School Construction Trades

June 2, 2025

Texas Gulf Coast Area

| CLASSIFICATION | 2025 HOURLY RATE |
|---|---|
| ASBESTOS WORKER | $27.20 |
| BRICKLAYER; MASON | $24.90 |
| CARPENTER; CASEWORKER | $23.13 |
| CARPET LAYER; FLOOR INSTALLER | $26.20 |
| CONCRETE FINISHER | $23.83 |
| DATA COMM/TELE COMM | $24.33 |
| DRYWALL INSTALLER; CEILING INSTALLER | $24.33 |
| ELECTRICIAN | $29.86 |
| ELEVATOR MECHANIC | $39.78 |
| FIREPROOFING INSTALLER | $22.99 |
| GLAZIER | $23.25 |
| HEAVY EQUIPMENT OPERATOR | $22.17 |
| INSULATOR | $21.95 |
| IRONWORKER | $26.50 |
| LABORER, HELPER | $19.81 |
| LATHERER; PLASTERER | $22.75 |
| LIGHT EQUIPMENT OPERATOR | $28.75 |
| METAL BUILDING ASSEMBLER | $24.00 |
| PAINTER; WALL COVERING INSTALLER | $20.17 |
| PIPEFITTER | $29.82 |
| PLUMBER | $27.98 |
| ROOFER | $22.50 |
| SHEET METAL WORKER | $29.96 |
| SPRINKLER FITTER | $23.00 |
| STEEL ERECTOR | $26.00 |
| TERRAZZO WORKER | $22.75 |
| TILE SETTER | $22.00 |
| WATERPROOFER; CAULKER | $24.00 |

This document was developed by PBK Architects, Inc., in strict accordance with Chapter 2258 of the Texas Government Code.

# Prevailing Wage Rates

## Worker Classification Definition Sheet

| CLASSIFICATION | DEFINITION |
|---|---|
| ASBESTOS WORKER | Worker who removes and disposes of asbestos materials. |
| BRICKLAYER; MASON | Craftsman who works with masonry products, stone, brick, block, or any material substituting those materials and accessories. |
| CARPENTER; CASEWORKER | Worker who build wood structures or structures of any material which has replaces wood. Includes rough and finish carpentry, hardware and trim. |
| CARPET LAYER; FLOOR INSTALLER | Worker who installs carpets and /or floor coverings, vinyl tile. |
| CONCRETE FINISHER | Worker who floats, trowels, and finishes concrete. |
| DATA COMM/TELE COMM | Worker who installs data/telephone and television cable and associate equipment and accessories. |
| DRYWALL; CEILING INSTALLER | Worker who installs metal framed walls and ceiling, drywall coverings, ceiling grids, and ceilings. |
| ELECTRICIAN | Skilled craftsman who installs or repairs electrical wiring and devices. Includes fire alarm systems and HVAC electrical controls. |
| ELEVATOR MECHANIC | Craftsman skilled in the installation and maintenance of elevators. |
| FIREPROOFING INSTALLER | Worker who sprays or applies fire proofing materials. |
| GLAZIER | Worker who installs glass, glazing, and glass framing. |
| HEAVY EQUIPMENT OPERATOR | Includes but not limited to: all CAT tractors, all derrick-powered, all power operated cranes, back-hoes, back-fillers, power operated shovels, winch trucks, and all trenching machines. |
| INSULATOR | Worker who applies, sprays, or installs insulation. |
| IRONWORKER | Skilled craftsman who erects structural steel framing, and installs structural concrete Rebar. |
| LABORER, HELPER | Worker qualified for only unskilled or semi-skilled work. Lifting, carrying materials or tools, hauling, digging, clean up. |
| LATHERER; PLASTERER | Worker who installs metal framing and lath. Worker who applies plaster to lathing and installs associated accessories. |
| LIGHT EQUIPMENT OPERATOR | Includes but not limited to , air compressors, truck crane drivers, flex planes, building elevators, form graders, concrete mixers less than 14cf), conveyers. |
| METAL BUILDING ASSEMBLER | Worker who assembles pre-made metal buildings. |
| PAINTER; WALL COVERING INSTALLER | Worker who prepares wall surfaces and applies paint and/or wall coverings, tape, and bedding. |
| PIPEFITTER | Trained worker who installs piping systems, chilled water piping and hot water (boiler) piping, pneumatic tubing controls, chillers, boilers, and associated mechanical equipment. |
| PLUMBER | Skilled craftsman who installs domestic hot and cold water piping, waste piping, storm system piping, water closets, sinks, urinals, and related work. |
| ROOFER | Worker who installs roofing materials, Bitumen (asphalt and coal tar) felts, flashings, all types of roofing membranes, and associated products. |
| SHEET METAL WORKER | Worker who installs sheet metal products, Roof metal, flashings and curbs, ductwork, mechanical equipment, and associated metals. |
| SPRINKLER FITTER | Worker who installs fire sprinklers systems and fire protectant equipment. |
| STEEL ERECTOR | Worker who erects and dismantles structural steel frames of buildings and other structures. |
| TERRAZZO WORKER | Craftsman who places and finishes Terrazzo |
| TILE SETTER | Worker who prepares wall and/or floor surfaces and applies ceramic tiles to these surfaces. |
| WATERPROOFER; CAULKER | Worker who applies water proofing material to buildings. Products include sealant, caulk, sheet membranes, and liquid membranes, sprayed, rolled or brushed. |

# SECTION 01 10 00 - SUMMARY

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Project information.
   2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
   3. Contractor's Duties.
   4. Procedures for requesting additional time due to Weather Delays.
   5. Liquidated Damages.
   6. Prevailing Wage Rates.
   7. Phased construction.
   8. Work by Owner.
   9. Work under separate contracts.
   10. Owner-furnished products.
   11. Contractor-furnished, Owner-installed products.
   12. Access to site.
   13. Coordination with occupants.
   14. Work restrictions.
   15. Specification and drawing conventions.
   16. Indemnity and Disclaimer.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Division 01 Section - Temporary Facilities and Controls for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.

### 1.03 PROJECT INFORMATION

A. Project Identification: Timberwood Middle School (TMS) Additions & Renovations
   1. Project Location:
      a. **Timberwood Middle School**
         18450 Timber Forest Dr.
         Humble, TX 77346
   2. Owner: Humble ISD,
   3. Owner's Representative: Bryan Applegate, 832-412-5053, bryan.applegate@humbleisd.net

B. Architect: Brown Reynolds Watford Architects, Inc., 4501 Magnolia Cove Drive, Suite 250, Kingwood, TX 77345. 281-361-3800.

C. Architect's Consultants: The Architect has retained the following design professionals who have prepared designated portions of the Contract Documents:
   1. Structural & Civil Engineer: Dally & Associates. 9800 Richmond Ave., Suite 460. Houston, TX. 713-337-8881
   2. Mechanical/Plumbing/Electrical/Technology: Salas O'Brien. 10930 W. Sam Houston Pkwy., Suite 900. Houston, TX 281-664-1900
   3. Acoustics / Noise Control: Wrightson, Johnson, Haddon, & Williams, Inc. 3424 Midcourt Road, Suite 124. Carrollton, TX 75006 972-934-3700
   4. Food Service: Food Service Design Professional, LLC. 25317 Interstate 45. The Woodlands, TX 77380 281-350-2323

D. Other Owner Consultants: The Owner has retained the following design professionals:
   1. Surveyor: Miller Survey Group. Anthony R. Peacock RPLS. 1760 West Sam Houston Pkwy. Houston, TX 77043. 713-413-1900
   2. Geotechnical/Testing: QC Laboratories, Inc., 10810 Northwest Freeway, Houston, TX 77092. 713-695-1133

~~E.~~ Contractor: TBD

## 1.04 CONTRACTOR'S DUTIES

A. Furnish & provide for proper execution and completion of work as required by the Contract Documents all:
   1. Labor, materials and equipment.
   2. Tools, construction equipment and machinery.
   3. Water, heat and utilities required for construction.
   4. Other facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of the work.

B. Attain and pay for all required permits, licenses, and government fees.
   1. Unless specifically indicated otherwise, Contractor is responsible to hire and pay for all third party reviews and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction including but not necessarily limited to third party energy code inspection.
      a. Architect will retain and Owner will pay for accessibility inspection required by TDLR. Coordinate scheduling with Architect to coincide with or to follow after substantial completion.

C. Give required notices.

D. Comply with codes, ordinances, rules, regulations, orders and other legal requirements of public authorities which bear on performance of work.

E. Promptly submit written notice to Architect of observed variance of Contract Documents from legal requirements. It is not Contractor's responsibility to make certain that drawings and specifications comply with codes and regulations.

F. Contractor shall verify all conditions at the site and dimensions in the field prior to starting work. Architect shall be notified in writing of any discrepancies found.

G. The Drawing and Specifications represent the work to be completed not the method of construction. However, the Contractor shall perform all demolition and remedial work in a sequence to where any interruption of the operation of the facilities or utility service occurs at an absolute minimum.

H. Contractor shall use every precaution to prevent damage to roads, landscape, adjacent property, building and utilities above and below ground that are adjacent to or included in the area under contract. The Contractor shall repair and replace, at his expense, any material or building affected, damaged or destroyed because of his operations or work.

I. Safety Requirements: The CONTRACTOR has full responsibility for the safety of workers and for all damages to personal property caused by its operations. The CONTRACTOR is responsible for following all Federal, State, and Local Regulations and Guidelines with regards to worker and public safety. Unless otherwise indicated on the proposal, the necessary tools, equipment, procedures, etc. for following the appropriate regulations and guidelines will be considered subsidiary to other proposal items.

## 1.05 WEATHER DAYS

A. The Contractor may be granted an extension of time because of abnormal inclement weather conditions. Contractor shall submit reports on monthly intervals indicating the rainfall and

temperature on inclement weather days to document for each month the days in excess of normal inclement weather conditions that may contribute to future time extension requests.

1. Provide reports each month whether or not Contractor believes at that time that time extension will be necessary. In months not exceeding normal inclement weather days and for which additional time will not be requested, reports need not be provided.
2. Available float shall be used before any request is made for time extension due to inclement weather.
3. Provide Daily Jobsite Reports noting weather conditions on the days identified to substantiate weather data provided by independent meteorological reports.

B. For the purpose of this contract, "abnormal inclement weather" will be interpreted as those days in excess of the number of days shown columns B and D in the below PRECIPITATION / TEMPERATURE chart for exterior critical path activities. Drying days shall also be interpreted as "abnormal inclement weather" days.

C. Weather Conditions: The information in the following tables shall be compiled from the records of the National Weather Service for the nearest weather data collection site to the project site, as an average over the past 30 years. The example data below may differ from data for this project. Listed below is the Houston / Galveston area (See web site: https://www.weather.gov/hgx/ ).

**PRECIPITATION / TEMPERATURE**

| COLUMN<br>Month | A<br>Normal<br>(Inches) | B<br>Average Days w/ 0.1"<br>or More Rain | C<br>Normal Temperature<br>(Degrees F.) | D<br>Ave. Days 32<br>Deg. F. or Below |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Jan. | 2.13 | 11.8 | 60/45 | 3.3 |
| Feb. | 1.77 | 13.1 | 64/48 | 1.3 |
| Mar. | 2.09 | 13.8 | 70/55 | 0.5 |
| Apr. | 2.36 | 14.5 | 76/61 | 0 |
| May | 4.45 | 14.8 | 83/68 | 0 |
| Jun. | 3.27 | 17.2 | 88/74 | 0 |
| Jul. | 3.15 | 17.6 | 91/76 | 0 |
| Aug. | 3.9 | 19.1 | 91/76 | 0 |
| Sep. | 4.49 | 19.5 | 86/71 | 0 |
| Oct. | 3.07 | 12.4 | 79/63 | 0 |
| Nov. | 2.17 | 12.8 | 70/54 | 0.3 |
| Dec. | 2.52 | 13.9 | 63/48 | 2.3 |

D. All claims for additional time shall be limited to time extensions only. Claims for additional costs due to time extensions for weather shall not be considered.

## 1.06 LIQUIDATED DAMAGES

A. The time of completion is the essence of this contract. For each calendar day that any work shall remain uncompleted after the time specified in the contract, or the increased time granted by the Owner, or as equitably increased by additional work or materials ordered after the contract is signed, the sum of $1,000.00 per day shall be deducted from the monies due the Contractor. Liquidated damages may be assessed at Owner's option for Contractor's failure to timely complete each phase of the scope of work detailed in the Contract.

B. The sum of money thus deducted for such delay, failure or noncompletion is not to be considered as a penalty, but shall be deemed, taken and treated as reasonable liquidated damages, per calendar day that the Contractor shall be in default after the time stipulated in the contract for completing the work. The said amounts are fixed and agreed upon by and between Owner and Contractor because of the impracticability and extreme difficulty of fixing and ascertaining the

actual damages to the Owner in such event would sustain; and said amounts are agreed to be the amount of damages which the Owner would sustain and which shall be retained from the monies due, or that may become due, the Contractor under this contract; and if said monies be insufficient to cover the amount owing, then the Contractor or his surety shall pay any additional amounts due.

## 1.07 PREVAILING WAGE REQUIREMENTS

A. The CONTRACTOR shall comply in all respects with all requirements imposed by any laws, ordinances or resolutions applicable to the Project with regard to the minimum prevailing wage rates for all classes of employees, laborers, subcontractors, mechanics, workmen and persons furnishing labor and services to the Project. Harris County has adopted the Prevailing Wage Rate Schedule, provided by Humble ISD as part of Division 0 – Contracting Requirements, which specifies the classes and wage rates to be paid to all persons as defined therein. The CONTRACTOR shall pay not less than the minimum wage rates established thereby for each class, craft, or type of labor, workman, or mechanic employed in the execution of this Contract. Upon request by the Owner, CONTRACTOR shall make available for inspection and copying its books and records, including but not limited to its payroll records, account information and other documents as may be required by the Owner to ensure compliance with this provision.

## 1.08 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and consists of, but may not necessarily be limited to, the following:
   a. Approximately 15,000 square foot addition and renovation to portions of the existing 139,000 square foot one-story occupied middle school building. Occupancy Type E, Construction Type IIB. Major assemblies generally include interior CMU wall construction, CMU/brick veneer exterior walls and steel framing. Existing roofing consists of a combination of light weight composite roofing and membrane roof on metal deck with steel bar joists. See Drawings and specifications for additional details.

B. Type of Contract:
   1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

## 1.09 PHASED CONSTRUCTION

A. The Work shall be conducted in phases as determined by the Contractor. Proposed phasing as shown on the Drawings.

B. Before commencing Work of each phase, submit an updated copy of Contractor's construction schedule showing the sequence, commencement, and completion dates for all phases of the Work.

## 1.10 WORK BY OWNER

A. General: Cooperate fully with Owner so work may be carried out smoothly, without interfering with or delaying work under this Contract or work by Owner. Coordinate the Work of this Contract with work performed by Owner.

B. Preceding Work: Owner will perform the following construction operations at Project site. Those operations are scheduled to be substantially complete before work under this Contract begins.
   1. Relocation of furnishings and other Owner's items prior to demolition start, will be performed by Owner's personnel or under separate contract prior to demolition start. Coordinate scheduling of these activities with Owner.

C. Concurrent Work: Owner will perform the following construction operations at Project site. Those operations will be conducted simultaneously with work under this Contract.
   1. Phased relocation of furnishings and other Owner's items will be performed by Owner's personnel or under separate concurrent contract.

D. Subsequent Work: Owner will perform the following additional work at site after Substantial Completion. Completion of that work will depend on successful completion of preparatory work under this Contract.
   1. Furniture, fixturing and equipment installation.

## 1.11 WORK UNDER SEPARATE CONTRACTS

A. General: Cooperate fully with separate contractors so work on those contracts may be carried out smoothly, without interfering with or delaying work under this Contract or other contracts. Coordinate the Work of this Contract with work performed under separate contracts.

## 1.12 FUTURE WORK

A. The Contract Documents include requirements that will allow Owner to carry out future work following completion of this Project; provide for the following future work:
   1. Conduit to future fit-course areas.
   2. Conduit to Track for future A/V needs
   3. Conduit to plan north side of fire lane for future needs.

## 1.13 OWNER-FURNISHED PRODUCTS

A. Owner will furnish products indicated. The Contractor’s Scope of Work includes receiving, loading, transporting, unloading, handling, storing, protecting, and installing Owner-furnished products and making building services connections. Products indicated have no warranties. Owner furnished items are located at 1703 Wilson Road, Humble, TX 77396. Contractor shall coordinate pick-up with Owner’s Project Manager.

B. Owner-Furnished Products:
   1. RMOAU-1 at building area A (Re: MEP Drawings)
   2. RMAHU-1 at building area A (Re: MEP Drawings)

## 1.14 ACCESS TO SITE

A. General: Contractor shall have limited use of Project site for construction operations as indicated on Drawings by the Contract limits and as indicated by requirements of this Section.

A. Use of Site: Limit use of Project site to work in areas indicated. Do not disturb portions of Project site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated and areas as specifically approved by Owner for use in construction or staging use. Conduct construction operations in manner to minimize disruption to Owner's ongoing operations and use of occupied buildings and portions of the site.
   1. Maintain access and fire lanes during construction as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
   2. Limits: Confine construction operations to areas indicated below. Adhere strictly to defined limits, no additional space accommodations for Contractor's operations can be made onsite. Should Contractor believe additional area is reasonably necessary for construction operations and staging, Contractor may request additional staging area for Owner's consideration and approval. However, Owner is not obliged to allow additional space on site to Contractor's use. Any additional space requested by Contractor and allowed to be used by Owner shall be returned to conditions existing prior to Contractor's use, at no additional cost to Owner.

3. Driveways, Walkways and Entrances: Keep driveways and entrances serving premises clear and available to Owner, Owner's employees, and emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or storage of materials.
    a. Schedule deliveries to minimize use of driveways and entrances by construction operations.
    b. Schedule deliveries to avoid peak student drop off and pick up time frames.
    c. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.

B. Condition of Existing Building: Maintain portions of existing building affected by construction operations in a weathertight condition throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.

C. Deliveries: Schedule deliveries during times acceptable to Owner, and outside of times of peak street traffic and peak activities per Owner's operational schedule.

D. Humble ISD Board Policy requires a responsible employee of Humble ISD to be present at any existing occupied school buildings, whenever outside persons gain access. This person is to be responsible for coordinating with security personnel and monitoring the building to protect Humble ISD's property. No, persons, who have not undergone a background check, are permitted on school property while children are present.

## 1.15 COORDINATION WITH OCCUPANTS

A. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the premises during entire construction period, with the exception of areas under construction. Cooperate with Owner during construction operations to minimize conflicts and facilitate Owner usage. Perform the Work so as not to interfere with Owner's operations. Maintain existing exits unless otherwise indicated.
    1. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities. Do not close or obstruct walkways, corridors, or other occupied or used facilities without written permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
    2. Provide not less than 72 hours' notice to Owner of activities that will affect Owner's operations.

B. Owner Limited Occupancy of Completed Areas of Construction: Owner reserves the right to occupy and to place and install equipment in completed portions of the Work, prior to Substantial Completion of the Work, provided such occupancy does not interfere with completion of the Work. Such placement of equipment and limited occupancy shall not constitute acceptance of the total Work.
    1. Obtain a Certificate of Occupancy from authorities having jurisdiction before limited Owner occupancy.
    2. Before limited Owner occupancy, mechanical and electrical systems shall be fully operational, and required tests and inspections shall be successfully completed. On occupancy, Owner will operate and maintain mechanical and electrical systems serving occupied portions of Work.
    3. On occupancy, Owner will assume responsibility for maintenance and custodial service for occupied portions of Work.

## 1.16 WORK RESTRICTIONS

A. Work Restrictions, General: Comply with restrictions on construction operations.
    1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets and with other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
    2. Comply with work hour and noise restriction requirements of local authorities if such exist.

B. On-Site Work Hours: Limit work during normal school hours that will interrupt school operations.

1. Weekend Hours: Comply with work hour and noise restriction requirements of local authorities if such exist.
2. Early Morning Hours: Limit work that will interrupt school operations. Comply with work hour and noise restriction requirements of local authorities if such exist.
3. Hours for Utility Shutdowns: No utility shutdowns shall occur during school hours. Provide not less than 72 hours' notice to Owner of any shutdowns that will affect Owner's operations.
   Work hours must be coordinated with e Humble ISD PM and School Principal.

C. Existing Utility Interruptions: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after providing temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Owner not less than 3 days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with utility interruptions.

D. Noise, Vibration, and Odors: Coordinate operations that may result in high levels of noise and vibration, odors, or other disruption to Owner occupancy with Owner.
1. Notify Owner not less than 2 days in advance of proposed disruptive operations.
2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with disruptive operations.
3. Dust Migration: Perform work in manner to minimize dust and dirt migration from construction areas into occupied spaces. Provide temporary dust partitions and adhesive walk off mats to control dust.
4. In the event that access to construction areas is required to pass through occupied space, provide kraft paper or masonite board protection along access path as required to protect flooring surfaces from soiling and damage due to construction traffic.

E. Nonsmoking Building: Smoking is not permitted within the building or within 25 feet of entrances, operable windows, or outdoor-air intakes.

F. Controlled Substances: Use of tobacco products and other controlled substances on Project site is not permitted.

G. Employee Identification: Owner will provide identification tags for Contractor personnel working on Project site. Require personnel to use identification tags at all times.

H. Employee Screening: Comply with Owner's requirements for drug and background screening of Contractor personnel working on Project site.
1. Maintain list of approved screened personnel with Owner's representative.

## 1.17 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
2. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.

B. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.

C. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.

2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations scheduled on Drawings.
3. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Section numbers found in this Project Manual.

## 1.18 INDEMNITY AND DISCLAIMER

A. OWNER SHALL NOT BE LIABLE OF RESPONSIBLE FOR, AND SHALL BE INDEMNIFIED, DEFENDED, HELD HARMLESS AND RELEASED BY CONTRACTOR FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL SUITS, ACTIONS, LOSSES, DAMAGES, CLAIMS, OR LIABILITY OF ANY CHARACTER, TYPE, OR DESCRIPTION, INCLUDING ALL EXPENSES OF LITIGATION, COURT COSTS, AND ATTORNEY'S FEES FOR INJURY OR DEATH TO ANY PERSON, OR INJURY OR LOSS TO ANY PROPERTY, RECEIVED OR SUSTAINED BY ANY PERSON OR PERSONS, INCLUDING THE CONTRACTOR, AND ITS EMPLOYEES, OR PROPERTY ARISING OUT OF, OR OCCASIONED BY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, THE PERFORMANCE OF CONTRACTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT, REGARDLESS OF WHETHER THE OWNER'S OR OWNER'S AGENTS, REPRESENTATIVES, EMPLOYEES, ENGINEERS OR ARCHITECTS CONDUCT, NEGLIGENCE OR FAULT CONTRIBUTED TO SUCH INJURY, DEATH OR LOSS, WITHOUT, HOWEVER, WAIVING ANY GOVERNMENTAL IMMUNITY AVAILABLE TO THE OWNER UNDER TEXAS LAW AND WITHOUT WAIVING ANY DEFENSES OF THE PARTIES UNDER TEXAS LAW. THE PROVISIONS OF THIS INDEMNIFICATION ARE SOLELY FOR THE BENEFIT OF THE PARTIES HERETO AND NOT INTENDED TO CREATE OR GRANT ANY RIGHTS, CONTRACTUAL OR OTHERWISE, TO ANY OTHER PERSON OR ENTITY. IT IS THE EXPRESSED INTENT OF THE PARTIES TO THIS AGREEMENT THAT THE INDEMNITY EXTENDED BY CONTRACTOR TO INDEMNIFY AND PROTECT OWNER FROM THE CONSEQUENCES OF THE CONTRACTOR'S AS WELL AS THE OWNER'S NEGLIGENCE, WHETHER SUCH NEGLIGENCE IS THE SOLE OR PARTIAL CAUSE OF ANY SUCH INJURY, DEATH, OR DAMAGE.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

Not Used.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

Not Used.

END OF SECTION 01 10 00

# SECTION 01 14 00 - WORK RESTRICTIONS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 USE OF PREMISES

A. Use of Site: Limit use of premises to work in areas indicated. Do not disturb portions of site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated.
   1. Limits: Confine constructions operations and all personnel to specific areas of work.
   2. Owner Occupancy: Allow for Owner occupancy and use of site and building.
   3. Driveways and Entrances: Keep driveways and entrances serving premises clear and available to Owner, Owner's employees, and emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or storage of materials.
      a. Schedule deliveries to minimize use of driveways and entrances.
      b. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.

B. Use of Existing Building: Maintain existing building in a weathertight condition throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations. Protect building and its occupants during construction period.

### 1.03 OCCUPANCY REQUIREMENTS

A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy site and existing building during entire construction period. Cooperate and coordinate with Owner during construction operations to minimize conflicts and facilitate Owner usage. Perform the Work so as not to interfere with Owner's operations.

B. Maintenance of Operations:
   1. Maintain utility services to building during construction. Provide temporary lines and connections where required to maintain services.
   2. Notify Owner a minimum of 14 days prior to any required interruption of utility services. Such interruptions shall occur only with prior approval of Owner, and only at such times and for lengths of time as approved by Owner.
   3. Costs of extra work required to maintain utility services shall be paid by Contractor.
   4. Provide protective measures as specified in Section 015000.
   5. Notify the Owner's representative when working in areas where utility lines might be encountered.

C. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner reserves the right to occupy and to place and install equipment in completed areas of building, before Substantial Completion, provided such occupancy does not interfere with completion of the Work. Such placement of equipment and partial occupancy shall not constitute acceptance of the total Work.
   1. Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion for each specific portion of the Work to be occupied before Owner occupancy.
   2. Obtain a Certificate of Occupancy from authorities having jurisdiction before Owner occupancy.
   3. Before partial Owner occupancy, mechanical and electrical systems shall be fully operational, and required tests and inspections shall be successfully completed. On occupancy, Owner will provide, operate, and maintain mechanical and electrical systems serving occupied portions of building.

4. On occupancy, Owner will assume responsibility for maintenance and custodial service for occupied portions of building.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**
Not used.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**
Not used.

END OF SECTION 01 14 00

# SECTION 01 21 00 - ALLOWANCES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.
   1. Certain items are specified in the Contract Documents by allowances. Allowances have been established in lieu of additional requirements and to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when direction will be provided to Contractor. If necessary, additional requirements will be issued by Change Order.

B. Types of allowances include the following:
   1. Contingency allowances.

C. Related Requirements:
   1. Division 01 Section - Unit Prices for procedures for using unit prices.
   2. Division 01 Section - Quality Requirements for procedures governing the use of allowances for testing and inspecting.
   3. Divisions 02 through 48 Sections for items of Work covered by allowances.

### 1.03 SELECTION AND PURCHASE

A. At the earliest practical date after award of the Contract, advise Architect of the date when final selection and purchase of each product or system described by an allowance must be completed to avoid delaying the Work.

B. At Architect's request, obtain proposals for each allowance for use in making final selections. Include recommendations that are relevant to performing the Work.

C. Purchase products and systems selected by Architect from the designated supplier.

### 1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Submit proposals for purchase of products or systems included in allowances, in the form specified for Change Proposals.

### 1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Submit invoices or delivery slips to show actual quantities of materials delivered to the site for use in fulfillment of each allowance.

B. Submit time sheets and other documentation to show labor time and cost for installation of allowance items that include installation as part of the allowance.

C. Coordinate and process submittals for allowance items in same manner as for other portions of the Work.

### 1.06 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate allowance items with other portions of the Work. Furnish templates as required to coordinate installation.

## 1.07 LUMP-SUM, UNIT-COST, AND QUANTITY ALLOWANCES

A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include freight and delivery to Project site.

## 1.08 CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCES

A. Use the contingency allowance only as directed by Architect for Owner's purposes and only by Allowance Expenditure Authorization (AEA) that indicate amounts to be charged to the allowance.

B. Contractor's overhead, profit, and related costs for products and equipment ordered by Owner under the contingency allowance are included in the allowance and are not part of the Contract Sum. These costs include delivery, installation**,** insurance, equipment rental, and similar costs.

C. Allowance Expenditure Authorization (AEA) authorizing use of funds from the contingency allowance will include Contractor's related costs and reasonable overhead and profit margins.

D. At Project closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the contingency allowance to Owner by Change Order.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

Not Used.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine products covered by an allowance promptly on delivery for damage or defects. Return damaged or defective products to manufacturer for replacement.

## 3.02 PREPARATION

A. Coordinate materials and their installation for each allowance with related materials and installations to ensure that each allowance item is completely integrated and interfaced with related work.

## 3.03 SCHEDULE OF ALLOWANCES

A. Allowance No. 1: Contingency Allowance: Include a contingency allowance of $500,000.00 for use according to Owner's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 01 21 00

# SECTION 01 22 00 – UNIT PRICES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for unit prices.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Division 01 Section - Contract Modification Procedures for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.
   2. Division 01 Section - Quality Requirements for general testing and inspecting requirements.

### 1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Unit price is an amount incorporated in the Agreement, applicable during the duration of the Work as a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment, or services, or a portion of the Work, added to or deducted from the Contract Sum by appropriate modification, if the scope of Work or estimated quantities of Work required by the Contract Documents are increased or decreased.

### 1.04 PROCEDURES

A. Unit prices include all necessary material, plus cost for delivery, installation, insurance, overhead, and profit.

B. Measurement and Payment: See individual Specification Sections for work that requires establishment of unit prices. Methods of measurement and payment for unit prices are specified in those Sections.

C. Owner reserves the right to reject Contractor's measurement of work-in-place that involves use of established unit prices and to have this work measured, at Owner's expense, by an independent surveyor acceptable to Contractor.

D. List of Unit Prices: A schedule of unit prices is included in Part 3. Specification Sections referenced in the schedule contain requirements for materials described under each unit price.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

Not Used.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 SCHEDULE OF UNIT PRICES

A. Unit Price No. 1: Cutting and patching of concrete floor slabs.
   1. Description: Cutting of new or existing concrete floor slabs up to 6 inches thick, removal and excavation as required, and subsequent backfill, compaction, and patching of concrete according to Division 01 Section "Execution." not otherwise indicated in the Contract Documents.
   2. Unit of Measurement: Square feet of concrete removed.

B. Unit Price No. 2: Miscellaneous and structural steel.

1. Description: Miscellaneous lintels and other supports not otherwise indicated in the Contract Documents, according to Division 05 Sections "Structural Steel Framing" and "Metal Fabrications."
2. Unit of Measurement: Cost in place of pounds of fabricated steel as indicated on itemized invoice of steel supplier and verified by Architect.

C. Unit Price No. 3: Drilled Piers.
1. Description: add and deduct unit cost per linear foot of pier depth longer or shorter than base lengths for piers according to Division 31 - Section 31 63 29 "Drilled Concrete Piers and shafts."
2. Unit of Measurement: Liner feet of pier.

D. Unit Price No. 4: Drilled Pier Casings:
1. Description: add unit cost per linear foot of pier casings for piers from top of pier to top of bearing stratum according to Division 31 - Section 31 63 29 "Drilled Concrete Piers and shafts."
2. Unit of Measurement: Liner feet of pier.

END OF SECTION 01 22 00

# SECTION 01 23 00 - ALTERNATES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

### 1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the bidding requirements that may be added to or deducted from the base bid amount if Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
   1. Alternates described in this Section are part of the Work only if enumerated in the Agreement.
   2. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate alternate into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.
   3. Alternate Bids shall include all overhead and profit applicable to that portion of the work.
   4. The description below for each Alternate Bid is recognized to be incomplete and abbreviated, but implies that each change must be complete for the scope of work affected. The descriptions are primarily scope definitions, and do not necessarily detail the full range of materials and processes needed to complete the work as required. Refer to applicable Specification Sections, and to applicable drawings, for the specific requirements of the work, regardless of whether references are so noted in the description of each Alternate. Coordinate related work and modify surrounding work as required to properly integrate with the work of each Alternate. Any change of details, construction, etc., as required to accommodate the Alternate shall be the responsibility of the Contractor and shall be included in his Alternate Bid Price.
   5. Where methods of construction, materials, finishes, or details of installation, required by the various Alternate Bids, differ from the requirements shown on drawings or specified for corresponding items, the Alternate construction, materials, etc., will be subject to approval by the Architect.
   6. Approval of the Alternate makes all requirements of scope, performance, submissions, service and guarantee binding as any other material name appearing in the Specifications for the Base Bid. All necessary changes in building design or construction to accommodate the alternate materials shall be the sole responsibility of the Contractor without extra cost to the Owner.

### 1.04 PROCEDURES

A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.
   1. Include as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation whether or not indicated as part of alternate.
   2. Prior to installation of the Alternate items, verify that all surfaces have been modified as necessary to accept the installation and that the item or items may be installed in complete

accordance with their manufacturer's current recommendations. Notify the Architect of any discrepancies before proceeding.

B. Notification: Immediately following award of the Contract, notify each party involved, in writing, of the status of each alternate. Indicate if alternates have been accepted, rejected, or deferred for later consideration. Include a complete description of negotiated revisions to alternates.

C. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other work of the Contract.

D. Schedule: A schedule of alternates is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections referenced in schedule contain requirements for materials necessary to achieve the work described under each alternate.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

Not Used.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.01 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES**

A. Alternate No. 1: Staff Parking - Parking lot and sidewalk modifications to parking on north side of school, as shown in the drawings.

B. Alternate No. 2: Visitor Parking - Parking lot and sidewalk modifications to parking on west side of school, as shown on the drawings.

C. Alternate No. 3: Daylighting – New skylights at existing school. New exterior windows at building areas C and D to include window treatment.

D. Alternate No. 4: Base Bid Corrections – This alternate shall establish the amount to be added to/deducted from the Base Bid Proposal in the event the Contractor has discovered an error in their Base Bid Proposal amount.

END OF SECTION 01 23 00

# SECTION 01 25 00 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Division 01 Section - Allowances for products selected under an allowance.
   2. Division 01 Section - Product Requirements for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.
   3. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific requirements and limitations for substitutions.

### 1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
   1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
      a. Contractor's failure to consider and confirm lead time, or to order materials, in time to avoid construction schedule impact, does not constitute a substitution for cause.
   2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

### 1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
   1. Substitution Request Form: Use form acceptable to Architect.
   2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
      a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation cannot be provided, if applicable.
      b. Coordination information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
      c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
      d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
      e. Samples, where applicable or requested.

f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
g. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.
h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project.
j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials, and is appropriate for applications indicated.
m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.

3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
   a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
   b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

## 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

## 1.06 PROCEDURES

A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 SUBSTITUTIONS

A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
   1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
      a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
      b. Requested substitution provides sustainable design characteristics that specified product provided
      c. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.

d. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
e. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
f. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
g. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
h. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
i. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

B. Substitutions for Convenience: Architect will consider requests for substitution if received within 30 days after the Notice of Award. Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at discretion of Architect, and most likely will be rejected without further review unless substantial benefit to the Owner is identified.
1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
a. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
b. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
c. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
d. Requested substitution provides sustainable design characteristics that specified product provided.
e. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
f. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
g. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
h. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
i. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
j. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
k. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

Not Used.

END OF SECTION 01 25 00

Advancement of Construction Technology

# SUBSTITUTION REQUEST

**(After the Bidding Phase)**

Project: _____ Substitution Request Number: _____

_____ From: _____

To: _____ Date: _____

_____ A/E Project Number: _____

Re: _____ Contract For: _____

Specification Title: _____ Description: _____

Section: _____ Page: _____ Article/Paragraph: _____

Proposed Substitution: _____

Manufacturer: _____ Address: _____ Phone: _____

Trade Name: _____ Model No.: _____

Installer: _____ Address: _____ Phone: _____

History: ☐ New product ☐ 2-5 years old ☐ 5-10 yrs old ☐ More than 10 years old

Differences between proposed substitution and specified product: _____

_____

_____

☐ Point-by-point comparative data attached - REQUIRED BY A/E

Reason for not providing specified item: _____

_____

Similar Installation:

Project: _____ Architect: _____

Address: _____ Owner: _____

_____ Date Installed: _____

Proposed substitution affects other parts of Work: ☐ No ☐ Yes; explain _____

_____

Savings to Owner for accepting substitution: _____ ($ _____).

Proposed substitution changes Contract Time: ☐ No ☐ Yes [Add] [Deduct] _____ days.

Supporting Data Attached: ☐ Drawings ☐ Product Data ☐ Samples ☐ Tests ☐ Reports ☐ _____

Copyright 1996, Construction Specification Institute,
601 Madison Street, Alexandria, VA 22314-1791



September 1996
CSI Form 13.1A

# SUBSTITUTION REQUEST
**(Continued)**

The Undersigned certifies:

- Proposed substitution has been fully investigated and determined to be equal or superior in all respects to specified product.
- Same warranty will be furnished for proposed substitution as for specified product.
- Same maintenance service and source of replacement parts, as applicable, is available.
- Proposed substitution will have no adverse effect on other trades and will not affect or delay progress schedule.
- Cost data as stated above is complete. Claims for additional costs related to accepted substitution which may subsequently become apparent are to be waived.
- Proposed substitution does not affect dimensions and functional clearances.
- Payment will be made for changes to building design, including A/E design, detailing, and construction costs caused by the substitution.
- Coordination, installation, and changes in the Work as necessary for accepted substitution will be complete in all respects.

Submitted by: _____

Signed by: _____

Firm: _____

Address: _____

_____

Telephone: _____

Attachments: _____

_____

_____

_____

A/E's REVIEW AND ACTION

☐ Substitution approved - Make submittals in accordance with Specification Section 01330.
☐ Substitution approved as noted - Make submittals in accordance with Specification Section 01330.
☐ Substitution rejected - Use specified materials.
☐ Substitution Request received too late - Use specified materials.

Signed by: Date:

Additional Comments: ☐ Contractor ☐ Subcontractor ☐ Supplier ☐ Manufacturer ☐ A/E ☐ _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Copyright 1996, Construction Specification Institute,
601 Madison Street, Alexandria, VA 22314-1791

# SECTION 01 26 00 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Division 01 Section - Unit Prices for administrative requirements for using unit prices.
   2. Division 01 Section - Substitution Procedures for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after the Contract award.

### 1.03 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on Architect's "Architect's Supplemental Instructions."

### 1.04 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
   1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
   2. Within time specified in Proposal Request or 15 days, when not otherwise specified, after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
      a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
      b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
      c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
      d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
      e. Quotation Form: Use AIA Document G709 for Proposal Requests or other form as approved by Architect.

B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect.
   1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
   2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.

3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
6. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
7. Proposal Request Form: Use AIA Document G709 for Proposal Requests or other form as approved by Architect.

## 1.05 ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGE ORDERS

A. Allowance Adjustment: See Division 01 Section "Allowances" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect actual costs of allowances.

B. Unit-Price Adjustment: See Division 01 Section "Unit Prices" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect measured scope of unit-price work.

## 1.06 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

A. On Owner's approval of a Work Changes Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701

## 1.07 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G714. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
   1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.

B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
   1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

Not Used.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

Not Used.

END OF SECTION 01 26 00

# SECTION 01 29 00 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Division 01 Section - Allowances for procedural requirements governing the handling and processing of allowances.
   2. Division 01 Section - Unit Prices for administrative requirements governing the use of unit prices.
   3. Division 01 Section - Contract Modification Procedures for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract.
   4. Division 01 Section - Construction Progress Documentation for administrative requirements governing the preparation and submittal of the Contractor's construction schedule.

### 1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

### 1.04 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
   1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with other required administrative forms and schedules, including the following:
      a. Submittal schedule.
      b. Items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
      c. Application for Payment forms with continuation sheets.
   2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect at earliest possible date, but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
   3. Subschedules for Phased Work: Where the Work is separated into phases requiring separately phased payments, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with each phase of payment.
   4. Subschedules for Separate Elements of Work: Where the Contractor's construction schedule defines separate elements of the Work, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with each element.
   5. Subschedules for Separate Design Contracts: Where the Owner has retained design professionals under separate contracts who will each provide certification of payment requests, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with the scope of each design services contract as described in Division 01 Section - Summary.

B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.

1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
    a. Project name and location.
    b. Name of Architect.
    c. Architect's project number.
    d. Contractor's name and address.
    e. Date of submittal.
2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703**.**
3. Arrange the schedule of values in tabular form with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
    a. Related Specification Section or Division.
    b. Description of the Work.
    c. Name of subcontractor.
    d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
    e. Name of supplier.
    f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
    g. Dollar value of the following, as a percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent.
        1) Labor.
        2) Materials.
        3) Equipment.
4. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; total shall equal the Contract Sum.
5. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
    a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site. If required, include evidence of insurance.
6. Provide separate line items in the schedule of values for initial cost of materials, for each subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value of that part of the Work.
7. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each allowance. Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
8. Purchase Contracts: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each purchase contract. Show line-item value of purchase contract. Indicate owner payments or deposits, if any, and balance to be paid by Contractor.
9. Each item in the schedule of values and Applications for Payment shall be complete. Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each item.
    a. Temporary facilities and other major overhead cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place may be shown either as separate line items in the schedule of values or distributed as general overhead expense, at Contractor's option.
10. Schedule Updating: Update and resubmit the schedule of values before the next Applications for Payment when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum.

## 1.05 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
    1. Initial Application for Payment, Application for Payment at time of Substantial Completion, and final Application for Payment involve additional requirements.

B. Payment Application Times: Submit Application for Payment to Architect by the **last** of the month. The period covered by each Application for Payment is one month, ending on the last day of the month.

1. Submit draft copy of Application for Payment seven > days prior to due date for review by Architect.

C. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment.

D. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
   1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
   2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
   3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
   4. Indicate separate amounts for work being carried out under Owner-requested project acceleration.

E. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
   1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment, for stored materials.
   2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
   3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
      a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
      b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
      c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.

F. Transmittal: Submit signed and notarized copies electronically for each Application for Payment to Architect. Include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
   1. Application for Payment should be submitted electronically as a PDF document via email and on the Owner’s Web Site, e-Builder.

G. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's liens from subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, and suppliers for construction period covered by the previous application.
   1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
   2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
   3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
   4. Submit final Application for Payment with or preceded by conditional final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
   5. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms, acceptable to Owner.

H. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
   1. List of subcontractors.

2. Schedule of values.
3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
4. Products list (preliminary if not final).
5. Schedule of unit prices.
6. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
7. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
8. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
9. Copies of building permits.
10. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
11. Initial progress report.
12. Report of preconstruction conference.
13. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
14. Performance and payment bonds.
15. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.

I. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
   1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
   2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.

J. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
   1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
   2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
   3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
   4. AIA Document G706, "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims."
   5. AIA Document G706A, "Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens."
   6. AIA Document G707, "Consent of Surety to Final Payment."
   7. Evidence that claims have been settled.
   8. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
   9. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

Not Used.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

Not Used.

END OF SECTION 01 29 00

# SECTION 01 31 00 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
   1. General coordination procedures.
   2. Conservation.
   3. Correlation of Documents.
   4. Coordination drawings.
   5. Requests for Information (RFIs).
   6. Project Web site.
   7. Project meetings.

B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility are assigned to a specific contractor.

C. Related Requirements:
   1. Division 01 Section - Construction Progress Documentation for preparing and submitting Contractor's construction schedule.
   2. Division 01 Section - Execution for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
   3. Division 01 Section - Closeout Procedures for coordinating closeout of the Contract.

### 1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. RFI: Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

### 1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
   1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
   2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
   3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.

### 1.05 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

B. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations, included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
   1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
   2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.

3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.

C. Coordination: Each contractor shall coordinate its construction operations with those of other contractors and entities to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Each contractor shall coordinate its operations with operations, included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
   1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
   2. Coordinate installation of different components with other contractors to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
   3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.

D. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
   1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.

E. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities and activities of other contractors to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
   1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
   2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
   3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
   4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
   5. Progress meetings.
   6. Preinstallation conferences.
   7. Project closeout activities.
   8. Startup and adjustment of systems.

F. Conservation: Coordinate construction activities to ensure that operations are carried out with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.
   1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. See other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

## 1.05 CORRELATION OF DOCUMENTS

A. Any discrepancy in the documents shall be interpreted to include the most restrictive or costly solution. In case of discrepancy either in figures or Drawings or Specifications, the matter must be promptly submitted by the Contractor to the Architect, who will promptly make a determination in writing. Any adjustment by the Contractor without such a determination by the Architect will be at the Contractor's own risk and expense. The Architect will furnish, as necessary, additional detailed Drawings and information for clarification.

B. If a document discrepancy is identified prior to Notice to Proceed, the Architect is to be notified so a written clarification may be issued.

C. Any survey drawing documents included herein are for convenience of the Contractor and Owner. The Architect assumes no responsibility as to their completeness or accuracy.

D. Anything mentioned in the Specifications and not shown on the Drawings or shown on the Drawings and not mentioned in the Specifications, is of like effect as if shown or mentioned in both.

E. On any of the Drawings in which a portion of the work is detailed or drawn out and the remainder is shown in outline, the parts detailed or drawn out will apply also to all other like portions of the work.

F. When the word "similar" appears on Drawings, it has a general meaning and must not be interpreted as meaning identical. All details must be worked out in relation to their location and connection with other parts of the work.

G. Refer to Architectural Drawings for verification of locations, sizes and dimensions.

## 1.06 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely shown on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
   1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
      a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
      b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to the coordination drawings by multiple contractors in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.
      c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
      d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
      e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
      f. Indicate required installation sequences.
      g. Indicate dimensions shown on the Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternate sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.

B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
   1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
   2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within ceiling plenum to accommodate layout of light fixtures indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
   3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
   4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
   5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door

floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.

6. Refer to Division 23 Section - Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods and Division 26 Section - Basic Electrical Materials and Methods for specific Coordination Drawing requirements for mechanical and electrical installations.
7. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Work to be shown shall include, but not be limited to the following:
    a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
    b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
    c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
8. Electrical Work: Work to be shown shall include, but not be limited to the following:
    a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
    b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
    c. Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor control center locations.
    d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.
9. Fire-Protection System: Work to be shown shall include, but not be limited to the following:
    a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
10. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make changes as directed and resubmit.
11. Coordination Drawing Prints: Prepare coordination drawing prints according to requirements in Division 01 Section - Submittal Procedures.
12. Staff Names: Submit a list of principal staff assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site with the bid proposal. Within 15 days of starting construction operations, identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and telephone numbers, including home and office telephone numbers. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as standbys in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.
13. Post copies of list in Project meeting room, in temporary field office, and by each temporary telephone

C. Coordination of Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following requirements:
    1. File Preparation Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as original Drawings.
    2. File Preparation Format: DWG, operating in Microsoft Windows operating system.
    3. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using format same as file preparation format.
    4. Architect may consent to furnish Contractor with one set of digital data files of certain drawings for use in preparing coordination digital data files, subject to Contractor’s acceptance of Architect’s terms. Architect’s consultants may or may not agree to provide digital data files or may have additional terms for release of their files.
        a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Drawings.
        b. Digital Data Software Program: Drawings are available in AutoCad and / or PDF file format, latest version.

c. Contractor shall sign a data licensing agreement form in a format acceptable to Architect, as a pre-condition for release of Architect's files.

## 1.07 REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION (RFI'S)

A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
   1. Architect will return RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor with no response.
   2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.

B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
   1. Project name: Humble ISD MS Timberwood Renovations
   2. Project number.
   3. Date.
   4. Name of Contractor.
   5. Name of Architect: Brown Reynolds Watford Architects
   6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
   7. RFI subject.
   8. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
   9. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
   10. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
   11. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
   12. Contractor's signature.
   13. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
      a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.

C. RFI Forms: Software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above, acceptable to Architect.
   1. Attachments shall be electronic files in Adobe Acrobat PDF format.

D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
   1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
      a. Requests for approval of submittals.
      b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
      c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
      d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
      e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
      f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
      g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
   2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt of additional information.
   3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Division 01 Section - Contract Modification Procedures.
      a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.

E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log monthly. Include the following:
   1. Project name.
   2. Name and address of Contractor.
   3. Name and address of Architect.
   4. RFI number including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
   5. RFI description.
   6. Date the RFI was submitted.
   7. Date Architect's response was received.

F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.
   1. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
   2. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.

## 1.08 PROJECT WEB SITE

A. Use Owner's Project Web site for purposes of managing project communication and documentation until Final Completion.

## 1.09 PROJECT MEETINGS

A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times.
   2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
   3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.

B. Preconstruction Conference: Architect will schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after Notice to Proceed.
   1. Conduct the conference to review responsibilities and personnel assignments.
   2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
   3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
      a. Tentative construction schedule.
      b. Phasing.
      c. Critical work sequencing and long-lead items.
      d. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
      e. Lines of communications.
      f. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
      g. Procedures for RFIs.
      h. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
      i. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
      j. Distribution of the Contract Documents.

k. Submittal procedures.
l. Preparation of record documents.
m. Use of the premises and existing building.
n. Work restrictions.
o. Working hours.
p. Owner's occupancy requirements.
q. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
r. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
s. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
t. Construction waste management and recycling.
u. Parking availability.
v. Office, work, and storage areas.
w. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
x. First aid.
y. Security.
z. Progress cleaning.

4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.

C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.
1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect, and Owner's Commissioning Authority of scheduled meeting dates.
2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
a. Contract Documents.
b. Options.
c. Related RFIs.
d. Related Change Orders.
e. Purchases.
f. Deliveries.
g. Submittals.
h. Possible conflicts.
i. Compatibility requirements.
j. Time schedules.
k. Weather limitations.
l. Manufacturer's written instructions.
m. Warranty requirements.
n. Compatibility of materials.
o. Acceptability of substrates.
p. Temporary facilities and controls.
q. Space and access limitations.
r. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
s. Testing and inspecting requirements.
t. Installation procedures.
u. Coordination with other work.
v. Required performance results.
w. Protection of adjacent work.
x. Protection of construction and personnel.
3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.

4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.

D. Project Closeout Conference: Schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 30 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
   1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
   2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
   3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:
      a. Preparation of record documents.
      b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
      c. Submittal of written warranties.
      d. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
      e. Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts.
      f. Requirements for demonstration and training.
      g. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
      h. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
      i. Submittal procedures.
      j. Coordination of separate contracts.
      k. Owner's partial occupancy requirements.
      l. Installation of Owner's furniture, fixtures, and equipment.
      m. Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls.
   4. Minutes: Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.

E. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at biweekly intervals.
   1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
   2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
   3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
      a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
         1) Review schedule for next period.
      b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
         1) Interface requirements.

2) Sequence of operations.
3) Status of submittals.
4) Deliveries.
5) Off-site fabrication.
6) Access.
7) Site utilization.
8) Temporary facilities and controls.
9) Progress cleaning.
10) Quality and work standards.
11) Status of correction of deficient items.
12) Field observations.
13) Safety
14) Work hours
15) Status of RFIs.
16) Status of proposal requests.
17) Pending changes.
18) Status of Change Orders.
19) Pending claims and disputes.
20) Documentation of information for payment requests.

4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
   a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**
Not Used.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**
Not Used.

END OF SECTION 01 31 00

# SECTION 01 32 00 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
   1. Startup construction schedule.
   2. Contractor's construction schedule.
   3. Submittals schedule
   4. Construction schedule updating reports.
   5. Weekly construction reports.
   6. Site condition reports.
   7. As-Built documentation.
   8. Special reports.
   9. Construction photographs.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Division 01 Section - Payment Procedures for submitting the Schedule of Values.
   2. Division 01 Section - Project Management and Coordination for submitting and distributing meeting and conference minutes.
   3. Division 01 Section - Submittal Procedures for submitting schedules and reports.
   4. Division 01 Section - Quality Requirements
   5. Division 01 Section - Closeout Procedures
   6. Division 01 Section – Photographic Documentation for submitting periodic progress of construction photographs.

### 1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
   1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
   2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
   3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.

B. Cost Loading: The allocation of the schedule of values for the completion of an activity as scheduled. The sum of costs for all activities must equal the total Contract Sum unless otherwise approved by Architect.

C. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.

D. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.

E. Resource Loading: The allocation of manpower and equipment necessary for the completion of an activity as scheduled.

## 1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
   1. PDF electronic copies

B. Startup construction schedule.

C. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
   1. Submit a PDF copy of schedule, labeled to comply with requirements for submittals. Include type of schedule (initial or updated) and date on label.

D. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.

E. Construction Photographs
   1. Refer to Division 01 Photographic Documentation for requirements.

F. Submittals Schedule: Submit a PDF copy of schedule. Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
   1. Scheduled date for first submittal.
   2. Specification Section number and title.
   3. Name of subcontractor.
   4. Description of the Work covered.
   5. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.

G. Weekly Construction Reports: Submit at the end of each week and shall include a current schedule.

H. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.

I. Special Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.

## 1.05 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate preparation and processing of schedules and reports with performance of construction activities and with scheduling and reporting of separate contractors.

B. Coordinate Contractor's construction schedule with the schedule of values, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
   1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
   2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 SUBMITTALS SCHEDULE

A. Preparation: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, resubmittal, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates.
   1. Coordinate Submittals Schedule with list of subcontracts, the Schedule of Values, and Contractor's Construction Schedule.
      a. Identify submittals that are part of the critical path.
   2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with preliminary bar-chart schedule. Include submittals required during the first 14 days of construction. List those required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
      a. At Contractor's option, show submittals on the Preliminary Construction Schedule, instead of tabulating them separately.

3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's Construction Schedule.

## 2.02 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice to Proceed to date of final completion.
   1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.

B. Activities: Comply with the following:
   1. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for long lead items and major items, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
   2. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Division 01 Section - Submittal Procedures in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's construction schedule with submittal schedule.
   3. Startup and Testing Time: Include days for startup and testing.
   4. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
   5. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and final completion.

C. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
   1. Phasing: Arrange list of activities on schedule by area of renovation. TBD.
   2. Work by Owner: Include a separate activity for each portion of the Work performed by Owner.
   3. Owner-Furnished Products: Include a separate activity for each product.
   4. Construction Areas: Indicate where each construction activity within the renovation must be sequenced or integrated with construction activities in the other area to provide for the following:
      a. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
      b. Permanent space enclosure.
      c. Completion of mechanical installation.
      d. Completion of electrical installation.
      e. Substantial Completion.

D. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and final completion**.**
   1. Substantial Completion of the renovation.

E. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
   1. Unresolved issues.
   2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
   3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
   4. Notations on returned submittals.
   5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and Contract Time.

F. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, and equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.

G. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.

## 2.03 STARTUP CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

A. Bar-Chart Schedule: Submit startup, horizontal, bar-chart-type construction schedule within 10 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed.

B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line. Outline significant construction activities for first 30 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work.

## 2.04 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (GANTT CHART)

A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit a comprehensive, fully developed, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type, Contractor's construction schedule within 30 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed. Base schedule on the startup construction schedule and additional information received since the start of Project.

B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line.
   1. For construction activities that require three months or longer to complete, indicate an estimated completion percentage in 10 percent increments within time bar.

## 2.05 REPORTS

A. Weekly Construction Reports: Prepare a weekly construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
   1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
   2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
   3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
   4. Equipment at Project site.
   5. Material deliveries.
   6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
   7. Accidents.
   8. Meetings and significant decisions.
   9. Unusual events (see special reports).
   10. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
   11. Emergency procedures.
   12. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
   13. Change Orders received and implemented.
   14. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
   15. Services connected and disconnected.
   16. Equipment or system tests and startups.
   17. Partial completions and occupancies.
   18. Substantial Completions authorized.

B. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.

## 2.06 AS-BUILT DOCUMENTATION

A. Contractor shall record changes to the Construction Documents where the constructed work deviates from that which is shown. This “As-Built” documentation shall be recorded in “Red”

on a dedicated field set at the trailer or an electronic that can be observed by the architect at any time.

## 2.07 SPECIAL REPORTS

A. General: Submit special reports directly to Owner within one day(s) of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.

A. Reporting Unusual Events: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, response by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable. Events include, but are not limited to:
   1. Safety / injury events.
   2. Security / theft / law enforcement events.
   3. Events involving news media coverage.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

A. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one day before the first regular meeting of each month.
   1. As the Work progresses, indicate final completion percentage for each activity.

B. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect**,** Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
   1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
   2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

## 3.02 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

A. Refer to Division 01 Section – Photographic Documentation for construction photograph requirements.

END OF SECTION 01 32 00

# SECTION 01 32 33 - PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
   1. Preconstruction photographs.
   2. Periodic construction photographs.
   3. Final completion construction photographs.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Division 01 Section - Unit Prices for procedures for unit prices for extra photographs.
   2. Division 01 Section - Submittal Procedures for submitting photographic documentation.
   3. Division 01 Section - Closeout Procedures for submitting photographic documentation as project record documents at Project closeout.
   4. Division 01 Section - Demonstration and Training for submitting video recordings of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.
   5. Division 02 Section - Structure Demolition for photographic documentation before building demolition operations commence.
   6. Division 02 Section - Selective Structure Demolition for photographic documentation before selective demolition operations commence.
   7. Division 31 Section - Site Clearing for photographic documentation before site clearing operations commence.

### 1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Key Plan: Submit key plan of Project site and building with notation of vantage points marked for location and direction of each photograph. Indicate elevation or story of construction. Include same information as corresponding photographic documentation.

B. Digital Photographs: Submit image files within three days of taking photographs.
   1. Digital Camera: Minimum sensor resolution of 8 megapixels.
   2. Format: Minimum 3200 by 2400 pixels, in unaltered original files, with same aspect ratio as the sensor, uncropped, date and time stamped, in folder named by date of photograph, accompanied by key plan file.
   3. Identification: Provide the following information with each image description in file metadata tag:
      a. Name of Project: Humble ISD Timberwood MS Renovations
      b. Site Address.
      c. Name of Architect: Brown Reynolds Watford Architects
      d. Name of Contractor.
      e. Date photograph was taken.

### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Photographer Qualifications: An individual who has been regularly engaged as a professional photographer of construction projects for not less than three years.

## 1.05 USAGE RIGHTS

A. Obtain and transfer copyright usage rights from photographer to Owner for unlimited reproduction of photographic documentation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 PHOTOGRAPHIC MEDIA

A. Digital Images: Provide images in JPG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor size of 8 megapixels, and at an image resolution of not less than 3200 by 2400 pixels.

## 2.02 PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

A. Wireless Hand-Held Camera: Provide portable camera system capable of producing images complying with requirements in this Section.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

A. General: Take photographs using the maximum range of depth of field, and that are in focus, to clearly show the Work. Photographs with blurry, out-of-focus, or ill-lit areas will not be accepted.
   1. Maintain key plan with each set of construction photographs that identifies each photographic location.

B. Digital Images: Submit digital images exactly as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.
   1. Date and Time: Include date and time in file name for each image.
   2. Field Office Images: Maintain one set of images accessible in the field office at Project site, available at all times for reference. Identify images in the same manner as those submitted to Architect.

C. Preconstruction Photographs: Before commencement of demolition, take photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction, from different vantage points, as directed by Architect.
   1. Flag construction limits before taking construction photographs.
   2. Take 20 photographs to show interior and exterior (if applicable) existing conditions adjacent to scope of work area before starting the Work.
   3. Take 10 photographs of existing buildings either on or adjoining property to accurately record physical conditions at start of construction.
   4. Take additional photographs as required to record settlement or cracking of adjacent structures, pavements, and improvements.

D. Periodic Construction Photographs: Take 20 photographs monthly with the cutoff date associated with each Application for Payment. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.
   1. Submit complete set of photographs electronically with Application for Payment as a Project Record Document. Identify the date and location photographs were taken.

E. Final Completion Construction Photographs: Take 20 color photographs after date of Substantial Completion for submission as project record documents. Architect will inform photographer of desired vantage points.

END OF SECTION 01 32 33

# SECTION 01 33 00 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes requirements for the submittal schedule and administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Division 01 Section - Payment Procedures for submitting Applications for Payment and the schedule of values.
   2. Division 01 Section - Project Management and Coordination for submitting Coordination Drawings.
   3. Division 01 Section - Construction Progress Documentation for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's construction schedule.
   4. Division 01 Section - Operation and Maintenance Data for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
   5. Division 01 Section - Project Record Documents for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.
   6. Division 01 Section - Closeout Procedures for submitting warranties Project Record Documents and operation and maintenance manuals.
   7. Division 01 Section - Demonstration and Training for submitting video recordings of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.

### 1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."

B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."

C. File Transfer Protocol (FTP): Communications protocol that enables transfer of files to and from another computer over a network and that serves as the basis for standard Internet protocols. An FTP site is a portion of a network located outside of network firewalls within which internal and external users are able to access files.

D. Portable Document Format (PDF): An open standard file format licensed by Adobe Systems used for representing documents in a device-independent and display resolution-independent fixed-layout document format.

### 1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Submittal Schedule: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.

1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
    a. Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
    a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
    b. Specification Section number and title.
    c. Submittal category: Action; informational.
    d. Name of subcontractor.
    e. Description of the Work covered.
    f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
    g. Scheduled date of fabrication.
    h. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
    i. Scheduled dates for installation.
    j. Activity or event number.

## 1.05 SUBMITTAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Architect's Digital Data Files: Certain Electronic digital data files of the Contract Drawings may be provided at the discretion of the Architect for Contractor's use in preparing submittals.
    1. Architect may furnish Contractor specifically requested digital data drawing files of the Contract Drawings for use in preparing Shop Drawings.
        a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data drawing files as they relate to the Contract Drawings.
        b. Digital Drawing Software Program: The Contract Drawings are available in AutoCad format.
        c. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of an Agreement acceptable to the Architect, as a prerequisite for Architect providing electronic files. Architect's consultants may require additional agreements as condition for release of their electronic files.
            1) Contractor shall bind all parties receiving or using these files to the same agreements.
        d. The following digital data files may be furnished for each appropriate discipline:
            1) Site plan.
            2) Architectural floor plans.
            3) Drawings specifically requested by Contractor and agreed to be provided by the Architect and Architect's consultants.

B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
    1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
    2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
    3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.

4. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
    a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.

C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
    1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
    2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
    3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
    4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 21 days for initial review of each submittal.
    5. Concurrent Review of Submittals: Where two or more submittals require concurrent review, Architect retains the right to hold submittals until all submittals required for concurrent review are received. Architect will notify Contractor of necessity for concurrent submittals after a submittal is received in absence of other related submittals required for concurrent review. The date of receipt of the last submittal required for concurrent review will be considered the date for the start of Architect's review time.
        a. Examples of submittals for concurrent review include, but are not limited to: Roofing and related flashing, accessories, and waterproofing installed by roofer; doors, door frames, and hardware submittals; and window or glazing systems and glass.

D. Transmittals for Electronic Submittals: Assemble each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using a transmittal form. Architect will return without review or discard any submittals received from sources other than the Contractor. Package each submittal individually. Do not group different specification sections together in one submittal. Provide transmittal form transmittal form including the following information:
    1. Submittal number unique identifier, including revision identifier, and with identification of submittal contents as follows:
        a. Submittal number shall use Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number (e.g., 061000.01). Resubmittals shall include an alphabetic suffix after another decimal point (e.g., 061000.01.A), or next sequential letter.
        b. Name of Specification Section, with brief description of submittal contents for sections requiring multiple submittals.
    2. Overall sequence number each submittal starting with number 1 for the first submittal transmitted to the Architect, 2 for the second and so forth, indicating the chronological submission of each submittal.
    3. Provide means for insertion to permanently record Contractor's review and approval markings. Indicate Contractor's completed review prior to submitting to Architect.
    4. Include the following information for processing and recording:
        a. Project name.
        b. Date of submission to Architect.
        c. Name of Architect.
        d. Name of Contractor.

e. Additionally, indicate names of the following, as applicable, including indication of the entity that prepared each submittal:
   1) Name of subcontractor.
   2) Name of supplier / vendor.
   3) Name of manufacturer.
f. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
g. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
h. Remarks and other necessary identification.
i. Signature of transmitter.

E. Electronic Submittals: Identify and incorporate information in each electronic submittal file as follows:
   1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed .pdf format file, or .pdf files within a .zip file where multiple files cannot be avoided, incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form. Name file according to Submittal number and contents identification.
   2. Architect, and Architect's consultants as applicable, will return electronic submittal with annotations containing their comments as applicable.
   3. Architect retains right to require a paper submittal for shop drawings or other complex submittals that may require substantial notation to be marked on submittal sheets or drawings, at Architect's discretion.

F. Options: Circle or highlight options to be provided on product data and specification sheets. Identify options requiring selection by Architect with red colored boxes or text.

G. Deviations and Additional Information: On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same identification information as related submittal.

H. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
   1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
   2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
   3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

I. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.

J. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

A. Organization: All required submittals for a specification section must be transmitted together complete as one submittal transmittal. Partial transmittals will not be accepted for review.

B. Contractor's responsibilities:
   1. Contractor shall thoroughly check shop drawings, project data and samples for compliance with Contract Documents and list variances prior to submission.
   2. Contractor represents by approving and submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data and samples that he has or will coordinate and verify dimensions, all materials, field

measurements, field construction criteria, catalog numbers and similar data with requirements of work and of Contract Documents prior to submitting.

3. Submittals shall bear Contractor's stamp and initials certifying that they have been checked. Submittals without stamp & initials shall be returned un-reviewed.
4. Contractor's responsibility for deviations or errors and omissions in submittals is not relieved by Architect/ Engineer review of submittals, unless Architect/ Engineer gives specific written acceptance of specific deviations.
5. Do not proceed with purchasing, fabrication or delivery of work which requires submittals until return of submittals with Architect/Engineer stamp and initials or signature evidencing final review and approval of submittals.
6. Contractor is responsible for dimensions at job site, quantities, coordinating component parts and trades to effect unified construction and implement construction techniques, safety of incremental units, and satisfactory performance of work in accordance with Contract Documents.
7. Delays caused by failure of Contractor to check shop drawings and to stamp with this approval shall be Contractor's responsibility.
8. Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of work to avoid delays.
9. No extension of time shall be allowed because of failure to properly coordinate and sequence submittals.

C. General Submittal Procedure Requirements: Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
   1. Submit electronic submittals via email and FTP as PDF format electronic files.
      a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
   2. Action Submittals: Submit electronic copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect and his consultants involved in review of each submittal will retain one copy each; and will annotate and return to Contractor.
   3. Informational Submittals: Submit electronic copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
   4. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Provide a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
      a. Provide a digital signature with digital certificate on electronically submitted certificates and certifications where indicated.
      b. Provide a notarized statement on original paper copy certificates and certifications where indicated.

D. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
   1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
   2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
   3. Include the following information, as applicable:
      a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
      b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
      c. Standard color charts.
      d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
      e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
      f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
      g. Notation of coordination requirements.

h. Availability and delivery time information.

4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
   a. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
   b. Printed performance curves.
   c. Operational range diagrams.
   d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
5. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.

E. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
   1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
      a. Identification of products.
      b. Schedules.
      c. Compliance with specified standards.
      d. Notation of coordination requirements.
      e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
      f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
      g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
   2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 x 11 inches, but no larger than 30 x 42 inches .
   3. Submit Shop Drawings in the following format:
      a. PDF electronic file.
         1) Architect retains the right, at Architect's sole discretion, to require paper copies for submittals that may require extensive annotation on submittal sheets, and for oversize sheets or other conditions that may be difficult to review in electronic format. In each case, Architect and Architect's consultants involved in review will retain one copy each and return the remainder of copies with annotations.

F. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
   1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
   2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
      a. Generic description of Sample.
      b. Product name and name of manufacturer.
      c. Sample source.
      d. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
      e. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
   3. For projects where electronic submittals are required, provide corresponding electronic submittal of Sample transmittal, digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics, and identification information for record.
   4. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
      a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
      b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.

5. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
    a. Number of Samples: Unless otherwise indicated, submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
    b. Selector sheets printed by Contractor, and website information, are not acceptable samples for selection. Submit Manufacturer's selector sheets and samples with accurate color and texture representation as applicable.
6. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
    a. Number of Samples: Unless otherwise indicated, submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain one Sample sets; remainder will be returned. Mark up and retain one returned Sample set as a project record sample.
        1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
        2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.

G. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents or assigned by Contractor if none is indicated.
2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
3. Number and name of room or space.
4. Location within room or space.
5. Submit product schedule in the following format:
    a. PDF electronic file.

## 2.02 INFORMATION SUBMITTALS

A. General: Prepare and submit Informational Submittals required by other Specification Sections.
1. Number of Copies: Submit two copies of each submittal, unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
2. Certificates and Certifications: Provide a notarized statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
3. Test and Inspection Reports: Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section - Quality Requirements.

B. Coordination Drawing Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section - Project Management and Coordination.

C. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section - Construction Progress Documentation.

D. Application for Payment and Schedule of Values: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section - Payment Procedures.

E. Test and Inspection Reports and Schedule of Tests and Inspections Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section - Quality Requirements.

F. Closeout Submittals and Maintenance Material Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section - Closeout Procedures.

G. Maintenance Data: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section - Operation and Maintenance Data.

H. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.

I. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.

J. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.

K. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.

L. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.

M. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.

N. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.

O. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

P. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
   1. Name of evaluation organization.
   2. Date of evaluation.
   3. Time period when report is in effect.
   4. Product and manufacturers' names.
   5. Description of product.
   6. Test procedures and results.
   7. Limitations of use.

Q. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.

R. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed

before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

S. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.

T. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.

## 2.03 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
   1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.

B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF electronic file of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
   1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

A. Action and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.

B. Project Closeout and Maintenance Material Submittals: See requirements in Division 01 Section - Closeout Procedures.

C. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

## 3.02 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

A. Action Submittals:
   1. Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action, as follows:
      a. No exceptions taken.
      b. Make corrections as noted.
      c. Revise and resubmit.
      d. Rejected.
      e. Other.
   2. Submittals or items stamped "No exceptions taken" indicates that Architect does not require resubmittal and may include comments such as Architect's selection of options.

3. Submittals or items stamped "Make corrections as noted" indicates that Architect does not require resubmittal if the annotated corrections are made. However, items or submittals with this action noted may require resubmittal if:
    a. Contractor believes indicated corrections are not correct responses and requires subsequent review. Resubmittal should indicate Contractor's reasons for concern and additional supporting information as applicable.
    b. Contractor believes a resubmittal is required to address or confirm additional questions through subsequent review, related to items not considered by the original submittal or that were brought to light by Architect's previous review comments.
4. Revise and resubmit items or submittals stamped "revise and resubmit" and "rejected", to address all comments requiring resubmittal and the reasons for rejection.
5. When "Other" action is indicated, Architect will provide additional comment describing the subsequent action required.
6. Submittals may be stamped with more than one action regarding portions of the submittal, and may note that only portions of the original submittal are required to be resubmitted.

B. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.

C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.

D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.

E. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

END OF SECTION 01 33 00

# SECTION 01 40 00 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.

B. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
   1. Specific quality-control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in the Sections that specify those activities. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.
   2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's quality-control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
   3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-control services required by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.

C. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 1 Section - Allowances for testing and inspecting allowances.
   2. Division 1 Section - Construction Progress Documentation for developing a schedule of required tests and inspections.
   3. Division 1 Section - Cutting and Patching for repair and restoration of construction disturbed by testing and inspecting activities.
   4. Divisions 2 - 48 Sections for additional specific test and inspection requirements.

### 1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and ensure that proposed construction complies with requirements.

B. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that completed construction complies with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect.

C. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.

D. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

### 1.04 DELEGATED DESIGN

A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
   1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.

## 1.05 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

A. Referenced Standards: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

## 1.06 SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit a statement, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional, indicating that the products and systems are in compliance with performance and design criteria indicated. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

C. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's records, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents, established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

## 1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.

B. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.

C. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

D. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.

E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that is similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.

F. Specialists: Certain sections of the Specifications require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.

1. Requirement for specialists shall not supersede building codes and similar regulations governing the Work, nor interfere with local trade-union jurisdictional settlements and similar conventions.

G. Testing Agency Qualifications: An agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated in accordance with ASTM E329, as documented by ASTM E 548, and that specializes in types of tests and inspections to be performed.
   1. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.

## 1.08 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner Responsibilities: The Owner will hire and pay for tests and inspections, unless explicitly assigned to Contractor**.** Perform additional quality-control activities required to verify that the Work complies with requirements, whether specified or not.
   1. Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
   2. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged by Owner and a description of the types of testing and inspecting they are engaged to perform.
   3. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor.

B. Contractor Responsibilities: Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and required by authorities having jurisdiction.
   1. Where services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services.
      a. Contractor shall not employ the same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
   2. Notify testing agencies, Engineer & Architect at least 72 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspecting will be performed.
   3. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
   4. Testing and inspecting requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
   5. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.

C. Special Tests and Inspections: Engage a qualified testing agency to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner.
   1. Testing agency will notify Architect**,** and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
   2. Testing agency will submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
   3. Testing agency will submit a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
   4. Testing agency will interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
   5. Testing agency will retest and re-inspect corrected work.

D. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing.

E. Retesting/Reinspections: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspections, for construction that revised or replaced Work that failed to comply with requirements established by the Contract Documents.

F. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
   1. Notify Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
   2. Interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
   3. Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to recipients on the distribution list as established by Architect, or in the absence of that, through Contractor.
   4. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase requirements of the Contract Documents or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
   5. Do not perform any duties of Contractor.

G. Associated Services: Cooperate with agencies performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
   1. Access to the Work.
   2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
   3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspecting. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
   4. Facilities for storage and field-curing of test samples.
   5. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
   6. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at Project site.

H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and quality-control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.
   1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

Not used.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EARTHWORK AND TESTING

A. Inspect and approve subgrade prior to placing material.

B. Perform relative compaction testing determined as outlined in ASTM D-1557.

C. Perform moisture density test for each soil type determined as outlined in ASTM D-698.

D. Field density tests shall be made at all fill areas at backfill and at existing subgrade; no less than two tests per lift.

E. Filling and Backfilling:

1. The Contractor shall make available to the laboratory, adequate samples of each fill and backfill material from the proposed sources of supply not less than 10 days prior to the start of the work.
2. The Laboratory shall analyze the samples as required to provide a soil description and to determine compliance with the quality requirements.
    a. Test for liquid limit in accordance with ASTM D423.
    b. Test for plastic limit of soils and plasticity index of soils in accordance with ASTM D424.
    c. Test for moisture density relations of soil in accordance with ASTM D698.
3. Furnish a report for each individual test and state whether sample conforms to the specified requirements or reasons for nonconformance.
4. Inspect and approve subgrade prior to placement of fill material.
5. Make in-place compaction tests for moisture content, moisture-density relationship, and density of fill materials.
6. Perform not less than two compaction tests for each 3,000 SF of surface for each layer of fill under the building and not less than two compaction tests for each 5,000 SF of surface for each layer of fill or undisturbed earth on areas of site to be covered by paving walks or traffic approaches.

## 3.02 DRILLED PIER INSPECTION

A. The Contractor shall pay for services by a qualified soils laboratory to provide inspection of pier drilling operations as follows:
    1. Qualified soils personnel on site for pier drilling operation inspection.
    2. The laboratory representative shall remain on the site until the Contractor can properly identify the bearing formations with accuracy and without assistance from the laboratory.
    3. Should any unusual conditions be encountered during drilling operations, the laboratory shall be contacted immediately so that additional inspection can be provided.
    4. The lab report shall:
        a. Identify each pier drilled;
        b. The date and time of drilling and concrete placement;
        c. Verify pier and bell diameters;
        d. Depth of pier from surface;
        e. Depth of bearing stratum from surface;
        f. Required and actual penetration;
        g. Depth from top of concrete;
        h. Condition at bottom;
        i. Diameter and length of casing;
        j. Reinforcing used.

B. The Contractor shall allow for a minimum of 2 days notice to be given the laboratory for the inspection work.

## 3.03 CONCRETE REINFORCEMENT TESTING AND INSPECTION

A. Reinforcing Bar Inspection: Inspect reinforcing bar placement including size, number, configuration, locations, clearances, and related criteria.

B. Reinforcing: Inspect all reinforcing steel prior to placement of concrete for compliance with the Contract Documents and the approved shop drawings. All instances of noncompliance shall be immediately brought to the attention of the Contractor. If uncorrected by the contractor, they shall be listed in the report.
    1. Observe and report the following: number and size of bars; bending; splicing; clearance to forms; clearance between bars; rust, from oil or other contamination; fabrication and installation of embedded metal assemblies, including visual inspection of all welds.

C. Inspector shall have a minimum of three years experience inspecting reinforcing steel in projects of similar size.

## 3.04 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE TESTING AND INSPECTION

A. Materials and operations shall be tested and inspected as work progresses. Failure to detect defective work shall not prevent rejection when defect is discovered, nor shall it obligate the Architect for final acceptance.

B. Testing agencies shall meet the requirements of "Recommended Practice for Inspection and Testing Agencies for Concrete and Steel in Construction", ASTM E-329-70.

C. The following review and testing services shall be performed by the designated laboratory:
   1. The testing laboratory shall review the submitted mix designs for conformance with "Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete" ACI 318-95.
   2. Secure composite samples in accordance with "Method of Sampling Fresh Concrete" ASTM C172, Current Edition.
   3. Mold and cure five specimens from each sample in accordance with "Method of Making and Curing Concrete Compression and Flexural Specimens in the Field", ASTM C31, Current Edition.
   4. Test specimens in accordance with "Method of Test for Compressive Strength of Molded Concrete Cylinders", ASTM C39, Current Edition. Two specimens shall be tested at 28 days for acceptance and two shall be tested at 7 days for information. The remaining cylinder shall be tested as directed.
   5. Make one strength test for each 100 cubic yards or fraction thereof, of each mix design or concrete placed in any one day.
   6. Determine slump for each strength test and whenever consistency of concrete appears to vary, using "Method of Test for Slump of Portland Cement Concrete" ASTM C143, Current Edition and air content of normal weight or light weight concrete sample for each strength test.
   7. Determine temperature of concrete sample for each strength test.
   8. Other testing services needed or required shall be paid by the Contractor.
   9. Inspect and control the concrete mixing and loading of transit-mix trucks at the plant at the start of each day's mixing. Check mixing from mixers before mix begins to set and within time limits set forth in ASTM C94. Prevailing conditions shall be compared to the criteria indicated on the appropriate design mix (temperature, moisture, condition of aggregates, etc.).

D. Any significant deviance shall be immediately reported to the Architect and the design
   1. laboratory and corresponding adjustments to the mix made before any materials are discharged.
   2. Control the addition of water to the concrete at the job site and the length of time the concrete is allowed to remain in the truck during the pour.
   3. Specimens for pumped concrete shall be taken at the discharge and of pumping equipment.
   4. Certify each delivery ticket indicating class of concrete delivered (or poured), amount of water added and the time at which the cement and aggregate was discharged into the truck, and the time at which the concrete was discharged from the truck.

E. Provide and maintain for the use of the testing agency adequate facilities for proper curing of concrete test specimens on the project site in accordance with "Methods of Making and Curing Concrete Compression and Flexural Specimens in the Field" ASTM C31, Current Edition. Evaluation and Acceptance:
   1. The strength level of the concrete will be considered satisfactory if 90% of the strength test results and the averages of all sets of three consecutive strength test results equal or exceed

specified strength and no individual test result is below specified strength by more than 500 psi.

2. Completed concrete work will be accepted when the requirements of "Specifications for Structural Concrete for Buildings" ACI 301-84, Chapter 18 have been complied with.
3. In any case, where the average strength of the laboratory control cylinders, as shown by the tests for any portion of the structure, falls below the minimum ultimate compressive strength hereinbefore specified, the Architect shall have the right to require the Contractor to provide improved curing conditions of temperature and moisture to secure the required strength. Also, if the average strength of the laboratory control cylinders should fall so low as to cause the portions of the structure to which the respective unsatisfactory test reports apply to be in question by the Architect, the Contractor shall follow the core procedure set forth in the current edition of ASTM Designation C42. If the results of the core tests indicate, in the opinion of the Architect, that the strength of the structure is inadequate, such replacement, load testing, or strengthening as may be ordered by the Architect shall be provided by the Contractor without cost to the Owner.
4. The testing laboratory shall control field adjustments made to concrete mixes to compensate for field conditions and report same.
5. Wherever the testing laboratory recognizes a trend of decreasing quality in the concrete due to changing reasons, conditions of curing or other cause; this shall be brought to the attention of the Architect, along with a recommendation for corrective action to be taken before the materials fall below the requirements of these Specifications.

F. Reports: In addition, the testing laboratory shall make one copy of the reports to the concrete supplier.

## 3.05 LIGHTWEIGHT STRUCTURAL CONCRETE

A. Unit weight of lightweight structural concrete:
1. Make two test specimens for each 50 cubic yards of lightweight concrete placed.
2. For each test specimen, determine freshly mixed unit weight and air dry unit weight of lightweight concrete.
3. Test in accordance with ASTM C567.

## 3.06 MASONRY MORTAR AND GROUTS

A. Check mix designs for mortar and grouts. Make tests of mortar and grout to approval for use at project site. Perform four (4) tests in accordance with ASTM C39 for each twenty-five (25) cubic yards of mortar.

B. Submit an additional copy of the laboratory reports to the steel supplier.

C. Compressive Test for Grout:
1. Secure composite samples of grout at the job site in accordance with ASTM C172.
2. Mold and cure three, 3” diameter by 6” tall cylinders form each sample in accordance with ASTM C31. Supervise the curing protection provided by the contractor for the test specimens in the field and transportation to the laboratory. The test cylinders shall be stored in the field 24 hours and then moved to the laboratory and cured in accordance with ASTM C31.
3. Test specimens in accordance with ASTM C39. Two test specimens shall be tested at 28 days for acceptance and one shall be tested at seven days for information.
4. Make one strength test (three cylinders) for each five cubic yards of grout placed, but not less than one strength test for each 5000 square feet of wall area.

## 3.07 INSPECTING STRUCTURAL STEEL

A. Field Inspection

1. Proper erection of all pieces.
2. Proper installation of all bolts, including checking the calibration of impact wrenches used with high strength bolts.
3. Plumbness of structure and proper bracing.
4. Ultrasonic inspection of all full penetration welds.
5. Record and measure camber of beams upon arrival and before erection with compliance with the specified camber. Measure beam lying flat with web in the horizontal position. Members outside the specified camber tolerance shall be returned to the shop.

B. Qualification of Welders: Before assigning any welder to work covered by this section of the Specifications, the fabricator shall provide the Testing Laboratory with certification that each of the the welders to be employed on the project has passed qualification tests within the last year using procedures covered in the American Welding Society Standard D1.0-63.

C. The contractor shall be responsible for furnishing fabrication and erection inspection and testing of all welds in accordance with AWS D1.1, Chapter 6. Submit records of inspections and tests to the Owner's testing laboratory for their review.

D. Inspection of shop and field welding shall be "verification inspection" in accordance with Section 6 of AWS D1.1 and as follows:
1. Visually inspect the welding of all shop fabricated members and note the location of all cover plates, connectors, bearing stiffeners, splices, and fillet welds for proper return around ends and check for seams, folds, and delamination.
2. Ultrasonically test all full penetration welds in accordance with ASTM E164.
3. Root passes shall be thoroughly be inspected for cracks. All cracks shall be gouged out and rewelded to two inches beyond each end of the crack.
4. Mark all welds requiring repairs and make reinspections.
5. The Testing Laboratory inspector shall advise the Owner and Architect of any shop and/or field conditions which, in his opinion, may require further tests and examination. Such further tests shall be performed as authorized by the Owner and Architect.
6. The Owner reserves the right to use ultrasonic or radiographic inspection to verify the adequacy of all welds. Testing procedures and acceptance criteria shall be as specified in AWS D1.1.

E. Inspection of bolted construction shall be in accordance with AISC "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings" and as follows:
1. All bolts shall be visually inspected to ensure that the plies have been brought into "snug" contact.
2. High strength bolts shall be inspected in accordance with Section 9 of the AISC "Specifications for Structural Joints Using ASTM A325 or A490 Bolts." Bolts are to be fully torqued as required by the AISC specification.
3. For all high strength bolts, the inspector shall observe the required jobsite testing and calibration, and shall confirm that the procedure to be used provides the required tension.

## 3.08 INSPECTION OF METAL DECK

A. Field Inspection shall consist of the following:
1. Check types, gauges and finishes for conformance with the Contract Documents and shop drawings.
2. Examination of proper erection of all metal deck, fastenings, reinforcing of holes, miscellaneous deck supports, hanger tabs, shear studs, and deck closures.
3. Check welder's certificates.
4. Visual inspection of all welds.

## 3.09 INSPECTION OF COLD FORMED METAL FRAMING

A. Field Inspection shall consist of the following:
   1. Check types, gauges and finishes for conformance with the Contract Documents and shop drawings.
   2. Examination of proper erection of all framing, fastenings, connections and miscellaneous supports.
   3. Check welder’s certificates.
   4. Visual inspection of all field and shop welds.

## 3.10 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
   1. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for Division 1 Section - Cutting and Patching.

B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.

C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 01 40 00

# SECTION 01 42 00 - REFERENCE STANDARDS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 DEFINITIONS

A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.

B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.

C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."

D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."

E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.

F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.

G. "Install": Operations at Project site including unloading, temporarily storing, unpacking, assembling, erecting, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar operations.

H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.

I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built. Refer to Division 01 "Work Restrictions".

### 1.03 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.

B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.

C. Conflicting Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer uncertainties and requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

1. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are

minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

D. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.
   1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

## 1.04 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Names, telephone numbers, and Web sites are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.
   1. Where abbreviations and acronyms used in Specifications or other Contract Documents are not listed, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale's "Encyclopedia of Associations: National Organizations of the U.S." or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the United States."

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| AABC | Associated Air Balance Council<br>www.aabc.com | (202) 737-0202 |
| AAMA | American Architectural Manufacturers Association<br>www.aamanet.org | (847) 303-5664 |
| AASHTO | American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials<br>www.transportation.org | (202) 624-5800 |
| AATCC | American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists<br>www.aatcc.org | (919) 549-8141 |
| ABMA | American Bearing Manufacturers Association<br>www.americanbearings.org | (202) 367-1155 |
| ACI | American Concrete Institute<br>(Formerly: ACI International)<br>www.concrete.org | (248) 848-3700 |
| ACPA | American Concrete Pipe Association<br>www.concrete-pipe.org | (972) 506-7216 |
| AEIC | Association of Edison Illuminating Companies, Inc. (The)<br>www.aeic.org | (205) 257-2530 |
| AF&PA | American Forest & Paper Association<br>www.afandpa.org | (800) 878-8878<br>(202) 463-2700 |
| AGA | American Gas Association<br>www.aga.org | (202) 824-7000 |
| AHAM | Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers<br>www.aham.org | (202) 872-5955 |
| AHRI | Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute (The)<br>www.ahrinet.org | (703) 524-8800 |
| AI | Asphalt Institute<br>www.asphaltinstitute.org | (859) 288-4960 |
| AIA | American Institute of Architects (The)<br>www.aia.org | (800) 242-3837<br>(202) 626-7300 |
| AISC | American Institute of Steel Construction<br>www.aisc.org | (800) 644-2400<br>(312) 670-2400 |
| AISI | American Iron and Steel Institute<br>www.steel.org | (202) 452-7100 |
| AITC | American Institute of Timber Construction<br>www.aitc-glulam.org | (303) 792-9559 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| AMCA | Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.<br>www.amca.org | (847) 394-0150 |
| ANSI | American National Standards Institute<br>www.ansi.org | (202) 293-8020 |
| AOSA | Association of Official Seed Analysts, Inc.<br>www.aosaseed.com | (607) 256-3313 |
| APA | APA - The Engineered Wood Association<br>www.apawood.org | (253) 565-6600 |
| APA | Architectural Precast Association<br>www.archprecast.org | (239) 454-6989 |
| API | American Petroleum Institute<br>www.api.org | (202) 682-8000 |
| ARI | Air-Conditioning & Refrigeration Institute<br>(See AHRI) | |
| ARI | American Refrigeration Institute<br>(See AHRI) | |
| ARMA | Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association<br>www.asphaltroofing.org | (202) 207-0917 |
| ASCE | American Society of Civil Engineers<br>www.asce.org | (800) 548-2723<br>(703) 295-6300 |
| ASCE/SEI | American Society of Civil Engineers/Structural Engineering Institute<br>(See ASCE) | |
| ASHRAE | American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers<br>www.ashrae.org | (800) 527-4723<br>(404) 636-8400 |
| ASME | ASME International<br>(American Society of Mechanical Engineers)<br>www.asme.org | (800) 843-2763<br>(973) 882-1170 |
| ASSE | American Society of Safety Engineers (The)<br>www.asse.org | (847) 699-2929 |
| ASSE | American Society of Sanitary Engineering<br>www.asse-plumbing.org | (440) 835-3040 |
| ASTM | ASTM International<br>(American Society for Testing and Materials International)<br>www.astm.org | (610) 832-9500 |
| ATIS | Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions<br>www.atis.org | (202) 628-6380 |
| AWEA | American Wind Energy Association<br>www.awea.org | (202) 383-2500 |
| AWI | Architectural Woodwork Institute<br>www.awinet.org | (571) 323-3636 |
| AWMAC | Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada<br>www.awmac.com | (403) 453-7387 |
| AWPA | American Wood Protection Association<br>(Formerly: American Wood-Preservers' Association)<br>www.awpa.com | (205) 733-4077 |
| AWS | American Welding Society<br>www.aws.org | (800) 443-9353<br>(305) 443-9353 |
| AWWA | American Water Works Association<br>www.awwa.org | (800) 926-7337<br>(303) 794-7711 |
| BHMA | Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association<br>www.buildershardware.com | (212) 297-2122 |
| BIA | Brick Industry Association (The)<br>www.gobrick.com | (703) 620-0010 |
| BICSI | BICSI, Inc.<br>www.bicsi.org | (800) 242-7405<br>(813) 979-1991 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| BIFMA | BIFMA International<br>(Business and Institutional Furniture Manufacturer's Association)<br>www.bifma.com | (616) 285-3963 |
| BISSC | Baking Industry Sanitation Standards Committee<br>www.bissc.org | (866) 342-4772 |
| BWF | Badminton World Federation<br>(Formerly: International Badminton Federation)<br>www.bwfbadminton.org | 60 3 9283 7155 |
| CDA | Copper Development Association<br>www.copper.org | (800) 232-3282<br>(212) 251-7200 |
| CEA | Consumer Electronics Association<br>www.ce.org | (866) 858-1555<br>(703) 907-7600 |
| CFFA | Chemical Fabrics & Film Association, Inc.<br>www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com | (216) 241-7333 |
| CFSEI | Cold-Formed Steel Engineers Institute<br>www.cfsei.org | (866) 465-4732<br>(202) 263-4488 |
| CGA | Compressed Gas Association<br>www.cganet.com | (703) 788-2700 |
| CIMA | Cellulose Insulation Manufacturers Association<br>www.cellulose.org | (888) 881-2462<br>(937) 222-2462 |
| CISCA | Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association<br>www.cisca.org | (630) 584-1919 |
| CISPI | Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute<br>www.cispi.org | (404) 622-0073 |
| CLFMI | Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute<br>www.chainlinkinfo.org | (301) 596-2583 |
| CPA | Composite Panel Association<br>www.pbmdf.com | (703) 724-1128 |
| CRI | Carpet and Rug Institute (The)<br>www.carpet-rug.org | (706) 278-3176 |
| CRRC | Cool Roof Rating Council<br>www.coolroofs.org | (866) 465-2523<br>(510) 485-7175 |
| CRSI | Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute<br>www.crsi.org | (800) 328-6306<br>(847) 517-1200 |
| CSA | CSA International<br>(Formerly: IAS - International Approval Services)<br>www.csa-international.org | (866) 797-4272<br>(416) 747-4000 |
| CSI | Construction Specifications Institute (The)<br>www.csinet.org | (800) 689-2900<br>(703) 684-0300 |
| CSSB | Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau<br>www.cedarbureau.org | (604) 820-7700 |
| CTI | Cooling Technology Institute<br>(Formerly: Cooling Tower Institute)<br>www.cti.org | (281) 583-4087 |
| CWC | Composite Wood Council<br>(See CPA) | |
| DASMA | Door and Access Systems Manufacturers Association<br>www.dasma.com | (216) 241-7333 |
| DHI | Door and Hardware Institute<br>www.dhi.org | (703) 222-2010 |
| ECA | Electronic Components Association<br>www.ec-central.org | (703) 907-8024 |
| ECAMA | Electronic Components Assemblies & Materials Association<br>(See ECA) | |
| EIA | Electronic Industries Alliance<br>(See TIA) | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| EIMA | EIFS Industry Members Association<br>www.eima.com | (800) 294-3462<br>(703) 538-1616 |
| EJMA | Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc.<br>www.ejma.org | (914) 332-0040 |
| ESD | ESD Association<br>(Electrostatic Discharge Association)<br>www.esda.org | (315) 339-6937 |
| ESTA | Entertainment Services and Technology Association<br>(See PLASA) | |
| EVO | Efficiency Valuation Organization<br>www.evo-world.org | (415) 367-3643<br>44 20 88 167 857 |
| FM Approvals | FM Approvals LLC<br>www.fmglobal.com | (781) 762-4300 |
| FM Global | FM Global<br>(Formerly: FMG - FM Global)<br>www.fmglobal.com | (401) 275-3000 |
| FRSA | Florida Roofing, Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors Association, Inc.<br>www.floridaroof.com | (407) 671-3772 |
| FSA | Fluid Sealing Association<br>www.fluidsealing.com | (610) 971-4850 |
| FSC | Forest Stewardship Council U.S.<br>www.fscus.org | (612) 353-4511 |
| GA | Gypsum Association<br>www.gypsum.org | (301) 277-8686 |
| GANA | Glass Association of North America<br>www.glasswebsite.com | (785) 271-0208 |
| GS | Green Seal<br>www.greenseal.org | (202) 872-6400 |
| HI | Hydraulic Institute<br>www.pumps.org | (973) 267-9700 |
| HI/GAMA | Hydronics Institute/Gas Appliance Manufacturers Association<br>(See AHRI) | |
| HMMA | Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association<br>(See NAAMM) | |
| HPVA | Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association<br>www.hpva.org | (703) 435-2900 |
| HPW | H. P. White Laboratory, Inc.<br>www.hpwhite.com | (410) 838-6550 |
| IAPSC | International Association of Professional Security Consultants<br>www.iapsc.org | (415) 536-0288 |
| IAS | International Approval Services<br>(See CSA) | |
| ICBO | International Conference of Building Officials<br>(See ICC) | |
| ICC | International Code Council<br>www.iccsafe.org | (888) 422-7233<br>(202) 370-1800 |
| ICEA | Insulated Cable Engineers Association, Inc.<br>www.icea.net | (770) 830-0369 |
| ICPA | International Cast Polymer Alliance<br>www.icpa-hq.org | (703) 525-0511 |
| ICRI | International Concrete Repair Institute, Inc.<br>www.icri.org | (847) 827-0830 |
| IEC | International Electrotechnical Commission<br>www.iec.ch | 41 22 919 02 11 |
| IEEE | Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (The)<br>www.ieee.org | (212) 419-7900 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| IES | Illuminating Engineering Society<br>(Formerly: Illuminating Engineering Society of North America)<br>www.ies.org | (212) 248-5000 |
| IESNA | Illuminating Engineering Society of North America<br>(See IES) | |
| IEST | Institute of Environmental Sciences and Technology<br>www.iest.org | (847) 981-0100 |
| IGMA | Insulating Glass Manufacturers Alliance<br>www.igmaonline.org | (613) 233-1510 |
| IGSHPA | International Ground Source Heat Pump Association<br>www.igshpa.okstate.edu | (405) 744-5175 |
| Intertek | Intertek Group<br>(Formerly: ETL SEMCO; Intertek Testing Service NA)<br>www.intertek.com | (800) 967-5352 |
| ISA | International Society of Automation (The)<br>(Formerly: Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society)<br>www.isa.org | (919) 549-8411 |
| ISAS | Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society (The)<br>(See ISA) | |
| ISFA | International Surface Fabricators Association<br>(Formerly: International Solid Surface Fabricators Association)<br>www.isfanow.org | (877) 464-7732<br>(801) 341-7360 |
| ISO | International Organization for Standardization<br>www.iso.org | 41 22 749 01 11 |
| ISSFA | International Solid Surface Fabricators Association<br>(See ISFA) | |
| ITU | International Telecommunication Union<br>www.itu.int/home | 41 22 730 51 11 |
| KCMA | Kitchen Cabinet Manufacturers Association<br>www.kcma.org | (703) 264-1690 |
| LMA | Laminating Materials Association<br>(See CPA) | |
| LPI | Lightning Protection Institute<br>www.lightning.org | (800) 488-6864 |
| MBMA | Metal Building Manufacturers Association<br>www.mbma.com | (216) 241-7333 |
| MCA | Metal Construction Association<br>www.metalconstruction.org | (847) 375-4718 |
| MFMA | Maple Flooring Manufacturers Association, Inc.<br>www.maplefloor.org | (888) 480-9138 |
| MFMA | Metal Framing Manufacturers Association, Inc.<br>www.metalframingmfg.org | (312) 644-6610 |
| MHIA | Material Handling Industry of America<br>www.mhia.org | (800) 345-1815<br>(704) 676-1190 |
| MIA | Marble Institute of America<br>www.marble-institute.com | (440) 250-9222 |
| MMPA | Moulding & Millwork Producers Association<br>(Formerly: Wood Moulding & Millwork Producers Association)<br>www.wmmpa.com | (800) 550-7889<br>(530) 661-9591 |
| MPI | Master Painters Institute<br>www.paintinfo.com | (888) 674-8937<br>(604) 298-7578 |
| MSS | Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.<br>www.mss-hq.org | (703) 281-6613 |
| NAAMM | National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers | (630) 942-6591 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | www.naamm.org | |
| NACE | NACE International | (800) 797-6223 |
| | (National Association of Corrosion Engineers International) | (281) 228-6200 |
| | www.nace.org | |
| NADCA | National Air Duct Cleaners Association | (202) 737-2926 |
| | www.nadca.com | |
| NAIMA | North American Insulation Manufacturers Association | (703) 684-0084 |
| | www.naima.org | |
| NBGQA | National Building Granite Quarries Association, Inc. | (800) 557-2848 |
| | www.nbgqa.com | |
| NCAA | National Collegiate Athletic Association (The) | (317) 917-6222 |
| | www.ncaa.org | |
| NCMA | National Concrete Masonry Association | (703) 713-1900 |
| | www.ncma.org | |
| NEBB | National Environmental Balancing Bureau | (301) 977-3698 |
| | www.nebb.org | |
| NECA | National Electrical Contractors Association | (301) 657-3110 |
| | www.necanet.org | |
| NeLMA | Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association | (207) 829-6901 |
| | www.nelma.org | |
| NEMA | National Electrical Manufacturers Association | (703) 841-3200 |
| | www.nema.org | |
| NETA | InterNational Electrical Testing Association | (888) 300-6382 |
| | www.netaworld.org | (269) 488-6382 |
| NFHS | National Federation of State High School Associations | (317) 972-6900 |
| | www.nfhs.org | |
| NFPA | NFPA | (800) 344-3555 |
| | (National Fire Protection Association) | (617) 770-3000 |
| | www.nfpa.org | |
| NFRC | National Fenestration Rating Council | (301) 589-1776 |
| | www.nfrc.org | |
| NHLA | National Hardwood Lumber Association | (800) 933-0318 |
| | www.nhla.com | (901) 377-1818 |
| NLGA | National Lumber Grades Authority | (604) 524-2393 |
| | www.nlga.org | |
| NOFMA | National Oak Flooring Manufacturers Association | |
| | (See NWFA) | |
| NOMMA | National Ornamental & Miscellaneous Metals Association | (888) 516-8585 |
| | www.nomma.org | |
| NRCA | National Roofing Contractors Association | (800) 323-9545 |
| | www.nrca.net | (847) 299-9070 |
| NRMCA | National Ready Mixed Concrete Association | (888) 846-7622 |
| | www.nrmca.org | (301) 587-1400 |
| NSF | NSF International | (800) 673-6275 |
| | (National Sanitation Foundation International) | (734) 769-8010 |
| | www.nsf.org | |
| NSPE | National Society of Professional Engineers | (703) 684-2800 |
| | www.nspe.org | |
| NSSGA | National Stone, Sand & Gravel Association | (800) 342-1415 |
| | www.nssga.org | (703) 525-8788 |
| NTMA | National Terrazzo & Mosaic Association, Inc. (The) | (800) 323-9736 |
| | www.ntma.com | |
| NWFA | National Wood Flooring Association | (800) 422-4556 |
| | www.nwfa.org | (636) 519-9663 |
| PCI | Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute | (312) 786-0300 |
| | www.pci.org | |
| PDI | Plumbing & Drainage Institute | (800) 589-8956 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | www.pdionline.org | (978) 557-0720 |
| PLASA | PLASA<br>(Formerly: ESTA - Entertainment Services and Technology Association)<br>www.plasa.org | (212) 244-1505 |
| RCSC | Research Council on Structural Connections<br>www.boltcouncil.org | |
| RFCI | Resilient Floor Covering Institute<br>www.rfci.com | (706) 882-3833 |
| RIS | Redwood Inspection Service<br>www.redwoodinspection.com | (925) 935-1499 |
| SAE | SAE International<br>(Society of Automotive Engineers)<br>www.sae.org | (877) 606-7323<br>(724) 776-4841 |
| SBCCI | Southern Building Code Congress International, Inc.<br>(See ICC) | |
| SCTE | Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers<br>www.scte.org | (800) 542-5040<br>(610) 363-6888 |
| SDI | Steel Deck Institute<br>www.sdi.org | (847) 458-4647 |
| SDI | Steel Door Institute<br>www.steeldoor.org | (440) 899-0010 |
| SEFA | Scientific Equipment and Furniture Association<br>www.sefalabs.com | (877) 294-5424<br>(516) 294-5424 |
| SEI/ASCE | Structural Engineering Institute/American Society of Civil Engineers<br>(See ASCE) | |
| SIA | Security Industry Association<br>www.siaonline.org | (866) 817-8888<br>(703) 683-2075 |
| SJI | Steel Joist Institute<br>www.steeljoist.org | (843) 293-1995 |
| SMA | Screen Manufacturers Association<br>www.smainfo.org | (773) 636-0672 |
| SMACNA | Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association<br>www.smacna.org | (703) 803-2980 |
| SMPTE | Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers<br>www.smpte.org | (914) 761-1100 |
| SPFA | Spray Polyurethane Foam Alliance<br>www.sprayfoam.org | (800) 523-6154 |
| SPIB | Southern Pine Inspection Bureau<br>www.spib.org | (850) 434-2611 |
| SPRI | Single Ply Roofing Industry<br>www.spri.org | (781) 647-7026 |
| SRCC | Solar Rating and Certification Corporation<br>www.solar-rating.org | (321) 638-1537 |
| SSINA | Specialty Steel Industry of North America<br>www.ssina.com | (800) 982-0355<br>(202) 342-8630 |
| SSPC | SSPC: The Society for Protective Coatings<br>www.sspc.org | (877) 281-7772<br>(412) 281-2331 |
| STI | Steel Tank Institute<br>www.steeltank.com | (847) 438-8265 |
| SWI | Steel Window Institute<br>www.steelwindows.com | (216) 241-7333 |
| SWPA | Submersible Wastewater Pump Association<br>www.swpa.org | (847) 681-1868 |
| TCA | Tilt-Up Concrete Association<br>www.tilt-up.org | (319) 895-6911 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| TCA | Tile Council of America (See TCNA) | |
| TCNA | Tile Council of North America, Inc.<br>(Formerly: Tile Council of America)<br>www.tileusa.com | (864) 646-8453 |
| TEMA | Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association, Inc.<br>www.tema.org | (914) 332-0040 |
| TIA | Telecommunications Industry Association<br>(Formerly: TIA/EIA - Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance)<br>www.tiaonline.org | (703) 907-7700 |
| TIA/EIA | Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance<br>(See TIA) | |
| TMS | The Masonry Society<br>www.masonrysociety.org | (303) 939-9700 |
| TPI | Truss Plate Institute<br>www.tpinst.org | (703) 683-1010 |
| TPI | Turfgrass Producers International<br>www.turfgrasssod.org | (800) 405-8873<br>(847) 649-5555 |
| TRI | Tile Roofing Institute<br>www.tileroofing.org | (312) 670-4177 |
| UBC | Uniform Building Code<br>(See ICC) | |
| UL | Underwriters Laboratories Inc.<br>www.ul.com | (877) 854-3577 |
| UNI | Uni-Bell PVC Pipe Association<br>www.uni-bell.org | (972) 243-3902 |
| USAV | USA Volleyball<br>www.usavolleyball.org | (888) 786-5539<br>(719) 228-6800 |
| USGBC | U.S. Green Building Council<br>www.usgbc.org | (800) 795-1747 |
| USITT | United States Institute for Theatre Technology, Inc.<br>www.usitt.org | (800) 938-7488<br>(315) 463-6463 |
| WASTEC | Waste Equipment Technology Association<br>www.wastec.org | (800) 424-2869<br>(202) 244-4700 |
| WCLIB | West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau<br>www.wclib.org | (800) 283-1486<br>(503) 639-0651 |
| WCMA | Window Covering Manufacturers Association<br>www.wcmanet.org | (212) 297-2122 |
| WDMA | Window & Door Manufacturers Association<br>www.wdma.com | (800) 223-2301<br>(312) 321-6802 |
| WI | Woodwork Institute<br>(Formerly: WIC - Woodwork Institute of California)<br>www.wicnet.org | (916) 372-9943 |
| WMMPA | Wood Moulding & Millwork Producers Association<br>(See MMPA) | |
| WSRCA | Western States Roofing Contractors Association<br>www.wsrca.com | (800) 725-0333<br>(650) 938-5441 |
| WWPA | Western Wood Products Association<br>www.wwpa.org | (503) 224-3930 |

B. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Names, telephone numbers, and Web sites are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| DIN | Deutsches Institut für Normung e.V. | 49 30 2601-0 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | www.din.de | |
| IAPMO | International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials<br>www.iapmo.org | (909) 472-4100 |
| ICC | International Code Council<br>www.iccsafe.org | (888) 422-7233 |
| ICC-ES | ICC Evaluation Service, LLC<br>www.icc-es.org | (800) 423-6587<br>(562) 699-0543 |

C. Federal Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Names, telephone numbers, and Web sites are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| COE | Army Corps of Engineers<br>www.usace.army.mil | (202) 761-0011 |
| CPSC | Consumer Product Safety Commission<br>www.cpsc.gov | (800) 638-2772<br>(301) 504-7923 |
| DOC | Department of Commerce<br>National Institute of Standards and Technology<br>www.nist.gov | (301) 975-4040 |
| DOD | Department of Defense<br>http://dodssp.daps.dla.mil | (215) 697-2664 |
| DOE | Department of Energy<br>www.energy.gov | (202) 586-9220 |
| EPA | Environmental Protection Agency<br>www.epa.gov | (202) 272-0167 |
| FAA | Federal Aviation Administration<br>www.faa.gov | (866) 835-5322 |
| FG | Federal Government Publications<br>www.gpo.gov | (202) 512-1800 |
| GSA | General Services Administration<br>www.gsa.gov | (800) 488-3111<br>(202) 619-8925 |
| HUD | Department of Housing and Urban Development<br>www.hud.gov | (202) 708-1112 |
| LBL | Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory<br>Environmental Energy Technologies Division<br>http://eetd.lbl.gov | (510) 486-4000 |
| OSHA | Occupational Safety & Health Administration<br>www.osha.gov | (800) 321-6742 |
| TRB | Transportation Research Board<br>National Cooperative Highway Research Program<br>www.trb.org | (202) 334-2934 |
| USDA | Department of Agriculture<br>Rural Utilities Service<br>www.usda.gov | (202) 720-2791 |
| USDJ | Department of Justice<br>Office of Justice Programs<br>National Institute of Justice<br>www.ojp.usdoj.gov | (202) 307-0703 |
| USP | U.S. Pharmacopeia<br>www.usp.org | (800) 227-8772<br>(301) 881-0666 |
| USPS | United States Postal Service<br>www.usps.com | (202) 268-2000 |

D. Standards and Regulations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the standards and

regulations in the following list. Names, telephone numbers, and Web sites are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ABA / | Architectural Barriers Act | (800) 872-2253 |
| ADA / | Americans with Disabilities Act | |
| ADAAG | Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines<br>*Administered by the* United States Access Board<br>http://www.access-board.gov/ | |
| CFR | Code of Federal Regulations | (866) 512-1800 |
| | Available from Government Printing Office<br>www.gpo.gov/fdsys | (202) 512-1800 |
| DOD | Department of Defense<br>Military Specifications and Standards<br>Available from Department of Defense Single Stock Point<br>http://dodssp.daps.dla.mil | (215) 697-2664 |
| FED-STD | Federal Standard<br>(See FS) | |
| FS | Federal Specification<br>Available from Department of Defense Single Stock Point<br>http://dodssp.daps.dla.mil<br>Available from Defense Standardization Program<br>www.dsp.dla.mil | (215) 697-2664 |
| | Available from General Services Administration<br>www.gsa.gov | (800) 488-3111<br>(202) 619-8925 |
| | Available from National Institute of Building Sciences/Whole Building Design Guide<br>www.wbdg.org/ccb | (202) 289-7800 |
| MILSPEC | Military Specification and Standards<br>(See DOD) | |
| TAS | Texas Accessibility Standards<br>*Administered by the* Texas Department of Licensing and Registration<br>http://www.tdlr.texas.gov/ab/ab.htm | (512) 539 5669 |
| UFAS | Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards<br>*Administered by the* United States Access Board<br>http://www.access-board.gov/guidelines-and-standards/buildings-and-sites/about-the-aba-standards/ufas | (800) 872-2253 |
| USAB | United States Access Board<br>www.access-board.gov | (800) 872-2253<br>(202) 272-0080 |
| USATBCB | U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board<br>(See USAB) | |

E. State Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Names, telephone numbers, and Web sites are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| CBHF | State of California<br>Department of Consumer Affairs<br>Bureau of Electronic Appliance and Repair, Home Furnishings and Thermal Insulation<br>www.bearhfti.ca.gov | (800) 952-5210<br>(916) 574-2041 |
| CCR | California Code of Regulations<br>Office of Administrative Law<br>California Title 24 Energy Code<br>www.calregs.com | (916) 323-6225 |
| CDHS | California Department of Health Care Services | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | (Formerly: California Department of Health Services)<br>(See CCR) | |
| CDPH | California Department of Public Health<br>Indoor Air Quality Program<br>www.cal-iaq.org | |
| CPUC | California Public Utilities Commission<br>www.cpuc.ca.gov | (800) 848-5580<br>(415) 703-2782 |
| SCAQMD | South Coast Air Quality Management District<br>www.aqmd.gov | (909) 396-2000 |
| TCEQ | Texas Commission on Environmental Quality<br>http://www.tceq.state.tx.us/ | (512) 239-1000 |
| TDLR | Texas Department of Licensing and Registration<br>http://www.tdlr.texas.gov/index.htm | (800) 803-9202 |
| TFS | Texas Forest Service<br>Forest Resource Development and Sustainable Forestry<br>http://txforestservice.tamu.edu | (979) 458-6606 |
| TxDOT | Texas Department of Transportation<br>www.txdot.gov | (800) 558-9368 |

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

END OF SECTION 01 42 00

# SECTION 01 45 19 – WEATHERIZATION SYSTEM QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. This section includes administrative and procedural requirements for accomplishing an airtight building enclosure that controls infiltration and exfiltration of air.
   1. The airtight components of the building enclosure and the joints, junctures and transitions between materials, products, and assemblies forming the air-tightness of the building enclosure are called "the air barrier system". Services of the Contractor include coordination between the trades, the proper scheduling and sequencing of the work, preconstruction meetings, reviews on construction prior to installation of air barrier systems, reviews of installed conditions prior to enclosing building weatherization systems, and related actions, including reports performed by Contractor or by independent agencies.
   2. The Contractor shall ensure that the intent of constructing the building enclosure with a continuous air barrier system to control air leakage into, or out of, the conditioned and tempered spaces is achieved. The air barrier system shall have the following characteristics:
      a. It must be continuous, with all joints sealed.
      b. It must be structurally supported to withstand positive and negative air pressures applied to the building enclosure.
      c. Continuity shall be made between:
         1) Foundation and walls.
         2) Walls and windows or doors.
         3) Different wall systems.
         4) Wall and roof / wall and underside of deck.
         5) Wall and roof or ceiling / floor assemblies between conditioned and unconditioned spaces, and between conditioned and tempered spaces.
         6) Wall, floor and roof across construction joints, control joints, and expansion joints.
         7) Walls, floors and roof to structural, utility, pipe, duct, and other mechanical / electrical penetrations through construction assemblies.
         8) Other joints and penetrations affecting air tightness of the construction assembly.
   3. Sealing of Air Barrier Penetrations: All penetrations of the air barrier and paths of air infiltration / exfiltration shall be sealed.

B. Requirements of this section relate to the coordination between subcontractors required to provide an airtight building enclosure, and customized fabrication and installation procedures, not production of standard products.
   1. Contractor shall provide continuity of all air barrier, weatherization materials and building envelope enclosure assemblies including all joints and transition materials as

required to provide a whole building air barrier system meeting the requirements of this specification.

2. Specific quality-control requirements for individual construction activities and products are specified in the sections of the specifications. Requirements in those sections may also cover production of standard products, and requirements for joints between certain air barrier systems and construction assemblies. It is the Contractor's responsibility to ensure that each subcontractor is adequately and satisfactorily performing the quality assurance documentation, tests and procedures required by each section, and by this specification.
3. The responsibility of the Contractor to provide an airtight building enclosure is not limited by any quality-control services provided by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction, and are not limited by the provisions of this specification.
4. In the event of conflicts between the requirements of this Section and other specification Sections, the most stringent requirement shall prevail.

C. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 1 Section Project Management and Coordination, for requirements for meetings.
2. Division 3 Section Concrete
3. Division 5 Section Light Gauge Metal Framing
4. Division 6 Section Sheathing
5. Division 7 Roofing Section(s)
6. Division 7 "Air Barrier", "Weather Barrier", "Vapor Barrier", "Dampproofing", and similar Sections forming part of the overall building weatherization system.
7. Division 7 Section Joint Sealants
8. Division 8 Section Windows
9. Division 8 Doors Section(s)
10. Division 8 Section Storefronts and Entrances
11. Other Division 7 and 8 Sections related to the building envelope.
12. Other Sections with work that interfaces with the building weatherization system.

## 1.03 RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Contractor Responsibilities: Contractor shall provide coordination of the trades, and the sequence of construction to ensure continuity of the air barrier system joints, junctures and transitions between materials and assemblies of materials and products, from substructure to walls to roof. Provide quality assurance procedures, testing and verification as specified herein. Facilitate inspections, tests, and other quality-control services provided by the Owner, system Manufactures, and required by authorities having jurisdiction, including but not limited to those mentioned in this specification and as may be specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
1. Organize preconstruction meetings between the trades involved in the whole building's air barrier system to discuss where each trade begins and ends and the responsibility and sequence of installation of all the air-tight joints, junctures, and transitions between materials, products and assemblies of products specified in the different sections, to be installed by the different trades.
2. Designate a single point of contact for the project for inquiries regarding the total Building Weatherization System and the requirements of this specification, who will respond to inquiries from the Architect, Owner, Owner's project manager or building envelope consultant (if applicable), Manufacturer's field representatives, and weatherization system installers. Provide contact information to these parties.

B. Associated Services: Cooperate with agencies performing required inspections, tests, and similar services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify the agency

sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Auxiliary services required include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Provide access to the Work.
2. Furnish incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate inspections and tests.
3. Provide security and protection of samples and test equipment at the Project Site.

C. Coordination: Coordinate the sequence of activities to accommodate required services with a minimum of delay. Coordinate activities to avoid the necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate inspections and tests.

1. The Contractor is responsible for scheduling times for inspections, tests, taking samples, and similar activities.

## 1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Materials: materials used for the air barrier system in the opaque envelope shall have an air permeance not to exceed 0.004 cfm/ft2 under a pressure differential of 0.3 in. water (1.57psf) (0.02 L/s.m2 @ 75 Pa) when tested in accordance with ASTM E 2178.

B. Assemblies of materials and components: shall have an air permeance not to exceed 0.04 cfm/ft2 under a pressure differential of 0.3 in. water (1.57psf) (0.2 L/s.m2 @ 75 Pa) when tested in accordance with ASTM E 2357.

C. The entire building: The air leakage of the entire building shall not exceed 0.4 cfm/ft2 under a pressure differential of 0.3 in. water (1.57psf) (2.0 L/s.m2 @ 75 Pa) when tested according to ASTM E779, ASTM E1827, or ABAA's "Standard Method for Building Enclosure Airtightness Compliance Testing".

D. Other requirements as may be listed in individual air barrier or weatherization system specification Section(s).

## 1.05 DEFINITIONS

A. Conditioned Spaces: Spaces provided with both heating and cooling.

1. Tempered Spaces: Spaces provided with heating only, or limited heating such as may be required to prevent freezing.

B. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

C. [Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and ensure that proposed construction complies with requirements.]

D. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that completed construction complies with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect.

## 1.06 SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Contractor's field quality assurance reviews, if assigned by Contractor to a separate entity.

1. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to the governing authority, when the authority so directs.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not used.)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

A. Upon completion of inspection, testing, sample taking and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes. Comply with Contract Document requirements for Division 1 Section "Cutting and Patching."

B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities and protect repaired construction.

C. Repair and protection is Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for inspection, testing, or similar services.

## 3.02 CONTRACTOR'S FIELD QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. General Coordination for Complete Building Weatherization System: Prior to the Pre-Construction Conference for building weatherization systems, General Contractor and Installer(s) shall verify the following has been confirmed and coordinated for each air barrier / weatherization system used on the project:
   1. Air Barrier / Weatherization System Manufacturer(s) accept chemical compatibility of adjacent systems and materials, according to the transition details.
      a. Including transitions to underlayment or roofing materials at roofs and parapets, where applicable.
   2. Air Barrier / Weatherization System Manufacturers accept transition details to be used between adjacent air barrier or weatherization systems.
      a. Including transitions to underlayment or roofing materials at roofs and parapets, where applicable.
   3. Methods proposed for sealing air barrier / weatherization system to adjacent construction (walls to foundations, walls to roof deck or eaves, structural and mechanical penetrations of the envelope, etc.)
   4. Where Manufacturer's technical representatives' field review is called for in other Specifications, confirm all inspection requirements and integrate with project schedule to ensure inspections will occur when required, and without delay to the project schedule.

B. Contractor's Field Quality Assurance: General Contractor is responsible to perform the following minimum quality assurance review, and upon request of Architect shall provide a written report of findings of each review. The following list of minimum quality assurance review points is not intended to limit Contractor's review, and Contractor shall perform additional quality assurance review as Contractor deems necessary to provide the required performance results.
   1. General Contractor may, at their option, procure the services of and assign the following quality assurance responsibilities to another party qualified to make these reviews, provided that the responsible party is a single entity responsible for the whole building weatherization system(s) review, and is not the air barrier / weatherization system(s) Installer(s) nor affiliated with the air barrier system(s) Installer(s). Examples of qualified parties include, but are not necessarily limited to:
      a. Air Barrier Manufacturer's technical or field representatives.
      b. Envelope specialist or envelope consulting firm.
      c. Should Owner retain the services of a testing and inspection agency to perform these or similar inspection, Contractor is still required to independently review each of these items in the field unless specifically agreed otherwise between Owner and Contractor:
   2. Qualitative Review Prior to and During Air Barrier / Weatherization System Installation:
      a. Site conditions for application temperature, dryness and preparation of substrates.
      b. Masonry and concrete surfaces are smooth, clean and free of cavities, protrusions and mortar droppings.

c. Surfaces are properly primed (where required by Manufacturer or by specifications).
d. Transitions between adjacent air barrier or weatherization systems are properly installed, and lap at least 2".
e. Flashing membranes and fluid applied flashing membranes used where required.
f. Flashing or self healing membrane, compliant with Manufacturer's recommendations and specifications, is installed at fastener penetrations through substrates.
g. Sealants used where required.
h. No gaps and openings in substrates exceeding Manufacturer's recommended size that membranes or sealants used can bridge.
i. Corrections in substrates or other acceptable structural support of the air barrier system to withstand design air pressures where gaps exceed recommended limits.
j. System is sealed to perimeter construction and adjacent air barrier or weatherization system(s) to provide whole-building weatherization system.

3. Qualitative Review Prior to Enclosing Building Weatherization System(s): General Contractor is responsible to review and confirm the following, within one day prior to enclosing any area of the air barrier / weatherization system with exterior cladding materials:
   a. General condition of air barrier or weatherization system(s) are in good, have not been damaged since installation, and are ready to receive subsequent work.
   b. Air barrier / weatherization system(s) are continuous throughout the building enclosure with no holes, gaps, voids, or discontinuities.
   c. Maximum length of exposure time of materials to ultra-violet deterioration has not been exceeded.
   d. Mastic / sealants applied at applicable penetrations and cut edges. Sealants do not have gaps or voids, and have not delaminated from substrates.
   e. Transitions between different air barrier or weatherization system(s) are installed.
   f. Joints between air barrier system(s) and adjacent construction is continuous and sealed at the following locations:
      1) Foundation and walls.
      2) Walls and windows or doors.
      3) Different wall systems.
      4) Wall and roof / wall and underside of deck.
      5) Wall and roof or ceiling / floor assemblies between conditioned and unconditioned spaces, and between conditioned and tempered spaces.
      6) Wall, floor and roof across construction joints, control joints, and expansion joints.
      7) Walls, floors and roof to structural, utility, pipe, duct, and other mechanical / electrical penetrations through construction assemblies.
      8) Other joints and penetrations affecting air tightness of the construction assembly.
   g. Laps in material are 2"minimum, shingled in the correct direction (or mastic applied on exposed edges), with no fish-mouths.
   h. Roller / appropriate pressure has been used at flashing tapes and pressure sensitive self-adhering materials to provide proper adhesion.
   i. All penetrations through air barrier system and weatherization envelope are sealed.

C. Provide copies of reports indicating compliance or deficiencies to the air barrier system(s) Installer(s) and Architect, and if applicable also to Owner's project manager or envelope consultant.
   1. Include representative photographs of air barrier / weatherization system condition and of typical and special details, and photographs of any noncompliant conditions.

D. Do not proceed with enclosing air barrier / weatherization systems until repairs are made.

## 3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner reserves the right to hire a testing and inspection agency to provide independent inspection services, and to test air barrier system(s) after installation to determine compliance with Performance Requirements. Inspections may or may not include the same quality assurance reviews required of the Contractor by this specification. Contractor will be required to make corrections due to faulty installation, and to pay for testing that fails due to faulty installation of the whole building air barrier / weatherization system(s). Testing by Owner may include, but is not limited to, the following testing:
   1. Whole building, floors, or suites air leakage by one of the following methods, or by other method as recommended by testing agency:
      a. ASTM E 283, Determining rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors ASTM E779, Determining Airtightness of Buildings Air Leakage Rate by Single Zone Air Fan Pressurization.
      b. ASTM E1827, Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate Using an Orifice Blower Door.
      c. ABAA "Standard Method for Building Envelope Enclosure Airtightness Compliance Testing".
   2. At Owner's option, air leak location testing may also be performed, by one of the following methods, or by other method as recommended by testing agency:
      a. ASTM E 1186 "Standard Practices for Air Leakage Site Detection in Building Envelopes and Air Retarder Systems."
      b. ASTM E741, Tracer gas testing.
      c. ASTM E330: Pressure test.

END OF SECTION 01 45 19

# SECTION 01 50 00 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes requirements for temporary facilities and controls, including temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.

B. Temporary utilities include, but are not limited to, the following:
   1. Sewers and drainage.
   2. Water service and distribution.
   3. Sanitary facilities, including toilets, wash facilities, and drinking-water facilities.
   4. Heating and cooling facilities.
   5. Ventilation.
   6. Electric power service.
   7. Lighting.
   8. Telephone service.

C. Support facilities include, but are not limited to, the following:
   1. Temporary roads and paving.
   2. Dewatering facilities and drains.
   3. Project identification and temporary signs.
   4. Waste disposal facilities.
   5. Field offices.
   6. Storage and fabrication sheds.
   7. Lifts and hoists.
   8. Temporary elevator usage.
   9. Temporary stairs.
   10. Construction aids and miscellaneous services and facilities.

D. Security and protection facilities include, but are not limited to, the following:
   1. Environmental protection.
   2. Stormwater control.
   3. Tree and plant protection.
   4. Pest control.
   5. Site enclosure fence.
   6. Security enclosure and lockup.
   7. Barricades, warning signs, and lights.
   8. Covered walkways.
   9. Temporary enclosures.
   10. Temporary partitions.
   11. Fire protection.

E. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 1 Section - Submittal Procedures for procedures for submitting copies of implementation and termination schedule and utility reports.
   2. Division 1 Section - Execution Requirements for progress cleaning requirements.
   3. Divisions 2 through 48 Sections for temporary heat, ventilation, and humidity requirements for products in those Sections.

## 1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Permanent Enclosure: As determined by Architect, permanent or temporary roofing is complete, insulated, and weathertight; exterior walls are insulated and weathertight; and all openings are closed with permanent construction or substantial temporary closures.

## 1.04 USE CHARGES

A. General: Cost or use charges for temporary facilities are not chargeable to Owner or Architect and shall be included in the Contract Sum. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, the following:
   1. Owner's maintenance personnel.
   2. Occupants of Project.
   3. Architect.
   4. Testing agencies.
   5. Personnel of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Water and Sewer Service from Existing System: Owner's existing water & sewer systems are available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations

C. Electric Power Service: Electric power from Owner's existing system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.

## 1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Temporary Utility Reports: Submit reports of tests, inspections, meter readings, and similar procedures performed on temporary utilities.

## 1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Standards: Comply with ANSI A10.6, NECA's "Temporary Electrical Facilities," and NFPA 241.
   1. Trade Jurisdictions: Assigned responsibilities for installation and operation of temporary utilities are not intended to interfere with trade regulations and union jurisdictions.
   2. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.

B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

C. Accessible Temporary Egress: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

## 1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Temporary Utilities: At earliest feasible time, when acceptable to Owner, change over from use of temporary service to use of permanent service.
   1. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Installer of each permanent service shall assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

B. Conditions of Use: The following conditions apply to use of temporary services and facilities by all parties engaged in the Work:
   1. Keep temporary services and facilities clean and neat.
   2. Relocate temporary services and facilities as required by progress of the Work.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MATERIALS

A. General: Provide new materials. Undamaged, previously used materials in serviceable condition may be used if approved by Architect. Provide materials suitable for use intended.

B. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch- thick, galvanized steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- OD top rails. Member sizes and spacing shall be sized to meet wind load requirements for the project location.

C. Wood Enclosure Fence: Plywood, 6 feet high, framed with four 2-by-4-inch rails, with preservative-treated wood posts spaced not more than 8 feet apart.

D. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch 9-gage, galvanized steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- OD top and bottom rails. Provide concrete or galvanized steel bases for supporting posts.

E. Lumber and Plywood: Comply with requirements in Division 6 Section - Carpentry.

F. Gypsum Board: Minimum 1/2 inch thick by 48 inches wide by maximum available lengths; regular-type panels with tapered edges. Comply with ASTM C 36.

G. Insulation: Unfaced mineral-fiber blanket, manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indices of 25 and 50, respectively.

H. Paint: Comply with requirements in Division 9 Section - Painting.

I. Tarpaulins: Fire-resistive labeled with flame-spread rating of 15 or less.

J. Polyethylene Sheet: Reinforced, fire-resistive sheet, 10-mil minimum thickness, with flame-spread rating of 15 or less per ASTM E 84 and passing NFPA 701 Test Method 2.

K. Dust-Control Adhesive-Surface Walk-off Mats: Provide mats minimum 36 by 60 inches

L. Water: Potable.

### 2.02 EQUIPMENT

A. General: Provide equipment suitable for use intended.

B. Field Offices: Prefabricated Mobile units with lockable entrances, operable windows, and serviceable finishes; heated and air conditioned; on foundations adequate for normal loading.

C. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of construction personnel office activities to accommodate Project meetings specified in other Division 01 Sections. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
   1. Furniture required for Project-site documents including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
   2. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 10 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with no fewer than one receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and tack & marker boards.
   3. Drinking water and private toilet.
   4. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F.
   5. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc.

D. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations. Store combustible materials apart from building.

E. Fire Extinguishers: Hand carried, portable, UL rated. Provide class and extinguishing agent as indicated or a combination of extinguishers of NFPA-recommended classes for exposures.
   1. Comply with NFPA 10 and NFPA 241 for classification, extinguishing agent, and size required by location and class of fire exposure.

F. Self-Contained Toilet Units: Single-occupant units of chemical, aerated recirculation, or combustion type; vented; fully enclosed with a glass-fiber-reinforced polyester shell or similar nonabsorbent material.

G. Drinking-Water Fixtures: Containerized, tap-dispenser, bottled-water drinking-water units, including paper cup supply.
   1. Where power is accessible, provide electric water coolers to maintain dispensed water temperature at 45 to 55 deg F.

H. Heating Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent heating system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
   1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
   2. Heating Units: Listed and labeled, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use for type of fuel being consumed.
   3. Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of [8] at each return-air grille in system and remove at end of construction and clean HVAC system as required in Division 01 Section - Closeout Procedures.

I. Electrical Outlets: Properly configured, NEMA-polarized outlets to prevent insertion of 110- to 120-V plugs into higher-voltage outlets; equipped with ground-fault circuit interrupters, reset button, and pilot light.

J. Power Distribution System Circuits: Where permitted and overhead and exposed for surveillance, wiring circuits, not exceeding 125-V ac, 20-A rating, and lighting circuits may be nonmetallic sheathed cable.

K. Storage Unit for Owner furnishings: Prefabricated Mobile units with lockable entrances. Units shall be delivered prior to start of construction for Owner to load furnishing from the area of construction. Units shall remain on site through construction and at the end of construction for Owner to unload furnishing when the completed interior renovation portion of the project is turned over to the Owner for their use.
   1. Five (5) 20 foot storage units shall be provided per location.
      a. one storage unit shall be provided with A/C and power connected by the contractor.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required.

B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Maintain and modify as required. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

### 3.02 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

A. General: Engage appropriate local utility company to install temporary service or connect to existing service. Where utility company provides only part of the service, provide the remainder with matching, compatible materials and equipment. Comply with utility company recommendations.
   1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
   2. Provide adequate capacity at each stage of construction. Before temporary utility is available, provide trucked-in services.
   3. Obtain easements to bring temporary utilities to Project site where Owner's easements cannot be used for that purpose.

**B.** Water Service: **Use of Owner's existing water service facilities will be permitted, as long as facilities are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.**
   1. Provide rubber hoses as necessary to serve Project site.
   2. Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.
   3. As soon as water is required at each level, extend service to form a temporary water- and fire-protection standpipe. Provide distribution piping. Space outlets so water can be reached with a 100-foot (30-m) hose. Provide one hose at each outlet.
   4. Where installations below an outlet might be damaged by spillage or leakage, provide a drip pan of suitable size to minimize water damage. Drain accumulated water promptly from pans.
   5. Provide pumps to supply a minimum of 30-psi static pressure at highest point. Equip pumps with surge and storage tanks and automatic controls to supply water uniformly at reasonable pressures.

C. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking-water fixtures. Comply with regulations and health codes for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities. Existing sanitary facilities and new sanitary facilities shall not be used by contractor personnel.
   1. Disposable Supplies: Provide toilet tissue, paper towels, paper cups, and similar disposable materials for each facility. Maintain adequate supply. Provide covered waste containers for disposal of used material.
   2. Toilets: Install self-contained toilet units. Shield toilets to ensure privacy. Provide separate facilities for male and female personnel.
   3. Toilets: Install toilet facilities connected to local water and sewer lines. Provide lavatories, mirrors, urinals, and water closets. Provide only potable-water connections. Provide individual compartments for water closets. Provide suitable enclosure with nonabsorbent sanitary finish materials and adequate heat, ventilation, and lighting.
   4. Toilets: Use of Owner's existing toilet facilities will be permitted, as long as facilities are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.
   5. Wash Facilities: Install wash facilities supplied with potable water at convenient locations for personnel who handle materials that require wash up. Dispose of drainage properly. Supply cleaning compounds appropriate for each type of material handled.
      a. Provide safety showers, eyewash fountains, and similar facilities for convenience, safety, and sanitation of personnel.
   6. Drinking-Water Facilities: Provide bottled-water, drinking-water units.
      a. Where power is accessible, provide electric water coolers to maintain dispensed water temperature at 45 to 55 deg F.

D. Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction

from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment from that specified that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.

1. Maintain a minimum temperature of 50 deg F in permanently enclosed portions of building for normal construction activities, and 65 deg F for finishing activities and areas where finished Work has been installed.

E. Ventilation and Humidity Control: Provide temporary ventilation required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of high humidity. Select equipment from that specified that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce ambient condition required and minimize energy consumption. Provide dehumidification systems when required to reduce substrate moisture levels to level required to allow installation or application of finishes.

F. Electric Power Service: Use of Owner's existing electric power service will be permitted, as long as equipment is maintained in a condition acceptable to Owner.

G. Electric Distribution: Provide temporary electric power service as required for construction, including receptacle outlets adequate for connection of power tools and equipment.
   1. Provide waterproof connectors to connect separate lengths of electrical power cords if single lengths will not reach areas where construction activities are in progress. Do not exceed safe length-voltage ratio.
   2. Provide warning signs at power outlets other than 110 to 120 V.
   3. Provide metal conduit, tubing, or metallic cable for wiring exposed to possible damage. Provide rigid steel conduits for wiring exposed on grades, floors, decks, or other traffic areas.
   4. Provide metal conduit enclosures or boxes for wiring devices.
   5. Provide 4-gang outlets, spaced so 100-foot extension cord can reach each area for power hand tools and task lighting. Provide a separate 125-V ac, 20-A circuit for each outlet.

H. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations and traffic conditions.
   1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
   2. Provide one 100-W incandescent lamp per 500 sq. ft., uniformly distributed, for general lighting, or equivalent illumination.
   3. Provide one 100-W incandescent lamp every 50 feet in traffic areas.
   4. Provide one 100-W incandescent lamp per story in stairways and ladder runs, located to illuminate each landing and flight.
   5. Install exterior-yard site lighting that will provide adequate illumination for construction operations, traffic conditions, and signage visibility when the Work is being performed.
   6. Install lighting for Project identification sign.

I. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service throughout construction period for common-use facilities used by all personnel engaged in construction activities. Install separate telephone line for each field office and first-aid station.
   1. Provide additional telephone lines for the following:
      a. In field office with more than two occupants, install a telephone for each additional occupant or pair of occupants.
      b. Provide a dedicated telephone line for each facsimile machine and computer with Internet connection in the field office.
   2. At each telephone, post a list of important telephone numbers.
      a. Police and fire departments.
      b. Ambulance service.

c. Contractor's home office.
d. Architect's office.
e. Engineers' offices.
f. Owner's office.
g. Principal subcontractors' field and home offices.

3. Provide an answering machine, voice-mail service, or messaging service on superintendent's telephone.
4. Furnish superintendent with a portable cellular telephone for use in making and receiving telephone calls when away from field office.

J. Electronic Communication Service: Provide a desktop computer in the primary field office adequate for use by Contractor, Architect and Owner to access Project electronic documents and maintain electronic communications. Equip computer with not less than the following:
1. Processor: Intel Quad-Core, 4.0 GHz processing speed.
2. Memory: 4 gigabyte.
3. Disk Storage: 300 gigabyte hard-disk drive and combination DVD-RW/CD-RW drive.
4. Display: 22-inch LED monitor with 256-Mb dedicated video RAM.
5. Full-size keyboard and mouse.
6. Network Connectivity: 10/100BaseT Ethernet.
7. Operating System: Microsoft Windows 8.1 or higher.
8. Productivity Software:
a. Microsoft Office, including Word, Excel, and Outlook.
b. Adobe Reader 11.0 or higher.
c. WinZip 17.0 or higher.
9. Printer: "All-in-one" unit equipped with printer server, combining color printing, photocopying, scanning, or separate units for each of these functions.
10. Internet Service: Broadband modem, router and ISP, equipped with hardware firewall, providing minimum 25 Mbps upload and 25 Mbps download speeds at each computer.
11. Internet Security: Integrated software, providing software firewall, virus, spyware, phishing, and spam protection in a combined application.
12. Backup: External hard drive, minimum 80 gigabyte, with automated backup software providing daily backups.

K. Digital Camera: Provide a digital camera for superintendant to transmit photographs to Architect & Owner.

## 3.03 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with the following:
1. Locate field offices, storage sheds, sanitary facilities, and other temporary construction and support facilities for easy access.
2. Provide incombustible construction for offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet of building lines. Comply with NFPA 241.
3. Maintain support facilities until near Substantial Completion. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.

B. Traffic Controls: Provide temporary traffic controls at junction of site access with public roads. Include warning signs for public traffic and "STOP" signs for entrance onto public roads. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements in applicable sections for temporary drainage and dewatering facilities and operations not directly associated with construction activities included in individual Sections. Where feasible, use same facilities. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.

1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining property nor endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
2. Before connection and operation of permanent drainage piping system, provide temporary drainage where roofing or similar waterproof deck construction is completed.
3. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.

D. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Prepare Project identification and other signs in sizes indicated. Install signs where indicated to inform public and persons seeking entrance to Project. Do not permit installation of unauthorized signs.
   1. Engage an experienced sign painter to apply graphics for Project identification signs. Comply with details indicated.
   2. Prepare temporary signs to provide directional information to construction personnel and visitors.
   3. Construct signs of exterior-type Grade B-B high-density concrete-form overlay plywood in sizes and thicknesses indicated. Support on posts or framing of preservative-treated wood or steel.
   4. Paint sign panel and applied graphics with exterior-grade alkyd gloss enamel over exterior primer.
   5. Maintain and touchup signs so they are legible at all times.

E. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Containerize and clearly label hazardous, dangerous, or unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Comply with Division 1 Section - Execution Requirements for progress cleaning requirements. Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section - Construction Waste Management and Disposal.
   1. If required by authorities having jurisdiction, provide separate containers, clearly labeled, for each type of waste material to be deposited.
   2. Develop a waste management plan for Work performed on Project. Indicate types of waste materials Project will produce and estimate quantities of each type. Provide detailed information for on-site waste storage and separation of recyclable materials. Provide information on destination of each type of waste material and means to be used to dispose of all waste materials.

F. Janitorial Services: Provide janitorial services on a daily basis for temporary offices, first-aid stations, toilets, wash facilities, and similar areas.

G. Common-Use Field Office: Provide an insulated, weathertight, air-conditioned field office for use as a common facility by all personnel engaged in construction activities; of sufficient size to accommodate required office personnel and meetings of 10 persons at Project site. Keep office clean and orderly.
   1. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
      a. Desk and four chairs, four-drawer file cabinet, a plan table, a plan rack, and bookcase.
      b. Water cooler and private toilet complete with water closet, lavatory, and medicine cabinet with mirror.
      c. Provide a room of not less than 240 sq. ft. for Project meetings. Furnish room with conference table, 12 folding chairs, and 4-foot- square tack board.
   2. Provide an electric heater with thermostat capable of maintaining a uniform indoor temperature of 68 deg F. Provide an air-conditioning unit capable of maintaining an indoor temperature of 72 deg F.
   3. Provide fluorescent light fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc at desk height. Provide 110- to 120-V duplex outlets spaced at not more than 12-foot intervals, 1 per wall in each room.

H. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment involved, including temporary utility services. Sheds may be open shelters or fully enclosed spaces within building or elsewhere on-site.
   1. Construct framing, sheathing, and siding using fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood.
   2. Paint exposed lumber and plywood with exterior-grade acrylic-latex emulsion over exterior primer.

I. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities for hoisting materials and personnel. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.
   1. Existing Elevator Usage: Use of Owner's existing elevators will be not be permitted.

J. Temporary Stairs: Until permanent stairs are available, provide temporary stairs where ladders are not adequate. Cover finished, permanent stairs with protective covering of plywood or similar material so finishes will be undamaged at time of acceptance.

## 3.04 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

A. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction in ways and by methods that comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects. Avoid using tools and equipment that produce harmful noise. Restrict use of noisemaking tools and equipment to hours that will minimize complaints from persons or firms near Project site.

B. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Comply with requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent and requirements specified in Division 31 Section - Site Clearing.

C. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to undisturbed areas and to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion and sedimentation control drawings or requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
   1. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree- or plant- protection zones.
   2. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
   3. Clean, repair, and restore adjoining properties and roads affected by erosion and sedimentation from Project site during the course of Project.
   4. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

D. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.

E. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from construction damage. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.

F. Pest Control: Before deep foundation work has been completed, retain a local exterminator or pest-control company to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests. Engage this pest-control service to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Obtain extended warranty for Owner. Perform control operations lawfully, using environmentally safe materials.

G. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, install chain-link enclosure fence with lockable entrance gates. Locate where indicated, or enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations. Install in a manner that will prevent people, dogs, and other animals from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
   1. Set fence posts in concrete bases.
   2. Provide gates in sizes and at locations necessary to accommodate delivery vehicles and other construction operations.
   3. Option in subparagraph below is only for projects connected to existing construction.
   4. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel. Provide Owner with one set of keys.

H. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install substantial temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each day.

I. Temporary Egress: Maintain temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction.

J. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with standards and code requirements for erecting structurally adequate barricades. Paint with appropriate colors, graphics, and warning signs to inform personnel and public of possible hazard. Where appropriate and needed, provide lighting, including flashing red or amber lights.
   1. For safety barriers, sidewalk bridges, and similar uses, provide minimum 5/8-inch thick exterior plywood.

K. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
   1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is not complete, provide insulated temporary enclosures. Coordinate enclosure with ventilating and material drying or curing requirements to avoid dangerous conditions and effects.
   2. Vertical Openings: Close openings of 25 sq. ft.or less with plywood or similar materials.
   3. Horizontal Openings: Close openings in floor or roof decks and horizontal surfaces with load-bearing, wood-framed construction.
   4. Install tarpaulins securely using fire-retardant-treated wood framing and other materials.
   5. Where temporary wood or plywood enclosure exceeds 100 sq. ft. in area, use fire-retardant-treated material for framing and main sheathing.

L. Temporary Partitions: Erect and maintain dustproof partitions and temporary enclosures to limit dust and dirt migration and to separate areas from fumes and noise. Prevent from entering occupied areas.
   1. Construct dustproof partitions of not less than nominal 4-inch studs, 5/8-inch gypsum wallboard with joints taped on occupied side, and 1/2-inch fire-retardant plywood on construction side.
   2. Construct dustproof, floor-to-ceiling partitions of not less than nominal 4-inchstuds, 2 layers of 3-milpolyethylene sheets, inside and outside temporary enclosure. Cover floor with 2 layers of 3-mil polyethylene sheets, extending sheets 18 inchesup the side walls. Overlap and tape full length of joints. Cover floor with 3/4-inchfire-retardant plywood.
      a. Construct a vestibule and airlock at each entrance to temporary enclosure with not less than 48 inches between doors. Maintain water-dampened foot mats in vestibule.
   3. Insulate partitions to provide noise protection to occupied areas.
   4. Prior to commencing work, isolate the HVAC system in area where work is to be performed according to coordination drawings.
      a. Disconnect supply and return ductwork in work area from HVAC systems servicing occupied areas.

b. Maintain negative air pressure within work area using HEPA-equipped air-filtration units, starting with commencement of temporary partition construction, and continuing until removal of temporary partitions is complete.

5. Maintain dust partitions during the Work. Use vacuum collection attachments on dust-producing equipment. Isolate limited work within occupied areas using portable dust-containment devices.
6. Perform daily construction cleanup and final cleanup using approved, HEPA-filter-equipped vacuum equipment.
7. Seal joints and perimeter. Equip partitions with dustproof doors and security locks.
8. Protect air-handling equipment.
9. Weatherstrip openings.

M. Temporary Fire Protection: Until fire-protection needs are supplied by permanent facilities, install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241.

1. Provide fire extinguishers, installed on walls on mounting brackets, visible and accessible from space being served, with sign mounted above.
   a. Field Offices: Class A stored-pressure water-type extinguishers.
   b. Other Locations: Class ABC dry-chemical extinguishers or a combination of extinguishers of NFPA-recommended classes for exposures.
   c. Locate fire extinguishers where convenient and effective for their intended purpose; provide not less than one extinguisher on each floor at or near each usable stairwell.
2. Store combustible materials in containers in fire-safe locations.
3. Maintain unobstructed access to fire extinguishers, fire hydrants, temporary fire-protection facilities, stairways, and other access routes for firefighting. Provide temporary key boxes and knox padlocks for gates and secured areas throughout construction as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Prohibit smoking in construction areas.
5. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition.
6. Permanent Fire Protection: At earliest feasible date in each area of Project, complete installation of permanent fire-protection facility, including connected services, and place into operation and use. Instruct key personnel on use of facilities.
7. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and first-aid fire-protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.

## 3.05 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

A. Contractor's Moisture-Protection Plan: Avoid trapping water in finished work. Document visible signs of mold that may appear during construction.

B. Exposed Construction Phase: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:

1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
4. Remove standing water from decks.
5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.

C. Partially Enclosed Construction Phase: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:

1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
5. Do not install material that is wet.
6. Discard, replace, or clean stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
7. Perform work in a sequence that allows any wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in drywall or other interior finishes.

D. Controlled Construction Phase of Construction: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:
1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
2. Use permanent HVAC system to control humidity.
3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits:
   a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective.
   b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
   c. Remove materials that cannot be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.

## 3.06 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.

B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal. Protect from damage caused by freezing temperatures and similar elements.
1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
2. Prevent water-filled piping from freezing. Maintain markers for underground lines. Protect from damage during excavation operations.

C. Operate Project-identification-sign lighting daily from dusk until 12:00 midnight.

D. Temporary Facility Changeover: Except for using permanent fire protection as soon as available, do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.

E. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are the property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
2. Remove temporary paving not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent paving. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might

impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.

3. At Substantial Completion, clean and renovate permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements in Division 1 Section - Closeout Procedures.

END OF SECTION 01 50 00

# SECTION 01 60 00 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following administrative and procedural requirements: selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; product substitutions; and comparable products.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 1 Section - Allowances for products selected under an allowance.
   2. Division 1 Section - Alternates for products selected as an alternate.
   3. Division 1 Section - Substitutions for products selected as a substitute.
   4. Division 1 Section - References for applicable industry standards for products specified.
   5. Division 1 Section - Closeout Procedures for submitting warranties for contract closeout.
   6. Divisions 2 - 48 Sections for specific requirements for warranties on products and installations specified to be warranted.

### 1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Products: Items purchased for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
   1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation, shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature, that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
   2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility, except that products consisting of recycled-content materials are allowed, unless explicitly stated otherwise. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
   3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved through submittal process, or where indicated as a product substitution, to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.

B. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.

C. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: Where a specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis of design," including make or model number or other designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of evaluating comparable products of other named manufacturers.

D. Manufacturer's Warranty: Preprinted written warranty published by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.

E. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by or incorporated into the Contract Documents, either to extend time limit provided by manufacturer's warranty or to provide more rights for Owner.

## 1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product List: Submit a list, in tabular form, showing specified products. Include generic names of products required. Include manufacturer's name and proprietary product names for each product.
   1. Coordinate product list with Contractor's Construction Schedule and the Submittals Schedule.
   2. Form: Tabulate information for each product under the following column headings:
      a. Specification Section number and title.
      b. Generic name used in the Contract Documents.
      c. Proprietary name, model number, and similar designations.
      d. Manufacturer's name and address.
      e. Supplier's name and address.
      f. Installer's name and address.
      g. Projected delivery date or time span of delivery period.
      h. Identification of items that require early submittal approval for scheduled delivery date.
   3. Initial Submittal: Within 30 days after date of commencement of the Work, submit 3 copies of initial product list. Include a written explanation for omissions of data and for variations from Contract requirements.
      a. At Contractor's option, initial submittal may be limited to product selections and designations that must be established early in Contract period.
   4. Completed List: Within 30 days after date of commencement of the Work, submit 3 copies of completed product list. Include a written explanation for omissions of data and for variations from Contract requirements.
   5. Architect's Action: Architect will respond in writing to Contractor within 15 working days of receipt of completed product list if there are objections to the list. Architect's response will include a list of unacceptable product selections and a brief explanation of reasons for this action. Architect's response, or lack of response, does not constitute a waiver of requirement that products comply with the Contract Documents.

B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section - Submittal Procedures. Show compliance with requirements.

## 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, product selected shall be compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
   1. Each contractor is responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
   2. If a dispute arises between contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.

## 1.06 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
   2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
   3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.

4. Inspect products on delivery to ensure compliance with the Contract Documents and to ensure that products are undamaged and properly protected.
5. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
6. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
7. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.
8. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
9. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
10. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
11. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

## 1.07 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
   1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written warranty furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
   2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner.

B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution. Submit a draft for approval before final execution.
   1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
   2. Refer to Divisions 2 through 48 Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.

C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section - Closeout Procedures.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 PRODUCT OPTIONS

A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, that are undamaged, and unless otherwise indicated, that are new at time of installation.
   1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
   2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
   3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.
   4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
   5. Where products are accompanied by the term "match sample," sample to be matched is Architect's.
   6. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish "salient characteristics" of products.
   7. Or Equal: Where products are specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal", "or approved equal", "or approved," or “acceptable substitution”, comply with provisions in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.

B. Product Selection Procedures: Procedures for product selection include the following:
   1. Product: Where Specification paragraphs or subparagraphs titled "Product" name a single product and manufacturer, or indicate district standard, provide the product named.
      a. Substitutions may be considered, unless otherwise indicated.
         1) Substitutions for district standard items will not be considered.
   2. Manufacturer/Source: Where Specification paragraphs or subparagraphs titled "Manufacturer" or "Source" name single manufacturers or sources, provide a product by the manufacturer or from the source named that complies with requirements.
      a. Substitutions may be considered, unless otherwise indicated.
   3. Products: Where Specification paragraphs or subparagraphs titled "Products" introduce a list of names of both products and manufacturers, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements.
      a. Substitutions may be considered, unless otherwise indicated.
   4. Manufacturers: Where Specification paragraphs or subparagraphs titled "Manufacturers" introduce a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements.
      a. Substitutions may be considered, unless otherwise indicated.
   5. Available Products: Where Specification paragraphs or subparagraphs titled "Available Products" introduce a list of names of both products and manufacturers, provide one of the products listed or another product that complies with requirements. Comply with provisions in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
   6. Available Manufacturers: Where Specification paragraphs or subparagraphs titled "Available Manufacturers" introduce a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed or another manufacturer that complies with requirements. Comply with provisions in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
   7. Product Options: Where Specification paragraphs titled "Product Options" indicate that size, profiles, and dimensional requirements on Drawings are based on a specific product or system, provide either the specific product or system indicated or a comparable product or system by another manufacturer. Comply with provisions in "Product Substitutions" Article.
   8. Basis-of-Design Products: Where Specification paragraphs or subparagraphs titled "Basis-of-Design Products" are included and also introduce or refer to a list of manufacturers' names, provide either the specified product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with provisions in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
      a. Substitutions may be considered, unless otherwise indicated.
   9. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require matching an established Sample, select a product (and manufacturer) that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches satisfactorily.
      a. If no product available within specified category matches satisfactorily and complies with other specified requirements, comply with provisions of the Contract Documents on "substitutions" for selection of a matching product.
   10. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected from manufacturer's colors, patterns, textures" or a similar phrase, select a product (and manufacturer) that complies with other specified requirements.
      a. Standard Range: Where Specifications include the phrase "standard range of colors, patterns, textures" or similar phrase, Architect will select color, pattern, or texture from manufacturer's product line that does not include premium items.

b. Full Range: Where Specifications include the phrase "full range of colors, patterns, textures" or similar phrase, Architect will select color, pattern, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

11. Allowances: Refer to individual Specification Sections and "Allowance" provisions in Division 1 for allowances that control product selection and for procedures required for processing such selections.

## 2.02 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

A. Conditions for Consideration: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

1. Evidence that the proposed product does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents, that it is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce the indicated results, and that it is compatible with other portions of the Work.
2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant qualities include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, and specific features and requirements indicated.
3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
4. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
5. Samples, if requested.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

Not Used.

END OF SECTION 01 60 00

# SECTION 01 73 00 - EXECUTION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:
   1. Construction layout.
   2. Field engineering and surveying.
   3. Installation of the Work.
   4. Cutting and patching.
   5. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
   6. Progress cleaning.
   7. Starting and adjusting.
   8. Protection of installed construction.
   9. Correction of the Work.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Division 01 Section - Summary for limits on use of Project site.
   2. Division 01 Section - Submittal Procedures for submitting surveys.
   3. Division 01 Section - Cutting and Patching for cutting and patching necessary for installation or performance of other components of the work.

### 1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other work.

B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of other work.

### 1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For land surveyor.

B. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by land surveyor certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.

C. Certified Surveys: Submit two copies signed by land surveyor.

D. Final Property Survey: Submit **two** copies showing the Work performed and record survey data.

### 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.

B. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of products and equipment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.

B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
   1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.
   1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; underground electrical services, and other utilities.
   2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
   3. In the event of any inconsistency or conflict, between existing conditions and the bidding documents, immediate notice of such inconsistency or conflict shall be given to the Architect. Do not undertake any phase of the work affected by such inconsistency or conflict, pending the issuance of instructions by the Architect.

B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
   1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
   2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
   3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.

C. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
   1. Description of the Work.
   2. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
   3. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
   4. Recommended corrections.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Existing Utility Interruptions: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
   1. Notify Owner not less than five days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
   2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Owner's written permission.

C. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

D. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.

E. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Architect according to requirements in Division 01 Section - Project Management and Coordination.

## 3.03 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.

B. General: Engage a land surveyor to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.
   1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
   2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
   3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
   4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
   5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
   6. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
   7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.

D. Elevations of existing grades, floors, tops of walls, parapets, beams and locations of existing columns, walls and the like are based on survey documents or on drawings of the existing building furnished by the Owner. The Architect assumes no responsibility for the accuracy of the information on existing drawings. It is the intent of the Contract Drawings to integrate new work with existing improvements and for the Contractor to verify actual conditions.

E. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.

F. Subcontractors shall verify with the General Contractor the exact field location of all rough-in dimensions, taking into account location of walls, partitions and equipment. Special attention should be paid to clearances as required for compliance with American's with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG) in the state having jurisdiction, including any applicable revisions. Any cost in relocation of items due to that subcontractor's error, will be borne by him at no additional cost to the Owner.

G. Where equipment involving more than one subcontractor is installed at a common location and no specific location has been determined, it is the Contractor's responsibility to check with the Architect for the actual rough-in dimensions for such equipment. If for some reason the rough-in has not been checked and a subcontractor has installed his equipment, remaining subcontractors shall align their equipment as closely as possible to the installed equipment. Alignment shall mean centered vertically, equally space and centered horizontally. This alignment applies to bells, alarms, thermostats, switches, handles, access panels, etc. Any items not installed in alignment shall be relocated by the Contractor at his own expense with damaged surfaces properly repaired.

H. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.

## 3.04 FIELD ENGINEERING

A. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
   1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.
   2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.

B. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
   1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
   2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
   3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.

C. Final Property Survey: Engage a land surveyor to prepare a final property survey showing significant features (real property) for Project. Include on the survey a certification, signed by land surveyor, that principal metes, bounds, lines, and levels of Project are accurately positioned as shown on the survey.
   1. At portions of the site and Right of Way, where Work was performed for this project, show boundary lines, monuments, streets, site improvements and utilities, existing improvements, and significant vegetation, adjoining properties, acreage, grade contours, and the distance and bearing from a site corner to a legal point.
   2. Recording: At Substantial Completion, have the final property survey recorded by or with authorities having jurisdiction as the official "property survey."

## 3.05 INSTALLATION

A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
   1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
   2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
   3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
   4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inch in occupied spaces and 90 inch in unoccupied spaces.

B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.

C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.

D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.

E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.

F. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produce harmful noise levels.

G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.

H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions.
   1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
   2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
   3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.

J. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.

## 3.06 CUTTING AND PATCHING

A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
   1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.

B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.

D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.

E. Adjacent Occupied Areas: Where interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas is unavoidable, coordinate cutting and patching according to requirements in Division 01 Section - Summary.

F. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to minimize interruption to occupied areas.

G. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
   1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
   2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
   3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
   4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Division 31 Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
   5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
   6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.

H. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
   1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
   2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will minimize evidence of patching and refinishing.
      a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
      b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
   3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
      a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, prepare substrate and apply primer and intermediate paint coats appropriate for substrate over the patch, and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
   4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.

5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition and ensures thermal and moisture integrity of building enclosure.

I. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

## 3.07 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

A. Site Access: Provide access to Project site for Owner's construction personnel.

B. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel.
   1. Construction Schedule: Inform Owner of Contractor's preferred construction schedule for Owner's portion of the Work. Adjust construction schedule based on a mutually agreeable timetable. Notify Owner if changes to schedule are required due to differences in actual construction progress.
   2. Preinstallation Conferences: Include Owner's construction personnel at preinstallation conferences covering portions of the Work that are to receive Owner's work. Attend preinstallation conferences conducted by Owner's construction personnel if portions of the Work depend on Owner's construction.

## 3.08 PROGRESS CLEANING

A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
   1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
   2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
   3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
      a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
   4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and other contractors are working concurrently.

B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.

C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
   1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
   2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.

D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.

E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.

F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Division 01 Section - Temporary Facilities and Controls.

H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.

I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.

J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

## 3.09 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

A. Coordinate startup and adjusting of equipment and operating components with requirements in Division 01 Section - General Commissioning Requirements.

B. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.

C. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.

D. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

E. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Division 01 Section - Quality Requirements.

## 3.10 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

C. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Restore damaged substrates and finishes. Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section - Cutting and Patching.
   1. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment.

D. Restore permanent facilities used during construction to their specified condition.

E. Remove and replace damaged surfaces that are exposed to view if surfaces cannot be repaired without visible evidence of repair.

F. Repair components that do not operate properly. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired.

G. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass or reflective surfaces.

END OF SECTION 01 73 00

# SECTION 01 73 29 - CUTTING AND PATCHING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes procedural requirements for cutting and patching.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 2 Section - Selective Demolition for demolition of selected portions of the building for alterations.
   2. Divisions 2 through 48 Sections for specific requirements and limitations applicable to cutting and patching individual parts of the Work.
      a. Requirements in this Section apply to mechanical and electrical installations. Refer to Divisions 21, 22, 23, 25, 26, 27 and 28 Sections for other requirements and limitations applicable to cutting and patching plumbing, mechanical and electrical installations.

### 1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Cutting: Removal of existing construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other Work.

B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore surfaces to original conditions after installation of other Work.

### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Cutting and Patching Proposal: Submit a proposal describing procedures at least 10 days before the time cutting and patching will be performed, requesting approval to proceed. Include the following information:
   1. Extent: Describe cutting and patching, show how they will be performed, and indicate why they cannot be avoided.
   2. Dates: Indicate when cutting and patching will be performed.
   3. Utilities: List utilities that cutting and patching procedures will disturb or affect. List utilities that will be relocated and those that will be temporarily out of service. Indicate how long service will be disrupted.

### 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Structural Elements: Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or load-deflection ratio.

B. Miscellaneous Elements: Do not cut and patch the following elements or related components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
   1. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
   2. Membranes and flashings.
   3. Exterior curtain-wall construction.
   4. Equipment supports.
   5. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
   6. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.

C. Visual Requirements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch construction exposed on the exterior or in occupied spaces in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.

## 1.06 WARRANTY

A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections of these Specifications.

B. Existing Materials: Use materials identical to existing materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match existing adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
   1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will match the visual and functional performance of existing materials.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine surfaces to be cut and patched and conditions under which cutting and patching are to be performed.
   1. Compatibility: Before patching, verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
   2. Proceed with installation only after unsafe or unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.02 PREPARATION

A. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of Work to be cut.

B. Protection: Protect existing construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.

C. Adjoining Areas: Avoid interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas.

D. Existing Services: Where existing services are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services before cutting to avoid interruption of services to occupied areas.

## 3.03 PERFORMANCE

A. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
   1. Cut existing construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.

B. Cutting: Cut existing construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements

retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.

1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots as small as possible, neatly to size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
2. Existing Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
3. Concrete or Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Division 31, 32 & 33 Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.

C. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections of these Specifications.

1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate integrity of installation.
2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing.
3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove existing floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
    a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, apply primer and intermediate paint coats over the patch and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang existing ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition.

END OF SECTION 01 73 29

# SECTION 01 77 00 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
   1. Substantial Completion procedures.
   2. Final completion procedures.
   3. Warranties.
   4. Final cleaning.
   5. Repair of the Work.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Division 01 Section - Photographic Documentation for submitting final completion construction photographic documentation.
   2. Division 01 Section - Execution Requirements for progress cleaning of Project site.
   3. Division 01 Section - Operation and Maintenance Data for operation and maintenance manual requirements.
   4. Division 01 Section - Project Record Documents for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.
   5. Division 01 Section - Demonstration and Training for requirements for instructing Owner's personnel.
   6. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific closeout and special cleaning requirements for the Work in those Sections.

### 1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For cleaning agents.

B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.

C. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

### 1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.

C. Field Report: For pest control inspection.

### 1.05 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items specified in other Sections.

### 1.06 CLOSEOUT PROCESS

A. In addition to the requirements stated in the contract documents, The Closeout Process in e-Builder must be used at the end of the project.

## 1.07 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.

B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
   1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
   2. Submit a fully filled out Substantial Completion Readiness Checklist (see attachment to this specification Section).
   3. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, final completion construction photographic documentation, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
   4. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Divisions 02 through 33 Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
   5. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Divisions 02 through 33 Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
      a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Architect's signature for receipt of submittals.
   6. Submit test/adjust/balance records.
   7. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.

C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
   1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
   2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
   3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
   4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
   5. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
   6. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
   7. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
   8. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
   9. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.

D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion

after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.

## 1.08 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:
   1. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Division 01 Section - Demonstration and Training.
      a. Two complete and thorough training sessions shall be conducted for Humble ISD Maintenance Department, one for winter operation and one for summer operation in each of the first seasons.
   2. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Division 01 Section - Payment Procedures.
   3. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
   4. Submit one CD set of all operation and maintenance manuals at or prior to the ZFinal Completion Inspection.
   5. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
   6. Submit pest-control final inspection report.

B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
   1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

## 1.09 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
   1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first.
   2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
   3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
      a. Project name.
      b. Date.
      c. Name of Architect.
      d. Name of Contractor.
      e. Page number.
   4. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:

## 1.10 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of Substantial Completion is indicated, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.

B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within 15 days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period by separate agreement with Contractor.

C. Organize entire collection of approved warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual, with tabs between CSI division sections; i.e.; group all Division-7 building components under one tab, group all Division-8 components under another tab, etc.. Utilize CSI specification sections 2 through 33 for each division tab. Provide three copies of each Final Warranty binder.
   1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
   2. Provide title page, Contractor’s general One-Year Warranty (corrective period) with agreed upon date and signature of authorized representative, table of contents, and subcontractor list at the beginning of each binder.
   3. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
   4. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
   5. Warranty Electronic File: Scan warranties and bonds and assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single indexed electronic PDF file with links enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.

D. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals. Such copies shall be identical to the warranties included in the warranty binders, but may be photocopies including for warranties that require wet signatures for the original actuated copies.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 MATERIALS

A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 FINAL CLEANING

A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.

B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:

a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
c. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
l. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
m. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
n. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
o. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
p. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
q. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.

C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Division 01 Section - Temporary Facilities and Controls. Prepare written report.

D. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste disposal requirements in Division 01 Section - Temporary Facilities and Controls.

## 3.02 REPAIR OF THE WORK

A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.

B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
   1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.
   2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that that already show evidence of repair or restoration.

a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.

3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.
4. Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

END OF SECTION 01 77 00

# SECTION 01 78 23 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
   1. Emergency manuals.
   2. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
   3. Product maintenance manuals.
   4. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Division 01 Section - Submittal Procedures for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.
   2. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific operation and maintenance manual requirements for the Work in those Sections.

### 1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.

B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

### 1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Manual Content: Operations and maintenance manual content is specified in individual Specification Sections to be reviewed at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
   1. Architect will comment on whether content of operations and maintenance submittals are acceptable.
   2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.

B. Format: Submit operations and maintenance manuals in the following format:
   1. PDF electronic file. Assemble each manual into a composite electronically indexed file. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
      a. Name each indexed document file in composite electronic index with applicable item name. Include a complete electronically linked operation and maintenance directory.
      b. Enable inserted reviewer comments on draft submittals.
   2. Three paper copies. Include a complete operation and maintenance directory. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves. Architect will return two copies.

C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at least 7 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will comment on whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.

D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit three Final Copies of each manual in final form before commencing demonstration and training.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
   1. Title page.
   2. Table of contents.
   3. Subcontractor list
   4. Manual contents.

B. Title Page: Include the following information:
   1. Subject matter included in manual.
   2. Name and address of Project.
   3. Name and address of Owner.
   4. Date of submittal.
   5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
   6. Name and contact information for Architect.

C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
   1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.

D. Subcontractor List: Organize subcontractor list by CSI specification section, as listed in the Project Manual table of contents. Provide specification section number, contact name, street address (no P.O. Box numbers) and contact phone and fax number. If changes were made during the course of the project, utilize final contract company for each component of the work. List all contractors used on project, even if subcontracted to a different subcontractor, i.e; if earthwork subcontractor is contracted by the paving subcontractor, list both subcontractors.

E. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. Reference specification section number. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.

F. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
   1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
   2. File Names and Bookmarks: Enable bookmarking of individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.

G. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit final manuals in the form of hard copy, bound and labeled volumes.
   1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
      a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-reference other binders if necessary, to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.
      b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents**.** Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
   2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
   3. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
      a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
      b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

## 2.02 EMERGENCY MANUALS

A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
   1. Type of emergency.
   2. Emergency instructions.
   3. Emergency procedures.

B. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
   1. Fire.
   2. Flood.
   3. Gas leak.
   4. Water leak.
   5. Power failure.
   6. Water outage.
   7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
   8. Chemical release or spill.

C. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.

D. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
   1. Instructions on stopping.
   2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
   3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
   4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
   5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

## 2.03 OPERATION MANUALS

A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
   1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
   2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
   3. Operating standards.
   4. Operating procedures.
   5. Operating logs.
   6. Wiring diagrams.
   7. Control diagrams.
   8. Piped system diagrams.
   9. Precautions against improper use.
   10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.

B. Descriptions: Include the following:
   1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
   2. Manufacturer's name.
   3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
   4. Equipment function.
   5. Operating characteristics.
   6. Limiting conditions.
   7. Performance curves.
   8. Engineering data and tests.
   9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.

C. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
   1. Startup procedures.
   2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
   3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
   4. Regulation and control procedures.
   5. Instructions on stopping.
   6. Normal shutdown instructions.
   7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
   8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
   9. Special operating instructions and procedures.

D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.

E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color-coding where required for identification.

## 2.04 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.

B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.

C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
   1. Product name and model number.
   2. Manufacturer's name.
   3. Color, pattern, and texture.
   4. Material and chemical composition.
   5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.

D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
   1. Inspection procedures.
   2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
   3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
   4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
   5. Repair instructions.

E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.

## 2.05 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.

B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.

C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
   1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins.
   2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
   3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
   4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.

D. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
   1. Test and inspection instructions.
   2. Troubleshooting guide.
   3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
   4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
   5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
   6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.

E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
   1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
   2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.

F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 MANUAL PREPARATION

A. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.

B. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.

C. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
   1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
   2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.

D. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
   1. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.

E. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
   1. Do not use original project record documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.
   2. Comply with requirements of newly prepared record Drawings in Division 01 Section - Project Record Documents.

F. Comply with Division 01 Section - Closeout Procedures for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

END OF SECTION 01 78 23

# SECTION 01 78 39 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
   1. Record Drawings.
   2. Record Specifications.
   3. Record Product Data.
   4. Miscellaneous record submittals.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Division 01 Section - Closeout Procedures for general closeout procedures.
   2. Division 01 Section - Operation and Maintenance Data for operation and maintenance manual requirements.
   3. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific requirements for project record documents of the Work in those Sections.

### 1.03 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
   1. Number of Copies: Submit copies of record Drawings as follows:
      a. Initial Submittal:
         1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one of file prints.
      b. Final Submittal:
         1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and two set(s) of prints.

B. Record Specifications: Submit one paper copy and annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.

C. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
   1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.

D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: See other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal. Unless more stringent requirements are called for in other related specifications, include the following:
   1. Electronic copy of Contractor’s meeting minutes, and of A/E’s field reports.
   2. Electronic copy of Addenda.
   3. Electronic copy of Architect’s Supplemental Instructions.
   4. Electronic copy of Change Orders, Contingency Expenditures, Change Directives, and similar contract modifications.
   5. Electronic copy of Requests For Information.
   6. Electronic copy of transmittals for extra and maintenance materials, signed by Owner’s representatives who received them.
   7. Attendance sign-in lists for training sessions.

E. Reports: Submit written report indicating items incorporated into project record documents concurrent with progress of the Work, including revisions, concealed conditions, field changes, product selections, and other notations incorporated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 RECORD DRAWINGS

A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
   1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
      a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
      b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
      c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
      d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
      e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding archive photographic documentation.
   2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
      b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
      c. Depths of foundations below first floor.
      d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
      e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
      f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
      g. Actual equipment locations.
      h. Duct size and routing.
      i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
      j. Changes made by Change Order or Change Directive.
      k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
      l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
      m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
      n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
   3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
   4. Mark record sets maintained throughout construction with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
   5. District Standard - at completion of the work, all such changes shall be recorded neatly with red ink and other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories in the same location. by the contractor on an unused set of the contract drawing prints.
   6. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
   7. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.

B. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:
   1. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.

2. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
3. Refer instances of uncertainty to Architect for resolution.
4. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of the Contract Drawings for use in recording information.
    a. See Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures" for requirements related to use of Architect's digital data files.

C. Newly Prepared Record Drawings: Prepare new Drawings instead of preparing record Drawings when neither the original Contract Drawings nor Shop Drawings show actual installation.
1. New Drawings are required when a Change Order is issued as a result of accepting an alternate, substitution, or other modification.
2. Integrate newly prepared record Drawings into record Drawing sets; comply with procedures for formatting, organizing, copying, binding, and submitting.

D. Format: Identify and date each record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
1. Record Prints: Organize record prints and newly prepared record Drawings into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
2. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
3. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
4. Identification: As follows:
    a. Project name.
    b. Date.
    c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
    d. Name of Architect.
    e. Name of Contractor.

## 2.02 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
2. Note related Change Orders, record Product Data, and record Drawings where applicable.

B. Format: Submit record Specifications as annotated PDF electronic filer copy or scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up paper copy of Specifications.

## 2.03 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

A. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
3. Note related Change Orders, record Specifications, and record Drawings where applicable.

B. Format: Submit record Product Data as annotated PDF electronic file or scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up paper copy of Product Data.

1. Include record Product Data directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of record Product Data.

## 2.04 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.

B. Format: Submit miscellaneous record submittals as PDF electronic file or scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up miscellaneous record submittals.
   1. Include miscellaneous record submittals directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of miscellaneous record submittals.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.

B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store record documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

END OF SECTION 01 78 39

# SECTION 01 79 00 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
   1. Demonstration of operation of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
   2. Training in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
   3. Demonstration and training video recordings.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific requirements for demonstration and training for products in those Sections.

### 1.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
   1. Indicate proposed training modules using manufacturer-produced demonstration and training video recordings for systems, equipment, and products in lieu of video recording of live instructional module.

B. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.

C. Evaluations: For each participant and for each training module, submit results and documentation of performance-based test.

### 1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Demonstration and Training Video Recordings: Submit two copies within seven days of end of each training module.
   1. Identification: On each copy, provide an applied label with the following information:
      a. Name of Project.
      b. Name and address of videographer.
      c. Name of Architect.
      d. Name of Construction Manager.
      e. Name of Contractor.
      f. Date of video recording.
   2. Transcript: Prepared in PDF electronic format. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding video recording and a table of contents with links to corresponding training components. Include name of Project and date of video recording on each page.
   3. At completion of training, submit complete training manual(s) for Owner's use in PDF electronic file format uploaded to E-BUILDER.

## 1.05 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.

B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.

C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data has been reviewed and approved by Architect.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.

B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:

1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
    a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
    b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
    c. Operating standards.
    d. Regulatory requirements.
    e. Equipment function.
    f. Operating characteristics.
    g. Limiting conditions.
    h. Performance curves.
2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
    a. Emergency manuals.
    b. Operations manuals.
    c. Maintenance manuals.
    d. Project record documents.
    e. Identification systems.
    f. Warranties and bonds.
    g. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
    a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
    b. Instructions on stopping.
    c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
    d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
    e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
    f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
    a. Startup procedures.
    b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
    c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
    d. Regulation and control procedures.
    e. Control sequences.
    f. Safety procedures.
    g. Instructions on stopping.

h. Normal shutdown instructions.
i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
m. Special operating instructions and procedures.

5. Adjustments: Include the following:
   a. Alignments.
   b. Checking adjustments.
   c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
   d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
   a. Diagnostic instructions.
   b. Test and inspection procedures.
7. Maintenance: Include the following:
   a. Inspection procedures.
   b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
   c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
   d. Procedures for routine cleaning
   e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
   f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
   g. Instruction on use of special tools.
8. Repairs: Include the following:
   a. Diagnosis instructions.
   b. Repair instructions.
   c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
   d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
   e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 GENERAL

A. Two complete and thorough training sessions shall be conducted for Humble ISD Maintenance Department, one for winter operation and one for summer operation in each of the first seasons. The first training shall take place on site after the Substantial Completion inspection.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Division 01 Section "Operations and Maintenance Data."

B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

### 3.03 INSTRUCTION

A. Facilitator: Shall prepare instruction program and training modules, shall coordinate instructors, and shall coordinate between Contractor and Owner for number of participants, instruction times, and location.

B. Instructors shall instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
   1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.

C. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
   1. Schedule training with Owner, with at least seven days' advance notice.

D. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.

E. Evaluation: At conclusion of each training module, assess and document each participant's mastery of module by use of a written and/or demonstration performance-based test.

F. Cleanup: Collect used and leftover educational materials and give to Owner. Remove instructional equipment. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

## 3.04 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING VIDEO RECORDINGS

A. General: Videographer shall record demonstration and training video recordings. Record each training module separately. Include classroom instructions and demonstrations, board diagrams, and other visual aids, but not student practice.
   1. At beginning of each training module, record each chart containing learning objective and lesson outline.

B. Video: Provide minimum 640 x 480 video resolution converted to .mp4 format file type or format file type acceptable to Owner, on electronic media.
   1. Electronic Media: USB flash drive and upload a copy to E-BUILDER.
   2. File Hierarchy: Organize folder structure and file locations according to project manual table of contents. Provide complete screen-based menu.
   3. File Names: Utilize file names based upon name of equipment generally described in video segment, as identified in Project specifications.
   4. Contractor and Installer Contact File: Using appropriate software, create a file for inclusion on the Equipment Demonstration and Training USB flash drive that describes the following for each Contractor involved on the Project, arranged according to Project table of contents:
      a. Name of Contractor/Installer.
      b. Business address.
      c. Business phone number.
      d. Point of contact.
      e. E-mail address.

C. Recording: Camera shall be located before starting recording, unless otherwise necessary to adequately cover area of demonstration and training. Display continuous running time.
   1. Film training session(s) in segments not to exceed 15 minutes.
      a. Produce segments to present a single significant piece of equipment per segment.
      b. Organize segments with multiple pieces of equipment to follow order of Project Manual table of contents.
      c. Where a training session on a particular piece of equipment exceeds 15 minutes, stop filming and pause training session. Begin training session again upon commencement of new filming segment.

D. Light Levels: Verify light levels are adequate to properly light equipment. Verify equipment markings are clearly visible prior to recording.
   1. Furnish additional portable lighting as required.

END OF SECTION 01 79 00

# SECTION 02 41 19 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of a building or structure.
   2. Demolition and removal of selected site elements.
   3. Repair procedures for selective demolition operations.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 1 Section - Summary for use of the premises and phasing requirements.
   2. Division 1 Section - Work Restrictions for restrictions on use of the premises due to Owner or tenant occupancy.
   3. Division 1 Section - Construction Progress Documentation for preconstruction photographs taken before selective demolition.
   4. Division 1 Section - Temporary Facilities and Controls for temporary construction and environmental-protection measures for selective demolition operations.
   5. Division 1 Section - Cutting and Patching for cutting and patching procedures for selective demolition operations.
   6. Division 22, 23 Sections for demolishing, cutting, patching, or relocating mechanical items.
   7. Division 26, 27, 28 Sections for demolishing, cutting, patching, or relocating electrical items.

### 1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site, unless indicated to be removed and salvaged or removed and reinstalled.

B. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction and deliver them to Owner.

C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, prepare them for reuse, and reinstall them where indicated.

D. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed, and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

### 1.04 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

A. Except for items or materials indicated to be reused, salvaged, reinstalled, or otherwise indicated to remain Owner's property, demolished materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

B. Historic items, relics, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, antiques, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be encountered during selective demolition remain Owner's property. Carefully remove and salvage each item or object in a manner to prevent damage and deliver promptly to Owner.

## 1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.

B. Proposed Dust-Control and Noise-Control Measures: Submit statement or drawing that indicates the measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation. Identify options if proposed measures are later determined to be inadequate.

C. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
   1. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure Owner's on-site operations are uninterrupted.
   2. Interruption of utility services.
   3. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
   4. Use of elevator and stairs.
   5. Locations of temporary partitions and means of egress.
   6. Coordination of Owner's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building and of Owner's partial occupancy of completed Work.

D. Inventory: Submit a list of items to be removed and salvaged and deliver to Owner prior to start of demolition

E. Inventory: After selective demolition is complete, submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.

F. Pre-demolition Photographs or Video: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by selective demolition operations. Submit before Work begins.

G. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.

H. Warranties: Documentation indicated that existing warranties are still in effect after completion of selective demolition.

I. Landfill Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of hazardous wastes by a landfill facility licensed to accept hazardous wastes.

## 1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Standards: Comply with ANSI A10.6 and NFPA 241.

C. Pre-demolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to selective demolition including, but not limited to, the following:
   1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
   2. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
   3. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
   4. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.

D. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by an EPA-approved certification program.

## 1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted. Provide not less than 72 hours' notice to Owner of activities that will affect Owner's operations.

B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
   1. Before selective demolition, Owner will remove the following items:
      a. All equipment, furniture, and decorations that the Owner intends to keep.

C. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities.
   1. Do not close or obstruct walkways, corridors, or other occupied or used facilities without written permission from authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Owner assumes no responsibility for condition of areas to be selectively demolished.
   1. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
   2. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.

E. Hazardous Materials: Hazardous materials are present in building to be selectively demolished. A report on the presence of hazardous materials is on file for review and use. Examine report to become aware of locations where hazardous materials are present.
   1. Hazardous material remediation is specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
   2. Do not disturb hazardous materials or items suspected of containing hazardous materials except under procedures specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

F. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site will not be permitted.

G. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
   1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

## 1.08 WARRANTY

A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during selective demolition, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

B. Notify warrantor on completion of selective demolition, and obtain documentation verifying that existing system has been inspected and warranty remains in effect. Submit documentation at Project closeout.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 REPAIR MATERIALS

A. Use repair materials identical to existing materials.
   1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used for exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match existing adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
   2. Use materials whose installed performance equals or surpasses that of existing materials.

B. Comply with material and installation requirements specified in individual Specification Sections.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped.

B. Review record documents of existing construction provided by Owner. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in record documents.

C. Survey existing conditions and correlate with requirements indicated to determine extent of selective demolition required.

D. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and reinstalled and items to be removed and salvaged.

E. When unanticipated mechanical, electrical, or structural elements that conflict with intended function or design are encountered, investigate and measure the nature and extent of conflict. Promptly submit a written report to Architect.

F. Engage a professional engineer to survey condition of building to determine whether removing any element might result in structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of structure or adjacent structures during selective demolition operations.

G. Perform surveys as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from selective demolition activities.

H. Steel Tendons: Locate tensioned steel tendons and include recommendations for de-tensioning.

I. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of preconstruction photographs.
   1. Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Photographic Documentation".
   2. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged. Provide photographs or video of conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by salvage operations.
   3. Before selective demolition or removal of existing building elements that will be reproduced or duplicated in final Work, make permanent record of measurements, materials, and construction details required to make exact reproduction.

## 3.02 UTILITY SERVICES

A. Existing Utilities: Maintain services indicated to remain and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.

B. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving occupied or operating facilities unless authorized in writing by Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide temporary services during interruptions to existing utilities, as acceptable to Owner and to authorities having jurisdiction.
   1. Provide at least 72 hours' notice to Owner if shutdown of service is required during changeover.

C. Utility Requirements: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utilities serving areas to be selectively demolished.
   1. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated utilities when requested by Contractor.
   2. Arrange to shut off indicated utilities with utility companies.
   3. If utility services are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, before proceeding with selective demolition provide temporary utilities that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of service to other parts of building.
   4. Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit after bypassing.

D. Utility Requirements: Refer to Division 21 and 28 Sections for shutting off, disconnecting, removing, and sealing or capping utilities. Do not start selective demolition work until utility disconnecting and sealing have been completed and verified in writing.

## 3.03 PREPARATION

A. Dangerous Materials: Drain, purge, or otherwise remove, collect, and dispose of chemicals, gases, explosives, acids, flammables, or other dangerous materials before proceeding with selective demolition operations.

B. Pest Control: Employ a certified, licensed exterminator to treat building and to control rodents and vermin before and during selective demolition operations.

C. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
   1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, walkways, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by governing regulations.
   2. Erect temporary protection, such as walks, fences, railings, canopies, and covered passageways, where required by authorities having jurisdiction.
   3. Protect existing site improvements, appurtenances, and landscaping to remain.
   4. Erect a plainly visible fence around drip line of individual trees or around perimeter drip line of groups of trees to remain.

D. Temporary Facilities: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
   1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
   2. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
   3. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
   4. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
   5. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling specified in Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls".

E. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of existing building and construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
   1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is not complete, provide insulated temporary enclosures. Coordinate enclosure with ventilating and material drying or curing requirements to avoid dangerous conditions and effects.

F. Temporary Partitions: Erect and maintain dustproof partitions and temporary enclosures to limit dust and dirt migration and to separate areas from fumes and noise.

G. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain interior and exterior shoring, bracing, or structural support to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
   1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.

## 3.04 POLLUTION CONTROLS

A. Dust Control: Use water mist, temporary enclosures, and other suitable methods to limit spread of dust and dirt. Comply with governing environmental-protection regulations.
   1. Do not use water when it may damage existing construction or create hazardous or objectionable conditions, such as ice, flooding, and pollution.
   2. Wet mop floors to eliminate trackable dirt and wipe down walls and doors of demolition enclosure. Vacuum carpeted areas.

B. Disposal: Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
   1. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.

C. Cleaning: Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

## 3.05 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
   1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
   2. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping, to minimize disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
   3. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
   4. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain fire watch and portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
   5. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
   6. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
   7. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
   8. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
   9. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.
   10. Return elements of construction and surfaces that are to remain to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.
   11. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

B. Existing Facilities: Comply with building manager's requirements for using and protecting elevators, stairs, walkways, loading docks, building entries, and other building facilities during selective demolition operations.

C. Removed and Salvaged Items: Comply with the following:
   1. Clean salvaged items.
   2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
   3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.

4. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner.
5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.

D. Removed and Reinstalled Items: Comply with the following:
1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse. Paint equipment to match new equipment.
2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.

E. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

F. Concrete: Demolish in small sections. Cut concrete to a depth of at least 3/4 inch at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw. Dislodge concrete from reinforcement at perimeter of areas being demolished, cut reinforcement, and then remove remainder of concrete indicated for selective demolition. Neatly trim openings to dimensions indicated.

G. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, then remove masonry between saw cuts.

H. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, then break up and remove.

I. Resilient Floor Coverings: Remove floor coverings and adhesive according to recommendations in RFCI-WP and its Addendum.
1. Remove residual adhesive and prepare substrate for new floor coverings by one of the methods recommended by RFCI.
2. Asbestos-containing flooring materials shall be removed in compliance with the RFCI recommended work practices, and OSHA, EPA and any state and local standards or requirements.

J. Roofing: Remove no more existing roofing than can be covered in one day by new roofing. Refer to applicable Division 7 Section for new roofing requirements.
1. Remove existing roof membrane, flashings, copings, and roof accessories.
2. Remove existing roofing system down to substrate.

K. Air-Conditioning Equipment: Remove equipment without releasing refrigerants.

L. Refrigerant: Remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment to be selectively demolished according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

## 3.06 PATCHING AND REPAIRS

A. General: Promptly repair damage to adjacent construction caused by selective demolition operations.

B. Patching: Comply with Division 1 Section "Cutting and Patching."

C. Repairs: Where repairs to existing surfaces are required, patch to produce surfaces suitable for new materials.
1. Completely fill holes and depressions in existing masonry walls that are to remain with an approved masonry patching material applied according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

D. Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining construction in a manner that eliminates evidence of patching and refinishing.

E. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are demolished extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish color, texture, and appearance. Remove existing floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
   1. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections of these Specifications.
   2. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, apply primer and intermediate paint coats over patch and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
   3. Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate integrity of installation.

F. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang existing ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.

## 3.07 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

A. General: Except for items or materials indicated to be reused, salvaged, reinstalled, or otherwise indicated to remain Owner's property, remove demolished materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.
   1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
   2. Remove & transport debris in a manner that prevents spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
   3. Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

C. Disposal: Transport demolished materials off Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

## 3.08 CLEANING

A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION 02 41 19

# SECTION 02 80 00 - HAZARDOUS MATERIAL ABATEMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Provide all operations required in connection with the removal of asbestos containing materials in renovated areas, including the removal and proper disposal of all existing and generated trash from demolition and abatement, whether or not identified in the Asbestos Inspection Report described in Division 1 Section - Information Available to Bidders.

### 1.03 EXAMINATION OF SITE

A. Contractor shall visit and examine the building and site to ascertain the actual nature and scope of demolition work. Later claims for additional compensation covering difficulties encountered in demolition work will not be recognized.

### 1.04 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with all applicable federal, state and local codes and ordinances and with the requirements of insurance carriers providing coverage for this work.

B. Comply with all Texas Department of Health (TDH) and EPA notification requirements.

C. Removal of existing resilient floor coverings and adhesives shall comply with the work practices recommended by the Resilient Floor Covering Institute's "Recommended Work Practices for the Removal of Resilient Floor Coverings" dated August, 1995. In addition, asbestos-containing flooring materials shall be removed in compliance with the same RFCI recommendations, and OSHA, EPA and any state and local standards or requirements.

D. Contractor shall provide to the Owner at the pre-construction conference documentation confirming abatement contractor and all workmen involved with the demolition have received required training and licensing, as per TDH, EPA, RFCI, and OSHA requirements.

E. Procure and pay for all permits or certificates required for the work involved.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

Not used.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 PROTECTION OF EXISTING FACILITIES

A. The Contractor shall take all necessary precautions to insure against damage to existing work to remain in place, and any damage to such work shall be repaired or replaced as approved by the Architect at no additional cost to the Owner.

### 3.02 ABATEMENT

A. Before commencing general demolition activities, Federal and State law requires that all asbestos-containing materials that could possibly be disturbed during such activities be abated. It has been determined that the necessary work will disturb the known asbestos-containing building materials (ACBM). Therefore, the General Contractor is required to secure the necessary services of a Texas Licensed Asbestos Consultant and a Texas Licensed

Asbestos Abatement Contractor to affect removal of the aforementioned ACBM prior to initiating any work at the Subject Property that could possibly disturb any of the ACBM.

B. It is the responsibility of the General Contractor to determine and certify that all asbestos-related work is performed by properly licensed, trained and experienced personnel, and that all work pertaining to the removal of ACBM meet all applicable requirements of:
   1. Texas Asbestos Health Protection Rules, Sections 295.31 through 295.73, March 2003.
   2. The National Emission Standard for Hazardous Pollutants (NESHAP), Asbestos Regulations (40 CFR 61, Subpart M).
   3. Applicable regulations of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), including 29 CFR 1910.134 and 29 CFR 1926.
   4. AHERA Regulations 40 CFR Part 763, Subpart E, Appendix C, as it applies to accreditation of asbestos abatement contractor personnel.

C. The required third party air quality monitoring shall be commissioned and paid for by the Contractor.

## 3.03 DEMOLITION

A. Existing finish flooring, including mastic, shall be completely removed and the substrate prepared to receive the new flooring.

B. Erect necessary barricades and protective measures as required.

## 3.04 DISPOSAL

A. Except as otherwise provided, all items demolished or cleared from the building resulting from the work of this section shall be removed and disposed of off-site in a TDH/EPA approved disposal site with a documented manifest provided to the Owner at project close-out.

END OF SECTION 02 80 00

# SECTION 03 05 80 - UNDER-SLAB VAPOR BARRIER

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Products supplied under this section:
   1. Vapor barrier and installation accessories for installation under concrete slabs.

B. Related sections:
   1. Section 03 30 00 Cast-in-Place Concrete
   2. Section 07 26 00 Vapor Retarders
   3. Section 01 45 23 Structural Testing and Inspection

### 1.2 REFERENCES

A. ASTM International
   1. ASTM E1745-17 Standard Specification for Plastic Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Soil or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs.
   2. ASTM E1643-18a Selection, Design, Installation, and Inspection of Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs.

B. Technical Reference - American Concrete Institute (ACI):
   1. ACI 302.2R-06 Guide for Concrete Slabs that Receive Moisture-Sensitive Flooring Materials.
   2. ACI 302.1R-15: Guide to Concrete Floor and Slab Construction.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Quality control/assurance:
   1. Summary of test results per paragraph 9.3 of ASTM E1745.
   2. Manufacturer's samples and literature.
   3. Manufacturer's installation instructions for placement, seaming, penetration prevention and repair, and perimeter seal per ASTM E1643.
   4. All mandatory ASTM E1745 testing must be performed on a single production roll per ASTM E1745 Section 8.1.
   5. Contact vapor barrier manufacturer for pre-construction meeting and to coordinate a review of the vapor barrier installation either by digital review or in person.
   6. Vapor barrier manufacturer must warrant in writing (a) compliance with the designated ASTM E1745 classification, and (b) no manufacturing defects in the product for, at least, the Life of the Building.
   7. Manufacturer verify in writing 20 years in the industry with no reported product failures.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

A. Vapor barrier shall have all of the following qualities:
   1. Maintain permeance of less than 0.01 Perms [grains/($ft^2$ · hr · inHg)] as tested in accordance with mandatory conditioning tests per ASTM E1745 Section 7.1 (7.1.1-7.1.5).
   2. Other performance criteria:
      a. Strength: ASTM E1745 Class A.

b. Thickness: 15 mils minimum

3. Provide third party documentation that all testing was performed on a single production roll per ASTM E1745 Section 8.1
4. Warranty: (a) compliance with the designated ASTM E1745 classification, and (b) no manufacturing defects in the product for, at least, the Life of the Building.

B. Vapor barrier products:
1. Basis of Design: Stego Wrap Vapor Barrier (15-mil) by Stego Industries LLC., (877) 464-7834 www.stegoindustries.com.
2. Approved Alternate: Vaporguard by Reef Industries, 713-507-4250. www.reefindustries.com.
3. Approved Alternate: PMPC by WR Meadows, 800-342-5976. http://www.wrmeadows.com/pmpc/
4. Approved Alternate: Moistop Ultra by Fortifiber, 1-800-773-4777. www.fortifiber.com
5. No substitutions.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. Seams:
1. Stego Tape by Stego Industries LLC, (877) 464-7834 www.stegoindustries.com.
2. Stego Crete Claw (for slabs on carton forms) by Stego Industries LLC, (877) 464-7834 www.stegoindustries.com.

B. Penetrations of Vapor barrier:
1. Stego Mastic by Stego Industries LLC, (877) 464-7834 www.stegoindustries.com.
2. Stego Tape by Stego Industries LLC, (877) 464-7834 www.stegoindustries.com.

C. Perimeter/terminated edge seal:
1. Stego Crete Claw (textured tape) by Stego Industries LLC, (877) 464-7834 www.stegoindustries.com.
2. Stego Term Bar by Stego Industries LLC, (877) 464-7834 www.stegoindustries.com.
3. StegoTack Tape (double-sided sealant tape) by Stego Industries LLC, (877) 464-7834 www.stegoindustries.com.
4. One-sided seaming tape is not a recommended method of sealing at the terminated edge.

D. Penetration Prevention:
1. Beast Foot by Stego Industries LLC, (877) 464-7834 www.stegoindustries.com.

E. Vapor Barrier-Safe Screed System
1. Beast Screed by Stego Industries, LLC, (877) 464-7834 www.stegoindustries.com.

# PART 3 – EXECUTION

## 3.1 PREPARATION

A. Ensure that subsoil is approved by Architect or Geotechnical Engineer.
1. Level and compact base material.

B. 1. Contact vapor barrier manufacturer to schedule a pre-construction meeting and to coordinate a review, in-person or digital, of the vapor barrier installation.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install vapor barrier in accordance ASTM E1643.

1. Unroll vapor barrier with the longest dimension parallel with the direction of the concrete placement and face laps away from the expected direction of the placement whenever possible.
2. Extend vapor barrier to the perimeter of the slab. If practicable, terminate it at the top of the slab, otherwise (a) at a point acceptable to the structural engineer or (b) where obstructed by impediments, such as dowels, waterstops, or any other site condition requiring early termination of the vapor barrier. At the point of termination, seal vapor barrier to the slab itself using Stego Crete Claw Tape, per manufacturer's instructions.
    a. Seal vapor barrier to the entire slab perimeter using Stego Crete Claw Tape with a surface that creates a mechanical seal to freshly-placed concrete, per manufacturer's instructions.

    OR

    b. Seal vapor barrier to the entire perimeter wall or footing/grade beam with StegoTack Tape, or both Stego Term Bar and StegoTack Tape per manufacturer's instructions. Ensure the concrete is clean and dry prior to adhering tape.
3. Overlap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's seam tape.
4. Apply seam tape/Stego Crete Claw to a clean and dry vapor barrier.
5. Seal all penetrations (including pipes) per manufacturer's instructions.
6. For interior forming applications, avoid the use of non-permanent stakes driven through the vapor barrier. Use female-threaded screed pad posts with nail holes and insert them into Beast Foot. Ensure Beast Foot's peel-and-stick adhesive base is fully adhered to the vapor barrier.
7. If non-permanent stakes must be driven through vapor barrier, repair as recommended by vapor barrier manufacturer.
8. Use reinforcing bar supports with base sections that eliminate or minimize the potential for puncture of the vapor barrier.
9. Repair damaged areas with vapor barrier material of similar (or better) permeance, puncture and tensile.
10. For vapor barrier-safe concrete screeding applications, install Beast Screed (vapor barrier-safe screed system) per manufacturer's instructions prior to placing concrete.

**END OF SECTION 03 05 80**

# SECTION 03 10 00 - CONCRETE FORMING AND ACCESSORIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete formwork, for the following:
   1. Footings and/or piers.
   2. Foundation walls.
   3. Slabs-on-grade.
   4. Suspended slabs.
   5. Concrete toppings.
   6. Building frame members.
   7. Building walls.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Section 01 45 23 “Testing and Inspection Services”.
   2. Section 03 30 00 “Cast In Place Concrete”.
   3. Section 03 20 00 “Concrete Reinforcing”.
   4. Section 03 38 16 “Unbonded Post Tensioned Concrete”.

### 1.3 REFERENCES

A. The latest adopted edition of all standards referenced in this section shall apply, unless noted otherwise.
   1. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
      a. ACI 117 – Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials
      b. ACI 301 – Specifications for Structural Concrete for Buildings
      c. ACI 318 – Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete
      d. ACI 347 – Guide to Formwork for Concrete
      e. ACI SP-4 – Formwork for Concrete.

### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Design and engineering of formwork, including shores, reshores, false work, bracing, and other temporary supports as well as determining when temporary supports and bracing can safely be removed after the specified curing time is the Contractor’s responsibility.

B. All components of the formwork shall be designed to support all loads imposed during construction including weight of construction equipment, live loads, and lateral loads due to wind and imbalance or discontinuity of building components.

C. If any post tensioned members exist on the project, the formwork supporting those elements shall:
   1. It is essential to take into account the stressing sequence of post-tensioned concrete in the design of the formwork. Any concrete element which is stressed can transfer its weight off the form work to the supporting concrete element in which case the forms for the supporting concrete element must be designed to support the entire load tributary of that element.
   2. Forms shall be designed and constructed to permit movement during stressing, both lifting and shortening of the concrete elements.
   3. Formwork supporting beams and girders shall be designed to support the weight of the beam or girder's entire tributary area.
   4. Formwork supporting post tensioned concrete elements shall not be removed until all concrete supported by the formwork has been fully stressed, but in no case shall the curing time before form removal be less than specified herein.
   5. Design, engineering and production of shop drawings for the form work shall be performed under the supervision of a professional engineer.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. LEED Submittals:
   1. Product Data for Credit MR 4: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating cost for each product having recycled content.

C. Formwork Shop Drawings: Prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer detailing fabrication, assembly, and support of formwork. Shop drawings for layout of pan type forms, if they exist on the project. Layout only - information and details about the support of these forms is not required, as it is the responsibility of the Contractor and his registered engineer
   1. Shoring and Reshoring: Indicate proposed schedule and sequence of stripping formwork, shoring removal, and reshoring installation and removal.

D. Manufacturer's product data and installation instruction for propriety materials used in exposed concrete work including form liners, release agents, form systems, ties, and accessories.

E. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to construct the structure.
   1. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver form materials in manufacturer's packaging with installation instructions.

B. Store off ground in ventilated and protected area to prevent deterioration from moisture or damage.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician. An experienced installer who has completed work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in service performance.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Refer Section 01 45 23.

C. Layout and measurement of concrete forms and embedment's, required for work, performed by a licensed surveyor employed by the contractor.

D. Design, engineering and construction, and removal of formwork are the responsibility of the contractor.

E. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
   1. ACI 301, "Specifications for Structural Concrete."
   2. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."

F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
   1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:
      a. Contractor's superintendent.
      b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
      c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
      d. Concrete subcontractor.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
   1. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.
   2. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:
      a. B-B (Concrete Form), Class 1 or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.

B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.

C. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes that will produce surfaces with gradual or abrupt irregularities not exceeding specified formwork surface class. Provide units with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.

D. Permanent Metal Forms for Slabs: Deck material, gauge and rib pattern shall be as noted on Drawings.

E. Pan-Type Forms: Glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or formed steel, stiffened to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
   1. Pans shall be free of dents, irregularities, sag, rust or other deterioration.
   2. In areas permanently exposed to view, provide one piece units, manufactured to length between beams or ribs, or segmented units with reinforced butt-joint splices.

F. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch, minimum.

G. Rustication Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, kerfed for ease of form removal.

H. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
   1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.

I. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off metal or glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
   1. Furnish units that will leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
   2. Furnish ties that, when removed, will leave holes no larger than 1 inch in diameter in concrete surface.
   3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive damp proofing or waterproofing.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FORMWORK

A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.

B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.

C. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347 as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
   1. Class A, 1/8 inch for smooth-formed finished surfaces.
   2. Class B, 1/4 inch
   3. Class C, 1/2 inch

4. Class D, 1 inch for rough-formed finished surfaces.

D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.

E. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
   1. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
   2. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.

F. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.

G. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.

H. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.

I. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.

J. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.

K. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.

L. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

## 3.2 EMBEDDED ITEMS

A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded. Coordinate work of other Sections in forming and setting openings, slots, recesses, chases, sleeves, bolts, anchors, and other inserts that are attached to the formwork.
   1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
   2. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.
   3. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures as indicated.
   4. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions, level and plumb. Ensure items are not disturbed during concrete placement.

## 3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F for 24 hours after placing concrete. Concrete has to be hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and curing and protection operations need to be maintained.
   1. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that supports weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved at least 70 percent of its 28-day design compressive strength.
   2. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
   3. Determine compressive strength of in place concrete by testing representative field-cured test specimens according to ACI 301.

B. Obtaining concrete compressive strength tests for the purposes of form removal shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

C. In the absence of cylinder tests, formwork shall remain in place until the concrete has cured at a temperature of at least 50 degrees Fahrenheit (10 degrees Celsius) for the minimum cumulative time periods given in ACI 347, Section 3.7.2.3. When the surrounding air temperature is below 50 degrees Fahrenheit (10 degrees Celsius), that time period shall be added to the minimum listed time period.

D. Formwork for two-way conventionally reinforced slabs shall remain in place for at least the minimum cumulative time periods specified for one-way slabs of the same maximum span. Two-way conventionally reinforced slabs shall then be reshored until they attain the specified 28 day strength.

E. Minimum cumulative curing times may be reduced by the use of high-early strength cement or forming systems that allow form removal without displacing shores. However, the Contractor must demonstrate, to the satisfaction of the Architect, that the early removal of forms will not result in excessive sag, distortion or damage to the concrete elements.

F. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.

G. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

## 3.4 SHORES AND RESHORES

A. Comply with ACI 318 and ACI 301 for design, installation, and removal of shoring and reshoring.
   1. Do not remove shoring or reshoring until measurement of slab tolerances is complete.

B. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for proper shoring and reshoring. Locate and provide adequate reshoring to support construction without excessive stress or deflection.

C. In multistory construction, extend shoring or reshoring over a sufficient number of stories to distribute loads in such a manner that no floor or member will be excessively loaded or will induce tensile stress in concrete members without sufficient steel reinforcement. Reshores shall be located in the same position on each floor. No construction loads shall be placed on the new construction until all supporting reshores have been installed.
   1. Extend shores or reshores from ground to top level in structure three stories or less in height, unless noted otherwise.
   2. In structures over three stories in height, extend shores or reshores at least three levels under the level being placed. Extend shores beyond the minimum number of levels if required to ensure proper distribution of loads throughout the structure.
   3. In crawl spaces or basement, shores or reshores shall extend to mud pads seated firmly on the soil or to on grade construction.

D. Plan sequence of removal of shores and reshore to avoid damage to concrete. Locate and provide adequate reshoring to support construction without excessive stress or deflection.

E. Bottom tier of reshores shall remain in place until the supported concrete has attained at least 85 percent of the specified 28 day compressive strength and construction loads in excess of 20 psf have been removed but not less than 14 days.

## 3.5 REUSE OF FORMS

A. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be used in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form release agent.

B. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

## 3.6 JOINTS

A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.

B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
   1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
   2. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
   3. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
   4. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
   5. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated. Otherwise, locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.

6. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
7. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.

C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.

D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated.
2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface where joint sealants are to be installed.
3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.

E. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

## 3.7 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.

B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, to receive a rubbed finish, or to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete.

C. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-formed finished as-cast concrete where indicated:
1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform

color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.

D. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

## 3.8 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.

B. Scratch Finish: While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screeded and bull-floated or darbied. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes to produce a profile amplitude of 1/4 inch in one direction.
   1. Apply scratch finish to surfaces indicated or to receive concrete floor toppings or to receive mortar setting beds for bonded cementitious floor finishes.

C. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
   1. Apply float finish to surfaces indicated or to receive trowel finish or to be covered with fluid-applied or sheet waterproofing, built-up or membrane roofing, or sand-bed terrazzo.

## 3.9 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.

B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.

C. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as shown on Drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment at correct elevations, complying with diagrams or templates from manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment

END OF SECTION 03 10 00

# SECTION 03 20 00 - CONCRETE REINFORCING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete reinforcement, for the following:
   1. Footings and/or piers.
   2. Foundation walls.
   3. Slabs-on-grade.
   4. Suspended slabs.
   5. Concrete toppings.
   6. Building frame members.
   7. Building walls.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Section 01 45 23 “Testing and Inspection Services”.
   2. Section 03 10 00 “Concrete Forming and Accessories”.
   3. Section 03 30 00 “Cast In Place Concrete”.
   4. Section 03 38 16 “Unbonded Post Tensioned Concrete”.
   5. Section 04 22 00 “Concrete Unit Masonry”.
   6. Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving".
   7. Section 31 63 29 "Drilled Concrete Piers and Shafts".

### 1.3 REFERENCES

A. The latest adopted edition of all standards referenced in this section shall apply, unless noted otherwise.
   1. American Concrete Institute (ACI)
      a. ACI 117 – Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials.
      b. ACI 301 – Specifications for Structural Concrete for Buildings
      c. ACI 315 – Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement
      d. SP-66 ACI Detailing Manual
   2. American Welding Society (AWS)
      a. AWS D1.1 – Structural Welding Code
   3. Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI)
      a. CRSI – Manual of Standard Practice
      b. CRSI 63 – Recommended Practice for Placing Reinforcing Bars

c. CRSI 65 – Recommended Practice for Placing Bar Supports, Specifications and Nomenclature.

B. American Society of Testing Materials (ASTM)
   a. ASTM-A185: Standard Specification for Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement.
   b. ASTM-A663: Standard Specification for Steel Bars, Carbon, Merchant Quality, Mechanical Properties.
   c. ASTM-A615: Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.
   d. ASTM-A675: Standard Specification for Steel Bars, Carbon, Hot-Wrought, Special Quality, Mechanical Properties.
   e. ASTM-A706: Standard Specification for Low-Alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.
   f. ASTM-A775: Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Steel Bars.
   g. ASTM-A884: Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement.

C. In the case of conflict between the Contract Documents and a reference standard, the Contract Documents shall govern. In the case of a conflict between the Contract Documents and the Building Code, the more stringent shall govern.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. LEED Submittals:
   1. Product Data for Credit MR 4: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating cost for each product having recycled content.

C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement. Include bar sizes, lengths, material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, splices and laps, mechanical connections, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement, according to ACI 315 "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement."
   1. Do not reproduce the structural drawings for use as shop drawings.

D. Bar Supports: Submit manufacturer's product information for bolsters, chairs, spaces, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire fabric.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency, installer, and fabricator as indicated herein.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
   1. Steel reinforcement and accessories.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Refer Section 01 45 23.

B. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed reinforcing installation work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in service performance.

C. Fabricator Qualifications: An experienced fabricator who has completed reinforcing fabrication work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in service performance.

D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel."

E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
   1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:
      a. Contractor's superintendent.
      b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
      c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
      d. Concrete subcontractor.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage. Avoid damaging coatings, if any, on steel reinforcement.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.

B. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60 for #6 and smaller bars, Grade 75 for #7 and larger bars, deformed.

C. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars for bars to be welded: ASTM A 706, Grade 60 for #6 and smaller bars, Grade 75 for #7 and larger bars, deformed.

D. Stainless-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 955, Grade 60, [Type 304] [Type 316L], deformed.

E. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184, fabricated from ASTM A 615, Grade 60 or ASTM A 706, deformed bars, assembled with clips.

F. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, as drawn .

G. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A 496.

H. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

I. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497, flat sheet.

## 2.2 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, cut true to length with ends square and free of burrs.

B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
   1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.
   2. Use wire bar type supports complying with CRSI recommendations, unless otherwise indicated. Do not use wood, brick, or other unacceptable materials.

## 2.3 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice." Combined tolerances for formwork, reinforcing fabrication, and reinforcing placement shall not permit a reduction in specified concrete cover of reinforcing steel. In case of fabricating errors, do not re-bend or straighten reinforcement in a manner that will injure or weaken material. Bars used for concrete reinforcement shall meet following requirements for fabricating tolerances:
   1. Sheared length: Plus or minus 1 inch.
   2. Depth of truss bars: Plus 0, minus ½ inch.
   3. Overall dimensions of stirrups, ties, and spirals: Plus or minus ½ inch.
   4. Other bends: Plus or minus 1 inch.

B. For bars with end bearing splice couplers, bar ends shall terminate in flat surfaces, within 1.5 degrees of a right angle to axis of bars and shall be fitted within 3 degrees of full bearing after assembly.

## 2.4 DOWEL BAR ANCHORS/SPLICERS

A. A. Provide dowel bar anchors and threaded dowels designed to develop, both in tension and compression, 125% of the minimum ASTM specified yield strength of the dowel bars, as evidenced by published I.C.B.O. test reports. Unless otherwise indicated, anchors shall be furnished with ACI standard 90 degree hooks. Dowels shall be furnished by anchor supplier. The following dowel splicing systems are acceptable.
   1. Richmond Screw Anchor "Dowel Bar Splicer"
   2. Erico "Lenton Form Saver"
   3. Dayton Barsplice "Grip-Twist"

## 2.5 MECHANICAL SPLICES

A. A. Provide mechanical splices designed to develop, both in tension and compression, 125% of minimum ASTM yield strength of the smaller bar being coupled, as evidenced by published I.C.B.O test reports. The following bar splicing systems are acceptable.
   1. Erico "Cadweld C-Series"
   2. Erico "Lenton"
   3. Dayton Barsplice "Bar Grip"
   4. Dayton Barsplice "Grip Twist"

## 2.6 METAL ANCHORAGE AND EMBEDDED METAL ASSEMBLIES

A. Steel Shapes and Plates: Conform to ASTM A36, "Specification for Structural Steel".

B. Headed Stud Anchors: Headed studs welded by full fusion process, as furnished by TRW Nelson Stud Welding Division.

C. Welding Electrodes: AWS 5.5, Series E70.

D. Welded Deformed Bar Anchors: Welded by full fusion process, as furnished by TRW Nelson Stud Welding Division.

E. All metal assemblies exposed to earth, weather or moisture, including exposure to a crawl space environment, shall be hot dip galvanized.

## 2.7 FABRICATION OF METAL ACCESSORIES AND EMBEDDED METAL ASSEMBLIES

A. Fabricate and assemble structural steel items in the shop. Shearing, flame cutting, and chipping shall be done carefully and accurately. Holes shall be cut, drilled, or punched at right angles to the surface of metal and shall not be made or enlarged by burning. Holes

shall be clean-cut without torn or ragged edges. Welded construction shall conform to AISC "Specification for the Design, Fabrication, and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings," and AWS D1.1. Welding shall be done by AWS certified welders.

B. Welding of deformed bar anchors and headed stud anchors shall be done by full fusion process equal to that of TRW Nelson Stud Welding Division of KSM Welding Services Division, Omark, Ind. A minimum of two headed studs shall be tested at start of each production period for proper quality control. Studs shall be capable of being bent 45 degrees without weld failure.

C. Welding of reinforcement shall be done in strict accordance with AWS requirements, using recommended preheat temperature and electrode for type of reinforcement being welded. Bars larger than No. 9 shall not be welded. Welding shall be performed subject to the observance and testing laboratory. Under no circumstances is ordinary reinforcing (ASTM A615) to be welded.

D. Coatings, where required, shall be applied after fabrication and prior to casting concrete.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EMBEDDED ITEMS

A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
   1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
   2. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.
   3. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures as indicated.

### 3.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.
   1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.

B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that would reduce bond to concrete.

C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
   1. Weld reinforcing bars according to AWS D1.4, where indicated.

D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.

E. Install welded wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.

F. Provide minimum concrete covering for reinforcement as shown in the Structural General Notes.

G. Place bars to following tolerances:
   1. Clear distance to formed surfaces: Plus or minus ¼ inch.
   2. Minimum spacing between bars: Minus ¼ inch.
   3. Top bars in slabs and beams:
      a. Members 8 inches deep or less: Plus or minus ¼ inch.
      b. Members between 8 and 24 inches deep: Plus or minus ½ inch.
      c. Members more than 24 inches deep: Plus or minus 1 inch.
   4. Crosswise of members: Spaced evenly within 2 inches.
   5. Length of members: Plus or minus 2 inches.

H. Bars may be moved as necessary to avoid interference with other reinforcing steel, conduits, or embedded items. If moved more than one bar diameter, or enough to exceed above tolerances, resulting arrangement of bars subject to approval.

I. Support reinforcement and fasten together to prevent displacement by construction loads or placing concrete beyond tolerances indicated.

J. Unless permitted by Engineer, do not bend reinforcement after embedding in hardened concrete.

## 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing and Inspecting: See Section 01 45 23.

B. Inspections:
   1. Steel reinforcement placement.
   2. Steel reinforcement welding.

END OF SECTION 03 20 00

**SECTION 03 21 00**
**SITE CONCRETE REINFORCEMENT**

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. This WORK shall consist of furnishing and placing reinforcing steel in accordance with these SPECIFICATIONS and in conformity with the DRAWINGS.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. The following is a list of SPECIFICATIONS which may be related to this section:

1. Section 32 13 73.19 Cast in Place Concrete

1.3 REFERENCES

A. The following is a list of standards which may be referenced in this section:

1. American Association of State and Highway Transportation Officials (AASHTO):

a. M31M/M31, Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.

b. AASHTO Standard Specifications for Welding of Structural Steel Highway Bridges.

2. American Concrete Institute (ACI):

a. ACI Detailing Manual.

b. 117, Specifications for Tolerance for Concrete Construction and Materials.

c. 318, Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete.

3. American Welding Society (AWS):

a. D1.1/D1.1M, Structural Welding Code - Steel.

b. D1.4/D1.4M, Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel.

c. D2.0, Welded Highway and Railway Bridges.

4. ASTM International (ASTM):

a. A82/A82M, Standard Specification for Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement.

b. A497/A497M, Standard Specification for Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement, Deformed, for Concrete.

c. A615, Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.

d. A996/A996M, Standard Specification for Rail-Steel and Axle-Steel Deformed Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.

e. A706/A706M, Standard Specification for Low-Alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.

f. A767/A767M, Standard Specification for Zinc-coated (Galvanized) Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.

g. A775/A775M, Standard Specification for Epoxy-coated Steel Reinforcing.

5. Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI):

a. Manual of Standard Practice.

b. Placing Reinforcing Bars.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Two copies of a list of all reinforcing steel and bending diagrams shall be furnished to the ENGINEER at the site of the work at least one week before the placing of reinforcing steel is begun. Such lists will not be reviewed for accuracy. The CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for the accuracy of the lists and for furnishing and placing all reinforcing steel in accordance with the details shown on the plans.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

A. Reinforcing steel shall be stored off the ground and protected from oil or other materials detrimental to the steel or bonding capability of the reinforcing bar. Epoxy-coated reinforcing bars shall be stored on protective cribbing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 REINFORCING STEEL

A. Deformed Bars: All bar steel reinforcement shall be of the deformed type, ASTM A615, AASHTO M31M/M31, and Grade (40 or 60) as specified on the DRAWINGS.

B. Spirals:

1. Spirals, hot-rolled plain or deformed bars per ASTM A615, Grade 60 or cold-drawn wire per ASTM A82/A82M as specified on the DRAWINGS.

2. Spirals for columns shall have two (2) “spacers” with a section modulus >0.030in$^3$ in order to maintain the proper pitch and spacing.

B. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: Epoxy-coated reinforcing bars shall conform to ASTM A775/A775M. When required, damaged epoxy coating shall be repaired with patching material conforming to ASTM A775/A775M in accordance with the material manufacturer's recommendations.

C. Zinc-coated (Galvanized Reinforcing Bars): Zinc-coated reinforcing bars shall conform to ASTM A767/A767M. When required, damaged zinc coating shall be repaired with a zinc-rich formulation conforming to ASTM A767/A767M.

D. Welded Wire Fabric: All welded wire fabric reinforcement shall conform to ASTM A497/A497M. F. Identification:

1. Bundles of reinforcing bars and wire spirals shall be tagged, with a metal tag, showing specification, grade, size, quantity, and suitable identification to permit checking, sorting, and placing. When bar marks are used to identify reinforcing bars on the DRAWINGS, the bar mark shall be shown on the tag. Tags shall be removed prior to concrete placement.

2. Bundles of flat sheets and rolls of welded wire fabric shall be tagged similar to reinforcing bars.

2.2 TIE WIRE

A. 16-gauge wire ties, manufactured by American Wire Tie, Inc., or equal. When epoxy-coated reinforcing steel is shown on the DRAWINGS, PVC-coated wire ties shall be used. The minimum PVC coating shall be 0.7 mils.

2.3 BAR SUPPORTS

A. General: Bar supports and spacing shall be in accordance with the CRSI Manual of Standard Practice, Chapter 3, a maximum of four (4) feet, or as required by the DRAWINGS.

B. Floor Slabs: Uncoated steel or non-metallic composite chairs shall be used unless otherwise shown on the DRAWINGS. If required by the ENGINEER, the chair shall be stapled on a bearing pad to prevent chair displacement. The bearing pad shall be made of exterior grade plywood and be approximately five (5) inches square.

C. Columns: Plastic "space wheels" manufactured by Aztec (Model DO 12/40), or equal, are required.

D. Epoxy-Coated and Zinc-Coated Bar Supports: Epoxy-coated reinforcing bars supported from formwork shall rest on coated wire bar supports made of dielectric or other acceptable materials. Wire supports shall be fully coated with dielectric material, compatible with concrete. Reinforcing bars used as support bars shall be epoxy-coated. In walls reinforced with epoxy-coated bars, spreader bars shall be epoxy-coated. Proprietary combination bar clips and spreaders used in walls with epoxy-coated reinforcing shall be made of corrosion-resistant material or coated with dielectric material.

2.4 FABRICATION

A. Fabrication tolerances for straight and bent bars shall be in accordance with the requirements of Subsection 4.3, Tolerance, of ACI 315 and the CRSI Manual of Standard Practice.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

A. Rust, seams, surface irregularities, or mill scale shall not be cause for rejection, provided that the weight and height of deformations of a hand-wire-brushed test specimen are not less than the applicable ASTM Specification.

3.2 BAR LIST

A. CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for the accuracy of the lists and for furnishing and placing all reinforcing steel in accordance with the details shown on the DRAWINGS.

B. Bar lists and bending diagrams for structures, which are included on the DRAWINGS, do not have to be furnished by the CONTRACTOR. When bar lists and bending diagrams are included on the DRAWINGS, they are intended for estimating approximate quantities. CONTRACTOR shall verify the quantity, size, and shape of the bar reinforcement against those shown on the DRAWINGS and make any necessary corrections before ordering.

3.3 BENDING

A. All reinforcing bars shall be bent cold. Bars partially embedded in concrete shall not be field bent, except as shown on the DRAWINGS or permitted. Bars shall not be bent or straightened in a manner that may injure the material.

3.4 SPIRALS

A. One and one-half (1-1/2) finishing bends are required at the top and bottom of the spiral. Spacers shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 5, Section 9 of the CRSI Manual of Standard Practice. Welding as an aid to fabrication and/or installation is not permitted.

3.5 PLACING AND FASTENING

A. When placed in the WORK, the reinforcing bars shall be free from dirt, loose mill scale, paint, oil, loose rust, or other foreign substances.

B. The placing, fastening, splicing, and supporting of reinforcing steel and wire mesh or bar mat reinforcement shall be in accordance with the DRAWINGS and the latest edition of “CRSI Placing Reinforcing Bars.” In case of discrepancy between the DRAWINGS and the CRSI publication stated above, the DRAWINGS shall govern. Reinforcement shall be placed within the tolerances provided in ACI 117.

C. Steel reinforcement shall be accurately placed in the positions shown on the DRAWINGS and firmly held during the placing and setting of concrete by means of spacer strips, stays, metal chairs, or other approved devices or supports. Precast concrete bricks or other types of bricks are not permitted for the support of reinforcement in footings, slabs, or any other part of the work. Chair and bolster supports for slabs and walls shall be spaced at a maximum of four- (4- ) foot centers unless otherwise shown on the

DRAWINGS. Staples used to attach bar supports to wall and roof forms shall have the staple “tails” clipped after form removal. For columns, three (3) wheels, spaced one hundred twenty degrees (120°) apart, shall be placed every four (4) feet of column height. CONTRACTOR may increase the column spiral pitch if a conflict occurs with the wheel. Pre-tied column reinforcing steel lowered into column forms shall be lowered vertically to prevent damage to the space wheels.

D. Bars shall be securely tied at fifty percent (50%) of all intersections except where spacing is less than one (1) foot in each direction, when alternate intersections shall be tied unless otherwise called out on the DRAWINGS or in applicable SPECIFICATIONS. Tying of steel by spot welding shall not be permitted unless specifically authorized by the ENGINEER. The placing and securing of the reinforcement in any unit or section shall be accepted by the ENGINEER before any concrete is placed in any such unit or section.

E. Bundle bars shall be tied together at not more than six- (6- ) foot centers.

3.6 SPLICING

A. Bar steel reinforcement shall be furnished in the full lengths indicated on the DRAWINGS. Splicing of bars, except where shown on the DRAWINGS, shall not be permitted without the written acceptance of the ENGINEER. Splices shall be staggered. In cases where permission is granted to splice bars, other than those shown on the DRAWINGS, the additional material required for the lap shall be furnished by CONTRACTOR at CONTRACTOR’s own expense. The minimum distance between staggered splices for reinforcing bars shall be the length required for a lapped splice in the bar. All splices shall be full-contact splices.

B. Splices shall not be permitted at points where the section is not sufficient to provide a minimum distance of two (2) inches between the splice and the nearest adjacent bar or the surface of the concrete.

C. Welding of reinforcement shall be done only if detailed on the DRAWINGS or if authorized by the ENGINEER in writing. Welding shall be done by a certified welder. The welding shall conform to AWS D1.4/D1.4M with the modifications and additions specified hereinafter. Where AWS D2.0 Specifications for Welded Highway and Railway Bridges is referenced, the reference shall be construed to be for AWS D1.1. Where the term AWS D1.1/D1.1M is used, it shall mean the American Welding Society Structural Welding Code, D1.5/D1.5M, as modified and amended by the AASHTO Standard Specifications for Welding of Structural Steel Highway Bridges. After completion of welding, coating damage to coated reinforcing steel bars shall be repaired.

D. When required or permitted, a mechanical connection may be used to splice reinforcing steel bars or as a substitution for dowel bars. The mechanical connection shall be capable of developing a minimum of one hundred twenty-five percent (125%) of the yield strength of the reinforcing bar in both tension and compression. All parts of mechanical connections used on coated bars, including steel splice sleeves, bolts, and nuts, shall be coated with the same material used for the repair of coating damage.

3.7 CUTTING

A. When coated reinforcing bars are cut in the field, the ends of the bars shall be coated with the same material used for the repair of coating damage.

END OF SECTION 03 21 00

# SECTION 03 30 00 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes, for the following:
   1. Footings.
   2. Foundation walls.
   3. Slabs-on-grade.
   4. Suspended slabs.
   5. Concrete toppings.
   6. Building frame members.
   7. Building walls.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Section 01 45 23 “Structural Testing and Inspection Services”.
   2. Section 03 20 00 "Concrete Forming and Accessories".
   3. Section 03 10 00 "Concrete Reinforcing".
   4. Section 03 15 13 “Waterstops”.
   5. Section 03 05 80 “Under-slab Vapor Barrier – Retarder”.
   6. Section 31 63 29 “Drilled Concrete Piers and Shafts”.

### 1.3 REFERENCES

A. The latest adopted edition of all standards referenced in this section shall apply, unless noted otherwise.
   1. ACI 301 – Specification for Structural Concrete.
   2. ACI 302 – Guide for Concrete Floor Slab Construction.
   3. ACI 304 – Guide for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting and Placing Concrete.
   4. ACI 305 – Hot Weather Concreting.
   5. ACI 306 – Cold Weather Concreting.
   6. ACI 308 – Guide to Curing Concrete.
   7. ACI 309 – Guide for Consolidating Concrete.
   8. ACI 311 – ACI Manual for Concrete Inspection.
   9. ACI 318 – Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete.
   10. ACI 347 – Guide to Concrete Formwork.
   11. ACI 207 – Mass Concrete.

12. ACI 211.1 – Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Normal, Heavyweight, and Mass Concrete.
13. ACI 211.2 – Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Structural Lightweight Concrete.
14. ACI 212.3 – Chemical Admixture for Concrete.
15. ACI 212.4 – Guide for the use of High Range Water Reducing Admixtures in Concrete.
16. ACI 214 – Evaluation of Strength Test Results of Concrete.
17. ACI 303 – Guide to Cast in Place Architectural Concrete Practice.
18. Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute, "Manual of Standard Practice".

B. In the case of conflict between the Contract Documents and a referenced standard, the Contract Documents shall govern. In the case of a conflict between the Contract Documents and the Building Code, the more stringent shall govern.

## 1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume; subject to compliance with requirements.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. LEED Submittals:
1. Product Data for Credit MR 4: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating cost for each product having recycled content.
2. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.3: For liquid floor treatments and curing and sealing compounds, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
3. Design Mixtures for Credit ID 1.1: For each concrete mixture containing fly ash as a replacement for Portland cement or other Portland cement replacements, and for equivalent concrete mixtures that do not contain Portland cement replacements.

C. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture include the following information. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
1. Each proposed mix design shall be accompanied by a complete standard deviation analysis based on at least 30 consecutive strength tests, or by three laboratory trial mixtures with confirmation tests.
2. Proportions of cement, fine, and coarse aggregate, and water.
3. Design strength.
4. Maximum slump.
5. Air Content.
6. Maximum water / cement ratio.

7. Maximum and minimum concrete temperature that is acceptable at time of placement for which the manufacturer can guarantee the strength of the concrete.
8. Type cement and aggregates.
9. Type and quantities of all admixtures.
10. Air dry density and splitting tensile strength for lightweight concrete determined in accordance with ASTM 330.
11. Type, color, and quantities of integral coloring compounds, where applicable.
12. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.

D. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Refer Section 03 20 00.

E. Formwork Shop Drawings: Refer Section 03 10 00.

F. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to construct the structure.
1. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
1. Cementitious materials.
2. Admixtures.
3. Fiber reinforcement.
4. Curing compounds.
5. Floor and slab treatments.
6. Bonding agents.
7. Adhesives.
8. Semi rigid joint filler.
9. Joint-filler strips.
10. Repair materials.

D. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with requirements:
1. Aggregates. Include service record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali aggregate reactivity.

E. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements indicating compliance with specified tolerances.

F. Field quality-control reports.

G. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94 requirements for production facilities and equipment.
   1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."

C. Testing Agency Qualifications: See Section 01 45 23.
   1. Contractor’s responsibility to testing laboratory.
      a. Furnish all labor and materials as required to assist testing agency in obtaining, making and handling samples at the jobsite.
      b. Advise the Owner’s Testing Laboratory sufficiently in advance of operations to allow adequate time for the assignment of testing personnel.
      c. Furnish and maintain adequate facilities for proper curing of concrete test specimens on the project site in accordance with ASTM C31.

D. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from single source, and obtain admixtures from single source from single manufacturer.

E. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel."

F. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
   1. ACI 301, "Specifications for Structural Concrete."
   2. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."

G. Mockups: Cast concrete slab-on-grade and formed-surface panels to demonstrate typical joints, surface finish, texture, tolerances, floor treatments, and standard of workmanship.
   1. Build panel approximately 200 sq. ft. for slab-on-grade and 100 sq. ft. for formed surface in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.

H. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
   1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:
      a. Contractor's superintendent.
      b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
      c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
      d. Concrete subcontractor.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage. Avoid damaging coatings, if any, on steel reinforcement.

B. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

A. See Section 03 10 00.

## 2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. See Section 03 20 00.

## 2.3 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

A. See Section 03 20 00.

## 2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:
   1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type I/II, gray. Supplement with the following:
      a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F or C. Carbon content shall not exceed 3 percent by volume.
      b. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.

B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years of satisfactory service in similar applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.
   1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1-1/2 inches, 1 inch, or 3/4 inch nominal as indicated on Drawings for specific uses.
   2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.

C. Lightweight Aggregate: ASTM C 330, 3/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.

D. Water: ASTM C 94 and potable.

## 2.5 ADMIXTURES

A. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.

B. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that contain not more than 0.05 percent water soluble chloride ions. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
   1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.
   2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type B.
   3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D.
   4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type F.
   5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type G.
   6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017, Type II.

C. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      a. ChemMasters.
      b. Davis Colors.
      c. Dayton Superior Corporation.
      d. Hoover Color Corporation.
      e. Lambert Corporation.
      f. QC Construction Products.
      g. Rockwood Pigments NA, Inc.
      h. Scofield, L. M. Company.
      i. Solomon Colors, Inc.
   2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.6 FIBER REINFORCEMENT

A. Synthetic Macro-Fiber: Polyolefin macro-fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete, complying with ASTM C 1116, Type III, 1 to 2-1/4 inches long.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. 3M; Scotchcast Polyolefin Fibers 2".
      b. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Tuf-Strand SF.
      c. FORTA Corporation; FORTA FERRO.
      d. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co.; Strux 90/40.
      e. Nycon, Inc.; XL.
      f. Propex Concrete Systems Corp.; Fibermesh 650.
      g. Sika Corporation; Sika Fiber MS or MS10.

## 2.7 CONCRETE MIX DESIGNS

A. Selection of Proportions: Proportions of ingredients for concrete mixes shall be determined by a qualified concrete supplier in accordance with the requirements of ACI 301.

B. Required average strength above specified strength: Determination of required average strength above specified strength shall be based on the standard deviation record of the production facility in accordance with ACI 301. Calculation of standard deviation of compressive strength results shall be made in accordance with ACI 214. If a suitable record of strength tests is not available, proportions shall be selected on the basis of laboratory trial batches to produce an average strength greater than the strength f'c by the amount defined in ACI 301.

## 2.8 VAPOR RETARDERS

A. See Section 03 05 80.

## 2.9 FLOOR AND SLAB TREATMENTS

A. Slip-Resistive Emery Aggregate Finish: Factory-graded, packaged, rustproof, non-glazing, abrasive, crushed emery aggregate containing not less than 50 percent aluminum oxide and not less than 20 percent ferric oxide; unaffected by freezing, moisture, and cleaning materials with 100 percent passing No. 8 sieve.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; Emery.
      b. Dayton Superior Corporation; Emery Tuff Non-Slip.
      c. Lambert Corporation; EMAG-20.
      d. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Grip It.
      e. Metalcrete Industries; Metco Anti-Skid Aggregate.

B. Slip-Resistive Aluminum Granule Finish: Factory-graded, packaged, rustproof, nonglazing, abrasive aggregate of not less than 95 percent fused aluminum-oxide granules.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; A-H Alox.
      b. BASF Construction Chemicals - Building Systems; Frictex NS.
      c. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Grip It AO.

## 2.10 LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

A. VOC Content: Liquid floor treatments shall have a VOC content of 200 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Clear, chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or siliconate materials and proprietary components; odorless; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. ChemMasters; Chemisil Plus.
      b. ChemTec Int'l; ChemTec One.
      c. Conspec by Dayton Superior; Intraseal.
      d. Curecrete Distribution Inc.; Ashford Formula.
      e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day-Chem Sure Hard (J-17).

f. Edoco by Dayton Superior; Titan Hard.
g. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Euco Diamond Hard.
h. Kaufman Products, Inc.; SureHard.
i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Seal Hard.
j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; LIQUI-HARD.
k. Metalcrete Industries; Floorsaver.
l. Nox-Crete Products Group; Duro-Nox.
m. Symons by Dayton Superior; Buff Hard.
n. US SPEC, Division of US Mix Products Company; US SPEC Industraseal.
o. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Vexcon StarSeal PS Clear.

C. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatments for Polished Concrete Finish: Clear, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or siliconate materials and proprietary components; odorless; that penetrates, hardens, and is suitable for polished concrete surfaces.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
a. Advanced Floor Products; Retro-Plate 99.
b. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; FGS Hardener Plus.
c. QuestMark, a division of CentiMark Corporation; DiamondQuest Densifying Impregnator Application.

## 2.11 CURING MATERIALS

A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
a. Axim Italcementi Group, Inc.; CATEXOL CimFilm.
b. BASF Construction Chemicals - Building Systems; Confilm.
c. ChemMasters; SprayFilm.
d. Conspec by Dayton Superior; Aquafilm.
e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Film (J-74).
f. Edoco by Dayton Superior; BurkeFilm.
g. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Eucobar.
h. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Vapor-Aid.
i. Lambert Corporation; LAMBCO Skin.
j. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; E-CON.
k. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; EVAPRE.
l. Metalcrete Industries; Waterhold.
m. Nox-Crete Products Group; MONOFILM.
n. Sika Corporation; SikaFilm.
o. SpecChem, LLC; Spec Film.
p. Symons by Dayton Superior; Finishing Aid.
q. TK Products, Division of Sierra Corporation; TK-2120 TRI-FILM.
r. Unitex; PRO-FILM.
s. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex Envio Set.

B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.

C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.

D. Water: Potable.

E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Curing Compound #2 DR WB.
      b. BASF Construction Chemicals - Building Systems; Kure 200.
      c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
      d. Conspec by Dayton Superior; W.B. Resin Cure.
      e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day-Chem Rez Cure (J-11-W).
      f. Edoco by Dayton Superior; Res X Cure WB.
      g. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Kurez W VOX; TAMMSCURE WB 30C.
      h. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Thinfilm 420.
      i. Lambert Corporation; AQUA KURE - CLEAR.
      j. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M Cure R.
      k. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1100-CLEAR.
      l. Nox-Crete Products Group; Resin Cure E.
      m. Right Pointe; Clear Water Resin.
      n. SpecChem, LLC; Spec Rez Clear.
      o. Symons by Dayton Superior; Resi-Chem Clear.
      p. TK Products, Division of Sierra Corporation; TK-2519 DC WB.
      q. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex Enviocure 100.

F. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. BASF Construction Chemicals - Building Systems; Kure 1315.
      b. ChemMasters; Polyseal WB.
      c. Conspec by Dayton Superior; Sealcure 1315 WB.
      d. Edoco by Dayton Superior; Cureseal 1315 WB.
      e. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Super Diamond Clear VOX; LusterSeal WB 300.
      f. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Sure Cure 25 Emulsion.
      g. Lambert Corporation; UV Safe Seal.
      h. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Lumiseal WB Plus.
      i. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Vocomp-30.
      j. Metalcrete Industries; Metcure 30.
      k. Right Pointe; Right Sheen WB30.
      l. Symons by Dayton Superior; Cure & Seal 31 Percent E.
      m. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Vexcon Starseal 1315.
   2. VOC Content: Curing and sealing compounds shall have a VOC content of 200 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## 2.12 RELATED MATERIALS

A. Expansion and Isolation Joint Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.

B. Semi-rigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semi-rigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A shore durometer hardness of 80 per ASTM D 2240.

C. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.

D. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
   1. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.

E. Dovetail Anchor Slots: Hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet, not less than 0.034 inch thick, with bent tab anchors. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of slots to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.

## 2.13 REPAIR MATERIALS

A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
   1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, Portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
   2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
   3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
   4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109.

B. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/4 inch and that can be filled in over a scarified surface to match adjacent floor elevations.
   1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, Portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
   2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
   3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
   4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109.

## 2.14 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
   1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.

B. Cementitious Materials: Use fly ash, pozzolan, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume as needed to reduce the total amount of Portland cement, which would otherwise be used, as indicated in Structural General Notes.

C. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.06 percent by weight of cement.

D. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Use water-reducing, high-range water-reducing, or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
   2. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
   3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a water-cementitious materials ratio below 0.50.
   4. Use corrosion-inhibiting admixture in concrete mixtures where indicated.

E. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture according to manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

## 2.15 NON-SHRINK GROUT

A. Grout shall be prepackaged, non metallic, and non gaseous. It shall be non-shrink when tested in accordance with ASTM-C1107 Grade B or C at a fluid consistency (flow cone) of 20 to 30 seconds. Thirty-minute-old grout shall flow through the flow cone after slight agitation, in temperatures of 40 degrees to 90 degrees Fahrenheit. Grout shall be bleed free and attain 7,500 psi compressive strength in 28 days at fluid consistency. Certified independent test data required. Approved products include the following:
   1. “Euco NS” by Euclid Chemical Company
   2. “Masterflow 713” by Master Builders.

## 2.16 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

A. Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as indicated in Structural General Notes:

## 2.17 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.18 CONCRETE MIXING

A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94 and ASTM C 1116, and furnish batch ticket information.
   1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FORMWORK

A. See Section 03 10 00.

### 3.2 EMBEDDED ITEMS

A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
   1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
   2. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures as indicated.

### 3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

A. See Section 03 10 00.

### 3.4 SHORES AND RESHORES

A. See Section 03 10 00.

### 3.5 VAPOR RETARDERS/BARRIERS

A. See Section 03 05 80.

### 3.6 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. See Section 03 20 00

## 3.7 JOINTS

A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.

B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
   1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
   2. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
   3. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
   4. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
   5. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
   6. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
   7. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.

C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
   1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
   2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.

D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
   1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface where joint sealants are specified or otherwise indicated.
   3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.

E. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

## 3.8 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.

B. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect.

C. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.
   1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.

D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
   1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth to not exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
   2. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
   3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.

E. Do not permit concrete to drop freely any distance greater than 10’-0” for concrete containing a high range water reducing admixture or 5’-0” for other concrete. Provide chute or tremie to place concrete where longer drops are necessary. Do not place concrete into excavations with standing water. If place of deposit cannot be pumped dry, pour concrete through a tremie with its outlet near the bottom of the place of deposit.

F. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
   1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
   2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
   3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
   4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
   5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

G. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.

1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.

H. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 305 and as follows:
1. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

## 3.9 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

A. See Section 03 10 00.

## 3.10 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.

B. Scratch Finish: While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screeded and bull-floated or darbied. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes to produce a profile amplitude of 1/4 inch in one direction.
1. Apply scratch finish to surfaces indicated and/or to receive concrete floor toppings or to receive mortar setting beds for bonded cementitious floor finishes.

C. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
1. Apply float finish to surfaces indicated and/or to receive trowel finish and to be covered with fluid-applied or sheet waterproofing, built-up or membrane roofing, or sand-bed terrazzo.

D. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces indicated and/or exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system.
2. Finish surfaces according to ASTM E 1155, for a randomly trafficked floor surface.

E. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces indicated or where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thin-set method. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.
   1. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel-finished floor surfaces.

F. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
   1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

G. Slip-Resistive Finish: Before final floating, apply slip-resistive finish where indicated and to concrete stair treads, platforms, and ramps. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
   1. Uniformly spread 25 lb/100 sq. ft. of dampened slip-resistivegranules over surface in one or two applications. Tamp aggregate flush with surface, but do not force below surface.
   2. After broadcasting and tamping, apply float finish.
   3. After curing, lightly work surface with a steel wire brush or an abrasive stone and water to expose slip-resistive granules.

## 3.11 CONCRETE FLOOR FINISH TOLERANCES

A. Interior Finish Floor surfaces to the following tolerances, measured within 24 hours according to ASTM E 1155, "Standard Test Method for Determining Floor Flatness and Levelness Using the F-Number System." The following values apply before removal of shores. Levelness values F(L) do not apply to intentionally sloped or cambered areas, nor to slabs poured on metal deck or precast concrete.
   1. Exposed, vinyl tiled, or thin-set tiled floors: Specified overall values of flatness, Ff =35; and levelness, Fl =25; with minimum local values of flatness, Ff =24; and levelness, Fl =17.
   2. Carpeted floors, floors under concrete toppings, thickset tile and terrazzo: Specified overall values of flatness, Ff =25; and levelness, Fl = 20; with minimum local values of flatness, Ff =17; and levelness, Fl =15.

B. Floor Elevation Tolerance Envelope:
   1. The acceptable tolerance envelope for absolute elevation of any point on the slab surface, with respect to the elevation shown on the Drawings, is as follows:
      a. Slab-on-Grade, or Slab-on-Void Construction: +/- 3/4"
      b. Top surfaces of formed slabs measured prior to removal of supporting shores: +/- 3/4"
      c. Top surfaces of all other slabs: +/- 3/4"
      d. Slabs specified to slope shall have a tolerance from the specified slope of 3/8" in 10'-0" at any point, up to 3/4" from theoretical elevation at any point.

## 3.12 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.

B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.

C. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as shown on Drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment at correct elevations, complying with diagrams or templates from manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.

D. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items. Cast-in inserts and accessories as shown on Drawings. Screed, tamp, and trowel finish concrete surfaces.

## 3.13 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.

B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.

C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for the remainder of the curing period.

D. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.

E. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
   1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
      a. Water.
      b. Continuous water-fog spray.
      c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.

2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
    a. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings.
    b. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive penetrating liquid floor treatments.
    c. Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer certifies will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
    a. Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
4. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

## 3.14 LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Prepare, apply, and finish penetrating liquid floor treatment according to manufacturers written instructions.
    1. Remove curing compounds, sealers, oil, dirt, laitance, and other contaminants and complete surface repairs.
    2. Do not apply to concrete that is less than 28 days' old.
    3. Apply liquid until surface is saturated, scrubbing into surface until a gel forms; rewet; and repeat brooming or scrubbing. Rinse with water; remove excess material until surface is dry. Apply a second coat in a similar manner if surface is rough or porous.

B. Polished Concrete Floor Treatment: Apply polished concrete finish system to cured and prepared slabs to match accepted mockup.
    1. Machine grind floor surfaces to receive polished finishes level and smooth and to depth required to reveal aggregate to match approved mockup.
    2. Apply penetrating liquid floor treatment for polished concrete in polishing sequence and according to manufacturer's written instructions, allowing recommended drying time between successive coats.
    3. Continue polishing with progressively finer grit diamond polishing pads to gloss level to match approved mockup.

4. Control and dispose of waste products produced by grinding and polishing operations.
5. Neutralize and clean polished floor surfaces.

C. Sealing Coat: Uniformly apply a continuous sealing coat of curing and sealing compound to hardened concrete by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.15 JOINT FILLING

A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least six month(s). Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.

B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.

C. Install semi-rigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches deep in formed joints. Overfill joint and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

## 3.16 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.

B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of one part Portland cement to two and one-half parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.

C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension to solid concrete. Limit cut depth to 3/4 inch. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white Portland cement and standard Portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.

D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high

areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.

1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.

E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.

F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

## 3.17 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing and Inspecting: See Section 01 45 23.
   1. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
   2. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.

## 3.18 PROTECTION OF LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

A. Protect liquid floor treatment from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by liquid floor treatments installer.

END OF SECTION 03 30 00

# SECTION 04 20 00 - UNIT MASONRY ASSEMBLIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes unit masonry assemblies consisting of the following:
   1. Concrete masonry units (CMU's).
   2. Face brick.
   3. Mortar and grout.
   4. Reinforcing steel.
   5. Masonry joint reinforcement.
   6. Ties and anchors.
   7. Embedded flashing.
   8. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 07 Section - Flashing and Sheet Metal for exposed sheet metal flashing.
   2. Division 07 Section - Firestopping for firestopping at openings in masonry walls.
   3. Division 07 Section - Joint Sealants for sealing control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
   4. Division 07 Section - Thermal Insulation for cavity wall insulation.

C. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:
   1. Dovetail slots for masonry anchors, installed under Division 03 Section - Cast-in-Place Concrete.
   2. Anchor sections of adjustable masonry anchors for connecting to structural frame, installed under Division 05 Section - Structural Steel.

D. Products installed, but not furnished, under this Section include the following:
   1. Steel lintels and shelf angles for unit masonry, furnished under Division 05 Section - Metal Fabrications.
   2. Manufactured reglets in masonry joints for metal flashing, furnished under Division 07 Section - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim.
   3. Cast-stone trim in unit masonry.
   4. Cavity wall insulation

### 1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).

B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing horizontal reinforcing and vertical steel reinforcing in grouted cells.

C. MCAA: Masonry Contractors Association of America

## 1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
   1. Masonry Units: Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
   2. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement." Show elevations of reinforced walls.
   3. Fabricated Flashing: Detail corner units, end-dam units, and other special applications.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of the following:
   1. Face brick, in the form of straps of five or more bricks.
   2. Concrete Masonry Units: full size soap or block sample for each color and finish other than standard CMU.
   3. Pigmented and colored-aggregate mortar. Make Samples using same sand and mortar ingredients to be used on Project. Label Samples to indicate types and amounts of pigments used.
   4. Weep holes/vents.
   5. Accessories embedded in masonry.

D. List of Materials Used in Constructing Mockups: List generic product names together with manufacturers, manufacturers' product names, model numbers, lot numbers, batch numbers, source of supply, and other information as required to identify materials used. Include mix proportions for mortar and grout and source of aggregates.
   1. Submittal is for information only. Neither receipt of list nor approval of mockup constitutes approval of deviations from the Contract Documents unless such deviations are specifically brought to the attention of Architect and approved in writing.

E. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

F. Installer Qualifications: Submit evidence of contractor state license, MCAA company certification and personnel training and experience in constructing masonry structures of similar nature to this project, with a minimum of 5 years of on the job successful construction experience. List project superintendent for masonry work’s, experience, training and certifications.

G. Material Certificates: Include statements of material properties indicating compliance with requirements including compliance with standards and type designations within standards. Provide for each type and size of the following:
   1. Masonry units.
      a. Include material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.
      b. For bricks, include size-variation data verifying that actual range of sizes falls within specified tolerances.
      c. For exposed brick, include material test report for efflorescence according to ASTM C 67.
      d. For masonry units used in structural masonry, include data and calculations establishing average net-area compressive strength of units.
   2. Cementitious materials. Include brand, type, and name of manufacturer.
   3. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
   4. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
   5. Reinforcing bars.
   6. Joint reinforcement.
   7. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.

H. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
   1. Include test reports, per ASTM C 780, for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification.
   2. Include test reports, per ASTM C 1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.

I. Cold-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with cold-weather requirements.

## 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1093 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.

B. Applicator's Qualifications:
   1. Supervision: Maintain competent supervisor who is at Project during times specified Work is in progress, and, who is experienced in installing systems similar to type and scope required for Project.
   2. Experience: Company licensed in the State where the work will be performed and a MCAA certified company in good standing with not less than 5 years continuous experience under the current name in performing specified work similar in design, products, and extent to scope of this Project; with a record of successful in-service performance; and with sufficient production capability, facilities, and personnel to produce required Work.
   3. Upon request, submit list of a minimum of 5 completed projects of comparable or greater size and complexity to this Work. Include for each project:
      a. Project name and location.
      b. Name and contact information for Owner.
      c. Name and contact information of General Contractor (if applicable).
      d. Name and contact information of Architect.
      e. Date of completion.

C. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, through one source from a single manufacturer for each product required.

D. Fabrication of Acoustical Concrete Masonry Units: Carefully controlled use of the molds shall be employed so all units have one end of the cavities tightly closed. Slots and edges shall be straight and clean. Where units with metal inserts or fibrous or laminated fillers are called for, filler elements as supplied by the The Proudfoot Company shall be installed in the cavities of the blocks at the block plant. The filler shall be of specially fabricated incombustible fibrous material, cut accurately to size and installed as recommended. The fillers shall have metal septa laminated to one side of the fibrous material and shall be installed with the septa facing away from the slots. Where units with bare metal septa are called for, the bare (without fibrous material) metal septa shall be fabricated of 28 gauge, galvanized steel, furnished by the Proudfoot Company and installed in each cavity in the recommended manner at the block plant.

E. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients for each type exposed unpainted masonry of a uniform quality, including color, from a single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from one source or producer for each aggregate.

F. Preconstruction Testing Service: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform preconstruction testing indicated below. Payment for these services will be made by Owner. Retesting of materials that fail to meet specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.

1. Prism Test: For each type of construction required, per ASTM C 1314.

G. Mockups: Build free standing pre-construction mockup [s] to verify selections made under Sample submittals, demonstrate understanding of the complete wall construction, demonstrate typical construction and waterproofing details, demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.

H. Sample Panels: Build up to three sample panels to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section - Quality Requirements for mockups.
   1. Build sample panels for each type of exposed unit masonry construction at in sizes approximately 84 inches by 60 inches high by full thickness.
   2. Protect approved sample panels from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
   3. Approval of sample panels is for color, texture, and blending of masonry units; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints; aesthetic qualities of workmanship; and other material and construction qualities specifically approved by Architect in writing.
      a. Approval of sample panels does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in sample panels unless such deviations are specifically approved by Architect in writing.

I. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section - Project Management and Coordination.

## 1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.

B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.

C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for lifting and emptying into dispensing silo. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location or in a metal dispensing silo with weatherproof cover.

E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

## 1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
   1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides and hold cover securely in place.
   2. Where 1 wythe of multiwythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of 24 inches down face next to unconstructed wythe and hold cover in place.

B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least 3 days after building masonry walls or columns.

C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
   1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
   2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
   3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
   4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.

D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
   1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and above and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than 7 days after completing cleaning.

E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.

B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.

### 2.02 MASONRY UNITS, GENERAL

A. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to exceed tolerances and to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated in the standard. Do not uses units where such defects, including dimensions that vary from specified dimensions by more than stated tolerances, will be exposed in the completed Work or will impair the quality of completed masonry.

B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide units that comply with requirements for fire-resistance ratings indicated as determined by testing according to ASTM E 119, by equivalent masonry thickness, or by other means, as acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### 2.03 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS (CMU'S)

A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows:
   1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, partial height wall caps, bonding, and other special conditions.
   2. Provide custom shapes for all outside corners that are not 90 degrees.
   3. Where burnished CMU units are shown to have exposed burnished ends, tops, or double sided burnished finish, provide units with additional factory burnished faces.

4. Provide bullnose units at all exposed interior outside corners, including corners of door and window openings, of finished CMU walls and bullnosed blocks with solid top at CMU window sills not indicated to receive other sill material on top of the CMU sill.
    a. Bullnoses may be site-tooled for standard and burnished block provided mockups for site tooling and finishing are approved by Architect.
    b. Provide square-edged units for other outside corners, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C 90.
1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 1900 psi.
2. Weight Classification: Normal weight, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less than nominal dimensions.
4. Exposed Faces: Provide color and texture matching the range represented by Architect's sample.

C. Decorative CMUs: ASTM C 90.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following or approved equal:
    a. Basis of Design - Burnished CMU, as manufactured by Revels Block & Brick Co. Inc.,.
    b. Burnished CMU, as manufactured by Best Block Construction Materials (Contact: Barb Lyons, 832-270-6230, barb.lyons@bestblock.com).
2. Size: 8” thickness.
3. Colors:
    a. Blend 1: #750 – Cream.
    b. Blend 2: #355 – Limestone.

## 2.04 MASONRY LINTELS

A. Masonry Lintels: Prefabricated or built-in-place masonry lintels made from bond beam concrete masonry units with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout. Cure precast lintels before handling and installing. Temporarily support built-in-place lintels until cured.

## 2.05 BRICK

A. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows:
1. For ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces, provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished.
2. Provide special shapes for applications where stretcher units cannot accommodate special conditions, including those at corners, movement joints, bond beams, sashes, and lintels.
3. Provide special shapes for applications requiring brick of size, form, color, and texture on exposed surfaces that cannot be produced by sawing.
4. Provide special shapes for applications where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.
5. Provide custom shapes at all outside, non-ninety degree corners.

B. Face Brick: ASTM C 216, Grade MW or SW, Type FBS.
1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 3000 psi.
2. Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than 30 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested per ASTM C 67.
3. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested according to ASTM C 67 and is rated "not effloresced."

4. Application: Use where brick is exposed, pattern as indicated on the drawings, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide unit sizes and colors to match existing school masonry. Contractor to confirm colors below match existing masonry field color:
    a. Timberwood Middle School:
        1) Size: King (typical).
        2) Texture: to match existing.
        3) Color: Twilight Pink.

## 2.06 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement with pigments as required to produce mortar color indicated:
    1. Match existing mortar color at masonry repair and all new brick masonry.

B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.

C. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes and complying with ASTM C 979. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
    1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
        a. Davis Colors; True Tone Mortar Colors.
        b. Lanxess Corporation; Bayferrox Iron Oxide Pigments.
        c. Solomon Colors, Inc.; SGS Mortar Colors.

D. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with CMUs only, containing integral water repellent by same manufacturer.
    1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
        a. ACM Chemistries, Inc.; RainBloc for Mortar.
        b. BASF; MasterPel 240 Mortar Admixture.
        c. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Dry-Block Mortar Admixture.

E. Workability Additive (Face Brick only): "A" Marble Dust by Armco Steel Corp., 90/200 Mineral Filler by Limestone Products.

F. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.
    1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
    2. For joints less than 1/4 inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.

G. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.

H. Tuck Pointing Grout for Resin Faced block (Astra-Glaze): Epoxy Mortar and Grout Mix, meeting ANSI 118.3, and resistant to swimming pool water chemicals: Pro-Spec Bonsal B-7000, mixed with BONSAL Polymer Modified Sanded Tile Grout, and with thickener additive as recommended by grout Manufacturer; or equal as acceptable to glazed CMU block Manufacturer and approved by Architect.

## 2.07 REINFORCEMENT

A. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M or ASTM A 996/A 996M, Grade 60.

B. Masonry Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A 951/A 951M.
    1. Interior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon steel.

2. Exterior Walls: Stainless Steel Type 304.
3. Wire Size for Side Rods: 0.187-inch diameter.
4. Wire Size for Cross Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
5. Wire Size for Veneer Ties: 0.187-inch diameter.
6. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches o.c.
7. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet, with prefabricated corner and tee units.

C. Masonry Joint Reinforcement for Single-Wythe Masonry: Either ladder or truss type with single pair of side rods, unless otherwise noted in Structural Drawings or Specifications.

D. Masonry Joint Reinforcement for Multi-wythe Masonry:
1. Adjustable (two-piece) type, either ladder or truss design, with one side rod at each face shell of backing wythe unless otherwise noted in Structural Drawings or specifications, and with separate adjustable ties with pintle-and-eye connections having a maximum adjustment of 1-1/4 inches. Size ties to extend at least halfway through facing wythe but with at least 5/8-inch cover on outside face.
2. Available products:
   a. Dur-O-Wall; Truss design DA3700 Dur-O-Eye.
   b. Wire-Bond; Series 900 Level Hook and Eye Truss.

E. Use reinforcing ladders one size smaller than nominal block size, or as directed by Manufacturer, at helmholtz resonator acoustical blocks.

## 2.08 TIES AND ANCHORS

A. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in subsequent paragraphs that are made from materials that comply with subparagraphs below, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Stainless Steel, Type 304, ASTM A580/ASTM 580M.

B. Wire Ties, General: Unless otherwise indicated, size wire ties to extend at least halfway through veneer but with at least 5/8-inch cover on outside face. Outer ends of wires are bent 90 degrees and extend 2 inches parallel to face of veneer.

C. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Structure: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
1. Connector Section for Concrete: Dovetail tabs for inserting into dovetail slots in concrete and attached to tie section; formed from 0.053-inch- thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication.

D. Adjustable Masonry-Veneer Anchors at metal studs
1. General: Provide anchors that allow vertical adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall, for attachment over sheathing to wood or metal studs, and as follows:
   a. Structural Performance Characteristics: Capable of withstanding a 100-lbf load in both tension and compression without deforming or developing play in excess of 0.05 inch.
2. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a wire tie and a metal anchor section.
   a. Anchor Section: Rib-stiffened, sheet metal plate with screw holes top and bottom, and having slotted holes for inserting vertical legs of wire tie specially formed to fit anchor section.
   b. Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from 0.067-inch-thick, Stainless Steel, Type 304, ASTM A580/ASTM 580M.
   c. Wire Ties: Triangular-, rectangular-, or T-shaped wire ties fabricated from 0.188-inch-diameter, Stainless Steel, Type 304, ASTM A580/ASTM 580M.
   d. Available Products: Basis of Design Product**[s]** are:

1) For Coursed Masonry: Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
   a) X-Seal Anchor
   b) HB-213-2X Anchor
   c) Provide with membrane flashing tape at air barrier, provided and installed under Division 07 "Air Barrier" Section(s), or : Hohmann & Barnard, Inc. X-Seal Tape may be substituted if allowed by air barrier manufacturer.

3. Stainless-Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: Proprietary fastener consisting of carbon-steel drill point and 300 Series stainless-steel shank, complying with ASTM C 954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene washer, No. 10 diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than three exposed threads.
   a. Available Products:
      1) Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; Stainless Steel SX Fastener.
      2) ITW Buildex; Scots long life Teks.

## 2.09 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Flexible Flashing (Copper Composite): For flashing not exposed to the exterior, use the following, unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Copper-Laminated Flashing: ASTM B370, CDA Alloy 110, 3-oz./sq. ft. copper core laminated polymer fabric on both sides with non-asphaltic adhesive. Extend flashing past face of brick and trim flush after inspection.
      a. Product:
         1) York Manufacturing, Inc.; York Copper Fabric Flashing, "Multi-Flash 500".
         2) STS Coatings, Inc.; Wall Guardian Copper TWF
         3) Wire-Bond, Inc.; Copper Seal
   2. Copper Laminated Flashing shall not be used for any flashings that will be exposed to view in the completed work. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for material type(s) for embedded flashings that are exposed to view or partially exposed to view. General Contractor shall coordinate responsibility to provide and install other flashing types.

B. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.
   1. One part 100% solids, solvent-free formulated silyl-terminated polyether (STPE), ASTM C920-11, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, York "Universeal US100" or equivalent.

C. Termination bars: Provide stainless steel termination bars in cavity walls where copper flashing will be installed with termination bars to concrete block backup and with waterproof sealant to protect top side of terminations.
   1. Do not use termination bars at face of sheathing unless specifically detailed otherwise in the Drawings. Through-wall flashings at stud construction shall extend through and turn up behind exterior sheathing and ci insulation. Air barrier system materials (per Division 07 Air Barrier Sections) shall lap over and down the face of the through-wall flashings.
   2. Termination Bars for Flexible Flashing: #304 Stainless steel sheet 0.090 inch by 3/4 inches minimum with a 3/16 inch minimum sealant flange at top, 8 inch oc pre-punched bolt holes minimum.
   3. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. OMG Roofing Products
      b. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc. (T1 with Foam-Tite option)
      c. Wire-Bond.
      d. <Insert manufacturer's name>.

## 2.10 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene.

B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.

C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated, organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).

D. Weep/Vent Products:
   1. Cellular Plastic Weep/Vent: One-piece, flexible extrusion made from UV-resistant polypropylene copolymer, full height and width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch less than depth of outer wythe, in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
      a. Available Products:
         1) Advanced Building Products Inc.; Mortar Maze weep vent.
         2) Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; Cell Vents.
         3) Heckmann Building Products Inc.; No. 85 Cell Vent.
         4) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; Quadro-Vent.
         5) Wire-Bond; Cell Vent.

E. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.
   1. Provide one of the following configurations:
      a. Strips, full-depth of cavity and 10 inches wide, with dovetail shaped notches 7 inches deep that prevent mesh from being clogged with mortar droppings.
      b. Strips, not less than 1-1/2 inches thick and 10 inches wide, with dimpled surface designed to catch mortar droppings and prevent weep holes from being clogged with mortar.
   2. Available Products:
      a. Advanced Building Products Inc.; Mortar Break II.
      b. Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; Polytite MortarStop.
      c. Mortar Net USA, Ltd.; Mortar Net.

F. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells with loops for holding reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.142-inch steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units with either two loops or four loops as needed for number of bars indicated.
   1. Available Products:
      a. Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; D/A 810, D/A 812 or D/A 817.
      b. Heckmann Building Products Inc.; No. 376 Rebar Positioner.
      c. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; #RB or #RB-Twin Rebar Positioner.
      d. Wire-Bond; O-Ring or Double O-Ring Rebar Positioner.
   2. In event of conflict with reinforcing bar positions required in Structural Drawings, provide type indicated in Structural Drawings.

## 2.11 MASONRY CLEANERS

A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned. The use of muriatic acid is prohibited.
   1. Available Manufacturers:
      a. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.

b. EaCo Chem, Inc.
c. ProSoCo, Inc.

2. Do not use materials or methods that can damage masonry finishes. Use only manufacturer's approved products and methods.
   a. [At resin faced units (Astra-Glaze), do not powerwash or use acid or abrasive cleaners, or steel wool, sandpaper or other abrasive materials that can damage the glazed finish.]

## 2.12 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
   2. Limit cementitious materials in mortar to portland cement and lime.
   3. Limit cementitious materials in mortar for exterior masonry to portland cement and lime.
   4. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.

B. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Property Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated or needed to provide required compressive strength of masonry.
   1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type S.
   2. For reinforced masonry, use Type S.
   3. For mortar parge coats, use Type S.
   4. For exterior, above-grade, load-bearing and non-load-bearing walls and parapet walls; for interior load-bearing walls; for interior non-load-bearing partitions; and for other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.
   5. Incorporate color pigment in mortar as required to match existing masonry walls
   6. Use workability additive for brick masonry.

C. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product.
   1. Application: Use pigmented mortar for exposed mortar joints at all brick masonry as required to match existing masonry walls.
   2. Final colors as approved by mock-up review.

D. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.
   1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with Table 1.15.1 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
   2. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.

## 2.13 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform source quality-control testing indicated below:
   1. Payment for these services will be made by Owner.
   2. Retesting of materials failing to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.

B. Clay Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit furnished, per ASTM C 67.

C. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit furnished, per ASTM C 140.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
   1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of work.
   2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
   3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.

B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.02 COORDINATION

A. Contractor is responsible to coordinate between trades prior to concrete slab pours to avoid conflicts with CMU wall construction, including but not limited to the following:
   1. Positions, sizes, and other requirements for locating all reinforcing coming up through slab. Unless otherwise noted in Structural Drawings, post-installation with epoxy anchors is not an equivalent method of installation. Any request to substitute post-installed anchors in masonry construction should be pre-approved by Contractor via RFI to the Structural Engineer of record, and the Structural Engineer may reject requests for such substitution.
   2. Coordinate all conduits and pipes as shown on MEP drawings for concealed installation to greatest extent possible.
   3. Reinforced / grouted cells will not be in conflict with electrical conduits, plumbing pipes, or other items built into CMU cells. This includes the quantity, sizes, and locations to comply with all notes, specific location details, and typical details, as indicated in the Structural Drawings.
      a. A large number of conduits in a line could cause non-compliance with Structural requirements, either for the CMU wall, or in the concrete slab. In areas where many conduits are required for electrical items, request clarification from Architect and Structural Engineer as to allowable routings of conduits to avoid adverse impact on the structural system.
   4. Confirm sill sealer gaskets are installed where studs meet concrete slabs, prior to beginning veneer installation.

## 3.03 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls and other masonry construction to full thickness shown. Build single-wythe walls to actual widths of masonry units, using units of widths indicated.

B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.

C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match the construction immediately adjacent to opening.

D. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed. Do not install any cut units at corner conditions.

E. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures.
   1. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.

F. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested per ASTM C 67. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying. Do not wet CMU.

G. Comply with construction tolerances in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 and with the following:
   1. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
   2. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
   3. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
   4. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch. Do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
   5. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch. Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch.
   6. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.
   7. For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a straight line by more than 1/16 inch from one masonry unit to the next.

## 3.04 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.

B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs. Match pattern of existing masonry walls.

C. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond or bonded by lapping not less than 4-inches. Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.

D. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by racking back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.

E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items. Install pipes and conduit as shown on MEP drawings, and conceal within masonry cells all locations. Alert Architect to conflicts before installation.

F. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below and rod mortar or grout into core.

H. Fill cores in hollow concrete masonry units with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items, unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Fill all cores of CMU at storm shelter impact-resisting perimeter walls, and any other locations so indicated in Structural Drawings.

I. Build non-load-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above, unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.
   2. Fasten partition top anchors to structure above and build into top of partition. Grout cells of CMUs solidly around plastic tubes of anchors and push tubes down into grout to provide 1/2-inch clearance between end of anchor rod and end of tube. Space anchors 48 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
   3. Wedge non-load-bearing partitions against structure above with small pieces of tile, slate, or metal. Fill joint with mortar after dead-load deflection of structure above approaches final position.
   4. At fire-rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Division 07 Section - Fire-Resistive Joint Systems.

## 3.05 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

A. Lay hollow brick and concrete masonry units as follows:
   1. With face shells fully bedded in mortar and with head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
   2. With webs fully bedded in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
   3. With webs fully bedded in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
   4. With entire units, including areas under cells, fully bedded in mortar at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.

B. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.

C. Mortar joints to be tooled (concave), except special joints as detailed.

D. Epoxy Grouted Joints at Resin Faced (Astra-Glaze) Block: All exposed joints at resin faced side of block.
   1. General: The glazed facing shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C744 when viewed from a distance of five (5) feet at right angles to the wall with normal lighting.
   2. Rake back mortar to minimum depth of 1/4" (maximum 1/2" depth).
   3. Clean mortar in compliance with block Manufacturer's recommendations, prior to complete setting of the mortar.
   4. Install grout joints in compliance with block and grout Manufacturers' instructions and as follows:
      a. Mix approved water and pool chemical resistant grout per Manufacturer's recommendations. Do not add water to mix.
      b. Tuck point joints with approved water and pool chemical resistant grout. Apply with mortar gun or other approved method. DO NOT FLOAT grout across the surface of the block, as this can result in staining or difficult to clean haze or smears.
      c. Neatly tool grout joints to concave shape. Immediately remove excess grout, smears, and spills from surfaces of resin faced block.
   5. Keep the face of faced block clean during installation and as work progresses. Do not allow excess mortar and grout lumps or smears to harden on the glazed surfaces. Remove mortar and grout with non-abrasive cloth and methods as approved by Manufacturer.

## 3.06 CAVITY WALLS

A. Bond wythes of cavity walls together using one of the following methods:
   1. Individual Metal Ties: Provide ties as shown installed in horizontal joints, but not less than one metal tie for 1.77 sq. ft. of wall area spaced not to exceed 16 inches o.c. horizontally and 16 inches o.c. vertically. Stagger ties in alternate courses. Provide

additional ties within 12 inches of openings and space not more than 36 inches apart around perimeter of openings. At intersecting and abutting walls, provide ties at no more than 24 inches o.c. vertically.
    a. Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable (two-piece) type ties.
    b. Where one wythe is of clay masonry and the other of concrete masonry, use adjustable (two-piece) type ties to allow for differential movement regardless of whether bed joints align.
2. Masonry Joint Reinforcement: Installed in horizontal mortar joints.
    a. Where bed joints of both wythes align, use ladder-type reinforcement extending across both wythes.
    b. Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable (two-piece) type reinforcement.
    c. Where one wythe is of clay masonry and the other of concrete masonry, use adjustable (two-piece) type reinforcement to allow for differential movement regardless of whether bed joints align.

B. Keep cavities clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Bevel beds away from cavity, to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into cavity.

C. Coat cavity face of backup wythe to comply with Division 07 Section - Bituminous Dampproofing. Where indicated on drawings.

D. Installing Cavity Wall Insulation: Place small dabs of adhesive, spaced approximately 12 inches o.c. both ways, on inside face of insulation boards, or attach with plastic fasteners designed for this purpose. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other confining obstructions in cavity, with edges butted tightly both ways. Press units firmly against inside wythe of masonry or other construction as shown.
    1. Fill cracks and open gaps in insulation with crack sealer compatible with insulation and masonry.

## 3.07 CONCRETE MASONRY JOINT REINFORCEMENT

A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches.
    1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches o.c.
    2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls, and at storm shelter perimeter walls forming the impact-resistant shell of the Storm Shelter.
    3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches beyond openings.
        a. Reinforcement above is in addition to continuous reinforcement.

B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.

D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.

E. Cut and bend reinforcing units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at corners, returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.

## 3.08 ANCHORING MASONRY VENEERS

A. Anchor masonry veneers to wall framing or concrete and masonry backup with masonry-veneer anchors to comply with the following requirements:

1. Fasten screw-attached anchors through sheathing to wall framing and to concrete and masonry backup with metal fasteners of type indicated. Use two fasteners unless anchor design only uses one fastener.
2. Insert slip-in anchors in metal studs as sheathing is installed. Provide one anchor at each stud in each horizontal joint between sheathing boards.
3. Embed tie sections in masonry joints. Provide not less than 2 inches of air space between back of masonry veneer and face of insulation.
4. Locate anchor sections to allow maximum vertical differential movement of ties up and down.
5. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 16 inches o.c. vertically and 16 inches o.c. horizontally, with not less than 1 anchor for each 2 sq. ft. of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings and at intervals, not exceeding 8 inches, around perimeter.
6. Provide self-sealing tape to seal around shaft of screw and legs of anchor at the point of penetration. Unless otherwise indicated in Division 07 "Air Barrier" sections, tape may be applied at each anchor or in continuous vertical strips, however continuous strips are highly recommended where exterior insulation will visually obscure the tape locations at the air barrier.

## 3.09 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

A. General: Install control and expansion joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.

B. Form control joints in concrete masonry as follows using one of the following methods:
   1. Fit bond-breaker strips into hollow contour in ends of concrete masonry units on one side of control joint. Fill resultant core with grout and rake out joints in exposed faces for application of sealant.
   2. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.
   3. Install interlocking units designed for control joints. Install bond-breaker strips at joint. Keep head joints free and clear of mortar or rake out joint for application of sealant.
   4. Install temporary foam-plastic filler in head joints and remove filler when unit masonry is complete for application of sealant.

C. Form expansion joints in brick made from clay or shale as follows:
   1. Build in compressible joint fillers where indicated.
   2. Form open joint full depth of brick wythe and of width indicated, but not less than 3/8 inch for installation of sealant and backer rod specified in Division 07 Section - Joint Sealants.

D. Location of expansion joints:
   1. At long walls no greater than 25 feet maximum.
   2. At offsets in walls.
   3. Near corners (10 ft. maximum).
   4. At intersections of walls.
   5. Where short runs of masonry intersect long runs of masonry.
   6. Where materials of different coefficients of thermal expansion are joined.

E. Form open joint full depth of brick wythe and of width indicated, but not less Provide horizontal, pressure-relieving joints by inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Division 07 Section - Joint Sealants, but not less than 3/8 inch.
   1. Locate horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry.

## 3.10 LINTELS

A. Install steel lintels where indicated.

B. Provide masonry lintels where shown and where openings of more than 12 inches for brick-size units and 24 inches for block-size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels.

C. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches at each jamb, unless otherwise indicated.

## 3.11 FLASHING, WEEPS, CAVITY DRAINAGE, AND VENTS

A. General: Install embedded flashing and weeps in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated. Install vents at 2'-0" on center at top of masonry walls shelf angles, ledges, and other obstructions to upward flow of air in cavities, and where indicated. Embed flashing in manufacturer's recommended sealant. Seal lap joints as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Install flashing as follows, unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
   2. At multi-wythe masonry walls, including cavity walls, extend flashing through outer wythe, across air space behind veneer, behind ci insulation and turned up face of bituminous coated masonry inner wythe a minimum of 8 inches. Secure to the inner wythe with continuous termination bar. Seal top of termination bar and install ci insulation over flashing.
   3. At stud-framed walls with masonry-veneer walls, extend flashing through veneer, across air space behind veneer, up face of sheathing at least 8 inches, through sheathing and up back of sheathing a minimum of 4 inches. Install ci insulation and water/vapor barrier over flashing.
   4. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing a minimum of 6 inches into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches at ends, turn up and fold not less than 2 inches to create a folded end dam, per manufacturers recommendations & literature.
   5. Cut flexible flashing off flush with face of wall after masonry wall construction is completed and reviewed by architect.

C. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where they are shown to be built into masonry.

D. Install weeps in head joints in exterior wythes of first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing and as follows:
   1. Use specified weep/vent products to form weeps.
   2. Form weeps above flashing under brick sills.
   3. Space weeps 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

E. Place cavity drainage material in cavities to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in Part 2 "Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories" Article. At a minimum, place Mortar Net to a height equal to the height of the first course, but not less than 8 inches. Place immediately above the top of flashings embedded in the wall, as masonry construction progresses, to catch mortar droppings and to maintain drainage.

F. Install vents in head joints in exterior wythes at spacing indicated. Use specified weep/vent products to form vents.
   1. Close cavities off vertically and horizontally with blocking in manner indicated. Install through-wall flashing and weep holes above horizontal blocking.

G. Install sill sealer at sill plate per manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.12 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY INSTALLATION

A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
   1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
   2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other temporary loads that may be placed on them during construction.

B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
   1. Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
   2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches.

## 3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage special inspectors to perform tests and inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas as needed to perform tests and inspections. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.

B. Inspections: Special inspections according to Level **C** in TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.
   1. Begin masonry construction only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared mortar.
   2. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and of grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
   3. Place grout only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared grout.

C. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each 5000 sq. ft. of wall area or portion thereof.

D. Clay Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, according to ASTM C67 for compressive strength.

E. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, according to ASTM C140 for compressive strength.

F. Mortar Aggregate Ratio Test (Proportion Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C780.

G. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C780. Test mortar for mortar air content and compressive strength.

H. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C1019.

## 3.14 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.

B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.

C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.

D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
   1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
   2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
   3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
   4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
   5. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
   6. Where required clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   7. Clean concrete masonry by cleaning method indicated in NCMA TEK 8-2A applicable to type of stain on exposed surfaces.

## 3.15 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.

B. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
   1. Crush masonry waste to less than 4 inches in each dimension.
   2. Mix masonry waste with at least two parts of specified fill material for each part of masonry waste. Fill material is specified in Division 31 Section - Earthwork.
   3. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches of finished grade.

END OF SECTION 04 81 00

# SECTION 04 72 00 - CAST STONE MASONRY

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. This specification covers all labor, materials and services incidental to and including the furnishing and setting of all Cast Stone as indicated on the drawings and specified herein.
   2. The Manufacturer shall be responsible for all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary for, and incidental to, providing all Cast Stone covered by this Specification.
   3. The Setting Contractor shall unload, receipt for, protect, store and set all Cast Stone covered by this Specification and shall provide and install all anchors for same.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 04 Section - Unit Masonry Assemblies, for miscellaneous masonry accessories.
   2. Division 07 Section - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim, for exposed sheet metal flashing.
   3. Division 07 Section - Firestopping, for firestopping at openings in masonry walls.
   4. Division 07 Section - Joint Sealants, for sealing control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
   5. Division 07 Section - Thermal Insulation, for cavity wall insulation.

### 1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
   1. For cast stone units, include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for cast stone units. Include dimensions, details of reinforcement and anchorages if any, and indication of finished faces. Tie cast stone locations to building gridlines for verification of dimensions.
   1. Include building elevations showing layout of units and locations of joints and anchors.
   2. Show locations and details of flashing at a scale no less than 3 inches per 12 inches.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For colored mortar.

D. Samples for Verification:
   1. For each color and texture of cast stone required, 10 inches square in size.
   2. For colored mortar. Make Samples using same sand and mortar ingredients to be used on Project. Label Samples to indicated types and amounts of pigments used.

E. Full-Size Samples: For each color, texture, and shape of cast stone unit required.
   1. Make available for Architect's review at Project site.

### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The Manufacturer shall have been a recognized and reputable Cast Stone manufacturer for a minimum of five years continuous operation, and shall have adequate experience, facilities and

capacity to furnish the quality, sizes and quantity of Cast Stone required without delaying the progress of the work. The Manufacturer's products shall have been previously used and exposed to the weather with satisfactory results.

B. Standards: Comply with the requirements of the Cast Stone Institute's Technical Manual and the project specifications. Where a conflict may occur, the contract documents shall prevail.

C. All Cast Stone used in this work shall be manufactured by cast stone manufacturer and shall have minimum compressive strength of 6500 lbs. per square inch and absorption of no greater than 6% when tested in accordance with the requirements of this Specification.

D. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

E. Source Limitations for Cast Stone: Obtain cast stone units through single source from single manufacturer.

F. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color, from one manufacturer for each cementitious component and from one source or producer for each aggregate.

G. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
   1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.

## 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Coordinate delivery of cast stone with unit masonry work to avoid delaying the Work and to minimize the need for on-site storage.

B. Pack, handle, and ship cast stone units in suitable packs or pallets.
   1. Lift with wide-belt slings; do not use wire rope or ropes that might cause staining. Move cast stone units, if required, using dollies with wood supports.
   2. Store cast stone units on wood skids or pallets with nonstaining, waterproof covers, securely tied. Arrange to distribute weight evenly and to prevent damage to units. Ventilate under covers to prevent condensation.

C. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.

D. Store mortar aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.

## 1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
   1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and above and will remain so until cast stone has dried, but no fewer than seven days after completing cleaning.

B. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 CAST STONE MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with ASTM C 1364 and the following:

B. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce cast stone color indicated.

C. Coarse Aggregates: Granite, quartz, or limestone complying with ASTM C 33; gradation and colors as needed to produce required cast stone textures and colors.

D. Fine Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone complying with ASTM C 33, gradation and colors as needed to produce required cast stone textures and colors.

E. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.

F. Admixtures: Use only admixtures specified or approved in writing by Architect.
   1. Do not use admixtures that contain more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious materials. Do not use admixtures containing calcium chloride.
   2. Use only admixtures that are certified by manufacturer to be compatible with cement and other admixtures used.
   3. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260. Add to mixes for units exposed to the exterior at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in an air content of 4 to 6 percent, except do not add to zero-slump concrete mixes.

G. Reinforcement: Deformed steel bars complying with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60. Use galvanized or epoxy-coated reinforcement when covered with less than 1-1/2 inches of cast stone material.
   1. Epoxy Coating: ASTM A 775/A 775M.
   2. Galvanized Coating: ASTM A 767/A 767M.

H. Embedded Anchors and Other Inserts: Fabricated from stainless steel complying with ASTM A 240/A 240M, ASTM A 276, or ASTM A 666, Type 304.

## 2.02 CAST STONE UNITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the one of the following:
   1. Advanced Architectural Stone Inc. (AAS), 115 Lee Street, Fort Worth, Texas 76140, (817) 572-0012 Fax (817) 293-6378, Email: sales@advancedarchitecturalstone.com, URL: www.advancedarchitecturalstone.com.
   2. AHI Supply, LP, 2800 North Gordon, Alvin, Texas 77511, (281) 331-0088 Fax (281) 331-9813, Email: arhoden@ahi-supply.com, URL: www.ahi-supply.com.
   3. Continental Cast Stone of Texas Inc., 101 E Shady Grove Rd, Grand Prairie, Texas 75050, (972) 871-7866 Fax (972) 871-1251, Email: info@continentalcaststone.com.
   4. Stone Castle Industries Inc., 3615 Almeda Genoa, Houston, Texas 77047, (713) 440-6224 Fax (713) 440-6228, URL: www.stonecastleinc.com.

B. Regional Materials: Cast stone units shall be manufactured within 500 miles of Project site from aggregates and cement that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 500 miles of Project site.

C. Provide cast stone units complying with ASTM C 1364 using either the vibrant dry tamp method.
   1. Provide units that are resistant to freezing and thawing as determined by laboratory testing according to ASTM C 666/C 666M, Procedure A, as modified by ASTM C 1364.

D. Fabricate units with sharp arris and accurately reproduced details, with indicated texture on all exposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Slope exposed horizontal surfaces 1:12 to drain unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Provide raised fillets at backs of sills and at ends indicated to be built into jambs.

3. Provide drips on projecting elements unless otherwise indicated.

E. Fabrication Tolerances:
   1. Variation in Cross Section: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/8 inch.
   2. Variation in Length: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch, whichever is greater, but in no case by more than 1/4 inch.
   3. Warp, Bow, and Twist: Not to exceed 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch, whichever is greater.
   4. Location of Grooves, False Joints, Holes, Anchorages, and Similar Features: Do not vary from indicated position by more than 1/8 inch on formed surfaces of units and 3/8 inch on unformed surfaces.

F. Cure units as follows:
   1. Cure units in enclosed moist curing room at 95 to 100 percent relative humidity and temperature of 100 deg F for 12 hours or 70 deg F for 16 hours.
   2. Keep units damp and continue curing to comply with one of the following:
      a. No fewer than five days at mean daily temperature of 70 deg F or above.
      b. No fewer than six days at mean daily temperature of 60 deg F or above.
      c. No fewer than seven days at mean daily temperature of 50 deg F or above.
      d. No fewer than eight days at mean daily temperature of 45 deg F or above.

G. Acid etch units after curing to remove cement film from surfaces to be exposed to view.

H. Colors and Textures: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.03 MORTAR MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.

B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.

C. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes and complying with ASTM C 979. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      1) Davis Colors; True Tone Mortar Colors.
      2) Lanxess Corporation; Bayferrox Iron Oxide Pigments.
      3) Solomon Colors, Inc.; SGS Mortar Colors.

D. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.
   1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
   2. For joints less than 1/4 inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.

## 2.04 ACCESSORIES

A. Anchors: Type and size indicated, fabricated from Type 304 stainless steel complying with ASTM A 240/A 240M, ASTM A 276, or ASTM A 666.

B. Dowels: 1/2-inch- diameter, round bars, fabricated from Type 304 stainless steel complying with ASTM A 240/A 240M, ASTM A 276, or ASTM A 666.

## 2.05 MORTAR MIXES

A. Comply with requirements in Division 04 Section - Unit Masonry for mortar mixes.
   1. Use masonry cement mortar unless otherwise indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.02 SETTING CAST STONE IN MORTAR

A. Set cast stone as indicated on Drawings. Set units accurately in locations indicated with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
   1. Install anchors, supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure units in place.
   2. Coordinate installation of cast stone with installation of flashing specified in other Sections.

B. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar or setting in mortar.

C. Set units in full bed of mortar with full head joints unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Set units with joints 1/4 to 3/8 inch wide unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Build anchors and ties into mortar joints as units are set.
   3. Fill dowel holes and anchor slots with mortar.
   4. Fill collar joints solid as units are set.
   5. Build concealed flashing into mortar joints as units are set.
   6. Keep head joints in coping and other units with exposed horizontal surfaces open to receive sealant.
   7. Keep joints at shelf angles open to receive sealant.

D. Rake out joints for pointing with mortar to depths of not less than 3/4 inch. Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides. Scrub faces of units to remove excess mortar as joints are raked.

E. Point mortar joints by placing and compacting mortar in layers not greater than 3/8 inch. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.

F. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.

G. Provide sealant joints at copings and other horizontal surfaces, at expansion, control, and pressure-relieving joints, and at locations indicated.
   1. Keep joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.
   2. Build in compressible foam-plastic joint fillers where indicated.
   3. Form joint of width indicated, but not less than 3/8 inch.
   4. Prime cast stone surfaces to receive sealant and install compressible backer rod in joints before applying sealant unless otherwise indicated.
   5. Prepare and apply sealant of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section - Joint Sealants.

### 3.03 SETTING ANCHORED CAST STONE WITH SEALANT-FILLED JOINTS

A. Set cast stone as indicated on Drawings. Set units accurately in locations indicated with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
   1. Install anchors, supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure units in place.
   2. Shim and adjust anchors, supports, and accessories to set cast stone in locations indicated with uniform joints.

B. Keep cavities open where unfilled space is indicated between back of cast stone units and backup wall; do not fill cavities with mortar or grout.

C. Fill anchor holes with sealant.
   1. Where dowel holes occur at pressure-relieving joints, provide compressible material at ends of dowels.

D. Set cast stone supported on clip or continuous angles on resilient setting shims. Use material of thickness required to maintain uniform joint widths. Hold shims back from face of cast stone a distance at least equal to width of joint.

E. Keep joints free of mortar and other rigid materials. Remove temporary shims and spacers from joints after anchors and supports are secured in place and cast stone units are anchored. Do not begin sealant installation until temporary shims and spacers are removed.
   1. Form open joint of width indicated, but not less than 3/8 inch.

F. Prime cast stone surfaces to receive sealant and install compressible backer rod in joints before applying sealant unless otherwise indicated.

G. Prepare and apply sealant of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section - Joint Sealants.

## 3.04 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

A. Variation from Plumb: Do not exceed 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.

B. Variation from Level: Do not exceed 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.

C. Variation in Joint Width: Do not vary joint thickness more than 1/8 inch in 36 inches or one-fourth of nominal joint width, whichever is less.

D. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Surfaces (Lipping): Do not vary from flush alignment with adjacent units or adjacent surfaces indicated to be flush with units by more than 1/16 inch, except where variation is due to warpage of units within tolerances specified.

## 3.05 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Remove and replace stained and otherwise damaged units and units not matching approved Samples. Cast stone may be repaired if methods and results are approved by Architect.

B. Replace units in a manner that results in cast stone matching approved Samples, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.

C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean cast stone as work progresses.
   1. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
   2. Remove excess sealant immediately, including spills, smears, and spatter.

D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed cast stone as follows:
   1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
   2. Test cleaning methods on sample; leave one sample uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of cast stone.
   3. Clean cast stone by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.

END OF SECTION 04 72 00

# SECTION 05 12 00 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Structural steel.
   2. Prefabricated building columns.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Section 01 45 23 "Testing and Inspection Services".
   2. Section 05 31 13 "Steel Floor Decking".
   3. Section 05 31 23 "Steel Roof Decking".
   4. Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications".
   5. Section 05 51 00 "Metal Stairs."
   6.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Structural Steel: Elements of structural-steel frame, as classified by AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

B. Seismic-Load-Resisting System: Elements of structural-steel frame designated as "SLRS" or along grid lines designated as "SLRS" on Drawings, including columns, beams, and braces and their connections.

C. Heavy Sections: Rolled and built-up sections as follows:
   1. Shapes included in ASTM A 6 with flanges thicker than 1 1/2 inches.
   2. Welded built-up members with plates thicker than 2 inches.
   3. Column base plates thicker than 2 inches.

D. Protected Zone: Structural members or portions of structural members indicated as "Protected Zone" on Drawings. Connections of structural and nonstructural elements to protected zones are limited.

E. Demand Critical Welds: Those welds, the failure of which would result in significant degradation of the strength and stiffness of the Seismic-Load-Resisting System and which are indicated as "Demand Critical" or "Seismic Critical" on Drawings.

## 1.4 REFERENCES

A. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents: The latest adopted edition of all standards referenced in this section shall apply, unless noted otherwise
   1. AISC "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges".
   2. AISC "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings," including the "Commentary" and the Supplements thereto, as issued.
   3. AISC "Specification for Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel".
   4. AISC's "Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings".
   5. ASTM A 6 "Specification for General Requirements for Rolled Steel Plates, Shapes, Sheet Piling, and Bars for Structural Use".
   6. AWS D1.1 Structural Welding Code.
   7. Research Council on Structural Connections' (RCSC) "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts".
   8. Research Council on Structural Connections' (RCSC) "Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts".
   9. SSPC (Steel Structures Painting Council), Painting Manuals, Volumes 1 and 2.
   10. UL Fire Resistance Directory.

B. In the case of conflict between the Contract Documents and a reference standard, the Contract Documents shall govern. In the case of a conflict between the Contract Documents and the Building Code, the more stringent shall govern.

## 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Connections: Provide details of simple shear connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
   1. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and AISC 360.

B. Moment Connections: Type FR, fully restrained.

C. Construction: System as indicated on Drawings.

## 1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
   1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
   2. Include embedment drawings.
   3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
   4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical high-strength bolted connections.
   5. Identify members and connections of the seismic-load-resisting system.

6. Indicate locations and dimensions of protected zones.
7. Identify demand critical welds.
8. For structural-steel connections indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

C. At full penetration welds, Welding Procedure Specifications (WPSs) and Procedure Qualification Records (PQRs): Provide according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for each welded joint whether prequalified or qualified by testing, including the following:
1. Power source (constant current or constant voltage).
2. Electrode manufacturer and trade name, for demand critical welds.

## 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following informational submittals:
1. Qualification Data: For qualified installer, fabricator, and testing agency.
2. Welding certificates.
3. Mill test reports for structural steel, including chemical and physical properties.
4. Product Test Reports: For the following:
   a. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
   b. Direct-tension indicators.
   c. Tension-control, high-strength bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
   d. Shear stud connectors.
   e. Shop primers.
5. Source quality-control reports.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator with a minimum of (5) years of experience that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program for Category I or higher structures and is designated and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category STD. An otherwise qualified fabricator who is not a member of the AISC Quality Certification Program will be accepted if satisfactory evidence of qualifications is submitted prior to award of Contract. For non-certified fabricators, Contractor shall submit a resume describing plant size, equipment quality control procedures and personnel, and experience on comparable work in the last five (5) years.

B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category CSE.

C. Shop-Painting Applicators: Qualified according to AISC's Sophisticated Paint Endorsement P1, P2, or P3 as applicable for exposure or SSPC-QP 3, "Standard Procedure for Evaluating Qualifications of Shop Painting Applicators."

D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
1. Welders and welding operators performing work on bottom-flange, demand-critical welds shall pass the supplemental welder qualification testing, as required by AWS D1.8.

FCAW-S and FCAW-G shall be considered separate processes for welding personnel qualification.

E. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
   1. AISC 303.
   2. AISC 341 and AISC 341s1.
   3. AISC 360.
   4. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
   1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.
   1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
   2. Clean and re-lubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
   3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F 1852 fasteners and for retesting fasteners after lubrication.

## 1.10 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

B. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than the following:
   1. W-Shapes: 60 percent.
   2. Channels, Angles, M, S-Shapes: 60 percent.

3. Plate and Bar: 25 percent.
4. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: 25 percent.
5. Steel Pipe: 25 percent.
6. All Other Steel Materials: 25 percent.

B. W-Shapes: Refer Structural General Notes.

C. Channels, Angles, M, S-Shapes: Refer Structural General Notes.

D. Plate and Bar: Refer Structural General Notes.

E. Corrosion-Resisting Structural-Steel Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 588, Grade 50.

F. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: Refer Structural General Notes.

G. Steel Pipe: Refer Structural General Notes.
1. Weight Class: See Plans.
2. Finish: Black except where indicated to be galvanized.

H. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

## 2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts.
1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325, compressible-washer type with plain finish.

B. Zinc-Coated High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers (All bolts located in Crawl Space): ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts.
1. Finish: Hot-dip or mechanically deposited zinc coating.
2. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325, compressible-washer type with mechanically deposited zinc coating finish.

C. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, heavy-hex or round head assemblies consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.
1. Finish: Plain or Mechanically deposited zinc coating, where required.

D. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1, Type B.

E. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, See Anchor Bolt Schedule on Drawings for Grade.
1. Configuration: Straight.
2. Nuts: ASTM A 563 heavy-hex carbon steel.
3. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36 carbon steel.
4. Washers: ASTM F 436, Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
5. Finish:
a. General Condition – Plain

b. Crawl Space - Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153, Class C.

F. Clevises and Turnbuckles: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1035.

G. Eye Bolts and Nuts: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1030.

H. Sleeve Nuts: Made from cold-finished carbon steel bars, ASTM A 108, Grade 1018.

I. Structural Slide Bearings: Low-friction assemblies, of configuration indicated, that provide vertical transfer of loads and allow horizontal movement perpendicular to plane of expansion joint while resisting movement within plane of expansion joint.
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
      a. Amscot Structural Products Corp.
      b. Fluorocarbon Company Limited.
      c. R.J. Watson Bridge & Structural Engineered Systems.
      d. Seismic Energy Products, L.P.
   2. Mating Surfaces: PTFE and PTFE or mirror-finished stainless steel.
   3. Coefficient of Friction: Not more than 0.05.
   4. Design Load: Not less than 5,000 psi .
   5. Total Movement Capability: 2 inches.

## 2.3 PRIMER

A. Low-Emitting Materials: Paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. Primer (General): Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, non-asphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.

C. Primer (Crawl Space Steel): Tnemec Perimeprime Series 394.

D. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20.

## 2.4 GROUT

A. Refer Section 03 30 00.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and AISC 360.
   1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.

2. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
3. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6 and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
4. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.

B. Fabricate and assemble structural steel in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate structural steel according to AISC specifications referenced in this Section and in final approved Shop Drawings.
1. Properly mark and match-mark materials for field assembly. Fabricate for delivery sequence that will expedite erection and minimize field handling of materials.
2. Where finishing is required, complete assembly, including welding of units, before start of finishing operations. Provide finish surfaces of members exposed in final structure free of markings, burrs, and other effects.
3. Camber structural steel members where indicated. The camber specified is the camber that is measured in the field with the beam on its side so that the beam weight has no effect. During shipment and handling, cambered members shall be supported in a way that will not result in loss of camber.
4. Camber tolerance
    a. Beams 50 feet and less; plus or minus 1/2 inch.
    b. Beams greater than 50 feet; plus or minus 1/2 inch, except tolerance can be increased 1/8 inch for each 10 feet or fraction thereof in excess of 50 feet.
    c. Contact engineer for members outside specified camber tolerance. Provide engineer with a list of beam locations and actual measured camber amounts. Submit an engineered shoring plan, if requested, that will allow the beam to deflect to the horizontal position after concrete placement without overloading the framing below.
5. Complete structural steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
6. Comply with fabrication tolerance limits of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for structural steel.

C. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1.

D. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.

E. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.

F. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

G. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.

H. Holes for Other Work: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel framing, and for passage of other work through steel framing members, as shown on approved shop drawings.

1. Provide threaded nuts welded to framing, and other specialty items as indicated to receive other work.
2. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to metal surfaces. Do not flame cut holes by burning.

I. Base-Plate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Base plates hole sizes for anchor bolts may be oversized to facilitate erection:
1. Bolts 3/4inch to 7/8 inch diameter: 1/2 inch oversize.
2. Bolts 1 inch to 1 1/2 inch diameter: 3/4 inch oversize.
3. Bolts over 1 3/4 inch diameter: 1 inch oversize.

J. Base Plate Washers: Sizes shall be as follows:
1. 3/4 inch diameter Bolts: 2 inch diameter x 1/4 inch thick
2. 7/8 inch diameter Bolts: 2 1/2 inch diameter x 5/16 inch thick
3. 1 inch diameter Bolts: 3 inch diameter x 3/8 inch thick
4. 1 1/4 inch diameter Bolts: 3 inch diameter x 1/2 inch thick
5. 1 1/2 inch diameter Bolts: 3 1/2 inch diameter x 1/2 inch thick
6. 1 3/4 inch diameter Bolts: 4 inch diameter x 5/8 inch thick
7. 2 inch diameter Bolts: 5 inch diameter x 3/4 inch thick

K. Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel (AESS): Fabricate with exposed surfaces smooth, square, and free of surface blemishes, including pitting, rust and scale seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, and roughness.
1. Remove blemishes by filling, grinding, or by welding and grinding, prior to cleaning, treating, and shop priming.
2. Comply with fabrication requirements, including tolerance limits, of AISC's "Specification for Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel" for architecturally exposed structural steel.

## 2.6 SHOP CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
1. Joint Type: Snug tightened, Pretensioned, or Slip critical as required or indicated on Drawings.

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 and AWS D1.8, where required, for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303 for mill material.

## 2.7 SHOP PRIMING

A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.

2. Surfaces to be field welded.
3. Surfaces to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing) excluding crawl space steel. Crawl space steel shall be primed regardless of whether it is to receive fireproofing.
5. Galvanized surfaces.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."

C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

D. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.

E. Crawl space steel to be primed to a DFT between 2.5 and 3.5 mils.

F. Painting: Prepare steel and apply a one-coat, non-asphaltic primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide 7.00, "Painting System Guide 7.00: Guide for Selecting One-Coat Shop Painting Systems," to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.

## 2.8 GALVANIZING

A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123.
1. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in the finished Work unless they will function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
2. Galvanize lintels and shelf angles attached to structural steel frame and located in exterior walls.

## 2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Refer Section 01 45 23.
1. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.

B. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify, with steel Erector present, elevations of concrete and masonry bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
   1. Prepare a certified survey of bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

### 3.3 ERECTION

A. Set structural steel accurately in locations, to elevations indicated, and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.

B. Base Bearing and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
   1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
   2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
   3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
   4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow it to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.

C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

D. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
   1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
   2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.

E. Splice members only where indicated.

F. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by Engineer. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1.

G. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.

H. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
   1. Joint Type: Snug tightened, Pretensioned, or Slip critical as indicated on Drawings.

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 and AWS D1.8 for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
   1. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
   2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs where indicated, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
   3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.

## 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: See Section 01 45 23.

B. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

## 3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

B. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
   1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.

END OF SECTION 05 12 00

# SECTION 05 2100 - STEEL OPEN WEB JOIST FRAMING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. K-series steel joists.
   2. KCS-type K-series steel joists.
   3. K-series steel joist substitutes.
   4. LH- and DLH-series long-span steel joists.
   5. CJ-series composite steel joists.
   6. Joist girders.
   7. Joist accessories.
      a. Extended ends.
      b. Ceiling extensions.
      c. Bearing plates.
      d. Bridging.
      e. Side wall anchors.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete".
   2. Section 01 4523 “Testing and Inspection Services”
   3. Section 04 2000 "Unit Masonry".
   4. Section 05 1200 "Structural Steel Framing".
   5. Section 05 3123 “Steel Roof Decking”.

### 1.3 REFERENCES

A. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents. The latest adopted edition of all standards referenced in this section shall apply, unless noted otherwise.
   1. AWS D1.1 Structural Welding Code
   2. SJI “Standard Specification Load Tables and Weight Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders”.
   3. SDI “Design Manual for Composite Decks, Form Decks, Roof Decks, Cellular Metal Floor Deck with Electrical Distribution”.
   4. SSPC Steel Structures Painting Council Painting Manual.
   5. UL Fire Resistance Directory.
   6. ICBO Product Evaluation Reports.
   7. FM Roof Assembly Classifications.

B. In the case of conflict between the Contract Documents and a reference standard, the Contract Documents shall govern. In the case of a conflict between the Contract Documents and the Building Code, the more stringent shall govern.

## 1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. SJI's "Specifications": Steel Joist Institute's "Standard Specifications, Load Tables and Weight Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders."

B. Special Joists: Steel joists or joist girders requiring modification by manufacturer to support non-uniform, unequal, or special loading conditions that invalidate load tables in SJI's "Specifications."

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of joist, accessory, and product.

B. Shop Drawings:
   1. Include layout, designation, number, type, location, and spacing of joists.
   2. Include joining and anchorage details, bracing, bridging, and joist accessories; splice and connection locations and details; and attachments to other construction.
   3. Indicate locations and details of bearing plates to be embedded in other construction.
   4. Shop drawings containing special joists shall be submitted with a design load summary for each special joist design. Load summary will be reviewed and returned with the joist submittal. Shop drawings containing special joists submitted without the specified load summary will be returned unchecked as an incomplete submittal. Shop drawings containing special joists shall be signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for the design of the joists.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following informational submittals:
   1. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.
   2. Welding certificates.
   3. Manufacturer certificates.
   4. Mill Certificates: For each type of bolt.
   5. Comprehensive engineering analysis of special joists signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for its preparation.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer certified by SJI to manufacture joists complying with applicable standard specifications and load tables in SJI's "Specifications."
   1. Manufacturer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services for designing special joists to comply with performance requirements.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify field-welding procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver, store, and handle joists as recommended in SJI's "Specifications."

B. Protect joists from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

## 1.9 SEQUENCING

A. Deliver steel bearing plates to be built into cast-in-place concrete and or masonry construction.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Provide special joists and connections capable of withstanding design loads indicated.
   1. Use ASD; data are given at service-load level.
   2. Design special joists to withstand design loads with live-load deflections no greater than the following:
      a. Floor Joists: Vertical deflection of 1/360 of the span.
      b. Roof Joists: Vertical deflection of 1/360 of the span.

B. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 50 percent.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

A. Steel: Comply with SJI's "Specifications" for chord and web members.

## 2.3 K-SERIES STEEL JOISTS

A. Manufacture steel joists of type indicated according to "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members, underslung ends, and parallel top chord.
   1. Joist Type: K-series steel joists and KCS-type K-series steel joists.

B. Steel Joist Substitutes: Manufacture according to "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle or -channel members.

C. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joists.

D. Top-Chord Extensions and Extended Ends: Provide top chord extension or extended ends where shown on plans. Design for load indicated on plans.

E. Camber joists according to SJI's Specifications unless noted otherwise.

F. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches.

## 2.4 LONG-SPAN STEEL JOISTS

A. Manufacture steel joists according to "Standard Specifications for Longspan Steel Joists, LH-Series and Deep Longspan Steel Joists, DLH-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members; of joist type and end and top-chord arrangements as indicated on plan.
   1. Joist Type: Refer to Drawings.
   2. End Arrangement: Refer to Drawings.
   3. Top-Chord Arrangement: Refer to Drawings.

B. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joists.

C. Camber long-span steel joists according to SJI's Specifications unless noted otherwise.

D. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches.

## 2.5 JOIST GIRDERS

A. Manufacture joist girders according to "Standard Specifications for Joist Girders" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members; with end and top-chord arrangements as indicated on plan.
   1. End Arrangement: Refer to Drawings.
   2. Top-Chord Arrangement: Refer to Drawings.

B. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joist girders.

C. Camber joist girders according to SJI's Specifications unless noted otherwise.

D. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches.

## 2.6 PRIMERS

A. Low-Emitting Materials: Paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. Primer: SSPC-Paint 15, or manufacturer's standard shop primer complying with performance requirements in SSPC-Paint 15.

## 2.7 JOIST ACCESSORIES

A. Bridging: Provide bridging anchors and number of rows of horizontal or diagonal bridging of material, size, and type required by SJI's "Specifications" and "Standard Specifications for Composite Steel Joists, CJ-Series" in "Standard Specifications for Composite Steel Joists, Weight Tables and Bridging Tables, Code of Standard Practice" for type of joist, chord size, spacing, and span. Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.

B. Fabricate steel bearing plates from ASTM A 36/A 36M steel with integral anchorages of sizes and thicknesses indicated. Shop prime paint for interior exposure or Hot-dip zinc coat according to ASTM A 123/A 123M for exterior or weather exposure.

C. Furnish ceiling extensions (where indicated), either extended bottom-chord elements or a separate extension unit of enough strength to support ceiling construction. Extend ends to within 1/2 inch of finished wall surface unless otherwise indicated.

D. Carbon-Steel Bolts and Threaded Fasteners: ASTM A 307, Grade A, carbon-steel, hex-head bolts and threaded fasteners; carbon-steel nuts; and flat, unhardened steel washers.
   1. Finish: Plain, uncoated.

E. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 hardened carbon-steel washers.
   1. Finish: Plain.

F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

G. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.

H. Furnish miscellaneous accessories including splice plates and bolts required by joist manufacturer to complete joist assembly.

## 2.8 CLEANING AND SHOP PAINTING

A. Clean and remove loose scale, heavy rust, and other foreign materials from fabricated joists and accessories by hand-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 2 or power-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 3.

B. Do not prime paint joists and accessories to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.

C. Apply one coat of shop primer to joists and joist accessories to be primed to provide a continuous, dry paint film not less than 1.5 mil thick.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine supporting substrates, embedded bearing plates, and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Do not install joists until supporting construction is in place and secured.

B. Install joists and accessories plumb, square, and true to line; securely fasten to supporting construction according to SJI's "Specifications", "Standard Specifications for Composite Steel Joists, CJ-Series" in "Standard Specifications for Composite Steel Joists, Weight Tables and Bridging Tables, Code of Standard Practice," joist manufacturer's written recommendations, and requirements in this Section.
   1. Before installation, splice joists delivered to Project site in more than one piece.
   2. Space, adjust, and align joists accurately in location before permanently fastening.
   3. Install temporary bracing and erection bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure that joists are stabilized during construction.

4. Delay rigidly connecting bottom-chord extensions to columns or supports until dead loads are applied.

C. Field weld joists to supporting steel bearing plates and framework as indicated on Drawings. Coordinate welding sequence and procedure with placement of joists. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for welding, appearance, and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

D. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using high-strength structural bolts as indicated on Drawings. Comply with Research Council on Structural Connection's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts" for high-strength structural bolt installation and tightening requirements.

E. Install and connect bridging concurrently with joist erection, before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of bridging lines at top and bottom chords if terminating at walls or beams.

## 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: See Section 01 4523.

## 3.4 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

A. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on galvanized items with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Touchup Painting: After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists, bearing plates, abutting structural steel, and accessories.
1. Clean and prepare surfaces by hand-tool cleaning according to SSPC-SP 2, or power-tool cleaning according to SSPC-SP 3.
2. Apply a compatible primer of same type as primer used on adjacent surfaces.

C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that joists and accessories are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION**

# SECTION 05 31 13 - STEEL FLOOR DECKING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Composite floor deck.
   2. Electrified cellular floor deck.
   3. Noncomposite form deck.
   4. Noncomposite vented form deck.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 01 45 23 “Structural Testing and Inspection Services”.
   2. Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete".
   3. Section 05 12 00 "Structural Steel Framing".
   4. Section 05 21 00 “Steel Open Web Joist Framing”
   5. Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications".

### 1.3 REFERENCES

A. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents. The latest adopted edition of all standards referenced in this section shall apply, unless noted otherwise.
   1. AWS D1.1 - Structural Welding Code
   2. AWS D1.3 – Structural Welding Code – Sheet Steel
   3. SDI – Design Manual for Composite Decks, Form Decks, Roof Decks, Cellular Metal Floor Deck with Electrical Distribution.
   4. SSPC – Painting Manual
   5. UL – Fire Resistance Directory
   6. ICBO – Product Evaluation Reports

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings:
   1. Include layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following informational submittals:
   1. Welding certificates.
   2. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck.
   3. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements:
   4. Power-actuated mechanical fasteners.
   5. Evaluation Reports: For steel deck.
   6. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Refer Section 01 45 23.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."

B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
   1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

C. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.

D. Low-Emitting Materials: Paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.2 COMPOSITE FLOOR DECK

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. ASC Profiles, Inc.; a Blue Scope Steel company.
   2. Canam United States; Canam Group Inc.
   3. CMC Joist & Deck.
   4. Consolidated Systems, Inc.; Metal Dek Group.
   5. Cordeck.
   6. DACS, Inc.
   7. Epic Metals Corporation.
   8. Marlyn Steel Decks, Inc.
   9. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
   10. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Group.
   11. Roof Deck, Inc.
   12. Verco Manufacturing Co.
   13. Wheeling Corrugating Company; Div. of Wheeling-Pittsburgh Steel Corporation.

B. Composite Floor Deck: Fabricate panels, with integrally embossed or raised pattern ribs and interlocking side laps, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Composite Steel Floor Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
   1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: As indicated in Structural General Notes.
   2. Profile Depth: As indicated on plan.
   3. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated in Structural General Notes.
   4. Span Condition: Triple span or more.

## 2.3 ELECTRIFIED CELLULAR FLOOR DECK

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
   1. CMC Joist & Deck.
   2. Consolidated Systems, Inc.; Metal Dek Group.
   3. Cordeck.
   4. HH Robertson Floor Systems; a CENTRIA company.
   5. Marlyn Steel Decks, Inc.
   6. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
   7. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Group.
   8. Verco Manufacturing Co.
   9. Wheeling Corrugating Company; Div. of Wheeling-Pittsburgh Steel Corporation.

C. Source Limitations for Electrified Cellular Floor Deck: Obtain cellular floor-deck units and compatible electrical components, such as preset inserts, activation kits, afterset inserts, service fittings, header ducts, and trench header ducts, from single manufacturer.

D. Electrified Cellular Floor Deck: Fabricate steel-sheet cellular floor-deck panels, consisting of a ribbed top section welded to a lower flat-bottom sheet with interlocking side laps, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Composite Steel Floor Deck" in SDI Publication No. 31. Fabricate deck to the minimum section properties, width of panel, number and area of cells per panel indicated, and the following:
   1. Cellular Deck Type: Composite.
   2. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33, G60 zinc coating.
   3. Profile Depth: As indicated on plan.
   4. Design Uncoated-Steel Thicknesses; Deck Unit/Bottom Plate: As indicated in Structural General Notes.
   5. Span Condition: Triple span or more.
   6. Factory punch holes, of size and arrangement indicated, into each deck cell at preset inserts and header duct locations.

## 2.4 NONCOMPOSITE FORM DECK

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. ASC Profiles, Inc.; a Blue Scope Steel company.
   2. Canam United States; Canam Group Inc.
   3. CMC Joist & Deck.
   4. Consolidated Systems, Inc.; Metal Dek Group.
   5. Cordeck.
   6. DACS, Inc.
   7. Marlyn Steel Decks, Inc.
   8. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
   9. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Group.
   10. Roof Deck, Inc.
   11. Valley Joist; Subsidiary of EBSCO Industries, Inc.
   12. Verco Manufacturing Co.
   13. Wheeling Corrugating Company; Div. of Wheeling-Pittsburgh Steel Corporation.

B. Noncomposite Form Deck: Fabricate ribbed-steel sheet non-composite form-deck panels to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Noncomposite Steel Form Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
   1. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 80 minimum, with top and underside surface shop primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
      a. Color: Manufacturer's standard Gray.
   2. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 80, G90 zinc coating.
   3. Profile Depth: As indicated on Plan.
   4. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated in Structural General Notes.
   5. Span Condition: Triple span or more.
   6. Side Laps: Overlapped or interlocking seam at Contractor's option.

## 2.5 NONCOMPOSITE VENTED FORM DECK

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. ASC Profiles, Inc.; a Blue Scope Steel company.
   2. Canam United States; Canam Group Inc.
   3. CMC Joist & Deck.
   4. Consolidated Systems, Inc.; Metal Dek Group.
   5. Marlyn Steel Decks, Inc.
   6. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
   7. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Group.
   8. Roof Deck, Inc.
   9. Verco Manufacturing Co.
   10. Wheeling Corrugating Company; Div. of Wheeling-Pittsburgh Steel Corporation.

B. Noncomposite Vented Form Deck: Fabricate ribbed- and vented-steel sheet noncomposite form-deck panels to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Noncomposite Steel Form Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, and with the following:
   1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 80, G60 zinc coating.
   2. Profile Depth: As indicated on Plan.
   3. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated in Structural General Notes.
   4. Span Condition: Triple span or more.
   5. Side Laps: Overlapped or interlocking seam at Contractor's option.
   6. Vent Slot Area: Manufacturer's standard vent slots providing 1.5 percent open area.

## 2.6 ACCESSORIES

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.

B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.

C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 minimum diameter.

D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.

E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, not less than 0.0359-inch design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.

F. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile recommended by SDI Publication No. 31 for overhang and slab depth unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

G. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck unless otherwise indicated.

H. Piercing Hanger Tabs: Piercing steel sheet hanger attachment devices for use with floor deck.

I. Weld Washers: Uncoated steel sheet, shaped to fit deck rib, 0.0598 inch thick, with factory-punched hole of 3/8-inch minimum diameter.

J. Flat Sump Plates: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck. For drains, cut holes in the field.

K. Recessed Sump Pans: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck, with 3-inch wide flanges and sloped recessed pans of 1-1/2-inch minimum depth. For drains, cut holes in the field.

L. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.

M. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 31, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.

B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels if required to meet deflection limitations.

C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.

D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.
   1. Align cellular deck panels over full length of cell runs and align cells at ends of abutting panels.

E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.

F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.

G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.

H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.

I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.3 FLOOR-DECK INSTALLATION

A. Fasten floor-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated and as follows:
   1. Weld Diameter: 3/4 inch, nominal.
   2. Weld Spacing: Space and locate welds as indicated on Drawings.
   3. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location where deck is 22 gage or less.

B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of half of the span or 36 inches, and as follows:
   1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
   2. Mechanically clinch or button punch only with concrete filled decks.
   3. Fasten with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch- long welds.

C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches, with end joints as follows:
   1. End Joints: Butted.

D. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting structure according to SDI recommendations unless otherwise indicated.

E. Revise "Floor-Deck Closures" Paragraph below to suit Project. Sealing cellular deck openings, butt joints, and junctions with trench headers with tape is not included in this Section. Floor-Deck Closures: Weld steel sheet column closures, cell closures, and Z-closures to deck, according to SDI recommendations, to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of ribs and sides of deck.

F. Electrified Cellular Floor Deck: Install cellular floor system with deck assembled from units indicated.
   1. Coordinate layout and installation of trench headers, preset inserts, duct fittings, and other components specified in Section 260539 "Underfloor Raceways for Electrical Systems" with installation of electrified cellular metal floor deck.

G. Install piercing hanger tabs at 14 inches apart in both directions, within 9 inches of walls at ends, and not more than 12 inches from walls at sides unless otherwise indicated.

## 3.4 COMPOSITE FLOOR DECK INSTALLATION

A. The composite steel deck shall be connected to the supporting steel beams by welding the shear/headed stud connectors through the deck as indicated in the drawings. Contractor to verify the attachment of the deck to the supporting member after the headed stud is welded.

Improper amperage may cause burn through around the stud and the deck may not be adequately attached to the supporting deck.

B. Where shear/headed stud connectors are not specified, the metal deck shall be attached to the supporting steel with 3/4-inch diameter puddle welds at a maximum spacing of 12 inches.

C. Where the specified shear/headed stud connector spacing exceeds 12 inches, provide 3/4-inch diameter puddle welds between shear/headed stud connectors to maintain a maximum deck connection of 12 inches.

D. Where deck units abut side to side or end to end over a supporting member provide 3/4-inch diameter puddle welds on each deck unit at a maximum spacing of 12 inches.

E. Shear/Headed Stud Connectors: Field weld shear/headed stud connectors through deck to supporting frame according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions. Located connectors as indicated in the drawings. Remove and discard arc shields after welding shear/headed stud connectors.

## 3.5 DECK AND FLOOR DEFLECTION

A. The metal deck is designed to deflect up to 3/4-inch.

B. Uncambered steel beams are designed to be within code required deflection limits (Span/240). Cambered steel beams are designed to have a final deflected shape of less than 1/2-inch. Due to field tolerances and camber tolerances, these design limits may be slightly exceeded.

C. The contractor shall account for any additional concrete required due to these deflected shape tolerances.

## 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Refer Section 01 45 23.

B. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.

C. Additional inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

## 3.7 PROTECTION

A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Repair Painting: Wire brush and clean rust spots, welds, and abraded areas on both surfaces of prime-painted deck immediately after installation, and apply repair paint.
   1. Apply repair paint, of same color as adjacent shop-primed deck, to bottom surfaces of deck exposed to view.

C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure that steel deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 05 31 13**

# SECTION 05 31 23 - STEEL ROOF DECKING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Roof deck.
   2. Acoustical roof deck.
   3. Noncomposite vented roof deck.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 01 45 23 “Structural Testing and Inspection Services”
   2. Section 05 12 00 "Structural Steel Framing".
   3. Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications".

### 1.3 REFERENCES

A. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents. The latest adopted edition of all standard referenced in this section shall apply, unless noted otherwise.
   1. AWS D1.1 – Structural Welding Code
   2. AWS D1.3 – Structural Welding Code – Sheet Steel
   3. SDI – Design Manual
   4. SSPC – Painting Manual
   5. UL – Fire Resistance Directory
   6. ICBO – Product Evaluation Reports
   7. FM – Roof Assembly Classifications

B. In the case of conflict between the Contract Documents and a referenced standard, the Contract Documents shall govern. In the case of a conflict between the Contract Documents and the Building Code, the more stringent shall govern.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.
   1. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit EQ 4: For primers, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. Shop Drawings:
   1. Include layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck.

C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements:
   1. Power-actuated mechanical fasteners.
   2. Acoustical roof deck.

D. Evaluation Reports: For steel deck.

E. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Refer Section 01 45 23.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

C. FM Global Listing: Provide steel roof deck evaluated by FM Global and listed in its "Approval Guide, Building Materials" for Class 1 fire rating and Class 1-90 windstorm ratings.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.
   1. Protect and ventilate acoustical cellular roof deck with factory-installed insulation to maintain insulation free of moisture.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."

B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
   1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

C. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.

D. Low-Emitting Materials: Paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

### 2.2 ROOF DECK

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. ASC Profiles, Inc.; a Blue Scope Steel company.
   2. Canam United States; Canam Group Inc.
   3. CMC Joist & Deck.
   4. Consolidated Systems, Inc.; Metal Dek Group.
   5. Cordeck.
   6. DACS, Inc.
   7. Epic Metals Corporation.
   8. Marlyn Steel Decks, Inc.
   9. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
   10. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Group.
   11. Roof Deck, Inc.
   12. Valley Joist; Subsidiary of EBSCO Industries, Inc.
   13. Verco Manufacturing Co.
   14. Wheeling Corrugating Company; Div. of Wheeling-Pittsburgh Steel Corporation.

B. Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, and with the following:
   1. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 40 minimum, shop primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
      a. Color: Manufacturer's standard.
   2. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 40, G90 zinc coating.

3. Galvanized and Shop-Primed Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 40, G60 zinc coating; cleaned, pretreated, and primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
    a. Color: Manufacturer's standard.
4. Deck Profile: As indicated on plan.
5. Profile Depth: As indicated on plan.
6. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated in Structural General Notes.
7. Span Condition: Triple span or more.
8. Side Laps: Overlapped or interlocking seam at Contractor's option.

## 2.3 ACOUSTICAL ROOF DECK

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. ASC Profiles, Inc.; a Blue Scope Steel company.
2. Canam United States; Canam Group Inc.
3. CMC Joist & Deck.
4. Consolidated Systems, Inc.; Metal Dek Group.
5. Cordeck.
6. DACS, Inc.
7. Epic Metals Corporation.
8. Marlyn Steel Decks, Inc.
9. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
10. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Group.
11. Roof Deck, Inc.
12. Wheeling Corrugating Company; Div. of Wheeling-Pittsburgh Steel Corporation.

B. Acoustical Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, and with the following:
1. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 40 minimum, shop primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
    a. Color: Manufacturer's standard.
2. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 40, G60 zinc coating.
3. Deck Profile: As indicated in Structural General Notes.
4. Cellular Deck Profile: As indicated in Structural General Notes.
5. Profile Depth: As indicated in Structural General Notes.
6. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated in Structural General Notes.
7. Design Uncoated-Steel Thicknesses; Deck Unit/Bottom Plate: As indicated in Structural General Notes.
8. Span Condition: Triple span or more.
9. Side Laps: Overlapped or interlocking seam at Contractor's option.
10. Acoustical Perforations: Deck units with manufacturer's standard perforated vertical webs.
11. Sound-Absorbing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard pre-molded roll or strip of glass or mineral fiber.
    a. Factory install sound-absorbing insulation into cells of cellular deck.

## 2.4 NONCOMPOSITE VENTED ROOF DECK

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. ASC Profiles, Inc.; a Blue Scope Steel company.
   2. Canam United States; Canam Group Inc.
   3. CMC Joist & Deck.
   4. Consolidated Systems, Inc.; Metal Dek Group.
   5. Marlyn Steel Decks, Inc.
   6. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
   7. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Group.
   8. Roof Deck, Inc.
   9. Verco Manufacturing Co.
   10. Wheeling Corrugating Company; Div. of Wheeling-Pittsburgh Steel Corporation.

B. Noncomposite Vented Roof Deck: Fabricate ribbed- and vented-steel sheet noncomposite form-deck panels to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Noncomposite Steel Form Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, and with the following:
   1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 40, G90 zinc coating.
   2. Profile Depth: As indicated in Structural General Notes.
   3. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated in Structural General Notes.
   4. Span Condition: Triple span or more.
   5. Side Laps: Overlapped or interlocking seam at Contractor's option.
   6. Vent Slot Area: Manufacturer's standard vent slots providing 1-1/2.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.

B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.

C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 minimum diameter.

D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.

E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, not less than 0.0359-inch design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.

F. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile recommended by SDI Publication No. 31 for overhang and slab depth unless otherwise indicated.

G. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck unless otherwise indicated.

H. Weld Washers: Uncoated steel sheet, shaped to fit deck rib, 0.0598 inch thick, with factory-punched hole of 3/8-inch minimum diameter.

I. Flat Sump Plates: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck. For drains, cut holes in the field.

J. Recessed Sump Pans: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck, with 3-inch- wide flanges and sloped recessed pans of 1-1/2-inch minimum depth. For drains, cut holes in the field.

K. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.

L. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 31, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.

B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels if required to meet deflection limitations.

C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.

D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.

E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.

F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.

G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.

H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.

I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Fasteners shall provide diaphragm shear and uplift resistance equal to or greater than welding indicated herein and on Drawings.

## 3.3 ROOF-DECK INSTALLATION

A. Fasten roof-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated or arc seam welds with an equal perimeter that is not less than 1-1/2 inches long, and as follows:
   1. Weld Diameter: As indicated on Structural Plans.
   2. Weld Spacing: As indicated on Structural Plans.
   3. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location if deck gauge is lighter than 22 gauge.

B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals shown on Structural Plans:
   1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
   2. Fasten with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch- long welds.

C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches, with end joints as follows:
   1. End Joints: Lapped 2 inches minimum or butted at Contractor's option.

D. Roof Sump Pans and Sump Plates: Install over openings provided in roof deck and weld or mechanically fasten flanges to top of deck. Space welds or mechanical fasteners not more than 12 inches apart with at least one weld or fastener at each corner.
   1. Install reinforcing channels or zees in ribs to span between supports and weld or mechanically fasten.

E. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. Weld or mechanically fasten to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.
   1. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels unless otherwise indicated.

## 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: See Section 01 45 23.

B. Field welds will be subject to inspection.

C. Testing agency will report inspection results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.

D. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.

E. Additional inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

## 3.5 PROTECTION

A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Repair Painting: Wire brush and clean rust spots, welds, and abraded areas on both surfaces of prime-painted deck immediately after installation, and apply repair paint.
   1. Apply repair paint, of same color as adjacent shop-primed deck, to bottom surfaces of deck exposed to view.

C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure that steel deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION 05 31 23**

# SECTION 05 40 00 – COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Requirements including but not limited to:
   1. Load bearing wall framing.
   2. Exterior nonload bearing wall framing.
   3. Floor joist framing.
   4. Roof rafter framing.
   5. Ceiling joist framing.
   6. Soffit framing.
   7. Accessories necessary for a complete installation.

### 1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 05 50 00 – Metal Fabrications.

B. Section 09 21 16 – Gypsum Board.

### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, licensed in the State of Texas, to design cold formed steel framing.

B. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed steel framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
   1. Design Loads: Indicated on Structural Drawings.
   2. Coordinate the requirements on the Structural Drawings with the requirements of this Section. If a conflict exists, notations on the Structural Drawings take precedence.
   3. The following document governs the Work, except where more restrictive items are specified:
      AISI Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members Wind Load
      Minimum Design Loads
      1. As required by code officials having jurisdiction.
      2. Deflection: 1/600 for clear simple spans
      3. Deflection: 1/300 for cantilever conditions and roof parapets
      4. Gauge: 18 gauge minimum, unless noted otherwise.

   4. Welding Qualifications: Qualify welding processes and welding operators in accordance with AWS "Standard Qualification Procedure".
   5. Studs, tracks, channels, and other light gauge framing members shall conform to requirements of ASTM C955.

6. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Where framing units are components of assemblies indicated for a fire-resistance rating, including those required for compliance with governing regulations, provide units that have been approved by governing authorities that have jurisdiction.
7. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members located outside the insulated building envelope without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 degrees F (67 degrees C).
8. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure:
   a. Upward and downward movement of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).

9. Design exterior nonload bearing wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.

C. Cold Formed Steel Framing Design Standards:
1. Floor and Roof Systems: AISI S210.
2. Wall Studs: AISI S211.
3. Headers: AISI S212.
4. Lateral Design: AISI S213.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Technical data for cold formed steel framing product and accessories including factory applied primers.

B. Shop Drawings: Submit layout, spacings, sizes, thickness, and types of cold formed steel framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
1. Indicate reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.

C. Supplementary Design Details: The general design is presumed adequate to permit compliance with the specified performance. Provide engineering calculations to supplement the general design. Calculations shall bear the seal of a Registered Professional Engineer, licensed in the State of Texas. Calculations must show design will with stand wind loading commiserate with class and rating of the project.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulatory Requirements:
1. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
   a. AWS D1.1/D1.1M Structural Welding Code - Steel.
   b. AWS D1.3/D1.3M Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel.

2. Comply with AISI North American Specification for the Design of Cold Formed Steel Structural Members and Standard for Cold Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions.
   a. AISI Specifications and Standards: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with AISI S100 and AISI S200.

b. Comply with AISI S230 Standard for Cold Formed Steel Framing - Prescriptive Method for One and Two Family Dwellings.

3. Fire Resistance Ratings: ASTM E 119; testing by a UL. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency. Indicate design designations from UL *Fire Resistance Directory*.

B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in the State of Texas and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of cold formed metal framing that are similar to those indicated in material, design, and extent.
1. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, design calculations, and structural data.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect cold formed steel framing from corrosion, moisture staining, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

B. Store cold-formed metal framing, protect with a waterproof covering, and ventilate to avoid condensation.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MATERIALS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. CEMCO; California Expanded Metal Products Co.
2. ClarkDietrich Building Systems.
3. Consolidated Fabricators Corp.; Building Products Division.
4. Marino\WARE.
5. SCAFCO Corporation.
6. The Steel Network.

## 2.2 LOAD BEARING WALL FRAMING

A. Steel Studs: C shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges:
1. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch (1.37 mm), 0.0677 inch (1.72 mm), and 0.0966 inch (2.45 mm).
2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm).
3. Section Properties: Refer to the Drawings.

B. Steel Track: U shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with straight flanges:
1. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch (1.37 mm), 0.0677 inch (1.72 mm), and 0.0966 inch (2.45 mm).
2. Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).

C. Steel Box or Back to Back Headers: C shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with stiffened flanges:

1. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch (1.37 mm), 0.0677 inch (1.72 mm), and 0.0966 inch (2.45 mm).
2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm).

D. Steel Single or Double L Headers: L shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated:
1. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch (1.37 mm), 0.0677 inch (1.72 mm), and 0.0966 inch (2.45 mm).
2. Top Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm).
3. Section Properties: Refer to the Drawings.

## 2.3 EXTERIOR NONLOAD BEARING WALL FRAMING

A. Steel Studs: C shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges:
1. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch (1.37 mm), 0.0677 inch (1.72 mm), and 0.0966 inch (2.45 mm).
2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm).
3. Section Properties: Refer to the Drawings.

B. Steel Track: U shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and as follows:
1. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch (1.37 mm), 0.0677 inch (1.72 mm), and 0.0966 inch (2.45 mm).
2. Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).

C. Vertical Deflection Clips: Head clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. AllSteel & Gypsum Products, Inc.
b. ClarkDietrich Building Systems.
c. Marino\WARE.
d. SCAFCO Corporation.
e. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
f. Steel Network, Inc. (The).
g. Steeler, Inc.

D. Single Deflection Track: Single, deep leg, U shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal loads and transfer them to the primary structure:
1. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch (1.09 mm), 0.0538 inch (1.37 mm), 0.0677 inch (1.72 mm), and 0.0966 inch (2.45 mm).
2. Flange Width: 1 inch (25 mm) plus the design gap for one story structures and 1 inch (25 mm) plus twice the design gap for other applications.

E. Double Deflection Tracks: Double, deep leg, U shaped steel tracks, consisting of nested inner and outer tracks; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges.
1. Outer Track: Of web depth to allow free vertical movement of inner track, with flanges designed to support horizontal loads and transfer them to the primary structure:

a. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch (1.09 mm), 0.0538 inch (1.37 mm), 0.0677 inch (1.72 mm), and 0.0966 inch (2.45 mm).
b. Flange Width: 1 inch (25 mm) plus the design gap for one story structures and 1 inch (25 mm) plus twice the design gap for other applications.

2. Inner Track: Of web depth indicated:
a. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch (1.09 mm), 0.0538 inch (1.37 mm), 0.0677 inch (1.72 mm), and 0.0966 inch (2.45 mm).
b. Flange Width: 1 inch (25 mm) plus the design gap for one story structures and 1 inch (25 mm) plus twice the design gap for other applications.

F. Drift Clips: Bypass or head clips, capable of isolating wall stud from upward and downward vertical displacement and lateral drift of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web and structure.

## 2.4 SOFFIT FRAMING

A. Exterior Soffit Frame: C shaped steel sections, of web depths indicated, with stiffened flanges:
1. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch (1.09 mm)] [0.0538 inch (1.37 mm).
2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) minimum.

## 2.5 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

A. Fabricate steel framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.

B. Provide accessories of appropriate thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Supplementary framing.
2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
3. Web stiffeners.
4. Anchor clips.
5. End clips.
6. Foundation clips.
7. Gusset plates.
8. Stud kickers and knee braces.
9. Joist hangers and end closures.
10. Hole reinforcing plates.
11. Backer plates.

C. Anchors, Clips, and Fasteners:
1. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
2. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion resistant materials, with allowable load or strength design capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC193 and ACI 318 greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified testing agency.
3. Power Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion resistant materials, with allowable load capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC70, greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified testing agency.

4. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion resistant coated, self-drilling, self-tapping, steel drill screws.
    a. Head Type: Low profile head beneath sheathing.

5. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

D. Miscellaneous Materials:
1. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or ASTM A 780.
2. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage compensating agents, and plasticizing and water reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, with fluid consistency and 30 minute working time.
3. Shims: Load bearing, high density multimonomer plastic, and nonleaching; or of cold formed steel of same grade and coating as framing members supported by shims.
4. Sealer Gaskets: Closed cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick, selected from standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

## 2.6 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate cold formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI specifications and standards, manufacturer written instructions, and specified requirements.
1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
3. Fasten cold formed steel framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, pneumatic pin fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
    a. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
    b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by no fewer than three exposed screw threads.

B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.

C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:
1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold formed steel framing assembly to a maximum out of square tolerance of 1/8 inch (3 mm).

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the work.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Before sprayed fire resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.

B. After applying sprayed fire resistive materials, remove only as much as necessary to complete installation of cold formed framing without reducing thickness of fire resistive materials below required thickness to obtain fire resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fire resistive materials from damage.

C. Install load bearing shims or grout between the underside of load bearing wall bottom track and the top of foundation wall or slab at locations with a gap larger than 1/4 inch (6 mm) to ensure a uniform bearing surface on supporting concrete or masonry construction.

D. Install sealer gaskets at the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and at the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

**3.3 ERECTION**

A. General:
   1. Track Anchors: Install anchors maximum 4 feet - 0 inches on center; design anchors and spacing to carry live, dead and wind loads.
   2. Track Splices: Provide channel inserts or weld track splices.
   3. Erection: Install members plumb, level, and in a true plane.
   4. Fastenings: Make assembly rigid and secure, with welds free of voids and burnouts.

B. Install metal framing systems in accordance with stud manufacturer's printed instructions.

C. Runner Tracks:
   1. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs.
   2. Align tracks accurately to layout at base and tops of studs.
   3. Secure tracks as recommended by stud manufacturer, except do not exceed 24 inches on center for nail or power-driven fasteners, nor 16 inches on center for other types of attachment.
   4. Provide fasteners at corners and ends of tracks.
   5. Tracks shall be anchored to structural steel prior to installing sprayed on insulation.
   6. Provide Deflection Track (DT), at top of stud walls at floor or roof above, typically. Allow for 1/2 inch movement of primary structure. Do not attach studs directly to Deflection Track.
   7. Vertical Deflection Clips: Provide manufacturer’s standard bypass and head clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure

D. Secure studs to top track and bottom runner track by means of approved self-drilling screws or welding at both inside and outside flanges of 14 gauge or heavier material. Screws and welds shall be of sufficient size to insure strength of connection. All welding shall comply with American Welding Society "Specification for Welding Sheet Steel in Structures."

E. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for non-plumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.

F. Where stud system abuts structural columns or walls, including masonry walls, anchor ends of stiffeners to supporting structure. Use Zee clips as specified above. Weld "Z" shaped clips to structural members as shown on drawings. Maximum 2 feet on center vertical.

G. Install supplementary framing, blocking and bracing in the metal framing system wherever walls or partitions are indicated to support fixtures, equipment, services, casework, heavy trim and furnishings, and similar work requiring attachment to the wall or partition. Where type of supplementary support is not otherwise indicated, comply with the stud manufacturer's recommendations and industry standards in each case, considering the weight or loading resulting from the item supported.

H. Frame wall openings with extra studs, equal to the number of studs interrupted by wall openings, placed at each side of wall openings. Install runner tracks and jack studs above and below wall openings. Anchor tracks to jamb studs with shoes or by welding, and space jack studs same as full-height studs of the wall. Secure stud system all around to wall opening frame in the manner indicated.

I. Install bracing/bridging in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions and design conditions.

J. Touch up field welds and damaged galvanized coating, except touch up of field cut studs is not required.

K. Frame both sides of expansion and control joints with separate studs; do not bridge the joint with components of stud system.

L. Install horizontal stiffeners in stud system, space (vertical distance) at no more than 54 inches on center. Weld at each intersection.

END OF SECTION 05 40 00

# SECTION 05 50 00 - METAL FABRICATIONS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. General: Furnish all labor, supervision, materials, tools, equipment, appliances and services necessary for the fabrication, delivery and installation of all miscellaneous metal items. All work shall be as shown or indicated on the drawings and as specified in this section.

B. Scope of Work:
   1. Embedded angles and plates
   2. Steel Equipment Supports
   3. Metal Gratings
   4. Steel Plate Covers for Sidewalk Culverts
   5. Miscellaneous metal work and related items.
   6. Shop Priming and Finishing of Metal Fabrications

C. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 03 Section - Concrete.
   2. Division 04 Section - Unit Masonry Assemblies.
   3. Division 06 Section - Rough Carpentry, for concealed blocking for attachment of metal fabrications.
   4. Division 09 Section - Painting.
   5. Division 11, 23 and other Sections for equipment requiring miscellaneous steel support structure.

### 1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Design Criteria:
   1. Connections other than those already listed shall be designed to safely support design load (dead load plus live load) of not less than 100 psi without exceeding working stresses permitted for materials.
   2. Miscellaneous countertop supports designed to safely support a load of 200 lb per linear foot of countertop applied at the outside edge, as well as any additional requirements as specified in Division 06 Section - Architectural Woodwork.
   3. Miscellaneous equipment supports per local code requirements, equipment Manufacturers' requirements and as specified herein.

### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding shall conform to American Welding Society's Standard Code for Arc and Gas Welding in Building Construction. Welding shall be continuous along entire area of contact, except where tack welding is specifically shown or specified. Grind all exposed welds.

B. Shop drawings based on the Contract Documents shall be submitted to the Architect for review prior to ordering of materials.

C. Failure by the contractor to submit shop drawings, test reports, etc. required above shall release the Architect and the Engineer from any liabilities due to the negligence on the part of the contractor to comply with the construction documents.

D. Approval will cover size and arrangement of members, character of construction, but not dimensions.

E. Contractor shall verify actual dimensions at the construction site.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MATERIALS

A. Comply with the following standards, as pertinent:
   1. Steel plates, shapes, and bars: ASTM A36;
   2. Steel plates to be bent or cold-formed: ASTM A283; grade C;
   3. Steel tubing (hot-formed, welded, or seamless): ASTM A500; grade B;
   4. Steel bars and bar-size shapes: ASTM A306; grade 65, or ASTM A36;
   5. Cold-finished steel bars: ASTM A108l
   6. Cold-rolled carbon steel sheets: ASTM A336;
   7. Galvanized carbon steel sheets: ASTM A526, with G90 zinc coating in accordance with ASTM A525;
   8. Stainless steel sheets: AISI type 302 or 304, 24 ga. with number 4 finish;
   9. Gray iron castings: ASTM A48, class 10;
   10. Malleable iron castings: ASTM A47;
   11. Steel pipe: ASTM A53, grade A, schedule 40, black finish unless otherwise noted;
   12. Concrete inserts:
      a. Threaded or wedge-type galvanized ferrous castings of malleable iron complying with ASTM A27.
      b. Provide required bolts, shims, and washers, hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153.
   13. Bolts and nuts: Provide hexagon-head regular type complying with ASTM A307, grade A.
   14. Lag bolts: Provide square-head type complying with Fed Spec FF-B-561;
   15. Machine screws: Provide cadmium plated steel type complying with Fed Spec FF-S-111.

B. Accessories: Provide all anchors bolts, anchor straps, hangers and other related fittings, fastener and accessories required for proper and secure installation of all miscellaneous metal. Fasteners for exterior use shall be zinc coated. Generally, the sizes, shapes and spacing of items are shown or specified; where not shown or specified, accessories shall be adequate for the required services, subject to approval.

### 2.02 ITEMS TO BE PROVIDED

A. Lintel Angles and Bent Plates: Galvanized steel in sizes indicated on Drawings. Extend loose lintel angles a minimum of 8" on each side of opening.

B. Countertop Support Frames: Provide welded steel support frame for wide countertops Section - Architectural Woodwork. Provide steel tube posts located inside adjacent wall framing, with steel tube, channel, or angle horizontal beneath countertop as indicated in Drawings. Steel sizes indicated in Drawings are minimum sizes allowed; provide larger sizes where required to meet performance criteria and delegated design. The depth of the horizontal member must be designed to fit concealed behind the front vertical side of the countertop. Design connection to floor slab to support indicated loading and to fit within wall framing dimensions. Pre-drill for screw attachment / connection of countertop

underlayment as directed by millwork fabricator / installer without intermediate supports as indicated in Drawings, and as indicated in Division 6,

C. Locker Room Bench Bracket: 3” x 3” x 1/4” steel tube with mounting bracket. Provide (1) per 3’-0” of bench, to withstand 100 pounds of force per linear foot of bench.

D. Miscellaneous Equipment Supports: Field verify all dimensions and provide miscellaneous steel support structure for wall and ceiling mounted equipment as follows:
   1. For wall mounted tv and fan mounts, and locations and items as specifically detailed or other items called for in the Drawings or other Sections requiring miscellaneous steel supports for complete installation.
   2. Where not specifically detailed, design and provide supports as required for all other equipment to be provided or installed under this contract.
   3. All supports shall comply with requirements of the equipment Manufacturer(s) for support structure and shall provide adequate strength and secure attachment to building structure, braced against lateral movement.

E. Metal Gratings:
   1. Cast Iron Grating at Trench Drains: Re: Division 25 Section - Plumbing and 33 Section - Utilities.
   2. Metal Grating: 1" x 3/16" steel bearing bar at 1-3/16" on center with cross members welded at 2" on center equal to McNichols Co. No. GW-100-2. Grate at treads shall be galvanized.
   3. At gratings in walk surfaces, orient grating so that short dimension of openings are perpendicular to the path of travel, and in compliance with Texas Accessibility Standards.

F. Sidewalk Culvert: 3/8" galvanized checkerplate sidewalk culvert cover with countersunk screws.

G. Sidewalk Trench Cover & Frame: Standard support frame and bolted down solid checkered top of Gray Iron, Class 35 shall be Neenah Foundry Co., "Light Duty" Series #R-4991 with Type D skid resistant top, or approved equal by Barry Pattern & Foundry, Campbell, or McKinley Iron Works, in sizes as shown on drawings.

H. Miscellaneous Steel Shapes: Channels, angles, plates, tubing, connections and bolts provided where shown and detailed on drawings. Exterior imbed plates, support angles, and other miscellaneous exterior steel shall be hot-dip galvanized.

## 2.03 SHOP PAINTING

A. All Iron and Steel Work: Unless otherwise specified, power tool clean all surfaces to remove mill scale. Work shall receive a shop coat of paint before leaving the factory or being exposed to the weather. Aluminum work contacting dissimilar metals shall receive a protective coating preventing galvanic action.

B. Shop Paint: Shop paint shall be Fabricator's standard, fast curing, lead free, "universal" primer, compatible with finish paint system indicated and for capability to provide sound foundation for field applied topcoats.

C. Aluminum surfaces to be in direct contact with concrete and masonry shall be shop coated with zinc chromate primer.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 FABRICATION

A. Contractor shall secure and be responsible for all field measurements required for the proper and accurate fabrication and installation of the items included under this section; field alterations will not be permitted except upon specific authorization of the Architect.

B. All work shall be assembled in the most substantial manner and reinforced where necessary with structural shapes, using concealed screws, bolts or similar fastenings. Make welds of adequate strength and durability, jointing tight, clean and smooth, flush and in true plane with base metals.

C. All screws or rivets shall be countersunk, unless otherwise noted. Provide lock washers for all bolts.

D. All steel to which wood blocking is connected shall be properly punched for anchoring blocking.

E. Exposed steel shapes with marred surfaces shall be ground or draw-filled to a fine grain finish, as approved before applying shop coat of paint.

F. Assembled work shall be completely constructed in the shop, accurately finished and the pieces match-marked for erection. Form exterior joints to exclude water, grind connections in exposed pieces smooth and polish.

G. The Contractor shall do all drilling, cutting, tapping and fitting of work to accommodate other work coming in contact with it, and shall furnish all taps, bolts and other fittings in connection therewith.

H. Except where otherwise noted, fastening to concrete, solid masonry or hollow masonry shall be with expansion bolts or anchors. Fastening to wood plugs will not be permitted. Toggle bolts may be used only when approved by the Architect.

## 3.02 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. All work included in this Contract shall be installed by the Contractor at the proper time and as rapidly as the progress of the adjacent and connecting work will permit.

B. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true to line, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.

C. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.

D. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

E. Field Welding:
   1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
   2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
   3. Remove welding flux immediately.
   4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
   5. Touch-up shop prime coats.

F. Immediately after erection, clean the field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop priming. Paint the exposed areas with same material used for shop priming.

G. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with the following:
   1. Cast Aluminum: Heavy coat of bituminous paint.

2. Extruded Aluminum: Two coats of clear lacquer.

## 3.03 INSTALLATION, SPECIFIC ITEMS

A. Miscellaneous Framing and Supports:
   1. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.
   2. Anchor supports securely to and rigidly brace from building structure.

## 3.04 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

END OF SECTION 05 50 00

# SECTION 06 10 00 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
   2. Wood blocking, cants and nailers.
   3. Wood furring and grounds.
   4. Wood sleepers.
   5. Plywood.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Division 6 “Architectural Woodwork.”
   2. Division 8 “Hollow Metal Doors and Frames.”
   3. Division 8 “Wood Doors.”
   4. Division 8 “Finish Hardware.
   5. Division 9 “Paint.”
   6. Division 10 “Toilet Accessories.”

### 1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.

B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal or greater but less than 5 inches nominal in least dimension.

C. Timber: Lumber of 5 inches nominal or greater in least dimension.

D. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
   1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
   2. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
   3. RIS: Redwood Inspection Service.
   4. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
   5. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
   6. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

### 1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
   1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
   2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include

physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.

3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.
4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
5. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.

B. Fastener Patterns: Full-size templates for fasteners in exposed framing.

## 1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.

B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
3. Power-driven fasteners.
4. Powder-actuated fasteners.
5. Expansion anchors.
6. Metal framing anchors.

## 1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

## 1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack lumber flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect lumber from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. Certified Wood: Materials shall be produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."
1. Dimension lumber framing.
2. Timber.
3. Laminated-veneer lumber.
4. Parallel-strand lumber.
5. Miscellaneous lumber.

B. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.

1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece.
3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
4. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 15 percent for 2-inch nominal thickness or less, 19 percent for more than 2-inch nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.

D. Engineered Wood Products: Provide engineered wood products acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code research or evaluation reports exist that show compliance with building code in effect for Project.
1. Allowable Design Stresses: Provide engineered wood products with allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer that meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

## 2.02 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with the ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with the ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with the ground.
1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.
2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.

B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.

C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece.

D. Application: Treat all rough carpentry unless otherwise indicated and the following:
1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
4. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.
5. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

## 2.03 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.

B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
   1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
   2. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
   3. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
   4. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber shall be tested according ASTM D 5664 and design value adjustment factors shall be calculated according to ASTM D 6841. For enclosed roof framing, framing in attic spaces, and where high temperature fire-retardant treatment is indicated, provide material with adjustment factors of not less than 0.85 modulus of elasticity and 0.75 for extreme fiber in bending for Project's climatological zone.

C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Kiln-dry plywood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent.

D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
   1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by testing agency.

E. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.

F. Application: Treat all rough carpentry unless otherwise indicated, and the following:
   1. Framing for raised platforms.
   2. Framing for stages.
   3. Concealed blocking.
   4. Framing for non-load-bearing partitions.
   5. Framing for non-load-bearing exterior walls.
   6. Roof construction.
   7. Plywood backing panels.

## 2.04 DIMENSION LUMBER FRAMING

A. Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions:
   1. Application: Interior partitions not indicated as load-bearing.
   2. Species:
      a. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
      b. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
      c. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
      d. Hem-fir; WCLIB, or WWPA.
      e. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
      f. Northern species; NLGA.
      g. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.
      h. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.

## 2.05 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
   1. Blocking.
   2. Nailers.
   3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
   4. Cants.
   5. Furring.
   6. Grounds.
   7. Utility shelving.

B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction or No. 2 and the following species:
   1. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
   2. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
   3. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
   4. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
   5. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
   6. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.
   7. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.

C. For utility shelving, provide lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
   1. Eastern white pine, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine.
   2. Mixed southern pine; No. 1 grade; SPIB.
   3. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir.

D. For concealed boards, provide lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
   1. Mixed southern pine; No. 2 grade; SPIB.
   2. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir.
   3. Western woods; Construction or No. 2 Common.

E. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.

F. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.

G. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

## 2.05 PLYWOOD PRODUCTS:

1. All lumber shall be kiln dried to a moisture content of 4-1/2 percent. Kiln dried lumber shall be tempered for not less than four weeks before using.
2. Softwood Plywood for Laminate finish: DOC PS 1, at semi-exposed surfaces unless noted otherwise.

## 2.06 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

A. Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exterior, AC, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 3/4-inch nominal thickness.
   1. Plywood shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.07 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
   1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.

B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.

D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.

E. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1.

F. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A; with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.

G. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to four times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
   1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
   2. Material: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2.

## 2.08 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: 5-1/2” x 3/8” closed cell foam and adhesive backed peel and stick membrane, equal to Protecto Wrap (800-759-9727) “Triple Guard Energy Sill Sealer.”

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.

B. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.

C. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels.

E. Install sill sealer gasket to form continuous seal between sill plates and foundation walls.

F. Fastenings for Wall Supported Items: Provide and install 2 x 8 (minimum) x 1 stud space wood blocking, unless specified otherwise at all stud wall areas receiving grab bars, toilet partitions, wall bumpers and other wall mounted accessories.

G. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.

1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches o.c.

H. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
   1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
   2. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and 2-inch nominal- thickness.
   3. Fire block concealed spaces between floor sleepers with same material as sleepers to limit concealed spaces to not more than 100 sq. ft. and to solidly fill space below partitions.
   4. Fire block concealed spaces behind combustible cornices and exterior trim at not more than 20 feet o.c.

I. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

J. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
   1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
   2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
   3. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.

K. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.

L. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced, and with adjacent rows staggered.
   1. Comply with fastener patterns where applicable.
   2. Use finishing nails unless otherwise indicated. Countersink nail heads and fill holes with wood filler.
   3. Use common nails unless otherwise indicated. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads.

## 3.02 WOOD GROUND, SLEEPER, BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

A. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.

B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

C. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.

D. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

## 3.03 WOOD FURRING INSTALLATION

A. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.

B. Furring to Receive Plywood or Hardboard Paneling: Install 1-by-3-inch nominal- size furring horizontally and vertically at 24 inches o.c.

C. Furring to Receive Gypsum Board, Plaster Lath: Install 1-by-2-inch nominal- size furring vertically at 16 inches o.c.

## 3.04 ROUGH HARDWARE

A. Provide bolts, screws, anchors, inserts and fastenings required for proper attachment of carpentry and millwork items. Fastenings to concrete or masonry with expansion bolts or anchors. Toggle bolts may be used for hollow masonry. Fastening to wood plugs not permitted. Fastenings spaced 16" o.c. unless otherwise noted.

## 3.05 PROTECTION

A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 06 10 00

# SECTION 06 16 00 - SHEATHING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Wall sheathing.
   2. Sheathing joint and penetration treatment.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Division 06 Section - Rough Carpentry for plywood backing panels.
   2. Division 07 Section – Fluid-Applied Air Barrier for water-resistive barrier applied over wall sheathing.
   3. Division 07 Section - Metal Wall and Soffit Panels.
   4. Division 07 Section - Sheet Metal and Flashing.

### 1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
   1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
   2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials.
   3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated plywood both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5516.
   4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
   5. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.

B. Evaluation Reports: For following products, from ICC-ES:
   1. Preservative-treated wood panel products.
   2. Fire-retardant-treated wood panel products.
   3. Foam-plastic sheathing.

### 1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For assemblies with fire-resistance ratings, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Design roof sheathing fastener patterns to requirements as specified for roofing, wind pressures as indicated in Structural Drawings, and requirements of local codes and authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is most stringent.

### 2.02 WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS

A. Plywood: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified, but not less than thickness indicated in Drawings.
   1. Refer to structural Drawings and specifications for requirements where sheathing acts as a shear wall or roof diaphragm.

C. Factory mark panels to indicate compliance with applicable standard.

### 2.03 PRESERVATIVE-TREATED WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS

A. Preservative Treatments by Pressure Process: AWPA U1 for uses indicated; and as follows:
   1. Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.

B. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings and plywood in contact with masonry or concrete or used with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.

### 2.04 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS

A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.

B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
   1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
   2. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
   3. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
   4. Where treated items are exposed on exterior or to high humidity or are to have a transparent finish in the form of a stain or sealer, provide materials which show no change in fire-hazard classification when subjected to standard rain test (UL 790 or ASTM B2898).

5. Use fire-retardant treatment which will not bleed through or adversely affect type of finish indicated and which does not require brush treatment of field made end cuts to maintain fire-hazard classification.

C. Kiln-dry material after treatment to maximum moisture content of 15 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.

D. Identify fire-retardant-treated plywood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.

E. Application: Treat all plywood not specified or shown to receive preservative treatment.

## 2.05 WALL SHEATHING

A. Plywood Wall Sheathing:
1. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 1/2 inch, and not less than 3/4 inch at back side of parapet framing above roof. Additionally, comply with minimum thicknesses indicated in structural Drawings.

B. Glass-Mat Gypsum Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 1177/1177M.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. CertainTeed Corporation; GlasRoc.
   b. G-P Gypsum Corporation; Dens-Glass Gold.
   c. National Gypsum Company; Gold Bond eXP.
   d. Temple-Inland Inc.; GreenGlass
   e. United States Gypsum Co.; Securock.
2. Type and Thickness: as indicated on drawings.

## 2.06 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
1. Unless otherwise noted, for fasteners at ACQ or corrosive treated wood, provide stainless steel fasteners, or fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.

B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.

D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.

E. Screws for Fastening Wood Structural Panels to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C 954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
1. For wall and roof sheathing panels, provide screws with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.

F. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.
1. For steel framing less than 0.0329 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 1002.
2. For steel framing from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 954.

## 2.07 SHEATHING JOINT-AND-PENETRATION TREATMENT MATERIALS

A. Sealant for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: Silicone emulsion sealant complying with ASTM C 834, compatible with sheathing tape and sheathing and recommended by tape and sheathing manufacturers for use with glass-fiber sheathing tape and for covering exposed fasteners.
   1. Sheathing Tape: Self-adhering glass-fiber tape, minimum 2 inches wide, 10 by 10 or 10 by 20 threads/inch, of type recommended by sheathing and tape manufacturers for use with silicone emulsion sealant in sealing joints in glass-mat gypsum sheathing and with a history of successful in-service use.

B. Refer to Division 7 Section(s) for joint treatment requirements for liquid applied air barrier membranes.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.

B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work. Unless otherwise indicated, fit tightly against abutting construction, except provide a 3/8” setback where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
   1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's "International Building Code."

C. Coordinate sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through the completed assembly.

D. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.

E. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when precipitation is forecast.

## 3.02 GYPSUM SHEATHING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
   2. Install boards with a 3/8-inch gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
   3. Install boards with a 1/4-inch gap where they abut masonry or similar materials that might retain moisture, to prevent wicking.

B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing, but do not cut into facing.

C. Horizontal Installation: Abut ends of boards over centers of studs, and stagger end joints of adjacent boards not less than one stud spacing. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each steel stud.
   1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of boards.

D. Vertical Installation: Install board vertical edges centered over studs. Abut ends and edges of each board with those of adjacent boards. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each stud.

1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of boards.

E. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Complete installation of sill sealer gaskets by adhering upward leg of tee-shaped gaskets to face of sheathing.
   2. Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing joints and apply and trowel silicone emulsion sealant to embed entire face of tape in sealant. Apply sealant to exposed fasteners with a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.

END OF SECTION 06 16 00

# SECTION 06 64 00 - PLASTIC PANELING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Provide fiber reinforced plastic wall panels and trim accessories, as shown on the drawings and as herein specified.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 09 Section - Gypsum Wallboard.
   2. Division 10 Section - Wall and Door Protection for corner guards over paneling.

### 1.03 PRODUCT DELIVERY STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in manufacturer's original packaging. Remove from shipping skid and restack on a solid, flat, dry surface a minimum of 24 hours prior to installation. Do not stack panels directly on concrete floor.

B. Inspect panels for defects or unacceptable quality. Remove these items from premises.

### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Division 01 Section - Submittal Procedures: Procedures for submittals.

B. Submit product literature and manufacturer's standard brochures on all materials specified.

C. LEED Submittals:
   1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
   2. Division 10 Section "Wall and Door Protection" for corner guards over paneling.
   3. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.4: For laminating adhesive and composite wood products used in factory-laminated plastic panels, documentation indicating that product contains no urea formaldehyde.
   4. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For adhesives sealants and wall panels, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

D. Submit 12" x 12" sample of each type of panel, 12" long samples of each type of moldings and sample of each fastener.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MATERIALS

A. Fiber Reinforced Plastic Panel: Semi-rigid reinforced thermosetting polyester resin panel sheet. Panel shall be of Class A **[C]** flame spread according to ASTM E 84, with uniform color throughout. Panel shall be 4' x 9' and minimally 3/32" thick. Panel shall be Marlite Brand FRP Panels or approved equal. Color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.

B. Moldings: One piece extruded moldings of polyvinyl chloride at divisions between panels, inside and outside corners and at panel ends. Color shall match panel.

C. Adhesive: High strength waterproof, solvent rubber based adhesive, specifically for use on FRP panels shall be "C-551 Adhesive" or approved equal.

D. Sealant: One part acetoxy, silicone rubber sealant shall be Kemlite's No. S255W, in color "White", as acceptable to panel manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 INSPECTION

A. Examine surfaces to receive FRP panels for defects or irregularities that would impair installation or transfer through panel surface.

B. Substrate surface must be dry and free of dirt, dust and grease.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Spread adhesive 1/4" deep over entire panel to achieve 100% coverage.

B. Set panel in position before adhesive skins over. Pull panel off wall to flash off solvents and then replace panel. Apply adequate uniform pressure to make full contact between panel and wall.

C. Install molding to substrate using coated lath nails allowing 1/8" clearance between panel and division bar molding and 1/4" clearance at ceiling and floor junctures for expansion and contraction. Apply bead of sealant on opening of molding to receive panel prior to insertion of panel. Clean excess sealant from panel.

D. All edges and joints of panels shall receive molding. Use continuous 10' lengths of molding at all panels. Piecing will not be acceptable.

### 3.03 CLEANING

A. Exposed surfaces of materials sponged and washed, removing all dirt, excess sealant and excess adhesive.

B. Remove all debris and scraps and leave entire area clean and in acceptable condition.

END OF SECTION 06 64 00

# SECTION 07 21 00 - THERMAL INSULATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Provide all building insulation as shown on the drawings and as herein specified.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 04 Section – Masonry sections, for coordination in marking centerlines of studs on the face of exterior continuous insulation for subsequent installation of ties and anchors.
   2. Division 05 Section - Architectural Metal Decking.
   3. Division 06 Section - Sheathing.
   4. Division 09 Section - Gypsum Board Assemblies.
   5. Division 21 and 23 Sections, for piping and mechanical ductwork insulation.

### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Design Criteria:
   1. Thermal Resistance: R-Value designations indicated in accordance with ASTM C-518 is the thermal resistance of the insulation only.
   2. Fire Resistance: Material shall have a Class B fire rating less than 75 as tested by ASTM E-84.

### 1.04 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in manufacturer's original packages, clearly marked with brand name, type and R-Value.

B. Store materials in area protected from weather, moisture and damage, remove any damaged materials from the site.

### 1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Samples of materials and complete product literature (with documented R-Values) submitted for approval to the Architect prior to ordering materials.

B. Provide Dew Point Analysis to confirm insulation thickness and location of weather barrier for particular building site (inside or outside face of insulation).

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with project requirements, Manufacturer's offering Products which may be incorporated into the work include the following:
   1. CertainTeed Corporation, Valley Forge, PA. (215) 341-7000.
   2. Owens-Corning Fiberglass Corporation, Toledo, OH. (419) 248-8000.
   3. Schuller International, Insulation Division, Denver, CO. (800) 654-3103.
   4. Johns Manville, Denver, CO.
   5. Knauf Insulation, Shelbyville, IN.
   6. Dow Chemical Company, Midland, MI.
   7. ROXUL, Inc., Milton, Ontario

B. Division 01 Section - Product Requirements: Product options and substitutions. Substitutions: Permitted.

### 2.02 MATERIALS

A. Continuous Insulation at exterior cavity wall Construction: Semi-rigid mineral wool insulation board that is water repellent and meets ASTM C612, IVA. Thermafiber RainBarrier 45 Insulation, or approved equal.
   1. R-Value: 4.3 per inch of thickness. Thickness(es) as noted on Drawings.
   2. Facing: Unfaced.
   3. Density: 4.5 pounds per cubic foot.
   4. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame Spread 0, Smoke Developed 0.
   5. Moisture Resistance: Absorbs less than 0.03% by volume, ASTM C 1104.
   6. Non-Corrosive, ASTM C 665.

B. Continuous Insulation at exterior cavity at dry joint rain screen exterior finishes: High density, semi-rigid mineral wool insulation board that is water repellent and meets ASTM C612, IVA. Thermafiber RainBarrier HD Insulation, or approved equal.
   1. R-Value: 4.3 per inch of thickness. Thickness(es) as noted on Drawings.
   2. Facing: Unfaced.
   3. Density: 6.0 pounds per cubic foot.
   4. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame Spread 0, Smoke Developed 0.
   5. Moisture Resistance: Absorbs less than 0.03% by volume, ASTM C 1104.
   6. Non-Corrosive, ASTM C 665.
   7. Color: Standard.

### 2.03 AUXILIARY INSULATING MATERIALS

A. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation and substrates. Adhesive shall be compatible with air barrier membrane.

B. Provide insulation fasteners as recommended by manufacturer for substrates and conditions indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 INSPECTION AND COORDINATION

A. Examine areas receiving insulation work to insure work of preceding trades is completed. Check surfaces to see that they are uniform in place, free from mortar droppings, grease, oil or other debris which would affect proper insulation. Application constitutes acceptance of substrate conditions.

B. Coordinate marking centerline of studs on exterior face of continuous insulation as required for insulation installation and for subsequent fastener installation by other trades.

## 3.02 GENERAL INSTALLATION

A. Prepare surfaces using methods recommended by manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed at any time to ice, rain, and snow.

C. Insulation installed in accordance with current printed recommendations of insulation manufacturer as specified.

D. Water-Piping Coordination: If water piping is located within insulated exterior walls, coordinate location of piping to ensure that it is placed on warm side of insulation and insulation encapsulates piping.

E. Install batt insulation without visible voids, gaps or separations. Place insulation in Cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members. Cut and trim insulation neatly to fit spaces without laps, bulges or folds. Use batts free of rips and tears.
   1. Coordinate with light gauge metal stud installer to pack batt insulation in light gauge metal construction as it is being constructed, that will be inaccessible to install batts when completed (headers, stud packs, etc). Use mineral batts where insulation may get wet or be exposed to weather prior to closing the building envelope.

F. Fit insulation tight within spaces and tight to and behind mechanical and electrical wiring.

G. Mineral Fiber Semi-Rigid Board Continuous Insulation:
   1. Continuous insulation at exterior walls shall be adhered or attached in place per manufacturer's recommendations for the substrates and conditions indicated. Use of friction fit only between furring channels is not an acceptable installation.
      a. Construction adhesive must be recommended by its manufacturer for use with the continuous insulation board and compatible with air barrier membrane or dampproofing mastic with which it will come in contact.
      b. Mechanical fasteners installation shall be coordinated with air barrier manufacturer's requirements for fastener penetrations through the air barrier, as applicable.
   2. Fit courses of insulation with edges butted tightly in both directions. Press units firmly against substrates indicated.
   3. Press units firmly against sheathing, or other substrates. Stagger joints. Make insulation continuous. Fill all voids.
   4. Coordinate placement of insulation with location of masonry veneer anchors, metal Zee furring, and similar construction.
   5. Cut and fit insulation tight to protrusions or interruptions to insulation plane.

## 3.03 INSTALLATION OF GENERAL BUILDING INSULATION

A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.

B. Install batt insulation in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
   1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill cavity, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.

2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
3. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
4. Fill roof expansion joints with batt insulation to equal or greater R-value of insulation at roof surface.

C. Install board insulation on concrete substrates by adhesively attached, spindle-type insulation anchors as follows:
1. Fasten insulation anchors to concrete substrates with insulation anchor adhesive according to anchor manufacturer's written instructions. Space anchors according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions for insulation type, thickness, and application indicated.
2. Apply insulation standoffs to each spindle to create cavity width indicated between concrete substrate and insulation.
3. After adhesive has dried, install board insulation by pressing insulation into position over spindles and securing it tightly in place with insulation-retaining washers, taking care not to compress insulation below indicated thickness.
4. Where insulation will not be covered by other building materials, apply capped washers to tips of spindles.

## 3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Comply with requirements of Authorities having jurisdiction for inspection of installation of insulation, and with requirements of commissioning agent. Notify respective parties and schedule required inspections prior to closing walls or cavities containing thermal insulation.

END OF SECTION 07 21 00

# SECTION 07 27 27 - FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIER

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Fluid-applied membrane air barrier, vapor permeable.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 06 and/or 09 Sections for coordination with sheathing installation requirements.
   2. Division 07 Sections for coordination with other weatherization systems of the building envelope.
   3. Division 07 Section - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim.
   4. Division 07 Section(s) for rainscreen cladding system(s) installed in front of fluid applied membrane air barrier.
   5. Division 07 Section - Expansion Control for expansion-joint assemblies that interface with air barriers.

### 1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM E2357: Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies.

B. ASTM E2178: Standard Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials.

C. ASTM E283: Standard Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen.

D. ASTM E1677 Specification for Air Retarder (AR) Material or System for Low-Rise Framed Building Walls.

E. ASTM E330: Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.

F. ASTM E331: Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.

G. ASTM E96: Water Vapor Transmission of Materials.

H. CGSB 37-GP-56M: Membrane, Modified, Bituminous, Prefabricated, and Reinforced.

I. AMMA 2400: Standard Practice for Installation of Windows with a Mounting Flange in Stud Frame Construction.

J. ASTM E 2112: Standard Practice for Installation of Exterior Windows, Doors and Skylights.

K. ASTM D 5590: Standard Test Method for Determining the Resistance of Paint Films and Related Coatings to Fungal Defacement by Accelerated Four-Week Agar Plate Assay.

### 1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Air barrier shall be capable of performing as a continuous vapor- permeable air barrier and as a liquid-water drainage plane flashed to discharge to the exterior incidental condensation and water penetration. Air barrier assemblies shall be capable of accommodating substrate movement and of sealing substrate expansion and control joints, construction material changes, and transitions at perimeter conditions without deterioration and air leakage exceeding specified limits.
   1. Air barrier shall be system approved by manufacturer for use with the open faced rain screen cladding system(s) specified in other Sections of these specifications. Air barrier shall be UV resistant, designed to perform for the lifetime of the material without degradation in performance due to UV radiation exposure through the open faced cladding system(s).

B. Junctions of air barrier shall be coordinated with other adjacent weatherization systems for complete weather tight building envelope.

C. Entire system visible through open faced cladding system(s) shall be consistent uniform color.
   1. Color: Black, or other color as approved in writing by Architect.
   2. Visible surface shall be of consistent quality that in Architect's opinion does not adversely affect aesthetic quality of the installation, to quality standards as per approved mock-up.

## 1.05 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each product indicated

B. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of air barrier. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, counterflashing strip, penetrations, inside and outside corners, terminations, and tie-ins with adjoining construction.
   1. Include details of interfaces with other materials that form part of air barrier.

## 1.06 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product certificates.

B. Qualification data.

C. Product test reports.

## 1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Applicator Qualifications: Submit document stating the applicator of the primary air barrier membranes specified in this section is qualified by the manufacturer as suitable for the execution of the Work.

B. Maintain a copy of manufacturer's written installation instructions on site. Allow access to work site by air barrier membrane manufacturer's representative to inspect installation.

C. Single Source Responsibility: Components used shall be sourced from one manufacturer, including sheet membrane, air barrier sealants, primers, mastics, and adhesives. Obtain air barrier materials from a single manufacturer regularly engaged in manufacturing the product.
   1. Provide products which comply with all federal, state and local regulations controlling use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs).

D. Mockups: Before beginning installation of air barrier, build mockups of exterior wall assembly, 100 sq. ft., incorporating backup wall construction, external cladding, window, door frame and sill, insulation, and flashing to demonstrate surface preparation, crack and joint treatment, and sealing of gaps, terminations, and penetrations of air barrier membrane.
   1. Coordinate construction of mockup to permit inspection by Owner's testing agency of air barrier before external insulation and cladding is installed.
   2. Include junctions with roofing membrane and other adjacent weatherization systems as applicable.

3. Test mock-up for air and water infiltration to conform with Section 01400 - Quality Control, in accordance with ASTM E783 and ASTM E1105.

E. Coordination Meeting:
   1. Contractor shall convene a coordination meeting at least one week prior to commencing Work of this section.
   2. Ensure all contractors responsible for creating a continuous air tight envelope are present. Invite representatives of air barrier and weatherization system(s).
   3. Discuss interface of all materials in contact with air barrier and weatherization systems. Confirm requirements to ensure air tight and weather tight installation in compliance with specifications and warranty requirements.
   4. Record and distribute minutes to all parties and copy Architect.

F. Contractor to verify compliance for Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC) limitations of products comply with all federal, state and local regulations controlling use of volatile organic compounds (VOCs).

## 1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Refer to current Product MSDS for proper storage and handling. Store and handle materials in compliance with manufacturer's recommendations, and within manufacturer's temperature limits.

B. Deliver materials to the job site in undamaged and original packaging indicating the name of the manufacturer and product.

C. Store role materials on end in original packaging. Protect rolls from direct sunlight until ready for use.

D. .Keep solvent away from open flame or excessive heat.

## 1.09 WARRANTY

A. Provide manufacturer's standard 10-year material warranty.
   1. Coordinate with manufacturer for required inspections by manufacturer's representative.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIER SYSTEM

A. Fluid-Applied, Vapor-Permeable Membrane Air Barrier: synthetic polymer membrane. Basis of Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following, or approved comparable product by another manufacturer:
   1. Primary air and rain barrier membrane for temperatures above 40 degrees F and rising: Air-Bloc 33 MR manufactured by Henry; a UV resistant one component water based elastomeric emulsion membrane, fire resistant and designed for permanent exposure, trowel or spray applied, having the following characteristics:
      a. Air permeability: 0.0016 CFM/$ft^2$ @ 1.6 lbs/$ft^2$ to ASTM E2178 and ASTM E283 and have no increased air leakage when subjected to a sustained wind load of 10.5 lbs/$ft^2$ for 1 hour and gust wind load pressure of 62.8 lbs/$ft^2$ for 10 seconds when tested at 1.6 lbs/$ft^2$ to ASTM E331.
      b. Water vapor permeance: 11.6 perms to ASTM E96 Method B when tested at 58 mils dry film thickness.
      c. Rating 0 - No fungal growth as tested to ASTM D 5590
      d. Surface Burning: NFPA Class A, UBC Class 1, Flame Spread 25, Smoke Developed 85 to ASTM E84.
      e. UV Resistance: Passes 73 Cycles to ASTM D4799 Cycle B (Q-UV).
      f. Low temperature flexibility and crack bridging: Pass -4 degrees F to ASTM C836.

g. Long term flexibility: Pass to CGSB 71-GP-24M.
h. Watertightness (CGSB 37-GP-56M): Pass.

2. Self-adhering vapor permeable air barrier membrane for head and jamb of wood frame windows, transition and joint treatment: manufacturer's recommended self-adhering membrane consisting of a microporous film laminate, backed with a specially applied adhesive, which allows water vapor to permeate through while acting as a barrier to air and rain water. Membrane shall have the following physical properties:
   a. Air leakage: <0.002 CFM/$ft^2$ @ 1.6 lbs/$ft^2$ to ASTM E283-91.
   b. Water vapor permeance: 37 perms to ASTM E96.
   c. Membrane Thickness: 17 mils.
   d. Low temperature flexibility -40 degrees F: Pass to ASTM D3111.
   e. Hydrostatic Water Resistance: 18 psi ASTM D751 Procedure A.

B. Other Acceptable Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. BASF
2. GCP Applied Technologies
3. Hohmann & Barnard
4. W.R. Meadows
5. Dupont Tyvek

## 2.02 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by air barrier manufacturer for intended use and compatible with air barrier membrane. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Primer: Liquid primer recommended for substrate by manufacturer of air barrier material.

C. Adhesives: Manufacturer's standard adhesives for products and substrates indicated, and complying with performance criteria.

D. Joint Reinforcing Strip: Manufacturer’s recommended self adhering membrane, or where acceptable to manufacturer for applications and warranty indicated, reinforcing strip may be air barrier manufacturer's glass-fiber-mesh tape.

E. Substrate Patching Membrane: Manufacturer's standard trowel-grade substrate filler.

F. Preformed Silicone-Sealant Extrusion: Manufacturer's standard system consisting of cured low-modulus silicone extrusion, sized to fit opening widths, with a single-component, neutral-curing, Class 100/50 (low-modulus) silicone sealant for bonding extrusions to substrates.

G. Penetration and Termination Sealant: Manufacturer's recommended medium modulus polymer modified sealing compound having the following physical properties:
1. Compatible with sheet air barrier, roofing and waterproofing membranes and substrates.
2. Complies with Fed. Spec. TT-S-00230C, Type II, Class A
3. Complies with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25
4. Elongation: 450 - 550%
5. Remains flexible with aging
6. Seals construction joints up to 1 inch wide.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that surfaces and conditions are ready to accept the Work of this section. Commencement of the Work or any parts thereof shall constitute acceptance of the prepared substrates.

B. All surfaces must be sound, dry, clean and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar or other contaminants. Fill voids, gaps and spalled areas in substrate to provide an even plane. Strike masonry joints flush.

C. Where curing compounds are used they must be clear resin based without oil, wax or pigments.

D. Do not proceed with application of air barrier membrane when rain is expected within 24 hours.

E. Condition materials prior to application to room temperature, or as recommended by manufacturer, to facilitate handling.

## 3.02 SURFACE PREPARATION

A. Ensure all preparatory Work is complete prior to applying primary air barrier membrane.

B. Mechanical fasteners used to secure sheathing boards or penetrate sheathing boards shall be set flush with sheathing and fastened into solid backing.

## 3.03 TRANSITION STRIP INSTALLATION

A. Install strips, transition strips, and auxiliary materials according to air barrier manufacturer's written instructions to form a seal with adjacent construction and maintain a continuous air barrier.
   1. Coordinate the installation of air barrier with installation of roofing membrane and base flashing to ensure continuity of air barrier with roofing membrane.
   2. Install butyl strip on roofing membrane or base flashing so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over both substrates.

B. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air barrier sheet in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.

C. Connect and seal exterior wall air barrier membrane continuously to roofing membrane air barrier, concrete below-grade structures, floor-to floor construction, exterior glazing and window systems, glazed curtain-wall systems, storefront systems, exterior louvers, exterior door framing, and other construction used in exterior wall openings, using accessory materials.

D. At end of each working day, seal top edge of strips and transition strips to substrate with termination mastic.

E. Apply joint sealants forming part of air barrier assembly within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturer when sealant cannot be applied within these temperature ranges.

F. Wall Openings: Prime concealed perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors. Apply preformed silicone-sealant extrusion so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over both substrates. Maintain 3 inches of full contact over firm bearing to perimeter frames with not less than 1 inch of full contact.

G. Fill gaps in perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors, and miscellaneous penetrations of air barrier membrane with foam sealant.

H. Seal strips and transition strips around steel panel anchors with termination mastic.

I. Seal exposed edges of strips at seams, cuts, penetrations, and terminations not concealed by metal counterflashings or ending in reglets with termination mastic.

J. Repair punctures, voids, and deficient lapped seams in strips and transition strips. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with transition strips extending 6 inches beyond repaired areas in strip direction.

## 3.04 AIR BARRIER MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

A. Clean, prepare, treat, and seal substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for air barrier application.

B. Apply air barrier membrane to form a seal with strips and transition strips and to achieve a continuous air barrier according to air barrier manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Apply air barrier membrane within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges.

D. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow to dry as recommended by manufacturer. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air barrier sheet in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.

E. Apply a continuous unbroken air barrier to substrates according to the following minimum thickness. Apply membrane in full contact around protrusions such as masonry ties.
   1. Vapor-Permeable Membrane Air Barrier: Thickness recommended by manufacturer.

F. Apply strip and transition strip a minimum of 1 inch onto cured air membrane according to air barrier manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Do not cover air barrier until it has been tested and inspected by Owner's testing agency.

H. Correct deficiencies in or remove air barrier that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates and reapply air barrier components.

## 3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Inspections: Air barrier materials and installation are subject to inspection for compliance with requirements.

C. Remove and replace deficient air barrier components and retest as specified above.

## 3.06 PROTECTION

A. Protect air barrier system from damage during application and remainder of construction period, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Protect air barrier from exposure to UV light and harmful weather exposure as required by manufacturer. Remove and replace air barrier exposed for more than 30 days.

## 3.07 WASTE MANAGEMENT

A. Separate corrugated cardboard in accordance with the Waste Management Plan and place in designated areas for recycling.

B. Fold up metal banding, flatten, and place in designated area for recycling.

C. Use trigger operated spray nozzles for water hoses.

D. Return solvent and oil soaked rags for contaminant recovery and laundering or for proper disposal.

E. Use the least toxic sealants, adhesives, sealers, and finishes necessary to comply with the requirements of this section.

END OF SECTION 07 27 27

# SECTION 07 42 13 - METAL WALL AND SOFFIT PANELS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Work includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary for fabrication and installation of metal wall and soffit panels as shown on drawings and as herein specified.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 06 Section - Sheathing.
   2. Division 07 Section - Modified Bituminous Sheet Air Barrier, for air barrier behind metal wall panels.
   3. Division 07 Section - "Roofing" Sections, and "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim", for coordination of air barrier and terminations between metal wall panels, and roofing and parapet copings.

### 1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. References in these specifications to standards, test methods and codes, are implied to mean the latest edition of each such standard adopted. The following is an abbreviated list of associations, institutions, and societies which may be used as references throughout these specifications.
   1. ASTM - American Society for Testing and Materials, Philadelphia, PA.
   2. FM - Factory Mutual Engineering and Research, Norwood, MA.
   3. NRCA - National Roofing Contractors Association, Rosemont, IL.
   4. OSHA - Occupational Safety and Health Administration, Washington, DC.
   5. SMACNA - Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association, Chantilly, VA
   6. UL - Underwriters Laboratories, Northbook. IL

### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator and erector shall demonstrate experience of a minimum of five years of related industry experience.

B. Design Criteria: Engineering panels for structural properties in accordance with the latest edition of the American Iron and Steel Institute "Cold Formed Steel Design Manual", using "effective width" concepts.

C. Metal Shapes Design Criteria: Conform to latest edition of Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association (SMACNA).

D. Preliminary Roofing Conference: Before starting roof construction, conduct conference at Project site.
   1. Review methods and procedures related to roof construction and sheet metal wall panels including all penetration and termination details at back side of parapets.

## 1.05 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Material Compatibility: At panels adjacent to roofing, provide materials that are compatible with adjacent roofing materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by membrane roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

B. Testing Requirements: The wall system shall be tested in compliance with local code requirements and as follows:
   1. Wind Resistance: The system shall be tested to comply wind resistance forces per local code requirements.
   2. Physical Weathering Properties: Metal panels shall have corrosion resistance in accordance with local code requirements for the materials indicated.
   3. Fire Classification: The system shall be identified and listed for the fire class as required by local code by an approved testing agency, tested in compliance with ASTM E 108 or UL 790.

C. Structural Performance: Provide wall panels systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592:
   1. Wind Loads: As required by code and indicated wind rating, whichever is greater.
   2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings, where applicable.
   3. Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than 1/240.

D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
   1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F ambient; 180 deg F material surfaces.

E. Jobsite Safety: Execute all operations and provide a safe work environment in accordance with OSHA standards and regulations.
   1. Follow all industry, code, fire prevention guidelines and requirements for storage of materials, staging areas, and application means and methods.

## 1.06 SUBMITTALS

A. Product data and shop drawings based on the Contract Documents and field conditions of each metal panel type, profile and trim configuration to be installed.

B. Samples:
   1. Submit samples for each metal wall finish.
   2. Submit samples of each type and color of sealant.

C. Shop drawings showing profile and gauge of sheets, location and type of fasteners, location, gauges, shape and method of attachment of all trim, location and type of sealants, and any other details as may be required for a weathertight installation. Indicate field and factory applied sealant.

D. Informational Submittal: Letter from Manufacturer stating acceptance of proposed underlayment for use with their products, including anticipated service temperatures.

E. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.

F. Qualification Data: For Installer.

G. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

H. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.07 STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Panels should be stored on edge in a clean dry place. One end should be slightly elevated to allow moisture to run off rather than accumulate on the faces.

B. Panels with strippable plastic film must not be stored in the open, exposed to the sun.

C. Stack pre-formed and prefinished material to prevent twisting, bending, or abrasion and to provide ventilation.

D. Prevent contact with materials during storage which may cause discoloration or staining.

E. In handling prefinished panels, lift up panels and do not slide panels when un-stacking.

## 1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS AND COORDINATION

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

B. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of canopies and soffit supports, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

## 1.09 WARRANTY

A. Provide manufacturer's standard limited thirty (30) year protective coating warranty and twenty (20) year substrate warranty stating the products will not:
   1. Crack, check, or peel for 30 years;
   2. Chalk in excess of a numerical rating of eight for roofing and siding panels when measured in accordance with the standard procedure specified in ASTM D659 (latest) for 30 years.;
   3. Fade or change in color in excess of five units of color difference ("NBS" units) for non-metallic coatings on roofing and siding panels when measured in accordance with the standard procedure specified in ASTM D 2244 (latest) paragraph 4.3 on a washed test area for 30 years. On metallic paint finishes the color change is indeterminate and not covered under this warranty;
   4. Perforate or structurally fail due to corrosion for 20 years for aluminum or aluminum-zinc alloy steel substrates.

B. Furnish written warranty signed by applicator for two year period from date of substantial completion of building covering repairs at back side of parapets as required to maintain parapets, roof and flashings in watertight conditions.

C. Special Weathertightness Warranty: Manufacturer’s standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace metal roof panel assemblies that fail to remain weathertight, including leaks, within specified warranty period.
   1. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products of one of the following:
   1. Basis of Design – Fabral Metal Wall and Roof Systems “Thin Seam" (Contact: Tyrance Jackson, 281-763-8737, tjackson@fabral.com)
   2. MBCI
   3. Berridge
   4. Centurion Industries

## 2.02 MATERIALS

A. Metal Wall Panels: 22 Gauge, 12" W x 1 3/4" flush face, interlocking, AZ50 aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet (galvalume, anchored to gypsum sheathing.

B. Finish at walls: For use exposed to direct sunlight (such as vertical applications), panel shall have Signature 300 (Kynar 500) "Cool Roof" 70% PVDF fluoropolymer resin coating in color as selected by Architect. Minimum .25 Solar Reflectance Index (SRI).

C. Aluminum Trim: Miscellaneous extruded and formed aluminum components shall match profiles of existing trim and/or as detailed on drawings.

D. Closures: Pre-molded neoprene and/or sheet metal shaped to fit the panel contour. Provide prefinished metal vent screeds at perimeter of soffit panels as indicated in Drawings.

E. Anchoring Devices: Provide spacers, fasteners, clips, angles and other devices necessary to install metal panels.

F. Accessory Materials:
   1. Sub-girts and support framing: Provide subgirts and support framing of size and configuration as detailed in Drawings and as necessary for complete installation. Refer to Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry Assemblies", Division 09 Section "Metal Support Systems," and Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies".
   2. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws design to withstand design loads.
   3. Aluminum Trim Fasteners: Exposed fasteners shall be aluminum or stainless steel. Unexposed fasteners may be cadmium or zinc plated steel in accordance with ASTM A164-55 and 165-55. Steel anchors shall be properly insulated from aluminum.
   4. Sealant: Color-coordinated, primerless silicone or high grade, non-drying butyl as recommended by panel manufacturer. Do not use sealant containing asphalt.

G. Filler: Non-solvent epoxy polyamide sealer shall be Tnemec's 62-1400, "Seam Sealer".

## 2.03 FABRICATION

A. General: Provide factory-formed metal panel system complying with ASTM E 1514 requirements.

B. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.

C. Form panels in continuous lengths; endlaps are not permitted.

D. Field forming of panels shall be done by factory employees operating the machines.

E. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed butyl sealant that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.

F. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
   1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
   2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
   3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
   4. Sealed joints: Form non-expansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.

5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
    a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal panel manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

## 2.04 FINISHES

A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

C. Steel Panels and Accessories:
    1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to expose metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    2. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 COORDINATION AND INSPECTION

A. Coordinate with other trades, prior to rough-in and penetrations, exact locations for roughing-in of components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels. Conduit, pipe and other small penetrations shall not be located in panel seams. Examine and confirm these locations again before installation to avoid conflicts.
    1. Contractor is responsible to relocate pipe and similar penetrations as required to avoid seams. Contractor shall not be due additional compensation to relocate items and make other corrections as required due to failure of Contractor to coordinate between trades.

B. Fabricator and erector are responsible for inspecting existing conditions to verify general conditions, panel profiles and panel attachments and examine all parts of existing building affecting the installation of his work.
    1. Examine sheathing and substrates to ensure they are properly supported, braced, and anchored; and are within flatness tolerances required by metal panel manufacturer.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.02 PREPARATION

A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

## 3.03 PANEL INSTALLATION & REPLACEMENT

A. Install metal panels, fasteners, trim and related sealants in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations, approved shop drawings, and code requirements, and as may be required for a weathertight installation.
   1. Fasteners: Use stainless-steal fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.

B. Remove all strippable coatings and provide a dry wipe-down cleaning of the panels as they are erected.
   1. Comply with Manufacturer's installation instructions for cleaning.

C. Install panels to interlock with adjoining panels in order to prevent water penetration and air leakage per industry standards.

D. Panels shall be installed plumb and true in proper alignment and to be in one continuous length.

E. Lap Sealing: Seal side and end laps of replacement metal panels per Manufacturer's recommendations and installation instructions.

## 3.04 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

A. Dissimilar Materials: Isolate aluminum surfaces from contrasting steel or other ferrous metals using EC-1202 tape or zinc chromate paint.

B. Closures: Furnish and install closure trim profiles abutting adjacent materials, adjoining walls, etc. as required to close off cavities and where panel profile would otherwise be exposed to view. Closure shall be installed using proper adhesive and fit flush with edge of panel. Seal perimeter of closure. Coordinate installation with adjacent material installers, and painting as applicable.

C. Trim: Install trim using specified fasteners at locations shown on Drawings, or where not indicated at equal spacing as required by installation instructions and wind loading and other structural requirements.

## 3.05 PROTECTION AND REPAIR

A. If applicable, remove factory protective plastic coatings at time as recommended by roofing Manufacturer. Do not allow protective coatings to melt onto roof panel surfaces.
   1. For metal surfaces intended to weather or patina, wear gloves and take precautions to avoid spills, oil from hands and skin, etc. that can leave marks or cause uneven weathering of panel surfaces. Require the same of other trades working on or near panel surfaces after installation.

B. Protect panels from damage during remainder of construction period. Upon determination of responsibility, repair or replace damaged metal panels and trim to the satisfaction of the Architect and/or Owner.

END OF SECTION 07 42 13

# SECTION 07 50 00 - WHITE POLY. REIN. FLEECE BACKED ADHERED ELVALOY® MEMB. ROOFING SYSTEM

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:
1. Fully adhered, PVC membrane roofing system.
2. Roof Insulation.
3. Prefabricated flashings, corners, parapets, stacks, vents, and related details.
4. Fasteners, adhesives, and other accessories required for complete roof installation.
5. Traffic protection.

B. Related Sections:
1. Division 06 Section - Rough Carpentry for blocking, nailers, etc.
2. Division 07 Section - Roof Specialties.
3. Division 07 Section - Roof Accessories.

### 1.03 REFERENCES – ROOFING

ASCE – America Society of Civil Engineers: Wind Uplift Requirements
ASTM – American Society for Testing Materials
FM – Factory Mutual
IBC – International Building Code
IEC – International Energy Code
NAAMM – National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers
NRCA – National Roofing Contractors Association
SMACNA – Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association, Inc.:
Architectural Sheet Metal Manual
ES -1 Edge securement
Single-ply Roofing Institute (SPRI) - A Professional Guide to Specifications Manual
UL – Underwriters Laboratories

### 1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Installed membrane roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Membrane roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.

B. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by membrane roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

C. Minimum UL Class A fire rating.

D. Testing Requirements: The roof system shall be tested in compliance with local code requirements and as follows:
   1. Wind Resistance: The roof system shall be tested in compliance with FM4474, and with UL 580 or UL 1897.
   2. Physical Weathering Properties: The system shall be tested to demonstrate physical integrity over the working life of the roof based upon 2,000 hours of exposure to accelerated weathering tests conducted in accordance with ASTM G152, ASTM G154, or ASTM G155.
   3. Impact Resistance: The system shall be tested to resist impact damage based on the results of tests conducted in accordance with ASTM D3746, ASTM D4272, CGSB 37-GP-52M, or the "Resistance to Foot Traffic Test" in Section 5.5 of FM 4470.
   4. Fire Classification: The system shall be identified and listed for the fire class as required by local code by an approved testing agency, tested in compliance with ASTM E 108 or UL 790.

E. Current International Code Council Evaluation Services Report or Legacy Report showing compliance with the International Building Code.

F. Energy Performance: Provide roofing system with Solar Reflectance Index (SRI) not less than 83 initial, 65 3-year aged, when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency. Provide roofing system that is listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.

G. Roof Expansion Joints: Roof expansion joints shall be installed according to NRCA guidelines.

## 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Existing Roofs: All traffic upon, and work associated with, existing roof systems shall be done in methods, manners, and by personnel approved and endorsed by the manufacturer of the existing roof. Warranties and integrity of the existing roof systems shall be fully maintained.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is FM Approvals approved for membrane roofing system identical to that used for this Project.

C. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by FM Global and membrane roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.

D. Source Limitations: Obtain components including roof insulation, fasteners for membrane roofing system as approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.

E. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
   1. Meet with testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
   2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
   3. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
   4. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect roofing system.
   5. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
   6. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
   7. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

## 1.06 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Samples and Manufacturer's Submittals: Submit prior to delivery or installation.
   1. Submit samples of proposed full system warranty complete with any addenda necessary to meet the warranty requirements as specified.
   2. A written statement from the roofing materials manufacturer approving the installer.

C. Shop Drawings: Provide manufacturer's approved details of all perimeter conditions, projection conditions, and any additional special job conditions which require details other than indicated in the drawings. Include plans, Installer Certificates: Signed by roofing system manufacturer certifying that Installer is approved, authorized, or licensed by manufacturer to install roofing system.

D. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in Performance Requirements Article.

E. ASTM D4434-96 Certification: Supply test results from qualified testing agency that states that the roofing product meets the requirements for type III PVC sheet roofing as defined in ASTM D4434-96.

F. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for components of membrane roofing system.

G. Field quality-control reports.

H. elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   1. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
   2. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
   3. Roof plan showing orientation of steel roof deck and orientation of membrane roofing and fastener spacing and patterns for mechanically fastened membrane roofing.
   4. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.

I. Maintenance Procedures: Deliver to the Owner the manufacturer’s printed instructions regarding care and maintenance of the roof. Provide maintenance data outlining leak reporting procedure, maintenance requirements, and emergency repair procedures.

## 1.07 MECHANICAL COORDINATION

A. Equipment mounted level; curb types and heights to achieve ten inches (10) inches minimum base flashing.

B. Gas Equipment heights to achieve minimum 10" vertical clearance between roof surface and bottom of drip leg piping cap.

C. For safety, ease of maintenance, and to minimize damage to roof system components, no equipment locations within 3’ of roof expansion joints and/or roof divider joints, vertical parapets; no equipment within 10’ of roof edges.

D. Roof system thermal insulation values based on heating, ventilation and air conditioning (HVAC) system design and the minimum guideline of IBC and IECC.

## 1.08 ELECTRICAL COORDINATION

A. New Construction Only: Avoid using pitch pockets for conduit penetrations. Power for rooftop equipment shall be located inside the respective equipment curb and accessible per code criteria.

B. All pitch pockets in reroofing shall have grout and 2-part sealant. Rain bonnets shall also be installed.

C. Cable TV Masts and Supports: Provide galvanized pipe penetrations, minimum 24" height above roof surface, capped and sealed, anchored high and low to building structure, with base flashing able TV.

## 1.09 EQUIPMENT COORDINATION

A. Show all rooftop equipment, penetrations and roof-related details on drawings.

B. Combine pipe penetrations in hooded enclosures for mechanical piping.

## 1.10 STRUCTURAL COORDINATION

A. Top-of-steel elevations to accomplish required slopes and drainage; consider camber on members to avoid trapping water.

B. Footing elevations at wet columns to allow for underground storm pipe slopes/inverts and bends.

C. Supports at roof perimeters, equipment, and roof drain bodies.

## 1.11 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.

B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
   1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.

C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

D. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

## 1.12 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

## 1.13 WARRANTIES

A. Roofing - Manufacturer: FULL SYSTEM WARRANTY. Project shall be installed in such a manner that the roofing material manufacturer will furnish a written twenty (20) year FULL SYSTEM NDL type warranty. Warranty shall include impact warranty up to and including two inches (2”) in diameter hail. Warranty shall include wind gust up to and including 120 MPH for the field of the roof and edge/coping. Flashing membranes, field membranes and seams shall be part of manufacturer's written warranty.

B. Roofing - Contractor: The contractor, jointly with any subcontractors employed by him, shall guarantee the work required and performed under this contract will be free from defects in workmanship and materials, and that the building will be and remain waterproof for a two (2) year warranty period, after the Owner accepts the work as substantially complete. The warranty shall be in approved notarized written form, to obligate the contractor and his subcontractors, if any, to make good the requirements of the warranty.

C. Warranty repairs shall be performed by a certified installer. The repairs shall be performed in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions and recommended procedures so as to not void the warranty. Repair of the system, including materials and labor, shall be done at no cost to the Owner.

D. Pre-finished metal shall have a twenty (20) year finish warranty and be a part of the full system warranty.

## 1.14 MANUFACTURERS SITE VISIT OBSERVATIONS

Manufacturers observations: Manufacturer's Representative shall provide minimum one site visits per week for the duration of the roofing installation. Written documentation and photographs of the applications shall be submitted to the Architect/Designer/Owners Representative.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 ROOF COMPNENTS

A. All roof components shall be supplied by the membrane manufacturer. All roof materials shall be certified as totally asbestos-free. Private or second party labeling is not acceptable.
   1. Roof System: a smooth surfaced white polyester reinforced fleece backed adhered Elvaloy® membrane cap, complying with UL Class A and ASCE-7 wind uplift criteria.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Finish Membrane: Color | | White |
| Thickness | ASTM D 751 | .087" Nominal |
| Breaking Strength | ASTM D 751 | 632 x 511 lbf |
| Tearing Strength | ASTM D 751 | 85 x 83 lbf |
| Elongation | ASTM D 751 | 45% x 42% |
| Heat Aging | ASTM D 3045 | ≥90% of Original |
| Low Temperature Bend | ASTM D 2136 | -40 C |
| Water Vapor Permeability | ASTM E 96 | 3.5g/m2/day |
| Wt. Change After Immersion | ASTM D 570 | 0.41% max. |
| Seam Strength | ASTM D 751 | ≥ 90 % of sheet |
| Puncture Resistance | FTMS 101C | 448 lbs |
| Static Puncture Resistance | ASTM D 5602 | Pass @ 33 lbs |
| Dynamic Puncture Resistance | ASTM D 5635 | Pass @ 20 J |
| Dimensional Stability | ASTM D 1204 | 0.2% |
| Accel. Weathering (Xenon Arc) | ASTM D 2565 | 10M hrs. (No Change) |
| Fungi Resistance | ASTM G 21 | pass no growth |
| Underwriters Laboratories | | Class A |
| Factory Mutual | | Class 1-90 |
| Solar Reflectivity | ASTM E 903 | 0.811 |
| Solar Emissivity | ASTM E 903 | 0.919 |
| Solar Reflectance Index (SRI) | ASTM E 1980 | 109 |

## 2.02 FLASHING MEMBRANE

A. The flashing membrane shall be a white Elvaloy® polyester reinforced flexible sheet.

| Property | Test Procedures | Physical Properties |
|---|---|---|
| Color | | White |
| Thickness | ASTM D 751 | .063" Nominal |
| Breaking Strength | ASTM D 751 | 412 x 538 lbf |
| Tearing Strength | ASTM D751 | 111 x 110 lbf |
| Elongation | ASTM D 751 | 29% x 31% |
| Heat Aging | ASTM D 3045 | ≥90% of Original |
| Low Temperature Bend | ASTM D 2136 | Pass @ -40°C |
| Seam Strength | ASTM D 751 | 100 % |
| Accel. Weathering | ASTM D 2565 | 10M hrs. (No Change) |
| Linear Dimensional Change | ASTM D 1204 | 0.5% maximum |
| Wt. Change after Immersion | ASTM D 570 | 0.41% maximum |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Static Puncture Resistance | ASTM D 5602 | Pass @ 33 lbs |
| Dynamic Puncture Resistance | ASTM D 5635 | Pass @ 20 J |
| Underwriters Laboratories | | Class A |
| Factory Mutual | | Class 1-90 |
| Solar Reflectivity | ASTM E 903 | 0.811 |
| Solar Emissivity | ASTM E 903 | 0.919 |
| Solar Reflectance Index (SRI) | ASTM E1980 | 109 |

## 2.03 INTERPLY / FELT

A. Shall be Underwriters Laboratory approved and listed in the FM Global Approval.

B. Shall be SBS 80 mil Smooth Sanded base type sheet, tested in accordance with ASTM D 5147, as supplied by field membrane manufacturer and shall be part of the manufacturers full system warranty.

## 2.04 FASTNERS

A. Fasteners and fastening plates or bars shall be listed in the FM Global Approval Guide and be as supplied by the membrane manufacturer for the specific application.

B. Fasteners and shall be part of the manufacturers full system warranty.

## 2.05 ADHESISVES

A. BITUMEN: ASTM D-312, Type IV extra steep asphalt.

B. ROO Cold Process Adhesive, as supplied by the membrane manufacturer and shall be part of the manufacturers full system warranty.

## 2.06 INSULATION

A. INSULATIONS: Shall meet current IBC/IEC requirements. Minimum R Valve 25.
   1. Rigid closed-cell polyisocyanurate; long term thermal resistant R-value, FM Class I fire hazard classification, UL classified for installation with Class A roof covering. Insulation shall be supplied by the membrane manufacturer and shall be part of the manufacturers full system warranty.
   2. Cover Board: Impact-resistant, nonstructural, specially engineered gypsum and cellulose fiber panels with 95% recycled content; uniform water-resistance throughout core and surface conforming to ASTM C 1278, meeting FM 4470 Class 1 criteria, classified by Underwriters Laboratory, and listed in the FM Global Approval Guide. Cover board shall be supplied by the membrane manufacturer and shall be part of the manufacturers full system warranty.

## 2.07 EXPANSION JOINTS ANS DIVIDER JOINTS

A. Shall be recommended by NCRA

## 2.08 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. As recommended by both the roof system manufacturer and the equipment manufacturer.

## 2.09 PIPE SUPPORTS

A. Non-ferrous, non-corrosive type as recommended by roof manufacturer for proper pipe support and weight distribution on roof; supports shall provide unbinding thermal expansion/contraction movement of piping without jeopardizing warrant ability of roof system. Set supports on additional wearing surface of cap sheet layer or walk-pad material.

B. Pipe supports: Shall be neoprene based with adjustable height. Structurally designed to carry weight of piping. Draw details to illustrate all project conditions.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 GENERAL

A. PRE-ROOFING CONFERENCE: Must be held after approval of submittal data, and at least seven (7) calendar days prior to start of roofing work.

### 3.02 GENERAL INSTALLATION

A. Counter flashing: Minimum 10” above roof surface for all rooftop items and equipment.

B. Equipment curbs: Tops level in all directions. Minimum height above finish roof 10 inches.

C. Walkway Pads: At HVAC units

D. Pipe Penetrations: Braced high and low to structure to prevent movement. Insulate from underside of deck, along laterals, then minimum 6" vertical below next elbow joint (or tangent) to reduce potential condensate drippage.

E. All flashings shall be mechanically fastened with a termination bar a maximum of 8" on center and be a minimum of ten inches (10") above finished roof height.

F. All vertical flashing seams shall be hot air welded and become part of manufacturer's twenty (20) year warranty.

G. Roofing system shall be watertight without depending on any metal flashing or coping.

H. Maintain end-of-workday watertight building conditions on all re-roofing projects on existing facilities. Contractor shall be solely responsible for all damage occurring due to failure to properly seal building.

I. Install only as much roofing insulation as can be covered with roofing during the same work period.

J. Clean completed roof of all construction debris.

K. At roofing projects for existing buildings, all debris shall be removed from the grounds at the end of the day.

L. Test cuts should be performed only where there is reason to suspect that less than proper installation procedures have been used or materials have been shorted.

M. Do not change or deviate from the design standard. Any system changes shall be in writing and issued by Humble ISD.

N. Comply with governing local, state, and federal regulations, safety standards, and codes.

### 3.03 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with the following requirements and other conditions affecting performance of roofing system:
   1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place and set and braced and that roof drains are securely clamped in place.
   2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thickness of insulation.
   3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.04 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to the roof membrane manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.

B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.

C. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.

## 3.05 INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Preparation related to Architectural Metal Decking:
   1. Acoustical insulation at Acoustical Architectural Deck: Install acoustic insulation in the flutes of acoustical decking prior to installing thermal insulation. Insulation and closures installed above deck provided by deck Manufacturer and installed by this Contractor. Protect installed acoustic insulation from damage and weather until covered by roofing. Refer to Division 05, Section "Architectural Metal Deck".
   2. Coordinate installation of electrical conduit installed above roof deck. Route out for conduit pathways in bottom of thermal insulation layer. Routing for electrical to follow location of conduit and not to exceed 1" in depth, nor typically more than 1/2" in width on either side of conduits.
   3. Roofing insulation fastener pattern must coordinate with architectural deck flute tops. Fasteners will not be permitted to penetrate the bottom panel of the architectural deck.

B. Coordinate installing membrane roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.

C. Comply with membrane roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.

D. In Insulation: Minimum 2-layer application. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 2.7 inches or greater, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 12 inches in each direction.

E. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.

F. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
   1. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.

G. Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and adhere to approved substrate as follows:
   1. Adhere insulation with product approved by the roof membrane manufacturer. Follow the roof membrane manufacturer's application guidelines.
   2. Set each layer of insulation in insulation adhesive. Follow adhesive manufacturer's application guidelines.

H. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Stagger joints from joints in insulation below a minimum of 12 inches (150 mm) in each direction. Loosely butt cover boards together and fasten to roof deck.
   1. Fasten according to requirements in FMG's "Approval Guide" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
   2. Fasteners and plates must be supplied by the roof membrane manufacturer.

## 3.06 ADHERED ROOFING MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

A. Install prefabricated roofing sections over area to receive roofing according to the roof membrane manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Confirm that substrate is approved by the roof membrane manufacturer to receive adhered membrane.
   2. If membrane is to be adhered to a substrate board or an insulation board, confirm that the board is attached per the roof membrane manufacturer's specification.
   3. Apply adhesive within the temperature range and at application rates specified by the roof membrane manufacturer.

B. Accurately align each prefabricated roofing section in order to maintain overlaps of the minimum dimensions required by the roof membrane manufacturer.

C. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap roofing membrane, and hot-air weld side and end laps of roofing membrane according to the roof membrane manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation.
   1. Hot-air welded seams must be a minimum of 1-1/2 inch wide.
   2. After seam has cooled make a hands and knees inspection with a probe. Repair any deficiencies found immediately.

D. Mechanically fasten roofing membrane securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.

E. Penetrations: Utilize prefabricated flashings for penetrations such as pipes, equipment curbs, braces and pitch pockets. These flashings shall be made of the same membrane as the roof sections. Hot-air weld the flashing's skirt to the roofing section and properly terminate the flashing to the penetration per the roof membrane manufacturer's specification.

F. Drains and Scuppers: Follow the roof membrane manufacturer's specification to properly terminate the roofing sections at drains and scuppers. Clamping rings may be used to terminate the roof section at roof drains. If the drain does not have a clamping ring, or it cannot be used, a prefabricated drain boot must be used. Prefabricated flashings must be utilized for scuppers.

## 3.07 FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. General:
   1. All penetrations must be at least 24" (61 cm) from curbs, walls, and edges to provide adequate space for proper flashing.
   2. Flash all perimeter, curb, and penetration conditions with coated metal, membrane flashing, and flashing accessories as appropriate to the site condition.
   3. All coated metal and membrane flashing corners shall be reinforced with preformed corners or non-reinforced membrane.
   4. Hot-air weld all flashing membranes, accessories, and coated metal. A minimum 2" wide (hand welder) weld is required.

B. Coated Metal Flashings:
   1. Coated metal flashings shall be formed in accordance with current manufacturer construction details and SMACNA guidelines.
   2. Coated metal sections used for roof edging, base flashing and coping shall be butted together with a ¼" gap to allow for expansion and contraction. Hot-air weld a 6" wide reinforced membrane flashing strip to both sides of the joint, with approximately 1" on either side of the joint left un-welded to allow for expansion and contraction. 2" wide aluminum tape can be installed over the joint as a bond-breaker, to prevent welding in this area.
   3. Coated metal used for sealant pans, scupper inserts, corners of roof edging, base flashing and coping shall be overlapped or provided with separate metal pieces to create a

continuous flange condition, and pop-riveted securely. Hot-air weld a 6" wide reinforced membrane flashing strip over all seams that will not be sealed during subsequent flashing installation.

4. Provide a ½" hem for all exposed metal edges to provide corrosion protection and edge reinforcement for improved durability.
5. Provide a ½" hem for all metal flange edges whenever possible to prevent wearing of the roofing and flashing membranes at the flange edge.
6. Coated metal flashings shall be nailed to treated wood nailers or otherwise mechanically attached to the roof deck, wall or curb substrates, in accordance with construction detail requirements.

C. Reinforced Membrane Flashings:
1. The thickness of the flashing membrane shall be the same as the thickness of the roofing membrane.
2. Membrane flashing may either be installed loose or fully adhered to the substrate surface in accordance with "Construction Detail Requirements".
3. Apply bonding adhesive at a rate resulting in 60 square feet/gallon of finished roofing material for solvent-based bonding adhesives, and at a rate of 125 square feet/gallon of finished roofing material for water-borne bonding adhesive. Apply bonding adhesive to both the underside of the membrane and the substrate surface at 120 square feet per gallon (Solvent Based) and 250 square feet per gallon (Water Based). A greater quantity of bonding adhesive may be required based upon the substrate surface condition. The bonding adhesive must be allowed to dry until tacky to the touch before flashing membrane application.
4. Apply the adhesive only when outside temperature is above 40°F. Recommended minimum application temperature is 50°F to allow for easier adhesive application.
5. The membrane flashing shall be carefully positioned prior to application to avoid wrinkles and buckles.

D. Un-reinforced Membrane Flashings:
1. Un-reinforced membrane is used to field-fabricate penetration or reinforcement flashings in locations where preformed corners and pipe boots cannot be properly installed.
2. Penetration flashings constructed of un-reinforced membrane are typically installed in two sections, a horizontal piece that extends onto the roofing membrane and a vertical piece that extends up the penetration. The two pieces are overlapped and hot-air welded together.
3. The un-reinforced membrane flashing shall be adhered to the penetration surface. Apply bonding adhesive at a rate resulting in 60 square feet/gallon of finished roofing material for solvent-based bonding adhesives, and at a rate of 125 square feet/gallon of finished roofing material for water-borne bonding adhesive. Apply bonding adhesive to both the underside of the membrane and the substrate surface at 120 square feet per gallon (Solvent Based) and 250 square feet per gallon (Water Based).The bonding adhesive must be allowed to dry until tacky to the touch before flashing membrane application.

E. Roof Edges:
1. Roof edge flashings are applicable for gravel stop and drip edge conditions as well as for exterior edges of parapet walls.
2. Flash roof edges with coated metal flanges nailed 4" o.c. to pressure-treated wood nailers. Hot-air weld roof membrane to metal flanges.
3. When the fascia width exceeds 4", coated metal roof edging must be attached with a continuous cleat to secure the lower fascia edge. The cleat must be secured to the building no less than 12" o.c.
4. Alternatively, roof edges may be flashed with a 2-piece snap on fascia system, adhering the roof membrane to a metal cant with bonding adhesive and face nailing the membrane 8" on center prior to installing a snap-on fascia (MA-206, 207).

F. Parapet and Building Walls:
   1. Flash walls with PVC membrane adhered to the substrate with bonding adhesive, loose applied (Less than 18" in height) or with coated metal flashing nailed 4" on center to pressure-treated wood nailers.
   2. Secure membrane flashing at the top edge with a termination bar. Water Block shall be applied between the wall surface and membrane flashing underneath all exposed termination bars. Exposed termination bars shall be mechanically fastened 8" on center; termination bars that are counter flashed shall be fastened 12" on center.
   3. Roof membrane must be mechanically attached along the base of walls with screws and plates (deck securement) or screws and inverted termination bar (wall securement) at the following rate:

| | |
|---|---|
| Mechanically Attached Systems | Per in-lap on center spacing, with a 12" maximum |
| Fully Adhered Systems | 12" on center |

   4. All coated metal wall flashings and loose applied membrane flashings must be provided with separate metal counterflashings, or metal copings.
   5. Metal counterflashings may be optional with fully adhered flashings depending on guarantee requirements. Exposed termination bars must be sealed with appropriate caulking.

G. Curbs and Ducts:
   1. Flash curbs and ducts with PVC membrane adhered to the curb substrate with bonding adhesive, loose applied (Less than 18" in height) or with coated metal flashing nailed 4" on center to pressure-treated wood nailers.
   2. Secure membrane flashing at the top edge with a termination bar. Water Block shall be applied between the curb/duct surface and membrane flashing underneath all termination bars. Exposed termination bars shall be mechanically fastened every 8"o.c.; termination bars that are counter flashed shall be fastened 12" on center.
   3. Roof membrane must be mechanically attached along the base of walls with screws and plates (deck securement) or screws and inverted termination bar (wall securement) at the following rate:

| | |
|---|---|
| Mechanically Attached Systems | Per in-lap on center spacing, with a 12" maximum |
| Fully Adhered Systems | 12" on center |

   4. All coated metal curb flashings and loose applied membrane flashings must be provided with separate metal counterflashings, or metal copings.
   5. Metal counterflashings may be optional with fully adhered flashings depending on guarantee requirements. Exposed termination bars must be sealed with appropriate caulking.

## 3.08 WALKWAY INSTALLATION

A. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products in locations indicated. Heat weld to roof membrane according to the roof membrane manufacturer's specification.

## 3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.

B. Repair or remove and replace components of membrane roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

C. Additional inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

D. Warranty: Upon receipt of the required materials, certifying inspection and acceptance of the installation by the roof membrane manufacturer, the warranty shall be duly executed and issued to the Owner.

## 3.10 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

A. Protect membrane roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to the Owner.

B. Correct deficiencies in or remove membrane roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall membrane roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.

C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by the roof membrane manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 07 50 00

# SECTION 07 71 00 - ROOF SPECIALTIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Pre-Manufactured Roof-edge drainage systems.
   2. Reglets and counterflashings.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 06 Section - Rough Carpentry for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
   2. Division 07 Section - Flashing and Sheet Metal for custom and site-fabricated sheet metal, flashing and trim.
   3. Division 07 Section - Roof Accessories for set-on-type curbs, equipment supports, roof hatches, vents, and other manufactured roof accessory units.
   4. Division 07 Section - Joint Sealants for field-applied sealants between roof specialties and adjacent materials.

### 1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. References in these specifications to standards, test methods and codes, are implied to mean the latest edition of each such standard adopted. The following is an abbreviated list of associations, institutions, and societies which may be used as references throughout these specifications.
   1. ASTM - American Society for Testing and Materials, Philadelphia, PA.
   2. FM - Factory Mutual Engineering and Research, Norwood, MA.
   3. NRCA - National Roofing Contractors Association, Rosemont, IL.
   4. OSHA - Occupational Safety and Health Administration, Washington, DC.
   5. SMACNA - Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association, Chantilly, VA
   6. UL - Underwriters Laboratories, Northbrook. IL

### 1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.

B. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
   1. Meet with Installer and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roof specialties including installers of roofing materials and accessories.
   2. Examine substrate conditions for compliance with requirements, including flatness and attachment to structural members.

3. Review special roof details, roof drainage, and condition of other construction that will affect roof specialties.

C. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with the latest edition of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
   1. Sheet Metal Standard for Copper: Comply with CDA's "Copper in Architecture Handbook." Conform to dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

D. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufactured copings and roof edge flashings for low slope roofs shall be designed and installed for wind loads in accordance with IBC Chapter 16, including local code amendments as applicable, and tested for resistance in accordance with Test Methods RE-1, RE-2 and RE-3 of ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1.
   1. Roof edge products shall be UL Classified by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. or other building code approved 3rd party verification of compliance with the ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 Wind Design Standard.

E. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss. Account for temperature change of 120 deg F ambient, 180 deg F material surfaces.

F. Installer: Engage an experienced installer who has completed similar work of a comparable scale with a record of successful performance.

## 1.05 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For roof specialties. Include plans, elevations, expansion-joint locations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work. Include the following:
   1. Details for expansion and contraction; locations of expansion joints, including direction of expansion and contraction.
   2. Pattern of seams and layout of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments.
   3. Details of termination points and assemblies, including fixed points.
   4. Details of special conditions.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of roof specialty indicated with factory-applied color finishes.

D. Samples for Verification: For copings, roof-edge flashings, reglets and counterflashings made from 12-inch lengths of full-size components including fasteners, cover joints, accessories, and attachments.

## 1.06 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for copings and roof-edge flashings.

B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

## 1.07 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For roofing specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.08 WARRANTY

A. Furnish manufacturer's standard 20 year warranty stating architectural fluorocarbon finish will be:
   1. Free of fading of color change in excess of 6 NBS units as measured per ASTM D 2244-68;
   2. Will not chalk in excess of numerical rating of 7 when measured in accordance with standard procedures specified in ASTM D 659-74;
   3. Will not peel, crack, chip, or de-laminate.

B. Furnish written warranty signed by applicator for two year period from date of substantial completion of building covering repairs required to maintain roof and flashings in watertight conditions.

## 1.09 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not store roof specialties in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store roof specialties away from uncured concrete and masonry.

B. Protect strippable protective covering on roof specialties from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for the period of roof specialties installation.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 EXPOSED METALS

A. Galvanized steel G90 with factory applied Kynar 500/Hylar 500 finish.

## 2.02 CONCEALED METALS

A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation.

## 2.03 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
   1. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970; stable after testing at 240 deg F.
   2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F.
   3. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing; CCW WIP 300HT.
      b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co.; Ultra.
      c. Henry Company; Blueskin PE200 HT.
      d. Owens Corning; WeatherLock Metal High Temperature Underlayment.

## 2.04 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.

B. Fasteners: Manufacturer's recommended fasteners, suitable for application and designed to meet performance requirements. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Exposed Penetrating Fasteners: Gasketed screws with hex washer heads matching color of sheet metal.

C. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant of type, grade, class, and use classifications required by roofing-specialty manufacturer for each application.

D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

E. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

## 2.05 ROOF-EDGE FLASHING AND DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products as pre-manufactured by OMG Roofing Products.

B. Gutters: "Wind Resistant Gutter", or approved equal.

C. Gravel Stop / Edge Flashings: "Safeguard Gravel Stop", or "Safeguard NP" (no exposed fasteners).

D. Splash Pans: Fabricate from the following exposed metal:
   1. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch thick.

## 2.06 REGLETS AND COUNTERFLASHINGS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Fry Reglet Corporation or comparable product by one of the following:
   1. OMG Roofing Products.
   2. MM Systems Corporation.

B. Reglets: Manufactured units formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, from the following exposed metal:
   1. Galvanized steel (24 ga.) G90 with factory applied Kynar 500/Hylar 500 finish.
   2. Corners: Factory mitered and mechanically clinched and sealed watertight.
   3. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide reglets with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.
   4. Masonry Type, Embedded: Provide reglets with offset top flange for embedment in masonry mortar joint.

C. Counterflashings: Manufactured units of heights to overlap top edges of base flashings by 4 inches and in lengths not exceeding 10 feet designed to snap into reglets and compress against base flashings with joints lapped, from the following exposed metal:
   1. Galvanized steel (24 ga.) G90 with factory applied Kynar 500/Hylar 500 finish.
      a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

D. Accessories:
   1. Flexible-Flashing Retainer: Provide resilient plastic or rubber accessory to secure flexible flashing in reglet where clearance does not permit use of standard metal counterflashing or where reglet is provided separate from metal counterflashing.
   2. Counterflashing Wind-Restraint Clips: Provide clips to be installed before counterflashing to prevent wind uplift of counterflashing lower edge.

## 2.07 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine walls, roof edges, and parapets for suitable conditions for roof specialties.

C. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.02 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install wrinkle free. Apply primer if required by underlayment manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer rather than nails for installing underlayment at low temperatures. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water. Overlap edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. General: Install roof specialties according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor roof specialties securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete roof-specialty systems.

1. Install roof specialties level, plumb, true to line and elevation; with limited oil-canning and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
2. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder and sealant.
3. Install roof specialties to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before manufacture.
4. Torch cutting of roof specialties is not permitted.

B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
1. Coat concealed side of stainless-steel roof specialties with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
2. Underlayment: Where installing metal flashing directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of self-adhering, high-temperature sheet underlayment.
3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof specialties for waterproof performance.

C. Expansion Provisions: Allow for thermal expansion of exposed roof specialties.
1. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints within 18 inches of corners or intersections unless otherwise shown on Drawings.
2. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.

D. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that will penetrate wood blocking or sheathing not less than 1 recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.

E. Seal joints with elastomeric sealant as required by roofing-specialty manufacturer.

F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction. Place sealant to be completely concealed in joint. Do not install sealants at temperatures below 40 deg F.

G. Splash Pans: Install where downspouts discharge on low-slope roofs. Set in elastomeric sealant.

## 3.04 ROOF-EDGE DRAINAGE-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. General: Install components to produce a complete roof-edge drainage system according to manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-edge drainage system.

B. Metal gravel stop set over roofing in a bed of roofing cement troweled in place and secured by nailing 3" o.c. staggered and clipped to continuous galvanized cleat nailed on minimum of 3" centers. After setting gravel stops, strip in 2-ply roof flashing felts in roofing cement from peak of gravel stop to 6" past edge of flange into roof surface.

C. Gutters: Join and seal gutter lengths. Allow for thermal expansion. Attach gutters to firmly anchored gutter supports spaced not more than 12 inches apart. Attach ends with rivets and solder to make watertight. Slope to downspouts.
   1. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated but not exceeding 50 feet apart. Install expansion joint caps.
   2. Install continuous on roof blocking with stainless steel fasteners.

D. Downspouts: Join sections with manufacturer's standard telescoping joints. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls and 1 inch away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at 3 per 10 feet.
   1. Provide elbows at base of downspout to direct water away from building.

## 3.05 REGLET AND COUNTERFLASHING INSTALLATION

A. General: Coordinate installation of reglets and counterflashings with installation of base flashings.

B. Embedded Reglets: See Division 04 Section - Unit Masonry Assemblies for installation of reglets.

C. Surface-Mounted Reglets: Install reglets to receive flashings where flashing without embedded reglets is indicated on Drawings. Install at height so that inserted counterflashings overlap 4 inches over top edge of base flashings.

D. Counterflashings: Insert counterflashings into reglets or other indicated receivers; ensure that counterflashings overlap 4 inches over top edge of base flashings. Lap counterflashing joints a minimum of 4 inches and bed with elastomeric sealant. Fit counterflashings tightly to base flashings.

## 3.06 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.

B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder and sealants.

C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as roof specialties are installed. On completion of installation, clean finished surfaces including removing unused fasteners, metal filings, pop rivet stems, and pieces of flashing. Maintain roof specialties in a clean condition during construction.

D. Replace roof specialties that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 71 00

# SECTION 07 72 00 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Provide roof accessories including, pre-fabricated roof curbs, pipe pedestals, pipe portals and other items as indicated on the drawings.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 05 Section - Metal Fabrications, for coordination with roof access ladders.
   2. Division 06 Section - Rough Carpentry, for wood blocking.
   3. Division 07 Section - Roofing Section(s).
   4. Division 07 Section - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim.
   5. Division 07 Section - Roof Specialties.
   6. Division 07 Section – Joint Sealants.
   7. Division 22 Sections for Plumbing.
   8. Division 23 Sections for Mechanical.
   9. Division 26 Sections Electrical.

### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with "NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for installation of units.

### 1.04 SUBMITTAL

A. Submit manufacturer technical product data and rough-in diagrams, details.

### 1.05 PRODUCT DELIVERY

A. Deliver products in manufacturers original unopened packages, clearly marked with brand name and model number.

B. Store materials on clean, raised platforms with weather protective covering when stored outdoors.

### 1.06 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer shall guarantee against defects in material and workmanship for a period of five years.

B. Metal roof pipe boot warranty: Manufacturer's standard 20 year warranty.

### 1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Any equipment curb heights indicated in Drawings are minimum curb heights required in general. Taller curbs may be required for minimum height above adjacent roofing for roof warranty, including tapered insulation and crickets. All curbs shall be tall enough to

accommodate minimum curb height, or minimum heights above roof as indicated in Drawings, or minimum 8" above highest adjacent roof surface, whichever is greatest. Coordinate with roofing installer to confirm total curb heights required.

B. Do not install materials during inclement weather or when air temperature may fall below 40° F, including wind chill.

C. Do not install materials over damp, frozen or otherwise unsuitable surface.

## PART 2 - PRODUCT

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with project requirements, manufacturer's offering Products which may be incorporated in the Work include the following:
   1. BILCO Company, New Haven, CT, (203) 934-6363
   2. Custom Curb, Incorporated, Chattanooga, TN (800) 262-6669.
   3. Kentuckiana Curb Company, Louisville, KY (800) 382-2872.
   4. The Pate Company, Broadview, IL (800) 243-3018.
   5. Thybar Corporation, Addison, IL (708) 543-5300.

B. Division 01 Section - Product Requirements: Product options and substitutions. Substitutions: Permitted.

### 2.02 MATERIALS

A. Pre-fabricated Roof Curbs: Welded 18 gauge welded galvanized steel and integral base plate with factory installed 2 x 4 pressure treated wood nailer, insulation board and heavy gauge galvanized steel counterflashing. Reinforcing on sides greater than 36". Curbs to be provided at all mechanical roof top units and as shown on drawings. Unit shall be tapered to provide level rooftop units, as manufactured by the Pate Co., Model #PC-2, or approved equal.

B. Prefabricated Roof Equipment Support: Welded 18 gauge welded galvanized steel and integral base plate with factory installed 2 x 4 pressure treated wood nailer, and heavy gauge galvanized steel counterflashing. Reinforcing on sides greater than 36". Supports to be provided at all HVAC roof top condensers and as shown on drawings. Unit shall be tapered to provide level rooftop equipment, as manufactured by the Pate Co., Model #ES-2, or approved equal.

C. Pipe Pedestals: Freestanding pipe stand made of UV stabilized polycarbonate with nylon roller for piping up to 4". Miro Industries "Miro TPC" or equal.

D. Pipe Seal: One piece spun aluminum base with full five inch sloped-roof surface flange, graduated step PVC boot and adjustable stainless steel clamps equal to Pate "Pipe Seal", size as required by pipe.

E. Curbed Portal Systems: Provide pre-manufactured, insulated curbs, tall enough to provide 12” vertical height measured from top of curb to roof surface, equal to Pate pc-2 series curbs. Provide with the following waterproofing:
   1. For use at weatherhead, gas, refrigerant, and similar pipe penetrations: Pipe flashing portal system provided with formed cap flashing with ring, graduated elastomeric seal that fits over the ring, and stainless steel clamps. Pipe Portal System equal to Pate pcc-4 or ppc-6, as applicable to penetration size. Multiple penetration portal caps may be used where multiple pipe penetrations are in close proximity.

F. Roof Hatches: Unit shall be 3 foot - 0 inch x 2 foot - 6 inch for roof ladder access equal to Bilco, Type 'S' single leaf type. Frame with integral curb double wall construction with welded or sealed mechanical corner joints. Provide double wall cover with 1 inch insulation core. Equip unit with complete hardware set including hold open devices, interior padlock hasps and

both interior and exterior latch handles. Unit shall be fully gasketed and completely fabricated of galvanized steel.

1. Ladder Safety Post: Adaptable to steel ladder at roof access. Device shall be manufactured of high strength steel with telescoping tubular section that locks automatically when fully extended. Upward and downward movement shall be by a stainless steel spring. Finish shall be yellow enamel. Equal to Bilco, "Model 1 Ladder Up."
2. Roof Hatch Railing: Fixed hatch railing system providing fall protection for roof hatch openings meeting OSHA fall protection regulations 29CFR 1910.23. Posts and rails are 1 1/4 inch schedule 40 pipe in 6061 T6 aluminum alloy. Curb mounting brackets and teardrop brackets are 6063 T5 aluminum extrusion. Locking mechanism is cast aluminum and spring hinges and all fasteners are type 316 stainless steel. Equal to Bilco RL2-STB 36x30 Hatch Railing.

G. Accessories:

1. Fasteners: Manufacturer's recommended gasketed fasteners for substrates and conditions indicated.
2. Pipe Umbrellas: Provide one piece pipe umbrellas where indicated in Drawings. Sizes to match penetrations indicated.
3. Sealants: As recommended by Manufacturer for conditions and substrates indicated. Where sealants may be visible in completed work, sealant colors shall match roofing or adjacent materials as selected by Architect from available standard colors.

## 2.03 FABRICATION

A. Curb Cap Flashings: All curb cap flashings without exception shall be one piece galvanized steel construction with no rivets or sealant joints, and with pre-punched holes on vertical surface for mechanical fastener attachment to curbs. Except for equipment support curbs required to be a level mounting surface, top side of curb cap flashings shall have slight slope to drain away from penetrations on all sides. Penetration openings shall be fabricated to dimensions of penetrating items and shall turn up integral with flashing cap at least one inch, with a turned out lip for applying sealant, unless otherwise approved by Architect.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 INSPECTION

A. Examine areas to receive roof accessories to insure work of preceding trades is completed. Check surfaces to see that they are uniform in place, free from grease, oil or other debris which would affect proper installation. Application constitutes acceptance of substrate conditions.

## 3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Accessories installed in accordance with current printed recommendations of Manufacturer and to roofing manufacturer's requirements.

B. Coordinate installation of accessories with roof and flashing installations. Provide weathertight installation.

C. Accessories secured in place to withstand wind loads in accordance with the local building codes.

D. Fasteners, General: All fasteners shall be installed straight and to make proper seal at gaskets. No fasteners of any sort are allowed through top side of curb cap flashings. All fasteners in flashing caps shall be through vertical sides only. No fasteners of any sort are allowed through roofing membranes or materials unless specifically approved in writing by roofing installer and manufacturer, and approved by Architect.

END OF SECTION 07 72 00

# SECTION 07 84 13 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Furnish all labor, materials, tools, equipment and related items required for the complete installation of firestopping at penetrations through rated partitions.

### 1.03 STANDARDS

A. All work under this section shall conform to the requirements of the Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc., the National Board of Fire Underwriters and the local building code. Where requirements specified differ from the requirements of any authorities having jurisdiction, the more stringent requirements shall apply.

B. Firestopping system shall be a complete system of materials supplied by one manufacturer.

### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Construction Manager shall engage a single entity to assume full responsibility for installation of all fire penetration firestopping, fire resistive joints, and fire penetration assemblies throughout project, both for items specified herein, and items as specified in other referenced specification Sections.

B. Qualifications of Installer:
   1. Five years experience in performing installation of materials with similar quantities of fireproofing materials.
   2. Installer Qualifications: A firm experienced in installing penetration firestopping similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful performance. Qualifications include having the necessary experience, staff, and training to install manufacturer's products per specified requirements. Manufacturer's willingness to sell its penetration firestopping products to Contractor or to Installer engaged by Contractor does not in itself confer qualification on buyer.

C. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Global according to FM Global 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with its "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."

D. Requirements of regulatory agencies:
   1. Building code requirements of the municipality for fire resistance ratings of areas to receive fireproofing materials.
   2. Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc.: Classification marking.
   3. Acceptance by ICBO, BOCA and SBCCI as described by National Evaluation Service Report, NER-332.

E. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Penetration firestopping shall comply with the following requirements:
   1. Penetration firestopping tests are performed by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   2. Penetration firestopping is identical to those tested per testing standard referenced.

F. Testing:
   1. Fire resistant rating of assemblies - ASTM E-814.
   2. Compound shall meet all requirements of UL 1479.

## 1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Installer's qualifications.

B. Test Reports
   1. Submit copies of fire test reports of fireproofing installation to substrate materials required.
   2. Submit certified test reports of acceptable testing agencies which perform testing in accordance with ASTM E-119 and E-84.

C. Manufacturer's Instruction: Furnish manufacturer's printed material specifications and installation instruction for each type of fireproofing.

D. Certificates:
   1. Furnish manufacturer's certification that materials meet or exceed specification requirements.
   2. Furnish applicators certification that material has been completed as specified to meet fire resistance ratings and application requirements.

## 1.06 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in original, unopened packages bearing name of manufacturer and product identification.

B. Reject damaged packages found unsuitable for use and remove from job site.

C. Store materials off ground, under cover, and away from damp surfaces.

D. Keep materials dry at all times.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Penetrations in Horizontal Assemblies: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg.
   1. Horizontal assemblies include floors, floor/ceiling assemblies, & ceiling membranes of roof/ceiling assemblies.
   2. F-Rating: At least 1 hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
   3. T-Rating: At least 1 hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated except for floor penetrations within the cavity of a wall.

B. Penetrations in Smoke Barriers: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per UL 1479.
   1. L-Rating: Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/sq. ft. of penetration opening at 0.30-inch wg at both ambient and elevated temperatures.

C. W-Rating: Provide penetration firestopping showing no evidence of water leakage when tested according to UL 1479.

D. Exposed Penetration Firestopping: Provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.

E. VOC Content: Penetration firestopping sealants and sealant primers shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
   1. Sealants: 250 g/L.
   2. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
   3. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.

## 2.02 MATERIALS

A. Safing Insulation: Forming material, minimum 3" unfaced safing insulation with a nominal density of 4 pcf, and bearing the UL Classification Marking shall be "Thermafiber" as manufactured by Owens Corning.

B. Compound: Pliable, non-toxic, non-combustible, non-asbestos, low density, lightweight compound shall be "Firecode" as manufactured by USG Corp., "Flame Stop V" as manufactured by Flame Stop Inc. or "Metacaulk" as manufactured by Rectorseal.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 INSPECTION

A. Verify that all substrates to receive firestopping system are constructed according to the Construction Documents and acceptable to receive fire stop materials.

## 3.02 APPLICATION

A. Safing Insulation: Cut safing insulation slightly wider than the opening. Compress and tightly fit min. 2 1/2" or 3" thickness of insulation with nominal density of 4 pcf completely around penetrant.

B. Firestopping Compound: Trowel apply the compound from its container and work into the penetration opening. Apply compound to minimum 1/2" to 1" thickness on top of safing insulation. Ensure that compound is in contact with all surfaces and that entire opening is filled with safing and compound. Utilize appropriately rated product for specific rated partition application.

END OF SECTION 07 84 13

# SECTION 07 92 00 - JOINT SEALANTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Provide sealant required to close joints that would allow moisture or air to enter structure between fixed materials, as shown on the drawings and as herein specified, including but not limited to:
   1. Sealing of interior perimeter joints of window framing, door frames, and other openings in walls.
   2. Sealing interior and exterior walls to floor or roof decking/construction for fire resistive or thermal, moisture or acoustical barrier.
   3. Setting of thresholds in sealant.
   4. Sealing of joints between countertops and wall surfaces for a sanitary joint.
   5. Sealing of joints of every nature and description that would allow moisture or air penetration.
   6. Sealing of joints indicated to be caulked or sealed whether specifically mentioned herein or not.
   7. Sealing around all pipe, duct and vent penetrations.
   8. Sealing at paving joints.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 04 Section - Unit Masonry Assemblies.
   2. Division 06 Section - Sheathing
   3. Division 06 Section - Interior Architectural Woodwork
   4. Division 07 Section - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim.
   5. Division 07 Section - Expansion Control.
   6. Division 08 Section - Aluminum Entrances and Storefront.
   7. Division 08 Section - Aluminum Curtain Wall.
   8. Division 09 Section - Ceramic Tiling.
   9. Division 09 Section - Gypsum Board Assemblies.
   10. Division 09 Section - Painting.
   11. Division 21 Section - Fire Suppression.
   12. Division 22 Section - Plumbing.
   13. Division 23 Section - Mechanical.
   14. Division 26 Section - Electrical.
   15. Division 32 Section - Paving.

### 1.03 JOB CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Conditions: Sealant work not permitted when air temperature is below 40 degrees F.

## 1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product specifications, color range, handling/installation/curing instructions, and performance tested data sheets for each elastomeric product or joint backing material.

B. Samples: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.

C. Submit samples of joint backing material.

## 1.05 WARRANTY

A. The Contractor shall submit, in writing, a warrant that all sealant work executed under this Section shall be free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of two (2) years from date of acceptance of the Project, and he shall remedy any defects in the sealant work during the warranty period.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.

## 2.02 MATERIALS

A. Chemical Compatibility, General: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
   1. Where new sealants will adjoin existing sealants to remain, confirm chemical compatibility of sealant type prior to preparing submittals. In the event of chemical incompatbility, suggest alternate compatible sealant products for those applications.

B. Primers: Non-staining type as recommended by sealant manufacturer for each working surface. Material shall not leave residue or stain on adjacent surfaces. Each joint must be primed prior to sealing.

C. Sealant for Interior and Exterior Masonry Control Joints: 1 part ultra low modulus silicone sealant equivalent to "Spectrum 1" by Tremco, or "890 NST" by Pecora. Color to match adjacent surfaces.

D. Materials for sealing top of wall to bottom of decking:
   1. For use at non-fire-rated (thermal and/or acoustical) construction: [The following products are acceptable for thermal and air seal between top of wall and bottom of deck. At contractor’s option, use one of the following products:] [Refer to Division 07, “Spray Foam Insulation” for closed cell foam insulation for this use.] <insert other option.>
      a. Closed cell 2-component spray applied polyurethane foam insulation and air barrier, Icynene ProSeal, or comparable product by another Manufacturer.
      b. Single component, gun applied, closed cell polyurethane insulating foam sealant for gaps up to 3”: Great Stuff Pro, Gaps and Cracks Insulating Foam by Dow Chemical Company, or comparable product by another Manufacturer.

c. Firmly pack gaps and voids above the stud track with Mineral Fiber Batt insulation (Refer to Division 07 or 09 for Thermal or Acoustical Insulation). Caulk gun or trowel apply, and trowel coat to form a continuous seal between top of sheathing and bottom of deck with USG "Acoustical Sealant", or comparable product by Tremco or Pecora. For thermal-only (non-acoustical) applications, apply sealant to exterior or unconditioned side of partition. For acoustical applications, apply sealant to both sides of the partition.
d. Contractor shall confirm chemical compatibility of sealant used with adjacent air barrier system(s).
e. Where top of wall sealant is used at perimeter wall construction, apply in manner to achieve a continuous air seal from top of air barrier system to bottom of deck, without gaps or voids. Confirm acceptable detail(s) with air barrier system Manufacturer. Refer to Division 07 “Air Barrier” Section(s) for air barrier materials.
f. Where top of wall sealant will be exposed in finished interior space, apply in a manner to produce an aesthetic finished result, flush with the face of wall. Cut spray foam flush with face of wall and neatly trowel acoustical sealant to a semi-smooth finish, and remove excess material.

2. For use at fire-rated construction: Refer to Division 07, Section “Joint Firestopping”.

E. Sealant for Re-glazing: Medium modulus silicone sealant shall be Tremco's "Spectrem 2", or approved equal. Color as selected by Architect.

F. Sealant for Exterior Concrete Paving and Sidewalk Joints: Two part urethane (self leveling) sealant equal to "MasterSeal SL-2" by Sonneborne / BASF Chemical Co., "Urexpan NR-200" by Pecora, or "THC-900" Tremco. Provide non-sag product at joints in vertical curbs, equal to "MasterSeal NP-2" by Sonneborne / BASF.

G. Caulking for Interior Joints: One part acrylic latex sealant equivalent to "AC-20" by Pecora, "Tremflex 834" by Tremco, "Acrylic Latex" caulk by DAP, or "Sonolac" by Sonneborn.

H. Caulking for Countertop Joints: One-part clear silicone sealant, 860 by Pecora, or equal.

I. Precompressed Expanding Foam Sealant: Shall be Gray "Willseal 600" as manufactured by "Tremco", Beachwood, Ohio or approved equal.

J. Sealant for Gypsum Board joints for Acoustic Construction: USG "Acoustical Sealant" or equal by Tremco or Pecora.

K. Joint Backing: ASTM C1330, Non-staining closed cell polyethylene foam rod oversized 30% to 50%, equal to "MasterSeal 920" by BASF.

L. Foam Backer Rod for Acoustic Construction: ASTM C1330, Closed cell polyethylene,. Acceptable Manufacturers: ITP, Nomeco, or approved equal. (Available through Tom Brown, Inc. 800-446-2298)

M. Solvents and Cleaning Agents: Of a type specifically recommended by sealant manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 COORDINATION AND INSPECTION

A. Coordinate sealing requirements with all trades for complete fire resistive, thermal, moisture, asthetic or acoustical barriers and trim.

B. Applicator shall examine surfaces receiving sealant or caulking for any defects or joint sizes which would not structurally perform or for any unusual conditions which would interfere with proper installation of sealant or caulking.

## 3.02 PREPARATION

A. Prepare joints in accordance with Manufactuer's instructions.

B. Thoroughly clean all joints removing all foreign matter such as dust, oil, grease, dirt or other loose particles. Provide and apply non-staining primer as required by conditions and sealant manufacturer.

C. When primer is dry, compress backup and insert into joint leaving 1/4" to surface open for joint sealing or leave open 1/2 of joint width, but not less that 1/4".

D. Completely cut smooth and remove projection of existing gasket and/or sealant material at door and window framing to remain to achieve sound substrate for application.

## 3.03 APPLICATION

A. It is the intent and purpose and interpretation of this specification that in all areas, joints sealed shall be rendered structurally sound and impervious to the passage of water, moisture and dust.

B. Follow sealant manufacturer's instructions regarding mixing, surface application, priming and application procedure.

C. Sealant shall be applied under pressure with a hand or power activated gun having a nozzle of proper size to entirely fill joint void and shall be forced into joints with sufficient pressure to expel air and fill the joints solidly. All joint surfaces shall be neatly tooled to a smooth surface, free of wrinkles and result in a flush joint when dry.

D. Apply sealants when the ambient temperature is between 40° and 100° F.

E. All junctures between countertops, back splashes and walls shall be caulked with silicone sealant providing a sanitary tight joint.

F. All junctures between piping and substrate of partitions, floors and ceiling shall be caulked.

G. Precompressed expanding foam sealant shall be installed per manufacturer's requirements at all vertical expansion joints as noted on Drawings.

H. Apply sealant bead at least 1/2 inch thick under each edge of threshold. Remove excess and neatly point.

I. Apply sealant between exterior veneers and coping on outside face of exterior wall.

J. Caulk perimeter of window frame, door frame or other items penetrating, intersecting or abutting walls, ceilings, floors, etc.

K. Prime surface as required and apply sealant at all glazing, at metal to metal and glass to metal joints within the system.

L. Apply bead of sealant at base of wall board.

M. Furnish and install acoustical sealant at the following locations:
   1. All penetrations of partition, wall, and floor construction by ductwork, conduit, piping, or structure.
   2. All termination of partitions enclosing Noise Critical Spaces to abutting construction (e.g. partitions, structure, etc.)
   3. Both sides of door frames to abutting construction where doors are scheduled to have acoustical seals.
   4. Both sides of window frames to adjacent construction
   5. Perimeter of and penetrations through sound isolating ceilings, roof systems, and floor systems.
   6. Foam sealant at top of wall to underside of roof/floor deck, at partitions to deck that are indicated to be constructed to a STC rating.

N. Backer Rod shall be used in all joints, product to be constructed of closed cell foam, or appropriate resilient material for sealant. Dimension shall be minimum 30% greater than joint width, unless otherwise indicated on details.

O. Fill paving sealant full width of joint, and to within 1/8" of paving surface.

## 3.04 CLEANING

A. Clean adjacent surfaces free of sealant or soiling resulting from this work as work progresses. Use solvent or cleaning agent as recommended by sealant manufacturer. All finished work shall be left in a neat, clean condition.

END OF SECTION 07 92 00

# SECTION 07 95 00 - EXPANSION CONTROL

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Related Sections Include the Following:
   1. Division 09 Section - Acoustical Ceilings.
   2. Division 09 Section - Gypsum Board Assemblies.

C. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: For each expansion control system specified, include details showing plans, elevations, sections, splices, blockout requirements, and attachments to other work, as needed to coordinate the work. Indicate locations where tile or terrazzo work may require replacement of existing expansion joint covers. Coordinate work as required with structural and architectural drawings for slab depressions or recesses needed.

B. Samples: For each proposed expansion control system, provide sample for approval of color and finish specified.

### 1.03 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate with other trades to determine proper installation, removal and reinstallation, or replacement of expansion joint covers. Ensure substrates are prepared to receive covers as required.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. General: Provide expansion control systems of design, basic profile, material, and operation indicated. Provide units with capability to accommodate variations in adjacent surfaces.
   1. Furnish units in longest practicable lengths to minimize field splicing. Install with hairline mitered corners where expansion control systems change direction or abut other materials.
   2. Include factory-fabricated closure materials and transition pieces, T-joints, corners, curbs, cross-connections, and other accessories as required to provide continuous expansion control.

### 2.02 INTERIOR EXPANSION CONTROL SYSTEMS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated, as manufactured by Balco, Inc., or approved equal by one of the following:
   1. Architectural Art Mfg., Inc.; Division of Pittcon Industries.
   2. Construction Specialties, Inc.
   3. JointMaster/InPro Corporation.
   4. Nystrom, Inc.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain expansion control systems from single source and from single manufacturer.

C. Floor-to-Floor:
   1. Design Criteria:
      a. Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings, or to match existing conditions.
      b. Type of Movement: Thermal, or to suit existing conditions.
   2. Type: As shown on Drawings.
      a. Cover-Plate, Glide-Plate or Center Plate Design: Plain, or as shown on drawings.
         1) Recess Depth: As required to accommodate adjacent flooring

D. Wood Flooring:
   1. At doorways, from Wood Floor to Concrete flush transitions: Provide flush transition equal to Balco 1420, with black filler. Coordinate with concrete slab edge and router wood flooring as required.
   2. At doorway, from Wood Floor to rubber landing: Flat plate, low profile expansion joint cover, mounted to wood flooring, equal to Balco GF-2P.

E. Wall-to-Wall:
   1. Basis-of-Design Product:
      a. Gypsum Board or Plaster (Field): Balco Inc.
      b. Gypsum Board or Plaster (Corner): Balco Inc.,
      c. Tile (Field): Balco Inc., "6TW-1".
   2. Design Criteria:
      a. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings, or to match existing conditions.
      b. Type of Movement: Thermal, or to suit existing conditions.
   3. Type: Accordion, or Glide Plate, as indicated.
      a. Metal: Aluminum.
         1) Finish: As selected by Architect from Manufacturer's standards.
         2) Color: As selected by Architect from Manufacturer’s standards.

F. Ceiling-to-Ceiling:
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: Balco Inc., "AC-1".
   2. Design Criteria:
      a. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings, or to match existing condition.
      b. Type of Movement: Thermal, or to suit existing conditions.
   3. Type: Accordion.
      a. Metal: Aluminum.
         1) Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.
         2) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer’s standards.

G. Ceiling-to-Wall:
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: Balco Inc., "ACL-1".
   2. Design Criteria:
      a. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings, or to match existing condition.
      b. Type of Movement: Thermal, or to suit existing conditions.
   3. Type: Accordion.
      a. Metal: Aluminum.
         1) Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standards.
         2) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer’s standards.

## 2.03 EXTERIOR EXPANSION CONTROL SYSTEMS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated, as manufactured by Balco, Inc., or approved equal by one of the following:
   1. Construction Specialties, Inc.

2. MM Systems, Inc.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain expansion control systems from single source and from single manufacturer.

## 2.04 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5 for extrusions; ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 6061-T6 for sheet and plate.
   1. Apply manufacturer's standard protective coating on aluminum surfaces to be placed in contact with cementitious materials.

B. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M.

C. Accessories: Manufacturer's standard anchors, clips, fasteners, and other accessories as indicated or required for complete installations.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 PREPARATION

A. Prepare substrates according to expansion control system manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Coordinate Dimensional control with Wood Flooring. Coordinate with other trades to route edge of wood flooring as required for flush installation.

B. Coordinate and furnish anchorages, setting drawings, and instructions for installing expansion control systems.

C. Cast-In Frames: Coordinate and furnish frames to be cast into concrete.

## 3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for storing, handling, and installing expansion control systems and materials unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

B. Metal Frames: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required to install expansion control systems.
   1. Install in true alignment and proper relationship to joints and adjoining finished surfaces measured from established lines and levels.
   2. Adjust for differences between actual structural gap and nominal design gap due to ambient temperature at time of installation. Notify Architect where discrepancies occur that will affect proper expansion control system installation and performance.
   3. Cut and fit ends to accommodate thermal expansion and contraction of metal without buckling of frames.
   4. Repair or grout blockout as required for continuous frame support using nonmetallic, shrinkage-resistant grout.
   5. Install frames in continuous contact with adjacent surfaces.
      a. Shimming is not permitted.
   6. Locate anchors at interval recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 3 inches from each end and not more than 24 inches o.c.

C. Seals in Metal Frames: Install elastomeric seals and membranes in frames to comply with manufacturer’s written instructions. Install with minimum number of end joints.
   1. Provide in continuous lengths for straight sections.
   2. Seal transitions according to manufacturer’s written instructions. Vulcanize or heat-weld-field-spliced joints as recommended by manufacturer.
   3. Installation: Mechanically lock seals into frames or adhere to frames with adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape as recommended by manufacturer.

D. Terminate exposed ends of expansion control systems with field- or factory-fabricated termination devices.

## 3.03 PROTECTION

A. Do not remove protective covering until finish work in adjacent areas is complete.

B. Protect the installation from damage by work of other Sections.

END OF SECTION 07 95 00

# SECTION 08 11 13 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Provide hollow metal doors and frames as shown on the Drawings and as herein specified.
   2. Fire Rated door assemblies.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 06 Section - Rough Carpentry.
   2. Division 07 Section - Flashing, Sheet Metal.
   3. Division 08 Section - Finish Hardware.
   4. Division 08 Section - Glazing.
   5. Division 09 Section - Painting.

### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain hollow metal doors and frames through one source from a single manufacturer wherever possible.

B. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, furnish SDI-Certified manufacturer products that comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8, latest edition, "Recommended Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames".

C. Design Criteria: Doors and frames noted to have a specific hourly label, shall be Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc. labeled construction shall bear the required UL label.

D. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to UL10C (neutral pressure at 40” above sill) or UL 10C.
   1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies Construction: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, attach construction label certifying doors are built to standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire rated door assemblies except for size.
   2. Temperature-Rise Limit: Where indicated and at vertical exit enclosures (stairwell openings) and exit passageways, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.
   3. Smoke Control Door Assemblies: Comply with NFPA105.
      a. Smoke "S" Label: Doors to bear “S” label, and include smoke and draft control gasketing applied to frame and on meeting stiles of pair doors.

E. Fire-Rated, Borrowed-Light Frame Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA80 that are listed and labeled, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA257. Provide labeled glazing material.

F. Pre-Installation Conference: Conduct conference in compliance with requirements in Division 01 with attendance by representatives of Supplier, Door and Door Hardware Installer(s), Security System Installer, and Contractor to review proper methods and procedures for installing hollow metal doors and frames and to verify installation of electrical knockout boxes and conduit at frames with electrified or access control hardware.

## 1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, STC ratings, hardware reinforcements, profiles, anchors, insulation values, fire-resistance rating, and finishes.

B. Product Schedule: For hollow-metal doors and frames, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final door hardware schedule.

C. Manufacturer shall furnish a certificate to the Owner evidencing that materials delivered meet the labeled and/or fire resistive construction requirements.

D. Shop drawings and details based on the Contract Documents shall be submitted to the Architect for review prior to fabrication of materials. Shop drawings shall indicate:
   1. Elevations of each door design.
   2. STC ratings where appropriate.
   3. Insulation values for exterior doors and frames.
   4. Hardware mounting heights
   5. Details of doors, including vertical and horizontal edge details and metal thicknesses.
   6. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
   7. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
   8. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
   9. Details of accessories.
   10. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
   11. Details of conduit and preparations for power, signal, and control systems.

E. Concurrent Review: Submit submittals under this Section together with all other door and door hardware submittals for concurrent review of door openings.

F. Samples: Coordinate paint finish samples with all exterior metal finish samples including storefront system, metal roofing system, overhead coiling doors, four-fold doors and sectional doors. Provide finished painted samples on substrate indicated for review and approval prior to fabrication: 3 - 12”x 12” samples minimum. Resubmit as required to obtain approval.

## 1.05 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

B. Warranty includes installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.

## 1.06 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Delivery of Material: Individually packaged in cartons, completely protecting frames.

B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.

C. Frames shall be stored under cover on wood sills that will prevent rust and damage. Place in stacks of five units maximum in a vertical position with heads up, spaced by blocking, on

minimum 4-inch high wood blocking. Do not store in a manner that traps excess humidity. Do not use un-vented plastic.

## 1.07 JOB CONDITIONS

A. Coordination
   1. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.
   2. The Contractor shall provide door and frame manufacturer with an approved hardware schedule, templates and hand for all doors. Contractor shall advise door and frame manufacturer of any changes after information has been forwarded.
   3. Contractor will be completely responsible for coordination of information between hardware, door and frame manufacturer. Contractor shall coordinate throat dimensions and clearance at thresholds and sill conditions with adjacent construction. Any materials not properly coordinated shall be replaced by the Contractor at his own expense.
   4. Contractor shall coordinate frame preparation requirements with the access control installer prior to preparing submittals.
   5. Coordinate reinforcing and preparation for hardware at doors with lites, including lite frames. Requirements of Texas Accessibility Standards for maximum height above floor of the bottom of the vision lite may likely require door hardware to be mounted slightly lower than standard height in order to avoid a conflict between hardware and door lite frames. Pay particular attention to exit device mounting.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 MATERIALS

A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.

B. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60 metallic coating.

C. Door Frame Anchorage Devices: ASTM A 653/A, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B, with minimum G60 metallic coating. Provide with minimum of 6 wall anchors and 2 adjustable base anchors, manufacturer's standard design. Provide UL anchors as required. Contractor is responsible to coordinate anchor types required with adjacent construction.
   1. Use metal tee anchors at frames in CMU masonry unless otherwise noted.

D. Exterior and Interior Door Frames: Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI/SDI A250.8, for physical performance level, and HMMA 867 for door construction, in depth and profiles indicated to suit application. Furnished with 2" faces (4" head at masonry) and 5/8" stops. Strike jambs provided with 3 factory installed rubber bumpers, and two per door leaf at head of pair door frames. Provide UL rating as required. Frames fabricated of quality 16 gauge annealed steel. Exterior frames to have A60 coating. Interior frames can be standard CRS.
   1. Removable stops at interior frames located at interior (room) side of interior frames.

E. Flush Doors: ANSI/SDI A250.8, 1-3/4" Flush type door with no visible edge seams. Polyurethane core. Reinforcements provided for all hardware. Doors mortised for hardware. Provide fire rating as required. Faces constructed of quality annealed steel as follows
   1. Interior Doors: Faces constructed of quality annealed steel as follows:
      a. HM-Typical Interior, except where noted otherwise: Heavy Duty (Level 2), 18 gauge steel. Steel stiffened laminated core with fiberglass filler with no stiffener face welds, in compliance with HMMA 867 “Laminated Core”.

1) Provide 22 gauge steel-stiffeners at 6 inches on-center internally welded at 5" on-center to integral core assembly, No stiffener face welding is permitted.
2) Provide Heavy Duty (Level 2), 18 gauge steel for interior doors at the Air Locks.

2. Exterior doors, and doors between conditioned and unconditioned or heated only spaces, shall have minimum R factor of 3.4 including insulated door, thermal-break frame and threshold, and flush closing channel at top rail. Foamed in place polyurethane and steel stiffened laminated core with no stiffener face welds, in compliance with HMMA 867 “Laminated Core”.
   a. Extra Heavy Duty (Level 3), 16 gauge steel at exterior doors.
3. Use other type(s) of steel stiffened cores may be used where required to achieve indicated R-values, STC ratings, and fire ratings, as approved by Architect.
4. Where doors are indicated in STC rated partitions, the door STC rating shall be equal to or greater than the partition in which the door is located, unless otherwise noted.
5. Hinge Reinforcement: Minimum 7 gauge (3/16") plate 1-1/4" x 9".
6. Hardware Reinforcements: Shop Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 with reinforcing plates from same material as door face sheets.

F. Divided Lite Door: 16 Gauge, 1-3/4" x 5" tubular top and side stiles and 10" bottom rail with mitered, face-welded corners. Doors shall be mortised, reinforced, drilled and tapped to receive mortise hardware. Door shall be similar to Ceco "Imperial", or approved equal. Provide insulated metal panel or 1/4" tempered glass as shown on drawings.
   1. Grout mix shall provide a 4" maximum slump consistency, hand troweled in place. Grout mixed to a thin "pumpable" consistency shall not be used.
   2. Sound deadening (provide at partitions indicated to comply with an STC rating): Coat interior side of frame with 1/8” thick fibered asphalt emulsion. Pack door frame tightly with mineral fiber batts, made with binder containing no added urea formaldehyde.
   3. Grout Guards: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.016 inches thick.

## 2.02 LITE OPENINGS AND GLAZING

A. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints at fabricator’s shop. Fixed and removable stops to allow multiple glazed lites each to be removed independently. Coordinate frame rabbet widths between fixed and removable stops with the type of glazing and installation indicated.

B. Moldings for Glazed Lites in Doors and Loose Stops for Glazed Lites in Frames: Minimum 20 gauge thick, fabricated from same material as door face sheet in which they are installed.

C. Fixed Frame Moldings: Formed integral with hollow metal frames, a minimum of 5/8 inch high unless otherwise indicated. Provide fixed frame moldings and stops on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.

D. Preformed Metal Frames for Light Openings: Manufacturer's standard frame formed of 0.048-inch-thick, cold rolled steel sheet; with baked enamel or powder coated finish; and approved for use in doors of fire protection rating indicated. Match pre-finished door paint color where applicable.

## 2.03 FABRICATION

A. Frames shall have all joints mitered, continuous full welded and ground smooth. No putty or filler permitted at joints.

B. All door frames mortised for 1-1/2 pair 4-1/2 x 4-1/2 standard weight hinges. Frames of 48" width shall have 2 pair butts. (Re: Door Schedule and Hardware Schedule for Number and Location.) Frames mortised and reinforced for hinges, (7 ga. 1-1/4" x 10" min.), strikes, (12 gauge steel), and surface applied hardware, (12 ga. steel), as required.

C. All door frames shall be prepared for installation of silencers.

D. Hollow Metal Frames:
   1. Welded Frames: Frames shall have all joints mitered, continuous full welded and ground smooth. No putty or filler permitted at joints Weld flush face joints continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make smooth, flush, and invisible.
      a. Welded frames are to be provided with two steel spreaders temporarily attached to the bottom of both jambs to serve as a brace during shipping and handling. Spreader bars are for bracing only and are not to be used to size the frame opening.
   2. High Frequency Hinge Reinforcement: Provide high frequency hinge reinforcements at door openings 48-inches and wider with mortise butt type hinges at top hinge locations.
   3. Continuous Hinge Reinforcement: Provide welded continuous 12 gauge straps for continuous hinges specified in hardware sets in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".
   4. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated for removable stops, provide security screws at exterior locations.
   5. Mortar Guards: Provide guard boxes at back of hardware mortises in frames at all hinges and strike preps regardless of grouting requirements.
   6. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:
      a. Masonry Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c.
      b. Stud Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c.
   7. Door Silencers: Except on weatherstripped or gasketed doors, drill stops to receive door silencers. Silencers to be supplied by frame manufacturer regardless if specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".
   8. Bituminous Coating: Where frames are fully grouted with an approved Portland Cement based grout or mortar, coat inside of frame throat with a water based bituminous or asphaltic emulsion coating to a minimum thickness of 3 mils DFT, tested in accordance with UL 10C and applied to the frame under a 3rd party independent follow-up service procedure.

E. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow metal work to receive template mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to the Door Hardware Schedule and templates furnished as specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware."
   1. Locate hardware as indicated, or if not indicated, according to ANSI/SDI A250.8.
   2. Reinforce doors and frames to receive non-template, mortised and surface mounted door hardware.
   3. Comply with applicable requirements in ANSI/SDI A250.6 and ANSI/DHI A115 Series specifications for preparation of hollow metal work for hardware.
   4. Coordinate locations of conduit and wiring boxes for electrical connections with Division 26 Sections.
   5. Coordinate reinforcing and preparation for hardware at doors with lites including lite frames. Requirements of Texas Accessibility Standards for maximum height above floor of the bottom of the vision lite may likely require door hardware to be mounted slightly lower than standard height in order to avoid conflict between hardware and door lite frames. Pay particular attention to exit device mounting.

## 2.04 FINISH

A. Prime Finishes: Doors and frames to be cleaned, and chemically treated to insure maximum finish paint adhesion. Surfaces of the door and frame exposed to view to receive a factory applied coat of rust inhibiting shop primer.

B. Doors and Frames for exterior openings shall be galvanized before primer is applied using a hot-dip coating of zinc.

C. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead and chromate free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10 acceptance criteria; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; and compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings

D. Field Painting: Refer to Division 09, Section “Painting”.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. General Contractor to verify the accuracy of dimensions given to the steel door and frame manufacturer for existing openings or existing frames (strike height, hinge spacing, hinge back set, etc.).

C. Check for coordination with electrical preparation, and other coordination items as identified in Part 1 of these specifications, and in the pre-installation conference.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected

### 3.02 PREPARATION

A. Remove welded in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch up facory-applied finishes where spreaders are removed.

B. Prior to installation, adjust and securely brace welded hollow metal frames for square, level, twist, and plumb condition.

C. Tolerances shall comply with SDI-117 "Manufacturing Tolerances Standard Steel Doors and Frames."

D. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive non-template, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Modification of Existing Doors and Frames: Cut and patch existing doors and frames as required to install new hardware (Refer to Division 08 Section "Door Hardware"). Provide filler plate and bond-o patching and sand smooth as required to eliminate evidence of patching in completed work.

B. General: Install hollow metal work plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place; comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Anchor ceiling struts to construction above with fasteners to suit conditions. Brace frames as necessary until built into permanent construction.

D. Exercise extreme care when installing door frames. All door frames which are installed out of plumb, distorted and not level or in a manner which does not permit proper installation of doors, must be removed and replaced with new frames in a manner satisfactory to the Architect.
   1. Knock-down frames installed with tight miter joints at corners and meeting at corners without any noticeable lip between head and jamb pieces.

E. Clearances:
   1. Non-Fire-Rated Standard Steel Doors:

a. Allow maximum of 1/16" clearance at head and jamb.
b. Allow maximum of 1/2" clearance at floors.
c. Allow maximum of 1/4" clearance at thresholds.

2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.

F. All exterior door frames and doors installed in CMU wall openings shall be grouted solid. Close off openings to wall cavities as indicated in Drawings and as required.
1. Coat interior sides of frames to received grouting with a thin brush or spray coat of bituminous paint, to inhibit rusting and pitting.

G. Sound Deadening: Coat interior sides of frames with 1/8” thick heavy coat of fibered asphalt emulsion and Pack acoustical insulation continuously into frames at all partitions calling for STC-rating.

H. Field Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing" and with hollow metal manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.04 ADJUSTING, CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including hollow metal work that is warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.
1. Refer to Division 01, “Substantial Completion Readiness Checklist” for additional list of final checks prior to requesting inspection.

B. Remove grout and other bonding material from hollow metal work immediately after installation.

C. Prime-Coat and Painted Finish Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat, or painted finishes, and apply touchup of compatible air drying, rust-inhibitive primer, zinc rich primer (exterior and galvanized openings) or finish paint

D. Protect metal doors and frames and their finishes from damage and detrimental soiling during the remainder of construction.
1. Repair and repaint hollow metal that is damaged or soiled, to eliminate evidence of damage, in a manner acceptable to Architect. Replace components that cannot be repaired.

E. Clean doors and frames prior to inspection for substantial completion. Touch up paint finish as required. Clean with products that will not damage finishes.

END OF SECTION 08 11 13

# SECTION 08 14 16 - WOOD DOORS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Wood doors as indicated on the drawings and as herein specified.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 06 Section - Rough Carpentry.
   2. Division 08 Section - Hollow Metal Frames.
   3. Division 08 Section - Finish Hardware.
   4. Division 08 Section - Glazing.
   5. Division 09 Section - Painting.

### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Acceptable manufacturers: Manufacturers qualified to affix each door with NWMA seal of approval or quality certification stamp. Eggers Hardwood Products Corp.; Algoma Hardwoods; Gram Manufacturing; Georgia-Pacific are acceptable manufacturers.

B. Design Criteria:
   1. Fire ratings: Doors noted to have specific hourly label shall be of Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. labeled construction and shall bear the required U.L. label.
   2. Standards: The "Quality Standards" of the Architectural Woodwork Institute shall apply by reference are hereby made a part of this specification.
   3. Doors to have minimum STC rating equal to or greater than adjacent partition or greater if noted.

C. Wood Door Manufacturers: Manufacturers shall have a minimum of 5 years experience in building and installing custom wood doors.

D. Door Construction and Veneer Quality: AWI Quality Standard, Premium Grade.

### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Division 01 Section - Submittal Procedures: Procedures for submittals.

B. Manufacturer shall furnish a certificate to the Owner evidencing that materials produced meet the specifications and label requirements.

C. Submit product literature, shop drawings and details based on the Contract Documents and building conditions, including acoustical STC rating, thermal insulating R-value and hourly fire ratings as applicable.

D. Indicate door elevations, stile and rail reinforcement, internal blocking for hardware attachment and cutouts for louvers.

E. Submit 2 samples 12" x 12" in size of door corner typical of veneer and reinforcement construction.

## 1.05 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver doors to building after wet trades have been completed and building is within normal occupancy humidity conditions. Doors shall be delivered in manufacturer's name and identifying symbol on covering. Doors shall be stored flat with protective coverings provided to protect surfaces. Doors shall not be dragged over one another.

## 1.06 JOB CONDITIONS

A. Coordination:
   1. The Contractor shall provide door manufacturer with approved hardware schedules, templates and hand for all doors. Contractor shall advise door manufacturer of any changes after information has been forwarded. Contractor will be completely responsible for coordination between hardware, door and frame manufacturers. Any materials not properly coordinated shall be replaced by the Contractor at his own expense.
   2. Door manufacturer shall be responsible for coordinating information so that doors are properly finished, machined and ready to hang.

## 1.07 WARRANTY

A. Specific Product Warranty: Submit written agreement on door manufacturer's standard form signed by Manufacturer, Installer and Contractor, agreeing to repair or replace defective doors which have warped (bow, cup or twist) in excess of 1/4" in 7'-0" (max. allowable as defined by the National Woodwork Manufacturer Association Standard Door Guarantee) or which show telegraphing of core construction below in face veneers, or do not conform to tolerance limitations of AWI.

B. The Warranty shall also include refinishing and reinstallation which may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.

C. Warranty shall be in effect during following period of time after date of substantial completion.
   1. Solid Core Flush Interior Doors: Life of installation.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 GENERAL

A. Doors noted to have a specific hourly label, fabricated in accordance with Underwriters' Laboratories requirements for label indicated.

## 2.02 MATERIALS

A. Solid Core Wood Doors:
   1. Provide Structural Composite Lumber, 1-3/4" thick solid core Extra Heavy Duty wood doors with hardwood edge type-E conforming to AWI Section 9 for Type SCL 5-ply standards, bonded with exterior water-resistant, Type II resin glue, manufactured by Weyerhaeuser, Graham, Haley, Curtis Corp., Algoma, Eggers Hardwood Products Corp., or approved equal.
   2. Doors to have thermal insulating and/or hourly fire ratings as scheduled as applicable.
   3. Doors to have minimum STC rating equal to or greater than adjacent partition or greater if noted.

B. Finish:

1. Door faces and edges shall receive .050" thick plastic laminate by Wilsonart. Plastic laminate applied using manufacturer's recommended adhesives, applied under bonding pressures and at atmospheric conditions recommended by manufacturer. Doors surfaced from one continuous sheet of laminated plastic without intermediate joints
2. Contractor shall select/ match finish of building standard doors. Contractor selection/match shall be submitted for Architect's review.

C. View Lite:
1. View Lite: Metal frame with laminated glass.

## 2.03 SHOP PRIMING

A. Transparent Finish: Prime doors with stain as selected by Architect and first coat of finish as specified in Division 09 Section of these specifications.

## 2.04 PREFITTING & PREPARATION FOR HARDWARE

A. Prefit and pre-machine wood doors at the factory.

B. Comply with the tolerance requirements of NWMA for prefitting. Machine doors for hardware requiring cutting of doors. Comply with final hardware as scheduled, door frame shop drawings, and hardware templates & other essential information required to ensure proper fit of doors and hardware.

C. Take accurate field measurements of hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before proceeding with machining in the factory.

D. Provide flush edgings for wood doors receiving panic devices. Coordinate with door hardware.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate all wood doors in strict accordance with the referenced standards for the grades specified.

## 3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Clearances:
1. Allow maximum of 3/16" at jamb and head.
2. Allow maximum of 3/16" over threshold or saddle.
3. Allow maximum of 1/2" over decorative floor coverings.

B. Fire rated doors: Install in accordance with NFPA recommendations. Maximum clearances:
1. 1/8" between door and frame.
2. 3/8" between door bottoms and decorative floor finish.
3. 1/8" between doors for pairs of doors.

C. Factory Fitted Doors: Align in frame for uniform clearance at each edge.

D. Ensure building humidity levels are acceptable for wood door installation.

## 3.03 ADJUST AND CLEAN

A. Replace or re-hang doors which are hinge bound and do not swing or operate freely. Replace damaged material.

B. Protect doors as recommended by door manufacturer to ensure that doors will not be damaged.

END OF SECTION 08 14 16

# SECTION 08 31 13 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Provide all access doors and frames for walls and ceilings as indicated in Drawings and as required for access to equipment and by authorities having jurisdiction, whether or not locations for access doors and frames are specifically indicated in Drawings.
   2. Floor access doors.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for blocking out openings for access doors and frames in concrete.
   2. Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry Assemblies".
   3. Division 06 "Rough Carpentry" for coordination of wood blocking.
   4. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies" for gypsum board assemblies.
   5. Division 09 Section "Acoustical Ceilings" for suspended acoustical tile ceilings.
   6. Division 09 Section "Ceramic Tiling".

### 1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of access door and frame indicated. Include construction details, fire ratings, materials, individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details of access doors and frames for each type of substrate. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain access doors and frames of each type through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Fire-Rated Access Doors and Frames: Units complying with NFPA 80 that are identical to access door and frame assemblies tested for fire-test-response characteristics per the following test method and that are listed and labeled by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
   1. NFPA 252 for vertical access doors and frames.
   2. ASTM E 119 for horizontal access doors and frames.

C. Size Variations: Obtain Architect's acceptance of manufacturer's standard-size units, which may vary slightly from sizes indicated.

## 1.05 COORDINATION

A. Verification: Coordinate with other trades to determine specific locations and sizes for access doors needed to gain access to concealed plumbing, mechanical, electrical, or other concealed work.
   1. Size panels as required by controls to be accessed. Provide adequate sizes to service equipment accessed by doors and panels, and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   2. For replacement of access doors in existing construction, field measure to match existing opening sizes.

## 1.06 PRODUCT DELIVERY AND STORAGE

A. Deliver products in manufacturers original packages, clearly marked with brand name and model number.

## 1.07 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer shall guarantee against defects in material and workmanship for a period of one year(s) minimum.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Access Doors:
      a. Acoustical Products, Inc.
      b. Acudor Products, Inc.
      c. Bilco
      d. Babcock Davis
      e. J. L. Industries, Inc.
      f. Karp Associates, Inc.
      g. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.

## 2.02 WALL AND CEILING ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS

A. Access Door for use in noise critical spaces: Equal to Type RDW manufactured by Karp with applied 5/8”drywall panel and factory-optional 1/16” x 3/8’ neoprene gasket.

B. Ceiling Access Door (where passage is required for service access)at ceilings: Access panel with flush 5/8” gypsum board inlay, perforated galvanized metal frame flanges for drywall tape and bedding, concealed non corroding two point pin hinge, and cylinder lock & key, equal to Acudor Products, Inc., DW5015 & AP-5010
   1. Size: 24” x 36” where intended for passage, and sizes as required for intended service purpose in other locations.
   2. Fire rated to match adjacent construction when located in fire rated construction.

C. Flush Access Doors and Frames with Exposed Trim: Fabricated from steel sheet.
   1. Locations: Wall surfaces. Install at all location where valves or controls are concealed within walls, whether shown on the drawings or not.
   2. Door: Minimum 0.060-inch thick, 16 gauge sheet metal, set flush with exposed face flange of frame.
   3. Size: As indicated and as required for access, provide custom size if required size is not standard.
   4. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch thick, 16 gauge sheet metal with nominal 1-inch-wide, surface-mounted trim.

5. Fire rated to match adjacent construction when located in fire rated construction.
6. Hinges: Continuous piano hinge.
7. Latch: Screwdriver-operated cam latch.
8. Finish:
    a. Satin stainless steel at tile, restrooms, and other wet locations.
    b. Shop primed steel for field applied painting in other wall locations. Color to match adjacent finish or per architect's direction.
9. Finishes – Factory applied powder coat finish, color selected by Architect from manufacturer standard color selection.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 INSPECTION

A. Examine areas to receive door and frame to insure work of preceding trades is completed. Check surfaces to see that they are plumb in place, free from grease, oil or other debris which would affect proper installation. Application constitutes acceptance of substrate conditions.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.

B. Set frames accurately in position and attach securely to supports with plane of face panels aligned with adjacent finish surfaces.

C. Install doors flush with adjacent finish surfaces or recessed to receive finish material.

D. Installation: All access panel locations in Noise Critical Spaces shall be installed only where indicated on drawings. Location of additional proposed access panels shall be submitted by Contractor for approval.

### 3.03 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Adjust doors and hardware after installation for proper operation.

B. Remove and replace doors and frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise damaged.

END OF SECTION 08 31 13

# SECTION 08 33 23 - OVERHEAD COILING DOORS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Provide overhead coiling door assemblies including brackets, guides, tracks, hardware, operators, motors and installation accessories. Include power to specified motor operators.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 05 Section - Support Structures.
   2. Division 08 Section - Hardware.
   3. Division 09 Section - Painting.
   4. Division 28 Section - Card Reader.

### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Acceptable Manufacturers: Overhead Door (214) 233-6611 "620 Series" or equal by Dynaflair Corporation (813) 248-8100, Cornell Iron Works (717) 474-6773 or Cookson Co. (415) 826-4422.
   1. Single-Source Responsibility: Provide doors, tracks, motors, and accessories from one manufacturer for each type of door. Provide secondary components from source acceptable to manufacturer of primary components.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing Work of this section with a minimum of five years experience in the fabrication and installation of security closures.

C. Distributor / Installer Qualifications: Doors shall be provided and installed by an Overhead Door Ribbon Distributor with at least the 5 previous years of continuous service as a distributor with a proven record of successful in-service performance, or equivalent qualifications if doors are provided by another Manufacturer. Submit statement of qualifications from the Manufacturer."
   1. Company specializing in performing Work of this section and approved by manufacturer, employing installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer for both installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.

D. Design Criteria for standard exterior doors:
   1. Wind Loading: Door installed and supported to withstand a wind loading condition of 20 lbs. per square foot with a maximum deflection of 1/120 of the opening width.
   2. Cycle Life: Design doors of standard construction for normal use of up to 20 cycles per day, with minimum 50,000 cycle rated springs.
   3. Insulated Door Slat Material Requirements:
      a. Flame Spread Index of 0 and a Smoke Developed Index of 10 as tested per ASTM E84.
      b. Minimum Installed System Sound Transmission Class (STC) rating of 21 as tested per ASTM E90.

c. Minimum R-value of 7.5 (U-factor of 0.125) as calculated using the ASHRAE Handbook of Fundamentals.
d. Insulation is CFC-free.

4. Air Leakage: Meets ASHRAE 90.1 & IECC 2012/2015 C402.4.3, Air leakage <1.00 cfm/ft$^2$.

E. Design Criteria for storm and missile impact doors:
1. Wind Loading: Sustain a 240 psf wind pressure in accordance with ASTM E330.
2. Large Missile Impact: Sustaing a large missile impact test in accordance with ASTM E1886 for FEMA 361 assemblies.:
3. Cycle Life: Design doors of standard construction for normal use of up to 20 cycles per day, with minimum 50,000 cycle rated springs.

## 1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product literature and color range.

B. Shop drawings: Include detailed plans, elevations, details of framing members, anchoring methods, required clearances, hardware, and accessories. Include relationship with adjacent construction, based on the specific construction indicated in the Construction Documents for this project.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Complete set of color chips representing manufacturer’s full range of available colors.

D. Samples for Verification: Samples on metal at least 6" long, representing actual color.

E. Informational Submittals:
1. Manufacturer’s Certificates: Certify products meet or exceed specified requirements.
2. Qualifications.

F. Closeout Submittals:
1. Operationg Manuals.
2. Maintenance schedule.
3. Warranties.

## 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.

B. Protect materials from exposure to moisture. Do not deliver until after wet work is complete and dry.

C. Store materials in a dry, warm, ventilated weathertight location.

## 1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

B. Coordination: Coordinate Work with other operations and installation of adjacent materials to avoid damage to installed materials. Coordinate power and access control requirements and their rough-in locations with other trades.

## 1.07 WARRANTY

A. Coiling Doors Warranty: Manufacturer’s limited door and operator system, except the counterbalance spring and finish, to be free from defects in materials and workmanship for 3 years or 20,000 cycles, whichever occurs first.

B. Coiling Counter Door Warranty: Manufacturer's limited door warranty for 2 years for all parts and components.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MATERIALS

A. Exterior Coiling Door:
   1. Curtain: Prefinished, galvanized rolling door with polyurethane insulated (0.054 "U" value) and thermal breaks, galvanized 20 gauge interlocking flat faced steel slats 5/8" deep by 2-5/8" high with 24 gauge galvanized and primed back cover joint seals between sections, jamb seals on the ends and top seal against the header. Fit each slat with an endlock at each end to provide positive guide retention and ensure curtain alignment. Door as manufactured by Overhead Door Corp., "625 Series" Commercial Steel Doors, Model No. UFN1 with F265 "Stormtite Insulated Slats" or approved equal.
   2. Finish: Rust inhibitive, bonderized, baked-on prime coat and and a polyester top coat. Interior color shall be a manufacturers standard color. Exterior color shall be custom color as selected by the Architect.
   3. Guides: 2" galvanized steel guides attached to opening per manufacturer's standard recommendations. Vertical guide to provide weathertight closing with bracket. Horizontal tracks reinforced adequately to prevent deflection. Finish to match curtain.
   4. Bottom Bar: Heavy duty extruded galvanized steel with weatherseals. Pneumatic sensing edge consisting of removable looped neoprene weather-stripping extending full length door bottom.
   5. Hood: 24 Gauge galvanized steel and primed. Finished to match curtain.
   6. Barrel: 6" Minimum diameter steel pipe barrel designed to carry curtain load with a maximum deflection not to exceed .03" per foot of width.
   7. Counter Balance: Torsion-type springs, low stress, helical-wound spring wire rated for 50,000 cycles of use to accommodate easy operation. Spring fittings and drums of die cast high strength aluminum. All rotating parts shall have high quality ball bearings.
   8. End Plates: Furnish steel end plates not less than 3/16" thick and bolted to support brackets or plates.
   9. Operation: Manually operated chain drive.
   10. Operation: Electric motor operation, 3/4 HP minimum.
   11. Locking: Right hand five pin-tumblermechanism operational from inside.
   12. Provide perimeter weather-stripping of doors such that under 25 mph winds, air leakage will reduce in accordance with ASTM E383-73.
   13. All exposed fasteners, anchors, hardware or attachments shall be galvanized, cadmium-plated or stainless steel.

### 2.02 STORM RATED MOTORIZED OVERHEAD COILING DOORS

A. Basis of Design Product: McKeon Three Hour fire rated Safespace 500F-PC, FEMA 361 certified and ICC 500 compliant Overhead Coiling Service Doors, and as follows:
   1. Curtain: Manufacturer's standard steel interlocking G90 galvanized steel slats. Curtain shall be formed of slat profile sections of gauge as required to sustain the minimum required design wind pressure. Slat cross section shall not be less than 3" wide by 1-1/2" deep..
   2. Bottom Bar; Shall consist of a double structural steel angle assembly formed to fit and engage the curtain assembly.
   3. Guides Each guide assembly shall be fabricated of structural steel support angles and guide retaining angles of a sufficient depth to retain curtain in in the guides under the design wind pressure and impact forces specified.

1) Provide internally concealed UL Classified smoke seals located within each guide assembly. Externally mounted smoke seals shall not be acceptable.

4. Mounting Brackets: Fabricated of hot rolled 3/16" minimum steel plates, brackets shall be provided to house ends of the counterbalance barrel assembly.
5. Counterbalance Assembly: Coiling door shall be counterbalanced by means of adjustable steel helical torsion springs attached to shaft enclosed in pipe with required mounting blocks or rings for attachment of curtain. Grease sealed bearings or self-lubricating graphite bearings shall be attached to the spring barrel which shall be fabricated of hot formed structural quality carbon steel seamless pipe.
6. Hood: Shall be provided to entirely enclose coiled curtain and counterbalance barrel assembly. Hood shall be fabricated 22 gauge galvanized steel, designed and formed to match brackets. Top and bottom shall be bent and reinforced to provide for proper stiffness.
   1. Provide internally concealed UL Classified smoke seals located within the hood assembly. Externally lintel mounted smoke seals shall not be acceptable.
7. Manual Override Operation:
   a. Chain Hoist Override.
8. Electric Motor Operator: Fire door shall be provided with a compact power unit designed and built by the door manufacturer. Operator shall be equipped with an adjustable screw-type limit switch to break the circuit at termination of travel. High efficiency planetary gearing running in an oil bath, shall be furnished together with a centrifugal governor, magnetic operated brake and a fail-safe magnetic release device, completely housed to protect against damage, dust and moisture. An efficient overload protection device, which will break the power circuit and protect against damage to the motor windings shall be integral with the unit. Operator is to be housed in a NEMA type 1 enclosure.
   a. Motor: Shall be intermediate duty, thermally protected, ball bearing type with a class A or better insulation. Horsepower of motor is to be 1/3hp minimum or of manufacturer's recommended size, which ever is greater.
   b. Starter: Shall be size "0" magnetic reversing starter, across the line type with mechanical and electrical interlocks, with 10 amp continuous rating and 24 volt control circuit.
   c. Reducer: Planetary gear type, 80% efficiency minimum.
   d. Brake: Magnetically activated, integral within the operator's housing.
   e. Control Station: Provide flush mount key switch control station marked open, close and stop.
   f. Hand Chain Override: Provide manual chain hoist override assembly to open the door in case of emergency.
9. Self-Closing Mechanism: The fire door is to be designed with a centrifugal governor as an integral part of the operator's construction. The automatic release mechanism shall be activated by a fusible link, smoke detector or fire alarm. When activated the door is released and begins to close due to gravitational force. The speed of the door is governed by a centrifugal governor, designed to match the normal operating speed of the door, at a rate of not greater than 9" per second or less than 6" per second.
10. Magnetic Release with 10 Second Time Delay: A fail-safe magnetic release device shall be built into the operator as an integral part of the release mechanism. When power is interrupted to the release mechanism by the smoke detector or fire alarm, the door shall begin to self-close. In the event of power failure the time delay shall prevent the fire door from closing for a period of 10 seconds. Once the 10 seconds have lapsed, the fire door shall self-close.
11. Obstruction Sensing Safety Edge: The fire door shall be designed with an obstruction sensing safety edge. In the event that the safety edge meets an obstruction during the normal closing operation, the door shall stop, reverse and return to the open position. In

the event the safety edge meets an obstruction during the self-closing operation, the door shall come to rest on the obstruction and once the obstruction has been removed the fire door shall continue to the fully closed position.

12. Easy Trip Test Feature: The fire door shall be designed so that it may be trip tested simply by cutting power to the magnetic release device. By turning the power switch off, the door shall self-close. Once the fire door has satisfactorily closed, it shall be reset simply by restoring power back to the assembly and activating the control station to power the unit back to the open position.
13. Finish: Slats and hood galvanized in accordance with ASTM A 653 and receive rust-inhibitive, roll coating process, including 0.2 mils thick baked-on prime paint, and 0.6 mils thick baked-on polyester top coat.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Field measure openings prior to shop drawing submittal and fabrication.

B. Verify opening sizes, tolerances and conditions are acceptable.

C. Examine conditions of substrates, supports, and other conditions under which this work is to be performed.

D. Coordinate and schedule work under this section with work of other sections so as not to delay job progress.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.

B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Coordinate and schedule work under this section with work of other sections so as not to delay job progress.

C. Coiling door shall be mounted as indicated on drawings with guides braced in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations for installation. Door, when installed, shall fit flush, tight and level to horizontal construction with side jambs properly plumbed and supported to meet design criteria. Provide all accessory brackets and shims as may be necessary for a complete installation.

D. Use anchorage devices to securely fasten assembly to wall construction and building framing without distortion or stress.

E. Securely and rigidly brace components suspended from structure. Secure guides to structural members only.

F. Fit and align assembly including hardware; level and plumb, to provide smooth operation.

G. Coordinate installation of electrical service and access control interface with other trades. Complete wiring from disconnect to unit components.

H. Coordinate installation of sealants and backing materials at frame perimeter as specified in Division 07, Section "Joint Sealants".

I. Install perimeter trim and closures.

## 3.04 ADJUSTING

A. Completed door shall have all mechanisms properly adjusted and lubricated. Unit set tight to wall to properly close off opening.
B. Test for proper operation and adjust as necessary to provide proper operation without binding or distortion.
C. Test Fire Rated door closing sequence when activated by the building's fire alarm system. Reset door after successful test.
D. Adjust hardware and operating assemblies for smooth and noiseless operation.

## 3.05 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean curtain and components using non-abrasive materials and methods recommended by manufacturer.
B. Remove labels and visible markings.
C. Protect installed products until completion of project.
D. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

## 3.06 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

A. Demonstrate and instruct Owner’s personnel in proper operating procedures and maintenance schedule.

END OF SECTION 08 33 23

# SECTION 08 44 13 - ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALL SYSTEM

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Provide curtain wall system as shown on the drawings and herein specified.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 05 Section - "Metal Fabrications".
   2. Division 06 Section - "Rough Carpentry".
   3. Division 07 Section - "Thermal Insulation".
   4. Division 07 Section - "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim".
   5. Division 07 Section - "Joint Sealants".
   6. Division 07 Section - "Firestopping".
   7. Division 08 Section - "Aluminum Entrances and Storefront".
   8. Division 08 Section - "Door Hardware".
   9. Division 08 Section - "Glazing".

### 1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design aluminum-framed systems, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of glazed aluminum curtain walls representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction:
   1. Glazed aluminum curtain walls shall withstand movements of supporting structure including, but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
   2. Dimensional tolerances of building frame and other adjacent construction.
   3. Failure includes the following:
      a. Deflection exceeding specified limits.
      b. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
      c. Framing members transferring stresses, including those caused by thermal and structural movements to glazing.
      d. Glass breakage.
      e. Noise or vibration created by wind and by thermal and structural movements.
      f. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
      g. Structural sealant failure, or sealant failure due to movement.
      h. Failure of operating units.

C. Structural Loads:
   1. Wind Loads: As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.

D. Deflection of Framing Members: At design wind pressure, as follows:
   1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to edge of glass in a direction perpendicular to glass plane shall not exceed L/175 of the glass edge length for each individual glazing lite or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch, whichever is less.
   2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to L/360 of clear span or 1/8 inch, whichever is smaller.
      a. Operable Units: Provide a minimum 1/16 inch clearance between framing members and operable units.
   3. Cantilever Deflection: Where framing members overhang an anchor point, as follows:
      a. Perpendicular to Plane of Wall: No greater than 1/240 of clear span plus 1/4-inch for spans greater than 11 feet 8-1/4 inches or 1/175 times span, for spans less than 11 feet 8-1/4 inches.

E. Structural-Test Performance: Provide aluminum-framed systems tested according to ASTM E 330 as follows:
   1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, systems do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
   2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, systems, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, and permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
   3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not fewer than 10 seconds.

F. Air Infiltration:
   1. Fixed Framing: Provide aluminum-framed systems with maximum air leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas of 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. of fixed wall area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.

G. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Provide aluminum-framed systems that do not evidence water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to ASTM E 331 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.
   1. Test Performance: Complying with criteria for passing based on building occupancy type when tested according to AAMA 501.4 at design displacement and 1.5 times the design displacement.

H. Energy Performance: Certify and label energy performance according to NFRC as follows:

   1. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor): Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have U-factor of not more than 0.50 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F as determined according to NFRC 100.
   2. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have a solar heat gain coefficient of no greater than **0**.25 as determined according to NFRC 200.

I. Thermal Movements: Provide aluminum-framed systems that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
   1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
   2. Interior Ambient-Air Temperature: 75 deg F.

J. Brake Metal: Provide in thicknesses as required to prevent oil canning, including for exterior brake metal oil canning that may be caused by design wind loads. Additionally, thickness may be greater but shall not be less than minimum thicknesses as specified elsewhere in these

specifications, or minimum thicknesses as indicated in Drawings. Contractor shall include necessary thicknesses in his bid.

## 1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For Aluminum Curtain Wall System indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

C. Shop drawings and details based on the Contract Documents submitted to the Architect for review. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, and air barriers.

D. Samples for initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color selector sheets or factory applied selector plates. Website or print media other than Manufacturer's provided materials do not represent accurate color renditions and are not acceptable.

E. Samples for verification:
   1. Submit three samples of each required aluminum finish on aluminum plates or extrusions.

F. Product Test Reports: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

G. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

## 1.05 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator and Installer: Shall have a minimum of 5 years experience on projects of similar size and scope. Installer shall be approved by Manufacturer.

B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate typical construction and waterproofing details, and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
   1. Build mockups at typical wall locations as located by Architect. Approved mockups may become part of the final work if undisturbed at Substantial Completion.
   2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

## 1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Ordering: Comply with Manufacturer's ordering instructions and lead time requirements to avoid construction delays.

B. Packing, Shipping, Handling, and Unloading: Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.

C. Storage and Protection: Store materials protected from exposure to harmful weather conditions. Handle material and components to avoid damage. Protect curtain wall material against damage from elements, construction activities, and other hazards before, during and after curtain wall installation.

## 1.08 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Coordinate erection with other trades to avoid conflict. Prior to installation, verify all field measurements and job conditions. Verify actual locations of structural supports for aluminum-framed systems by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

## 1.09 GUARANTEE AND WARRANTY

A. Water Tightness:
   1. Installer shall submit a written guarantee to the Owner, guaranteeing storefront system for a period of 2 years against leaks and defects in the system.
   2. Provide written warranty from manufacturer that warrants glazing gaskets to be free of defects in material and workmanship for a period of five years.

B. Manufacturer's Finish Warranty: Manufacturer's standard limited warranty against fade, chalk, crack, check, peel, and failure of coatings to adhere to metal. Warranty duration as follows:
   1. Anodic Finish: 5 years from date of delivery.
   2. Fluropolymer Finish: 5 years from date of delivery.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Basis-of-Design Product: Nominal 2-1/4" or 2-1/2" wide x 6" deep curtain wall glazing system, thermally broken at exterior. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "1600 Wall System", of types as required, as manufactured by Kawneer Company, or comparable products by one of the following:
   1. EFCO Corporation.
   2. Oldcastle Building Envelope.
   3. CRL - US Aluminum.
   4. YKK AP America.

## 2.02 MATERIALS

A. General: Provide plates, angles, steel frame bracing, wind bracing, spacers, clips and other devices necessary to support aluminum framing and glass. Design of connections shall be fabricator's responsibility. Framing system provided with screws, miscellaneous fastening devices and internal components of non-corrosive materials. Provide all accessory metal shapes, column closures, sill caps and brake metal sections necessary for a complete installation. System provided with weeps and water stops properly draining water to the exterior.

B. Aluminum (Curtain Wall and Components):
   1. Extruded Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
   2. Member Wall Thickness: Each framing member shall have a wall thickness sufficient to meet the specified structural requirements.
   3. Tolerances: Reference to tolerances for wall thickness and other cross-sectional dimensions of curtain wall members are nominal and in compliance with AA Aluminum Standards and Data.
   4. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209.
   5. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221.
   6. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429.
   7. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308.

C. Internal Reinforcing:
   1. ASTM A36 for carbon steel; or ASTM B308 for structural aluminum.
   2. Shapes and sizes to suit installation.

3. Shop coat steel components after fabrication with alkyd type zinc chromate primer complying with FS TT-P-645.

D. Inserts and Anchorage Devices:
   1. Manufacturer's standard formed or fabricated assemblies, steel or aluminum, of shapes, plates, bars or tubes.
   2. Hot-dip galvanize steel assemblies after fabrication, comply with ASTM A123, 2.0 ounce minimum coating.

E. Fasteners:
   1. Non-magnetic stainless steel or cadmium plated steel coated with yellow or silver iridescence plating, compatible with materials being fastened.
   2. Series 300 stainless steel for exposed locations. Cadmium plated steel with 0.0005 inch plating thickness and color chromate coated for concealed locations.
   3. Provide nuts or washers of design having the means to prevent disengagement; deforming of fastener threads is not acceptable.
   4. Provide concealed fasteners wherever possible.
   5. For exposed locations, provide countersunk flathead fasteners with finish matching item fastened.

F. Expansion Anchor Devices: Lead-shield or toothed-steel, drilled-in, expansion bolt anchors.

G. Shims: Non-staining, non-ferrous, type as recommended by system manufacturer.

H. Protective Coatings: Cold applied asphalt mastic complying with SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 30 mil thickness for each coat; or alkyd type zinc chromate primer complying with FS TT-P-645.

I. Glazing Gaskets:
   1. Compression type design, exterior replaceable, extruded EPDM. Interior is a dense EPDM closed cell EPDM sponge gasket.
   2. Comply with ASTM C509 or C864.
   3. Profile and hardness as necessary to maintain uniform pressure for watertight seal.
   4. Manufacturer's standard black color.

J. Internal Sealants: Types recommended by system manufacturer to remain permanently non-hardening, non-migrating and weather-tight.

K. Curtain Wall Insulation and Firestopping: Refer to Division 07 Sections.

L. Glazing Accessories: Refer to Division 08 - Section "Glazing".

M. Aluminum Trim: Miscellaneous extruded and formed aluminum components shall match alloy and finish of adjacent framing members. Provide in size and shape detailed, and in thickness adequate for the intended performance.

## 2.03 SYSTEM FABRICATION

A. General: All curtain wall mullions, both horizontal and vertical, shall be fabricated from sections as detailed, using an anchoring system concealing all screws, clips, fasteners, etc. from the vision light area. All sections shall be fabricated true to details with clean, straight, sharply defined profiles, free from defects, in accordance with approved shop drawings and manufacturer's recommendations.
   1. Fabricate components per manufacturer's installation instructions and with minimum clearances and shim spacing around perimeter of assembly, yet enabling installation and dynamic movement of perimeter seal.
   2. Accurately fit and secure joints and corners. Make joints flush, hairline and weatherproof.
   3. Prepare components to receive anchor devices. Fabricate anchors.
   4. Arrange fasteners and attachments to conceal from view.

B. Take accurate field measurements to verify required dimensions prior to fabrication.

C. Location of exposed joints is subject to Architect's acceptance.

D. Provide dense EPDM continuous isolator to separate exterior pressure plates and interior framing members.

E. Fabricate components in accord with approved shop drawings. Remove burrs and ease edges. Shop fabricate to greatest extent practicable to minimize field cutting, splicing, and assembly. Disassemble only to extent necessary for shipping and handling limitations.

F. Steel Components:
   1. Clean surfaces after fabrication and immediately prior to application of primer in accord with SSPC-SP2 or SSPC-SP3 at manufacturer's option.
   2. Apply specified shop coat primer in accord with manufacturer's instructions to provide 2.0 minimum dry film thickness.

G. Fabricate components true to detail and free from defects impairing appearance, strength or durability. Fabricate custom extrusions indicated and as necessary for complete installation.

H. Fabricate components to allow for accurate and rigid fit of joints and corners. Match components carefully ensuring continuity of line and design. Ensure joints and connections will be flush and weather-tight. Ensure slip joints make full, tight contact and are weather-tight.

I. Reinforce components as required at anchorage and support points, at joints, and at attachment points for interfacing work.

J. Provide structural reinforcing within framing members where required to maintain rigidity and accommodate design loads.

K. System design and sealants to accommodate internal weep and drainage system not visible to the exterior.

L. Head and sill extrusions act as gutter and weep water to exterior; do not penetrate sections with fasteners.

M. Allow for adequate clearance around perimeter of system to enable proper installation and for thermal movement within system.

N. Separate dissimilar metals with protective coating or preformed separators to prevent contact and corrosion.

O. Provide framing members to rigidly glaze spandrel panels and column covers within framing system.

P. Transom framing over entrance doors: Provide filler blocks matching curtainwall finish at connection point of removable mullions.

Q. Provide special shapes and filler pieces with tight corners.

## 2.04 FINISHES

A. Clear or Color Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A31/A32/A34, AAMA 611, Architectural Class I Clear Anodic Coating.
   1. Color: Clear, Dark bronze, and Black anodized.
      a. Specific color is to be confirmed by the Architect during the submittal process.

B. Miscellaneous Steel Bracing (Concealed): One (1) shop coat of red oxide primer.

C. Source Quality Control: Representative samples of color anodized finish shall meet or exceed following tests: ASTM B224, thickness of coating; and ASTM B117, neutral salt spray.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Site Verification of Conditions: Verify substrate conditions (which have been previously installed under other sections) are acceptable for product installation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Verify openings are sized to receive curtain wall system and sill plate is level in accordance with manufacturer's acceptable tolerances.
   1. Field Measurements: Verify actual measurements/openings by field measurements before fabrication; show recorded measurements on shop drawings. Coordinate field measurements, fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid construction delays.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and applicable provisions of AAMA Aluminum Curtain Wall Design Guide Manual.

B. Align assemblies plumb and level, free of warp or twist, aligning with adjacent Work.

C. Tolerances:
   1. Limit variations from plumb and level:
      a. 1/8 inch in 20'-0" vertically and horizontally.
      b. 1/4 inch in 40'-0" either direction.
   2. Limit offsets in theoretical end-to-end and edge-to-edge alignment:
      a. 1/16 inch where surfaces are flush or less than 1/2 inch out of flush and separated by not more than 2 inches.
      b. 1/8 inch for surfaces separated by more than 2 inches.
   3. Step in face: 1/16 inch maximum.
   4. Jog in alignment: 1/16 inch maximum.
   5. Location: 1/4 inch maximum deviation of any member at any location.
   6. Tolerances are not accumulative.

D. Provide attachments and shims to permanently fasten system to building structure.

E. Anchor securely in place, allowing for required movement, including expansion and contraction.

F. Separate dissimilar materials at contract points, including metal in contact with masonry or concrete surfaces, with protective coating or preformed separators to prevent contact and electrolytic action.

G. Set sill members in bed of sealant. Set other members with internal sealants and baffles to provide weather-tight construction.

H. Water Drainage: Each light of glass shall be compartmentalized using joint plugs and silicone sealant to divert water to the horizontal weep locations. Weep holes shall be located in the horizontal pressure plates and covers to divert water to the exterior of the building.

I. Do not apply mullion covers until building is closed in, roofing is installed and no alkaline substances can be washed from building onto curtain wall system.

J. Ensure that dead-load from curtain wall system is not transferred to stone veneer.

K. Glazing:
   1. Install glazing gaskets and sealants in accordance with manufacturer's instructions without exception; including surface preparations. Refer to Division 08 - Section "Glazing" for additional requirements.
   2. Outside glazed and held in place with extruded aluminum pressure plates anchored to the mullion using Drill-Flex fasteners spaced no greater than 9" on center.

L. Curtain Wall Insulation and Firestopping:
   1. Install curtain wall insulation and firestopping specified in Division 07 Sections. Install firestopping in all locations as required by code.
   2. Install sound insulatio.

## 3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Field Quality-Control Testing: Perform the following test on mockups and representative areas of glazed aluminum curtain walls.
   1. Air Infiltration: ASTM E 783 at 1.5 times the rate specified for laboratory testing in "Performance Requirements" Article but not more than 0.09 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-airpressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.
      a. Mockups: Test mockups.
      b. Representative Areas: For each system type, perform a minimum of three tests in areas as directed by Architect.
      c. Failed Tests: Perform one additional test at location selected by Architect for each failed test.
   2. Water Penetration: ASTM E 1105 at a minimum uniform and cyclic static-air-pressure differential of 0.67 times the static-air-pressure differential specified for laboratory testing in "Performance Requirements" Article, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft., and shall not evidence water infiltration to the building interior; any water intrusion to the building interior is a test failure.
      a. Locations: Same areas as air infiltration tests.
      b. Failed Tests: Perform one additional test at location selected by Architect for each failed test.

C. Structural-Sealant Adhesion: Test structural sealant according to recommendations in ASTM C 1401, Destructive Test Method A, "Hand Pull Tab (Destructive)," Appendix X2.
   1. Test a minimum of five areas on each building facade as directed by Architect.
   2. Repair installation areas damaged by testing.

D. Glazed aluminum curtain walls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
   1. Submit reports for each inspection, describing problems observed and corrections made.

E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.

## 3.04 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

A. Protection: Protect installed product’s finish surfaces from damage during construction. Protect aluminum curtain wall system from damage from grinding and polishing compounds, plaster, lime, acid, cement, or other harmful contaminants.
   1. Clean materials that may damage finishes with prolonged exposure, from curtainwall surfaces immediately after spill.

B. Clean spills of sealants from framing as soon as section of framing is completed, or after completion of glass installation for the day, as applicable.

C. Repair or replace damaged installed products. Clean installed products in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions prior to owner’s acceptance. Remove construction debris from project site and legally dispose of debris.

D. Replace broken, scratched, chipped or other damaged glazing. Remove excessive sealant, mastic and other marks from adjacent surfaces, and wash with clean water. Cleaning of framing and glazing must be done in strict compliance with manufacturer's recommendations.

END OF SECTION 08 44 13

# SECTION 08 63 00 – INSULATED STRUCTURAL SKYLIGHT SYSTEM

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 DESCRIPTION

A. The specification covers the design, manufacture, and installation of the skylight system comprised of a two and three quarter inch (2-3/4") thick double faced, insulated, translucent fiberglass structural sandwich panel system. The sandwich panel skylight systems shall be permanently secured to an aluminum box beam superstructure. Field fabricated and/or glazed systems are not allowed.

B. Section includes:
   1. Insulated translucent skylight panels
   2. Structural aluminum box beam superstructure
   3. Flexible flashing

### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturers and Erector's Qualifications.
   1. Skylight system manufacturer must be listed by a recognized building code authority, including the International Conference of Building Officials (ICBO) which requires quality control inspections and fire, structural, and water infiltration testing by an approved agency for sandwich panel system. Panels used on this project must be included in ICBO listing.
   2. Quality control inspections and testing conducted at least once each year shall include manufacturing facilities, sandwich panel components and production sandwich panels for conformance with "Acceptance Criteria for Sandwich Panels" as regulated by the ICBO - ES.
   3. Materials and products shall be manufactured by a company continuously and regularly employed in the manufacture of specified materials for a period of at least fifteen (15) consecutive years. They must show evidence of these materials being satisfactorily used on at least ten (10) projects of similar size scope and type within such a period, and at least five (5) of the projects shall have been in successful use for ten (10) years or longer.
   4. Erection shall be by an installer which has been in the business of erecting specified materials for a least ten (10) consecutive years; and can show evidence of satisfactory completion of projects of similar size scope and type.

B. Performance Requirements: The manufacturer shall be responsible for the configuration and fabrication of the complete panel system.

### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit shop drawings, color samples, and system assembly in accordance with Division 1, Submittals.

B. Test reports to be furnished by a skylight system manufacturer in accordance with Division 1, Submittals. The manufacturer shall submit certified test reports made by an independent testing organization for each type and class of skylight system. Reports shall verify that the material will meet all performance requirements of this specification. Previously completed test reports will be acceptable if by current manufacturer and indicative of products used on this project. Test reports required are:
   1. Flame Spread and Smoke Development (ASTM E-84 by UL 723)
   2. Burn Extent (ASTM D-635)
   3. Color Difference (ASTM D-2244)
   4. Impact Strength (Free Falling Ball Method)
   5. Tensile Bond Strength (ASTM C-297 after aging by ASTM D-1037)
   6. Sheer Bond Strength (ASTM D-1002) after five (5) separate aging conditions
   7. Insulated "U" Factor (by NFRC-100; ASTM C-236, E-1423 and C-1199)
   8. National Fenestration Rating Council (NFRC) Certification
   9. Class A Roof Covering Burning Brand (ASTM E-108)
   10. Class A Built-up Roof Unit, UL Listed (UL 790)

C. ICBO Evaluation report for sandwich panels and proof of regular, independent quality control monitoring shall be submitted.

D. Current UL listing documenting that face sheets are manufactured by the translucent panel fabricator.

E. Design calculations and engineering must be by the translucent panel manufacturer and sealed by a registered professional engineer.

F. Complete energy and structural calculations and all above data must be submitted with any request to be included as an approved product to bid this section.

## 1.05 DESIGN

A. Description
   1. Size: Custom pyramids as shown on the Drawings.
   2. Eave Height: TBD
   3. Insulated sandwich panels – 2 ¾" thick double-faced fiberglass, insulated, translucent, structural sandwich panels with a 12" x 24" mechanically interlocking aluminum internal grid.

B. Box beam size shall be as required for design based upon following design criteria:
   1. Roof live load, on horizontal projected surface, minimum 20 PSF.
   2. Base wind load of 25 PSF factored per applicable Building Code.

## 1.06 PRODUCT HANDLING

A. Store skylight panels on the long edge, several inches above the ground, blocked, and under cover to prevent warping and in accordance with manufacturer’s storage and handling instructions.

B. Combustion type heaters must be properly vented to the exterior to prevent possible staining of panels.

# PART 2 - MATERIALS

## 2.01 BASIS OF DESIGN:

A. Structures Unlimited, Inc. as distributed by Read Architectural Products, L.L.C., 972-458-1414.

B. Other systems manufacturers may submit for approval in accordance section 01600.

## 2.02 SUPERSTRUCTURE

A. The superstructure shall be pre-fabricated of extruded aluminum allow 6005-T5 or 6061-T6 box beams. Ferrous metals shall not be allowed. All parts shall be pre-assembled at the factory, and knocked down for shipment.

B. All exposed aluminum to be architectural corrosion finish equal to ANSI/AAMA 2604 – color to be selected from manufacturer's full range.

C. Aluminum structural system design and calculations must be furnished in accordance with the Aluminum Association "Specifications for Aluminum Structures" and the 1996 BOCA Code. Design calculations must be prepared and stamped by a Licensed Professional Engineer.

## 2.03 TRANSLUCENT FACES

A. Translucent faces shall be U.L. listed and manufactured from glass fiber reinforced thermoset resins by the insulated skylight systems fabricator specifically for architectural use. Thermoplastic (e.g. polycarbonate or acrylic) are not acceptable.

B. Flammability - The interior face sheet shall be U.L. listed and have a flame spread rating no greater than 45 and smoke developed no greater than 350 when tested in accordance with UL 723 (ASTM E-84). Burn extent by ASTM D-635 shall be no greater than 1". Faces shall not deform, deflect, or drip when subjected to fire or flame; or delaminate when exposed to 300°F for 25 minutes.

C. Weatherability -
   1. The full thickness of the Kalwall exterior face shall not change color more than 3.0 Hunter or CIE Units (DELTA E by ASTM D-2244) after five (5) years outdoor South Florida weathering at 5° facing South. This shall be determined by the average of at least three (3) white samples with and without a protective film or coating to ensure maximum long-term color stability. Color stability shall be unaffected by abrasion or scratching. (Optional: Seven (7) units for Class A Roof System after 30 months exposure.)
   2. The exterior face shall have a permanent glass veil erosion barrier embedded integrally to provide maximum long-term resistance to reinforcing fiber exposure. Sacrificial plastic surface films overlays or coatings are not acceptable.

D. Appearance
   1. The faces shall be uniform in color to prevent splotchy appearance. Faces shall be completely free of ridges and wrinkles, which prevent proper surface contact in bonding to the aluminum grid core. Clusters of air bubbles and pinholes which collect moisture and dirt will not be acceptable.
   2. Exterior face sheets shall be smooth .070" thick and White in color. Interior face sheets shall be .045" thick and White in color. Faces shall not vary more than ± 10% in thickness and be uniform in color.

E. Strength - The exterior face sheet shall be uniform in strength and repel an impact equal to 60 (230) ft lbs. without fracture or tear when impacted by a 3 1/2" diameter, 6.37 lb. free falling ball, and be resistant to penetration by pencil point, or other small, sharp objects.

## 2.04 GRID CORE

A. Panels shall incorporate an aluminum l-beam grid core of 6063-T6 or 6005-T5 aluminum alloy with provisions for mechanical interlocking of muntin-mullion and perimeter to prevent high and low intersections which do not allow full bonding surface to contact with face material. Width of l-beam shall be no less than 7/16". Aluminum I-beam for the grid shall be machined to tolerances of not greater than ± .002".

B. Panels shall withstand 1200° F fire for minimum one (1) hour without collapse or exterior flaming.

## 2.05 ADHESIVE

A. The laminate adhesive shall be heat and pressure resin-type engineered for structural sandwich panel use with a minimum of 25 years field use. Adhesive shall pass testing requirements specified by the International Conference of Building Officials "Acceptance Criteria for Sandwich Panel Adhesive".

B. Minimum tensile strength shall be: 750 PSI by ASTM C-297 after two (2) exposures to six (6) cycles each of the aging conditions prescribed by ASTM D-1037.

C. Minimum shear strength by ASTM D-1002 after exposure to five separate aging conditions:
   1. 50% relative humidity at 73° F: 540 PSI
   2. 182° F: 100 PSI
   3. Accelerated aging by ASTM D-1037 at room temperature: 800 PSI
   4. Accelerated aging by ASTM D-1037 at 182° F: 250 PSI
   5. 500 Hour Oxygen Bomb by ASTM D-572: 1400 PSI

## 2.06 PANEL CONSTRUCTION

A. Skylight panels shall have a thickness of 2-3/4" with a:
   1. U factor ..10 by NFRC Certified Laboratory
   2. Light Transmission of 10%
   3. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient of .09
   4. Complete system shall be NFRC Certified

B. Skylight panels shall be a true sandwich panel of flat fiberglass sheets bonded to a grid core of mechanically interlocking aluminum l-beams. Panels shall be laminated under a controlled process of heat and pressure and deflect no more than 1.9" at 30 PSF in 10’ by ASTM E-72. Tape and bond systems are not allowed.

C. All grid patterns shall be nominal 12" x 24" Shoji and be symmetrical about the horizontal center line of each panel for flat panels.

D. The adhesive bonding line shall be straight, cover the entire width of the l-beam, and have a neat sharp edge. In order to insure bonding strength, white spots at intersections of muntins and mullions shall not exceed 4 for each 40 square feet of panel, nor shall they be more than 3/64" in width.

E. Skylight panels and aluminum perimeter frame shall be pre-assembled where practical and sealed at the factory. Panels shall be shipped to jobsite ready for erection as units (except for removable components).

## 2.07 BATTENS AND PERIMETER CLOSURE SYSTEMS

A. Closure System shall be extruded 6063-T6 and 6063-T5 aluminum clamp-tite screw type.

B. Aluminum closures to be supplied with 300 series stainless steel screws (excluding final fasteners to the building) and shall be factory sealed to the panels. Aluminum battens and cap plates shall be field installed.

C. All exposed aluminum to be architectural corrosion resistant finish which meets the performance requirements of AAMA 2604 with color to be selected from manufacturer’s standards).

D. Receiving channels for self-tapping stainless steel screws to be continuous the length of each member and extruded as part of the member. Threaded receiving channel shall not be acceptable.

## 2.08 FLEXIBLE SEALING TAPE

A. Sealing tape shall be manufacturer's standard pre-applied to closure system at the factory under controlled conditions.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 PREPARATION

A. The general contractor shall prepare openings including isolating dissimilar materials from aluminum system which may cause damage by electrolysis, and shall provide temporary enclosures if required.

B. The general contractor shall install a structural curb designed to withstand the thrust generated by the skylight.

## 3.02 ERECTION

A. The installer shall install translucent skylight system in strict accordance with approved shop drawings as supplied by manufacturer. Fastening and sealing shall be in strict accordance with manufacturer's shop drawings and installation instructions. All aluminum shall be cleaned before sealants are applied.

B. No finish work, such as painting, plastering, or interior trim items to be supplied or installed by the manufacturer.

C. After other trades have completed work on adjacent material carefully inspect translucent panel installation and make adjustments necessary to insure proper installation and weather-tight conditions.

D. All staging lifts and hoists required for the complete insulated panel unit system installation including staging etc. necessary for field measuring shall be provided by, set up and maintained by general contractor.

E. Clean translucent panels and aluminum frame. Remove labels and visible markings.

END OF SECTION 08 63 00

# SECTION 08 71 00 - DOOR HARDWARE

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Provide all finish hardware including door locks, lock cylinders, construction cores and final cores as required to complete all door work and other work described herein or on the drawings.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 6 Section “Rough Carpentry.”
   2. Division 8 Section “Aluminum Entrances.”
   3. Division 8 Section “Hollow Metal Doors.”
   4. Division 8 Section “Wood Doors.”

### 1.03 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Material delivered in manufacturer's unbroken containers, bearing on the outside, name, model number and mark identifying each container's installation location. Materials stored in dry storage space with no moisture or condensation present.

### 1.04 JOB CONDITIONS

A. Coordination: Contractor responsible for coordination of information between hardware door and frame manufacturer. Contractor shall advise each party of any changes during course of construction. Materials not properly coordinated replaced by Contractor at his expense.

### 1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit complete hardware schedule (identifying each item as to manufacturer and number), shop drawings and product data to Architect for review prior to ordering of materials. Include manufacturers cut-sheets on each item scheduled. Submit data on closers indicating compliance with barrier-free codes. Provide index summary sheet of all hardware to be used, cross-referenced to the cut sheets.

B. Furnish all necessary templates and schedules of hardware specified to door and frame manufacturers to installer. Submit actual samples of hardware if required for proper setting of cutouts or reinforcing.

C. Keying Schedule: After a keying meeting with the owner has taken place prepare a separate keying schedule detailing final instructions. Submit the keying schedule in electronic format. Include keying system explanation, door numbers, key set symbols, hardware set numbers and special instructions. Owner must approve submitted keying schedule prior to the ordering of permanent cylinders/cores.

D. Operating and Maintenance Manuals: Provide manufacturers operating and maintenance manuals for each item comprising the complete door hardware installation in quantity as required in Division 01, Closeout Procedures.

## 1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturers Qualifications: Engage qualified manufacturers with a minimum 5 years of documented experience in producing hardware and equipment similar to that indicated for this Project and that have a proven record of successful in-service performance.

B. Installer Qualifications: A minimum 3 years documented experience installing both standard and electrified door hardware similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

C. Door Hardware Supplier Qualifications: Experienced commercial door hardware distributors with a minimum 5 years documented experience supplying both mechanical and electromechanical hardware installations comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project. Supplier recognized as a factory direct distributor by the manufacturers of the primary materials with a warehousing facility in Project's vicinity. Supplier to have on staff a certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) available during the course of the Work to consult with Contractor, Architect, and Owner concerning both standard and electromechanical door hardware and keying.

D. Integrated Wiegand, Wireless, and IP-Enabled Access Control Products Supplier Qualifications: Integrated access control products and accessories are required to be supplied and installed through current members of the ASSA ABLOY "Authorized Channel Partner" (ACP) and "Certified Integrator" (CI) programs. Suppliers are to be factory trained, certified prior to project bid, and a direct purchaser of the specified product. Installers are to be factory trained, certified prior to project bid, and are responsible for commissioning, servicing, and warranting the installed equipment specified for the project.

E. Source Limitations: Obtain each type and variety of door hardware specified in this section from a single source unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Electrified modifications or enhancements made to a source manufacturer's product line by a secondary or third party source will not be accepted.
   2. Provide electromechanical door hardware from the same manufacturer as mechanical door hardware, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Each unit to bear third party permanent label demonstrating compliance with the referenced standards.

G. Keying Conference: Conduct conference to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Meetings." Keying conference to incorporate the following criteria into the final keying schedule document:
   1. Function of building, purpose of each area and degree of security required.
   2. Plans for existing and future key system expansion.
   3. Requirements for key control storage and software.
   4. Installation of permanent keys, cylinder cores and software.
   5. Address and requirements for delivery of keys.

H. All hardware items shall comply with ANSI Specifications, State of Texas Program for the Elimination of Architectural Barriers and the Americans with Disabilities Act.

I. All exterior locksets, latchsets and deadbolts shall be mortise style conforming to ANSI 156.13, Series 1000, Grade 2.

J. All interior locksets and latchsets and deadbolts shall be mortise style conforming to ANSI 156.2 Series 4000, Grade 1.

K. All doors required to be rated shall be installed with UL rated hardware UL label. 1. ANSI A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities.

L. ICC/IBC - International Building Code.

M. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.

N. NFPA 80 - Fire Doors and Windows.

O. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code.

P. NFPA 105 - Installation of Smoke Door Assemblies.

Q. State Building Codes, Local Amendments.

## 1.07 WARRANTY

A. General Warranty: Reference Division 01, General Requirements. Special warranties specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

B. Warranty Period: Written warranty, executed by manufacturer(s), agreeing to repair or replace components of standard and electrified door hardware that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period after final acceptance by the Owner. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
   1. Structural failures including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.
   2. Faulty operation of the hardware.
   3. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
   4. Electrical component defects and failures within the systems operation.

C. Standard Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Special Warranty Periods:
   1. Ten years for mortise locks and latches.
   2. Five years for exit hardware.
   3. Twenty five years for manual overhead door closer bodies.
   4. Five years for motorized electric latch retraction exit devices.
   5. Two years for electromechanical door hardware.
   6. Provide 5-year Warranty on Door Closers and Exit Devices.

## 1.08 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS

A. Hardware: Provide (1) extra closer and (1) extra exit device.

B. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 SCHEDULED DOOR HARDWARE

A. General: Provide door hardware for each door to comply with requirements in Door Hardware Sets and each referenced section that products are to be supplied under.

B. Designations: Requirements for quantity, item, size, finish or color, grade, function, and other distinctive qualities of each type of door hardware are indicated in the Door Hardware Sets at the end of Part 3. Products are identified by using door hardware designations, as follows:
   1. Named Manufacturer's Products: Product designation and manufacturer are listed for each door hardware type required for the purpose of establishing requirements. Manufacturers' names are abbreviated in the Door Hardware Schedule.

C. Substitutions: Requests for substitution and product approval for inclusive mechanical and electromechanical door hardware in compliance with the specifications must be submitted in writing and in accordance with the procedures and time frames outlined in Division 01, Substitution Procedures. Approval of requests is at the discretion of the architect, owner, and their designated consultants.aterials

## 2.02 MECHANICAL LOCKS AND LATCHING DEVICES

A. Mortise Locksets, Grade 1 (Heavy Duty): ANSI/BHMA A156.13, Series 1000, Operational Grade 1 certified. Locksets are to be manufactured with a corrosion resistant steel case and be field-reversible for handing without disassembly of the lock body.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Sargent Manufacturing (SA) – 8200 Series.
      b. No Substitution.

## 2.03 LOCK AND LATCH STRIKES

A. Strikes: Provide manufacturer's standard strike with strike box for each latch or lock bolt, with curved lip extended to protect frame, finished to match door hardware set, unless otherwise indicated, and as follows:
   1. Flat-Lip Strikes: For locks with three-piece antifriction latchbolts, as recommended by manufacturer.
   2. Extra-Long-Lip Strikes: For locks used on frames with applied wood casing trim.
   3. Aluminum-Frame Strike Box: Provide manufacturer's special strike box fabricated for aluminum framing.
   4. Double-lipped strikes: For locks at double acting doors. Furnish with retractable stop for rescue hardware applications.

B. Standards: Comply with the following:
   1. Strikes for Mortise Locks and Latches: BHMA A156.13.
   2. Strikes for Bored Locks and Latches: BHMA A156.2.
   3. Strikes for Auxiliary Deadlocks: BHMA A156.36.
   4. Dustproof Strikes: BHMA A156.16.

## 2.04 CYLINDERS AND KEYING

A. General: Cylinder manufacturer to have minimum (10) years experience designing secured master key systems and have on record a published security keying system policy.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Sargent Manufacturing (SA).
      b. No Substitution.

B. Cylinders: Original manufacturer cylinders complying with the following:
   1. Mortise Type: Threaded cylinders with rings and cams to suit hardware application.
   2. Rim Type: Cylinders with back plate, flat-type vertical or horizontal tailpiece, and raised trim ring.
   3. Bored-Lock Type: Cylinders with tailpieces to suit locks.
   4. Mortise and rim cylinder collars to be solid and recessed to allow the cylinder face to be flush and be free spinning with matching finishes.

5. Keyway:.Match Facility Standard.
6. At integrated access control locks and exits, permanent cores to be provided by 087100.

C. Permanent Cores: Manufacturer's standard; finish face to match lockset; complying with the following:
1. Interchangeable Cores: Core insert, removable by use of a special key; usable with other manufacturers' cylinders.

D. Keying System: Each type of lock and cylinders to be factory keyed.
1. Conduct specified "Keying Conference" to define and document keying system instructions and requirements.
2. Furnish factory cut, nickel-silver large bow permanently inscribed with a visual key control number as directed by Owner.
3. Existing System: Field verify and key locks to match Owner's existing system.

E. Key Quantity: Provide the following minimum number of keys:
1. Change Keys per Cylinder: Three (3).
2. Master Keys (per Master Key Level/Group): Five (5).
3. Construction Keys (where required): Ten (10).
4. Construction Control Keys (where required): Two (2).
5. Permanent Control Keys (where required): Two (2).

F. Construction Keying: Provide temporary keyed construction cores. Contractor is responsible for removing construction cores and installing permanent cores. Credit to be provided to the owner once the construction cores are removed.

G. Key Registration List (Bitting List):
1. Provide keying transcript list to Owner's representative in the proper format for importing into key control software.
2. Provide transcript list in writing or electronic file as directed by the Owner.

H. Key Control Cabinet: Provide a key control system including envelopes, labels, and tags with self-locking key clips, receipt forms, 3-way visible card index, temporary markers, permanent markers, and standard metal cabinet. Key control cabinet shall have expansion capacity of 150% of the number of locks required for the project.
1. Manufacturers:
   a. Lund Equipment (LU).
   b. MMF Industries (MM).
   c. Telkee (TK).

I. Key Control Software: Provide one network version of "Key Wizard" branded key management software package that includes one year of technical support and upgrades to software at no charge. Provide factory key system formatted for importing into “Key Wizard” software.

## 2.05 DOOR OPERATING TRIM

A. Door Push Plates and Pulls: ANSI/BHMA A156.6 certified door pushes and pulls of type and design specified in the Hardware Sets. Coordinate and provide proper width and height as required where conflicting hardware dictates.
1. Push/Pull Plates: Minimum .050 inch thick, size as indicated in hardware sets, with beveled edges, secured with exposed screws unless otherwise indicated.
2. Door Pull and Push Bar Design: Size, shape, and material as indicated in the hardware sets. Minimum clearance of 2 1/2-inches from face of door unless otherwise indicated.
3. Offset Pull Design: Size, shape, and material as indicated in the hardware sets. Minimum clearance of 2 1/2-inches from face of door and offset of 90 degrees unless otherwise indicated.

4. Fasteners: Provide manufacturer's designated fastener type as indicated in Hardware Sets.
5. Manufacturers:
    a. Rockwood Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (RO).

## 2.06 HANGING DEVICES

A. Hinges: ANSI/BHMA A156.1 certified butt hinges with number of hinge knuckles and other options as specified in the Door Hardware Sets.
1. Quantity: Provide the following hinge quantity:
    a. Two Hinges: For doors with heights up to 60 inches.
    b. Three Hinges: For doors with heights 61 to 90 inches.
    c. Four Hinges: For doors with heights 91 to 120 inches.
    d. For doors with heights more than 120 inches, provide 4 hinges, plus 1 hinge for every 30 inches of door height greater than 120 inches.
    e. Four hinges at 4’0” wide doors
    f. Four hinges at aluminum doors.

B. Hinge Size: Provide the following, unless otherwise indicated, with hinge widths sized for door thickness and clearances required:
1. Widths up to 3’0”: 4-1/2” standard or heavy weight as specified.
2. Sizes from 3’1” to 4’0”: 5” standard or heavy weight as specified.

C. Hinge Weight and Base Material: Unless otherwise indicated, provide the following:
1. Exterior Doors: Heavy weight, non-ferrous, ball bearing or oil impregnated bearing hinges unless Hardware Sets indicate standard weight.
2. Interior Doors: Standard weight, steel, ball bearing or oil impregnated bearing hinges unless Hardware Sets indicate heavy weight.

D. Hinge Options: Comply with the following:
1. Non-removable Pins: Provide set screw in hinge barrel that, when tightened into a groove in hinge pin, prevents removal of pin while door is closed; for the all out-swinging lockable doors.

E. Manufacturers:
1. McKinney Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (MK) - TA Series.

## 2.07 POWER TRANSFER DEVICES

A. Concealed Quick Connect Electric Power Transfers: Provide concealed wiring pathway housing mortised into the door and frame for low voltage electrified door hardware. Furnish with Molex™ standardized plug connectors and sufficient number of concealed wires (up to 12) to accommodate the electrified functions specified in the Door Hardware Sets. Connectors plug directly to through-door wiring harnesses for connection to electric locking devices and power supplies. Wire nut connections are not acceptable.
1. Manufacturers:
    a. Securitron (SU) - EL-CEPT Series.

B. Electric Door Wire Harnesses: Provide electric/data transfer wiring harnesses with standardized plug connectors to accommodate up to twelve (12) wires. Connectors plug directly to through-door wiring harnesses for connection to electric locking devices and power supplies. Provide sufficient number and type of concealed wires to accommodate electric function of specified hardware. Provide a connector for through-door electronic locking devices and from hinge to junction box above the opening. Wire nut connections are not acceptable. Determine the length required for each electrified hardware component for the door type, size and construction, minimum of two per electrified opening.
1. Provide one each of the following tools as part of the base bid contract:

a. McKinney Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (MK) - Electrical Connecting Kit: QC-R001.
b. McKinney Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (MK) - Connector Hand Tool: QC-R003.

2. Manufacturers:
a. McKinney Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (MK) – QC-C Series.

## 2.08 CONVENTIONAL EXIT DEVICES

A. General Requirements: All exit devices specified herein shall meet or exceed the following criteria:

1. At doors not requiring a fire rating, provide devices complying with NFPA 101 and listed and labeled for "Panic Hardware" according to UL305. Provide proper fasteners as required by manufacturer including sex nuts and bolts at openings specified in the Hardware Sets.
2. Where exit devices are required on fire rated doors, provide devices complying with NFPA 80 and with UL labeling indicating "Fire Exit Hardware". Provide devices with the proper fasteners for installation as tested and listed by UL. Consult manufacturer’s catalog and template book for specific requirements.
3. Except on fire rated doors, provide exit devices with hex key dogging device to hold the pushbar and latch in a retracted position. Provide optional keyed cylinder dogging on devices where specified in Hardware Sets.
4. Devices must fit flat against the door face with no gap that permits unauthorized dogging of the push bar. The addition of filler strips is required in any case where the door light extends behind the device as in a full glass configuration.
5. Energy Efficient Design: Provide lock bodies which have a holding current draw of 15mA maximum, and can operate on either 12 or 24 volts. Locks are to be field configurable for fail safe or fail secure operation.
6. Motorized Electric Latch Retraction: Devices with an electric latch retraction feature must use motors which have a maximum current draw of 600mA. Solenoid driven latch retraction is not acceptable.
7. Lever Operating Trim: Where exit devices require lever trim, furnish manufacturer's heavy duty escutcheon trim with threaded studs for thru-bolts.
   a. Lock Trim Design: As indicated in Hardware Sets, provide finishes and designs to match that of the specified locksets.
   b. Where function of exit device requires a cylinder, provide a cylinder (Rim or Mortise) as specified in Hardware Sets.
8. Vertical Rod Exit Devices: Where surface or concealed vertical rod exit devices are used at interior openings, provide as less bottom rod (LBR) unless otherwise indicated. Provide dust proof strikes where thermal pins are required to project into the floor.
9. Narrow Stile Applications: At doors constructed with narrow stiles, or as specified in Hardware Sets, provide devices designed for maximum 2” wide stiles.
10. Dummy Push Bar: Nonfunctioning push bar matching functional push bar.
11. Rail Sizing: Provide exit device rails factory sized for proper door width application.
12. Through Bolt Installation: For exit devices and trim as indicated in Door Hardware Sets.

B. Conventional Push Rail Exit Devices (Heavy Duty): ANSI/BHMA A156.3, Grade 1 certified panic and fire exit hardware devices furnished in the functions specified in the Hardware Sets. Exit device latch to be stainless steel, pullman type, with deadlock feature.

1. Manufacturers:
   a. Sargent Manufacturing (SA) - 80 Series.
   b. No Substitution.

C. Tube Steel Removable Mullions: ANSI/BHMA A156.3 removable steel mullions with malleable-iron top and bottom retainers and a primed paint finish.
   1. Provide keyed removable feature where specified in the Hardware Sets.
   2. Provide stabilizers and mounting brackets as required.
   3. Provide electrical quick connection wiring options as specified in the hardware sets.
   4. Manufacturers:
      a. Sargent Manufacturing (SA) - 980S Series.

## 2.09 DOOR CLOSERS

A. All door closers specified herein shall meet or exceed the following criteria:
   1. General: Door closers to be from one manufacturer, matching in design and style, with the same type door preparations and templates regardless of application or spring size. Closers to be non-handed with full sized covers including installation and adjusting information on inside of cover.
   2. Standards: Closers to comply with UL-10C for Positive Pressure Fire Test and be U.L. listed for use of fire rated doors.
   3. Cycle Testing: Provide closers which have surpassed 15 million cycles in a test witnessed and verified by UL.
   4. Size of Units: Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for sizing of door closers depending on size of door, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use. Where closers are indicated for doors required to be accessible to the physically handicapped, provide units complying with ANSI ICC/A117.1.
   5. Closer Arms: Provide heavy duty, forged steel closer arms unless otherwise indicated in Hardware Sets.
   6. Closers shall not be installed on exterior or corridor side of doors; where possible install closers on door for optimum aesthetics.
   7. Closer Accessories: Provide door closer accessories including custom templates, special mounting brackets, spacers and drop plates as required for proper installation. Provide through-bolt and security type fasteners as specified in the hardware sets.

B. Door Closers, Surface Mounted (Heavy Duty): ANSI/BHMA A156.4, Grade 1 surface mounted, heavy duty door closers with complete spring power adjustment, sizes 1 thru 6; and fully operational adjustable according to door size, frequency of use, and opening force. Closers to be rack and pinion type, one piece cast iron or aluminum alloy body construction, with adjustable backcheck and separate non-critical valves for closing sweep and latch speed control. Provide non-handed units standard.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Sargent Manufacturing (SA) - 351 Series.
      b. No Substitution.

## 2.10 ELECTROHYDRAULIC DOOR OPERATORS

A. General: Provide low energy operators of size recommended by manufacturer for door size, weight, and movement; for condition of exposure; and for compliance with UL 325. Coordinate operator mechanisms with door operation, hinges, and activation devices.
   1. Fire-Rated Doors: Provide door operators for fire-rated door assemblies that comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated door components and are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency.

B. Standard: Certified ANSI/BHMA A156.19.

C. Performance Requirements:
   1. Opening Force if Power Fails: Not more than 15 lbf required to release a latch if provided, not more than 30 lbf required to manually set door in motion, and not more than 15 lbf required to fully open door.

2. Entrapment Protection: Not more than 15 lbf required to prevent stopped door from closing or opening.

D. Configuration: Surface mounted or in-ground as required. Door operators to control single swinging and pair of swinging doors.

E. Operation: Power opening and spring closing operation capable of meeting ANSI A117.1 accessibility guideline. Provide time delay for door to remain open before initiating closing cycle as required by ANSI/BHMA A156.19. When not in automatic mode, door operator to function as manual door closer with fully adjustable opening and closing forces, with or without electrical power.

F. Features: Operator units to have full feature adjustments for door opening and closing force and speed, backcheck, motor assist acceleration from 0 to 30 seconds, time delay, vestibule interface delay, obstruction recycle, and hold open time from 0 up to 30 seconds.

G. Provide outputs and relays on board the operator to allow for coordination of exit device latch retraction, electric strikes, magnetic locks, card readers, safety and motion sensors and specified auxiliary contacts.

H. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard, fabricated from aluminum with nonferrous shims for aligning system components.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Norton Door Controls (NO) - 6000 Series.

## 2.11 ARCHITECTURAL TRIM

A. Door Protective Trim

1. General: Door protective trim units to be of type and design as specified below or in the Hardware Sets.
2. Size: Fabricate protection plates (kick, armor, or mop) not more than 2" less than door width (LDW) on stop side of single doors and 1” LDW on stop side of pairs of doors, and not more than 1" less than door width on pull side. Coordinate and provide proper width and height as required where conflicting hardware dictates. Height to be as specified in the Hardware Sets.
3. Where plates are applied to fire rated doors with the top of the plate more than 16” above the bottom of the door, provide plates complying with NFPA 80. Consult manufacturer’s catalog and template book for specific requirements for size and applications.
4. Protection Plates: ANSI/BHMA A156.6 certified protection plates (kick, armor, or mop), fabricated from the following:
   a. Stainless Steel: 300 grade, 050-inch thick.
5. Options and fasteners: Provide manufacturer's designated fastener type as specified in the Hardware Sets. Provide countersunk screw holes.
6. Manufacturers:
   a. Rockwood Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (RO).

## 2.12 DOOR STOPS AND HOLDERS

A. General: Door stops and holders to be of type and design as specified below or in the Hardware Sets.

B. Door Stops and Bumpers: ANSI/BHMA A156.16, Grade 1 certified door stops and wall bumpers. Provide wall bumpers, either convex or concave types with anchorage as indicated, unless floor or other types of door stops are specified in Hardware Sets. Do not mount floor stops where they will impede traffic. Where floor or wall bumpers are not appropriate, provide overhead type stops and holders.

1. Manufacturers:
    a. Rockwood Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (RO).

## 2.13 ARCHITECTURAL SEALS

A. General: Thresholds, weatherstripping, and gasket seals to be of type and design as specified below or in the Hardware Sets. Provide continuous weatherstrip gasketing on exterior doors and provide smoke, light, or sound gasketing on interior doors where indicated. At exterior applications provide non-corrosive fasteners and elsewhere where indicated.

B. Smoke Labeled Gasketing: Assemblies complying with NFPA 105 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for smoke control ratings indicated, based on testing according to UL 1784.
1. Provide smoke labeled perimeter gasketing at all smoke labeled openings.

C. Fire Labeled Gasketing: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to UL-10C.
1. Provide intumescent seals as indicated to meet UL10C Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies, and NPFA 252, Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.

D. Sound-Rated Gasketing: Assemblies that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency, for sound ratings indicated.

E. Replaceable Seal Strips: Provide only those units where resilient or flexible seal strips are easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by manufacturer.

F. Manufacturers:
1. Pemko Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (PE).

## 2.14 ELECTRONIC ACCESSORIES

A. Door Position Switches: Door position magnetic reed contact switches specifically designed for use in commercial door applications. On recessed models the contact and magnetic housing snap-lock into a 1" diameter hole. Surface mounted models include wide gap distance design complete with armored flex cabling. Provide SPDT, N/O switches with optional Rare Earth Magnet installation on steel doors with flush top channels.
1. Manufacturers:
    a. Securitron (SU) - DPS Series.

B. Switching Power Supplies: Provide power supplies with either single or dual voltage configurations at 12 or 24VDC. Power supplies shall have battery backup function with an integrated battery charging circuit and shall provide capability for power distribution, direct lock control and Fire Alarm Interface (FAI) through add on modules. Power supplies shall be expandable up to 16 individually protected outputs. Output modules shall provide individually protected, continuous outputs and/or individually protected, relay controlled outputs.
1. Manufacturers:
    a. Securitron (SU) - AQD Series.

## 2.15 FABRICATION

A. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates generally prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws according to manufacturers recognized installation standards for application intended.

## 2.16 FINISHES

A. Standard: Designations used in the Hardware Sets and elsewhere indicate hardware finishes complying with ANSI/BHMA A156.18, including coordination with traditional U.S. finishes indicated by certain manufacturers for their products.

B. Provide quality of finish, including thickness of plating or coating (if any), composition, hardness, and other qualities complying with manufacturer's standards, but in no case less than specified by referenced standards for the applicable units of hardware

C. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine scheduled openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Notify architect of any discrepancies or conflicts between the door schedule, door types, drawings and scheduled hardware. Proceed only after such discrepancies or conflicts have been resolved in writing.

## 3.02 PREPARATION

A. Hollow Metal Doors and Frames: Comply with ANSI/DHI A115 series.

B. Wood Doors: Comply with ANSI/DHI A115-W series.

C. Install each item of mechanical and electromechanical hardware and access control equipment to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and according to specifications.

1. Installers are to be trained and certified by the manufacturer on the proper installation and adjustment of fire, life safety, and security products including: hanging devices; locking devices; closing devices; and seals.
2. All quick connection below the ceiling to be made by hardware installer at the time of installation.

D. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights indicated in following applicable publications, unless specifically indicated or required to comply with governing regulations:

1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: DHI's "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
2. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.3, "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."
3. Where indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with ANSI A117.1 "Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities."
4. Provide blocking in drywall partitions where wall stops or other wall mounted hardware is located.

E. Retrofitting: Install door hardware to comply with manufacturer's published templates and written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work specified in Division 9 Sections. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.

F. Thresholds: Set thresholds for exterior and acoustical doors in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

G. Storage: Provide a secure lock up for hardware delivered to the project but not yet installed. Control the handling and installation of hardware items so that the completion of the work will not be delayed by hardware losses before and after installation.

## 3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field Inspection (Punch-Out Report): Reference Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures". Final inspect installed door hardware and state in report whether work complies with or deviates from specification requirements, including whether door hardware is properly installed, operating and adjusted.

## 3.04 ADJUSTING

A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.

## 3.05 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Protect all hardware stored on construction site in a covered and dry place. Protect exposed hardware installed on doors during the construction phase. Install any and all hardware at the latest possible time frame.

B. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.

C. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper finish. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of owner occupancy.

## 3.06 DEMONSTRATION

A. Instruct Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain mechanical and electromechanical door hardware.

## 3.07 DOOR HARDWARE SETS

A. The hardware sets represent the design intent and direction of the owner and architect. They are a guideline only and should not be considered a detailed hardware schedule. Discrepancies, conflicting hardware and missing items should be brought to the attention of the architect with corrections made prior to the bidding process. Omitted items not included in a hardware set should be scheduled with the appropriate additional hardware required for proper application and functionality.
   1. Quantities listed are for each pair of doors, or for each single door.
   2. The supplier is responsible for handing and sizing all products.
   3. Where multiple options for a piece of hardware are given in a single line item, the supplier shall provide the appropriate selection for the material and application.
   4. At existing openings with new hardware the supplier shall field inspect existing conditions prior to the submittal stage to verify the specified hardware will work as required. Provide alternate solutions and proposals as needed.

B. Manufacturer’s Abbreviations:
   1. MK - McKinney
   2. SA - SARGENT
   3. RO - Rockwood
   4. NO - Norton
   5. PE - Pemko
   6. OT - Other

7. SU - Securitron

## HARDWARE SETS

C. Timberwood

1. Set 1.0; Doors 001A, 001D, 102B, 131C; Exterior Alum Pair – NL x DT

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 8 | Hinge (heavy weight) | T4A3386 NRP 4 1/2" x 4 1/2" | US32D | MK |
| 1 | Removable Mullion | L980S | US28 | SA |
| 1 | Rim Exit Device, Storeroom | 16 TB 43 72 8804 862 | US32D | SA |
| 1 | Rim Exit Device, Dummy | 16 TB 43 72 8810 862 | US32D | SA |
| 1 | Mullion Cylinder | 72 980C1 | US26D | SA |
| 4 | Small Format Inter Core | 7P-7300B | US15 | SA |
| 2 | Surface Closer | TB 351 CPS brkt/spacer as req | EN | SA |
| 2 | Drop Plate | 351D as required | EN | SA |
| 2 | Kit | 581-2 | EN | SA |
| 1 | Lip Threshold | 2005AT | | PE |
| 1 | Perimeter Seal | By door mfgr | | OT |
| 1 | Rain Guard | 346C | | PE |
| 2 | Sweep | 3452AV | | PE |
| 2 | Position Switch | DPS-M-BK | | SU |

2. Set 2.1; Door 128,129,129B; Classroom Occupied – Closer – AFB

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 6 | Hinge, Full Mortise | TA2714 | US26D | MK |
| 1 | Dust Proof Strike | 570 | US26D | RO |
| 1 | Flush Bolt | 2842 / 2942 | US26D | RO |
| 1 | Classroom Lock | 72 8237 LNJ | US26D | SA |
| 1 | Small Format Inter Core | 7P-7300B | US15 | SA |
| 1 | Coordinator | 2672 | US28 | RO |
| 2 | Mounting Bracket | 2601AB | US28 | RO |
| 2 | Door Closer | TB 351 O / PS as req | EN | SA |
| 2 | Door Stop | 406 / 481 as req | US26D | RO |
| 1 | Perimeter Seal | S88BL | | PE |
| 2 | Astragal Set (2) | 18041CNB | | PE |

3. Set 3.0; Door 101A, 101B, 130A, 131A, 131B; Pair – Corr/Gym/Classroom

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 6 | Hinge (heavy weight) | T4A3786 4 1/2" x 4 1/2" | US26D | MK |
| 1 | Removable Mullion | L980S | PC | SA |
| 2 | Rim Exit Device, Classroom | 16 TB 43 72 8813 ETJ | US32D | SA |
| 1 | Mullion Cylinder | 72 980C1 | US26D | SA |
| 5 | Small Format Inter Core | 7P-7300B | US15 | SA |
| 2 | Surface Closer | TB 351 CPS brkt/spacer as req | EN | SA |
| 1 | Perimeter Seal | S88BL | | PE |
| 1 | Astragal Set (2) | 18041CNB | | PE |

4. Set 4.0; Door 001B,001C; Pair – Corr/Gym/Classroom – MHO

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 6 | Hinge (heavy weight) | T4A3786 4 1/2" x 4 1/2" | US26D | MK |
| 1 | Removable Mullion | L980S | PC | SA |
| 2 | Rim Exit Device, Classroom | 16 TB 43 72 8813 ETJ | US32D | SA |
| 1 | Mullion Cylinder | 72 980C1 | US26D | SA |
| 5 | Small Format Inter Core | 7P-7300B | US15 | SA |
| 2 | Surface Closer | TB 351 CPS brkt/spacer as req | EN | SA |
| 2 | Electromagnetic Holder | 990 Series | 689 | RF |
| 1 | Perimeter Seal | S88BL | | PE |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | Astragal Set (2) | 18041CNB | PE |

Notes: Doors are held open. Upon loss of power or signal from fire control, doors will close and latch. Wiring is by others.

5. Set 7.0; Doors 130B, 403A, 403B, 403C, 403D, 403E, 404A, 628A, 628B, 628C, 825B; Classroom – Closer

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3 | Hinge, Full Mortise | TA2714 4 1/2" x 4 1/2" | US26D | MK |
| 1 | Classroom Lock | 72 8237 LNJ | US26D | SA |
| 1 | Permanent Core | 7P-7300B | US15 | SA |
| 1 | Door Closer | TB 351 O / PS as req | EB | SA |
| 1 | Door Stop | 406 / 481 as req | US26D | RO |
| 3 | Silencer | 608 | | RO |

6. Set 8.0; Door 403F, 403G, 404B; Rated – Classroom

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 3 | Hinge, Full Mortise | TA2714 4 1/2" x 4 1/2" | US26D | MK |
| 1 | Rim Exit Device, Classroom | 12 TB 72 8813 ETJ | US32D | SA |
| 1 | Permanent Core | 7P-7300B | US15 | SA |
| 1 | Door Closer | TB 351 O / PS as req | EB | SA |
| 1 | Door Stop | 406 / 481 as req | US26D | RO |
| 1 | Perimeter Seal | S88BL | | PE |

7. Set 8.0; Door 130C – Overhead Coiling Door

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | 1 each | Rim Cylinder |

All other hardware furnished by overhead door supplier

END OF SECTION 08 71 00

# SECTION 08 80 00 - GLAZING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Provide all glass and glazing as shown on the drawings and as herein specified.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 5 Section “Metal Fabrications.”
   2. Division 8, All “Door” and “Window” Sections.
   3. Division 8 Section “Aluminum Entrances and Storefront.”
   4. Division 8 Section “Aluminum Curtain Wall”.

### 1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.

B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.

C. Interspace: Space between lites of any insulating glass unit that contains dehydrated air or a specified gas.

D. Deterioration of Coated Glass: Defects developed from normal use that are attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer’s written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking and other indications of deterioration in metallic coating.

E. Deterioration of Insulating Glass: Failure of the hermetic seal under normal use that is attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer’s written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.

F. Deterioration of Laminated Glass: Defects developed from normal use that are attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer’s written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination material obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standards.

### 1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
   1. For sealants, indicating VOC content.

B. Shop Drawings:
   1. Review curtain wall and window shop drawings and submit acceptance of details as suitable for proposed glass products.

C. Submit 12-inch square samples of each type of glass indicated except for clear monolithic glass products, and 12-inch long samples of each color required (except black) for each type of sealant or gasket exposed to view.

## 1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS:

A. Product Certificates: Certificate of Compliance for all glass products.
   1. Insulating Glass Certification: Submit data verifying compliance with IGCC, Class A level.

B. Compatibility and adhesion test reports from sealant manufacturer indicating that glazing materials were tested for compatibility and adhesion with glazing sealants and other glazing materials.
   1. For glazing sealants, provide test reports based on testing current sealant formulations within previous 36-month period.

C. Wind Pressure and Thermal Stress Analysis: Submit thermal stress analysis of glass where thermal stress may occur.

D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.
   1. Refer to Division 01 for field-testing requirements.

## 1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications:
   1. Manufacturer Qualifications for Insulating-Glass Units with Sputter-Coated, Low-E Coatings: A qualified insulating-glass manufacturer who is approved by coated-glass manufacturer.
      a. Glass fabricator to have 10 years of experience and meet ANSI / ASQC Q9002 1994.
   2. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

B. Coordination: Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.

C. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of the inspecting and testing agency, Insulating Glass Certification Council.

D. Energy Code Compliance: Coordinate all exterior glazing with applicable framing systems to assure compliance with current applicable energy codes before product submittals. If revisions to specified products are required coordinate revised products with the architect and owner.

E. Installation Criteria: FGJA "Glazing Manual", in addition to any other referenced standards.

F. Single Source fabrication responsibility: Fabrication processes, including Low E and reflective coatings, insulating, laminating, silkscreen, and tempering, shall be fabricated by a single Fabricator.

G. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer’s written instructions and as needed to prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun or other causes.

## 1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by the glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost condensation, or other causes.
   1. Do not install liquid glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing sealant manufacturer or below 40 deg F.

## 1.08 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.
   1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Warranty for Insulating Units: Manufacturer agrees to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of laminated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include defective or failure of seal, edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass as result of dust collection or film formation between panels or other similar failure, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.
   1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
   2. Reflective glass whose reflective coating cracks, peels or discolors shall be replaced at no charge (material only) for minimum ten (10) year period beginning on date of Manufacture.

C. .Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Heat-Soaked Tempered Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace heat-soaked tempered glass units that spontaneously break due to nickel sulfide (NiS) inclusions at a rate exceeding 0.3 percent (3/1000) within specified warranty period. Coverage for any other cause is excluded.
   1. Warranty Period: **Five** years from date of Substantial Completion.

D. Warranty covers deterioration due to normal conditions of use and not to handling, installing, and cleaning practices contrary to the glass manufacturer’s published instructions.

E. Glazing installer shall coordinate glass and glazing installation with framing systems, and install glass and glazing in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, so that guarantee is maintained.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Provide glazing systems capable of withstanding normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, and installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.

B. Glass Design: Provide glass lites in the thickness and strengths (annealed or heat-treated) to meet or exceed the following criteria based on analysis of Project loads and in-service conditions. Glass thicknesses indicated are minimums and are for detailing only. Confirm glass thicknesses by analyzing Project loads and in-service conditions. Provide glass lites for various size openings in nominal thicknesses indicated, but not less than thicknesses complying with ASTM E1300 and in strengths (annealed or heat treated) required to meet or exceed the following criteria:

1. Specified Design Wind Loads: Determine design wind loads applicable to Project from basic wind speed indicated in miles per hour at 33 feet above grade, according to ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures": Section 6.4.2, "Analytic Procedure," based on mean roof heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
2. Minimum glass thickness of lites composed of annealed or heat-treated glass are selected so the worst-case probability of failure does not exceed the following:
    a. Eight (8) lites per 1000 for lites set vertically or not over 15 degrees off vertical and under wind action.
    b. One (1) lite per 1000 for lites set over 15 degrees off vertical and under action of wind or snow.
    c. Specified Design Wind Loads: As indicated on the Structural Drawings
    d. Specified Design Snow Loads: As indicated on the Structural Drawings, but not less than snow loads applicable to Project, required by ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures": Section 7, "Snow Loads.
    e. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: Not less than 6mm
    f. Thickness of Tinted and Heat-Absorbing glass: Provide the same thickness of each tint color indicated throughout Project.
3. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For the following types of glass supported on all four edges, provide thickness required that limits center deflection at design wind pressure to 1/50 times the short side length or 1 inch, whichever is less.
    a. For monolithic-glass lites heat treated to resist wind loads.
    b. For insulating glass.
    c. For laminated-glass lites.

C. Thermal Movements: Provide glazing that allows for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures acting on glass framing members and glazing components. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
    1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F , ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

D. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
    1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 1/4" thick.
    2. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
    3. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
    4. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 100 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg .
    5. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 200 and based on LBNL WINDOW 6 computer program.
    6. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 300.
    7. Solar Optical Properties: NFRC 300.

E. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II, or Category IV Risk Factor as indicated in glass schedule.
    1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide safety glass permanently marked with certification label of Safety Glazing Certification Council (SGCC) or other certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.

F. Insulating glass products are to be permanently marked either on spacers or at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of inspecting and testing agency indicated below:
    1. Insulating Glass Certification Council (IGCC).

## 2.02 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.

B. Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, except where more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this section or in referenced standards.
   1. GANA (Glss Association of North America) Publications
      a. GANA Glazing Manual
      b. Laminated Glazing Reference Manual
      c. Tempering Division - Engineering Standards Manual
   2. AAMA (American Architectural Manufacturers Association) Publications: AAMA GDSG-1, “Glass Design for Sloped Glazing,” and AAMA TIR A7, “Sloped Glazing Guidelines.”
   3. IGMA (Insulating Glass Manufacturers Association) Publication for Sloped Glazing: IGMA TB-3001, “Guidelines for Sloped Glazing.”
   4. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, “North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use.”
   5. Consumer Product Safety Standard 16 CFR 1201, Category II
   6. LSGA (Laminators Safety Glass Association Inc.) Publications.
   7. Federal Spec. MIL-P-46144, Polycarbonate Sheet

C. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass that complies with performance requirements and is not less than the thickness indicated.
   1. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: 1/4".
   2. Thickness of Tinted Glass: Provide same thickness for each tint color indicated throughout Project.

D. Strength: Where annealed float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, heat-strengthened float glass, or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with “Performance Requirements” Article. Where heat-strengthened float glass is indicated, provide heat-strengthened float glass or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with “Performance Requirements” Article. Where fully tempered float glass is indicated, provide fully tempered float glass.

## 2.03 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis of Design Products: Basis of Design products are indicated in the Glass Schedule later in this section. Provide Basis of Design products, or equal products as approved by Architect.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with Requirements, Manufacturers offering products acceptable for use on this project include the following:
   1. AGC Glass North America.
   2. Guardian Glass.
   3. NSG Pilkington North America.
   4. Saint-Gobain.
   5. Vitro Architectural Glass (Formerly PPG Ideascapes).

C. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each product and installation method.

D. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: For each product and installation method, obtain from single source from single manufacturer.

E. Fabricators for Specialty Glass and Specialty Glass Units: As specified with individual glass type descriptions.

## 2.04 GLASS PRODUCTS

A. Heat-strengthened float glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind HS (heat-strengthened glass), Type I, Quality-Q3.
   1. Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated.
   2. Condition A (uncoated), unless otherwise indicated.

B. Fully tempered float glass: ASTM C 1048. Kind fully tempered (FT), Quality-Q3.
   1. Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated.
   2. Condition A (uncoated), unless otherwise indicated.

C. Reflective- and Low-E-Coated Vision Glass: ASTM C1376.

## 2.05 INSULATED GLASS

A. Insulating-Glass Units (IGU): Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E 2190, and complying with other requirements specified.
   1. ASTM E773 Seal Durability of Sealed Insulating Glass Units
   2. ASTM E774 Sealed Insulating Glass Units
   3. Sealed insulating glass units to be double sealed with a primary seal of black (or gray) polyisobutylene and a secondary seal of black (or gray) silicone.
   4. Lites shall be separated by a spacer with 3 bent corners and 1 keyed- soldered corner, or 4 bent corners and a straight butyl injected zinc plated steel straight key joint, to provide a hermetically sealed and dehydrated air space.
      a. Aluminum Spacer Finish: Mill Finish, Clear Anodic Finish, or Color Anodic Finish: Black.
   5. Units shall be certified for compliance with seal classification "CBA" by the Insulating Glass Certification Council (IGCC) and tested in accordance with the above ASTM Test Methods.
   6. Tinted glass units heat strengthened as recommended by manufacturer to protect against breakage due to thermal stress.

## 2.06 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

A. General: Select glazing sealants, tapes, gaskets and other glazing materials of proven compatibility with other materials they will contact, including glass products, seals of insulating glass units and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of installation and service, as demonstrated by testing and field experience.

B. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.

C. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.

D. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).

E. Perimeter Insulation for Fire-Resistive Glazing: Product that is approved by testing agency that listed and labeled fire-resistant glazing product with which it is used for application and fire-protection rating indicated.

## 2.07 SAFETY FILM

A. General Requirements: Clear Safety and Security window film mounted on glass substrates, to provide protection against safety and blast mitigation. Provide size matching glazing units (field verify) as indicated in drawings.
   1. Source Limitations: Provide film of one type by a single manufacture throughout projection for consistent appearance.
   2. Safety Film: Clear safety and Security glazing film, permanently adhered, commercial quality 3M Safety and Security Window Film S70, or approved equal by another manufacture.

## 2.08 GLAZING SEALANTS

A. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers, General: Types shall be as recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer, and as specified in other Sections.
   1. Structural Glazing Sealants: ASTM C1184, and as recommended by glazing system Manufacturer.
   2. In event of conflicts, the most restrictive requirements acceptable to glazing system Manufacturers shall prevail.

B. Sealant: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
   1. Structural Sealant: Capable of withstanding tensile and shear stresses imposed by structural-sealant-glazed curtain walls without failing adhesively or cohesively. When tested for preconstruction adhesion and compatibility, cohesive failure of sealant shall occur before adhesive failure. ASTM C1184, and as recommended by glazing system Manufacturer.
   2. Adhesive failure occurs when sealant pulls away from substrate cleanly, leaving no sealant material behind.
   3. Cohesive failure occurs when sealant breaks or tears within itself but does not separate from each substrate because sealant-to-substrate bond strength exceeds sealant's internal strength.

C. Compatibility: Compatible with one another and with other materials they contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

D. Single-Component, Nonsag, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, for Use NT; SWRI validation.
   1. Basis of Design Product: Dow Corning Corporation, 795 Silicone Building Sealant.
   2. Application: Typical glazing application, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Single-Component, Nonsag, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, for Use, G, and A; ASTM C1184; SWRI validation.
   1. Basis of Design Product: Dow Corning Corporation, 995 Silicone Structural Sealant.
   2. Application: Structural Glazing Sealant.

F. Single-Component, Nonsag, Acid-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT, G, and A.
   1. Basis of Design Product: Dow Corning Corporation, 999-A Silicone Building & Glazing Sealant.
   2. Application: Wind-Impact-Resistant Glazing.

## 2.09 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of

product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.

1. Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
2. Temperature Change: 180 deg F, material surfaces.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Carefully inspect and verify all job site conditions and measurements. Field verify all existing conditions and dimensions which receive glazing.

B. Examine areas and conditions under which Work is to be performed and identify conditions detrimental to proper or timely completion.
   1. Verify prepared openings for glazing are correctly sized and within tolerance.
   2. Verify that a functioning weep system is present.
   3. Verify that the minimum required face and edge clearances are being followed.
   4. Verify effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
   5. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.
   6. Verify glazing channels are free of burrs, irregularities, and debris.
   7. Verify glass is free of edge damage or face imperfections.
   8. Inspect door and frames to determine that frames, sash, and stops are set true and straight. Sash rabbets and stops shall be clean and dry at time of glazing.

C. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Beginning installation constitutes acceptance of substrate / conditions.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

A. Provide glass manufacturer's recommended edge clearances when sizing glass.

B. Remove protective coatings from surfaces to be glazed.

C. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrates indicated under the project conditions.
   1. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing.
   2. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
   3. Clean glass and glazing surfaces to remove dust, oil, and contaminants, and wipe dry.

D. Verify measurements of sash and openings at Project.
   1. Dimensions shown or indicated are given only as a guide for estimating purposes, and actual size shall be determined by measurement of the actual openings. Accurately cut glass to fit openings with proper clearances and setting block height.

E. Coordinate with and check Shop Drawings furnished by other suppliers of Work affecting this Section to avoid field installation problems.

F. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.

G. Before glazing metal sash, remove oil, lacquer, or other material to which the compound will not readily adhere or which will tend to delaminate from metal and cause a leak through the glazing seal.

## 3.03 GLAZING

A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in "GANA Glazing Manual" and in other referenced glazing publications.

B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance,

C. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.

D. Glazing to fit line in rabbet with all edges straight and true. Size substantially as shown on the drawings, however Contractor shall fill sash and openings as actually constructed whether more or less than sizes given.

E. Material installed in a full bed of sealant, tooling finished surfaces smooth.

## 3.04 GLAZING INSTALLATION

A. General:
   1. Comply with glass fabricator’s recommendations.
   2. Install in accordance with glass and frame manufacturer's instructions.
   3. Install plumb, level, square, true to line, and without warp or rack Provide all fasteners required for installation.
   4. Except where curtain wall, window, entrance or glass manufacturer recommends otherwise, comply with Flat Glass Marketing Association (FGMA) Sealant Manual and FGMA Glazing Manual.
   5. Material installed in a full bed of sealant, tooling finished surfaces smooth.
   6. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
   7. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
   8. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.

B. Glazing to fit line in rabbet with all edges straight and true. Size substantially as shown on the drawings, however Contractor shall fill sash and openings as actually constructed whether more or less than sizes given.

C. Do not apply glazing materials at temperatures below manufacturer's recommendations or to damp or frosted surfaces. Apply glazing material according to the manufacturer's instructions using proper primers as required.

D. Set glass using neoprene setting blocks and spacers to insure proper edge clearance and uniform beads of compound. Clearances shall conform to FGMA Glazing Manual requirements. Center glass in glazing rabbets.

E. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches.
   1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
   2. Provide 1/8-inch- minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.

F. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.

G. Check openings to confirm proper clearance at perimeters and between glass and stops.
   1. Clean surfaces of rabbet (including stops) and surface of glass which will come into contact with sealant. Use solvents and methods which insure clean, dry surfaces without film or foreign material when sealant is placed.

H. Remove and replace glazing beads carefully to avoid marking or defacing any portion of frame, sash, or fastenings.
   1. Set glass in full bed of glazing tape or sealant. Clean glazing material after stops are installed. Clean excess compound, etc. from glass after setting in conformance with glass manufacturer's recommendations.
   2. If recommended prime surfaces prior to glazing.

I. Set glass with reams (waves) running horizontally. Set glass with factory attached labels in place.

J. Setting Blocks: Place setting blocks at locations recommended by glass manufacturer, generally between 1/4 points and 6 inches from corner, except at glazed doors.
   1. At glazed doors, provide one block at sill, located 3 inches up from edge of glass at hinge side; one block at hinge side jamb, located 3 inches up from lower edge of glass; one block at head, located 3 inches from edge of glass at latch side of door; and, one block at jamb at lock side of door, located 3 inches down from edge of glass at top corner.
   2. Use blocks of length required to properly support glass. Offset approximately 1 inch from shims.

K. Glass Installation in Steel (Hollow Metal) Frames:
   1. Glaze frames using pre-shimmed tape on both sides. Firmly glaze in place with joints sealed, free of rattles.
   2. Set glass on setting blocks with a full bed of sealant or glazing tape.

L. Glass Installation in Aluminum Frames:
   1. Glaze aluminum frames using preformed EPDM elastomeric glazing extrusion separately or in combination with sealant and pre-shimmed glazing tape in compliance with aluminum frame supplier's recommendations.
   2. Set glass on setting blocks as recommended by manufacturer.
   3. Apply tape and/or sealant to produce uniform sight line even with frame.
   4. Set glass in gaskets with corners sealed.

M. Glazing Sealant: Along entire bottom edge of light, and up at least 6 inches at each jamb, gun in continuous full bed of sealant to fill voids.
   1. Fill entire space, full width of pane, full depth of glass, with sufficient sealant to form heel along inside face and edge of glass.
   2. At other edges (top and sides) gun in continuous heel bead of sealant along edges of glass perimeter to set stop against and into, acting as fill between glass and stop.
   3. Immediately after setting glass, at entire perimeter of glass, gun in sealant between stop and glass so space above spacer is completely filled, without voids.
   4. Place sealant flush with daylight edge of stops, with slight watershed at exterior. Provide straight, smooth surface meeting at opening corners with sharp intersection.
   5. Leave no sealant on exposed surfaces of stops and glass.

N. Structural Sealants: Apply structural sealant carefully in uniform thickness pushing bead ahead of nozzle and making sure that entire cavity is filled. Air pockets or voids along edges are not acceptable.
   1. Tool joint immediately after application.

2. Tool neatly, forcing sealant into contact with joint sides, eliminating internal voids and insuring good substrate contact.
3. Do not tool with soap or detergent solutions.

O. Wedge-Shaped Gaskets (Where wedge-shaped gaskets are indicated):
1. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
2. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

## 3.05 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.

B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.

C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

## 3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Correct deficiencies in or remove and replace components that inspections and test reports indicate do not comply with specified requirements.

B. Water / Hose Testing: Refer to Division 01 requirements.
1. In event of failed testing, additional testing will be performed, at Contractor's expense, to determine compliance of corrected Work with specified requirements.

## 3.07 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Immediately after installation remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
1. Clean excess sealant or compound from glass and framing members immediately after application, using solvents or cleaners recommended by manufacturers.

B. Glazing shall be protected from damage, and from contact with contaminating or harmful substances, during construction. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.
1. If, despite protection measures, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.
2. Contractor shall assume all responsibility for breakage and shall replace cracked, broken, scratched or otherwise defective glazing.

C. Glazing shall be carefully cleaned at time of final acceptance, removing all non-permanent labels, excess sealant, paint and other foreign substances. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

# PART 4 - GLASS SCHEDULE

## 4.01 MONOLITHIC GLASS SCHEDULE

A. Clear Glass MG1: Fully tempered float glass per ASTM C 1036, Type I (transparent glass, flat), Class 1 (clear), Quality Q3 (glazing select), and heat-treated to comply with ASTM C 1048, Kind FT (fully tempered).
   1. Minimum Thickness: 1/4".
   2. Application: Where Safety glazing as required by code and as shown on the drawings at Hollow Metal Frame Windows.

B. Ultraclear Glass Type MG2: Fully tempered float glass.
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: Vitro Solarban Acuity low-Iron Series.
   2. Minimum Thickness: 1/4"
   3. Application: Where Safety glazing required by code and as shown on the drawings.

C. Fire Glass Type MG3: 3/16" ceramic fire glazing, with up to 60 minute fire rating.
   1. Basis of Design Product: TGP Firelite.
   2. Positive Pressure Test: UL 10C; pass.
   3. Fire rating tested in accordance with ASTM E2010-01, UL 9 and UL 10B.
   4. STC Rating: 35 dB.
   5. Surface Finish: Standard

## 4.02 INSULATING GLASS SCHEDULE

**A.** Low-E-Coated, Clear Insulating Vision Glass Type IG1
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: Guardian SunGuard 51/23
   2. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm)
   3. Outdoor Lite: 1/4" Clear Fully Tempered
   4. Interspace Content: 1/2" Hermetically sealed dehydrated air space
   5. Indoor Lite: 1/4" Clear Fully Tempered float glass.
   6. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on second surface.
   7. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: .29 maximum.
   8. Summer Daytime U-Factor: .27 maximum.
   9. Visible Light Transmittance: 53 percent minimum.
   10. SGHC: .30 maximum.
   11. Safety glazing where required.

END OF SECTION 08 80 00

# SECTION 08 90 00 - LOUVERS & VENTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Extent of louvers is indicated on drawing, including sizes and locations. Coordinate the size and locations with mechanical drawings and specifications. Provide complete attachments to substrates indicated.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 04 Section - "Unit Masonry Assemblies".
   2. Division 05 Section - "Metal Fabrications", for masonry loose lintels and miscellaneous steel for louver attachment.
   3. Division 05 Section - "Cold Formed Metal Framing".
   4. Division 07 Section - "Air Barriers".
   5. Division 07 Section - "Joint Sealants".
   6. Division 07 Section - "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim".
   7. Division 23 Mechanical, for ducts, dampers, and other adjacent construction.

### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Performance Requirements: Where louvers are indicated to comply with specific performance requirements, provide units whose performance ratings have been determined in compliance with Air Movement and Control Association (AMCA) Standard 500.

B. Comply with SMACNA "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" recommendation for fabrication, construction details and installation procedures, except as otherwise indicated.

C. Field Measurements: Verify size, location and placement of louver units prior to fabrication, wherever possible.

D. Coordination with Wall Openings: Verify final louver size includes required free area for model specified before creating rough opening in exterior material.

E. Shop Assembly: Coordinate field measurements and shop drawings with fabrication and shop assembly to minimize field adjustments, splicing, mechanical joints and field assembly of units. pre-assemble units in shop to greatest extent possible and disassemble as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for re-assembly and coordination.

### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's specifications and installation instructions for required products, including finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings for fabrication and erection of louver units and accessories. Include plans, elevations and details of sections and connections to adjoining

work. Indicate materials, finishes, fasteners, joinery and other information to determine compliance with specified requirements. Submit complete line of premium and standard color samples (12 colors minimum) for selection by Architect.

## 1.05 WARRANTY

A. Louver: Provide 5-Year Warranty on Louver.

B. Finnish: Provide 5-Year Warranty on Anodic finish. Provide 20-Year Warranty on PVDF coating.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 MATERIALS

A. Horizontal Blade Aluminum Louvers:
   1. Typical louver, unless noted otherwise **<or insert description>**: Stationary 6" deep frame, 37-1/2 degree blade angle and 5-15/16" vertical spacing, equal to Ruskin ELF6375DX, minimum 57% free area. Thickness not less than 0.081" for frames and extruded aluminum blades (Alloy 6063-T5). Provide bird screen **[and metal mesh insect screen] <or insert criteria for louvers requiring insect screen>**.
   2. Typical louver, unless noted otherwise **<or insert description>**: Stationary 4" deep frame, 45 degree blade angle and approximately 4" vertical spacing, equal to Ruskin ELF445DX, minimum 50% free area. Thickness not less than 0.081" for frames and extruded aluminum blades (Alloy 6063-T5). Provide bird screen **[and metal mesh insect screen] <or insert criteria for louvers requiring insect screen>**.
   3. Louvers **[under 1 SF in size] <insert criteria>**: Stationary 2" deep frame, 45 degree blade angle and 2-7/16" vertical spacing, equal to Ruskin ELF211D, nominal 38% free area. Thickness not less than 0.060" for frames and extruded aluminum blades (Alloy 6063-T5). Primer shall be thermo-cured, 0.2 mil d.f.t. Finish shall be factory applied, high performance, fluorocarbon coating. Provide bird screen **[and metal mesh insect screen] <or insert criteria for louvers requiring insect screen>**.
   4. Size louvers to sizes noted in Drawings, or to required open areas noted in Mechanical drawings and specifications, whichever is greater.
   5. Sill Flashing: Provide integral sill flashing or matching extended sill pan flashing that provides a 1-1/2" to 2" vertical turn down with drip edge at the exterior wall finish.
   6. Aluminum Louver Finish:
      a. Mill Finish.
      b. Prime coated for field painting, refer to Division 09, Section "Painting".
      c. Kynar.
      d. **[Clear] [Color]** Anodized.
      e. Baked Enamel Fluoropolymer: Primer shall be thermo-cured, 0.2 mil d.f.t. Finish shall be factory applied, high performance, fluorocarbon coating. Color **[as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors] <insert color(s)>**.

B. Louver Screens: Provide frames consisting of U-shaped metal for permanently securing metal **[insect screen and bird ]**screen mesh. Locate screens on inside face of louvers. Secure screens to louver frames with machine screws, spaced at each corner and at 12" o.c. between.

C. Foundation Vents: Galvanized, stationary nominal 4"deep by 8" high by 16" long, 45 degrees slope and overlapping blades. Vent construction with insect screen and water stop. Rear cover shall be closeable with wrench from the outside.

D. Cast Aluminum Foundation Vents: Stationary, cast aluminum, nominal 4" deep x 8" tall x 16" long, equal to Ruskin Model BVC100. Minimum 39% free area. Mill aluminum finish. Vent construction with insect screen and rear waterstop.

E. Fastenings: Fasteners for exterior applications may be hot-dip galvanized, stainless steel or aluminum.

F. Anchors and Inserts: Use non-ferrous metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts. Furnish inserts, as required, to be set into concrete or masonry work.

## 2.02 FABRICATION

A. Provide louvers and accessories of design, materials, sizes, depth, arrangement, and metal thicknesses indicated, or if not indicated, as required for optimum performance with respect to airflow; water penetration; air leakage, where applicable (for adjustable units, if any); strength; durability; and uniform appearance.

B. Fabricate frames including integral sills to suit adjacent construction with tolerances for installation including application of sealants in joints between louvers and adjoining work.

C. Include supports, anchorage, and accessories required for complete assembly.

D. Provide vertical mullions of type and at spacing recommended by manufacturer or 72" o.c., whichever is less. No intermediate.

E. Join Frame members to one another and to stationary louver blades by spline screwed, except where indicated otherwise or where field bolted connections between frame members are made necessary by size of louvers. Maintain equal blade spacing including separation between blades and frames at head and sill to produce uniform appearance.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 PREPARATION

A. Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions and directions for installation of anchorage which are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery of such items to project site.

## 3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Locate and place louver units plumb, level and in proper alignment with adjacent work.

B. Use concealed anchorage wherever possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.

C. Form tight joints with exposed connections accurately fitted together. Provide reveals and openings for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.

D. Repair finishes damaged by cutting, welding, soldering and grinding operations require for fitting and jointing. Restore finishes so there is no evidence of corrective work. Return items which cannot be refinished in field to shop, make required alterations, and refinish entire unit, or provide new units, at Contractor's option.

END OF SECTION 08 90 00

# SECTION 09 21 00 - GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Provide gypsum drywall as shown on the drawings and as herein specified including but not limited to: Metal stud framing, gypsum drywall and finishing systems.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 5 Section “Cold Formed Metal Framing.”
   2. Division 6 Section “Rough Carpentry.”
   3. Division 6 Section “Architectural Woodwork", for coordination of metal framed cabinet supports.
   4. Division 7 Section “Thermal Insulation.”
   5. Division 7 for additional requirements for fire stopping and sealants installed with gypsum board assemblies.
   6. Division 9 Section “Painting.”
   7. Division 9 Sections, for coordination of tiling, wall base materials, and other finishes applied to gypsum board assemblies.
   8. Divisions 10 and 11, and other Sections as applicable, for coordination of accessories and equipment requiring blocking in walls. Submittals

C. Certificate: Furnish certificate evidencing that material meets or exceeds specification and fire rating requirement.

D. Informational Submittals:
   1. Research/Evaluation Reports: Evidence of cold-formed metal framing's compliance with building code in effect for Project, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
      a. Evaluation reports certified under an independent third party inspection program administered by an agency accredited by IAS to ICC-ES AC98, IAS Accreditation Criteria for Inspection Agencies.

### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Metal Support Standard: ASTM C754.

B. Metal Stud Standard: Fed Spec QQS-698 and QQS-775d, Class D.

C. Gypsum Board Standard: GA 216 by Gypsum Association.

D. Tolerances: 1/8" Offsets between planes of board faces and 1/4" in 8'-0" for plumb, level, warp and bow.

## 1.04 PERFORMANCE / DESIGN CRITERIA

A. Acoustic Ratings: Construct assemblies to achieve acoustic ratings indicated on Drawings, assemblies tested to ASTM E90 and classified in accordance with ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

B. Deflection Limits:
   1. Limit deflection of partitions to following limits, based on design load.
      a. Partitions to receive tile, plaster, adhered stone, or similar heavy finish materials: L/240.
      b. Other partitions: L/120.
      c. Comply with minimum stud gauges required elsewhere in these specifications, the most stringent requirement shall prevail. If partition height exceeds stud manufacturer's limiting height for applicable loading and deflection, install bracing above ceiling, decrease stud spacing, or increase stud gauge.
   2. Limit deflection of ceilings to L/360.

C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E 119 by, and displaying a classification label from, an independent testing agency acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.
   1. Construct assemblies to achieve fire resistance ratings indicated on Drawings, in accordance with applicable UL design numbers.
   2. In the event that requirements of assembly numbers referenced conflict with other Contract Document requirements, conform to assembly requirements.

## 1.05 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials with manufacturer's label attached. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against damage from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, corrosion, construction traffic, and other causes. Stack gypsum panels flat to prevent sagging. Protect materials from dampness or wetting. Remove any damaged materials.

B. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling as required by AISI's "Code of Standard Practice".

## 1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations, whichever are more stringent.

B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.

C. Do not install panels that are wet, those that are moisture damaged, and those that are mold damaged.
   1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
   2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   1. Steel Framing and Furring:
      a. Allied Building Products, Inc.

b. AllSteel Products, Inc.
c. Cemco.
d. Clark-Dietrich Building Systems.
e. Consolidated Fabricators Corp.
f. MarinoWare; Div. of Ware Industries, Inc.
g. MBA Building Supplies.
h. Scafco Corp.
i. United Metal Products, Inc.

2. Gypsum Board and Related Products:
a. G-P Gypsum Corp.
b. National Gypsum Company.
c. United States Gypsum Co. (USG)

B. Source Limitations:
1. Provide framing materials and accessories used on the project by one manufacturer throughout.

## 2.02 FRAMING MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES

A. Components, General: As follows:
1. Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.
2. Steel Sheet Components: Complying with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal and with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40, hot-dip galvanized zinc coating.

B. Metal Framing: Provide light gauge metal framing and accessories supplied by one manufacturer throughout. Provide standard gauges of galvanized steel channel studs at size and spacings indicated on drawings, and as follows:
1. Minimum 18 gauge studs where distance between horizontal bracing is greater than 12'-0".
2. Minimum 16 gauge studs where distance between horizontal bracing is greater than 18'-0".
3. Minimum 20 gauge studs where greater gauge is not otherwise required.
4. Depths: As indicated in Drawings.

C. Runner

D. Tracks: ASTM C645. Standard with manufacturer for type and size stud utilized, same finish. Furnish all necessary miscellaneous accessories such as clips, brackets, etc.

E. Deflection Track: Manufacturer's standard deep leg track. Utilize Firestop track at fire rated walls as tested in U. L. assemblies for head of wall joint. Curve track can help form curves more accurately, more smoothly, with greater strength/stability, or to smaller radii compared to cutting the track. Delete the following if project has no curved construction requiring flexible track.

F. Stud Spacer bars: 7/8" x 7/8" x 50" long right angle bar pre-notched 12", 16", and 24" centers. (20 gauge.)

G. Gypsum Board Ceiling Cold Rolled Main Runner Carrying Channels: 1-1/2", 16 gauge steel channels with minimum 1/2" wide flanges.

H. Cold Rolled Furring Channels: 3/4" and 1-1/2" Depths, 16 gauge steel channels with minimum 1/2" wide flanges.

I. Hat Shape Furring Channels: ASTM C 645, 7/8" x 1-1/4", minimum 22 gauge, galvanized steel hat shaped sections.

J. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2" deep steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission.
1. Configuration: Hat shaped .

K. Provide J or C shaped track and channels with non-slotted web to frame around openings where required for fire rated construction and / or for screw attachment or support of windows. 16 gauge where required to prevent flame spread at cavity wall construction.

L. Slide Clips: Provide minimum 600 pound lateral capacity design load thickness, or as shown on drawings. Provide prefabricated clips as manufactured by Clark Dietrich Framing Systems, or equal. Install as shown on drawings.

M. Framed openings: Galvanized steel one piece header and jamb studs meeting or exceeding the requirements of ASTM C 754.

**N.** Blocking and Backing Plates: Refer to Division 06, Section "Rough Carpentry.

O. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.

## 2.03 GYPSUM WALLBOARD PANELS

A. General: Specifications based on materials and manufacturers listed are to set quality standard. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the named products, or comparable products by another manufacturer.

B. Panel Size: Provide in maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and correspond with support system indicated.

C. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 1396 unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Type X:
      a. Thickness: 1/2" and 5/8” As indicated.
      b. Long Edges: Tapered.
      c. Location: Typical where other wallboard type is not otherwise indicated
   2. Type C:
      a. Thickness: As indicated.
      b. Long Edges: Tapered.
      c. Location: Fire rated ceilings.
   3. Moisture and Mold Resistant: With moisture and mold resistant core and paper surfaces, mold resistance ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.
      a. Thickness: 1/2" and 5/8” As indicated.
      b. Long Edges: Tapered.
      c. Location: At restrooms, laundry, custodial, and similar wet and washable locations, except for backer board installed behind tile.

D. Exterior Sheathing: Refer to Division 06 Section “Sheathing”.

## 2.04 TILE BACKING PANELS

A. Panel Size: Provide in maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and correspond with support system indicated.

B. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C 1288 or 1325.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following or other approved equal:
      a. Custom Building Products; Wonderboard.
      b. United States Gypsum Co.; DUROCK Cement Board.
   2. Thickness: As indicated.

## 2.05 TRIM ACCESSORIES

A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
   1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc.

2. Shapes:
    a. Cornerbeads: Equal to USG Dur-A-Bead. Use at outside corners.
    b. Metal Edge Trim: Standard trim of galvanized steel with either knurled and perforated or expanded flanges and beaded for concealment of flange in joint compound. Equal to USG 200 or 400 Series. Apply where board abuts or terminates at another material.
        1) L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound; use at exposed panel edges.
        2) J-Mold: Metal J-molds; exposed flange receives joint compound, use at all panel edges abutting dissimilar materials.
    c. Gypsum Control Joints: Metal V-shape control joints. Use where indicated and at changes in backup material and in partitions at 30’-0” o.c. maximum, and at large gypsum board ceiling areas at 20'-0" o.c. maximum. Also provide at both sides all interior and exterior window & door frames.

B. Aluminum Reveal Trim: Alloy and temper with not less than the strength and durability properties of ASTM B221, Alloy T-5. Extruded accessories of profiles and dimensions indicated in Drawings:
    1. Profiles: as indicated.
    2. Finish: Class II anodic finishes.

## 2.06 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475.

B. Joint Tape:
    1. Interior Gypsum Wallboard: Paper.
    2. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
        a. Use polymer-coated (alkali-resistant) mesh tape, 2” wide at interior applications, and 3” wide at exterior applications.

C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Wallboard: For each coat use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
    1. Prefilling: At open joints and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound, equal to USG Durabond 90.
    2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use setting-type taping compound, equal to USG Durabond Joint Taping Compound.
    3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound, equal to USG Ready Mixed Joint Topping.
    4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
    5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.

D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
    1. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by panel manufacturer.

## 2.07 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products which may be incorporated into the work include the following:
    1. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints:
        a. Pecora Corp.; AC-20 FTR Acoustical and Insulation Sealant.
        b. United States Gypsum Co.; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.
    2. Acoustical foam sealant may be used to fill voids to decking or other similar conditions above ceilings.

B. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints: Nonsag, paintable, nonstaining, latex sealant**,** complying with ASTM C 834 that effectively reduces airborne sound transmission

through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.

## 2.08 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written recommendations.

B. Door frame Grout: Equal to USG Durabond 90 Joint Compound, Multi-Purpose.

C. Sealer Gaskets: 5-12" x 3/8" closed cell foam and adhesive backed peel and stick membrane, equal to Protecto Wrap (800-759-9727) "Triple Guard Energy Sill Sealer." Provide at all exterior metal studs in contact with floor slab.

D. Hanger Wire: ASTM A 641, 9 Gauge galvanized steel wire.

E. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002, unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
   2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.

F. Insulation:
   1. Thermal Insulation: Refer to Division 07, Section "Thermal Insulation".
   2. Acoustical Insulation: Refer to Division 09, Section "Acoustical Insulation".
   3. Fire Resistant Assemblies: Provide mineral fiber insulation according to the requirements of the fire rated assembly, except where greater thickness is indicated for partitions that also carry an acoustical rating.

## 2.09 TEXTURE FINISHES

A. Primer: As recommended by textured finish manufacturer.

B. Aggregate Finish: Water-based, job-mixed, aggregated, drying-type texture finish for spray application.
   1. Texture: match existing where patching or extending existing items to remain.

C. Non-Aggregate Finish: Pre-mixed, vinyl texture finish for spray application.
   1. Texture: match existing where patching or extending existing items to remain.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 EXAMINATION AND COORDINATION

A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

C. Interface and Coordination with Other Work:
   1. Coordinate installation of firestopping at penetrations through fire-resistive rated assemblies.
   2. Coordinate installation of joint sealers specified in Division 7 Section at penetrations of non fire-resistive rated assemblies.
   3. Coordinate support framing and blocking requirements of all construction to be attached to gypsum board assemblies.
   4. At partitions indicated to receive thermal or acoustical batts, pack insulation into cavities while framing is being fabricated for stud packs, box headers, and other framing cavities that will be inaccessible upon erection of framing.

5. Coordinate installation with joints in adjacent construction designed to reduce transmission of sound. Do not install gypsum board assemblies in a manner to create an acoustical bridge across such joints and conditions. Conditions include but are not limited to the following:
    a. Floor and slab acoustical isolation and similar construction details.
    b. Acoustical isolation of structural members and components.
    c. Mechanical ductwork acoustical joints and construction.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.02 INSTALLATION - METAL FRAMING

A. General Installation Standard: ASTM C 754.
1. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 840 that apply to framing installation.
2. Gypsum Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 841 that apply to framing installation.
3. Gypsum Veneer Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 844 that apply to framing installation.
4. Portland Cement Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 1063 that apply to framing installation.

B. Fire rated wall partitions installed to provide specified design criteria requirements. Partitions continuous from floor level to underside of structure and completely fire taped.

C. Stud and Framing Installation:
1. Install framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, with connections securely fastened.
2. Steel studs cut to proper length, plumbed and aligned, continuous runner tracks attached to structure at intervals not to exceed stud spacing specified. Anchor all exterior studs and studs adjacent to window and door frames, partition intersections and corners to runner flanges.
3. Studs for partitions indicated to be fire rated or to include sound batts shall extend to deck, unless noted otherwise.
4. Where partitions abut ceiling or deck construction or vertical structural elements, provide slip or cushion type joint between partition and structure as recommended by stud manufacturer.
5. Install double studs at all jambs, and at head conditions not requiring box beams, at all windows & doors.
6. Studs shall either extend to structure for anchorage/bracing, and or be braced with alternating kickers at 4’-0” on center maximum.
7. Install supplementary framing as necessary to support fixtures, equipment services, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction. Install, or coordinate installation of wood blocking by other trade as applicable, for all such construction.
8. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
9. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

D. Fastenings for Wall Supported Items: Provide and install 12 gauge wall reinforcing plates 6" high (minimum) x 1 stud space wide or 2 x 8 (minimum) x 1 stud space fire retardant wood blocking, unless specified otherwise at all stud wall areas receiving grab bars, toilet partitions, wall bumpers and other wall mounted accessories. Plates welded or screwed to studs.

## 3.03 INSTALLATION - PANEL ERECTION

A. General: Comply with ASTM C840.

B. Panel Installation:
   1. Use wallboard and sheathing of maximum lengths to minimize joints.
   2. Stagger end joints where they occur.
   3. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions, and stagger joints between each layer of panel in multiple layer installations, by at least one framing member.
      a. Exception: Do not bridge panels over expansion joints.
   4. Locate end joints as far as possible from center of wall or ceiling.
   5. Do not place butt ends against tapered or grooved edges. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends.
   6. Support ends and edges of wallboard on framing or furring members.
   7. No wallboard installed over piping, ducts, electric boxes or conduits until they have been installed, run and tested.
   8. Attach wallboard and sheathing with screws spaced 12" O.C. and staggered along abutting vertical edges.
   9. Exterior grooved sheathing installed horizontally with tongue up.
   10. Partitions indicated sealed to deck shall be continuous except where interrupted by structure, mechanical or electrical construction.
   11. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, conduits, and structural members. Cut panels to fit profile of penetrations and apply a bead of sealant 1/4" to 3/8" wide.
   12. Tape and float only is acceptable behind lockers that have solid backs unless otherwise required for partition fire or acoustical ratings.
   13. Rated partitions shall have wall board continuous both sides above ceiling to deck and fire taped and sealed.
   14. Partitions shown to include sound batt but not to extend to deck shall have wall board continuous to deck above ceiling and taped on one side only.
      a. Exception: Partitions shown to have acoustical insulation placed over ceiling to either side of the partition wall.
   15. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments, including floors and deck. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch wide spaces at these locations. Trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels will be exposed in the completed work. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant
   16. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining panels.
   17. Refer to Division 07, Section "Expansion Control" for installation of expansion control joints and expansion joint covers located within or adjacent to gypsum board assemblies.

C. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919 and with manufacturer's written recommendations for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.

D. Wall Tile Substrate: ANSI A108.11
   1. Install tile backer board as substrate for thin set ceramic tile.
   2. Space 1/4" above fixture lips.
   3. Seal ends, cut edges and penetrations of each piece with water resistant compound before installation.
   4. Tape & mortar over all joints prior to tile installation.

E. Accessory Installation:
   1. Corner Beads: Install on external corners with suitable fasteners spaced 9" O.C.
   2. Metal Trim: Install over face layer with fasteners spaced 9" O.C. where shown and where gypsum surfaces meet dissimilar materials.

3. Control Joint: Install control joints in locations where detailed, and the following, unless otherwise indicated:
    a. At changes in backup material.
    b. Vertically in partition walls at 30'-0" maximum on center.
    c. Horizontally in partition walls taller than 16'. Confirm elevations of such joints with Architect.
    d. In large ceilings 20'-0" maximum on center each way.
    e. At interior side of all exterior door and window frames.
    f. At both sides of all interior and exterior door and window frames.
4. Aluminum Trim: Install in locations indicated in Drawings.

F. Joint Treatment Application:
1. Joint treatment compounds and products, as specified under Materials, shall be mixed and applied in accordance with manufacturer's direction to completely conceal all joints and screw depressions and provide a smooth surface to receive finishes as scheduled.

## 3.04 FINISH

A. Apply gypsum board finish in accordance with ASTM C 840, manufacturer's published instructions and GA-214 Finish Levels.
1. Level 1: All joints and interior angles shall have tape embedded in joint compound. Surface shall be free of excess joint compound. Tool marks and ridges are acceptable.
    a. Application: In plenum areas above ceilings, in attics, in mechanical rooms, and in other areas where the assembly is generally concealed and not normally open to view. Accessories not required unless otherwise indicated or required by fire rated or acoustical rated construction.
        1) Where a fire resistance rating is required for the gypsum board assembly, details of construction shall be in accordance with reports of fire tests of assemblies that have met the fire rating requirement.
        2) Where acoustical rating requires more stringent finish application, comply with acoustical partition construction requirements.
2. Level 2: Embed tape and apply separate first coat of joint compound to tape, fasteners, and trim flanges and sand joints. Provide level 2 finish where panels are substrate for tile, behind plywood backer boards, and where specifically indicated, unless a higher level of finish is required for fire-resistance-rated assemblies and sound-rated assemblies.
3. Level 4: Embed tape and apply separate first, fill, and finish coats of joint compound to tape, fasteners, and trim flanges, and apply skim coat of joint compound over entire surface, and sand smooth. Provide Level 4 finish typical, where panels are to receive painted finish unless specifically indicated otherwise.
4. Level 5: All joints and interior angles shall have tape embedded in joint compound and three separate coats of joint compound applied over all joints, angles, fastener heads, and accessories. A thin skim coat of joint compound, or a material manufactured especially for this purpose, shall be applied to the entire surface. The surface shall be smooth and free of tool marks and ridges. Finished work free of noticeable defects which include joint ridging, staved joints, board edges damaged or out of place, joint blisters, nail pops, pinholes in joint treatment or any other noticeable defects. Finished work true to line, perfectly smooth and ready for painting or wall covering.
    a. Prepared surfaces shall be coated with a primer/sealer prior to the application of finish paint. Refer to specification Division 9 Section for painting.
    b. Application: For use where severe lighting conditions occur.

## 3.05 APPLYING TEXTURE FINISHES

A. Surface Preparation and Primer: Prepare and apply primer to gypsum panels and other surfaces receiving texture finishes. Apply primer to surfaces that are clean, dry, and smooth.

B. Texture Finish Application: Mix and apply finish using powered spray equipment, to produce a uniform texture matching existing wall/ceiling that is being patched or extended free of starved spots or other evidence of thin application or of application patterns.

C. Prevent texture finishes from coming into contact with surfaces not indicated to receive texture finish by covering them with masking agents, polyethylene film, or other means. If, despite these precautions, texture finishes contact these surfaces, immediately remove droppings and overspray to prevent damage according to texture-finish manufacturer's written recommendations.

## 3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Above-Ceiling Observation: Before Contractor installs gypsum board ceilings, Architect will conduct an above-ceiling observation and report deficiencies in the Work observed. Do not proceed with installation of gypsum board to ceiling support framing until deficiencies have been corrected.
   1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of date and time when Project, or part of Project, will be ready for above-ceiling observation.
   2. Before notifying Architect, complete the following in areas to receive gypsum board ceilings:
      a. Installation of 80 percent of lighting fixtures, powered for operation.
      b. Installation, insulation, and leak and pressure testing of water piping systems.
      c. Installation of air-duct systems.
      d. Installation of air devices.
      e. Installation of mechanical system control-air tubing.
      f. Installation of ceiling support framing.

## 3.07 PATCHING AND REPAIR

A. Contractor shall repair and patch around penetrations in existing walls where new piping, ductwork, conduit, cables, etc. are required.

B. Remove and replace gypsum board panels that become wet, moisture damaged, or exhibit evidence of mold.
   1. Exception: Where glass mat gypsum wall panel designed not to be damaged by water is used, this material need not be replaced due to inadvertent wetting if there is no damage to wall panel.

## 3.08 CLEANING

A. Contractor shall completely clean all areas affected by this work and shall leave no excess or scrap materials or bedding compound on the job site.

END OF SECTION 09 21 00

# SECTION 09 22 26 - METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Metal suspension support and framing components for interior gypsum wallboard ceilings and soffits.

B. Related Documents: The Contract Documents, as defined in Division 1 Section - Summary of Work, apply to the Work of this Section. Additional requirements and information necessary to complete the Work of this Section may be found in other Documents.

C. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 9 Section “Gypsum Wallboard.”

### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Design Criteria:
   1. All suspended ceiling/soffit suspension systems installed so that deflection of finished surface does not exceed 1/360 of span.

### 1.04 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in original containers with brand or manufacturer's label attached. Protect metal materials from dampness or wetting. Store metallic materials and accessories indoors off floor.

## PART 2 - PRODUCT

### 2.01 PRODUCTS

A. Carrying Channels: 1-1/2 inch 16 ga. galvanized steel channels with minimum weight of 475 lbs. per 1,000 lineal feet.

B. Furring Channels: 3/4 inch 16 ga. galvanized steel cold-rolled channels with minimum weight of 300 lbs. per 1,000 lineal feet.

C. Hat Channels at Gypsum Board Ceilings: 7/8 inch 25 ga. galvanized roll formed furring channels.

D. Tie Wire: 16 Ga. galvanized steel wire for tying channel iron to framing members.

E. Hangers: 8 Ga. galvanized annealed steel wire.

F. Furring Channels: 7/8” Roll-formed hat-shaped section of minimum 25 gauge galvanized steel for use at gypsum panel ceiling.

G. Fasteners: 1" Type S screws.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Wire-tying:
   1. Splicing: Double wrap tie.
   2. Horizontal stiffeners to channel brackets: Figure eight tie.
   3. Framing members perpendicular to each other: Saddle tie.

B. Workmanship: Work erected in perfect condition, level plumb, true and rigid with all requisite bracing and stiffening members provided as required.

### 3.02 FURRING & SUSPENDED CEILINGS & SOFFITS

A. Attach hangers to structure at maximum 48" o.c. in direction of carrying channels and 36" o.c. in direction of cross furring and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Hanger design and spacing as required to meet design criteria. Hangers also installed within 6" of perimeter walls and ends of main runner channels.

B. Maximum allowable spacing of main runners, 48" O.C.; cross furring 12" O.C..

C. Furring securely wire tied and of ample strength to support required load without deflections exceeding design criteria. Do not continue furring continuous across control or expansion joints. Position and level carrying channel and saddle-tie securely with hanger wire.

D. Position 3/4" cross furring across carrying channels and saddle tie to carrying channels with three strands of 18 ga. tie wire.

E. Install vertical bracing as required for wind uplift loading, per I-90 requirements, or maximum 4’-0” o.c.e.w. Vertical bracing shall be 3-5/8” 18 gauge steel studs.

### 3.03 METAL ACCESSORIES

A. All openings, edges or where gypsum board edges terminate against dissimilar materials provide metal edges. Cornerites used at all junctions, corners, etc., unless otherwise noted. All exposed vertical and horizontal corners protected with corner beads.

END OF SECTION 09 22 26

# SECTION 09 30 13 - CERAMIC TILING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Ceramic tile.
   2. Cementitious backer units installed as part of tile installations.
   3. Metal edge strips installed as part of tile installations.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for additional quality standards for sealing of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile surfaces.
   2. Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Panels" for coordination with access doors and panels installation.
   3. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies" for cementitious backer units.
   4. Division 10 Section "Toilet Accessories", and other sections as applicable, for coordination of recessed items installed in tiled walls.

### 1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Module Size: Actual tile size (minor facial dimension as measured per ASTM C 499) plus joint width indicated.

B. Facial Dimension: Actual tile size (minor facial dimension as measured per ASTM C 499).

C. Facial Dimension: Nominal tile size as defined in ANSI A137.1.

### 1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. TCA / TCNA: Tile Council of North America, Inc., and the TCNA Handbook for ceramic, glass, and stone tile installations, most current versions.

B. ANSI A108.01, Requirements for movement joints.

C. Marble Institute of America (MIA): Dimension Stone Design Manual for Expansion Joints.

D. ASTM C1242, Standard guide for selection, design, and installation of dimension stone attachment systems.

E. ASTM C1193, Standard guide for the use of joint sealants.

F. ASTM C1472, Standard guide for calculating movement and other effects when establishing sealant joint width.

### 1.05 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Static Coefficient of Friction: For tile installed on walkway surfaces, provide products with the following values as tested per the DCOF AcuTest (ANSI A137.1):
   1. Level Surfaces: Minimum 0.42.

B. All sealants used in floor or traffic applications shall have a Shore A hardness not less than 35.

## 1.06 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of tile indicated. Submit complete line of grout color for selection by Architect. Include Samples of accessories involving color selection.

D. Samples of existing-tile match: For color matching of existing tile, submit tile-matched samples of those original tiles that are part of the restorative work. Obtain Architects approval prior to ordering of all tiles for the project.

E. Samples for Verification:
   1. Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required.
   2. Assembled samples with grouted joints for each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required, at least 12 inches square and mounted on rigid panel. Use grout of type and in color or colors approved for completed work.
   3. Full-size units of each type of trim and accessory for each color and finish required.
   4. Metal edge strips in 6-inch lengths.

F. Product Certificates: For each type of product, signed by product manufacturer stating products are suitable for intended application.

G. Qualification Data: For Installer.

H. Letter from sealant manufacturer stating suitability of products for each application indicated.

## 1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications of Installers: For cutting, installing and grouting of ceramic tile, use only thoroughly trained and experienced journeyman tile setters who are completely familiar with the requirements of this work, and the recommendations contained in the referenced standards, and who are CTI, CTEF, ACT, or TCNA 5-Star TCAA Trowel of Excellence certified.

B. Codes and Standards: In addition to complying with all pertinent codes and regulations, comply with the following:
   1. Grout and mortar setting shall comply with, ANSI A108.4 and ANSI A 108.5.
   2. Manufacture all ceramic tile in accordance with Standard Grade Requirements of ANSI 137.1.
   3. ANSI A118.10, Specifications for waterproof membranes
   4. ANSI A118.12 Specifications for Crack Isolation Membranes
   5. Install all ceramic tile in accordance with the recommendations contained in Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation of the Tile Council of North America, Inc., latest edition.

C. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain all tile of same type and color or finish from one source or producer.
   1. Obtain tile from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.

D. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from a single manufacturer and each aggregate from one source or producer. Including self-leveling underlayments and waterproofing / anti-fracturing membranes.

E. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section through one source from a single manufacturer for each product:
   1. Waterproofing.
   2. Joint sealants.
   3. Cementitious backer units.
   4. Metal edge strips.

## 1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirement in ANSI A137.1 for labeling sealed tile packages.

B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.

C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

D. Store liquid latexes and emulsion adhesives in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

E. Handle tile that has temporary protective coating on exposed surfaces to prevent coated surfaces from contacting backs or edges of other units. If coating does contact bonding surfaces of tile, remove coating from bonding surfaces before setting tile.

## 1.09 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

## 1.10 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that are from same production runs as products installed, that match products installed, and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. The following requirements apply for product selection:
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: The design for each tile type is based on the product named. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either the named product or an approved comparable product by another manufacturer.
      a. Trinity Tile
         Address: 115 SW 49th Ave, Suite 105 Ocala, Florida 34474
         Office: 866-774-3390
         Fax: 352-369-0419
         Email: info@trinitytile.com
         Website: www.trinitytile.com

## 2.02 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1, "Specifications for Ceramic Tile," for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
   1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements, unless otherwise indicated.

2. For facial dimensions of tile, comply with requirements relating to tile sizes specified in Part 1 "Definitions" Article.

B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI standards referenced in "Setting and Grouting Materials" Article.

C. Colors, Textures, and Patterns: Where manufacturer's standard products are indicated for tile, grout, and other products requiring selection of colors, surface textures, patterns, and other appearance characteristics, provide specific products or materials complying with the specified product:
   1. Ceramic flat wall tile as follows:
      a. CT1
         1) Tile/Collection: Allora
         2) Color: White
         3) Facial Dimensions: 4” x 12”
         4) Finish: Matte
         5) Rectified: Yes
      b. CT2
         1) Tile/Collection: Allora
         2) Color: Black
         3) Facial Dimensions: 4” x 12”
         4) Finish: 80% Matte, 20% Glossy
         5) Rectified: Yes

D. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges selected during Sample submittals, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.

E. Warpage: No more than one-tenth the length of the measured span of the tile can exhibit more than 25 percent of total allowable warpage.

## 2.03 TILE PRODUCTS

A. Trim & Special Tile: Provide necessary caps, stops, coves, returns, trimmers, and other shapes as required for a complete installation. Items to be supplied by the same manufacturer supplying the tile.

B. Ceramic Tile: Flat tile as scheduled on drawings.

## 2.04 WATERPROOFING SYSTEM FOR TILE SHOWER APPLICATIONS

A. Waterproofing system: Provide complete shower waterproofing system for wall waterproofing, consisting of 8 mil thick polyethylene membrane with bonded fleece on both sides. Membrane shall meet or exceed the requirements of "American National Standard Specifications for load bearing, bonded, waterproof membranes for thin-set ceramic tile and dimension stone installation A118.10", shall be listed by cUPC, and shall be evaluated by ICC-ES for compliance with local building code requirements. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Schluter Kerdi system, or approved equal:
   1. Waterproofing membrane: Schluter Kerdi.
   2. Seaming membrane: Schluter Kerdi-BAND.
   3. Waterproofing Accessories: Schluter Kerdi-SEAL mixing valve and pipe seals.
   4. Provide pre-formed corner pieces at all intersections of planes, and as required for complete waterproofing system.
   5. Provide sealants as recommended by Manufacturer for complete installation.
   6. At curbless shower installation, extend membrane 1'-0" beyond shower enclosure.

## 2.05 SETTING MATERIALS

A. Setting Materials Quality, General: Standards and materials specified herein are to set a minimum acceptable quality standard for setting materials. Contractor may, at Contractor's option and without change in price, propose to provide a higher grade of setting materials that may in Contractor's opinion reduce labor costs, reduce setting time, or afford other benefits in installation. Include for Architect's consideration the reasons for any such proposed revisions of setting materials with product submittal.

B. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or approved equal:
   1. Custom Building Products.
   2. LATICRETE International Inc.
   3. MAPEI Corporation.

C. Latex-Polymer Modified Portland Cement Mortar (Thin Set) for Wall: ANSI A118.4, consisting of the following:
   1. Prepackaged dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, ethylene vinyl acetate additive to which only water must be added at Project site. Available products include the following:
      a. MAPEI; Ultraflex 3.
      b. Laticrete; 254 Platinum.
   2. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar, ISO 13007; C2TE, in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.4.
   3. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
      a. MAPEI; Ultraflex LFT.
      b. Custom Building Products; Natural Stone and Large Tile Premium Mortar.
      c. Laticrete; 4-XLT.
      d. TEC; Ultimate 6 Plus LHT Mortar
   4. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix combined with acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene-rubber liquid-latex additive at Project site.

## 2.06 GROUT MATERIALS:

A. Per Humble ISD Standards, Water-Cleanable Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3.
   1. Available Products:
      a. MAPEI; Kerapoxy CQ.

B. Colors: Provide standard color chart of selected product for Architect’s review. Per Humble ISD Standards, a darker grout is required when using ceramic tile.

## 2.07 ELASTOMERIC SEALANTS

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard chemically curing, elastomeric sealants of base polymer and characteristics indicated that comply with applicable requirements in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

B. Colors: Provide colors of exposed sealants to match colors of grout in tile adjoining sealed joints, unless otherwise indicated.

C. One-Part, Mildew-Resistant Silicone Sealant: ASTM C 920; Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; Uses NT, G, A, and, as applicable to nonporous joint substrates indicated, O; formulated with fungicide, intended for sealing interior ceramic tile joints and other nonporous substrates that are subject to in-service exposures of high humidity and extreme temperatures.

D. Joint Backers: Foam joint backer material to prevent sealant bond and form recommended joint cross-sectional shape. Round or rectangular with rounded top, and in sizes as appropriate to joint sizes and conditions.

## 2.08 CEMENTITIOUS BACKER UNITS

A. Provide 1/2" cementitious backer units at all walls to receive tile and on top of plywood subfloor/deck to receive waterproofing and tile All walls in wet areas complying with ANSI A118.9 in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joints re: Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies."

## 2.09 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.

B. Metal Edge Strips: Metal edge strips with flange for embedding in tile setting material. Provide shapes as noted below, in sizes to match tile and setting-bed thickness and adjacent finish materials at transitions. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide metal strips as manufactured by Schluter.
   1. Ceramic Tile to Concrete or other lower floor material: "RENO-U" by Schluter. Finish: Clear anodized aluminum.
   2. Premanufactured Shower Basin to wall tile: "DILEX-AHKA" by Schluter.
      a. Provide connectors, end caps, and inside and outside corner kits. Where there is adjacent vertical tile trim, select corner kits to match the adjacent vertical trim.
   3. Tile Outside Corners: "JOLLY" by Schluter. Finish: Clear anodized aluminum. Include universal accessory pieces for inside and outside corners, and end caps.
   4. Inside Corners shall be soft tile sealant joints to match grout color.
   5. Inside Corners: Schluter Dilex-EKE: for use at inside wall corners. Color: As selected by architect
   6. Sealant movement joints shall be soft tile sealant joints to match grout color.
   7. Sealant movement joints: Schluter Dilex-BWS prefabricated surface joint, 3/16" wide, height as required.
      a. Where required joint locations are not specifically indicated in Drawings, provide shop drawings indicating locations of required joints, for architect's comment and approval.

C. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.
   1. Available Products:
      a. MAPEI Corporation; Ultracare Penetrating Tile, Stone, and Grout Sealer.
      b. Custom Building Products; Aquamix Penetrating Sealer.
      c. C-Cure; Penetrating Sealer 978.

## 2.10 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.

B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.

C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of installed tile.
   1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of oil, waxy films, and curing compounds; and within flatness tolerances required by referenced ANSI A108 Series of tile installation standards for installations indicated.
   2. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed before installing tile.
   3. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.

B. Contractor shall apply leveling coat or dry-set mortar over wall surfaces which may vary more than 1-inch in 10 feet. Installation constitutes acceptance of the substrate.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

A. Remove coatings, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, that are incompatible with tile-setting materials.

B. Provide concrete substrates for tile floors, installed with adhesives or thin-set mortar that complies with flatness tolerances specified in referenced ANSI A108 Series of tile installation standards.
   1. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions with trowelable leveling and patching compound according to tile-setting material manufacturer's written instructions. Use product specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
   2. Remove protrusions, bumps, and ridges by sanding or grinding.

C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges selected during Sample submittals, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. ANSI Tile Installation Standards: Comply with parts of ANSI A108 Series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that apply to types of setting and grouting materials and to methods indicated in ceramic tile installation schedules.
   1. For the following installations, follow procedures in the ANSI A108 Series of tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:
      a. Tile floors in wet areas.
      b. Tile floors composed of tiles 8 by 8 inches or larger.

B. TCNA Installation Guidelines: TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation." Comply with TCNA installation methods indicated in ceramic tile installation schedules.

C. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions, unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.

D. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for

straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.

E. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern, unless otherwise indicated. Align joints when adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, and trim are same size. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Adjust to minimize tile cutting. Provide uniform joint widths, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Expansion Joints: Locate expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints per approved shop drawings, and in compliance with TCNA handbook recommendations where indicated during installation of settings materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles. Do not allow grout, setting materials, or other hard materials to restrict movement or bridge across at movement joints.
   1. Install sealant materials per manufacturer's installation instructions and industry standards. Clean and prime surfaces as recommended by manufacturer. Do not exceed temperature limitations, including where required shading of joints until after cured where joints are exposed to direct sunlight.
   2. Locate joints at inside corners, in tile surfaces directly above joints in concrete substrates, and per reference standards.
   3. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements of Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
   4. Install movement joints with appropriate joint backer material.
   5. Install movement joints per details in TCNA EJ171, except where pre-fabricated joint profiles are indicated.
   6. Sealant profile shall be slightly concave.
   7. In general, movement joints are recommended at 25’ each direction at interior spaces. Tile work exposed to direct sunlight, heat or moisture should place movement joints at 12’ maximum each direction.

G. Grout tile to comply with requirements of the following tile installation standards:
   1. For chemical-resistant epoxy grouts, comply with ANSI A108.6.

H. Where indicated, install cementitious backer units and treat joints to comply with ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated.

## 3.04 WALL TILE INSTALLATION

A. Install types of tile designated for wall installations to comply with requirements in the Wall Tile Installation Schedule, including those referencing TCNA installation methods and ANSI setting-bed standards.

B. Joint Widths: Install tile on walls with the following joint widths:
   1. Ceramic Tile: minimum 1/8 inch.

C. Tile Pattern: As indicated in Drawings, or where not indicated in Drawings install all ceramic tile in Stacked pattern. Where CT2 is indicated in Drawings, distribute glossy finish randomly throughout matte finish.

D. Metal Trim Strips: Install at all locations indicated or as required to conceal exposed edge of tile:
   1. Use full length pieces to the extent possible in order to minimize the number of joints.
   2. Unless otherwise noted, install edge strips flush with faces of tile to within maximum lippage tolerances as specified for tile.
   3. Install all strips and transitions set in mortar beneath tile, and per manufacturer's instructions.

4. At top of tile wainscots and other exposed edges of wall tile, install caulk joint between metal trim and wall. Do not grout to wall. Coordinate color with Architect and adjacent finishes.
5. Metal Trim at Showers: Install according to Manufacturer's instructions and as follows:
    a. Unless otherwise detailed in Drawings, the open side of handicap accessible showers should be installed with metal trim edge creating a sloped lip 1/4" (minimum) to 1/2" (maximum) in total height, and compliant with ADA and Texas Accessibility Standards (TAS). Install trim at open side of shower flush with floor tile, and the low side of the trim flush with sloping tile inside the shower pan.
    b. Install adjustable rake trim at rake sides of shower, with face of trim flush with wall tile above.
    c. Install trim at low, slot drain side of shower with the top of trim aligned with the adjacent rake trim pieces.

## 3.05 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

A. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
    1. Remove epoxy grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
    2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions, but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.

B. When recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear.

C. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral cleaner from tile surfaces.

END OF SECTION 09 30 13

# SECTION 09 51 00 - ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Provide acoustical ceilings as shown on the drawings and as herein specified.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 21 through 28 Mechanical and Electrical Sections, for coordination with devices installed in grid ceilings.

### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fire Hazard Classification: Maximum flame spread, Class A (less than 25) as tested in accordance with ASTM E-84 and per Fed. Spec. SS-S-118a.

### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Manufacturer's product specifications and installation instructions for each acoustical ceiling material required, and for each suspension system, including certified laboratory test reports and other data as required to show compliance with these specifications.

B. Samples: Set of 4" x 4" square samples for each acoustical unit required, showing full range of exposed color and texture to be expected in completed work.

### 1.05 COORDINATION

A. Contractor shall coordinate connection of lighting and electrical devices to grid. Where lighting fixtures are provided with integral clips, install lighting fixture with the clip attachments and not with screws through grid tees.

### 1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS

A. Provide 3% full tiles, each type (minimum one box) each color, texture and style of ceiling tiles.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 CEILING TILE AND GRID

A. Acoustical Panels:
   1. Type ACT1: 24" x 24" x 5/8" mineral fiber tile made for a lay-in grid suspension system. Panel design is Armstrong "Cortega", Color: White. Use fire rated ceiling tile and protected light fixtures in areas noted on plans.
      a. Use with Grid Type 1.

2. Type ACT2: 24" x 24" x 5/8" Ceiling panel shall be CertainTeed "Vinylrock", National Gypsum "Gridstone" with vinyl film finish, or USG's 2 mil. vinyl-faced gypsum panel. Color: White.
    a. Use with Grid Type 1.

B. Lay-in suspension system: Exposed steel members made for use with panel types specified. System supplied with all main runner tees, cross tees, wall angles, clips, connectors, fastening and hangar wires. Provide named product, or equal by System Conwed Corp., Donn Products, Chicago Metal, Flangeclamp Corp. or approved equal.
    1. Grid Type 1: Grid to be 24" x 24" pattern with white finish. Armstrong's "Prelude ML" 15/16" exposed tee, or approved equal.
    2. Grid Type 2: Grid to be 24" x 24" pattern with white finish. CertainTeed Ceilings 15/16" "Classic" exposed tee, or approved equal.

## 2.02 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Uplift Bracing and Retention Clips: Provide uplift bracing and retention clips designed to prevent tiles from dislodging due to wind or air pressure changes at exterior grid, grid in airlock vestibules, and in similar locations subject to wind or sudden changes in air pressure.
    1. Provide retention clips at all plank type tile as recommended by Manufacturer.
        a. Equal to Armstrong Universal Hold-Down clip for typical air pressure uplift locations unless otherwise recommended.

B. Edge Treatment for cut edges of tegular and grooved edge ceiling tiles and planks: Manufacturer's recommended touch up paint.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Ceiling grids and acoustical panels completely installed in all areas indicated. Ceiling plenum shall be completely enclosed from adjoining conditioned space by structure, partitions, and/or acoustical panels.

B. Suspension systems installed by direct suspension from structural systems in accordance with manufacturer's specification. Hanger wire shall support no greater than 16 square feet. Install additional hangars at ends of each suspension member, at each end of light fixtures, and 6 inches from vertical surfaces. Do not splay wires more than 5 inches in a 4 foot drop. Bottom of surfaces shall be flush and level. Miter corners where wall moldings intersect.

C. The plumbing and heating contractors shall not utilize hangers or framing of suspension system. The electrical contractor may utilize suspension system for lay-in fixture installation but shall furnish two supplementary hangers per fixture for maintaining maximum load deflection. Electrical contractor shall not utilize tile as sole support for any ceiling-mounted electrical device. All ceiling-mounted electrical devices shall be supported with brackets attached to tees.

D. Ceilings laid out as shown on the drawings, however, if not specifically shown, ceilings laid out from center of room in both directions so that cut tiles are equal at all edges. Place materials to have full bearing on suspension members.

E. Where there are cut edges that will be visible in the finished work at tegular tile, or other tile with profile below the grid, touch up cut edges as recommened by Manufacturer with Manufacturer's recommended touch-up paint. Do not apply touch-up paint on the face of ceiling tile.

## 3.02 INSPECTION

A. Following installation, soiled or discolored units cleaned to match adjacent perfect material. Any broken or damaged material which cannot be corrected by cleaning, removed and replaced with perfect material.

END OF SECTION 09 51 00

# SECTION 09 64 66 - WOOD ATHLETIC FLOORING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Gymnasium sprung wood flooring system.
      a. Basis of Design Systems
   2. Sprung wood flooring system in aerobics rooms
      a. Basis of Design Systems

B. General Contractor shall coordinate to ensure compliance with these requirements for related work performed by concrete contractor or other trades:
   1. Concrete Slab Depression: 2 3/16" based on basis of design product. Verify actual depth of wood flooring system to be provided and coordinate prior to forming foundations and slab.
   2. Surface Finish: Steel troweled and finished smooth.
   3. Concrete Tolerance: +/- 1/8" in radius of 10'. Floor Flatness and Floor Levelness (FF and FL) numbers are not recognized.
   4. Compressive Strength: Concrete shall be a minimum of 3,000 psi and a maximum of 4000 psi compressive strength after 28 days. Concrete shall be free of washed river gravel, pea gravel, flint or hardener additives. No lightweight concrete.
   5. High spots shall be ground level and low spots shall be filled in with approved leveling compound by the general contractor to meet the tolerance above.

C. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 03 Section - Concrete.
   2. Division 03 Section - Concrete Finishing.
   3. Division 03 Section - Polished Concrete Floor.
   4. Division 07 Section - Expansion Control, for expansion control joints, installed flush with adjacent concrete floors, and expansion joint installed between rubber landing flooring and wood flooring.
   5. Division 08 Section - Door Hardware, for metal thresholds at door openings.
   6. Division 09 Section - Resilient Flooring.
   7. Division 11 Section - Athletic Equipment, for volleyball inserts installed in wood flooring system.
   8. Division 26, for flush electrical boxes installed in wood flooring.

### 1.03 REFERENCES

A. MFMA - Maple Flooring Manufacturers Association

B. MFMA PUR - Performance Uniformity Requirements

C. DIN 108032 (part 2) 2001 - Performance Test

D. DIN 108032 (part 2) 1991 - Performance Test

E. ASTM F2772 - Athletic Performance Properties of Indoor Sports Floor Systems

F. EN 14904 - European Committee for Standardization - Surfaces for Sports areas

G. ASTM F2772 - Athletic Performance Properties of Indoor Sports Floor Systems

H. Rubber Ramps:
   1. Texas Accessibility Standards (TAS).
   2. ASTM D395 - Standard Test Methods for Rubber Property - Compression Set.
   3. ASTM D412 - Standard Test Methods for Vulcanized Rubber and Thermoplastic Elastomers - Tension.
   4. ASTM D2240 - Test Method for Rubber Property - Durometer Hardness.

## 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Floor System Manufacturer Qualifications
   1. Manufacturer shall be an established firm experienced in field and have been in business or a minimum of ten (10) years.
   2. Manufacturer will be a member in good standing of the Maple Flooring Manufacturers Association (MFMA).

B. Floor Contractor/Installer Qualifications and Certifications
   1. The flooring contractor shall be an Accredited Installer with MFMA Accredited Installer(s) on-site for the duration of the wood floor installation; or, a contractor approved in writing by Manufacturer.
   2. Flooring contractor shall submit a list of at least three completed projects of similar magnitude and complexity completed under current corporate identity.

## 1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturer’s Product: Submit specifications sheets.

B. Shop Drawings: Show transitions to adjacent flooring, including rubber ramps.

C. Sample of specified floor system.

D. Sample Warranty.

E. Qualifications for Manufacturer and Installer.

F. Suppliers shall submit certificates attesting that materials furnished will meet specifications for grade, quality, and performance criteria.

## 1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Literature: Submit copies of "MFMA Care and Preservation of Your Wood Floors", and other maintenance instructions as recommended by Manufacturer.

## 1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Materials shall not be delivered, stored or installed until all masonry, painting, plastering tilework, marble and terrazzo work is complete, and all overhead mechanical work, lighting, backstops, scoreboards etc. requiring lifts are installed. Maintain room temperature and relative humidity within ranges per Manufacturer's requirements prior to installation and until building is occupied by Owner. Ideal installation/storage conditions are the same as those that will prevail when building is occupied.

B. Materials shall not be stored at the installation location if the moisture content of the concrete slab exceeds 4% or vapor transmission exceeds 4.5 pounds per 1,000 square feet using a

calcium chloride test or the In-Slab relative humidity level for the concrete slab is 80% or lower before installation.

## 1.08 JOB CONDITIONS AND SEQUENCING

A. Do not install floor system until concrete has been cured 60 days and the requirements for room acclimation are achieved. Concrete will be free of sealers, hardeners and curing agents.

B. General Contractor is responsible to ensure slab is clean and free of all dirt and debris prior to floor installation beginning.

C. Permanent heat, light and ventilation shall be installed and operating before, during and after installation. Maintain a temperature range of 55 to 80 degrees Fahrenheit and a relative humidity range of 35 to 50%, or as required by Manufacturer, whichever is more stringent. Consult MFMA guidelines for more information.

D. After wood floors are finished, area to be kept locked by general contractor to allow curing time for the finish. If after required curing time general contractor or owner requires use of gym, he shall protect the floor by covering with non-fibered kraft paper or red rosin paper with taped joints, until acceptance by owner (or owner's agent) of the complete floor system.

## 1.09 WARRANTY

A. The Wood flooring Manufacturer and Installer will warranty the product jointly for a period of one year from the date of substantial completion. An unsigned copy of the warranty must accompany the submittal.
   1. Manufacturer warranty on material, to be free from manufacturing defects for a period of 1 year from the date of substantial completion.
   2. Installer warranty on installation, for a period of 1 year from the date of substantial completion.

B. Wood flooring warranty shall not cover damage caused in whole or in part by casualty, ordinary wear and tear, abuse, use for which material is not designed, faulty construction of the building, settlement of the building walls, failure of the other contractors to adhere to specifications, separation of the concrete slab and excessive dryness or excessive moisture from humidity, spillage, migration through the slab or wall, or any other source.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Bais of Design: Wood flooring by "Sportwood Ultra Star System" floor system as provided by Robbins Sports Surfaces, www.robbinsfloor.com, (800-543-1913) or District approved equal. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the named products or approved equal by another manufacturer.

B. Rubber door landings and transition ramps: As manufactured by SafePath Products by Van Duerr Industries, Inc. www.SafePathProducts.com.

## 2.02 WOOD FLOORING MATERIALS

A. Vapor Barrier Membrane: 6-mil polyethylene sheet.

B. Subfloor
   1. Robbins Eclipse subfloor panels with factory attached resilient pads.

C. Robbins Sportwood Ultra Star System
   1. 3/4" Green (50 durometer)Bio-Cushion Isolator pads.
   2. Subfloor material - 7/16" Oriented Strand Board (OSB), APA Rated Sheathing, Exposure I.

3. Nail - 1" coated staples or equivalent.
4. Adhesive:
   a. Subfloor-construction adhesives - PL400 or equivalent.
   b. Maple flooring--Robbins Sportwood Elastomeric Adhesive.
5. Flooring: 7/16" thick x 7/8" x 9" square edge, edge grain, kiln dry, northern hard maple as manufactured by Robbins and graded in accordance with MFMA standards.
   a. Wood Species and Quality: Select clear, Northern Hard Maple, exhibiting minimal variation in color.
   b. Grade: 1st or better.
6. Coordinate flush expansion joint conditions at door openings with adjacent concrete floor at recessed slab installation. Neatly router surface of wood flooring as required to receive flush mounted metal expansion joint covers.

D. Perimeter Base Molding - Robbins black, 3" x 4" ventilating type.

E. Finishing Materials: MFMA approved oil modified polyurethane sealer and finish.

F. Perimeter vented rubber base: 3" x 4" ventilating type.

## 2.03 RUBBER LANDINGS AND TRANSITIONS

A. Landings, and Ramps: 100% reclaimed 20 mesh minus rubber with urethane binders, formed by compression molding. SafePath "CourtEdge Reducer" ramps and "EntryLevel" landings.
   1. Heights / Thickness: As required for flush flooring transitions.
   2. Properties:
      a. Tensile Strength: Minimum 630 PSI, tested to ASTM D412.
      b. Compression: Maximum 7.85%, tested to ASTM D395.
      c. Shore Hardness: Shore A 65, tested to ASTM D2240.
      d. Absorption: Maximum 0.75%, tested to ASTM C1026.
      e. Density: 1.01 g/cm$^3$.
   3. Performance Requirements:
      a. Static coefficient of friction, tested to ASTM C1028:
         1) Wet: 0.79
         2) Dry: 0.95
      b. Fixed angle walking: Static coefficient of friction of 0.50, tested for bare foot and various shoe types using male and femail personnel facing up and down slope at angle of 27 degrees, with running water.
   4. Surface coating: Stonecap.

B. Adhesives: As recommended by Manufacturer for applications indicated.
   1. Adhesive for concrete substrate: Sikaflex-1a by Sika Corporation, or as recommended by Manufacturer.

C. Patching Compound: Type approved by transition Manufacturer.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 INSPECTION

A. Inspect concrete subfloors for proper tolerance and dryness, and report any discrepancies to the Contractor.

B. All work required to put the concrete subfloors in acceptable condition shall be the responsibility of the general contractor.
   1. Refer to Part 1 of these specifications for requirements.
   2. Concrete floor shall be provided broom cleaned and vacuumed by general contractor, prior to start of wood floor installation.

C. Installer shall document all working conditions provided in General Specifications prior to commencement of installation. Beginning installation constitutes acceptance of substrate conditions.

## 3.02 INSTALLATION OF WOOD FLOORING

A. Robbins Sportwood Ultra Star System
   1. Install polyethylene with joints lapped a minimum of 6"
   2. Install Robbins Bio-Cushion Isolator pads to bottom of first layer of subfloor-12" O.C.
   3. Install first layer of subfloor perpendicular to direction of Sportwood. Apply ribbons of PL400 adhesive in a box-X pattern. Over this, secure second layer of underlayment on a diagonal (approximately 45 degrees) to first layer with 1" staples placed 12" O.C. in both directions. All subfloor joints shall be staggered and spaced 1/8"-1/4".
   4. Trowel on Robbins Sportwood Adhesive at approximately 50 square feet per gallon.
   5. Install Robbins Sportwood 7/16" maple flooring in Robbins elastomeric adhesive, laying in continuous strip pattern end to end.
   6. Robbins Sportwood shall be laid with fine hairline joints and not driven tightly except for low humidity regions. (Consult your local Robbins contractor.) Provide a 2" expansion void at minimum.

B. Sanding
   1. Sand flooring with drum sander, edger, buffer, and hand scraper.
      a. Use coarse, medium and fine grade sandpaper.
      b. After sanding with drum sander, buff entire floor using 100 grit screenback or equal grit sandpaper, with a heavy-duty buffing machine.
      c. Vacuum or tack floor before first coat of finish.
      d. Floor shall present a smooth surface without drum stop marks, gouges, streaks or shiners.

C. Finishing Wood Floors
   1. Apply 2 coats of Sealer and 2 coats of finish.
   2. Screen or steel wool and vacuum and/or tack between each coat after it dries.

D. Perimeter Base Molding
   1. Install vent cove base anchored to walls with base cement and screws or anchors.
   2. Use pre-molded outside corners and neatly mitered inside corners and install with hairline joints.
   3. At reducer ramps and other discontinuities in plane or level, neatly miter base moldings and install with hairline joints.

E. Reducer Ramps and Transitions: Install all reducer ramps and transitions in compliance with Texas Accessibility Standards.
   1. Refer to Division 07 Section "Expansion Control" for expansion control joints to adjacent flooring materials. Coordinate requirements with other trades as required, and router edges of floor planks as required where flush installation of expansion covers is indicated.

## 3.03 [INSTALLATION OF RUBBER LANDING AND TRANSITIONS]

A. Preparation: Prepare surfaces to receive transitions. Remove dirt, oil, and loose and foreign matter that could impair adhesion. Fill cracks, holes, and voids over 1/2" in width with patching compound and finish flush with adjacent surfaces. Remove bumps and high spots. Abrade highly polished, imporous, or waxed surfaces.

B. Do not install transitions until substrate is dry and free from moisture.

C. Installation:

1. Neatly cut and fit transitions to meet installation conditions.
2. After dry-fitting, apply adhesive to underside of transition; evenly spreading using a trowel. Allow to dry for 5 to 15 minutes, then position transition on substrate.
3. Press to fully bond with substrate.
4. At ramps installed to landings, adhere landing and ramp to concrete floor slab substrate. Refer to Division 7 "Expansion Joints" for transition at doorway between landing and wood flooring.
5. At ramps installed as transition directly from wood flooring, adhere to wood flooring edge as recommended by Manufacturer.

D. Protection: Protect installed transitions from traffic for a minimum of 24 hours after installation, and until adhesive has fully set.

## 3.04 CLEANING

A. Clean up all unused materials and debris and remove same from the premises.

END OF SECTION 09 64 66

# SECTION 09 65 66 - ATHLETIC RUBBER FLOORING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 DESCRIPTION

A. Scope:
   1. The complete installation of resilient athletic rubber sports flooring.
   2. Accessories for installation, maintenance, and repair.

B. Related Specifications
   1. Division 3 Section “Concrete.”
   2. Division 9 Section “Resilient Flooring” for rubber base.

### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Floor System Manufacturer Qualifications
   1. Manufacturer shall be an established firm experienced in field and have been in business for a minimum of ten (10) years.
   2. Manufacturer must be certified ISO 9001.

B. Floor Contractor/Installer Qualifications
   1. Flooring contractor shall be experienced in the flooring field.
   2. Flooring contractor shall be factory-approved and have completed at least three projects of similar magnitude and complexity.

C. Provide mock-up of 6’ x 6’ minimum, to be evaluated by Architect prior to proceeding.

D. Manufacturer must be certified ISO 9001.

### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit samples of the actual sport surface in the standard colors.

B. Submit three copies of each of the following:
   1. Manufacturer’s requirements for correct preparation, finishing and testing of substrate base material to receive premanufactured rubber sport surface.
   2. Adhesive product data sheets and manufacturer’s certificates indicating approval for the proposed application.
   3. Interior and exterior line paint data sheets and manufacturers certificates indicating approval for the proposed application.
   4. Manufacturer's standard warranty.
   5. Manufacturer's installation and maintenance instructions.

C. Shop Drawings: provide shop drawings prepared for the specific project illustrating layouts, details, dimensions and other data.

## 1.05 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS

A. Provide extra stock materials from original dye lots, for use in facility operations and maintenance (approximately 2% of the total floor surface for each color, surface texture and format of Manufactured Product).

## 1.06 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

A. Delivery of Materials
   1. Material shall not be delivered or installed until all masonry, painting, plastering, tile work, marble and terrazzo work are completed, and all overhead mechanical work, lighting, backstops, scoreboards are installed. Room temperature of at least 55 degrees Fahrenheit and moisture content of concrete slab of 3% or less.
   2. Products Supplied must be delivered in Manufacturer's original, unopened and undamaged packaging with identification labels intact.

B. Storage:
   1. Area where materials are to be stored should be maintained at 55 degrees Fahrenheit and under 50% relative humidity by the General Contractor.
   2. Products Supplied must be protected from exposure to harmful weather conditions and must be safely stored on a clean, dry, flat surface. Store rolls of resilient athletic flooring upright; store tiles of resilient athletic flooring on a flat surface, carefully protecting corners and edges.
   3. Avoid storing Manufactured Product for extended periods of time or additional material trimming may be required.
   4. Do not install product damage during handling (i.e. dents/scratches, edge chipping, excessive warping, etc.).

## 1.07 JOB CONDITIONS

A. Ensure that concrete subfloors, on or below grade, are installed over a permanent effective vapor retarder, respecting current versions of the standard practice ASTM E1643 and the standard specification ASTM E1745. The vapor retarder must be placed directly underneath the concrete slab, above the granular fill, as per Manufacturer's instructions. The vapor retarder must have a perm rating of 0.1 or less and must have a minimum thickness of 10 mil (0.010in).

B. Ensure that concrete sealers or curing compounds are applied or mixed with the subfloors (refer to Section 03 05 00 – Common Work Results for Concrete of Division 3).

C. The subfloor surface must be free of any paint, wax, oil, grease, sealer, curing compound, solvent or any other contaminants that may inhibit bond. All contaminants must be removed from the surface via mechanical abatement. Use of abatement chemicals is not recommended.

D. Maintain a stable room and subfloor temperature within the recommended range of 65 degrees Fahrenheit to 86 degrees Fahrenheit (18 degrees Celsius to 30 degrees Celsius), 48 hours prior to installation, during the installation, and 48 hours after the installation. Recommended ambient humidity control level is between 35 to 55%.

E. Installation of resilient athletic flooring will not commence until the building is enclosed and all other trades have completed their work. It is the General Contractor or Construction Manager's responsibility to maintain a secure and clean working area before, during and after the installation of the resilient athletic flooring.

## 1.08 WARRANTY

A. The resilient athletic flooring is warranted to be free from manufacturing defects for a period of one (1) year from the date of shipment from the Manufacturer.

B. The resilient athletic flooring shall be warranted against excessive wear under normal usage for a period of five (5) years from the date of shipment from the Manufacturer.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 PREFABRICATED RUBBER SURFACE

**A.** Basis-of-Design Product: Prefabricated rubber sport flooring to be AktivPlus ½-inch thickness, as manufactured by Regupol America LLC, or approved equal. Color shall be "Stormy Night" (AKP35107) from manufacturer's standards. Prefabricated rubber surface to be calendared and vulcanized with a base of natural and synthetic rubber, stabilizing agents and pigmentation. Provide material in standard 4'-0" rolls

### 2.02 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.

B. Metal Edge Strips: Metal edge strips, in sizes to match rubber flooring thickness and adjacent finish materials at transitions. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide metal strips.
   1. Rubber floor to Concrete, Terrazzo, or other lower floor material: Ramp at door threshold in compliance with TAS 2012. Finish: Stainless steel.

### 2.03 ADHESIVE

A. Rubber sport surface adhesive to be two part polyurethane or epoxy adhesive suitable for adherence of goods to concrete substrate. Adhesive to be supplied by the surface manufacture.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 GENERAL

A. Installation of the resilient athletic flooring to be carried out no sooner than the specified curing time of concrete subfloor (normal density concrete curing time is approximately 28 days for development of design strength). Refer to current version of ASTM F710.

B. Confirm concrete has smooth, dense finish, and is highly compacted with a tolerance of 1/8'' in a 10ft radius (3.2mm in 3.05m radius). Floor Flatness (FF) and Floor Levelness (FL) numbers are not recognized.

C. All inserts, penetrations and other construction items which affect the installation of the prefabricated rubber sport surface to be in place.

D. Moisture and alkalinity tests must be performed on all concrete substrates, under in-service conditions. It is recommended to turn on the HVAC unit prior to performing moisture testing, in order to ensure stable testing conditions and accurate results. The concrete's surface pH should be between 7 and 10. Relative humidity of the concrete slab must not exceed 85%, in accordance with ASTM F2170 (in situ probes). Moisture vapor emissions from the concrete slab must not exceed the tolerance of the adhesive specified, in accordance with ASTM F1869 (anhydrous calcium chloride).

E. If installing over wood subfloors, ensure exterior grade plywood with at least one good side, such as: APA (Engineered Wood Association) Exterior grade plywood (A-A Exterior, A-B Exterior or AC Exterior) and CANPLY (Canadian Plywood Association) Exterior certified plywood (Canada: Grade G2S A-A or G1S A-C. USA: G2S A-A, A-B, B-B, or G1S A-C, B-C). There must be proper underfloor ventilation, plywood must be dry and should have a moisture content ranging between 6 and 12%, when measured with a quality wood moisture meter (electronic hygrometer).

F. Deficiencies in substrate to be corrected prior to installation.

## 3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install prefabricated rubber sports surface in accordance with the latest manufacturer's recommendations. Installation by a manufacturer certified contractor.

B. Hold all seams in place with suitable weights for a minimum of 12 hours and precisely fit prior to adhesion.

C. Product should be unrolled and allowed to relax before cutting and fitting, 12 to 24 hours.

D. Mix two-component polyurethane adhesive according to manufacturer's instructions. Adhesive to be spread with an 1/8 or 1/6″ notched trowel.

E. Unroll product into freshly applied adhesive. End seams should be overlapped and double cut. Edge seams should be factory edge. Overlap seams 1/8" and compression fit.

F. Roll the entire sport floor surface with a medium-size steel roller to remove entrapped air.

G. Wipe away adhesive that oozes between seams with wood alcohol.

H. Install rubber base, anchored to walls with base cement.

I. Clean up all unused materials and debris and remove same from the premises. Dispose of empty containers in accordance with federal and local statutes.

END OF SECTION 09 65 66

# SECTION 09 66 23 - RESINOUS MATRIX TERRAZZO FLOORING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Thin-set, epoxy-resin terrazzo flooring.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealants installed with terrazzo.

### 1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Aggregate: Marble chips or other types of aggregate.

B. NTMA: National Terrazzo and Mosaic Association, Inc.

### 1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Include terrazzo installation requirements. Include plans, elevations, sections, component details, and attachments to other work. Show layout of the following:
   1. Divider strips.
   2. Control-joint strips.
   3. Accessory strips.
   4. Abrasive strips.
   5. Terrazzo patterns.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 6 inches in size.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: NTMA color plates showing the full range of colors and patterns available for each terrazzo type.

E. Samples for Verification: For each type, material, color, and pattern of terrazzo and accessory required showing the full range of color, texture, and pattern variations expected. Label each terrazzo sample to identify manufacturer's matrix color and aggregate types, sizes, and proportions. Prepare Samples of same thickness and from same material to be used for the Work, in size indicated below:
   1. Terrazzo: 6-inch square Samples.
   2. Accessories: 6-inch long Samples of each exposed strip item required.

F. Qualification Data: Terrazzo Contractor shall submit two copies of qualification data.

   1. Include list of projects indicating name and location of project, name of Owner, name and contact information for General Contractor, and name and contact information for Architect.
   2. Include letter from NTMA with the name of the Project and name of member, stating current member status.

G. Material Certificates:

1. Epoxy Resin: For each type of resin required indicating that materials meet specification requirements, by manufacturer.
2. Aggregate: For each type of aggregate required indicating compatibility with terrazzo mix, signed by aggregate supplier.

H. Installer Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that installers comply with requirements.

I. Maintenance Literature: Terrazzo Contractor shall submit two copies of maintenance recommendations from NTMA.

## 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Acceptable Epoxy Resin Manufacturer: An Associate Member of the NTMA, experienced in manufacturing epoxy resin in accordance with NTMA standards and with a record of successful in-service performance as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required materials.

B. Acceptable Terrazzo Contractor: A Contractor Member of NTMA whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

1. Installer shall have completed terrazzo installations within the past 5 years of scale and complexity similar to the proposed installation.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain primary terrazzo materials from single source and from single manufacturer. Provide secondary materials including patching and fill material, joint sealant, and repair materials of type and from source recommended by manufacturer of primary materials.

D. Source Limitations for Aggregates: Obtain each color, grade, type, and variety of granular materials from single source with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

E. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
1. Build mockups for terrazzo including accessories.
   a. Size: Minimum 100 sq. ft. of typical poured-in-place flooring and base condition for each color and pattern in locations directed by Architect.
2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
3. Approved mockups may become part of the completed work if undisturbed at time of substantial completion.

## 1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials to Project site in supplier's original wrappings and containers, labeled with source's or manufacturer's name, material or product brand name, and lot number if any.

B. Store materials in their original, undamaged packages and containers, inside a well-ventilated area protected from weather, moisture, soiling, extreme temperatures, and humidity.

C. Epoxy components shall be stored in a space where the ambient temperature can be maintained between 60 and 90 degrees Fahrenheit before use.

## 1.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature, ambient temperature, moisture, ventilation, and other conditions affecting terrazzo installation.

B. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of construction contiguous with precast terrazzo by field measurements before fabrication.

C. Provide permanent lighting or, if permanent lighting is not in place, simulate permanent lighting conditions during terrazzo installation.

D. Close spaces to traffic during terrazzo application and for not less than 24 hours after application unless manufacturer recommends a longer period.

E. Control and collect water and dust produced by grinding operations. Provide temporary enclosures and other suitable methods to protect adjacent construction from detrimental effects of grinding operations.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. NTMA Standards: Comply with NTMA's "Terrazzo Specifications and Design Guide" and with written recommendations for terrazzo type indicated unless more stringent requirements are specified.

## 2.02 EPOXY-RESIN TERRAZZO

A. Epoxy-Resin Terrazzo: Comply with NTMA's "Terrazzo Specifications and Design Guide" and manufacturer's written instructions for matrix and aggregate proportions and mixing.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following of approved equal:
      a. Terrazzo & Marble Supply Company.
      b. Wausau Tile, Inc.
      c. Key Resin Company; Terrazzo Division.
   2. Thickness: 3/8 inch.
   3. Formulated Mix Color and Pattern: Custom color to match existing terrazzo installed at each location, including primary and accent color as indicated on drawings.

B. Materials:
   1. Primer: Type recommended and produced by manufacturer of epoxy resin composition for type of service and floor condition indicated.
   2. Flexible Reinforcing Membrane: Type recommended and produced by manufacturer of epoxy resin composition for type of service and floor condition indicated. .
   3. Epoxy-Resin Matrix: Manufacturer's standard recommended for use indicated.
      a. Physical Properties without Aggregates:

         Provide flooring system that meets or exceeds the listed minimum physical property requirements using specified epoxy matrix incorporating marble aggregate as per manufacturer’s mix recommendations when tested according to the referenced standard test method in parentheses.

         1) Compressive Strength (ASTM D695): 12,000 psi
         2) Impact Resistance (MIL-PRF-3134 Para 4.7.3): 0.005" indentation, no loosening or cracking
         3) Indentation Resistance (MIL-PRF-3134, Para. 4.7.4.2.1): No Indentation
         4) Adhesion (A.C.I. Committee 503.1): >525 psi.
            a) 100% failure in concrete

5) Resistance to Elevated Temperatures (MIL-PRF-3134 Para. 4.7.5.1): No slip, flow or softening.
6) Co-efficient of Linear Expansion (ASTM D696): 14 x $10^6$ (max.) per degree F/$12^0$
   a) to $140^0$ F
7) Tensile Strength (ASTM C638): 3,400 psi.
8) Flammability (FTMS 372/NFPA 253/ ASTM E648): Greater than 1.07 watts/cm.

b. Physical Properties with Aggregates: For resin blended with Georgia white marble, ground, grouted, and cured per requirements in NTMA's "Terrazzo Specifications and Design Guide"; comply with the following:
1) Flammability: Self-extinguishing, maximum extent of burning 1/4 inch per ASTM D 635.
2) Thermal Coefficient of Linear Expansion: 0.0025 inch/inch per deg F for temperature range of minus 12 to plus 140 deg F per ASTM D 696.

4. Aggregates: Comply with NTMA gradation standards for mix indicated and contain no deleterious or foreign matter.
   a. Abrasion and Impact Resistance: Less than 40 percent loss per ASTM C 131.
   b. 24-Hour Absorption Rate: Less than 0.75 percent.
   c. Dust Content: Less than 1.0 percent by weight.
5. Finishing Grout: Resin based.

## 2.03 STRIP MATERIALS

A. Heavy-Top Divider Strips: L-type angle in depth required for topping thickness indicated.
1. Bottom-Section Material: Matching top-section material.
2. Top-Section Material: White-zinc alloy
3. Top-Section Width: 1/8 inch

B. Control-Joint Strips: Separate, double L-type angles, positioned back to back, that match material and color of divider strips and in depth required for topping thickness indicated.

C. Accessory Strips: Match divider-strip width, material, and color unless otherwise indicated. Use the following types of accessory strips as required to provide a complete installation:
1. Edge-bead strips for exposed edges of terrazzo.

D. Transition Strips
1. Type: Anodized aluminum metal transitions
2. Acceptable Manufacturer: Ceramic Tool Company or approved equal
3. Color: Medium Bronze
4. Location: Terrazzo / Concrete: CTC Tranz

## 2.04 MISCELLANEOUS ACCESSORIES

A. Strip Adhesive: Epoxy-resin adhesive recommended by adhesive manufacturer for this use.
1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 70 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Adhesives shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. Anchoring Devices:
1. Strips: Provide mechanical anchoring devices or adhesives for strip materials as recommended by manufacturer and required for secure attachment to substrate.

C. Patching and Fill Material: Terrazzo manufacturer's resinous product approved and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.

D. Joint Compound: Terrazzo manufacturer's resinous product approved and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.

E. Resinous Matrix Terrazzo Cleaner: Chemically neutral cleaner with pH factor between 7 and 10 that is biodegradable, phosphate free, and recommended by sealer manufacturer for use on terrazzo type indicated.

F. Sealer: Slip- and stain-resistant, penetrating-type sealer that is chemically neutral; does not affect terrazzo color or physical properties; is recommended by sealer manufacturer; and complies with NTMA's "Terrazzo Specifications and Design Guide" for terrazzo type indicated.
   1. Surface Friction: Not less than 0.6 according to ASTM D 2047.
   2. Acid-Base Properties: With pH factor between 7 and 10.
   3. Sealers shall have a VOC content of 200 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

   1. Slab Flatness Tolerance: Subfloor is not to vary more than 1/4 inch from true plane in a 10-foot span.
   2. Cracks: Locate cracks and joints in concrete substrates. Verify location of control joints and expansion joints in epoxy terrazzo flooring.

      a. If required to prevent cracks in concrete substrates transmitting through epoxy terrazzo flooring, the Terrazzo Contractor shall make a written recommendation to install a crack suppression membrane and include specific recommendations on type and location.

B. The General Contractor shall retain the services of an independent testing laboratory to verify that concrete substrates are dry by one of the methods below and moisture-vapor emissions are within acceptable levels according to epoxy resin manufacturer's written instructions.

   1. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
   2. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with application of resinous flooring only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lbs. of water/1000 sq. ft. of slab area in 24 hours.
   3. If required to prevent moisture vapor transmission in concrete substrates, the Terrazzo Contractor shall make a written recommendation to install moisture mitigation materials and include specific recommendations on type and location.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions, including levelness tolerances, have been corrected.

   1. Materials used to correct nonconforming conditions must be compatible with the selected epoxy system and be approved by the manufacturer of epoxy resin materials and Terrazzo Contractor.

## 3.02 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrates of substances, including oil, grease, and curing compounds, that might impair terrazzo bond. Provide clean, dry, and neutral substrate for terrazzo application.

B. Concrete Slabs:
   1. Provide sound concrete surfaces free of laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, form-release agents, dust, dirt, grease, oil, and other contaminants incompatible with terrazzo.
      a. Shot-blast surfaces with an apparatus that abrades the concrete surface, contains the dispensed shot within the apparatus, and re-circulates the shot by vacuum pickup.
      b. Repair damaged and deteriorated concrete according to terrazzo manufacturer's written recommendations.
      c. Use patching and fill material to fill holes and depressions in substrates according to terrazzo manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Verify that concrete substrates are dry and moisture-vapor emissions are within acceptable levels according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Moisture Testing: Perform tests indicated below.
      a. Calcium Chloride Test: Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test per ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
         1) Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft., and perform not less than two tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
      b. In-Situ Probe Test: Perform relative-humidity test using in-situ probes per ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative-humidity-level measurement.
      c. Test Method: Test for moisture content by method recommended in writing by terrazzo manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.

D. Protect other work from water and dust generated by grinding operations. Control water and dust to comply with environmental protection regulations.

## 3.03 EPOXY-RESIN TERRAZZO INSTALLATION

A. General: Apply each component of epoxy matrix terrazzo flooring system according to manufacturer's directions to produce a uniform monolithic flooring surface of thickness indicated.

B. Flexible Reinforcing Membrane: Membrane application for crack prevention. Route out all cracks and fill with semi-flexible joint filler. Apply membrane (spread at 40 mils thickness) over prepared substrate to produce full substrate coverage in areas to receive terrazzo.

C. Primer / Bond Coat: Apply epoxy bond coat over prepared substrate at manufacturer's recommended spreading rate.

D. Divider Strips: Set divider strips as indicated on plans. Strips shall be set in a full bed of epoxy adhesive and allowed to cure before proceeding with the work.

E. Body Coat: Over bond coat surface trowel apply epoxy matrix terrazzo to thickness of 3/8. Seed the surface with additional aggregate of the same blend as the trowel applied mortar. Work the aggregate into the surface to an even aggregate chip dispersion. Compact the matrix into a tight even compound.

F. Grinding: Grind floor using terrazzo grinding machines, mounting progressively finer grit stones to achieve flat surface with uniform exposure of marble chips.

G. Grouting and Finish Grind: Grout floor with epoxy resin and finish grind to remove grout.

H. Sealing Coats: Apply sealing coats of type recommended by manufacturer to produce finish matching approved samples. Finished floor shall be 3/8" thick.

I. Comply with NTMA's written recommendations for terrazzo and accessory installation.

J. Place, rough grind, grout, cure grout, fine grind, and finish terrazzo according to manufacturer's written instructions and NTMA's "Terrazzo Specifications and Design Guide."

K. Installation Tolerance: Limit variation in terrazzo surface from level to 1/4 inch in 10 feet; noncumulative.

L. Ensure that matrix components and fluids from grinding operations do not stain terrazzo by reacting with divider and control-joint strips.

M. Delay fine grinding until heavy trade work is complete and construction traffic through area is restricted.

N. Water Proofing Membrane:
   1. Prepare and prefill substrate cracks with membrane material.
   2. Install membrane to produce full substrate coverage at suspended slabs in areas to receive terrazzo.
   3. Prepare membrane according to manufacturer's written instructions before applying substrate primer.

O. Primer: Apply to terrazzo substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions.

P. Strip Materials:
   1. Divider and Control-Joint Strips:
      a. Locate divider strips in locations indicated and as recommended by manufacturer.
      b. Install control-joint strips back to back directly above concrete-slab control joints.
      c. Install control-joint strips with 1/4-inch gap between strips, and install sealant in gap.
      d. Install strips in adhesive setting bed without voids below strips, or mechanically anchor strips as required to attach strips to substrate, as recommended by strip manufacturer.
   2. Accessory Strips: Install as required to provide a complete installation
   3. Abrasive Strips: Install with surface of abrasive strip positioned 1/16 inch higher than terrazzo surface.

## 3.04 REPAIR

A. Cut out and replace terrazzo areas that evidence lack of bond with substrate. Cut out terrazzo areas in panels defined by strips and replace to match adjacent terrazzo, or repair panels according to NTMA's written recommendations, as approved by Architect.

## 3.05 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Cleaning:
   1. Remove grinding dust from installation and adjacent areas.
   2. Wash surfaces with cleaner according to NTMA's written recommendations and manufacturer's written instructions; rinse surfaces with water and allow them to dry thoroughly.

B. Sealing:
   1. Seal surfaces according to NTMA's written recommendations.
   2. Apply sealer according to sealer manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Protection: Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to Installer, that ensure that terrazzo is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 09 66 23

# SECTION 09 67 23 - RESINOUS FLOORING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes one resinous flooring system consisting of a nominal 1/4" four component troweled epoxy mortar consisting of an epoxy binder, pigments, and graded quartz aggregates followed by a two-component, 100% solids, general service epoxy top coat.

### 1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include manufacturer's technical data, application instructions, and recommendations for each resinous flooring component required.

B. Samples for Verification: For each resinous flooring system required, 6 inches square, applied to a rigid backing by Installer for this Project.

C. Installer Certificates: Signed by manufacturer certifying installer complies with specified requirements.

D. Maintenance Data: Include in maintenance manuals.

### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. No request for substitution shall be considered that would change the generic resin type or minimum thickness of floor system specified. Equivalent materials of other manufactures may be substituted with approval by Architect. Request will be considered if submitted 10 days prior to bid date. Request will be subject to requirements described in this section.

B. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer (applicator) in resinous flooring system similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain primary resinous flooring materials, including primers, resins, hardening agents, grouting coats, and topcoats, through one source from a single manufacturer, with not less than 5 years of successful experience in manufacturing and installing principal materials described in this section. Provide secondary materials, including patching and fill material, joint sealant, and repair materials, of type and from source recommended by manufacturer of primary materials.

D. Manufacturer Field Technical Service Representatives: Resinous flooring manufacturer shall utilize trained installers specifically on system to be used.
   1. Field Technical Services Representatives shall be employed by the system manufacture to assist in the quality assurance and quality control process of the installation and shall be available to perform field problem solving issues with the installer.
   2. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

E. Pre-installation Conference:
   1. General contractor shall arrange a meeting not less than thirty days prior to starting work.
   2. Attendance:
      a. General Contractor
      b. Architect/Owner's Representative.
      c. Manufacturer/Installer's Representative.

## 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating brand name and directions for storage and mixing with other components.

B. Store materials to prevent deterioration from moisture, heat, cold, direct sunlight, or other detrimental effects.

C. All materials used shall be factory pre-weighed and pre-packaged in single, easy to manage batches to eliminate on site mixing errors. No on site weighing or volumetric measurements allowed.

## 1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature, ambient temperature, moisture, ventilation, and other conditions affecting resinous flooring application.
   1. Maintain material and substrate temperature between 65 and 85 deg F during resinous flooring application and for not less than 24 hours after application.

B. Lighting: Provide permanent lighting or, if permanent lighting is not in place, simulate permanent lighting conditions during resinous flooring application.

C. Close spaces to traffic during resinous flooring application and for not less than 24 hours after application, unless manufacturer recommends a longer period.

D. Concrete substrate shall be properly cured for a minimum of 30 days. A vapor barrier must be present for concrete subfloors on or below grade. Otherwise, an osmotic pressure resistant grout must be installed prior to the resinous flooring

## 1.07 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer shall furnish a single, written warranty covering both material and workmanship for a period of (1) full years from date of installation, or provide a joint and several warranty signed on a single document by material manufacturer and applicator jointly and severally warranting the materials and workmanship for a period of (1) full year from date of installation. A sample warranty letter must be included with bid package or bid may be disqualified.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 RESINOUS FLOORING EP-1 STONHARD GS/GS4

A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements;
   1. Nominal 1/4" resinous flooring includes a four component troweled mortar consisting of a epoxy-urea binder, pigments, and graded quartz aggregates followed by a two-component, 100% solids, general service pigmented epoxy topcoat.
   2. Basis of Design - Stonclad GS with Stonkote GS4 with 6 inch cove where indicated. (Contact Sean Cronin, 281 253 5125).
   3. Acceptable alternatives, subject to Architect approval:
      a. Tnemec Company, Inc. (contact Seth Case, The Barry Group, LLC, 800-326-7881).
      b. Dur-a-Flex, Inc. (contact John Davis, 214-551-2066).

B. System Characteristics:
   1. Color and Pattern: Select from manufactures standards
   2. Wearing Surface: Texture to be selected from manufacturers standards
   3. Integral Cove Base: Refer to detail drawings.
   4. Overall System Thickness: 1/4”/5mm

C. System Components: Manufacturer's standard components that are compatible with each other and as follows.
   1. Body Coat(s):
      a. Material Basis: Stonclad GS. (System must be ¼ inch troweled and primed)
      b. Resin: Epoxy
   2. Topcoats;
      a. Material Basis: Stonkote GS4
      b. Resin: epoxy
      c. Formulation Description: (2) component, UV stable epoxy
      d. Color: To be selected from manufacturers standards
      e. Finish: Gloss
      f. Number of Coats: (1)
      g. Texture: Texture as selected from manufacturers samples

D. Primer: Type recommended by manufacturer for substrate and body coats indicated. Formulation Description: Stonhard Standard Primer. Primer is required for Stonclad system.

E. Patching and Fill Material: Resinous product of or approved by resinous flooring manufacturer and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.

F. Joint Sealant: Type recommended or produced by resinous flooring manufacturer for type of service and joint condition indicated. Allowances should be included for Stonflex MP7 joint fill material.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 PREPARATION

A. General: Prepare and clean substrates according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate indicated. Provide clean, dry, and neutral Ph substrate for resinous flooring application.

B. Concrete Substrates: Provide sound concrete surfaces free of laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, form-release agents, dust, dirt, grease, oil, and other contaminants incompatible with resinous flooring.
   1. Mechanically prepare substrates as follows:
      a. Mechanically prepare with the use of Shot Blaster equipment to provide surface sound concrete surfaces free of laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, form-release agents, dust, dirt, grease, oil, and other contaminants incompatible with resinous flooring. Or,
      b. Comply with ASTM C 811 requirements, unless manufacturer's written instructions are more stringent.
   2. Repair damaged and deteriorated concrete according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written recommendations.
   3. Verify that concrete substrates are dry.

C. Resinous Materials: Mix components and prepare materials according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Use patching and fill material to fill holes and depressions in substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Treat control joints and other nonmoving substrate cracks to prevent cracks from reflecting through resinous flooring according to manufacturer's written recommendations. Allowances should be included for Stonflex MP7 joint fill material.

## 3.02 APPLICATION

A. General: Apply components of resinous flooring system according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a uniform, monolithic wearing surface of thickness indicated.
   1. Coordinate application of components to provide optimum adhesion of resinous flooring system to substrate, and optimum intercoat adhesion.
   2. Cure resinous flooring components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent contamination during application and curing processes.
   3. At substrate expansion and isolation joints, provide joint in resinous flooring to comply with resinous flooring manufacturer's written recommendations.
      a. Apply joint sealant to comply with manufacturer's written recommendations.
      b. Add 6 inch cove base where indicated.

B. Mix and apply primer over properly prepared substrate with strict adherence to manufacturer's installation procedures and coverage rates

C. Body coat: Mix base material according to manufacturer's recommended procedures. Uniformly spread mixed material over previously primed substrate using manufacturer's installation tool.

D. Sealer: Mix and apply all topcoats with strict adherence to manufacturer's installation procedures.

## 3.03 TERMINATIONS

A. Chase edges to “lock” the coating system into the concrete substrate along lines of termination.

B. Penetration Treatment: Lap and seal coating onto the perimeter of the penetrating item by bridging over compatible elastomer at the interface to compensate for possible movement.

C. Trenches: Continue coating system into trenches to maintain monolithic protection. Treat cold joints to assure bridging of potential cracks.

D. Treat floor drains by chasing the coating to lock in place at point of termination.

## 3.04 JOINTS AND CRACKS

A. Treat control joints to bridge potential cracks and to maintain monolithic protection.

B. Treat cold joints and construction joints to bridge potential cracks and to maintain monolithic protection on horizontal and vertical surfaces as well as horizontal and vertical interfaces.

C. Discontinue floor coating system at vertical and horizontal contraction and expansion joints by installing backer rod and compatible sealant after coating installation is completed. Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer for traffic conditions and chemical exposures to be encountered.

## 3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Material Sampling: Owner may at any time and any numbers of times during resinous flooring application require material samples for testing for compliance with requirements.
   1. Owner will engage an independent testing agency to take samples of materials being used. Material samples will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.

2. Testing agency will test samples for compliance with requirements, using applicable referenced testing procedures or, if not referenced, using testing procedures listed in manufacturer's product data.
3. If test results show applied materials do not comply with specified requirements, pay for testing, remove noncomplying materials, prepare surfaces coated with unacceptable materials, and reapply flooring materials to comply with requirements.

## 3.06 CLEANING, PROTECTING, AND CURING

A. Cure resinous flooring materials in compliance with manufacturer's directions, taking care to prevent contamination during stages of application and prior to completion of curing process. Close area of application for a minimum of 18 hours.

B. Protect resinous flooring materials from damage and wear during construction operation. Where temporary covering is required for this purpose, comply with manufacturer's recommendations for protective materials and method of application. General Contractor is responsible for protection and cleaning of surfaces after final coats.

C. Cleaning: Remove temporary covering and clean resinous flooring just prior to final inspection. Use cleaning materials and procedures recommended by resinous flooring manufacturer

END OF SECTION 09 67 23

# SECTION 09 77 00 - SPECIAL WALL SURFACES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Pre-manufactured panel system including mounting hardware and specified accessories.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" for furring, blocking, and other carpentry work that is not exposed to view.

### 1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
   1. Class 1/A - Flame Spread 0-25, Smoke Developed 450 or less.
   2. Class 2/B - Flame Spread 26-75, Smoke Developed 450 or less.
   3. Class 3/C - Flame Spread 76-200, Smoke Developed 450 or less

B. Architectural Woodwork Institute (AWI) Quality Standards.

### 1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Manufacturer’s Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) on each product to be used, including:
   1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
   2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
   3. Installation methods.

B. Shop Drawings: Shop drawings in sufficient detail to show fabrication, installation, anchorage and interface of the work of this Section with adjacent work.

C. Selection Samples: For each finish product specified, one complete set of color samples representing manufacturer’s standard range of available colors and patterns.

### 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not deliver wall system until painting, wet work, grinding, and similar operations that could damage, soil, or deteriorate wall system have been completed in installation areas as specified by AWI 1700-G-3.

B. If panels are stored prior to installation, store them flat in completely enclosed areas, out of the weather. If panels must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with manufacturers recommendations. Do not expose panels to continuous direct sunlight, nor to extremes in temperature and humidity. Store products in manufacturer's packaging until ready for installation.

C. Store and dispose of solvent-based materials, and materials used with solvent-based materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Do not deliver or install wall system until building is enclosed, wet work is complete and HVAC system is operating and will maintain temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period as specified by AWI 1700-G-3.

B. Do not install wall system until normal lighting conditions exist. Normal lighting conditions are described as those in place when the project is finished. This includes, but not limited to, design lighting (wall washers, spot lights and flood lights, and similar fixtures) and natural lighting.

C. Wall, ceilings, floors, and openings must be level, plumb, straight, in-line and square as specified by AWI 1700-G-3.

D. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits. Panels shall be conditioned in the environment in which they will be installed for a minimum of 72 hours prior to installation. The recommended environment is 75 degrees F (24 degrees C) and 45 percent relative humidity.

E. Environmental Conditions: Comply with Woodwork Manufacturer's recommendations for optimum temperature and humidity conditions for woodwork during its storage and installation. Do not install woodwork until these conditions have been attained and stabilized so that woodwork is within plus or minus 1.0 percent of optimum moisture content from date of installation through remainder of construction period.

## 1.07 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer warrants any product it has manufactured and sold against defects in materials or workmanship for a period of five years from the date of original purchase and acceptance for use. This warranty extends to products assembled / installed and used in the manner intended and does not cover damage or failure caused by: misuse, abuse or accidents, exposure to extreme temperature, improper installation, improper maintenance and exposure to water or excessive humidity or excessive moisture.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. The following requirements apply for product selection:
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: Panel Specialists, Inc.; 3115 Range Rd., Temple, TX 76504. ASD. Toll Free Tel: (800) 947-9422. Tel: (254) 774-9800. Fax: (254) 774-7222. Email: psiwalls@panelspec.com. Web: http://www.panelspec.com.
   2. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 01 “Substitution Procedures.”

## 2.02 PANEL SYSTEMS

A. Provide prefinished decorative panels where shown on the drawings, as specified herein, and as needed for a complete and proper installation.

B. Comply with applicable requirements of "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" in the production and installation of the wall panel system as published by the Architectural Woodwork Institute (AWI) unless otherwise indicated.

C. Panel System: #310 as manufactured by Panel Specialists, Inc. A progressive panel system with an exposed divider molding creating a 1/16 inch (1.5mm) horizontal and vertical reveal between edge banded panels. Recommended for vertical and horizontal interior installations. Maximum panel length for horizontal installations is 96 inches (2438 mm).
   1. Panel Thickness: 7/16 inches (11.1 mm).
   2. Horizontal Reveal: System to provide a reveal of 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) between panels.
   3. Vertical Reveal: System to provide a recessed reveal of 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) between panels.
   4. Panel Edge Finish: Panel edges to be finish with .018 inch (.5 mm) PVC edge banding or wood veneer, except as noted in material specifications.
   5. Panel Finish: Refer to Room Finish Schedule and drawings.
   6. Main Laminated Panel Fire Rating:
      a. Fire Rating: ASTM E84, Class A
   7. Panel Dimensions: Refer to drawings.
   8. Molding: All moldings to be .062" thick (at structural areas) 6063 alloy aluminum with T5 temper
      a. Divider Moldings
         1) #302A Divider Molding
      b. 3/8" Wide Edge Trims and 3/8" Wide Stepped corners
         1) #604 3/8" Edge Trim Molding
         2) #604A 3/8" Top Trim (2-piece)

## 2.03 FINISHES

1. Timberwood Middle School:
   a. Panel Face
      1) Finish 1: #961-58 Fog, Matte Finish
      2) Finish 2: #949-58 White, Matte Finish
      3) Finish 3: #7966-58 New Burgundy, Matte Finish
   b. Panel Face Pattern Direction: Vertical
   c. Panel Edge banding: .5 PVC banding
   d. Aluminum Molding Finish: Clear Anodized

## 2.04 MATERIALS

A. Phenolic Panels
   1. Panels to be durable 3/8" Compact Laminate panels formed from melamine resin saturated overlay and decorative papers bonded to a core of phenolic resin impregnated kraft papers to provide superior impact and moisture resistance.
   2. Phenolic panels may be interchanged with HPL faced particle board from the same laminate manufacturer without change in appearance.
      a. Basis of Design – Formica
      b. Wilsonart

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared according to AWI 1700-G-3.

B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of preparation before proceeding.

## 3.02 FIELD DIMENSIONS

A. Where wall system is indicated to be fitted to other construction, check actual dimensions of other constructions by accurate field measurements before manufacturing wall system; show recorded measurements on final shop drawings. Coordinate manufacturing schedule with construction progress to avoid delay of work.

B. Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the work, guarantee dimensions and proceed with manufacture of wall system without field measurements coordinate other construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to guaranteed dimensions.

## 3.03 PREPARATION

A. Panels must be acclimated to ambient temperature and humidity conditions in accordance with manufacturer’s specifications prior to installation. Refer to PSI installation guide for proper, handling, storage and acclimation procedures.

B. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.

C. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

## 3.04 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Field cutting of all wall systems should be accomplished using carbide tools. All face penetrations and cutouts should have a minimal 1/8 inch (3 mm) radius in corners according to NEMA Standards Publication LD 3-2005.

C. All wall systems should receive an "S" bead of panel mastic on the back of the panel during installation.

D. For vertical applications, wall systems shall be mechanically fastened to horizontal metal furring strapping spaced 24 inches (610 mm) O.C. Furring straps shall be no less than 18-ga 3-1/2 inches (89 mm) wide, continuously. Metal strapping to be installed to the drywall studs prior to the application of the gypsum board by the framing contractor. For panels installed with a horizontal orientation, strapping is recommended but not necessary.

## 3.05 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

A. Protect installed products until completion of project.

B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 09 77 00

# SECTION 09 91 00 - PAINTING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Provide complete surface preparation, priming, field painting and sealing of exposed exterior and interior items and surfaces.
   1. Surface preparation, priming, and finish coats specified in this Section are in addition to shop priming and surface treatment specified in other Sections.
   2. Examine specifications for various other trades and their provisions regarding their painting. Surfaces that are left unfinished by other sections of specifications shall be painted or finished as a part of this section.

B. Paint exposed surfaces, except where these Specifications indicate that the surface or material is not to be painted or is to remain natural. If an item or a surface is not specifically mentioned, paint the item, or surface the same as similar adjacent materials or surfaces. If a color of finish is not indicated, Architect will select from standard colors and finishes available.
   1. Painting includes field painting of exposed bare and covered pipes and ducts (including color coding), hangers, exposed steel and iron supports, and surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment that do not have a factory-applied final finish.

C. Do not paint prefinished items and finished metal surfaces except where otherwise noted in Drawings or specifications. Do not paint concealed surfaces, operating parts, and labels.
   1. Prefinished items include the following factory-finished components:
      a. Architectural woodwork.
      b. Acoustical wall panels.
      c. Toilet enclosures.
      d. Metal lockers.
      e. Finished mechanical and electrical equipment.
      f. Light fixtures.
      g. Zinc wall panels
      h. Prefinished wall, roof & soffit panels
   2. Concealed surfaces include walls or ceilings in the following generally inaccessible spaces:
      a. Foundation spaces.
      b. Furred areas.
      c. Ceiling plenums.
      d. Pipe spaces.
      e. Duct shafts.
   3. Finished metal surfaces include the following:
      a. Anodized aluminum.
      b. Stainless steel.
      c. Chromium plate.
      d. Copper and copper alloys.
      e. Bronze and brass.

4. Operating parts include moving parts of operating equipment and the following:
    a. Valve and damper operators.
    b. Linkages.
    c. Sensing devices.
    d. Motor and fan shafts.
5. Labels: Do not paint over UL, FMG, or other code-required labels or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.

D. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 5 Section "Structural Steel" for shop priming structural steel.
2. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for shop priming ferrous metal.
3. Division 6 Section "Architectural Woodwork" for shop priming interior architectural woodwork.
4. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealers ".
5. Division 8 Section "Wood Doors ".
6. Division 8 Section "Steel Doors and Frames" for factory priming steel doors and frames.
7. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board" for surface preparation of gypsum board.
8. Division 32 Section "Pavement Accessories" for traffic-marking paint.

## 1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. General: Standard coating terms defined in ASTM D 16 apply to this Section.
1. Flat refers to a lusterless or matte finish with a gloss range below 15 when measured at an 85-degree meter.
2. Eggshell refers to low-sheen finish with a gloss range between 20 and 35 when measured at a 60-degree meter.
3. Semigloss refers to medium-sheen finish with a gloss range between 35 and 70 when measured at a 60-degree meter.
4. Full gloss refers to high-sheen finish with a gloss range more than 70 when measured at a 60-degree meter.

## 1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each paint system indicated. Include block fillers and primers.
1. Material List: An inclusive list of required coating materials. Indicate each material and cross-reference specific coating, finish system, and application. Identify each material by manufacturer's catalog number and general classification.
2. Manufacturer's Information: Manufacturer's technical information, including label analysis and instructions for handling, storing, and applying each coating material.

B. Samples for Verification: For each color and material to be applied, with texture to simulate actual conditions, on representative Samples of the actual substrate.
1. Provide stepped Samples, defining each separate coat, including block fillers and primers. Use representative colors when preparing Samples for review. Resubmit until required sheen, color, and texture are achieved.
2. Provide a list of materials and applications for each coat of each Sample. Label each Sample for location and application.
3. Submit 3 samples on the following substrates for Architect's review of color and texture only:
    a. Masonry: 6-by-10-inch samples of masonry, with mortar joint in the center, for each finish and color. (Field installation acceptable).
    b. Painted Gypsum Board: 8-inch-square samples for each color and material on hardboard.
    c. Stained or Natural Wood: 6-by-10-inch samples of natural- or stained-wood finish on representative Medium Red Oak surfaces.

d. Ferrous Metal: 4-inch- square samples of flat metal and 8-inch-long Samples of solid metal for each color and finish. (Field installation acceptable).
e. Plaster: 10-inch-square samples for each color. (Field installation acceptable).

C. Qualification Data: For Applicator.

D. The Contractor shall furnish the Owner with a booklet of actual samples of the colors used on the project at project completion.

## 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Applicator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in applying paints and coatings similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain block fillers and primers for each coating system from the same manufacturer as the finish coats.

C. Benchmark Samples (Mockups): Provide a full-coat benchmark finish sample for each type of coating and substrate required. Comply with procedures specified in PDCA P5. Duplicate finish of approved sample Submittals.
1. Architect will select one room or surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each type of coating and substrate.
a. Wall Surfaces: Provide samples on at least 100 sq. ft.
b. Small Areas and Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
c. Portion of all wood to be finished or restored, including windows, doors, frames, rails, etc.
2. Apply benchmark samples, according to requirements for the completed Work, after permanent lighting and other environmental services have been activated. Provide required sheen, color, and texture on each surface.
a. After finishes are accepted, Architect will use the room or surface to evaluate coating systems of a similar nature.
3. Final approval of colors will be from benchmark samples.

D. Wood Sealer: Shall meet Fed. Spec. TT-W-572B for water repellence.

E. Materials shall be manufacturer's best grade of respective paint types.

F. Gloss levels for paints required are as per the National Paint and Coatings Association.

G. Prior to acid-etching of the concrete floor and application of the epoxy coating, an on-site conference of the applicator, contractor, Architect, and manufacturer's representative shall review proper installation procedures.

## 1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials to Project site in manufacturer's original, unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label and the following information:
1. Product name or title of material.
2. Product description (generic classification or binder type).
3. Manufacturer's stock number and date of manufacture.
4. Contents by volume, for pigment and vehicle constituents.
5. Thinning instructions.
6. Application instructions.
7. Color name and number.
8. VOC content.

B. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in a well-ventilated area at an ambient temperature between 45 and 95 deg F. Maintain storage containers in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
   1. Protect from freezing. Keep storage area neat and orderly. Remove oily rags and waste daily.

## 1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Apply waterborne paints only when temperatures of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air are between 50 and 90 deg F.

B. Apply solvent-thinned paints only when temperatures of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air are between 45 and 95 deg F.

C. Do not apply paint in snow, rain, fog, or mist; or when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; or at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.
   1. Painting may continue during inclement weather if surfaces and areas to be painted are enclosed and heated within temperature limits specified by manufacturer during application and drying periods.

D. Provide adequate ventilation of spaces while applying primer and finish coats.

E. All application of coatings shall be done under adequate illumination.

## 1.08 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra paint materials from the same production run as the materials applied and, in the quantities, described below. Package with protective covering for storage and identify with labels describing contents. Deliver extra materials to Owner.
   1. Quantity: Furnish Owner with an additional 3 percent, but not less than 1 gal. or 1 case, as appropriate, of each material and color applied.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products listed in other Part 2 articles.

B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products listed in other Part 2 articles.

C. Manufacturers' Names: Shortened versions (shown in parentheses) of the following manufacturers' names are used in other Part 2 articles:
   1. Benjamin Moore & Co. (Benjamin Moore).
   2. ICI Dulux Paint Centers (ICI Dulux Paints).
   3. PPG Industries, Inc. (Pittsburgh Paints).
   4. Sherwin-Williams Co. (Sherwin-Williams).

## 2.02 PAINT MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Material Compatibility: Provide block fillers, primers, and finish-coat materials that are compatible with one another and with the substrates indicated under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

B. Material Quality: Provide manufacturer's best-quality paint material of the various coating types specified that are factory formulated and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated. Paint-material containers not displaying manufacturer's product identification will not be acceptable.

1. Proprietary Names: Use of manufacturer's proprietary product names to designate colors or materials is not intended to imply that products named are required to be used to the exclusion of equivalent products of other manufacturers. Furnish manufacturer's material data and certificates of performance for proposed substitutions.

C. Colors: Match Architect's samples.

D. Low-Emitting Materials: Interior paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.03 CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY BLOCK FILLERS

A. Concrete Unit Masonry Block Filler: Factory-formulated high-performance latex block fillers.
1. Benjamin Moore; Moorcraft Super Craft Latex Block Filler No. 285: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 8.1 mils.
2. Benjamin Moore; Moore's IMC Latex Block Filler No. M88: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 8.1 mils.
3. ICI Dulux Paints; Bloxfil 4000-1000 Interior/Exterior Heavy Duty Acrylic Block Filler: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 7.0 to 14.5 mils.
4. Pittsburgh Paints; 6-7 SpeedHide Interior/Exterior Masonry Latex Block Filler: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 6.0 to 12.5 mils.
5. Sherwin-Williams; PrepRite Interior/Exterior Block Filler B25W25: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 8.0 mils.

## 2.04 EXTERIOR PRIMERS

A. Exterior Ferrous-Metal Primer: Factory-formulated rust-inhibitive metal primer for exterior application.
1. Benjamin Moore; Moore's IMC Alkyd Metal Primer No. M06: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils.
2. ICI Dulux Paints; 4160-XXXX Devguard Multi-Purpose Tank & Structural Primer. Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils.
3. Pittsburgh Paints; 90-712 Pitt-Tech One Pack Interior/Exterior Primer Finish DTM Industrial Enamel: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 3.0 mils.
4. Sherwin-Williams; Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-310 Series: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 3.0 mils.

B. Exterior Galvanized Metal Primer: Factory-formulated galvanized metal primer for exterior application.
1. Benjamin Moore; Moore's IMC Acrylic Metal Primer No. M04: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils.
2. ICI Dulux Paints; 4160-XXXX Devguard Multi-Purpose Tank & Structural Primer: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils.
3. Pittsburgh Paints; 90-709 Pitt-Tech One Pack Interior/Exterior Primer/Finish DTM Industrial Enamel: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 3.0 mils.
4. Sherwin-Williams; Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-310 Series: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 3.0 mils.

C. Exterior Primer for existing ceramic coated sheet metal: Sherwin-Williams B51- 450 Interior/Exterior Multi-Purpose Latex "Adhesion Primer", or approved equal. Applied at a dry film thickness of 1.4 mils.
1. Adhesion Primer must be topcoated within 14 days of primer application.

D. Exterior Primer for Wood without knots: Sherwin-Williams Exterior Latex Wood Primer B42W8041. Applied at dry film thickness of not less than 1.4 mils.

E. Exterior Primer for Wood containing knots: Sherwin-Williams Exterior Oil-Based Wood Primer Y24W8020. Applied at dry film thickness of not less than 2.3 mils.

F. Exterior Primer for Drywall: Sherwin-Williams B51- 450 Interior/Exterior Multi-Purpose Latex "Adhesion Primer", or approved equal. Applied at a dry film thickness of 1.4 mils.

G. Exterior Architectural PVC, Plastic, or Fiberglass: Sherwin-Williams B51- 450 Interior/Exterior Multi-Purpose Latex "Adhesion Primer", or approved equal. Applied at a dry film thickness of 1.4 mils.

## 2.05 INTERIOR PRIMERS

A. Interior Concrete Primer: Factory-formulated alkali-resistant acrylic-latex interior primer for interior application.
   1. Benjamin Moore; Moorcraft Super Spec Latex Enamel Undercoater & Primer Sealer No. 253: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.2 mils.
   2. ICI Dulux Paints; 3030-1200 Bond-Prep Interior/Exterior Waterborne Pigmented Bonding Primer: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.8 mils.
   3. Pittsburgh Paints; 6-2 SpeedHide Interior Quick-Drying Latex Sealer: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.0 mil.
   4. Sherwin-Williams; Loxon Concrete & Masonry Primer B24W8300: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 3.0 mils.

B. Interior Masonry Primer: 100% acrylic-emulsion conditioner for interior application only, to bond light chalk to the surface of existing brick & CMU.
   1. Sherwin-Williams; Loxon Conditioner Masonry Primer A24-1100 Series: Applied at a dry film thickness per manufacturer's recommendation.
   2. No substitutions

C. Interior Gypsum Board Primer: Factory-formulated latex-based primer for interior application.
   1. Benjamin Moore; Moorcraft Super Spec Latex Enamel Undercoater & Primer Sealer No. 253: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.2 mils.
   2. ICI Dulux Paints; 1000-1200 Dulux Ultra Basecoat Interior Latex Wall Primer: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.2 mils.
   3. Pittsburgh Paints; 6-2 SpeedHide Interior Quick-Drying Latex Sealer: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.0 mil.
   4. Sherwin-Williams; ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Wall Primer B28W2600 Series: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.

D. Interior Plaster Primer: Factory-formulated latex-based primer for interior application.
   1. Benjamin Moore; Moorcraft Super Spec Latex Enamel Undercoater & Primer Sealer No. 253: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.2 mils.
   2. ICI Dulux Paints; 3210-1200 Ultra-Hide Aquacrylic GRIPPER Stain Killer Primer Sealer: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.8 mils.
   3. Pittsburgh Paints; 6-2 SpeedHide Interior Quick-Drying Latex Sealer: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.0 mil.
   4. Sherwin-Williams; ProMar 200 Zero VOC Latex Wall Primer B28W2600 Series: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.

E. Interior Plaster Primer at inside plaster face of all exterior walls: Factory-formulated latex-based primer for interior application.
   1. Sherwin-Williams; High Build Primer Latex Wall Primer B28W8601 Series: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 3.0 mils.
   2. No substitutions.

F. Interior Wood Primer for Full-Gloss Alkyd-Enamel Finishes: Factory-formulated alkyd- or acrylic-latex-based interior wood primer.
   1. Benjamin Moore; Moorcraft Super Spec Alkyd Enamel Underbody and Primer Sealer No. 245: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.
   2. ICI Dulux Paints; 1120-1200 Ultra-Hide Oil/Alkyd Interior Wood Undercoat: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils.
   3. Pittsburgh Paints; 6-6 SpeedHide Interior Quick-Drying Enamel Undercoater: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.4 mils.
   4. Sherwin-Williams; Premium Wall and Wood Interior Latex Primer B28W8111 Series: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.8 mils.

G. Interior Ferrous-Metal Primer: Factory-formulated quick-drying rust-inhibitive alkyd-based metal primer.
   1. Benjamin Moore; Moore's IMC Alkyd Metal Primer No. M06: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils.
   2. ICI Dulux Paints; 4160-6130 Devguard Multi-Purpose Tank & Structural Primer: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils.
   3. Pittsburgh Paints; 90-709 Pitt-Tech One Pack Interior/Exterior Primer/Finish DTM Industrial Enamel: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.
   4. Sherwin-Williams; Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-310 Series: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 3.0 mils.

H. Interior Zinc-Coated Metal Primer: Factory-formulated galvanized metal primer.
   1. Benjamin Moore; Moore's IMC Acrylic Metal Primer No. M04: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils.
   2. ICI Dulux Paints; 4160-6130 Devguard Multi-Purpose Tank & Structural Primer: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils.
   3. Pittsburgh Paints; 90-709 Pitt-Tech One Pack Interior/Exterior Primer/Finish DTM Industrial Enamel: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 3.0 mils.
   4. Sherwin-Williams; Pro-Cryl Universal Primer B66-310 Series: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 3.0 mils.

## 2.06 EXTERIOR FINISH COATS

A. Exterior Full-Gloss Acrylic Enamel for Ferrous and Other Metals (Lintels, Trim, Partitions, and wainscot): Factory-formulated full-gloss waterborne acrylic-latex enamel for exterior application.
   1. Benjamin Moore; Moore's IMC Acrylic Gloss Enamel M28: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils.
   2. ICI Dulux Paints; 3028-XXXX Dulux Interior/Exterior Acrylic Gloss Finish: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.6 mils.
   3. Pittsburgh Paints; 90-300 Series Pitt-Tech One Pack Interior/Exterior High Performance Waterborne High Gloss DTM Industrial Enamels: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 3.0 mils.
   4. Sherwin-Williams; Pro Industrial Acrylic Gloss B66-600 Series: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.5 mils.

B. Exterior Semi-Gloss Acrylic Enamel for Ferrous and Other Metals: (Lintels, Trim, Partitions, and wainscot): Factory-formulated semi-gloss waterborne acrylic-latex enamel for exterior application.
   Sherwin-Williams; Pro Industrial Acrylic Semi-Gloss B66-650 Series: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.5 mils.

C. Exterior Wood, Cement, or Brick Flat Finish: Sherwin-Williams A-100 Exterior Latex Flat, A6-100 Series. Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.2 mils.

D. Exterior Wood, Cement, or Brick Satin Finish: Sherwin-Williams A-100 Exterior Latex Satin, A82-100 Series. Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.

E. Exterior Textured Coating: Sherwin-Williams Ultra Crete Medium Textured Coating, A44W811. Applied at 50-80 sq. ft/gal.

F. Exterior Metal Canopy Semi-Gloss Sherwin-Williams SprayLastic Exterior Semi-Gloss Waterborne Dryfall, B42W17/B42T17. Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils.

G. Exterior Stained Wood Semi-Transparent: Sherwin-Williams WoodScapes Exterior Polyurethane Semi-Transparent Stain, A15T5.

## 2.07 INTERIOR FINISH COATS

A. Interior Flat Acrylic Paint: Factory-formulated flat acrylic-emulsion latex paint for interior application: ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Flat. Applied to a dry film thickness of not less than 1.6 mils.

B. Interior Low-Luster Acrylic Enamel: Factory-formulated eggshell acrylic-latex interior enamel: Promar 200 Zero VOC Interior Eg-Shel. Applied to a dry film thickness of not less than 1.7 mils.

C. Interior Semi-Gloss Acrylic Enamel: Factory-formulated semigloss acrylic-latex enamel for interior application.
   1. Benjamin Moore; Moorcraft Super Spec Latex Semi-Gloss Enamel No. 276: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.2 mils.
   2. ICI Dulux Paints; 1406-XXXX Dulux Professional Acrylic Semi-Gloss Interior Wall & Trim Enamel: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.
   3. Pittsburgh Paints; 6-500 Series SpeedHide Interior Semi-Gloss Latex: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.0 mil.
   4. Sherwin-Williams; ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Semi-Gloss Enamel B31-2600 Series: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.6 mils.

D. Interior Full-Gloss Acrylic Enamel: Factory-formulated full-gloss acrylic-latex interior enamel.
   1. Benjamin Moore; Moore's IMC Acrylic Gloss Enamel No. M28: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils.
   2. ICI Dulux Paints; 3028-XXXX Dulux Interior/Exterior Acrylic Gloss Finish: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.6 mils.
   3. Pittsburgh Paints; 90-374 Pitt-Tech One Pack Interior/Exterior High Performance Waterborne High Gloss DTM Industrial Enamel: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 3.0 mils.
   4. Sherwin-Williams; Solo 100% Acrylic Interior/Exterior Gloss: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.6 mils.

E. Interior Full-Gloss Alkyd Enamel for Wood and Metal Surfaces: Factory-formulated full-gloss alkyd interior enamel.
   1. Benjamin Moore; Moore's IMC Urethane Alkyd Enamel No. M22: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils.
   2. ICI Dulux Paints; 4308-XXXX Devguard Alkyd Industrial Gloss Enamel: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.0 mils.
   3. Pittsburgh Paints; 7-814 Series Pittsburgh Paints Industrial Gloss-Oil Interior/Exterior Enamel: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.
   4. Sherwin-Williams; ProMar 200 Alkyd Gloss Enamel B35-200 Series: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.

F. Interior Full Gloss Epoxy:
   1. Sherwin-Williams; Tile-Clad High Solids Epoxy B62Z series: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 2.5 mils.

G. Interior Precatalysed Water-Based Epoxy:
   1. Sherwin-Williams; Pro Industrial Pre-Catalysed Water-based Epoxy K45-150 Series (Eggshell): Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.
   2. To be installed at (previously painted) interior existing brick and CMU surfaces, and interior plaster surfaces of exterior walls.

H. Interior DryFall, Water Based Flat, for Galvanized Steel Decking: Sherwin-Williams Pro Industrial Waterborne Acrylic Dryfall B42W81.

## 2.08 INTERIOR WOOD STAINS AND VARNISHES

A. Interior Oil Stain: Sherwin-Williams Wood Classics Oil Stain A49-200 Series, or comparable.
   1. Color: TBD

B. Clear Sanding Sealer: Factory-formulated fast-drying alkyd-based clear wood sealer applied at spreading rate recommended by manufacturer. Use sanding sealer as may be required to reduce quantity of stain soaked in by porous woods such as cedar, and/or to achieve approved color and effect as approved by sample and mockup reviews specified in other sections.
   1. ICI Dulux Paints; 1902-0000 WoodPride Interior Satin Polyurethane Varnish.
   2. Pittsburgh Paints; 6-10 SpeedHide Quick-Drying Interior Sanding Wood Sealer and Finish.
   3. Sherwin-Williams; Wood Classics Fast Dry Sanding Sealer B26V43.

C. Interior Alkyd- or Polyurethane-Based Clear Satin Varnish: Factory-formulated alkyd- or polyurethane-based clear varnish.
   1. ICI Dulux Paints; 1902-0000 WoodPride Interior Satin Polyurethane Varnish.
   2. Pittsburgh Paints; 77-7 Rez Varnish, Interior Satin Oil Clear.
   3. Sherwin-Williams; Wood Classics Fast Dry Oil Varnish, Satin A66-300 Series.

## 2.09 MISCELLANEOUS PAINT PRODUCTS

A. Epoxy: Two component epoxy coating shall be Sherwin-William's "Tile-Clad High Solids Epoxy #B62Z Series, or approved equal.

B. Semi-transparent water repellent wood preservative stain shall be Olympic's Semi-Transparent Oil Base Stain, or equal.

C. Other materials such as linseed oil, turpentine and shellacs shall be pure and of highest quality.

D. Acrylic Concrete Coating: Exterior concrete coating shall be "Thorocoat" 100% acrylic, textured coating as manufactured by Thoro System Products, Miami, Florida. Color as selected by Architect.

E. Concrete Floor Sealer: Exposed concrete floor slabs with smooth troweled finish: One coat flood-applied, hardener/densifier. Chemical reactive silicate / siliconate formulation that

enhances sheen level of troweled concrete and is designed to maintain or increase sheen level over time with normal wear. Provide one of the following or approved equal product by another Manufacturer:

a. Euclid Chemical Company; "Euco Diamond Hard", www.euclidchemical.com.
b. CureCrete Chemical Company; "Ashford Formula", www.ashfordformula.com.
c. Dayton Superior; "Sure-Hard Densifier J17", www.daytonchemical.com.
d. L&M Construction Chemicals: "Seal Hard", www.lmmc.com.

F. Epoxy Coating: Interior concrete block to receive coating shall be filled using a modified epoxy masonry filler equal to Tnemec's No. 54-660 and receive epoxy-polyomide coating equal to Tnemec's Series 66 HiBuild Epoxoline.

G. Exterior Concrete Block Protective Coating: One part, water based, cross linked copolymer coating shall be Rainguard Products Company's "Vandl-Guard Graffiti Resistant Coating", or approved equal.

H. Concrete Block Sealer: Waterproofing clear penetrating sealer shall be "Rainguard Micro-Seal" as manufactured by Rainguard Products Co., or approved equal. Install at coverage rate determined adequate by manufacturer's representative.

I. Sealer Thinner: Sonneborne's "Reducer 990", or approved equal.

J. Wood Sealer: Penetrating water-repelling sealer shall be Olympic, "Water Guard".

K. Waterbased Epoxy: Catalyzed epoxy meeting requirements of ASTM D3730, equal to Sherwin Williams B67 Series.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for paint application.
   1. Proceed with paint application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces receiving paint are thoroughly dry.
   2. Start of painting will be construed as Applicator's acceptance of surfaces and conditions within a particular area.

B. Coordination of Work: Review other Sections in which primers are provided to ensure compatibility of the total system for various substrates. On request, furnish information on characteristics of finish materials to ensure use of compatible primers.
   1. Notify Architect about anticipated problems when using the materials specified over substrates primed by others.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

A. General: Remove hardware and hardware accessories, plates, machined surfaces, lighting fixtures, and similar items already installed that are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of the item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
   1. After completing painting operations in each space or area, reinstall items removed using workers skilled in the trades involved.

B. Cleaning: Before applying paint or other surface treatments, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of the various coatings. Remove oil and grease before cleaning.
   1. Schedule cleaning and painting so dust and other contaminants from the cleaning process will not fall on wet, newly painted surfaces.

C. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be painted according to manufacturer's written instructions for each substrate condition and as specified.
   1. Provide barrier coats over incompatible primers, or remove and re-prime.
   2. Cementitious and Masonry Materials: Prepare brick, concrete, concrete unit masonry, cement plaster, and mineral-fiber-reinforced cement panel surfaces to be painted. Remove efflorescence, chalk, dust, dirt, grease, oils, and release agents. Roughen as required to remove glaze. If hardeners or sealers have been used to improve curing, use mechanical methods of surface preparation.
      a. Use abrasive blast-cleaning methods if recommended by paint manufacturer.
      b. Determine alkalinity and moisture content of surfaces by performing appropriate tests. If surfaces are sufficiently alkaline to cause the finish paint to blister and burn, correct this condition before application. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
   3. Wood: Clean new or existing surfaces of dirt, oil, and other foreign substances with scrapers, mineral spirits, and sandpaper, as required. Sand surfaces exposed to view down to consistent substrate for intended finish. Ensure smooth surface remains and remove all residual dust.
      a. Scrape and clean small, dry, seasoned knots, and apply a thin coat of white shellac or other recommended knot sealer before applying primer. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.
      b. Prime, stain, or seal wood to be painted immediately on delivery. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and back sides of wood, including cabinets, counters, trim, rails, doors, frames, and windows.
      c. If transparent finish is required, back prime with spar varnish.
      d. Seal tops, bottoms, and cutouts of unprimed wood doors with a heavy coat of varnish or sealer immediately on delivery.
   4. Ferrous Metals: Clean ungalvanized ferrous-metal surfaces that have not been shop coated; remove oil, grease, dirt, loose mill scale, and other foreign substances. Use solvent or mechanical cleaning methods that comply with SSPC's recommendations.
      a. Treat bare and sandblasted or pickled clean metal with a metal treatment wash coat before priming.
      b. Touch up bare areas and shop-applied prime coats that have been damaged. Wire-brush, clean with solvents recommended by paint manufacturer, and touch up with same primer as the shop coat.
   5. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean galvanized surfaces with nonpetroleum-based solvents so surface is free of oil and surface contaminants. Remove pretreatment from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods.

D. Material Preparation: Mix and prepare paint materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Maintain containers used in mixing and applying paint in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
   2. Stir material before application to produce a mixture of uniform density. Stir as required during application. Do not stir surface film into material. If necessary, remove surface film and strain material before using.
   3. Use only thinners approved by paint manufacturer and only within recommended limits.

E. Concrete floor surfaces to remain exposed shall be cleaned and properly acid etched per floor sealer manufacturer's instructions. Fill and patch holes, crevices, cracks, etc.. Remove any paint, soil, loose material, and dust. Remove oil or grease with a hot TSP solution and rinse thoroughly. Floor to be completely dry prior to etching with muriatic acid and water solution.

## 3.03 APPLICATION

A. General: Apply paint according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use applicators and techniques best suited for substrate and type of material being applied.
   1. Paint colors, surface treatments, and finishes are indicated in the paint schedules.
   2. Do not paint over dirt, rust, scale, grease, moisture, scuffed surfaces, or conditions detrimental to formation of a durable paint film.
   3. Provide finish coats that are compatible with primers used.
   4. The term "exposed surfaces" includes areas visible when permanent or built-in fixtures, grilles, convector covers, covers for finned-tube radiation, and similar components are in place. Extend coatings in these areas, as required, to maintain system integrity and provide desired protection.
   5. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture the same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation of equipment, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
   6. Paint interior surfaces of ducts with a flat, nonspecular black paint where visible through registers or grilles.
   7. Paint back sides of access panels and removable or hinged covers to match exposed surfaces.
   8. Finish exterior doors on tops, bottoms, and side edges the same as exterior faces.
   9. Finish interior of wall and base cabinets and similar field-finished casework to match exterior.
   10. Sand lightly between each succeeding enamel or varnish coat.

B. Scheduling Painting: Apply first coat to surfaces that have been cleaned, pretreated, or otherwise prepared for painting as soon as practicable after preparation and before subsequent surface deterioration.
   1. The number of coats and film thickness required are the same regardless of application method. Do not apply succeeding coats until previous coat has cured as recommended by manufacturer. If sanding is required to produce a smooth, even surface according to manufacturer's written instructions, sand between applications.
   2. Omit primer over metal surfaces that have been shop primed and touchup painted.
   3. If undercoats, stains, or other conditions show through final coat of paint, apply additional coats until paint film is of uniform finish, color, and appearance. Give special attention to ensure that edges, corners, crevices, welds, and exposed fasteners receive a dry film thickness equivalent to that of flat surfaces.
   4. Allow sufficient time between successive coats to permit proper drying. Do not recoat surfaces until paint has dried to where it feels firm, and does not deform or feel sticky under moderate thumb pressure, and until application of another coat of paint does not cause undercoat to lift or lose adhesion.

C. Application Procedures: Apply paints and coatings by brush, roller, spray, or other applicators according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Brushes: Use brushes best suited for type of material applied. Use brush of appropriate size for surface or item being painted.
   2. Rollers: Use rollers of carpet, velvet-back, or high-pile sheep's wool as recommended by manufacturer for material and texture required.
   3. Spray Equipment: Use airless spray equipment with orifice size as recommended by manufacturer for material and texture required.

D. Minimum Coating Thickness: Apply paint materials no thinner than manufacturer's recommended spreading rate to achieve dry film thickness indicated. Provide total dry film thickness of the entire system as recommended by manufacturer.

E. Mechanical and Electrical Work: Painting of mechanical and electrical work is limited to items exposed in equipment rooms and occupied spaces.

F. Mechanical items to be painted include, but are not limited to, the following:
   1. Uninsulated metal piping.
   2. Uninsulated plastic piping.
   3. Pipe hangers and supports.
   4. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
   5. Visible portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets.
   6. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having "all-service jacket" or other paintable jacket material.
   7. Mechanical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.
   8. New rooftop gas piping.
   9. All existing and new exterior conduit, gas, water, and similar piping at face of exterior walls.

G. Electrical items to be painted include, but are not limited to, the following:
   1. Switchgear.
   2. Panelboards.
   3. Electrical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.

H. Block Fillers: Apply block fillers to concrete masonry block at a rate to ensure complete coverage with pores filled.

I. Prime Coats: Before applying finish coats, apply a prime coat, as recommended by manufacturer, to material that is required to be painted or finished and that has not been prime coated by others. Recoat primed and sealed surfaces where evidence of suction spots or unsealed areas in first coat appears, to ensure a finish coat with no burn-through or other defects due to insufficient sealing.

J. Pigmented (Opaque) Finishes: Completely cover surfaces as necessary to provide a smooth, opaque surface of uniform finish, color, appearance, and coverage. Cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections will not be acceptable.

K. Transparent (Clear) Finishes: Use multiple coats to produce a glass-smooth surface film of even luster. Provide a finish free of laps, runs, cloudiness, color irregularity, brush marks, orange peel, nail holes, or other surface imperfections.
   1. Provide satin finish for final coats.

L. Stipple Enamel Finish: Roll and redistribute paint to an even and fine texture. Leave no evidence of rolling, such as laps, irregularity in texture, skid marks, or other surface imperfections.

M. Completed Work: Match approved samples for color, texture, and coverage. Remove, refinish, or repaint work not complying with requirements.

## 3.04 CLEANING

A. Cleanup: At the end of each workday, remove empty cans, rags, rubbish, and other discarded paint materials from Project site.
   1. After completing painting, clean glass and paint-spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paint by washing and scraping without scratching or damaging adjacent finished surfaces.

## 3.05 PROTECTION

A. Protect work of other trades, whether being painted or not, against damage from painting. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing, or replacing, and repainting, as approved by Architect.

B. Provide "Wet Paint" signs to protect newly painted finishes. After completing painting operations, remove temporary protective wrappings provided by others to protect their work.

1. After work of other trades is complete, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces prior to final inspection. Comply with procedures specified in PDCA-P1.

## 3.06 EXTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE

A. Ferrous Metal: Provide the following finish systems over exterior ferrous metal. Primer is not required on shop-primed items.
   1. Full-Gloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a rust-inhibitive primer.
      a. Primer: Exterior ferrous-metal primer.
      b. Finish Coats: Exterior full-gloss acrylic enamel for ferrous and other metals.

B. Zinc-Coated Metal: Provide the following finish systems over exterior zinc-coated metal surfaces:
   1. Full-Gloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a galvanized metal primer.
      a. Primer: Exterior galvanized metal primer.
      b. Finish Coats: Exterior full-gloss acrylic enamel for ferrous and other metals.

C. Wood Doors: Provide the following paint finish systems over wood surfaces:
   1. Gloss Latex Finish: Two finish coats over a wood primer.
      a. Primer: latex wood primer.
      b. Finish Coats: gloss latex for wood surfaces.

D. Cement Fiber Board: Provide the following paint finish systems over cement fiber board surfaces:
   1. Latex Satin Finish: Two finish coats over primer.
      a. Primer: Loxon concrete primer.
      b. Finish Coats: latex satin finish.

## 3.07 INTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE

A. New Concrete Unit Masonry: Provide the following finish systems over new interior concrete masonry:
   1. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a block filler.
      a. Block Filler: Concrete unit masonry block filler.
      b. Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.

B. Existing Concrete Unit Masonry or Brick: Provide the following finish systems over existing (previously painted) interior concrete masonry or brick:
   1. Egg shell Epoxy Finish: Two finish coats over primer / block filler.
      a. Primer / Block Filler: Acrylic-emulsion conditioner.
      b. Finish Coats: Pre-catalysed water-based epoxy.

C. Gypsum Board: Provide the following finish systems over interior gypsum board surfaces:
   1. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: (typical) Two finish coats over a primer.
      a. Primer: Interior gypsum board primer.
      b. Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.
   2. Full Gloss Epoxy Finish: (at Kitchen Food Prep, Dry Storage, receiving, and serving areas, and at locker rooms, shower rooms, and restrooms): Two finish coats over primer.
      a. Primer: Interior gypsum board primer.
      b. Finish Coats: Interior polyester epoxy.

D. Plaster: Provide the following finish systems over new interior plaster surfaces:
   1. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a primer.
      a. Primer: Interior plaster primer.
      b. Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.
   2. Full Gloss Epoxy Finish: (at Kitchen Food Prep, Dry Storage, receiving, and serving areas, and at locker rooms, shower rooms, and restrooms): Two finish coats over primer.

a. Primer: Interior gypsum board primer.
b. Finish Coats: Interior polyester epoxy.

E. Existing Plaster: Provide the following finish systems over existing (previously painted) interior plaster surface of exterior walls:
1. Egg shell Epoxy Finish: Two finish coats over primer.
a. Primer: High build latex wall primer.
b. Finish Coats: Pre-catalysed water-based epoxy.

F. Wood and Hardboard: Provide the following paint finish systems over interior wood surfaces:
1. Full-Gloss Alkyd-Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a wood primer.
a. Primer: Interior wood primer for full-gloss alkyd-enamel finishes.
b. Finish Coats: Interior full-gloss alkyd enamel for wood and metal surfaces.

G. Ferrous Metal: Provide the following finish systems over ferrous metal:
1. Full-Gloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a primer.
a. Primer: Interior ferrous-metal primer.
b. Finish Coats: Interior full-gloss acrylic enamel.

H. Zinc-Coated Metal: Provide the following finish systems over interior zinc-coated metal surfaces:
1. Full-Gloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a primer.
a. Primer: Interior zinc-coated metal primer.
b. Finish Coats: Interior full-gloss acrylic enamel.

I. All-Service Jacket over Insulation: Provide the following finish system on cotton or canvas insulation covering:
1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
a. Finish Coats: Interior flat latex-emulsion size.

J. Interior Concrete Floors: Provide the following:
1. 1st coat - Sealer / Reducer (400 SF/gal.)
2. 2nd coat - Sealer / Reducer (600 SF/gal.)
a. Exposed Concrete Finished Floors.

END OF SECTION 09 91 00

# SECTION 10 11 00 - VISUAL DISPLAY SURFACES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Markerboards
      a. At band, ensemble, weightroom, dance, cte shop, cte culinary, and classrooms where boards are removed for new windows.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 09 Section “Gypsum Board Assemblies.”

### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturers: Except as otherwise indicated, major components are to be supplied by one manufacturer and are herein specified by manufacturer and type to define overall quality. Substitutions shall be submitted to the Architect for approval.

B. Basis of Design products are by Claridge Products and Equipment, Inc., Harrison, AR 72602.

### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's specification and installation instructions for each product. Include methods of installation for each type of substrate.

B. Samples: Submit samples of color and materials of all products.

C. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings for all products. Include sections of typical installation and complete dimensions. Show details of design, anchorage, and accessories.

### 1.05 WARRANTY

A. Markerboard - Lifetime of original installation, manufacturer warrants that the porcelain enamel shall not exhibit fading of color, crazing, cracking or flaking.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MATERIALS, GENERAL

### 2.02 MATERIALS

A. Markerboard: Porcelain enamel, single piece panel of 24-gauge galvanized sheet steel laminated to 7/16" hardboard or 3/8" particle board with .015" aluminum back sheet laminated to hardboard. Factory assembled, 1/2" thick, square cornered panel equal to Claridge "Series 4", Type "A". Color: White. Surface: LCS-II (low gloss for better projection). Aluminum frame.
   1. Size: 4'-0" tall x widths as shown in Drawings.

B. Markerboard Accessories: One-piece full length Claridge Marker trough No. 371.
   1. No marker trough at weight room or locker room.

C. Trim: Satin anodized extruded aluminum compatible with supplied marker boards.

D. Wall Anchorage: Angle hangers top and bottom.

E. Color: Vinyl material shall be white. Provide color samples of manufacturer's standard white colors for selection by Architect.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 INSPECTION

A. Verify that surfaces and internal wall blocking are ready to receive work, and opening dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings.

B. Beginning of installation means acceptance of existing surfaces. Verify with Architect horizontal dimensions from perpendicular wall surface.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Provide fire-retardant 2x8 x stud spacing wood blocking in drywall partitions.

C. Establish top of marker rail at 34" above finish floor.

D. Secure units level and plumb.

### 3.03 CLEANING

A. Clean all surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Cover all surfaces with protective cover, taped to frame.

C. Remove protective cover at Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 10 11 00

# SECTION 10 14 00 - SIGNAGE

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Work includes all labor, materials, equipment, and services necessary to furnish and install all signage as shown on the Drawings and as herein specified. Room signage shall match new signs installed at locker room area.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 01 - for Project Identification signage.
   2. Division 06 - Section "Rough Carpentry", for blocking in walls.
   3. Division 09 - Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies".
   4. Division 10 - Section "Safety Specialties", for fire extinguisher / cabinets and AED signage.
   5. Division 32 - Section "Pavement Specialties", for fire lane, directional, and other pavement markings.

### 1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit shop drawings for all work for review prior to fabrication of materials. Shop drawings of individual letter signage shall indicate spacing. Shop drawings of all signage shall be drawn to scale, letter characters in type style specified and spacing shown exactly as sign is to be fabricated.

B. Submit samples of colors (matching existing school standard signage) for review by Architect and materials proposed for use prior to fabrication.

C. Submit two product sample signs with pictogram, tactile characters, and Braille.

D. Submit sign schedule location key plan for all signage.

E. Sign schedule location key plan: Signage contractor shall submit a first draft sign schedule and location key plan for all signage in editable electronic format (excel preferred). Preliminary submittal shall indicate all proposed sign locations, types, and message copy. Architect will mark up the draft schedule and location plan. Make corrections and resubmit sign schedule and location plan until approved by Architect.
   1. Signage contractor shall spell check all signage copy and inform Architect in the final sign schedule submittal to confirm suspected misspellings.

### 1.04 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Materials properly protected and packaged so that no damage occurs during transit. Materials when delivered, protected by the Contractor against damage or theft.

### 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Signage shall meet government regulation for raised image signage and criteria of the Americans with Disabilities Act, and Texas Accessibility Standards (TAS).
   1. Contractor shall be responsible for all TAS and local accessibility code signage requirements, regardless of whether they are specifically shown on the drawings or specified herein. Notify Architect of any conflicts or deficiencies. Any signage deficiencies noted by Authorities having Jurisdiction at the conclusion of the project shall be remedied by Contractor at no additional cost to the Owner.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Signage Design, General: Information on Drawings and as specified herein establish the design intent only, showing requirements for respective aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of signage but not necessarily all fabrication details required for complete sign installations.
   1. Interior signs will be required at all doors to occupied spaces (at area of work) and as required by code. Final room names and numbers will be determined and confirmed by the architect and district PM as part of the submittal review process. Signage contractor is responsible to translate into complete signage submittal package for Architect's review and comment, and Owner approval.

B. Font for Copy: Unless otherwise noted in Drawings or otherwise approved by Architect, provide Sans Serif font characters matching the existing school standard signage.
   1. Where or if individual characters conflict with handicap accessible code requirements, replace individual characters with similar appearance characters compliant with code requirements, or replace with similar appearance compliant font, as approved by Architect.

C. Accessibility Standards: Comply with accessibility standards indicated in References article. In the event of apparent conflict between Requirements and signage design indicated, notify Architect via submittal process, and suggest corrections to design to maintain design intent and resolve the conflict. Coordinate with Architect to resolve conflicts in satisfactory manner.
   1. Architect's review and approval of submittals is for general conformance with design intent and does not constitute review or approval of handicap accessible features.
   2. Signage fabricator is solely responsible to fabricate signs requiring accessible features in compliance with the provisions of applicable handicap accessibility codes. In event that non-compliant signage is installed and verified by authorities having jurisdiction as non-compliant, fabricator shall replace identified non-compliant signage with compliant signage of similar design, without additional cost to Owner.

### 2.02 MATERIALS

A. Materials, General: Materials and equipment as well as workmanship shall conform to the highest commercial standards available. Parts not identified specifically on Drawings shall be materials appropriate to job site conditions. All color changes made with sharp, clean even edges providing clear separation of sign copy.

B. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.

C. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.

D. Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D 4802, category as standard with manufacturer for each sign, Type UVF (UV filtering).

E. Vinyl Film: UV-resistant vinyl film of nominal thickness indicated, with pressure-sensitive, permanent adhesive on back; die cut to form characters or images as indicated and suitable for exterior applications.

F. Paints and Coatings for Sheet Materials: Inks, dyes, and paints that are recommended by manufacturer for optimum adherence to surface and are UV and water resistant for colors and exposure indicated.

## 2.03 MATERIALS - SPECIFIC

A. Interior Room Signage: Match existing, school standard room signage.
   1. Modify existing sign style only as required to ensure compliance with current codes.
      1) In addition to male/female pictograms, provide a "wheelchair" international handicap accessibility symbol on the signage for all accessible restrooms, bathing / shower rooms, and dressing / locker rooms.
         a) Where these rooms are non-accessible and there is not an adjacent accessible room, provide signs to direct to the nearest accessible room. Message "ACCESSIBLE RESTROOM (Shower, Locker Room, etc.) AVAILABLE AT “indicate location", with direction arrow where applicable. These signs are visual only, without raised characters or Braille.

B. Tactile Exit Signs: Provide signs to match design of interior room signage. Tactile exit signs with raised letters and Braille at rooms and corridors that serve as exits as required by local code, including any space that can be interpreted as Exit Discharge. Size signs as required to fit "EXIT" message and braille, in same size and font text as handicapped accessible room signage. Colors to match existing school signage.
   1. Where there is room identification signage scheduled for the same door and the text and Braille message of the tactile exit sign will fit on the room identification signage below the room identification message, incorporate both signs into one sign.

C. Exterior Vehicular Traffic Signage: Provide Aluminum signs with 1" radius corners, shop painted, and screw attached to posts set in concrete footing. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for posts. Coordinate lengths of posts for mounting heights compliant with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
   1. Vehicular signs at street: Comply with all specifications and requirements of Texas Department of Transportation (TxDOT), or local authority having jurisdiction as applicable, for signs at streets, including but not limited to sign size, gauge, attachment, pole types, and mounting heights. Unless otherwise noted, provide signs designed in accordance with TxDOT "Standard Highway Sign Designs for Texas"

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 EXAMINATION AND COORDINATION

A. Coordinate mounting requirements for exterior substrates with other trades as required, including adequate strength and structural reinforcements where necessary.

B. Coordinate with other trades as required for blocking in walls, electrical requirements, requirements for substrate preparation, and other requirements for signage installation as applicable.

C. Examine installation areas to ensure that conditions are suitable for installation.

D. Examine existing conditions for construction or obstructions that prohibit signage to be installed in typical locations per TAS standards. Where location for TAS compliant mounting location is unclear, request clarification from Architect.

E. Examine signage for defects prior to installation. Do not install damaged signage.

## 3.02 PREPARATION

A. Verify mounting locations and types prior to fabrication. Coordinate exact locations with Architect where signs cannot be installed in typical location per Texas Accessibility Standards. Confirm where backplates etc. are needed for application to glass or similar substrates.

B. Fabricate signs according to approved shop drawings and sign schedule.

C. Clean mounting locations of dirt, dust, grease, or similar conditions that would prevent proper installation. This signage contractor responsible to properly clean substrates so that signage may be properly applied.

## 3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Install products in accordance with suppliers' instructions, using mounting methods as specified and as recommended by sign manufacturer for best results.
   1. Mount with adhesive or high strength tape. Mount secure and tight to substrates.
   2. Mount with high strength double sided mounting tape, with backplates, at all signage applied to glass.

B. All signage and materials installed level, plumb, and true in spacing.

## 3.04 CLEANING, PROTECTION, AND REPAIR

A. Protect installed signage from damage and soiling due to construction operations.
   1. Install interior wall signage after substrates to receive painted finish have been painted, or if painting must be scheduled after initial sign installation mask off or remove and reinstall signs.

B. Remove adhesive, paint, or other spills and smears from sign surfaces, prior to inspection for substantial completion. Clean signs according to manufacturer's or fabricator's instructions. Do not use cleaners or methods that can damage sign surface or finish.

C. Remove any protective coatings at times as recommended by manufacturer or fabricator.

D. Repair scratches and other damage that might have occurred during installation or due to construction operations to satisfaction of the Architect. Evidence of repair should not be visible when viewed with unaided eye at a distance of 5 feet. Remove and replace damaged materials that cannot be repaired to the satisfaction of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 10 14 00

# SECTION 10 40 00 - SAFETY SPECIALTIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. Definition: "Fire extinguisher" as used in this section refers to units which can be hand-carried as opposed to those which are equipped with wheels or to fixed fire extinguishing systems.

B. Types of products required include:
   1. Fire extinguishers.
   2. Fire extinguisher cabinets.
   3. Fire extinguisher brackets.
   4. Wall safes.
   5. Automated Defibrillators (AED), alarm system, and cabinets.

C. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 04 - Section "Unit Masonry Assemblies", for coordination of block-outs in masonry walls.
   2. Division 06 - Section "Rough Carpentry", for coordination of blocking in walls.
   3. Division 09 - Section "Gypsum Board Assemblies".

### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain products in this section from one manufacturer.

B. UL-Listed Products: Provide new portable fire extinguishers which are UL-listed and bear UL "Listing Mark" for type, rating, and classification of extinguisher indicated.

### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittal shall include manufacturer's product literature, both pictorial and written.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 PORTABLE TYPE FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

A. Manufacturers: Design is based on products as manufactured by Activar / J.L. Industries, Inc. or Larsen's Manufacturing Co. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the named products, or approved equal by another manufacturer.

B. Multi-purpose Class ABC Fire Extinguishers: Provide all extinguisher cabinets with ABC type extinguishers unless otherwise noted. ABC Fire extinguishers shall be a multi-purpose dry chemical type, enameled metal containers with pressure indicating gauges, rated for Class A, B, and C fires.
   1. At Fire Extinguisher Cabinets, and bracket mounting, provide 10 lb extinguishers, 4A-80BC rated, equal to the following:
      a. J. L. Industries Model Cosmic 10E, with MB846A bracket at bracket mounted locations.

b. Larsen’s Model MP10 with nozzle, with B-2 bracket at bracket mounted locations.

2. Where locations for specified extinguishers are not indicated in Drawings, confirm exact locations with Architect.

C. Fire Extinguisher Cabinets: Provide semi-recessed, one-piece steel cabinet with stainless steel finish with rolled–edge trim. Semi-recessed cabinets shall not project more than 4" from face of wall, and overall depth sized to fit specified fire extinguishers. Provide recessed handle where 4" projection of the cabinet is required. Top of rough opening for unit shall be at 54"above finished floor surface, unless otherwise dictated by governing authority. Cabinets shall be J.L. Industries Cosmopolitan series, Larsen's Architectural series, or approved equal.
1. Semi-recessed at typical stud construction: Designed to recess into 3-5/8" stud wall construction (nominal 4" recessed).
2. Semi-recessed at typical double stud wall and CMU construction:
3. Finish: Stainless Steel.
4. Door Style: Vertical Duo (tall, narrow light)
5. Glazing: Clear Acrylic
6. Signage: Provide decal signage compliant with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, except where vision lights are acceptable alternative to signage. Orientation and color as selected by Architect from Manufacturer's standard types that are compatible with cabinet style indicated.

D. Automated Defibrillator Device (AED) Cabinets: One-piece steel cabinet with clear acrylic full glazed door. J.L. Industries' 1400 Series AED Cabinets, or approved equal. AED Cabinets are to be configured with battery power source alarm. Install with initial battery. Top of rough opening for unit shall be at 4’-0” A.F.F., unless otherwise dictated by governing authority.
1. Cabinet Frame and Door Finish: Stainless Steel.
2. Mounting and Trim Style: Semi-recessed with 3" rolled edge style.
3. Lock: None.
4. Decal: Standard red AED with graphic symbol, applied to light.
5. Alarm: 85 db Commander (audible) alarm
6. J. L. Industries 1400 Series LifeStart AED Cabinet or approved equal.
7. AED Device: Owner Provided.

E. Security Safe: Provide (1) equal to Rolland Model MS-2K as manufactured by Rolland or approved equal.
1. Dimensions: 8” H x 6” W x 12” D.
2. Weight: 20lbs.

F. Anchors: Provide non-corrosive types as required by wall conditions.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Install items included in this section in location and at mounting height indicated, or if not indicated, at heights to comply with applicable regulations of governing authorities as directed by local fire marshal.

B. Securely fasten mounting brackets to structure, square and plumb, to comply with manufacturer's instructions.

C. Remove protective plastic sheets prior to Architect's inspection for substantial completion.

END OF SECTION 10 40 00

# SECTION 10 56 13 - HEAVY DUTY STORAGE SHELVING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes Heavy Duty Storage Shelving.

### 1.03 DESIGN

A. System consisting of uprights, shelves, and shelf supports.

### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturers: Except as otherwise indicated, major components are to be supplied by one manufacturer and are herein specified by manufacturer and type to define overall quality. Substitutions shall be submitted to the Architect for approval.

### 1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's specification and installation instructions for each product. Include methods of installation for each type of substrate.

B. Samples: Submit samples of color and materials of all products.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 GENERAL

A. All shelving shall comply with SMA and ANSI MH 28.1-1982 and in addition shall have the following characteristics.

### 2.02 MATERIALS

A. Offset Angle: Offset angle post shall be roll formed and have overall dimensions of 1-1/8" wide x 2-1/2" deep. The rear flange shall be punched to accept sway braces or backs, the side flange shall be punched to accept side sway braces or side panels.

B. Posts: All posts shall be punched for clip or nut and bolt construction. Shelves and accessories are to be vertically adjustable on 1" centers. Side sway braces or side panels to be attached to the side flange of the post. Bolts, nuts, and sway braces or panels shall not obstruct the full adjustability of the shelves.

C. Box Post: Box post to be roll formed and have overall dimensions of 3/4" wide x 2-7/16" deep. Box post to be flush within 1/4" of the face of the shelves when assembled.

D. Side Panels: Shall be 24 gauge steel. Each side shall be punched with holes for bolting to posts.

E. Backs: Shall be 24 gauge steel with holes on each side for bolting to angle posts and in the middle for using a back panel clip.

F. Sway Braces: To be 12 gauge x 3/4" steel punched at each end for bolting to posts and at the center for strength and ease of assembly

G. Clipper Shelf Clip: One piece 14 gauge rugged compression type to insert into either box or offset angle posts to form a positive four point connection. Clips shall have two claw-like hooks to seat firmly into post slots and two tabs at bottom to seat into post holes for a tight friction connection. All clips for all posts and shelves to be the same. Design shall offer a pre-clipping feature to simplify erection. Finish: zinc plated. All shelves are to have four independently adjustable clips.

H. Shelves: Clipper Hi-Performance Box Formed: Heavy Duty manufactured from cold rolled steel in three material thicknesses that provide up to three different shelf capacities per size. Shelves have 1-1/4" face on all four sides. Front and rear faces have four 90 degree bends providing a 3/4" x 1-1/4" high tubular shape with an 11/16" wide flange seated against the underside of the shelf. The flange is spot welded to the underside of the shelf on 3" centers. Sides have a 5/8" return flange 90 degrees. All four corners are closed by lapping and spot welding together. Heavy Duty shelf tabs for lapping and welding have formed ribs to maintain the same snug fit in the shelf clip as the extra heavy duty shelf. Overall, the shelf depth and width is 1/4" less than nominal. The shelf is punched for divider adjustment on 1-1/2" centers and for attachment of label holders, bin fronts and base fronts. Provide Hi-Performance shelves in 48" width and 24" depth.

I. Ledge Tops: To be 14 gauge steel. Face of ledge to be 1-1/8" and have a center reinforcing pan. Ledge top to project 1-1/8" beyond the face of the post and to have two 14 gauge angles welded to underside for strength and bolting to post. Must be used with box posts below ledge.

J. Ledge Ends: To be manufactured from 14 gauge steel and furnished to give ledge top a finished appearance.

K. Counter Tops: To be 14 gauge steel. Face of counter top to be 1-1/8" and project 1-1/8" beyond face of post with a welded center reinforcing pan. Units to be furnished with box post front and rear for finished appearance. 14 gauge counter top ends can be furnished at the ends of all rows for a finished appearance.

L. Counter Front: To be 18 gauge steel attached with no exposed fasteners.

M. Base Strip: Shall be 18 gauge steel attached to face of shelf with bolts and nuts to close space between the bottom of the shelf and the floor.

N. Label Holder: Shall be 24 gauge steel with necessary holes for attaching to shelves with plastic push-in fasteners.

O. Shelf Dividers: 6" high through 20" high shall be 24 gauge, 24" high and over shall be 20 gauge. All divider front flanges shall have a 5/16" diameter bead. Top, bottom and rear flanges are 7/8". Dividers less than 24" high shall be attached with plastic push-in fasteners, 24" and higher are bolted.

P. Partial Dividers: Shall be 18 gauge steel with a 7/8" flange at the bottom. Attached with push-in Plastic Button fasteners.

Q. Bin Fronts: To be 18 gauge steel. One and two inch high bin fronts shall be bolted to the face of the shelf. Three inch high bin fronts to be attached to the post by use of 16 gauge zinc plated channel clips.

R. Shelf Boxes: To be 20 gauge steel with a rigid curled handle at the front of the box, punched with an integral card holder on front and rear. Box shall be 4-5/8 " high to fit between shelves on 6" centers and shall be slotted to accept dividers on 1" centers.

S. Shelf Box Dividers: To be 20 gauge steel. Punched with an integral card holder.

T. Foot Plates: Shall be 13 gauge zinc plated steel and be used to protect floors.

U. Finish: All painted parts shall be selected from a minimum of four standard colors. Materials shall be cleaned and phosphatized in a multi-stage process, dried in a 400 degrees oven and electrostatically spray painted with a high grade enamel and baked on at 360 degrees.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Install system in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.02 CLEAN UP

A. Leave installation in clean condition.

END OF SECTION 10 56 13

# SECTION 11 40 00 - FOOD SERVICE EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. The general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and General Documents, apply to the Work specified in this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY OF THE WORK

A. Project Name and Location: TIMBERWOOD MIDDLE SCHOOL (TMS) ADDITIONS & RENOVATIONS - HUMBLE I.S.D

B. Approval of Working Surface: Any contractor performing work over the work of other contractors shall notify the Architect of any unsatisfactory conditions. The beginning of work by any contractor shall constitute acceptance of the previous work.

C. Field Verification of All Dimensions: Before ordering any materials or doing any work, field verify all measurements of the building and be responsible for their accuracy. No extras will be allowed for variations from drawings in existing conditions or work performed under this contract. Any discrepancies found shall be submitted to the Architect or Foodservice Design Professionals (FDP) for instructions before proceeding.

D. Cutting and Patching: No excessive cutting will be permitted, nor shall any structural members be cut without the written approval of the Architect. Each Contractor shall leave all chases and openings straight, true, and of the proper size in their work, as may be necessary for the proper installation of their and other contractors' work. After such work has been installed, the contractor shall carefully fit around, close, repair, patch, and point up the same as directed to the satisfaction of the Architect.

E. Cooperation: The General Contractor, all other contractors, and all subcontractors shall coordinate their work with all adjacent work and shall cooperate with all other trades to facilitate the general progress of the work. Each trade shall afford all the other trades every reasonable opportunity to install their work and store their material.

F. Inspection and Tests: The architect, Owner, Foodservice Design Professionals (FDP), and their representative shall always have access to the work, whether in preparation or progress. Provide proper and safe facilities for such access and inspection.

G. Fees, Permits, and Inspections: Secure and pay fees for all permits, licenses, and inspections as required by all authorities having jurisdiction. Give all notices and comply with all laws, ordinances, codes, rules, regulations, and contract requirements bearing on the work.

### 1.3 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Include the Work specified, shown, or inferable as part of Food Service Equipment. Portions of this Work may be subcontracted to those qualified to do such work as necessary because of jurisdictional trade agreements and restrictions.

B. The General Contractor is responsible for Related Work specified in other Sections: i.e., final plumbing, electrical and mechanical connections. The Kitchen Equipment Contractor (KEC) is responsible for all internal connections.

C. Specifications and drawings have been prepared to form the basis for procurement, erection, start-up, and equipment adjustment in this contract. Plans and specifications shall be considered mutually explanatory. Work required by one, but not by the other, shall be performed as though required by both. Items required by one but not by the other shall be provided as though required by both. Work shall be accomplished as called for in specifications and shown on drawings so that all equipment items shall be entirely functional for the purpose for which they were designed and intended. Provide all necessary material, tools, equipment, and labor required for the complete delivery, un-crating, erection, and installation as designated on the food service equipment plan and, in the specifications, to be made ready for final connection by the appropriate Division contractors. When there is any discrepancy between drawings and specifications, bidders should seek clarification of any discrepancies from the Architect and or Foodservice Design Professionals (FDP) before bidding.

D. Should the drawings disagree in themselves or the specifications with the drawings *(and clarification was not sought before bidding)*, the higher cost, better quality, more stringent, and greater quantity of the work or materials shall be completed without additional costs to the Owner.

## 1.4 OTHER DIVISIONS/CONTRACTORS RELATED WORK

**A. Division 03 (Concrete) is responsible for but not limited to:**

1. Slab depressions reinforced concrete wearing bed at prefabricated cold storage assemblies.

2. Concrete or masonry platforms (with a finished top and coved base at the perimeter) for the raised setting of food service equipment.

3. Slab depressions to receive stainless steel drain trench liner/grate assemblies (provided under this Section).

**B. Division 09 (Finishes) responsible for but not limited to:**

1. Interior finished floor with a coved base at prefabricated cold storage assemblies.

**C. Division 10 (Specialties) responsible for but not limited to:**

1. S/S Corner Guards throughout the kitchen (unless specified otherwise).

2. Lockers.

**D. Division 22 (Plumbing) is responsible for but not limited to:**

1. All connections shall follow local codes and national standards, except where plans and specifications exceed those codes and standards.

2. Empty PVC and wide-sweep bends for refrigerant piping to beverage lines, Co2 lines, and remote food service equipment refrigeration systems.

3. Rough-in and final connection of plumbing systems to food service equipment and between components (including materials and labor). Accessories provided loose with food service equipment by Section 11 40 00 to be field installed by Division 22. This includes but is not limited to the installation of all faucets (water fill faucets, pre-rinse faucets, etc.), hoses, gas disconnects, and drains from the equipment point of connection to building plumbing systems. All drain lines are provided and installed by Div. 22.

    a. Kitchen Equipment Contractor is responsible for providing all faucets (water fill faucets, pre-rinse faucets, etc.), drain fittings, mixing valves, control valves, water pressure regulators, vacuum breakers, and all accessories for equipment specified under 11 40 00. Division 22 is responsible for installation.

4. Indirect drain line runs from the equipment to the nearest drain or floor sink—lines to be type 'K' Copper.

5. If any plumbing accessories or fittings are provided loose with equipment by 11 40 00, Div. 22 is to attach to equipment and provide final connection.

6. Gas Supply Systems with all components and fittings required for a complete system.

7. Water Supply Systems with all components and fittings required for a complete system.

8. Compressed Air Systems with all components and fittings required for a complete system.

9. Piping and Drainage Systems (Sanitary and grease laden). Systems are to be cleaned before the final connection with food service equipment.

10. Floor Sinks (Provide and Install). Flange and grates to be flush with the finished floor.

11. Floor Drains (Provide and Install). Flange and grates to be flush with the finished floor.

12. Trench Drains (Provide and Install). Trench Liners provided by 11 40 00. Flange and liners to be flush with the finished floor.

13. Grease Traps as required (Size, Provide, Locate, and Install). Verify with local codes to bypass or pipe thru Grease Trap and/or Interceptor.

14. P-Traps as required (including all disposers).

15. Interconnect water thru Water Filter (Filter provided by 11 40 00 unless otherwise specified) to equipment.

16. Gas Quick Disconnect Installation (Quick Disconnect provided by 11 40 00).

17. Safety Restraint Cable Installation (Safety Restraint Cable Provided by 11 40 00).

18. Specified couplings and piping to all equipment furnished by 11 40 00.

19. Air Compressors (Size, Provide, and Install unless otherwise specified).

20. Water Softeners (Size, Provide, and Install unless otherwise specified).

21. Pressure Boilers (Size, Provide, and Install unless otherwise specified).

22. Hand Sinks (Provide (unless otherwise specified) and Install). Provide a hot water tempering valve if required. Water temperature to be at least 100 degrees and flow for at least 20 seconds.

23. Ice Bin Drain Insulation (Provide and Install).

24. Unions at disposer solenoid valves (Provide and Install).

25. Back Flow Prevention as required (Provide and Install - including all disposers). Back-Siphonage shall be installed at all fixtures and equipment where backflow and/or back-siphonage may occur and where a minimum air gap cannot be provided between the water to the fixture or equipment at its flood/level rim. When furnished with equipment, vacuum breakers shall override the above if acceptable with applicable codes. Division 22 is responsible for verifying requirements with local codes.

26. Janitor Sink with Faucet (Provide and Install).

27. Freeze Proof Hose Bibb at the exterior of the building by receiving door (Provide and Install - unless otherwise specified).

28. Reverse Osmosis Systems (Size, Provide (unless otherwise specified), Locate, and Install).

29. All piping within the counter body or under fabricated counters must be run to a connection point below the counter body by Section 11 40 00—final connection by Division 22.

30. Exhaust Hood condensate drain connections (Provide and Install).

31. Interconnection of ½" CW to Pre-Rinse and Disposers cone/body inlets piped through the solenoid and vacuum breaker.

32. Fire System Piping. The exposed piping is to be chrome plated.

33. Pipe ½" cold water to swirl inlets at disposers.

34. Water Treatment for Ice Builders (Non-Chlorinated water with a PH Level of 10 or Higher) and any drains and overflows. Piping from Ice Builders to Tumble Chillers by Div. 23.

35. Refer to Section 2.2 PLUMBING / MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS for additional information.

**E. Division 23 (Mechanical) responsible for but not limited to:**

1. All connections shall follow local codes and national standards, except where plans and specifications exceed those codes and standards.

2. Empty EMT Conduit with pull-wire and wide-sweep bends for refrigerant piping to remote food service equipment refrigeration systems.

3. Rough-in and final connection of mechanical systems to food service equipment, cold storage assemblies, and between components (including materials and labor).

4. A mechanical contractor will test and balance rooms and exhaust hoods. **Balance report for food service Exhaust Hoods to be provided to Foodservice Design Professionals (FDP) immediately upon completion (send to Houston.Submittal@fdp.org) and must be submitted with O&M manuals.**

5. Exhaust Hoods, Condensate Hoods, Fire Suppression Systems, connections, and controls (Provide and Install – unless otherwise specified). Provide tempered air at all supply ducts.

    a. If Exhaust/Condensate Hoods and Fire Suppression Systems are specified under Section 11 40 00, Division 23 is responsible for all Exhaust and Condensate Hood connections (Provide and Install).

6. VFD System and controllers when required by code (Provide and Install).

7. Provide and install all ventilation (direct or indirect), air conditioning, and heating systems (unless otherwise specified).

8. Coordinate Supply and Return ducts above Serving Counters. Cold air is not to blow directly on hot food counters or open-air refrigerated merchandisers.

9. Coordinate Supply and Return ducts away from equipment with top-mounted refrigeration. Air is not to blow directly on compressors.

10. Mechanical Contractor to locate temperature monitors within return ducts.

11. Circulating air above cold storage assemblies (Provide and Install).

12. Circulating air above and in air gaps at Warehouse cold storage assemblies (Provide and Install).

13. Water Chillers as required (Provide, Size, and Locate).

14. Piping from Ice Builders to Tumble Chillers (Size, Provide and Install).

15. Refer to Section 2.2 PLUMBING / MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS for additional information.

**F. Division 26 (Electrical) responsible for but not limited to:**

1. Rough-in and final connection of electrical systems to food service equipment, cold storage assemblies, and between components (including materials and labor). Accessories provided loose with food service equipment by Section 11 40 00 to be field installed by Division 26.

2. Empty EMT Conduit with pull-wire and wide-sweep bends for refrigerant piping to remote food service equipment refrigeration systems.

3. Empty EMT Conduit with pull-wire and wide-sweep bends for interconnect cables between LAN and POS terminals, change-makers, pre-check units, printers, CPUs, etc. Division 26 to verify where the conduit will run for POS System (i.e., Manager's Office or IDF Room).

4. Empty EMT Conduit with pull-wire and wide-sweep bends for fire suppression systems. Interconnect the Fire Protection System to panel box shunt trips and building alarms.

5. Cold Storage Assembly Light Fixture Installation (Provided loose by Section 11 40 00).

6. Table Limit Switch Installation (Provided loose by Section 11 40 00).

7. Electrical Materials and Devices (Shunt-trip breakers, surge protectors, lighting control devices, conduit, wire, etc.).

8. Switches and Stainless Steel Disconnects as required (Provide, Locate, and Install – to be in an accessible location).

9. Charging Stations for Forklifts, Pallet Stackers, and Pallet Jacks (Size, Provide, Locate, and Install).

10. Interconnection between Condensate Fan and Dishmachine control panel.

11. Interconnection between Exhaust Hood fans and switch.

12. Interconnection between Exhaust Hood lights and switch.

13. Door Heaters, Lights, Coils, and Heated Pressure Relief Ports pre-wired to the junction box at the top of cold storage assemblies provided by Section 11 40 00—final connection by Div. 26.

14. If any electrical accessories, fittings, and cord/plugs are provided loose with equipment by 11 40 00, Div. 26 is to attach to equipment and provide final connection.

15. Provide waterproof receptacles in wet areas.

16. All electrical connections beneath Exhaust Hoods to extend to shunt trip breakers with electrical panel box for shutdown during fire mode.

17. Receptacles will be pre-wired to Junction Box or Load Center for final connection by Division 26.

18. All electrical lighting, power, and distribution systems.

19. Do not interconnect more than three (3) convenience outlets on one (1) breaker.

20. Other than convenience outlets, all electrical connections on food service plans are dedicated breakers.

21. Doorbell at receiving door (Provide and Install –audible throughout Kitchen, Office, and Dry Storage room).

22. Adequate lighting at receiving door.

23. Dedicated circuit for heated drain line connection in Walk-In Freezer (120/1/16.0 Amp) at each coil.

24. Provide and install (2) Edwards 860 Series (or equal) red lens, surface-mounted Xenon Emergency Strobe Beacons. One (1) to be located in the Kitchen above Walk-In Freezer door (or Cooler door when Freezer is within Cooler in an ‘inline’ assembly), and One

(1) to be located in the Cafetorium (Coordinate location with Owners). Provide all conduit and wiring required and interconnect the illuminated Push Button Panic Alarm in the Walk-In Freezer to both Strobe Beacons (***Critical***). Coordinate with Division 27.

25. Refer to Section 2.5, ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS, for additional information.

**G. Division 27 (Communication) responsible for but not limited to:**

1. Data line coordination for food service equipment.

2. Time clocks.

3. Video cameras for learning assistance in food service areas as required (Provide, Locate, and Install).

4. Provide conduit, data line, and interconnect the illuminated Push Button Panic Alarm inside the Walk-In Freezer to the Building Automation System (BAS). When activated, facility personnel are to be notified - coordinate notification requirements with the Owner (***Critical***). Coordinate with Division 26.

**H. Division 28 (Electronic Safety and Security) is responsible for but not limited to:**

1. Security Cameras as required (Provide, Locate, and Install).

**I. General Contractor responsible for but not limited to:**

1. Any wall penetration required for food service equipment utilities. Escutcheon plates or S/S sleeves are to be provided and installed as needed.

2. Bulk Freezer Ventilation Pipe (Provide and Install unless otherwise specified).

3. Core drilling for Guide Rails.

4. Refrigeration Roof Curbs / Roof Jack.

5. Interior Bollards – to be epoxy painted per local codes (Provide and Install).

6. Provide and Install ¾" Plywood blocking in the wall for mounting equipment furnished by Section 11 40 00 as required.

7. Cold Storage Assembly Depressions (to be dead level) and sand leveling bed.

8. Structural bracing for Bulk Cold Storage Assembly ceiling panels if required.

9. Menu System Video Monitors in Servery (unless otherwise specified).

10. Structural bracing for Menu System Video Monitors if required.

11. Interior/Exterior refrigeration penetrations and sleeves at building penetrations.

12. DoorScope viewer (peephole) with wide viewing angle at receiving door.

13. Canopy at receiving door. Coordinate height with the height of Receiving Door (8') and the mounting height of Air Screen above the door.

14. Soap and towel dispenser provided by Owner. G.C. is responsible for installation.

15. Washer and Dryer (Provide and Install, unless otherwise specified).

16. Dwarf wall at exposed front/ends of cafeteria serving counters with the finish as selected by the Architect.

17. Final cleaning of all equipment before demonstrations.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. In addition to complying with all applicable laws, statutes, building codes, and regulations of public authorities, comply with the following:

1. National Sanitation Foundation (all equipment to bear label)

2. National Electric Code

3. Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. (all applicable equipment to bear label)

4. American Gas Association Laboratories

5. National Fire Protection Association

6. Americans with Disabilities Act

7. Food and Drug Administration HAACP Guidelines

8. International Energy Conservation Code (IECC)

9. Department of Energy

10. Environmental Protection Agency

B. Furnish certification of regularly manufactured equipment listing or classification by Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc. with the initial submittal.

C. Furnish a list of equipment and components (internal and external) that are not of domestic origin. All equipment and components (internal and external) should be of domestic origin when possible. This information should be provided with the initial submittal.

D. Projects outside the continental United States shall adhere to all local authorities having jurisdiction over that project.

## 1.6 SUBSTITUTIONS

A. **Equipment items or components specified are intended to be the Basis of the Bid. All other brands, including any additional names, which may be listed as "Alternates" or "Approved Equal," must conform with the general and item specifications, warranties, size/dimensions, quality, accessories, function, voltage, horsepower, etc. of the first-named brand and be subject to Paragraph C-03 of this Article.**

B. Proposed Substitutions:

1. Submitted at least 14 calendar days before Bid Date.

2. Submit proposed substitutions with catalog data and manufacturer's shop details indicating all modifications required to conform with the specified brand.

3. List of deviations must include equipment name, model number, accessories, and features with deviation(s) noted for specified and proposed alternate equipment. Equipment without listed deviation(s) will be considered furnished as specified.

C. Substitutions with prior approval:

1. Submitted on Bidder's letterhead attached to Proposal Form with individual additive/deductive amounts stipulated and the documentation required in Paragraph B-02.

2. Owner reserves the right to accept or reject any or all substitution proposals before execution of the Contract.

3. Provide all design/engineering services required to adjust in space, systems, utilities, etc., and pay all additional costs of utilities, construction, or professional services that may be incurred due to the acceptance of any substitution.

D. All appliances within a common group or category (e.g., refrigerators, kettles, ovens, etc.): same manufacturer.

## 1.7 INTERPRETATION OF DOCUMENTS

A. During Bidding: Bidder's, supplier's, or vendor's questions and comments about Construction Document's clarity or intent will be addressed by addendum.

B. After Award:

1. Clarification Bulletin will confirm Construction Document requirements.

2. Request for Information submitted by Contractor shall contain Contractor's proposed resolution.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

A. Provide a written warranty for parts and labor for one year from the date of Substantial Completion, including an extended four-year replacement warranty on compressor bodies.

B. Components of equipment subject to replacement before one year's use (such as refrigerator door gaskets) and those items which may fail due to improper or inadequate periodic maintenance by the Owner/Operator (such as an uncleaned refrigeration system condenser) are not intended to be included within the scope of the Warranty.

C. Refrigeration Systems/Equipment: One-year free service available within twenty-four hours of notification.

D. Furnish three copies of a list of all equipment and their respective local service agencies, indicating the address, telephone number, and name of the person to contact. The service agencies selected shall be factory-authorized for the equipment assigned whenever possible.

E. Provide the following for refrigeration systems/equipment unless specified otherwise:

1. One (1) year of free refrigeration system service is available within twenty-four hours of notification.

2. Provide five (5) year manufacturer's registered written replacement warranty certificate covering compressor bodies. Warranty to cover labor costs for the first year.

3. Provide ten (10) years of the manufacturer's registered written replacement/repair warranty certificate covering cold storage assembly panels. Warranty to cover defects in material and workmanship. Warranty to cover labor costs for the first year.

4. Provide one (1) year parts and labor warranty for all parts of the refrigeration system(s) and cold storage cooler(s) and freezer(s) not otherwise covered herein.

F. All above-stated warranty periods are from the date of Substantial Completion. All replacement parts due to a warranty call should be the same quality as the original. Replacement parts should be of a domestic origin where possible.

## 1.9 SUBMITTAL DATA

A. Special Requirements: The following are in addition to any general requirements given elsewhere in the Documents.

B. Submittal Requirements:

1. Kitchen Equipment Contractor to furnish all submittals via PDF, drawings to be scaled per General Specifications and provided in Three (3) submittal packages.

2. Foodservice Design Professionals requires the below-listed business days for each package submitted. Packages are to be submitted within 14 days between each issued package. Each package should contain individual submittal sets.

a. Package One to include (2) Individual sets: 10 Business Days for Review

i. Equipment rough-in

ii. Equipment Brochure

b. Package Two to include (3) Individual sets: 10 Business Days for Review

i. Exhaust Hoods

ii. Cold Storage Assemblies

iii. Refrigeration

c. Package Three to include (4) Individual sets: 15 Business Days for Review

i. Custom Fabrication

ii. Serving Counters

iii. Merchandising Equipment

iv. Miscellaneous Submittals

C. Submittals to be identified with the below-listed file name structure:

1. 11 40 00-1 EQUIPMENT BROCHURE

2. 11 40 00-2 EQUIPMENT ROUGH-IN PLANS

3. 11 40 00-3 CUSTOM FABRICATION

4. 11 40 00-4 SERVING COUNTER

5. 11 40 00-5 EXHAUST HOODS

6. 11 40 00-6 COLD STORAGE ASSEMBLY

7. 11 40 00-7 REFRIGERATION

8. 11 40 00-8 BEVERAGE MERCHANDISER

D. Package One (1) requires both submittals: Brochure and Rough-in plans. **If not sent together, the submittal will be rejected.**

E. Foodservice Design Professionals (FDP) will notate all submittals in RED. Architects and General contractors will be notated in color per their direction.

F. If hard copy submittals are required, Kitchen Equipment Contractor will furnish all copies to the specified trades as required.

G. If discrepancies, missing information, or incorrect information occur within the documents, Kitchen Equipment Contractor is to seek clarification or note the need for further direction on submittals. The Kitchen Equipment Contractor is to bid the higher of the discrepancies. *Refer to Section 1.3 SCOPE OF WORK: Subsection D.*

H. Brochure Format (for regularly manufactured equipment and components):

1. Front and rear protective cover with labeled project name.

2. Brochure index: Indicate Functional Area/Room number, item number, quantity, description, and manufacturer.

3. A separate flysheet for each component or item of equipment, indicating item number, name, quantity, manufacturer, optional equipment, modifications, special instructions, and utility requirements. Any equipment or assembly containing more than one buyout sub-assembly or component shall have the second item listed in parenthesis beside the primary item name—for example, Serving Counter (hot food well).

4. Catalog specification sheet with all options notated on the specification sheet and manufacturer’s drawing.

I. Shop Drawings (Rough-In Drawings):

1. Separate drawing sheets: same size as Contract Drawings (Contract Drawings are not to be traced or reproduced). Submittal drawings are to be provided by Kitchen Equipment Contractor and not copied or reproduced from Contract Documents. Any reproduced submittal drawings will be rejected.

2. ¼” scale drawing of fixed/movable food service equipment and prefabricated Cold Storage Assemblies with itemized schedules.

3. Special Conditions Drawings, sizing, and locating the following conditions:

   a. Slab depressions, cores, sleeves, or block-outs (cold storage assemblies, drain trenches, piping, etc.).

   b. Concrete or masonry platforms.

   c. Pipe sleeves or roof jacks.

   d. Wall openings or block-outs for pass-through equipment, recessed control panels, in-wall fire-protection system components, etc.

   e. Blocking grounds or anchor plates required in walls for equipment support/attachment.

   f. Above-ceiling hanger assemblies for support of exhaust hoods, ceiling-mounted pot racks, etc.

   g. Access panels in walls or ceiling for service of equipment.

   h. Ceiling pockets or recesses for unusually high equipment.

   i. In-wall carriers for wall-hung or cantilevered equipment.

4. Electrical Rough-In Drawing

5. Plumbing and Mechanical Rough-In Drawing

6. Required information:

   a. All fixed and portable food service equipment shown on Contract Drawings.

   b. All prefabricated Cold Storage Assemblies and Conveyor/Dishtable Assemblies shown on Contract Drawings.

   c. All general-use and convenience utilities or services indicated on Contract Drawings, including those required by or connected to equipment or devices, not in this Section.

   d. All Rough-In Drawings: Fully dimensioned from engineering benchmark (column lines, when provided) and finished-room surface to the point of stub-up through floor and stub-out through wall or ceiling for all mechanical, electrical, and plumbing services.

   e. Connection number/tag system and symbols: Identical to Contract Drawings.

J. Shop Drawings (Manufacturer’s and Fabricator’s):

1. Sheet Size: Identical to Contract Drawings, drawn or plotted at a ¼” scale for plan view, ½” for elevations, and 1½” for sections and construction details.

2. Included information: The item number, name, and quantity.

3. Construction details, sections, and elevations to reflect the requirements of the Specifications and Drawings.

4. Indicate adjacent walls, columns, and equipment.

5. Indicate plumbing and electrical schematic drawings for equipment such as conveyors, waste systems, self-cleaning exhaust hoods, exhaust hood fire protection systems, and fabricated fixtures with a single electrical or plumbing connection.

6. Mechanical or electrical operating components or products integrated into a fabricated fixture: ventilation and service access required or recommended by the manufacturer, including panel size and location to permit easy lubrication, adjustment, or replacement of all moving parts.

K. All equipment and engineering rough-in plans sheet numbers are to match the contract documents. All equipment item numbers and engineer item numbers located on the schedules are to match the contract documents. All engineering requirements must be updated to accommodate the provided equipment and match the contract documents. The Kitchen Contractor coordinates any MEP revisions to accommodate the supplied and proposed equipment. The Kitchen Equipment Contractor is responsible for any costs associated with equipment substitution.

L. Foodservice Design Professionals (FDP) drawings and schedules are not to be copied in any way. Any replicated drawings of Foodservice Design Professionals (FDP) will be rejected.

## 1.10 SERVICE MANUAL

A. Three copies bound in 1½" hardback, three-ring binders (as many volumes as required by the scope of the project) with the same data as the brochure after installation (Refer to "Submittal Data"). Provide separate service manuals for each independent area within the project scope (Main Kitchen, Culinary, Concession, etc.).

B. Each Volume: Section for maintenance of finish materials (e.g., stainless steel, plastic laminates, FRP, Plexiglas, etc.).

C. Catalog specification sheet and/or manufacturer's shop drawings.

D. Each Volume: Index of items, manufacturer's operating/maintenance information, replacement parts data, list of all product warranties, and price lists. Provide the name, title, and address of personnel at each respective manufacturer and service personnel to be contacted for spare/replacement parts and service after the warranty period.

E. To the extent possible, provide two copies of the manufacturer's video instructional cassettes for operating, maintenance, and equipment service.

F. Internally subdivide binder contents with permanent page dividers, logically organized by equipment item number or manufacturer name, with tab titling printed under reinforced, laminated plastic tabs.

G. Electronically submitted manuals must follow the formatting requirements listed above.

H. **Service Manual to be provided to the owner before kitchen equipment demonstration.**

## 1.11 VERIFICATION AND COORDINATION OF PROJECT / DATA

A. Utilities Rough-in Drawings and field verifications are to be completed within four weeks after receipt of notice-to-proceed. Review Contract Drawings and Submittal Data for accuracy and completeness and notify Architect of conflicts and proposed adjustments. Coordinate work with other sub-contractors.

1. KEC to provide on-site field verification of all underground utilities before pouring concrete for capacity and location and coordinate with General Contractor. Submit a review to Architect and General Contractor. If rough-ins need to be relocated, KEC will compensate other trades for the required relocation.

2. KEC to provide on-site field verification of all other utility connections and locations and coordinate with General Contractor. Submit a review to Architect and General Contractor.

B. On-Site Inspection Reports

1. Before concrete pour: The Kitchen Equipment Contractor is to submit a copy of the report below to the Architect, General Contractor, and Foodservice Design Professionals (FDP) within 24 hours of the inspection. The form to be submitted is contained within these General Specifications.

2. Before delivery of equipment: The Kitchen Equipment Contractor is to submit a copy of the report below to the Architect, General Contractor, and Foodservice Design Professionals (FDP) within 24 hours of the inspection. The form to be submitted is contained within these General Specifications.

# 0n - Site Inspection Report

***Prior to Concrete Pour***

**Inspection Date** _____ **Project Name** _____

**Project Location** _____

---

**Inspector's Name** _____ **Company** _____

**Inspector's Contact Number** _____ **Email** _____

---

**Architectural Firm** _____ **Contact** _____

**Architect's Contact Number** _____ **Email** _____

---

**General Contractor** _____ **PM** _____

**G.C. Contact Number** _____ **Email** _____

---

**Foodservice Consultant** Foodservice Design Professionals, LLC **PM** _____

**Contact Number** 281.350.2323 **Email** _____

---

An on-site Inspection to verify the location of UNDERGROUND utilities was conducted on this date. The following conditions were observed and brought to the attention of the General Contractor. (KEC is to provide a written description and copy of the Utility Plan indicating the corrective action required).

**1. What difficulties, if any, were encountered?**

**Inspector's Initials** _____

**This Inspection Report is the responsibility of the Kitchen Equipment Supplier and the General Contractor. Coordination between the two parties is mandatory.**
**Neither the Architect nor FDP need to be present at any of the inspections.**

**EMAIL A COPY OF THIS REPORT AND ANY ADDITIONAL INFORMATION TO THE ARCHITECT, GENERAL CONTRACTOR AND FOODSERVICE DESIGN PROFESSIONALS, LLC.**

# 0n - Site Inspection Report

***Prior to Delivery of Equipment***

**Inspection Date** _____ **Project Name** _____

**Project Location** _____

---

**Inspector's Name** _____ **Company** _____

**Inspector's Contact Number** _____ **Email** _____

---

**Architectural Firm** _____ **Contact** _____

**Architect's Contact Number** _____ **Email** _____

---

**General Contractor** _____ **PM** _____

**G.C. Contact Number** _____ **Email** _____

---

**Foodservice Consultant** Foodservice Design Professionals, LLC **PM** _____

**Contact Number** 281.350.2323 **Email** _____

---

An on-site Inspection to verify the location of INSTALLED utilities was conducted on this date. The following conditions were observed and brought to the attention of the General Contractor. (KEC is to provide a written description and copy of the Utility Plan indicating the corrective action required).

**1. What difficulties, if any, were encountered?**

**Inspector's Initials** _____

**This Inspection Report is the responsibility of the Kitchen Equipment Supplier and the General Contractor. Coordination between the two parties is mandatory.**
**Neither the Architect nor FDP need to be present at any of the inspections.**

**EMAIL A COPY OF THIS REPORT AND ANY ADDITIONAL INFORMATION TO THE ARCHITECT, GENERAL CONTRACTOR AND FOODSERVICE DESIGN PROFESSIONALS, LLC.**

C. Review critical systems/components for application, performance, and capacity and submit calculation worksheets with the initial submission of brochure/rough-in drawings, with all proposed adjustments noted, including:

1. Exhaust hood removal/supply air volume, velocity, static pressure, duct collar sizes, and locations.

2. Refrigeration Systems (compressor, condenser, and evaporator) capacities/sizes, quantities, and refrigerant piping distances/sizes.

3. Exhaust Hood Fire Suppression Systems (nozzle locations, air handler, fuel interlocks, piping/distance limitations).

4. Locations of Vacuum Breakers.

5. Conformance of Refrigerated Components/Equipment with HACCP Guidelines (e.g., salad/sandwich pans, upright/open refrigerator cabinets, salad bars) with HACCP Guidelines.

6. Gas and water line sizes and manifold configurations.

7. Diameter and length of flexible connector lines for fixed/movable gas appliances.

8. Fabricated Equipment load center panels (individual and total amperage calculations and circuit balance).

9. ADA compliance of workstations, service positions, passageways, etc.

D. Ceiling mounted appliances/fixtures: Verify and coordinate dimensions/location of support framing/hangers with the General Contractor—all material and installation below 12’-0” AFF: Section 11 40 00.

E. Dimension Responsibility: Obtain actual or guaranteed measurements for the proper equipment fit. All dimensions indicated in Contract Documents are approximate and are as accurate as can be determined at the time. Field-check all horizontal/vertical measurements and conditions at the building before fabrication or delivery of equipment and notify the Architect of all conflicts or deviations from the dimensions shown.

F. Checking Dimensions at Site: Before ordering any materials or doing any work, verify all measurements of the building and be responsible for their correctness. No extras will be allowed for variations from drawings in existing conditions or work performed under this contract. Any discrepancies found shall be submitted to the Architect for instructions before proceeding.

G. Scheduling to Fit Openings: Should it become necessary to schedule the construction of walls or partitions before delivery of fixed equipment, the equipment must be fabricated for passage through finished openings. Maintain close contact with the project and be cognizant of all conditions, including vertical handling limitations within the building (elevator cabs or openings, stairs, etc.) and possible hoisting requirements. Coordinate all procedures with General Contractor and Project Team.

H. Refrigerated and Dry Storage Areas: Verify and coordinate dimensions to accommodate scheduled modular shelf sections. Notify Architect of the variance between the Contract Documents and actual conditions.

I. Color/Pattern Selections: Submit selection samples of solid polymer products, plastic laminate, paint or stain finishes, and vinyl-coated surface material of equipment as selected by the Owner.

J. Movable Equipment Interface: Rolling stock (pan racks, carts, dollies, dish/tray/rack dispensers) required to fit through or into fixed equipment (roll-in refrigerators, counter bodies, etc.) is to be reviewed and coordinated for compatibility at the time initial of shop drawing submittal. Indicate conflicts and proposed adjustments.

K. Relocation of Work: Relocate or re-route work as required to coordinate related items free of charge if no extra work is involved.

L. **Kitchen Equipment Contractor must provide FDP with the food service equipment lump sum pricing (including material and labor) after the contract has been executed and *before submittals* are provided to FDP. *This information is critical to FDP for accounting/billing purposes.***

## 1.12 EQUIPMENT FURNISHED / INSTALLED BY OTHERS

A. Obtain and coordinate utility requirements of Owner-Furnished/Owner-Installed (OF/OI) equipment with the building utilities and rough-in drawings/provisions.

B. Coordinate physical data of OF/OI appliances or equipment and incorporate information into Submittal Drawings. Vendor- or Purveyor-Furnished equipment (e.g., coffee/tea equipment): same as OF/OI.

## 1.13 WORK INSTALLED BUT FURNISHED BY OTHERS

A. Coordinate delivery/installation schedule of Owner-Furnished/Contractor-Installed (OF/CI) equipment with the Owner at least ninety (90) days before equipment requirement.

B. Obtain and coordinate utility requirements of OF/CI equipment with the building utilities and rough-in drawings/provisions.

C. Receive at the job site and fully incorporate into installation procedures as if furnished under this Section.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 FABRICATED FIXTURES MATERIAL / COMPONENTS

A. Stainless steel sheets or shapes: 18-8, Type 302, polished to 180 grit No. 4 finish.

1. Stainless steel joints and seams: Heli-arc welded, free of pits and flaws, ground smooth, and polished to a No. 4 finish.

2. The “grain” direction of horizontal stainless-steel surfaces: Longitudinal, including the splash back. The polishing procedure at right-angle corners of fixtures shall provide a mitered appearance.

B. Galvanized Iron Sheets: Armco copper bearing Zinc Grip or Zinc Grip/Paint Grip.

1. Galvanized iron joints and seams: Arc-welded, free of pits, flaws, and ground smooth.

2. Galvanized sheets or shapes: Washed with mineral spirits and painted with Rust-Oleum gray semi-gloss enamel.

C. Sound Deadening: Schnee Butyl Sealant ½” wide rope positioned continuously between all frame members or contact material and underside of stainless-steel surface (sinks, tabletops, food wells, over shelves, and undershelves). Tighten stud bolts for maximum compression of sealant and trim excess.

D. Plastic Laminates: Color/pattern selected by Architect, in 1/16” thickness for flat surfaces: 1/32” thickness for radiused surfaces. Plastic laminates and adhesives must be NSF-approved (Standard No. 35).

E. Solid Polymer products: Color/pattern/material selected by Architect in thickness as specified. Solid Polymers and adhesives must be N.S.F. approved (Standard No. 51).

F. Casters:

1. Fabricated fixtures with “Open Base” construction: Jarvis and Jarvis Model No. 5-405-113P-NSF swivel casters with grease seals on forks and wheels; Zerk fitting in swivel; two casters: Model No. E-75 Verti-Lock brakes. All casters: B-7” rolling bumpers with stainless steel top discs.

G. Cutting Boards: 1/2” thick Read Products, Inc. “Richlite” cutting board, size as indicated.

H. Identification Plates, Labels, Tags:

1. Prohibited Information: Names of suppliers, fabricators, and contractors.

2. NSF Labels: Required on all pieces of equipment.

3. Required Information: Function or purpose of controls such as display light switches, food warmer controls, etc.

4. Plate Construction: Engraved phenolic plastic, secured to equipment with epoxy cement or stainless-steel screws. Furnish samples.

## 2.2 PLUMBING / MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Plumbing Fittings and Components: Furnished under this Section as follows:

Note: Fitting and components described in Items 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5 are furnished loose by 11 40 00 for final installation and connection by Division 22.

1. Control valves and appliance pressure regulators for water, gas, steam, and vacuum breakers: wherever required on food service equipment (chrome-plated where exposed).

2. Faucets and drains with and without connected overflows (unless otherwise indicated) for all sinks.

3. Specialty food service water-fill faucets, hose bibbs, or hose assemblies indicated in drawings/specifications.

4. Wade Model No. W-10 Shock-Stop shock absorbers for all food service equipment with quick-opening or solenoid-operated water valves.

5. T&S HW-6 Series Water Quick Disconnect hose, diameter per water connection size requirements, with safety fitting, w/coiled restraining device, full port ball valve, antimicrobial coating, lifetime warranty.

6. Extensions of indirect waste fittings to open-sight floor sink or floor drains from sinks, under bar equipment, and food-holding components of serving counters (e.g., cold pans, hot food wells, refrigerator/freezer coils not equipped with condensate evaporators) furnished and installed by Division 22. Drains: All drains to be type 'K' Copper – Paint with aluminum paint where exposed**. Div. 22 to ensure a minimum air gap of 1" and not less than twice the effective opening of the indirect waste pipe, per code. Div. 22 to ensure all drain lines are centered over floor sink grate openings and no water splashes on the floor.**

7. Piping brackets and supports beneath fabricated equipment.

8. Closed Base Bodies: Removable 18-gauge stainless steel closure panel at plumbing penetrations under the top.

9. Control valves on Open Base fixtures: Mounted on a 14-gauge stainless steel gusset-shaped panel with h 3½" setback from the countertop edge/rim to the face of the control handle.

10. Fill hose/faucet at support pedestals or Closed Base Body: Installed in a 15" x 18" x 5" deep recessed mounting panel. Panel bottom: sloped on a 60° angle, with 3/8" stainless steel rod hanger-bracket for the hose.

11. Provide filtration option as shown on contract documents (a, b, c, or combination thereof):

    a. In-line Water Filter System:

        i. Everpure System filters for coffee/tea brewers, icemakers, water chillers, convection steamers, and beverage systems. They should be sized per the manufacturer's recommendation.

    b. Remote Central Water Filter System.

    c. Remote and/or In-line Reverse Osmosis system.

B. Gas-Heated Equipment Fittings and Components: Furnished under this Section as follows:

1. Fixed Equipment: T&S Manufacturer Safe-T-Link “HG-4-SK” Series gas appliance connector: Coated Hose w/NPT Male Ends, Swivel Links, 2-Piece Quick Disconnect, 90° Elbow & Installation Kit. Diameter per fuel volume/connection size requirements. Gas valve diameter size per fuel volume/connection size requirements.

    a. Restraining device: Heavy duty steel cable, fastened to equipment and walls, 3” to 6” shorter than equipment connector length.

C. Final Plumbing Connections Provisions:

1. Fabricated equipment containing components, fittings, and devices indicated on food service connection drawings to be connected to the building systems: each component, fitting, or group thereof pre-piped to a utility compartment for final connection by Division 22. Refer to drawings for capacities.

2. Field-assembled equipment (e.g., prefabricated cold storage assemblies, exhaust hoods, ware wash machines, convection ovens, etc.): plumbing components completely interconnected under this Section for final connection arrangements indicated on Utility Connection Drawings.

3. All plumbing final connection points of equipment shall be tagged, indicating the following:

    a. Item number

    b. Name of devices or components

    c. Type of utility (water, gas, steam, drain, chilled water)

D. Ducts and Vents:

1. Exhaust hoods furred-in to ceiling: 2” high duct collar for final connection to the duct system.

2. Warewash machines equipped with integral vent cowls or extended hoods: furnished with 18-gauge stainless steel seamless duct risers to 6” above the finished ceiling for final connection. The duct: trimmed at the ceiling with a 16-gauge stainless steel angle flange with all corners welded.

E. Refer to Section 1.4: OTHER DIVISIONS/CONTRACTORS RELATED WORK; Sub Sections E. Plumbing and F. Mechanical for additional information.

## 2.3 FOOD SERVICE EQUIPMENT REFRIGERATION SYSTEMS

A. Install complete with all refrigerants, oil, dials, dehydrators, gauges, and controls required for the system’s proper operation.

B. Self-contained or factory-installed compressors: Check and adjust to the proper operating temperature prescribed by FDA/HACCP.

## 2.4 PLUMBING TRIM

A. Faucets: Furnished for all sinks or equipment requiring open water supply.

B. Fill Faucets: Furnished for appliances requiring open water supply.

C. Drain Fittings: Furnished for all sinks or equipment requiring removal of liquids. Install specified chrome-plated or stainless-steel fittings in die-stamped openings with washers and locknuts. The solder may be used as a sealer but shall not be applied to the top surface of the drain fittings.

## 2.5 ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

A. All electrical systems, components, and accessories within the work of this Section: Certified to be in accordance with NEC 70.

B. Electrical Fittings and Components: Furnished under this Section as follows. Coordinate food service equipment loads, voltage, and phase with the building system and confirm any existing or OF/OI equipment requirements.

C. Cord and Caps:

1. Coordinate all food service equipment cord/caps with related receptacles.

2. All 120, 120/208, and 208 volts “plug-in” equipment shall have Type SO or SJO cord and plug with ground wire fastened to the frame/body of the item.

3. Cord lengths for fixed equipment: Adjusted to eliminate loose-hanging excess.

4. All non-fixed plug-in “buy-out” equipment: Hubbell configuration and ratings as required.

5. All mobile electrical support equipment (heated cabinets, dish carts, etc.) and counter appliances mounted on mobile stands (mixers, food cutters, toasters, coffee makers, microwave ovens, etc.): 8’-0” cord length with cord-hanger strap secured to the rear of equipment or mobile stand.

D. Switches and Controls:

1. Each motor-driven appliance or electrically heated unit: Equipped with a control switch or starter per Underwriters’ Laboratories, Inc., with low-voltage and overload protection.

2. Disposer controls recess-mounted in the wall: External fittings and accessories removed from the enclosure and furnished with 16-gauge stainless steel perimeter angle flange with welded corners. Install control at 4’-0” AFF to the bottom of the enclosure.

3. Disposer controls recess-mounted in counter-splash risers: External fittings and accessories removed from NEMA 4 enclosure and furnished with 16-gauge stainless steel perimeter angle flange with welded corners. Install control at 3’-0” AFF to the bottom of the enclosure. Provide the panel with a 60” long Seal-Tite electrical conduit from the bottom of the control panel for final field connections under Division 26.

4. Equipment that is not provided with built-in circuit breakers or fused terminal block and is indicated on Utility Connections Drawings to be directly connected to the building

electrical system: a NEMA 4 stainless steel disconnect switch furnished and installed by Division 26.

5. All remote manual starters, disconnect switches, magnetic contactors or starters, and push-button stations: NEMA Type 4 enclosure; NEMA Type 1 enclosure only when installed in a Closed Base Body.

E. Heating Elements:

1. Electrically heated equipment: Thermostatic controls.

2. Water heating equipment: Equipped with positive low water shut-off.

F. Receptacles and Switches:

1. Receptacles installed in vertical panels of support pedestals or Closed Base Bodies: installed in 12" x 8½" x 3" deep recessed mounting panel sloped at a 60° angle and turned up to the top of the opening.

2. Pre-wire receptacles in closed base fixtures to a junction box installed within 6" from the bottom of utility or compressor compartments.

3. Receptacles mounted on Open Base fixtures: Installed on a 12" x 10½" x 4½" deep 14-gauge stainless steel panel with returned ends and sloping recess—secure panel to the underframe of fixture top.

4. Pre-wire receptacles on open base fixtures to a junction box secured to a leg or mounted on the underside of the lower shelf. Vertical runs of wiring: Made in rigid conduit or within the tubular leg.

5. Receptacles installed in/on-fabricated equipment: Hubbell, Inc. assemblies horizontally mounted in a metal box with stainless steel cover plate.

6. Switches installed in/on-fabricated equipment: Hubbell, Inc. with metal box and stainless-steel cover plate. Switches: pre-wired to the controlled device and a junction box installed within 6" from the bottom of the utility or compressor compartment. All refrigeration system switches: Installed within the compressor compartment near the door opening.

7. Load centers installed in/on fabricated equipment to have all fixture components pre-wired to the load center with balanced phase loading. Load center: Ready for final connection by Division 26 and flush-mounted within the utility compartment rear panel, set back 8" from the access door. All breaker/device information will be typewritten on the circuit schedule in the load center door (number corresponding breaker/device) with an enclosed schematic wiring diagram of fixture components.

8. All receptacles are to be pre-wired to the cord and plug assembly and routed through the over-shelf post at all island equipment locations unless specified otherwise.

G. Light Fixtures:

1. Light fixtures with lamps installed in/on fabricated or field-assembled equipment: pre-wired to a junction box for final connection (continuous-run fixtures when indicated).

2. LED Display Light: Install light fixtures full-length of Display Stand and Serving Shelf with stud bolts and pre-wire through support posts to an apron-mounted switch.

3. Heat Lamps: Installed to the underside of serving shelf assemblies. When multiple 24" heat lamps are specified, provide maximum length heat lamp chassis. Install all switches remotely from lamps.

4. **Cold Storage LED Light Fixtures: Furnished by Section 11 40 00, final installation by Div. 26. All electrical wiring and conduit, provided by Div. 26, electrically connected through the Vapor Proof light fixture base connection, located on the interior door header—all Conduit to be EMT Watertight. Door frame wiring stubs out the top of panels 8" in flexible conduit for final connection by the electrical contractor. All horizontal conduits: below ceiling panels. All lighting fixtures will be wired from inside the assembly—no penetrations through the ceiling panels. Seal-sleeved penetrations are airtight at both sides of the panel. KEC is responsible for verifying that trade contractors seal all penetrations.**

H. Final Electrical Connection Provisions:

1. Fabricated equipment containing electrically operated components or fittings indicated on Utility Connections Drawings: Direct connected, with each component, fitting, or group pre-wired to a junction box for final connection by Division 26. Refer to drawings for circuit loading.

2. Fabricated equipment containing electrically operated components and devices indicated: Circuit-breaker load center with each component or device pre-wired to a separate circuit breaker for balanced phase loading and single final connection by Division 26.

3. Field-assembled equipment (e.g., prefabricated cold storage assemblies, exhaust hoods, ware wash machines, etc.) shall have electrical components completely interconnected in this Section for final connection arrangements as indicated on Utility Connection Drawings by Division 26.

4. Pre-wire the following groups of cold storage assembly electrical devices to a top-mounted junction box for final connection by Division 26 per compartment grouping (unless otherwise indicated).

   a. Light fixtures and switches; heated pressure-relief ports.

   b. Door/jamb heaters.

   c. Evaporator fans, defrost elements and drain line heaters.

5. All electrical final connection points of equipment shall be tagged, indicating the following:

   a. Item number.

   b. Name of devices on the circuit.

   c. Total electrical load.

d. Voltage and phase.

I. Lamps: in all food service equipment containing light fixtures. Refrigerator or heated cabinets: All exposed LED lamps above or within a food zone: Shat-R-Shield lamps or standard lamps, sleeved with end caps.

J. Refer to Section 1.4: OTHER DIVISIONS/CONTRACTORS RELATED WORK; Subsection F. Division 26 (Electrical) for additional information.

## 2.6 CUSTOM – FABRICATED / ASSEMBLED UNITS

A. Mechanical or electrical operating components or products integrated into a fabricated fixture: Ventilation and service access required or recommended by the manufacturer. The service access panel(s) size and placement permit easy lubrication, adjustment, or replacement of all moving parts and are to be indicated on fabrication shop drawings.

## 2.7 COUNTER / TABLETOPS

A. 14-gauge stainless steel; all free edges turned down 2" with ¾" tight hem at the bottom—free corners: rounded on ¾" radius.

B. Marine edges: Turned up ½" on 45º angle and turned down 2" with ¾" tight hem at the bottom.

C. Cafeteria serving countertops at hot food stations: Full-length x 3½" x ½" high raised rail at (customer's) front side with 45º integral turndown to counter surface.

D. Tops abutting high fixtures or walls: Cove up specified height and slope back 1½" at the top on 45º angle; 2½" slope where piping occurs. Turn down 1" at the rear of the splash and tight ends to the bottom of the top turndown. Secure splash turndown to the wall with a 4" long 14-gauge stainless steel "Z" clip anchored to the wall, 36" OC.

E. Freestanding tables and all serving counter splash-risers: Turned back at a 90º angle with 1" turndown at the rear.

F. Brace tops with rigid-welded 1½" x 1½" x 1/8" galvanized steel angle frame at the perimeter with cross bracing 2'-0" OC maximum. Provide 4" x 4" x 12-gauge stainless steel triangular pads where leg gusset welds to frame. Paint the entire frame with Rust-Oleum gray semi-gloss enamel. Angle frames: Secured to the underside of top surfaces with ¼" studs welded 9" OC maximum with chrome-plated washer, lock washer, and cap nut. Studs: Such length that cap nuts can be made up tight, bringing the top down snugly on the angle frame eliminating all vibrations or "oil-canning."

G. Tops: 1½" overhang at free sides of underframe or Closed Base Body.

H. Mockett Model No. SG5-26 chrome-plated/plastic grommet assembly or integrally welded stainless-steel flange or inverted gusset where service utilities or support posts penetrate or abut tops, ground, and polished to match the top. When conditions permit, provide a 1" x 1½" rectangular backsplash opening for service utilities instead of piercing the horizontal surface. Install stainless steel split tubing at the raw edge of the opening.

I. Extend underbracing members to the wall, turn down 6", and anchor to the wall when specified to be mounted on leg/bracket assembly.

J. All openings in tops: 3/16" high raised die-formed edges.

K. All top openings for pans or inserts: 20-gauge stainless steel, watertight liners, 8½" deep, secured to the underside of the countertop.

L. All "built-in" and "drop-in" counter equipment/appliances to have framing members at the perimeter of the opening.

M. Scrap Basket: 18-gauge stainless steel construction 6½" x 6½" x 21¾" long. Top of container: 5/8" wide x ¼" high full perimeter flange with ¼" diameter stainless steel rod bail handle. Interior vertical corners coved on ½" radius. Countertop: Fitted with 6¾" square die-stamped opening.

## 2.8 DRAWERS

A. Stainless Steel Liners: Component Hardware Model No. S80-2020 (20" x 20"), easily removable with drawer in the fully extended position.

B. Drawer Frame: 16-gauge stainless steel flanged out at the top. Weld the frame to a double-panel 16-gauge stainless steel drawer front with full-length recessed pull at the top (similar profile as Garcy Model No. R-1060) with closed ends.

C. Channel-formed horizontal pull: ¾" turndown at the front and ends with ½" tight hem. The front edge of the pull: flush with the face of the drawer. Recess behind pull: sloped up on a 60° angle, terminating 1" below the bottom edge of pull.

D. Mount drawer frame on Component Hardware Model No. S52-2020 self-closing slides, with Delrin bearings, full-depth of the fixture. Secure slides to the body or brackets to eliminate lateral movement in the extended position. Refrigerator drawers: Component Hardware Model No. S52-2024 stainless steel slides with Delrin bearings.

E. Drawer enclosure in an Open Base Fixture: 18-gauge stainless steel flanged out at the top for attachment to the underside of the tabletop. The lower edge of the enclosure is flanged in toward the open bottom. Mount drawer slides to enclosure and brace as required. The face of the enclosure is to be the same length and height of the drawer face. Provide ¾" deep offset in front of the enclosure and 2½" from the underside of the tabletop for a flush-fitting appearance.

F. Drawer enclosure on freestanding fixture: Full depth of table framing.

G. Drawer enclosure in a Closed Base Fixture: Completely partitioned from the adjoining area. Drawer front: Flush fitting with the face of the body.

H. Drawer Liners other than tool/utility: Bread Drawer: Component Hardware Model No. S83-2020; Refrigerated Drawer: Component Hardware Model No. S81-1520 stainless steel liner.

I. Cash Drawer: Integral stainless-steel body, 3" deep.

## 2.9 SINKS

A. 14-gauge stainless steel; all interior corners (horizontal/vertical) coved on ¾" radius. 1½" wide double-walled partitions with flat tops between compartments.

B. Continuous exterior panels of multiple-compartment sinks: 14-gauge stainless steel filler panel welded ground and polished between compartments.

C. Sinks (with overflow): Score and slope sink bottom ½" to die-stamped opening fitted with Fisher 22306 twist waste valve 3 1/2" x 2" with overflow and tailpiece. 14-gauge stainless steel bracket: Welded to sink bottom for drain stem with 1½" handle clearance.

D. Where sinks are installed in fixtures with Closed Base Body, provide a Fisher 22306 twist waste valve 3 1/2" x 2" with overflow and tailpiece. (Sinks with dimensions larger than 20" x 20" in Closed Base Body will not have overflow fitting.) 14-gauge stainless steel bracket: welded to sink bottom with T & S Model No. BL-4740-1 guide bushing. Install on shortened drain stem, one T & S Model No. BL-4710-1 remote control stem assembly only (length as required) with Model No. 113-L universal joint and white blank button. Set drain control handle in Cambro Model PSB-6 bowl with bottom omitted (dress raw edge) to permit passage of drain handle—secure bowl in utility compartment door or body panel with clear silicone.

E. When single-hole deck-mounted faucets are specified, install overflow fitting in the sidewall of the sink compartment and provide ell-fitting in connecting tubing.

F. Flush Covers when specified: 1/2" thick Read Products, Inc. "Richlite" cutting board, size as indicated. Support clips: ¼" stainless steel rod 2" long, formed at 45º with two ¾" leg ends (¼" long threaded ends). Insert rod clips through tight-clearance holes in the sink, seal watertight, and secure with stainless steel acorn nuts or tack-weld at the exterior of the sink wall. Set support clips ½" below the top. Provide a 14-gauge stainless steel channel or angle support frame to store covers when not in use. Cover holder: Adjacent to sink compartment, below countertop, or under drawer assembly.

## 2.10 UTENSIL – WASH COUNTERS

A. 14-gauge stainless steel; all free edges coved up 3" with 1½" diameter rolled rim and bullnose corners.

B. Edges of utensil-wash counters next to high fixtures or walls: Coved up 10" and sloped back 1½" on 45º angle; 2½" slope where piping occurs. Turn down 1" at the rear of splash and secure backsplash to the wall with 4" long 14-gauge stainless steel "Z" clip anchored to wall @ 36" OC. Vacuum breaker pockets: 4" long square turnback sections aligned with the slope break line.

C. Exposed Rear Splash: 16-gauge stainless steel finished panel from the top of the splash to the bottom edge of the rolled rim with a welded vertical joint at the end of the splash and ½" turnback at the bottom of the panel. Secure the panel with concealed attachment and install bracing 24" OC.

D. Cove all interior corners (horizontal/vertical) on ¾" radius and slope tables 1/8" per foot, maintaining level crown.

E. Brace utensil-wash counters with 1” x 4” 12-gauge stainless steel channels down the centerline of the top and between each pair of legs, with closed ends. Bracing: Secured to underside of dishtable with ¼” studs welded 6” OC. maximum, with a chrome-plated washer, lock washer, and cap nut. Studs: Such length that the cap nuts can be made up tight, bringing the dishtable down on the channel members, eliminating all vibration and “oil-canning.”

F. Integrally welded stainless steel flange or inverted gusset where service utilities or support posts penetrate or abut tops: ground and polished to match the top.

G. Extend underbracing members to the wall, turn down 6”, and anchor to the wall when specified to be mounted on a leg/bracket assembly.

H. Hose Bibb: Chicago Model No. 305VBRCF; mounted on 12-gauge stainless steel flange or inverted gusset bracket with 3/8” stainless steel rod hose hanger.

## 2.11 DOORS

A. 18-gauge x 1” stainless steel double pan-formed welded construction, insulated with 1” thick polyurethane boards. Seal the perimeter joint of the pans. Offset the lower horizontal framing member of the Closed Base Body to align the flush access door with the bottom of the Body.

B. Channel-formed full-length horizontal recessed pull: ¾” turndown at the front and ends with ½” tight hem. The front edge of the pull: Flush with the face of the door. Recess behind pull: Sloped up on a 60° angle and terminated 1” below the bottom edge of pull.

C. Door Hardware

1. Two Component Hardware Model No. M75-1002 stainless steel hinges (notch door/jamb at hinge location).

2. Component Hardware Model No. 35-2000 Concealed Magnetic Catch.

3. Component Hardware Model No. D30-4780 lock in the upper free corner of the door.

D. Louvered opening: Cut-out opening size as indicated, turn in 1”, and weld. All corners: Ground and polished.

1. Full-height 18-gauge stainless steel louver with 1” vanes at 45º, ½” spacing. Perimeter channel-formed frame: 1½” x 1”.

2. 45º x 1” x ½” x opening width plus ½” 18-gauge stainless steel louver.

3. Tack the louver flange's weld tab to the door's back panel.

E. Drain handles opening: 6” diameter hole through the double pan to accommodate Cambro Model No. PSB-6 Bowl:

1. Secure the bowl to the door panel with clear silicone.

2. Omit the bottom of the bowl. Dress raw edges of opening for passage of drain handle.

3. Exposed insulation at the penetration of the door pan: Painted black.

F. Sliding Doors: fabricate same as Paragraph "A."

1. Aluminum Sliding Door Track: Component Hardware Model No. B57-0000 Series, length as required. Secure to angle frame at the top of the underside.

2. Front/rear door sheaves: Stainless steel ¾" side-mounted door hangers; two (2) required per door.

3. Recessed Vertical Pull at Upper Corner of Door: Component Hardware Model No. P63-1012.

4. By-Passing Door Guides secured to bottom shelf: Component Hardware Model No. B62-1093.

5. Door Stop at the bottom edge of door: Component Hardware Model No. B60-1086.

G. Offset the lower horizontal framing member of the Closed Base Body/utility compressor compartment to align the door flush with the bottom of the Body.

## 2.12 CLOSED BASE BODIES

A. Frame: Rigid-welded 1½" x 1½" x 1/8" galvanized steel angle forming a continuous structure around the top and bottom perimeters of the fixture, a post at each corner, studs spaced 48" OC maximum. The top of the frame is cross-braced with 1½" angles, 2'-0" OC maximum.

B. 18-gauge stainless steel panels and trim with concealed attachment. All seams: Welded, ground, and polished.

C. Exposed Vertical Corners: Rounded on ¾" radius. Closed Base Bodies adjacent to walls or fixtures: square corners.

D. Vertical and horizontal channel members at shelf interior or drawer enclosures, such as corners and center mullions: Closed and sealed.

E. Closed Base Bodies set on finished masonry platforms: closed and caulked at the underside of equipment overhang and bolted to the platform. Body overhang of the platform: 1" at free ends and 2" at the front and exposed rear sides.

F. Closed Base Bodies not set on the platform: Component Hardware Model No. A54-2-6, 6" legs spaced 4'-0" OC maximum.

## 2.13 UTILITY COMPARTMENTS

A. Closed Base Bodies or Pedestal Supports: Fitted with utility compartments wherever piping or wiring is required in/on the fixture.

B. Same material as Closed Base Bodies with full-height back and end partitions. Omit bottoms except at hose-reel locations.

C. Access Doors: 18-gauge stainless steel double-pan type with a channel formed horizontal recessed pull full-length of the top (similar profile to Garcy Model No. R-1060) with closed ends. Channel-formed horizontal pull: ¾" turn down at the front of the door, a recess behind the pull slopes up on a 60° angle, terminating 1" below the bottom edge of the pull. Offset the

lower horizontal framing member of the Closed Base Fixture to permit flush alignment of the door with the face and bottom edge of the body. Door hardware: two Component Hardware Model No. M75-1002 stainless steel hinges (notch door/jamb at hinge locations) and one Component Hardware Model No. 35-2000 concealed magnetic catch.

D. No shelves of Closed Base Fixtures are to be penetrated.

## 2.14 UTENSIL RACKS

A. Rack: ¼" x 2" 300 series stainless steel flat bar with No. 4 finish, fully welded and formed to match the shape shown on drawings. Lowest band - 7'-6" AFF unless otherwise indicated.

B. Ceiling Mount Supports 1-5/8" diameter 16-gauge stainless steel tubing from band to 18" above the ceiling. Anti-sway bracing above the ceiling - 1½" Unistrut members. Tubing penetrations at the ceiling - Component Hardware Model No. A16-0206 stainless steel gussets.

C. Table Mount Supports 1-5/8" diameter 16-gauge stainless steel tubing extended thru countertop. Secure to closed base framing or cross rail/undershelf on the open base fixture. Tubing penetrations of countertops - integrally welded stainless steel inverted gusset.

D. Utensil Rack Hooks - Component Hardware Model No. J77-4401 stainless steel hooks spaced 8" OC maximum.

E. Electrical Receptacle: NEMA No. 5-20-R or as noted. Mount in fully welded 3½" x 5½" x 3" 14-gauge stainless steel enclosure with ½" radius corners. Stainless steel cover plate to fit specified receptacle. Pre-wire thru tubular support for final connection above the ceiling by Division 26.

## 2.15 OPEN BASE STRUCTURES

A. 1-5/8" OD x 16-gauge seamless stainless-steel tubing legs beveled at the bottom. 1¼" OD cross rails fully welded (360° smooth and polished) to legs at 10" AFF, OC.

B. Top of Leg: Inserted in Component Hardware Model No. A20-0206 gusset fully welded to table frame or sink bottom.

C. Bullet Foot: Component Hardware Model No. A10-0851.

D. Freestanding fixtures requiring utility connections: Component Hardware Model No. A10-0854 flanged feet at the fixture corners, anchored to the floor with non-corrosive bolts.

E. Table Bases: Maximum leg spacing of 6'-0" OC; dishtable and utensil wash counter bases at 5'-0" OC.

F. Open Base equipment specified to be supported by brackets at the rear side only (not completely cantilevered): Tubular legs at the front side only with Component Hardware Model No. A10-0854 flanged feet anchored to the floor with non-corrosive bolts. Front-to-back cross rail: fitted into Component Hardware Model No. A20-0406 circular gusset secured to the wall with non-corrosive bolts.

## 2.16 UNDER SHELVES

A. Open Base Structures: 16-gauge stainless steel turned down 1½" with tight hem at the bottom. Notch all corners to fit tubular legs and weld from the underside to fill the gap, grind, and polish. Cove up 2" at the rear or ends adjacent to wall, columns, refrigerators, etc. The turn-up at freestanding fixtures is to be hemmed tight to the bottom of the turndown. Brace undershelf with 1" x 4" 14-gauge stainless steel channel at the longitudinal centerline and each intermediate pair of legs.

B. Open Base Structure specified to be supported by brackets at the rear side only (not completely cantilevered): 16-gauge stainless steel turned down 1 ½" at free sides with tight hem at the bottom edge. Notch all corners to fit tubular legs as required and weld from the underside to fill the gap, grind, and polish. Cove up 2" at rear ends, as indicated. Fill the gap at the front-to-back rail, grind, and polish. Brace undershelf with 1" x 4" x 1" 14-gauge stainless steel channel at longitudinal centerline between front to back rails.

C. Closed Base Fixtures: 16-gauge stainless steel turned down 1½" at front. Front edge of bottom shelf: Turned back and sealed to finished masonry platform or boxed for leg application. Center shelf has ¾" tight hem.

1. Shelves: Turn up square at ends (coved up at rear only) to the shelf above or countertop flanged out for attachment with no open spaces at interior.

2. All shelf partitions at exposed ends of cabinet bodies or interiors: Free of exposed framing members.

3. Reinforce shelves with full-length 1" x 4" x 14-gauge stainless steel closed hat channel.

4. Unless otherwise noted, all closed base undershelves must be 22" deep and clear.

5. Fully weld smooth and polish the vertical seam of the shelf turndown/turn up with the face of the body partition.

6. Seal the vertical seam of the square turn-in at the exposed interior of open shelf sections.

## 2.17 ANCHOR PLATES / WOOD GROUNDS

A. Behind the finished surface, wherever building walls, partitions, or ceiling construction will not accommodate direct attachment of equipment such as over shelves, wall cabinets, hose reels, utensil racks, exhaust hoods, display cases, etc. Material and installation by General Contractor. Location and coordination with trades by Section 11 40 00.

B. Anchor Plates: Not less than 12" x 12" x ¼" thick steel, secured to the structure above or behind the finished surface, positioned at attachment points.

C. Wood Grounds: Length required by fixture, component, or device, 24" wide x ¾" thick plywood secured to partition system before gypsum board installation.

D. Above ceiling supports: Structural shapes (4" x 8.0 lb. channel) suspended from the structure. Maximum height 15'-0" AFF. Size: width of equipment x length of equipment plus 6'-0". Cross bracing at 6'-0" OC maximum.

## 2.18 OVER SHELVES

A. 16-gauge stainless steel with free edges turned down 1" with ½" tight hem at the bottom—¾" radius at free corners.

B. Turn up 2" raw at walls and sides with a horizontal coved corner at the rear. Round front corners of turn up on ¾" radius.

C. Where shelf width exceeds 12" width, reinforce with ½" x 4" x 14-gauge stainless steel closed hat channel full-length of the shelf.

D. Wall-Mounted Shelves: 16-gauge stainless steel brackets 48" OC maximum, set in 6" from ends.

E. Freestanding Shelves: Where splash is required at free over shelves, turn up square 2" at ends, cove up at the rear, and hem tight to lower edge of front turndown. Weld exposed corners.

1. Freestanding over shelves: 16-gauge stainless steel cantilevered brackets at the rear of the table; double-cantilevered brackets at the center of the table. Posts for cantilevered over shelves are 1-5/8" OD x 16-gauge stainless steel secured to the underframe, 4'-0" OC. Ends of shelves: Secured to adjacent wall/fixture or mounted on 1¼" diameter stainless steel posts.

2. Freestanding over shelves not on cantilevered brackets: 1¼" OD x 16-gauge stainless steel posts, each pair at 4'-0" OC maximum.

F. Baker Table Over shelves: Supported 18" above the top with 1¼" OD stainless steel tubular supports with channel shoe secured to risers.

G. Glass/Cup Rack Over shelf at Dishtables: 14-gauge stainless steel with 1½" deep "vee" trough at free long sides with 1" tight hem inside the trough. Provide a ½" marine edge at free ends and; a 4" splash at the wall. Suspend shelf at 18" above dishtable surface on posts/brackets anchored to dishtable frame/wall at rear; 1" OD stainless steel tubing supports from the structure above the ceiling at front edge, 60" OC at each end.

1. Install at both ends a ½" stainless steel drain tube (connecting both vee-troughs) extended to the dishtable surface through splash turnback.

2. Rack-rest: horizontal full-length 1-5/8" OD stainless steel tubing supported at 10" OC above shelf (8" OC for double service shelf) by 1¼" OD stainless steel tubing with closed ends. Support tubing: welded, ground, and polished, spaced 60" OC.

3. Rack-rest supports to wall: 4" x 4" x 10-gauge stainless steel flange plates welded to support tubing. Anchor flanged plates to blocking ground with non-corrosive bolts.

## 2.19 WALL PANELS

A. Wall Panels: 18-gauge stainless steel, double pan-formed ½" thick with internal stiffener members. Fill with USDA-approved thermal insulation, full height, and width of panels, and attach to the interior with mastic. The maximum allowable temperature at the rear side of the panel: is 120°F.

1. Height of panels as required: Top of tile base to the underside of the hood, top of tile base to the top cap of stub wall, or top of splash to the underside of the hood.

2. Level and square lower edge and sides.

3. Butt joints on all panels.

## 2.20 EXHAUST HOODS (UNLESS SPECIFIED OTHERWISE)

A. Exhaust to be provided to meet all current local jurisdiction mechanical and energy code requirements. Kitchen Equipment Contractor to verify code requirements and coordinate with Divisions 23 and 26. Hoods over production equipment to be Type 1 with continuous capture. All Type 1 hoods should be 6’ deep to ensure smoke/steam capture unless otherwise noted.

B. Install fire suppression system(s) in all ventilators specified in this section. Install per the manufacturer’s recommendations and applicable codes or standards. Submit installation certification form to Architect.

C. Locate chemical cylinders as indicated on drawings and install piping to exhaust hood(s) in a concealed manner. Set cylinders and cabinets at 7’-0” clear AFF unless noted otherwise. Provide polished chrome plated tubing piping/fittings, where exposed at cylinder location and at the interior of exhaust ventilator—exposed pipe threads in/above the food zone are not allowed. Submit a schematic installation diagram and confirm critical distances from cylinders to nozzles.

D. Remote manual release located in the path of egress from the protected exhaust hood area. Kitchen Equipment Contractor to coordinate location with local Fire Marshal requirements before submittal review. All conduits will be recessed within the wall; SURFACE MOUNTING WILL NOT BE ACCEPTED.

E. Provide one (1) handheld Type ‘K’ and ABC 6-liter fire extinguisher per Ansul system, surface wall mounted.

F. Required quantity and sizes of mechanically operated gas valves.

G. Confirm interconnection of all equipment as required to ensure exhaust hood and fire suppression systems are entirely operational and meet local jurisdiction code requirements.

H. ½” diameter steel hanger rods at 4’-0” OC maximum to be by Kitchen Equipment Contractor, but they are to be anchored to the supporting structure (or slab) by the General Contractor in the locations required by exhaust hood shop detail.

I. Provide an appropriate quantity of fire suppression systems as required by local jurisdiction code requirements.

J. Double wall insulated construction at ends. S/S where exposed.

K. Hoods and components to meet all NSF standards, NFPA 96, UL 710 and current IECC requirements.

L. Refer to Section 1.4: OTHER DIVISIONS/CONTRACTORS RELATED WORK; Subsection E. Division 23 (Mechanical) for additional information.

## 2.21 HIGHLIGHTING

A. Polish the following vertical surfaces to a No. 8 finish:

1. Serving and display shelf turndowns.

2. Conveyor and dish/tray deposit station turndowns/frame.

3. Tray slide turndowns.

## 2.22 SHOP / FIELD JOINTS

A. Field joints: The least number is used only when equipment size must be limited for building or interior space access.

B. Stainless steel tops (including edges and splashes): Fully welded, ground, and polished to match adjacent surfaces.

C. Vertical field joints of fixture backsplashes that are inaccessible from the back: terminate 1" above the horizontal coved corner. The remaining height of the field joint: hairline butt joint with offset draw-angle behind. All horizontal/vertical draw joints: located and noted on shop drawings.

D. Hairline butt joint: 1½" x 1½" x 1/8" steel angles welded to the back/underside of countertop/shelf. Offset angle beyond joining metal edge ½" (min.) to provide a flat backing surface for a joint with the angle of other joining metal edge, set for ½" space between vertical legs of angles. Bolt sections together with 5/16" machine bolts, lock washers, acorn head cap nuts, set 3" OC.

E. Closed Base Bodies: Draw-type with hairline seam fully field-welded.

F. Millwork: Plastic laminated joints shall be dowelled, glued, and draw-bolted with fasteners.

G. Solid Polymer: Surfaces drawn tight, filled, sanded, and finished to match adjacent surfaces.

## 2.23 PRE-APPROVED KITCHEN EQUIPMENT CONTRACTORS

A. Only the following named Subcontractors and those approved later, if any, are approved for inclusion in the Contractor's Bid.

B. **Any contractor requesting inclusion within this bid must submit AIA form 305 a minimum of 14 days before the bid date for review or as required by Architect.**

1. Stafford Smith, Mr. JP Garcia, 7129 North Loop East, Houston, TX 77028, (713) 892-5001, E-mail: jpgarcia@staffordsmith.com

2. Texas Metal Equipment Company, Mr. Andrew Harman, 6707 Mayard, Houston, Texas 77041, (713) 466-8722, Fax: (713) 466-0166

3. Kirby Restaurant Supply, Mr. Billy Anderson, 809 S. Eastman Road, Longview, Texas 75602, Phone: (903) 757-2723, Fax: (903) 757-9519, Email: billya@kirbyrestaurantsup.com

4. Mission Restaurant Supply, 1126 S. St. Mary's Street, San Antonio, Texas 78210. Mr. Brian Mosher, Phone (210) 354-0690, Fax (210) 354-0746, E-mail: brianM@missionrs.com

5. Kommercial Kitchens, Mr. Terry Woodard, 13544 East Fwy., Houston, TX 77015, (409) 769-1199, E-mail: terry@kommercialkitchens.com

6. Supreme Fixtures Co., Inc., Mr. Tim Hampel, 11900 Vinny Ridge Road, P.O. Box 193655, Little Rock, AR 72219, Phone: (501) 455-2552, Fax: (501) 455-0802, E-mail: tim@supremefixture.com

## 2.24 PRE-APPROVED STAINLESS-STEEL FABRICATION SUPPLIERS

A. Only the following named Subcontractors and those approved later, if any, are approved for inclusion in the Contractor's Bid.

B. **Any supplier requesting inclusion within this bid must submit AIA form 305 at least 14 days before the bid date for review or as required by Architect.**

1. Texas Metal Equipment Company, Mr. Andrew Harman, 6707 Mayard, Houston, Texas 77041, (713) 466-8722, Fax: (713) 466-0166

2. Kommercial Kitchens, Mr. Terry Woodard, 13544 East Fwy., Houston, TX 77015, (832) 767-5287

3. Mission Restaurant Supply, 1126 S. St. Mary's Street, San Antonio, Texas 78210. Mr. Brian Mosher, Phone (210) 354-0690, Fax (210) 354-0746, E-mail: brianM@missionrs.com

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 DELIVERY AND INSTALLATION

A. Supervision: Provide a skilled and proficient foreman or supervisor who shall remain on the job during the entire installation.

B. Delivery: Coordinate with the progress of construction and Owner's operation schedules. Unless otherwise instructed and documented by Owner or General Contractor, the following procedures apply:

1. Field-Assembled Fixed Equipment integrated into the structure (e.g., cold storage assemblies, exhaust hoods, drain trench/grate assemblies, conveyor systems, ceiling-mounted utensil racks, etc.) are to be sent to the job site when directed by the General Contractor and installed/protected accordingly.

2. All other Fixed Equipment: delivered after completion of work on adjacent finished ceilings, lighting, finished floor and wall systems, including painting.

3. Major Movable Equipment: delivered, when possible, to inventory in a secured area for interim job-site storage or, if the secured area is unavailable when fixed equipment installation/clean-up has been completed.

4. Minor appliances and loose items (e.g., pans, covers, flatware containers, etc.) should be delivered only when the Owner is prepared to receive and inventory such items.

C. Installation: performed by the manufacturer of custom fabricated fixtures.

1. Assemble, square, level, and ready all items for the final utility connections.

2. Cut neatly around obstructions to provide sanitary conditions.

3. Where gaps of ¼" or less occur adjacent to or between equipment, insert rope backing and smoothly applied General Electric construction sealant Series SE-1200 silicone mastic (silver color). Mask both sides of the gap for neat sealant application and remove excess. If space exceeds ¼," neatly install 18-gauge stainless steel trim molding of proper shape with concealed attachment. Use epoxy cement or "Z" clips wherever possible to secure stainless steel trim. Exposed edges or corners of trim: eased and smooth.

4. Refrigeration coil drain line runs to an indirect drain connection greater than 2" from the face of the wall or panel: Either of the following field procedures:

a. Trench the floor and provide a 6" wide x 2" deep 16-gauge stainless steel sloping (-1" to -2") trough from the face of the cooler/freezer wall to the body of the floor sink/floor drain. Trough: turned up 4" at the wall; ¾" flange with ½" turndown at both long sides. Set trough in waterproof mastic and seal 1" OD drain tube penetration into floor sink/floor drain at -2½" BFF. Patch the floor to match adjacent material/surface.

b. Provide 12" x 6" x 2" deep 16-gauge stainless steel condensate pan mounted to cooler/freezer wall at 6" AFF clear. Trench the floor and install a 1" OD drain line from the bottom of the pan to the body of the floor sink/drain. Slope drain line ¼" per foot and seal all connections watertight. Patch the floor to match adjacent material/surface.

D. Protection of Work:

1. Fabricated fixtures: Fiberboard or plywood taped to tops and exposed body panels/components.

2. Manufactured Equipment: Fiberboard or plywood taped as required by equipment shape and installation-access requirements.

3. Prohibited use of equipment: Tool and materials storage, workbench, scaffold, stacking area, etc.

4. Damaged Equipment: Immediately documented and submitted to the Owner with the Contractor's recommendation of action for repair or replacement and its impact on the Project Schedule and Contract Amount, if any.

## 3.2 CLEAN AND ADJUST

A. Clean up and remove all debris from this Work from the job site as the installation progresses.

B. Lubricate and adjust drawer slides, hinges, and casters.

C. Adjust pressure regulating valves, timed-delay relays, thermostatic controls, temperature sensors, exhaust hood grilles, etc.

D. Clean or replace faucet aerators and line strainers.

E. Touch-up damage to painted finishes.

F. Startup and check the operation of all refrigeration systems for at least 72 hours before acceptance.

## 3.3 EQUIPMENT START-UP/DEMONSTRATION

A. Carefully test, adjust, and regulate all equipment following the manufacturer's instructions and certify in writing to the Owner that the installation, adjustments, and performance are in full compliance.

B. Provide the Owner or food service Operators with a thorough operational demonstration of all equipment and furnish instructions for general and specific care and maintenance. Coordinate and schedule selected equipment items and attendees with the Owner at least two weeks before the demonstration starts.

## 3.4 FINAL OBSERVATION

A. Final observation will be made when the Contractor certifies that they have completed their work, thoroughly reviewed the installation/operation of each item in the contract, and found it to comply with the Construction Documents.

B. Repetitive final observations (more than two) and all costs associated with it which may be incurred due to the Contractor's failure to comply with the requirements of this Article will be invoiced to this Contractor on a $70.00/hr and expense basis.

**PART 4 - EQUIPMENT SCHEDULE**

**4.1 REGULARLY MANUFACTURED EQUIPMENT/COMPONENTS: Standard finishes and accessories unless specifically deleted or superseded by the Contract Documents.**

**4.2 FABRICATED AND FIELD-ASSEMBLED EQUIPMENT: Arrangement and configuration as shown on Plans, Elevations, Detail Drawings, and outlined in Specifications.**

**4.3 REFER TO DRAWINGS: For unit quantities and plumbing, electrical or mechanical provisions are required, including the manufacturer's optional voltages, wattages, burner capacities, etc.**

**4.4 REFER TO PART 2 – PRODUCTS: For accessories, fittings, requirements, and procedures related to the listed buy-out and fabricated equipment.**

**4.5 ALTERNATE MANUFACTURER REQUIREMENTS: A specific product manufactured by the listed pre-approved equals shown under Section 4.7 Food Service Equipment are acceptable only if the specific product can evidence compliance with the specified line items and the contract documents (Refer to Section 1.6; Sub-Section A.).**

**4.6 RE-USED EXISTING EQUIPMENT IF SHOWN**

A. Existing equipment scheduled for re-use is to be inventoried and documented that equipment is in operating condition once Kitchen Contractor has taken ownership.

B. Provide pictures of all equipment once inventoried and issue them to the architect to ensure that equipment has not been damaged.

C. Verify the locations of all equipment with the owner.

D. Existing equipment that is to be reused may need parts or accessories for proper and complete operation. Submit a report listing all items with pricing for approval to allow complete installation.

E. Utility disconnection and re-connection: Under Divisions 22 and 26. Kitchen Contractor to verify utility requirements of existing equipment and coordinate with Foodservice Design Professionals (FDP) as required. All utilities not scheduled for re-use must be capped and covered by required disciplines.

F. Disassembly, removal, transportation, and relocation: under this Section and scheduled with General Contractor. The owner's representative must be present and coordinate the date/time with the owner.

G. Thoroughly clean inside and out before relocation.

H. Review functional parts (e.g., doors, controls, heating elements, compressors, etc.) and submit a report of required repairs and cost estimates. Any finishes or equipment damaged due to construction will be repaired as required.

I. Existing equipment not scheduled for reuse is to be carefully removed/relocated by the Kitchen Contractor per the Owner's direction. Kitchen Contractor to coordinate the date/time with General Contractor and Owner.

J. Removal or replacement of existing equipment is to be scheduled for times of least interruption and inconvenience to the food service operation. Submit the proposed time frame schedule, task sequence, and process for approval before starting work.

K. Kitchen Contractor to verify size and shape for all existing re-used equipment and coordinate with Foodservice Design Professionals (FDP) as required.

L. Any modification(s) required/desired for re-used existing equipment to be verified by the Kitchen Contractor. Before the changes are made, all modifications must be approved by the Owner and Foodservice Design Professionals (FDP).

M. The KEC is to verify and coordinate all the utility requirements with the construction documents as required. Refer to the general specifications regarding conflicts.

## 4.7 FOOD SERVICE EQUIPMENT

A. All equipment is to have a performance check from factory-authorized personnel. Warranties will begin on the day of the performance check.

B. All equipment and internal components should be of domestic origin where possible.

C. Architectural coordination items for potential Food Service color, material or signage selections:

1. Countertops: Stone (stainless steel is provided unless otherwise specified)
2. Tray slides: Corian or Stone (stainless steel is provided unless otherwise specified)
3. Counter fronts: Ceramic tile, 3 Form, or Plastic Laminate
4. Sneeze Guards: Stone insets
5. General color, material and graphic selections:
    a. Display Air Screen Merchandisers – Color selection: Powder Coat or Plastic Laminate (stainless steel is provided unless otherwise specified)
    b. Bakery Display Cases – Color selection: Powder Coat or Plastic Laminate (stainless steel is provided unless otherwise specified)
    c. Pass Thru or Reach In Holding Cabinets - Color selection: Powder Coat (Mfg.: True) or Plastic Laminate (Mfg.: Traulsen) (Stainless steel is provided unless otherwise specified)
    d. Hanging Heat Lamps – Track and Fixture color selection
    e. Heated Merchandisers
    f. Portable Guide Rails – Stanchion and Belt color selection
    g. Popcorn machine – Signage selection
    h. Bottle Cooler – Signage selection

i. Graphics Package information

j. Hot Food Well covers

D. General Architectural finishes:

1. Walls: Ceramic Tile, Flat FRP, or Molded FRP (Smooth, Impervious, and easily cleanable as approved by local jurisdiction)

2. Ceilings: Removable Vinyl Face Tile (Smooth, Impervious, and easily cleanable as approved by local jurisdiction)

3. Floors: Tile, Epoxy, or Rubberized flooring system (Smooth, impervious, easily cleanable and slip resistant as approved by local jurisdiction) (Coordinate floor tile transition at serving lines)

4. Floors: Cold Storage Assembly – Extend kitchen floor flush into Cold Storage Assembly with coved base

5. Furr Downs above Serving Counters

**ITEM NO. 902 SHELVING QUANTITY 6**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Manufacturer:** | Metro |
| **Model:** | MetroMax Q |
| **Size and Shape:** | Refer to drawings |

1. Each unit to be five (5) tiers high with open grid shelving.
2. Four (4) 86" posts per unit.
3. Quantity One (1) to equal One (1) Lot.
4. Refer to drawings for size, width and lengths.
5. Verify shelving requirements with approved submittal prior to ordering.

**ITEM NO. 903 REACH-IN FREEZER 2 DOOR QUANTITY 2**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Manufacturer:** | Traulsen |
| **Model:** | ALT-232WUT |
| **Size and Shape:** | Refer to drawings |
| **Alternate:** | Utility |

1. Anodized aluminum interior and S/S exterior.
2. Interior lights with bulbs.
3. Exterior digital thermometer.
4. Locking hardware.
5. Five (5) s/s shelves per door.
6. 6" high adjustable S/S legs.
7. Furnish start-up and three (3) years repair service, including parts and labor.

8. Omit plug. Unit to be Hard Wired.
9. Five (5) Year compressor warranty.
10. Half height stainless steel doors hinged as per plan.
11. Re-hinging feature.

**ITEM NO. 904 REACH-IN REFRIGERATOR - 2DR QUANTITY 2**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Manufacturer:** | Traulsen |
| **Model:** | AHT-232WUT |
| **Size and Shape:** | Refer to drawings |
| **Alternate:** | Utility |

1. Anodized aluminum interior and S/S exterior.
2. Interior lights with bulbs.
3. Exterior digital thermometer.
4. Locking hardware.
5. Five (5) s/s shelves per door.
6. 6" high adjustable S/S legs.
7. Furnish start-up and three (3) years repair service, including parts and labor.
8. Five (5) Year compressor warranty.
9. Omit plug. Unit to be Hard Wired.
10. Half height stainless steel doors hinged as per plan.
11. Re-hinging feature.

**ITEM NO. 905 ICE MAKER W/ BIN QUANTITY 1**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Manufacturer:** | Manitowoc |
| **Model:** | UYF310A |
| **Size and Shape:** | Refer to drawings |
| **Alternate:** | Scotsman |

1. Stainless steel bin.
2. Stainless steel legs.
3. Provide sizes and quantities as required: T&S model #HW-6VERIFY-48 water hose and disconnect from filter to Ice Machine. Alternate: Dormont
4. Cord and plug assembly, coordinate NEMA configuration with electrician.
5. One (1) pre-filter and water filter sized to manufactures recommendations. Mount on wall adjacent to ice machine in an easily accessible location.
6. Coordinate cord and cap with receptacle. Water supply to filter to be hard copper plumbed. 72" long flex hose from filter to ice maker with 48" wall restraint cable. Interconnection thru water filter to ice machine and final connection by Division 22. Water filter overflow tube to be strapped to back side of ice machine and extend to 1" above floor sink.

**ITEM NO. 906 CLOTHES WASHER QUANTITY 1**

**Manufacturer:** BY G.C.
**Model:**
**Size and Shape:** Refer to drawings

**ITEM NO. 907 CLOTHES DRYER QUANTITY 1**

**Manufacturer:** BY G.C.
**Model:**
**Size and Shape:** Refer to drawings

**ITEM NO. 908 STUDENT WORK STATION QUANTITY 2**

**Manufacturer:** Custom fabricated
**Model:** ---
**Size and Shape:** Refer to drawings

1. Top: 14 gauge type 304 S/S, 2" turn down at free sides. 4" splash where adjacent to equipment and walls. Counter to be 34" a.f.f..
2. Closed base construction at sink compartments and open base at balance.
3. Stainless steel 18 gauge double panel sides on closed base section.
4. Double pan insulated stainless steel doors at plumbing compartment.
5. Full length 16 gauge S/S undershelf, underhelf to be in removable sections.
6. Adjustable flanged feet at front on open base stainless steel legs.
7. Two (2) 15" x 18" x 10" deep sink compartment. Coordinate location with drain overflow
8. One (1) T&S model no. B-0320-BB, rigid gooseneck, ceramic cartridges, deck faucet for ¾" hot and cold water connections. Locate faucet at beginning of table facing length of table.
9. One (1) Fisher 22306 twist waste valve 3 1/2" x 2" with overflow and tailpiece.
10. Omit undershelf at floor sink location.

**ITEM NO. 909 EXHAUST HOOD QUANTITY 3**

**Manufacturer:** Mod-U-Serve
**Model:** W-cpb
**Size and Shape:** Refer to drawings

1. Hood to meet requirements of local Mechanical Codes and local Energy Codes.
2. All 18 gauge S/S constructionand s/s rear back at exposed surface.
3. Insulated hood ends.
4. Hood manufacturer to perform hood balance reports, to be sent directly to FDP prior to final project completion.
5. Continuous capture.
6. Ceiling mounted supply plenum with light fixtures, coordinate conditioned/tempered air with engineer. Locate supply plenum in ceiling, coordinate location with GC as required.
7. Recess mounted LED light fixtures. All exposed fire control piping to be chrome plated and all hood penetrations sealed with S/S escutcheons.
8. 4" air space at rear of hood.

9. S/S closure panel between hoods if back to back hoods.
10. S/S filters and grease cup. Provide filter removal tool.
11. Ductwork and final connection to hood above ceiling to be by the Mechanical Contractor.
12. Ventilators to have adjustable make-up air damper which must remain accessible for adjustment
13. Make-up air fire dampers. Insulated make-up air plenum with 1" thick foil faced fiberglass insulation.
14. S/S filters and grease cup with filter removal tool.
15. Provide 18 gauge stainless steel wall panel if wall is tiled. “Stainless steel “Tee” type joining strips at panel joints and “C” type finishing strips at ends not protected full height with corner guards. Extend from top of coved base to underside of hood. Top of panel to be secured to wall with “Z” clips, bottom secured to wall with stainless steel overhead molly bolts. Wall panels to extend the full length of the hood wall. (Insulated S/S wall panels if walls are not CMU).
16. S/S c-channel closure panel from top of hood to ceiling.
17. ½" diameter steel hanger rods at 4'-0" O.C. maximum to be by Kitchen Equipment Supplier, but they are to be anchored to supporting structure (or slab) by the General Contractor in the locations required by exhaust hood shop detail.
18. Provide pre-set temperature sensor for automatic start of exhaust fan when the condition exists where the exhaust fan is not initiated at the wall switch and the temperature in the exhaust canopy reaches 110° F. At the end of the cooking day when the fan is disengaged at the wall switch the thermostat (temperature sensor) will keep the exhaust fan on until the temperature in the exhaust canopy drops below 110° F.
19. Refer to individual hood lengths as shown on drawings for each assembly required. Install at 6'-10" A.F.F. to bottom of hood, coordinate duct and fan requirements with Mechanical Contractor. Interconnect to wall mounted light switch by Division 26. Bulbs for light fixtures to be furnished and installed by Kitchen Equipment Contractor.
20. Provide simple on/off switches for hood fans and lights. Control panels will not be accepted.

**ITEM NO. 910 RANGE QUANTITY 7**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Manufacturer:** | Jade |
| **Model:** | JBR-2-12GT-2-36C-FF |
| **Size and Shape:** | Refer to drawings |

1. S/S sides and front.
2. Standard oven with two (2) oven racks.
3. Removable cast iron grates. Griddle to be located in the center.
4. Removable drippings tray.
5. 3/4" rear gas connections.
6. 10" s/s stub rear.
7. External gas pressure regulator.
8. S/S front end caps and cover plates at front manifold.
9. Casters with brakes.

10. Provide quantities and sizes required: T&S Model #HG-4VERIFY-48SK Antimicrobial Coated Hose w/NPT Male Ends, Swivel Links, 2-Piece Quick Disconnect, 90° Elbow & Installation Kit w/coiled restraining device, full port gas valve, lifetime warranty. Alternate: Dormont.

**ITEM NO. 911 CONVECTION OVEN QUANTITY 1**

**Manufacturer:** Existing
**Model:** ---
**Size and Shape:** Refer to drawings

1. Refer to Section 4.6 Re-Used Existing Equipment..

**ITEM NO. 912 HAND SINK QUANTITY 4**

**Manufacturer:** Advance Tabco
**Model:** 7-PS-50
**Size and Shape:** Refer to drawings

1. 20 gauge stainless steel construction.
2. Basket drain and wall bracket.
3. Gooseneck faucet with wrist handles.
4. Soap and towel dispensers by Owner.
5. P-Trap assembly, delete open/close drain vavle.
6. Custom fabricated removable end splashes on sides as required by code. height same as rear splash.
7. Trade contractor to provide temperature adjustment valves as required.

**ITEM NO. 913 WALL SHELVING QUANTITY 6**

**Manufacturer:** Custom fabricated
**Model:** ---
**Size and Shape:** Refer to drawings
**Alternate:** Advance Tabco, Eagle

1. 18" deep x length on drawings, lengths need to be coordinated with field conditions prior to fabrication..
2. 14 gauge stainless steel construction with 2" turnup at walls and ends.
3. 18 gauge stainless steel wall brackets with a max span of 4'.
4. Top of shelf to be 18" above working surface. Shelf at ADA counter to be mounted per ADA requirements.

**ITEM NO. 914 STUDENT WORK STATION QUANTITY 3**

**Manufacturer:** Custom fabricated
**Model:** ---
**Size and Shape:** Refer to drawings

1. Top: 14 gauge type 304 S/S, 2" turn down at free sides. 4" splash where adjacent walls. Counter to be 34" a.f.f..
2. Open base construction.
3. Full length 16 gauge S/S undershelf, underhelf to be in removable sections.
4. Adjustable flanged feet at front on open base stainless steel legs.

**ITEM NO. 915 STUDENT WORK STATION QUANTITY 1**

**Manufacturer:** Custom fabricated
**Model:** ---
**Size and Shape:** Refer to drawings

1. Top: 14 gauge type 304 S/S, 2" turn down at free sides. 4" splash where adjacent to equipment and walls. Counter to be 34" a.f.f..
2. Closed base construction at sink compartments and open base at balance.
3. Stainless steel 18 gauge double panel sides on closed base section.
4. Double pan insulated stainless steel doors at plumbing compartment.
5. Full length 16 gauge S/S undershelf, underhelf to be in removable sections.
6. Adjustable flanged feet at front on open base stainless steel legs.
7. Two (2) 15" x 18" x 10" deep sink compartment. Coordinate location with drain overflow
8. One (1) T&S model no. B-0320-BB, rigid gooseneck, ceramic cartridges, deck faucet for ¾" hot and cold water connections. Locate faucet at beginning of table facing length of table.
9. One (1) Fisher 22306 twist waste valve 3 1/2" x 2" with overflow and tailpiece.
10. Omit undershelf at floor sink location.
11. Counter to be ADA compliant. Provide a roll under compartment between sink and range.

**ITEM NO. 916 STUDENT WORK STATION QUANTITY 3**

**Manufacturer:** Custom fabricated
**Model:** ---
**Size and Shape:** Refer to drawings

1. Top: 14 gauge type 304 S/S, 2" turn down at free sides. 4" splash where adjacent to equipment and walls. Counter to be 34" a.f.f..
2. Closed base construction at sink compartments and open base at balance.
3. Stainless steel 18 gauge double panel sides on closed base section.
4. Double pan insulated stainless steel doors at plumbing compartment.
5. Full length 16 gauge S/S undershelf, underhelf to be in removable sections.
6. Adjustable flanged feet at front on open base stainless steel legs.
7. Two (2) 15" x 18" x 10" deep sink compartment. Coordinate location with drain overflow
8. One (1) T&S model no. B-0320-BB, rigid gooseneck, ceramic cartridges, deck faucet for ¾" hot and cold water connections. Locate faucet at beginning of table facing length of table.
9. One (1) Fisher 22306 twist waste valve 3 1/2" x 2" with overflow and tailpiece.
10. Omit undershelf at floor sink location.

**ITEM NO. 918 THREE COMPARTMENT SINK QUANTITY 1**

**Manufacturer:** Custom Fabricated
**Model:** ---
**Size and Shape:** Refer to drawings

1. Top: 14-gauge S/S 3" high 1-1/2" rolled rim at free sides, 10" high splash at walls.
2. Open base construction.
3. Omit rear rail at sink.
4. Three (3) 30" x 26" x 15" deep sink compartment.
5. Two (2) T&S model no. B-0291, splash mount faucet, 18" swing nozzle, LL inlets, for ¾" hot and cold water connections.
6. Three (3) Fisher 22306 twist waste valve 3 1/2" x 2" with overflow and tailpiece. Provide 18 gauge S/S bracket for drain handle welded to sink bottom.
7. 12" deep single post mounted perforated overshelf mounted at 18" above counter top.
8. 18-gauge butt joint wall panel from splash to underside of shelf.
9. Post mounted utensil rack, extend 1-5/8" diameter S/S post from back splash, turn forward 12" and weld full length x 2" x ¼" S/S bar with Component Hardware model no. V-77-4401 S/S sliding hooks at 8" on center.
10. One (1) Chicago model no. 305-VBRCF hose bibb and rack mounted on 12 gauge S/S bracket ground and polished to match top. Hose and spray rinse by owner.
11. Omit front rail at hose bibb.
12. 16-gauge S/S undershelf as per drawings.
13. Flanged feet at front only of counter.
14. Anchor flanged feet to floor with non-corrosive bolts. Secure wall mounted equipment / components to in wall grounds or anchor plates. Coordinate installation with the general contractor.

**ITEM NO. 919 EXHAUST HOOD QUANTITY 1**

**Manufacturer:** Mod-U-Serve
**Model:** W-cpb
**Size and Shape:** Refer to drawings

1. Hood to meet requirements of local Mechanical Codes and local Energy Codes.
2. All 18 gauge S/S constructionand s/s rear back at exposed surface.
3. Insulated hood ends.
4. Hood manufacturer to perform hood balance reports, to be sent directly to FDP prior to final project completion.
5. Continuous capture.
6. Ceiling mounted supply plenum with light fixtures, coordinate conditioned/tempered air with engineer. Locate supply plenum in ceiling, coordinate location with GC as required.
7. Recess mounted LED light fixtures. All exposed fire control piping to be chrome plated and all hood penetrations sealed with S/S escutcheons.
8. 4" air space at rear of hood.

9. S/S closure panel between hoods if back to back hoods.
10. S/S filters and grease cup. Provide filter removal tool.
11. Ductwork and final connection to hood above ceiling to be by the Mechanical Contractor.
12. Ventilators to have adjustable make-up air damper which must remain accessible for adjustment
13. Make-up air fire dampers. Insulated make-up air plenum with 1" thick foil faced fiberglass insulation.
14. S/S filters and grease cup with filter removal tool.
15. S/S c-channel closure panel from top of hood to ceiling.
16. ½" diameter steel hanger rods at 4'-0" O.C. maximum to be by Kitchen Equipment Supplier, but they are to be anchored to supporting structure (or slab) by the General Contractor in the locations required by exhaust hood shop detail.
17. Provide pre-set temperature sensor for automatic start of exhaust fan when the condition exists where the exhaust fan is not initiated at the wall switch and the temperature in the exhaust canopy reaches 110° F. At the end of the cooking day when the fan is disengaged at the wall switch the thermostat (temperature sensor) will keep the exhaust fan on until the temperature in the exhaust canopy drops below 110° F.
18. Refer to individual hood lengths as shown on drawings for each assembly required. Install at 6'-10" A.F.F. to bottom of hood, coordinate duct and fan requirements with Mechanical Contractor. Interconnect to wall mounted light switch by Division 26. Bulbs for light fixtures to be furnished and installed by Kitchen Equipment Contractor.
19. Provide simple on/off switches for hood fans and lights. Control panels will not be accepted.

**ITEM NO. 920 DEMO COUNTER QUANTITY 1**

**Manufacturer:** Custom fabricated
**Model:** ---
**Size and Shape:** Refer to drawings

1. Top: 14 gauge type 304 S/S, 2" turn down at free sides. 4" splash where adjacent to equipment and walls. Counter to be 34" a.f.f..
2. Closed base construction at sink compartments and open base at balance.
3. Stainless steel 18 gauge double panel sides on closed base section.
4. Double pan insulated stainless steel doors at plumbing compartment.
5. Full length 16 gauge S/S undershelf, underhelf to be removable.
6. Adjustable flanged feet at front on open base stainless steel legs.
7. Two (2) 15" x 18" x 10" deep sink compartment. Coordinate location with drain overflow.
8. One (1) T&S model no. B-0320-BB, rigid gooseneck, ceramic cartridges, deck faucet for ¾" hot and cold water connections. Locate faucet at beginning of table facing length of table.
9. One (1) Fisher 22306 twist waste valve 3 1/2" x 2" with overflow and tailpiece
10. Omit undershelf at floor sink location.

**ITEM NO. 921 STUDENT WORK TABLE QUANTITY 6**

**Manufacturer:** Custom Fabricated
**Model:** ---

**Size and Shape:** Refer to drawings

1. Top: 14 gauge type 304 S/S with 2" turndown at all sides.
2. Open base construction.
3. 16 gauge S/S undershelf per drawings.
4. Two (2) 20" W x 20" L drawer assemblies. Component Hardware #S52-2020 drawer slides with delrin bearings - 200lb capacity. Component Hardware #S80-2020 drawer pan.
5. 5" N.S.F. approved non-marking swivel casters, two with brakes.

**ITEM NO. 922 EXHAUST HOOD QUANTITY 1**

**Manufacturer:** Mod-U-Serve
**Model:** W-cpb
**Size and Shape:** Refer to drawings

1. Hood to meet requirements of local Mechanical Codes and local Energy Codes.
2. All 18 gauge S/S constructionand s/s rear back at exposed surface.
3. Insulated hood ends.
4. Hood manufacturer to perform hood balance reports, to be sent directly to FDP prior to final project completion.
5. Continuous capture.
6. Ceiling mounted supply plenum with light fixtures, coordinate conditioned/tempered air with engineer. Locate supply plenum in ceiling, coordinate location with GC as required.
7. Recess mounted LED light fixtures. All exposed fire control piping to be chrome plated and all hood penetrations sealed with S/S escutcheons.
8. 4" air space at rear of hood.
9. S/S closure panel between hoods if back to back hoods.
10. S/S filters and grease cup. Provide filter removal tool.
11. Ductwork and final connection to hood above ceiling to be by the Mechanical Contractor.
12. Ventilators to have adjustable make-up air damper which must remain accessible for adjustment
13. Make-up air fire dampers. Insulated make-up air plenum with 1" thick foil faced fiberglass insulation.
14. S/S filters and grease cup with filter removal tool.
15. Provide 18 gauge stainless steel wall panel if wall is tiled. “Stainless steel “Tee” type joining strips at panel joints and “C” type finishing strips at ends not protected full height with corner guards. Extend from top of coved base to underside of hood. Top of panel to be secured to wall with “Z” clips, bottom secured to wall with stainless steel overhead molly bolts. Wall panels to extend the full length of the hood wall. (Insulated S/S wall panels if walls are not CMU).
16. S/S c-channel closure panel from top of hood to ceiling.
17. ½" diameter steel hanger rods at 4'-0" O.C. maximum to be by Kitchen Equipment Supplier, but they are to be anchored to supporting structure (or slab) by the General Contractor in the locations required by exhaust hood shop detail.
18. Provide pre-set temperature sensor for automatic start of exhaust fan when the condition exists where the exhaust fan is not initiated at the wall switch and the temperature in the exhaust canopy reaches 110° F. At the end of the cooking day when the fan is disengaged at the wall switch the

thermostat (temperature sensor) will keep the exhaust fan on until the temperature in the exhaust canopy drops below 110° F.

19. Refer to individual hood lengths as shown on drawings for each assembly required. Install at 6'-10" A.F.F. to bottom of hood, coordinate duct and fan requirements with Mechanical Contractor. Interconnect to wall mounted light switch by Division 26. Bulbs for light fixtures to be furnished and installed by Kitchen Equipment Contractor.
20. Provide simple on/off switches for hood fans and lights. Control panels will not be accepted.

**ITEM NO. 924 CHEMICAL SHELF QUANTITY 1**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Manufacturer:** | Metro |
| **Model:** | MetroMax Q |
| **Size and Shape:** | Refer to drawings |

1. Each unit to be four (4) tiers high with open grid mats.
2. Four (4) 74" posts per unit.

**ITEM NO. 925 FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEM QUANTITY 5**

| | |
|---|---|
| **Manufacturer:** | Ansul |
| **Model:** | R102 |
| **Size and Shape:** | Refer to drawings |

1. Duct and plenum protection to exhaust hood.
2. Surface protection for cooking equipment.
3. Locate remote fire pulls as recommended by Fire Marshal.
4. One (1) lot Mechanical gas valve (maximum diameter as required). Size as required. Furnished by Section 114000, installed by Division 22. Kitchen Equipment Contractor to coordinate location with local Fire Marshal requirements prior to submittal review. All conduits to be recessed within wall, SURFACE MOUNTING WILL NOT BE ACCEPTED.
5. System to meet U.L. 300 requirements.
6. Provide one (1) hand held Type 'K' and ABC 6 liter fire extinguisher per Ansul System, surface wall mounted.
7. Exposed pipe threads are unacceptable.
8. All exposed piping to be chrome plated.
9. All hood penetrations to have U.L. listed "Quick Seal". Provide s/s escutcheons at all hood penetrations.
10. Provide phenolic I.D. labels for exhaust hood, remote fire pull, light/fan switches and fire protection system.
11. Provide a manufacturer performance test and report that verifies this system is fully operational.
12. Provide s/s cabinet as shown on plan.
13. Installer to provide one (1) Ansul system per exhaust hood, review drawings and provide systems as required.
14. Install hand held extinguishers, maximum of 3'-2" A.F.F. to top of unit.

**END OF SECTION 11 4000**

# SECTION 12 20 00 - WINDOW TREATMENTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Horizontal blinds.
   2. Fabric shade assembly
   3. Curtains

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Allowances: Division 1 Section.
   2. Windows: Division 8 Section

### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Provide window treatment units which are complete assemblies produced by one manufacturer for each type required, including hardware, accessory items, mounting brackets, and fastenings.

B. Compliance with safety regulations including ANSI/WCMA A100.1

### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's specifications, product literature and installation instructions for each type of window treatment unit required. Include methods of installation for each type of opening, supporting structure, and shop drawings showing sizes. Submit samples of each component, material & finish which will be exposed to view. Prepare samples from same materials to be used for the work. Submit complete range of standard colors for each product for selection by Architect.

### 1.05 COORDINATION

A. Cooperate with other trades for securing to substrates and other finished surfaces.

### 1.06 GUARANTEE

A. Blinds and louvers shall be guaranteed against warp, twist, bow, brittleness and color change. Contractor will provide replacement blinds or louvers for faulty units for a period of three years.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 HORIZONTAL BLINDS

A. General: Acceptable Manufacturers shall be Levolor, Hunter Douglas or approved equal.

B. Headrail: Manufacturer's standard headrail consisting of channel-shaped section fabricated from minimum 0.024" thick sheet steel with rolled edges at top. Increase metal thickness as

recommended by manufacturer for large blind units. Furnish complete with tilting mechanism, top and end braces, top cradles, cord lock, and accessory items required for type of blind and installation indicated.

C. Bottom Rail: Manufacturer's standard tubular steel bottom rail, designed to withstand twisting or sagging. Contour top surface to match slat curvature, with flat or slightly curved bottom. Close ends with manufacturer's standard metal or plastic end caps, or same color as rail. Finish rail in same color as slats, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Slats: Manufacturer's standard, spring-tempered aluminum slats, 0.008" thick, (louver blade), with rounded corners and forming burrs removed, as follows:
   1. Slat width: 1" narrow slats, with other components sized to suit. Slat shall be continuous across entire opening.
   2. Provide slats designed and spaced to achieve maximum overlap and closure of optimum light exclusion. Notch rear of blade at ladders and offset route holes at lift cords to enable blades to touch one another when closed.
   3. Finish shall be selected by Architect from Manufacturer's standard colors.

E. Ladders: Manufacturer's standard ladder construction designed to support and maintain slats at proper spacing and alignment in open and closed positions, as follows:
   1. 100% polyester cord design consisting of vertical components of not less than 0.045" nor more than 0.066" in diameter and integrally braided ladder rungs of not less than 4 threads; space ladders not further than 24" apart and 7" from ends of slats.

F. Tilting Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard assembly including low friction gear tilter, drum and cradle at each ladder, tilt road, tape clips, and grommet guides to prevent wear on ladder and cords; designed to hold slats at any angle and prevent movement of slats due to vibration, operated as follows:
   1. Wand Operation: Manufacturer's detachable clear plastic wand, or proper length to suit blind installation and to provide convenient operation.
   2. Cord Operation: Manufacturer's standard matching lift cord in material, size, and appearance, fitted with 1" diameter metal ring and proper length for blind installation.

G. Lifting Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard including crash-proof cord locks with cord separators and 100% polyester lift cords with ring at ends. Size cord to suit blind type. Include cord equalizers of self-aligning type designed to maintain horizontal blind position.

H. Installation Brackets: Manufacturer's standard brackets designed to facilitate removal of head channels. Provide intermediate brackets at spacing recommended by blind manufacturer. Include hardware necessary for secure attachment of brackets adjoining construction and to head rails. Design brackets to support safely the weight of blind assemblies plus forces applied to operate blinds. Attach to substrate at 3'-0" O.C. minimum or less as required by manufacturer.

I. Prior to fabrication, verify actual opening dimensions by accurate site measurements. Adjust dimensions for proper fit at openings. Cooperate with other trades for securing tracks to substrates and other finished surfaces.

J. Full-tilting operation with slats rotating approximately 180 degrees.

K. Full-length recalling and/or raising, to manufacturer's minimum stacking dimension. Horizontal blinds with lifting cord locks for stopping blind at top position only and pull cords on right hand side of blind units, unless otherwise indicated.Curtains

## 2.02 FABRIC SHADE ASSEMBLY

A. Honeycomb shades shall be "Duette" series as manufactured by Hunter Douglas.

B. Top track and operating system shall be standard cordlock design with shade opening from the bottom to the top.

C. Fabric: Inherently flame retardant fabric of 1/2" pleats, semi-opaque translucent fabric, single honeycomb design. Color shall be selected by the Architect from manufacturer's samples. Provide blackout lining in shades for training room.

D. Brackets: Manufacturer's standard metal brackets of proper type, spacing and size for inside installation. Design brackets to support safely the weight of assembly plus forces applied to operate.

E. Accessories: Provide stops, splicers, supports, installation anchorages and other required accessories as recommended by manufacturer.

F. Provide Honeycomb shades at all exterior windows.

## 2.03 CURTAINS

A. Curtain locations are shown on the plans; style, fabric, and size to be determined.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 INSTALLATION OF BLINDS

A. Install units securely to head in manner to comply with manufacturer's instruction. Position units level, plumb, secure, at proper height and location relative to adjoining elements and other related work.

B. Provide adequate clearance between sash and blinds to permit unencumbered operation of sash hardware.

C. Protect installed units to ensure their being in perfect operating condition, without damage, blemishes, or indication of use at completion of project. Repair or replace damaged units as directed by Architect.

## 3.02 INSTALLATION OF SHADES

A. Prior to fabrication, verify actual opening dimensions by accurate site measurements. Adjust dimensions for proper fit at all openings.

B. Fabricate window treatment components from non-corrosive, non-staining, non-fading materials which are completely compatible with each other, and which do not require lubrication during normal expected life.

C. Install window treatment units in manner to comply with manufacturer's instructions. Position units level, plumb, secure, at proper height and location relative to adjoining window units and other related work. Securely anchor units with proper clips, brackets, anchorages, suited to the type of mounting indicated.

D. Provide adequate clearance between sash and assembly to permit unencumbered operation of sash hardware.

E. Isolate metal parts from concrete and mortar to prevent galvanic action. Use tape or thick coating or other means approved by Owner to effect separation.

F. Protect installed units to ensure their being in perfect operating condition, without damage, blemishes or indication of use at completion of project. Repair or replace damaged units as directed by Architect.

## 3.03 CLEANING

A. All slats, louvers, head rails, etc., shall be properly cleaned prior to final inspection.

B. All shades and curtains shall be properly cleaned prior to final inspection.

END OF SECTION 12 20 00

# SECTION 12 24 00 - MOTORIZED & MANUAL ROLLER SHADES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. This section includes integrated motor control options for the following:
   1. Motorized roller shades
   2. Motorized roller shade accessories
   3. Motorized roller shade control systems
   4. Manual Roller Solar Shades

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" for window shade bracket support blocking or pocket assemblies.
   2. Division 26 Section "Electrical" for installation of electrical motor control systems.

### 1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire: Provide shade fabrics tested in accordance with:
   1. 1989 NFPA 701 small scale Vertical Burn Test and rated "PASS"
   2. 1996 NFPA 701 small scale Vertical Burn (telephone booth test) and rated "PASS"

B. Toxicity: Provide shade fabrics tested in accordance with University of Pittsburgh Toxicity Protocol including LC50 analysis and toxicity characteristics.

C. Anti-microbial:
   1. ASTM G-22-80 results for ATCC6538 (Staphylococcus aureus) an ATCC13388 (Pseudomonas aeroginosa) indicating minimum 5mm (0.197 inches) "No Growth Contact Area".
   2. ASTM G-21-85 results for ATCC9642, ATCC9348 and ATCC9645 indicating "No Growth".

D. Electrical: Integrated motor control systems and components approved AS A SYSTEM by either Underwriter Laboratories (UL) or Electronic Testing Laboratories (ETL).

E. Compliance with safety regulations including ANSI/WCMA A100.1

### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Specification Conformance Document: Indicate whether the submitted equipment deviates from the specific requirements:
   1. Address or itemize compliance, or detail the alternate means submitted and indicate specific methodology used for Architect review & approval.

B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets with performance specifications demonstrating compliance with specified requirements, including:
   1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
   2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.

3. Submit manufacturer's descriptive literature and details for each product type specified. Details indicate materials, finishes, construction, and dimensions of individual components, profiles, and mounting requirements.
4. Submit wiring diagrams, details on integration to lighting control systems, AV systems, and building management systems, installation instructions, and operating instructions.
5. Submit current certificates demonstrating all line voltage components of the system are either UL Listed or UL recognized. All low voltage components within the system shall be powered by UL listed transformer or UL recognized class 2 transformers or power supplies and wired as NEC Class 2 circuits.
6. Submit test reports indicating compliance with fabric properties specified.

C. Shop Drawings; include:
1. Provide head, jamb and sill details, and relevant dimensions for mounting requirements for each product type and mounting condition.
2. Provide shade schedule indicating room number, opening size(s), quantities and key to details.
3. Provide one-line wiring system diagrams including connection details and overall arrangement of shades and control locations supplied by this section for installation and connection under division 26.

D. Selection Samples: For each finish product specified provide:
1. Portfolio of shade fabric swatches for initial fabric color selection from manufacturer's full range of available fabrics.
2. Material samples for color and finish selection of controls.

E. Verification Samples: For each finish product specified:
1. One fully operational window shade sample of each type required complete with selected shade fabric including sample of seam / batten when applicable. Location of sample as directed by Architect.
2. One complete set of all shade components demonstrating compliance with project requirements when applicable.

## 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications:
1. The responsibility for the design, engineering, installation, and performance of motorized window shade systems specified will be assigned to a single manufacturer and their qualified dealers/installers.
2. Minimum 5 years experience in manufacture of precision-engineered, low-voltage motorized shading systems.
3. Furnish shading system and electrical control equipment for a complete installation and single source responsibility of shading and lighting control where applicable.
4. The manufacturer, subsidiary, or licensed agent will be qualified to supply the products specified and to honor any claims against the product presented in accordance with the warranty.
5. Provide 24-Hour / 7-Day technical support to troubleshoot system wiring and aid in system programming.

B. Installer Qualifications: Installer shall be qualified to install and commission the specified products by prior factory training, experience, demonstrated performance, and acceptance of any requirement of the manufacturer, subsidiary of the manufacturer, or licensed agent.

C. Do not fabricate shades without obtaining field dimensions for each opening. Coordinate construction of surrounding conditions to allow for timely field dimension verification.

## 1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not deliver items to the project until all plaster, painting and other wet work has been completed and is dry.

B. Deliver shades to project in labeled protective packaging, uniquely labeled to identify each shade for each opening. Schedule delivery to prevent delays to completion of work but to minimize on-site storage time.

C. Store materials in a dry, secure place. Protect from weather, surface contaminants, corrosion, construction traffic and all other potential damage.

## 1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Maintain environmental conditions within recommended limits:
   1. Ambient operating temperature: 32–72 °F
   2. Humidity: 0–90%, non-condensing.
   3. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.
   4. Products are intended for Indoor use only.

B. Shade system shall not be installed until the building is operating at ambient temperature and humidity ranges that are consistent with those intended for eventual building occupancy & use.

## 1.08 COORDINATION

A. Contractor shall coordinate installation of the following items with the window shade contractor:

B. Contractor shall provide the following materials and services to the window shade contractor for electrically powered window treatments:
   1. Power wiring in accordance with requirements provided by the window shade contractor or electrical contractor.
   2. Low-voltage wiring as necessary for operation of shade control system with requirements provided by the window shade or electrical contractor.

C. Scheduling:
   1. Fabricate shades after obtaining field dimensions for each opening.
   2. Coordinate construction of surrounding conditions to allow for timely field dimension verification.
   3. Manufacturer’s standard lead times apply. Reference submittal and schedule accordingly for project timeline.

## 1.09 WARRANTY

A. Shade motors and motor control system electrical components: Provide manufacturer’s Warranty under provisions of Division 1 Section "General Requirements". Warranty period shall be 8 years (limited, pro-rated) from Date of Substantial Completion, and 2 years (full, 100%) for all components. Warranty period shall include all operating parts.

B. Shadecloth and all other components of shade system are Warranted to be fit for the use intended for a minimum of 5 years.

C. In the event of a warranted product failure, the Shade Contractor will, at no cost to Owner, facilitate acquisition and delivery of all necessary components to the Owner.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis of design: Quality, design, and desired function are based on Lutron Sivoia "QED" (Quiet Electronic Drive) products by Lutron Shading Systems, Inc., Coopersburg, PA (888) 588-7661.

B. Substitutions: Under provisions of Division 1.
   1. All proposed substitutions must be clearly delineated, and must be submitted in writing for approval by Architect a minimum of 10 working days prior to the bid date, and must be made available to all bidders. Proposed substitutes must be accompanied by a review of the specification noting compliance on a line-by-line basis.

## 2.02 APPLICATION/SCOPE

A. Roller Shade Schedule

   1. Shade Type-1: Motorized roller shade utilizing quiet, low voltage, precision controlled Electronic Drive Unit.

   2. Shade Type-2: Manual Shade: Utilizing Lutron "RollEase Clutch System".

## 2.03 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

A. Aesthetics
   1. Symmetrical light gaps of no more than 0.75 inch typical or 0.625 inch minimum.
   2. Shade mounting position can be adjusted while the shade is installed to ensure perfect shade centering.

B. Operation. Shade utilizes Electronic Drive Unit with the following requirements:
   1. Operates without exceeding a 44dBA Sound Pressure Level (SPL) measured three (3) feet or one (1) meter from the motor.
   2. Operates independently, without the use of external group controllers.
   3. Precisely controls roller shade speed for accurate shade tracking within ± 0.0625 inch throughout the entire shade travel.
   4. Systems with multiple Electronic Drive Units are electronically synchronized and start, stop and move smoothly in unison at all times.

C. Grouping:
   1. System groups and subgroups are reconfigured at the point of control without rewiring or access to the Electronic Drive Unit.

D. Protection
   1. System components provide appropriate (spike and brownout) over voltage protection (± 10% of line voltage) for all devices in the system.
   2. The Electronic Drive Unit is powered via a UL Listed or UL Recognized Class 2 Power Supply.
   3. System components provide stall protection so that in case that the motor stalls, there is no damage to fabric or drive motor

E. Integration:
   1. Roller shade system integrates directly with Lutron lighting control system.

## 2.04 ROLLER SHADES

A. Fabrics:
   1. Fabric #1 (at location as noted):
      a. SheerShade, Basketweave XL, "Linen," 3%.

   2. Fabric #2 (at location as noted):
      a. Blackout, Value Premiere, "Sand".

   3. **Fabric #3 (at location as noted):**

**a. <Choose>, <Choose>, "Select".**

B. Shade Tube:
1. Fabric shall be connected to the tube with double-sided adhesive strip applied for exact and firm mounting of fabric and easy adjustment to prevent telescoping.
2. To protect fabric and smooth out starting seam, a minimum one turn of fabric shall be placed on the roller before the working section of fabric starts.
3. Bottom Bar: Standard Sealed bottom Bar shall be a 10 inch wide by 0.1875 inch thick, extruded aluminum bar, enclosed on all sides in thermally sealed pocket across bottom of shading fabric.

## 2.05 SHADE MOUNTING / ENCLOSURE

A. General:
1. Roller shade brackets to provide symmetrical light gaps of 0.75inch (20 mm) on each side of shade
2. Provide 2-piece mounting bracket for leveling, projection, and shade centering adjustments that allows adjustment while roller shades are mounted to the brackets.
3. A single EDU shall be capable of driving multiple shades with a coupling pin.
4. Coupling pin shall allow for precision adjustment of bottom bar levels without removing roller from its installed point, or removing fabric from roller tube.

B. Mounting:
1. Pocket Mount (Recessed): Provide recessed above-ceiling enclosure, 4.75" wide by 5" deep, extruded aluminum U-shaped enclosure, by length of shade.
2. Fascia Mount: Provide fascia mount with [**rounded**][**square**] face cover. Provide optional end caps.
3. Jamb Mount: Provide window system jamb-mounting, with 2-piece brackets.
4. Wall Mount: Provide wall mounting with 2-piece brackets. **[**Provide [**rounded**][**square**] face cover.**]** Provide optional end caps.
5. Ceiling Mount: Provide ceiling mounting with 2-piece brackets. **[**Provide [**rounded**][**square**] face cover.**]** Provide optional end caps.
6. Dual-Mount Bracket: Provide Dual-Mount bracket for two types of shade at window, as noted.

C. Options for blackout condition:
1. Side Channel.
2. Sill Angle.

## 2.06 CONTROLS

A. Wall Mounted Controls:
1. Low voltage wallstations shall electronically set and reconfigure shade open & close limits, shade preset positions, system groups, and system subgroups at the control without rewiring and without access to Electronic Drive Unit.
2. Wallstation buttons shall be backlit.
3. Wallstations shall simultaneously control one or more shades, up to the maximum number of shades in the system.
   a. Six-Button Wallstation for Two-Group Applications:
      1) Wallstations shall provide control for two separate groups of shades.
      2) Wallstations shall take one system address and wire as one wallstation.
      3) Wallstations shall provide buttons for selecting the following for each of the shade groups: Full-Open, Full-Close, and one programmable preset position.
   b. Five-Button Wallstation with Raise/Lower:

1) Wallstations shall provide buttons for selecting the following for one group of shades: Full-Open, Full-Close, three programmable preset positions, and raise/lower.

B. Interfaces:
   1. Interface via Contact Closure Inputs.
   2. Interface with Lutron Grafik Eye System.

## 2.07 TRANSFORMER

A. Each Electronic Drive Unit requires an individual transformer.

## 2.08 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform full-function testing on all completed assemblies at end of production line prior to shipment.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Begin installation after substrates have been properly prepared.

B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

## 3.02 PREPARATION

A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.

B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

## 3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Install shades in windows level and plumb to provide smooth operation.

C. Install in accordance with manufacturer’s product data and approved shop drawings.

D. A factory-qualified technician shall perform field measurement and installation.

## 3.04 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust the level, projection, and shade centering directly from mounting bracket.

B. Adjust fabric on tube if visibly telescoping.

## 3.05 CLEANING

A. Touch up damaged finishes and repair minor damage in order to eliminate evidence of repair. Remove and replace work that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

B. Clean exposed surfaces, including metal and shade fabric, using non-abrasive materials and methods recommended by the shade fabric manufacturer. Remove and replace work that cannot be satisfactorily cleaned.

## 3.06 DEMONSTRATION

A. Demonstrate operation method and instruct owner's personnel in the proper operation and maintenance of the window shade systems.

B. Manufacturer’s Instructions:

1. Installation, Programming, and Maintenance instructions to be included in product packaging.
2. 24-Hour / 7-Day Factory Technical Support shall be available to aid with unforeseen installation difficulties.

## 3.07 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed products until completion of project.

B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion

END OF SECTION 12 24 00

# SECTION 12 66 06 - TELESCOPING BLEACHERS (MANUAL)

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Provide manually operated telescoping bleachers at practice gym.

B. Related Documents: The Contract Documents, as defined in Division 1 Section - Summary of Work, apply to the Work of this Section. Additional requirements and information necessary to complete the Work of this Section may be found in other Documents.

### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Basis of Design: Vinyl on steel type of bleacher. Specified unit indicates the type, quality, performance, and general layout of the bleacher system required.

### 1.04 MANUFACTURERS

A. Standard gymnasium telescoping bleacher seating, as manufactured by Interkal L.L.C, Kalamazoo, MH (269) 349-1521, or approved equal.

### 1.05 INSTALLATION

A. All installation work shall be done by the manufacturer or an authorized installer fully approved and trained by the manufacturer. The installation shall be made in complete accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and/or recommendations.

### 1.06 GUARANTEE

A. The entire installation will be guaranteed against faulty materials, workmanship, and operation for a period of one year.

### 1.07 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit shop drawings and catalog cuts showing the telescoping bleacher seating, the proposed layout and spacing, spacing between sections and fixed wall, installation details and fabrication details.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 GENERAL

A. Telescopic gymnasium seating Basis of Design is Model CSM (Contour Seat Module) as shown on the drawings and as herein specified.

### 2.02 LOADING

A. Telescopic Gymnasium seating shall be designed to support live load of 120 pounds per linear foot on both seat panels and foot panels, and a horizontal sway force of 24 pounds per lineal foot.

## 2.03 CONSTRUCTION

A. Tubular steel columns shall form all upright supports. Tubular steel columns shall be joined to the lower skirt panel with angle-iron braces to prevent side sway.

B. Seat and upper skirt panels shall be one piece vinyl class, formed, heavy gauge steel. Lower skirt panels shall be formed, heavy gauge steel. Both upper and lower panels shall be furnished to enclose area between seat and foot boards.

C. All deck boards shall consist of 19/32" nominal Douglas Fir BC grade plywood with exterior glue and solid crossbands. An extruded aluminum "H" connector shall be placed between plywood panels. Exposed wear surfaces shall be finished with a layer of high Density polyethylene plastic .025 - .030, Light Gray color, complimentary to the seat option. Deck finishes, such as clear coat, requiring more than simple touch up to restore it to a new appearance after wear occurs is unacceptable.

D. Provide two removable safety end rails, two end panels and rear seat filler boards.

## 2.04 FINISH

A. All parts of steel under-structure shall be bonderized, dip painted, with infra-red baked finish. Electric arc welding by certified welders will be utilized on all steel members.

## 2.05 OPERATION

A. All rows shall extend and stack in a telescopic action. One or more rows to be extended as desired.

B. Each row shall individually and automatically lock in extended position without the use of floor plates or shoes.

C. Provide minimum of two operating handles to assist in opening and closing bleachers. Front row kickboard shall lock one or more rows into extended position.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 INSPECTION

A. Prior to telescoping bleacher installation, installer shall examine substrates and site conditions surrounding bleachers for any defects or conditions which would impair proper installation of bleachers. Any unsuitable conditions found must be corrected by the Contractor. Installation constitutes acceptance of the field conditions.

## 3.02 INSTALLATION

A. All materials installed in strict accordance with manufacturer's instructions and reviewed shop drawings. All operable mechanisms properly adjusted with installation level and plumb.

B. Manufacturer shall verify bleachers mechanical operation is compatible with floor design.

END OF SECTION 12 66 06

# SECTION 21 01 00 - FIRE PROTECTION OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Compilation product data and related information appropriate for Owner's operation and maintenance of products furnished under Contract. Prepare operating and maintenance data as specified.

B. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation and maintenance of equipment and systems.

C. Submit three copies of complete manual in final form.

### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Thirty (30) days after the Contractor has received the final scheduled identified submittals bearing the Architect / Engineer's stamp of acceptance (including resubmittals), submit for review one copy of the first draft of the Operating and Maintenance Manual. This copy shall contain as a minimum:

1. Table of Contents for each element.
2. Contractor information.
3. All submittals, coordination drawings and product data, reviewed by the Architect / Engineer; bearing the Architect / Engineer's stamp of acceptance. (When submittals are returned from Engineer "Correct as Noted", corrected inserts shall be included.)
4. All parts and maintenance manuals for items of equipment.
5. Warranties (without starting dates)
6. Certifications that have been completed. Submit forms and outlines of certifications that have not been completed.
7. Operating and maintenance procedures.
8. Form of Owner's Training Program Syllabus (including times and dates).
9. Control operations/equipment wiring diagrams.
10. Other required operating and maintenance information that are complete.

B. Copy will be returned to the Contractor within 15 days with comments for corrections.

C. Submit completed manuals in final electronic form to the Architect / Engineer one day after substantial completion, and prior to Owner's instructions. Include all specified data, test and balance reports, drawings, dated warranties, certificates, reports, along with other materials and information.

D. The Architect / Engineer will review the manuals for completeness within fifteen (15) days.

E. The Contractor shall be notified of any missing or omitted materials. The Manuals shall

be reworked by the Contractor, as required, in the office of the Architect / Engineer. The manuals will not be retransmitted.

F. Complete electronic manuals will be delivered to the Owner.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 BINDERS**

A. Commercial quality black three-ring binders with clear overlay plastic covers.

B. Minimum ring size: 1"; Maximum ring size: 3".

C. When multiple binders are used, correlate the data into related groupings.

D. Label contents on spine and face of binder with full size insert. Label under plastic cover.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

A. Form for Manuals:
   1. Prepare data in form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's personnel.
   2. Format:
      a. Size: 8-1/2" x 11".
      b. Text: Manufacturer's printed data or neatly typewritten.
   3. Drawings:
      a. Provide reinforced punched binder tab and bind in text.
      b. Fold larger drawings to size of text pages.
   4. Provide flyleaf indexed tabs for each separate product or each piece of operating equipment.
   5. Cover: Identify each volume with typed or printed title "Operating and Maintenance Instructions". List:
      a. Title of Project
      b. Identity of separate structures as applicable.
      c. Identity of general subject matter covered in the manual.
   6. Binder as specified.

B. Content of Manual:
   1. Neatly typewritten Table of Contents for each volume arranged in systematic order as outlined in the specifications.
      a. Contractor, name of responsible principal, address and telephone number.
      b. A list of each product required to be included, indexed to content of the volume.
      c. List with each product, name, address and telephone number of:
         1) Subcontractor or installer

2) Maintenance contractor as appropriate
3) Identify area of responsibility of each
4) Local source of supply for parts and replacement

d. Identify each product by product name and other identifying symbols as set forth in Contract Documents.

2. Product Data:
   a. Include those sheets pertinent to the specific product
   b. Annotate each sheet to:
      1) Identify specific product or part installed
      2) Identify data applicable to installation
      3) Delete references to inapplicable information. (All options not supplied with equipment shall be marked out indicated in some manner.
3. Drawings:
   a. Supplement product data with drawings as necessary to illustrate:
      1) Relations of component parts of equipment and systems
      2) Control and flow diagrams
   b. Coordinate drawings with information in Project Record Documents to assure correct illustration of completed installation.
   c. Do not use Project Record Documents as maintenance drawings.
4. Written text, as required to supplement product data for the particular installation:
   a. Organize in consistent format under separate headings for different procedures.
   b. Provide logical sequence of instructions for each procedure.
5. Copy of each warranty, bond and service contract issued.
   a. Provide information sheet for Owner's personnel, giving:
      1) Proper procedures in event of failure
      2) Instances that might affect validity of warranties or bonds
6. Shop drawings, coordination drawings and product data as specified.

C. Sections for Equipment and Systems.
   1. Content for each unit of equipment and system as appropriate:
      a. Description of unit and component parts
         1) Function, normal operating characteristics, and limiting conditions
         2) Performance curves, engineering data and tests
         3) Complete nomenclature and commercial number of replaceable parts.
      b. Operating procedures:
         1) Start up, break-in, routine and normal operating instructions.
         2) Regulation, control, stopping, shut down and emergency instructions.
         3) Summer and winter operating instructions.
         4) Special operating instructions.
      c. Maintenance procedures:
         1) Routine operations

2) Guide to trouble-shooting.
3) Disassembly, repair and reassembly.
4) Alignment, adjusting and checking.
5) Routine service based on operating hours.

d. Servicing and lubrication schedule. List of lubricants required.
e. Manufacturer's printed operating and maintenance instructions.
f. Description of sequence of operation by control manufacturer.
g. Original manufacturer's parts list, illustrations, assembly drawings and diagrams required for maintenance.
1) Predicted life of part subject to wear.
2) Items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
h. As installed control diagrams by controls manufacturer.
i. Complete equipment internal wiring diagrams.
j. Each Contractor's coordination drawings.
k. As installed color coded piping diagrams.
l. Charts of valve tag number, with location and function of each valve.
m. List of original manufacturer's spare parts and recommended quantities to be maintained in storage.
n. Other data as required under pertinent sections of the specifications.

2. Prepare and include additional data when the need for such data becomes apparent during instruction of Owner's personnel.
3. Additional requirements for operating and maintenance data as outlined in respective sections of specifications.
4. Provide complete information for products specified in Division 21.
5. Provide certificates of compliance as specified in each related section.
6. Provide start up reports as specified in each related section.
7. Provide signed receipts for spare parts and material.
8. Provide training report and certificates.
9. Provide backflow preventer certified test reports.

**END OF SECTION 21 01 00**

# SECTION 21 05 00 - FIRE PROTECTION GENERAL PROVISIONS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Except as modified in this Section, General Conditions and Supplementary Conditions, applicable provisions of the General Requirements, and other provisions and requirements of the contract documents apply to work of Division 21 Fire Sprinkler Systems.

B. Applicable provisions of this section apply to all sections of Division 22, Plumbing.

### 1.2 CODE REQUIREMENTS AND FEES

A. Perform work in accordance with applicable statutes, ordinances, codes and regulations of governmental authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Plumbing work shall comply with applicable inspection services:
1. Underwriters Laboratories
2. National Fire Protection Association
3. State Health Department
4. Local Municipal Building Inspection Department
5. Texas Department of Licensing & Regulations (TDLR)
6. Texas Accessibility Standards (TAS Based on ADA)

C. Resolve any code violations discovered in contract documents with the Engineer prior to award of the contract. After Contract award, any correction or additions necessary for compliance with applicable codes shall be made at no additional cost to the Owner.

D. This Contractor shall be responsible for being aware of and complying with asbestos NESHAP regulations, as well as all other applicable codes, laws and regulations.

E. Obtain all permits required.

### 1.3 CONTRACTOR'S QUALIFICATIONS

A. An approved contractor for the work under this division shall be:
1. A licensed specialist in this field and have the personnel, experience, training, skill, and organization to provide a practical working system
2. Able to furnish evidence of having contracted for and installed not less than 3 systems of comparable size and type that has served their Owners satisfactorily for not less than 3 years

### 1.4 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARDS

A. Materials which are specified by reference to Federal Specifications; ASTM, ASME, ANSI,

or AWWA Specifications; Federal Standards; or other standard specifications must comply with latest editions, revisions, amendments or supplements in effect on date bids are received. Requirements in reference specifications and standards are minimum for all equipment, material, and work. In instances where specified capacities, size, or other features of equipment, devices, or materials exceed these minimums, meet specified capacities.

## 1.5 CONTRACT DRAWINGS

A. Contract drawings are diagrammatic only and do not give fully dimensioned locations of various elements of work. Determine exact locations from field measurements.

## 1.6 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

A. Maintain at the job site a separate set of white prints (blue line or black line) of the contract drawings for the sole purpose of recording the "as-built" changes and diagrams of those portions of work in which actual construction is at variance with the contract drawings. Mark the drawings with a colored pencil. Prepare, as the work progresses and upon completion of work, reproducible drawings clearly indicating locations of various lines, valves, ductwork, traps, equipment, and other pertinent items, as installed. Include flow-line elevation of sewer lines. Record existing and new underground and under slab piping with dimensioned locations and elevations of such piping.

B. At the conclusion of project, obtain without cost to the Owner, erasable mylars of the original drawings and transfer as-built changes to these. Prior to transmittal of corrected drawings, obtain 3 sets of blue-line prints of each drawing, regardless of whether corrections were necessary and include in the transmittal (2 sets are for the Owner's use and one set is for the Architect/Engineer's records). Delivery of these as-built prints and reproducibles is a condition of final acceptance. Provide record drawings on one set each (reproducible Dayrex mylar film positives) and AutoCad 2012 / Revit CAD files on disk (CD Rom).

C. As-Built drawings should indicate the following information as a minimum:
   1. Indicate all addendum changes to documents.
   2. Remove Engineer’s seal, name, address and logo from drawings.
   3. Mark documents RECORD DRAWINGS.
   4. Clearly indicate: DOCUMENT PRODUCED BY
   5. Indicate all changes to construction during construction. Indicate actual routing of all piping, etc. that were deviated from construction drawings.
   6. Correct schedules to reflect (actual) equipment furnished and manufacturer.
   7. During the execution of work, maintain a complete set of drawings and specifications upon which all locations of equipment, ductwork, piping, devices, and all deviations and changes from the construction documents in the work shall be recorded.
   8. Location and size of all ductwork and mechanical piping above ceiling including exact location of isolation of domestic and plumbing valves.
   9. Exact location of all electrical equipment in and outside of the building.

10. Fire Protection System documents revised to indicate exact location of all sprinkler heads and zone valves.
11. Exact location of all roof mounted equipment, wall, roof and floor penetrations.
12. Cloud all changes.

## 1.7 SPACE REQUIREMENTS

A. Consider space limitations imposed by contiguous work in selection and location of equipment and material. Do not provide equipment or material that is not suitable in this respect.

## 1.8 RELATION WITH OTHER TRADES

A. Carefully study all matters and conditions concerning the project. Submit notification of conflict in ample time to prevent unwarranted changes in any work. Review other Divisions of these specifications to determine their requirements.

B. Because of the complicated relationship of this work to the total project, conscientiously study the relation and cooperate as necessary to accomplish the full intent of the documents.

C. Provide sleeves and inserts in forms as required for the work. Stub up and protect open ends of pipe before any concrete is placed. Furnish sizes of required equipment pads. Furnish and locate bolts and fittings required to be cast in them.

D. Locate and size openings required for installation of work specified in this Division in sufficient time to prevent delay in the work.

E. Refer to other Divisions of the specifications for the scope of required connections to equipment furnished under that Division. Determine from the Contractor for the various trades, the Owner, and by direction from the Architect/Engineer, the exact location of all items.

## 1.9 CONCEALED AND EXPOSED WORK

A. When the word "concealed" is used in connection with insulating, painting, piping, ducts and the like, the work is understood to mean hidden from sight as in chases, furred spaces or above ceilings. "Exposed" is understood to mean open to view.

## 1.10 GUARANTEE

A. Guarantee work for 1 year from the date of substantial completion of the project. During that period make good any faults or imperfections that may arise due to defects or omissions in material, equipment or workmanship. At the Owner's option, replacement of failed parts or equipment shall be provided.

## 1.11 MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT

A. Furnish new and unused materials and equipment meeting the requirements of the paragraph specifying acceptable manufacturers. Where two or more units of the same type or class of equipment are required, provide units of a single manufacturer.

## 1.12 NOISE AND VIBRATION

A. Select equipment to operate with minimum noise and vibration. If objectionable noise or vibration is produced or transmitted to or through the building structure by equipment, piping, ducts or other parts of work, rectify such conditions at no additional cost. If the item of equipment is judged to produce objectionable noise or vibration, demonstrate at no additional cost that equipment performs within designated limits on a vibration chart.

## 1.13 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers names and catalog number specified under sections of Division 21 are used to establish standards of design, performance, quality and serviceability and not to limit competition. Equipment of similar design, equal to that specified, manufactured by a named manufacturer will be acceptable on approval. A request for prior approval of equipment not listed must be submitted ten (10) days before bid due date. Submit complete design and performance data to the Engineer.

## 1.14 OPERATING TESTS

A. After all plumbing systems have been completed and put into operation, subject each system to an operating test under design conditions to ensure proper sequencing and operation throughout the range of operation. Tests shall be made in the presence of the Architect/Engineer. Make adjustments as required to ensure proper functioning of all systems. Special tests on individual systems are specified under individual sections. Submit 3 copies of all certifications and test reports adequately in advance of completion of the work to allow for remedial action as required to correct deficiencies discovered in equipment and systems.

## 1.15 WARRANTIES

A. Submit 3 copies of all warranties and guarantees for systems, equipment, devices and materials. These shall be included in the Operating and Maintenance Manuals.

## 1.16 BUILDING CONSTRUCTION

A. It shall be the responsibility of each sub-contractor to consult the Architectural and Engineering drawings, details, and specifications and thoroughly familiarize himself with the project and all job related requirements. Each sub-contractor shall cooperate with the General Contractor to verify that all piping and other items are placed in the walls, furred spaces, chases, etc., so there will be no delays in the job.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS – NOT USED**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 OPENINGS**

A. Framed, cast or masonry openings for ductwork, equipment or piping are specified under other divisions. Drawings and layout work for exact size and location of all openings are included under this division.

**3.2 HOUSEKEEPING PADS**

A. Provide equipment housekeeping pads under all floor mounted and ground mounted plumbing equipment, and as shown on the drawings.

B. Concrete work as specified in Division 3.

C. Concrete pads:
   1. 4" high, rounded edges, minimum 2500 psi unless otherwise indicated on the drawings
   2. Chamfer strips at edges and corner of forms.
   3. Smooth steel trowel finish.
   4. Doweled to existing slab

D. Install concrete curbs around multiple pipe penetrations.

**3.3 VANDAL RESISTANT DEVICES**

A. Provide a handle for each loose keyed operated valve and hose bibb on the project.

B. Where vandal resistant screws or bolts are employed on the project, deliver to the Owner 2 suitable tools for use with each type of fastener used.

C. Proof of delivery of these items to the Owner shall be included in the Operating and Maintenance Manuals.

**3.4 INSTRUCTION OF OWNER'S PERSONNEL**

A. Prior to final inspection, conduct an on-site training program to instruct the Owner's operating personnel in the operation and maintenance of the plumbing systems.
   1. Provide the training during the Owner's regular working day.
   2. The instructors shall each be experienced in their phase of operation and maintenance of building plumbing systems and with the project.

B. Time to be allocated for instructions.
   1. Minimum of 4 hours dedicated instructor time.
   2. 2 hours on each of 2 days.

C. Before proceeding with the on-site training program, submit the program syllabus; proposed time and dates; and other pertinent information for review and approval.
   1. One copy to the Owner.
   2. One copy to the Architect/Engineer.

D. The Owner will provide a list of personnel to receive instructions, and will coordinate their attendance at the agreed upon times.

E. Use the operation and maintenance manuals as the basis of instruction. Review contents of manual with personnel in detail to explain all aspects of operation and maintenance.

F. Demonstrate start-up, operation, control, adjustment, trouble-shooting, servicing, maintenance, and shut down of each item of equipment.

G. Demonstrate equipment functions (both individually and as part of the total integrated system).

H. Prepare and insert additional data in the operating and maintenance manuals when the need for additional data becomes apparent during instructions.

I. Submit a report within one week after completion of the training program that instructions have been satisfactorily completed. Give time and date of each demonstration and hours devoted to the demonstration, with a list of people present.

J. At the conclusion of the on-site training program, have the person designated by the Owner sign a certificate to certify that he/she has a proper understanding of the system, that the demonstrations and instructions have been satisfactorily completed, and the scope and content of the operating and maintenance manuals used for the training program are satisfactory.

K. Provide a copy of the report and the certificate in an appropriately tabbed section of each Operating and Maintenance Manual.

## 3.5 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

A. Provide a laminated engraved plastic nameplate on each piece of equipment and starter.
   1. Designation approved by Architect/Engineer.
   2. Equipment includes, but is not limited to, water heaters, pumps, boilers and utility controllers.
   3. Submit schedule of equipment to be included and designations.

B. Provide nameplates with 1/2" high letters and fastened with epoxy or screws.

## 3.6 OBSTRUCTIONS

A. The drawings indicate certain information pertaining to surface and subsurface obstructions which has been taken from available drawings. Such information is not guaranteed, however, as to accuracy of location or complete information.
   1. Before any cutting or trenching operations are begun, verify with Owner's representative, utility companies, municipalities, and other interested parties that all available information has been provided.
   2. Should obstruction be encountered, whether shown or not, alter routing of new work, reroute existing lines, remove obstruction where permitted, or otherwise perform whatever work is necessary to satisfy the purpose of the new work and leave existing services and structures in a satisfactory and serviceable condition.

B. Assume total responsibility for and repair any damage to existing utilities or construction, whether or not such existing facilities are shown.

## 3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect work, equipment, fixtures, and materials. At work completion, work must be clean and in original manufacturer's condition.

**END OF SECTION 21 05 00**

# SECTION 21 05 10 - FIRE PROTECTION CONTRACT QUALITY CONTROL

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Contract quality control including workmanship, manufacturer's instructions and demonstrations.

### 1.2 QUALITY CONTROL PROGRAM

A. Maintain quality control over supervision, subcontractors, suppliers, manufacturers, products, services, site conditions and workmanship to produce work in accordance with contract documents.

### 1.3 WORKMANSHIP

A. Comply with industry standards except when more restrictive tolerances or specified requirements indicate more rigid standards or more precise workmanship.

B. Perform work by persons qualified to produce workmanship of specified quality.

C. Secure products in place with positive anchorage devices designed and sized to withstand stresses, vibration, and racking. Under no conditions shall material or equipment be suspended from structural bridging.

D. Provide finishes to match approved samples. All exposed finishes shall be approved by the Architect. Submit color samples as required.

### 1.4 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

A. Comply with instructions in full detail, including each step in sequence.

B. Should instruction conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect / Engineer before proceeding.

### 1.5 MANUFACTURER'S CERTIFICATES

A. When required in individual Specification Sections, submit manufacturer's certificate in duplicate, certifying that products meet or exceed specified requirements.

### 1.6 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

A. When required in individual Specification Sections, manufacturer shall provide qualified personnel to observe:
   1. Field conditions.
   2. Condition of installation.

3. Quality of workmanship.
4. Start-up of equipment.
5. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of equipment.

B. Representative shall make written report of observations and recommendations to Architect / Engineer.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 REFERENCE APPLICABLE SPECIFICATION SECTIONS.**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 PROTECTION OF EQUIPMENT**

A. Do not deliver equipment to the project site until progress of construction has reached the stage where equipment is actually needed or until building is closed in enough to protect the equipment from weather. Equipment allowed to stand in the weather will be rejected, and the Contractor is obligated to furnish new equipment of a like kind at no additional cost to the Owner.

B. Adequately protect equipment from damage after delivery to the project. Cover with heavy tarpaulins, drop cloths or other protective coverings as required to protect from plaster, paint, mortar and/or dirt. Do not cover with plastic materials and trap condensate and cause corrosion.

**END OF SECTION 21 05 10**

# SECTION 21 05 12 - FIRE PROTECTION SHOP DRAWINGS, COORDINATION DRAWINGS & PRODUCT DATA

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Prepare submittals as required by Division 1.

B. The term submittal, as used herein, refers to all:
   1. Shop Drawings
   2. Coordination Drawings
   3. Product data

C. Submittals shall be prepared and produced for:
   1. Distribution as specified
   2. Inclusion in the Operating and Maintenance Manual, as specified, in the related section

### 1.2 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Present drawings in a clear and thorough manner. Identify details by reference to sheet and detail, schedule, or room numbers shown on Contract Drawings.

B. Show all dimensions of each item of equipment on a single composite Shop Drawing. Do not submit a series of drawings of components.

C. Identify field dimensions; show relationship to adjacent features, critical features, work, or products.

D. Submit shop drawings in plan, elevation and sections, showing equipment in mechanical equipment areas.

### 1.3 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

A. Present in a clear and thorough manner. Title each drawing with project name. Identify each element of drawings by reference to sheet number and detail, or room number of contract documents. Minimum drawing scale: ¼” = 1’-0”.

B. Prepare coordination drawings to coordinate installations for efficient use of available space, for proper sequence of installation, and to resolve conflicts. Coordinate with work specified in other sections and other divisions of the specifications.

C. For each mechanical room and for each outside equipment pad where equipment is located, submit plan and elevation drawings. Show:
   1. Actual mechanical equipment and components to be furnished

2. Service clearance
3. Relationship to other equipment and components
4. Roof drains and leader piping
5. Fire protection piping and equipment

D. Identify field dimensions. Show relation to adjacent or critical features of work or products.

E. Related requirements:
1. Ductwork shop drawings
2. Coordination drawing specified in Division 26

F. Submit shop drawings in plan, elevation and sections, showing equipment in mechanical equipment areas.

G. Gas piping sketch indicating proposed location of piping prior to proceeding with the installation.

## 1.4 PRODUCT DATA AND INSTALLATION INSTRUCTION

A. Submit only pages which are pertinent to the project. All options which are indicated on the product data shall become part of the contract and shall be required whether specified are not.

B. Mark each copy of standard printed data to identify pertinent products, referenced to specification section and article number.

C. Show reference standards, performance characteristics and capacities; wiring and piping diagrams and controls; component parts; finishes; dimensions and required clearances.

D. Modify manufacturer's standard schematic drawings and diagrams to supplement standard information and to provide information specifically applicable to the work. Delete information not applicable.

E. Mark up a copy of the specifications for the product. Indicate in the margin of each paragraph the following: “Comply, ”Do Not Comply”, or “Not Applicable”. Explain all “Do Not Comply” statements.

F. Provide a separate transmittal for each submittal item. Transmittals shall indicate product by specification section name and number. Separate all submittals into appropriate specification section number. Do not combine specification sections.

## 1.5 MANUFACTURERS INSTRUCTIONS

A. Submit Manufacturer's instructions for storage, preparation, assembly, installation, start-up, adjusting, calibrating, balancing and finishing.

## 1.6 CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Review submittals prior to transmittal.

B. Determine and verify:
   1. Field measurements
   2. Field construction criteria
   3. Manufacturer's catalog numbers
   4. Conformance with requirements of Contract Documents

C. Coordinate submittals with requirements of the work and of the Contract Documents.

D. Notify the Architect / Engineer in writing at time of submission of any deviations in the submittals from requirements of the Contract Documents.

E. Do not fabricate products, or begin work for which submittals are specified, until such submittals have been produced and bear contractor's stamp. Do not fabricate products or begin work scheduled to have submittals reviewed until return of reviewed submittals with Architect / Engineer's acceptance.

F. Contractor's responsibility for errors and omissions in submittals is not relieved whether Architect / Engineer reviews submittals or not.

G. Contractor's responsibility for deviations in submittals from requirements of Contract Documents is not relieved whether Architect / Engineer reviews submittals or not, unless Architect / Engineer gives written acceptance of the specific deviations on reviewed documents.

H. Submittals shall show sufficient data to indicate complete compliance with Contract Documents:
   1. Proper sizes and capacities
   2. That the item will fit in the available space in a manner that will allow proper service
   3. Construction methods, materials and finishes

I. Schedule submissions at least 15 days before date reviewed submittals will be needed.

## 1.7 SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS

A. Make submittals promptly in accordance with approved schedule, and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Project or in the work of any other Contractor.

B. Number of submittals required:
   1. Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings: Submit one reproducible transparency and three opaque reproductions.
   2. Product Data: Submit the number of copies which the contractor requires, plus those which will be retained by the Architect / Engineer.

C. Accompany submittals with transmittal letter, in duplicate, containing:
   1. Date
   2. Project title and number
   3. Contractor's name and address
   4. The number of each Shop Drawing, Project Datum and Sample submitted
   5. Other pertinent data

D. Submittals shall include:
   1. The date of submission
   2. The project title and number
   3. Contract Identification
   4. The names of:
      a. Contractor
      b. Subcontractor
      c. Supplier
      d. Manufacturer
   5. Identification of the product
   6. Field dimensions, clearly identified as such
   7. Relation to adjacent or critical features of the work or materials
   8. Applicable standards, such as ASTM or federal specifications numbers
   9. Identification of deviations from contract documents
   10. Suitable blank space for General Contractor and Architect / Engineer stamps
   11. Contractor's signed and dated Stamp of Approval

E. Coordinate submittals into logical groupings to facilitate interrelation of the several items:
   1. Finishes which involve Architect / Engineer selection of colors, textures or patterns
   2. Associated items which require correlation for efficient function or for installation

## 1.8 SUBMITTAL SPECIFICATION INFORMATION

A. Every submittal document shall bear the following information as used in the project manual:
   1. The related specification section number
   2. The exact specification section title

B. Submittals delivered to the Architect / Engineer without the specified information will not be processed. The Contractor shall bear the risk of all delays, as if no submittal had been delivered.

## 1.9 RESUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS

A. Make re-submittals under procedures specified for initial submittals.
   1. Indicate that the document or sample is a re-submittal

2. Identify changes made since previous submittals

B. Indicate any changes which have been made, other than those requested by the Architect / Engineer.

## 1.10 CONTRACTOR'S STAMP OF APPROVAL

A. Contractor shall stamp and sign each document certifying to the review of products, field measurements and field construction criteria, and coordination of the information within the submittal with requirements of the work and of Contract Documents.

B. Contractor's stamp of approval on any submittal shall constitute a representation to Owner and Architect / Engineer that Contractor has either determined and verified all quantities, dimensions, field construction criteria, materials, catalog numbers, and similar data or assumes full responsibility for doing so, and that Contractor has reviewed or coordinated each submittal with the requirements of the work and the Contract Documents.

C. Do not deliver any submittals to the Architect / Engineer that do not bear the Contractor's stamp of approval and signature.

D. Submittals delivered to the Architect / Engineer without Contractor's stamp of approval and signature will not be processed. The Contractor shall bear the risk of all delays, as if no submittal had been delivered.

## 1.11 ARCHITECT / ENGINEER REVIEW OF IDENTIFIED SUBMITTALS

A. The Architect / Engineer will:
1. Review identified submittals with reasonable promptness and in accordance with schedule
2. Affix stamp and initials or signature, and indicate requirements for re-submittal or approval of submittal
3. Return submittals to Contractor for distribution or for resubmission

B. Review and approval of submittals will not extend to design data reflected in submittals which is peculiarly within the special expertise of the Contractor or any party dealing directly with the Contractor.

C. Architect / Engineer's review and approval is only for conformance with the design concept of the project and for compliance with the information given in the contract.
1. The review shall not extend to means, methods, sequences, techniques or procedures of construction or to safety precautions or programs incident thereto.
2. The review shall not extend to review of quantities, dimensions, weights or gauges, fabrication processes or coordination with the work of other trades.

D. The review and approval of a separate item as such will not indicate approval of the assembly in which the item functions.

**1.12 SUBSTITUTIONS**

A. Do not make requests for substitution employing the procedures of this Section.

B. The procedure for making a formal request for substitution is specified in Div. 1.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION 21 05 12**

# SECTION 21 05 13 - ELECTRICAL PROVISIONS OF FIRE PROTECTION WORK

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Electrical provisions to be provided as fire protection work are indicated in other Division 21 sections, on drawings, and as specified.

B. Types of work, normally recognized as electrical but provided as fire protection, specified or partially specified in this Section, include but are not necessarily limited to the following:
   1. Motors for fire protection equipment.
   2. Starters for motors of fire protection equipment, but only where specifically indicated to be furnished integrally with equipment.
   3. Wiring from motors to disconnect switches or junction boxes for motors of fire protection equipment, but only where specifically indicated to be furnished integrally with equipment.
   4. Wiring of field-mounted float control switches, flow control switches, and similar fire protection-electrical devices provided for fire protection systems, to equipment control panels.
   5. Pipe heat tracing.

C. Refer to Division 21 sections for specific individual fire protection equipment electrical requirements.

D. Refer to Division 26 sections for motor starters and controls not furnished integrally with fire protection equipment.

E. Refer to Division 26 sections for junction boxes and disconnect switches required for motors and other electrical units of fire protection equipment.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Specification Sections, apply to work of this Section.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Wherever possible, match elements of electrical provisions of fire protection work with similar elements of electrical work specified in Division 26 sections for electrical work not otherwise specified.

B. For electrical equipment and products, comply with applicable NEMA standards, and refer to NEMA standards for definitions of terminology. Comply with National Electrical Code (NFPA 70) for workmanship and installation requirements.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Include in listing of motors, voltage, notation of whether motor starter is furnished or installed integrally with motor or equipment containing motors.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MOTORS

A. Provide motors for fire protection equipment manufactured by one of the following:
   1. Baldor Electric Company.
   2. Century Electric Div., Inc.
   3. General Electric Co.
   4. Louis Allis Div.; Litton Industrial Products, Inc.
   5. Lincoln Electric
   6. Marathon Electric Mfg. Corp.
   7. Reliance Electric Co.
   8. Westinghouse Electric Corp.

B. Motor Characteristics. Except where more stringent requirements are indicated, and except where required items of fire protection equipment cannot be obtained with fully complying motors, comply with the following requirements for motors of fire protection work:

C. Temperature Rating. Rated for 40°C environment with maximum 50°C temperature rise for continuous duty at full load (Class A Insulation).

D. Provide each motor capable of making starts as frequently as indicated by automatic control system, and not less than 5 starts per hour for manually controlled motors.

E. Phases and Current Characteristics. Provide squirrel-cage induction polyphase motors for 3/4hp and larger, and provide capacitor-start single-phase motors for 1/2hp and smaller, except 1/6hp and smaller may, at equipment manufacturer's option, be split-phase type. Coordinate current characteristics with power specified in Division 26 sections, and with individual equipment requirements specified in other Division 21 requirements. For 2-speed motors provide 2 separate windings on polyphase motors. Do not purchase motors until power characteristics available at locations of motors have been confirmed, and until rotation directions have been confirmed.

F. Service Factor. 1.15 for polyphase motors and 1.35 for single-phase motors.

G. Motor Construction. Provide general purpose, continuous duty motors, Design "B" except "C" where required for high starting torque.
   1. Frames. NEMA #56.
   2. Bearings are to be ball or roller bearings with inner and outer shaft seals, regreasable except permanently sealed where motor is inaccessible for regular maintenance. Where belt drives and other drives produce lateral or axial thrust

in motor, provide bearings designed to resist thrust loading. Refer to individual section of Division 21 for fractional-hp light-duty motors where sleeve-type bearings are permitted.

3. Except as indicated, provide open drip-proof motors for indoor use where satisfactorily housed or remotely located during operation, and provide guarded drip-proof motors where exposed to contact by employees or building occupants. Provide weather-protected Type I for outdoor use, Type II where not housed. Refer to individual sections of Division 21 for other enclosure requirements.
4. Provide built-in thermal overload protection and, where indicated, provide internal sensing device suitable for signaling and stopping motor at starter.
5. Noise Rating: Provide "Quiet" rating on motors.

H. All motors shall be premium efficiency.

## 2.2 EQUIPMENT FABRICATION

A. Fabricate fire protection equipment for secure mounting of motors and other electrical items included in work. Provide either permanent alignment of motors with equipment, or adjustable mountings as applicable for belt drives, gear drives, special couplings and similar indirect coupling of equipment. Provide safe, secure, durable, and removable guards for motor drives. Arrange for lubrication and similar running-maintenance without removal of guards.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install motors on motor mounting systems in accordance with motor manufacturer’s instructions, anchored to resist torque, drive thrusts, and other external forces inherent in fire protection work. Secure sheaves and other drive units to motor shafts with keys and Allen set screws on flat surface of shaft. Unless otherwise indicated, set motor shafts parallel with machine shafts.

B. Verify voltage with Electrical Plans.

**END OF SECTION 21 05 13**

# SECTION 21 05 14 - FIRE PROTECTION ALTERATIONS PROJECT PROCEDURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Inspect and service existing equipment and materials that are to remain or to be reused.

B. Disposal of equipment, materials, or housekeeping pads to be abandoned. Prior to disposal, the Contractor shall verify with the Owner what is to be salvaged by the Owner and what is to become the property of the Contractor.

C. Handling of equipment and materials to be removed.

### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Coordination with the Owner prior to the disconnection or shutdown of existing equipment, or to the modification of existing operational systems.

### 1.3 CONTRACT DRAWINGS

A. There is the possibility that existing conditions and devices are affected by the work indicated on the drawings and called for in the specifications (project manual) that do not appear on the drawings. It is the Contractor's responsibility to visit the site and determine all of the existing conditions and to consider these existing conditions when making and presenting a proposal, to have a complete proposal.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

A. Material used to upgrade and repair existing equipment shall conform to that specified.

B. Material used to upgrade and repair existing equipment shall not void existing warranties or listings of the equipment to be upgraded or repaired.

C. Material used to upgrade and repair existing equipment shall be new and shall be of the same manufacturer of the existing equipment, shall be acquired through the existing original equipment manufacturer's approved distribution channels, shall have manufacturer's warranties for the new material being used, and shall be listed for the use intended.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

A. Existing materials and equipment indicated on the drawings or in the specifications to

be reused shall be inspected for damaged or missing parts. Contractor shall notify the Architect / Engineer, in writing, accordingly.

B. If using materials specified or shown on the drawing voids or diminishes the warranty or operation of remaining equipment or systems, the Contractor shall notify the Architect / Engineer, in writing.

C. Verify field measurements, above and underground piping connections and flows.

D. Demolition Drawings are based on casual field observation, and when available, existing record documents. Report discrepancies to Architect before disturbing existing installation, and immediately after such discrepancies are discovered.

E. Field verify existing conditions and actual utility uses prior to final connections. Existing drawings may not have been available for all required information.

## 3.2 APPLICATION

A. Existing materials and equipment indicated on the drawings or in the specifications to be reused shall be cleaned and reconditioned, including cleaning of piping systems prior to installation and reuse, or abandon.

B. Material and equipment removed that is not to be salvaged for Owner's use or for reuse on the project shall become the property of the Contractor and be removed from the site.

C. Material or equipment salvaged for Owner's use shall be carefully handled and stored where directed by the Owner or the Architect / Engineer. Relocate material and / or equipment as directed by Owner.

D. Materials and equipment not indicated to be removed or abandoned shall be reconnected to the new system.

E. Materials, equipment and housekeeping pads not to be reused or reconnected shall be removed for Owner’s review and salvaged by Contractor.

F. Prior to start of construction, Contractor shall walk areas to be renovated with Owner to identify and document items to be salvaged for Owner’s use.

G. Clean and repair existing materials and equipment that remain or are to be reused.

H. Contractor shall utilize spaces efficiently to maximize accessibility for other installations, for maintenance, and for repairs.

## 3.3 SEQUENCE AND SCHEDULE

A. Coordinate utility service outages with Utility Company, Architect and Owner.

B. Provide additional or temporary valves, piping and connections to maintain existing systems in service during construction.

C. Existing Fire Protection Service: Refer to drawings for work in remodeled areas. Where facilities in these areas are to remain in service, any related work to keep the facilities in operation is specified in this Division. Maintain existing system in service until new system is complete and ready for service. Disable system only to make switchovers and connections. Obtain permission from Owner at least 48 hours before partially or completely disabling system. Minimize outage duration. Make temporary connections to maintain service in areas adjacent to work area. Maintain acceptable temperature and humidity control within existing building during renovation activities.

D. Remove and replace existing fire protection systems and appurtenances as occasioned by new or remodeled construction. Re-establish service that may be interrupted by remodeled construction.

E. Refer to other drawings series for work in remodeled areas. Where facilities in these areas are required to remain in service, any related work required to keep these facilities in operation is specified in this Division.

F. Remove and replace existing piping coincident with the construction.

**3.4 DEMOLITION AND EXTENSION OF EXISTING FIRE PROTECTION WORK**

A. The Contractor shall modify, remove, and/or relocate all materials and items so indicated on the drawings or required by the installation of new facilities. All removals and/or dismantling shall be conducted in a manner as to produce maximum salvage. Salvage materials shall remain the property of the Owner and shall be delivered to such destination as directed by the Owner's representative unless they are not wanted, then it will be the responsibility of this Contractor to remove such items and properly dispose of them. Materials and/or items scheduled for relocation, and which are damaged during dismantling or reassembly operations shall be repaired and restored to good operative condition. The Contractor may, at his discretion, and upon approval of the Owner's representative substitute new materials and/or items of like design and quality in lieu of materials and/or items to be relocated.

B. All items to be relocated shall be carefully removed in reverse to original assembly or placement and protected until relocated. The Contractor shall clean, repair, and provide all new materials, fittings, and appurtenances required to complete the relocations and to restore them to good operative order. All relocations shall be performed by workmen skilled in the work and in accordance with standard practice of the trades involved.

C. When items scheduled for relocation and/or reuse are found to be in damaged condition before work has been started on dismantling, the Contractor shall call the attention of the Owner's representative to such items and receive further instructions before removal. Items damaged in repositioning operations are the contractor's

responsibility and shall be repaired or replaced by the contractor as approved by the owner's representative, at no additional cost to the Owner.

D. Fire protection piping and appurtenances to be removed, salvaged, or relocated shall be removed to points indicated on the drawings, specified, or acceptable to the Owner's representative. Piping not scheduled for reuse shall be removed to the points at which reuse is to be continued or service is to remain. Such services shall be sealed, capped, or otherwise tied-off or disconnected in a safe manner acceptable to the Construction Inspector. All disconnections or connections into the existing facilities shall be done in such a manner as to result in minimum interruption of services to adjacent occupied areas. Services to existing areas or facilities that must remain in operation during the construction period shall not be interrupted without prior specific approval of the Owner's representative hereinbefore specified.

E. Repair adjacent construction and finishes damaged during demolition and extension work.

F. Maintain access to mechanical installations that remain active. Modify installation or provide access panel as appropriate.

G. Extend existing installations using materials and methods compatible with existing fire protection installation, or as specified.

H. Existing fire protection piping, and devices found to need additional hangers installed shall be added at no additional cost to the Owner.

**3.5 PROTECTION OF THE WORK**

A. Provide adequate temporary support and auxiliary structure as necessary to ensure structural value or integrity of affected portion of work.

B. Provide devices and methods to protect other portions of work from damage.

C. Execute fitting and adjustment of products to provide a finished installation to comply with specified products, functions, tolerances and finishes.

**3.6 IDENTIFICATION OF EQUIPMENT IN RENOVATED AREAS**

A. Identification of Equipment: Provide new identification of all existing equipment to be reused and located within the renovated areas. Do not include the description "existing". Provide new nameplates for all existing equipment in renovated areas as specified in Section 21 05 00 Fire Protection General Provisions.

**END OF SECTION 21 05 14**

# SECTION 21 10 00 - FIRE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Design coordination of sprinkler work with the installations of other trades as shown on their drawings; all mechanical, electrical, plumbing and sprinkler work must fit the space requirements. The sprinkler work shall comply with other Sections of this specification; and fit the structure finishes. The Sprinkler Contractor will comply with all the codes and underwriter authorities, and the requirements for the installation of inside and outside piping; including sprinkler heads, valves, tamper switches, flow switches, hangers and supports, sleeves, fire department connections, inspector test connections, main drain and accessories, signs, and any other component parts reasonably incidental to providing a complete protection system. Provide 100 percent coverage for the entire building.

B. A wet system shall be installed in heated areas and dry pipe systems in areas subject to freezing. When heated areas are not available and dry pipe system not used, provide heat tracing and / or insulation installed per NFPA and per local Fire Marshall Requirements, or as indicated on drawings.

C. Furnish all articles of a completed sprinkler system including all materials, labor, tools, equipment, transportation services and supervision fees.

D. The plans provide a riser assembly location at water entry into building for flow switch locations, valve locations (with tamper switches), fire department test assemblies and fire department Siamese connections. These are a guide for subsequent preparation of the Contractor’s detailed installation drawings of the complete fire protection sprinkler system which shall be submitted to the Architect / Engineer for review. Submit only drawings and calculations bearing the approval of the authority having jurisdiction.

E. Do not exceed 52,000 square feet of building for each individual sprinkler system.

F. Install fire protective system identification signs in accordance with NFPA-13, NFPA-14, and NFPA-20

G. It shall be the fire protection installer’s responsibility to verify pressure at the project site by performing a flow test. Determine if the available static pressure, residual pressure, and flow rate will adequately provide the fire extinguishing system with the necessary operating requirements or if a fire pump, storage tank and necessary appurtenances are required. Notify Architect and Engineer if low water flow / pressure condition exist and inform them of all options prior to proceeding.

H. The installation of the entire Sprinkler Systems shall comply with all rules and regulations of the National Board of Fire Underwriters, the Local Building Code, Local Fire Marshall, and Requirements of NFPA Pamphlet 13, and other local authorities

exercising jurisdiction.

I. Study the general, structural, electrical, and mechanical drawings and specifications, in order to become familiar with the building and details as they apply to the work of this Section. Cooperate with all Trades so that there will be no conflict of space. Plumbing flow lines, large ductwork HVAC piping and electrical service feeders shall take precedence over Fire Protection work, except where it is absolutely necessary to maintain coverage protection.

J. Provide a water curtain sprinkler system along glazing to create a 1-hour rating, as outlined in NFPA 13. Refer to Architecture plans for locations. Water demand for water curtain shall be added to the ceiling sprinkler water demand at the point of connection, per NFPA 13. Sprinkler heads shall be spaced at 6’-0” o.c., minimum 6 inches and maximum 12 inches from glazing.

## 1.2 BASIS OF DESIGN

A. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), latest edition of NFPA 13, Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems.

B. Vertical zone valves installed in horizontal position are not acceptable. All zone valves are to be located at water entry into building and mounted in the vertical riser.

## 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Sprinkler equipment and installation to be in accordance with recommendations of and approved by local, state, and federal fire authorities.

B. Equipment and installation to meet requirements of NFPA No. 13, 14, 20, 24, 25, 70 and 72.

C. Use materials and equipment that are new and of unused, approved by NFPA and as listed in the UL list of "Inspected Fire Protection Equipment and Materials."

## 1.4 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Make complete shop drawings and working drawings of equipment furnished, including detailed drawings of piping and sprinkler head locations. Drawings shall show construction details and dimensions of each piece of equipment and work to be installed. The location of all heads shall be as approved. Where additional heads are required to meet NFPA 13, provide at no additional cost.

B. Before the shop drawings are submitted to Architect / Engineer, submit drawings to the jurisdictions for approval. All approvals shall be noted on the drawings or by letter from the departments.

C. The Architect's approval of shop drawings shall not relieve the responsibility of correctly

figured dimensions or any errors that may be contained in these drawings. The omission of any material shown on the contract drawings, or specified from the shop drawings, even though approved, shall not relieve the responsibility to furnish and erect them.

D. Provide ¼ scale drawings to show the location of the water entry into building with all zone valves, and shut-off valves, with alarms and drains at this location. Prepare the sprinkler drawings under the work of this Section.

E. Submit samples of all sprinkler types for approval.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS**

A. Johnson Controls (Tyco Fire Products)
   1. Gem/Grinnell
   2. Central
   3. Star Sprinkler

B. Automatic Sprinkler Company of America

C. Potter Roemer, Inc.

D. The Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Company

E. Viking Corporation

F. Victaulic Company of America

G. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation

**2.2 PIPING AND FITTINGS**

A. Above Slab Inside Building
   1. Pipe 2" and Smaller: Schedule 40, black steel pipe conforming to ASTM A 795 or ASTM A135 joined with threaded fittings.
   2. Pipe 2-1/2" and larger, provide ASTM A795 or ASTM A135 UL and FM listed.
      a. Schedule. 40, black steel pipe joined with rolled grooved fittings.

B. Underground within five feet of building. Provide ductile iron pipe, Class 200 conforming to ASTM, and ring-tite fittings. Provide concrete thrust blocks at changes in direction, according to the pipe manufacturer's recommendations.

C. All piping shall be black carbon steel, except in dry systems where pipe shall be galvanized per ASTM A53.

D. Fittings used to join pipe shall be listed fabricated fittings or manufactured in

accordance with the material and dimension standards listed in table 6.4.1 NFPA 13 and 2.2.1 NFPA 14.

## 2.3 SPRINKLER HEAD

A. All sprinklers shall comply with the latest requirements of NFPA 13 with respect to orifice size.

B. All heads shall be UL listed and/or FM approved and comply with the latest requirements of NFPA 13 with respect to orifice size unless otherwise noted. Sprinkler heads with “O” ring design shall not be acceptable.

C. Exposed areas:
   1. Standard upright type with brass finish and escutcheon. Provide temperature rating per NFPA 13 and UL/FM approvals.
   2. Tyco Model B, FRB, Globe Model GL-QR, GL-SR, or approved equal

D. Sidewall applications:
   1. Horizontal sidewall type with brass finishes and chrome escutcheon.
   2. Unfinished areas and recessed with chrome plated escutcheon. Provide temperature rating per NFPA 13 and UL/FM approvals.
   3. Tyco Model B, FRB, Globe Model GL-QR/SW, GL-SR/SW, or approved equal.

E. Suspended ceilings:
   1. Adjustable drop-down deflector type concealed heads with manufacturer painted white cover plate with glass bulb fusible link. Provide temperature rating per NFPA 13 and UL/FM approvals.
   2. Color of plate, selected by Architect
   3. Tyco Series RFII; Series ELOC, Globe Concealed Models GL-QR/INCH, GL-SW/INCH and GL-INCH/ECLH or approved equal.

F. Dry sprinklers heads at freezers and coolers
   1. Tyco Model DS-1, DS-2, or approved equal.

G. Sprinklers subject to mechanical injury shall be protected with fusible solder type sprinklers and listed heavy duty bolt on guards. Bulb type sprinklers will not be acceptable for these locations.
   1. Storage rooms with exposed structure.
   2. Gymnasiums.
   3. Mechanical and Electrical rooms.
   4. Below exposed stairs.
   5. Exposed structure areas.

H. Systems serving walk-n freezers shall utilize Tyco Model DS-1 or DS-C dry pendent sprinklers. A Model DSB-1 dry sprinkler boot shall be utilized in conjunction with the dry sprinkler to eliminate the requirement for insulation and to stop potential air interchange. Length of dry pendent shall be determined by manufacturer’s

recommendation with respect to freezer ambient temperatures expected.

## 2.4 INSPECTOR'S TEST CONNECTION

A. Provide inspector's test connection as required by NFPA 13.
   1. Ductile iron module housing with combination sight glass, orifice, and bonnet assembly
   2. UL listed
   3. Victaulic No. 718
   4. Globe Model UTD
   5. Tyco, or approved equal

## 2.5 TAMPER SWITCH / SUPERVISORY SWITCH

A. Tamper switch on each valve
   1. Controlling or shutting off sprinkler system or any portion thereof.
   2. Tamper switch with either one single pole, double throw switch or two single pole, double throw switches as required.
   3. Switch shall be compatible with installed valve for standard mounting.
   4. Potter-Roemer Fig. 6220, 6221, 6222, 6223 or approved equal.

## 2.6 FLOW SWITCH

A. Vane type flow switch.
   1. Self-contained pneumatic, adjustable retard.
   2. Two, single pole, double throw switches.
   3. Red enamel tamper proof switch housing with flow paddle.
   4. Potter Roemer Model No. 6200 or approved equal.

## 2.7 FLOORS AND CEILING PLATES

A. Provide chrome-plated floor and ceiling plates around pipes exposed to view when passing through walls, floors, partitions, or ceilings in finished areas; size plates to fit pipe or insulation and lock in place.

## 2.8 DOMESTIC MANUFACTURE

A. All piping material, pipe and pipe fittings shall be manufactured in the United States of America.

## 2.9 DRY PIPE SYSTEM

A. General: Provide a UL listed, and FM approved dry pipe system at the dock area. System shall consist of a dry pipe valve, air compressor, fusible link type sprinkler heads and all associated trim and piping for a complete operating system.

B. Dry Pipe Valve: Rated for a working pressure of 175 psi, factory hydrostatic tested at

350 psi, supplied with all gauges, valves, strainer, electrical alarm switch, ball drip valve, and drip cup assembly, manufactured by Victaulic Model 756, Globe Model RCW.

C. Air Compressor: Oilless, permanently lubricated, pipe mounted, direct drive, complete with safety relief valve manufactured by Reliable Model A or approved equal. Size of air compressor is determined by volume of dry pipe system. Coordinate power requirement with electrical contractor. Coordinate all wiring required with Fire Alarm System.

D. If the dry pipe system is not used in conjunction with a wet pipe system containing the necessary check valves or backflow preventer, a check valve shall be installed in the dry pipe system at the connection to the water supply.

E. If the dry pipe system is not used in conjunction with a wet pipe system containing a control valve such as a post indicator (PIV) or outside screw & yoke valve (OS&Y), a PIV or OS&Y shall be installed in the system.

F. The dry pipe valve and pipe to the wet supply shall be protected from freezing.

G. Provide an automatic or manual compressed air system capable of restoring normal air pressure to a system in 30 minutes or less.

H. Provide an accelerator when system capacity exceeds 500 gallons.

I. Provide a water motor alarm or electric pressure switch.

J. Provide dry pipe valve trim and pressure gauges.

K. Dry pipe system shall be hydraulically calculated for the hazard being protected.

L. Provide dry pendent type sprinkler heads only when the piping and sprinklers are not in a heated area.

M. Provide a test drain valve sized per NFPA. An inspector’s test shall be provided at each system.

N. Slope all piping toward a drain per NFPA 13. A drain shall be provided at all low points.

O. The following accessories shall be provided where required:
   1. Victaulic Series 756.
   2. Viking Model E dry pipe valve with conventional trim.
   3. Viking Model D-1 accelerators.
   4. Globe Model RCW dry pipe valve with conventional trim package, and Model C Accelerator.

**2.10 GASKETS**

A. Use 1/16-inch-thick preformed synthetic rubber bonded.

## 2.11 COUPLINGS

A. Use listed rolled grooved mechanical couplings to engage and lock grooved, or shouldered pipe ends and to allow for some angular deflection, contraction, and expansion. Coupling consists of ductile iron housing, c-shaped composition sealing gasket and steel bolts. Gasket Material for dry pipe systems shall be silicone and listed for dry pipe service.

## 2.12 VALVES

A. Use valves suitable for 175 psig WOG.

B. Valves to be UL listed and FM approved.

C. Valve Connections:
1. Provide valves suitable to connect adjoining piping as specified for pipe joints. Use full line size valves unless noted otherwise.
2. Screwed ends for pipe sizes 2 inches and smaller.
3. Flanged ends for pipe sizes 2-1/2 inches and larger.
4. Solder or screw to solder adapters for copper tubing.
5. Use grooved body valves with mechanical grooved jointed piping.

D. Gate Valves:
1. Up to 2 inches, bronze, outside screw and yoke, rising stem, solid wedge, screwed ends, manufactured by: Mueller, or approved equal.
2. Over 2 inches, iron body, bronze trim, outside screw and yoke, rising stem, solid wedge, flanged ends; manufactured by Mueller, or approved equal.

E. Check Valves:
1. Up to 2-inch, bronze, regrind bronze swing disk, solder, or screwed ends; 200 WOG, manufactured by Mueller, or approved equal.
2. Over 2-inch, iron body bronze trim, swing disk, regrind – renew bronze disk and seat, flanged ends; 200 WOG, manufactured by Mueller, Globe Model RCV, or approved equal.

F. Butterfly Valve: Lug body style, bubble-tight shutoff, cast iron body, ASTM B 148 bronze disk, with integral tamper switch, manufactured by Anvil Model No. 8000 FP, or approved equal.

G. Freestanding Indicating Post: Install adjustable indicating post and valve outside building where shown on Civil drawings, consisting of UL/FM, non-rising stem gate valve and indicating post. Gate valve shall be iron body, non-rising stem, bronze mounted. Indicator flange, 175-psi non-shock rating, flanged end. Indicator shall be UL/FM approved cast iron body, Plexiglas window and 18-inch adjustment span with handle and tamper switch wired to main fire alarm control panel, manufactured by Mueller,

Valve No. A-2052, Indicating Post No. A20800, or approved equal.

H. Wall post-adjustable indicating valve: Outside building at water entry location into building, consisting of UL/FM, non-rising stem gate valve and indicator. Gate valve shall be iron body, non-rising stem, bronze mounted. Indicator flange, 175-psi non-shock rating, flanged end. Indicator shall be UL/FM approved cast iron body, Plexiglas window and 18-inch adjustment span with handle and tamper switch wired to main fire alarm control panel, manufactured by Mueller, Valve No. A-2052, Indicating Post No. A20800, or approved equal.

## 2.13 ELECTRIC ALARM BELL

A. 10-inch round red enamel steel bell with electrically operated vibrating outdoor alarm bell, UL listed, red enamel steel, manufactured by Simplex, or approved equal.

## 2.14 GAUGES

A. Gauges shall be bourdon tube type with minimum 4-1/2-inch dial and die cast aluminum case with screwed ring and black enamel finish. The movement shall be all stainless steel with Grade A phosphor bronze bourdon tube, brazed at socket and tip. The accuracy of the gauge shall be within one-half of one percent of the scale range. The pointer shall be the micrometer adjustment type recalibrated from the front. Pressure and compound gauges shall have suitable scale ranges and graduations. Suitable for temperatures up to 120 degrees F.

B. Gauges shall have ¼ inch connections and be mounted with combination stop / snubber needle valve with suitable pressure rating. Scale ranges: 0-200 psi.

C. Gauge range shall be such that system normal operating pressure falls with 25 percent and 75 percent of the full-scale range.

D. Pressure scale graduations shall read in psig. Figure intervals shall be in – 20 psig increments, with minor divisions in 2 psig increments.

E. The accuracy of the gauge shall be at least 0.5 percent of the scale range. Gauge shall be made in accordance with ASME B40.1 accuracy grade 2A.

F. Manufactured by:
1. Trerice Model No. 4500 Series
2. Ashcroft
3. Marsh
4. Weksler

## 2.15 SPARE SPRINKLER HEAD BOX

A. Provide baked enamel steel box to store 36 sprinkler heads (Minimum of 3 of each type used) for emergency replacement. Provide sprinkler wrench.

## 2.16 ALARM CHECK VALVE

A. Provide UL listed check valve.
   1. Variable for City Supplied systems pressure trim set.
   2. Constant for Fire Pump Systems pressure trim set.
   3. Tyco AV-1, Globe Model H, or approved equal.

## 2.17 WATER MOTOR ALARM

A. Provide a red enamel motor alarm for installation on exterior wall.
   1. Tyco Model WMA-1, Globe Model WM, or approved equal.

## 2.18 SIAMESE FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTION

A. Siamese Wall mounted chrome-plated Siamese. Include caps, sillcock, chain, and a plate lettered AUTO-SPKR.
   1. Provide a 4" X 2-1/2" x2-1/2".
   2. Potter-Roemer #5751

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 DESIGN

A. Design, spacing of sprinkler heads and selection sizes shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 13 for the indicated occupancy.

B. Uniform discharge density design shall be based on hydraulic calculations using the method outlined in NFPA 13. Density of discharge from sprinkler heads shall conform to NFPA 13.

C. Friction losses in pipe will be based on a value of “C” = 120 in the Hazen and Williams formula.

D. Design and install the system so that no part will interfere with doors, windows, heating, mechanical, lighting, or electrical equipment. Do not locate sprinkler heads closer than 3 feet to lighting fixtures or other obstructions.

## 3.2 LOCATION

A. Heads shown, if indicated on reflected ceiling plans, are an integral part of the ceiling design. Where heads are not shown or indicated, locate them in the exact center of acoustical ceiling tile unless noted otherwise. In rooms with monolithic plaster or gypsum drywall ceilings, locate the sprinkler heads symmetrically arranged with respect to both axes of the room. Locate sprinkler heads in relation to specialty ceiling elements such as slats, ribs, panels, grids, etc., if not shown on the drawings. Generally, locate heads in the exact center of, or spaced between, such elements. Center heads in

corridors.

B. Locate heads as may be required for coordinated ceiling pattern, even through number of heads exceed minimum code requirements.

C. Sprinkler heads located in utility or mechanical rooms, penthouses, service corridors, or other such spaces not subject to public view need not be centered in ceiling patterns and may use a straight drop from branch line.

D. Install a water curtain sprinkler system along glazing to create a 1-hour rating, as outlined in NFPA 13. Refer to plans for locations. Water demand for water curtain shall be added to the ceiling sprinkler water demand at the point of connection, per NFPA 13. Sprinkler heads shall be spaced at 6'-0" on center, minimum 6 inches and maximum 12 inches from glazing.

E. Where glazing shall be installed in 2-hour fire rated assemblies, the Tyco Window sprinkler shall be utilized as outlined in the ICC Legacy report equivalency requirements. Any glazing requiring fire exposure protection shall also utilize the Tyco window sprinklers.

## 3.3 PREPARATION

A. Ream pipes and tubes, clean off scale, rust, oxide, and dirt, inside and outside, before assembly. Remove welding slag or other foreign material from piping.

B. Pipe beveled each end, per approved procedures.

C. Hammer clean and flush out piping after welding to remove scale, welding slag and other debris.

## 3.4 CONNECTION

A. Make screwed joints with square, clean full cut standard taper pipe threads. Ream after cutting and threading. Red lead and linseed oil or other approved non-toxic joint compound applied to male threads only.

B. Nipples: Shoulder type; extra heavy where less than 1-1/2 inch is unthreaded.

C. Clamp cast iron water pipe at fittings with ¾ inch rods and properly anchor and support.

D. Use grooved mechanical couplings and mechanical fasteners only in accessible locations.

## 3.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate the installation schedule for this work with the construction schedule for the Work to ensure orderly progress with minimum delay.

B. Coordinate interface of fire sprinkler system with the work of other trades to ensure proper and adequate provision for the installation and connection of this system.

C. Coordinate location and quantity of Siamese connections required for fire department connection with Architect and local fire officials.

## 3.6 SURFACE CONDITIONS

A. Before starting each stage of the fire sprinkler systems installation, inspect the installed work of other trades and determine that work is complete enough to allow installation to begin. Ensure that work of other trades has been installed in a manner to permit work of this Section in accordance with approved design.

## 3.7 INSTALLATION

A. Run piping concealed above furred ceilings and in joists to minimize obstructions. Expose only heads.

B. Protect sprinkler heads against mechanical injury with heavy duty bolt-on guards.

C. Locate system drains and inspector's test connections in utility rooms, mechanical rooms or other readily accessible areas not requiring access through ceiling. Coordinate sprinkler system drain flow rates with plumbing system drainage capacities.

D. Where low points or drains occur above ceilings or in otherwise finished spaces, furnish drain valve with brass cap and chain.

E. Locate outside alarms on wall of building and coordinate with Architect.

F. Fire pump and all accessories shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 20 and the local Fire Marshall and/or all other authorities having jurisdiction.

G. Provide on interior wall near sprinkler valve, cabinet containing extra sprinkler heads of each type and wrench suitable for each head type.

H. Provide a minimum 18-inch radius swing joint for each drop to sprinkler heads located in ceilings.

I. Provide Easy-Flex or Flexhead Industries sprinkler hose fittings for each sprinkler head installation for hydraulically designed wet, pre-action, deluge, or dry pipe sprinkler connections per NFPA 13. Allow a 3" minimum bend radius per UL.

J. Install pipe markers to identify fire protection.

K. Provide shield or deflector for sprinklers or equipment where electrical switchgear, switchboards and motor control centers are in sprinkler protected spaces.

L. Install fire 2-1/2-inch department valve, maximum 5 feet above floor, complying with NFPA 14.

M. During construction, make one standpipe outlet available on each floor without delay, for fire department use.

N. Provide 3-way standpipe outlets above roof.

O. Provide pressure gauges at the top of each standpipe as detailed on the drawings.

P. Provide drain for each standpipe.

Q. Install valves with stems upright or horizontal, not inverted.

R. Sprinkler heads shall be installed above and below ductwork over 48 inches wide, in exposed areas, per NFPA 13.

S. Install the complete fire sprinkler system in accordance with the approved shop drawings.

T. Perform piping installation in accordance with the provisions of the specifications, including furnishing of required sleeves for fire sprinkler system pipes passing through rated walls, floors, and other parts of the building. Provide scheduled 40 galvanized pipe sleeve for concrete or CMU penetrations. Furnish size required for fireproofing and or insulation. Furnish and install split wall plates and chrome plated escutcheons for exposed fire sprinkler system pipes. Where pipes pass through concrete floors, furnish, and install wrought iron or steel pipe sleeves made flush with the ceiling below and extending 2" above the finished floor.

U. Do not cut or make holes in any part of the building except where shown on the approved shop drawings.

V. Furnish and install, next to the sprinkler riser main, a print sheet protected by glass or a transparent plastic cover, giving brief instructions regarding control, emergency procedure, and other data required by NFPA #13. For hydraulically designed sprinkler systems, a placard is to be permanently attached to the riser indicating the location, and the basis of design (discharge density and system demand).

W. Do not install exposed piping below structure in public area.

X. Provide heat tracing and insulation on wet piping systems exposed to freezing when not installed in a heated space or installed by other acceptable methods of maintaining the piping from freezing. Installation of heat tracing and insulation shall be in accordance with the latest edition of NFPA 13 and the local code authorities. Coordinate electrical requirements with Division 26.

## 3.8 SECURING AND SUPPORTING

A. Support piping to maintain line and grade, with provision for expansion and contraction. Use approved adjustable ring type or trapeze-type hangers connected to structural members of the building. Single pipe runs to be supported by approved adjustable ring type hangers. Multiple pipe runs to be supported by approved trapeze type hangers. Do not support piping from other piping or structural joist bridging.

B. Provide supports both sides of elbows for pipe 6" and larger.

C. Support vertical risers with steel strap pipe clamps of approved design and size, supported at each floor. Support piping assemblies in chases so they are rigid and self-supported before the chase is closed.

D. Support spacing: As recommended by the project structural engineer and support manufacturer, but not more than listed below. Not to exceed spacing requirements of smallest pipe.

| Pipe Size | Steel Max. Support Spacing, Feet | Minimum Rod Diameter, Inches |
|---|---|---|
| 1" & smaller | 6 | 3/8 |
| 1-1/4" & 1-1/2" | 8 | 3/8 |
| 2" | 10 | 3/8 |
| 3" | 10 | 1/2 |
| 4" & 5" | 10 | 5/8 |
| 6" and above | 10 | 3/4 |

## 3.9 PIPE SUPPORTS

A. Provide P1001 or P 5000 Unistrut metal framing members and appurtenances for pipe support. Hot-dip galvanize members and appurtenances when located outside. Sagging of pipes or supports is not acceptable.

B. Adjustable ring type hangers shall be used for single pipe supports; Erico Model 115 NFPA UL/FM. When oversized clevis is used, a nipple shall be placed over the clevis bolt as a spacer to assure that the lower U-strap will not move in on the bolt. All parts shall be zinc plated carbon steel, or galvanized.

## 3.10 PIPE SLEEVES

A. Sleeves through masonry and concrete construction:
   1. Fabricate sleeves of Schedule 40 galvanized steel pipe.
   2. Size sleeve large enough to allow for movement due to expansion and to provide continuous insulation.

B. Sleeves through gypsum wall construction.
   1. Fabricate sleeves of 16-gauge galvanized sheet metal.

C. Sleeves through elevated slab construction.
   1. Fabricate sleeves of Schedule 40 galvanized steel pipe with welded center flange in floor.

D. Extend each sleeve through the floor or wall. Cut the sleeve flush with each wall surface. Sleeves through floors shall extend 2” above floor lines for waterproofing purposes. Slab on grade floors shall not be sleeved except where penetrating waterproofing membrane or insect control is required.

E. Caulk sleeves water and airtight. Seal annular space between pipes and sleeves with mastic compound to make the space water and airtight.

F. For sleeves below grades in outside walls, provide Thunderline Link-Seal or Advance Product and System Interlynx, with 316 stainless steel nuts and bolts, with cast iron pressure plate.

G. Provide chrome plated escutcheon plates on pipes passing through walls, floors or ceilings exposed to view. At exterior walls, stainless steel sheet metal is to be used.

H. For sleeves through fire and smoke rated walls, seal with a UL through-penetration firestop, rated to maintain the integrity of the time rated construction. Install in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Comply with UL and NFPA standards for the installation of firestops. Refer to Architectural drawings for all fire and smoke rated partitions, walls, floors, etc.

## 3.11 CLEANING OF PIPING SYSTEMS

A. General cleaning of piping systems. Purge pipe of construction debris and contamination before placing the systems in service. Provide and install temporary connections as required to clean, purge, and circulate.

## 3.12 FLUSHING AND TESTING

A. Testing and flushing of installation of sprinkler system shall be in accordance with NFPA 13, and NFPA 25.

B. Flush sprinkler piping in accordance with NFPA 13. Additionally, flush all alarm valves, and all main piping up to valve.

C. In addition to NFPA 13 required tests, provide flow switch test and tamper switch test for each device, and verify alarm valve operation.

D. All tests shall be witnessed by Architect / Engineer. Contractor shall notify Architect / Engineer 7 working days in advance.

## 3.13 EXCAVATING, TRENCHING, AND BACKFILLING

A. Perform excavation, trenching, and backfilling for this portion of the work in accordance with the specifications.

## 3.14 PIPE MARKERS

A. Identify interior exposed piping and piping in accessible chases or plenums with Opti-Code Brady Pressure Sensitive Adhesive Pipe Markers, consisting of pipe marker and direction of flow arrow tape. Clean pipe prior to installation. Background colors of markers, arrows, and tape for each type of system shall be the same. Meet ANSI/OSHA standards and clearly identify each system. Provide minimum 2-1/4-inch letters through 4-inch pipe and 4-inch letters for 5-inch pipe and larger.

B. Identify exterior and mechanical room piping with Snap Around pipe markers through 4-inch pipe and Strap Around markers 5-inch pipe and larger. Pipe markers consisting of pipe marker and direction of flow arrow tape; background colors of markers, arrows, and type for each type of system shall be the same. Meet ANSI / OSHA standards and clearly identify each system. Provide minimum 2-1/4-inch letters through 4-inch pipe and 4-inch letters for 5-inch pipe and larger.

C. Install identification in the following locations:
   1. Both sides of penetrations through walls, floors, and ceilings.
   2. Close to valves or flanges.
   3. Intervals on straight pipe runs not to exceed 50 feet
   4. Apply marker where view is obstructed.

D. Pipe markers shall meet or exceed the specifications of the ASME A13.1 “Scheme for Identification of Piping Systems”.

## 3.15 TESTING AND ACCEPTANCE

A. Prior to connecting to the overhead sprinkler piping, flush the underground main. Secure required approvals of the flushing operations.

B. Upon completion of the fire sprinkler system installation, test and retest the complete installation and make corrections as necessary to obtain acceptance by the Fire Marshall and/or any other authority having jurisdiction. Furnish test equipment and personnel required.

## 3.16 TRAINING

A. At a time mutually agreed upon, provide 4 hours of instruction to the Owner’s designated personnel on the operation and maintenance of the automatic sprinkler system and associated equipment. Owner’s Operation and Maintenance Manual prepared for this project shall be used during the instruction.

**END OF SECTION 21 10 00**

# SECTION 21 10 00 - FIRE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Design coordination of sprinkler work with the installations of other trades as shown on their drawings; all mechanical, electrical, plumbing and sprinkler work must fit the space requirements. The sprinkler work shall comply with other Sections of this specification; and fit the structure finishes. The Sprinkler Contractor will comply with all the codes and underwriter authorities, and the requirements for the installation of inside and outside piping; including sprinkler heads, valves, tamper switches, flow switches, hangers and supports, sleeves, fire department connections, inspector test connections, main drain and accessories, signs, and any other component parts reasonably incidental to providing a complete protection system. Provide 100 percent coverage for the entire building.

B. A wet system shall be installed in heated areas and dry pipe systems in areas subject to freezing. When heated areas are not available and dry pipe system not used, provide heat tracing and / or insulation installed per NFPA and per local Fire Marshall Requirements, or as indicated on drawings.

C. Furnish all articles of a completed sprinkler system including all materials, labor, tools, equipment, transportation services and supervision fees.

D. The plans provide a riser assembly location at water entry into building for flow switch locations, valve locations (with tamper switches), fire department test assemblies and fire department Siamese connections. These are a guide for subsequent preparation of the Contractor’s detailed installation drawings of the complete fire protection sprinkler system which shall be submitted to the Architect / Engineer for review. Submit only drawings and calculations bearing the approval of the authority having jurisdiction.

E. Do not exceed 52,000 square feet of building for each individual sprinkler system.

F. Install fire protective system identification signs in accordance with NFPA-13, NFPA-14, and NFPA-20

G. It shall be the fire protection installer’s responsibility to verify pressure at the project site by performing a flow test. Determine if the available static pressure, residual pressure, and flow rate will adequately provide the fire extinguishing system with the necessary operating requirements or if a fire pump, storage tank and necessary appurtenances are required. Notify Architect and Engineer if low water flow / pressure condition exist and inform them of all options prior to proceeding.

H. The installation of the entire Sprinkler Systems shall comply with all rules and regulations of the National Board of Fire Underwriters, the Local Building Code, Local Fire Marshall, and Requirements of NFPA Pamphlet 13, and other local authorities

exercising jurisdiction.

I. Study the general, structural, electrical, and mechanical drawings and specifications, in order to become familiar with the building and details as they apply to the work of this Section. Cooperate with all Trades so that there will be no conflict of space. Plumbing flow lines, large ductwork HVAC piping and electrical service feeders shall take precedence over Fire Protection work, except where it is absolutely necessary to maintain coverage protection.

J. Provide a water curtain sprinkler system along glazing to create a 1-hour rating, as outlined in NFPA 13. Refer to Architecture plans for locations. Water demand for water curtain shall be added to the ceiling sprinkler water demand at the point of connection, per NFPA 13. Sprinkler heads shall be spaced at 6’-0” o.c., minimum 6 inches and maximum 12 inches from glazing.

## 1.2 BASIS OF DESIGN

A. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), latest edition of NFPA 13, Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems.

B. Vertical zone valves installed in horizontal position are not acceptable. All zone valves are to be located at water entry into building and mounted in the vertical riser.

## 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Sprinkler equipment and installation to be in accordance with recommendations of and approved by local, state, and federal fire authorities.

B. Equipment and installation to meet requirements of NFPA No. 13, 14, 20, 24, 25, 70 and 72.

C. Use materials and equipment that are new and of unused, approved by NFPA and as listed in the UL list of "Inspected Fire Protection Equipment and Materials."

## 1.4 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Make complete shop drawings and working drawings of equipment furnished, including detailed drawings of piping and sprinkler head locations. Drawings shall show construction details and dimensions of each piece of equipment and work to be installed. The location of all heads shall be as approved. Where additional heads are required to meet NFPA 13, provide at no additional cost.

B. Before the shop drawings are submitted to Architect / Engineer, submit drawings to the jurisdictions for approval. All approvals shall be noted on the drawings or by letter from the departments.

C. The Architect's approval of shop drawings shall not relieve the responsibility of correctly

figured dimensions or any errors that may be contained in these drawings. The omission of any material shown on the contract drawings, or specified from the shop drawings, even though approved, shall not relieve the responsibility to furnish and erect them.

D. Provide ¼ scale drawings to show the location of the water entry into building with all zone valves, and shut-off valves, with alarms and drains at this location. Prepare the sprinkler drawings under the work of this Section.

E. Submit samples of all sprinkler types for approval.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS**

A. Johnson Controls (Tyco Fire Products)
   1. Gem/Grinnell
   2. Central
   3. Star Sprinkler

B. Automatic Sprinkler Company of America

C. Potter Roemer, Inc.

D. The Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Company

E. Viking Corporation

F. Victaulic Company of America

G. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation

**2.2 PIPING AND FITTINGS**

A. Above Slab Inside Building
   1. Pipe 2" and Smaller: Schedule 40, black steel pipe conforming to ASTM A 795 or ASTM A135 joined with threaded fittings.
   2. Pipe 2-1/2" and larger, provide ASTM A795 or ASTM A135 UL and FM listed.
      a. Schedule. 40, black steel pipe joined with rolled grooved fittings.

B. Underground within five feet of building. Provide ductile iron pipe, Class 200 conforming to ASTM, and ring-tite fittings. Provide concrete thrust blocks at changes in direction, according to the pipe manufacturer's recommendations.

C. All piping shall be black carbon steel, except in dry systems where pipe shall be galvanized per ASTM A53.

D. Fittings used to join pipe shall be listed fabricated fittings or manufactured in

accordance with the material and dimension standards listed in table 6.4.1 NFPA 13 and 2.2.1 NFPA 14.

## 2.3 SPRINKLER HEAD

A. All sprinklers shall comply with the latest requirements of NFPA 13 with respect to orifice size.

B. All heads shall be UL listed and/or FM approved and comply with the latest requirements of NFPA 13 with respect to orifice size unless otherwise noted. Sprinkler heads with “O” ring design shall not be acceptable.

C. Exposed areas:
   1. Standard upright type with brass finish and escutcheon. Provide temperature rating per NFPA 13 and UL/FM approvals.
   2. Tyco Model B, FRB, Globe Model GL-QR, GL-SR, or approved equal

D. Sidewall applications:
   1. Horizontal sidewall type with brass finishes and chrome escutcheon.
   2. Unfinished areas and recessed with chrome plated escutcheon. Provide temperature rating per NFPA 13 and UL/FM approvals.
   3. Tyco Model B, FRB, Globe Model GL-QR/SW, GL-SR/SW, or approved equal.

E. Suspended ceilings:
   1. Adjustable drop-down deflector type concealed heads with manufacturer painted white cover plate with glass bulb fusible link. Provide temperature rating per NFPA 13 and UL/FM approvals.
   2. Color of plate, selected by Architect
   3. Tyco Series RFII; Series ELOC, Globe Concealed Models GL-QR/INCH, GL-SW/INCH and GL-INCH/ECLH or approved equal.

F. Dry sprinklers heads at freezers and coolers
   1. Tyco Model DS-1, DS-2, or approved equal.

G. Sprinklers subject to mechanical injury shall be protected with fusible solder type sprinklers and listed heavy duty bolt on guards. Bulb type sprinklers will not be acceptable for these locations.
   1. Storage rooms with exposed structure.
   2. Gymnasiums.
   3. Mechanical and Electrical rooms.
   4. Below exposed stairs.
   5. Exposed structure areas.

H. Systems serving walk-n freezers shall utilize Tyco Model DS-1 or DS-C dry pendent sprinklers. A Model DSB-1 dry sprinkler boot shall be utilized in conjunction with the dry sprinkler to eliminate the requirement for insulation and to stop potential air interchange. Length of dry pendent shall be determined by manufacturer’s

recommendation with respect to freezer ambient temperatures expected.

## 2.4 INSPECTOR'S TEST CONNECTION

A. Provide inspector's test connection as required by NFPA 13.
   1. Ductile iron module housing with combination sight glass, orifice, and bonnet assembly
   2. UL listed
   3. Victaulic No. 718
   4. Globe Model UTD
   5. Tyco, or approved equal

## 2.5 TAMPER SWITCH / SUPERVISORY SWITCH

A. Tamper switch on each valve
   1. Controlling or shutting off sprinkler system or any portion thereof.
   2. Tamper switch with either one single pole, double throw switch or two single pole, double throw switches as required.
   3. Switch shall be compatible with installed valve for standard mounting.
   4. Potter-Roemer Fig. 6220, 6221, 6222, 6223 or approved equal.

## 2.6 FLOW SWITCH

A. Vane type flow switch.
   1. Self-contained pneumatic, adjustable retard.
   2. Two, single pole, double throw switches.
   3. Red enamel tamper proof switch housing with flow paddle.
   4. Potter Roemer Model No. 6200 or approved equal.

## 2.7 FLOORS AND CEILING PLATES

A. Provide chrome-plated floor and ceiling plates around pipes exposed to view when passing through walls, floors, partitions, or ceilings in finished areas; size plates to fit pipe or insulation and lock in place.

## 2.8 DOMESTIC MANUFACTURE

A. All piping material, pipe and pipe fittings shall be manufactured in the United States of America.

## 2.9 DRY PIPE SYSTEM

A. General: Provide a UL listed, and FM approved dry pipe system at the dock area. System shall consist of a dry pipe valve, air compressor, fusible link type sprinkler heads and all associated trim and piping for a complete operating system.

B. Dry Pipe Valve: Rated for a working pressure of 175 psi, factory hydrostatic tested at

350 psi, supplied with all gauges, valves, strainer, electrical alarm switch, ball drip valve, and drip cup assembly, manufactured by Victaulic Model 756, Globe Model RCW.

C. Air Compressor: Oilless, permanently lubricated, pipe mounted, direct drive, complete with safety relief valve manufactured by Reliable Model A or approved equal. Size of air compressor is determined by volume of dry pipe system. Coordinate power requirement with electrical contractor. Coordinate all wiring required with Fire Alarm System.

D. If the dry pipe system is not used in conjunction with a wet pipe system containing the necessary check valves or backflow preventer, a check valve shall be installed in the dry pipe system at the connection to the water supply.

E. If the dry pipe system is not used in conjunction with a wet pipe system containing a control valve such as a post indicator (PIV) or outside screw & yoke valve (OS&Y), a PIV or OS&Y shall be installed in the system.

F. The dry pipe valve and pipe to the wet supply shall be protected from freezing.

G. Provide an automatic or manual compressed air system capable of restoring normal air pressure to a system in 30 minutes or less.

H. Provide an accelerator when system capacity exceeds 500 gallons.

I. Provide a water motor alarm or electric pressure switch.

J. Provide dry pipe valve trim and pressure gauges.

K. Dry pipe system shall be hydraulically calculated for the hazard being protected.

L. Provide dry pendent type sprinkler heads only when the piping and sprinklers are not in a heated area.

M. Provide a test drain valve sized per NFPA. An inspector’s test shall be provided at each system.

N. Slope all piping toward a drain per NFPA 13. A drain shall be provided at all low points.

O. The following accessories shall be provided where required:
   1. Victaulic Series 756.
   2. Viking Model E dry pipe valve with conventional trim.
   3. Viking Model D-1 accelerators.
   4. Globe Model RCW dry pipe valve with conventional trim package, and Model C Accelerator.

**2.10 GASKETS**

A. Use 1/16-inch-thick preformed synthetic rubber bonded.

## 2.11 COUPLINGS

A. Use listed rolled grooved mechanical couplings to engage and lock grooved, or shouldered pipe ends and to allow for some angular deflection, contraction, and expansion. Coupling consists of ductile iron housing, c-shaped composition sealing gasket and steel bolts. Gasket Material for dry pipe systems shall be silicone and listed for dry pipe service.

## 2.12 VALVES

A. Use valves suitable for 175 psig WOG.

B. Valves to be UL listed and FM approved.

C. Valve Connections:
1. Provide valves suitable to connect adjoining piping as specified for pipe joints. Use full line size valves unless noted otherwise.
2. Screwed ends for pipe sizes 2 inches and smaller.
3. Flanged ends for pipe sizes 2-1/2 inches and larger.
4. Solder or screw to solder adapters for copper tubing.
5. Use grooved body valves with mechanical grooved jointed piping.

D. Gate Valves:
1. Up to 2 inches, bronze, outside screw and yoke, rising stem, solid wedge, screwed ends, manufactured by: Mueller, or approved equal.
2. Over 2 inches, iron body, bronze trim, outside screw and yoke, rising stem, solid wedge, flanged ends; manufactured by Mueller, or approved equal.

E. Check Valves:
1. Up to 2-inch, bronze, regrind bronze swing disk, solder, or screwed ends; 200 WOG, manufactured by Mueller, or approved equal.
2. Over 2-inch, iron body bronze trim, swing disk, regrind – renew bronze disk and seat, flanged ends; 200 WOG, manufactured by Mueller, Globe Model RCV, or approved equal.

F. Butterfly Valve: Lug body style, bubble-tight shutoff, cast iron body, ASTM B 148 bronze disk, with integral tamper switch, manufactured by Anvil Model No. 8000 FP, or approved equal.

G. Freestanding Indicating Post: Install adjustable indicating post and valve outside building where shown on Civil drawings, consisting of UL/FM, non-rising stem gate valve and indicating post. Gate valve shall be iron body, non-rising stem, bronze mounted. Indicator flange, 175-psi non-shock rating, flanged end. Indicator shall be UL/FM approved cast iron body, Plexiglas window and 18-inch adjustment span with handle and tamper switch wired to main fire alarm control panel, manufactured by Mueller,

Valve No. A-2052, Indicating Post No. A20800, or approved equal.

H. Wall post-adjustable indicating valve: Outside building at water entry location into building, consisting of UL/FM, non-rising stem gate valve and indicator. Gate valve shall be iron body, non-rising stem, bronze mounted. Indicator flange, 175-psi non-shock rating, flanged end. Indicator shall be UL/FM approved cast iron body, Plexiglas window and 18-inch adjustment span with handle and tamper switch wired to main fire alarm control panel, manufactured by Mueller, Valve No. A-2052, Indicating Post No. A20800, or approved equal.

## 2.13 ELECTRIC ALARM BELL

A. 10-inch round red enamel steel bell with electrically operated vibrating outdoor alarm bell, UL listed, red enamel steel, manufactured by Simplex, or approved equal.

## 2.14 GAUGES

A. Gauges shall be bourdon tube type with minimum 4-1/2-inch dial and die cast aluminum case with screwed ring and black enamel finish. The movement shall be all stainless steel with Grade A phosphor bronze bourdon tube, brazed at socket and tip. The accuracy of the gauge shall be within one-half of one percent of the scale range. The pointer shall be the micrometer adjustment type recalibrated from the front. Pressure and compound gauges shall have suitable scale ranges and graduations. Suitable for temperatures up to 120 degrees F.

B. Gauges shall have ¼ inch connections and be mounted with combination stop / snubber needle valve with suitable pressure rating. Scale ranges: 0-200 psi.

C. Gauge range shall be such that system normal operating pressure falls with 25 percent and 75 percent of the full-scale range.

D. Pressure scale graduations shall read in psig. Figure intervals shall be in – 20 psig increments, with minor divisions in 2 psig increments.

E. The accuracy of the gauge shall be at least 0.5 percent of the scale range. Gauge shall be made in accordance with ASME B40.1 accuracy grade 2A.

F. Manufactured by:
1. Trerice Model No. 4500 Series
2. Ashcroft
3. Marsh
4. Weksler

## 2.15 SPARE SPRINKLER HEAD BOX

A. Provide baked enamel steel box to store 36 sprinkler heads (Minimum of 3 of each type used) for emergency replacement. Provide sprinkler wrench.

## 2.16 ALARM CHECK VALVE

A. Provide UL listed check valve.
   1. Variable for City Supplied systems pressure trim set.
   2. Constant for Fire Pump Systems pressure trim set.
   3. Tyco AV-1, Globe Model H, or approved equal.

## 2.17 WATER MOTOR ALARM

A. Provide a red enamel motor alarm for installation on exterior wall.
   1. Tyco Model WMA-1, Globe Model WM, or approved equal.

## 2.18 SIAMESE FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTION

A. Siamese Wall mounted chrome-plated Siamese. Include caps, sillcock, chain, and a plate lettered AUTO-SPKR.
   1. Provide a 4" X 2-1/2" x2-1/2".
   2. Potter-Roemer #5751

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 DESIGN

A. Design, spacing of sprinkler heads and selection sizes shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 13 for the indicated occupancy.

B. Uniform discharge density design shall be based on hydraulic calculations using the method outlined in NFPA 13. Density of discharge from sprinkler heads shall conform to NFPA 13.

C. Friction losses in pipe will be based on a value of “C” = 120 in the Hazen and Williams formula.

D. Design and install the system so that no part will interfere with doors, windows, heating, mechanical, lighting, or electrical equipment. Do not locate sprinkler heads closer than 3 feet to lighting fixtures or other obstructions.

## 3.2 LOCATION

A. Heads shown, if indicated on reflected ceiling plans, are an integral part of the ceiling design. Where heads are not shown or indicated, locate them in the exact center of acoustical ceiling tile unless noted otherwise. In rooms with monolithic plaster or gypsum drywall ceilings, locate the sprinkler heads symmetrically arranged with respect to both axes of the room. Locate sprinkler heads in relation to specialty ceiling elements such as slats, ribs, panels, grids, etc., if not shown on the drawings. Generally, locate heads in the exact center of, or spaced between, such elements. Center heads in

corridors.

B. Locate heads as may be required for coordinated ceiling pattern, even through number of heads exceed minimum code requirements.

C. Sprinkler heads located in utility or mechanical rooms, penthouses, service corridors, or other such spaces not subject to public view need not be centered in ceiling patterns and may use a straight drop from branch line.

D. Install a water curtain sprinkler system along glazing to create a 1-hour rating, as outlined in NFPA 13. Refer to plans for locations. Water demand for water curtain shall be added to the ceiling sprinkler water demand at the point of connection, per NFPA 13. Sprinkler heads shall be spaced at 6'-0" on center, minimum 6 inches and maximum 12 inches from glazing.

E. Where glazing shall be installed in 2-hour fire rated assemblies, the Tyco Window sprinkler shall be utilized as outlined in the ICC Legacy report equivalency requirements. Any glazing requiring fire exposure protection shall also utilize the Tyco window sprinklers.

## 3.3 PREPARATION

A. Ream pipes and tubes, clean off scale, rust, oxide, and dirt, inside and outside, before assembly. Remove welding slag or other foreign material from piping.

B. Pipe beveled each end, per approved procedures.

C. Hammer clean and flush out piping after welding to remove scale, welding slag and other debris.

## 3.4 CONNECTION

A. Make screwed joints with square, clean full cut standard taper pipe threads. Ream after cutting and threading. Red lead and linseed oil or other approved non-toxic joint compound applied to male threads only.

B. Nipples: Shoulder type; extra heavy where less than 1-1/2 inch is unthreaded.

C. Clamp cast iron water pipe at fittings with ¾ inch rods and properly anchor and support.

D. Use grooved mechanical couplings and mechanical fasteners only in accessible locations.

## 3.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate the installation schedule for this work with the construction schedule for the Work to ensure orderly progress with minimum delay.

B. Coordinate interface of fire sprinkler system with the work of other trades to ensure proper and adequate provision for the installation and connection of this system.

C. Coordinate location and quantity of Siamese connections required for fire department connection with Architect and local fire officials.

## 3.6 SURFACE CONDITIONS

A. Before starting each stage of the fire sprinkler systems installation, inspect the installed work of other trades and determine that work is complete enough to allow installation to begin. Ensure that work of other trades has been installed in a manner to permit work of this Section in accordance with approved design.

## 3.7 INSTALLATION

A. Run piping concealed above furred ceilings and in joists to minimize obstructions. Expose only heads.

B. Protect sprinkler heads against mechanical injury with heavy duty bolt-on guards.

C. Locate system drains and inspector's test connections in utility rooms, mechanical rooms or other readily accessible areas not requiring access through ceiling. Coordinate sprinkler system drain flow rates with plumbing system drainage capacities.

D. Where low points or drains occur above ceilings or in otherwise finished spaces, furnish drain valve with brass cap and chain.

E. Locate outside alarms on wall of building and coordinate with Architect.

F. Fire pump and all accessories shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 20 and the local Fire Marshall and/or all other authorities having jurisdiction.

G. Provide on interior wall near sprinkler valve, cabinet containing extra sprinkler heads of each type and wrench suitable for each head type.

H. Provide a minimum 18-inch radius swing joint for each drop to sprinkler heads located in ceilings.

I. Provide Easy-Flex or Flexhead Industries sprinkler hose fittings for each sprinkler head installation for hydraulically designed wet, pre-action, deluge, or dry pipe sprinkler connections per NFPA 13. Allow a 3" minimum bend radius per UL.

J. Install pipe markers to identify fire protection.

K. Provide shield or deflector for sprinklers or equipment where electrical switchgear, switchboards and motor control centers are in sprinkler protected spaces.

L. Install fire 2-1/2-inch department valve, maximum 5 feet above floor, complying with NFPA 14.

M. During construction, make one standpipe outlet available on each floor without delay, for fire department use.

N. Provide 3-way standpipe outlets above roof.

O. Provide pressure gauges at the top of each standpipe as detailed on the drawings.

P. Provide drain for each standpipe.

Q. Install valves with stems upright or horizontal, not inverted.

R. Sprinkler heads shall be installed above and below ductwork over 48 inches wide, in exposed areas, per NFPA 13.

S. Install the complete fire sprinkler system in accordance with the approved shop drawings.

T. Perform piping installation in accordance with the provisions of the specifications, including furnishing of required sleeves for fire sprinkler system pipes passing through rated walls, floors, and other parts of the building. Provide scheduled 40 galvanized pipe sleeve for concrete or CMU penetrations. Furnish size required for fireproofing and or insulation. Furnish and install split wall plates and chrome plated escutcheons for exposed fire sprinkler system pipes. Where pipes pass through concrete floors, furnish, and install wrought iron or steel pipe sleeves made flush with the ceiling below and extending 2" above the finished floor.

U. Do not cut or make holes in any part of the building except where shown on the approved shop drawings.

V. Furnish and install, next to the sprinkler riser main, a print sheet protected by glass or a transparent plastic cover, giving brief instructions regarding control, emergency procedure, and other data required by NFPA #13. For hydraulically designed sprinkler systems, a placard is to be permanently attached to the riser indicating the location, and the basis of design (discharge density and system demand).

W. Do not install exposed piping below structure in public area.

X. Provide heat tracing and insulation on wet piping systems exposed to freezing when not installed in a heated space or installed by other acceptable methods of maintaining the piping from freezing. Installation of heat tracing and insulation shall be in accordance with the latest edition of NFPA 13 and the local code authorities. Coordinate electrical requirements with Division 26.

## 3.8 SECURING AND SUPPORTING

A. Support piping to maintain line and grade, with provision for expansion and contraction. Use approved adjustable ring type or trapeze-type hangers connected to structural members of the building. Single pipe runs to be supported by approved adjustable ring type hangers. Multiple pipe runs to be supported by approved trapeze type hangers. Do not support piping from other piping or structural joist bridging.

B. Provide supports both sides of elbows for pipe 6" and larger.

C. Support vertical risers with steel strap pipe clamps of approved design and size, supported at each floor. Support piping assemblies in chases so they are rigid and self-supported before the chase is closed.

D. Support spacing: As recommended by the project structural engineer and support manufacturer, but not more than listed below. Not to exceed spacing requirements of smallest pipe.

| Pipe Size | Steel Max. Support Spacing, Feet | Minimum Rod Diameter, Inches |
|---|---|---|
| 1" & smaller | 6 | 3/8 |
| 1-1/4" & 1-1/2" | 8 | 3/8 |
| 2" | 10 | 3/8 |
| 3" | 10 | 1/2 |
| 4" & 5" | 10 | 5/8 |
| 6" and above | 10 | 3/4 |

## 3.9 PIPE SUPPORTS

A. Provide P1001 or P 5000 Unistrut metal framing members and appurtenances for pipe support. Hot-dip galvanize members and appurtenances when located outside. Sagging of pipes or supports is not acceptable.

B. Adjustable ring type hangers shall be used for single pipe supports; Erico Model 115 NFPA UL/FM. When oversized clevis is used, a nipple shall be placed over the clevis bolt as a spacer to assure that the lower U-strap will not move in on the bolt. All parts shall be zinc plated carbon steel, or galvanized.

## 3.10 PIPE SLEEVES

A. Sleeves through masonry and concrete construction:
   1. Fabricate sleeves of Schedule 40 galvanized steel pipe.
   2. Size sleeve large enough to allow for movement due to expansion and to provide continuous insulation.

B. Sleeves through gypsum wall construction.
   1. Fabricate sleeves of 16-gauge galvanized sheet metal.

C. Sleeves through elevated slab construction.
   1. Fabricate sleeves of Schedule 40 galvanized steel pipe with welded center flange in floor.

D. Extend each sleeve through the floor or wall. Cut the sleeve flush with each wall surface. Sleeves through floors shall extend 2” above floor lines for waterproofing purposes. Slab on grade floors shall not be sleeved except where penetrating waterproofing membrane or insect control is required.

E. Caulk sleeves water and airtight. Seal annular space between pipes and sleeves with mastic compound to make the space water and airtight.

F. For sleeves below grades in outside walls, provide Thunderline Link-Seal or Advance Product and System Interlynx, with 316 stainless steel nuts and bolts, with cast iron pressure plate.

G. Provide chrome plated escutcheon plates on pipes passing through walls, floors or ceilings exposed to view. At exterior walls, stainless steel sheet metal is to be used.

H. For sleeves through fire and smoke rated walls, seal with a UL through-penetration firestop, rated to maintain the integrity of the time rated construction. Install in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Comply with UL and NFPA standards for the installation of firestops. Refer to Architectural drawings for all fire and smoke rated partitions, walls, floors, etc.

## 3.11 CLEANING OF PIPING SYSTEMS

A. General cleaning of piping systems. Purge pipe of construction debris and contamination before placing the systems in service. Provide and install temporary connections as required to clean, purge, and circulate.

## 3.12 FLUSHING AND TESTING

A. Testing and flushing of installation of sprinkler system shall be in accordance with NFPA 13, and NFPA 25.

B. Flush sprinkler piping in accordance with NFPA 13. Additionally, flush all alarm valves, and all main piping up to valve.

C. In addition to NFPA 13 required tests, provide flow switch test and tamper switch test for each device, and verify alarm valve operation.

D. All tests shall be witnessed by Architect / Engineer. Contractor shall notify Architect / Engineer 7 working days in advance.

## 3.13 EXCAVATING, TRENCHING, AND BACKFILLING

A. Perform excavation, trenching, and backfilling for this portion of the work in accordance with the specifications.

## 3.14 PIPE MARKERS

A. Identify interior exposed piping and piping in accessible chases or plenums with Opti-Code Brady Pressure Sensitive Adhesive Pipe Markers, consisting of pipe marker and direction of flow arrow tape. Clean pipe prior to installation. Background colors of markers, arrows, and tape for each type of system shall be the same. Meet ANSI/OSHA standards and clearly identify each system. Provide minimum 2-1/4-inch letters through 4-inch pipe and 4-inch letters for 5-inch pipe and larger.

B. Identify exterior and mechanical room piping with Snap Around pipe markers through 4-inch pipe and Strap Around markers 5-inch pipe and larger. Pipe markers consisting of pipe marker and direction of flow arrow tape; background colors of markers, arrows, and type for each type of system shall be the same. Meet ANSI / OSHA standards and clearly identify each system. Provide minimum 2-1/4-inch letters through 4-inch pipe and 4-inch letters for 5-inch pipe and larger.

C. Install identification in the following locations:
   1. Both sides of penetrations through walls, floors, and ceilings.
   2. Close to valves or flanges.
   3. Intervals on straight pipe runs not to exceed 50 feet
   4. Apply marker where view is obstructed.

D. Pipe markers shall meet or exceed the specifications of the ASME A13.1 “Scheme for Identification of Piping Systems”.

## 3.15 TESTING AND ACCEPTANCE

A. Prior to connecting to the overhead sprinkler piping, flush the underground main. Secure required approvals of the flushing operations.

B. Upon completion of the fire sprinkler system installation, test and retest the complete installation and make corrections as necessary to obtain acceptance by the Fire Marshall and/or any other authority having jurisdiction. Furnish test equipment and personnel required.

## 3.16 TRAINING

A. At a time mutually agreed upon, provide 4 hours of instruction to the Owner’s designated personnel on the operation and maintenance of the automatic sprinkler system and associated equipment. Owner’s Operation and Maintenance Manual prepared for this project shall be used during the instruction.

**END OF SECTION 21 10 00**

# SECTION 22 01 00 - PLUMBING OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Compilation product data and related information appropriate for Owner's operation and maintenance of products furnished under Contract. Prepare operating and maintenance data as specified.

B. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation and maintenance of equipment and systems.

C. Submit three copies of complete manual in final form.

### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Thirty (30) days after the Contractor has received the final scheduled identified submittals bearing the Architect/Engineer's stamp of acceptance (including resubmittals), submit for review one copy of the first draft of the Operating and Maintenance Manual. This copy shall contain as a minimum:

1. Table of Contents for each element.
2. Contractor information.
3. All submittals, coordination drawings and product data, reviewed by the Architect / Engineer; bearing the Architect / Engineer's stamp of acceptance. (When submittals are returned from Engineer "Correct as Noted", corrected inserts shall be included.)
4. All parts and maintenance manuals for items of equipment.
5. Warranties (without starting dates)
6. Certifications that have been completed. Submit forms and outlines of certifications that have not been completed.
7. Operating and maintenance procedures.
8. Form of Owner's Training Program Syllabus (including times and dates).
9. Control operations/equipment wiring diagrams.
10. Other required operating and maintenance information that are complete.

B. Copy will be returned to the Contractor within 15 days with comments for corrections.

C. Submit completed manuals in final electronic form to the Architect / Engineer one day after substantial completion, and prior to Owner's instructions. Include all specified data, test and balance reports, drawings, dated warranties, certificates, reports, along with other materials and information.

D. The Architect/Engineer will review the manuals for completeness within fifteen (15) days.

E. The Contractor shall be notified of any missing or omitted materials. The Manuals shall be reworked by the Contractor, as required, in the office of the Architect / Engineer. The manuals will not be retransmitted.

F. Complete electronic manuals will be delivered to the Owner.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 BINDERS**

A. Commercial quality black three-ring binders with clear overlay plastic covers.

B. Minimum ring size: 1 inch; Maximum ring size: 3 inches.

C. When multiple binders are used, correlate the data into related groupings.

D. Label contents on spine and face of binder with full size insert. Label under plastic cover.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

A. Form for Manuals:
   1. Prepare data in form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's personnel.
   2. Format:
      a. Size: 8-1/2 inch x 11 inch.
      b. Text: Manufacturer's printed data or neatly typewritten.
   3. Drawings:
      a. Provide reinforced punched binder tab and bind in text.
      b. Fold larger drawings to size of text pages.
   4. Provide flyleaf indexed tabs for each separate product or each piece of operating equipment.
   5. Cover: Identify each volume with typed or printed title "Operating and Maintenance Instructions". List:
      a. Title of Project
      b. Identity of separate structures as applicable.
      c. Identity of general subject matter covered in the manual.
   6. Binder as specified.

B. Content of Manual:
   1. Neatly typewritten Table of Contents for each volume arranged in systematic order as outlined in the specifications.
      a. Contractor, name of responsible principal, address and telephone number.
      b. A list of each product required to be included, indexed to content of the volume.
      c. List with each product, name, address and telephone number of:
         1) Subcontractor or installer.
         2) Maintenance contractor as appropriate.
         3) Identify area of responsibility of each.
         4) Local source of supply for parts and replacement.

d. Identify each product by product name and other identifying symbols as set forth in Contract Documents.

2. Product Data:
   a. Include those sheets pertinent to the specific product.
   b. Annotate each sheet to:
      1) Identify specific product or part installed.
      2) Identify data applicable to installation.
      3) Delete references to inapplicable information. (All options not supplied with equipment shall be marked out indicated in some manner.

3. Drawings:
   a. Supplement product data with drawings as necessary to illustrate:
      1) Relations of component parts of equipment and systems.
      2) Control and flow diagrams.
   b. Coordinate drawings with information in Project Record Documents to assure correct illustration of completed installation.
   c. Do not use Project Record Documents as maintenance drawings.

4. Written text, as required to supplement product data for the particular installation:
   a. Organize in consistent format under separate headings for different procedures.
   b. Provide logical sequence of instructions for each procedure.

5. Copy of each warranty, bond and service contract issued.
   a. Provide information sheet for Owner's personnel, giving:
      1) Proper procedures in event of failure.
      2) Instances that might affect validity of warranties or bonds.

6. Shop drawings, coordination drawings and product data as specified.

C. Sections for Equipment and Systems.

1. Content for each unit of equipment and system as appropriate:
   a. Description of unit and component parts.
      1) Function, normal operating characteristics, and limiting conditions.
      2) Performance curves, engineering data and tests.
      3) Complete nomenclature and commercial number of replaceable parts.
   b. Operating procedures:
      1) Start up, break-in, routine and normal operating instructions.
      2) Regulation, control, stopping, shut down and emergency instructions.
      3) Summer and winter operating instructions.
      4) Special operating instructions.
   c. Maintenance procedures:
      1) Routine operations
      2) Guide to trouble-shooting.
      3) Disassembly, repair and reassembly.
      4) Alignment, adjusting and checking.
      5) Routine service based on operating hours.
   d. Servicing and lubrication schedule. List of lubricants required.

e. Manufacturer's printed operating and maintenance instructions.
f. Description of sequence of operation by control manufacturer.
g. Original manufacturer's parts list, illustrations, assembly drawings and diagrams required for maintenance.
    1) Predicted life of part subject to wear.
    2) Items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
h. As installed control diagrams by controls manufacturer.
i. Complete equipment internal wiring diagrams.
j. Each Contractor's coordination drawings.
k. As installed color coded piping diagrams.
l. Charts of valve tag number, with location and function of each valve.
m. List of original manufacturer's spare parts and recommended quantities to be maintained in storage.
n. Other data as required under pertinent sections of the specifications.

2. Prepare and include additional data when the need for such data becomes apparent during instruction of Owner's personnel.
3. Additional requirements for operating and maintenance data as outlined in respective sections of specifications.
4. Provide complete information for products specified in Division 22.
5. Provide certificates of compliance as specified in each related section.
6. Provide start up reports as specified in each related section.
7. Provide signed receipts for spare parts and material.
8. Provide training report and certificates.
9. Provide backflow preventer certified test reports.
10. Provide gas piping pressure test reports.

**END OF SECTION 22 01 00**

# SECTION 22 05 00 - PLUMBING GENERAL PROVISIONS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Except as modified in this Section, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, applicable provisions of the General Requirements, and other provisions and requirements of the contract documents apply to work of Division 22 Plumbing.

B. Applicable provisions of this section apply to all sections of Division 22, Plumbing.

### 1.2 CODE REQUIREMENTS AND FEES

A. Perform work in accordance with applicable statutes, ordinances, codes and regulations of governmental authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Plumbing work shall comply with applicable inspection services:
   1. Underwriters Laboratories
   2. National Fire Protection Association
   3. State Health Department
   4. Local Municipal Building Inspection Department
   5. Texas Department of Licensing & Regulations (TDLR)
   6. Texas Accessibility Standards (TAS Based on ADA)

C. Resolve any code violations discovered in contract documents with the Engineer prior to award of the contract. After Contract award, any correction or additions necessary for compliance with applicable codes shall be made at no additional cost to the Owner.

D. This Contractor shall be responsible for being aware of and complying with asbestos NESHAP regulations, as well as all other applicable codes, laws and regulations.

E. Obtain all permits required.

### 1.3 CONTRACTOR'S QUALIFICATIONS

A. An approved contractor for the work under this division shall be:
   1. A licensed specialist in this field and have the personnel, experience, training, skill, and organization to provide a practical working system
   2. Able to furnish evidence of having contracted for and installed not less than three systems of comparable size and type that has served their Owners satisfactorily for not less than three years.

### 1.4 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARDS

A. Materials which are specified by reference to Federal Specifications; ASTM, ASME, ANSI, or AWWA Specifications; Federal Standards; or other standard specifications must comply

with latest editions, revisions, amendments or supplements in effect on date bids are received. Requirements in reference specifications and standards are minimum for all equipment, material, and work. In instances where specified capacities, size, or other features of equipment, devices, or materials exceed these minimums, meet specified capacities.

## 1.5 CONTRACT DRAWINGS

A. Contract drawings are diagrammatic only and do not give fully dimensioned locations of various elements of work. Determine exact locations from field measurements.

## 1.6 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

A. Maintain at the job site a separate set of white prints (blue line or black line) of the contract drawings for the sole purpose of recording the "as-built" changes and diagrams of those portions of work in which actual construction is at variance with the contract drawings. Mark the drawings with a colored pencil. Prepare, as the work progresses and upon completion of work, reproducible drawings clearly indicating locations of various lines, valves, ductwork, traps, equipment, and other pertinent items, as installed. Include flow-line elevation of sewer lines. Record existing and new underground and under slab piping with dimensioned locations and elevations of such piping.

B. At the conclusion of project, obtain without cost to the Owner, erasable mylars of the original drawings and transfer as-built changes to these. Prior to transmittal of corrected drawings, obtain three sets of blue-line prints of each drawing, regardless of whether corrections were necessary and include in the transmittal (two sets are for the Owner's use and one set is for the Architect / Engineer's records). Delivery of these as-built prints and reproducibles is a condition of final acceptance. Provide record drawings on one set each (reproducible Dayrex mylar film positives) and AutoCad 2012 / Revit CAD files on disk (CD Rom).

C. As-Built drawings should indicate the following information as a minimum:
   1. Indicate all addendum changes to documents.
   2. Remove Engineer’s seal, name, address and logo from drawings.
   3. Mark documents RECORD DRAWINGS.
   4. Clearly indicate: DOCUMENT PRODUCED BY
   5. Indicate all changes to construction during construction. Indicate actual routing of all piping, ductwork, etc. that were deviated from construction drawings.
   6. Indicate exact location of all underground plumbing and flow line elevation.
   7. Indicate exact location of all underground plumbing piping and elevation.
   8. Indicate exact location of all underground electrical raceways and elevations.
   9. Correct schedules to reflect (actual) equipment furnished and manufacturer.
   10. During the execution of work, maintain a complete set of drawings and specifications upon which all locations of equipment, ductwork, piping, devices, and all deviations and changes from the construction documents in the work shall be recorded.
   11. Location and size of all ductwork and mechanical piping above ceiling including

exact location of isolation of domestic and plumbing valves.

12. Exact location of all electrical equipment in and outside of the building.
13. Fire Protection System documents revised to indicate exact location of all sprinkler heads and zone valves.
14. Exact location of all roof mounted equipment, wall, roof and floor penetrations.
15. Cloud all changes.

## 1.7 SPACE REQUIREMENTS

A. Consider space limitations imposed by contiguous work in selection and location of equipment and material. Do not provide equipment or material that is not suitable in this respect.

## 1.8 RELATION WITH OTHER TRADES

A. Carefully study all matters and conditions concerning the project. Submit notification of conflict in ample time to prevent unwarranted changes in any work. Review other Divisions of these specifications to determine their requirements.

B. Because of the complicated relationship of this work to the total project, conscientiously study the relation and cooperate as necessary to accomplish the full intent of the documents.

C. Provide sleeves and inserts in forms as required for the work. Stub up and protect open ends of pipe before any concrete is placed. Furnish sizes of required equipment pads. Furnish and locate bolts and fittings required to be cast in them.

D. Locate and size openings required for installation of work specified in this Division in sufficient time to prevent delay in the work.

E. Refer to other Divisions of the specifications for the scope of required connections to equipment furnished under that Division. Determine from the Contractor for the various trades, the Owner, and by direction from the Architect / Engineer, the exact location of all items.

## 1.9 CONCEALED AND EXPOSED WORK

A. When the word "concealed" is used in connection with insulating, painting, piping, ducts and the like, the work is understood to mean hidden from sight as in chases, furred spaces or above ceilings. "Exposed" is understood to mean open to view.

## 1.10 GUARANTEE

A. Guarantee work for one year from the date of substantial completion of the project. During that period make good any faults or imperfections that may arise due to defects or omissions in material, equipment or workmanship. At the Owner's option, replacement of failed parts or equipment shall be provided.

## 1.11 MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT

A. Furnish new and unused materials and equipment meeting the requirements of the paragraph specifying acceptable manufacturers. Where two or more units of the same type or class of equipment are required, provide units of a single manufacturer.

## 1.12 NOISE AND VIBRATION

A. Select equipment to operate with minimum noise and vibration. If objectionable noise or vibration is produced or transmitted to or through the building structure by equipment, piping, ducts or other parts of work, rectify such conditions at no additional cost. If the item of equipment is judged to produce objectionable noise or vibration, demonstrate at no additional cost that equipment performs within designated limits on a vibration chart.

## 1.13 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers names and catalog number specified under sections of Division 22 are used to establish standards of design, performance, quality and serviceability and not to limit competition. Equipment of similar design, equal to that specified, manufactured by a named manufacturer will be acceptable on approval. A request for prior approval of equipment not listed must be submitted ten (10) days before bid due date. Submit complete design and performance data to the Engineer.

## 1.14 OPERATING TESTS

A. After all plumbing systems have been completed and put into operation, subject each system to an operating test under design conditions to ensure proper sequencing and operation throughout the range of operation. Tests shall be made in the presence of the Architect / Engineer. Make adjustments as required to ensure proper functioning of all systems. Special tests on individual systems are specified under individual sections. Submit three copies of all certifications and test reports adequately in advance of completion of the work to allow for remedial action as required to correct deficiencies discovered in equipment and systems.

## 1.15 WARRANTIES

A. Submit three copies of all warranties and guarantees for systems, equipment, devices and materials. These shall be included in the Operating and Maintenance Manuals.

## 1.16 BUILDING CONSTRUCTION

A. It shall be the responsibility of each sub-contractor to consult the Architectural and Engineering drawings, details, and specifications and thoroughly familiarize himself with the project and all job related requirements. Each subcontractor shall cooperate with the General Contractor to verify that all piping and other items are placed in the walls, furred spaces, chases, etc., so there will be no delays in the job.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS – NOT USED**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 OPENINGS**

A. Framed, cast or masonry openings for ductwork, equipment or piping are specified under other divisions. Drawings and layout work for exact size and location of all openings are included under this division.

**3.2 HOUSEKEEPING PADS**

A. Provide equipment housekeeping pads under all floor mounted and ground mounted plumbing equipment, and as shown on the drawings.

B. Concrete work as specified in Division 3.

C. Concrete pads:
   1. 4 inch high, rounded edges, minimum 2500 psi unless otherwise indicated on the drawings
   2. Chamfer strips at edges and corner of forms.
   3. Smooth steel trowel finish.
   4. Doweled to existing slab

D. Install concrete curbs around multiple pipe penetrations.

**3.3 VANDAL RESISTANT DEVICES**

A. Provide a handle for each loose keyed operated valve and hose bibb on the project.

B. Where vandal resistant screws or bolts are employed on the project, deliver to the Owner two suitable tools for use with each type of fastener used.

C. Proof of delivery of these items to the Owner shall be included in the Operating and Maintenance Manuals.

**3.4 INSTRUCTION OF OWNER'S PERSONNEL**

A. Prior to final inspection, conduct an on-site training program to instruct the Owner's operating personnel in the operation and maintenance of the plumbing systems.
   1. Provide the training during the Owner's regular working day.
   2. The Instructors shall each be experienced in their phase of operation and maintenance of building plumbing systems and with the project.

B. Time to be allocated for instructions.
   1. Minimum of 8 hours dedicated instructor time.

2. 4 hours on each of 2 days.

C. Before proceeding with the on-site training program, submit the program syllabus; proposed time and dates; and other pertinent information for review and approval.
1. One copy to the Owner.
2. One copy to the Architect / Engineer.

D. The Owner will provide a list of personnel to receive instructions, and will coordinate their attendance at the agreed upon times.

E. Use the operation and maintenance manuals as the basis of instruction. Review contents of manual with personnel in detail to explain all aspects of operation and maintenance.

F. Demonstrate start-up, operation, control, adjustment, trouble-shooting, servicing, maintenance, and shut down of each item of equipment.

G. Demonstrate equipment functions (both individually and as part of the total integrated system).

H. Prepare and insert additional data in the operating and maintenance manuals when the need for additional data becomes apparent during instructions.

I. Submit a report within one week after completion of the training program that instructions have been satisfactorily completed. Give time and date of each demonstration and hours devoted to the demonstration, with a list of people present.

J. At the conclusion of the on-site training program, have the person designated by the Owner sign a certificate to certify that he/she has a proper understanding of the system, that the demonstrations and instructions have been satisfactorily completed, and the scope and content of the operating and maintenance manuals used for the training program are satisfactory.

K. Provide a copy of the report and the certificate in an appropriately tabbed section of each Operating and Maintenance Manual.

## 3.5 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

A. Provide a laminated engraved plastic nameplate on each piece of equipment and starter.
1. Designation approved by Architect / Engineer.
2. Equipment includes, but is not limited to, water heaters, pumps, boilers and utility controllers.
3. Submit schedule of equipment to be included and designations.

B. Provide nameplates with ½ inch high letters and fastened with epoxy or screws.

## 3.6 OBSTRUCTIONS

A. The drawings indicate certain information pertaining to surface and subsurface obstructions which has been taken from available drawings. Such information is not guaranteed, however, as to accuracy of location or complete information.
   1. Before any cutting or trenching operations are begun, verify with Owner's representative, utility companies, municipalities, and other interested parties that all available information has been provided.
   2. Should obstruction be encountered, whether shown or not, alter routing of new work, reroute existing lines, remove obstruction where permitted, or otherwise perform whatever work is necessary to satisfy the purpose of the new work and leave existing services and structures in a satisfactory and serviceable condition.

B. Assume total responsibility for and repair any damage to existing utilities or construction, whether or not such existing facilities are shown.

**3.7 PROTECTION**

A. Protect work, equipment, fixtures, and materials. At work completion, work must be clean and in original manufacturer's condition.

**END OF SECTION 22 05 00**

# SECTION 22 05 10 - PLUMBING CONTRACT QUALITY CONTROL

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Contract quality control including workmanship, manufacturer's instructions and demonstrations.

### 1.2 QUALITY CONTROL PROGRAM

A. Maintain quality control over supervision, subcontractors, suppliers, manufacturers, products, services, site conditions and workmanship to produce work in accordance with contract documents.

### 1.3 WORKMANSHIP

A. Comply with industry standards except when more restrictive tolerances or specified requirements indicate more rigid standards or more precise workmanship.

B. Perform work by persons qualified to produce workmanship of specified quality.

C. Secure products in place with positive anchorage devices designed and sized to withstand stresses, vibration, and racking. Under no conditions shall material or equipment be suspended from structural bridging.

D. Provide finishes to match approved samples. All exposed finishes shall be approved by the Architect. Submit color samples as required.

### 1.4 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

A. Comply with instructions in full detail, including each step in sequence.

B. Should instruction conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect / Engineer before proceeding.

### 1.5 MANUFACTURER'S CERTIFICATES

A. When required in individual Specification Sections, submit manufacturer's certificate in duplicate, certifying that products meet or exceed specified requirements.

### 1.6 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

A. When required in individual Specification Sections, manufacturer shall provide qualified personnel to observe:
   1. Field conditions.
   2. Condition of installation.

3. Quality of workmanship.
4. Start-up of equipment.
5. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of equipment.

B. Representative shall make written report of observations and recommendations to Architect / Engineer.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 REFERENCE APPLICABLE SPECIFICATION SECTIONS**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 PROTECTION OF EQUIPMENT**

A. Do not deliver equipment to the project site until progress of construction has reached the stage where equipment is actually needed or until building is closed in enough to protect the equipment from weather. Equipment allowed to stand in the weather will be rejected, and the Contractor is obligated to furnish new equipment of a like kind at no additional cost to the Owner.

B. Adequately protect equipment from damage after delivery to the project. Cover with heavy tarpaulins, drop cloths or other protective coverings as required to protect from plaster, paint, mortar and/or dirt. Do not cover with plastic materials and trap condensate and cause corrosion.

**END OF SECTION 22 05 10**

# SECTION 22 05 12 - PLUMBING SHOP DRAWINGS, COORDINATION DRAWINGS & PRODUCT DATA

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Prepare submittals as required by Division 1.

B. The term submittal, as used herein, refers to all:
   1. Shop Drawings
   2. Coordination Drawings
   3. Product data

C. Submittals shall be prepared and produced for:
   1. Distribution as specified
   2. Inclusion in the Operating and Maintenance Manual, as specified, in the related section

### 1.2 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Present drawings in a clear and thorough manner. Identify details by reference to sheet and detail, schedule, or room numbers shown on Contract Drawings.

B. Show all dimensions of each item of equipment on a single composite Shop Drawing. Do not submit a series of drawings of components.

C. Identify field dimensions; show relationship to adjacent features, critical features, work, or products.

D. Submit shop drawings in plan, elevation and sections, showing equipment in mechanical equipment areas.

### 1.3 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

A. Present in a clear and thorough manner. Title each drawing with project name. Identify each element of drawings by reference to sheet number and detail, or room number of contract documents. Minimum drawing scale: ¼ inch = 1 foot - 0 inch.

B. Prepare coordination drawings to coordinate installations for efficient use of available space, for proper sequence of installation, and to resolve conflicts. Coordinate with work specified in other sections and other divisions of the specifications.

C. For each mechanical room and for each outside equipment pad where equipment is located, submit plan and elevation drawings. Show:
   1. Actual mechanical equipment and components to be furnished

2. Service clearance
3. Relationship to other equipment and components
4. Roof drains and leader piping
5. Fire protection piping and equipment

D. Identify field dimensions. Show relation to adjacent or critical features of work or products.

E. Related requirements:
1. Ductwork shop drawings
2. Coordination drawing specified in Division 26

F. Submit shop drawings in plan, elevation and sections, showing equipment in mechanical equipment areas.

G. Gas piping sketch indicating proposed location of piping prior to proceeding with the installation.

## 1.4 PRODUCT DATA AND INSTALLATION INSTRUCTION

A. Submit only pages which are pertinent to the project. All options which are indicated on the product data shall become part of the contract and shall be required whether specified are not.

B. Mark each copy of standard printed data to identify pertinent products, referenced to specification section and article number.

C. Show reference standards, performance characteristics and capacities; wiring and piping diagrams and controls; component parts; finishes; dimensions and required clearances.

D. Modify manufacturer's standard schematic drawings and diagrams to supplement standard information and to provide information specifically applicable to the work. Delete information not applicable.

E. Mark up a copy of the specifications for the product. Indicate in the margin of each paragraph the following: “Comply, ”Do Not Comply”, or “Not Applicable”. Explain all “Do Not Comply” statements.

F. Provide a separate transmittal for each submittal item. Transmittals shall indicate product by specification section name and number. Separate all submittals into appropriate specification section number. Do not combine specification sections.

## 1.5 MANUFACTURERS INSTRUCTIONS

A. Submit Manufacturer's instructions for storage, preparation, assembly, installation, start-up, adjusting, calibrating, balancing and finishing.

## 1.6 CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Review submittals prior to transmittal.

B. Determine and verify:
   1. Field measurements
   2. Field construction criteria
   3. Manufacturer's catalog numbers
   4. Conformance with requirements of Contract Documents

C. Coordinate submittals with requirements of the work and of the Contract Documents.

D. Notify the Architect/Engineer in writing at time of submission of any deviations in the submittals from requirements of the Contract Documents.

E. Do not fabricate products, or begin work for which submittals are specified, until such submittals have been produced and bear contractor's stamp. Do not fabricate products or begin work scheduled to have submittals reviewed until return of reviewed submittals with Architect/Engineer's acceptance.

F. Contractor's responsibility for errors and omissions in submittals is not relieved whether Architect/Engineer reviews submittals or not.

G. Contractor's responsibility for deviations in submittals from requirements of Contract Documents is not relieved whether Architect/Engineer reviews submittals or not, unless Architect/engineer gives written acceptance of the specific deviations on reviewed documents.

H. Submittals shall show sufficient data to indicate complete compliance with Contract Documents:
   1. Proper sizes and capacities
   2. That the item will fit in the available space in a manner that will allow proper service
   3. Construction methods, materials and finishes

I. Schedule submissions at least 15 days before date reviewed submittals will be needed.

## 1.7 SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS

A. Make submittals promptly in accordance with approved schedule, and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Project or in the work of any other Contractor.

B. Number of submittals required:
   1. Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings: Submit one reproducible transparency and three opaque reproductions.

2. Product Data: Submit the number of copies which the contractor requires, plus those which will be retained by the Architect/Engineer.

C. Accompany submittals with transmittal letter, in duplicate, containing:
   1. Date
   2. Project title and number
   3. Contractor's name and address
   4. The number of each Shop Drawing, Project Datum and Sample submitted
   5. Other pertinent data

D. Submittals shall include:
   1. The date of submission
   2. The project title and number
   3. Contract Identification
   4. The names of:
      a. Contractor
      b. Subcontractor
      c. Supplier
      d. Manufacturer
   5. Identification of the product
   6. Field dimensions, clearly identified as such
   7. Relation to adjacent or critical features of the work or materials
   8. Applicable standards, such as ASTM or federal specifications numbers
   9. Identification of deviations from contract documents
   10. Suitable blank space for General Contractor and Architect/Engineer stamps
   11. Contractor's signed and dated Stamp of Approval

E. Coordinate submittals into logical groupings to facilitate interrelation of the several items:
   1. Finishes which involve Architect/Engineer selection of colors, textures or patterns
   2. Associated items which require correlation for efficient function or for installation

## 1.8 SUBMITTAL SPECIFICATION INFORMATION

A. Every submittal document shall bear the following information as used in the project manual:
   1. The related specification section number
   2. The exact specification section title

B. Submittals delivered to the Architect/Engineer without the specified information will not be processed. The Contractor shall bear the risk of all delays, as if no submittal had been delivered.

## 1.9 RESUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS

A. Make re-submittals under procedures specified for initial submittals.
   1. Indicate that the document or sample is a re-submittal

2. Identify changes made since previous submittals

B. Indicate any changes which have been made, other than those requested by the Architect / Engineer.

## 1.10 CONTRACTOR'S STAMP OF APPROVAL

A. Contractor shall stamp and sign each document certifying to the review of products, field measurements and field construction criteria, and coordination of the information within the submittal with requirements of the work and of Contract Documents.

B. Contractor's stamp of approval on any submittal shall constitute a representation to Owner and Architect/Engineer that Contractor has either determined and verified all quantities, dimensions, field construction criteria, materials, catalog numbers, and similar data or assumes full responsibility for doing so, and that Contractor has reviewed or coordinated each submittal with the requirements of the work and the Contract Documents.

C. Do not deliver any submittals to the Architect/Engineer that do not bear the Contractor's stamp of approval and signature.

D. Submittals delivered to the Architect/Engineer without Contractor's stamp of approval and signature will not be processed. The Contractor shall bear the risk of all delays, as if no submittal had been delivered.

## 1.11 ARCHITECT/ENGINEER REVIEW OF IDENTIFIED SUBMITTALS

A. The Architect/Engineer will:
1. Review identified submittals with reasonable promptness and in accordance with schedule
2. Affix stamp and initials or signature, and indicate requirements for re-submittal or approval of submittal
3. Return submittals to Contractor for distribution or for resubmission

B. Review and approval of submittals will not extend to design data reflected in submittals which is peculiarly within the special expertise of the Contractor or any party dealing directly with the Contractor.

C. Architect/Engineer's review and approval is only for conformance with the design concept of the project and for compliance with the information given in the contract.
1. The review shall not extend to means, methods, sequences, techniques or procedures of construction or to safety precautions or programs incident thereto.
2. The review shall not extend to review of quantities, dimensions, weights or gauges, fabrication processes or coordination with the work of other trades.

D. The review and approval of a separate item as such will not indicate approval of the assembly in which the item functions.

**1.12 SUBSTITUTIONS**

A. Do not make requests for substitution employing the procedures of this Section.

B. The procedure for making a formal request for substitution is specified in Div. 1.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED.**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION 22 05 12**

# SECTION 22 05 13 - ELECTRICAL PROVISIONS OF PLUMBING WORK

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Electrical provisions to be provided as plumbing work are indicated in other Division 22 sections, on drawings, and as specified.

B. Types of work, normally recognized as electrical but provided as plumbing, specified or partially specified in this Section, include but are not necessarily limited to the following:
   1. Motors for plumbing equipment.
   2. Starters for motors of plumbing equipment, but only where specifically indicated to be furnished integrally with equipment.
   3. Wiring from motors to disconnect switches or junction boxes for motors of plumbing equipment, but only where specifically indicated to be furnished integrally with equipment.
   4. Wiring of field-mounted float control switches, flow control switches, and similar plumbing-electrical devices provided for plumbing systems, to equipment control panels.
   5. Pipe heat tracing.

C. Refer to Division 22 sections for specific individual plumbing equipment electrical requirements.

F. Refer to Division 26 sections for motor starters and controls not furnished integrally with plumbing equipment.

G. Refer to Division 26 sections for junction boxes and disconnect switches required for motors and other electrical units of plumbing equipment.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Specification Sections, apply to work of this Section.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Wherever possible, match elements of electrical provisions of plumbing work with similar elements of electrical work specified in Division 26 sections for electrical work not otherwise specified.

B. For electrical equipment and products, comply with applicable NEMA standards, and refer to NEMA standards for definitions of terminology. Comply with National Electrical Code (NFPA 70) for workmanship and installation requirements.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Include in listing of motors, voltage, notation of whether motor starter is furnished or installed integrally with motor or equipment containing motors.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 MOTORS**

A. Provide motors for plumbing equipment manufactured by one of the following:
   1. Baldor Electric Company.
   2. Century Electric Div., Inc.
   3. General Electric Co.
   4. Louis Allis Div.; Litton Industrial Products, Inc.
   5. Lincoln Electric
   6. Marathon Electric Mfg. Corp.
   7. Reliance Electric Co.
   8. Westinghouse Electric Corp.

B. Motor Characteristics. Except where more stringent requirements are indicated, and except where required items of plumbing equipment cannot be obtained with fully complying motors, comply with the following requirements for motors of plumbing work:

C. Temperature Rating. Rated for 40 deg. C environment with maximum 50 deg. C temperature rise for continuous duty at full load (Class A Insulation).

D. Provide each motor capable of making starts as frequently as indicated by automatic control system, and not less than 5 starts per hour for manually controlled motors.

E. Phases and Current Characteristics. Provide squirrel-cage induction polyphase motors for ¾ hp and larger, and provide capacitor-start single-phase motors for ½ hp and smaller, except 1/6 hp and smaller may, at equipment manufacturer's option, be split-phase type. Coordinate current characteristics with power specified in Division 26 sections, and with individual equipment requirements specified in other Division 22 requirements. For 2-speed motors provide two separate windings on polyphase motors. Do not purchase motors until power characteristics available at locations of motors have been confirmed, and until rotation directions have been confirmed.

F. Service Factor. 1.15 for polyphase motors and 1.35 for single-phase motors.

G. Motor Construction. Provide general purpose, continuous duty motors, Design "B" except "C" where required for high starting torque.
   1. Frames. NEMA #56.
   2. Bearings are to be ball or roller bearings with inner and outer shaft seals, regreasable except permanently sealed where motor is inaccessible for regular maintenance. Where belt drives and other drives produce lateral or axial thrust in motor, provide bearings designed to resist thrust loading. Refer to individual

section of Division 22 for fractional-hp light-duty motors where sleeve-type bearings are permitted.

3. Except as indicated, provide open drip-proof motors for indoor use where satisfactorily housed or remotely located during operation, and provide guarded drip-proof motors where exposed to contact by employees or building occupants. Provide weather-protected Type I for outdoor use, Type II where not housed. Refer to individual sections of Division 22 for other enclosure requirements.
4. Provide built-in thermal overload protection and, where indicated, provide internal sensing device suitable for signaling and stopping motor at starter.
5. Noise Rating: Provide "Quiet" rating on motors.

H. All motors shall be premium efficiency.

## 2.2 EQUIPMENT FABRICATION

A. Fabricate plumbing equipment for secure mounting of motors and other electrical items included in work. Provide either permanent alignment of motors with equipment, or adjustable mountings as applicable for belt drives, gear drives, special couplings and similar indirect coupling of equipment. Provide safe, secure, durable, and removable guards for motor drives. Arrange for lubrication and similar running-maintenance without removal of guards.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install motors on motor mounting systems in accordance with motor manufacturer’s instructions, anchored to resist torque, drive thrusts, and other external forces inherent in plumbing work. Secure sheaves and other drive units to motor shafts with keys and Allen set screws on flat surface of shaft. Unless otherwise indicated, set motor shafts parallel with machine shafts.

B. Verify voltage with Electrical Plans.

**END OF SECTION 22 05 13**

# SECTION 22 05 14 - PLUMBING ALTERATIONS PROJECT PROCEDURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Inspect and service existing equipment and materials that are to remain or to be reused.

B. Disposal of equipment, materials, or housekeeping pads to be abandoned. Prior to disposal, the Contractor shall verify with the Owner what is to be salvaged by the Owner and what is to become the property of the Contractor.

C. Handling of equipment and materials to be removed.

### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Coordination with the Owner prior to the disconnection or shutdown of existing equipment, or to the modification of existing operational systems.

### 1.3 CONTRACT DRAWINGS

A. There is the possibility that existing conditions and devices are affected by the work indicated on the drawings and called for in the specifications (project manual) that do not appear on the drawings. It is the Contractor's responsibility to visit the site and determine all of the existing conditions and to consider these existing conditions when making and presenting a proposal, to have a complete proposal.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

A. Material used to upgrade and repair existing equipment shall conform to that specified.

B. Material used to upgrade and repair existing equipment shall not void existing warranties or listings of the equipment to be upgraded or repaired.

C. Material used to upgrade and repair existing equipment shall be new and shall be of the same manufacturer of the existing equipment, shall be acquired through the existing original equipment manufacturer's approved distribution channels, shall have manufacturer's warranties for the new material being used, and shall be listed for the use intended.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

A. Existing materials and equipment indicated on the drawings or in the specifications to be reused shall be inspected for damaged or missing parts. Contractor shall notify the Architect/Engineer, in writing, accordingly.

B. If using materials specified or shown on the drawing voids or diminishes the warranty or operation of remaining equipment or systems, the Contractor shall notify the Architect/Engineer, in writing.

C. Verify field measurements, above and underground piping connections and flows.

D. Demolition Drawings are based on casual field observation, and when available, existing record documents. Report discrepancies to Architect before disturbing existing installation, and immediately after such discrepancies are discovered.

E. Field verify existing conditions and actual utility uses prior to final connections. Existing drawings may not have been available for all required information. Use pipe inspection camera system to field verify existing sanitary / grease waste connections. Verify flow direction and depth prior to connection to existing plumbing systems.

**3.2 APPLICATION**

A. Existing materials and equipment indicated on the drawings or in the specifications to be reused shall be cleaned and reconditioned, including cleaning of piping systems prior to installation and reuse.

B. Material and equipment removed that is not to be salvaged for Owner's use or for reuse on the project shall become the property of the Contractor and be removed from the site.

C. Material or equipment salvaged for Owner's use shall be carefully handled and stored where directed by the Owner or the Architect / Engineer. Relocate material and / or equipment as directed by Owner.

D. Materials and equipment not indicated to be removed or abandoned shall be reconnected to the new system.

E. Materials, equipment and housekeeping pads not to be reused or reconnected shall be removed for Owner’s review and salvaged by Contractor.

F. Prior to start of construction, Contractor shall walk areas to be renovated with Owner to identify and document items to be salvaged for Owner’s use.

G. Clean and repair existing materials and equipment that remain or are to be reused.

H. Contractor shall utilize spaces efficiently to maximize accessibility for other installations, for maintenance, and for repairs.

## 3.3 SEQUENCE AND SCHEDULE

A. Coordinate utility service outages with Utility Company, Architect and Owner.

B. Provide additional or temporary valves, piping and connections to maintain existing systems in service during construction.

C. Existing Plumbing Service: Refer to drawings for work in remodeled areas. Where facilities in these areas are to remain in service, any related work to keep the facilities in operation is specified in this Division. Maintain existing system in service until new system is complete and ready for service. Disable system only to make switchovers and connections. Obtain permission from Owner at least 48 hours before partially or completely disabling system. Minimize outage duration. Make temporary connections to maintain service in areas adjacent to work area. Maintain acceptable temperature and humidity control within existing building during renovation activities.

D. Remove and replace existing Plumbing systems and appurtenances as occasioned by new or remodeled construction. Re-establish service that may be interrupted by remodeled construction.

E. Refer to other drawings series for work in remodeled areas. Where facilities in these areas are required to remain in service, any related work required to keep these facilities in operation is specified in this Division.

F. Remove and replace existing piping coincident with the construction.

G. Remove or relocate existing piping or housekeeping pads as occasioned by new or remodeled construction. Cap unused domestic piping beyond the new finish line.

H. Relocate all domestic piping as required to accommodate new work requiring precedence.

I. Remove concrete housekeeping pad where materials or equipment have been removed.

J. Remove all known utilities that do not provide service to the buildings that remain.

K. Remove existing plumbing vent penetrations through roof not to be reused.

## 3.4 DEMOLITION AND EXTENSION OF EXISTING PLUMBING WORK

A. The Contractor shall modify, remove, and/or relocate all materials and items so indicated on the drawings or required by the installation of new facilities. All removals and/or dismantling shall be conducted in a manner as to produce maximum salvage. Salvage materials shall remain the property of the Owner, and shall be delivered to such destination as directed by the Owner’s representative unless they are not wanted, then it will be the responsibility of this Contractor to remove such items and properly dispose of them. Materials and/or items scheduled for relocation and which are damaged during

dismantling or reassembly operations shall be repaired and restored to good operative condition. The Contractor may, at his discretion, and upon approval of the Owner's representative substitute new materials and/or items of like design and quality in lieu of materials and/or items to be relocated.

B. All items to be relocated shall be carefully removed in reverse to original assembly or placement and protected until relocated. The Contractor shall clean, repair, and provide all new materials, fittings, and appurtenances required to complete the relocations and to restore them to good operative order. All relocations shall be performed by workmen skilled in the work and in accordance with standard practice of the trades involved.

C. When items scheduled for relocation and/or reuse are found to be in damaged condition before work has been started on dismantling, the Contractor shall call the attention of the Owner's representative to such items and receive further instructions before removal. Items damaged in repositioning operations are the contractor's responsibility and shall be repaired or replaced by the contractor as approved by the owner's representative, at no additional cost to the Owner.

D. Plumbing, piping and appurtenances to be removed, salvaged, or relocated shall be removed to points indicated on the drawings, specified, or acceptable to the Owner's representative. Piping not scheduled for reuse shall be removed to the points at which reuse is to be continued or service is to remain. Such services shall be sealed, capped, or otherwise tied-off or disconnected in a safe manner acceptable to the Construction Inspector. All disconnections or connections into the existing facilities shall be done in such a manner as to result in minimum interruption of services to adjacent occupied areas. Services to existing areas or facilities that must remain in operation during the construction period shall not be interrupted without prior specific approval of the Owner's representative hereinbefore specified.

E. Repair adjacent construction and finishes damaged during demolition and extension work.

F. Maintain access to mechanical installations that remain active. Modify installation or provide access panel as appropriate.

G. Extend existing installations using materials and methods compatible with existing plumbing installations, or as specified.

H. Existing plumbing piping and devices found to need additional hangers installed should be added at no additional cost to the Owner.

**3.5 PROTECTION OF THE WORK**

A. Provide adequate temporary support and auxiliary structure as necessary to ensure structural value or integrity of affected portion of work.

B. Provide devices and methods to protect other portions of work from damage.

C. Execute fitting and adjustment of products to provide a finished installation to comply with specified products, functions, tolerances and finishes.

## 3.6 IDENTIFICATION OF EQUIPMENT IN RENOVATED AREAS

A. Identification of Equipment: Provide new identification of all existing equipment to be reused and located within the renovated areas. Do not include the description “existing”. Provide new nameplates for all existing plumbing equipment in renovated areas as specified in Section 22 05 00 Plumbing General Provisions.

**END OF SECTION 22 05 14**

# SECTION 22 05 15 - PLUMBING EARTHWORK

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

A. Excavate and backfill for pipe trenches for underground piping, and excavate for structures installed as part of plumbing work.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 EXCAVATION**

A. Excavate trenches for underground piping to the required depth to ensure 2 foot minimum coverage over piping.

B. Cut the bottom of the trench or excavation to uniform grade.

C. Should rock be encountered, excavate 6 inches below grade, fill with bedding material and tamp well.

D. Lay out alignment of pipe trenches to avoid obstructions. Assure that proposed route of pipe will not interfere with building foundation before any cutting is begun. Should interference be found, contact the Architect/Engineer before proceeding.

**3.2 BACKFILL**

A. Backfill shall not be placed until the work has been inspected, tested and approved. Complete backfill to the surface of natural ground or to the lines and grades shown on drawings. Except where special materials are requested, use suitable friable soils from other excavation as backfill material. Do not use peat, silt, muck, debris or other organic materials. Deposit backfill in uniform layers and compact each layer as specified in Division 2.

B. Compacting Backfill. Place material in uniform layers of prescribed maximum thickness and wet or dry the material to optimum moisture content. Compact with power-driven tampers to the prescribed density. Place regular backfill in 8 inch maximum layers, loose measure. Compact to not less than 95 percent of maximum soil density as determined by ASTM D-698 Standard Proctor.

C. Restoration. Compact backfill, where trenching or excavation is required in improved areas such as pavements, walks, and similar areas, to a condition equal to the adjacent undisturbed earth, and restore surface of the area to the condition existing prior to trenching or excavating operation.

D. Provide 6 inch stabilized sand bed with 4 inch stabilized sand cover around each pipe.

### 3.3 DISPOSAL OF EXCESS MATERIAL

A. Remove excess excavation material or material unsuitable for backfill. Excess material can be spread on grade, or shall be removed from site as directed by the Owner/Architect.

**END OF SECTION 22 05 15**

# SECTION 22 05 16 - EXCAVATING, BACKFILLING AND COMPACTING FOR UTILITIES OUTSIDE BUILDING SLAB

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 apply to this section.

B. Refer to Instructions to Bidders for substitution of materials and products.

C. Addenda issued during the bidding period that affect this section of the specifications.

### 1.2 WORK INCLUDED

A. Coordinating all excavating and backfilling for the underground storm sewer, sanitary sewer, water distribution lines, and all related appurtenances.

B. The extent of lines, excavation, and backfill shall be in conformance with the locations, lines, elevations and grades shown on the drawings prepared by the MEP Engineer.

### 1.3 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED IN OTHER SECTIONS

A. Earthwork

B. Water Distribution

C. Sanitary Sewer

D. Plumbing

### 1.4 REFERENCES

A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) Use current edition.
   1. ASTM D698, Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft$^3$)
   2. ASTM D1556, Standard Test method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method
   3. ASTM D4253, Standard Test Methods for Maximum Index Density and Unit Weight of Soils Using a Vibratory Table
   4. ASTM D4254, Standard Test Method for Minimum Index Density and Unit Weight of Soils and Calculation of Relative Density

B. City Standards

C. Local Governing Agencies

D. Texas Health and Safety Code, Chapter 161, Subchapter Q, as amended by House Bill No. 1927.

**1.5 WARRANTY**

A. Provide written warranty against defects in the material and workmanship for the work of this Section for a period of one year from the Date of Substantial Completion of the Project. Refer to Division 1 for Warranty form.

**PART 2 – PRODUCTS**

**2.1 MATERIALS**

A. Cement-Stabilized Sand: Clean, local sand mixed with not less than 1-1/2 sacks of Portland cement per ton; mix in a mill-type mixer.

B. Sand: Clean, local sand

C. Earth Backfill: Clean local material consistent with the surrounding earth material and free of large clods, roots, rocks or other debris.

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 EXCAVATION**

A. General:
1. All utility trenches shall be constructed in conformance with OSHA trench safety standards.
2. Sheeting and shoring shall be accomplished to the extent necessary to maintain the sides of the trench in a vertical position throughout the construction period for trenches five feet in depth or deeper. Where approved, trench sides may be laid back in lieu of shoring to meet OSHA safety standards.
3. Utilities shall not be constructed or laid in a trench in the presence of water. All water shall be sufficiently removed from the trench prior to the line placing operation to ensure a dry, firm bed on which to place the utility line.

B. Storm and Sanitary Sewer Trenches:
1. For pipe sizes less than 42 inches in diameter, the minimum trench width shall be outside diameter of pipe plus 18 inches.
2. Trenches shall be excavated to a depth of at least 6 inches below the barrel of pipe.

C. Appurtenances:

1. Any overdepth excavation below appurtenances shall be refilled with cement-stabilized sand.

D. Water Line Trenches:
1. Water lines shall be at least two feet in depth from the top of proposed grade to the top of pipe.
2. Trench width for water lines shall be a minimum of the outside pipe diameter plus 18 inches.
3. Trenches shall be excavated to a depth of at least 6 inches below the barrel of pipe.

**3.2 PIPE BEDDING AND BACKFILL**

A. Storm and Sanitary Sewer Trenches:
1. The cement-stabilized sand bedding shall not extend from a point 6 inches below the bottom of the pipe to the level of the spring line. This material shall not be used after it loses its moisture content.
2. The cement-stabilized sand shall be thoroughly rodded after being placed in the trench.
3. Bedding, sewer pipe, and initial backfill over the pipe must be placed in a single day for any given portion of pipe. Initial backfill shall be placed to one foot above the top of pipe for earth backfill and 6 inches over the top of pipe for cement-stabilized sand backfill.
4. Remainder of trench backfill shall be placed the next day or later in 8 inch lifts.
5. Backfill shall be placed in uniform layers not to exceed 8 inches loose depth, and compacted to a minimum of 95 percent of Standard Maximum Density (ASTM D698).
6. Backfill, under pavement and to one foot from outer edge, shall b e cement-stabilized sand, up to one foot below subgrade elevation. Remainder of backfill to subgrade to be as specified in paragraph 5 above and stabilized where required.

B. Water Line Trenches:
1. Pipe bedding shall consist of 6 inches of clean sand placed before the pipe is laid.
2. After laying pipe and ensuring that the pipe is properly placed and supported by the sand bedding, clean sand backfill shall be placed to 6 inches above the top of pipe. The sand backfill shall be thoroughly rodded and tamped for compaction.
3. For water lines to be beneath the building and pavement and to one foot from the outer edge of pavement, the remainder of the trench backfill shall be clean sand placed in 6 inch lifts and compacted to 95 percent Standard Proctor.
4. For water lines not beneath the building and pavement or within one foot from the outer edge of pavement the remainder of the trench backfill shall be earth fill placed in uniform layers not to exceed 8 inch loose depth. Each lift shall be compacted to a minimum of 90 percent of Standard Density (ASTM D698) at the

proper moisture content specified in the soils report for this project. All earth backfill shall be placed the next day or later after the pipe is laid.

C. Natural Gas Trenches:
   1. Natural gas lines shall not be installed under slabs on grade unless pipes are sleeved and vented as per Section 22 63 11.
   2. Natural gas lines shall not be installed in trenches with other utilities.

D. Utility Locators:
   1. Provide metallic locator over all underground utilities, including irrigation piping, plumbing, control wiring, conduit, data, etc. Locator tape shall be a maximum of 12 inches below grade and centered over the utility(s).

**END OF SECTION 22 05 16**

# SECTION 22 05 17 - PLUMBING ACCESS DOORS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install access doors in wall or ceiling locations as required or shown for access to valves, controls, regulating devices, water arresters and other equipment requiring maintenance, adjustment or operation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 NON-FIRE RATED ACCESS DOORS

A. 16-Gauge frames

B. 14-gauge steel panels

C. Continuous fully concealed hinges

D. Flush screwdriver cam lock & cylinder lock for Owner selection

E. Prime coat finish

F. Brushed satin stainless steel finish for restroom, kitchen or cafeteria installation

G. Material suitable for wall and/or ceiling mounting

### 2.2 FIRE RATED ACCESS DOORS

A. UL listed, 1-1/2 hour Label “B”, access doors

B. 16-Gauge stainless steel

C. 20-Gauge insulated sandwich-type door panel.

D. Two inch thick with fire rated insulation

E. Continuous fully concealed hinge

F. Automatic closing and latching mechanism

G. Knurled knob and recessed key operation for Owner selection

H. Interior latch release slide for opening from inside

I. Prime coat finish

J. Material suitable for wall and/or ceiling mounting

**2.3 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS**

A. Milcor

B. MIFAB

C. Acudor

D. Elmdor

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. Access doors specified in Division 22 will be installed by other crafts. Not all required access doors are shown. Coordinate with the Contractor to locate access doors for ease of operation and maintenance of concealed equipment.

B. Installation shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions.

C. Minimum size required:
   1. 24 inch x 24 inch for plumbing multiple isolation valves and electrical related items in ceilings
   2. 8 inch x 8 inch for plumbing for single isolation valve or shock arrestor

**END OF SECTION 22 05 17**

# SECTION 22 05 19 - PRESSURE AND TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. This section specifies gauges, thermometers, wells and/or pressure and temperature test stations to be installed as specified.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 22, Plumbing
   1. Plumbing General Provisions
   2. Pipe and Pipe Fittings, General
   3. Valves, Strainers and Vents

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS - GAUGES AND THERMOMETERS

A. Trerice

B. Taylor

C. Marsh

D. Weksler

E. Marshalltown

F. Weiss

G. Miljoco

### 2.2 PRESSURE GAUGES

A. Case and Ring: 4 inch type 304 stainless steel; liquid filled case with stainless steel bayonet ring.

B. Dial: White aluminum with black markings

C. Window: Clear acrylic

D. Tube: Phosphor bronze and forged brass socket.

E. Gauge accuracy: +/- 1 percent over operating range.

F. For pulsating service, provide impulse dampers.

G. Without flange for pipe mounting.

H. With flange for wall mounting.

I. Weiss Model: Domestic Water 4CTS LF (Lead Free) 0-100 PSI

## 2.3 THERMOMETER WELLS

A. Brass or type 300 stainless steel. Machined bar stock, 1-piece construction (Lead Free).

B. Where installed in insulated piping or vessels, provide with extension neck to match insulation thickness.

C. Provide metal-to-metal contact with bulb chamber for maximum sensitivity.

D. Wells shall be sized to extend a minimum of 50 percent into pipe.

## 2.4 THERMOMETERS IN PIPING SYSTEMS OR VESSELS

A. Die cast aluminum case with baked epoxy finish.

B. Adjustable angle 9 inch scale length.

C. Clear acrylic window.

D. Brass stem, length to match well.

E. Red reading organic spirit filled-in magnifying glass column.

F. White background with black figures and markings.

G. Brass stems and union connections (Lead Free).

H Accuracy: +/- 1 percent of scale range.

I. Range:
   1. Hot water lines: 30 deg. F to 240 deg. F.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install in accordance with drawing details and manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Provide a ball valve at each gauge (Lead Free).

C. Locate gauges and thermometers to be easily readable from the floor at a 5 foot-6 inch eye level. Use adjustable angle or rigid stem as required. Install gauges in upright position.

D. Install gauges in the following locations: across pumps, storage tanks, heat exchangers.

E. Install thermometer in the following locations: At storage tanks, across heat exchangers, across boiler, leaving side of water heater, leaving water side of tempered water valves, and hot water supply and return lines.
   1. Hot water lines: 30 deg. F to 240 deg. F.
   2. Tempered water valves 0 deg. F to 120 deg. F.

**END OF SECTION 22 05 19**

# SECTION 22 05 23 - VALVES, STRAINERS AND VENTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Plumbing Valves

B. Pipe strainer and suction diffusers.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 VALVES

A. Pressure Ratings:
   1. Unless otherwise indicated, use valves suitable for 125 minimum psig working steam pressure (WSP) and 450 deg. F.
   2. The pressure temperature rating of valves shall be not less than the design criteria applicable to components of the system.

B. Butterfly Valves
   1. Butterfly valves shall conform to MSS-SP67.
   2. Liners, inserts and discs shall be suitable for the intended service.
   3. Valves shall have a full lug type body designed for installation between ANSI standard flanges, and shall be rated at full working pressure with downstream flange removed.
   4. All valves for domestic use must be lead free.

C. Ball Valves
   1. Provide ball valves with:
      a. Blowout proof stem.
      b. Full size port, 316 stainless steel ball and stem.
      c. Cast bronze body.
      d. Threaded ends.
   2. Seat, seals, thrust washers and packing shall be suitable for the intended service.
   3. Service rating:
      a. 150 psi saturated steam.
      b. 600 psi WOG.
   4. Provide with memory stop for balancing valves.
   5. Where Viega ProPress fittings are used, Viega ProPress ball valves may be used.
   6. All valves for domestic use must be lead free.

D. Valve Connections
   1. Provide valves suitable to connect to adjoining piping as specified for pipe joints. Use pipe size valves. Sweated joints are not allowed.
   2. Thread pipe sizes 2 inches and smaller.

3. Flange pipe sizes 2-1/2 inches and larger.
4. Use screw to solder adapters for copper tubing.
5. Use grooved body valves with mechanical grooved jointed piping.
6. Use press valves when using copper press systems.

E. Valve Operators
1. Provide suitable hand-wheels for gate, globe, angle or drain valves and inside hose bibbs.
2. When cocks and valves are furnished with square head stem:
   a. Provide one wrench for every ten cocks or valves sized 2 inches and smaller, minimum of two.
   b. Provide each cock or valve size 2-1/2 inches and larger with a wrench with setscrew.
3. Where butterfly valves are provided:
   a. Provide gear operators on valves 6 inches and larger.
   b. Where valves are located 7 feet or more above the finished floor in equipment room areas provide chain-operated sheaves. Extend chains to about 5 feet above floor and hook to clips, arrange to clear walking space.
   c. Lever lock handle with toothed plate for shut-off service and infinitely adjustable handle with lock and nut and memory stop for throttling service on valves 4 inches and smaller.

F. Acceptable Manufacturers (All listed must be lead free):
1. Apollo
2. Crane
3. Dezurik
4. Jenkins
5. Keystone
6. Kitz
7. Milwaukee Valve
8. Nibco
9. Stockham

G. Check Valves
1. Bronze body, 2 inches and smaller, bronze disc (Teflon disc for steam service), regrinding swing check, screw-in cap, threaded connection (Lead Free).
2. Iron body, 2-1/2 inches and larger, bronze trim, non-slam: stainless steel pins and springs, and bronze plate or bronze mounted, regrind-renew check, bronze seat ring and disc. Provide either wafer or threaded lug (Lead Free).
3. Acceptable Manufacturers (All listed must be lead free):
   a. Apollo
   b. Keystone
   c. Kitz
   d. Milwaukee
   e. Mission Duochek
   f. Nibco

H. Backflow Preventer (All valves for domestic use must be lead free):
   1. BFP-1 (2 inches and smaller) bronze body, reduced pressure zone type with two inline independent check valves with an intermediate relief valve, complete with two full port ball valve shut-offs and ball type test cocks. Bronze strainer on inlet. Provide air gap fitting with full size drain piped to nearest floor drain. Watts 909-QT-S-LF.
   2. BFP-2 (2-1/2 inches and larger) stainless steel or FDA epoxy coated ductile iron reduced pressure zone type with two inline independent check valves with reverse relief valves, two non-rising stem resilient sealed gate valves, cast iron strainer on inlet. Provide air gap fitting piped full size to nearest floor drain. Apollo RP4ALF-YS or Watts 909-NRS-BB-S-LF.

I. Provide valves of same manufacturer throughout where possible.

J. Provide valves with manufacturer's name and manufacturing location, duty and pressure rating clearly marked on outside of body.

K. Where valves are installed in insulated piping, provide with extended neck so valve operator and stop plate clears the full thickness insulation.

L. Provide valve, seat and trim materials suitable for the intended service.

**2.2 PIPE SYSTEMS STRAINERS**

A. Body:
   1. Bronze "Y" pattern or basket as shown on the drawings.
   2. Line size.
   3. Threaded strainer blow down port.
   4. ASTM A #126 Class B Cast Iron Body.

B. Construction:
   1. 2 inch size and smaller with screw connections rated 400 psi WOG.
   2. Over 2 inch size with flanged connections, rated 125 psi WOG.

C. Fabricate screens of Monel or type 304 stainless steel:
   1. With 20 mesh woven wire in piping systems through 2 inches.
   2. With 0.045 perforations in piping systems 2-1/2 inches and 3 inches.
   3. With 0.125 perforations in piping systems 4 inches and larger.

D. Start-up:
   1. Provide an additional fine mesh disposable screen for use during start-up operations.
   2. Remove after 30 days.
   3. Attach to piping for Owner’s review.

E. Acceptable Manufacturers (All listed must be lead free):

1. Apollo
2. Crane
3. Keckley
4. Kitz
5. Mueller
6. McAlear
7. Muesco
8. Nibco
9. Zurn

## 2.3 VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Domestic Service
   1. Gas shut-off service: UL approved for natural gas service.
      a. Nibco Ball Valve, full port through 1 inch: T-585-70-UL
      b. Nibco Ball Valve conventional port 1-1/4 inch through 3 inch: T-580-70-UL
      c. Resun 2-1/2 inch and larger: 143 - 1-UL
      d. DeZurick 2-1/2 inch and larger: Series 425 or 435
      e. Locking Type: Rockford ¾ inch and 1 inch PNP-400
         Mueller 1-1/4 inch through 4 inch: Lub-O-seal
      f. Conbraco Ball Valve, full port through 4 inch: 64-100 Series
      g. Milwaukee Full Port ¼ inch-2 inch
      h. Milwaukee Standard Port 2-1/2 inch & 3 inch
      i. Kitz Full Port 2 inch =- #68
   2. Cold and Hot water service (all listed must be Lead Free):
      a. Nibco Ball Valve full port through 2 inch: T-585-66-LF
      b. Nibco Ball Valve 2-1/2 inch and 3 inch conventional port: T-580-66-LF
      c. Nibco Butterfly Valve 4 inch and larger: LD-2000 EDPM Gaskets
      d. Watts Ball Valve 4 inch and larger: G-4000-FDA
      e. Viega ProPress Bronze Ball Valves (where Viega ProPress fittings are used)
      f. Kitz Full Port through 2 inch - #868M Lead Free
      g. Milwaukee Full Port ¼ inch-2 inch
      h. Milwaukee Standard Port 2-1/2 inch & 3 inch
      i. Apollo Ball Valve Full Port through 2-1/2 inch 77CALF
      j. Apollo Ball Valve Standard Port 3 inch 70LF
      k. Apollo Butterfly Valve 4 inch and Larger LD141
      l. Apollo Press Bronze Ball valves – 77 WLF
   3. Check Valve (All listed must be Lead Free):
      a. Nibco Check Valve: T - 413 - Y -LF (Teflon Seats)
      b. Nibco Check Valve 2-1/2 inch and larger: F - 918 – Y -LF (Buna-N disc.)
      c. Nibco Check Valve 2-1/2 inch and larger: W - 920 -W-LF (Wafer)
      d. Kitz Y & Check: A-22T
      e. Kitz 2-1/2 inch and Larger #778 C.I.
      f. Kitz Wafer Check 2-1/2 inch and Larger #7032
      g. Milwaukee Valve – 509T

h. Apollo Check Valve: 163TLF
i. Apollo Check Valve 2-1/2 inch and larger: 910FLF
j. Apollo Press Check Valve: 163TPR-LF
k. Apollo Check Valve 2 inch and larger 910WE-LF (Wafer)

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. Install valves with stems upright or horizontal, not inverted.

B. Install valves for shut-off and isolating service at each piece of equipment, at vertical risers, and where shown on the drawings.

C. Use butterfly valves and ball valves in domestic hot water and domestic cold water systems interchangeable in place of gate and globe valves.

D. Provide drain valves at main shut-off valves and low points of piping and apparatus so the systems can be entirely drained.
1. 1 inch valve for pipes 6 inch and larger.
2. 3/4 inch valve for pipes smaller than 6 inch.
3. Terminate with pipe plug.
4. Drain valves shall be ball valves.

E. Provide isolation valves in domestic water lines to isolate all equipment, restrooms, hose bibbs, and where shown on the drawings.

F. Where valves are installed in insulated pipe, valve operator shall have an insert so the lever or handle will not damage the insulation. Install handles so the lever or handles will not damage the insulation.

G. Provide clearance for installation of insulation and access to valves.

H. Provide access where valves are not exposed.

**3.2 VALVE TAGS**

A. Furnish valves with 1-1/2 inch diameter brass valve tags with stamped, black or red-filled numbers. Service designations shall be 1/4 inch letters, and valve numbers shall be 2 inch letters. Engineer shall approve Service designations. Secure tags to valves by use of brass "S" hooks or brass chain. Secure chain to valve by use of copper or Monel meter seals. Valve tags are not required if the valve is located within 3 feet of the equipment being served and the service is obvious.

B. Mount charts and drawings listing functions of each valve and its location in a metal and glass frame. Place charts and drawings as directed; in addition, on the record drawings mark the symbols and furnish a valve schedule properly identifying the valve number,

service, exact location, the material being piped, and the room number of area that the valve services. This schedule shall be furnished on reproducible drafting paper or film suitable for reproduction on an Ozalid machine. The Owner shall approve the size of drafting paper. Provide a copy of the valve chart in the Operating and Maintenance Manuals.

**3.3 PIPE SYSTEMS STRAINERS**

A. Provide strainers in supply piping to circulating pumps, thermostatic mixing valves, before solenoid valves and trap primer valves.

**END OF SECTION 22 05 23**

# SECTION 22 07 19 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install piping insulation, jackets, accessories and covering of specified materials. The insulation shall be used for high and low temperature piping applications including domestic hot and cold water, roof and overflow drain sump bodies and rain leaders, horizontal sanitary drain piping which receives condensate, make-up water and pool heating water.

### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The intent of insulation specifications is to obtain superior quality workmanship resulting in an installation that is absolutely satisfactory in both function and appearance. Provide insulation in accordance with the specifications for each type of service and apply as recommended by the manufacturer and as specified.

B. An approved contractor for this work under this Division shall be:
   1. A specialist in this field and have the personnel, experience, training, skill, and the organization to provide a practical working system.
   2. Able to furnish evidence of having contracted for and installed not less than 3 systems of comparable size and type that have served their owners satisfactorily for not less than 3 years.

C. All piping insulation used on the project inside the building must have a flame spread rating not exceeding 25 and a smoke developed rating not exceeding 50, as determined by test procedures ASTM E 84, NFPA 255 and UL 723. These ratings must be as tested on the composite of insulation, jacket or facing, and adhesive. Components such as adhesives, mastics and cements must meet the same individual ratings as the minimum requirements and bear the UL label.

D. Condensation on any insulated piping system is not acceptable.

E. Replace insulation damaged by either moisture or other means. Insulation that has been wet, whether dried or not, is considered damaged. Make repairs where condensation is caused by improper installation of insulation. Also repair any damage caused by the condensation.

F. Where existing insulated piping, or other surfaces are tapped, remove existing insulation back to undamaged sections for hot surfaces or to nearest insulation stop for cold surfaces, and replace with new insulation of the same type and thickness as existing insulation. Apply as specified for insulation of the same service.

### 1.3 APPROVALS

A. Submit product data on each insulation type, adhesive, and finish to be used in the work. Make the submittal as specified in Division 1 General Requirements and obtain approval before beginning installation. Include product description, list of materials and thickness for each service and location and the manufacturer's installation instructions for each product.

B. Make a field application of each type of insulation to display the material, quality and application method. Obtain approval of the sample application before proceeding with installation of the work.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS**

A. Glass fiber pipe insulation:
   1. Johns-Manville Micro-Lok AP-T
   2. Owens-Corning ASJ/SSL
   3. Knauf ASJ/SSL

B. Cellular Glass Insulation (Foamglass):
   1. Pittsburg Corning
   2. Cell-U-Foam

C. Aluminum Jacketing:
   1. Childers
   2. Pabco
   3. RPR

D. Fiberglass reinforcing cloth mesh:
   1. Perma Glass Mesh
   2. Alpha Glass Mesh
   3. Childers Chil-Glas
   4. Vimasco

E. Mastics and Adhesives
   1. Childers
   2. Foster
   3. Vimasco
   4. Armstrong 520 Adhesive

F. Elastomeric Insulation
   1. Armacell

G. Weather Resistant Coating
   1. WB Armaflex Finish

H. Glass fiber blanket insulation
   1. Manville R-series Microlite FSKL

2. Owens-Corning eD75 or ED100 RKF
3. Knauf 0.75 PCF FSK

## 2.2 FIBERGLASS PIPE INSULATION

A. Heavy density, dual temperature fiberglass insulation with factory applied, all service, reinforced vapor barrier jacket having integral laminated vapor barrier. Provide with a factory applied pressure sensitive tape closure system and matching butt strips. Supply in thickness as shown.
   1. Thermal conductivity 0.23 @ 75°F mean (ASTM 335).

## 2.3 ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Insulation material shall be flexible, closed-cell elastomeric insulation in tubular or sheet form. Material shall have a flame spread rating of 25 or less and a smoke developed rating of 50 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, latest revision. Sheet material with a thickness greater than ¾" shall have a flame spread rating of 25 or less and a smoke developed rating of 100 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, latest revision. In addition, the product, when tested, shall not melt or drip flaming particles, and the flame shall not be progressive. In addition, all materials shall pass simulated end-use fire test. Minimum ¾" thick.
   1. Thermal conductivity 0.27 at 75°F mean (ASTM C177 or C518)

## 2.4 CELLULAR GLASS INSULATION

A. ASTM C552:
   1. "k" value of 0.35 @ 75°F ("ksi" value of 0.047 @ 24°C);
   2. 8.0 lb./cu.ft. (128 kg/cu.m.) density

## 2.5 INSULATION/SHIELD AT HANGERS

A. Field fabricated: Use 360° sections of rigid foamglass insulation that will support the bearing area at hangers and supports. Further support insulation at hangers and supports with a shield of galvanized metal covering at least half of the pipe circumference, and conforming to the schedule. Insulation shall extend at least 1" beyond metal shield on each end. When pipe is guided at top and bottom, metal shields shall cover the whole pipe circumference. Adhere metal shield to insulation so that metal will not slide with respect to insulation with ½" aluminum bands (2) per shield.
   1. Sections of foam glass insulation may be used of the same outside diameter of the adjoining pipe insulation.
   2. Minimum thickness of foam glass insulation shall not be less than 1" thick.

B. Pipe saddles: Formed galvanized sheets at each support point for insulated pipe, shaped to fit pipe, and covering bottom half of pipe. Length at saddle shall be not less than twice the insulation outside diameter or more than 22". Provide 18 gauge through 4" pipe and 16-gauge 5" pipe and above.

## 2.6 SEALANT, ADHESIVE AND FINISH

A. Lap Adhesive. Provide Childers CP-82 adhesive.

B. Vapor Barrier Finish:
   1. Indoors: Provide as insulation coating Childers CP-35, white.
   2. Outdoors: Provide as insulation coating Childers Encacel X.
   3. Underground: Provide Childers CP-22/24 for fittings and areas. Pittwrap cannot be used.

C. Sealant. Provide Childers CP-76 vapor barrier sealant.

D. Lagging Adhesive. Provide Childers CP-50.

E. Other products of equal quality will be acceptable only upon approval.

## 2.7 ALUMINUM JACKETING

A. Finish insulated piping outdoors with a smooth prefabricated Z-lock aluminum jacket 0.016" thick with factory applied 1 mil polyethylene/40 lb and Fab strap. Kraft moisture barrier. Childers Lock-On or approved equal.

B. Valves, Fittings and Flanges. For finishing valves, fittings, flanges and similar installations, provide formed aluminum covers, 0.024" thick.

C. Straps and Seals. Provide ½" x 0.020 stainless steel strapping and seals for jackets and covers according to manufacturer's recommendations.

## 2.8 GLASS FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

A. Minimum density of 1.0 PCF, 2" thick, installed R value to be 6.0 or better at 75°F mean, facing of 0.35 mil foil reinforced with glass yarn mesh and laminated to 40 lbs fire resistant kraft.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INTERIOR PIPING

A. Cover all piping with glass fiber, heavy density, dual temperature pipe insulation with a vapor barrier jacket. Apply insulation to clean, dry pipes. Longitudinal seams shall be joined firmly together and sealed with self-sealing lap joints. Butt insulation joints firmly together and seal with a 3" wide ASJ butt strip seal. Longitudinal seams and butt strip laps shall be coated and sealed with CP-35 vapor barrier coating for chilled water piping applications.

B. Install hanger with protective shield, on the outside of all insulation.

C. Where domestic water pipes (1/2" & ¾" pipe sizes) are installed on trapeze type hangers,

provide galvanized sheet metal protection shields at these locations. Place insulation jacket directly on hanger. Incompressible, load bearing insulation segments are not required.

D. Pipe Saddles: Formed galvanized sheets at each support point for insulated pipe, shaped to fit pipe, and covering bottom half of pipe. Length at saddle shall be not less than twice the insulation outside diameter. Provide 18-gauge through 4” pipe and 16-gauge for 5” pipe and above.

E. Seal ends of pipe for drinking chilled water insulation with vapor barrier mastic at valves, flanges, fittings and every 21' on straight runs of piping. Mastic should extend on top of ASJ jacket, across the glass, down onto the pipe making a complete seal.

F. Apply a smooth flood coat of white lagging Foster 8142W over all exposed insulation.

G. Piping to be insulated as specified above:
1. All hot and cold water.
2. Make-up water
3. Horizontal sanitary drain piping that receives condensate
4. Exposed to view storm drainage system including roof and overflow drain bodies, vertical piping from drain body and all horizontal rain leaders to first elbow turning down

**3.2 PIPING OUTDOORS ABOVE GRADE**

A. Insulate all water piping exterior of building above grade with rigid foam insulation and aluminum jacketing.

B. Adhere the vapor barrier jacket longitudinal seam with vapor barrier adhesive.

C. Cover all valves, fittings and flanges with factory made molded or field fabricated segments of pipe insulation of a thickness and material equal to the adjoining insulation. Adhere segments together with no voids, using CP-82 adhesive. Secure fitting insulation covers and segments in place with ½” wide glass filament tape.

D. Apply a tack coat of fitting mastic over the insulation and tape.

E. Neatly embed with 10 x 10 fiberglass cloth into the tack coat.

F. Apply mastic over the fiberglass cloth to a thickness where the fabric is not visible after completion.

G. Seal ends of pipe insulation with vapor barrier mastic at valves, flanges, fittings and every 21' on straight runs of piping. Mastic should extend on top of ASJ jacket, across the foam, down onto the pipe, making a complete seal.

H. Finish with aluminum jacketing as specified.

## 3.3 FLANGE, VALVE AND FITTING INSULATION

A. Cover valves and flanges with fabricated segments, fittings with two-piece factory molded fittings, and both of matching pipe insulation type and thickness equal to that of the adjoining pipe. Fittings and fabricated segments shall be securely held in place.
   1. Apply a tack coat of insulating mastic to the insulated fitting to produce a smooth surface.
   2. After mastic is dry, apply a second coat of vapor barrier mastic. Neatly embed with 10 x 10 fiberglass cloth into the tack coat.
   3. Overlap mastic and fiberglass cloth by 2” on adjoining sections of pipe insulation.
   4. Apply a second coat of mastic over the fiberglass cloth to present a smooth surface.
   5. Apply mastic to a wet film thickness of 3/64”.
   6. Fabric shall not be visible after completion.
   7. Vapor seal flanges, valves and fittings with Childers CP-35.

B. PVC fitting covers are not acceptable.

## 3.4 ALUMINUM JACKETING (Insulated Piping Outdoors Above Grade)

A. Apply smooth aluminum jacket on piping, valves, fittings and flange covers according to manufacturer's recommendations, using stainless steel strapping and seals, to provide weather tight covering and to shed water.

B. Aluminum jacketing is not considered as contributing to the vapor barrier or the insulation jacket. The vapor barrier must be sufficient in itself for this function. Lap each adjoining jacket section a minimum of 3” to make a weather tight seal.

C. Install straps on 9” centers and at each circumferential lap joint.

D. Cover and seal all exposed surfaces.

E. The use of screws and rivets is not approved.

F. Provide isolation (30# felt) between the aluminum jacket and the sheetmetal protection shield at each pipe support point.

## 3.5 CONCEALED STORM DRAIN PIPING

A. Provide flexible glass fiber insulation with factory-applied, reinforced UL labeled Foil-Skrim-Kraft (FSK) facing. Install insulation of clean, dry piping.

B. Insulation shall be wrapped tightly on the piping with all circumferential joints and longitudinal joints overlapped a minimum of 2” with facing to the outside to obtain specified R-value using a maximum of 25% compression.

C. Provide vapor retarder at penetrations, joints, seams and damage to the facing with staples and FSK foil tape. The facing shall be taped with a minimum 3” wide strip of reinforced foil

tape. Pressure-sensitive tape shall be a minimum 3” (76mm) wide and shall be applied with moving pressure using an appropriate sealing tool. Staples shall be outward cinch and placed 6” (152mm) on center.

D. Mechanical / Electrical rooms and above ceilings are considered concealed spaces.

## 3.6 MISCELLANEOUS

A. Install materials after piping has been tested and approved.

B. Apply insulation on clean, dry surfaces only.

C. Apply weather protective finish on elastomeric insulation installed in non-conditioned spaces. Provide a minimum of three coats.

## 3.7 INSULATION THICKNESS

| INSULATED UNIT | THICKNESS (Inches) |
|---|---|
| Exposed Roof Drain Bodies and Horizontal Roof Drain Leaders | 1 |
| Exposed Roof Overflow Drain Bodies and Horizontal Drain Leaders | 1 |
| Domestic Cold Water/Make-Up Water Piping/Drinking Chilled Water | 1 |
| Horizontal Sanitary Drain Piping Which Receives Condensate | 1 |
| Domestic Hot Water Piping, 1-1/2” Pipe and Smaller | 1 |
| Domestic Hot Water Piping, 2” Pipe and Larger | 1-1/2 |

**END OF SECTION 22 07 19**

# SECTION 22 08 00 - PLUMBING COMMISSIONING COORDINATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section outlines commissioning requirements and activities of Contractor, Owner, CxA and Design Professionals as related to the Division 22 Plumbing.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 01 – General Requirements and Specification Section 01 91 13, General Commissioning
   2. Division 22 – Plumbing
   3. Division 23 – Mechanical
   4. Division 26 – Electrical

### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Refer to Specification Section 01 91 13, General Commissioning for definitions.

### 1.3 CONTACT INFORMATION

A. The Owner will contract directly for commissioning services.
   1. Commissioning Agent fee will be paid for directly by the owner.
   2. Cost of contractor coordination with the CxA is specified in this section.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 TEST EQUIPMENT

A. Contractor shall provide all standard and specialized testing equipment required to perform Start-up and Functional Performance Testing. Test equipment required for Functional Performance Testing is listed below. Data logging equipment and software required to test equipment shall be provided by the Contractor.

B. All testing equipment shall be of sufficient quality and accuracy to test and/or measure system performance with the tolerances specified in the Specifications. If not otherwise noted, the following minimum requirements apply: Temperature sensors and digital thermometers shall have a certified calibration within the past year to an accuracy of 1.0ºF and a resolution of + or - 0.2ºF). Pressure sensors shall have an accuracy of + or - 2.0% of the value range being measured (not full range of meter) and have been calibrated within the last year. All equipment shall be calibrated according to the manufacturer's recommended intervals and following any repairs to the equipment. Calibration tags shall be affixed or certificates readily available.

### 2.2 OTHER CONTRACTOR PROVIDED EQUIPMENT

A. Ladders and/or lifts and appropriate fall protection as required by Contractor site requirements.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 COORDINATION - GENERAL**

A. Except for the activities to be performed by the CxA called for herein, all component and system installation work required by the Division 22, 23 and 26 specifications including specific contractor furnished items indicated by this Section shall be provided by the Contractor.

**3.2 SUBMITTALS**

A. Plumbing
   1. Plumbing Equipment.

**3.3 EQUIPMENT START-UP**

A. Notification
   1. Contractor shall provide ten Owner business days' notice to CxA, Owner and Design Team of start-up dates.

B. Prior to start-up, contractor shall:
   1. Verify that equipment and systems are complete, accessible, correctly connected to utilities and ready for operation. Perform all pre-start inspections and tests as called for in Division 22.
   2. Comply with pre-start requirements of manufacturer and complete applicable documentation.
   3. Complete applicable sections of Pre-functional Checklists.
   4. Coordinate start-up attendance by manufacturer or authorized representative as required by specifications or manufacturer.

C. At start-up, contractor shall:
   1. Supervise the activities of the authorized start-up technician or manufacturer's representative.
   2. Verify proper voltage, phase, drive rotation and any other conditions that may cause damage if not correct.
   3. Execute start-up under supervision of qualified contractor and equipment manufacturer personnel and in accordance with the manufacturer's instruction.
   4. Complete manufacturer start-up requirements and documentation. Provide a copy of documentation to the CxA for inclusion in the Cx Manual.
   5. Complete PFC's and provide documentation to CxA.
   6. Provide documentation of any issues noted during start-up to CxA, Owner and Design Team. Outline recommendations for corrective action.

**3.4 PRE-FUNCTIONAL CHECKLISTS**

A. Contractor shall forward completed copies of PFC's to the CxA for inclusion into the Cx documentation. PFC's will be provided by the CxA. As an alternate, contractor shall submit their versions of the PFC's to the CxA for review and comment.

B. Contractor shall complete PFC for each of the following equipment:
   1. Plumbing:
      a. Domestic Hot Water Heater/Converter
      b. Recirculation Pump
      c. Mixing Valve

## 3.5 FUNCTIONAL TESTING

A. General
   1. Contractor shall organize and schedule Construction Team members to execute the functional testing, which will be directed by CxA.

B. Recirculation Pump
   1. Graphics
   2. Start/Stop/Schedule
   3. Pump Operation (On/Off/Hand/Auto)
   4. Temperature Sensor Calibration

C. Domestic Water Heater
   1. Graphics
   2. Start/Stop Schedule
   3. Discharge Temperature

**END OF SECTION 22 08 00**

# SECTION 22 11 16 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING AND APPURTENANCES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install domestic hot and cold water piping.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 22 Plumbing
   1. Valves, Strainers and Vents
   2. Pipe and Pipe Fittings - General
   3. Plumbing Piping Insulation
   4. Plumbing Fixtures and Fixture Carriers

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPING AND FITTINGS

A. Below Slab on Grade Piping for Water Entries:
   1. 2-inch and smaller, provide ASTM B88 Type K (heavy wall) annealed tempered (soft) seamless copper water tube. No joints below slab entries.
   2. 2-1/2-inch and 3-inch, provide ASTM B88 Type K (heavy wall) annealed tempered (soft) seamless copper water tube, 20 ft. straight lengths. One joint allowed below slab entry using wrought copper, solder-joint pressure fittings: ASME B16.22 with an approved brazing filler metal or pipe can be shop bent for no joint installation by using a “bending” temper tubing.
   3. 3 inch and larger, provide one-piece stainless steel IBR (in building riser), Watts or Ames.

B. Below Grade Piping Outside Building (beyond 5’-0” of building): Provide PVC water main pipe 4 inch through 12 inch in diameter in conformance with AWWA C900. When using 3” or smaller provide Schedule 40 PVC ASTM D1785 with ASTM D-2466 socket type fittings. Provide fittings in conformance with ASTM 2466. Furnish pipe with a minimum pressure rating of 150 lbs. per square inch. Provide PVC pipe as manufactured by Johns-Manville, CertainTeed, Clow or approved equal.

C. Below Slab on Grade Piping. Furnish ASTM B 88 and ANSI/NSF Standard 61 annealed tempered (soft), Type K copper water tube. Run continuous with no joints under the floor slab. Provide copper pipe corrosion protection as specified in this Section.

D. Above Slab Piping. Provide seamless ASTM B 88 and ANSI/NSF Standard 61 drawn tempered (hard) Type L copper water tube with wrought copper or bronze fittings with solder-joints, ANSI B16.22. Solder material shall be 95-5 (lead free) (Tin-Antimony-Grade 95TA) ASTM B 32.

E.. Unions. Provide 150 lb. standard unions with ground joint and bronze seat. Flange joints larger than 2 inches. Provide dielectric isolating unions at junctions or connection between metallic piping of dissimilar metal. Provide pipe threads with standard taper pipe threads ANSI B2.1.

F. Alternate Method of Joining Copper Pipe and Tubing: Press Fittings: Copper press fitting shall conform to the material and sizing requirements of ASME B16.51. O-rings for copper press fittings shall be EPDM. VIEGA. The system intended for use shall be approved by submittal. Systems from various manufacturers may vary in technology. The field personnel shall carry training credentials from the approved manufacturer for the project. Mixing of fittings from different manufacturers is strictly prohibited.

## 2.2 WATER HAMMER ARRESTORS

A. Provide piston type hydraulic engineered/manufactured water hammer arrestors in cold and hot water supply lines in chases or walls to each fixture branch or battery of fixtures serving quick closing valves of electrical, pneumatic, spring loaded type, or quick hand closure valves on fixture trim. Provide water hammer arrestors at the end of the branch line between the last two fixtures served. Provide Precision Plumbing Products, Inc., or equal. Size units according to water hammer arrestor's Standard PDI WH-201; refer to schedule on drawings.

B. Install all water hammer arrestors so as to attain 100% effectiveness according to Plumbing and Drainage Institute PDI-WH201 Table 5, 6 and 6-A for water hammer arrestors.

C. All water hammer arrestors shall be installed in a vertical position.

D. All water hammer arrestors shall be accessible and shall have access panels where required. Arrestors located above ceilings in fixture drops will not be acceptable. Refer to sizing and placement data as indicated in PDI Standard PDI-WH-201.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 DRAINAGE

A. Install water piping systems with uniform horizontal grade of 1/8 inch per 10 foot, minimum, to low points to provide complete system drainage. Where constant pitch cannot be maintained for long runs, establish intermediate low points and rise to new level. Grade branches to drain to mains or risers. Unless otherwise indicated, terminate low points of risers with drain valve piped to nearest hub or floor drain.

## 3.2 STERILIZATION

A. Sterilize the water system with solution containing not less than 50PPM available chlorine. Allow chlorinating solution to remain in system for period of 8 hours (minimum). Have valves and faucets opened and closed several times during the period. After sterilization, flush the solution from the system with clean water until residual chlorine content is less

than 0.2 parts per million.

## 3.3 UNDERGROUND WATER PIPING SYSTEM PROCEDURES

A. Lay sewer and water lines in separate trenches, separated by 10 foot of undisturbed or compacted soil.

## 3.4 TESTING

A. Test under a cold water hydrostatic pressure of 1-1/2 times operating pressure (150 psig minimum) and carefully check for leaks. Repair leaks and retest system until proven watertight.

B. Test the domestic water piping system at 150psig hydrostatic pressure, maintained for 6 hours.

C. Use only potable water for the test.

D. Perform the test before fixtures, faucets, trim or final connections are made to equipment.

E. If the system is tested in sections, the entire domestic water piping system shall be submitted to a final test, employing the specified procedure.

F. Do not insulate or conceal piping systems until tests are satisfactorily complete.

G. If any leaks or other defects are observed, suspend the test and correct the condition at once. Repeat testing until leaks are eliminated and the full test period is achieved.

H. The satisfactory completion of testing does not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for ultimate proper and satisfactory operation of piping systems and their accessories.

## 3.5 COPPER PIPE CORROSION PROTECTION

A. Corrosion protect copper tube piping systems:
   1. In the building slab.
   2. Beneath the building slab.
   3. Buried.
   4. Route plasti-sleeve 0.006 thick material entire length of below slab on grade copper tubing.

B. Cover copper tubing piping system with:
   1. "Tapecoat" TC Primer.
   2. "Tapecoat" CT cold applied coating tape.

C. Install coating system as specified by the manufacturer.

D. Extend the corrosion protection 2 inches above concrete slab on grade.

## 3.6 TEST OF PIPE CORROSION PROTECTION SYSTEM

A. Test the pipe corrosion protection coating with an approved high voltage tester adjusted to provide sufficient voltage to produce a spark through a pinhole in the coating (at least 15 kv AC).

B. Make repairs to small holes in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

C. Retest the repairs using procedures listed above.

D. Furnish certificate of compliance with field testing in Owner's manual.

**END OF SECTION 22 11 16**

# SECTION 22 11 19 - PIPING AND PIPING APPURTENANCES FOR COLD WATER MAKEUP

## PART 1 - WORK INCLUDED

### 1.1 SCOPE

A. Furnish and install piping and piping appurtenances for cold water makeup piping.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 22 Plumbing
   1. Valves, Strainers and Vents
   2. Plumbing Pipe and Pipe Fittings
   3. Plumbing Piping Insulation

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Provide seamless, hard-drawn, Type L, copper water tube conforming to ASTM B88, and wrought copper fittings.

### 2.2 BACKFLOW PREVENTER

A. Watts Series 909 reduced pressure principal backflow preventer.

B. Factory assembled components as follows:
   1. Isolating, shutoff, full port ball valves.
   2. Incoming bronze strainer.
   3. Test cocks.
   4. Fixed air gap assembly.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install according to manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.2 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Provide backflow preventers at the following locations.
   1. HVAC Systems cold water make-up including chilled water, hot water and condenser water.
   2. Pumping systems including water utility service and water softening equipment.
   3. Where required by Code.

B. Installation according to manufacturer's recommendations.
   1. Connect drain with fixed air gap assembly.
      a. Pipe full size discharge from relief valve of RPZ to nearest floor drain or floor sink of proper size. Reference manufacturer’s suggested sizing of drains.
   2. Provide pipe unions on inlet, outlet and discharge connection of the assembly for complete removal.
   3. Provide isolation valve upstream of backflow assembly to allow complete removal of listed assembly.
   4. Install backflow preventer assembly horizontally in an accessible location for testing and maintenance at a height not to exceed 60" above finished floor and no lower than 12" from finished floor to air gap outlet.

C. Provide certified testing of all backflow preventers.
   1. Include certificates in O&M Manuals.

**END OF SECTION 22 11 19**

# SECTION 22 13 16 - SOIL, WASTE AND SANITARY DRAIN PIPING, VENT PIPING AND APPURTENANCES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install piping in buildings and underground laterals to 5 foot outside of building.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Site Work:
   1. Sanitary Sewers
   2. Excavation, Trenching and Backfilling for Utilities

B. Division 22 Plumbing:
   1. Pipe and Pipe Fittings
   2. Plumbing Fixtures and Fixture Carriers
   3. Drains, Cleanouts and Hydrants
   4. Earthwork

### 1.3 REFERENCES

A. CISPI - Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute

B. ASTM - American Society for Testing and Materials

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. All No-Hub clamps must have 4 bands minimum. Sizes 5” through 10” shall have six bands minimum.
   1. No-Hub Clamps – Sanitary Waste:
      a. Husky SD 4000
   2. No-Hub Clamps - Vents
      a. Husky SD – 2000
      b. Mission Rubber Co., LLC Heavy Weight Couplings
   3. Clamp-All Hi-TorQ 80 or approved equal

B. Provide Fernco “Husky” shielded couplings Series 4200 with one piece neoprene gasket for all cast iron pipe transitions to Schedule 40 DWV pipe penetrations through slabs. Sizes 1-1/2” through 8” Series 4200.

C. Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings:

1. AB&I
2. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Co.
3. Tyler Pipe / Soil Division

## 2.2 DRAIN PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Above Slab Pipe:
   1. No-hub cast iron soil pipe and fittings shall conform to CISPI 301 and ASTM A888.
   2. Pipe shall conform to ASTM A74.
   3. No-hub couplings shall meet or exceed the latest specification standard CISPI 310 or ASTM C-1540 and conform to FM 1640. CISPI 310 Couplings shall be listed by NSF International.
   4. Rubber Gaskets for cast iron soil pipe and fittings shall conform to ASTM C564
   5. All Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute

B. Below Slab on Grade Piping:
   1. Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe and DWV fittings.
   2. Solvent welded DWV joints shall conform to IAPMO Installation Standard IS-9.
   3. Pipe and fittings shall conform to ASTM D 1784, ASTM D 1785, ASTM D 2665, ASTM D 3311 and NPS Standard 14 & 61.

C. Below Slab on Grade Piping for Grease Waste as indicated on Drawings for Hot Grease Waste Discharge:
   1. Schedule 40 CPVC pipe and fittings
   2. Solvent welded DWV joints shall conform to ASTM D3311 and be produced to dimensions specified in ASTM F 2618, NSF International, UPC, IAPMO IGS 210 and International Plumbing Code.
   3. Solvent Cement, Heavy Body; mustard yellow color, as tested by ASTM F 2618 / ASTM F493
   4. Manufacturer: Spears (only)

## 2.3 VENT PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Above Slab Pipe:
   1. No-hub cast iron soil pipe and fittings shall conform to CISPI 301 and ASTM A888.
   2. Pipe shall conform to ASTM A74.
   3. No-hub couplings shall conform to CISPI 310 and shall be listed by NSF International
   4. Rubber gaskets for cast iron soil pipe and fittings shall conform to ASTM C564

B. Below Slab on Grade Piping:
   1. Provide Schedule 40 PVC with DWV fittings with solvent welded joints. Pipe and fittings shall conform to ASTM D1784-82.

C. Above Slab Pipe.
   1. Drainage-waste-vent copper pipe and fittings for waste stub-outs for all fixture locations and equipment discharge.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. All above and below slab soil, waste, sanitary drain and vent piping installation methods shall be in accordance with Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute Standards.

B. Above ground installation in the horizontal position shall be supported at every hub (hub & spigot or hubless type). Hangers are to be placed within 18" of hub or coupling. For large diameter fittings, 5 inches and larger shall be braced to prevent horizontal movement. Every branch opening or change of direction, braces, blocks, rodding or other suitable method shall be used to prevent movement. Riser clamps to be used for each floor, not to exceed 15'-0".

C. All above and below slab PVC sanitary waste and vent piping installation methods shall be in accordance with IAPMO Installation Standard 18-9 for Schedule 40 PVC-DWV, per manufacturer's recommendations and applicable standards.

D. Tracer wires shall be installed on all underground PVC sanitary sewer lines installed outside the building slab.

E. All PVC underground shall be installed in accordance with ASTM D2321.

**3.2 GRADE**

A. Give horizontal pipe grade of ¼-inch per foot where possible, but not less than 1/8 inch per foot unless otherwise shown.

**3.3 DRAIN PIPE AND FITTINGS**

A. Offsets and Fittings.
   1. Use reduction fittings to connect two pipes of different diameter.
   2. Change directions by appropriate use of 45-degree wyes, long-sweep quarter-bends, and sixth-, eights-, and sixteenth-bends. Sanitary tees can be used on vertical stacks. Use long sweeps at the base of risers.
   3. Provide a separate trap at each fixture, unless a trap is built into the fixture. Provide a deep seal trap at each floor drain and hub drain. Place traps so that the discharge from any fixture will pass through only one trap before reaching a building drain.
   4. Refer to Sanitary Drainage Code section for acceptable fittings to be used for changes in direction of drainage flow. Double combo sanitary fittings or double

wye and 1/8th bend fittings are not allowed for horizontal to horizontal piping systems per Code.

B. Cleanouts. Install cleanouts the same size as the soil waste lines in which the cleanouts are placed; however, no cleanout should be larger than 4 inches in diameter.
   1. Where cleanouts occur in pipe chases, bring the cleanouts through the walls and install covers. Where cleanouts occur in floor slabs, set flush. Reference drawing schedule.
   2. Provide cleanouts where soil lines change direction, every 50 foot on long runs, or as shown on the drawings, at the end of each horizontal waste line, and at the base of each riser (and at each increase in pipe size).
   3. Cleanouts shall occur at the end of each battery of water closets, urinals, lavatories, sinks, and single water closets. Cleanouts shall be installed so as to access the main sanitary or soil line. Extend and offset above flood rim of water closet.
   4. Double sanitary tees and double quarter bends do not allow for easy access to main lines, therefore these types of fittings are not allowed.

C. Floor Drains. Locate floor drains 1/2-inch below finish floor elevation unless otherwise shown.

**3.4 VENT PIPING**

A. Make vent connections to vent stacks with inverted wye fittings. Extend full-size vents through the roof to at least 6 inches above the roof.

B. Flash the roof penetration with 6 lb. lead flashing approximately 24 inches square. Flange the flashing to the lead sleeve. Extend the flashing up and around the vent pipe. Turn the flashing down inside the pipe at least 2 inches to make a watertight joint. Flashing shall comply with the roofing manufacturer's requirements. Reference the Architectural Drawings for exact requirements.

C. Locate vent piping through roof a minimum horizontal distance of not less than 20 feet from any air intake opening or supply fan.

3.5 TESTING

A. Below Slab on Grade and All Floors in Multi-Story Buildings:
   1. Test pipe below slab on grade before backfilling and connecting to city sewers.
   2. Maintain not less than 10 foot of hydrostatic head for1 hour without a leak.
   3. Before acceptance of the work the contractor must ensure the piping is in working order before and after the slab is poured. To ensure this the contractor must test completed systems in the presence of the Architect, Engineer and authorities having jurisdiction after installation is complete.

4. Maintain the test on the system till after the slab is poured. Provide an accessible connection that may be reviewed by Architect, Engineer and authorities having jurisdiction prior to and after the slab is poured.
5. Test drainage piping systems in accordance with governing codes and the requirements specified. Provide equipment and materials and make test connections required to execute tests.
6. Test drainage and waste piping hydraulically by filling system to its highest point or, whichever is greater, at a static head of 10 feet. Leaks at any joint shall be sufficient cause for rejection.
7. Air tests may be substituted for hydraulic tests by forcing air into the closed system at a uniform pressure sufficient to balance a column of 10 inch hg in height.
8. Under any of the previously described tests, the water height shall remain constant, after stabilization, for not less than 15 minutes without any further addition of water.

B. System Test. After the various sections of soil, waste and vent piping are installed, but before fixtures are connected, test the system by:
1. Plugging outlets.
2. Filling vertical sections of multiple story buildings of not less than three floors at a time with water. Provide wyes as required to facilitate plugging.
3. Test for 6 hours without any drop in the water level.

**3.6 RODDING SEWERS**

A. All sanitary soil and waste lines, both in the building and out, shall be rodded out and flushed out after completion of construction and prior to finish floor being installed. All work must be completed prior to substantial completion. All floor drains and cleanout locations must be included in this work.

B. All sanitary soil and waste lines below building 3” and larger shall be internally videotaped at time of substantial completion. All videotaping shall include on-screen date and time, and include audio narration. All videotaping shall be provided by experienced individual in videotaping piping systems. An Owner’s Representative shall be present during video-taping. Three copies of the videotape shall be delivered to the Owner for future records.

C. This work shall be done in the presence of the Owner’s Representative, as part of the Contract, to ensure all lines are clear, and any obstruction that may be discovered shall be removed immediately. Rodding shall be accomplished by utilizing the proper rotary head to clear sewer. Pipe sizes 8 inches and larger shall be hydro-flushed.

**3.7 SMOKE TESTING**

A. Interior Plumbing Piping:
1. Contractor shall perform smoke testing on all interior sanitary sewer piping and sanitary vent piping above and below floor prior to cover-up..

2. Artificially created smoke used must be a persistent white tracer smoke and produced by thermogenic chemical reaction. All smoke candles or smoke pencils to be used must be non-toxic and EPA approved. Provided by Superior Signal Smoke Candles.
3. All plumbing fixtures must be installed including floor drains with wetted trap seals.
4. Smoke testing shall be performed after completion of any videotaping, rodding or flushing of the sanitary system. Test must be performed prior to ceiling installation in new construction projects. Smoke is usually injected into the building through the two-way cleanout in the main sewer line leaving the building or a plumbing roof vent or fixture. Smoke will travel through the sanitary sewer and vent system and through the air spaces in the sewer lines and emanate from any leaks in the system. The smoke must reach the last roof vent in the system to indicate the entire system has been completely filled with smoke. The smoke must travel the full length of the piping system. Contractor must provide manpower as necessary to visually trace the flow of smoke through the wall cavities, annular floor/ceiling spaces, inject the smoke, observe the roof vents and to identify the integrity problems.
5. Contractor shall provide a detailed list of findings and a drawing indicating the location, fixture type, type and size of pipe, and or description of type of problems found.
6. Typical findings from indoor smoke testing may include:
    a. Dry traps in floor drains
    b. Improperly capped sewer lines or vents
    c. Broken sewer lines or vents
    d. Cross connected sewer vents and drains
    e. The drawing of air emanating from sewer vents into intakes of air exchange systems
    f. Poorly glued pipe joints
    g. Loose no-hub couplings
7. An Owner's Representative shall be present during smoke testing.

**END OF SECTION 22 13 16**

# SECTION 22 14 13 - ROOF DRAINAGE PIPING AND APPURTENANCES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install roof drains, drain pipes and accessories.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 22 Plumbing
   1. Pipe and Pipe Fittings - General; for general piping requirements.
   2. Drains and Cleanouts.
   3. Plumbing Piping Insulation.
   4. Earthwork

### 1.3 REFERENCES

A. CISPI – Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute

B. ASTM – American Society for Testing and Materials

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.0 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings
   1. AB&I
   2. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Co.
   3. Tyler Pipe / Soil Division

### 2.1 STORM PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Above Ground Pipe. Provide service weight cast iron Hub and Spigot soil pipe and fittings with compression type neoprene gaskets that conform to ASTM C-564. Pipe and fittings shall meet the requirements of ASTM A 74. All cast iron soil pipe and fittings shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute.

B. Below Slab on Grade: Provide Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe and DWV fittings with solvent welded joints. Pipe and fittings shall conform to ASTM D 1784-82.

C. Provide Fernco “Husky” shielded couplings, Series 4200 with one-piece neoprene gasket for cast iron pipe transitions to Schedule 40 DWV pipe penetrations through slabs. Sizes 2” through 8” use Series 4200.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. All above and below slab storm piping installation methods shall be in accordance with the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute Standards.

B. Above ground installation in the horizontal position shall be supported at every hub (hub & spigot or hubless type). Hangers to be placed within 18" of hub or coupling. For large diameter fittings, 5 inches and larger shall be braced to prevent horizontal movement. Every branch opening or change of direction, braces, blocks, rodding or other suitable method shall be used to prevent movement. Riser clamps to be used for each floor, not to exceed 15'-0".

C. All above and below slab PVC storm piping installation methods shall be in accordance with IAPMO Installation Standard 18-9 for Schedule 40 PVC-DWV, per manufacturer's recommendations and applicable standards, and in accordance with ASTM D2321.

## 3.2 GRADE

A. Give horizontal lines minimum grade of 1/8 inch per foot.

## 3.3 TESTING

A. Below Slab on Grade and All Floors in Multi-Story Buildings:
   1. Test pipe below slab on grade before backfilling and connecting to city sewers.
   2. Maintain not less than 10 foot of hydrostatic head for1 hour without a leak.
   3. Before acceptance of the work the contractor must ensure the piping is in working order before and after the slab is poured. To ensure this the contractor must test completed systems in the presence of the Architect, Engineer and authorities having jurisdiction after installation is complete.
   4. Maintain the test on the system till after the slab is poured. Provide an accessible connection that may be reviewed by Architect, Engineer and authorities having jurisdiction prior to and after the slab is poured.
   5. Test drainage piping systems in accordance with governing codes and the requirements specified. Provide equipment and materials and make test connections required to execute tests.
   6. Test drainage and waste piping hydraulically by filling system to its highest point or, whichever is greater, at a static head of 10 feet. Leaks at any joint shall be sufficient cause for rejection.
   7. Air tests may be substituted for hydraulic tests by forcing air into the closed system at a uniform pressure sufficient to balance a column of 10 inch hg in height.
   8. Under any of the previously described tests, the water height shall remain constant, after stabilization, for not less than 15 minutes without any further addition of water.

B. System Test. After the various sections of soil, waste and vent piping are installed, but before fixtures are connected, test the system by:
   1. Plugging outlets.

2. Filling vertical sections of multiple story buildings of not less than three floors at a time with water. Provide wyes as required to facilitate plugging.
3. Test for 6 hours without any drop in the water level.

**3.4 RODDING SEWERS**

A. All storm sewer lines, both in the building and out, shall be rodded out and flushed out after completion of construction and prior to finish floor being installed. All work must be completed prior to substantial completion. All floor drains and cleanout locations must be included in this work.

B. All storm lines below building 3” and larger shall be internally video-taped at time of substantial completion. An Owner’s Representative shall be present during video-taping. Three copies of the video-tape shall be delivered to the Owner for future records.

C. This work shall be done in the presence of the Owner’s Representative, as part of the Contract, to ensure all lines are clear, and any obstruction that may be discovered shall be removed immediately. Rodding shall be accomplished by utilizing a rotary cutter, which shall be full size of pipe being cleaned for pipe sizes up to 6 inches. Pipe sizes 8 inches and larger shall be hydro-flushed.

**END OF SECTION 22 14 13**

# SECTION 22 15 00 - SHOP COMPRESSED AIR SYSTEM

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install compressors, pipe and fittings for compressed air systems.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 22 Plumbing
   1. Control air compressors and control air piping; Control Section.
   2. Pipe and Pipe Fittings.
   3. Valves, Strainers and Vents.
   4. Vibration Isolation.

B. Division 26 - Electrical - Motors.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Provide ASTM B 88, Type L, hard-drawn copper water tube with wrought copper solder fittings, ANSI B16.22, or VIEGA Press Fittings.

D. Press fittings for copper pipe 1/2” to 4”: Copper press fittings shall conform to the material and sizing requirements of ASTM B16.18 or ASME B16.22. O-rings for copper press fittings shall be EPDM. Pro-Press System manufactured by VIEGA. The system intended for use shall be approved by submittal. Systems from various manufacturers may vary in technology. The field personnel shall carry training credentials from the approved manufacturer for the project. Mixing of fittings from different manufacturers is strictly prohibited.

### 2.2 UNIONS AND FLANGES

A. Unions. Provide unions that are 150 lb. standard (300 lb. WOG) galvanized malleable iron, ground joint unions with bronze seat. Use flange joints for pipe larger than 3 inches in diameter.

### 2.3 VALVES

A. Pressure Reducing. Provide a spring-loaded valve, with semi-steel body and stainless steel inner valve, disc seat and disc spring, adjusting spring of corrosion-resistant steel and synthetic composition diaphragm.

B. Pressure Relief. Furnish spring-loaded, bronze body relief valves with enclosed spring. Use seats specially ground for compressed air service, with trip lever.

C. Gate Valves. 3 inch and larger, 125 lb., OS&Y, IBBM.

D. Ball Valves. 1/2 inch through 2 inch, 150 lb., full port, bronze body, blow-out proof stem.

E. Check Valves. 2 inch & smaller, 300 lb. Bronze; 2-1/2 inch & larger, provide nonslam wafer type.

**2.4 ACCESSORIES**

A. Moisture Traps. Use float-operated moisture traps rated at 200 psi. Provide unit with 30 inch x 30 inch mesh screen, a full 1/4 inch drain orifice and self-cleaning drain seat. Traps used on air compressor drier, receiver and piping system shall be by same manufacturer. Install traps where shown and at all low points in the system.

B. Quick Couplings:
1. Transportation Centers: Provide with 1/2"-inch male NPT end with locking sleeve ½-inch standard hose end.
2. School shops and Labs: Provide with ¼-inch male NPT end with ¼-inch standard hose end.

C. Filter. Provide 200 psig, clear bowl filter, with reusable felt filtering element capable of removing 5 micron-size particles.

D. Electronic Drain Valve: Automatic drain valve for moisture removal from receiver tank, 120 vac, Maximum Pressure 200 PSI, Adjustable Drain Cycle 5 min. to 24 hours with non-adjustable purge time 3.5 seconds. Dynaquip Controls AD1B ½”; Grainger Item #6W175.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 DRIP LEGS**

A. Install a capped drip leg 6 inches long at the base of the vertical riser and at the ends of main piping runs with a valved drain. Pipe to the nearest floor or hub drain.

**3.2 TESTING**

A. Apply an air pressure 1-1/2 times the operating pressure, 150 psig minimum, to the system and test joints with a soap solution while lines are under pressure. Repair leaks and retest the system until pressure is maintained for four hours minimum.

**END OF SECTION**

# SECTION 22 20 00 - PLUMBING PIPE AND PIPE FITTINGS – GENERAL

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install pipe and pipe fittings for piping systems specified in Division 22 - Plumbing.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 22 Plumbing
   1. Earthwork
   2. Valves, Strainers and Vents
   3. Insulation
   4. Other Piping Sections

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. The particular type of pipe and fittings for each system is specified in the individual sections.

### 2.2 JOINTS

A. Make screwed joints using machine cut USASI taper pipe threads. Apply a suitable joint compound to the male threads only. Ream the pipe to full inside diameter after cutting. All-thread nipples are not permitted.

B. Dissimilar Metals. Make joints between copper and steel pipe and equipment using insulating unions or couplings such as Crane Company #1259; EPCO as manufactured by EPCO Sales, Inc.; or an approved equal.

C. Solder joints.
   1. Prior to making joints, cut pipe square and ream to full inside diameter. Clean exterior of pipe and socket. Apply a thin coat of suitable fluxing compound to both pipe and socket, and fit parts together immediately.
   2. Heat assembled joint only as required to cause the solder to flow. Run the joint full, slightly beaded on the outside, and wipe to remove excess solder.
   3. Use silver brazing alloy or Sil-Fos on underground water entry piping. Use lead free solder on all other copper piping.

D. Make welded joints as recommended by the standards of the American Welding Society. Ensure complete penetration of deposited metal with base metal. Provide filler metal suitable for use with base metal. Keep inside of fittings free from globules of weld metal. The use of mitered joints is not approved.

E. Flanged.
   1. Prior to installation of bolts, center and align flanged joints to prevent mechanical pre-stressing of flanges, pipe or equipment. Align bolt holes to straddle the vertical, horizontal or north-south centerline. Do not exceed 3/64" per foot inclination of the flange face from true alignment.
   2. Use flat-face companion flanges only with flat-faced fittings, valves or equipment. Otherwise, use raised-face flanges.
   3. Install gaskets suitable for the intended service and factory cut to proper dimensions. Secure with manufacturers recommended gasket cement.
   4. Use ANSI nuts and bolts, galvanized or black to match flange material. Use ANSI 316 stainless steel nuts and bolts underground. Tighten bolts progressively to prevent unbalanced stress. Draw bolts tight to ensure proper seating of gaskets.
   5. Use carbon steel flanges conforming to ANSI B16.5 with pipe materials conforming to ASTM A 105 Grade II or ASTM A 108, Grade II, ASTM A 53, Grade B. Use slip-on type flanges on pipe only. Use welding neck type flanges on all fittings. Weld slip-on flanges inside and outside.
   6. Keep flange covers on equipment while fabricating piping. Remove when ready to install in system.

F. No Hub. Hubless joints shall be made with wide body, neoprene sealing sleeve with stainless steel sleeve, coupling joints conforming to ASTM C 1277.
   1. 4" pipe size and smaller coupling housing minimum of 3" width; 24 gauge Series 300 stainless steel with hi-torque clamps; neoprene coupling gasket.
   2. 6" through 10" pipe size coupling housing minimum of 4" width.
   3. Tighten clamps to within manufacturer's tolerances using preset torque wrench.

G. Compression Gasket System. Bell and spigot cast iron pipe 4" and smaller, use flax-base lubricant, Tyler Ty-Seal Lubricant or Charlotte Regular Lubricant. 6" and larger use a neoprene base lubricant, Charlotte Adhesive Lubricant.

H. Ring-Tite Joints: Ring-Tite gasketed sewer fittings for sanitary and storm. Furnish joints for installation manufactured per ASTM/CSA, Ipex, and J.M Eagle C900. Provide adequate concrete thrust blocks at changes in direction, as recommended by manufacturer. JM Eagle pressure rated PVC water pipe. ASTM D2241 pressure rating, ASTM D3219 joints, gaskets ASTM F477.

I. Press fittings for copper pipe 1/2” to 4”: Copper press fittings shall conform to the material and sizing requirements of ASTM B16.18 or ASME B16.22. O-rings for copper press fittings shall be EPDM. Pro-Press System manufactured by VIEGA. The system intended for use shall be approved by submittal. Systems from various manufacturers may vary in technology. The field personnel shall carry training credentials from the approved manufacturer for the project. Mixing of fittings from different manufacturers is strictly prohibited.

## 2.3 UNIONS

A. Use 150 lb. standard (300 lb. WOG) malleable iron, ground joint unions with bronze seat. Provide flanged joints on piping 2-1/2" and larger.
   1. Where pipe materials of different types join, use a dielectric union. Union shall be threaded, solder or as required for its intended use.

**2.4 BRANCH CONNECTIONS**

A. Pipe 2" and Smaller. For threaded piping, use straight size reducing tee. When branch is smaller than header, a nipple and reducing coupling or swagged nipple may be used.

B. 2-1/2" through 36": For welding piping, when branch size is the same as header size, use welding tee. Use Weld-o-let when branch is smaller than header. For threaded branch connections, use 3000 lb. full coupling or Thread-o-let welded to header.

**2.5 GASKETS**

A. High Temperature Piping. Provide 1/16" thick ring gaskets of aramid reinforced SBR such as Garlock #3200 or 3400 or equal by Advanced Products and Systems.

B. Other Piping. Provide ring rubber gaskets, Garlock #7992 or equal by Advanced Products and Systems. Use 1/8" thick cloth reinforced neoprene gaskets. For smaller than 6", use 1/16" thick gasket.

**2.6 FLOORS AND CEILING PLATES**

A. Provide chrome-plated floor and ceiling plates around pipes exposed to view when passing through walls, floors, partitions, or ceilings in finished areas; size plates to fit pipe or insulation and lock in place.

**2.7 DOMESTIC MANUFACTURE**

A. All piping material, pipe and pipe fittings shall be manufactured in the United States of America unless specifically named in these specifications.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 PIPE FABRICATION AND INSTALLATION**

A. Make piping layout and installation in the most advantageous manner possible with respect to headroom, valve access, opening and equipment clearance, and clearance for other work. Give particular attention to piping in the vicinity of equipment. Preserve the required minimum access clearances to various equipment parts, as recommended by the equipment manufactured, for maintenance.

B. Cut all pipes to measurement determined at the site. After cutting pipe, remove burrs by reaming. Bevel plain ends of ferrous pipe.

C. Install piping neatly, free from unnecessary traps and pockets. Work into place without springing or forcing. Use fittings to make changes in direction. Field bending and mitering is prohibited. Make connections to equipment using flanged joints, unions or couplings. Make reducing connections with reducing fittings only.

D. Install piping without tapping out of the bottom of pipe.

E. Press Connections: Copper and steel press fittings ½" through 4" shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. The tubing/pipe shall be fully inserted into the fitting and the tubing/pipe marked at the shoulder of the fitting. The fitting alignment shall be checked against the mark on the tubing/pipe to assure the tubing/pipe is fully engaged (inserted) in the fitting. The joints shall be pressed using the tool approved by the manufacturer. If soldering (thread adapters, etc.) near press fittings, take precautions to not damage the O-ring fittings. Maintain three pipe diameters or use a cooling agent. Viega-"Pro-Press".

## 3.2 WELD

A. Weld and fabricate piping in accordance with ANSI Standard B31.1, latest edition, Code for Pressure Piping.

B. Align piping and equipment so that no part is offset more than 1/16". Set fittings and joints square and true, and preserve alignment during welding operation. Use of alignment rods inside pipe is prohibited.

C. Do not permit any weld to project within the pipe so as to restrict flows. Tack welds, if used, must be of the same material and made by the same procedure as the completed weld. Otherwise, remove tack welds during welding operation.

D. Do not split, bend, flatten or otherwise damage piping before, during or after installation.

E. Remove dirt, scale and other foreign matter from inside piping before tying into existing piping sections, fittings, valves or equipment.

F. Bevel ends of ferrous pipe.

## 3.3 OFFSETS AND FITTINGS

A. Due to the small scale of drawings, the indication of offsets and fittings is not possible. Investigate the structural and finish conditions affecting the work and take steps required to meet these conditions.

B. Install pipe close to walls, ceilings and columns so pipe will occupy minimum space. Provide proper spacing for insulation coverings, removal of pipe, special clearances, and offsets and fittings.

## 3.4 SECURING AND SUPPORTING

A. Support piping to maintain line and grade, with provision for expansion and contraction. Use approved clevis-type or trapeze-type hangers connected to structural members of the building. Single pipe runs to be supported by approved clevis type hangers. Multiple pipe runs to be supported by approved trapeze type hangers. Do not support piping from other piping or structural joist bridging.

B. Provide supports both sides of elbows for pipe 6" and larger.

C. Support vertical risers with steel strap pipe clamps of approved design and size, supported at each floor. Support piping assemblies in chases so they are rigid and self-supported before the chase is closed. Provide structural support for piping penetrating chase walls to fixtures. On cold water pipe, supports shall be outside the insulation.

D. Where insulation occurs, design hangers to protect insulation from damage. Pipe saddles and insulation shields, where required, are specified in the appropriate insulation section and are sized in accordance with the schedule on the drawings.

E. Install trapeze hangers, properly sized, to support the intended load without distortion.

F. Use electro-galvanized or zinc plated threaded rods, nuts, washers and hangers.

G. At outdoor locations, all supports, brackets and structural members shall be hot-dipped galvanized.

H. Support spacing: As recommended by the project structural engineer and support manufacturer, but not more than listed below. Not to exceed spacing requirements of smallest pipe.

| Pipe Size | Copper & Steel Max. Support Spacing, Feet | Cast Iron Max. Support Spacing, Ft. | Minimum Rod Diameter, Inches |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1" & smaller | 6 | | 3/8 |
| 1-1/4" & 1-1/2" | 8 | 5 | 3/8 |
| 2" | 10 | 5 | 3/8 |
| 3" | 10 | 5 | 1/2 |
| 4" & 5" | 10 | 5 | 5/8 |
| 6" and above | 10 | 5 | 3/4 |

## 3.5 PIPE SUPPORTS

A. Provide P1001 or P 5000 Unistrut metal framing members and appurtenances for pipe support. Hot-dip galvanize members and appurtenances when located outside. Sagging of pipes or supports is not acceptable.

B. Adjustable clevis hangers shall be used for single pipe supports; Anvil Fig. 260. When

oversized clevis is used, a nipple shall be placed over the clevis bolt as a spacer to assure that the lower U-strap will not move in on the bolt. Provide adjustable clevis with a nut / washer above and below the hanger on the support rod. Ring type clevis hangers are not acceptable.

C. Provide Anvil Figure 45 galvanized or primed and painted channel assembly for trapeze hangers.

## 3.6 PIPE SUPPORTS ON ROOF

A. Support gas pipe on roof with Portable Pipe Hanger Model PP-10 with roller and fully adjustable height throughout pipe run. Base material shall be high density / high impact polypropylene with UV inhibitors and anti-oxidants. Provide with hot dip galvanized rod finish and framing. Nuts and washers shall be hot dip galvanized.

## 3.7 ANCHORS

A. Provide anchors as required. Use pipe anchors consisting of heavy steel collars with lugs and bolts for clamping to pipe and attaching anchor braces. Install anchor braces in the most effective manner to secure desired results. Do not install supports, anchors or similar devices where they will damage construction during installation or because of the weight or the expansion of the pipe. When possible, install sleeves in structural concrete prior to pouring of concrete.

## 3.8 FLOOR PENETRATIONS

A. At locations where pipe passes through floors, provide watertight concrete curb around penetration.

## 3.9 PIPE SLEEVES

A. Sleeves through masonry and concrete construction:
   1. Fabricate sleeves of Schedule 40 galvanized steel pipe.
   2. Size sleeve large enough to allow for movement due to expansion and to provide continuous insulation.

B. Sleeves through gypsum wall construction.
   1. Fabricate sleeves of 16 gauge galvanized sheet metal.

C. Sleeves through elevated slab construction.
   1. Fabricate sleeves of Schedule 40 galvanized steel pipe with welded center flange in floor.

D. Extend each sleeve through the floor or wall. Cut the sleeve flush with each wall surface. Sleeves through floors shall extend 2” above floor lines for waterproofing purposes. Slab on grade floors shall not be sleeved except where penetrating waterproofing membrane or insect control is required.

E. Caulk sleeves water and air tight. Seal annular space between pipes and sleeves with mastic compound to make the space water and air tight.

F. For sleeves below grades in outside walls, provide Thunderline Link-Seal or Advance Product and System Interlynx, with 316 stainless steel nuts and bolts, with cast iron pressure plate.

G. Provide chrome plated escutcheon plates on pipes passing through walls, floors or ceilings exposed to view. At exterior walls, stainless steel sheet metal is to be used.

H. For sleeves through fire and smoke rated walls, seal with a UL through-penetration firestop, rated to maintain the integrity of the time rated construction. Install in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Comply with UL and NFPA standards for the installation of firestops. Refer to Architectural drawings for all fire and smoke rated partitions, walls, floors, etc.

**3.10 ISOLATION VALVES**

A. Provide piping systems with line size shutoff valves located at the risers, at main branch connections to mains for equipment, to isolate central plant, and at other locations.

**3.11 DRAIN VALVES**

A. Install drain valves at low points of water piping systems so that these systems can be entirely drained. Install a line size drain valve for pipes smaller than 2" unless indicated otherwise. For pipes 2-1/2" and larger, provide 2" drain valves unless indicated otherwise. Drain valves shall be plugged when not in use and at completion.

**3.12 CLEANING OF PIPING SYSTEMS**

A. General cleaning of piping systems. Purge pipe of construction debris and contamination before placing the systems in service. Provide and install temporary connections as required to clean, purge and circulate.

B. Install temporary strainers at the inlet of pumps and other equipment as necessary where permanent strainers are not indicated. Keep strainers in service until the equipment has been tested, then remove either entire strainer or straining element only. Fit strainers with a line size blow down ball valve and pipe to nearest drain. Blow down strainers, remove and clean as frequently as necessary.

C. Phase One: Initial flushing of system. Remove loose dirt, mill scale, weld beads, rust and other deleterious substances without damage to system components. Open valves, drains, vents and strainers at all system levels during flushing procedures. Flush until “potable water clear” and particles larger than 5 microns are removed.

D. Connect dead-end supply and return headers, even if not shown on the drawings, and

provide terminal drains in bottom of pipe end caps or blind flanges.

E. Dispose of water in approved manner.

F. Phase Two: Cleaning of Piping Systems. Remove, without chemical or mechanical damage to any system component, adherent dirt (organic soil), oil, grease, (hydrocarbons), soldering flux, mill varnish, piping compounds, rust (iron oxide) and other deleterious substances not removed by initial flushing. Flush system and replace with clean water.

G. Phase Three: Final flushing and rinsing: Flush and rinse until “potable water clear” and particles larger than 5 microns are removed. Operate valves to dislodge any debris in valve body. Dispose of water in approved manner.

H. Submit status reports upon completion of each phase of work on each system.

## 3.13 TESTING

A. Test piping after installation with water hydrostatic pressure of 1-1/2 times operating pressure (150 psig minimum) and carefully check for leaks. Repair leaks and retest system until proven watertight.

B. Do not insulate or conceal piping systems until tests are satisfactorily complete.

C. If any leaks or other defects are observed, suspend the test and correct the condition at once. Repeat testing until leaks are eliminated and the full test period is achieved.

D. The satisfactory completion of testing does not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for ultimate proper and satisfactory operation of piping systems and their accessories.

## 3.14 PIPE MARKERS

A. Identify interior exposed piping and piping in accessible chases or plenums with Opti-Code Brady Pressure Sensitive Adhesive Pipe Markers, consisting of pipe marker and direction of flow arrow tape. Clean pipe prior to installation. Background colors of markers, arrows and tape for each type of system shall be the same. Meet ANSI/OSHA standards and clearly identify each system. Provide minimum 2-1/4-inch letters through 4-inch pipe and 4-inch letters for 5-inch pipe and larger.

B. Identify exterior and mechanical room piping with Snap Around pipe markers through 4-inch pipe and Strap Around markers 5-inch pipe and larger. Pipe markers consisting of pipe marker and direction of flow arrow tape; background colors of markers, arrows and type for each type of system shall be the same. Meet ANSI / OSHA standards and clearly identify each system. Provide minimum 2-1/4-inch letters through 4-inch pipe and 4-inch letters for 5-inch pipe and larger.

C. Install identification in the following locations:

1. Both sides of penetrations through walls, floors and ceilings.
2. Close to valves or flanges.
3. Intervals on straight pipe runs not to exceed 50 feet
4. Apply marker where view is obstructed.

D. Pipe markers shall meet or exceed the specifications of the ASME A13.1 “Scheme for Identification of Piping Systems”.

**END OF SECTION 22 20 00**

# SECTION 22 40 00 - PLUMBING FIXTURES AND FIXTURE CARRIERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install water closets, urinals, lavatories, electric drinking fountains, fixture carriers and plumbing appurtenances.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 22 Plumbing
   1. Drains, Hydrants and Cleanouts.
   2. Domestic Water Piping.
   3. Soil, Waste and Sanitary Drain Piping and Vent Piping.

### 1.3 JOB REQUIREMENTS

A. Furnish plumbing fixtures and trim as shown and specified. Provide faucets, fittings, supply stops and similar devices of a single manufacturer. Furnish faucets and supply stops with renewable seats. Porcelain to steel and enameled cast iron fixtures shall be acid resistant. Wall hung fixtures shall be installed with a fixture carrier.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Plumbing Fixtures (Vitreous China):
   1. American Standard.

B. Plumbing Faucets:
   1. Chicago.

C. Supports and Carriers:
   1. Wade
   2. Zurn
   3. J.R. Smith.
   4. Josam.
   5. Watts
   6. MIFAB

D. Flush Valves:
   1. Sloan
   2. Zurn

E. Supplies, Stops and Chrome Plated Tubular Brass:
   1. McGuire

2. Chicago
3. Zurn

F. Water Closet Seats:
1. Beneke
2. Church
3. Olsonite
4. Bemis
5. Centoco

G. Electric Drinking Fountains:
1. Halsey Taylor
2. Elkay
3. Oasis
4. Haws

H. Floor Drains:
1. Wade
2. J.R. Smith
3. Josam
4. Zurn
5. Watts
6. Sioux Chief
7. MIFAB

I. Cleanouts:
1. Wade
2. J.R. Smith
3. Josam
4. Zurn
5. Watts
6. MIFAB

J. Shower Valves
1. Chicago
2. Acorn
3. Symmons
4. Bradley
5. Moen Commercial

K. Stainless Steel Sinks:
1. Elkay
2. Just
3. Franke

L. Mop Sinks:
1. Crane Fiat

2. Stern Williams
3. Acorn

M. Service Sinks:
1. American Standard
2. Kohler
3. Eljer

N. Roof Drains:
1. Wade
2. J.R. Smith
3. Josam
4. Zurn
5. Watts
6. MIFAB

O. Thermostatic Mixing Valves
1. Lawler
2. Symmons
3. Leonard
4. Powers
5. Holby
6. Bradley

P. Emergency Safety Equipment
1. Speakman
2. Bradley
3. Encon
4. Guardian
5. Haws

Q. Shock Arrestors:
1. Precision Products
2. Sioux Chief

R. Backflow Preventors
1. Watts

S. Hose Bibbs
1. Wade
2. Chicago
3. Josam
4. Woodford
5. Zurn
6. J.R. Smith
7. MIFAB

T. Wall Hydrants
   1. Wade
   2. Woodford
   3. Zurn
   4. J.R. Smith
   5. Josam
   6. MIFAB

U. Solids Interceptors
   1. Wade
   2. J.R. Smith
   3. Zurn
   4. Josam
   5. MIFAB

**2.2 REQUIREMENTS**

A. Refer to the drawings for equipment to be supplied.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. Installation shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

B. Make rough-in and final connection of service to each fixture provided under this Section and other Sections or Architectural or Plumbing Drawings.

C. Provide necessary stops, valves, traps, unions, vents, cold water, hot water, sanitary, etc. for a complete installation.

D. Provide isolation valves in domestic water lines to isolate all equipment, restrooms, hose bibbs, and where shown on drawings.

E. Remove piping and services roughed-in incorrectly and install correctly, without cost.

F. Exposed piping, fittings and appurtenances shall be chrome-plated brass.

G. Coordinate with the Contractor for locations and service required for each plumbing fixture.

H. All floor drains and floor sinks shall have Pro-Set “Trap Guard” for trap seal protection.

I. All floor drains and floor sink locations are to be coordinated with all equipment. Locate drains in mechanical equipment spaces to conform to drain locations of equipment furnished. Coordinate drain location with food service equipment and Architectural Drawings.

J. All floor drains, floor sinks and cleanout covers are to be provided with stainless steel vandal resistant screws.

K. Trap primer valves installed in concealed spaces shall have approved access doors for accessibility.

**END OF SECTION 22 40 00**

# SECTION 22 63 11 - GAS PIPING AND APPURTENANCES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install steel gas pipe inside buildings, including the supply line from the meter, service lines to gas equipment and appliances, termination of the service line with a plug valve, drip leg, and final connection to equipment and appliances with unions.

B. Coordinate service line from utility main and extend to meter. Coordinate installation of the service line and meter with Gas Company.

C. Extend steel gas piping from meter to inside the building to all fixtures, appliances and equipment requiring gas.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 22 Plumbing
   1. Plumbing Pipe and Fittings
   2. Valves and Vents

### 1.3 UTILITY CONNECTIONS

A. Make arrangements for and pay all fees and connection charges for obtaining service to the building.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPE AND FITTINGS - ABOVE GRADE

A. Pipe 2 inch and Smaller:
   1. Schedule 40 ASTM A 53 black steel pipe
   2. Factory fabricated socket weld fittings.

B. Pipe Larger than 2 inch:
   1. Schedule 40 ASTM A 53 black steel pipe.
   2. Factory fabricated butt weld fittings for welded steel pipes shall conform to ASTM A-234 WPB (seamless weld fittings).

C. Unions:
   1. Standard 150 lb. (300 lb. water, oil or gas) malleable iron.
   2. Ground joint unions, with bronze seat.
   3. Flange joints for pipe larger than 2 inch in diameter.

D. Flanges:
   1. Steel flanges. ANSI B16.5 and ASTM A-105.

### 2.2 PIPE AND FITTINGS - BELOW GRADE OUTSIDE BUILDING

A. Polyethylene pipe shall be ASTM D3350 Grade PE24 cell classification and ASTM D1248 Class B material classification.

B. Pipe shall be medium density polyethylene PE 2406 and PE 2708 manufactured by Poly Pipe Industries, Inc. or Performance Pipe.

C. Polyethylene yellow molded butt fittings for use with medium density polyethylene pipe shall meet testing requirements of ASTM D2513 and resin material listing of ASTM D3350 with PPI designation of PE 2406 as manufactured by Central Plastics Co.

## 2.4 VALVES

A. See Section 22 05 23.

## 2.5 GAS PRESSURE REGULATOR

A. Size the gas pressure regulator in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for flow quantities and reduced pressure as required for all equipment. Coordinate final equipment gas pressure requirements prior to ordering regulators. Provide American Meter Company regulators or approved equal, suitable for outdoor installation. Regulators outside exposed to weather shall be installed with vent in vertical down position.

B. All line pressure regulators shall be listed in accordance with ANSI (American National Standard) Z21.80 and CSA (Canadian Standards Association Standard) 6.22.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Installation Standards: Install gas piping in accordance with recommendations of the National Fire Protection Association.

B. Drip Legs: Install a capped drip leg 6 inches long at the base of each vertical rise.

C. Coating and Wrapping. Coat and wrap underground piping in accordance with the service utility company standards.

D. Sleeves.
1. Encase gas piping running in or through solid partitions with thin wall metal conduit. Sleeve piping and fittings shall be two pipe sizes, but not less than 1 inch larger than encased gas piping.
2. Encase gas piping running below slab in Schedule 40 PVC, minimum size two pipe sizes larger than gas pipe. Vent sleeve to atmosphere with a 1-1/2 inch vent with 1-1/2 inch return bend above building roof. Seal ends of sleeve with UL fire rated caulk.

E. Do not install gas piping exposed to view inside public area, or occupied spaces, without prior written approval.

F. Weld all gas piping above grade.

G. Provide test ports and isolation valves to enable proper testing of system in the future.

H. Provide isolation valve and unions across regulators for proper removal.

I. Provide transition risers where below grade polyethylene pipe changes to steel pipe above grade.

J. Gas Pressure Regulators / Vents:
1. Piping shall be sized in accordance with the regulator manufacturer’s

instructions. Never use pipe sizes smaller than the vent size; smaller pipe sizes restrict the gas flow. Where there is more than one regulator at a location, each regulator shall have a separate vent to the roof / outdoors. Headers with various installed devices can cause regulator malfunction.

2. Support the vent pipe to eliminate strain on the regulator diaphragm case.
3. Install vent piping from regulators to location to prevent gas smells from entering building. Do not locate the vent line terminus near windows, fans, or other ventilation equipment. See the installation instructions furnished with the regulator.
4. Install double elbows and insect screen at end of piping to prevent moisture and insects from entering. Always point outdoor vent pipes in the downward position to reduce the possibility of rain, snow, sleet, and other moisture entering the pipe.
5. When installed inside building route vents horizontally and terminate through building sidewall. The vent must be piped to the outside atmosphere using the shortest length of pipe, the fewest possible pipe elbows, and a pipe diameter as large as the vent size or larger. If a long gas run must be used, increase the pipe one nominal size every ten feet to keep the flow restriction as low as possible. Vents terminating through roof must have prior approval from Architect before installation. Through roof penetrations shall be minimized.
6. Regulators installed outside or on roof top: Install regulator vent turned downward with insect screen over vent opening. The vent shall be designed to prevent the entry of water, insects, or other foreign materials that could cause blockage.
7. Ensure the end of the vent line is away from ANY potential ignition sources. It is the installer's responsibility to ensure the vent line is exhausting to a safe environment
8. Adhere to all applicable codes and regulations.

## 3.2 TESTING GAS PIPING

A. Preliminary gas test as required by Code, but minimum test pressure of 50 PSI held for not less than eight hours without noticeable drop.

B. Test joints with a soap solution while lines are under pressure.

C. Repair leaks.

D. Final gas test shall be with a 24 inch column of mercury or a diaphragm gauge with a minimum dial size of 3-1/2 inches with a set hand and a pressure range not to exceed twenty (20) psig with 2/10-pound increments. The minimum test pressure shall not be less than ten (10) psi and the maximum test pressure shall not exceed twelve (12) psig. This test will be observed for no less than (30) thirty minutes with no drop in pressure.

E. Provide copy of gas pressure test reports in Operations & Maintenance Manual.

F. Provide Railroad Commission of Texas Pipeline Safety Form PS-86B.
   1. To find form online, go to: Texas School Gas Test Form

G. School renovations projects shall have all gas piping tested. Report and document gas leaks found to the Architect and Engineer. Repair leaks at no additional cost to the Owner.

## 3.3 IDENTIFICATION CONDUCTOR

A. Spiral A #12 AWG insulated copper conductor the full length of the thermoplastic piping

system. Fasten to the pipe at 3 foot intervals with plastic tie wraps.

B. Terminate at each end in a 12 inch x 12 inch x 4 inch FRP junction box.
   1. Bolted gasketed cover with stainless steel screws.
   2. Screw type terminal strip.
   3. Legend on cover "gas pipe identification conductor."

C. Set in concrete pad.

**3.4 PAINT EXPOSED OUTSIDE GAS PIPE**

A. Interior and Exterior Gas piping shall be protected from rust.

B. Paint pipe with a flat alkyd coating, clean pipe prior to painting by preparing surface by hand tool cleaning per SSPC-SP2-82, applying one coat of Glidden Y-590 Rustmaster Metal Primer White and top coat of Yellow Alkyd Flat Enamel.

**END OF SECTION 22 63 11**

# SECTION 23 01 00 - HVAC OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Compilation product data and related information appropriate for Owner's operation and maintenance of products furnished under Contract. Prepare operating and maintenance data as specified.

B. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation and maintenance of equipment and systems.

C. Submit three copies of complete manual in final form.

### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Thirty (30) days after the Contractor has received the final scheduled identified submittals bearing the Architect/Engineer's stamp of acceptance (including resubmittals), submit for review one copy of the first draft of the Operating and Maintenance Manual. This copy shall contain as a minimum:
   1. Table of Contents for each element.
   2. Contractor information.
   3. All submittals, coordination drawings and product data, reviewed by the Architect/Engineer; bearing the Architect/Engineer's stamp of acceptance. (When submittals are returned from Engineer "Correct as Noted", corrected inserts shall be included.)
   4. All parts and maintenance manuals for items of equipment.
   5. Warranties (without starting dates)
   6. Certifications that have been completed. Submit forms and outlines of certifications that have not been completed.
   7. Operating and maintenance procedures.
   8. Form of Owner's Training Program Syllabus (including times and dates).
   9. Control operations/equipment wiring diagrams.
   10. Schedule of filters for each item of equipment.
   11. Schedule of belts for each item of equipment.
   12. Other required operating and maintenance information that are complete.

B. Copy will be returned to the Contractor within 15 days with comments for corrections.

C. Submit three (3) completed manuals in final form to the Architect/Engineer one day after substantial completion, and prior to Owner's instructions. Include all specified data, test and balance reports, drawings, dated warranties, certificates, reports, along with other materials and information.

D. The Architect/Engineer will review the manuals for completeness within fifteen (15) days.

E. The Contractor shall be notified of any missing or omitted materials. The Manuals shall be reworked by the Contractor, as required, in the office of the Architect / Engineer. The manuals will not be retransmitted.

F. Two (2) complete Manuals will be delivered to the Owner.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 BINDERS**

A. Commercial quality black three-ring binders with clear overlay plastic covers.

B. Minimum ring size: 1"; Maximum ring size: 3".

C. When multiple binders are used, correlate the data into related groupings.

D. Label contents on spine and face of binder with full size insert. Label under plastic cover.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

A. Form for Manuals:
   1. Prepare data in form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's personnel.
   2. Format:
      a. Size: 8-1/2" x 11".
      b. Text: Manufacturer's printed data or neatly typewritten.
   3. Drawings:
      a. Provide reinforced punched binder tab and bind in text.
      b. Fold larger drawings to size of text pages.
   4. Provide flyleaf indexed tabs for each separate product or each piece of operating equipment.
   5. Cover: Identify each volume with typed or printed title "Operating and Maintenance Instructions". List:
      a. Title of Project
      b. Identity of separate structures as applicable.
      c. Identity of general subject matter covered in the manual.
   6. Binder as specified.

B. Content of Manual:
   1. Neatly typewritten Table of Contents for each volume arranged in systematic order as outlined in the specifications.
      a. Contractor, name of responsible principal, address and telephone number.
      b. A list of each product required to be included, indexed to content of the volume.
      c. List with each product, name, address and telephone number of:

1) Subcontractor or installer.
2) Maintenance contractor as appropriate.
3) Identify area of responsibility of each.
4) Local source of supply for parts and replacement.

d. Identify each product by product name and other identifying symbols as set forth in Contract Documents.

2. Product Data:
   a. Include those sheets pertinent to the specific product.
   b. Annotate each sheet to:
      1) Identify specific product or part installed.
      2) Identify data applicable to installation.
      3) Delete references to inapplicable information. (All options not supplied with equipment shall be marked out indicated in some manner.
3. Drawings:
   a. Supplement product data with drawings as necessary to illustrate:
      1) Relations of component parts of equipment and systems.
      2) Control and flow diagrams.
   b. Coordinate drawings with information in Project Record Documents to assure correct illustration of completed installation.
   c. Do not use Project Record Documents as maintenance drawings.
4. Written text, as required to supplement product data for the particular installation:
   a. Organize in consistent format under separate headings for different procedures.
   b. Provide logical sequence of instructions for each procedure.
5. Copy of each warranty, bond and service contract issued.
   a. Provide information sheet for Owner's personnel, giving:
      1) Proper procedures in event of failure.
      2) Instances that might affect validity of warranties or bonds.
6. Shop drawings, coordination drawings and product data as specified.

C. Sections for Equipment and Systems.
1. Content for each unit of equipment and system as appropriate:
   a. Description of unit and component parts.
      1) Function, normal operating characteristics, and limiting conditions.
      2) Performance curves, engineering data and tests.
      3) Complete nomenclature and commercial number of replaceable parts.
   b. Operating procedures:
      1) Start up, break-in, routine and normal operating instructions.
      2) Regulation, control, stopping, shut down and emergency instructions.
      3) Summer and winter operating instructions.
      4) Special operating instructions.
   c. Maintenance procedures:

1) Routine operations
2) Guide to trouble-shooting.
3) Disassembly, repair and reassembly.
4) Alignment, adjusting and checking.
5) Routine service based on operating hours.

d. Servicing and lubrication schedule. List of lubricants required.
e. Manufacturer's printed operating and maintenance instructions.
f. Description of sequence of operation by control manufacturer.
g. Original manufacturer's parts list, illustrations, assembly drawings and diagrams required for maintenance.
1) Predicted life of part subject to wear.
2) Items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
h. As installed control diagrams by controls manufacturer.
i. Complete equipment internal wiring diagrams.
j. Schedule of filters for each air handling system.
k. Schedule of belts for each item of equipment.
l. Each Contractor's coordination drawings.
m. As installed color coded piping diagrams.
n. Charts of valve tag number, with location and function of each valve.
o. List of original manufacturer's spare parts and recommended quantities to be maintained in storage.
p. Other data as required under pertinent sections of the specifications.

2. Prepare and include additional data when the need for such data becomes apparent during instruction of Owner's personnel.
3. Additional requirements for operating and maintenance data as outlined in respective sections of specifications.
4. Provide complete information for products specified in Division 23.
5. Provide certificates of compliance as specified in each related section.
6. Provide start up reports as specified in each related section.
7. Provide signed receipts for spare parts and material.
8. Provide training report and certificates.
9. Provide extended compressor warranty certificates.

**END OF SECTION 23 01 00**

# SECTION 23 05 00 - MECHANICAL GENERAL PROVISIONS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Except as modified in this Section, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, applicable provisions of the General Requirements, and other provisions and requirements of the contract documents apply to work of Division 23 Mechanical.

B. Applicable provisions of this section apply to all sections of Division 23, Mechanical.

### 1.2 CODE REQUIREMENTS AND FEES

A. Perform work in accordance with applicable statutes, ordinances, codes and regulations of governmental authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Mechanical work shall comply with applicable inspection services:
1. Underwriters Laboratories
2. National Fire Protection Association
3. State Health Department
4. Local Municipal Building Inspection Department
5. Texas Department of Licensing & Regulations (ADA)

C. Resolve any code violations discovered in contract documents with the Engineer prior to award of the contract. After Contract award, any correction or additions necessary for compliance with applicable codes shall be made at no additional cost to the Owner.

D. This Contractor shall be responsible for being aware of and complying with asbestos NESHAP regulations, as well as all other applicable codes, laws and regulations.

E. Obtain all permits required.

### 1.3 CONTRACTOR'S QUALIFICATIONS

A. An approved contractor for the work under this division shall be:
1. A specialist in this field and have the personnel, experience, training, skill, and organization to provide a practical working system
2. Able to furnish evidence of having contracted for and installed not less than 3 systems of comparable size and type that has served their Owners satisfactorily for not less than 3 years

### 1.4 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARDS

A. Materials which are specified by reference to Federal Specifications; ASTM, ASME, ANSI, or AWWA Specifications; Federal Standards; or other standard specifications must comply with latest editions, revisions, amendments or supplements in effect on date

bids are received. Requirements in reference specifications and standards are minimum for all equipment, material, and work. In instances where specified capacities, size, or other features of equipment, devices, or materials exceed these minimums, meet specified capacities.

## 1.5 CONTRACT DRAWINGS

A. Contract drawings are diagrammatic only and do not give fully dimensioned locations of various elements of work. Determine exact locations from field measurements.

## 1.6 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

A. Maintain at the job site a separate set of white prints (black line) of the contract drawings for the sole purpose of recording the "as-built" changes and diagrams of those portions of work in which actual construction is at variance with the contract drawings. Mark the drawings with a colored pencil. Prepare, as the work progresses and upon completion of work, reproducible drawings clearly indicating locations of various lines, valves, ductwork, traps, equipment, and other pertinent items, as installed. Include flow-line elevation of sewer lines. Record existing and new underground and under slab piping with dimensioned locations and elevations of such piping.

B. At the conclusion of project, obtain without cost to the Owner, erasable mylars of the original drawings and transfer as-built changes to these. Prior to transmittal of corrected drawings, obtain 3 sets of blue-line prints of each drawing, regardless of whether corrections were necessary and include in the transmittal (2 sets are for the Owner's use and one set is for the Architect/Engineer's records). Delivery of these as-built prints and reproducibles is a condition of final acceptance. Provide record drawings on one set each (reproducible Dayrex mylar film positives) and AutoCad 2014 / Revit CAD files on disk (CD Rom).

C. As-Built drawings should indicate the following information as a minimum:
   1. Indicate all addendum changes to documents.
   2. Remove Engineer’s seal, name, address and logo from drawings.
   3. Mark documents RECORD DRAWINGS.
   4. Clearly indicate: DOCUMENT PRODUCED BY
   5. Indicate all changes to construction during construction. Indicate actual routing of all piping, ductwork, etc. that were deviated from construction drawings.
   6. Indicate exact location of all underground mechanical piping and elevation.
   7. Indicate exact location of all underground electrical raceways and elevations.
   8. Correct schedules to reflect (actual) equipment furnished and manufacturer.
   9. Location and size of all ductwork and mechanical piping above ceiling including exact location of isolation of domestic and mechanical valves.
   10. Exact location of all electrical equipment in and outside of the building.
   11. Exact location of all roof mounted equipment, wall, roof and floor penetrations.
   12. Cloud all changes.

## 1.7 SPACE REQUIREMENTS

A. Consider space limitations imposed by contiguous work in selection and location of equipment and material. Do not provide equipment or material that is not suitable in this respect.

**1.8 RELATION WITH OTHER TRADES**

A. Carefully study all matters and conditions concerning the project. Submit notification of conflict in ample time to prevent unwarranted changes in any work. Review other Divisions of these specifications to determine their requirements.

B. Because of the complicated relationship of this work to the total project, conscientiously study the relation and cooperate as necessary to accomplish the full intent of the documents.

C. Provide sleeves and inserts in forms as required for the work. Stub up and protect open ends of pipe before any concrete is placed. Furnish sizes of required equipment pads. Furnish and locate bolts and fittings required to be cast in them.

D. Locate and size openings required for installation of work specified in this Division in sufficient time to prevent delay in the work.

E. Refer to other Divisions of the specifications for the scope of required connections to equipment furnished under that Division. Determine from the Contractor for the various trades, the Owner, and by direction from the Architect/Engineer, the exact location of all items.

**1.9 CONCEALED AND EXPOSED WORK**

A. When the word "concealed" is used in connection with insulating, painting, piping, ducts and the like, the work is understood to mean hidden from sight as in chases, furred spaces or above ceilings. "Exposed" is understood to mean open to view.

**1.10 GUARANTEE**

A. Guarantee work for 1 year from the date of substantial completion of the project. During that period make good any faults or imperfections that may arise due to defects or omissions in material, equipment or workmanship. At the Owner's option, replacement of failed parts or equipment shall be provided.

**1.11 MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT**

A. Furnish new and unused materials and equipment meeting the requirements of the paragraph specifying acceptable manufacturers. Where two or more units of the same type or class of equipment are required, provide units of a single manufacturer.

**1.12 NOISE AND VIBRATION**

A. Select equipment to operate with minimum noise and vibration. If objectionable noise or vibration is produced or transmitted to or through the building structure by equipment, piping, ducts or other parts of work, rectify such conditions at no additional cost. If the item of equipment is judged to produce objectionable noise or vibration, demonstrate at no additional cost that equipment performs within designated limits on a vibration chart.

**1.13 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS**

A. Manufacturers names and catalog number specified under sections of Division 23 are used to establish standards of design, performance, quality and serviceability and not to limit competition. Equipment of similar design, equal to that specified, manufactured by a named manufacturer will be acceptable on approval. A request for prior approval of equipment not listed must be submitted ten (10) days before bid due date. Submit complete design and performance data to the Engineer.

**1.14 OPERATING TESTS**

A. After all mechanical systems have been completed and put into operation, subject each system to an operating test under design conditions to ensure proper sequencing and operation throughout the range of operation. Tests shall be made in the presence of the Architect/Engineer. Make adjustments as required to ensure proper functioning of all systems. Special tests on individual systems are specified under individual sections. Submit 3 copies of all certifications and test reports adequately in advance of completion of the work to allow for remedial action as required to correct deficiencies discovered in equipment and systems.

**1.15 WARRANTIES**

A. Submit 3 copies of all warranties and guarantees for systems, equipment, devices and materials. These shall be included in the Operating and Maintenance Manuals.

**1.16 BUILDING CONSTRUCTION**

A. It shall be the responsibility of each sub-contractor to consult the Architectural and Engineering drawings, details, and specifications and thoroughly familiarize himself with the project and all job related requirements. Each sub-contractor shall cooperate with the General Contractor to verify that all piping and other items are placed in the walls, furred spaces, chases, etc., so there will be no delays in the job.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS – NOT USED**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 OPENINGS**

A. Framed, cast or masonry openings for ductwork, equipment or piping are specified under other divisions. Drawings and layout work for exact size and location of all openings are included under this division.

## 3.2 AIR FILTERS AND PIPE STRAINERS

A. Immediately prior to substantial completion of the project, inspect, clean and service air filters and strainers. Replace air filters.

## 3.3 LUBRICATION, REFRIGERANT AND OIL

A. Provide a complete charge of correct lubricant for each item of equipment requiring lubrication.

B. Provide a complete and working charge of proper refrigerant, free of contaminants, into each refrigerant system. After each system has been in operation long enough to ensure completely balanced conditions, check the charge and modify for proper operation as required.

C. Provide a complete charge of special oil for refrigeration use, suitable for operation with refrigerant, in each system.

## 3.4 HOUSEKEEPING PADS

A. Provide equipment housekeeping pads under all floor mounted and ground mounted HVAC equipment, and as shown on the drawings.

B. Concrete work as specified in Division 3.

C. Concrete pads:
   1. 4" high, rounded edges, minimum 2500 psi unless otherwise indicated on the drawings
   2. Chamfer strips at edges and corner of forms.
   3. Smooth steel trowel finish.
   4. Doweled to existing slab

D. Install concrete curbs around duct penetrations or multiple pipe penetrations.

## 3.5 INSTRUCTION OF OWNER'S PERSONNEL

A. Prior to final inspection, conduct an on-site training program to instruct the Owner's operating personnel in the operation and maintenance of the mechanical systems.
   1. Provide the training during the Owner's regular working day.
   2. The Instructors shall each be experienced in their phase of operation and maintenance of building mechanical systems and with the project.

B. Time to be allocated for instructions.

1. Minimum of 40 hours dedicated instructor time.
2. 8 hours on each of 5 days.

C. Before proceeding with the on-site training program, submit the program syllabus; proposed time and dates; and other pertinent information for review and approval.
1. One copy to the Owner.
2. One copy to the Architect/Engineer.

D. The Owner will provide a list of personnel to receive instructions, and will coordinate their attendance at the agreed upon times.

E. Use the operation and maintenance manuals as the basis of instruction. Review contents of manual with personnel in detail to explain all aspects of operation and maintenance.

F. Demonstrate start-up, operation, control, adjustment, trouble-shooting, servicing, maintenance, and shut down of each item of equipment.

G. Demonstrate equipment functions (both individually and as part of the total integrated system).

H. Prepare and insert additional data in the operating and maintenance manuals when the need for additional data becomes apparent during instructions.

I. Submit a report within one week after completion of the training program that instructions have been satisfactorily completed. Give time and date of each demonstration and hours devoted to the demonstration, with a list of people present.

J. At the conclusion of the on-site training program, have the person designated by the Owner sign a certificate to certify that he/she has a proper understanding of the system, that the demonstrations and instructions have been satisfactorily completed, and the scope and content of the operating and maintenance manuals used for the training program are satisfactory.

K. Provide a copy of the report and the certificate in an appropriately tabbed section of each Operating and Maintenance Manual.

**3.6 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION**

A. Provide a laminated engraved plastic nameplate on each piece of equipment and starter.
1. Designation approved by Architect/Engineer.
2. Equipment includes, but is not limited to, air handling units, fan coil units, variable volume boxes, fans, pumps, boilers and chillers.
3. Submit schedule of equipment to be included and designations.

B. Provide nameplates with 1/2" high letters and fastened with epoxy or screws.

## 3.7 OBSTRUCTIONS

A. The drawings indicate certain information pertaining to surface and subsurface obstructions which has been taken from available drawings. Such information is not guaranteed, however, as to accuracy of location or complete information.
   1. Before any cutting or trenching operations are begun, verify with Owner's representative, utility companies, municipalities, and other interested parties that all available information has been provided.
   2. Should obstruction be encountered, whether shown or not, alter routing of new work, reroute existing lines, remove obstruction where permitted, or otherwise perform whatever work is necessary to satisfy the purpose of the new work and leave existing services and structures in a satisfactory and serviceable condition.

B. Assume total responsibility for and repair any damage to existing utilities or construction, whether or not such existing facilities are shown.

## 3.8 PROTECTION

A. Protect work, equipment, fixtures, and materials. At work completion, work must be clean and in original manufacturer's condition.

## 3.9 INDOOR AIR QUALITY

A. All equipment and ductwork shall be installed to allow sufficient space for testing, maintenance, and commissioning functions. Access doors or panels shall be installed in ventilation equipment, ductwork, and plenum enclosures for inspection and cleaning of outdoor air intakes, mixing plenums, up and downstream of coils, filters, drain pans and fans.

B. Practice source control and eliminate potential contaminants in material selection, installation, and maintenance.

C. Provide installation and disposal instructions for all materials and chemicals that are potential contaminants.

D. Obtain and conform to the requirements of the Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDSs) in the use of materials.

E. Utilize manufacturer’s recommendations and provide installation instructions for all chemicals, compounds, and potential contaminants including pre-installation degassing if required.

F. Ventilate completed building prior to final completion using no less than design outside air for at least 48 hours before occupancy.

G. Make provisions for controls to prevent the entry of air contaminants into the HVAC air

distribution system.

H. Steps shall be taken to ensure that the HVAC system continues to function effectively and are not damaged or contaminated during construction activities.

**END OF SECTION 23 05 00**

# SECTION 23 05 10 - HVAC CONTRACT QUALITY CONTROL

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Contract quality control including workmanship, manufacturer's instructions, mock-ups and demonstrations.

### 1.2 QUALITY CONTROL PROGRAM

A. Maintain quality control over supervision, subcontractors, suppliers, manufacturers, products, services, site conditions and workmanship to produce work in accordance with contract documents.

### 1.3 WORKMANSHIP

A. Comply with industry standards except when more restrictive tolerances or specified requirements indicate more rigid standards or more precise workmanship.

B. Perform work by persons qualified to produce workmanship of specified quality.

C. Secure products in place with positive anchorage devices designed and sized to withstand stresses, vibration, and racking. Under no conditions shall material or equipment be suspended from structural bridging.

D. Provide finishes to match approved samples. All exposed finishes shall be approved by the Architect. Submit color samples as required.

### 1.4 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

A. Comply with instructions in full detail, including each step in sequence.

B. Should instruction conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect / Engineer before proceeding.

### 1.5 MANUFACTURER'S CERTIFICATES

A. When required in individual Specification Sections, submit manufacturer's certificate in duplicate, certifying that products meet or exceed specified requirements.

### 1.6 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

A. When required in individual Specification Sections, manufacturer shall provide qualified personnel to observe:
   1. Field conditions.
   2. Condition of installation.

3. Quality of workmanship.
4. Start-up of equipment.
5. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of equipment.

B. Representative shall make written report of observations and recommendations to Architect / Engineer.

**1.7 MOCK-UPS**

A. Assemble and erect the specified equipment and products complete, with specified anchorage and support devices, seals and finishes.

B. Do not proceed with any work involving a mock-up, until the related mock-up has been approved in writing.

C. Acceptable mock-ups in place shall be retained in the completed work.

D. Perform tests and submit results as specified.

**1.8 SCHEDULING OF MOCK-UPS**

A. Schedule demonstration and observation of mock-ups, in phases, with Architect / Engineer.
1. Rough-in.
2. Finish with all appurtenances in place.
3. Insulation installed.
4. Demonstrations.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 REFERENCE APPLICABLE SPECIFICATION SECTIONS.**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 FAN/COIL UNITS**

A. Mock-up a fan/coil unit completely installed, including:
1. Primary, secondary and auxiliary drain pans.
2. Piping connections; including all piping appurtenances.
3. Pipe insulation.
4. Condensate drain piping.
5. Electrical connections.
6. Duct connection beyond first transition.
7. Block valves, balancing valves, and control valves.
8. Cabinet/internal vibration isolation.
9. Suspension system.

B. Tests: Air flow at scheduled static pressure.

C. Demonstrate:
   1. Filter accessibility.
   2. Accessibility to drain and components for service.
   3. Controls sequence.

## 3.2 AIR HANDLING UNIT

A. Mock-up an air handling unit, completely installed, including:
   1. Piping connections; including thermowells, test stations, test wells and other piping appurtenances.
   2. Pipe insulation.
   3. Condensate drain piping.
   4. Electrical connections.
   5. Ductwork beyond the first transition.
   6. Control valves and bypass.
   7. Cabinet/internal vibration isolation.
   8. Block valves and balancing valves.
   9. Duct insulation.
   10. Instrumentation.

B. Tests: Air flow at scheduled static pressure.

C. Demonstrate:
   1. Filter accessibility.
   2. Accessibility to drain and components for service.
   3. Controls sequence.

## 3.3 CONSTANT VOLUME TERMINAL BOX

A. Mock-up a Constant Volume Terminal Box completely installed, including:
   1. Piping connections, including all piping appurtenances.
   2. Pipe insulation.
   3. Electrical connections.
   4. Duct connection beyond first transition.
   5. Block valves, balancing valves, and control valves.
   6. Cabinet/internal vibration isolation.
   7. Suspension system.

B. Tests: Air flow at scheduled static pressure.

C. Demonstrate:
   1. Control Sequence.
   2. Accessibility to components for service.

## 3.4 HOT AND CHILLED WATER CIRCULATING PUMPS

A. Mock-up one each system pump, completely installed including:
   1. Pump mounted on housekeeping pad.
   2. Auxiliary drain pan. (Chilled water only)
   3. Piping to a point beyond the complete valve and instrumentation assemblies.
   4. Strainers with blowdown.
   5. Flexible piping connection.
   6. Pipe supports.
   7. Pipe insulation.
   8. Pump painting.
   9. Electrical connections.

**3.5 PROTECTION OF EQUIPMENT**

A. Do not deliver equipment to the project site until progress of construction has reached the stage where equipment is actually needed or until building is closed in enough to protect the equipment from weather. Equipment allowed to stand in the weather will be rejected, and the Contractor is obligated to furnish new equipment of a like kind at no additional cost to the Owner.

B. Adequately protect equipment from damage after delivery to the project. Cover with heavy tarpaulins, drop cloths or other protective coverings as required to protect from plaster, paint, mortar and/or dirt. Do not cover with plastic materials and trap condensate and cause corrosion.

**END OF SECTION 23 05 10**

# SECTION 23 05 11 - MECHANICAL ALTERATIONS PROJECT PROCEDURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Inspect and service existing equipment and materials that are to remain or to be reused.

B. Disposal of equipment, materials, or housekeeping pads to be abandoned. Prior to disposal, the Contractor shall verify with the Owner what is to be salvaged by the Owner and what is to become the property of the Contractor.

C. Handling of equipment and materials to be removed.

### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Coordination with the Owner prior to the disconnection or shutdown of existing equipment, or to the modification of existing operational systems.

### 1.3 CONTRACT DRAWINGS

A. There is the possibility that existing conditions and devices are affected by the work indicated on the drawings and called for in the specifications (project manual) which do not appear on the drawings. It is the Contractor's responsibility to visit the site and determine all of the existing conditions and to consider these existing conditions when making and presenting a proposal, to have a complete proposal.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

A. Material used to upgrade and repair existing equipment shall conform to that specified.

B. Material used to upgrade and repair existing equipment shall not void existing warranties or listings of the equipment to be upgraded or repaired.

C. Material used to upgrade and repair existing equipment shall be new and shall be of the same manufacturer of the existing equipment, shall be acquired through the existing original equipment manufacturer's approved distribution channels, shall have manufacturer's warranties for the new material being used, and shall be listed for the use intended.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

A. Existing materials and equipment indicated on the drawings or in the specifications to be reused shall be inspected for damaged or missing parts. Contractor shall notify the Architect / Engineer, in writing, accordingly.

B. If using materials specified or shown on the drawing voids or diminishes the warranty or operation of remaining equipment or systems, the Contractor shall notify the Architect / Engineer, in writing.

C. Verify field measurements, above and underground piping connections and flows.

D. Demolition Drawings are based on casual field observation, and when available, existing record documents. Report discrepancies to Architect before disturbing existing installation, and immediately after such discrepancies are discovered.

E. Field verify existing conditions and actual utility uses prior to final connections. Existing drawings may not have been available for all required information. Use pipe inspection camera system to field verify existing sanitary / grease waste connections. Verify actual HVAC supply and return piping connections. Verify flow direction and depth prior to connection to existing plumbing systems.

**3.2 APPLICATION**

A. Existing materials and equipment indicated on the drawings or in the specifications to be reused shall be cleaned and reconditioned, including cleaning of piping systems and HVAC coils prior to installation and reuse.

B. Material and equipment removed that is not to be salvaged for Owner's use or for reuse on the project shall become the property of the Contractor and be removed from the site.

C. Material or equipment salvaged for Owner's use shall be carefully handled and stored where directed by the Owner or the Architect / Engineer. Relocate material and / or equipment as directed by Owner.

D. Materials and equipment not indicated to be removed or abandoned shall be reconnected to the new system.

E. Materials, equipment and housekeeping pads not to be reused or reconnected shall be removed for Owner’s review and salvaged by Contractor.

F. Prior to start of construction, Contractor shall walk areas to be renovated with Owner to identify and document items to be salvaged for Owner’s use.

G. Clean and repair existing materials and equipment that remain or are to be reused.

H. Contractor shall utilize spaces efficiently to maximize accessibility for other installations, for maintenance, and for repairs.

## 3.3 SEQUENCE AND SCHEDULE

A. Coordinate utility service outages with Utility Company, Architect and Owner.

B. Provide additional or temporary valves, piping, ductwork and connections to maintain existing systems in service during construction.

C. Existing HVAC and Plumbing Service: Refer to drawings for work in remodeled areas. Where facilities in these areas are to remain in service, any related work to keep the facilities in operation is specified in this Division. Maintain existing system in service until new system is complete and ready for service. Disable system only to make switchovers and connections. Obtain permission from Owner at least 48 hours before partially or completely disabling system. Minimize outage duration. Make temporary connections to maintain service in areas adjacent to work area. Maintain acceptable temperature and humidity control within existing building during renovation activities.

D. Remove and replace existing Mechanical systems and appurtenances as occasioned by new or remodeled construction. Re-establish service that may be interrupted by remodeled construction.

E. Refer to other drawings series for work in remodeled areas. Where facilities in these areas are required to remain in service, any related work required to keep these facilities in operation is specified in this Division.

F. Remove and replace existing piping, grilles, boxes and ductwork coincident with the construction.

G. Remove or relocate existing piping, grilles, ductwork or housekeeping pads as occasioned by new or remodeled construction. Cap unused HVAC or domestic piping and duct beyond the new finish line.

H. Relocate all HVAC and or domestic piping, grilles, boxes and ductwork as required to accommodate new work requiring precedence.

I. Remove concrete housekeeping pad where materials or equipment have been removed.

J. Remove all known utilities, which do not provide service to the buildings that remain.

K. Remove existing plumbing or mechanical vent penetrations through roof not to be reused.

## 3.4 DEMOLITION AND EXTENSION OF EXISTING MECHANICAL WORK

A. The Contractor shall modify, remove, and/or relocate all materials and items so indicated on the drawings or required by the installation of new facilities. All removals and/or dismantling shall be conducted in a manner as to produce maximum salvage.

Salvage materials shall remain the property of the Owner, and shall be delivered to such destination as directed by the Owner's representative unless they are not wanted, then it will be the responsibility of this Contractor to remove such items and properly dispose of them. Materials and/or items scheduled for relocation and which are damaged during dismantling or reassembly operations shall be repaired and restored to good operative condition. The Contractor may, at his discretion, and upon approval of the Owner's representative substitute new materials and/or items of like design and quality in lieu of materials and/or items to be relocated.

B. All items to be relocated shall be carefully removed in reverse to original assembly or placement and protected until relocated. The Contractor shall clean, repair, and provide all new materials, fittings, and appurtenances required to complete the relocations and to restore them to good operative order. All relocations shall be performed by workmen skilled in the work and in accordance with standard practice of the trades involved.

C. When items scheduled for relocation and/or reuse are found to be in damaged condition before work has been started on dismantling, the Contractor shall call the attention of the Owner's representative to such items and receive further instructions before removal. Items damaged in repositioning operations are the contractor's responsibility and shall be repaired or replaced by the contractor as approved by the owner's representative, at no additional cost to the Owner.

D. HVAC, Plumbing, piping, ductwork and appurtenances to be removed, salvaged, or relocated shall be removed to points indicated on the drawings, specified, or acceptable to the Owner's representative. Piping and ductwork not scheduled for reuse shall be removed to the points at which reuse is to be continued or service is to remain. Such services shall be sealed, capped, or otherwise tied-off or disconnected in a safe manner acceptable to the Construction Inspector. All disconnections or connections into the existing facilities shall be done in such a manner as to result in minimum interruption of services to adjacent occupied areas. Services to existing areas or facilities that must remain in operation during the construction period shall not be interrupted without prior specific approval of the Owner's representative hereinbefore specified.

E. Repair adjacent construction and finishes damaged during demolition and extension work.

F. Maintain access to mechanical installations that remain active. Modify installation or provide access panel as appropriate.

G. Extend existing installations using materials and methods compatible with existing mechanical installations, or as specified.

H. Existing mechanical piping and devices found to need additional hangers installed should be added at no additional cost to the Owner.

**3.5 PROTECTION OF THE WORK**

A. Provide adequate temporary support and auxiliary structure as necessary to ensure structural value or integrity of affected portion of work.

B. Provide devices and methods to protect other portions of work from damage.

C. Execute fitting and adjustment of products to provide a finished installation to comply with specified products, functions, tolerances and finishes.

## 3.6 IDENTIFICATION OF EQUIPMENT IN RENOVATED AREAS

A. Identification of Equipment: Provide new identification of all existing equipment to be reused and located within the renovated areas. Do not include the description “existing”. Provide new nameplates for all existing mechanical equipment in renovated areas as specified in Section 23 05 00 Mechanical General Provisions.

## 3.7 REFRIGERANT DISPOSAL

A. Contractor shall dispose of refrigerant from all DX equipment including refrigerant piping per OSHA, EPA, Federal, State and Local Codes.

**END OF SECTION 23 05 11**

# SECTION 23 05 12 - SHOP DRAWINGS, COORDINATION DRAWINGS & PRODUCT DATA

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Prepare submittals as required by these specifications as outlined below.

B. The term submittal, as used herein, refers to all:
   1. Shop Drawings
   2. Coordination Drawings
   3. Product data

C. Submittals shall be prepared and produced for:
   1. Distribution as specified
   2. Inclusion in the Operating and Maintenance Manual, as specified, in the related section

### 1.2 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Present drawings in a clear and thorough manner. Identify details by reference to sheet and detail, schedule, or room numbers shown on Contract Drawings.

B. Show all dimensions of each item of equipment on a single composite Shop Drawing. Do not submit a series of drawings of components.

C. Identify field dimensions; show relationship to adjacent features, critical features, work, or products.

D. Submit shop drawings in plan, elevation and sections, showing equipment in mechanical equipment areas.

### 1.3 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

A. Present in a clear and thorough manner. Title each drawing with project name. Identify each element of drawings by reference to sheet number and detail, or room number of contract documents. Minimum drawing scale: ¼” = 1’-0”.

B. Prepare coordination drawings to coordinate installations for efficient use of available space, for proper sequence of installation, and to resolve conflicts. Coordinate with work specified in other sections and other divisions of the specifications.

C. For each mechanical room and for each outside equipment pad where equipment is located, submit plan and elevation drawings. Show:
   1. Actual mechanical equipment and components to be furnished
   2. Service clearance

3. Relationship to other equipment and components
4. Roof drains and leader piping
5. Fire protection piping and equipment

D. Identify field dimensions. Show relation to adjacent or critical features of work or products.

E. Related requirements:
1. Ductwork shop drawings
2. Coordination drawing specified in Division 26

F. Submit shop drawings in plan, elevation and sections, showing equipment in mechanical equipment areas.

G. Gas piping sketch indicating proposed location of piping prior to proceeding with the installation.

## 1.4 PRODUCT DATA AND INSTALLATION INSTRUCTION

A. Submit only pages which are pertinent to the project. All options which are indicated on the product data shall become part of the contract and shall be required whether specified are not.

B. Mark each copy of standard printed data to identify pertinent products, referenced to specification section and article number.

C. Show reference standards, performance characteristics and capacities; wiring and piping diagrams and controls; component parts; finishes; dimensions and required clearances.

D. Modify manufacturer's standard schematic drawings and diagrams to supplement standard information and to provide information specifically applicable to the work. Delete information not applicable.

E. Mark up a copy of the specifications for the product. Indicate in the margin of each paragraph the following: COMPLY, DO NOT COMPLY, or NOT APPLICABLE. Explain all DO NOT COMPLY statements.

F. Provide a separate transmittal for each submittal item. Transmittals shall indicate product by specification section name and number. Separate all submittals into appropriate specification section number. Do not combine specification sections.

## 1.5 MANUFACTURERS INSTRUCTIONS

A. Submit Manufacturer's instructions for storage, preparation, assembly, installation, start-up, adjusting, calibrating, balancing and finishing.

## 1.6 CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Review submittals prior to transmittal.

B. Determine and verify:
   1. Field measurements
   2. Field construction criteria
   3. Manufacturer's catalog numbers
   4. Conformance with requirements of Contract Documents

C. Coordinate submittals with requirements of the work and of the Contract Documents.

D. Notify the Architect/Engineer in writing at time of submission of any deviations in the submittals from requirements of the Contract Documents.

E. Do not fabricate products, or begin work for which submittals are specified, until such submittals have been produced and bear contractor's stamp. Do not fabricate products or begin work scheduled to have submittals reviewed until return of reviewed submittals with Architect / Engineer's acceptance.

F. Contractor's responsibility for errors and omissions in submittals is not relieved whether Architect / Engineer reviews submittals or not.

G. Contractor's responsibility for deviations in submittals from requirements of Contract Documents is not relieved whether Architect/Engineer reviews submittals or not, unless Architect / Engineer gives written acceptance of the specific deviations on reviewed documents.

H. Submittals shall show sufficient data to indicate complete compliance with Contract Documents:
   1. Proper sizes and capacities
   2. That the item will fit in the available space in a manner that will allow proper service
   3. Construction methods, materials and finishes

I. Schedule submissions at least 15 days before date reviewed submittals will be needed.

## 1.7 SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS

A. Make submittals promptly in accordance with approved schedule, and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Project or in the work of any other Contractor.

B. Number of submittals required:
   1. Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings: Submit one reproducible transparency and three opaque reproductions.
   2. Product Data: Submit the number of copies which the contractor requires, plus those which will be retained by the Architect/Engineer.

C. Accompany submittals with transmittal letter, in duplicate, containing:
   1. Date
   2. Project title and number
   3. Contractor's name, address and contact number.
   4. The number of each Shop Drawing, Project Datum and Sample submitted
   5. Other pertinent data

D. Submittals shall include:
   1. The date of submission
   2. The project title and number
   3. Contract Identification
   4. The names of:
      a. Contractor
      b. Subcontractor
      c. Supplier
      d. Manufacturer
   5. Identification of the product
   6. Field dimensions, clearly identified as such
   7. Relation to adjacent or critical features of the work or materials
   8. Applicable standards, such as ASTM or federal specifications numbers
   9. Identification of deviations from contract documents
   10. Suitable blank space for General Contractor and Architect/Engineer stamps
   11. Contractor's signed and dated Stamp of Approval

E. Coordinate submittals into logical groupings to facilitate interrelation of the several items:
   1. Finishes which involve Architect/Engineer selection of colors, textures or patterns
   2. Associated items which require correlation for efficient function or for installation

## 1.8 SUBMITTAL SPECIFICATION INFORMATION

A. Every submittal document shall bear the following information as used in the project manual:
   1. The related specification section number
   2. The exact specification section title

B. Submittals delivered to the Architect/Engineer without the specified information will not be processed. The Contractor shall bear the risk of all delays, as if no submittal had been delivered.

## 1.9 RESUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS

A. Make re-submittals under procedures specified for initial submittals.
   1. Indicate that the document or sample is a re-submittal
   2. Identify changes made since previous submittals

B. Indicate any changes which have been made, other than those requested by the Architect / Engineer.

## 1.10 CONTRACTOR'S STAMP OF APPROVAL

A. Contractor shall stamp and sign each document certifying to the review of products, field measurements and field construction criteria, and coordination of the information within the submittal with requirements of the work and of Contract Documents.

B. Contractor's stamp of approval on any submittal shall constitute a representation to Owner and Architect/Engineer that Contractor has either determined and verified all quantities, dimensions, field construction criteria, materials, catalog numbers, and similar data or assumes full responsibility for doing so, and that Contractor has reviewed or coordinated each submittal with the requirements of the work and the Contract Documents.

C. Do not deliver any submittals to the Architect/Engineer that do not bear the Contractor's stamp of approval and signature.

D. Submittals delivered to the Architect/Engineer without Contractor's stamp of approval and signature will not be processed. The Contractor shall bear the risk of all delays, as if no submittal had been delivered.

## 1.11 ARCHITECT / ENGINEER REVIEW OF IDENTIFIED SUBMITTALS

A. The Architect / Engineer will:
   1. Review identified submittals with reasonable promptness and in accordance with schedule
   2. Affix stamp and initials or signature, and indicate requirements for re-submittal or approval of submittal
   3. Return submittals to Contractor for distribution or for resubmission

B. Review and approval of submittals will not extend to design data reflected in submittals which is peculiarly within the special expertise of the Contractor or any party dealing directly with the Contractor.

C. Architect / Engineer's review and approval is only for conformance with the design concept of the project and for compliance with the information given in the contract.
   1. The review shall not extend to means, methods, sequences, techniques or procedures of construction or to safety precautions or programs incident thereto.
   2. The review shall not extend to review of quantities, dimensions, weights or gauges, fabrication processes or coordination with the work of other trades.

D. The review and approval of a separate item as such will not indicate approval of the assembly in which the item functions.

**1.12 SUBSTITUTIONS**

A. Do not make requests for substitution employing the procedures of this Section.

B. The procedure for making a formal request for substitution is specified in Div. 1.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION - NOT USED**

**END OF SECTION 23 05 12**

# SECTION 23 05 13 - ELECTRICAL PROVISIONS OF HVAC WORK

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.1 WORK INCLUDED**

A. Electrical provisions to be provided as mechanical work are indicated in other Division 23 sections, on drawings, and as specified.

B. Types of work, normally recognized as electrical but provided as mechanical, specified or partially specified in this Section, include but are not necessarily limited to the following:
   1. Motors for mechanical equipment.
   2. Starters for motors of mechanical equipment, but only where specifically indicated to be furnished integrally with equipment.
   3. Wiring from motors to disconnect switches or junction boxes for motors of mechanical equipment, but only where specifically indicated to be furnished integrally with equipment.
   4. Wiring of field-mounted float control switches, flow control switches, and similar mechanical-electrical devices provided for mechanical systems, to equipment control panels.
   5. Wiring of smoke detectors for shutdown of air handling equipment when a fire alarm system is not included in the project.
   6. Wiring of oil pump, vibration and oil level limit switches for cooling towers.
   7. Refrigerant monitor/sensor/alarming and field installed visual/audible display alarms.
   8. Pipe heat tracing.
   9. Cooling tower vibration switch/interlock/reset.
   10. Field interlock wiring from chiller: flow switches, pump aux. Contacts, pump start/stop.
   11. Power supply 120 VAC and control signal from chiller control panel to condenser water flow control valve installed in piping leaving chiller.
   12. Wiring of all related make up water and circulating water system chemical treatment devices.
      a. Low voltage electric contacting water meter
      b. Solenoid valve/blow-down assembly
   13. Radiant heater timer switches and/or thermostats
   14. Low Voltage thermostat wiring

C. Refer to Division 23 Controls Sections for related control system wiring.

D. Refer to Division 23 sections for specific individual mechanical equipment electrical requirements.

E. Refer to Division 26 sections for motor starters and controls not furnished integrally with mechanical equipment.

F. Refer to Division 26 sections for junction boxes and disconnect switches required for motors and other electrical units of mechanical equipment.

## 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Specification Sections, apply to work of this Section.

## 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Wherever possible, match elements of electrical provisions of mechanical work with similar elements of electrical work specified in Division 26 sections for electrical work not otherwise specified.

B. For electrical equipment and products, comply with applicable NEMA standards, and refer to NEMA standards for definitions of terminology. Comply with National Electrical Code (NFPA 70) for workmanship and installation requirements.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Include in listing of motors, voltage, notation of whether motor starter is furnished or installed integrally with motor or equipment containing motors.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MOTORS

A. Provide motors for mechanical equipment manufactured by one of the following:
1. Baldor Electric Company.
2. Century Electric Div., Inc.
3. General Electric Co.
4. Louis Allis Div.; Litton Industrial Products, Inc.
5. Lincoln Electric
6. Marathon Electric Mfg. Corp.
7. Reliance Electric Co.
8. Westinghouse Electric Corp.
9. WEG

B. Motor Characteristics. Except where more stringent requirements are indicated, and except where required items of mechanical equipment cannot be obtained with fully complying motors, comply with the following requirements for motors of mechanical work:

C. Temperature Rating. Rated for 40 Degrees C environment with maximum 50 Degrees C temperature rise for continuous duty at full load (Class A Insulation).

D. Provide each motor capable of making starts as frequently as indicated by automatic control system, and not less than 5 starts per hour for manually controlled motors.

E. Phases and Current Characteristics. Provide squirrel-cage induction polyphase motors for 3/4hp and larger, and provide capacitor-start single-phase motors for 1/2hp and smaller, except 1/6hp and smaller may, at equipment manufacturer's option, be split-phase type. Coordinate current characteristics with power specified in Division 26 sections, and with individual equipment requirements specified in other Division 23 requirements. For 2-speed motors provide 2 separate windings on polyphase motors. Do not purchase motors until power characteristics available at locations of motors have been confirmed, and until rotation directions have been confirmed.

F. Service Factor. 1.15 for polyphase motors and 1.35 for single-phase motors.

G. Motor Construction. Provide general purpose, continuous duty motors, Design "B" except "C" where required for high starting torque.
   1. Frames. NEMA #56.
   2. Bearings are to be ball or roller bearings with inner and outer shaft seals, regreasable except permanently sealed where motor is inaccessible for regular maintenance. Where belt drives and other drives produce lateral or axial thrust in motor, provide bearings designed to resist thrust loading. Refer to individual section of Division 23 for fractional-hp light-duty motors where sleeve-type bearings are permitted.
   3. Except as indicated, provide open drip-proof motors for indoor use where satisfactorily housed or remotely located during operation, and provide guarded drip-proof motors where exposed to contact by employees or building occupants. Provide weather-protected Type I for outdoor use, Type II where not housed. Refer to individual sections of Division 23 for other enclosure requirements.
   4. Provide built-in thermal overload protection and, where indicated, provide internal sensing device suitable for signaling and stopping motor at starter.
   5. Noise Rating: Provide "Quiet" rating on motors.

H. All motors shall be premium efficiency.

I. Provide an inverter duty motor on all equipment that utilizes a variable frequency drive.

## 2.2 EQUIPMENT FABRICATION

A. Fabricate mechanical equipment for secure mounting of motors and other electrical items included in work. Provide either permanent alignment of motors with equipment, or adjustable mountings as applicable for belt drives, gear drives, special couplings and similar indirect coupling of equipment. Provide safe, secure, durable, and removable guards for motor drives. Arrange for lubrication and similar running-maintenance without removal of guards.

## 2.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS – SHAFT GROUNDING RINGS

A. All motors operated on variable frequency drives shall be equipped with a maintenance-free, conductive microfiber shaft grounding ring to meet NEMA MG-1, 3.4.4.4.3 requirements, with a minimum of two rows of circumferential microfibers to discharge damaging shaft voltages away from the bearings to ground. SGR's Service Life: Designed to last for service life of motor. Provide AEGIS SGR Conductive MicroFiber Shaft Grounding Ring, or approved equal.

B. Application Note: Motors up to 100 HP shall be provided with one shaft ground ring installed on either the drive end or non-drive end. Motors over 100 HP shall be provided with an insulated bearing on the non-drive end and a shaft grounding ring on the drive end of the motor with the exception of line contact bearings in the drive end of the machine. In this instance the line contact bearing must be electrically insulated and the AEGIS Bearing Protection Ring installed on the opposite drive end of the motor. Grounding rings shall be provided and installed by the motor manufacturer's recommendations.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. Install motors on motor mounting systems in accordance with motor manufacturer's instructions, anchored to resist torque, drive thrusts, and other external forces inherent in mechanical work. Secure sheaves and other drive units to motor shafts with keys and Allen set screws on flat surface of shaft. Unless otherwise indicated, set motor shafts parallel with machine shafts.

B. Verify voltage with Electrical Plans.

**END OF SECTION 23 05 13**

# SECTION 23 05 14 - HVAC CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING SYSTEM

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Provide and install air conditioning condensate drains.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 23 - Mechanical
   1. Insulation
   2. Chilled Water Pumps
   3. Cooling Towers
   4. Hydronic Boilers
   5. Equipment Drain Pans

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPE MATERIAL

A. Type “L” copper with drainage pattern fittings.

B. For Hydronic Boilers and Flue Pipe – Schedule 40 CPVC.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install the system to facilitate easy removal.
   1. Use threaded plugged tee at each change of direction to permit cleaning.
   2. Install a cleanout every 50 feet of straight run piping
   3. Maintain a positive slope on all piping

B. Install a water seal trap leg based on the fan pressure.
   1. Size the length of the trap leg 1 inch larger than the actual system pressure.

C. Install traps and cleanout as shown in the drawing details.
   1. Confirm requirements with manufacturer's installation instructions

### 3.2 SIZE PIPE AS SHOWN ON DRAWINGS.

A. Do not install piping sized smaller than the unit drain connection size.

### 3.3 SECONDARY DRAINS

A. Provide secondary drains where required by code, shown on the drawings, or where equipment has secondary drain connections.

**END OF SECTION 23 05 14**

# SECTION 23 05 17 - HVAC ACCESS DOORS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install access doors in wall or ceiling locations as required or shown for access to valves, controls, fire dampers, air distribution devices and other equipment requiring maintenance, adjustment or operation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 NON-FIRE RATED ACCESS DOORS

A. 16-Gauge frames

B. 14-gauge steel panels

C. Continuous fully concealed hinges

D. Flush screwdriver cam lock & cylinder lock for Owner selection

E. Automatic closing and latching mechanism

F. Prime coat finish

G. Brushed satin stainless steel finish for restroom, kitchen or cafeteria installation

H. Material suitable for wall and/or ceiling mounting

### 2.2 FIRE RATED ACCESS DOORS

A. UL listed, 1-1/2 hour Label “B”, access doors

B. 16-Gauge stainless steel

C. 20-Gauge insulated sandwich-type door panel.

D. Two inch thick with fire rated insulation

E. Continuous fully concealed hinge

F. Automatic closing and latching mechanism

G. Knurled knob and recessed key operation for Owner selection

H. Interior latch release slide for opening from inside

I. Prime coat finish

J. Material suitable for wall and/or ceiling mounting

**2.3 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS**

A. Milcor

B. MIFAB

C. Acudor

D. Elmdor

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. Access doors specified in Division 23 will be installed by other crafts. Not all required access doors are shown. Coordinate with the Contractor to locate access doors for ease of operation and maintenance of concealed equipment.

B. Installation shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions.

C. Minimum size required:
   1. 36" x 24" for Mechanical HVAC equipment related items
   2. 18" x 18" for electrical related items

**END OF SECTION 23 05 17**

# SECTION 23 05 18 - VARIABLE FREQUENCY INVERTER

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install a variable frequency inverter for the following equipment items.
   1. Air Handling Units.
   2. Pumps.
   3. Fans.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 23 Mechanical
   1. Electrical Provisions of Mechanical Work.
   2. Air Handling Units
   3. Pumps
   4. Building Management Control System Sequences

### 1.3 COOPERATION WITH OTHER TRADES

A. Coordinate this work with work under Division 26 Electrical to ensure that intended functions are achieved.

B. Coordinate the size of the variable frequency inverter with the equipment being served by the inverter. The rated current output amps are to be equal to or greater than motor rated full load amps.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit manufacturer's information and shop drawings as specified.
   1. Complete technical details.
   2. Dimensions and manufacturer's installation manual.
   3. Schematic diagrams of the circuitry and field connections.
   4. Manufacturer's start-up manual.

### 1.5 STANDARDS

A. UL.

B. CSA.

C. ISO 9001

D. NEC.

E. FCC.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

A. The manufacturer shall provide a full parts and labor warranty for a period of five (5) years from substantial completion.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. ABB

## 2.2 CABINET

A. The inverter and all accessories shall be provided within a wall mounted UL Listed NEMA 1 enclosure in interior AHU mechanical rooms and in NEMA 12 enclosure with deadsides and removable hinged, gasketed doors with provisions for locking in all Plant locations. Cabinet shall be constructed of metal for reduction of radio frequency interference (RFI) and electromagnetic frequency interference.

## 2.3 INTERFERENCE WITH OTHER SYSTEMS

A. The inverter shall be designed and constructed to comply with IEEE Standard 519-1993 with respect to line noise and RFI generation. All units shall generate less than 3% total harmonic distortion back to the incoming power line at the point of common connection with sensitive equipment. A harmonic analysis shall be submitted with the approval drawings to verify compliance with the latest version of IEEE-519 voltage and current distortion limits as shown in Table 1.2 and 10.3 at the point of common coupling (PCC). The PCC shall be defined as the consumer-utility interface or primary side of the main distribution transformer.

B. Dual DC Bus filtered chokes (factory installed and wired in the drive enclosure) equivalent to 5% input line reactors shall be provided to minimize harmonics reflected onto the input line.
   1. Shall not interfere with computer and other electronic systems in the building.
   2. If not inherently protected, provide a suitable isolation transformer.
   3. The system shall not produce spikes on the incoming line.

C. Any inverter that generates sufficient electrical line noise to interfere with the operation of sensitive building equipment shall be field modified or replaced by the inverter supplier at no additional cost to the Owner.

## 2.4 PROTECTIVE CIRCUITS

A. Provide the following protection:
   1. Input line fuses or molded case circuit breaker rated at 100 AIC.
   2. Input line noise suppression with MOV's (metal oxide varistors) and snubber

circuits. MOV's shall be provided across incoming line terminals, AC input reactors, DC choke filters, and transistors to protect inverter from voltage surges and spikes.

3. Protection of solid state inverter devices by limiting output current to 110% of inverter rating, automatically prevent overcurrent trip due to momentary overload conditions.
4. Current limiting DC buss fuse between input and output sections of inventor.
5. Input overvoltage trip at 480 vac + 10% trip.
6. Input undervoltage at 480 vac – 10% trip
7. Instantaneous overcurrent protection of solid state inverter devices.
8. Individual overcurrent protection of solid state inverter devices.
9. Output overvoltage trip.
10. Loss of input phase, phase reversals, or blown fuse.
11. Thermal overload trip for overload protection of solid state devices.
12. Ground fault protection on start-up.
13. Output line to line short circuit protection.
14. Phase to phase short circuit or severe overload conditions of output.
15. Overload of motor.
16. Frequency stall.
17. DC buss high voltage.
18. Control function error.
19. Heatsink over temperature (Max. operating ambient: 122 degrees F)
20. Controller able to operate without a motor or any other equipment connected to the output (To facilitate startup and troubleshooting).
21. Capable of restarting into a rotating motor without component damage.
22. Shut down safely without component failure in the event of a sustained power loss, and will automatically return to normal operation, if start is "on" and power is restored.
23. Shut down safely without component failure in the event of a momentary power loss. Automatically return to normal operation if the start is "on", and normal power is restored. Capable of establishing speed control without shutdown or component failure.
24. Designed for input power contactor opening or closing while control is activated, without damage to the controller.
25. Automatically reset trip resulting from overcurrent, undervoltage, overvoltage, or over temperature, and automatically restart after removal, or correction of the faulty condition.
26. Provide status lights or digital display for indication of failure conditions, and form C relay provided for remote indication. Digital display or status lights to indicate power on, at speed, and drive enabled.
27. Operation and fault diagnostic function circuits shall be built into each inverter that provides information in determining the cause and source of a fault. Diagnostics to provide the following information:
    a. Operating mode at trip (Accel, Decel, Constant speed).
    b. Output current at trip.
    c. Output voltage at trip.
    d. Additional faults that occurred simultaneously of immediately before

displayed tripped.

Any drive requiring separate card to provide this information shall provide a diagnostic card for each drive.

28. DC link reactor.
29. Input power disconnect, lockable type.
30. Input power disconnect switch / circuit breaker, with lockable type handle.

## 2.5 OPERATOR DEVICES

A. The following operator devices shall be door or remote mounted:
   1. Digital keypad and LCD provided to perform all parameter adjustments, operation monitoring, and operation programming.
   2. Power on indication light.
   3. Flush mounted meters or digital display to indicate output voltage, output frequency, and output current, in percent of maximum 0 to 100%.
   4. Manual/Off/Auto 3 position selector switch (hand-off-auto) and manual speed setting control to provide the following control sequences:
      a. In automatic mode, controller shall follow an external control signal and respond to remote start-stop contact.
      b. In manual (hand) mode, controller shall follow speed signal set via door mounted keypad and start/stop switch. Switching from “hand” to “auto” and vice versa shall require a single keystroke to a dedicated changeover key. Inverters requiring multiple keystrokes and/or reprogramming of internal parameters to accomplish changeovers are not acceptable.
      c. An integral "safety interlock" protection shutdown circuit shall be provided for interface with firestats, smoke detectors, high static pressure limit switches, vibration switches, etc.
   5. Programmable lockout code to prevent unauthorized programming.
   6. Critical frequency avoidance capability (up to 3 resonant points).

## 2.6 FIELD ADJUSTMENTS

A. The following shall be adjustable in the field:
   1. Maximum Speed: 0 to 125% adjustable.
   2. Minimum Speed: 0 to 100% adjustable.
   3. Acceleration/deceleration rates: 0 to 3600 sec.
   4. Instantaneous overcurrent trip: 50% to 2000%.
   5. Volts/hertz ratio: Field adjustable to 16 patterns or set for automatic selection of proper V/F load profile to operate motor without overdriving or overloading.
   6. Current limit circuit: 60 to 100%.
   7. Carrier frequency: 6 to 16 KHZ.
   8. Control interface: selectable to follow a 0-5 VDC, 0-10 VDC, 4-20 MA, either direct or indirect acting.
   9. Control signal Bias: 0 to 80 HZ.
   10. Control signal gain: 0 to 80 HZ.
   11. Calibration of remote speed signal: 0 to 80 HZ.

## 2.7 ELECTRICAL CONSTANT SPEED BYPASS

A. Provide all components and circuitry necessary to provide manual bypass of the inverter. The bypass package shall be mounted in a cabinet common with the inverter and shall be constructed in such a manner that the inverter can be removed for repair while still operating the motor in the "bypass" mode. Manual bypass shall contain the following:

1. Two contactors mechanically interlocked via a three position through the door selector switch to provide the following control:
    a. "Inverter" Mode connects the motor to the output of the inverter.
    b. "Bypass" Mode connects the motor to the input sine wave power. Transfer must occur with input disconnect open. Motor is protected via thermal overload.
    c. "Off" Mode disconnects motor from all input power.
2. A molded case circuit breaker or fused disconnect switch with door interlocked handle (lock out type) that interrupts input power to both the bypass circuitry and the drive.
3. An input contactor, interlocked with both the thermal motor overload and external safeties which disconnects power to the motor regardless of the mode of operation (either "inverter" or "bypass" mode).
4. A thermal overload to provide protection of motor in the bypass mode.
5. A safety interlock circuit that disconnects power to the motor (regardless of the mode of operation – “inverter” or “bypass”) in response to a signal from the thermal overload and/or external safety circuits.
6. Line voltage to 24 volt DC power source, fused per NEC, shall provide power to all bypass control circuits.

## 2.8 SERIAL COMMUNICATIONS

A. The VFD shall have the capability of communicating with the EMS control system via an RS-485 serial port.

B. VFD shall be provided with protocol information specific to the selected EMS control manufacturer and shall be pre-configured at the factory to automatic communications, without the need for field programming.

C. Serial communications capabilities shall be included, but not limited to: run/stop control, speed set adjustment, proportional/integral or PID control adjustments, current limit and accel/decel time adjustments. The drive shall also have the capability of allowing the DDC system to monitor the following feedback signals: process variable, output speed/frequency, current, torque, power (KW), operating hours, kilowatt hours; relay outputs, and diagnostic warning and fault information.

D. The VFD shall allow the DDC system to control the drive’s digital and analog outputs and monitor all drive digital and analog inputs via the serial interface.

E. Provide BACnet interface card.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Installation as per manufacturer's recommendations and requirements.
   1. Inverter chassis is properly grounded.
   2. Line, Load, Control, and Fire/Safety wiring are installed in separate conduits.
   3. Both ends of conduit entering and leaving VFD into AHU cabinets and motors must be sealed air tight.

### 3.2 MANUFACTURER START-UP SERVICE

A. Factory trained personnel shall be provided for start-up assistance, minimum (1) day per unit.
   1. The manufacturer shall provide start-up commissioning of the VFD and its optional circuits by a factory certified service technician who is experienced in start-up and repair services. Sales personnel and other agents who are not factory certified shall not be acceptable as commissioning agents.
   2. Start-up services shall include checking for verification of proper operation and installation for the VFD, its options and its interface wiring to the building automation system.
   3. Adjustable devices, components, and assemblies to assure optimum performance.
   4. Make final adjustments to the installed drive to assure proper operation of the fan system. Obtain performance requirements from installer of driven loads.
   5. Assistance will be provided to the Owner (upon request) to determine the optimum capacitance for per factory correction and avoidance of potential resonance problems and will determine optimum line filter required.
   6. A written report, duly signed by the technician detailing set points of adjustable devices, amperages recorded, and any other pertinent data. This information is to be included in the operation and maintenance manual.

B. Input DC voltage to dry motor windings when fan is not in operation at the following locations:
   1. Cooling tower fan motor
   2. Motors downstream of coils
   3. Rooftop unit motors

### 3.3 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

A. Provide system demonstration to personnel, Owner, and/or Owner's selected representatives.

B. Demonstrate operation of controllers in the automatic and manual modes.

C. Provide a minimum of two days of technical training for the owner's operating and technical staff. Schedule training with owner's authorized representatives, during normal business hours and not less than 30 days prior to planned session.

D. Training may be consecutive or random, at Owner's option.

**END OF SECTION 23 05 18**

# SECTION 23 05 19 - HVAC PRESSURE AND TEMPERATURE INSTRUMENTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. This section specifies gauges, thermometers, wells and/or pressure and temperature test stations to be installed as specified.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 23, Mechanical
   1. 23 05 00 - Mechanical General Provisions
   2. 23 20 00 - Pipe and Pipe Fittings, General
   3. 23 05 23 - Valves, Strainers and Vents
   4. 23 21 13 - Hot Water and Chilled Water Piping, Valves and Appurtenances

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS - GAUGES AND THERMOMETERS

A. Trerice

B. Taylor

C. Marsh

D. Weksler

E. Marshalltown

F. Weiss

G. Miljoco

### 2.2 PRESSURE GAUGES

A. Case and Ring: 4" type 304 stainless steel; liquid filled case with stainless steel bayonet ring.

B. Dial: White aluminum with black markings

C. Window: Clear acrylic

D. Tube: Phosphor bronze and forged brass socket.

E. Gauge accuracy: +/- 1% over operating range.

F. For pulsating service, provide impulse dampers.

G. Without flange for pipe mounting.

H. With flange for wall mounting.

I. Weiss Model: LF44S-1B or equal.

## 2.3 THERMOMETER WELLS

A. Brass or type 300 stainless steel. Machined bar stock, 1-piece construction.

B. Where installed in insulated piping or vessels, provide with extension neck to match insulation thickness.

C. Provide metal-to-metal contact with bulb chamber for maximum sensitivity.

D. Wells shall be sized to extend a minimum of 50% into pipe.

## 2.4 THERMOMETERS IN PIPING SYSTEMS OR VESSELS

A. Die cast aluminum case with baked epoxy finish.

B. Adjustable angle 9" scale length.

C. Clear acrylic window.

D. Brass stem, length to match well.

E. Red reading organic spirit filled-in magnifying glass column.

F. White background with black figures and markings.

G. Brass stems and union connections.

H Accuracy: +/- 1% of scale range.

I. Range:
   1. Hot water lines: 30°F to 240°F.
   2. Chilled water lines: 0°F to 100°F or 120°F
   3. Condenser water: 0°F to 100°F.

## 2.5 PRESSURE AND TEMPERATURE TEST STATIONS

A. "Test Station" fitting to receive either a temperature or pressure probe. Fitting shall be solid brass with two valve cores of Nordel.

1. Fitted with a color coded cap strap with gasket.
2. Acceptable Manufacturer: Peterson Equipment Company.
3. Provide with extension neck to match insulation thickness.

B. Provide to the Owner a fitted case with:
1. Two 0-100 psi pressure gauges as specified and adapters with 1/8" OD probe.
2. Four 5" stem pocket testing thermometers.
a. Two with range 25°F to 125°F for chilled water and condenser water.
b. Two with range 0°F to 220°F for hot water.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. Install in accordance with drawing details and manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Provide a ball valve at each gauge.

C. Locate gauges and thermometers to be easily readable from the floor at a 5'-6" eye level. Use adjustable angle or rigid stem as required. Install gauges in upright position.

D. Install gauges in the following locations: across pumps, chiller cooler and condenser, storage tanks, heat exchangers.

E. Test wells for automatic temperature controls shall be furnished by Building Management Control Section and installed by Mechanical Contractor.

F. Install thermometer in the following locations: Across chiller cooler and condenser, storage tanks, across heat exchangers, across boiler, leaving side of water heater, leaving water side of tempered water valves, common chilled and hot water lines.
1. Hot water lines: 30°F to 240°F.
2. Chilled water lines: 0°F to 100°F or 120°F

**END OF SECTION 23 05 19**

# SECTION 23 05 23 - HVAC VALVES, STRAINERS AND VENTS

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. HVAC Valves

B. Pipe strainer and suction diffusers.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 VALVES

A. Pressure Ratings:
   1. Unless otherwise indicated, use valves suitable for 125 minimum psig working steam pressure (WSP) and 450°F.
   2. The pressure temperature rating of valves shall be not less than the design criteria applicable to components of the system.

B. Butterfly Valves
   1. Butterfly valves shall conform to MSS-SP67.
   2. Liners, inserts and discs shall be suitable for the intended service.
   3. Valves shall have a full lug type body designed for installation between ANSI standard flanges, and shall be rated at full working pressure with downstream flange removed.

C. Balancing Valves
   1. Provide Circuit Setter type balancing valves with:
      a. Corrosion resistant plug with resilient seal.
      b. EPDM O-ring stem seal.
      c. Polyamide and TPE hand wheel with visual position indication.
      d. Removable hand wheel. Stem shall have integral locking mechanism / memory stop.
   2. Connections
      a. Through 2" pipe size use threaded connections.
      b. For valves 2-1/2" pipe size and larger shall be provided with 150 psig flange connections.
   3. Provide each valve with:
      a. Locking feature/memory stop.
      b. Plastic drip caps on pressure ports.
      c. 1/8" gauge tap.

D. Ball Valves
   1. Provide ball valves with:
      a. Blowout proof stem.
      b. Full size port, 316 stainless steel ball and stem.

c. Cast bronze body.
d. Threaded ends.

2. Seat, seals, thrust washers and packing shall be suitable for the intended service.
3. Service rating:
   a. 150 psi saturated steam.
   b. 600 psi WOG.
4. Where piping is insulated, ball valves shall be equipped with 2” extended handles of non-thermal conductive material. Provide a protective sleeve that allows operation of the valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing the insulation.
5. Provide with memory stop for balancing valves.

E. Valve Connections
1. Provide valves suitable to connect to adjoining piping as specified for pipe joints. Use pipe size valves. Sweated joints are not allowed.
2. Thread pipe sizes 2" and smaller.
3. Flange pipe sizes 2-1/2" and larger.
4. Use screw to solder adapters for copper tubing.
5. Use grooved body valves with mechanical grooved jointed piping.

F. Valve Operators
1. Where butterfly valves are provided:
   a. Provide gear operators on valves 6" and larger.
   b. Where valves are located 7' or more above the finished floor in equipment room areas provide chain-operated sheaves. Extend chains to about 5' above floor and hook to clips, arrange to clear walking space.
   c. Lever lock handle with toothed plate for shut-off service and infinitely adjustable handle with lock and nut and memory stop for throttling service on valves 4" and smaller.
   d. Provide worm gear operators on discharge side of pumps for balancing, for all sizes of valves.
   e. All valves 2-1/2” and larger provided by Milwaukee Valve shall be provided with gear operators.

G. Acceptable Manufacturers
1. Dezurik
2. Crane
3. Nibco
4. Keystone
5. Milwaukee Valve
6. Tour and Andersson (Circuit Setters)

H. Check Valves
1. Bronze body, 2" and smaller, bronze disc (Teflon disc for steam service), regrinding swing check, screw-in cap, threaded connection.
2. Iron body, 2-1/2" and larger, bronze trim, non-slam: stainless steel pins and springs, and bronze plate or bronze mounted, regrind-renew check, bronze seat ring and disc. Provide either wafer or threaded lug.

3. Acceptable Manufacturers
    a. Mission Duochek
    b. Nibco
    c. Keystone
    d. Milwaukee Valve

I. Provide valves of same manufacturer throughout where possible.

J. Provide valves with manufacturer's name and manufacturing location, duty and pressure rating clearly marked on outside of body.

K. Where valves are installed in insulated piping, provide with extended neck so valve operator and stop plate clears the full thickness insulation.

L. Provide valve, seat and trim materials suitable for the intended service.

M. Provide memory stops for all valves used for throttling service. Valves for throttling service shall be butterfly, plug, caged or ball type.

## 2.2 PIPE SYSTEMS STRAINERS

A. Body:
1. "Y" pattern or basket as shown on the drawings.
2. Line size.
3. Threaded strainer blow down port.
4. ASTM A #126 Class B Cast Iron Body.

B. Construction:
1. 2" size and smaller with screw connections rated 400 psi WOG.
2. Over 2" size with flanged connections, rated 125 psi WOG.

C. Fabricate screens of Monel or type 304 stainless steel:
1. With 20 mesh woven wire in piping systems through 2".
2. With 0.45 perforations in piping systems 2-1/2" and 3".
3. With 0.125 perforations in piping systems 4" and larger.

D. Start-up:
1. Provide an additional fine mesh disposable screen for use during start-up operations.
2. Remove after 30 days.
3. Attach to piping for owners review.

E. Acceptable Manufacturers
1. Crane
2. Keckley
3. Zurn
4. Mueller

5. McAlear
6. Muesco

## 2.3 SUCTION DIFFUSER

A. For each pump as shown on the drawing, provide an angle type suction diffuser. Body is to fit both the pump inlet and suction pipe size.

B. Components:
1. Inlet straightening vanes.
2. Removable end cap.
3. Gauge ports.
4. Threaded strainer blow down port.
5. Adjustable support foot.
6. Removable magnetic insert.

C. The screen shall be as specified for pipe system strainers.

D. Provide an additional fine mesh disposable strainer for use during start up operations.
1. Remove after 30 days operation and all flushing is complete.
2. Attach to piping for owners review.

E. Construction:
1. 2" size and smaller with screw connections rated 400 psi WOG.
2. Over 2" size with flanged connections, rated 125 psi WOG.

F. Fabricate screens of Monel or type 304 stainless steel:
1. With 20 mesh woven wire in piping systems through 2".
2. With 0.045 perforations in piping systems 2-1/2" and 3".
3. With 0.125 perforations in piping systems 4" and larger.

## 2.4 VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Hydronic Service
1. Chilled Water Service
   a. Ball Valves up to 2": Nibco T-585-70-66 w/Nib-Seal insulated Handle
   b. Butterfly Valve 2-1/2" and larger: Nibco LD - 2000
      Keystone Figure 222
   c. Circuit Setters Tour and Andersson series 786,787,788, and 789
2. Heating & Condenser Water Service
   a. Ball Valves up to 2": Nibco T-585-70-66
   b. Butterfly Valve 2-1/2" and larger: Nibco LD - 2000
      Keystone Figure 222
   c. Circuit Setters Tour and Andersson series 786,787,788, and 789
3. Check Valve:
   a. Nibco Check Valve: T - 413 - B
   b. Nibco Check Valve 2-1/2" and larger: F - 918 - B

c. Nibco Check Valve 2-1/2" and larger: W - 920 -W (Wafer)
d. Keystone Check 2-1/2" and larger: FIQ 810

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. Install valves with stems upright or horizontal, not inverted.

B. Install valves for shut-off and isolating service at each piece of equipment, at vertical risers, and where shown on the drawings.

C. Use butterfly valves and ball valves in circulating water systems, for balancing duty. Provide infinite position gear operator with memory stop.

D. Provide drain valves at main shut-off valves and low points of piping and apparatus so the systems can be entirely drained.

1. 1" valve for pipes 6" and larger.

2. 3/4" valve for pipes smaller than 6".

3. Terminate with pipe plug.

4. Drain valves shall be ball valves.

E. Where valves are installed in insulated pipe, valve operator shall have an insert so the lever or handle will not damage the insulation. Install handles so the lever or handles will not damage the insulation.

F. Provide clearance for installation of insulation and access to valves.

G. Provide access where valves are not exposed.

H. Provide float valves / stilling wells in cooling tower or condenser water basins for water level control. Provide stilling wells around float valve to prevent turbulence ripples or wind interference.

**3.3 PIPE SYSTEMS STRAINERS**

A. Provide an additional fine mesh disposable strainer for use during start up operations.
1. Remove after 30 days operation and all flushing is complete.
2. Attach to piping for owners review.

B. Provide strainer in supply piping for all coil connections.

C. Provide strainer in condenser water piping entering chiller.

**3.4 WATER SYSTEM AIR VENTS**

A. Provide manual air vents at high points and at any other air pockets of closed circulating pipe systems. Extend 3/8" hard drawn copper tubing discharge drains to nearest floor or hub drain. Provide 1/4" Ball Valve as specified.

B. Where high point vents are not readily accessible provide additional valves at vent termination.

**END OF SECTION 23 05 23**

# SECTION 23 05 33 - HVAC PIPE HEAT TRACING

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install a complete industrial, constant wattage, UL listed system of electric pipe heat tracing and controls on all make-up water piping outdoors above grade to prevent freezing. The heat tracing system shall conform to ANSI/IEEE Standard 515-1989.

B. Protect the pipe, valves, fittings, meters and appurtenances. Apply sufficient cable and overheat thermostat to protect the entire system.

### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit shop drawings and product data as specified in Section 23 05 12

B. Submit detailed calculations for length of heat tracing cable per foot of pipe, based on actual length of piping installed.

C. Submit manufacturer's certified capacity charts with selections plotted thereon.

D. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.

E. Submit full load ampere requirement and voltage for branch circuit.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Raychem Corporation

B. Thermon Manufacturing Company

### 2.2 COMPONENTS

A. Self-regulating heater.
   1. The self-regulating heater shall consist of two 16 AWG tinned-copper bus wires embedded in parallel in a self-regulating polymer core that varies its power output to respond to temperature all along its length, allowing the heater to be crossed itself without overheating and to be cut in the field. The heater shall be covered by a radiation cross-linked modified polyolefin dielectric jacket.
   2. In order to provide energy conservation, and to prevent overheating, the heater shall have a self-regulating factor of at least 90%.
   3. The heater shall operate on a line voltage of 120 VAC without the use of transformers.
   4. The heater shall be sized according to the following. The required heater output rating is in watts per foot at 50°F (heater selection based on 1-1/2 inch fiberglass insulation on metal piping).

5. The heater shall be XL-Trace as manufactured by Raychem Corporation or XL-Econotrace as manufactured by Thermon Manufacturing Company.
6. Power connection, end seal, splice and tee kits components shall be applied in the field.
7. The system shall be controlled by an ambient sensing thermostat set at 40°F either directly or through an appropriate contactor.
8. Provide an end-of-circuit voltage indicating light

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. Install and start up the pipe heat tracing system in accordance with the manufacturer's Installation, Start-up and Service Instructions.

B. Install the pipe heat tracing cable under the pipe insulation.

C. Apply “Electrically Traced” signs to the outside of the thermal insulation.

D. Ground fault protection of the equipment shall be provided per the 1996 National Electrical Code, Article 427-22.

E. Provide a cast aluminum weatherproof NEMA-4 rated junction box for installation of the cable, with pilot light to indicate operation of the cable.

F. Use only electrical components as recommended by the manufacturer.

**3.2 ELECTRICAL WORK**

A. Furnish and install the wire, conduit and raceway systems required for the automatic operation of the pipe heat tracing system. Conform to the National Electrical Code.

B. The specified wiring work includes:
1. Wiring of control instruments between thermostat and junction boxes
2. Installation of thermostat and junction boxes
3. Wiring from the heat tracing cable to the junction boxes

C. Related branch circuit power wiring from the junction box to ground fault type circuit is specified to be provided in Division 26.

D. Provide devices and appurtenances as specified in Division 26.

E. Identify each circuit at each terminal with a separate tag.

F. Color code wires in accordance with IPCEA Standards.

G. Make all joints and connections with approved mechanical connectors.

**3.3 TESTING OF THE PIPE HEAT TRACING SYSTEM**

A. Test the pipe heat tracing system:
   1. Simulate freezing outside air conditions
   2. Measure the amperage draw of the heat tracing system
   3. Compare to the manufacturer's capacity rating of the actual system
   4. After installation and before and after installing the thermal insulation, subject heat to testing using a 1000 VDC megger. Minimum insulation resistance should be between 20 to 1000 megohms regardless of the length.

B. Submit records of test for approval prior to substantial completion; insert in the Owner's Manual.

**END SECTION 23 05 33**

# SECTION 23 05 48 - VIBRATION ISOLATION

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 SCOPE

A. Furnish, install, and adjust vibration isolation.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 23 Mechanical.
   1. Refer to the Section on Ductwork for flexible connections between fans and ducts.
   2. Refer to the Section on Equipment Supports for equipment foundation pads.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit product data showing type, size, load, deflection and other information required. Include clearly outlined procedures for installing and adjusting isolators.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Amber Booth

B. Kinetics

C. Mason

D. Korfund

E. VSI.

F. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.

G. Metraflex

### 2.2 ISOLATOR TYPES

A. Neoprene mountings shall have a minimum static deflection of 0.35 inches (9mm). All metal surfaces shall be neoprene covered and have friction pads both top and bottom. Bolt holes shall be provided on the bottom and a tapped hole and cap screw on top. Steel rails shall be used above the mountings under equipment such as small vent sets to compensate for the overhang.

B. Spring isolators shall be free standing and laterally stable without any housing and complete with a molded neoprene cup or ¼ inch (6mm) neoprene acoustical friction pad between the base plate and the support. All mountings shall have leveling bolts that must

be rigidly bolted to the equipment. Installed and operating heights shall be equal. The ratio of the spring diameter divided by the compressed spring height shall be no less than 0.8. Springs shall have a minimum additional travel to solid equal to 50% of the rated deflection. Submittals shall include spring diameters, deflection, compressed spring height and solid spring height.

C. Hangers shall consist of rigid steel frames containing minimum 1-1/4 inch (32mm) thick neoprene elements at the top and a steel spring with general characteristics as in specification B seated in a steel washer reinforced neoprene cup on the bottom. The neoprene element and the cup shall have neoprene bushings projecting through the steel box. In order to maintain stability the boxes shall not be articulated as clevis hangers nor the neoprene element stacked on top of the spring. Spring diameters and hanger box lower hole sizes shall be large enough to permit the hanger rod to swing through a 30-degree arc from side to side before contacting the cup bushing and short circuiting the spring. Submittals shall include a hanger drawing showing the 30-degree capability.

D. Vibration isolation manufacturer shall furnish rectangular steel concrete pouring forms for floating concrete bases. Bases for split case pumps shall be large enough to provide for suction and discharge elbows. Bases shall be a minimum of 1/12 of the longest dimension of the base but not less than 6 inches (150mm). The base depth need not exceed 12 inches (300mm) unless specifically recommended by the base manufacturer for mass or rigidity. Forms shall include minimum concrete reinforcing consisting of 1/2-inch (12mm) bars welded in place on 6 inch (150mm) centers running both ways in a layer 1-1/2 inch (40mm) above the bottom. Forms shall be furnished with steel templates to hold the anchor bolt sleeves and anchor bolts while concrete is being poured. Height saving brackets shall be employed in all mounting locations to maintain a 1-inch (25mm) clearance below the base. Wooden formed bases leaving a concrete rather then a steel finish are not acceptable.

E. Flexible stainless steel hose and braid flexible connectors having stainless steel braid and carbon steel fittings. Sizes 2.5" and larger shall be flanged. Smaller sizes shall have threaded connections. All flex connectors must be inspected (prior to being insulated) by the local factory representative for proper installation, and certification of proper installation must be included in the final inspection report.

F. Curb mounted rooftop equipment shall be mounted on spring isolation curbs. The lower member shall consist of a sheet metal Z section containing adjustable and removable steel springs that support the upper floating section. The upper frame must provide continuous support for the equipment and must be captive so as to resiliently resist wind forces. All directional neoprene snubber bushings shall be a minimum of 1/4 inch (6mm) thick. Steel springs shall be laterally stable and rest on 1/4 inch (6mm) thick neoprene acoustical pads. Hardware must be plated and the springs provided with a rust resistant finish. The curbs waterproofing shall consist of a continuous galvanized flexible counter flashing nailed over the lower curbs waterproofing and joined at the corners by EPDM bellows. All spring locations shall have access ports with removable waterproof covers. Lower curbs shall have provision for 2 inches (50mm) of insulation.

## 2.3 ISOLATOR APPLICATION

| EQUIPMENT | ISOLATOR TYPE | MINIMUM DEFLECTION |
|---|---|---|
| Chiller | A | 0.35” |
| Pump (Above Grade) | B & D | 1.5” |
| In-Line Fans | C | 0.5” |
| Suspended Fan Coil Units | C | 0.5” |
| Roof Mounted Air Handling Units | F | 2” |

## 2.4 PIPING ISOLATOR APPLICATIONS

| EQUIPMENT | ISOLATOR TYPE |
|---|---|
| Floor Mounted Pumps | E |
| Suspended Pumps | E |
| Chiller Pipe Connections | E |

## 2.5 FLEXIBLE CONNECTIONS IN PIPING AT PUMPS

A. Provide flexible connections at suction and discharge of chilled water, and hot water pumps, piping connections on chillers and where indicated on drawings. Refer to schedule above.

# PART 3 – EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Stock Requirements. The isolation manufacturer's representative shall maintain an adequate stock of springs and isolators of type used so that changes required during construction and installation can be made.

B. Factory Representation. After installation, furnish factory-trained representative of the isolation manufacturer to check various isolators and report measured versus anticipated deflection on all isolators. Have the representative certify that isolators have been installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and approved submittals. Provide written report to Engineer indicating compliance prior to final acceptance.

**END OF SECTION 23 05 48**

# SECTION 23 05 93 - TESTING, BALANCING AND ADJUSTING (TAB) OF ENVIRONMENTAL SYSTEMS

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Balance, adjust and test the air distribution system including the exhaust system.

B. Balance, adjust and test the hydronic system.

C. Verify and record the duct test results performed by the mechanical contractor.

### 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. COORDINATION OF TESTING AND BALANCING

### 1.3 PAYMENT PROCEDURES

A. The work of this Section of the Specifications shall be paid directly by the Owner.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. History of the TAB organization.

B. Agency certification.

C. Personnel qualifications.

D. TAB data forms.

E. Instrumentation list.

F. Name of the project supervising engineer.

G. Name and address and contact person of five successfully completed projects of similar size and scope.

H. To perform required professional services, the balancing agency shall have a minimum of one test and balance engineer certified by the Associated Air Balance Council.

### 1.5 TAB FIRM QUALIFICATIONS

A. The organization performing the work shall be a Certified member in good standing of the (AABC) Associated Air Balance Council.

B. Able to furnish evidence of having contracted for and completed not less than five systems of comparable size and type that have served their Owners satisfactorily for not less than five years.

C. A specialist in this field and have the personnel, experience, training, skill, and the organization to perform the work.

D. The balancing agency shall furnish all necessary calibrated instrumentation to adequately perform the specified services. An inventory of all instruments and devices in possession of the balancing agency may be required by the engineer to determine the balancing agency's performance capability.

E. The balancing agency shall have operated for a minimum of five years under its current name.

F. Personnel:
   1. The project supervisor shall be a Professional Engineer registered in Texas.
      a. Extensive knowledge of the work involved.
      b. At least five years experience conducting tests of the type specified.
      c. This test and balance engineer shall be responsible for the supervision and certification of the total work herein specified.
   2. All work shall be conducted under the direct supervision of the supervising engineer.
   3. Technicians shall be trained and experienced in the work they conduct.

**1.6 WARRANTY**

A. Provide (AABC) guarantee in writing.

B. Extended warranty.
   1. Include an extended warranty of 2 years after completion of test and balance work, during which time the Architect/Engineer may request a retest or resetting of any outlet or other items as listed in the test report.
   2. Provide technicians and instruments to assist the Architect/Engineer in making any tests he may require during this period.
   3. The balancing agency shall perform an inspection of the HVAC system during the opposite season from that which the initial adjustments were made. The balancing agency shall make any necessary modifications to the initial adjustments to produce optimum system operation.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 TAB TOLERANCES**

A. The water, outside air, supply air, return air, and exhaust air for each system shall be adjusted to within +/- 5% of the value scheduled on the drawings.

## 3.2 SITE VISITS

A. During construction, the balancing agency shall inspect the installation of the piping systems, sheetmetal work, temperature controls, energy management system, and other component parts of the heating, ventilating, and air conditioning systems. One inspection shall take place when 60% of the ductwork is installed and another inspection shall take place when 90% of the equipment is installed. The balancing agency shall submit a brief written report of each inspection to the architect and engineer.

B. Upon completion of the installation and start-up of the mechanical equipment by the mechanical contractor, the balancing agency shall test and balance the system components to obtain optimum conditions in each conditioned space of the building. If construction deficiencies are encountered that preclude obtaining optimum conditions, and the deficiencies cannot be corrected by the mechanical contractor within a reasonable period of time, the balancing agency shall cease testing and balancing services and advise the architect, engineer, general contractor and owner, in writing, of the deficiencies.

C. Note proper piping installation, location of valves, and flow measuring instruments.

D. Make one series of visits, phased as required by construction progress, prior to installation of the ceiling. Note proper installation of balancing dampers.

E. Continue the site visits up to completion of project. In each succeeding report, list corrections made from previous reports.

## 3.3 TESTING INSTRUMENTS

A. Submit a list of all instruments to be used for the test and balance procedures.
   1. Catalog sheets
   2. Certificate of last calibration
   3. Calibration within a period of six months prior to balancing

B. Testing equipment shall be in good working order and tested for accuracy prior to start of work.

## 3.4 COORDINATION WITH OTHER SPECIFICATION SECTIONS

A. Review the related ductwork shop drawings and piping shop drawings. Make recommendations concerning suitability with respect to the testing, balancing and adjusting work.

B. Make tests to verify proper placement of the static pressure sensors for the variable air

volume fan system control.

C. In cooperation with the work specified in Building Management and Control System section, a systematic listing of the testing and verification shall be included in the final TAB report. The TAB firm shall provide a laptop computer to operate with the Building Management and Control System. Building Management and Control System shall provide all necessary software and special interface cables, as required, to communicate with the DDC system:

1. Work with the temperature control contractor to ensure the most effective total system operation within the design limitations, and to obtain mutual understanding of the intended control performance.
2. Verify that all control devices are properly connected.
3. Verify that all dampers, valves, and other controlled devices, are operated by the intended controller.
4. Verify that all dampers and valves are in the position indicated by the controller (open, closed or modulating).
5. Verify the integrity of valves and dampers in terms of tightness of close-off and full open positions. This includes dampers in multizone units, terminal boxes and fire/smoke dampers.
6. Observe that all valves are properly installed in piping system in relation to direction of flow and location.
7. Observe the calibration of all controllers.
8. Verify the proper application of all normally opened and normally closed valves.
9. Observe the locations of all thermostats and humidistats for potential erratic operation from outside influences such as sunlight, drafts or cold walls.
10. Observe the location of all sensors to determine whether their position will allow them to sense only the intended temperatures or pressures of the media. Control contractor will relocate as deemed necessary by the Engineer.
11. Verify that the sequence of operation for any control mode is in accordance with the approved shop drawings and specifications. Verify that no simultaneous heating and cooling occurs.
12. Verify the correct operation of all interlock systems and installation is per the manufacturer recommendations.
13. Check all dampers for free operation.
14. Verify that all controller setpoints meet the design intent.
15. Perform variable volume system verification to assure the system and its components track with changes from full flow to minimum flow.

D. Upon completion of the testing and balancing, submit three days prior notice that the systems are ready for a running test. A qualified representative of the test and balance organization shall be present, with a representative from the engineers office, to field verify TAB report readings. Specific and random selections of data recorded in the certified test and balance report will be reviewed.

## 3.5 INSTRUMENT TEST HOLES

A. When it is required to make holes in the field to measure temperature, static pressure or velocity in the ducts:
   1. Drill holes, plug and tape external duct insulation.
   2. Repair damaged insulation to Engineer's approval.

**3.6 TESTING THE AIR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM**

A. The TAB agency shall verify that all ductwork, dampers, grilles, registers, and diffusers have been installed per design and set full open. The TAB agency shall perform the following TAB procedures in accordance with the AABC National Standards and all results shall be recorded in the TAB report:
   1. Supply Fans:
      a. Fan speeds: Test and adjust fan RPM to achieve design CFM requirements.
      b. Current and Voltage: Test and record motor voltage and amperage, and compare data with the nameplate limits to ensure fan motor is not in or above the service factor.
      c. Pitot-Tube Traverse: Perform a Pitot-Tube traverse of the main supply and return ducts, as applicable, to obtain total CFM. If a Pitot-Tube traverse is not practical, an explanation of why a traverse was not made must appear on the appropriate data sheet. Measurements must be recorded with an Inclined Manometer or an Inclined/Vertical Manometer.
      d. Outside Air: Test and adjust the outside air on applicable equipment using a Pitot-Tube traverse. If a Pitot-Tube traverse is not practical, an explanation of why a traverse was not made must appear on the appropriate data sheet. If a traverse is not practical, use the mixed air temperature method, if the inside and outside temperature difference is at least 20°F, or use the difference between Pitot-tube traverse of the supply and return ducts.
      e. Static Pressure: Test and record system static pressure, including the static pressure profile of each supply fan.
   2. All Other Fans:
      a. Fan speeds: Test and adjust fan RPM to achieve design CFM requirements.
      b. Current and Voltage: Test and record motor voltage and amperage, and compare data with the nameplate limits to ensure fan motor is not in or above the service factor.
      c. Pitot-Tube Traverse: Perform a Pitot-Tube traverse of the main return ducts, as applicable, to obtain total CFM. If a Pitot-Tube traverse is not practical, an explanation of why a traverse was not made must appear on the appropriate data sheet. Measurements must be recorded with an Inclined Manometer or an Inclined/Vertical Manometer.
      d. Static Pressure: Test and record system static pressure, including the static pressure profile of each return fan.
   3. VAV Terminal Units:

a. Set and record volume regulators on all terminal boxes to meet design maximum and minimum CFM requirements.
b. Identification: Identify the type, location, and size of each terminal unit. This information must be recorded on the terminal box data sheets.

4. Diffusers, Registers and Grilles:
   a. Tolerances: Test, adjust, and balance each diffuser, grille, and register to within 5% of design requirements. Minimize drafts. Observe throws are in direction as indicated on drawings.
5. Coils (including electric coils):
   a. Air Temperature: Once air flows are set to acceptable limits, take wet bulb (cooling coil only) and dry bulb air temperatures on the entering and leaving side of each coil. Calculate the sensible and latent (cooling coil only) capacity of the coil. Provide information in TAB report.

B. Record preliminary air handler data, including fan RPM and static pressures across filter, fans and coils.

C. Perform a velocity traverse of the main supply ducts using a pitot-tube and inclined manometer to establish initial air delivery. Perform a Pitot-tube traverse of main supply and return ducts, as applicable, to obtain total CFM. If a pitot-tube traverse is not practical, a detailed explanation of why a traverse was not made must appear on the appropriate data sheet.

D. Where air measuring stations are installed, use pitot tube traverse readings to verify and record the correct calibration of the stations output.

E. Make adjustments in fan RPM and damper settings, as required, to obtain design supply air, return air, and outside air.

F. Measure and adjust all supply and return branches to design air delivery.

G. Measure and adjust all diffusers to design air delivery to +/- 5% of design requirements.

H. Make a set of recordings showing final system conditions.

## 3.7 TESTING THE HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. The TAB agency shall, as applicable, verify that all hydronic equipment, piping, and coils have been filled and purged; that strainers have been cleaned; that water has been flushed and is in a clean condition, and that all balancing valves (except bypass valves) are set full open. As applicable, check air vents and expansion or compression tank for proper operation. The TAB agency shall perform the following testing and balancing functions in accordance with the AABC National Standards and all results shall be recorded in the TAB report:

1. Record preliminary pump data.
   a. Pump RPM.

b. Pump shut-off differential head.
c. Pump operating differential head.
d. Check and verify pump alignment.
e. Verify impeller diameter.

B. Adjust balancing valves in the pump discharge lines to obtain design water quantity as read from the manufacturer's pump curve and from a flow meter.

C. In variable flow systems, the water flow of the pump shall be set at the scheduled gpm, not the total of all the valves. Determine the diversity of the system and balance the individual coils with the maximum pump water quantity flowing in the system.

D. Balance flow through:
1. Chillers.
2. Coils.
3. Boiler.
4. Pumps
5. Condensers.
6. Cooling tower.
7. Heat Exchanger.

E. Use flow meters, differential pressures and temperature relationships as required.

F. Balance by-pass lines to obtain the same pressure drop with systems on by-pass as full flow through the coil including the valve.

G. Repeat steps, as required, to obtain a final systems balance and make a set of recordings showing final systems conditions.

H. Pumps:
1. Test and adjust pumps to meet design water flow requirements. Check pumps for proper operation. Pumps shall be free of vibration and cavitation Record appropriate gauge readings for final TDH and Block-Off\Dead head calculations. Check and verify pump alignment.
2. Current and Voltage: Test and record motor voltage and amperage, and compare data with the nameplate limits to ensure pump motor is not in or above the service factor.

I. Coils:
1. Tolerances: Test, adjust, and balance all chilled water and hot water coils within 5% of design flow requirements.
2. Verification: Verify the type, location, final pressure drop and water quantity (GPM) of each coil. Calculate the actual capacity of all coils. This information shall be recorded on coil data sheets.

J. Boilers:
1. Verify that boilers have been filled and started by others, and are in operation.

2. Current and Voltage: As applicable, test and record motor voltage and amperage, and compare data with the nameplate limits to ensure motor is not in or above the service factor.
3. Test, adjust and record water flows through water boilers.
4. Test and record water temperature profiles of each boiler.

K. Chillers:
1. Verify that chillers have been started by the manufacture and are in operation. Test and adjust chiller water flows to within 5% of the design requirements by using a U-TUBE manometer and setting balancing valves.
2. Current and Voltage: Test and record motor voltage and amperage, and compare data with the nameplate limits to ensure compressor motor is not in or above the service factor.
3. Test and record temperature profiles of each chiller at design water flow.

## 3.8 EQUIPMENT POWER READINGS

A. Record the following information for each motor:
1. Equipment designation.
2. Manufacturer.
3. Unit model number and serial number and frame.
4. Motor nameplate horsepower; nameplate voltage; phase and full load amperes.
5. Heater coil in starter.
   a. Rating in amperes.
   b. Manufacturer's recommendation.
6. Motor RPM/driven equipment RPM.
7. Power reading (voltage, amperes of all legs at motor terminals).

## 3.9 BOILERS

A. Check for proper operation and with operation at near design conditions, record the following:
1. Manufacturer, model number, serial number and nameplate.
2. If water type, water flow in GPM, entering and leaving water temperature and water pressure drop in feet.
3. Type of fuel and heating value.
4. Rate of fuel consumption.
5. Capacity in MBH.
6. Efficiency.
7. Flue gas analysis.
8. Motor data.

B. Observe demonstration that all controls and safety devices are functioning properly. Record observations.

## 3.10 CHILLERS (Air Cooled)

A. Balance flow of water through each evaporator to be within a range of 100% to 110% of design flow with all pumps operating. With only one pump operating, the maximum flow shall not exceed the maximum tube velocity recommended by the manufacturer.

B. Verification of safety interlocks and controls are the responsibility of the manufacturer.

C. With each chiller operating at near design temperature conditions, measure and record the following:
   1. Manufacturer, model number, serial number and all nameplate data.
   2. Evaporator water entering temperature, leaving temperature, pressure drop (ft.) and water quantity (GPM).
   3. Condenser air entering temperature, leaving temperature.
   4. Evaporator and condenser refrigerant temperatures and pressures (using instruments furnished with the machine by the manufacturer).
   5. Volts and amps for each phase.
   6. Power factor.
   7. KW input.
   8. Tons of cooling.
   9. KW per ton of cooling.

D. Reference chiller specification for additional requirements.

**3.11 TESTING THE VARIABLE AIR VOLUME SYSTEM**

A. All VAV boxes used are to be calibrated to produce the rated air quantity.

B. Set and record the supply air static pressure controller to provide actual design air flow at the most resistive terminal.

C. Measure and adjust the design air delivery at the inlet of each VAV box.

D. Measure and record the air quantity from each VAV box at its maximum flow. Manipulate the controller to achieve maximum flow.

E. Reset each box to yield and record minimum primary air flow.

   1. DDC controllers record the correction factor required to establish actual desired air quantity as designed.

   2. Pneumatic controllers adjust velocity controller as required to establish actual desired air quantity as designed.

F. If the box is operating with inlet static pressure in excess of the minimum cataloged pressure specified by the manufacturer and is not producing rated air quantity, field adjust the box to produce rated air quantity. Retest until approved results are obtained.

G. Position the VAV boxes to the proportion of maximum fan air volume to total installed box maximum volume.

H. Set the fan to deliver the AHUs scheduled design airflow.

I. Perform and record a total air traverse.

J. With the system terminal boxes set for full flow or diversity, the system will be delivering the scheduled design CFM with the most restrictive box in control. Make a speed increase if either or both static and volume are low.

K. Set the boxes to minimum and adjust the inlet vanes and or speed controllers to prevent excessive static in the system.

L. Coordinate with the work specified in Building Management and Control System on the final location of the sensors for the static pressure controller. Locate in the supply duct far enough from the fan discharge to be truly representative of the average static pressure in the system.

M. Modulate the fan speed on the supply fan. Adjust as required to coordinate with the static pressure sensing network.

N. Make a set of recordings showing final system conditions including system duct static pressures and control system setpoint.

**3.12 DUCT TEST**

A. Test and Balancing Contractor shall verify and record the duct test results. A copy of the duct test results, as completed, shall be submitted to the engineer for review within five days. Provide a complete report of all the duct test results in the final TAB report.

**3.13 DIRECT EXPANSION EQUIPMENT**

A. With each unit operating at near design conditions, measure and record the following:
   1. Manufacturer, model number, serial number and all nameplate data.
   2. Ambient temperature, condenser discharge temperature.
   3. Amperage and voltage for each phase.
   4. Leaving and entering air temperatures.
   5. Suction and discharge pressures and temperatures.
   6. Tons of cooling.
   7. Verification that moisture indicator shows dry refrigerant.

**3.14 TAB REPORT**

A. The activities described in this specification shall be recorded in a report form; and four individually bound copies shall be provided to the Architect and Engineer. Neatly type and arrange data. Include with the data the date tested, personnel present, weather

conditions, nameplate record of the test instruments used and list all measurements taken after all corrections are made to the system. Record all failures and corrective action taken to remedy any incorrect situation. The intent of the final report is to provide a reference of actual operating conditions for the Owner's operations personnel. Provide a "Preface" which shall include a general discussion of the system and any abnormalities or problems encountered.

B. All measurements and recorded readings (of air, water, electricity, etc.) that appear in the report must have been recorded on site by the permanently employed technicians or engineers of the TAB firm.

C. Submit reports on forms approved by the engineer that will include the following data as a minimum:
   1. Title Page
      a. Company Name
      b. Company Address
      c. Company telephone number
      d. Project name
      e. Project location
      f. Project Manager
      g. Project Engineer
      h. Project Contractor
      I. Project Identification Number
   2. Summary of the TAB report data
   3. Index
   4. Instrument List
      a. Instrument
      b. Manufacturer
      c. Model
      d. Serial Number
      e. Range
      f. Calibration Date
      g. What test instrument is to be used for:
   5. Fan Data
      a. Location
      b. Manufacturer
      c. Model
      d. Air flow, specified and actual
      e. Total static pressure (total external) specified and actual
      f. Inlet pressure
      g. Discharge pressure
      h. Fan RPM
   6. Return Air/Outside Air Data
      a. Identification/location
      b. Design return air flow
      c. Actual return air flow

d. Design outside air flow
e. Actual outside air flow
f. Return air temperature
g. Outside air temperature
h. Required mixed air temperature
I. Actual mixed air temperature

7. Electric Motors
   a. Manufacturer
   b. HP/BHP
   c. Phase, voltage, amperage, nameplate, actual
   d. PM
   e. Service Factor
   f. Starter size, heater elements, rating
8. V-Belt Drive
   a. Identification/location
   b. Required driven RPM
   c. Drive sheave, diameter and RPM
   d. Belt, size and quantity
   e. Motor sheave, diameter and RPM
   f. Center-to-center distance, maximum, minimum and actual
9. Duct Traverse
   a. System zone/branch
   b. Duct size
   c. Area
   d. Design velocity
   e. Design air flow
   f. Test velocity
   g. Test air flow
   h. Duct static pressure
   I. Air correction factor
10. Air Monitoring Station Data
   a. Identification/location
   b. System
   c. Size
   d. Area
   e. Design velocity
   f. Design air flow
   g. Test velocity
   h. Test air flow
11. Air Distribution Test Sheet
   a. Air terminal number
   b. Room number/location
   c. Terminal type
   d. Terminal size
   e. Correction factor
   f. Design velocity

g. Design air flow
h. Test (final) velocity
i. Test (final) air flow

12. Pump Data
    a. Identification/number
    b. Manufacturer
    c. Size/model
    d. Impeller
    e. Service
    f. Design flow rate, pressure drop, BHP
    g. Actual flow rate, pressure drop, BHP
    h. Discharge pressure
    I. Suction pressure
    j. Total operating head pressure
    k. Shut off, discharge and suction pressures
    l. Shut off, total head pressure
    m. Pressure differential settings
13. Cooling Coil Data
    a. Identification/number
    b. Location
    c. Service
    d. Manufacturer
    e. Entering air DB temperature, design and actual
    f. Entering air WB temperature, design and actual
    g. Leaving air DB temperature, design and actual
    h. Leaving air WB temperature, design and actual
    i. Water pressure flow, design and actual
    j. Water pressure drop, design and actual
    k. Entering water temperature, design and actual
    l. Leaving water temperature, design and actual
    m. Air pressure drop, design and actual
    n. Capacity - sensible and latent
14. Heating Coil Data
    a. Identification/number
    b. Location
    c. Service
    d. Manufacturer
    e. Entering air DB temperature, design and actual
    f. Leaving air DB temperature, design and actual
    g. Water pressure flow, design and actual
    h. Water pressure drop, design and actual
    i. Entering water temperature, design and actual
    j. Leaving water temperature, design and actual
    k. Air pressure drop, design and actual
    l. Capacity
15. Electric Coil Data

a. Identification/number
b. Location
c. Service
d. Manufacturer
e. Entering air DB temperature, design and actual
f. Leaving air DB temperature, design and actual
g. Electrical Characteristics
h. Capacity

16. Sound Level Report
    a. Location (Location established by the design engineer)
    b. N C curve for eight (8) bands-equipment off
    c. N C curve for eight (8) bands-equipment on
17. Vibration Test on equipment having 10 HP motors or greater in size.
    a. Location of points:
        1) Fan bearing, drive end
        2) Fan bearing, opposite end
        3) Motor bearing, center (if applicable)
        4) Motor bearing, drive end
        5) Motor bearing, opposite end
        6) Casing (bottom or top)
        7) Casing (side)
        8) Duct after flexible connection (discharge)
        9) Duct after flexible connection (suction)
    b. Test readings:
        1) Horizontal, velocity and displacement
        2) Vertical, velocity and displacement
        3) Axial, velocity and displacement
    c. Normally acceptable readings, velocity and acceleration
    d. Unusual conditions at time of test
    e. Vibration source (if non-complying)
18. Control verification indicating date performed and any abnormalities identified.
    a. Point Location/Description
    b. EMS Readout (Setpoint and Actual)
    c. Actual Readout of all points
    d. Interlocks
    e. Safeties
    f. Variable speed drive tracking with EMS input
    g. Variable speed drive Bypass operation
    h. Sequence of operation

**END OF SECTION 29 05 93**

# SECTION 23 05 94 - COORDINATION OF TESTING AND BALANCING

## PART 1 - TESTING, BALANCING AND ADJUSTING

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Balancing and adjusting of the environmental systems is specified in Section 23 05 93.

B. Coordination of the work is specified in this Section.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS / NOT USED

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 COORDINATION

A. Bring the work to a state of readiness for testing, balancing, and adjusting.
   1. Install air terminal devices.
   2. Provide specified filters in air handling equipment. Install clean filters just prior to the start of the test and balance work.
   3. Verify lubrication of equipment.
   4. Install permanent instrumentation.
   5. Clean piping systems and fill with clean water.
   6. Complete "Start-up" of equipment.
   7. Check rotation and alignment of rotating equipment and tension of belted drives.
   8. Verify ratings of overload heaters in motor starters.
   9. Verify that safety and operating control set points are as designed and automatic control sequences have been checked.
   10. Provide control diagrams and sequence of operation.
   11. Collect material for maintenance manuals and prepare one manual especially for use in testing and balancing.
   12. Verify that graphic operational data such as start/stop instructions, valve tag schedules, and piping identification schedules have been provided where needed.
   13. Verify that equipment and piping identification work has been completed with valve tags, schedules, and piping identification system.
   14. Comb out fins on extended-surface heat transfer coils where damaged.
   15. Clean all strainers as required.
   16. Remove construction strainers after water is cleaned and treated.
   17. Remove all temporary filters from HVAC equipment.
   18. Provide start-up reports listing all start-up information and manufacturer’s information attached.

B. Provide and install new pulleys and belts as required to affect the correct speed ratio. Adjustments where no belt or pulley change is required, is specified in Section 23 05 93.

C. Verify that the systems are ready for balancing and adjusting.

D. Submit a letter stating:
   1. The specified pieces of equipment have been checked, started, and adjusted by the manufacturer.
   2. Other equipment has been checked and started.
   3. The systems have been operated for the specified period of time.
   4. The automatic controls system has been adjusted, calibrated, and checked, and is operating as specified.

E. Provide the services of a technician full time at all times at the project when testing, balancing and adjusting work is being conducted.

F. Provide instrumentation and services to take readings of the required data for the refrigerant circuits.

G. Provide and install volume dampers required for balancing by the TAB Contractor.

**3.2 START-UP OF EQUIPMENT**

A. Pre-start & Start-up equipment using the procedures as recommended by the manufacturers.

B. Complete start-up of equipment prior to start of testing & balancing.

C. Submit start-up procedures as outlined by the manufacturers and complete the "HVAC FAN / AIR HANDLING / START-UP REPORT FORM" to Engineer.

| HVAC FAN / AIR HANDLING UNIT / START-UP REPORT FORM | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| *Equipment Description* | *Actual* | | | *Disc. Switch Wired* | *Rotation Correct* | *Belt* | | *RPM Correct Submittal* | *Vibration Isolation Correct* | *Attachment To Roof Curb* | *List Of Damage Parts* | *Bearings Lubricated* | *Filter Installed* | *Interlocks & Dampers Operational* |
| | *Voltage* | *Amps* | *HP* | | | *Condition & Part #* | *Tension Correct* | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

**END OF SECTION 23 05 94**

# SECTION 23 07 13 - EXTERNAL DUCT INSULATION

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install external insulation on supply, return, and outside air ductwork.

B. External insulation of concealed and exposed ducts is included in this Section. Internal acoustic duct lining is specified under ductwork and not included in this Section.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 9 - FINISHES. Painting and Color Coding.

B. Division 23 - MECHANICAL.
   1. Air Handling Units. Internal insulation for air units is specified in the sections on air handling units. The units do not require external insulation.
   2. Internal Duct Liner. Internal duct liner is specified in the section on ductwork.
   3. Insulation. Refer to specific sections on individual insulation types.
   4. Refer to insulation and liner plan detail.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The intent of insulation specifications is to obtain superior quality workmanship, resulting in an installation that is absolutely satisfactory in both function and appearance. Provide insulation in accordance with the specifications for each type of service and apply as recommended by the manufacturer and as specified.

B. An approved contractor for this work under this Division shall be:
   1. A specialist in this field and have the personnel, experience, training, skill, and the organization to provide a practical working system.
   2. Able to furnish evidence of having contracted for and installed not less than 3 systems of comparable size and type that have served their Owners satisfactorily for not less than 3 years.

C. All duct insulation used on the project inside the building must have a flame spread rating not exceeding 25 and a smoke developed rating not exceeding 50 as determined by test procedures ASTM E84, NFPA 255 and UL 723. These ratings must be as tested on the composite of insulation, jacket or facing, and adhesive. Components such as adhesives, mastics and cements must meet the same individual ratings as the minimum requirements and bear the UL label.

D. Condensation on any insulated system is not approved.

E. Replace insulation damaged by either moisture or other means. Insulation that has been wet, whether dried or not, is considered damaged. Make repairs where condensation is

caused by improper installation of insulation. Also repair any damage caused by the condensation.

F. Where existing insulated ductwork or other services are tapped, remove existing insulation back to undamaged sections and replace with new insulation of the same type and thickness as existing insulation. Apply as specified for insulation of the same service.

## 1.4 APPROVALS

A. Submittals. Submit product data on each insulation type, adhesive, and finish to be used in the work. Make the submittal as specified in Division 1 General Requirements and obtain approval before beginning installation. Include product description, list of materials and thickness for each service and location, and the manufacturer's installation instructions for each product.

B. Sample Application. Make an application of each type of insulation to display the material, quality and application method. Obtain approval of the sample application before proceeding with installation of the work.

# PART 2 – PRODUCTS

## 2.1 INSULATION

A. Glass fiber rigid duct insulation.
   1. Minimum density of 3 pcf, installed R value to be 6.0 (when located in a conditioned plenum) and minimum density of 0.75 pcf, installed R value to be 8.0 (when located in an unconditioned plenum) at 75°F mean, facing of 0.7 mil aluminum foil reinforced with glass yarn mesh and laminated to 40 lbs. fire-resistant Kraft. R-value to be indicated on exterior side of insulation to be verified by City inspector.
   2. Acceptable Manufacturers
      a. Schuller 814 spin-glas FSK.
      b. Owens-Corning Type 703 board RKF.
      c. Knauf 3 PCF FSK.

B. Glass fiber blanket duct insulation.
   1. Minimum density of 1.0 pcf, installed R value to be 6.0 (when located in a conditioned plenum) and minimum density of 0.75 pcf, installed R value to be 8.0 (when located in an unconditioned plenum) at 75°F mean, facing of 0.35 mil foil reinforced with glass yarn mesh and laminated to 40 lbs. fire resistant Kraft. R-value to be indicated on exterior side of insulation to be verified by City inspector.
   2. Acceptable Manufacturers
      a. Manville R-series Microlite FSKL.
      b. Owens-Corning ED100 RKF.
      c. Knauf 1.0 PCF FSK.

C. Fiberglass reinforcing cloth mesh.
   1. Acceptable Manufacturers
      a. Perma Glass Mesh.
      b. Alpha Glass Mesh.
      c. Childers Chil-Glas #10
      d. Foster Mast a Fab
      e. Vimasco.

D. Mastics, sealants, coatings and adhesives.
   1. Acceptable Manufacturers
      a. Childers.
      B. Foster.
      c. Vimasco.

E. Fireboard Insulation
   1. Totally encapsulated with foil facing.
   2. Two hour rated fire protection.
   3. Zero clearance to combustible protection.
   4. System shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL.
   5. Tested per ISO 6944, Type A Duct and achieve a 2 hour rating for stability, integrity and insulation.
   6. Provided system is subject to the approval of the Local Authority Having Jurisdiction.
   7. Acceptable Manufacturers
      a. Unifrax ON Fyrewrap Elite 1.5
      b. Partak Insulation, Inc. Paroc Fireboard
      c. Thermal Ceramics FireMaster 3M
      d. Premier Refractories International, Pyroscat.

F. Rigid Closed Cell Insulation
   1. Acceptable Manufacturers
      a. Dow Trymer.
      b. Phenolic Foam.

G. Reinforced Foil Tape
   1. Acceptable Manufacturers
      a. Venture 1525CW
      b. 3” FSK
   2. Thickness 6.5 mils
   3. Color: silver

**2.2 COATING AND ADHESIVE**

A. Coating. Provide Childers CP-38 or Foster 30-80 vapor barrier coating. Coating must meet MIL Spec C-19565C, Type II and be QPL Listed. Permeance shall be 0.013 perms or less at 43 mils dry. Tested at 100ºF and 90% RH per ASTM E96.

B. Outdoors: Provide as insulation coating Childers Encacel X or Foster Monolar 60-90. Permeance shall be 0.03 perms or less at 30 mils dry. Tested at 100ºF and 90% RH per ASTM F 1249.

C. Adhesive. Provide Childers CP-82 or Foster 85-20 vapor barrier adhesive.

D. Reinforcing Mesh. Provide 10 x 10 white glass or polyester reinforcing mesh.

**2.3 OUTDOOR DUCT LAMINATED JACKETING**

A. Rubberized bitumen compound material:
1. Ultraviolet resistant
2. Weatherproof
3. Vapor retarding jacketing
4. Laminated jacketing
5. Cross-laminated high strength polyethylene film
6. Laminated to aluminum foil
7. Minimum 60-mil thickness

B. Acceptable Manufacturers:
1. Alumaguard 60
2. Flex Clad 400
3. Venture Clad 1577CW

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 FIRE SAFETY REQUIREMENTS**

A. Do not extend duct coverings through walls or floors required to be fire-stopped or required to have a fire resistance rating. Interrupt duct coverings in the immediate vicinity of heat sources such as electric resistance or fuel-burning heater.

**3.2 CONCEALED DUCT**

A. Provide flexible glass fiber insulation with factory-applied, reinforced UL labeled Foil-Skrim-Kraft (FSK) facing.

B. Standing Seams. Insulate standing seams and stiffeners, which protrude through the insulation with 0.6 lb. per cubic foot density, 1-1/2” thick, faced, flexible blanket insulation. Insulation shall not prevent adjustment of damper operators.

C. Insulation shall be wrapped tightly on the ductwork with all circumferential joints butted and longitudinal joints overlapped a minimum of 2”. In addition, secure insulation to the bottom of rectangular ductwork by the use of either weld pins with washers or cup-head pins welded to the ductwork or perforated based insulation hangers glued to the duct on twelve inch centers to prevent sagging of insulation.

D. On circumferential joint, the 2” flange on the facing shall be stapled with 9/16” outward clinch steel staples on 2” centers and taped using 3” wide foil tape applied with additional adhesive of Foster 85-75. Cover all seams, joints, pin penetrations and other breaks with foil tape and glue.

E. Ductwork in mechanical rooms is considered concealed spaces.

## 3.3 EXPOSED DUCT INSULATION

A. Ductwork in exposed locations is to be insulated with fiberglass rigid / semi-rigid board insulation.
   1. Apply fabric and mastic to provide a smooth surface for painting.

B. Standing Seams: Insulate standing seams and stiffeners which protrude through the insulation with 0.6 lb per cubic foot density, 1-1/2 inch thick, faced insulation. As a vapor seal, use reinforcing mesh with vapor barrier coating. Insulation shall not prevent adjustment of damper operators.

C. Insulation shall be wrapped tightly on the ductwork. Adhere insulation to ductwork with adhesive. In addition, secure insulation to the bottom of rectangular ductwork by the use of either weld pins with washers or cup-head pins welded to the ductwork or perforated based insulation hangers glued to the duct on 12 inch centers to prevent sagging of insulation.

D. Cover all seams, joints, pin penetrations and other breaks with coating reinforced with reinforcing mesh. Fabric shall not be visible after coating.

## 3.4 OUTDOOR DUCTWORK COVERING

A. Cover all supply and return ductwork outdoors:
   1. 1-1/2” thick, rigid closed cell insulation with reinforced foil facing.

B. Install a high point in center and slope in both directions so water will not stand on horizontal surfaces.

C. Impale the insulation over mechanical fasteners and washers.
   1. A minimum of 2 rows of fasteners per side on 12-inch centers.
   2. Seal all breaks, joints and punctures by applying a 1/8” thick vapor barrier mastic coating, embedded in open mesh reinforcing mesh.

D. Standing S, or flanged connections shall be covered with the same thickness of insulation overlapped a minimum of 4”.

E. Apply a tack coat of Childers CP-10/11 or Foster 46-50 weather barrier mastic over the entire surface.
   1. While this coat is still tacky, Childers #5 glass fiber reinforcing mesh shall be

smoothly applied and pressed into the mastic. The cloth shall be taut with adjacent edges overlapped a minimum of 4”.

2. After the first coat of mastic has taken its set, the second coat shall be applied over the cloth by palm, trowel, or spray to sufficient thickness that, when dried, the combined thickness of mastic and cloth is not less than 1/8”.
3. Upon completion, the openings in the cloth shall be completely sealed and the yarn shall not be visible. The completed work shall be completely smooth and present a plane surface.
4. Aluminum gray or white finish as approved by the Architect.

F. Standing water on horizontal surfaces is not approved.

G. Apply outdoor duct laminated jacketing protection over entire insulation surface. Apply rubberized bitumen compound, applied to a cross-laminated high strength polyethylene film, laminated to aluminum foil.

## 3.5 KITCHEN GREASE EXHAUST DUCTWORK / KILN DUCTWORK / FUME HOOD DUCT

A. Secure fireboard insulation to duct with impaling pins and 3” square speed clips. In addition, provide a wire mesh support system and additional sealing or support as required by the code enforcing authority. The insulation support system shall include framed access to allow the insulation to be removed and replaced without damage at the access doors in the duct system for inspection and cleaning. Coordinate location of access openings to correspond accurately. Provide stainless steel banding on 12” centers.

## 3.6 GENERAL INSTALLATION

A. Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Apply insulation on clean, dry surfaces only.

C. Continue insulation with vapor barrier through penetrations.

D. Neatly finish insulation at supports, protrusions and interruptions.

E. Install insulation on clean, dry surfaces, and only after building is weatherproofed sufficiently to preclude any rainwater on insulation.

F. Apply mastic over the fiberglass reinforcing mesh to a thickness where fabric is not visible after completion.

G. Install fiberglass blanket duct insulation on top of supply air grilles not fire rated.

**END OF SECTION 23 07 13**

# SECTION 23 07 16 - VESSEL INSULATION

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install insulation for both high and low temperature vessels.

B. Low temperature installations include expansion tanks, air eliminators, chiller nozzles, chiller heads and other vessels containing liquids 60°F and below.

C. High temperature installations include expansion tanks, air eliminators, domestic water storage tanks, boiler stack / transition and other vessels containing liquids above 60°F.

### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The intent of insulation specifications is to obtain superior quality workmanship resulting in an installation that is absolutely satisfactory in both function and appearance. Provide insulation in accordance with the specifications for each type of service and apply as recommended by the manufacturer and as specified.

B. An approved contractor for this work under this Division shall be:
   1. A specialist in this field and have the personnel, experience, training, skill, and the organization to provide a practical working system.
   2. Able to furnish evidence of having contracted for and installed not less than 3 systems of comparable size and type that have served their owners satisfactorily for not less than 3 years.

C. All vessel insulation used on the project inside the building must have a flame spread rating not exceeding 25 and a smoke developed rating not exceeding 50, as determined by test procedures ASTM E 84, NFPA 255 and UL 723. These ratings must be as tested on the composite of insulation, jacket or facing, and adhesive. Components such as adhesives, mastics and cements must meet the same individual ratings as the minimum requirements and bear the UL label.

D. Condensation on any insulated vessel system is not acceptable.

E. Replace insulation damaged by either moisture or other means. Insulation that has been wet, whether dried or not, is considered damaged. Make repairs where condensation is caused by improper installation of insulation, also repair any damage caused by the condensation.

F. Where existing insulated vessel, or other surfaces are tapped, remove existing insulation back to undamaged sections for hot surfaces or to nearest insulation stop for cold surfaces, and replace with new insulation of the same type and thickness as existing insulation. Apply as specified for insulation of the same service.

### 1.3 APPROVALS

A. Submit product data on each insulation type, adhesive, and finish to be used in the work. Make the submittal as specified in Division 1 General Requirements and obtain approval before beginning installation. Include product description, list of materials and thickness for each service and location and the manufacturer's installation instructions for each product.

B. Make an application of each type of insulation to display the material, quality and application method. Obtain approval of the sample application before proceeding with installation of the work.

**1.4 RELATED WORK**

A. Division 9 Finishes. Painting and color-coding

**PART 2 – PRODUCTS**

**2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS**

A. Glass fiber pipe & tank insulation:
   1. Schuller Type 817
   2. Owens-Corning Type 705
   3. Knauf 2.8 PCF

B. Closed cell, non-wicking pipe & tank insulation:
   1. Armaflex FS, 2” thickness

C. Aluminum Jacketing:
   1. Childers
   2. Pabco
   3. RPR

D. Monel Staples
   1. Bostich Monel
   2. Duo-Fast Monel
   3. Markwell Monel

E. Fiberglass reinforcing cloth mesh:
   1. Perma Glass Mesh
   2. Alpha Glass Mesh
   3. Childers Chil-Glas
   4. Foster Mast a Fab

F. Weather Resistant Coating:
   1. WB Armaflex Finish

**2.2 CEMENT, MASTICS, SEALANTS, ADHESIVES AND COATINGS**

A. Adhesive: Provide Childers CP-127 or Foster 85-60 fiberglass adhesive to seal insulation for low temperature vessels.

B. Adhesive / Joint Sealant: Provide Armaflex 520 adhesive to seal insulation for low and temperature vessels.

C. Lagging Adhesive / Coating: Furnish Childers CP50AHV2 or Foster 30-36 lagging adhesive / coating to provide a finish coat and to secure finish cloth for high temperature vessels.

D. Insulation Joint Sealant: Use Childers CP-76 or Foster 95-50 to seal the joints of insulation on low temperature vessels.

E. Metal Jacketing Sealant: Use Childers CP-76 or Foster 95-44 on all metal jacketing laps outdoors.

F. Vapor Barrier Coating: Indoors - Use Childers CP-38 or Foster 30-80 vapor barrier coating finish to coat the canvas finish on low temperature vessels. Permeance shall be 0.013 perms or less as tested by ASTM E96. Coating must comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II and be QPL listed. Permeance shall be 0.03 perms or less at 30 mils, dry. Tested at 100°F and 90% RH per ASTM F 1249 and by Hypalon rubber based.

G. Weather Barrier Mastic: Furnish Childers CP-10/11 or Foster 46-50 weather barrier mastic and reinforcing mesh for outdoor finish.

H. Reinforcing Mesh: Furnish 10 X 10 white glass or polyester reinforcing mesh.

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 HIGH TEMPERATURE VESSELS (FIBERGLASS)**

A. Apply a first layer of insulating board. Band the board on immediately after application, using bands on 12” centers, drawn tight and securely fastened.

B. Apply successive layers of insulation as specified for the first layer, with joints staggered. After insulation has been applied, finish with Childers CP-38 or Foster 30-80 vapor barrier coating reinforced with glass or polyester reinforcing mesh per manufacturer's recommendations. Provide a flood coat of Childers CP-10/11 or Foster 46-50 with Foster Mast a Fab polyester or Chil Glas #10 reinforcing mesh.

C. To insulate removable heads, provide two equal sections of heavy-gauge, galvanized sheet metal covers, angle reinforced and lined with insulation board. Make covers easily removable to allow free access to the heads for inspection, cleaning and dismantling. Provide suitable flanges on the sections with neoprene gaskets between them, permitting a tight seal when the two sections are bolted together. Fill the voids with glass fiber wall cavity insulation.

**3.2 LOW TEMPERATURE VESSELS (CLOSED CELL)**

A. Apply a layer of insulating board. Band the insulation on immediately after application, using bands on 12” centers, drawn tight and securely fastened.

B. To insulate removable heads, provide two equal sections of heavy-gauge, galvanized sheet

metal covers, angle reinforced and lined with insulation board. Make covers easily removable to allow free access to the heads for inspection, cleaning and dismantling. Provide suitable flanges on the sections with neoprene gaskets between them, permitting a tight seal when the two sections are bolted together. Fill the voids with closed cell insulation.

C. Apply weather protective finish on closed cell insulation. Provide a minimum of three coats.

**3.3 ALUMINUM JACKETING (Insulated vessels outdoors above grade)**

A. Apply aluminum jacket on vessels according to manufacturer's recommendations using aluminum strapping and metal jacketing sealant to provide weather tight covering.

B. Aluminum jacketing is not considered as contributing to the vapor barrier or the insulation jacket. The vapor barrier must be sufficient in itself for this function.

C. Install straps on 12” centers.

**3.4 VESSEL INSULATION REQUIREMENTS**

A. Insulate all low and high temperature vessels located exterior (outside) of the building, including the following:
   1. Air separators
   2. Expansion Tanks
   3. Chemical feeders
   4. Chilled water system volume tanks
   5. Insulation thickness shall match thickness of adjoining pipe insulation

B. Insulate all low temperature vessels located interior (inside of the building, including the following:
   1. Air separators
   2. Chemical feeders
   3. Chilled water system volume tanks
   4. Insulation thickness shall match thickness of adjoining pipe insulation

C. Insulate the following high temperature vessels located interior (inside the building).
   1. Air Separators
   2. Insulation thickness shall match thickness of adjoining pipe insulation

D. As indicated on the drawings

**END OF SECTION 23 07 16**

# SECTION 23 07 19 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install piping insulation, jackets, accessories and covering of specified materials. The insulation shall be used for high and low temperature piping applications including chilled water, hot water, refrigerant lines, condensate piping and make-up water.

### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The intent of insulation specifications is to obtain superior quality workmanship resulting in an installation that is absolutely satisfactory in both function and appearance. Provide insulation in accordance with the specifications for each type of service and apply as recommended by the manufacturer and as specified.

B. An approved contractor for this work under this Division shall be:
   1. A specialist in this field and have the personnel, experience, training, skill, and the organization to provide a practical working system.
   2. Able to furnish evidence of having contracted for and installed not less than 3 systems of comparable size and type that have served their owners satisfactorily for not less than 3 years.

C. All piping insulation used on the project inside the building must have a flame spread rating not exceeding 25 and a smoke developed rating not exceeding 50, as determined by test procedures ASTM E 84, NFPA 255 and UL 723. These ratings must be as tested on the composite of insulation, jacket or facing, and adhesive. Components such as adhesives, mastics and cements must meet the same individual ratings as the minimum requirements and bear the UL label.

D. Condensation on any insulated piping system is not acceptable.

E. Replace insulation damaged by either moisture or other means. Insulation that has been wet, whether dried or not, is considered damaged. Make repairs where condensation is caused by improper installation of insulation. Also repair any damage caused by the condensation.

F. Where existing insulated piping, or other surfaces are tapped, remove existing insulation back to undamaged sections for hot surfaces or to nearest insulation stop for cold surfaces, and replace with new insulation of the same type and thickness as existing insulation. Apply as specified for insulation of the same service.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit product data on each insulation type, adhesive, and finish to be used in the

work. Make the submittal as specified in General Requirements and obtain approval before beginning installation. Include product description, list of materials and thickness for each service and location and the manufacturer's installation instructions for each product.

B. Make a field application of each type of insulation to display the material, quality and application method. Obtain approval of the sample application before proceeding with installation of the work.

**1.4 RELATED WORK**

A. Finishes. Painting and color-coding

B. Pipe Heat Tracing

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS**

A. Glass fiber pipe insulation:
   1. Johns-Manville Micro-Lok AP-T
   2. Owens-Corning ASJ/SSL
   3. Knauf ASJ/SSL

B. Cellular Glass Insulation (Foamglass):
   1. Pittsburg Corning
   2. Cell-U-Foam

C. Rigid Foam Insulation:
   1. Kingsapan Tarec
   2. Dow Trymer
   3. Tarec Ecophen – Phenolic Foam

D. Aluminum Jacketing:
   1. ITW Lock-on (Childers)
   2. ITW Z-lock (Pabco)

E. Fiberglass reinforcing cloth mesh:
   1. Perma Glass Mesh
   2. Alpha Glass Mesh
   3. Childers Chil-Glas
   4 Foster Mast a Fab
   5. Vimasco

F. Mastics, Sealants, Coatings and Adhesives
   1. Childers
   2. Foster

3. Vimasco
4. Armacell 520 Adhesive

G. Elastomeric Insulation
1. Armacell

H. Weather Resistant Coating
1. WB Armaflex Finish
2 Foster 30-64

I. Glass fiber blanket insulation
1. Manville R-series Microlite FSKL
2. Owens-Corning eD75 or ED100 RKF
3. Knauf 0.75 PCF FSK

## 2.2 RIGID FOAM PIPE INSULATION

A. Polyisocyanurate pipe insulation or phenolic foam pipe insulation, with all service reinforced vapor barrier jacket having integral laminated vapor barrier.
1. Polyisocyanurate: Thermal conductivity 0.14 @ 75°F mean (ASTM C518).
2. Phenolic Foam: Thermal conductivity 0.13 @ 75°F mean (ASTM C 518); minimum 2.5# density.
3. Polyisocyanurate is not to be used inside of buildings without 25/50 rating.

## 2.3 FIBERGLASS PIPE INSULATION

A. Heavy density, dual temperature fiberglass insulation with factory applied, all service, reinforced vapor barrier jacket having integral laminated vapor barrier. Provide with a factory applied pressure sensitive tape closure system and matching butt strips. Supply in thickness as shown.
1. Thermal conductivity 0.23 @ 75°F mean (ASTM 335).

## 2.4 ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Insulation material shall be flexible, closed-cell elastomeric insulation in tubular or sheet form. Material shall have a flame spread rating of 25 or less and a smoke developed rating of 50 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, latest revision. Sheet material with a thickness greater than ¾” shall have a flame spread rating of 25 or less and a smoke developed rating of 100 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, latest revision. In addition, the product, when tested, shall not melt or drip flaming particles, and the flame shall not be progressive. In addition, all materials shall pass simulated end-use fire test.
1. Thermal conductivity 0.27 at 75°F mean (ASTM C177 or C518)

## 2.5 CELLULAR GLASS INSULATION

A. ASTM C552:
1. "k" value of 0.35 @ 75°F ("ksi" value of 0.047 @ 24°C);

2. 8.0 lb/cu.ft. (128 kg/cu.m.) density

## 2.6 INSULATION/SHIELD AT HANGERS

A. Field fabricated: Use 360° sections of rigid foamglass insulation that will support the bearing area at hangers and supports. Further support insulation at hangers and supports with a shield of galvanized metal covering at least half of the pipe circumference, and conforming to the schedule. Insulation shall extend at least 1" beyond metal shield on each end. When pipe is guided at top and bottom, metal shields shall cover the whole pipe circumference. Adhere metal shield to insulation so that metal will not slide with respect to insulation with ½" aluminum bands (2) per shield.
   1. Sections of foam glass insulation may be used of the same outside diameter of the adjoining pipe insulation.
   2. Minimum thickness of foam glass insulation shall not be less than 1" thick.

B. Pipe saddles: Formed galvanized sheets at each support point for insulated pipe, shaped to fit pipe, and covering bottom half of pipe. Length at saddle shall be not less than twice the insulation outside diameter or more than 22". Provide 18 gauge through 4" pipe and 16-gauge 5" pipe and above.

## 2.7 SEALANT, ADHESIVE AND FINISH

A. Lap Adhesive. Provide Childers CP-82 or Foster 85-20 adhesive.

B. Vapor Barrier Finish:
   1. Indoors: Provide as insulation coating Childers CP-38 or Foster 30-80, white. Coating must meet MIL Spec C-19565C, Type II and be QPL Listed. Permeance shall be 0.013 perms or less at 43 mils dry. Tested at 100ºF and 90% RH per ASTM E96.
   2. Outdoors: Provide as insulation coating Childers Encacel X or Foster 60-90. Permeance shall be 0.03 perms or less at 30 mils dry. Tested at 100ºF and 90% RH per ASTM F 1249 and must be Hypalon rubber based.
   3. Underground: Provide Childers CP-22/24 or Foster 60-25/26 for fittings and areas. Pittwrap cannot be used.

C. Insulation Joint Sealant. Provide Childers CP-76 or Foster 95-50 vapor barrier sealant.

D. Metal Jacketing Sealant. Provide Childers CP-76 or Foster 95-44 metal jacketing sealant for all outdoor metal jacketing laps.

E. Lagging Adhesive. Provide Childers CP-50AMV1 or Foster 30-36.

F. Other products of equal quality will be acceptable only upon approval.

## 2.8 ALUMINUM JACKETING

A. Finish insulated piping outdoors with a smooth prefabricated Z-lock aluminum jacket

0.016” thick with factory applied 1 mil polyethylene/40 lb and Fab strap. Kraft moisture barrier.

B. Valves, Fittings and Flanges. For finishing valves, fittings, flanges and similar installations, provide formed aluminum covers, 0.024” thick.

C. Straps and Seals. Provide ½” x 0.020 stainless steel strapping and seals for jackets and covers according to manufacturer's recommendations.

## 2.9 GLASS FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

A. Minimum density of 1.0 PCF, 2” thick, installed R value to be 6.0 or better at 75°F mean, facing of 0.35 mil foil reinforced with glass yarn mesh and laminated to 40 lbs fire resistant kraft.

# PART 3 – EXECUTION

## 3.1 INTERIOR PIPING

A. Cover all hot water piping with glass fiber, heavy density, dual temperature pipe insulation with a vapor barrier jacket. Apply insulation to clean, dry pipes. Longitudinal seams shall be joined firmly together and sealed with self-sealing lap joints. Butt insulation joints firmly together and seal with a 3” wide ASJ butt strip seal. Longitudinal seams and butt strip laps shall be coated and sealed with CP-35 vapor barrier coating for chilled water piping applications.

B. Cover all chilled water piping with rigid foam insulation.
1. Adhere the vapor barrier jacket longitudinal seam with vapor barrier adhesive.
2. Cover all valves, fittings and flanges with factory made molded or field fabricated segments of pipe insulation of a thickness and material equal to the adjoining insulation. Adhere segments together with no voids, using CP-82 adhesive. Secure fitting insulation covers and segments in place with ½” wide glass filament tape.
3. Apply a tack coat of fitting mastic over the insulation and tape.
4. Neatly embed with 10 x 10 fiberglass cloth into the tack coat.
5. Apply mastic over the fiberglass cloth to a thickness where the fabric is not visible after completion.
6. Seal ends of pipe insulation with vapor barrier mastic at valves, flanges, fittings and every 21' on straight runs of piping. Mastic should extend on top of ASJ jacket, across the foam, down onto the pipe, making a complete seal.

C. Install hanger with protective shield, on the outside of all insulation.

D. Pipe Saddles: Formed galvanized sheets at each support point for insulated pipe, shaped to fit pipe, and covering bottom half of pipe. Length at saddle shall be not less than twice the insulation outside diameter. Provide 18-gauge through 4” pipe and 16-gauge for 5” pipe and above.

E. Seal ends of pipe for chilled water insulation with vapor barrier mastic at valves, flanges, fittings and every 21' on straight runs of piping. Mastic should extend on top of ASJ jacket, across the glass, down onto the pipe making a complete seal.

F. Apply a smooth flood coat of white lagging Foster 8142W over all exposed insulation.

G. Piping to be insulated as specified above:
   1. Chilled water and heating water
   2. Make-up water

**3.2 REFRIGERANT AND CONDENSATE PIPING**

A. Cover all pipe with elastomeric insulation by slitting tubular sections or sliding unslit sections over the open ends of piping or tubing. Seams and butt joints shall be adhered and sealed using Foster 85-75, Childers CP-82 or Armstrong 520 Adhesive.

B. All fittings shall be insulated with the same insulation thickness as the adjacent piping. All seams and mitered joints shall be adhered with Foster 85-75, Childers CP-82 or 520 Adhesive.

C. Pipe Saddles: Formed galvanized sheets at each support point for insulated pipe, shaped to fit pipe, and covering bottom half of pipe. Length at saddle shall be not less than twice the insulation outside diameter.

D. Outdoor exposed piping shall be painted with two coats of either WB or SB Armaflex finish or Foster 30-64 elastomer foam coating. All seams shall be located on the lower half of the pipe.

**3.3 PIPING OUTDOORS ABOVE GRADE**

A. Insulate all water piping exterior of building above grade with rigid foam insulation and aluminum jacketing.

B. Adhere the vapor barrier jacket longitudinal seam with vapor barrier adhesive.

C. Cover all valves, fittings and flanges with factory made molded or field fabricated segments of pipe insulation of a thickness and material equal to the adjoining insulation. Adhere segments together with no voids, using Childers CP-82 or Foster 85-20 adhesive. Secure fitting insulation covers and segments in place with ½" wide glass filament tape.

D. Apply a tack coat of fitting vapor barrier coating over the insulation and tape.

E. Neatly embed with 10 x 10 fiberglass or polyester reinforcing mesh into the tack coat.

F. Apply coating over the fiberglass cloth to a thickness where the mesh is not visible after completion.

G. Seal ends of pipe insulation with vapor barrier coating at valves, flanges, fittings and every 21' on straight runs of piping. Mastic should extend on top of ASJ jacket, across the foam, down onto the pipe, making a complete seal.

H. Finish with aluminum jacketing as specified.

## 3.4 UNDERGROUND PIPE COVERING

A. Cover chilled and hot water piping underground with cellular glass insulation.

B. Butter insulation joints with Childers CP-76 or Foster 95-50 vapor barrier sealant. Secure with stainless steel bands or ½" fiberglass reinforced tape on 9" centers.

C. Cover valves and flanges with fabricated fittings of thickness and material equal to the adjoining insulation. Fasten fittings in place with stainless steel bands or ½" fiberglass reinforced tape.

D. Apply a tack coat of fitting mastic Childers CP-22/24 or Foster 60-25/26 over the insulation and bands.

E. Neatly embed with 10 x 10 fiberglass or polyester reinforcing mesh into the tack coat.

F. Apply mastic over the fiberglass cloth to a thickness where the fabric is not visible after completion.

G. Seal ends of pipe insulation with vapor barrier mastic at all valves, fittings, flanges and every 21' on straight run piping. Mastic should extend on top of ASJ jacket, across the glass, down onto the pipe, making a complete seal.

H. Finish with 125 mil thickness Pittwrap jacket applied in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. At contractor's option, cover insulation with Servi-Wrap P-500 installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

## 3.5 FLANGE, VALVE AND FITTING INSULATION

A. Cover valves and flanges with fabricated segments, fittings with two-piece factory molded fittings, and both of matching pipe insulation type and thickness equal to that of the adjoining pipe. Fittings and fabricated segments shall be securely held in place.
   1. Apply a tack coat of insulating coating/mastic to the insulated fitting to produce a smooth surface.
   2. After mastic is dry, apply a second coat of vapor barrier coating/mastic. Neatly embed with 10 x 10 fiberglass or polyester reinforcing mesh into the tack coat.
   3. Overlap coating/mastic and fiberglass/polyester reinforcing mesh by 2" on adjoining sections of pipe insulation.
   4. Apply a second coat of coating/mastic over the fiberglass/polyester reinforcing mesh to present a smooth surface.

5. Apply coating/mastic to a wet film thickness of 3/64".
6. Fabric shall not be visible after completion.
7. Vapor seal flanges, valves and fittings with Childers CP-38 or Foster 30-80. Coating must meet MIL Spec C-19565C, Type II and be QPL Listed. Permeance shall be 0.013 perms or less at 43 mils dry. Tested at 100ºF and 90% RH per ASTM E96.

B. PVC fitting covers are not acceptable.

## 3.6 ALUMINUM JACKETING (Insulated Piping Outdoors Above Grade)

A. Apply smooth aluminum jacket on piping, valves, fittings and flange covers according to manufacturer's recommendations, using stainless steel strapping and seals, to provide weather tight covering and to shed water.

B. Aluminum jacketing is not considered as contributing to the vapor barrier or the insulation jacket. The vapor barrier must be sufficient in itself for this function. Lap each adjoining jacket section a minimum of 3" to make a weather tight seal with the application of 1/8" bead of Childers CP-76 or Foster 95-44 metal jacketing sealant.

C. Install straps on 9" centers and at each circumferential lap joint.

D. Cover and seal all exposed surfaces.

E. The use of screws and rivets is not approved.

F. Provide isolation (30# felt) between the aluminum jacket and the sheetmetal protection shield at each pipe support point.

## 3.7 MISCELLANEOUS

A. Insulate pumps.

B. Install materials after piping has been tested and approved.

C. Apply insulation on clean, dry surfaces only.

D. Apply weather protective finish on elastomeric insulation installed in non-conditioned spaces. Provide a minimum of three coats.

## 3.8 INSULATION THICKNESS

| INSULATED UNIT | THICKNESS (Inches) |
|---|---|
| Refrigerant Piping | 1-1/2 |
| Chilled Water Piping (through 2" pipe) | 1-1/2 |
| Chilled Water Piping (2-1/2" pipe and Larger) | 2 |
| Condensate Drains | 1 |

| | |
|---|---|
| Heating Water Piping 2” Pipe and Larger | 2 |
| Heating Water Piping 1-1/2” Pipe and Smaller | 1-1/2 |
| Exterior Chilled and Hot Water Piping, 5” Pipe and Larger | 2 |
| Exterior Chilled and Hot Water Piping 4” Pipe and Smaller | 2 |

**END OF SECTION 23 07 19**

# SECTION 23 08 00 - MECHANICAL COMMISSIONING COORDINATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section outlines commissioning requirements and activities of Contractor, Owner, CxA and Design Professionals as related to the Division 23 Mechanical.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 01 – General Requirements and Specification Section 01 91 13, General Commissioning
   2. Division 22 – Plumbing
   3. Division 23 – Mechanical
   4. Division 26 – Electrical

### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Refer to Specification Section 01 91 13, General Commissioning for definitions.

### 1.3 CONTACT INFORMATION

A. The Owner will contract directly for commissioning services.
   1. Commissioning Agent fee will be paid for directly by the owner.
   2. Cost of contractor coordination with the CxA is specified in this section.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 TEST EQUIPMENT

A. Contractor shall provide all standard and specialized testing equipment required to perform Start-up and Functional Performance Testing. Test equipment required for Functional Performance Testing including, but not limited to equipment listed below. Data logging equipment and software required to test equipment shall be provided by the Contractor.

B. All testing equipment shall be of sufficient quality and accuracy to test and/or measure system performance with the tolerances specified in the Specifications. If not otherwise noted, the following minimum requirements apply: Temperature sensors and digital thermometers shall have a certified calibration within the past year to an accuracy of 1.0 Deg. F and a resolution of + or - 0.2 Deg. F). Pressure sensors shall have an accuracy of + or - 2.0% of the value range being measured (not full range of meter) and have been calibrated within the last year. All equipment shall be calibrated according to the manufacturer's recommended intervals and following any repairs to the equipment. Calibration tags shall be affixed or certificates readily available.

C. Test equipment includes:
   1. Air flow measuring devices (hoods, anemometers, etc.)
   2. Water flow measuring devices
   3. Temperature measuring devices (air and water)
   4. Humidity sensors
   5. Pressure gauges (air and water)
   6. CO2 sensors

## 2.2 OTHER CONTRACTOR PROVIDED EQUIPMENT

A. Ladders and/or lifts and appropriate fall protection as required by Contractor site requirements.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 COORDINATION - GENERAL

A. Except for the activities to be performed by the CxA called for herein, all component and system installation work required by the Division 22, 23 and 26 specifications including specific contractor furnished items indicated by this Section shall be provided by the Contractor.

## 3.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Mechanical
   1. Ductwork Layouts
   2. Piping Layouts
   3. Equipment Room Layouts
   4. Mechanical Equipment as needed

## 3.3 EQUIPMENT START-UP

A. Notification
   1. Contractor shall provide ten Owner business days' notice to CxA, Owner and Design Team of start-up dates.

B. Prior to start-up, contractor shall:
   1. Verify that equipment and systems are complete, accessible, correctly connected to utilities and ready for operation. Perform all pre-start inspections and tests as called for in Division 23.
   2. Comply with pre-start requirements of manufacturer and complete applicable documentation.
   3. Complete applicable sections of Prefunctional Checklists.
   4. Coordinate start-up attendance by manufacturer or authorized representative as required by specifications or manufacturer.

C. At start-up, contractor shall:
1. Supervise the activities of the authorized start-up technician or manufacturer's representative.
2. Verify proper voltage, phase, overcurrent protection, drive rotation and any other conditions that may cause damage if not correct.
3. Execute start-up under supervision of qualified contractor and equipment manufacturer personnel and in accordance with the manufacturer's instruction.
4. Complete manufacturer start-up requirements and documentation. Provide a copy of documentation to the CxA for inclusion in the Cx Manual.
5. Complete PFC's and provide documentation to CxA.
6. Provide documentation of any issues noted during start-up to CxA, Owner and Design Team. Outline recommendations for corrective action.

## 3.4 PIPE AND DUCT PRESSURE/LEAKAGE TESTING

A. General
1. The following procedures are meant as general procedures and do not alleviate Contractor of more stringent procedures specified elsewhere in Division 23.

B. Notification
1. Contractor shall provide adequate notice to CxA, Owner and Design Team of testing dates.

C. Duct Pressure Testing:
1. Prior to testing, contractor shall:
   a. Select duct sections with approval by Design Team.
   b. Calculate duct areas and acceptable leakage rates.
   c. Verify that test equipment is of appropriate capacity for duct sections tested. Ideally, the pressure testing equipment will be at the midpoint of the system tested.
   d. Verify that test equipment has been calibrated with NIST traceable certificates within the past 12 months or shorter time span if specified elsewhere in Division 23.
   e. Isolate and seal duct sections.
2. During testing, contractor shall:
   a. Conduct testing in a safe manner.
   b. Operate test equipment at a minimum of 3" wg for ductwork between AHU and terminal unit, or as specified elsewhere in Division 23.
   c. Operate test equipment at a minimum of 2" wg for ductwork downstream of terminal units and exhaust ductwork, or as specified elsewhere in Division 23.
   d. Record all applicable test data.
3. Upon completion of testing, contractor shall:
   a. Remedy sections that do not pass and schedule a retest.
   b. Submit test results to Owner, Design Team and CxA for review.

D. Pipe Pressure Testing
   1. Prior to testing, contractor shall:
      a. Verify that test equipment has been calibrated with NIST traceable certificates within the past 12 months or shorter time span if specified elsewhere in Division 23.
      b. Isolate and seal pipe sections to be tested.
      c. Isolate equipment or apparatus connected to the piping system that may be damaged during the testing.
      d. Clean and flush piping sections and fill with clean water, venting all air.
      e. Allow adequate time for water and piping to reach ambient temperature.
   2. During testing:
      a. Maintain a safe condition in the area surrounding the test system.
      b. Pressurize piping to 150% of design working pressure, but not greater than piping design pressure.
      c. Pipe shall hold pressure for minimum of 2 hours.
      d. Record temperature of piping and ambient air at beginning and end of test.
      e. Record pressure on piping system at beginning and end of test.
   3. Upon completion of testing, contractor shall:
      a. Remedy sections that do not pass and schedule a retest.
      b. Submit test results to Owner, Design Team and CxA for review.

## 3.5 PRE-FUNCTIONAL CHECKLISTS

A. Contractor shall forward completed copies of PFCs to the CxA for inclusion into the Cx documentation. PFCs will be provided by the CxA. As an alternate, contractor shall submit their versions of the PFCs to the CxA for review and comment.

B. Contractor shall complete PFC for each of the following equipment:
   1. Mechanical:
      a. Air Handling Units
      b. Energy Recovery Units
      c. Terminal Units
      d. Pumps
      e. Fans
      f. Heaters
      g. Split Systems
      h. Heat Exchanger/Converter
      i. Chiller
      j. Boiler
      k. Valves

## 3.6 TEST AND BALANCE

A. Contractor shall forward the T&B Execution Plan to the CxA prior to performing the field T&B activities. CxA will review and comment on Plan.

B. Contractor shall notify CxA a minimum of three (3) days prior to conducting field T&B activities. Failure to provide CxA with adequate notification may result in additional field time by T&B Contractor to demonstrate T&B results.

C. Key T&B activities that CxA requires notification on:
   1. Terminal Units.
   2. Air Handling Unit.
   3. Energy Recovery Unit.
   4. Heat Exchanger/Converter.
   5. Pumps.

## 3.7 FUNCTIONAL TESTING

A. General
   1. Contractor shall organize and schedule Construction Team members to execute the functional testing, which will be directed by CxA. Construction Team members may include Mechanical Sub, T&B Sub, Controls Sub, Electrical Sub, Fire Alarm Sub or Plumbing Sub. Contractor shall note that certain activities, such as sensor calibration, can be organized so that the T&B Sub is scheduled efficiently.

B. Air Cooled Chillers
   1. Graphics
   2. Start/Stop/Schedule
   3. Compressor Operation (On/Off/Hand/Auto)
   4. Entering/Leaving Temperature
   5. Safeties
   6. Alarms
   7. Temperature Reset Sequences

C. Boilers
   1. Graphics
   2. Start/Stop/Schedule
   3. Firing Operation (On/Off/Hand/Auto)
   4. Entering/Leaving Temperature
   5. Safeties
   6. Alarms
   7. Temperature Reset Sequences

D. Air Handling Units
   1. Graphics
   2. Start/Stop/Schedule
   3. Fan Operation (On/Off/Hand/Auto)
   4. Temperature Calibration (Air/Water)
   5. Damper Positions (Off/On/Safety)
   6. Valve Positions (Off/On/Safety)

7. Safeties (Low Limit/Smoke Detectors/Fire Alarm/Static Pressure)
8. Alarms (Filter/Temperature/etc.)
9. Damper Operation (Normal/Economizer)
10. Valve Operation (Normal Heating & Cooling/Economizer)
11. Fan Speed Control (VFD)
12. Temperature Reset Sequences
13. Static Reset Sequences

E. Energy Recovery Units
1. Graphics
2. Start/Stop/Schedule
3. Fan Operation (On/Off/Hand/Auto)
4. Temperature Calibration (Air/Water)
5. Air Flow Station Calibration
6. Damper Positions (Off/On/Safety)
7. Valve Positions (Off/On/Safety)
8. Safeties (Low Limit/Smoke Detectors/Fire Alarm/Static Pressure)
9. Alarms (Filter/Temperature/etc.)
10. Damper Operation (Normal/Economizer)
11. Valve Operation (Normal Heating & Cooling/Economizer)
12. Fan Speed Control (VFD)
13. Temperature Reset Sequences
14. Static Reset Sequences

F. Terminal Units
1. Graphics
2. Start/Stop/Schedule
3. Fan Operation (On/Off/Hand/Auto)
4. Temperature Calibration (Air/Water)
5. Thermostat Operation
6. Damper Positions (Off/On/Safety)
7. Valve Positions (Off/On/Safety)
8. Safeties (Smoke Detectors/Fire Alarm)
9. Alarms (Temperature/etc.)
10. Unoccupied Overrides

G. Pumps
1. Graphics
2. Start/Stop/Schedule
3. Pump Operation (On/Off/Hand/Auto)
4. Flow Station Calibration
5. Pressure Sensor Calibration
6. Pump Speed Control (VFD)
7. Sequencing and Alarms

H. Fans

1. Graphics
2. Start/Stop/Schedule
3. Thermostat Operation
4. Flow Station Calibration
5. Pressure Sensor Calibration
6. Speed Control (VFD)
7. Sequencing and Alarms

I. Heaters
1. Graphics
2. Start/Stop/Schedule
3. Thermostat Operation
4. Flow Station Calibration
5. Sequencing and Alarms

J. Split Systems
1. Graphics
2. Start/Stop/Schedule
3. Fan Operation (On/Off/Hand/Auto)
4. Temperature Calibration
5. Thermostat Operation
6. Safeties (Low Limit/Smoke Detectors/Fire Alarm/Static Pressure)
7. Alarms (Filter/Temperature/etc.)
8. Fan Speed Control (VFD)

K. Recirculation Pump
1. Graphics
2. Start/Stop/Schedule
3. Pump Operation (On/Off/Hand/Auto)
4. Temperature Sensor Calibration

## 3.8 TREND DATA

A. Contractor shall enable trend data as indicated herein and as specified by contract documents and Owner's requirements. Trends shall be stored to a repository device that can be recalled at any time period. Sampling rate shall vary based upon the trend and may range from change of value (COV) to a maximum of 15 minutes.

B. Ambient (Outdoor) Conditions
1. Dry Bulb Temperature
2. Wet Bulb Temperature
3. CO2 Level

C. Building Loop Chilled Water System
1. Chilled Water Flow.
2. Chilled Water Supply Temperature.

3. Chilled Water Return Temperature.
4. Chilled Water Pressure Differential.
5. Chilled Water Pressure Setpoint.
6. Pump 1 Speed.
7. Pump 2 Speed.

D. Building Loop Hot Water System
1. Hot Water Flow.
2. Hot Water Supply Temperature.
3. Hot Water Return Temperature.
4. Hot Water Pressure Differential.
5. Hot Water Pressure Setpoint.
6. Pump 1 Speed.
7. Pump 2 Speed.

E. Air Handling Unit Supply Air
1. Supply Air Temperature.
2. Supply Air Temperature Setpoint.
3. Mixed Air Temperature.
4. Mixed Air Temperature Setpoint.
5. Chilled Water Valve Position.
6. Hot Water Valve Position.
7. Critical Terminal Unit Air Valve and Heating Position

F. Air Handling Unit Static Pressure
1. Duct Static Pressure.
2. Duct Static Pressure Setpoint.
3. Fan Speed
4. Critical Terminal Unit Air Valve Position

G. Air Handling Unit Economizer
1. Supply Air Temperature.
2. Supply Air Temperature Setpoint.
3. Mixed Air Temperature.
4. Mixed Air Temperature Setpoint.
5. Return Air Temperature.
6. Return Air Enthalpy.
7. Outside Air Temperature.
8. Outside Air Enthalpy.
9. Chilled Water Valve Position.
10. Hot Water Valve Position.
11. Return Damper Position
12. Relief Damper Position
13. Outside Air Damper Position

H. Terminal Units

1. Room Temperature.
2. Room Temperature Setpoint.
3. Supply Air Temperature.
4. Inlet Air Flow.
5. Inlet Air Valve Position.
6. Heating Coil Valve Position.
7. Fan Status.
8. Room CO2.

I. Split System Units
1. Room Temperature.
2. Room Temperature Setpoint.
3. Supply Air Temperature.
4. Fan Status.
5. Cooling/Heating Mode.

J. Fans
1. Room Temperature.
2. Room Temperature Setpoint.
3. Fan Status/Speed.

K. Heaters
1. Room Temperature.
2. Room Temperature Setpoint.
3. Status.

**END OF SECTION 23 08 00**

# SECTION 23 09 33 - BUILDING MANAGEMENT AND CONTROL SYSTEM (GENERAL)

**PART 1 – GENERAL**

**1.1 SCOPE**

A. This specification section addresses the existing control system modifications associated with the replacements and additions of equipment at the campuses which are not receiving complete Building Management and Control system replacement.

B. Scope of Work:
   1. The existing facilities are controlled by an existing control system as outlined below. Miscellaneous equipment is being replaced and added as indicated on drawings. Provide and install all Building Management and Control System (BMCS) components required for the equipment being replaced and being added including industrial instrumentation necessary to obtain functions and results specified. The modifications and additions to the system includes items such as sensors, valves, dampers, valve and damper operators, DDC panels, relays, terminal equipment controllers, mounting brackets and thermowell, etc. Integrate all components to provide a complete and functioning system.
      a. **Timberwood Middle School –** Reliable by Unify Energy Solutions.

C. Temperature Control System components:
   1. Electronic instruments as specified
   2. Electric instruments as specified
   3. Microcomputer instruments as specified

D. All control devices of the same type product shall be of a single manufacturer.

E. Control, power and interlock wiring necessary to accomplish sequences specified in this Section shall be provided and installed by the Control Subcontractor. Materials and methods of execution as specified in Division 26, Electrical.
   1. Coordinate current characteristics of all electrical instruments and equipment with Division 26 of the specifications and related electrical drawings.

F. The entire Building Management and Control System (BMCS) shall be installed by the Automation System Manufacturer or Authorized Distributor.
   1. All components and elements
   2. The testing and acceptance procedure

G. The manufacturer of the building automation system shall provide documentation supporting compliance with ISO-9002 (Model for Quality Assurance in Production, Installation, and Servicing). The intent of this specification requirement is to ensure that the products from the manufacturer are delivered through a Quality System and Framework that will assure consistency in the products delivered for this project.

H. The entire Building Management and Control System (BMCS) shall be installed, Commissioned, and tested; all performed by the Automation System Manufacturer or Authorized Distributor if approved by engineer.
   1. All components and elements.
   2. Start-up and point verification.
   3. The testing and acceptance procedure.

## 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 23, Mechanical

B. Division 26, Electrical

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit items of the Building Management and Control System (BMCS).
   1. Temperature control equipment & Field devices.
   2. Wiring & Flow diagrams.
   3. Sequence of operation.
   4. Complete, detailed, control and interlock-wiring diagram.
   5. Indicate mechanical and electrical equipment furnished and electrical interlocks, indicating terminal designation of equipment. Respective equipment manufacturers shall furnish through the Mechanical Contractor, approved drawings of equipment to be incorporated in this diagram.
   6. Submit Input / Output summary of all points.
   7. Submit an outline of testing procedures from section Testing and Acceptance.
   8. Mark up a copy of the specifications for the product. Indicate in the margin of each paragraph the following: “Comply, “Do Not Comply”, or “Not Applicable”. Explain all “Do Not Comply” statements.
   9. Submit sample of space temperature sensor and guards for review prior to purchase or installation.

B. Owner shall have final review and approval prior to start of work.

## 1.4 COOPERATION WITH OTHER TRADES

A. Furnish control valves, temperature sensing element wells, flow and pressure sensing devices, dampers and other similar devices to the Mechanical Contractor in a timely manner for installation under the Building Management and Control System (BMCS), Subcontractor's supervision.

## 1.5 WARRANTY

A. Provide with a manufacturer’s parts and labor warranty for a period of two years from substantial completion. Warranty shall also include unlimited telephone technical support, sequence and graphical modifications. Through warranty period and at the end of warranty period firmware shall be updated to be the most current version available.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Reliable by Unify Energy Solutions

### 2.2 SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE

A. The Building Management and Control System (BMCS) shall consist of an information-sharing network of stand-alone Direct Digital Control Panels (DDCP) to monitor and control equipment as specified of the control sequence and input/output summary.

B. "Information sharing" shall be defined as: The function of each DDCP to exchange data on the network trunk with other DDCP's without the need for additional devices such as network managers, gateways or central computers.

C. "Stand-alone" shall be defined as: The function of each DDCP to independently monitor and control connected equipment through its own microcomputer.

### 2.3 COMMUNICATIONS PROCESSING

A. The BMCS shall operate as a true token-pass peer-to-peer communication network. Resident processors in each DDCP shall provide for full exchange of system data between other DDCP's on the network trunk. Systems that limit data exchange to a defined number of system points are not acceptable.

B. Systems that operate via polled response or other types of protocols that rely on a central processor or similar device to manage DDCP to DDCP communications may be considered only if a similar device is provided as a stand-by. Upon a failure of malfunction of the primary device, the stand-by shall automatically, without any operator intervention, assume all BMCS network management activities.

C. The failure of any DDCP on the network shall not affect the operation of other DDCP's. All DDCP failure shall be annunciated at the specified alarm printers and terminals.

D. Network shall support a minimum communications speed of 115.2 Kbps.

E. The network shall support a minimum of 100 DDC controllers and PC workstations.

F. Each PC workstation shall support a minimum of 4 peer-to-peer networks, either by hardwired connection or dial up.

G. The system shall support integration of third party systems (fire alarm, security, lighting, PCL, chiller, boiler) via panel mounted open protocol processor. This processor shall exchange data between the two systems for inter-process control. All exchange points shall have full system functionality as specified herein for hardwired points. Provide

examples of 5 reference projects utilizing gateways required for this project.

## 2.4 DDCP HARDWARE

A. Each DDCP shall consist of a 32-bit microprocessor and controller, power supply, input / output boards and communication board. All program and point databases shall be stored in battery-backed RAM. Provide a minimum of 1.2 MEG RAM in each DDCP to allow for point expansion and trend data storage.

B. Each DDCP shall incorporate a real-time clock.

C. Each DDCP shall be provided with two RS232 communications port. Connecting an operator terminal, whether portable or stationery, shall allow the user to communicate with the entire network.

D. Each DDCP shall provide for input / output connections to field equipment. The following point types shall be supported:
   1. Analog inputs - for measuring sensed variables. Inputs shall be capable of accepting voltage, resistance, current or pressure signals.
   2. Analog outputs - for controlling end devices. Outputs shall be capable of producing voltage, resistance, current or pressure signals. Pneumatic outputs shall be provided with a manual override for adjusting outputs in the event of a power loss at the DDCP.
   3. Digital inputs - for monitoring dry contacts such as relays, switches, pulses, etc.
   4. Digital outputs - to control two position devices such as starters, actuators, relays, etc.

E. Each DDCP shall be listed under UL916 (Energy Management Systems), and shall be tested to comply with sub-part J of Part 15 FCC rules for Class A computing equipment.

F. Each DDC Controller shall have sufficient memory to support its own operating system and databases, including:
   1. Control processes
   2. Energy management applications
   3. Alarm management applications including custom alarm messages for each level alarm for each point in the system.
   4. Historical/trend data for points specified
   5. Maintenance support applications
   6. Custom processes
   7. Operator I/O
   8. Dial-up communications
   9. Manual override monitoring
   10. Seven (7) calendar days of operating schedules
   11. Stand-alone operation

G. Operator shall have the ability to manually override automatic or centrally executed commands at the DDC Controller via local, point discrete, on-board hand/off/auto

operator override switches for digital control type points and gradual switches for analog control type points.

1. Switches shall be mounted either within the DDC Controllers key-accessed enclosure, or externally mounted with each switch keyed to prevent unauthorized overrides.
2. DDC Controllers shall monitor the status of all overrides and inform the operator that automatic control has been inhibited. DDC Controllers shall also collect override activity information for reports.
3. **All BMCS control modules shall have Hand Off Auto (HOA) switches on all outputs for HVAC and electrical, including digital outputs.**

H. DDC Controllers shall provide local LED status indication for each digital input and output for constant, up-to-date verification of all point conditions without the need for an operator I/O device. Graduated intensity LEDs or analog indication of value shall also be provided for each analog output. Status indication shall be visible without opening the panel door.

I. In the event of the loss of normal power, there shall be an orderly shutdown of all DDC Controllers to prevent the loss of database or operating system software. Non-volatile memory shall be incorporated for all critical controller configuration data and battery backup shall be provided to support the real-time clock and all volatile memory for a minimum of 72 hours.

1. Upon restoration of normal power, the DDC Controller shall automatically resume full operation without manual intervention.
2. Should DDC Controller memory be lost for any reason, the user shall have the capability of reloading the DDC Controller via the local RS-232C port, via telephone line dial-in or from a network workstation PC.
3. Upon restoration of normal power, the DDC Controller shall automatically resume full operation without manual intervention.

## 2.5 PROGRAMMING FUNCTIONS

A. Resident software in each DDCP shall provide custom programming of control strategies.

1. Point database
2. Operator interface
3. Network communications
4. Facilities and energy management functions

B. Programming of control and energy management strategies shall be accomplished via a high-level computer language such as BASIC, JC BASIC, C, or Powers Process Control Language. A standard math processor shall be part of the programming language. All analog loops shall be capable of proportional, integral and derivative control.

C. Each DDCP shall incorporate an operator interface program (OIP) that provides an English language user interface. The OIP shall allow the user to program, interrogate, command and edit the BMCS via a self-prompting method. Operator terminals, whether

textual or graphical, shall be able to access the entire network from any DDCP. Access shall be accomplished in a transparent fashion; that is, the operator shall not be required to address specific DDCP's in order to display or command system points.

## 2.6 FACILITY MANAGEMENT SOFTWARE

A. The BMCS shall be provided with standard and custom report generation functions that include:
   1. Alarm summaries
   2. Motor status summaries
   3. Point displays by type, system, status, overrides, failures, location, equipment and enabled/disabled.
   4. Program listings

B. All reports shall be either displayed or printed by:
   1. Operator request.
   2. Time of day.
   3. Event conditions (such as in response to an alarm, interlock, etc.).

C. All reports shall be time and date stamped.

D. An alarm-processing program shall be provided to annunciate those points designated as alarmable. Alarm points shall, upon alarm occurrence, be displayed or printed at designated terminals.

E. Historical trend data shall be collected and stored at each DDCP for later retrieval. Retrieval shall be manual or automatic. Any point, physical or calculated, may be designated for trending. The system shall allow for two methods of trend collection: Either by a pre-defined time interval sample or upon a pre-defined change of value. Trend data shall be presented in a columnar format. Each sample shall be timed stamped. Trend reports may be a single point or may be a group of points, up to a maximum of (8) points in any single group. Any point, regardless of physical location in the system may become part of a multiple point group.

F. Each BMCS network shall provide a point-monitoring function that can display single or multiple points in a continuous updated fashion for dynamic displays of point values.

G. A database and configuration report program shall be provided that allows the user to interrogate BMCS status. As a minimum, the user shall be able to: Verify available RAM at each DDCP, verify DDCP status (on-line, off-line, and failed) and set the system clock.

H. Any invalid operator entry shall result in an error message.

I. DDCP's shall contain a password access routine that will assign an operator to one of three level of access. Level 1 shall permit display function only, level 2 shall additionally permit commanding of system points and level 3 shall additionally permit full program and database editing.

J. DDCP's shall provide for the accumulation of totalized values for the purposes of run-time or energy totalization. Totalized values may be displayed or printed automatically or by operator request.

## 2.7 ENERGY MANAGEMENT SOFTWARE

A. The BMCS shall be provided with an optimal start program such that the building may be divided into ten zones for optimum start. Warm-up and cool-down shall occur in sequence with succeeding zones starting only after the preceding zone has completed its warm-up or cool-down.
   1. The optimum start-up time of assigned equipment shall be determined based on a software calculation that takes into consideration outdoor air conditions, space conditions, and building thermal characteristics ("U" factor).
   2. The optimum start program shall control start-up of the cooling and heating equipment to achieve the target occupancy space temperature at the precise time of building occupancy.
   3. A built-In "learning" technique shall cause the BMCS to automatically adjust itself to the most affective time to start equipment based on historical data.

B. The BMCS shall be provided with a global change and demand response feature.
   1. Global modifications to schedules and setpoints shall be customizable and be accessed and modified from the district, building, zone, wing, pod and classroom level of system.
   2. Global modifications shall download throughout the system as priority and shall be accomplish in an orderly and within 10 minutes.
   3. System shall continue to download global modifications to the rest of the district even when one campus has lost communication because of a failed panel. System shall notify users of which panel has failed and has not accepted the global modification.
   4. Demand response programming shall be integrated into the system to allow owner to facilitate strategies for shedding load in a timely manner.

C. The BMCS shall be provided with an operator interactive time of day (TOD) program. TOD programming and modifying shall be accomplished in a calendar-like format that prompts the user in English language to specify month, year, day and time and associated point commands. It shall be possible to assign single points or groups of points to any on or off time. Appropriate time delays shall be provided to "stagger" on times.
   1. TOD shall incorporate a holiday and special day schedule capability, which will automatically bring up a pre-defined holiday or special day schedule of operation. Holidays or special days can be scheduled up to one year in advance.
   2. In addition to the time dependent two-state control, TOD also provides time dependent setpoint control. This control provides the capability to output assignable, proportional setpoint values in accordance with the time of day and day of week. This program shall be used to accomplish night setback, morning warm-up and normal daily operating setpoints of all control system loops controlled by the BMCS. As with the two-state control, time dependent setpoint control shall be

subject to the holiday schedule. The setpoints desired shall be user definable at any operator terminal.

3. The operator shall be capable of reading and/or altering all sorted data pertaining to time of day, day of week, on/off times, setpoint values, and holiday designation.
4. The TOD program shall also provide an override function that allows the user to conveniently change a start or stop time for any point up to one week in advance. The override command shall be temporary. Once executed the TOD program shall revert to its original schedule.
5. The TOD program shall interface with the optimal start program (OSP) such that stop times may be assigned by OSP.
6. Schedules shall be quickly accessible by no more than two mouse clicks from all graphical pages. Schedules shall incorporate an area for users to add notes for description of event and author names.
7. System shall allow user defined common space group schedule creation and be fully customizable. For example, groups such as all kitchens, all gyms, all athletics, all hallways, etc.
8. System shall incorporate schedule modifications immediately and utilize the new schedule from time of creation.
9. System shall notify user of schedule not downloading and event not occurring as planned.
10. Schedules shall be fully accessible from mobile devices and use a scalable or responsive technology to provide full capabilities and functionality that is provided with the desktop software. Refer to Web Server requirements for mobile devices.
11. System shall include priority level schedules in a hierarchy configuration.
    a. Emergency Off highest priority (Freeze condition)
    b. Override 2nd highest priority (School dude schedules from Fs Direct)
    c. Holiday 3rd highest priority (Spring Break, Thanksgiving, Christmas)
    d. Normal 4th highest priority (Regular school hours)

D. Additional Program functions required are to be installed and programmed as requested by end user at no additional cost:

1. Enthalpy optimization.
2. Supply air reset.
3. Hot water reset.
4. Chilled water reset.
5. Volumetric control.
6. Static pressure reset.
7. Dead band control. Install dual set points as requested by user.
8. All specified energy management programs, whether or not applicable to this project shall be provided such that the owner may enable the program at a future date without the need to purchase additional software or modify existing software.

F. Software shall include an energy management analysis tool which will provide the users the ability to analyze, compare and normalize building energy consumption on a day, week, month and year time interval.

F. Software shall poll local airports and other facility BMCS systems for ambient temperature

and humidity valves. These values shall be compared to the readings at each campus and send an alarm to the system that a building temperature and humidity sensor has failed if the building values are 5 ˚F or 5% R.H. above or below (adjustable).

## 2.8 WEB SERVER ACCESSIBILITY

A. Industry leading encryption technology to provide accessibility through a web browser.

B. Building Manager's ability to access, view and command critical building information in real time over the intranet or internet.
   1. Alarm Display
   2. Point Commanding
   3. Graphic Display
   4. Scheduling
   5. Running Reports
   6. Point Details

## 2.9 REMOTE NOTIFICATION

A. Remote notification sends Alarm and System Event information to various notification devices as indicated below but not limited to. Operators can receive their building automation system alarms without restricting them to dedicated workstations.
   1. Email
   2. Cell phones via text messages.
   3. Phones via voice message.

## 2.10 POINT EXPANSION MODULES

A. Capable of extending its input/output capabilities via special purpose modules.
   1. Modules may be mounted remote from the DDCP.
   2. Shall communicate with the DDCP over a pair of twisted cables.
   3. Operator shall have the ability to manually override automatic or centrally executed commands at the DDC Controller via local, point discrete, on-board hand/off/auto operator override switches for digital control type points and gradual switches for analog control type points.
   **4. All BMCS control modules shall have Hand Off Auto (HOA) switches on all outputs for HVAC and electrical, including digital outputs.**

## 2.11 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONTROLLERS

A. Provide for control of each piece of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
   1. Variable Air Volume (VAV) boxes
   2. Constant Air Volume (CAV) boxes
   3. Dual Duct Terminal Boxes
   4. Unit Conditioners
   5. Heat Pumps

6. Unit Ventilators
7. Room Pressurization
8. Fan Coil Units

B. Include the following items:
1. All input and outputs necessary to perform the specified control sequences.
a. Analog outputs shall be industry standard signals such as 24V floating control.
2. Sufficient memory to accommodate point database, operating programs, local alarming and local trending.
3. All databases and programs shall be stored in non-volatile EEPROM, EPROM and PROM, or minimum of 100-hour battery backup shall be provided.
4. Return to full normal operation without user intervention after a power outage of unlimited duration.
5. Operation programs shall be field selectable for specific applications.
6. Specific control strategy requirements, allowing for additional system flexibility.
7. Controllers that require factory changes of all applications are not acceptable.
8. The failure of any terminal equipment controllers on the network shall not affect the operation of other terminal equipment controllers and be capable of standalone operation. All terminal equipment controller failures shall be annunciated at the specified alarm pages.

## 2.12 ELECTRONIC DAMPER ACTUATORS

A. Two position damper operators:
1. Spring return to full travel position.
2. Built in auxiliary switches (motor end switches)
a. Switch shall be fully adjustable so that cut-in/cut-out points may be preset at any point within angular travel of the motor.
3. Minimum torque 60-in-lb

B. Modulating damper operators:
1. Sized with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action and tight close off against the system pressure
2. Select the operator with available torque to exceed the maximum required operating torque by not less than 100%
3. Minimum torque 100 in-lb

## 2.13 ETHERNET CARD

A. Ethernet Card:
1. Local area network connection interface card.

## 2.14 CONTROL CABINETS

A. Fully enclosed NEMA 1 for indoors, NEMA 4 for outdoors.
1. Powder coat painted on all sides

2. Cabinet with continuously piano type hinged door
3. Locking latch
4. All locks shall use a common key
5. Devices on the panel face must be identified with engraved nameplates.
6. Panels or termination panels must be identified with engraved nameplates.
7. Provide enamel finish and extruded aluminum alloy frame UL 50 certified.
8. Top of controls cabinet shall not be installed above 6’-0” AFF.

## 2.15 AUTOMATIC CONTROL VALVES

A. Pressure ratings: Minimum 125 psig or 1.25 times maximum system operating pressure.

B. Construction:
1. 2" and smaller:
   a. Screwed.
   b. Bodies and internal parts: Bronze, stainless steel or other approved corrosion-resistant metal.
2. 2-1/2" and larger:
   a. Flanged.
   b. Bodies: Cast iron or cast steel.
   c. Seats and parts exposed to fluid: Bronze, stainless steel or other approved corrosion-resistant metal.
3. Characterized port ball valves are acceptable for VAV terminal units only.

C. Modulating straight through water valves: Equal percentage contoured throttling plugs.

D. Three Way Mixing Valves: Linear throttling plugs allowing total flow through valve to remain constant regardless of position.

E. Sizes: By Automatic Control System Manufacturer for fully modulating operation.
1. Minimum pressure drop: Equal to pressure drop of coil or exchanger.
2. Maximum pressure drop: 5.5 psi.
3. Relief and bypass valves: Sized according to pressure available.
4. 2-position valves: Line size.
5. Manual by-pass operator.

F. Electronic Actuator:
1. Direct coupled installation
2. Visual and electronic stroke indicator
3. Die-cast aluminum housing
4. Manual override
5. Self-lubricating bearing and gear train
6. Automatic calibration
7. Automatic duty cycle protection
8. Overload and stall protection
9. Non-spring return
10. Floating /0-10 VAC / 4-20mA operation

11. UL approved
12. Provide smooth modulating action and tight close off against the system pressure.
13. Torque to exceed the maximum required operating torque by not less than 150%.
14. Actuator input signal shall be compatible with output DDC controller.
15. Provide weatherproof enclosure (exterior use).
16. Damper actuators not acceptable for valves.

## 2.16 FLOW SWITCHES

A. Wetter parts made of type 316 stainless steel.
   1. Designed for mounting in pipe tee.
   2. Watertight, dust-tight, and corrosion resistant enclosure.
   3. Paddle shall be factory fabricated to accommodate pipe sizes used.
   4. Switching action shall be single pole double throw.

B. Approved manufacturer:
   1. ITT McDonald Miller #FS7-4WL for piping over 8", FS7-4W for chilled water.
   2. ITT McDonald Miller #FS7-4L for piping over 8", FS7-4 for hot and condenser water.

C. Remote Flow Solid-State Flow Detection:
   1. Extended length flow probe
   2. Cabinet-mounted control monitor
   3. Wetted parts, 316 stainless steel probe
   4. Optional temperature and wire-break outputs
   5. Flow and temperature switch points
   6. LED bar graph display for status indication

D. Approved Manufacturer:
   1. IFM Effector

## 2.17 DIFFERENTIAL PRESSURE SWITCHES

A. Wet/wet differential pressure switch
   1. Integral Mounting Frame
   2. Watertight, dust-tight, and corrosion resistant enclosure.
   3. Wetted materials of brass and flouroelastomer.
   4. Externally adjustable set point

B. Approved manufacturer:
   1. Square D #9012GGW4
   2. Dwyer #DXW-11-153-1
   3. Carrier #HK06ZC033

## 2.18 TEMPERATURE LOW LIMIT SWITCH

A. Responsive to the coldest 1' section of its length.
   1. Double pole single throw switch
   2. 20' capillary
   3. Line voltage with bellows actuated switch
   4. Auto reset for outdoor installation
   5. Manual reset for indoor installation

## 2.19 TEMPERATURE AND HUMIDITY SENSORS

A. Space Temperature Sensors
   1. Thermister with resistance of 10,000 ohms at 77°F.
   2. Accuracy shall be +/-1/2°F.
   3. Range of 55° to 95° F.
   4. Flush mounted
      a. Stainless steel flush mount sensor, submit sample for review.
   5. Location and height to be approved by Architect/Engineer prior to installation.
   6. Provide metal guards in the following locations:
      a. Corridors
      b. Cafeteria
      c. Kitchen
      d. Gymnasium
      e. Dressing Rooms
      f. Industrial Labs

B. Space / Duct Humidity Sensor
   1. Capacitance element in the space or duct as required and output a 4 to 20 MA signal proportional to 0 to 100% RH to the DDC.
   2. Capacitance element shall be field replaceable and not require calibration.
   3. Accuracy shall be +/-2% in the range from 20 to 95% RH.
   4. Relative humidity sensors shall have the sensing element of inorganic resistance media.
   5. Provide manufacturers calibration certificate.
   6. Provide metal guards in the following locations:
      a. Corridors
      b. Cafeteria
      c. Kitchen.
      d. Gymnasium.
      e. Dressing Rooms.
      f. Industrial Labs.

C. Duct Temperature Sensors
   1. Range of 20° to 120°F.
   2. Single point sensing of temperature.
   3. Averaging elements of sufficient length to sense temperature across 2/3 duct width.
   4. Averaging elements of sufficient length to provide accurate, representative

indication and control.

5. Averaging elements of sufficient length to prevent variances in temperature or stratification.

D. Liquid Immersion Temperature Sensors
   1. Platinum type resistance temperature detector (RTD).
   2. Match sensor range to medium being monitored.
      a. Hot water range 30° to 250°F.
      b. Chilled Water 20° to 70°F.
   3. Furnish stainless steel wells for installation by Mechanical Contractor.
   4. Locate all sensors in field with Owner/Engineer present.
   5. System accuracy for liquid temperature sensing shall be +/-1/2°.
   6. Sensors must be removable from wells.

E. Outside Air / Freezer / Cooler Sensors
   1. Range of –58° to 122°F.
   2. Weatherproof sun shield.
   3. External trim material corrosion resistant with all parts assembled into water tight, vibration-proof, heat resistant assembly.
   4. Minimum of 8' long leads.
   5. Encapsulated into Type 304 stainless steel tubes with low conductivity moisture proofing material and lag extension for thickness of insulation.

## 2.20 CURRENT SENSITIVE RELAYS

A. Ensure compatibility with VFD applications for variable speed motor status.
   1. Provide with adjustable set point.
   2. Relays must be mounted and not hung by power wires thru CT.
   3. Provide split-core type current sensors.
   4. Loop powered.
   5. LED Status.
   6. Acceptable Manufacturer: Veris Industries / Hawkeye
   7. Relays shall close status contacts in response to current flow in power leads to the equipment being monitored.

## 2.21 DIFFERENTIAL PRESSURE TRANSDUCER

A. Transducers to convert differential pressures to 4-20 MA analog outputs.
   1. Solid state pressure sensor with accuracy of +/- 1% of calibration range.
   2. Factory calibrated and have zero and span trimmers for field calibration.
   3. Range shall be selected to match the medium being monitored.
   4. Pressure snubbers to protect from pressure pulses and a 3-way bypass / valve assembly to protect the transducer from overpressure damage during start-up.
   5. LCD Display
   6. Acceptable Manufacturer: Rosemount 1151 or 3051 Pressure Transmitter

## 2.22 FLOW DIFFERENTIAL PRESSURE SWITCH

A. The pressure sensing element shall be of the convoluted diaphragm type for sensitivity to system differential pressure.
   1. Select the pressure range based on the sensed differential pressure.
   2. The unit shall be protected against overpressure to the full static pressure rating.
   3. Accuracy: +/- 2% of full scale.

B. Switch assembly.
   1. Reed switch.
   2. NEMA-4 enclosure.
   3. Threaded boss conduit entrance.
   4. SPST action.
   5. Voltage and rating as required for the control circuit.

C. Wetted parts shall be made of type 303 stainless steel.

D. Install an isolation valve in each sensing pipe leg to permit servicing without shutting the system down.

**2.23 ELECTRIC REMOTE BULB THERMOSTAT**

A. Two position remote bulb thermostat:
   1. Bimetal controlled.
   2. Sealed mercury switches.
   3. Provide specified control action.
   4. Adjustment can be made by removing unit cover.
   5. Element with capillary length as required for the location.

**2.24 ELECTRIC SPACE THERMOSTAT**

A. Two position space thermostat.
   1. Single Pole switch actuated by bi-metal sensing element.
   2. Range shall be 60°F to 90°F.
   3. Removable external knob adjustment means.

**2.25 HIGH STATIC PRESSURE SWITCH**

A. With manual reset switch
   1. Approved manufacturer: Cleveland AFS-460.

**2.26 INSERTION FLOW SENSORS**

A. Electromagnetic Flow Meter
   1. Retractable hot tap flow sensor
   2. Accuracy: +/- 1% of full scale
   3. Custom thread-o-let 400 psi / 250°F rated

4. Installed into a 1” full port ball valve
5. Provided with an insertion depth gage
6. Line size from 2-1/2 to 72 inches
7. Metering range from 0.1 to 20 f/sec (200:1 turndown).
8. Remote NEMA 4 wall mounted LCD display
9. Field Pro Software & Communicator
10. Warranty two years
11. Approved Manufacturer: Onicon Electromagnetic Flow Meter F-3500 Series

**2.27 CONTROL DAMPERS**

A. Opposed blade dampers.
1. Frames of 13-gauge galvanized sheet metal.
2. Provisions for duct mounting.
3. Damper blades not exceeding 8" in width.
4. Blades of two sheets of 16-gauge galvanized sheet metal.
5. Blades suitable for high velocity performance.
6. Bearings of nylon or oil-impregnated, sinthered bronze.
7. Shafts of 1/2" zinc-plated steel
8. Leakage does not exceed 1/2% based on 2000 fpm and 4" static pressure.
9. Replaceable resilient seals along top, bottom and sides of frame and blade edge.
10. Submit leakage and flow characteristics data with shop drawings.
11. Linkage shall be concealed out of the air stream within damper frame.
12. Acceptable Model is Ruskin Model CD60.

**2.28 PHOTO CELL CONTROL**

A. Light Sensitive Resistor.
1. 4-20 output or switch.
2. On = 3.0 / fc. Off 10.0 / fc.
3. UL Approved.

**2.29 DRAIN PAN FLOAT SWITCH**

A. Rated at 10 Amps.
1. Shuts off equipment if water level becomes too high.
2. DPDT Contacts.

**2.30 BY-PASS AUTOMATIC SHUT-OFF TIMERS**

A. Rated at 10 Amps, 125 VAC
1. Shuts off equipment with timed switch
2. White decorated timer
3. Without hold feature
4. Time Cycle 60 minutes

**2.31 $CO_2$ SENSOR**

A. Telaire Model T5100 $CO_2$/Temperature Sensor or approved equal
   1. Local visual indication of $CO_2$ levels in enclosed spaces.
   2. Pre-calibrated with factory default settings of 1000 ppm and 1500 ppm $CO_2$ levels
   3. Bright LED indicator transitions between green, yellow, and red as the $CO_2$ threshold is exceeded.
      a. Accuracy: +/- 30 ppm @ 72°F
      b. Output: 0-10 V (100Ω output impedance) and NTC 20k Thermister

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. The control system shall be installed and final adjustments made by full-time employees of the factory-approved BMCS Building Management Control Subcontractor.

B. The contractor shall collaborate through Architect / Engineer and Owner to determine the Owner's preference for naming conventions, etc. before entering the data in to the system.

C. Due to actual operational or space conditions, it may be necessary for the Contractor to make sequence of operation modifications and/or controller adjustments, change the location or type of sensor to obtain proper operation and coverage of the system in each room or space. These change, if requested by the Owner or Engineer, shall be performed at no additional cost to the Owner. Therefore labor allowances should be made for such changes and adjustments if requested.

D. Points listed within this section are to be connected to the BMCS system as hard-wired points to cards and not connected through BacNet integration. The BacNet interface is for read only points not included within sequences of this specification.

**3.2 INTERLOCK AND SAFETY CIRCUITS**

A. Close the outdoor air dampers when the related HVAC unit supply or exhaust fan is de-energized:
   1. The damper and actuators are specified in this section.
   2. Outdoor air damper shall be fully opened before related air handling unit fan is energized for 100% outside air use.
   3. Provide motorized outside air dampers for the following:
      a. Supply fans
      b. AHUs
      c. Exhaust fans (except kitchen exhaust)

B. Close the chilled and hot water valves to the coil when the related unit is de-energized.

C. Interlock each chiller to start its dedicated chilled and condenser water pumps. Interlock

flow switch and pump auxiliary contacts in series to chiller safety terminal strip.

1. On shutdown provide a circuit to permit the chilled water pumps and condenser water pumps to run while the chillers pump down as required by the manufacturer.
2. As per manufacturer's recommendations

D. Primary chilled water control:

1. Operating and safety controls are furnished as an integral part of the water-chilling unit and not specified in this section.
2. Provide flow switches located in the chilled water and condenser water piping to each water-cooled liquid chiller.
    a) Interlock to prevent operation in the absence of flow.
    b) This may not be the prime controller to start/stop the chiller.
    c) Interlock thru pump auxiliary contacts.
3. Provide a high limit temperature sensor in each primary chilled water pump loop.

E. Exhaust/Supply Fans:

1. Interlock the related exhaust and supply fans and the related outside air damper.
2. Interlock the exhaust fans with the related air-handling unit through software.
3. Interlock related exhaust fan for dishwasher with time delay off relay.
4. Interlock related exhaust fan for kiln with time delay off relay
5. Interlock kitchen hood related supply and exhaust fans.
6. Provide additional interlocks as indicated on fan schedule and on drawings.
7. Interlock electrical and mechanical room exhaust fans with thermostat.
8. Interlock refrigerant monitor with mechanical room purge system.
9. Interlock science room related supply and exhaust fans.
10. Interlock outside air supply fans for VAV air-handling unit with air-handling unit status point.

F. Freeze Protection:

1. Provide a freeze protection sequence to ensure proper operation of equipment during a freeze condition not limited to the following:
    a. Outside Air Handling Units & Supply Fans with heating and cooling coils: If unit is in occupied or unoccupied mode, upon the triggering of software point indicating a freeze condition or the low temperature sensor (freeze stat) indicates a freeze condition, the system will be disabled, close the outside air damper, open both heating and cooling valves to enable full flow condition. If heating coil discharge air sensor indicates a failure to control and is below setpoint then enable software point indicating a freeze condition, disable unit, close outside air damper, and open both heating and cooling valves to enable full flow condition. Ensure HW & CHW pumps are operational.
    b. Boilers - Enable during a freeze condition.
    c. Chillers – Open isolation valves then command by-pass valve to dump water into basin or by-pass tower. Enable condenser water pumps

during a freeze condition.

d. Air Cooled Chillers – Open isolation valves, then enable pumps, run cycle for 15 minutes per hour, open all chilled water valves. Coordinate with chiller manufacturer to ensure chiller controller and pump control is configured to allow freeze protection cycle to be enabled without a call for cooling

e. Protect coils downstream of DX cooling coil with freeze protection. If unit is in occupied or unoccupied mode, upon the triggering of software point indicating a freeze condition or the low temperature sensor (freeze stat) indicates a freeze condition, the system will be disabled, close the outside air damper, disable the DX cooling coil. If coil discharge air sensor indicates a failure to control and is below setpoint then enable software point indicating a freeze condition.

2. Temperature low limit switch wired with double pole single throw switch with one switch leg hard-wired to de-energize fan and one switch leg to signal BMCS.

G. Drain Pan Float Protection:
1. Interlock to shut down unit and close valves.
2. Cooling Coils mounted above ceiling and in roof mounted units.
3. Provide for each cooling coil location.
4. Signal BMCS alarm point

H. Domestic Water System:
1. Interlock in-line circulating pumps at water heaters with return water pipe mounted thermostat to cycle pump with return water temperature.
2. Interlock high temperature entering water solenoid valve with thermostat on discharge side of tempered water mixing valves.

I. Science Room Utility Controllers:
1. Interlock the utility controllers with related air-handling unit through software.

J. Hydronic Heating Boiler:
1. Interlock each boiler to start its dedicated pump.
2. On startup enable boiler prior to starting primary pump. Boiler should reach operating temperature prior to starting system pump as per manufacturer’s recommendations.
3. Disable system pump if boiler goes into alarm or fails to produce heating water within 30 minutes.

K. Condensing and Non-Condensing Hot Water Boilers:
1. Interlock each boiler to start its dedicated pump.
2. Install communication cable between each boiler and master controller specified by boiler manufacturer.

## 3.3 GRAPHICS

A. Furnish as-built drawings indicating final corrected "as installed" diagram(s) of the

complete Building Management Control System.

1. Modification of existing control systems shall be included.
2. These must be as-built and any changes during the warranty period drawings must be revised and updated.
3. Provide final sequence of operation in written format.

B. Provide a set of the "as installed" diagram(s) of the complete control system laminated in plastic and hung in the main mechanical room or as directed by Owner. Provide electronic copy of as-built record drawings, submittals and closeout documents on thumb drive.

C. Provide a two color-coded floor plan of the building, one representative of the AHU level zones and the other to be representative of the space/temperature sensor level and shall indicate the location of each system, the area served by each AHU and each related zone. Provide both in PDF format and in printed form of professional quality. Printed floor plan is to hang in main mechanical room near central control panel.

D. Provide a separate graphics for each system, site plans including all exterior lighting and parking lot lighting. Graphics shall be a dynamic in nature to provide visual indication of which area of the site currently has lighting energized and de-energized. Areas energized and de-energized shall be indicated with different colors as determined by the school district. In addition, the zone tags shall include the pole number, location of the contactor, panel and circuit number.

E. Provide final graphic room numbers as selected by District. Any graphic changes during the warranty period shall be included.

F. Provide an alarm management and reporting graphical page. This page shall allow user to create, acknowledge and adjust alarms. All alarms shall have the ability to be selectable for remote notifications and control which personnel is notified.

G. System shall provide fully interactive thermal graphic floor plans that include the following features:

1. Dynamic Colored Floor Plans (DCFP) that compare actual space conditions to set points (DCFPs shall utilize a range of colors that represent cool to cold and warm to hot, and the color scheme shall remain consistent throughout all graphic levels and across all facilities with the entire control system for the District)

2. The DCFP shall be displayed on a single screen for the entire campus or facility with at a minimum large spaces notes on this initial floor plan and additional spaces labeled for each subsequent level, ultimately down to individual room numbers (note: DCFP must continue to all levels, including those needed to display room numbers on the facility floor plan; for example: for a high school, the first level might be the entire facility with gyms, library, auditorium, etc. labeled; the second level might be divided by floor level with additional spaces labeled such as Admin, Kitchen, etc; and the third level might be areas of each floor with individual room numbers) Room numbers must be displayed on a plan level that is legible and acceptable to the owner.
3. Additionally, DCFPs shall also display via a different set of colors the following:
    a. Status changes from Occupied to Unoccupied
    b. When any HVAC equipment is running in either Occupied or Unoccupied Mode (for example: unoccupied dehumidification, etc.), and
    c. Communication losses at any level within the facility
4. At all levels DCFP graphics must include at a minimum the following:
    a. The facility name (to be either adjustable by the user, or to be adjusted by the contractor for the life of the building at no additional charge)
    b. True North label
    c. A facility diagram in the corner showing subsequent levels below the current page (this facility diagram must also include active links to each shown sub-level area)
    d. OA Temp (with a direct link to the point where this information originates)
    e. Name displays of and active links to each of the following:
        1) Each CHW plant that serves this facility (each one labeled by name with links to the corresponding CHW graphic), and the display of the CHW Supply Temperature from this plant
        2) Each HHW plant that serves this facility (each one labeled by name with links to the corresponding HHW graphic), and the display of the HHW Supply Temperature from this plant
        3) Emergency Shutdown (showing current status and link to the corresponding enable/disable location)
        4) Freezer and/or Cooler temperatures
        5) AHU Summary Pages
        6) Zone and/or Box Summary Pages
5. Provide preprogrammed summary pages as provided by the owner.

H. System shall include a graphical page that contains building and system related documents stored for ease of remote access.

I. System shall include a real time dynamic dashboard to provide real time analysis of conditions and equipment performance.

J. Graphics shall clearly display % open from 0-100% on all valves and dampers.

K. Graphics shall clearly display % run from 0-100% for all VFDs. Displaying current

operating hertz only is not acceptable.

L. All graphics must reside on main system front end server. Graphics shall not be stored on controllers.

## 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Provide a laminated engraved nameplate on all control panels and devices shown on the "as installed" control diagrams. Coordinate engraving with nomenclature used on the diagrams.

B. A black-white-black laminated plastic engraved identifying nameplate shall be secured to each terminal cabinet, and control panels. Identifying nameplates shall have ½ inch high, engraved letters.

C. Provide a black and white label affixed to the ceiling grid below all terminal units and labeled with the unit tag with those used on the "as installed" control diagrams. Coordinate labeling with nomenclature used on the diagrams.

D. Provide each valve and damper actuators labeled with room served and zone number.

E. Provide each sensor with label located on the inside of sensor cover. The label shall indicate which device sensor is controlling. If multiple sensors control a single device the sensors shall be labeled with an “A” or “B” etc.

F. Provide identification label located on the ceiling grid to indicate location of each terminal box. Label shall identify the terminal box number.

G. Provide identification label on each transformer and relay with what devices they serve and their function.

H. Provide identification label on each wire used for this system. Labels shall be affixed to each end of the wire.

## 3.5 WIRING FOR BUILDING MANAGEMENT AND CONTROL SYSTEMS

A. Furnish and install all wire, conduit, raceways and cable systems required for the complete operation of the Building Management and Control System.

B. All wiring for the Building Management and Control System is specified in this section and includes, but is not limited to:
   1. Wiring of interlock system.
   2. Wiring of control instruments.
   3. Wiring of control panels.
   4. Wiring of related power supplies, i.e. transformers.
   5. Wiring of 120 VAC power circuits for control panels and devices.

C. All materials and methods specified in this section shall comply with the requirements specified in Division 26 of this specification.

D. All power supply requirements shall be connected to the building electrical distribution system in an approved manner. Do not connect control equipment of circuits common with other building loads or devices.

E. Temperature control wiring shall be jacketed cables installed with or without conduit as specified below or single conductors installed in conduit. Control wiring shall have minimum 300V insulation for low voltage wiring and 600V insulation for line voltage wiring.

F. All line voltage control wiring, all low voltage control wiring which is exposed in the central plant, penthouse, and other similar spaces; all low voltage control wiring which is routed through concealed inaccessible locations shall be installed in conduit.

G. All low voltage control wiring which is routed through concealed accessible locations may be run without conduit provided that the wiring run without conduit is properly supported from the building structure on maximum 5' centers and does not depend upon the ceiling grid or the ceiling support system for support. Wiring run in plenum spaces shall be plenum rated. Support all plenum wiring in accessible locations in bridle rings, J-hooks, D rings. Plenum wiring is not to be supported within building structure or attached to conduit raceways. All low voltage wiring must be installed through supports. Wires shall be supported on 5’ centers and identified at each termination point and at 50’ centers minimum. Install wire parallel or perpendicular to the structural features of the building.

H. Line and low voltage control wiring shall not be installed in the same conduit with control wiring and shall not be installed in the same conduit with power wiring.

I. All wiring associated with building management and control system cover shall be as follows:
   1. Sensor jacket color, Yellow
   2. LAN communications, Yellow
   3. All THHN wiring shall comply with Division 26 insulation color identification

**3.6 EXISTING AUTOMATION SYSTEM**

A. The new system components shall be fully integrated with the existing Building Automation System Host computer located at the School District maintenance facility.

B. The integrating shall include, but not be limited to, database additions, creation of graphics and implementing communications. Integration shall be consistent with District standards and practices.

C. The bid for the control work shall be based on the premise that existing control devices are operational and are not in need of repair or replacement, unless otherwise noted.

D. This subcontractor shall notify the Owner's representative of existing control devices that need to be replaced or repaired that may be noted in the process of installation of the new work.

## 3.7 EXHAUST AND SUPPLY FANS

A. Provide interlocks as scheduled on the plans unless shown on the electrical drawings.

B. Provide BMCS override to disable operation of all exhaust and supply fans interlocked and/or specified throughout project.

C. Provide by-pass timers for fans indicated in Fan Schedule and in the following locations:
1. Fume Hoods
2. Science Room exhaust fans

| POINT DESCRIPTION | TYPE | DEVICE |
|---|---|---|
| Start/stop | DO | Control Relay |
| Outside Air Damper | DO | Electronic Operator |
| Fan Status | DI | Current Sensitive Relay |

## 3.8 MISCELLANEOUS

A. Terminal Unit relocation – This contractor shall remove and reinstall all new controls to support terminal unit relocation. This work shall include all new communication wiring and sensor wiring.

## 3.9 VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVE INTERFACE

A. Interface to the VFD directly

B. Interface may be hardwired or via RS-485

C. The following points shall be available at a minimum:

| Point Name | Type |
|---|---|
| Start-stop | DO |
| Drive alarm | DI |
| Last fault | AI |
| Reset drive | DO |
| Percent output | AI |
| Frequency output | AI |
| Speed | AI |
| Current | AI |
| Power | AI |
| Drive temperature | AI |
| KWH | AI |

Run time AI

## 3.10 VARIABLE AIR VOLUME TERMINAL UNIT COORDINATION

A. Equipment furnished in this section and installed by Section 23 36 16:
   1. Automatic temperature control card (DDC).
   2. Damper Actuator

B. Equipment furnished and installed by Section 23 36 16:
   1. Damper.
   2. Multi-point flow sensor.
   3. Power transformer.
   4 Controller enclosure.

## 3.11 HYDRONIC HOT WATER HEATING SYSTEM

A. This system consists of two (2) condensing hot water boilers with constant flow primary boiler pumps and one (1) variable flow hot water secondary pump. Control of the hydronic hot water heating system is as follows:
   1. Energize the hydronic hot water heating system whenever there is a call for heating in the building.
      a. Monitor all control valves to determine if a heating requirement exists.
   2. Energize the hybrid sequence controller specified elsewhere.
      a. The hybrid sequence controller shall control all functions and sequencing of the hot water heating boilers.
      b. Connect all boilers to the master boiler controller specified elsewhere with communication cable as required.
   3. Hydronic hot water heating system supply temperature reset.
      a. A temperature sensor sensing outdoor temperature shall provide an input to the hybrid sequence controller to reset the hot water supply temperature.
         1) Maintain 160°F (adjustable)supply water temperature whenever the ambient temperature is 20°F and below.
         2) Maintain 110°F (adjustable) supply water temperature whenever the ambient temperature is 60°F and above.
         3) All reset temperatures shall be adjustable through the BMCS.
   4. Secondary hot water pump control:
      a. A system differential pressure sensor shall modulate the hot water pump variable frequency drives and stage pumps A and B to maintain system differential pressure.
      b. This system shall be completely adjustable in the field.

| POINT DESCRIPTION | TYPES | DEVICE |
|---|---|---|
| Hybrid Sequence Controller | DO | Control Relay |

| POINT DESCRIPTION | TYPES | DEVICE |
|---|---|---|
| Boiler Alarm Status | DI | Safety Relay (Each Boiler) |
| Secondary Hot Water Pump Start/Stop/Modulation | AO | Variable Frequency Drive (Each Pump) |
| System Differential Pressure | AI | Pressure Sensor |
| Pump Status | DI | Current Sensitive Relay |
| Building Hot Water Supply/Return Temperature | AI | Pipe RTD |
| Boiler Discharge Water Temperature | AI | Pipe RTD (Each Boiler) |
| Ambient Temperature | AI | Thermistor |
| Boiler Supply Water Reset | AO | Hybrid Sequence Controller |
| Inlet Temperature (Read Only) | | Bacnet Card (Each Boiler) |
| Outlet Temperature (Read Only) | | Bacnet Card (Each Boiler) |
| Header Temperature (Read Only) | | Bacnet Card (Each Boiler |
| Boiler State (Read Only) | | Bacnet Card (Each Boiler) |
| Error Code (Read Only) | | Bacnet Card (Each Boiler) |

**3.12 HYDRONIC AND DOMESTIC BOILER EMERGENCY VENTILATION SYSTEM**

A. Interface with the CO monitor system. Upon alarm through the sensor the boiler room emergency exhaust fan shall be activated. Upon alarm, through the sensor, all the boiler equipment, i.e. boiler and pumps and domestic water heaters, shall be deactivated. CO monitor shall provide a visual and audible alarm. Provide a sign at each entrance to boiler room to indicate information about system.

B. Upon Alarm of CO monitor, notify users via text message.

| POINT DESCRIPTION | TYPES | DEVICE |
|---|---|---|
| CO Monitor | DI | Control Panel |
| Fan Start/Stop | DO | Control Relay |
| System Start/Stop | DO | Control Relay |

## 3.13 CHILLED WATER SYSTEM CONTROL

A. A new air-cooled chiller is being added and connected to the existing water-cooled central plant that utilized primary secondary pumping. The existing controls system shall be updated to reflect all changes to the system including a new graphics package.

B. The final system consists of two existing water-cooled chillers and a new air-cooled chiller. The new air-cooled chiller shall have a dedicated primary chilled water pump. Chilled water system shall be activated by a request for cooling from any unit it supplies with chilled water during the plant scheduled operating hours. The number of requests required to activate the plant shall be user adjustable.

C. Temperature sensors located in the building common chilled water supply and return piping and the turbine flow meter located in the building chilled water common supply piping shall, acting through the DDC system, be used to calculate the building BTUH requirements.

D. Water Cooled Chiller 1 with its respective pump shall be System 1. Water Cooled Chiller 2 with its respective pump shall be System 2. Air Cooled Chiller 3 with its respective pump shall be System 3.

E. During start-up, System 3 primary pump shall start. After flow has been indicated from the flow switch for an adjustable time period, the System 3 chiller shall be activated.

F. When the load calculated from the temperature sensors and flow meter exceeds the capacity of System 3 for an adjustable time period, the System 1 primary pump and chiller shall be activated. Upon activation of System 1, System 3 shall be deactivated. Upon further increase of building load, System 2 shall be activated to run with System 1. System 3 shall also be a peak load machine and utilized as such within the sequence.

G. Stage down of plant shall be in the reverse order of stage up. The primary pumps serving the chillers will remain on for 3 minutes (adjustable) and then be deactivated.

H. A temperature sensor located in the chiller by-pass piping shall send an alarm to the host computer and shall start the lag chiller after an adjustable time delay, if the temperature in the by-pass is above 3 degF (adjustable) higher than the temperature in the common supply from the chillers. This indicates the flow is moving from the primary loop to the secondary loop.

I. Provide time delays between pump starts and stops to allow system to stabilize.

J. Change lead/lag rotation on a weekly basis.

K. Provide full BacNet integration for each chiller. Provide a separate graphics page to display all information (Adjustable) available from BacNet card.

L. Interface with existing Bacnet card. All BacNet points shall be exposed in BMCS system

and at a minimum display those listed below on a graphical page.

| POINT DESCRIPTION | TYPES | DEVICE |
|---|---|---|
| AC Chiller Start/Stop | DO | Control Relay |
| AC Chiller Water Supply Temp. | AI | Pipe RTD (1 each) |
| AC Status (Chiller) | DI | Safety Alarm Relay |
| AC Pump Status | DI | Current Sensitive Relay |
| Building Flow | AI | Flow Meter (Existing) |
| Building Supply/Return Water Temp. | AI | Temperature Sensors (Existing) |
| Bypass Temperature | AI | Temperature Sensor (Existing) |
| Common Chiller Supply Temperature | AI | Temperature Sensor (Existing) |
| Common Chiller Return Temperature | AI | Temperature Sensor (Existing) |
| Chilled Water Setpoint | AO | BacNet Card |
| Current Limit Setpoint | AO | BacNet Card |
| Compressor Starts (Per compressor | AI | BacNet Card |
| Compressor Runtime (Per compressor | AI | BacNet Card |

## 3.14 SECONDARY CHILLED WATER PUMPING SYSTEM CONTROL

A. The secondary chilled water pumps and variable frequency drives are being replaced.

B. The existing pump control sequence shall remain in place. Provide new end devices as listed below.

| POINT DESCRIPTION | TYPES | DEVICE |
|---|---|---|
| Pump Start/Stop | DO | Control Relay |
| Pump Status | DI | Differential Pressure Switch |
| Pump Speed | AO | Variable Frequency Drive |

## 3.15 FAN COIL UNITS (CHFCU-1 through CHFCU-10)

A. Each fan coil unit is furnished with a chilled water coil and hot water coil. Control shall be as follows:
   1. A space temperature sensor shall, acting through a terminal equipment controller, modulate the valves on the chilled water cooling coil and hot water reheat coil in sequence to maintain the desired space temperatures.
   2. Start/stop of fan coil unit shall be by terminal equipment controller.
   3. The outside air units providing the outside air shall be activated when the fan coil units are operating during the occupied periods.

| POINT DESCRIPTION | TYPES | DEVICE |
|---|---|---|
| Start/Stop | DO | Control Relay |
| CHW Valve | AO | Electronic Operator |
| FCU Status | DI | Current Sensitive Relay |
| Space Temperature | AI | Space Thermistor |
| HW valve | AO | Electronic Operator |
| Discharge Air Temperature | AI | Duct Thermistor |
| Outside Air Damper | DO | Electronic Operator (where applicable) |

## 3.16 ROOF MOUNTED SINGLE ZONE VARIABLE AIR VOLUME AIR HANDLING UNIT (RMAHU-1)

A. This unit is furnished with a chilled water coil, a hot water heating coil in the reheat position, a variable frequency drive. Control shall be as follows:
   1. A room Thermistor sensing space temperature through the Direct Digital Control Panel shall vary the speed of the fan to maintain room setpoint. The air volume of the fan can range from 100% to 30% (adjustable) of the air quantity specified. A chilled water coli leaving air temperature sensor through the Direct Digital Control Panel shall modulate the cooling coil control valve to maintain the leaving air temperature as scheduled. When the fan is at the minimum speed and the room temperature is below the room setpoint, the room Thermistor shall modulate the valve on the cooling coil to incrementally reset the chilled water leaving air temperature up to a maximum temperature of 60F. Only after the fan is at minimum speed and the chilled water leaving air temperature is at the max should the valve on the hot water coil be modulated to maintain the desired space temperature. A room humidity sensor shall override the operation of the cooling coil discharge temperature reset and the cooling coil control valve to maintain the relative humidity setpoint in the space.

The room temperature sensor shall modulate the hot water reheat coil control valve to maintain the space temperature. The dehumidification sequence only applies after the fan has reached the minimum fan speed.

2. Outside air for these units are being provided pretreated from a separate roof mounted outside air handling unit.
3. The outside air unit shall be activated during the occupied periods.
4. Provide a CO2 monitor located in the space adjacent to the temperature sensor.

| POINT DESCRIPTION | TYPES | DEVICE |
|---|---|---|
| Start/Stop | DO | Control Relay |
| AHU Status | DI | Current Sensitive Relay |
| Space Temperature | AI | Space Thermistor |
| Reheat HW Valve | AO (1) | Electronic Operator |
| CHW Valve | AO (1) | Electronic Operator |
| Cooling Coil Leaving Air Temp. | AI | Averaging Sensor |
| Discharge Air Temperature | AI | Duct Thermistor |
| Fan Speed | AO | Variable Frequency Drive |
| Space Humidity | AI | Humidity Sensor |
| CO2 Concentration | AI | CO2 Monitor |

**3.17 ROOF MOUNTED SINGLE ZONE VARIABLE AIR VOLUME AIR HANDLING UNIT (RMAHU-2)**

A. This unit is furnished with a chilled water coil, a hot water heating coil in the reheat position, a variable frequency drive and OA measuring station. Control shall be as follows:

1. A room Thermistor sensing space temperature through the Direct Digital Control Panel shall vary the speed of the fan to maintain room setpoint. The air volume of the fan can range from 100% to 50% (adjustable) of the air quantity specified. A chilled water coli leaving air temperature sensor through the Direct Digital Control Panel shall modulate the cooling coil control valve to maintain the leaving air temperature as scheduled. When the fan is at the minimum speed and the room temperature is below the room setpoint, the room Thermistor shall modulate the valve on the cooling coil to incrementally reset the chilled water leaving air temperature up to a maximum temperature of 60F. Only after the fan is at minimum speed and the chilled water leaving air temperature is at the max should the valve on the hot water coil be modulated to maintain the desired space temperature. A room humidity sensor shall

override the operation of the cooling coil discharge temperature reset and the cooling coil control valve to maintain the relative humidity setpoint in the space. The room temperature sensor shall modulate the hot water reheat coil control valve to maintain the space temperature. The dehumidification sequence only applies after the fan has reached the minimum fan speed.

2. The unit is being furnished with an OA flow measuring station. The OA flow shall be monitored by BMCS. The return air damper and OA damper shall be modulated as required to maintain schedule OA quantities.
3. Provide a temperature low limit switch located on the entering side of the cooling coil to de-energize the air handling unit, close the outside air damper, open both heating and cooling valves 100% to enable full flow condition, start the boiler, start the hot water and chilled water pumps, and signal an alarm to the BMCS when the temperature drops below 32°F. Device shall be manual reset.

| POINT DESCRIPTION | TYPES | DEVICE |
|---|---|---|
| Start/Stop | DO | Control Relay |
| AHU Status | DI | Current Sensitive Relay |
| Space Temperature | AI | Space Thermistor |
| Reheat HW Valve | AO (1) | Electronic Operator |
| CHW Valve | AO (1) | Electronic Operator |
| Outside Air Damper | DO | Electronic Operator |
| Return Air Damper | DO | Electronic Operator |
| Outside Air Flow | AI | Air Flow Measuring Station |
| Cooling Coil Leaving Air Temp. | AI | Averaging Sensor |
| Discharge Air Temperature | AI | Duct Thermistor |
| Fan Speed | AO | Variable Frequency Drive |
| Space Humidity | AI | Humidity Sensor |
| Freeze Status | DI | Temperature Low Limit Switch |

## 3.18 SINGLE ZONE AIR HANDLING UNITS CONTROL W/VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVE (AHU-1, AHU-2, AHU-3, CHFCU-11)

A. This unit is furnished with a chilled water cooling coil, a hot water reheat coil, and a variable frequency drive. Control shall be as follows:

1. A room Thermistor sensing space temperature through the Direct Digital Control Panel shall vary the speed of the fan to maintain room setpoint. The air volume of the fan can range from 100% to 30% (adjustable) of the air quantity specified or to the outside air percentage whichever value is larger. A chilled water coil leaving air temperature sensor through the Direct Digital Control Panel shall modulate the cooling coil control valve to maintain the leaving air temperature as scheduled. When the fan is at minimum speed of its specified air quantity and the room temperature is below the room setpoint, the room Thermistor shall modulate the valve on the cooling coil and the valve on the hot water coil in sequence to maintain the desired space temperature. A room humidity sensor shall override the operation of the cooling coil control valve to maintain the relative humidity setpoint in the space. The room temperature sensor shall modulate the hot water reheat coil control valve to maintain the space temperature. The dehumidification sequence only applies after the fan has reached the minimum fan speed.

B. Outside air for these units are being provided pretreated from a separate Outside Air Unit via an Outside Air Variable Air Volume Terminal Unit.

| POINT DESCRIPTION | TYPES | DEVICE |
|---|---|---|
| Start/Stop | DO | Control Relay |
| AHU Status | DI | Current Sensitive Relay |
| Fan Speed | AO | Variable Frequency Drive |
| Space Temperature | AI | Space Thermistor |
| Space Humidity | AI | Humidity Sensor |
| CHW Valve | AO (1) | Electronic Operator |
| Reheat HW Valve | AO (1) | Electronic Operator |
| Cooling Coil Leaving Air Temp. | AI | Averaging Sensor |
| Discharge Air Temperature | AI | Duct Thermistor |

## 3.19 VARIABLE AIR VOLUME OUTSIDE AIR HANDLING UNIT CONTROL (OAU-1)

A. These units are furnished with a chilled water coil and a hot water heating coil in the PREHEAT position. Control shall be as follows:

1. A duct mounted sensor sensing supply air temperature shall, acting through the

Direct Digital Control Panel, modulate the valve on the cooling coil and the valve on the hot water coil, in sequence, to maintain the desired discharge air temperature. Reference drawing schedule for discharge temperature.
The air-handling unit shall be started and stopped from the BMCS System.

2. Provide a temperature low limit switch located on the discharge side of the hot water preheat coil or the entering side of the cooling coil to de-energize the air handling unit, close the outside air damper, open both heating and cooling valves 100% to enable full flow condition, start the boiler, start the hot water and chilled water pumps, and signal an alarm to the BMCS when the temperature drops below 32°F. Device shall be manual reset.
3. Open OA damper before starting unit. Provide end switch to ensure damper is in the open position in either the manual (hand) or auto position of the motor starter.

B. Variable air volume control:
1. Duct static pressure sensor shall be located in the duct at a position approximately 2/3 the distance from the fan in the longest duct run. Location is to be approved by Engineer and coordinated with Section 23 05 93.
2. The static pressure sensors shall, through the DDC panel, accept the signal from the operating control sensor to:
   a. Transmit a signal to the supply fan motor speed controller.
   b. Modulate the fan speed to maintain the desired static pressure.
   c. Coordinate signal with the fan motor speed controller.
3. Install a static pressure high limit safety device to de-energize the system.

| POINT DESCRIPTION | TYPES | DEVICE |
|---|---|---|
| Start/Stop | DO | Control Relay |
| AHU Status | DI | Current Sensitive Relay |
| Discharge Air Temperature | AI | Duct Thermistor |
| HW Coil Leaving Air Temperature | AI | Averaging Duct Thermistor |
| CHW Coil Leaving Air Temperature | AI | Averaging Duct Thermistor |
| CHW Valve | AO | Electronic Operator |
| Outside Air Damper | DO | Electronic Operator |
| Freeze Status | DI | Temperature Low Limit Switch |
| HW Pre Heat Valve | AO | Electronic Operator |

| POINT DESCRIPTION | TYPES | DEVICE |
|---|---|---|
| Variable Speed Motor | AO | Motor Controller |
| Static Pressure | AI | Static Pressure Sensor |
| High Static Limit | DI | High Static Limit Switch |

**3.20 ROOF MOUNTED VARIABLE AIR VOLUME OUTSIDE AIR HANDLING UNIT CONTROL (RMOAU-1)**

A. These units are furnished with a chilled water coil and a hot water heating coil in the PREHEAT position. Control shall be as follows:

1. A duct mounted sensor sensing supply air temperature shall, acting through the Direct Digital Control Panel, modulate the valve on the cooling coil and the valve on the hot water coil, in sequence, to maintain the desired discharge air temperature. Reference drawing schedule for discharge temperature.
   The air-handling unit shall be started and stopped from the BMCS System.
2. Provide a temperature low limit switch located on the discharge side of the hot water preheat coil or the entering side of the cooling coil to de-energize the air handling unit, close the outside air damper, open both heating and cooling valves 100% to enable full flow condition, start the boiler, start the hot water and chilled water pumps, and signal an alarm to the BMCS when the temperature drops below 32°F. Device shall be manual reset.
3. Open OA damper before starting unit. Provide end switch to ensure damper is in the open position in either the manual (hand) or auto position of the motor starter.
4. A space CO2 sensor, where indicated, shall through the terminal equipment controller, modulate the fan speed to maintain setpoint (adjustable).

| POINT DESCRIPTION | TYPES | DEVICE |
|---|---|---|
| Start/Stop | DO | Control Relay |
| AHU Status | DI | Current Sensitive Relay |
| CO2 Concentration | AI | CO2 Monitor |
| HW Coil Leaving Air Temperature | AI | Averaging Duct Thermistor |
| CHW Coil Leaving Air Temperature | AI | Averaging Duct Thermistor |
| CHW Valve | AO | Electronic Operator |

| POINT DESCRIPTION | TYPES | DEVICE |
|---|---|---|
| Outside Air Damper | DO | Electronic Operator |
| Freeze Status | DI | Temperature Low Limit Switch |
| HW Pre Heat Valve | AO | Electronic Operator |
| Variable Speed Motor | AO | Motor Controller |

**3.21 OUTSIDE AIR VARIABLE VOLUME TERMINAL UNITS**

A. Each unit shall consist of a pressure independent variable volume damper. The terminal unit's damper shall be interlocked with the associated OAU supply fan.
   1. The Controls Contractor shall furnish the terminal box manufacturer with a controller to be factory mounted. The controller shall display cfm, temperature, and damper position. This information shall be displayed on the terminal unit graphics page.
   2. A space CO2 sensor associated with the AHU being served by the OAVAV terminal unit shall provide input to the central BMCS controller. The BMCS shall monitor CO2 levels of the zones served by the associated air handling unit and modulate the pretreated outside air damper to maintain set point 800 PPM (adjustable). This feature shall be user selectable on the AHU graphic page.
   3. Terminal units serving VAV Air Handling Units shall not be provided with CO2 control. These unit shall modulate to maintain the scheduled OA CFM during all occupied times.

| POINT DESCRIPTION | TYPES | DEVICE |
|---|---|---|
| Primary Air | AO | Variable Volume Damper Operator |
| Discharge Air Temperature | AI | Duct Thermistor |
| CO2 Concentration | AI | CO2 Sensor |

**3.22 KITCHEN EXHAUST AND SUPPLY AIR SYSTEM (KEF-1, THROUGH KEF-5, RMUA-1, VAV-K1 THROUGH VAV-K5)**

A. This system consists of kitchen hood exhaust and variable air volume roof mounted make up air unit each with variable frequency drives. Control shall be as follows:
   1. A stainless-steel thermistor (high temp rated) mounted in exhaust collar, sensing exhaust air temperature shall, acting through the Direct Digital Control Panel, compare temperature to room temperature. Exhaust fan shall be activated when a temperature differential of 20°F (adjustable) is detected and be modulated via the VFD to 50% max speed. Upon differential temperature

increase, increment the exhaust fan speed up. The speed shall be incremented up with temperature differential until max speed setpoint is reached.

2. The kitchen variable air volume terminal units shall track exhaust and maintain schedule offset between exhaust and supply air volumes as scheduled.
3. The kitchen roof mounted make up air unit is furnished with a chilled water coil and a hot water heating coil in the PREHEAT position. Control shall be as follows:
    a. A duct mounted sensor sensing supply air temperature shall, acting through the Direct Digital Control Panel, modulate the valve on the cooling coil and the valve on the hot water coil, in sequence, to maintain the desired discharge air temperature. Reference drawing schedule for discharge temperature. The air-handling unit shall be started and stopped from the BMCS System.
    b. Provide a temperature low limit switch located on the discharge side of the hot water preheat coil or the entering side of the cooling coil to de-energize the air handling unit, close the outside air damper, open both heating and cooling valves 100% to enable full flow condition, start the boiler, start the hot water and chilled water pumps, and signal an alarm to the BMCS when the temperature drops below 32°F. Device shall be manual reset.
    c. Open OA damper before starting unit. Provide end switch to ensure damper is in the open position in either the manual (hand) or auto position of the motor starter.
4. Variable air volume control:
    a. Duct static pressure sensor shall be located in the duct at a position approximately 2/3 the distance from the fan in the longest duct run. Location is to be approved by Engineer and coordinated with Section 23 05 93.
    b. The static pressure sensors shall, through the DDC panel, accept the signal from the operating control sensor to:
        1. Transmit a signal to the supply fan motor speed controller.
        2. Modulate the fan speed to maintain the desired static pressure.
        3. Coordinate signal with the fan motor speed controller.
    c. Install a static pressure high limit safety device to de-energize the system.

B. System shall have the capability to be operated from both local switch and schedule. During unoccupied times, the system shall be set to operate at a high temperature differential to prevent unintended activation of the system.

C. Upon activation of the hood suppression system, the exhaust fan shall be activated or continue to run, the kitchen roof mounted make up air unit shall be deactivated. The activation of the fire suppression system shall be sent to activate the shunt trip breaker.

| POINT DESCRIPTION | TYPES | DEVICE |
|---|---|---|
| Exhaust Fan Start/Stop | DO | Control Relay |

| POINT DESCRIPTION | TYPES | DEVICE |
|---|---|---|
| Exhaust Fan Status | DI | Current Sensitive Relay |
| Exhaust Fan Variable Speed Motor | AO | Motor Controller |
| RMUA Fan Start/Stop | DO | Control Relay |
| RMUA Status | DI | Current Sensitive Relay |
| RMUA Fan Variable Speed Motor | AO | Motor Controller |
| Exhaust Temperature | AI | S.S. High Temp. Duct Thermistor |
| Discharge Air Temperature | AI | Duct Thermistor |
| HW Coil Leaving Air Temperature | AI | Averaging Duct Thermistor |
| CHW Coil Leaving Air Temperature | AI | Averaging Duct Thermistor |
| CHW Valve | AO | Electronic Operator |
| Outside Air Damper | DO | Electronic Operator |
| Freeze Status | DI | Temperature Low Limit Switch |
| HW Pre Heat Valve | AO | Electronic Operator |
| Static Pressure | AI | Static Pressure Sensor |
| High Static Limit | DI | High Static Limit Switch |

**3.23 START-UP AND POINT VERIFICATION**

A. Final startup and point verification shall include the following information. **All work described in this section shall occur at initial installation and at 11-month warranty walk.**
   1. Field panel checkout:
      a. Verify enclosure is not mounted on vibrating surface.
      b. Verify class I and class II wiring is separated within enclosure.
      c. Check for shorts/grounds/induced voltages/proper voltages.
      d. Verify proper point terminations in accordance with as-builts.
      e. Verify that all modules are in proper place and addressed.
      f. Verify proper power voltage.
      g. Load database and programming.
      h. Startup the panel.
      i. Point and device checkout.
   2. Analog input point checkout:

a. Verify the correct wiring terminations per the design documentation package, at the field panel. Verify that all wiring and terminations are neat and dressed.
b. Verify the point address by checking that the analog input instrument is wired to the correct piece of field equipment. Do this by altering the environment at the sensing element or by disconnecting one of the wires at the sensor, and verifying that the reading at the field panel has reacted to this change.
c. Verify the point database to be correct, (i.e., alarmability, alarm limits, slope/intercept, engineering units, etc.). Verify that the correct change of value (COV) limit has been defined.
d. Verify the sensor has the correct range and input signal. (i.e., 20-120°F, 4 - 20 ma). Verify that the device is mounted in the correct location and is wired and installed correctly per the design documentation package.
e. Set-up and/or calibrate any associated equipment (i.e., panel LCD meters, loop isolators, etc.). Verify that these auxiliary devices are mounted in the correct location and are wired and installed correctly per the design documentation package.
f. Verify the correct reading at the field panel using appropriate MMI devices. Verify that any associated LCD panel meters indicate the correct measured value.

3. Digital input point checkout:
   a. Verify the device is correctly wired and terminated as shown in the design documentation package. Verify that all wiring and terminations are neat and properly secured.
   b. Verify the point address by verifying that the digital input is correctly terminated at the controlled piece of equipment.
   c. Verify the point database is correct (i.e., point name, address, alarmability, etc.).
   d. Set-up and/or calibrate the associated equipment, i.e. smoke detector, high/low temp detector, high/low static switch, flow switch, end switch, current relay, pressure switch, etc. is mounted in the correct location, and is wired and installed correctly per the control system installation drawings.
   e. With the controlled equipment running or energized as described in the digital output checkout procedures, verify the correct operation of the digital input point and associated equipment by putting the digital input monitored equipment into its two states. Verify that the proof or status point indicates the correct value at the operator's terminal and that the status led is giving the proper indication in each mode of operation (on/off).
4. Digital output point checkout:
   a. Verify that device is correctly wired and terminated as shown in the design documentation package.
   b. Verify that the correct voltage is utilized in the circuit.
   c. Verify the point database to be correct (i.e. point name, address, etc.).
   d. Check and verify that the end device responds appropriately to the digital output(s).
   e. After verifying the set-up and operation of any associated digital input/proof points, check and verify correct operation of the logical point and associated equipment by commanding the point to all possible states (i.e. off, on, fast, slow, auto, etc.). Verify that the defined proof delay is adequate for all modes of operation.

f. If any interlocked equipment exists that has independent hand-off-auto or auxiliary control wiring, verify correct operation of same. Also check that any interlocked equipment such as EP switches for damper operation or exhaust and return fans are wired correctly and operate correctly.
g. Verify that the controlled piece or pieces of equipment cannot be caused to change state via the digital output if an associated hand-off-auto switch is in the hand/on or hand/off mode of operation, unless specified as a fireman's override point etc.

5. Analog output point checkout:
   a. Verify the correct wiring or piping terminations per the design documentation package, at the field panel. Verify that all wiring and piping terminations are neat and dressed.
   b. Insure that the correct output device(s) are installed per the Control System Installation Drawings. (i.e., I/P or P/I transducers, transformers, power supply, etc.). Verify that these devices are installed, wired and piped correctly. Verify that any configuration jumpers are in the proper settings for the required application. Verify related transformers are fused in accordance with installation drawings.
   c. Verify the point database to be correct. Verify that the correct COV limit has been defined.
   d. Verify the point address by checking that the analog output is wired and/or piped to the correct output transducer and/or equipment.
   e. Verify that the controlled device is calibrated (i.e., 3-8PSI valve, 8-13 PSI damper motor, 4-20 ma variable frequency drive, etc.) and is in the correct location, and is wired or piped and installed correctly per the design documentation package. If the controlled device is not calibrated, then a three-point (high, low and mid-point) calibration procedure must take place. Verify proper operation of the end device. When calibration has been verified, ensure that installation drawings, point database, and PPCL have been updated.
   f. Set-up and or calibrate any associated equipment, (i.e., panel LCD meters, loop isolators, pneumatic gauges, etc.). Also verify that these auxiliary devices are mounted in the correct location, and are wired or piped and installed correctly per the design documentation package.
   g. After verifying the set-up and operation of any associated equipment check for the correct operation of the logical point and associated equipment by commanding the analog output to the top and bottom of its range. Verify that the control device(s) responded appropriately as indicated by the design documentation package. Check to insure that all network terminals, host console devices, etc. can also command these outputs.
   h. Check that all pneumatic gauges, pilot positioners and LCD panel meters indicate the correct values.
6. Terminal equipment controller checkout:
   a. Load program database
   b. Enable programs
   c. Verify sequence of operations
7. Programming checkout:
   a. Provide checkout for each system and sequence of operation.
   b. The following are sample sequence of operations tests. The intent of these procedures is to provide a plan of action to verify system operations via block checks of the project specific sequence of

operations. The procedures may be used in this format, or one procedure to a page should more detail be required. The procedures outlined below should be verified for accuracy, and may be modified to meet your specific requirements.

c. Description of Test: AHU Alarm Checkout. Verify AHU-1 discharge air temperature alarming is operational and is received at the designated terminal.

d. Input to Trigger Test: Change discharge temperature high alarm limit through software to a value below the current discharge temperature (discharge temperature - 10°F).

e. Expected Outcome: A high temperature alarm will be received per the Alarm Definition Report at its designated terminal.

f. Provide signoff sheet with indication for test Pass, Fail, Date of test and Initials for signoff.

8. Workstation checkout:
   a. Verify the operation of all trunk interface equipment.
   b. Verify all workstation software, including options, based upon the installation instructions for the PC.
   c. Perform software backup (site, options, etc.)
   d. Complete workstation configuration report for owner signoff.
   e. Provide verification that all graphics have been created, as required by project bid documents.

## 3.24 TESTING AND ACCEPTANCE

A. General:
   1. After completion of installation and start-up procedures, commence the specified 3-phase verification and testing sequence leading to final acceptance.
      a. Follow in the order specified.
      b. Each testing phase shall be satisfactorily completed before entering the next phase.
   2. Prior to entering each phase of the sequence, submit for approval, a written agenda describing in detail the procedure to be followed to meet the requirements for each specified verification, test or demonstration.
   3. Submit for approval, a sample of the form on which the test will be reported.
      a. Identify project.
      b. Provide a list of all points, arrange in numerical order of point addresses.
         1) Show point descriptor and location of each.
         2) Indicate DDC panel that processes each point.
         3) Use the list as a basis for the specified report form.
      c. Signatures of participants and observers.
      d. Results.
      e. Description of adjustment or corrections of points in error.
      f. Date.
   4. Provide schedule of tests. Estimate dates of significant events.
   5. Test, calibrate and adjust each point in the system as specified.
   6. Provide documentation of all tests and verifications as specified.
   7. Provide trend reports indicating proper control of all points for an extended period of time.

B. Phase 1 - Testing, Calibrating, and Adjusting:
   1. Operate each analog point in the entire system.
      a. At a point in the upper quarter of its range.
      b. At a point in the lower quarter of its range.
      c. At its operating point.
   2. Provide personnel and diagnostic instruments at both the central and remote locations.
   3. Provide testing stimulants for alarms.
   4. Use digital meters of double the accuracy of the instruments being calibrated.
   5. Provide an approved test device for simulating high and low temperatures.
   6. When the function is performed, read values at the central control and observe the actual function at the field instrument.
   7. Exercise each binary point and observe indication at console and simultaneously observe operation in the field.
   8. Submit an operation report for each point in the system, in approved format, and describe any corrective or adjusting action taken.
   9. Test all power transducers with a Dranetz Power Analyzer.

C. Phase 2 - Equipment and Point Verification:
   1. Verify calibration or function of each point.
      a. Verify analog points at operating value.
      b. Record on specified form.
      c. Make approved adjustments to out of tolerance points.
         1) Identify these points for ready reference.
   2. After verification procedure in completed:
      a. Verify corrected points.
      b. Record on specified form.
      c. Points requiring correction.
         1) Replace sensor or actuator if electrical measurements indicated components are out of specified tolerance.

D. Phase 3 - Software Verification:
   1. Submit agenda and report format for software demonstrations.
   2. Demonstrate to the Owner and the Engineer that all software programs and automatic control sequences function as specified.
   3. Demonstrate compliance with response time specifications.
      a. Simulate normal heavy load conditions.
      b. Initiate at least ten successive occurrences on normal heavy load conditions as specified, and measure response time of typical alarms and status changes.
   4. Provide written documentation of demonstration, signed by representatives of the Contractor and Engineer.

E. Provide the following reports to Engineer at final completion of all Testing:
   1. List of all points.
   2. List of all points currently in alarm.

3. List of all disabled points.
4. List of all points in over-ride status.
5. List of all points currently locked out.
6. List of user accounts and access levels.
7. List all weekly schedules.
8. List of holiday programming schedules.
9. List of limits and deadbands.
10. System diagnostics reports including, list of DDC panels on line and communicating, status of all DDC terminal units device points.
11. List of programs.
12. Provide trend data reports to ensure proper operation and sequence control of BMCS.

F. Substantial Completion of the BMCS will not occur until completion and acceptance of all testing and acceptance procedures.

**3.25 TRAINING**

A. The contractor shall provide factory-trained instructor to give full instruction to designated personnel in the operation of the system installed. Instructors shall be thoroughly familiar with all aspects of the subject matter they are to teach. The contractor shall provide all students with a student binder containing product specific training modules for the system installed. All training shall be held during normal working hours of 8:00 am to 4:30 PM weekdays.

B. Provide 40 hours of training for Owner's designated operating personnel. Training shall include:
Explanation of drawings, operations and maintenance manuals
Walk-through of the job to locate control components
Operator workstation and peripherals
DDC controller and ASC operation/function
Operator control functions including graphic generation and field panel programming
Operation of portable operator's terminal
Explanation of adjustment, calibration and replacement procedures
Student binder with training modules

C. Since the Owner may require personnel to have more comprehensive understanding of the hardware and software, additional training must be available from the Contractor.

**3.26 PROJECT MANAGEMENT**

A. Provide a designated project manager who will be responsible for the following:
1. Construct and maintain project schedule.
2. Authorized to accept and execute orders or instructions from General Contractor, Owner / Architect & Engineer.
3. Attend project meetings as necessary to avoid conflict and delays.
4. Make necessary field decisions relating to this section.
5. Coordination / Single point contact.
6. Have Internet access for project management.

**END OF SECTION 23 90 33**

# SECTION 23 09 34 - COORDINATION OF BUILDING MANAGEMENT AND CONTROL SYSTEM

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. The Building Management and control System for the facility shall be furnished and installed under a separate contract. The items listed below shall be furnished and/or installed by this contractor.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

A. Products provided by the Building Management and Control System (BMCS) Contractor.
   1. Control Valves
   2. Dampers
   3. Wells for sensors installed in piping system
   4. Flow Meters

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate with the Building Management and Control System (BMCS) Contractor.
   1. Provide project-scheduling information to the BMCS Contractor to allow ample time for purchase of equipment and devices.
   2. Schedule periodic project meetings to review progress and coordination issues.
   3. Submit a written report, to the Architect/Engineer, on a monthly basis stating status of coordination effort.

B. The BMCS contractor will submit shop drawings to this contractor for review and coordination processing.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. This Contractor will be responsible for the following:
   1. Installation of control valves for HVAC equipment.
   2. Installation of dampers for HVAC equipment.
   3. Installation of temperature sensor wells in piping.
   4. Installation of pressure taps in piping system.
   5. Installation of flow meter taps in piping system.

B. Install the above material under the direction of the Building Management and Control System (BMCS) Contractor.

**END OF SECTION 23 09 34**

# SECTION 23 20 00 - HVAC PIPE AND PIPE FITTINGS – GENERAL

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install pipe and pipe fittings for piping systems specified in Division 23 - Mechanical.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 23 Mechanical:
   1. Earthwork.
   2. Valves, Strainers and Vents.
   3. Vibration Isolation.
   4. Insulation.
   5. Other Piping Sections

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. The particular type of pipe and fittings for each system is specified in the individual sections.

### 2.2 JOINTS

A. Make screwed joints using machine cut USASI taper pipe threads. Apply a suitable joint compound to the male threads only. Ream the pipe to full inside diameter after cutting. All-thread nipples are not permitted.

B. Dissimilar Metals. Make joints between copper and steel pipe and equipment using insulating unions or couplings such as Crane Company #1259; EPCO as manufactured by EPCO Sales, Inc.; or an approved equal.

C. Solder joints.
   1. Prior to making joints, cut pipe square and ream to full inside diameter. Clean exterior of pipe and socket. Apply a thin coat of suitable fluxing compound to both pipe and socket, and fit parts together immediately.
   2. Heat assembled joint only as required to cause the solder to flow. Run the joint full, slightly beaded on the outside, and wipe to remove excess solder.
   3. Use silver brazing alloy or Sil-Fos on refrigerant piping and on underground piping. Use lead free solder on all other copper piping.

D. Make welded joints as recommended by the standards of the American Welding Society. Ensure complete penetration of deposited metal with base metal. Provide filler metal suitable for use with base metal. Keep inside of fittings free from globules of weld

metal. The use of mitered joints is not approved.

E. Flanged.
1. Prior to installation of bolts, center and align flanged joints to prevent mechanical pre-stressing of flanges, pipe or equipment. Align bolt holes to straddle the vertical, horizontal or north-south centerline. Do not exceed 3/64" per foot inclination of the flange face from true alignment.
2. Use flat-face companion flanges only with flat-faced fittings, valves or equipment. Otherwise, use raised-face flanges.
3. Install gaskets suitable for the intended service and factory cut to proper dimensions. Secure with manufacturers recommended gasket cement.
4. Use ANSI nuts and bolts, galvanized or black to match flange material. Use ANSI 316 stainless steel nuts and bolts underground. Tighten bolts progressively to prevent unbalanced stress. Draw bolts tight to ensure proper seating of gaskets.
5. Use carbon steel flanges conforming to ANSI B16.5 with pipe materials conforming to ASTM A 105 Grade II or ASTM A 108, Grade II, ASTM A 53, Grade B. Use slip-on type flanges on pipe only. Use welding neck type flanges on all fittings. Weld slip-on flanges inside and outside.
6. Keep flange covers on equipment while fabricating piping. Remove when ready to install in system.

F. Mechanical Joints: Provide a stuffing box type mechanical joint adapted to use gasket, cast iron gland and bolts. Coat bolts with bitumastic enamel. Use joint parts similar in design to one of the following:
1. Doublex Simplex Joint manufactured by the American Cast Iron Pipe Company, Birmingham, Alabama.
2. U.S. joints manufactured by the United States Pipe and Foundry Company, Burlington, New Jersey.
3. Boltite Joint manufactured by the McWane Cast Iron Pipe Company, Birmingham, Alabama.
4. Flexlamp manufactured by the National Cast Iron Pipe Company, Birmingham, Alabama.

## 2.3 UNIONS

A. Use 150 lb. standard (300 lb. WOG) malleable iron, ground joint unions with bronze seat. Provide flanged joints on piping 2-1/2" and larger.
1. Where pipe material of different types join, use a dielectric union. Union shall be threaded, solder or as required for its intended use.

## 2.4 BRANCH CONNECTIONS

A. Pipe 2" and Smaller: For threaded piping, use straight size reducing tee. When branch is smaller than header, a nipple and reducing coupling or swagged nipple may be used.

B. 2-1/2" through 36": For welding piping, when branch size is the same as header size, use welding tee. For threaded branch connections, use 3000 lb. full coupling or Thread-o-let welded to header.

## 2.5 GASKETS

A. High Temperature Piping: Provide 1/16" thick ring gaskets of aramid reinforced SBR such as Garlock #3200 or 3400 or equal by Advanced Products and Systems.

B. Other Piping: Provide ring rubber gaskets, Garlock #7992 or equal by Advanced Products and Systems. Use 1/8" thick cloth reinforced neoprene gaskets. For smaller than 6", use 1/16" thick gasket.

## 2.6 FLOORS AND CEILING PLATES

A. Provide chrome-plated floor and ceiling plates around pipes exposed to view when passing through walls, floors, partitions, or ceilings in finished areas; size plates to fit pipe or insulation and lock in place.

## 2.7 DOMESTIC MANUFACTURE

A. All piping material, pipe and pipe fittings shall be manufactured in the United States of America.

# PART 3 – EXECUTION

## 3.1 PIPE FABRICATION AND INSTALLATION

A. Make piping layout and installation in the most advantageous manner possible with respect to headroom, valve access, opening and equipment clearance, and clearance for other work. Give particular attention to piping in the vicinity of equipment. Preserve the required minimum access clearances to various equipment parts, as recommended by the equipment manufactured, for maintenance.

B. Cut all pipes to measurement determined at the site. After cutting pipe, remove burrs by reaming. Bevel plain ends of ferrous pipe.

C. Install piping neatly, free from unnecessary traps and pockets. Work into place without springing or forcing. Use fittings to make changes in direction. Field bending and mitering is prohibited. Make connections to equipment using flanged joints, unions or couplings. Make reducing connections with reducing fittings only.

D. Install piping without tapping out of the bottom of pipe.

## 3.2 WELD

A. Weld and fabricate piping in accordance with ANSI Standard B31.1, latest edition, Code for Pressure Piping.

B. Align piping and equipment so that no part is offset more than 1/16". Set fittings and

joints square and true, and preserve alignment during welding operation. Use of alignment rods inside pipe is prohibited.

C. Do not permit any weld to project within the pipe so as to restrict flows. Tack welds, if used, must be of the same material and made by the same procedure as the completed weld. Otherwise, remove tack welds during welding operation.

D. Do not split, bend, flatten or otherwise damage piping before, during or after installation.

E. Remove dirt, scale and other foreign matter from inside piping before tying into existing piping sections, fittings, valves or equipment.

F. Bevel ends of ferrous pipe.

**3.3 OFFSETS AND FITTINGS**

A. Due to the small scale of drawings, the indication of offsets and fittings is not possible. Investigate the structural and finish conditions affecting the work and take steps required to meet these conditions.

B. Install pipe close to walls, ceilings and columns so pipe will occupy minimum space. Provide proper spacing for insulation coverings, removal of pipe, special clearances, and offsets and fittings.

**3.4 SECURING AND SUPPORTING**

A. Support piping to maintain line and grade, with provision for expansion and contraction. Use approved clevis-type or trapeze-type hangers connected to structural members of the building. Single pipe runs to be supported by approved clevis type hangers. Multiple pipe runs to be supported by approved trapeze type hangers. Do not support piping from other piping or structural joist bridging. Review structural drawings for additional information.

B. Provide supports both sides and within 12” of each horizontal elbow for pipe 6" and larger.

C. Support vertical risers with steel strap pipe clamps of approved design and size, supported at each floor. Support piping assemblies in chases so they are rigid and self-supported before the chase is closed. Provide structural support for piping penetrating chase walls to fixtures. On chilled water pipe supports shall be outside the insulation.

D. Where insulation occurs, design hangers to protect insulation from damage. Pipe saddles and insulation shields, where required, are specified in the appropriate insulation section and are sized in accordance with the schedule on the drawings.

E. Install trapeze hangers, properly sized, to support the intended load without distortion. Use hangers with 1-1/2” minimum vertical adjustment.

F. Use electro-galvanized or zinc plated beam clamps if acceptable to the structural engineer, threaded rods, nuts, washers and hangers. All hanger rods shall be trimmed neatly so that no more than 1 inch of excess hanger rod protrudes beyond the hanger nut. Use only on beams as directed by the Structural Engineer.

G. At outdoor locations, all supports, brackets and structural members shall be hot-dipped galvanized.

H. Provide hangers within 3' of pipe length from all coil connections.

I. Support spacing: As recommended by the project structural engineer and support manufacturer, but not more than listed below. Not to exceed spacing requirements of smallest pipe.

| Pipe Size | Copper & Steel Max. Support Spacing, Ft. | Cast Iron Max. Support Spacing, Ft. | Minimum Rod Diameter, Inches |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1" & smaller | 6 | 5 | 3/8 |
| 1-1/4" & 1-1/2" | 8 | 5 | 3/8 |
| 2" | 10 | 5 | 3/8 |
| 3" | 10 | 5 | 1/2 |
| 4" & 5" | 10 | 5 | 5/8 |
| 6" and above | 10 | | 3/4 |

**3.5 PIPE SUPPORTS**

A. Provide P1001 or P 5000 Unistrut metal framing members and appurtenances for pipe support. Hot-dip galvanized members and appurtenances when located outside. Sagging of pipes or supports is not acceptable.

B. Adjustable clevis hangers shall be used for single pipe supports; Anvil Fig. 260. When oversized clevis is used, a nipple shall be placed over the clevis bolt as a spacer to assure that the lower U-strap will not move in on the bolt. Provide adjustable clevis with a nut / washer above and below the hanger on the support rod. Ring type clevis hangers are not acceptable.

C. Provide Anvil Figure 45 galvanized or primed and painted channel assembly for trapeze hangers.

**3.6 PIPE SUPPORTS ON ROOF**

A. Support condensate drain pipe on roof with Portable Pipe Hanger Model PP-10 with roller and fully adjustable height throughout pipe run. Base material shall be high density / high impact polypropylene with UV inhibitors and anti-oxidants. Provide with hot dip galvanized rod finish and framing. Nuts and washers shall be hot dip galvanized.

**3.7 ANCHORS**

A. Provide anchors as required. Use pipe anchors consisting of heavy steel collars with lugs and bolts for clamping to pipe and attaching anchor braces. Install anchor braces in the most effective manner to secure desired results. Do not install supports, anchors or similar devices where they will damage construction during installation or because of the weight or the expansion of the pipe. When possible, install sleeves in structural concrete prior to pouring of concrete.

**3.8 FLOOR PENETRATIONS**

A. At locations where pipe passes through floors, provide watertight concrete curb around penetration.

**3.9 PIPE SLEEVES**

A. Sleeves through masonry and concrete construction:
   1. Fabricate sleeves of Schedule 40 galvanized steel pipe.
   2. Size sleeve large enough to allow for movement due to expansion and to provide continuous insulation.

B. Sleeves through gypsum wall construction.
   1. Fabricate sleeves of 16 gauge galvanized sheet metal.

C. Sleeves through elevated slab construction.
   1. Fabricate sleeves of Schedule 40 galvanized steel pipe with welded center flange in floor.

D. Extend each sleeve through the floor or wall. Cut the sleeve flush with each wall surface. Sleeves through floors shall extend 2” above floor lines for waterproofing purposes. Slab on grade floors shall not be sleeved except where penetrating waterproofing membrane or insect control is required.

E. Caulk sleeves water and air tight. Seal annular space between pipes and sleeves with mastic compound to make the space water and air tight.

F. For sleeves below grades in outside walls, provide Thunderline Link-Seal or Advance Product and System Interlynx, with 316 stainless steel nuts and bolts, with cast iron pressure plate.

G. Provide chrome plated escutcheon plates on pipes passing through walls, floors or ceilings exposed to view. At exterior walls, stainless steel sheet metal is to be used.

H. For sleeves through fire and smoke rated walls, seal with a UL through-penetration firestop, rated to maintain the integrity of the time rated construction. Install in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Comply with UL and NFPA standards for the installation of firestops. Refer to Architectural drawings for all fire and smoke rated partitions, walls, floors, etc.

## 3.10 ISOLATION VALVES

A. Provide piping systems with line size shutoff valves located at the risers, at main branch connections to mains for equipment, to isolate central plant, and at other locations.

## 3.11 DRAIN VALVES

A. Install drain valves at low points of water piping systems so that these systems can be entirely drained. Install a line size drain valve for pipes smaller than 2" unless indicated otherwise. For pipes 2-1/2" and larger, provide 2" drain valves unless indicated otherwise. Drain valves shall be plugged when not in use and at completion.

## 3.12 CLEANING OF PIPING SYSTEMS

A. General cleaning of piping systems. Purge pipe of construction debris and contamination before placing the systems in service. Provide and install temporary connections as required to clean, purge and circulate. Flush the chilled and hot water systems utilizing the filter feeders.

B. Install temporary strainers at the inlet of pumps and other equipment as necessary where permanent strainers are not indicated. Keep strainers in service until the equipment has been tested, then remove either entire strainer or straining element only. Fit strainers with a line size blow down ball valve and pipe to nearest drain. Blow down strainers, remove and clean as frequently as necessary.

C. Phase One: Initial flushing of system. Remove loose dirt, mill scale, weld beads, rust and other deleterious substances without damage to system components. Open valves, drains, vents and strainers at all system levels during flushing procedures. Flush until “potable water clear” and particles larger than 5 microns are removed.

D. Connect dead-end supply and return headers, even if not shown on the drawings, and provide terminal drains in bottom of pipe end caps or blind flanges.

E. Dispose of water in approved manner.

F. Phase Two: Cleaning of Piping Systems. Remove, without chemical or mechanical damage to any system component, adherent dirt (organic soil), oil, grease, (hydrocarbons), welding and soldering flux, mill varnish, piping compounds, rust (iron oxide) and other deleterious substances not removed by initial flushing. Chemical shall be equal to Nalco 2578 prepping compound. Insert anti-foam compound as necessary. Circulate for 48 hours or as recommended by the manufacture. Dispose of water in approved manner. Flush system and replace with clean water. Verify compatibility of chemicals used with existing chemical treatment program on remodel projects.

G. Phase Three: Final flushing and rinsing: Flush and rinse until “potable water clear” and particles larger than 5 microns are removed. Operate valves to dislodge any debris in valve body. Dispose of water in approved manner.

H. Submit status reports upon completion of each phase of work on each system.

I. Special requirements, if any, are specified in the sections on each type of piping or in the section on Water Treatment Systems.

**3.13 TESTING**

A. Test piping after installation with water hydrostatic pressure of 1-1/2 times operating pressure (150 psig minimum) and carefully check for leaks. Repair leaks and retest system until proven watertight.

B. Do not insulate or conceal piping systems until tests are satisfactorily complete.

C. If any leaks or other defects are observed, suspend the test and correct the condition at once. Repeat testing until leaks are eliminated and the full test period is achieved.

D. The satisfactory completion of testing does not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for ultimate proper and satisfactory operation of piping systems and their accessories.

**3.14 PIPE MARKERS**

A. Identify interior exposed piping and piping in accessible chases or plenums with Opti-Code Brady Pressure Sensitive Adhesive Pipe Markers, consisting of pipe marker and direction of flow arrow tape. Clean pipe prior to installation. Background colors of markers, arrows and tape for each type of system shall be the same. Meet ANSI/OSHA standards and clearly identify each system. Provide minimum 2-1/4-inch letters through 4-inch pipe and 4-inch letters for 5-inch pipe and larger.

B. Identify exterior and mechanical room piping with Snap Around pipe markers through 4-inch pipe and Strap Around markers 5-inch pipe and larger. Pipe markers consisting of pipe marker and direction of flow arrow tape; background colors of markers, arrows and type for each type of system shall be the same. Meet ANSI / OSHA standards and clearly identify each system. Provide minimum 2-1/4-inch letters through 4-inch pipe and 4-inch letters for 5-inch pipe and larger.

C. Install identification in the following locations:
   1. both sides of penetrations through walls, floors and ceilings.
   2. Close to valves or flanges.
   3. Intervals on straight pipe runs not to exceed 50 feet
   4. Apply marker where view is obstructed.

D. Pipe markers shall meet or exceed the specifications of the ASME A13.1 “Scheme for Identification of Piping Systems”.

**END OF SECTION 23 20 20**

# SECTION 23 21 13 - HOT WATER AND CHILLED WATER PIPING, VALVES AND APPURTENANCES

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install heating water and chilled water piping, valves and appurtenances, including fittings and strainers. Domestic hot water piping is specified in the Domestic Water Piping and Appurtenances section.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 23 Mechanical:
   1. Pipe and Pipe Fittings - General
   2. Valves, Strainers and Vents
   3. Vibration Isolation
   4. Insulation

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. For pipe 2" and less in diameter, provide pipe conforming to ASTM A 53, Grade A or B, or ASTM A106 standard weight seamless, or electric-resistance welded black steel pipe. Furnish 150 lb. screwed malleable iron fittings conforming to ANSI B 16.3 for chilled water. Provide fittings conforming to ANSI B 16.4 for hot water.

B. For pipe 2-1/2" in diameter and larger, provide pipe meeting the requirements of ASTM A 53, Grade A or B, or ASTM A 106 standard weight seamless, or electric-resistance welded black steel pipe with standard weight seamless steel welded fittings, satisfying ASTM A 234, Grade WPA or WPB, ANSI B16.9.

### 2.2 VALVES

A. Refer to Section 23 05 23.

B. Refer to Building Management and Control System.

### 2.3 WATER SPECIALTIES

A. Pressurized Expansion Tanks shall be precharged steel tank with a replaceable heavy duty Butyl rubber bladder. The tank shall have a 1-1/2" system connection, drain, and a standard tire valve to facilitate on-site charging of the tank. The tank shall be fitted with lifting rings and a floor mounting skirt for vertical installation. The tank must be constructed in accordance with Section VIII of ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code and stamped 125 PSI working pressure.
   1. Acceptable manufacturers: Bell & Gossett, Taco, Wessels, John Wood Company, and Wheatley.

B. Air Separators shall be centrifugal type. The inlet and outlet connections shall be the same as adjoining pipe. Vessel shell diameter is to be three times the nominal inlet/outlet pipe diameter. The unit shall have an internal stainless steel air collector tube with perforations and 63% open area designed to direct accumulated air to the compression tank via a vent connection at top of unit. The air separator must be designed, constructed and stamped for 125 psig @ 350°F in accordance with Section VIII, Division 1 of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, and registered with the National Board of Boiler and Pressure Vessel Inspectors. The air separator(s) shall be painted with one shop coat of light gray air dry enamel. A Manufacturer's Data Report for Pressure Vessels, Form U-1 as required by the provisions of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code shall be furnished for each air separator upon request.
   1. Acceptable manufacturers: Bell & Gossett, Armstrong, Taco, John Wood Company, and Wheatley.

C. Automatic Air vents shall be float actuated high capacity air vent designed to purge free air from the system and provide shutoff at pressures up to 150 psig at a maximum temperature of 250 degrees F. The design of the high capacity air vent shall prevent air from entering the system if system pressure should drop below atmospheric pressure. The high capacity air vent shall purge free air at pressures up to 150 psig during normal system operation. The high capacity air vent shall be constructed of cast iron and fitted with components of stainless steel, brass, and EPDM.
   1. Acceptable Manufacturers: Bell & Gossett, Armstrong, Taco, and Wheatley.

D. Pressure Reducing Valves shall be diaphragm operated with brass body, low inlet pressure check valve and inlet strainer. The strainer shall be easily removed without system shutdown. The valve seat, strainer, and stem must be removable and of non-corrosive material.
   1. Acceptable Manufacturers: Bell & Gossett, Armstrong, Taco, and Wheatley.

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 TESTING**

A. Test all piping systems to assure they are absolutely leak free.

B. Apply a hydraulic pressure 1-1/2 times the operating pressure, 150 psig minimum, and check for leaks. Maintain test for a minimum of 24 hours. The piping system must remain absolutely tight during this period. The satisfactory completion of any test or series of tests will not relieve the contractor of responsibility for ultimate proper and satisfactory operation of piping systems and their accessories. The test should be observed by the Architect / Engineer before pressure is removed and water drained.

**3.2 AIR HANDLING UNIT PIPING**

A. Provide a minimum of 12" of straight pipe at all coil piping connections.

**3.3 AIR SEPARATOR**

A. Install full size drain to nearest floor drain.

**END OF SECTION 23 21 13**

# SECTION 23 21 23 – HVAC PUMPS

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. General characteristics for pumps specified in Division 23 - Mechanical.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

Requirements for pumps are specified in other sections of Division 23 - Mechanical, including the following:

A. Division 23 Mechanical - Electrical Provisions of Mechanical Work.

### 1.3 PUMP SELECTION

A. Select pumps conservatively for scheduled conditions. Furnish pumps that have reasonably high efficiencies, with peak efficiency at or near rated conditions. Select pumps that will operate stably at 15' suction lift despite substantial reduction in head or substantial increase in delivery.

B. If the pumps proposed are not considered suitable, submit manufacturer's data on other pumps, for review.

C. Scheduled design flow, design head, pump efficiency, and motor horsepower are the minimum acceptable.

D. The pump curve shall rise continuously from maximum flow to cut-off.

E. Shut-off head approximately 10 percent greater than design head, unless otherwise indicated in pump schedules.

F. Pump brake horsepower shall not exceed the motor horsepower rating over the entire operating range from shut-off to run-out.

G. Select the pump for operation at or near peak efficiency.

H. Cavitation-free at all points on the curve.

I. Impeller diameter shall not exceed 90 percent of the maximum published diameter.

J. Pumps shall be suitable for parallel operation. Where pumps are operated in parallel, individual pumps shall be capable of stable operation with only one pump operating in the system. Submit pump curves with single and multiple pumps operating on system curve for approval.

### 1.4 PUMP SIZE AND TYPE

A. Provide motor-driven pumps of the type and speed scheduled. Select pumps that are not overloaded throughout the entire range of pump operation. Provide pump connection sizes as indicated.

B. The head capacities indicated in the schedules are listed for bidding purposes only. Calculate the operating head at each pump; take into consideration the actual routing of the various lines, pressure drops in heat exchangers and coils, exact lengths of pipe, fittings, etc. Submit these calculations, together with copies of manufacturer's performance curves, as shop drawings on each pump. Clearly mark the curves for each pump to indicate the diameter of the impeller and the selection point.

## 1.5 CERTIFIED DATA

A. Submit factory certified pump curves showing pump performance characteristics with pump and system operating points plotted. Curves shall include as a minimum, flow (gallons per minute), head (feet of water), all available impeller diameters (inches), efficiency (percent), net positive suction head required (feet of water), brake horsepower, pump size and pump model. When multiple pumps are operating in parallel, show pump curves for one pump running, two pumps running, and so on. Show pump curves with system curve plotted.

# PART 2 – PRODUCTS

## 2.1 HORIZONTAL PUMPS

A. Pump Construction:
   1. Cast iron, designed for 175 psi working pressure
   2. Bronze case wear rings
   3. Grease lubricated ball bearings selected for an average life of 200,000 hours; pressure grease fittings
   4. Flexible coupled
   5. Hot Dipped galvanized drip-rim structural steel base extending past the pump flanges allowing all condensation to be accumulated. Galvanized integral drain pan.
   6. Coupling shall be high torque rated with EPDM and Neoprene construction by Sure-Flex
   7. Falk all-metal center dropout spacer coupling
   8. Totally enclosed metal or high-impact polyethylene plastic (Orange Peel) coupling guard per ANSI B15.1, Section 8 and OSHA 1910.219
   9. Suction and discharge flange gauge ports
   10. Fully enclosed bronze impeller keyed to the shaft
   11. 304 Stainless steel shaft minimum

B. End suction pump volute with integrally cast pedestal support foot for back pullout to allow pump to be serviced without disturbing the system piping. Pumps utilizing pedestal mounted bearing frames in lieu of volute will not be accepted.

C. Bearings:
   1. Conform to Anti-Friction Bearing Manufacturers Association (AFBMA) Standards
   2. Ball or roller bearing pillow block type
   3. Self-aligning
   4. AFBMA L50 rating of 200,000 hours

D. Horizontal or vertical split case pumps: Double row grease lubricated ball bearing each side.

E. Provide each pump with an internally flushed mechanical seal. If external flush line is required, provide sediment filter for each line.
   1. Use seal materials suitable for the pumped liquid
   2. Renewable bronze or stainless shaft sleeve

F. Provide each pump with a stuffing box with packing:
   1. Hardened 440C stainless steel renewable shaft sleeve
   2. Bronze gland and stainless steel gland bolts
   3. Oil graphite packing

G. Paint entire unit with two coats of machinery enamel after completion of installation.

H. Pump Motor:
   1. Premium efficiency
   2. Totally enclosed fan cooled
   3. Cast iron frame and end plate
   4. Forge steel lifting eye
   5. Over sized conduit box with ground lug
   6. So sized with relation to the pump impeller that the brake horsepower requirements will not overload the motor at any point on the pump curve
   7. Designed for Variable Frequency Drive Application
   8. Provide with factory installed shaft grounding rings by AEGIS.
   9. Minimum Efficiency

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3 hp | 1800 rpm | 89.5% |
| 5 hp | 1800 rpm | 90.2% |
| 7.5 hp | 1800 rpm | 91.7% |
| 10 hp | 1800 rpm | 91.7% |
| 15 hp | 1800 rpm | 92.4% |
| 20 hp | 1800 rpm | 93% |
| 25 hp | 1800 rpm | 93.6% |
| 30 hp | 1800 rpm | 94.1% |
| 40 hp | 1800 rpm | 94.5% |
| 50 hp | 1800 rpm | 94.5% |
| 60 hp | 1800 rpm | 95% |
| 75 hp+ | 1800 rpm | 95.4% |

I. Data plates:
   1. Provide the pump with a nameplate constructed of 300 series stainless steel securely fastened to pump casing with stainless steel pins.
   2. Locate the nameplate for easy visibility.
   3. Clearly stamp the rating conditions and other data below, as a minimum, on the nameplate.
      a. Manufacturer, address, telephone number
      b. Pump model number
      c. Pump serial number
      d. Size (including impeller diameter scheduled in inches)
      e. Type
      f. Equipment designation as listed on the pump schedule.
      g. Flow scheduled (gallons per minute)
      h. Dynamic head scheduled (feet of water)
      i. Efficiency (percent)
      j. Shut-off head (feet of water)
      k. Speed (rpm)
      l. Brake horsepower
      m. Maximum brake horsepower with rated impeller
      n. Rotation
      o. Maximum allowable pressure (psig)

J. The schedule on the drawing sets forth the type of pump and GPM required.
   1. The head capacities and horsepower are for bidding purposes only.
   2. Make pump selection based on actual system calculations.

K. Acceptable manufacturers:
   1. Armstrong
   2. Bell & Gossett
   3. TACO with Sure-Flex Plus Elastomeric Couplings.

## 2.2 VERTICAL IN-LINE (VIL) PUMPS

A. Pump Construction:
   1. Pump casing, cast iron with 125 psig ANSI/PN16 flanges for working pressure below 175 psig at 150°F and ductile iron with 250 psig ANSI / PN25 flanges for working pressure to 375 psig at 150°F.
   2. Suction and discharge connections shall be flanged and the same size and shall be drilled and tapped for seal flush and gauge connections.
   3. Impeller: Bronze, fully enclosed type; dynamically balanced, two-plan balancing is required where installed impeller diameter is less than 6 times the impeller width.
   4. Shaft: Provide stainless steel pump shaft.
   5. Coupling: Totally enclosed metal or high-impact polyethylene plastic (Orange Peel) coupling guard per ANSI B15.1, Section 8 and OSHA 1910.219. Coupling is to be designed to be easily removed on site to reveal a space between the pump and motor shafts sufficient to remove all mechanical seal components for

servicing and to be replaced without disturbing the pump or motor.

6. Mechanical seals shall be stainless steel multi-spring inside or outside balanced type with Viton secondary seal, carbon rotating face and silicon carbide stationary seat. Provide 316 stainless steel glad plate. Provide factory installed flush line with manual vent.
7. Split coupled pumps shall be provided with a lower seal chamber throttle bushing to ensure seals maintain positive cooling and lubrication.
8. Provide seal flush supply line to the mechanical seal with a 50 micron cartridge filter and sight flow indicator to suit the working pressure encountered. Filters shall be changed by the installing contractor after system is flushed and on a regular basis until turned over to the Owner.
9. Supply in the flush line to the mechanical seal a maintenance free sediment separator with sight flow indicator.
10. Volute shall include gauge ports at nozzles, and vent and drain ports.

B. Single stage, single or double suction type, with pump characteristics which provide rising heads to shut off. Refer to pump schedule for pump flows and heads and motor speed, enclosure, efficiency and power requirements and other system conditions.

C. Pump Motor:

1. Premium efficiency
2. Totally enclosed fan cooled
3. Cast iron frame and end plate
4. (2) Forge steel lifting eye
5. Over-sized conduit box with ground lug
6. So sized with relation to the pump impeller that the brake horsepower requirements will not overload the motor at any point on the pump curve.
7. Critical speed of the pump shall be at minimum 115% of the operating speed listed in the pump schedule.
8. Designed for Variable Frequency Drive Application
9. Greaseable bearings rated for a minimum of 200,000 hours.
10. Minimum Efficiency

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3 hp | 1800 rpm | 89.5% |
| 5 hp | 1800 rpm | 90.2% |
| 7.5 hp | 1800 rpm | 91.7% |
| 10 hp | 1800 rpm | 91.7% |
| 15 hp | 1800 rpm | 92.4% |
| 20 hp | 1800 rpm | 93% |
| 25 hp | 1800 rpm | 93.6% |
| 30 hp | 1800 rpm | 94.1% |
| 40 hp | 1800 rpm | 94.5% |
| 50 hp | 1800 rpm | 94.5% |
| 60 hp | 1800 rpm | 95% |
| 75 hp+ | 1800 rpm | 95.4% |

D. Data plates:

1. Provide the pump with a nameplate constructed of 300 series stainless steel

securely fastened to pump casing with stainless steel pins.

2. Locate the nameplate for easy visibility.
3. Clearly stamp the rating conditions and other data below, as a minimum, on the nameplate.
    a. Manufacturer, address, telephone number
    b. Pump model number
    c. Pump serial number
    d. Size (including impeller diameter scheduled in inches)
    e. Type
    f. Equipment designation as listed on the pump schedule.
    g. Flow scheduled (gallons per minute)
    h. Dynamic head scheduled (feet of water)
    i. Efficiency (percent)
    j. Shut-off head (feet of water)
    k. Speed (rpm)
    l. Brake horsepower
    m. Maximum brake horsepower with rated impeller
    n. Rotation
    o. Maximum allowable pressure (psig)

E. The schedule on the drawing sets forth the type of pump and GPM required.
    1. The head capacities and horsepower are for bidding purposes only.
    2. Make pump selection based on actual system calculations.

F. Acceptable manufacturers:
    1. Armstrong Series 4300
    2. Bell & Gossett
    3. TACO with Sure-Flex Plus Elastomeric Couplings.

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. Install the pumps in accordance with Manufacturer's "Installation, Start-up and Service Instructions".
    1. Provide access space around pumps for service.
    2. Install pumps on concrete housekeeping base, with anchor bolts, set and level, and grout in place. Install stainless steel drain pan with trough under chilled water pumps only.
    3. Provide air cock and drain connection piped to floor drain.
    4. Lubricate pumps prior to start-up.
    5. Install condenser water pumps to ensure a full flooded suction.
    6. Paint entire unit with two coats of machinery enamel after completion of installation.
    7. Provide a spool piece between the suction diffuser and the suction side of the pump minimum length 8" face to face.
    8. Provide pressure taps with valves on each side of the pump.

9. Install hot water circulator horizontally, properly supported to wall, in an accessible location for testing and maintenance at a height not to exceed 60” above finished floor. Install line size Ernst bronze rotating wheel, flow indicator with double window, downstream of circulator.

C. Provide a line size isolation valve and strainer on the pump suction and a line size silent check valve and balancing valve on the pump discharge. Provide an automatic air vent off the pump casing. For base mounted pumps, provide a drain line the full size of the base connection and extend it to and terminate it over the nearest floor drain.

D. Support piping adjacent to the pump such that no weight is carried on the pump casing. Decrease from pipe size with eccentric reducer on suction side and concentric increaser on discharge side.

E. Ensure pumps:
1. Operate at specified system fluid temperatures without vapor binding and cavitation.
2. Are non-overloading in parallel and individual operation.
3. Operate within 25 percent of midpoint of published maximum efficiency curve.

F. Refer to pump detail on the Contract Drawings for piping accessories to be provided.

## 3.2 MANUFACTURER START-UP SERVICE ALIGNMENT

A. After installation, the pumps and motors are to be aligned by the manufacturer or their representative utilizing a dial indicator. After completion, a formal report must be submitted by the Manufacturer to the Engineer prior to final acceptance. This report must include pump serial number, location, beginning and final alignment at a minimum.
1. Technicians, as required, shall be trained and experienced in the work they perform (contractor start-up / alignment is unacceptable).

B. Before starting pumps, but after connecting piping:
1. Align shafts and coupling with a precision dial indicator alignment instrument to the minimum tolerances .004 (TIR) per inch of coupling radius or as recommended by the manufacturer, whichever is the greater.
2. Tabulate the actual pump alignment reading with manufacturer's minimum tolerances.
3. Submit readings for approval.
4. Include the approved readings in the Owner's Maintenance Manual.

## 3.3 FINAL PUMP FLOW CALIBRATION

A. Based on the results of the final phases of the test and balance sequences, if the flow of the unthrottled pump is more than 10% above the scheduled values:
1. Request detailed instructions from the pump manufacturer for the correct impeller diameter.

2. Trim the impeller to the diameter recommended by the manufacturer, employing precision machinery.

B. Enter the information on the final configuration of the pump in the Owner's Manual.
1. Modify the pump nameplate to reflect the correct head and flow data and the impeller diameter.

## 3.4 SPARE PARTS

A. Provide the following spare parts and material to the Owner for his use after the warranty period.
1. A mechanical seal for each pump
2. A set of bearings for each pump

## 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Furnish each unit with a durable, deep etched, .025” thick, factory installed aluminum identification plate, permanently mounted with the following information:
1. Unit identification as indicated on Contract Drawings.
2. Equipment served by unit
3. Serial Number.
4. Model Number.
5. GPM and FT. HD.
6. Motor HP.
7. Sales Order #.
8. Date unit manufactured.

**END OF SECTION 23 21 23**

# SECTION 23 25 13 - CIRCULATING WATER SYSTEM CHEMICAL TREATMENT

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Provide equipment, chemicals and treatment materials for the complete water treatment system.

B. Determine which chemicals to use from the results of a water sample analysis taken from the building domestic water supply.

C. Provide water treatment products, holding reservoirs, equipment and labor for testing, cleaning, flushing and dispensing products to achieve the required water quality for each system specified.
   1. Closed chilled and hot water systems
   2. The cooling tower condenser water system
   3. Closed condenser water system

### 1.2 SERVICE AND SUPPLIES

A. All work shall be performed by a qualified, full-time, Water Program Manager.
   1. Specialist in the field of industrial water treatment.
   2. Facilities include water analysis laboratory, development facilities and service department.

B. Provide a water treatment test set for each system (pH, alkalinity, hardness, chloride) for field use including test equipment and reagents as required for specific use with the treatment products employed.

C. Where specialized supplementary testing or control equipment is required, provide appropriate items.

D. Provide a water management and service program for a period of one year beginning at substantial completion. Make routine visits bi-weekly during first two months of operation and monthly during the remainder of the specified period.

E. Routing Services
   1. Check and adjust water treatment system operation.
   2. Instruct, train and advise operating personnel.
   3. Check efficiency of chemicals and chemical applications.
   4. Replenish chemicals and replace expendables.
   5. Clean or replace filter in feeder.

F. Chemically clean the piping system.

G. Provide a complete laboratory analysis of water samples. Insert in the Owner's manuals.

H. Provide review of report figures in the field water testing.

## 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Acceptable program manager shall have:
   1. Research and development facilities.
   2. Regional laboratories capable of making water analysis.
   3. A service department and qualified technical service representatives located within a reasonable distance of the project site.
   4. Service representatives who are registered Engineers or factory-certified technicians with not less than 5 years of water treatment experience with the water treatment system manufacturer.

B. Ensure that all products, packaging, blow-down or other effluents do not violate local, state, or federal laws or regulations. Use only chemicals that are registered, when required, with the U.S. Department of Agriculture or the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency and that are labeled as required by law.

C. Provide electrical products that have been tested, listed and labeled by Underwriters Laboratories and comply with the National Electrical Manufacturers Association Standards.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Chem Aqua

## 2.2 CLOSED CHILLED AND HOT WATER SYSTEM

A. By-pass filter feeders in the hot water and chilled water systems:
   1. Rated at 40-gpm capacity.
   2. Operating conditions: 150 psig and 250°F.
   3. Quick opening cap with a Buna N-O ring seal; or 1-1/2" valve and funnel.
   4. 5 micron polypropylene filter bag mounted in a perforated stainless steel holder. Filter bag shall be supported from top of feeder.
      a. Filter bag and holder shall extend full length of feeder tank.
      b. Bottom feed tanks are not acceptable.
   5. Fabricated hot dipped galvanized steel support legs and frame. Refer to detail drawing for requirements.
   6. Provide sufficient quantity of filter bags for warranty period. Minimum of six additional bags provided to owner.

B. Acceptable Manufacturers
   1. Neptune Model FTS-5
   2. Efficiency Dynamics FF-100.
   3. J.L. Wingert Model FHC-5HD.

4. Hydro-systems HS-800
5. Vector Industries, Inc. FA-900

C. Treatment chemicals:
1. Furnished as a concentrated liquid in 5 gallon pails
2. A corrosion inhibitor of the nitrite-borate type.
3. Maintained at a nitrite residual of 600 – 800 ppm in chilled loops and 1000-1500 in hot loops.
4. With effective copper, black iron, stainless steel and aluminum corrosion inhibitors.
5. Form a protective film to prevent corrosion and scale formation.
6. Have colored dye to indicate presence.

D. Multiple chemicals used in a common system shall be compatible.

E. Flow Indicator:
1. Bronze Construction
2. Rotating Wheel
3. Line Size
4. Double Window
5. Ernst Flow Industries Model EFIE-57-3

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION/START-UP**

A. In accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Anchor the chemical filter feeder to a concrete housekeeping pad using wedge type expansion anchors.

C. Clean and flush closed loops systems.
1. Clear water flush systems before introducing chemical cleaners.
2. Chemical cleaner shall be introduced into the systems to remove construction related oils, greases, threading compounds, and silt.
3. Chemical Cleaner shall passivate and pre-film pipe system.

**3.2 WATER ANALYSIS**

A. The chemical treatment agency shall provide the services of a testing laboratory to perform a site water analysis. As a minimum, conduct the following tests in accordance with ASTM standards and to the satisfaction of the Owner/Architect/Engineer.
1. Silica in water and wastewater.
2. Acidity or alkalinity of water.
3. Iron in water.
4. Hardness of water.
5. Ph of water.
6. Particulate and Dissolved Matter, Solids or Residue in Water.

7. Turbidity in water.
8. Corrosivity of water in absence of heat transfer.
9. Standard practices for sampling water.

C. Take water samples in accordance with ASTM.

D. Prepare a test report in accordance with ASTM for each of the tests conducted.

E. Submit the test reports to the Architect/Engineer.

## 3.3 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

A. The chemical treatment agency shall provide complete services necessary for chemically cleaning and treatment the following systems:
1. Chilled water.
2. Hot water.
3. Condenser water.

B. The chemical treatment agency shall provide, but not be limited to the following:
1. Equipment and installation.
2. Chemicals.
3. Analytical and testing work.
4. Inspection.
5. Calculations.
6. Assistance to the trade installing the piping.
7. Instruction to Owner.

C. Determine which chemicals to use from the results of site water analysis. Provide the chemical necessary to achieve the desired water condition.

E. Examine and supervise flushing and pipe cleaning operations and verify that the systems are clean, free of debris and rust and other construction materials before starting water treatment.

F. After the piping has been flushed, cleaned, rinsed and charged with chemicals, then start-up and operate the chemical treatment equipment to provide steady, stable characteristics for the systems treated.

G. During construction, instruct the Contractor in the field piping and wiring of chemical feeding equipment. If such piping and wiring details are not shown on the Contract Drawings, then provide all equipment, piping, wiring, instrumentation and chemicals to provide a complete and operating system without additional cost.

H. After the chemical treatment is functioning as intended, the chemical treatment agency shall demonstrate to the Architect/Engineer the chemical treatment operation.

## 3.4 OWNER TRAINING

A. A chemical treatment agency, in conjunction with the chemical treatment equipment manufacturer's factory representative, shall train the Owner to operate and maintain the chemical treatment system as a whole and in part for each piece of equipment.

B. Furnish to the Owner a chemical treatment administration manual covering the chemical treatment program for each of the systems treated. The manual shall include, but not be limited to:
   1. Name, address and telephone number of the chemical treatment agency and each of the equipment manufacturers.
   2. Operation and maintenance manuals.
   3. Test reports.
   4. Chemical data sheets.
   5. A narrative describing the chemical treatment program for each of the systems being treated.

**3.5 TESTING AND INSPECTION**

A. After the systems have been accepted, the chemical treatment agency shall visit the site every month during the warranty period.

B. During each visit:
   1. Check and adjust the chemical treatment equipment.
   2. Check the chemistry of the treated system to confirm the chemicals are maintaining the system as intended.
   3. Advise and instruct the Owner on operational changes made to the chemical treatment program.
   4. Take a water sample of each system being chemically treated and have the samples tested by a testing laboratory. Prepare a report for each water sample and submit it to the Owner. Include in the test report the changes that need to be made to the chemical treatment program.
   5. Maintain complete records of the treatment program for each system at the project site. Keep the records in a hardbound manual with the building manager. A second copy shall be maintained by the agency for the agency's records.

C. Routine visits must be coordinated with the Owner.

D. Send copy of monthly report to Engineer for Verification.

**END OF SECTION 23 25 13**

# SECTION 23 31 13 – DUCTWORK

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Duct construction, support and accessories. Dimensions shown on the drawings are free area dimensions.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 23 Mechanical
   1. Air Devices
   2. Air Handling Units
   3. Insulation
   4. Terminal Units
   5 Fan Coil Units
   6. Fans
   7. Packaged Rooftop Air Conditioners
   8. Testing, Balancing and Adjusting (TAB) of Environmental Systems

B. Division 9 – Finishes, Painting and Color Coding

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The intent of ductwork specifications is to obtain superior quality workmanship resulting in an installation that is absolutely satisfactory in both function and appearance. Provide ductwork in accordance with the specifications for each type of service.

B. An approved contractor for this work under this division shall be:
   1. A specialist in this field and have the personnel, experience, training, skill, and the organization to provide a practical working system.
   2. Able to furnish evidence of having contracted for and installed not less than 5 systems of comparable size and type that have served their owners satisfactorily for not less than 5 years.

### 1.4 GUARANTEE

A. Guarantee ductwork for 1 year from the date of substantial completion. The guarantee covers workmanship, noise, chatter, whistling, or vibration. Ductwork shall be free from pulsation under conditions of operation.

### 1.5 CONTRACTOR COORDINATION

A. Erect ducts in the general locations shown, but conform to structural and finish conditions of the building. Before fabricating any ductwork, check the physical conditions at the job site and make necessary changes in cross sections, offsets, and

similar items, whether they are specifically indicated or not.

B. Coordinate location of ductwork with structural members and Architectural drawings and requirements.

## 1.6 SHOP DRAWINGS AND SAMPLES

A. Submit shop drawings of all ductwork layouts, including enlarged plans and elevations of all air handling equipment, and summit details of duct fittings, including particulars such as gauge sizes, welds, and configurations prior to starting work.

B. Submit product data and sealing materials to be used.

C. Submit sound attenuation data.

D. Submit shop drawings in plan, elevation and sections, and three-dimensional view showing equipment in mechanical equipment areas.

# PART 2 – PRODUCTS

## 2.1 STANDARDS AND CODES

A. Except as otherwise indicated, sheet metal ductwork material and installation shall comply with the latest edition of SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards. Air distribution devices (such as dampers) included in this specification shall comply with the latest applicable SMACNA Fire, Smoke and Radiation Damper Installation Guide for HVAC Systems and NFPA 90A.

## 2.2 DUCT MATERIAL AND CONSTRUCTION

A. Except for the special ducts specified below use lock forming quality prime galvanized steel sheets or coils up to 60" wide. Stencil each sheet with gauge and manufacturer's name. Stencil coils of sheet steel throughout on 10' centers with gauge and manufacturer's name. Provide certification of duct gauge and manufacturer for each size duct.

B. Rectangular low and medium pressure duct constructed of sheet metal in accordance with the latest edition of SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards.

C. Medium pressure oval and round ductwork shall be spiral seam. Spiral lock-seam SMACNA Type RL-1. Fittings shall be welded construction.
   1. Galvanized

D. Low pressure round ducts shall be shop fabricated with snap lock longitudinal seams. Ducts shall be constructed for a minimum of 2" w.g. static pressure.

## 2.3 ACOUSTICAL DUCT

A. Duct and fittings:
   1. Double wall acoustically treated.
   2. Annular space packed with fiberglass insulation.
   3. Perforated metal liner to provide specific acoustic impedance
   4. Insulation 1.0 pcf. 1 inch thick
   5. United McGill Acousti-K27 spiral lockseam or approved equal
   6. Material as indicated below:
      a. Paintable Galvanized Steel

## 2.4 DUCT SEALING OF SEAMS AND JOINTS

A. Follow seal classification as indicated in Table 1-2 of SMACNA "HVAC AIR DUCT LEAKAGE TEST MANUAL". Use seal class A for 4" w.g. static. All longitudinal and transverse joints and seams shall be sealed by use of a fireproof, non-hardening, and non-migrating elastomeric sealant. With the exception of continuously welded joints and machine made spiral lock seams, joints and seams made air tight with duct sealer.
   1. Indoor applications – Foster 32-14
   2. Outdoor applications – Foster 32-17

## 2.5 FLEXIBLE DUCT LOW PRESSURE

A. Construction:
   1. Continuous galvanized spring steel wire helix, with reinforced metalized cover
      a. The fabric shall be mechanically fastened to the steel helix without the use of adhesives.
   2. UL 181 Class I air duct label
   3. Reinforced vapor barrier jacket
   4. Rated for use at system pressure (6" wc minimum)
   5. Flexible duct connections from lateral taps to variable volume boxes or terminal boxes shall be rated at twice the maximum pressure rating of the medium pressure system

B. Fire hazard classification:
   1. Flame spread rating 25 maximum.
   2. Smoke developed rating 50 maximum.

C. Thermal characteristics:
   1. R-6 BTU/hr/sq. ft./°F (when located in a conditioned plenum)
   2. R-8 BTU/HR/Sq.Ft./°F (when located in an unconditioned plenum)
   3. 2" minimum wall thickness insulation with 1" overlap

D. Acceptable manufacturers:
   1. Flexmaster
   2. Hart & Cooley
   3. Omniair
   4. Peppertree Air Solutions

## 2.6 FLEXIBLE DUCT MEDIUM/HIGH PRESSURE

A. The duct shall be constructed of a heavy coated fiberglass cloth fabric supported by helical wound galvanized steel. The fabric shall be mechanically fastened to the steel helix without the use of adhesives.

B. The internal working pressure rating shall be at least as follows with a bursting pressure of at least two times the working pressure:
Positive: 12" w.g.
Negative: 5" w.g.

C. The duct shall be rated for a velocity of at least 5500 fpm.

D. Suitable for operating temperature range of -20°F to +250°F.

E. Factory insulate the flexible duct with fiberglass insulation.
1. R-6 BTU/hr/sq. ft./°F (when located in a conditioned plenum)
2. R-8 BTU/HR/Sq.Ft./°F (when located in an unconditioned plenum)
3. 2" minimum wall thickness insulation with 1" overlap

E. Cover the insulation with a fire retarding polyethylene vapor barrier jacket having a permeance of not greater than 0.10 perms when tested in accordance with ASTM E96, Procedure A.

G. Acceptable manufacturers:
1. Flexmaster
2. Omniair
3. Peppertree Air Solutions

## 2.7 FIRE DAMPERS

A. Fire dampers for required wall ratings that are 95% minimum free area. Provide Type B or Type C UL dampers for low, medium and high-pressure rectangular, square or round ducts. Dampers shall be activated by a fusible link designed to react at 165°F. Install per manufactures recommendations to provide a UL assembly. Provide sealed sleeve to meet desired leakage performance.

B. Acceptable Manufacturers:
1. Ruskin
2. Prefco Products
3. Air Balance
4. Greenheck, Inc.
5. Nailor Industries
6. Pottoroff

## 2.8 CEILING RADIATION DAMPERS

A. Ceiling Radiation Dampers at location shown on plans constructed and tested in accordance with the current edition of UL555C of a minimum 22 gauge (0.8) blades, hinged in the center and held open with a 165° fusible link. Maximum blade height in the open position shall be 10" overall regardless of damper area. Maximum distance between blades held in the open position shall be 1-1/4" for units not requiring blade insulation and 1/4" for units with sheetrock blade insulation. Blades requiring radiation protection insulation shall utilize sheetrock. Refractory Ceramic or Mineral Wool Fiber is not allowed in the air stream. Radiation insulation outside of the air stream shall be Mineral Wool Fiber only. Ceramic Fiber Material is not approved for use. Units shall be constructed of a minimum 20-gauge (0.9) frame welded at all seams.

B. Acceptable Manufactures
1. Ruskin
2. Prefco
3. Air Balance
4. Phillips
5. Safe-Air
6. Nailor Industries

## 2.9 WALL LOUVERS

A. Refer to schedule on drawings. Coordinate with Architectural Drawings.

B. All louver frames shall be a minimum of 0.08" extruded aluminum. All blades shall be a minimum of 0.081" extruded aluminum. Beginning point of water penetration at 0.01 oz/sq.ft. Shall be a minimum of 800 ft/min.

C. Provide all louvers with removable aluminum bird screen with 1/4" mesh.

D. Acceptable manufacturers:
1. American Warming and Ventilation
2. Arrow
3. Greenheck
4. NCA
5. Pottorff
6. Ruskin

## 2.10 FLUES FOR POWER EXHAUST AND HIGH EFFICIENCY BOILERS AND WATER HEATERS

A. Double wall air insulated positive pressure chimney equal to Metalbestos, Van-Packer, Schebler or Metal-Fab. Chimney shall be rated for 550°F maximum flue gas temperature and with a UL tested pressure rating of 40 inches w.c. The interior pipe shall be constructed of AL 29-4C stainless steel and the exterior pipe shall be constructed of 304 stainless steel. Stack system shall be complete with a one inch air gap between inner liner and outer cover. Chimney shall be constructed and installed per UL-1738 and NFPA-211. All accessories shall be made by the same manufacturer and designed to be a

part of a positive pressure chimney system.

## 2.11 FLUE CAPS

A. Stainless steel flue caps of a design so that wind action from any direction will create a vacuum in the flue. Caps as manufactured by Breidert or equal are acceptable. Refer to installation details on drawings.

## 2.12 DUCT LINING

A. Duct lining shall be 1" thick, 1-1/2 lb. density, flexible lining coated on the air stream side to reduce attrition. Liner shall be Schuler Lina-Coustic, Certain-Teed Ultralite, or equal meeting requirements of NFPA 90-A. Provide I.A.Q. rated liner.

## 2.13 VOLUME DAMPERS

A. Manual balancing dampers that meet or exceed the following minimum construction standards:
   1. Frame 16-gauge
   2. Blades 16-gauge
   3. Bearings corrosion resistant
   4. Concealed linkage
   5. Opposed blade dampers

B. Acceptable manufacturer:
   1. Ruskin Model MD-35 or approved equal, by
   2. Arrow
   3. American Warming and Ventilating
   4. Nailor Industries
   5. Pottoroff

## 2.14 ACCESS DOORS

A. Round spin-in door of galvanized steel.
   1. Fire proof sealing gaskets and quick fastening locking devices
   2. Insulated door
   3. Conform to the requirements of the NFPA
   4. Identification and use of each access door
   5. UL label to match the construction in which it is installed
   6. Cable attached to door and outer frame
   7. Low leakage Access Door

B. Acceptable Manufacturer
   1. Flex master, Inspector Series
   2. Approved Equal

## 2.15 COMBINATION FIRE/SMOKE DAMPERS

A. Combination fire/smoke dampers meeting the following requirements:
   1. Each combination fire/smoke damper shall be 1-1/2 hour fire rated under UL Standard 555, 4th Edition, and shall be further classified by Underwriters Laboratories as a leakage Rated Damper for use in smoke control systems under the latest version of UL555S, and bear a UL label attesting to same. The damper manufacturer shall have tested, and qualified with UL, a complete range of damper sizes covering all dampers required by this specification. Testing and qualifying a single damper size is not acceptable. The leakage rating under UL555S shall be Leakage Class II.
   2. The damper frame shall be a minimum of 16 gauge, galvanized steel, formed into a structural hat channel shape with tabbed corners for reinforcement, as approved in testing by Underwriters Laboratories. Bearings shall be integral high surface area non-electrolytic materials construction to incorporate a friction free frame blade lap seal, or molybdenum disulfide impregnated stainless steel or bronze oilite sleeve type turning in the damper frame. The dampers shall be opposed blade type. The blades shall be constructed with a minimum of 16-gauge galvanized steel. The blade edge seal material shall be able to withstand 450°F. The jamb seals shall be flexible stainless steel compression type.
   3. As part of the UL qualification, dampers shall have demonstrated a capacity to operate (open and close) under HVAC system operation conditions, with pressures of at least 4" water gauge in the closed position, and 2,000 fpm air velocity in the open position.
   4. Each combination fire/smoke damper shall be equipped with a controlled 7 to 15 second heat-actuated release device. The electric EFL shall close and lock the fire/smoke damper during test, smoke detection, power failure or fire conditions through actuator closure springs. To prevent duct and HVAC component damage, the damper shall at all times be connected to the actuator for controlled closure in not less than 7 seconds and no more than 15 seconds. Instantaneous damper closure is unacceptable. After exposure to high temperature of fire, the damper must be inspected prior to reset to ensure proper operation. Release temperature is 165°F.
   5. Provide UL555S qualified electric actuator at 120 VAC.
   6. Provide air-foil type blades.

B. Provide integral sleeves

C. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   1. Ruskin
   2. Air Balance, Inc.
   3. Greenheck, Inc.
   4. Nailor Industries
   5. Pottoroff

## 2.16 SMOKE DAMPERS

A. Smoke dampers meeting the following requirements.

1. Each smoke damper shall be classified by Underwriters Laboratories as a leakage Rated Damper for use in smoke control systems under the latest version of UL555S, and bear a UL label attesting to same. The damper manufacturer shall have tested, and qualified with UL, a complete range of damper sizes covering all dampers required by this specification. Testing and qualifying a single damper size is not acceptable. The leakage rating under UL555S shall be Leakage Class II.
2. The damper frame shall be a minimum of 16 gauge, galvanized steel, formed into a structural hat channel shape with tabbed corners for reinforcement, as approved in testing by Underwriters Laboratories. Bearings shall be integral high surface area non-electrolytic materials construction to incorporate a friction free frame blade lap seal, or molybdenum disulfide impregnated stainless steel or bronze oilite sleeve type turning in the damper frame. The dampers shall be opposed blade type. The blades shall be constructed with a minimum of 16 gauge, galvanized steel. The blade edge seal material shall be able to withstand 450°F. The jamb seals shall be flexible stainless steel compression type.
3. As part of the UL qualification, dampers shall have demonstrated a capacity to operate (open and close) under HVAC system operation conditions, with pressures of at least 4" water gauge in the closed position, and 2,000 fpm air velocity in the open position.
4. Provide UL555S qualified electric actuator at 120 VAC.
5. Provide air-foil type blades.

B. Provide integral sleeves.

C. Acceptable Manufacturers:
1. Ruskin
2. Air Balance, Inc.
3. Greenheck, Inc.
4. Nailor Industries
5. Pottoroff

**2.17 DIFFUSER FITTINGS LOW PRESSURE TAPS**

A. Fitting shall meet or exceed the following minimum construction standards:
1. Conical with a base diameter two inches larger than the tap diameter.
2. Construct fitting and damper of galvanized steel in accordance with ASTM A 527, G90 finish.
   a. Fitting with a 3/16-inch high stop bead approximately 2-1/2-inches from the discharge end of the fitting
   b. Provide the fitting with a butterfly damper, damper rod, end bearings and heavy duty locking quadrant.
   c. Size the length of the straight section of the fitting to match the damper blade diameter. Center the damper blade in the straight section.
3. Match the fitting body gauge to the SMACNA duct gauge, but not less than:
   a. Through 8 inches: 26 gauge; Damper blade 22 gauge
   b. 10 inches and 12 inches: 24 gauge; Damper blade 22 gauge

c. 14 inches and 16 inches: 22 gauge; Damper blade 22 gauge
d. 18 inches and 20 inches: 20 gauge; Damper blade 20 gauge

4. Fasten damper blade to a 3/8 X 3/8 continuous square rod with minimum (2) galvanized U-bolts.
5. Support the damper rod to the fitting with airtight nylon end bushings / bearings.
6. Provide the damper with a self-locking regulator and handle.
7. Provide a 2” sheet metal stand-off to extend the regulator.
8. Flex duct grip area – 2 inches behind retaining bead
9. Flex duct retaining bead – 1 inch from end
10. Conical length of at least 3 inches
11. Barrel length of at least 9 inches

**2.18 AUXILIARY DRAIN PANS**

A. Galvanized steel, same gauge and same bracing or cross breaks as a duct with same dimensions. Sides of pan turned up to 1-1/2”, all joints soldered watertight. Pan is to be large enough to complete cover drip lines of unit.

**2.19 DUCTWORK SUPPORTS ON ROOF**

A. Support ductwork on roof with Portable Pipe Hanger Model PHP-D fully adjustable height and width. Base material shall be high density / high impact polypropylene with UV inhibitors and anti-oxidants. Provide with hot dip galvanized framing. Nuts and washers shall be hot dip galvanized.

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. Use construction methods and requirements as outlined in SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards as well as SMACNA Balancing and Adjusting publications, unless indicated otherwise in the specifications. Refer to details on the drawings for additional information.

B. Reinforce ducts in accordance with recommended construction practice of SMACNA. Provide additional reinforcement of large plenums as required to prevent excessive flexing and or vibration.

C. Cross break or bead sheet metal for rigidity, except ducts that are 12" or less in the longest dimension.

D. Where ducts pass through walls in exposed areas, install suitable escutcheons made of sheet metal angles as closers.

E. At locations where ductwork passes through floors, provide watertight concrete curb around penetration.

F. Support ducts where passing through floors with galvanized steel structural angles of adequate bearing surface.

G. Metal or lined ductwork exposed to view through grilles, registers, and other openings shall be painted flat black. Do not install grilles, registers, or similar items until painting is complete.

H. Fire Dampers shall be installed per manufacturer's recommendations to create a UL rated assembly.

I. Install end bearing at all location where damper shaft penetrates duct wall.

J. Clean duct to remove accumulated dust. Ducts shall be closed on ends between phases of fabrication to assure that no foreign material enters the ducts.

## 3.2 DUCTWORK

A. Construct rectangular ducts and round ducts in accordance with the latest SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards. Use the static pressure specified on the air handling unit schedule or fan schedules as a minimum for duct construction. All ductwork between the variable volume air handling units and the terminal units shall be constructed to the medium pressure ductwork specification.

B. Provide adjustable, galvanized splitter-dampers, pivoted at the downstream end with appropriate control device at each supply duct split.

C. For branch ducts wider than 18", and when shown on drawings provide extractors with an appropriate control device at each rectangular zone or branch supply duct connection. Provide controllers for extractors. Branch ducts shall have a 45° angle in the direction of flow. Do not provide extractor at branch ducts to sidewall registers where the registers are within 10 feet of the main duct.

D. Shop manufactured curved blade scoops may be used for branch duct takeoffs up to 18" wide. Taper scoop blade to the end, to prevent any sagging that may cut into, or damage duct liner if specified during operation.
   1. Construct shop manufactured scoops and splitter blades of galvanized sheet metal 2 full gauges heavier than equivalent sheet metal gauge of branch duct (up to 16 gauge).
   2. Check extractors, scoops and splitter blades thoroughly for freedom of operation. Oil bearing points before installing.

E. Use pushrod operator with locking nut and butt hinges assembly.

F. Provide opposed-blade volume dampers with an appropriate control device in each of the following locations:
   1. Return air ductwork

2. Outside air branch duct
3. Exhaust branch duct
4. Exhaust connections to hoods except kitchen grease hoods or equipment
5. In each zone at multi-zone unit discharge installed downstream of duct mounted re-heat coils
6. At each outside air and return air duct connection to plenum of constant volume units
7. At discharge side of constant volume boxes
8. Where otherwise indicated or required for balancing coordinate location of additional dampers required by TAB Contractor.
9. Provide multi-blade dampers when blade width exceeds 12". Provide end bearing where damper shaft penetrates duct wall.

G. Elbows:
1. Rectangular: Where square elbows are shown, or are required for good airflow, provide and install single-wall or airfoil turning vanes. Job-fabricated turning vanes, if used, shall be single-thickness vanes of galvanized steel sheets of the same gauge metal as the duct in which they are installed. Furnish vanes fabricated for the same angle as the duct offset. The use of radius elbows with a centerline radius of not less than 1-1/2 times the duct width may be provided in lieu of vaned elbows where space and air flow requirements permit.
2. Round Oval Duct. Provide elbows with a centerline radius of 1-1/2 times the duct diameter or duct width. For round ducts, furnish smooth elbows or 5 piece, 90° elbows and 3 piece, 45° elbows.

H. For control devices concealed by ceilings, furring, or in other inaccessible locations, furnish extension rods and appropriate recessed-type Young regulators, mounted on the surface of the ceiling or the furring, unless specified, or shown otherwise. Provide with chrome plated cover plates. Use only one mitered gear set for each control device.

I. Install streamline deflectors at any point where dividing a sheet metal duct around piping or where other such obstruction is permitted. Where such obstructions occur in insulated ducts, fill space inside streamliner and around obstructions with glass fiber insulation.

J. Insulated Flexible Duct:
1. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, and the terms of its UL listing. Duct shall not exceed 6' in length. Make connections by use of sheet metal collars and stainless steel circular screw clamps. Clamps shall encircle the duct completely and be tightened with a worm gear operator to the point that will provide an airtight connection without unnecessary deformation of the duct. Provide one clamp on flexible duct and one clamp on external insulation. Vapor barrier jacket shall be tucked inside to conceal insulation material.
2. Construct bends over 45° with sheet metal elbows.

K. Duct Supports:
1. Horizontal ducts up to 40". Support horizontal ducts up to and including 40" in

their greater dimension by means of #18 U.S. gauge galvanized iron strap hangers attached to the ducts by a minimum of two locations per side by means of screws, rivets or clamps, and fastened to inserts with toggle bolts, beam clamps or other approved means. Place supports on at least 8' centers. Use clamps to fasten hangers to reinforcing on sealed ducts.

2. Horizontal ducts larger than 40". Support horizontal ducts larger than 40" in their greatest dimension by means of hanger rods bolted to angle iron trapeze hangers. Place supports on at least 8' centers in accordance with SMACNA Standards.
3. Support vertical ducts where they pass through the floor lines with 1-1/2" x 1-1/2" x 1/4" angles for ducts up to 60". Above 60", the angles shall be increased in strength and sized on an individual basis considering space requirements.
4. Supports shall be suspended from structural or by independent support. Do not support from structural bridging. Upper attachments should be selected with a safety factor of 4 or 5 times actual load conditions and subject to Engineers approval. Double wrap straps over open web of joist.

L. Branch connections for medium pressure ductwork shall be made with a conical lateral. Field installed conical branch ducts shall be minimum 20-gauge galvanized sheet metal, “Everdur” welded and coated with “Galvabar”.

## 3.3 PLENUMS

A. Return air plenums shall be rectangular galvanized sheet metal ductwork.

B. Fabricate plenums upstream of fan of 16-gauge material.

C. Fabricate plenums upstream of filters minimum 18-gauge material.

## 3.4 FLEXIBLE CONNECTIONS

A. Where ducts connect to fans or air handling units that are not internally isolated, make flexible airtight connections using "Ventglas" fabric. The fabric shall be fire-resistant, waterproof and mildew resistant with a weight of approximately 30 ounces per square yard. Provide a minimum of 1/2" slack in the connections, and a minimum of 2-1/2" distance between the edges of the ducts. Also, provide a minimum of 1" slack for each inch of static pressure on the fan system. Fasten fabric to apparatus and to adjacent ductwork by means of galvanized flats or draw bands. Where connections are made in outdoor locations, seal fabric to metal with mastic.

## 3.5 ACCESS DOORS

A. Install ductwork access doors as noted below, arranged for convenient access. Stencil each door for specific use. Install access doors in each of the following locations:
   1. Fire Dampers
   2. Smoke Dampers

3. Smoke/fire Dampers
4. Outside Air Dampers
5. Duct Mounted Coils (up-stream)
6. Control Dampers

B. Size access door 1" smaller than ductwork.
1. Available Sizes: 8”, 10”, 12”, 18”, 24”

C. Construct access door air tight, and conform to recommendations of NFPA and SMACNA.

D. Demonstrate suitability of access for the intended purpose. Install multiple access doors as required.

## 3.6 DUCT LINING

A. Install glass fiber acoustical lining where shown on drawings. Secure to duct surfaces with Foster 85-62 / 85-60 or Childers CP-125-1 / CP-127 adhesive and sheet metal fasteners on 12" centers. Coat exposed edges and leading edges of cross-joints with adhesive.

B. Provide metal nosing that is either channeled or "Z" profiled or are integrally-formed from the duct wall securely installed over transversely oriented liner edges facing the air stream at fan discharge and at any interval of lined duct preceded by unlined duct.

C. Refer to Insulation & Liner Detail on drawings for locations requiring liner to be installed.

D. Do not install liner in multi-zone unit ductwork.

## 3.7 SEALING OF SEAMS AND JOINTS

A. Seal supply, return, exhaust and outside air duct systems.

## 3.8 FLUES

A. Provide and install flues for all gas fired equipment.

B. Refer to plans for all related locations.

C. Contractor is responsible for coordinating stack sizing, stack drains, stack test ports, stack termination fittings and all other required fittings with the selected equipment manufacturers.

D. All fittings and accessories shall be manufactured by the flue manufacturer. The flue shall be installed per manufacturer's instruction.

E. Terminate flues at height above roof to prevent flue gas from entering the building.

**3.9 DISHWASHER HOOD EXHAUST SYSTEM**

A. All material and fittings shall be 304 Stainless steel, welded joints, watertight construction. Grade horizontal duct 1/4" per lineal foot to drain toward the washer.

**3.10 SHOWER AREA EXHAUST SYSTEM**

A. All material and fittings shall be 304 Stainless steel, welded joints, watertight construction. Grade horizontal duct 1/4" per lineal foot slope down to grille connection. Install in accordance with Fig. 2-21 of SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards.

**3.11 KITCHEN EXHAUST DUCT**

A. All material and fittings shall be minimum 16 gauge, coated black steel to prevent rusting. All seams and joints in the kitchen exhaust duct, and penetrations of the hood enclosure to its lower outermost perimeter that directs and captures grease-laden vapors and exhaust gases shall have a liquid tight continuous external weld. All ducts shall be installed without forming dips or traps that might collect residues. Provide 18" x 18" or equal area at each elbow and as required for cleaning access, in direction of air flow. UL Listed access panel shall be located on the vertical wall of the duct 1-1/2" from the bottom of duct and shall be fitted with two handles, grease and air tight fitting access door and latch. All interior surfaces of ducts shall be accessible for cleaning and inspection purposes. Duct shall maintain minimum 1/4" per lineal foot slope to the exhaust hood. Provide duct over lay at the roof curb for a complete seal. Install kitchen exhaust system per local authority. In the absence of a local authority, the requirements of the Uniform Mechanical Code and NFPA 96 shall govern.

**3.12 FUME HOOD EXHAUST SYSTEM**

A. All material and fittings shall be 304 stainless steel construction.

**3.13 ACOUSTICAL DUCT**

A. Install in the following locations:
   1. Where indicated on the drawings

**3.14 SCREENS**

A. Furnish and install screens on all duct, fan, etc., openings furnished by the Contractor that lead to, or are, outdoors; screens shall be No. 16 gauge, one-half inch (1/2”) mesh in removable galvanized steel frame. Provide safety screens meeting OSHA requirements for protection of maintenance personnel on all fan inlets and fan outlets to which no ductwork is connected.

**3.15 CONNECTIONS TO LOUVERS**

A. Make watertight connections to all louvers. Ductwork behind louver shall have watertight soldered joints for a minimum of three feet and be sloped to bottom of louver. Lap duct to be over bottom louver blade where possible.

B. Where plenums are installed on inside of louver, construct such that bottom of plenum will lap over bottom blade of louver to drain any water that may enter.

**3.16 PLENUMS**

A. Construct plenums with galvanized steel framing members and galvanized sheet steel, cross broken and rigidly braced with galvanized angles. Gauges and bracing shall conform to SMACNA recommendations for ductwork of like sizes. Openings for fans, access doors, etc., shall be framed with galvanized steel angles.

B. Provide access doors.

**3.17 AUXILIARY DRAIN PANS**

A. Where coils that have a condensate drain are located above ceiling.

**3.18 TESTING OF LOW PRESSURE DUCTWORK**

A. Test ductwork for leaks before concealing. Maximum allowable leakage is 5% of total airflow.

B. Provide equipment necessary for performing tests, including rotary blower large enough to provide required static pressure at allowed CFM quantity, certified orifice section with proper papers, traceable serial numbers and pressure vs CFM leakage rate scale, U-tube gauge board complete with cocks, tubing, and inclined manometer for leakage rates.

C. Mains: Test mains after risers and branches are tied in and all equipment set. Close runout connections and place fan in operation. Provide pressure in mains at 1-1/2 times design pressure. Visually inspect joints. Repair leaks detected by sound or touch. Release mains for completion after joints are tight.

D. Ductwork down stream of terminal boxes, return, exhaust, and outside air ducts are to be visually inspected.

**3.19 TESTING OF MEDIUM AND HIGH PRESSURE DUCT**

A. As the project progresses, test the ductwork in sections.

B. Provide equipment necessary for performing tests, including rotary blower large enough to provide required static pressure at allowed CFM quantity, certified orifice section with proper papers, traceable serial numbers, and pressure vs. CFM leakage rate scale,

U-tube gauge board complete with cocks, tubing, and inclined manometer for leakage rates.

C. Finally as a complete system, test ductwork at a minimum of 2.5” with a maximum allowable leakage of 1% of the total design supply airflow.

D. Test method as set forth in SMACNA "HVAC Duct Construction Standards".

**END OF SECTION 23 31 13**

# SECTION 23 31 14 - FABRIC AIR DISPERSION SYSTEM

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. Extent of non-metal ductwork is indicated on drawings and by requirements of this section.

### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Building Codes and Standards:
   1. Product must be Classified by Underwriter's Laboratories in accordance with the 25/50 flame spread/smoke developed requirements of MFPA 90-A and are also classified in accordance with ICC Evaluation Service AC 167.
   2. All product sections must be labeled with the logo and classification marking of Underwriter's Laboratories.
   3. Product must be treated with an EPA registered antimicrobial agent.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's specifications on materials and manufactured products used for work of this section.

B. Building Code Data: Submit UL file number under which product is Classified by Underwriter's Laboratories for both NFPA 90-A and ICC AC167.

C. Submit manufacturer's documented design support information including duct sizing, vent and orifice location, vent and orifice sizing, length, and suspension. Submit parameters for design, including maximum air temperature, velocity, pressure and fabric permeability.

D. Color selections

E. Manufacturer's recommended suspension system

### 1.4 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer must provide a 10 Year Product Warranty for products supplied for the fabric portion of this system as well as a Design and Performance Warranty.

### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Protect fabric air dispersion systems from damage during shipping, storage and handling.

B. Where possible, store products inside and protect from weather. Where necessary to

store outside, store above grade and enclose with a vented waterproof wrapping.

## PART 2 -PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

Subject to compliance with requirements, choose one of the following:

A. DuctSox Corporation

B. Fabric-Air

C. KE Fibertec

D. Prihoda

### 2.2 FABRIC AIR DISPERSION SYSTEM

A. Air diffusers shall be constructed of a woven fire retardant fabric complying with the following physical characteristics:
   1. Fabric Construction: 100% Flame Retardant and treated with a machine wash-able anti-microbial agent from the manufacturer.
   2. Weight: 6.75 oz./$yd^2$ per ASTM D3776
   3. Fabric Porosity: 1.5 (+2/-1) cfm/$ft^2$ per ASTM D737, Frazier
   4. Temperature Range: 0 degrees F to 180 degrees F
   5. Fire Retardancy: Classified by Underwriters Laboratories in accordance with the flame spread/smoke developed requirements of NFPA 90-A and ICC AC 167.
   6. Antimicrobial agent shall be proven 99% effective after 10 laundry cycles per AATCC Test Method 100.

B. Systems Fabrication Requirements:
   1. Air dispersion and extended throws accomplished by reinforced orifices and permeable fabric. Reinforced orifices are to be installed to deep the integrity of opening and withstand laundry processes.
   2. Diameter, quantity, and location of reinforced orifices to be specified and approved by manufacturer.
   3. Inlet connection to metal duct via fabric draw band with anchor patches as supplied by manufacturer. Anchor patches to be secured to metal duct via zip screw fastener – supplied by contractor.
   4. Inlet connection includes zipper for easy removal/maintenance.
   5. Lengths to include required zippers as specified by manufacturer.
   6. System to include adjustable flow devices to balance turbulence, airflow and distribution as needed. Flow restriction device shall include ability to adjust the airflow resistance from 0.06 – 0.60 in w.g. static pressure.
   7. End cap includes zipper for easy maintenance.
   8. Fabric system shall include connectors to accommodate suspension system listed below.
   9. Any deviation from a straight run shall be made using a gored elbow or an

efficiency tee. Normal 90 degree elbows to be 5 gores with the radius of the elbow 1.5 times the diameter.

C. Systems Design Parameters:
   1. Use fabric diffusers only for positive pressure air distribution components of the mechanical ventilation system.
   2. Do not use fabric diffusers in concealed locations.
   3. Fabric diffusers shall be designed from 0.25" water gauge minimum to 3.0" maximum, with 0.5" as the standard.
   4. Fabric air diffusers shall be limited to design temperatures between 0 degrees F and 180 degrees F (-17.8 degrees C and 82 degrees C).
   5. Design CFM, static pressure and diffuser length shall be designed or approved by the manufacturer.

D. Fabric Tensioning System:
   1. Air diffusers shall be constructed with internal tensioning frame.
   2. System shall cylindrically tension textile along the entire length of textile duct.
   3. Tensioning system shall include full 360 degree tensioning and intermediate rings with quick connection spacer tubes concealed inside the fabric system.
   4. Interior structure to include multiple mechanically adjustable tension devices. To provide proper textile tensioning, structural and textile system shall be configured in segments of no more than 45 feet.
   5. Textile components supported solely by metal cylindrical rings.
   6. Each cylindrical ring shall require vertical metal to metal vertical cable safety attachment.
   7. Component options include:
      a. Stainless Steel Cable
      b. Adjustable Gripple Mid-Supports – incremental lengths of 5', 10', 15', 20' and 30'

## PART 3 – INSTALLATION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF FABRIC AIR DISPERSION SYSTEM

A. Install approved suspension system in accordance with the requirements of the manufacturer. Instructions for installation shall be provided by the manufacturer with product.

### 3.2 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean air handling unit and ductwork prior to installation of the fabric duct system. Clean external surfaces of foreign substance which may cause corrosive deterioration of facing.

B. Temporary closure: At ends of ducts which are not connected to equipment or distribution devices at time of ductwork installation, cover with polyethylene film or other covering which will keep the system clean until installation is completed.

C. If fabric duct systems become soiled during installation, they should be removed and cleaned following the manufacturers standard terms of laundry.

**END OF SECTION 23 31 14**

# SECTION 23 34 16 – FANS

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install fans, including centrifugal, axial and propeller types, with supplemental equipment.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 23 Mechanical:
   1. Ductwork
   2. Vibration Isolation
   3. Air Balance
   4. Electrical Provisions of Mechanical Work

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE

A. Provide fan type, arrangement, rotation, capacity, size, motor horsepower, and motor voltage as shown. Fan capacities and characteristics are scheduled on the drawings. Provide fans capable of accommodating static pressure variations of +10% of scheduled design at the design air flow.

B. Rate fans according to appropriate Air Moving and Conditioning Association, Inc. (AMCA), approved test codes and procedures. Supply fans with sound ratings below the maximums permitted by AMCA Standards. All fans provided must be licensed to bear the Certified Ratings Seal.

C. Statically and dynamically balance all fans.

D. Motors shall be sized so that they do not operate within the motor service factor.

E. Fans shall be capable of 120% of the scheduled air capacities.

F. All static pressures shown on schedules are external to fans. Manufacturer shall add damper and accessory losses to scheduled value before selecting fan.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit fan performance curves with system operating point plotted on curves.

B. Submit manufacturer’s printed installation instructions.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Cook

B. Greenheck

C. Penn Barry Ventilator

D. Twin City Fans

## 2.2 PROTECTIVE COATINGS

A. Manufacturer's Standard. Apply to fans, motors and accessories, the manufacturer's standard prime coat and finish, except on aluminum surfaces or where special coatings are required.

B. Galvanizing. After fabrication of the parts, hot-dip coat surfaces that require galvanizing. Where galvanizing is specified, a zinc coating may be used. After fabrication, apply the zinc coating and air-dry the coating to 95% pure zinc. Acceptable zinc coatings include Zincilate, Sealube, Amercoat, Diametcoat, or an approved equal.

## 2.3 SUPPLEMENTAL EQUIPMENT

A. Motor Covers. Provide weatherproof motor covers for installations out of doors. Apply the same finish as used on the fan.

B. Belt Drives:
   1. Unless otherwise specified for belt-driven fans, equip the fan motors with variable pitch sheaves. Select the sheave size for the approximate midpoint of adjustment and to provide not less than 20% speed variation from full open to full closed. Size drives for 150% of rated horsepower. Key the fan sheave to the fan shaft.
   2. Nonadjustable motor sheaves may be used for motor sizes over 15 horsepower, at the Contractor's option. However, if changing a nonadjustable sheave becomes necessary to produce the specified capacity, the change must be made at no additional cost.
   3. Provide belt guards and apply the same finish as used on the fan.
   4. Oil and heat resistant, nonstatic type belts.
   5. Bearings shall be designed and individually tested specifically for use in air handling applications. Construction shall be heavy duty, regreasable, ball type, in a pillow block, cast iron housing, selected for a minimum L50 life in excess of 200,000 hours at maximum catalog operating speed.

C. Safety Disconnect Switch: Provide a factory-wired to motor, safety disconnect switch on each unit.

D. Relief Vents and Air Inlets: Provide vents and inlets with aluminum frames and 1/2" mesh, galvanized bird screens. Include dampers where shown.

E. Prefabricated Roof Curbs: Furnish prefabricated roof curbs as detailed. The minimum height is 14". Include a resilient pad on each roof curb so the equipment can be mounted on the top flange for proper seal. Coordinate roof slope and curb to ensure equipment is installed in level position. Provide double shell to protect insulation from damage.

F. Where motorized damper is scheduled:
   1. The motor and damper are specified in the Building Management and Control System Specification.

G. All fans are to be provided with a durable, deep etched, .025" thick, factory installed aluminum identification plate with the following information. Plates are to be furnished with four mounting holes.
   1. Fan mark as indicated on the Contract Drawings.
   2. Serial number
   3. Model number
   4. Capacity (CFM) and static pressure.
   5. Motor HP
   6. Motor Amps
   7. Manufacturer
   8. Motor phase
   9. Number of Belts/Make/Size
   10. Motor volts

## 2.4 VENTILATION AND EXHAUST FANS

A. Provide the ventilation and exhaust fans shown on the drawings.

B. Provide each motor with internal overload protection.

C. Provide each belt driven fan with approved, totally enclosed belt guard.

D. Provide approved safety screen where inlet or outlet is exposed.

E. Provide duct flanges where required for connections.

F. Furnish kitchen hood exhaust fans with vented curb extension that meets NFPA 96, cleanout port, grease tap, curb seal, drain connection and hinge kit.

G. Furnish supply fans with 1” aluminum, washable filter section.

## 2.5 ROOFTOP VENTILATION AND EXHAUST SYSTEMS

A. Provide the rooftop ventilation and exhaust systems shown on the drawings.

B. Provide each motor with internal overload protection.

C. Components:
   1. Aluminum, stainless steel or plastic coated bird guard.
   2. Screws and fasteners of stainless steel or nonferrous material.
   3. All aluminum construction unless indicated otherwise on fan schedule.

D. Welded construction, corrosion resistant fasteners, minimum 16 gauge marine allow aluminum.

E. Aluminum base shall be continuously welded curb cap corners.

**2.6 GRAVITY ROOF-TOP INTAKE AND RELIEF VENTS**

A. Provide the rooftop intake and relief vent systems shown on the drawings.

B. Provide with aluminum, stainless steel or plastic coated bird guard.
   1. Screws and fasteners of stainless steel or nonferrous material
   2. All aluminum construction

C. Welded construction, corrosion resistant fasteners, minimum 16-gauge marine alloy aluminum.

D. Aluminum base shall be continuously welded curb cap corners.

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. Install fans according to the manufacturer's instructions and in the locations shown on the drawings. Ensure fan location is installed at minimum distance from roof edge to meet code requirements.

B. Do not operate fans or fan powered devices for any purpose until ductwork is clean, filters in place, bearings lubricated and the fan has been run under observation.

C. Roof mounted fans and gravity roof-top intake and relief vents shall be secured to the curb with stainless steel lag screws at a minimum of 6-inches on center. Follow manufacturer’s installation instructions if they are more stringent. Install roof mounted equipment in a level position. Units shall be seated on properly sized curb. Gap between base of the fan and top of the curb shall be sealed with neoprene 1” x ¼” gasket. Gasket shall be glued or attached with pressure sensitive adhesive.

D. Install curbs and equipment in level position.

E. Ceiling mounted in-line centrifugal blowers
   1. Shall be suspended from structure with 1/2-inch zinc plated all-thread rods secured to structure.

2. Provide sub-structure where required.
3. Mount bottom of fan no more than 18-inches above the finished ceiling height.

## 3.2 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Provide two sets of belts for each fan, not including the set installed on the fans. Tag set to identify fan.

**END OF SECTION 23 34 16**

# SECTION 23 36 16 - VARIABLE VOLUME TERMINAL UNITS

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install variable volume terminal units, including hangers, controls and other required elements.
   1. Provide constant fan variable volume terminal units where indicated on the drawings.
   2. Provide variable volume terminal units where indicated on the drawings.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 23 Mechanical.
   1. Ductwork.
   2. Air Balance.
   3. Electrical Requirements for Mechanical Work.
   4. Building Management and Control System.
   5. Vibration Isolation,

### 1.3 COOPERATION WITH OTHER TRADES

A. Coordinate this work with work under Division 26 Electrical, to ensure that intended functions of lighting and air systems are achieved.

B. Coordinate the primary (input) voltage with the electrical power source. Refer to the Electrical Drawings for specific requirements.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit product data for control devices, terminal boxes, and similar equipment for review prior to placement of purchase order. Submit internal wiring diagrams, installation and operation manual as a complete submittal package.

B. Submit certified sound power levels for both discharge sound and casing radiated sound in accordance with ARI 880-98 Certification Program. All NC levels shall be calculated using ARI 885-98, Appendix E attenuation factors for mineral ceiling.

C. Submit for each box the following information:
   1. Box size
   2. Inlet size
   3. Box number
   4. Box designation
   5. Minimum / Maximum Fan CFM
   6. L / R Coil connection
   7. GPM
   8. Motor HP

9. NC Level
10. External Static Pressure
11. Scheduled MBH
12. Actual MBH
13. Heating Coil Pressure Drop (ft.)
14. Entering and Leaving Water Temperature
15. Entering and Leaving Air Temperature

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

A. Make air flow tests and sound level measurements in accordance with applicable ASHRAE Standards 130-96 and ARI 880-98.

B. Manufacturer shall certify cataloged performance and ensure correct application of terminal units.

C. Sound power levels to occupied space shall not exceed NC-30 as calculated using ARI 885-98 Appendix E attenuation factors for mineral tile ceiling.

**PART 2 – PRODUCTS**

**2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS:**

A. Titus

B. Krueger

C. Price

D. Nailor

E. Metalaire

**2.2 BOX CONSTRUCTION**

A. Galvanized 20 gauge steel casing with suspension lugs.

B. Lined with minimum 1.5 PCF / 1" thick fiber free
1. Flame spread not higher than 25.
2. Smoke developed rating not higher than 50.
3. Condensation on the exterior of the box is not approved.
4. Coat all cut edges of liner with NFPA approved sealant.
5. Lining shall pass UL 181, NFPA 90A and ASTM C 665.

C. Provide access to controls, fan compartment, and unit servicing, without disturbing duct connections. Limit the size of access doors to 24 inches. Where required, provide multiple access doors. Gasket each door in the unit casing.

D. Components shall be constructed of corrosion resistant materials.

E. Bearings shall not require lubrication.

F. Casing leakage shall not exceed 2.0% of scheduled design air flow at 3.0” WG interior casing pressure.

G. Seal casing joints with approved adhesive if required to meet the maximum casing leakage rate.

H. The maximum overall height of the variable air volume unit shall not exceed available ceiling space.

I. Maximum static pressure drop of air through terminal box shall be 0.2” w.g.

J. Maximum velocity through duct inlet shall be 2,000 fpm.

## 2.3 COMPONENTS

A. The entire terminal unit, including the heating coil, shall be designed and built as a single unit.

B. Provide each unit with a primary variable air volume damper that controls the air quantity in response to a space sensor.

C. Each unit shall contain:
   1. Fan and motor assembly. For Fan Powered Units Only
   2. Heating coil.

D. Locate the heating coil in the discharge of the blower section.

E. Provide single point electrical connections for the entire unit. Entire assembly shall be UL or ETL Certified, electrical components shall be UL listed and installed in accordance with the National Electrical Code.

F. The variable air volume units provided by the manufacturer shall be the quietest design available from the manufacturer for the type specified.

G. Induced air filter frame for 1” thick disposable filter.

H. Sufficient power for the VAV unit DDC controller, electric actuator and other components necessary to satisfy the sequence of operation. Size each transformer for the total connected load plus an additional 25% of the connected load. Primary and secondary fuses housed in a fuse block.

I. Inlet attenuator for induction airside of box with liner to lower radiated noise.

## 2.4 BLOWER FAN AND MOTOR

A. Blower fan:
   1. Constructed of steel.
   2. Forward curved centrifugal wheel.
   3. Dynamically balanced wheels.
   4. Direct drive motors.

B. Motor
   1. Ultra-high efficiency ECM motor technology

C. Motor current characteristics as scheduled. Coordinate motor voltage with Division 26. Verify voltage with Electrical Plans.
   1. Thermal overload protection.
   2. Sleeve bearings.

D. Provide isolation between fan motor assembly and unit casing.

E. Provide a manual speed control system to allow continuously adjustable fan speed from maximum to minimum.
   1. Electronic speed control matched to operate with the motor.
   2. Speed controller shall incorporate a minimum voltage stop to ensure motor cannot operate in a stall mode.

F. Fan disconnect switch. This is not to be used as a main disconnect switch.

G. Provide electric heating models with the following items:
   1. Single point electrical connection
   2. Line side disconnect switch
   3. Motor fuse
   4. Motor disconnect switch
   5. Fan SCR and relay
   6. Control transformer
   7. Air flow switch
   8. Heat contactors
   9. Thermal Hi-Limit Auto Reset switch

## 2.5 PRIMARY AIR DAMPER AND ACTUATOR

A. The control actuator shall vary the primary air damper in response to the control signal.
   1. Damper leakage at shutoff shall not exceed 2.0% at 1" WG pressure.
   2. Locate the damper inside the unit.
   3. Damper connection to the operating shaft shall be a positive mechanical connection.
   4. Damper shall have bearings at all penetrations of inlet tube and terminal housing. Penetration of damper shaft in terminal lining shall have seal at surface of lining to prevent fiber entrainment through rotation of damper shaft.
   5. Two damper stop pins shall be provided. One pin shall ensure damper cannot rotate beyond full closed position. One pin shall ensure damper cannot rotate beyond full open position.
   6. Inlet tube shall have rolled bead (outward position) prior to penetration point of

flow sensor tubing to provide stop point for hard duct and anchor point for flex duct.

7. Flow sensor tubing shall have gaskets at penetration point of inlet tube.
8. Flow sensor shall be center averaging type. Non-center averaging flow sensors are not acceptable.

## 2.6 AIR FLOW CONTROL

A. Provide a flow control device that will limit the maximum CFM of the unit to that scheduled on the drawings.
   1. Air quantity shall be factory set.
   2. Thermostat signal shall reset the flow control device to reduce primary air quantity to match load requirements.
   3. Control shall be pressure independent.
   4. Each terminal shall incorporate a flow cross sensor with pick-up points connected to a center averaging chamber to ensure the following performance:
      a. Controller fidelity shall be +/-5% of set volume with a flex inlet configuration and inlet static variation of 0.5" WG to 6.0" WG.
   5. Provide flow measuring taps and a flow chart with each unit for field balancing air flow.

B. HOT WATER HEATING COILS
   1. Provide hot water heating coils sized as scheduled.
      a. The hot water heating coil is specified to be provided and mounted under the work of this Section.
      b. Coil access door upstream of coil.
      c. Install coil with supply inlet at bottom and on leaving airside of coil.
      d. Maximum static pressure drop of water through heating coil shall not exceed 10’ w.g.
      e. Maximum static pressure drop of air through heating coil shall not exceed 0.25” esp

# PART 3 – EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Deliver and store products in a clean and dry place. Protect products from the weather, dirt, dust, construction debris and physical damage.

B. Install each unit in accordance with the manufacturer's printed installation instructions.

C. Suspend each unit from 1/4" electroplated zinc thread rods secured from structure.
   1. Provide sub-structure where required.
   2. Mount bottom of terminal unit no more than 18" above the finish ceiling height.
   3. Install units so that they are level and plumb.

D. Install a straight length of rigid ductwork upstream of all boxes. Provide at least 3 primary air inlet diameters of straight ductwork upstream of the primary air inlet connections. Flexible duct connections at boxes are allowed but are not a substitute for

the straight run of rigid duct. A maximum of 4' of flexible duct is allowed at each box. All changes in direction shall be made with rigid duct. Seal connection at box, as required to comply with system maximum allowable leakage.

E. Coordinate the location of each variable air volume unit to ensure proper clearance so that all components are accessible and not blocked by other trades. Provide no less than the code required clearances to electrical components.

F. Cover and seal the openings of the VAV inlets during construction to prevent the inside from getting dirty. Where VAV units are considered dirty, as determined by the Architect / Engineer / Owner, clean the VAV units with a vacuum machine, and then wipe all surfaces with a cleaning agent, using clean rags.

G. Installation shall meet or exceed all applicable federal, state and local requirements, referenced standards and conform to codes and ordinances of authorities having jurisdiction.

H. All installation shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published recommendations.

I. Provide clearance for inspection, repair, replacement and service. Ensure accessibility to all terminal unit electrical control panel doors, controllers and operators are located a minimum of 30 inches from all obstructions (walls, pipe, etc.).

J. Provide ceiling access doors or locate units above easily removable ceiling components.

K. Support units individually from structure. Do not support for adjacent ductwork. Terminal units shall be supported using unit's hanger brackets and threaded rods.

## 3.2 MISCELLANEOUS CONTROLS

A. The following equipment items are to be furnished by Building Management and Control System and installed by Fan Powered Terminal Unit manufacturer:
   1. Automatic temperature control card (DDC).
   2. Damper actuator.

B. The following equipment items are to be furnished and installed by the Fan Powered Terminal Unit manufacturer:
   1. Damper.
   2. Multi-point flow sensor.
   3. Controller enclosure.
   4. Power transformer.

C. Coordinate the output voltage required by the Building Management and Control System.

D. Coordinate location of controller enclosure.

## 3.3 ACOUSTICAL PERFORMANCE TEST

A. Test each size for each type of variable air volume unit furnished on the project.

B. Test for radiated noise and discharge noise in all operational modes from minimum to maximum primary air settings; at inlet air pressures of 1 and 2 inches water column, and at primary air settings of 20, 40, 60 and 100 percent.

C. Testing shall be done by an independent testing laboratory. Sound values submitted shall be certified by the laboratory doing the testing. Testing laboratory must be approved by Engineer. Final testing and approval must be witnessed by Engineer.

D. Testing procedures shall be in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 130-96 and rated in accordance with ARI 880.

E. Test the unit complete with damper, coils and controls. The unit shall be operational and represent a final version of the units to be installed on the project.

F. If the units do not meet sound criteria, modify the units and retest at no additional cost to the Owner until the sound criteria is in accordance with Contract Documents. The variable air volume unit manufacturer shall be held liable for the costs associated with construction delays resulting from failed test, not to exceed the purchase order cost.

G. Sound Levels: Maximum sound power levels resulting from any box shall not exceed the following:

| **OCTAVE BAND CENTER FREQUENCY, Hz.** | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 125 | 250 | 500 | 1000 | 2000 | 4000 |
| Radiated SPL db | 52 | 45 | 40 | 36 | 34 | 33 |
| Discharge SPL db | 44 | 37 | 31 | 27 | 24 | 22 |

1. Sound power levels are referenced to 10-12 watts.
2. Box inlet static pressure = 1-1/2”
3. No discounting for roof effect, ceiling attenuation, lined duct, division of flow and other similar effects.

H. All terminal boxes shall be equipped with a sheetmetal elbow with liner connected to plenum air inlet.

## 3.4 SPARE PARTS

A. Provide one spare motor for each size box.

## 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Furnish each unit with a durable, deep etched, .025” thick, plastic laminated identification plate, permanently mounted with the following information:
1. Unit identification as indicated on Contract Drawings.
2. Area served by unit
3. Serial Number.
4. Model Number.
5. Capacity (CFM) and static pressure.

6. Motor HP.
7. Unit power supply: Volts / PH / Amps.
8. Coil GPM and pressure drop.
9. Sales Order #.
10. Date unit manufactured.

**END OF SECTION 23 36 16**

# SECTION 23 37 13 - AIR DEVICES

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install air distribution devices, including grilles, diffusers, registers, dampers, and extractors.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 23 Mechanical.
   1. Ductwork.
   2. Air Balance.
   3. Electrical Requirements for Mechanical Work.

### 1.3 COOPERATION WITH OTHER TRADES

A. Coordinate this work with work under Division 26 Electrical, to ensure that intended functions of lighting and air systems are achieved.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit product data for outlets, grilles, registers, control devices, and similar equipment for review prior to placement of purchase order.

B. Submittal shall include performance sheet for each air device type. Performance sheet shall include NC levels, throw, and total pressure loss at various air flows.

### 1.5 FINISHES

A. Paint exposed devices with factory standard prime coat, or factory finish coat, as specified.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 DIFFUSERS, GRILLES AND REGISTERS - Refer to Drawing Schedule.

### 2.2 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Titus.

B. Krueger.

C. Nailor Industries.

D. Price

E. Metal-Aire

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Supply Grille Extractors. Provide supply grilles with an air control device capable of positively regulating the volume of air extracted from the supply duct. Select extractors similar to Titus Model AG25, tight-closing in the minimum position. Include a key-operated or worm-gear adjusting mechanism to facilitate positioning from the grille opening. Where adjustment is not accessible at the grille opening, provide a square control rod equipped with a locking quadrant.

B. Mounting Frames. Provide each grille or register not equipped with a removable core with a companion, all-purpose mounting frame constructed like grille frame to facilitate installation and removal of the grille or register without marring adjacent mounting surfaces.
   1. Furnish frames with 1/2" thick sponge rubber gasket to prevent air leakage.
   2. Provide a frame that neatly fits the grille. Mounting frames will not be required for grilles or registers mounted directly on exposed ductwork.

# PART 3 – EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSPECTION

A. Do not install ceilings adjacent to fixtures until installation of fixtures, air supply assemblies, return-air blank-off strips and flexible duct have been approved. Remove and reinstall any part of the installation found incorrect.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Louvered diffuser outlets mount tight against the ceiling. Fasten outlets to ductwork with sheet metal screws. For perforated diffusers, attach the frame assembly by a concealed hinge assembly to an outer frame compatible with the type of ceiling on which the diffuser is installed.

**END OF SECTION 23 37 13**

# SECTION 23 41 00 - AIR FILTRATION

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install air filters and air filter gauges.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 23 Mechanical.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit manufacturer's product data sheets and capacity information as specified.

B. Submit recommended Dirty Filter pressure drop.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MEDIUM EFFICIENCY AIR FILTERS

A. The filter cells:
   1. Pleated media.
   2. Disposable type.
   3. Contain not less than 4.6 sq. ft. of filtering media per square foot of face area.
   4. 16 pleats per linear foot of filter.
   5. 2" thick.
   6. MERV 13

B. Media of reinforced nonwoven cotton fabric treated with adhesive and continuously laminated to a supporting steel wire grid conforming to the configuration of the pleats.
   1. Seal the media pack in a chipboard frame.

C. Rated average dust spot efficiency of not less than 36%.
   1. Average synthetic arrestance in excess of 93% when tested in accordance with the ASHRAE 52-68 test standard.

D. Filter capable of operating with variable face velocities up to 500 fpm without impairing efficiency.

E. Initial resistance to air flow:
   1. 300 fpm - 0.12" WG.
   2. 500 fpm - 0.28" WG.

F. UL listed with Class II rating.

G. Provide one spare set for a complete change, in original cartons, for Owner's use during the warranty period.

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. Install the filters and filter gauges in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**END OF SECTION 23 41 00**

# SECTION 23 43 00 - AIR PURIFICATION SYSTEM

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install an air purification system intended for the use as a part of another manufacturer's air handling unit as shown on the drawings, details and equipment schedules.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 23 Mechanical.
   1. Ductwork.
   2. Air Balance.
   3. Electrical Requirements for Mechanical Work.
   4. Building Management and Control System.
   5. Ductwork.

### 1.3 REFERENCES

A. ASHRAE Standard 62.1 – Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality

B. ASHRAE Standard 52.2 – Method of Testing General Air Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size

C. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code

D. U.L. 867 – Electrostatic Air Cleaners

E. U.L. 2998 - Environmental Claim Validation Procedure (ECVP)

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit manufacturer's documentation in accordance with specification requirements.

B. Submit the following information:
   1. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
   2. Minimum Circuit Ampacity.
   3. Maximum Overcurrent Protection size.
   4. Electrical interlocks.

C. Submit recommended clearance dimensions for air flow and service.

D. Submit a schedule, at the front of the submittal, of equipment indicating:
   1. Unit designation
   2. Model number

3. Electrical characteristics

E. Submit Copy of U.L. 2998 and U.L. 867 certificates for each product being submitted.

F. Mark-up a copy of the specifications, indicating in the margin of each paragraph, the following: COMPLY, DO NOT COMPLY, NOT APPLICABLE.

**1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

A. A qualified representative from the manufacturer shall be available to inspect the installation of the air purification system to ensure installation in accordance with manufacturer's recommendation.

B. Manufacturers shall have their product tested to UL 2998 Environmental Standard for confirmation of no ozone with certificate available. The final report shall indicate the ozone levels and high voltage output the device's electrode(s) were operating during the test. Reports that do not include high voltage output during the UL 2998 testing shall not be acceptable.

**1.6 DELIEVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

A. Deliver in factory fabricated shipping containers. Identify on outside of container type of product and location to be installed. Avoid crushing or bending.

B. Store in original cartons and protect from weather and construction work traffic.

C. Store indoors and in accordance with the manufacturers' recommendation for storage.

**1.7 WARRANTY**

A. The manufacturer shall provide a parts warranty for a period of three (3) years from substantial completion.

**PART 2 – PRODUCTS**

**2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS**

A. Global Plasma Solutions

B. Engineer and Owner approved equal. Must submit prior approval request to Engineer and Owner as described in specifications.

**2.2 DESIGN AND PERFORMANCE CRITERIA**

A. Each piece of air handling equipment (Air Handling Units, Outside Air Handling Units, Fan Coil Units, and Packaged Rooftop Air Conditioners), as designated on the plans, details, equipment schedules and/or specifications shall contain a Plasma Generator with Bi-polar Ionization output as described here within.

B. The Bi-polar Ionization system shall be capable of:
   1. Effectively killing microorganisms downstream of the bi-polar ionization equipment (mold, bacteria, virus, etc.).
   2. Controlling gas phase contaminants generated from human occupants, building structure, furnishings and outside air contaminants.
   3. Capable of reducing static space charges.
   4. Effectively reducing space particle counts.
   5. When mounted to the air entering side of a cooling coil, keep the cooling coil free from pathogen and mold growth. A non-contact voltage detector can confirm the entire coil is covered with airflow turned off. Devices that do not clean the entire coil are not acceptable.
   6. All manufacturers shall provide documentation by an independent NELEC accredited laboratory that proves the product has minimum kill rates for the following pathogens given the allotted time and in a space condition:
      a. MRSA - >96% in 30 minutes or less
      b. E.coli - > 99% in 15 minutes or less
      c. TB - > 69% in 60 minutes or less
      d. C. diff - >86% in 30 minutes or less
      e. Noro Virus -> 93.5% in 30 minutes or less
      f. Legionella -> 99.7% in 30 minutes or less
      g. SARS-COV2 -> 99.4% in 30 minutes or less
   7. Capable of modular field assembly in six-inch (150mm) sections.

C. The bi-polar ionization system shall operate in a manner such that equal amounts of positive and negative ions are produced. Ionizers with positive and negative output (DC type) shall be self-cleaning. Ionizers provided on AHUs shall be AC type ionizers with each electrode pulsing between positive and negative and the electrode shall be modular. Ionizers on RTUs shall be self-cleaning DC type ionization. All ionization systems shall use carbon fiber brushes
   1. Air exchange rates may vary through the full operating range of a constant volume or VAV system. The quantity of air exchange shall not be increased due to requirements of the air purification system.
   2. Velocity Profile: The air purification device shall not have maximum velocity profile.

D. Humidity: Plasma Generators shall not require preheat protection when the relative humidity of the entering air exceeds 85%. Relative humidity from 0 - 100%, condensing, shall not cause damage, deterioration or dangerous conditions within the air purification system. Air purification system shall be capable of wash down duty.

E. Equipment Requirements for Air Handling Units and Packaged Rooftop Air Conditioners:
   1. Electrode Specifications (Bi-polar Ionization):
      a. Each alternating current (AC) Ionization Bar with Bi-polar Ionization output shall include a minimum of eighteen carbon fiber cluster ion needles per foot of coil face width shall be provided. The entire cooling coil width shall have equal distribution of ionization across the face. Systems without ion needles at least 0.50” (12.5mm) apart shall not be acceptable. The plasma

electrode shall require no more than 1.0" (25mm) in the direction of airflow for mounting. AC ionization bars using any electrode material other than carbon fiber brushes, shall not be acceptable. All hardware required for mounting shall be provided by the air purification manufacturer except self-tapping screws for the power supply. Bi-polar ionization tubes manufactured of glass and steel mesh shall not be acceptable due to replacement requirements, maintenance, and performance output reduction over time, ozone production and corrosion.

b. Electrodes shall be provided in 6.0" (150mm) increments, epoxy filled for an IP55 rating and utilizing brass connection hardware that is recessed into the connection joint once fully engaged and assembled.

c. Electrodes shall be energized when the main unit disconnect is turned on.

d. The ionization output shall be a minimum of 140M ions/cc per inch of cooling coil width as measured 1 inch from the cold plasma needles. Provide multiple rows of bars to achieve equivalent output per inch listed above.

e. Ionization bars shall be provided with magnet mounting kits to prevent penetration into cooling coils.

f. Ionization bars shall be constructed of UL 94VO and UL746C composite material.

g. Device shall be OSPD certified.

F. Equipment Requirements for Ductless Units, Fan Coils and Wall Mount Units:

1. Electrode Specifications (Bi-polar Ionization):

a. The mechanical contractor shall mount the Plasma Generator and wire it to the unit control power (24VAC) as instructed by the Air Purification Manufacturer's instructions or line voltage subject to power available. Each unit shall be designed with a molded casing, programmable self-cleaning system, self-cleaning test button, power status LED and dry contacts to prove ion output is operating properly. The dry contacts shall close to prove the ion generator is working properly and may be daisy chained in series such that only one dry contact per air handler is required to interface to the BAS or the optional DDC controller where airflow capacity requires more than one unit. Dry contacts proving power has been applied in lieu of the ion output is actually operating, are not acceptable. Manufacturers providing multiple ion modules that have alarm status wired in parallel, and not in series, shall not be acceptable.

b. Ionization output from self-cleaning units shall be a minimum of 200M ions/cc for units < 1200CFM and a minimum of 400M ions.cc for units > 1200CFM.

c. Carbon fiber brushes shall be replaceable.

d. Voltage input shall be universal acceptance from 24VAC to 240VAC or DC without the use of an external transformer.

G. Electrical Requirements:

1. Wiring, conduit and junction boxes shall be installed within housing plenums in accordance with NEC NFPA 70. Plasma Generator shall accept an electrical service of 24VAC, 115 VAC or 208-230VAC, 1 phase, 50/60 Hz. The contractor shall

coordinate electrical requirements with air purification manufacturer during submittals.

2. All Plasma Generators shall have internal short circuit protection, overload protection, and automatic fault reset. Systems requiring fuses shall not be acceptable.
3. The Plasma Generator power supply shall have internal circuitry to sense the ionization output and provide dry contact alarm status to the BMS as well as a local "Plasma On" indication light.
4. The installing contractor shall mount and wire the Plasma device within the air handling unit specified or as shown or the plans. The contractor shall follow all manufacturer IOM instructions during installation.
5. All wiring provided with plasma generator shall be plenum rated and have visible label on each wire routed in a return air plenum.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 GENERAL

A. The Contractor shall be responsible for maintaining all air systems until the substantial completion.

### 3.2 ASSEMBLY & ERECTION

A. All equipment shall be assembled and installed in a workman like manner to the satisfaction of the owner, architect, and engineer.
B. Any material damaged by handling, water or moisture shall be replaced, by the mechanical contractor, at no cost to the owner.
C. All equipment shall be protected from dust and damage on a daily basis throughout construction.
D. Units equipped with dry contacts for BMCS interface shall NOT be utilized on this project.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

A. For bar installations on any unit that will not allow for the use of provided magnets, contractor shall provide a Unistrut support system to ensure bars can be locaed and installed per manufacturers installation instructions and recommendations.

B. Power modules mounted on the exterior of interior Air Handling Units shall be installed at locations that avoid restricting Air Handling Unit functionality, component access, or conflict with service doors.

C. All Ionization unit wiring routed internally to air units shall be secured using cable hold down clips and routed neatly and, in a manner, to avoid physical damage or operation.

### 3.4 ASSEMBLY & ERECTION: PLASMA GENERATOR

A. All equipment shall be assembled and installed in a workman like manner to the satisfaction of the owner, architect, and engineer.

B. Any material damaged by handling, water or moisture shall be replaced, by the mechanical contractor, at no cost to the owner.

C. All equipment shall be protected from dust and damage on a daily basis throughout construction.

## 3.5 TESTING

A. Provide the manufacturers recommended electrical tests.

## 3.6 COMMISSIONING & TRAINING

A. A manufacturer's authorized representative shall provide start-up supervision and training of owner's personnel in the proper operation and maintenance of all equipment.

**END OF SECTION 23 43 00**

# SECTION 23 52 35 - GAS-FIRED MODULATING HOT WATER BOILER

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. This section specifies a packaged, gas-fired, power type condensing stainless steel boiler complete with all controls and trim for indoor installation.

B. Each factory "packaged" boiler shall be complete with all components, accessories and appurtenances necessary for a complete and operable boiler as hereinafter specified. Each unit shall be furnished factory assembled with required wiring and piping as a self-contained unit. Each unit shall be readily transported and ready for installation.

C. Each factory "packaged" boiler, including pressure vessel, trim, valve trains, burner, control system, and all related components, accessories and appurtenances as herein specified shall all be assembled and furnished by the boiler manufacturer. The boiler manufacturer shall provide unit responsibility for the engineering, coordination, workmanship, performance, warranties, and all field services for each factory "packaged" boiler as specified herein. The boiler manufacturer shall be fully responsible for all components assembled and furnished by him whether or not they are of his own manufacture.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 23 - Mechanical
   1. Hot Water Piping
   2. Gas Piping
   3. Ductwork

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE

A. Provide performance as scheduled on drawings. Boiler shall be certified for up to 99% efficiency.

### 1.4 WARRANTIES

A. The boiler manufacturer shall warrant each boiler, including boiler, trim, boiler control system, and all related components, accessories, and appurtenances against defects in workmanship and material for a period of eighteen (18) months from date of substantial completion. Heat exchanger and fuel burner shall be warranted for a period of five (5) years from date of substantial completion.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Laars MagnaTherm

B. Patterson Kelly Sonic

C. RBI Flexcore

**2.2 PERFORMANCE CRITERIA**

A. Each boiler shall be capable of operating continuously at rated capacity while maintaining a CSA certified efficiency of not less than 92 % on 500 MBH input boilers and less and not less than 95% on larger than 500 MBH input boilers. Each boiler shall be capable of operating with a minimum outlet water temperature of 68º F.

B. Boiler shall comply with ASME Section IV for 80 psig, max 200º F (100 psig on 1500 MBH and larger units).

C. Fuel shall be natural gas with an assumed higher heating value of 1,030 Btu/Cu Ft and an assumed specific gravity of 0.60 (relative to air). Natural gas shall be supplied at a pressure of no less than 3.5 inch WC to the inlet gas valve. Maximum inlet gas pressure shall not exceed 14 inch WC.

D. Boilers shall be certified for low NOx by the TCEQ. NOx emissions shall not exceed 30 PPM when referenced at 3% O2 at all firing rates.

E. The burner, gas train and controls shall conform to the requirements of I.R.I. /G.E. Gap.

**2.3 BOILER DESIGN**

A. Each hot water boiler shall consist of a horizontal, stainless steel heat exchanger complete with trim, valve trains, burner, and boiler control system. The boiler manufacturer shall fully coordinate the boiler as to the interaction of its elements with the burner and the boiler control system in order to provide the required capacities, efficiencies, and performance as specified.

B. Each boiler heat exchanger shall be stainless steel, counter-flow design for maximum heat transfer with the multiple sections arranged in a reverse return configuration to assure balanced flow through each section

C. Contractor must, when filling the system, verify that the pH level is maintained between 6.0 and 8.5.

D. All boiler pressure parts shall be constructed in accordance with the latest revision of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IV, and shall be so stamped.

E. Boiler heat exchanger headers shall be fabricated steel and be completely removable for inspection. Seals shall be EPDM, rated for 400 deg F service. Push nipples or gaskets between the sections are not permitted.

F. Boiler shall be enclosed with a single wall outer casing. It shall be fabricated from minimum 16 gauge carbon steel. The front and top wall shall be secured in place with ¼ -20 NC bolts (sheet metal screws are not acceptable).The complete outer casing shall be finished, inside and out, with a powder coat finish. The composite structure of the boiler combustion chamber, insulating air gap and outer casing shall be of such thickness and materials to

assure an outer casing temperature of not more than 50°F above ambient temperature when the boiler is operated at full rated load.

G. An observation port shall be located on the boiler to allow for observation of the burner flame.

H. Boiler shall have a single condensing heat exchanger. A boiler that utilizes a secondary condensing heat exchanger is unacceptable.

## 2.4 BOILER TRIM

A. Each boiler shall be provided with all necessary trim. Boiler trim shall be as follows:
   1. Safety relief valve shall be provided in compliance with the ASME code. Contractor is to pipe to acceptable drain.
   2. Water pressure-temperature gauge.
   3. Primary low water flow fuel cutoff (probe type with manual reset).
   4. Manual reset high limit water temperature controller.
   5. Operating temperature control to control the sequential operation of the burner.
   6. Separate inlet and outlet water temperature sensors capable of monitoring flow
   7. Exhaust temperature sensor
   8. Provide condensate neutralization kit (shipped loose).

## 2.5 BOILER FUEL BURNING SYSTEM

A. The boiler manufacturer shall furnish each boiler with an integral, power type, straight gas, fully automatic fuel burner. The fuel burner shall be an assembly of gas burner, combustion air blower, valve train, and ignition system. The burner manufacturer shall fully coordinate the burner as to the interaction of its elements with the boiler heat exchanger and the boiler control system in order to provide the required capacities, efficiencies, and performance as specified.

B. Each burner shall be provided with an integral gas firing combustion head.

C. Each burner shall provide adequate turbulence and mixing to achieve proper combustion without producing smoke or producing combustibles in the flue gases.

D. Each boiler shall be provided with an integral variable speed power blower to premix combustion air and fuel within the blower. The combustion air blower shall have sufficient capacity at the rated firing rate to provide air for stoichiometric combustion plus the necessary excess air. Static and total pressure capability shall comply with the requirements of the boiler. The blower shall operate at 6000 RPM maximum without undue vibration and noise and shall be designed and constructed for exposure to temperatures normal to its location on the boiler. The operating fan speed will be tachometer sensed and be capable of being displayed at the text based display.

E. Each burner shall of the radial-fired (down-fired) type and constructed of steel with a stainless steel inner and stainless steel mesh outer screen.

F. Each boiler shall be provided with a “Full Modulating” firing control system whereby the

firing rate is infinitely proportional at any firing rate between 20% and 100% as determined by the pulse width modulation input control signal. Both fuel input and air input must be sequenced in unison to the appropriate firing rate without the use of mechanical linkage.

G. The Micro Processor shall use a Proportional Integral Algorithm to determine the firing rate. The control must have the following capabilities:
   1. Maintain single set point
   2. Reset the set point based on outdoor air temperature.
   3. Boiler shutdown based on outdoor air temperature
   4. Internal dual set point program with an external switchover. (e.g. - night setback w/external clock, supplied by others)
   5. Alarm relay for any for any manual reset alarm function.
   6. Programmable Low Fire Delay to prevent short cycling based on a time and temperature factor for release to modulation.
   7. Text Based Display showing current supply and return temperatures, current set points as well as differential set points. It must also display any fault codes whether automatically reset or manually reset.
   8. Local Manual Operation.
   9. Remote Control System (Building Management / Sequencer Control) - The boiler control shall be capable of accepting a 0 -10vdc remote external analog signal to control the firing rate
   10. Computer (PC) interface for programming and monitoring all functions

**2.6 MAIN GAS VALVE TRAIN**

A. Each boiler shall be provided with an integral main gas valve train. The main gas valve trains shall be factory assembled, piped, and wired. Each gas valve train shall include at least the following:
   1. Two (2) safety shutoff valves. Valves equipped with dual solenoids that can independently energized for leak testing.
   2. Air – Gas ratio control (maximum inlet pressure 14 inch WC)
   3. One (1) low gas pressure switch (manual reset).
   4. One (1) high gas pressure switch (manual reset).
   5. Two (2) pressure test ports

**2.7 IGNITION SYSTEM**

A. Each boiler shall be equipped for direct spark ignition

**2.8 COMBUSTION AIR CONTROL SYSTEM**

A. Each boiler shall be provided with an integral combustion air control system. The combustion air system shall be factory assembled. Each combustion air control system shall include at least the following:
   1. The primary control shall vary the speed of the blower based on load demand. The blower shall apply a varying negative pressure on the gas valve which will open or close to maintain zero pressure at the valve orifice, thereby increasing or decreasing the firing rate. Both the air and gas shall be premixed in the blower.
   2. One (1) low airflow differential pressure switch to insure that combustion air is

supplied.

3. High exhaust back pressure switch

## 2.9 BURNER CONTROL SYSTEM

A. The control system shall be supplied with a 24 VAC transformer (120 VAC, single phase, 60 hertz primary). The 120/1/60 power supply to each boiler shall be protected by a 15 Amp circuit breaker located in the MCC (supplied by contractor).

B. The boiler shall include an electric spark ignition system. Main flame shall be monitored and controlled by flame rod (rectification) system.

C. Each boiler shall be provided with all necessary controls, all necessary programming sequences, and all safety interlocks. Each boiler control system shall be properly interlocked with all safeties.

D. Each boiler control system shall provide timed sequence pre-ignition air purge of boiler combustion chamber. The combustion airflow sensor shall monitor and prove the airflow purge.

## 2.10 BOILER CONTROL PANEL

A. The boiler manufacturer shall provide each boiler with an integral factory prewired control panel. The control panel shall contain at least the following components, all prewired to a numbered terminal strip:

1. One (1) burner "on-off" switch.
2. One (1) electronic combination temperature control, flame safeguard and system control.
3. Control circuit breaker, 5 amp
4. All necessary control switches, pushbuttons, relays, timers, terminal strips, etc.
5. Text Based Display Panel to adjust set points and control operating parameters. Text Based Display is to indicate burner sequence, all service codes (0-65), fan speed, boiler set point, and sensor values such as inlet, outlet, flue gas and outdoor air.

## 2.11 FACTORY TESTING – HYDROSTATIC

A. Each factory "packaged" boiler shall be hydrostatically tested and bear the ASME “H” stamp.

## 2.12 FACTORY TESTING - FIRE TESTING

A. Each factory "packaged" boiler shall be fire tested. The boiler manufacturer shall perform this fire test under simulated operating conditions, with the boiler attached to a working chimney system and with water circulating through the boiler. The manufacturer shall provide a fire test report, including fuel and air settings and combustion test results permanently affixed to the boiler.

## 2.13 SEQUENCE CONTROLLER

A. Boiler shall be provided with a boiler sequence controller that is capable of controlling a) one or multiple boilers, b) all condensing or all non-condensing boilers, c) combination of condensing and non-condensing boilers (hybrid system). When controlling hybrid systems, sequence controller shall sequence the lead boiler based on its condensing capabilities to provide the most efficient operation. Controller shall be capable of communicating via MODBUS protocol. Controller shall allow boiler or boilers to operate off of a remote header sensor (header sensor provided by boiler manufacturer, installed by contractor). Controller shall be capable of allowing boiler or boilers to operate based on outdoor reset, see specification Section 23 09 33 for reset schedule. This shall be achieved by either, a) programming the controller with an outdoor air reset curve in conjunction with a separate outdoor air sensor (outdoor sensor shall be provided by boiler manufacturer, installed by contractor), b) setpoint control via 0-10 VDC analog communication with building automation system, c) setpoint control via MODBUS communication. Controller shall visually display relay status, firing rate of each boiler, header temperature, outdoor air temperature. Coordinate wiring of this controller with mechanical and control's contractor.

## 2.14 CARBON MONOXIDE MONITORING SYSTEM

A. Provide and install a manual reset Carbon Monoxide Detector located within the boiler room when combustion air is ducted to boilers. The Carbon Monoxide Detector and the boilers shall be interlocked so that the burners will not operate when the level of CO in the room rises above 100ppm. The Carbon Monoxide detector shall disable the boiler's burner upon loss of power to the detector.

B. Carbon Monoxide Sensor with two year warranty by U.S. Draft Co. Model CGM-505 with model XB expansion module.
1. Provided with pre-programmed dry contacts to shut down equipment during unsafe operation.
2. NEMA 1 Enclosure
3. Complies with Texas State Boiler Code 65.603-2015
4. Additional features shall include 0-10 VDC control signal out, visual alarm and audible alarm.
5. Provide expansion board for additional equipment interlocks.

# PART 3 – EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install isolation valves and unions on supply and return water lines to boiler.

B. Install strainer, drain with valve, pressure and temperature gauge on return water line to boiler.

C. Install main gas cock, drip leg and union close to boiler.

D. Install on 4" concrete pad and place into operation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Pipe as detailed on drawings.

F. Provide Category IV vent stack material. Mechanical contractor shall coordinate draft requirements and other venting requirements between stack supplier and boiler supplier.

G. Install boilers, piping and accessories in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and state boiler code.

H. Pipe each gas relief vent to the outdoors, in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and the local codes.

I. Contractor must, when filling the system, verify that the pH level is maintained between 6.0 and 8.5.

J. Contractor to route condensate connection off of boiler and stack to acid neutralization kit and then to appropriate drain. Trap as required by boiler manufacturer.

## 3.2 BOILER MANUFACTURER STARTUP SERVICE

A. Provide factory authorized startup services to assure its proper operation.

B. Set the boiler operating and safety controls.

C. Perform a flue gas analysis at the boiler outlet. Record the following results of the analysis:
   1. Carbon dioxide percent volume.
   2. Oxygen percent volume.
   3. Stack temperature.
   4. Calculated combustion efficiency.

D. Do not operate the boiler for any reason until the factory startup service has been completed.

E. Startup procedure shall include a functional test of Carbon Monoxide Detector. Simulate an alarm condition and demonstrate the functionality of the detector shutting down the appliances. Owner/Engineer shall be present to witness test.

## 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Furnish each unit with a durable, deep etched, .025” thick, factory installed aluminum identification plate, permanently mounted with the following information:
   1. Unit identification as indicated on Contract Drawings.
   2. Serial Number.
   3. Model Number.
   4. Unit power supply: Volts / PH / Amps.
   5. Sales Order #.
   6. Date unit manufactured.

**END OF SECTION 23 52 35**

# SECTION 23 65 27 - AIR-COOLED ROTARY SCROLL CHILLER

**PART 1 – GENERAL**

**1.1 WORK INCLUDED**

A. Furnish and Install a packaged, electric-driven, air-cooled, water chilling unit with multiple scroll compressors complete, heat recovery circuit and with controls.

**1.2 RELATED WORK**

A. Division 23 - Mechanical
   1. Chilled Water Piping
   2. Insulation
   3. Building Management Control System
   4. Vibration Isolation
   5. Electrical Provisions of Mechanical Work

**1.3 REFERENCES**

A. ANSI/ARI 550/590 - Water Chilling Packages using the Vapor Compression Cycle.

B. ANSI/ASHRAE 15 - Safety Code for Mechanical Refrigeration.

C. ANSI/ASHRAE 90A - Energy Conservation in New Building Design.

D. ANSI/ASME SEC 8 - Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code

E. ANSI/NEMA MG 1 - Motors and Generators.

F. ANSI/UL 465 - Central Cooling Air Conditioners.

G. ANSI/AFBMA 9-1978 - Load Ratings and Fatigue Life for Ball Bearings. Bearings must have life of not less than 200,000 hours.

H. ANSI/NFPA Standard 70 - National Electrical Code (NEC)

I. ASTM B117 - Standard Method of Salt Spray (Fog) Testing

J. ASTM A123 - Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products

K. ASTM A525 - Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Sheet Steel Products

L. ASTM D1654 - Evaluation of Painted or Coated Specimens, Subjected to Corrosive Environments.

**1.3 PERFORMANCE**

A. Provide performance as scheduled on drawings. Provide factory run test to ensure proper

chiller operation. Provide certified documentation to Owner in Closeout Documents.

## 1.4 WARRANTY

A. The Chiller manufacturer shall provide a full machine parts, labor, and refrigerant warranty and maintenance service agreement for a period of five (5) years from substantial completion.
   1. The warranty shall include, but not be limited to the compressor assemblies including motor, condensers, fans, variable frequency drives, controls, evaporator, condenser, refrigeration system and all other auxiliary components and accessories as well as refrigerant and oils in systems.
   2. In the event of failure, provide new or factory authorized rebuilt parts. Shop or job site rebuilt parts are not acceptable.
   3. On all manufacturers warranties the chiller manufacturer shall provide a factory certificate listing as a minimum chiller model, serial, and warranty information as specified above. Each chiller tag shall be provided with an individual and unique warranty certificate. Manufacturer's representative warranty letters are not acceptable as an alternative to the original manufacturer's certificates.
   4. The chiller manufacturer authorized service agency is required to perform any and all warranty service. Contractor warranty service is not authorized. Warranty work shall be performed with District Representative present.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit manufacturer's certified computer generated performance and capacity data in accordance with specification requirements.

B. Submit the following information:
   1. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
   2. Minimum Circuit Ampacity.
   3. Maximum Overcurrent Protection size.
   4. Maximum conductor / Terminal Lug size.
   5. Minimum flow thru evaporator.
   6. Electrical interlocks.

C. Submit recommended clearance dimensions for air flow and service.

D. Submit coordination drawings as specified.
   1. Give consideration to adjacent structures as they affect air flow patterns.

E. Submit internal wiring diagram of Control Center.

F. Submit sequence of operation in narrative form.

G. Submit a letter stating chiller being proposed meets the efficiency requirements of Centerpoint Energy's Score Program listed in Centerpoint Energy's Design Guide: HVAC Recommendations document.

H. Mark-up a copy of the specifications, indicating in the margin of each paragraph, the following: COMPLY, DO NOT COMPLY, NOT APPLICABLE.

## 1.6 STORAGE/HANDLING/SHIPPING

A. Comply with manufacturer's installation instructions for rigging, unloading, and transporting units.

B. Protect units from physical damage. Factory coil shipping covers shall be kept in place until installation.

C. Unit controls shall be capable of withstanding 203°F (95°C) storage temperatures in the control compartment for an indefinite period of time.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Carrier

## 2.2 COMPRESSORS

A. Provide a minimum of two independently circuited hermetic rotary scroll type compressors with the following:
   1. Direct drive, 3600 rpm, suction gas-cooled hermetic motor.
   2. Rubber isolation pads.
   3. Crankcase heaters.
   4. Oil sight glass.
   5. Load and unload solenoid valves.
   6. Discharge oil separator.
   7. Hot gas bypass for compressor unloading.
   8. Centrifugal oil pump.
   9. Oil charging valve.

B. Provide capacity modulation from 100% to 25% via compressor cycling.
   1. Control to be based upon leaving chilled water.
   2. To avoid excessive compressor cycling while maintaining leaving chilled water temperature at desired temperature +/- differential, compressor cycling set points to be separated by a minimum 20% capacity dead band.

C. Unit shall be equipped with factory installed Ultra-Low Sound Compressor Sound Reduction enclosure the encases each compressor. The sound reduction enclosure shall meet or exceed maximum A-weighted sound pressure level rating of 70dBA at 30’ from the condenser coil side of chiller per AHRI. Complete sound attenuation package shall be provided regardless if scheduled dBA is met without.

## 2.3 CONDENSER COILS

A. Coils shall be one of the following:
   1. Coil shall be microchannel design and shall have a series of flat tubes containing multiple, parallel flow microchannel layered between the refrigerant manifolds. Tubes shall be 9153 aluminum alloy. Tubes made of 3102 alloy or other alloys of lower corrosion resistance shall not be accepted. Long Life Alloy Microchannel shall pass 4500hr salt spray rating uncoated.
   2. The condenser coils shall consist of 0.375 inch seamless copper tubes mechanically bonded into plate-type fins. The fins shall have full drawn collars to completely cover the tubes.

B. Protect all vertical or angled coil sections from hail or physical damage with corrosion resistant louvered hail guard including chiller ends, factory installed to cover compressor and condenser sections.

C. Field adjustable head pressure based fan cycling controls for each circuit capable of maintaining minimum head pressure down to 20°F unless noted otherwise.

D. Protect condenser coils during shipping.

E. Provide condenser coils coated with corrosion resistant epoxy utilizing a dip and bake. Coating shall be flexible and uniformly bonded to all condenser coil surfaces.

## 2.4 FANS AND MOTORS

A. Direct drive ultra-quiet nine blade fans propeller type fans.
   1. Vertical discharge with sound reduction without performance reduction.
   2. Protect fan blades with a heavy-gauge wire guard.
   3. Statically and dynamically balanced.
   4. Sound reduction engineered heavy-duty molded plastic blades designed to reduce airflow turbulence.

B. Motors with built in thermal overload protection
   1. Permanently lubricated ball bearings.
   2. Weatherproof (TEAO or TEFC) motors.
   3. Variable frequency drive on each condenser fan circuit.

## 2.5 COOLER/EVAPORATOR AND HEAT RECOVERY SYSTEM

A. Provide either a tube-in-shell direct expansion cooler for the evaporator and a brazed plate heat exchanger for heat recovery circuit.
   1. Tube-in-shell direct expansion cooler
      a. Copper tube and steel shell construction
      b. 300 psig water side working pressure
      c. ASME coded 225 psig refrigerant side working pressure
      d. Fully independent refrigerant circuit for each compressor.

e. Serviceable construction including removable heads and field replaceable tubes.
f. Drain and vent connection.
g. Inlet strainer.

2. Brazed plate Heat Recovery heat exchanger with:
a. Stainless steel with copper braze material
b. 150 psig water side working pressure
c. ASME coded 430 psig refrigerant side working pressure
d. Fully independent refrigerant circuit for each compressor.
e. Serviceable construction including removable heads and field replaceable tubes.
f. Drain and vent connection.
g. Heat exchanger inlet strainer.

B. Protect cooler and heat exchanger with ambient controlled heater cable and minimum 1-1/2" thick flexible elastomeric rubber closed cell insulation. Heater cable to protect evaporator to -20°F (-29°C). Heater cable shall be wrapped helically around the shell under the insulation.

C. Protect insulation and equipment from abrasion by unit enclosure.

D. After completion of successful start-up, installing contractor shall seal all openings.

E. Provide water drain connection, vent and fittings for factory installed leaving water temperature control and low temperature cutout sensors.

F. All water connections to Evaporator and Heat Recovery heat exchanger shall be provide with factory flanged connections.

G. If multiple heat recovery heat exchangers are required the heat exchangers shall be headered together and provide connection at the same location as the evaporator connections. All header piping and heat exchangers shall be provided with 1-1/2" thick flexible elastomeric rubber closed cell insulation.

## 2.6 CASING/ENCLOSURES

A. House components in minimum 12 gauge galvanized steel frame and mounted on welded structural steel base. Hot-dip galvanized steel frame coating shall be Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL) recognized as G90-U, UL guide number DTHW2.

B. Unit panels, and control panels shall be 14 gauge, finished with a baked on powder paint. Control panel doors shall have door stays. Paint system shall meet the requirements for outdoor equipment of Federal Government Agencies.

C. Mount starters and disconnects in weatherproof panel provided with full opening access doors. Provide lockable disconnect operating handle external to panel and clearly visible from outside of unit indicating if power is on or off.

D. Casings fabricated from steel that do not have a Zinc coating conforming to ASTM A 123 or ASTM A525 shall be treated for the prevention of corrosion with a factory coating or paint system. The coating or paint system shall withstand 672 hours in a salt-spray fog test in accordance with ASTM B 117. Each specimen shall have a standard scribe mark as defined in ASTM D 1654. Upon completion of exposure, the coating or paint system shall be evaluated and rated in accordance with procedures A and B of ASTM D 1654. The rating of failure at the scribe mark shall be not less than six (average creepage not greater than 1/8"). The rating of the unscribed area shall not be less than ten (no failure). Thickness of coating or paint system on the actual equipment shall be identical to that on the test specimens with respect to materials, conditions of application, and dry-film thickness.

E. Coated wire mesh to limit access beneath the condenser coils, cooler, and compressor section area.

F. Convenience outlet (GFIC) at control panel connected to 120-vac circuit provided for heat tracing on cooler.

G. A control power transformer shall be factory installed to provide unit control power.

## 2.7 REFRIGERANT CIRCUIT

A. All units shall have a separate independent refrigerant circuit for each compressor. Twenty & 30 Ton single circuit; 40, 50 & 60 Tons, dual individual refrigerant circuits.

B. Provide for each refrigerant circuit:
1. Liquid line isolation valve.
2. Filter dryer (replaceable core type).
3. Liquid line sight glass and moisture indicator.
4. Electronic or thermal expansion valve sized for maximum operating pressure. Expansion valves with less than five years of proven field operation are not acceptable.
5. Charging valve.
6. Discharge and oil line check valves.
7. Compressor suction and discharge service valves.
8. Relief valve.
9. Full operating charge of refrigerant and oil.
10. Unit factory leak tested at 200 psig.

## 2.8 CONTROL PANEL

A. The Control Center.
1. NEMA 3R weatherproof cabinet with hinged lockable outer door.
2. Control system.
3. Solid-state compressor three phase motor protection.
4. Single point field power connection points.
5. Control interlock terminals.

6. Fan motor and control circuit fuses.
7. Individual contactors for each fan motor.
8. Unit power terminal blocks for connection to remove disconnect switch.
9. Power supply terminals for evaporator heater circuit.
10. Dead front panels over line voltage.
11. Control power / circuit transformer.
12. Provide incoming power terminals, sized to accept the feeder conductors.
13. Chiller run and alarm status relay cards.

B. Microprocessor control system.
1. Stage unit based on leaving water temperature control.
2. Oil differential pressure setpoints.
3. Motor protection.
4. High pressure alarm.
5. Loss of refrigerant alarm.
6. Loss of water flow alarm.
7. Freeze protection alarm.
8. Low refrigerant pressure alarm.
9. Auto start/stop switch.
10. Chilled water setpoint adjustment.
11. Anti-recycle timer.
12. Compressor run status.
13. Password protection.
14. Low water temperature safety (freeze protection).
15. Automatic pump down cycle.
16. Limit supply water temperature pull down on start up to 1° per minute.
17. Automatic lead-lag sequence change of compressors.
18. Unload the compressors if the return water is too high.
19. Compressor starts with the controlled cylinders unloaded.
20. Reset of the chilled water temperature.
21. Indicate status of safeties.
22. Non-volatile memory (EPROM) with setpoints retained with battery backup.
23. Automatic high pressure unloader to unload compressor at pressures above 375 psig.
24. Auto restart after power failure.
25. Alarm Relay
26. Percent of Running Load Amperage
25. BacNET interface

C. Display the following information with 16 key keypad with two line x 40 character clear English Display for outdoor viewing.
1. Supply and Return water temperature.
2. Low water temperature cutout setting.
3. Low ambient temperature cutout setting.
4. Outdoor air temperature.
5. English and Metric data.
6. Suction pressure cutout setting.

7. Each system suction pressure.
8. Each system discharge pressure.
9. Each system oil pressure.
10. Percent of full load motor current.
11. Liquid control range. (2.0 - 20°F above setpoint).
12. Liquid pulldown rate sensitivity adjustment.
13. Anti-recycle timer status for each compressor.
12. Compressor starts & operating run hours.
13. Safety shutdown shall be date and time stamped.
14. Compressor run status.
15. History and alarm diagnostic memory display.

D. All control functions and information shall be available at the unit control panel or via RS 232 cable and phone modem to personal computer.

E. Chiller shall include a relay board with dry contacts for alarms to notify a Building Automation System of certain events or statues of the chiller.

F. Chiller shall include input for leaving chilled water temperature setpoint based upon a 2-10VDS or 4-20mA signal from a Building Automation System.

G. Chiller shall include input for chiller current limit setpoint based upon a 2-10VDC or 4-20mA signal from a Building Automation System.

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. Install system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Where the chiller unit is mounted on a grade, a concrete pad shall be provided that is a minimum of 4" high and extends 6" all around the chiller.

C. Align chiller package on steel or concrete foundations.

D. Locate away from overhead restrictions. Maintain side clearances according to manufacturer's recommendations and maintain overhead clearance to allow full elimination of hot air discharge.

E. Install units on vibration isolation pads.

F. Arrange piping for easy dismantling to permit tube cleaning, removing and or repair.

G. Level chiller.

H. Provide flexible elastomeric rubber closed cell insulation to prevent condensation from occurring at cooler and suction piping. After completion of successful start-up, installing

contractor shall seal all openings in insulation and apply a protective aluminum sheetmetal jacket over insulation.

I. Provide a flexible pipe connection at both the chiller inlet and outlet.

**3.2 CHILLER MANUFACTURER START-UP/ FIELD SERVICES**

A. Provide the services of a factory trained service technician employed full time by the chiller manufacturer to start-up the system. Technicians, as required, shall be factory trained and experienced in the work they perform. (Contractor startup is unacceptable.)

B. The technicians shall utilize comprehensive report forms to document results. Sample forms shall be submitted for review prior to commencing work.

C. Upon completion of the work, the report forms shall be signed by the technicians and their supervisor and included in the final report and Owner's manual.

D. Submit four copies of the final report to the Architect/Engineer for approval within 10 working days of start-up.

E. Follow the manufacturer's start-up procedures.
1. Verify interlocks.
2. Test and verify operation of safety controls.
3. Calibrate controls.
4. Verify microprocessor based control operation.
5. Test, calibrate, and set the chilled water temperature controls.
6. Verify chilled water temperature reset sequence.
7. Verify operation of the integrated control panel.

F. Measure and record the following data:
1. Chilled water entering/leaving temperature.
2. Chilled water flow through the chiller.
3. Suction pressure/condensing pressure.
4. Suction pressure/unloading steps.
5. Air entering/leaving condenser; dry bulb temperature.
6. Outdoor ambient; dry bulb.
7. Motor nameplate voltage; phase and full load amperes.
8. Heater coil in starter (as applicable)
    a. Rating in amperes.
    b. Manufacturer's recommendation.
9. Power reading (voltage and amperes of legs at motor terminals).

G. Test and calibrate the operation of the electronic ground current sensing devices.

H. If the system has been shipped with a holding charge, provide the following:
1. Leak test.
2. Refrigerant pressure test.

3. Evacuate, dehydrate and charge.

I. Verify that accessories are installed and performing the specified functions. Insert certification in Owner's manual.

J. Instruct the Owner's operating personnel. Provide Owner with 8 hours of training prior to substantial completion.

K. Do not operate the equipment for any reason until the factory start-up service has been completed.

L. Provide a print-out from the unit micro-computer control system showing the correct operation of all system controls and components.

M. Provide minimum 24 hour history log displaying accuracy of temperature control system in 15 minute intervals and documented number of compressor cycles during the 24 hour period.

**3.3 IDENTIFICATION**

A. Furnish each unit with a durable, deep etched, .025” thick, factory installed aluminum identification plate, permanently mounted with the following information:
1. Unit identification as indicated on Contract Drawings.
2. Serial Number.
3. Model Number.
4. Capacity (Tons)
5. Unit power supply: Volts / PH / Amps.
6. Sales Order #.
7. Date unit manufactured.

**END OF SECTION 23 65 27**

# SECTION 23 73 13 - AIR HANDLING UNITS

## 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install air handling units with casing, fans, coils, filters and special items.

## 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 23 Mechanical
   1. Air Balance
   2. Ductwork
   3. Controls
   4. Electrical Provisions of Mechanical Work
   5. Air Filtration
   6. Heating and Cooling Coils
   7. Other applicable sections

## 1.3 PERFORMANCE

A. Unit capacities and characteristics as indicated.
   1. Units must be certified in accordance with ARI Standard 430-66.
   2. UL 1995 certification for safety including electric heat.
   3. ARI 430 listed and meet NFPA 90A requirements.

## 1.4 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Indicate assembly, unit dimensions, weight loading required clearances, construction details, field connection details, and electrical characteristics and connection requirements.

B. Submit fan performance curve for each unit:
   1. Plot fan volume against static pressure, horsepower and efficiency.
   2. Show point of rating based on static requirements of the system.
   3. Chart of specific sound power level at each octave band center frequency.
   4. For variable volume units, plot fan volume over entire range.

C. Submit for review a unit internal static pressure loss calculation.
   1. Provide an itemized list of static pressure loss at the scheduled CFM for each unit component including and not limited to:
      a. Coils
      b. Dirty filters
      c. Fan and unit system effect
      d. Cabinet and cabinet inlet and outlet
      e. Unit mounted dampers
   2. If a unit mounted outside air pretreatment section without supply fan, “piggyback” is specified:
      a. Provide an itemized static pressure loss as indicated above.

b. Determine losses for unit configuration, i.e. parallel or series.
c. Include losses in the primary unit internal static pressure required by configuration.

3. The air handling unit schedule indicates static pressure external to the unit and does not include any losses associated with the air handling equipment.

**1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS**

A. Do not operate units until ductwork is clean, filters are in place, bearings lubricated, condensate properly tapped, piping connections verified and leak tested, belts aligned and tensioned, all shipping braces have been removed, and fan has been tested under observation.

**1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

A. Inspect for transportation damage and store in a clean, dry location. Protect from weather and construction traffic.

**PART 2 – PRODUCTS**

**2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS**

A. Carrier

B. JCI

C. Trane

**2.2 MISCELLANEOUS REQUIREMENTS**

A. Provide factory assembled units. Large units may be shipped in sections, at contractor's option, to enable entrance to building, or for oversize shipping reasons only.

B. Furnish units with sealing and fastening hardware supplied by the manufacturer. Include written instructions needed to complete field assembly of the components.

C. Provide units designed and constructed so that coils, panels, fan housing and fans can be removed without affecting the structural integrity of the unit.

D. Unit casing panels shall be a minimum of 2” double wall construction with solid galvanized exterior and solid galvanized interior. Panels shall have a minimum thermal resistance of R-13. The casing shall not exceed 0.0042 inch deflection per inch of panel span at 1.5 times the design static pressure up to a maximum of +8 inches in all positive pressure sections and -8 inches in all negative pressure sections.

E. Provide full perimeter base rail channel under units constructed of heavy gauge galvanized steel (minimum 10 gauge) and intermediate cross members to assure unit

integrity. Provide minimum size base rail to ensure proper trapping and slope of condensate drain (minimum 6 inch from bottom of drain opening).

F. Fan assembly shall be provided with 1" deflection internally mounted spring vibration isolation under the fan and motor base on units with coils less than 8 sq. ft. and 2" deflection internally mounted spring vibration isolation under the fan and motor base with coils greater than 8 sq. Ft. Units with coils over 35 sq. ft. shall have spring thrust restraints securing the fan housing to the discharge opening panel on units. Fan motor shall be internally mounted. Provide internal flex connection of fan discharge. Maximum acceptable RPM of fan shall not exceed 1000.

G. Provide factory installed removable hinged access doors in the following locations:
1. Entering side of all coils to allow for cleaning of coils on both sides of unit.
2. Each side of filter compartment to allow changing of filters from either side.
3. Each side of motor compartment to allow motor and isolation access.
4. Each side of condensate drain pan to allow for cleaning and inspection.
5. Swing the doors against the casing static pressure.

H. Provide all coil modules, including heating coil modules, with stainless steel drain pans to facilitate cleaning and maintenance of the coils. Drain pan to extend 10” minimum downstream of cooling coil.

I. Provide coils with stainless steel casings, end plates, tube supports and top & bottom plates.

J. Units shall meet ASHRAE III Class 6 Low Leakage Standard. Casing shall have less than a 1% leakage rate at plus or minus 8 inches W.G.

## 2.3 DRAW THROUGH AIR HANDLING UNITS – CONSTANT VOLUME

A. Provided with:
1. V-belt drive assembly and motor with totally enclosed belt guard.
2. Insulated sheet metal cabinet with removable panels for access to the interior.
3. Full hinged double wall doors with two-step safety handles.

B. Drive assembly:
1. Size for 50% overload.
2. Matched belts.
3. Minimum two belt drive.
4. Provide adjustable pitch motor pulley for motors.
5. Provide motor and fan pulley of cast iron keyed to the shaft.

C. Select the motor so that the brake horsepower required to deliver the design air quantity at the system static pressure will not exceed the motor nameplate rating.
1. Totally enclosed, fan cooled, 1750 rpm.
2. Minimum 90% nominal efficiency at loads of 70% to 100%.
3. Premium efficiency

4. Cast iron frame and end plate
5. Forged steel lifting eye
6. Oversized conduit box with ground lug
7. Provide with factory installed shaft grounding ring by Aegis on units which utilize a variable frequency drive.

D. Supply Fans:
1. Double width, double inlet, forward curve blades.
2. Statically and dynamically balanced.
3. Tested after being installed in the fan sections.
4. Selected for the design air quantities and pressure of the system.
5. Mounted on a common shaft if multiple wheels.

E. Select fan to operate at or near its maximum efficiency point when handling the required air quantity and static pressure.

F. Stainless steel condensate pan with positive slope in all directions to outlet. Line the condensate drain pan with minimum 1-1/2" waterproof insulation.

G. Fan bearings:
1. Remote grease fittings grouped on the motor access side of the unit.
2. Self-aligning.
3. Select for an average life of 200,000 hours.

H. Insulation, vapor barriers, facings and adhesives shall have:
1. Flame spread not higher than 25.
2. Smoke developed rating not higher than 50.

I. Double wall casing construction. Construct interior casing panels with 3 lb. minimum density insulation for acoustical and condensation control.
1. Condensation on the exterior of the air handling units is not acceptable.

J. Filter section:
1. Constructed with substantial hinges.
2. Neoprene gasketing.
3. Permanent quick release latching devices.
4. Arranged to accommodate the 2" thick filters as specified.
5. Low velocity angled filter section unless otherwise specified.
6. Filters shall be easily accessible through access door with handles and shall not require tools to access and remove.

K. Cooling coils as specified. Extend drain and vent piping through cabinets. Provide grommets at all pipe penetrations through cabinets.

L. Heating coils as specified. Extend drain and vent piping through cabinets. Provide grommets at all pipe penetrations through cabinets.
1. Location as indicated.

## 2.4 DRAW THROUGH AIR HANDLING UNITS – VARIABLE AIR VOLUME

A. Provided with:
   1. V-belt drive assembly and motor with totally enclosed belt guard.
   2. Insulated sheet metal cabinet with removable panels for access to the interior.
   3. Full hinged double wall doors with two-step safety handles.

B. Drive assembly:
   1. Sized for 50% overload.
   2. Matched belts.
   3. Minimum two belt drive.

C. Select proper fan drives from an assortment of fixed pitch cast iron pulleys and matched belts.
   1. Pulleys keyed to the shaft.

D. Motor selected so that the brake horsepower required to deliver the design air quantity at the system static pressure will not exceed the motor nameplate rating.
   1. Totally enclosed, fan cooled, Variable speed.
   2. Minimum 90% nominal efficiency at loads of 70%-100%.
   3. Premium efficiency.
   4. Cast iron frame and end plate
   5. Forged steel lifting eye
   6. Over sized conduit box with ground lug
   7. Provide with factory installed shaft grounding rings by Aegis

E. Supply fans shall be:
   1. Double width, double inlet, non-overloading, air-foil blade centrifugal fan, or forward curve fan as required.
   2. Statically and dynamically balanced
   3. Tested after being installed in the fan sections
   4. Mounted on a common shaft if multiple wheels

F. Select fan to operate at or near its maximum efficiency point when handling the required air quantity and static pressure.

G. Stainless steel condensate pan with positive slope in all directions to outlet; condensate drain pan with a minimum of 1-1/2" waterproof insulation.

H. Fan bearings:
   1. Remote grease fittings grouped on the motor access side of the unit.
   2. Self-aligning.
   3. Selected for an average life of 200,000 hours.

I. Insulation, vapor barriers, facings and adhesives shall have:
   1. Flame spread not higher than 25.

2. Smoke developed rating not higher than 50.
3. 3 lb. density insulation in interior casing panels.

J. Double wall casing construction. Construct interior casing panels with 3 lb. Minimum density insulation for acoustical and condensate control.
1. Condensation on the exterior of the air handling units is not acceptable.

K. Filter Section:
1. Constructed with substantial hinges.
2. Neoprene gasketing.
3. Permanent quick release latching devices.
4. Arranged to accommodate 2" thick filters as specified.
5. Low velocity angled filter section unless otherwise specified.
6. Filters shall be easily accessible through access door with handles and shall not require tools to access and remove.

L. Cooling coils as specified. Extend drain and vent piping through cabinets. Provide grommets at all pipe penetrations through cabinets.

M. Heating coils as specified. Extend drain and vent piping through cabinets. Provide grommets at all pipe penetrations through cabinets.

N. Equipment capacities as indicated.

O. Factory dynamic fan balancing shall be conducted from 16Hz to 60Hz to identify and eliminate critical speeds to ensure stable operation through the entire operating range of the fan and drive assembly. Field fan balancing is not acceptable. Forward factory balancing test report to Engineer upon request.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install air handling units according to manufacturer's instructions.

B. Provide additional drive packages as required by the Testing and Balancing firm.

C. Air leaks detectable by sound or touch are to be corrected.

D. Air handling units are to be properly supported to prevent flexing, bending or distorting base rails.

E. All coils are to be cleaned prior to substantial completion if units are used during construction.

F. Clean all air handling units and return to original manufacturer's condition prior to substantial completion. Vacuum clean all debris from inside air handling equipment.

G. Install piping to unit with full size 6 inch long dirt leg with 1/2" valve at bottom for cleaning.

H. Provide for positive gravity drainage of coil condensate. Pipe full size of unit connection.

I. Adjust fan drives as required to obtain scheduled capacities as directed by the Test and Balance Firm to include sheave and belt replacement.

J. Align belts to eliminate wear and vibration of belts.

K. Verify correct drainage of condensate from condensate pan.

L. Verify correct rotation of fan and wiring of motor.

M. Lubricate all greaseable ball bearings with manufacturer's suggested lubricant.

N. Replace filters as required if units are used during construction.

O. Provide piping installation so that after piping is completed and insulated there is full access to service unit and remove fan housing. Piping to coils shall not block fan section access or cause damage to piping insulation during access.

**3.2 IDENTIFICATION**

A. Furnish each unit with a durable, deep etched, .025" thick, factory installed aluminum identification plate, permanently mounted with the following information:
   1. Unit identification as indicated on Contract Drawings.
   2. Area served by unit
   3. Serial Number.
   4. Model Number.
   5. Capacity (CFM) and static pressure.
   6. Motor HP.
   7. Unit power supply: Volts / PH / Amps.
   8. Supply Fan Type.
   9. Coil GPM and pressure drop.
   10. Size and number of filters
   11. Sales Order #.
   12. Date unit manufactured.

**END OF SECTION 23 73 13**

# SECTION 23 81 24 - WEATHERPROOF ROOF-MOUNTED AIR HANDLING UNIT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Weatherproof roof-mounted air handling units and related roof curb. Units shall be constructed for outdoor installation.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 23 Mechanical
   1. Air Balance
   2. Ductwork
   3. Controls
   4. Electrical Provisions of Mechanical Work
   5. Air Filtration
   6. Heating and Cooling Coils
   7. Vibration Isolation
   8. Other applicable sections

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE

A. Unit capacities and characteristics as indicated.
   1. Units must be certified in accordance with ARI Standard 430-66.
   2. UL 1995 certification for safety including electric heat.
   3. ARI 430 listed and meet NFPA 90A requirements.

### 1.4 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Indicate assembly, unit dimensions, weight loading required clearances, construction details, field connection details, and electrical characteristics and connection requirements.

B. Submit fan performance curve for each unit:
   1. Plot fan volume against static pressure, horsepower and efficiency.
   2. Show point of rating based on static requirements of the system.
   3. Chart of specific sound power level at each octave band center frequency.
   4. For variable volume units, plot fan volume over entire range.

C. Submit for review a unit internal static pressure loss calculation.
   1. Provide an itemized list of static pressure loss at the scheduled CFM for each unit component including and not limited to:
      a. Coils
      b. Dirty filters
      c. Fan and unit system effect
      d. Cabinet and cabinet inlet and outlet

e. Unit mounted dampers

2. If a unit mounted outside air pretreatment section without supply fan, “piggyback” is specified:
   a. Provide an itemized static pressure loss as indicated above.
   b. Determine losses for unit configuration, i.e. parallel or series.
   c. Include losses in the primary unit internal static pressure required by configuration.
3. The air handling unit schedule indicates static pressure external to the unit and does not include any losses associated with the air handling equipment.

## 1.5 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Do not operate units until ductwork is clean, filters are in place, bearings lubricated, condensate properly tapped, piping connections verified and leak tested, belts aligned and tensioned, all shipping braces have been removed, and fan has been tested under observation.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Inspect for transportation damage and store in a clean, dry location. Protect from weather and construction traffic.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

A. The Air Handling Unit manufacturer shall provide a full machine parts and labor warranty for a period of one (1) year from substantial completion.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Carrier

B. JCI

C. Trane

## 2.2 MISCELLANEOUS REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide factory assembled units. Large units may be shipped in sections, at contractor's option for oversize shipping reasons only.

B. Furnish units with sealing and fastening hardware supplied by the manufacturer. Include written instructions needed to complete field assembly of the components.

C. Provide units designed and constructed so that coils, panels, fan housing and fans can be removed without affecting the structural integrity of the unit.

## 2.3 UNIT HOUSING

A. Construct the unit housing of galvanized steel sheets.
   1. Unitized structural steel frame and base with gusseted corners.
   2. Braced and of sufficient strength to prevent "breathing".
   3. Construct to accommodate the weight of a 250 lb. man at any location on the top.
   4. Completely weatherproof and sloped for drainage.
   5. Make casing joints water tight with approved sealant.

B. Unit casing panels shall be double wall construction with solid galvanized exterior and solid galvanized interior. Panels shall have a minimum thermal resistance of R-13. The casing shall not exceed 0.0042 inch deflection per inch of panel span at 1.5 times the design static pressure up to a maximum of +8 inches in all positive pressure sections and -8 inches in all negative pressure sections. Condensation on exterior of the air handling unit is not approved.

C. Fan assembly shall be provided with 1-inch deflection internally mounted spring vibration isolation under the fan and motor base on units with coils less than 8 sq. ft. and 2-inch deflection internally mounted spring vibration isolation under the fan and motor base with coils greater than 8 sq. ft. Units with coils over 35 sq. ft. shall have spring thrust restraints securing the fan housing to the discharge opening panel on units. Fan motor shall be internally mounted. Provide internal flex connection of fan discharge.

D. Provide factory installed full size, gasketed, removable, hinged access doors in the following locations:
   1. Entering and leaving side of all coils to allow for cleaning of coils on both side of unit.
   2. Each side of filter compartment to allow changing of filters from either side.
   3. Each side of motor compartment to allow motor and isolation access.
   4. Each side of condensate drain pan to allow for cleaning and inspection.
   5. Swing the doors against the casing static pressure.

E. Provide all coil modules, including heating coil modules, with stainless steel drain pans to facilitate cleaning and maintenance of the coils. Drain pan to extend 10” minimum downstream of cooling coil.

F. Provide coils with stainless steel casings, end plates, tube supports and top and bottom plates.

G. Provide doors for motor and filter compartments with door swing away from piping connections.

H. Exterior of unit shall be weatherproof and shall pass a 500-hour salt spray test.

I. Use stainless steel fasteners with stainless steel piano hinges; latches with zinc plated, epoxy coated T-bar handles; and air tight gaskets.

J. Units shall meet ASHRAE III Class 6 Low Leakage Standard. Casing shall have less than a 1% leakage rate at plus or minus 8 inches W.G.

K. Provide outside air damper and outside air hood component. A motorized outside air damper actuator shall be provided in the Building Management and Controls specification.
   1. Storm proof louvers
   2. Outside air dampers as specified

**2.3 SUPPLY FANS**

A. Supply:
   1. Double width, double inlet, non-overloading, air foil blade centrifugal fan, or forward curve fan as required.
   2. Statically and dynamically balanced
   3. Tested after being installed in the fan section
   4. Selected for the design air quantity and pressure of the system
   5. Mounted on a common shaft if multiple wheels
   6. Minimum of Class II fans.

B. Select fan to operate at or near its maximum efficiency point when handling the required air quantity and static pressure.

C. Nominal fan outlet velocities shall not exceed 1800 FPM.

D. Fan bearings:
   1. Remote grease fittings grouped on the coil connection side of the unit.
   2. Self-aligning.
   3. Selected for an average life of 200,000 hours.

**2.4 OUTSIDE AIR DAMPER**

A. Opposed blade dampers for 2 position and modulating control.
   1. Ruskin Model CD 60

**2.5 DRIVE ASSEMBLY**

A. Size for 50% overload

B. Match belts

C. Minimum two belt drive Type “B” only (5/8” wide)

D. Provide adjustable pitch motor pulley for motors.

E. Provide motor and fan pulley of cast iron keyed to the shaft.

F. Fan bearings:
   1. Greaseable bearings
   2. Remote grease fittings grouped on the motor access side of the unit.
   3. Self-aligning.
   4. Select for an average life of 200,000 hours.

## 2.6 FAN MOTOR

A. Select the motor so the brake horsepower required to deliver the design air quantity at the system static pressure will not exceed the motor nameplate rating.
   1. TEFC, 1750 rpm
   2. Minimum 90% nominal efficiency at loads of 70% - 100%.
   3. Premium efficiency.
   4. Cast iron frame and end plate
   5. Forged steel lifting eye
   6. Oversized conduit box with ground lug
   7. Provide with factory installed shaft grounding ring by Aegis on units which utilize a variable frequency drive.
   8. Greaseable bearings for motors.

B. Install motor and drive assembly in the unit housing.

C. Mount the fan and motor on a common vibration isolation base selected for the fan frequency.
   1. Adjustable slide rail for belt tension adjustment
   2. Housed adjustable springs

## 2.7 FILTER SECTION

A. Constructed with substantial hinges.

B. Neoprene gasketing.

C. Permanent quick release latching devices.

D. Arranged to accommodate the 2" thick filters as specified.

## 2.8 COILS

A. Reference coil section of specifications.

## 2.9 ROOF CURB

A. Provide a roof curb of the same manufacturer as the air-handling unit. The curb will

support the unit and provide a watertight enclosure to protect ductwork and utility services. Use a design complying with National Roofing Contractors Association requirements. Coordinate slope of roof prior to ordering curbs.

1. The assembly of the unit and roof curb shall be rated for 150 MPH winds. Provide engineered drawings certifying this requirement is met.
2. Furnish through-the-curb electrical service connection with a raised area for penetrations.
3. Provide curb with integrated coil connection housing as indicated on drawings.
4. Refer to 23 05 48 Vibration Isolation specification for additional information.

**2.10 EXTERNAL PIPE CABINET**

A. Supplied by unit manufacturer.
   1. Factory assembled
   2. External of unit
   3. Hinged 30-inch wide access doors of same construction on each side.

**2.11 OUTDOOR AIR SECTION**

A. Provide economizer section with ultra-low leak opposed blade outside air and return air dampers where scheduled. Ruskin CD60 or better.

B. Provide adjustable minimum position control located in the economizer section of the unit.

C. Provide spring return motor for outside air damper closure during unit shutdown or power interruption.

D. Provide outdoor airflow measuring station where scheduled. The return air damper and OA damper shall be modulated as required to maintain schedule OA quantities.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. Unit is to be provided with a through-the-bottom service connection accessory package and must be used for electrical connections to unit. Use bulkhead connectors to make a waterproof connection.

B. Seal all duct connections to roof curb for air tight connection. Install a 90 degree flanged ductwork connection to the roof curb. Provide and install gasketing around duct flanges. Provide and install gasketing around outer edge of roof curb.

C. Install air handling units according to manufacturer's instructions.

D. Provide additional drive packages as required by the Testing and Balancing firm.

E. Air leaks detectable by sound or touch are to be corrected.

F. Air handling units are to be properly supported to prevent flexing, bending or distorting base rails.

G. All coils and drain pans are to be cleaned prior to substantial completion if units are used during construction.

H. Clean all air handling units and return to original manufacturer's condition prior to substantial completion. Vacuum clean all debris from inside air handling equipment.

I. Install piping to unit with full size 6 inch long dirt leg with 1/2" valve at bottom for cleaning.

J. Provide for positive gravity drainage of coil condensate. Pipe full size of unit connection.

K. Adjust fan drives as required to obtain scheduled capacities as directed by the Test and Balance Firm to include sheave and belt replacement.

L. Align belts to eliminate wear and vibration of belts.

M. Verify correct drainage of condensate from condensate pan.

N. Verify correct rotation of fan and wiring of motor.

O. Lubricate all greaseable ball bearings with manufacturer’s suggested lubricant.

P. Replace filters as required if units are used during construction.

Q. Provide piping installation so that after piping is completed and insulated there is full access to service unit and remove fan housing. Piping to coils shall not block fan section access or cause damage to piping insulation during access.

R. AHU motors must be wired with Kernay connections inside motor terminal boxes. No wire nuts. Kernay connections must be wrapped with rubber and electrical tape for insulation.

## 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Furnish each unit with a durable, deep etched, .025” thick, factory installed aluminum identification plate, permanently mounted with the following information:
   1. Unit identification as indicated on Contract Drawings.
   2. Area served by unit
   3. Serial Number.
   4. Model Number.
   5. Capacity (CFM) and static pressure.
   6. Motor HP.
   7. Unit power supply: Volts / PH / Amps.

8. Supply Fan Type.
9. Coil GPM and pressure drop.
10. Size and number of filters
11. Sales Order #.
12. Date unit manufactured.

**END OF SECTION 23 81 24**

# SECTION 23 82 16 - HEATING AND COOLING COILS

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install heating and cooling coils.

### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit manufacturer's product data sheets and unit capacity information as specified.

B. Submit manufacturer's Installation, Start-Up and Service Instructions.

C. Submit internal wiring diagram.
   1. Electrical interlocks. *

### 1.3 RELATED WORK

A. Division 23 Mechanical.
   1. Air Handling Units.
   2. Fan Coil Units.
   3. Weatherproof Roof Mounted Air Handling Units.
   4. Ductwork.
   5. Terminal Boxes.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 HOT WATER COILS

A. Hot water coils:
   1. Constructed of copper tubes and aluminum fins.
   2. Designed and circuited for hot water.
      a. Maximum temperature 200°F.

B. Where coils are installed in fan powered VAV boxes, unit heaters and other locations where the incoming air is not filtered, the maximum approved fin spacing is 8 fins per inch.

C. Non-trapping circuit design:
   1. Working pressure 200 psi
   2. Tappings for drain and air vent

D. Provide a Peterson Pete's Plug with retainer strap on the inlet and outlet of each coil.
   1. Positioned to permit accurate pressure readings.

E. Coils shall be constructed in casings as required for installation.

## 2.2 CHILLED WATER COILS

A. Chilled water coils:
   1. Constructed of copper tubes and aluminum fins
   2. Designed and circuited for chilled water
   3. Minimum of six rows

B. Non-trapping circuit design:
   1. Working pressure 200 psi.
   2. Tappings for drain and air vent.

C. Provide a Peterson Pete's Plug with retainer strap on the inlet and outlet of each coil. Position to permit accurate pressure readings.

D. Coils shall be constructed in casings as required for installation.

E. Where coils are stacked, provide intermediate drain pans with drop tubes to drain condensate to the main drain pan without flooding the lower coil.

# PART 3 – EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install the duct heaters in accordance with the manufacturer's Installation, Start-Up and Service Instructions.

**END OF SECTION 23 82 16**

# SECTION 23 82 19 - FAN COIL UNITS

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Floor mounted decorative cabinet fan/coil units, horizontal fan/coil units for concealed installation and horizontal exposed ceiling mounted fan/coil units with decorative cabinet.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Division 23 Mechanical
   1. Air Balance
   2. Controls
   3. Electrical Provisions of Mechanical Work
   4. Ductwork
   5. Air filtration

### 1.3 REFERENCES

A. ANSI/AHRI 410 - force circulation air cooling and air heating coils

B. National Electrical Code

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit manufacturer's dimensioned product data sheets.
   1. Show location of filter access doors.

B. Submit fan performance curve for each unit:
   1. Plot fan volume against static pressure, horsepower and efficiency.
   2. Show point of rating based on static requirements of the system.

C. Submit the fan performance plot at each motor speed position with consideration for the reduced internal static.

D. Submit a chart of specific sound power level at each octave band center frequency.

E. Submit manufacturer's certified heating and cooling coil capacity data.

F. Submit filter manufacturer's product data sheets and capacity information.

G. Submit manufacturer's data on housing insulation material.

### 1.5 CAPACITY

A. Refer to equipment schedule.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Carrier

B. JCI

C. Trane

### 2.2 COMPONENTS

A. Fan section

B. V-belt drive assembly, or,

C. Multi-speed direct connected motor

D. Filter section

E. Coil section

F. Insulated sheet metal cabinet with removable panels for access to the interior

G. Motor and drive inside the cabinet

### 2.3 FAN SECTION

A. Locate the motor and drive assembly inside the cabinet.

B. Size each v-belt drive for 50% overload.
   1. Adjustable pitch motor pulley
   2. Provide built-in motor protection
   3. Belt adjustment means

C. Provide multi-speed direct connected fan motor with built-in motor protection.
   1. Three-speed windings
   2. Factory wired to a junction box with provisions for motor speed change, mounted on the box
   3. Resiliently mounted

D. Select the fan motor so that the brake horsepower required to deliver the design air quantity at the system static pressure will not exceed the motor nameplate amperage rating.

E. Supply Fans:
   1. Double width, double inlet, forward curve blade
   2. Statically and dynamically balanced

3. Tested after being installed in the fan section
4. Selected for the design air quantities and static pressure of the system
5. Mounted on a common shaft if multiple wheels

F. Select fan to operate at or near its maximum efficiency point when handling the required air quantity and static pressure.

G. Fan Bearings:
1. Permanently lubricated
2. Self-aligning

## 2.4 DECORATIVE HOUSING AND PLENUM

A. Where units are exposed to view in occupied spaces and where scheduled, construct cabinets of cold rolled steel, bonderized and coated with baked enamel finish.

B. Access panels shall have position locking fasteners for easy removal.
1. Plated screws with captive nuts
2. Hinged if too large for one man operation

## 2.5 UNIT HOUSING

A. Construct the unit of galvanized steel sheets, and formed members.
1. Provide structure to brace the assembly for the pressure of the system.

B. Bolt housing components together with neoprene gasketed airtight joints.

C. Internally insulate the entire unit with neoprene coated, 1-1/2 lb. density glass fiber insulation, applied to internal surfaces with adhesive and weld pins. Coat exposed edges of insulation with adhesive.

D. Insulation, vapor barriers, facings and adhesives:
1. Flame spread not higher than 25
2. Smoke developed rating not higher than 50

E. Condensation on the exterior of the unit is not approved.

F. Provide a duct flange on four sides of the return air inlet and supply air outlet of the unit.
1. Sized to permit connection of the flexible connection to the ductwork
2. Extend beyond the primary drain pan
3. Minimum dimension 2"

G. Provide insulated, removable panels for access to the interior.
1. Plated captive screws and nuts
2. Neoprene gaskets

## 2.6 CONDENSATE DRAIN PANS

A. IAQ style drain pans shall be provided under all coils.
   1. Pitch to drain connection
   2. Fabricated from 16 gauge 304 stainless steel
   3. Triple pitched for complete drainage with no standing water
   4. Insulated to prevent condensation
   5. Welded corners
   6. Stainless drain connection

**2.7 COILS**

A. Reference Schedule and Specification Section 23 82 16.

**2.8 FILTER SECTION**

A. Locate behind access doors.
   1. Construct with substantial hinges
   2. Neoprene gaskets
   3. Permanent quick-release latching devices

B. Arranged to accommodate the 1" thick filters as specified.
   1. Single section filter

C. Provide full length tracks to support the filter.

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 SPARE PARTS**

A. Provide the following spare parts and material to the Owner for use after the warranty period.
   1. One spare fan motor for each size of fan motor on the project
   2. One spare set of filters or filter media for each fan coil unit on the project

**3.2 ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS**

A. Bring electrical connections to a common junction box.

**3.3 STORAGE**

A. Storage and shipping in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

**3.4 INSTALLATION**

A. Install unit so motor connections and filters are accessible.

**END OF SECTION 23 82 19**

# SECTION 26 01 05 - ELECTRICAL OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Compile electrical product data and related information appropriate for Owner's operation and maintenance of products furnished under Contract. Prepare electrical operating and maintenance data as specified in this Section and as referenced in other sections of specifications.

B. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation and maintenance of equipment and systems.

C. Submit 3 copies of complete manual in final form.

### 1.2 ELECTRICAL OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

A. Thirty (30) days after receipt of reviewed submittals bearing the Architect / Engineer's stamp of acceptance (including re-submittals), submit for review 1 copy of the first draft of the Electrical Operating and Maintenance Manual. This copy shall contain as a minimum:
   1. Table of Contents for each element
   2. Contractor information
   3. All shop drawings, coordination drawings and product data, bearing the Architect / Engineer's stamp of acceptance.
   4. All parts and maintenance manuals for items of equipment
   5. Warranties (without starting dates)
   6. Certifications that have been completed; submit forms and outlines of certifications that have not been completed
   7. Operating and maintenance procedures.
   8. Form of Owner's Training Program Syllabus (including times and dates)
   9. Control operations / equipment wiring diagrams
   10. Coordination Drawings
   11. Schedule of Lamps, Light Engines
   12. Schedule of Ballasts and Drivers
   13. Schedule of Fuses
   14. Other required operating and maintenance information that are complete.

B. Copy will be returned to the Contractor within 15 days with comments for corrections.

C. Submit the (3) completed manuals in final form to the Architect / Engineer.
   1. Prior to substantial completion for Owner's use after the Owner accepts facility maintenance.
   2. Include all specified data, test reports, drawings, dated warranties, certificates, along with other materials and information.

D. The Architect / Engineer shall review the manuals for completeness within 15 days.

E. The Contractor shall be notified of any missing or omitted materials. The Manuals shall be reworked by the Contractor, as required, in the office of the Architect / Engineer. The manuals will not be retransmitted.

F. Three complete manuals shall be delivered to the Owner prior to substantial completion.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 BINDERS**

A. Commercial quality black, 3-ring binders with clear, durable, cleanable plastic covers.

B. Minimum ring size: 1"; Maximum ring size: 3".

C. When multiple binders are used, correlate the data into related groupings.

D. Label contents on spine and face of binder with full size insert. Label under plastic cover.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 ELECTRICAL OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

A. Form for Manuals:
   1. Prepare data in form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's personnel.
   2. Format:
      a. Size: 8-1/2" x 11"
      b. Text: Manufacturer's printed data or neatly typewritten.
   3. Drawings:
      a. Provide reinforced punched binder tab and bind in text.
      b. Fold larger drawings to size of text pages.
   4. Provide flyleaf indexed tabs for each separate product or each piece of operating equipment.
   5. Cover: Identify each volume with typed or printed title "Operating and Maintenance Instructions". List:
      a. Title of Project
      b. Identity of separate structures as applicable
      c. Identity of general subject matter covered in the manual.
   6. Binder as specified

B. Content of Manual:
   1. Neatly typewritten Table of Contents for each volume arranged in systematic order as outlined in the specifications.
      a. Contractor, name of responsible principal, address and telephone number
      b. A list of each product required to be included, indexed to content of the volume.
      c. List with each product, name, address and telephone number of:

1) Subcontractor or installer
2) Maintenance contractor as appropriate
3) Identify area of responsibility of each.
4) Local source of supply for parts and replacement

d. Identify each product-by-product name and other identifying symbols as set forth in Contract Documents.

2. Product Data:
   a. Include those sheets pertinent to the specific product.
   b. Annotate each sheet to:
      1) Identify specific product or part installed.
      2) Identify data applicable to installation.
      3) Delete references to inapplicable information.
3. Drawings:
   a. Supplement product data with drawings as necessary to illustrate:
      1) Relations of component parts of equipment and systems
      2) Control and flow diagrams
   b. Coordinate drawings with information in Project Record Documents to assure correct illustration of completed installation.
   c. Do not use Project Record Documents as maintenance drawings.
4. Written text as required to supplement product data for the particular installation:
   a. Organize in consistent format under separate headings for different procedures.
   b. Provide logical sequence of instructions for each procedure.
5. Copy of each warranty, bond and service contract issued
   a. Provide information sheet for Owner's personnel, giving:
      1) Proper procedures in event of failure
      2) Instances that might affect validity of warranties or bonds
6. Shop drawings, coordination drawings and product data as specified.

C. Sections for Equipment and Systems
1. Content for each unit of equipment and system as appropriate:
   a. Description of unit and component parts:
      1) Function, normal operating characteristics, and limiting conditions.
      2) Performance curves, engineering data and tests.
      3) Complete nomenclature and commercial number of replaceable parts.
   b. Operating procedures:
      1) Start up, break-in, routine / normal operating instructions
      2) Regulation, control, stopping, shut down and emergency instructions
      3) Summer and winter operating instructions
      4) Special operating instructions
   c. Maintenance procedures:
      1) Routine operations
      2) Guide to trouble-shooting
      3) Disassembly, repair and reassembly

4) Alignment, adjusting and checking
5) Routine service based on operating hours

d. Servicing and lubrication schedule
1) List of lubricants required

e. Manufacturer's printed operating and maintenance instructions.

f. Copies of typed circuit directories of panel board to reflect actual room graphics numbers and room names (not architectural room numbers from the drawings).
1) Electrical
2) Controls
3) Communications

g. Original manufacturer's parts list, illustrations, assembly drawings and diagrams required for maintenance.
1) Predicted life of part subject to wear
2) Items recommended to be stocked as spare parts

h. Schedule of fuses

i. Complete equipment field accessible internal wiring diagrams

j. Schedule of lamps

k. Schedule of ballasts

l. Each Contractor's coordination drawings

m. List of original manufacturer's spare parts and recommended quantities to be maintained in storage

n. Other data as required under pertinent sections of the specifications

2. Prepare and include additional data when the need for such data becomes apparent during instruction of Owner's personnel.

3. Additional requirements for operating and maintenance data as outlined in respective sections of specifications

4. Provide complete information for products specified in Division 26.

5. Provide certificates of compliance as specified in each related section.

6. Provide start up reports as specified in each related section.

7. Provide signed receipts for spare parts and material.

8. Provide training report and certificates.

**END OF SECTION 26 01 05**

# SECTION 26 05 00 - ELECTRICAL GENERAL PROVISIONS

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Except as modified in this Section, General Conditions, and Supplementary Conditions, applicable provisions of Division 1 General Requirements, and other provisions and requirements of the Contract Documents apply to work of Division 26 Electrical.

B. Applicable provisions of this section apply to all sections of Division 26, Electrical.

### 1.2 CODE REQUIREMENTS AND FEES

A. Perform work in accordance with applicable statutes, ordinances, codes and regulations of governmental authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Electrical work shall comply with applicable inspection services:
1. Underwriters Laboratories
2. National Fire Protection Association
3. State Health Department
4. Local Municipal Building Inspection Department adopted codes with amendments
5. National Electrical Code with local amendments
6. State Regulatory Agencies
7. Where the project is located outside a municipal jurisdiction, and has no municipal inspection services, the National Electrical Code with amendments of the municipality with extraterritorial jurisdiction shall govern.
8. Where the project is located outside any municipal jurisdiction, including extraterritorial jurisdictions, the National Electrical Code with local adopted amendments of the largest municipality located in the same county or parish shall govern.
9. International Energy Conservation Code
10. National Electrical Safety Code

C. Resolve any code violations discovered in contract documents with the Engineer prior to award of the contract. After Contract award, any correction or additions necessary for compliance with applicable codes shall be made at no additional cost to the Owner.

D. This Contractor shall be responsible for being aware of and complying with asbestos NESHAP regulations, as well as all other applicable codes, laws and regulations.

E. Obtain all permits required.

### 1.3 CONTRACTOR'S QUALIFICATIONS

A. An approved contractor for the work under this division shall be:

1. A specialist in this field and have the personnel, experience, training, and skill, and the organization to provide a practical working system.
2. Able to furnish evidence of having contracted for and installed not less than 3 systems of comparable size and type that has served their Owners satisfactorily for not less than 3 years.

## 1.4 REFERENCE SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARDS

A. Materials which are specified by reference to Federal Specifications; ASTM, ASME, ANSI, APWA, or AWWA Specifications; Federal Standards; or other standard specifications must comply with latest editions, revisions, amendments or supplements in effect on date proposals are received. Referenced specifications and standards are minimum requirements for all equipment, material and work. In instances where specified capacities, size or other features of equipment, devices or materials exceed these minimums, meet specified capacities.

B. Use electrical materials and equipment that is constructed and tested in accordance with the standards of NEMA, ANSI, ASTM, or other recognized commercial standard. If materials and equipment is labeled, listed, or recognized by any Nationally-Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) acceptable to the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), then provide NRTL-labeled, listed, or recognized material and equipment. Acceptable NRTLs include but are not limited to:
1. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL)
2. Factory Mutual Research Corp. (FMRC) (also referred to as “Factory Mutual Global,” or “FM Global”)
3. Intertek Testing Services NA, Inc. (ITSNA, formerly ETL)
4. Canadian Standards Association (CSA)
5. A complete listing of acceptable NRTLs is published on the OSHA website at http://www.osha.gov/dts/otpca/nrtl/.

D. Where material and equipment is not labeled, listed, or recognized by any NRTL, provide a manufacturer’s Certificate of Compliance indicating complete compliance of each item with applicable standards of NEMA, ANSI, ASTM, or other recognized commercial standard.

E. Do not install or use electrical material or equipment for any use other than that for which it was designed, labeled, listed, or identified unless formally approved for such use by the Owner’s AHJ. This *National Electrical Code®* requirement is re-stated for emphasis.

F. Codes and Standards applicable to this Division:
1. ANSI – American National Standards Institute
   a. ANSI Z535.1, Safety Colors
   b. ANSI Z535.2, Environmental and Facility Safety Signs
   c. ANSI Z535.3, Criteria for Safety Symbols
   d. ANSI Z535.4, Product Safety Signs and Labels

2. ASHRAE – American Society of Heating, Refrigeration, and Air Conditioning Engineers:
    a. ASHRAE Standard 90.1, *Energy Standards for Buildings Except for Low Rise Residential Buildings [ANSI, IESNA]*
3. ASTM – American Society for Testing and Materials
4. CBM – Certified Ballast Manufacturers
5. ICC – International Code Council
    a. International Building Code® (IBC)
    b. International Existing Building Code® (IEBC)
6. ICEA – Insulated Cable Engineers Association
    a. ICEA S-93-639, *Shielded Power Cables 5-46kV* (NEMA WC-74)
7. IEEE® - Institute of Electronics and Electrical Engineers
    a. IEEE C2™, *National Electrical Safety Code* (NESC) [ANSI]
    b. IEEE Std 141™, *Recommended Practice for Electric Power Distribution for Industrial Plans* ("Red Book")
    c. IEEE Std 143™, *Recommended Practice for Grounding of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems* ("Green Book")
    d. IEEE Std 241™, *Recommended Practice for Electric Power Systems in Commercial Buildings* ("Gray Book")
    e. IEEE Std 242™, *Recommended Practice for Protection and Coordination of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems* ("Buff Book")
    f. IEEE Std 315™, *Graphic Symbols for Electrical and Electronics Diagrams*
    g. IEEE Std 399™, *Recommended Practice for Power Systems Analysis* ("Brown Book")
    h. IEEE Std 446™, *Recommended Practice for Emergency and Standby Power Systems for Industrial and Commercial Applications* ("Orange Book")
    i. IEE Std 493™, *Recommended Practice for the Design of Reliable Industrial and Commercial Power Systems* ("Gold Book")
    j. IEEE Std 519™, *Recommended Practices and Requirements for Harmonic Control in Electrical Power Systems*
    k. IEEE Std 739™, *Recommended Practice for Energy Management in Industrial and Commercial Facilities* ("Bronze Book")
    l. IEEE Std 902™, *Guide for Maintenance, Operation , and Safety of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems* ("Yellow Book")
    m. IEEE Std 1015™, *Recommended Practice Applying Low-Voltage Circuit Breakers Used in Industrial and Commercial Power Systems* ("Blue Book")
    n. IEEE Std 11oo™, *Recommended Practice for Powering and Grounding Electronic Equipment* ("Emerald Book")
    o. IEEE Std 1584™, *Guide for Performing Arc-Flash Hazard Calculations*
8. IESNA – Illuminating Engineering Society of North America
    a. IESNA *Lighting Handbook*, Ninth Edition
    b. IESNA RP-1, *American National Standard Practice for Office Lighting*
    c. IESNA RP-7, *American National Standard Practice for Lighting Industrial Facilities*
9. NECA – National Electrical Contractors Association:

a. NECA 1, *Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction* [ANSI]
b. NECA 90, *Recommended Practice for Commissioning Building Electrical Systems* [ANSI]
c. NECA 100, *Symbols for Electrical Construction Drawings* [ANSI]
d. NECA 101, *Standard for Installing Steel Conduits (Rigid, IMC, EMT)* [ANSI]
e. NECA 104, *Recommended Practice for Installing Aluminum Building Wire and Cable* [ANSI]
f. NECA / NEMA 105, *Recommended Practice for Installing Metal Cable Tray Systems* [ANSI]
g. NECA 111, *Standard for Installing Nonmetallic Raceways (RNC, ENT, LFNC)* [ANSI]
h. NECA / NACNA 120, *Standard for Installing Armored Cable (Type AC) and Metal-Clad Cable (Type MC)*[ANSI]
i. NECA 202, *Recommended Practice for Installing and Maintaining Industrial Heat Tracing Systems* [ANSI]
j. NECA 230, *Standard for Selecting, Installing and Maintaining Electric Motors and Motor Controllers* [ANSI]
k. NECA 331, *Standard for Building and Service Entrance Grounding and Bonding*
l. NECA 400, *Standard for Installing and Maintaining Switchboards* [ANSI]
m. NECA 402, *Standard for Installing and Maintaining Motor Control Centers* [ANSI]
n. NECA / EGSA 404, *Standard for Installing Generator Sets* [ANSI]
o. NECA 407, *Recommended Practice for Installing and Maintaining Panelboards* [ANSI]
p. NECA 408, *Recommended Practice for Installing and Maintaining Busways* [ANSI]
q. NECA 409, *Recommended Practice for Installing and Maintaining Dry-Type Transformers* [ANSI]
r. NECA 410, *Recommended Practice for Installing and Maintaining Liquid-Filled Transformers* [ANSI]
s. NECA 411, *Recommended Practice for Installing and Maintaining Uninterruptible Power Supplied (UPS)* (ANSI]
t. NECA 420, *Standard for Fuse Applications* [ANSI]
u. NECA 430, *Standard for Installing Medium-Voltage Metal-Clad Switchgear* [ANSI]
v. NECA / IESNA 500, *Recommended Practice for Installing Indoor Lighting Systems* [ANSI]
w. NECA / IESNA 501, *Recommended Practice for Installing Exterior Lighting Systems* [ANSI]
x. NECA / IESNA 502, *Recommended Practice for Installing Industrial Lighting Systems* [ANSI]
y. NECA / MACSCB 600, *Recommended Practice for Installing and Maintaining Medium-Voltage Cable* [ANSI]
z. NECA / NEMA 605, *Installing Underground Nonmetallic Utility Duct* [ANSI]

10. NEMA – National Electrical Manufacturers Association
11. NETA – International Electrical Testing Association, Inc.:
    a. NETA ATS, *Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Distribution Equipment and Systems*
    b. NETA MTS, *Maintenance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Distribution Equipment and Systems*
    c. NETA ETT, *Standard for Certification of Electrical Testing Technicians* [ANSI]
12. NFPA – National Fire Protection Association:
    a. NFPA 20®, *Standard for the Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection®*
    b. NFPA 70™, *National Electrical Code® (NEC®)*
    c. NFPA 70E, *Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace.*
    d. NFPA 101®, Life Safety Code®
    e. NFPA 110, *Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems*
    f. NFPA 111, *Standard on Stored Electrical Energy Emergency and Standby Power Systems*
    g. NFPA 780, *Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems*
    h. All other NFPA codes and standards except NFPA 5000
13. OSHA – Occupational Safety and Health Administration
14. IECC – International Energy Conservation Code
15. ISO – International Organization for Standardization
16. State and Local Energy Conservation Code
17. Applicable County and Municipal Codes

## 1.5 CONTRACT DRAWINGS

A. Contract drawings are diagrammatic only and do not give fully dimensioned locations of various elements of work. Determine exact locations from field measurements.

B. Every effort has been made by the Engineer to indicate wiring of all receptacles, light fixtures, switches, telephone outlets, HVAC equipment, other equipment, elevator equipment, and all other devices / appliances requiring electrical power. It is the intent of the Engineer that all light fixtures be powered and controlled unless specifically noted on the plans; that all wiring devices (receptacles and direct connected equipment) be circuited to a power source of the correct voltage and that all HVAC, elevator equipment and other equipment be properly wired to the correct voltage power source; that all communications and security systems devices and equipment and all fire alarm system devices and equipment are installed, wired and systems are fully operational.

C. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to review the construction drawings (reflected ceiling plans) for light fixtures, casework elevation details for electrical devices which are not indicated on the electrical drawings; to review the mechanical and plumbing documents and all other drawings to determine the electrical rough-ins for all equipment requiring power connections, and to include in their proposals the correct and complete electrical rough-ins for all of these items which were inadvertently not

indicated on the electrical drawings, OR the Contractor shall specifically enumerate each item requiring electrical rough-in which is not specifically shown on the electrical drawings, and indicate the electrical provisions of these items as specifically excluded from his proposal.

D. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to compare the scale of all electrical drawings with the scale of the architectural drawings and make adjustments to all electrical drawings which have the incorrect drawing scale so that his material takeoffs are not in error due to an incorrectly labeled drawing scale and his proposal is complete.

E. No proposal shall be accepted which specifically excludes any of the provisions of paragraphs B, C, or D above.

**1.6 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS**

A. Maintain at the job site a separate set of white prints (black line) of the contract drawings for the sole purpose of recording the "as-built" changes and diagrams of those portions of work in which actual construction is significantly at variance with the contract drawings. Mark the drawings with a colored pencil. Prepare, as the work progresses and upon completion of work, reproducible drawings clearly indicating locations of various major and minor feeders, equipment, and other pertinent items, as installed. Record underground and under slab service and feeders installed, dimensioning exact location and elevation of such installations.

B. At conclusion of project, obtain without cost to the Owner, electronic PDF and AutoCAD 2014 and / or Revit CAD files of the original drawings and transfer as-built changes to these. Provide the following as-built documents including all contract drawings regardless of whether corrections were necessary and include in the transmittal: “2 sets of CDs and prints for Owner’s use, one set of CDs, prints, and mylars for Architect / Engineers Records”. Delivery of these as-built electronic, reproducibles and prints is a condition of final acceptance.
   1. 3 sets of electronic AutoCAD (2014 dwg) and / or Revit CAD drawing files, on CD-ROM media, of each contract as-built drawing.
   2. One reproducible Dayrex Mylar film positive of each contract as-built drawing.
   3. Three sets of blue-line prints of each contract as-built drawing.
   4. Three sets of pdf prints of each contract as-built drawing on CD.

C. As-Built Drawings should indicate the following information as a minimum:
   1. Indicate all addendum changes to documents.
   2. Remove Engineer’s Seal, name, address, and logo from drawings.
   3. Mark documents RECORD DRAWINGS.
   4. Clearly indicate: DOCUMENT PRODUCED BY:
   5. Indicate all changes to construction during construction. Indicate actual routing of all conduits, etc. that was deviated from construction drawings.
   6. Indicate exact location of all underground electrical raceways, and elevations.
   7. Correct schedules to reflect (actual) equipment furnished and manufacturer.

8. During the execution of work, maintain a complete set of Drawings and specifications upon which all locations of equipment, devices, and all deviations and changes from the construction documents in the work shall be recorded.
9. Exact location of all electrical equipment in building. Label panel schedules to indicate actual location.
10. Exact location of all electrical equipment in and outside of the building.
11. Exact location of all outdoor lighting poles and equipment.
12. Location, size and routing of all feeder conduits, equipment, etc. shall be accurately and neatly shown to dimension.
13. Exact location of all roof mounted equipment, wall, roof and floor penetrations.
14. Cloud all changes.
15. Update all panel schedules with all additional circuits added or deleted through construction. Identify each circuit to include all information specified for directory cards for circuit identification in panelboards.

## 1.7 SPACE REQUIREMENTS

A. Consider space limitations imposed by contiguous work in selection and location of equipment and material. Do not provide equipment or material that is not suitable in this respect.

## 1.8 RELATION WITH OTHER TRADES

A. Carefully study all matters and conditions concerning the project. Submit notification of conflict in ample time to prevent unwarranted changes in any work. Review other Divisions of these specifications to determine their requirements. Extend electrical services and final connections to all items requiring same.

B. Because of the complicated relationship of this work to the total project, conscientiously study the relation and cooperate as necessary to accomplish the full intent of the documents.

C. Provide sleeves and inserts in forms as required for the work. Stub up and protect open ends of pipe before any concrete is placed. Furnish sizes of required equipment pads. Furnish and locate bolts and fittings required to be cast in them.

D. Locate and size openings required for installation of work specified in this Division in sufficient time to prevent delay in the work.

E. Refer to other Divisions of the specifications for the scope of required connections to equipment furnished under other Division. Determine from the General Contractor / Construction Manager for the various trades, the Owner, and by direction from the Architect / Engineer, the exact location of all items. The construction trades involved shall furnish all roughing-in drawings and wiring diagrams required for proper installation of the electrical work.

1. Make final electrical connections to all electrically operated equipment indicated on the drawings, except as noted.
2. The responsibility for alignment of motor and driven equipment is specified in the related division.

F. Request all Shop Drawings required in ample time to permit proper installation of all electrical provisions.

G. Extend services as indicated to the various items of equipment furnished by others. Rough-in for the various items and make final connections ready for operation upon placing of the equipment.

**1.9 CONCEALED AND EXPOSED WORK**

A. When the word "concealed" is defined as hidden from sight as in chases, furred spaces or above ceilings. "Exposed" is defined as open to view, in plain sight.

**1.10 GUARANTEE**

A. Guarantee work for 1 year from the date of substantial completion of the project. During that period make good any faults or imperfections that may arise due to defects or omissions in material, equipment or workmanship. Replacement of failed parts or equipment shall be provided.

**1.11 MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT**

A. Furnish new and unused materials and equipment meeting the requirements of the paragraph specifying acceptable manufacturers. Where two or more units of the same type or class of equipment are required, provide units of a single manufacturer.

**1.12 NOISE AND VIBRATION**

A. Select equipment to operate with minimum noise and vibration. If noise or vibration is produced or transmitted to or through the building structure by equipment, piping, ducts or other parts of work, and judged objectionable by the Owner, Architect, or Engineer, rectify such conditions at no additional cost to the Owner. If the item of equipment is judged to produce objectionable noise or vibration, demonstrate at no additional cost that equipment performs within designated limits on a vibration chart.

**1.13 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS**

A. Manufacturers names and catalog number specified under sections of Division 26 are used to establish standards of design, performance, quality and serviceability and not to limit competition. Equipment of similar design, materials, energy efficiency characteristics (where applicable) and lighting performance characteristics (where applicable) equal to that specified, manufactured by a named manufacturer shall be acceptable on approval. A request for prior approval of equipment not listed must be

submitted ten (10) days before proposal due date. Submit a marked-up set of the relevant specification section indicating all variances, a comparison to the specified product, and of construction and performance criteria, complete design and performance data for the specified product and the proposed substitution for comparison to the Engineer. The Architect issues approvals of acceptable manufacturers as addenda to the Construction Proposal Documents.

**1.14 UTILITIES, LOCATIONS AND ELEVATIONS**

A. Locations and elevations of the various utilities included within the scope of this work:
   1. Obtained from utility maps and other substantially reliable sources.
   2. Are offered separate from the Contract Documents as a general guide only without guarantees to accuracy.

B. Examine the site and verify the location and elevation of all utilities and of their relation to the work. Existing utilities indicated on the site plans are for reference only and shall be field verified by the Contractor with the respective public or private utility.

**1.15 OPERATING TESTS**

A. After all electrical systems have been completed and put into operation, subject each system to an operating test under design conditions to ensure proper sequencing and operation throughout the range of operation. Tests shall be made in the presence of the Architect / Engineer and Owner. Provide minimum 24-hour advance notice of scheduling of all tests. Make adjustments as required to ensure proper functioning of all systems. Special tests on individual systems are specified under individual sections. Submit 3 copies of all certifications and test reports adequately in advance of completion of the work to allow for remedial action as required to correct deficiencies discovered in equipment and systems.

**1.16 WARRANTIES**

A. All normal and extended warranties shall include parts, labor, miscellaneous materials, travel time, incidental expenses, normal freight / shipping, refrigerant, oils, lubricants, belts, filters and any expenses related to service calls required to diagnose and correct warranty problems.

B. Manufacturer’s warranty shall be from one year from date of substantial completion. Contractor shall be responsible for extending the warranties regardless of date of installation or commissioning.

C. Submit 3 copies of all warranties and guarantees for systems, equipment, devices and materials. These shall be included in the Operating and Maintenance Manuals.

**1.17 BUILDING CONSTRUCTION**

A. It shall be the responsibility of the sub-contractor to consult the Contract Drawings, details and specifications and thoroughly familiarize himself as to the construction and all job related requirements. All construction trades shall cooperate with the General Contractor / Construction Manager Job site superintendent and lay out work so that all raceways and other items are placed in the walls, furred spaces, chases, etc., so that there shall be no delay in the job.

**1.18 TEMPORARY FACILITIES**

A. General: Refer to Division 1 for general requirements on temporary facilities.

B. Temporary Wiring: Temporary power and lighting for construction purposes shall be provided under this Division. Installation of temporary power shall be in accordance with NEC Article 527.

C. Temporary facilities, wire, lights and devices are the property of this Contractor and shall be removed by this Contractor at the completion of the Contract.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS – NOT USED**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 IDENTIFICATION OF EQUIPMENT**

A. Identification of Equipment:
   1. All major equipment shall have a manufacturer's label identifying the manufacturer's address, equipment model and serial numbers, equipment size, and other pertinent data. Take care not to obliterate this nameplate. The legend on all nameplates or tags shall correspond to the identification shown on the Operating Instructions. All panels, cabinets, or equipment requiring 120 volt or higher power shall be labeled as required which includes circuit designation and circuit panelboard location, regardless of which discipline installs the equipment.
   2. Three layer laminated plastic engraved identifying nameplate shall be permanently secured to each switchboard, distribution panel, motor control center, transformer, panelboard, safety disconnect switch, enclosed circuit breaker, transfer switches, remote generator transfer deices not installed inside light fixtures, wireway, busduct plug, terminal cabinet, surge protective device, capacitor, individual motor controller, contactor, fire alarm panels (main and remote booster), and communications (voice, data, video) cabinet or rack, security panels, time clocks, BMCS cabinets, sound reinforcement cabinets and racks, miscellaneous control cabinets, equipment integral disconnect switches, toggle or motor switches, disconnects for equipment, exterior junction boxes, exterior pull boxes, exterior wireways and gutters, and rooftop equipment (i.e.: supply and exhaust fans, rooftop HVAC equipment) with stainless steel screws.
      a. Utility Power: White letters on black background
         Generator Power (White letters on red background

UPS Power: White letters on blue background
Load Bank Circuits: White letters on green background
Solar or Wind Power Generation: White on orange background

b. Identifying nameplates shall have 1/2-inch high, engraved letters for equipment designation and ¼-inch letters indicating source circuit designation, (i.e.: “PANEL HA –fed from MDP-6 located in Mech. Rm. 100”). The words “fed from” and “located” shall be included in the labeling.

c. Each switchboard, distribution panel, transfer switch, generator transfer device (GTD) for emergency lighting, and motor control center feeder or branch circuit device shall have a nameplate showing the load and location of load served in ¼-inch high, engraved letters. Circuit breaker name and kirk key designation if applicable

d. Each section of multiple section panelboards shall also indicate panelboard section number (i.e.: Panel “HA-Section 2 – fed from MDP-6 located in Mech. Rm. 100”)

e. Motor Controllers, starters, and contactors: Provide neatly typed label inside each motor controller and contactor enclosure door identifying motor or load served, nameplate horsepower, full load amperes, code letter, service factor, and voltage / phase rating.

f. Individual motor controller and contactor nameplates shall include load served, location of load served, panel and circuit numbers serving load, location of panel serving load, panel and circuit number serving control circuit, location of panel serving control circuit (if different from panel serving load), description and location (if applicable) of control controlling contactor (i.e. Controlled: Switch in RM 100, and Controlled: BMCS). Contactor nameplate is to include whether it is a lighting or receptacle contactor and name of contactor. i.e. C-1.

| Lighting Contactor Example | Receptacle Contactor Example |
|---|---|
| Lighting Contactor C1 | Receptacle Contactor C2 |
| West Parking Lot Pole Lights | Table Recpts Lab Rm 100 |
| Fed From Panel HA-2,4,6 | Fed From Panel LA-2,4,6,8 |
| Located Main Elec. Rm. 100 | Located Mech. Rm. 110 |
| Control Circuit-Panel LA 42 | Control Circuit-Panel LA-42 |
| Located Main Elec. Rm. 100 | Controlled-Emer Shut Off Mushroom |
| Controlled-BMCS | Switch Rm 101 |

g. Exterior J-boxes, pull boxes, and gutters shall have panel identification, circuit numbers, and location of panel listed on name plate. Low voltage shall be identified per contents, examples: DATA, BMCS, F/A

h. Name plates on equipment served from switchboards, distribution panels, I-Line panels, and motor control centers are not to include circuit numbers shown on drawings as the circuit numbers are for construction drawing purposes only.

i. Panel names for 277/480v shall start with the letter “H” and 120/208v, 120/240v shall start with the letter “L”. No panel shall be named to include a number other than multi sectional panels, example HA-section 2. New panels installed in renovation or site additions shall have names

approved or designated by Owner's electrical representative. Panel names shall not include the letter "I". Transformer names shall start with the letter "T" followed by the panel name it serves, i.e. TLA.

h. Main service ATS label shall include equipment name, emergency source and location, normal power source and location, panel served and location. Wall mounted ATS serving lighting loads shall include type of lighting and location, emergency panel and circuit ID and location of panel, normal panel and circuit ID and location of panel.

| Main Service ATS Example | Wall Mounted Lighting ATS Example |
|---|---|
| ATS-1 | ATS |
| Emer Power-Emer Generator | Exterior Wall Packs/Soffit Lights |
| Located Chiller Yard | North/West Metal Canopy Lights |
| Normal Power-MSB | Fed from EHA-2 |
| Located-Mech Rm 100 | Located Mech Rm 200 |
| Serves Panel EHA | Fed From HB-4 |
| Located-Mech Rm 100 | Located Mech Rm 150 |

i. Name plates shall include rated bus amperage, voltage, number of phases, number of wires and type of essential electrical system as applicable.

j. Service equipment available fault current labeling: Provide a 2x3 inch label with blue lettering on contrasting background permanently affixed to the service disconnect/equipment prior to energizing the service equipment. The label shall include the date of installation and the date of calculation. The date of calculation shall be the date indicated by the Engineer of Record's Seal on the Construction Document Electrical One-Line Diagram / Riser Drawing. Example:

SERVICE EQUIPMENT AVAILABLE FAULT CURRENT: ##, ### AMPS
DATE OF INSTALLATION: MM/DD/YY
DATE OF CALCULATION: MM/DD/YY

k. Above ceiling lighting control relay equipment: Provide name plate glued to bottom of ceiling T-grid below relay location. White letters on black background with ¼" high letters on ½" tall label for digital lighting module "DLM".

3. Cardholders and directory cards shall be furnished for circuit identification in panelboards. Cardholder shall be located on inside of panel door and shall be in a metal frame with clear plastic front. Circuit lists shall be typewritten. Circuit descriptions shall include explicit description and identification of items controlled by each individual breaker, including final graphics room number or name designation and name of each item served. If no building appointed room number or name is given, list locations per the following examples – A. Storage in Rm 100 – B. Office in Rm 100 – C. Storage west of Rm. 100. List corridors as "corridors". Identify circuits controlled by contactors using a separate notation for each contactor used. List notation at bottom of schedule stating the circuits are controlled by a contactor, list exact location of contactor, and how switched. Do not use architectural room number designation shown on plans. Obtain final graphics room number identification from Architect's final room number

graphics plan. All locations served by breakers shall be listed on schedule. Panel schedule shall be large enough to contain all information required. Also refer to Section 26 24 16.

4. Permanent, waterproof, black markers shall be used to identify each lighting and power grid junction box, gutter and wireway. Clearly indicate the panel and branch circuit numbers available at that junction box, gutter or wireway. Where low voltage relay panels are used for lighting control, identify the low voltage relay panel and number in addition to the branch circuit panel and number.
5. Pull Boxes, Transformers, Disconnect Switches, etc.: Field work each with a name plate showing identity, voltage and phase and identifying equipment connected to it. The transformer rating shall be shown on the panels or enclosures. For an enclosure containing a motor starter, the nameplate shall include the Owner's motor number, motor voltage, number of motor phases, motor load being serviced, motor horsepower, and motor full load current. Nameplates shall also indicate where panel is fed from.

C. Prohibited Markings: Markings intended to identify the manufacturer, vendor, or other source from whom the material has been obtained are prohibited for installation in public, tenant, or common areas within the project. Also prohibited are materials or devices that bear evidence that markings or insignias have been removed. Certification, testing (example, Underwriters Laboratories), and approval labels are exceptions to this requirement.

D. Warning Signs: Provide warning signs where there is hazardous exposure associated with access to or operation of electrical facilities. Provide text of sufficient size to convey adequate information at each location; mount permanently in an appropriate and effective location. Comply with industry standards for color and design.

E. Wire and Cable Markers: Provide vinyl cloth markers with split sleeve or tubing type, except in manholes provide stainless steel with plastic ties.

F. Wire and Cable Labeling: Provide wire markers on each conductor in all boxes, pull boxes, gutters, wireways, contactors, and motor controllers and load connection. Identify with panelboard / switchboard branch circuit or feeder number for power and lighting circuits, and with control wire number as indicated on equipment manufacturer's shop drawings for control wiring.

G. Underground Warning Tape: Thomas and Betts or approved equal. Six-inch wide plastic tape, colored red for 50 volts or above electrical, or orange for communications and control with suitable warning legend describing buried electrical lines; telephone lines and data lines per APWA recommendations. All underground electrical conduits shall be so identified. Tape shall be buried at a depth of 6-inches below grade and directly above conduits or ductbanks. Provide magnetic marking tape below all underground electrical conduits.

## 3.2 CUTTING AND PATCHING

A. General: Comply with the requirements of Division 1 for the cutting and patching of other work to accommodate the installation of electrical work. Except as authorized by the Architect / Engineer, cutting and patching of electrical work to accommodate the installation of other work is not permitted.

**3.3 INSTRUCTION OF OWNER'S PERSONNEL**

A. Prior to substantial completion, conduct an on-site training program to instruct Owner's operating personnel in the operation and maintenance of the electrical systems.
   1. Provide the training during regular working day.
   2. The Instructors shall be experienced in their phase of operation and maintenance of the electrical systems and with the project.
   3. Refer to other specification sections for additional training and commissioning requirements.

B. Time to be allocated for instructions.
   1. Minimum of 20 hours dedicated instructor time
   2. 2 hours on each of 10 days
   3. Additional instruction time for specific systems as specified in other Sections.

C. Before on-site training, submit the program syllabus; proposed time and dates; for review and approval, minimum 48 hours prior to proposed training time and date.
   1. One copy to the Owner
   2. One copy to the Architect / Engineer

D. The Owner shall provide a list of personnel to receive instructions, and shall coordinate their attendance at the agreed upon times.

E. Use operation and maintenance manuals as the basis of instruction. Review manual with personnel in detail. Explain all aspects of operation and maintenance.

F. Demonstrate start-up, operation, control, adjustment, trouble-shooting, servicing, maintenance, and shut down of each item of equipment.

G. Demonstrate equipment functions (both individually and as part of the total integrated system).

H. Prepare and insert additional data in the operating and maintenance manuals when the need for additional data becomes apparent during instructions.

I. Submit a report within one week after completion of training. List time and date of each demonstration, hours devoted to the demonstration, and a list of people present, with their respective signatures.

J. At the conclusion of the on-site training program, have the person designated by the Owner sign a certificate to certify that he / she has a proper understanding of the

system, that the demonstrations and instructions have been satisfactorily completed, and the scope and content of the operating and maintenance manuals used for the training program are satisfactory.

K. Provide a copy of the report and the certificate in an appropriately tabbed section of each Operating and Maintenance Manual.

## 3.4 OPENINGS

A. Framed, cast or masonry openings for boxes, equipment or conduits are specified under other divisions. Drawings and layout work for exact size and location of all openings are included under this division.

## 3.5 HOUSEKEEPING PADS

A. Provide concrete equipment housekeeping pads under all floor and outdoor mounted electrical equipment.

B. Concrete and reinforcing steel shall be as specified in Division 3, or as indicated or noted.

C. Concrete pads:
1. 6-inches thick minimum indoors; 8-inches thick minimum outdoors, or match existing if indicated on the drawings to extend existing pads, or in other sections of the specifications.
2. Chamfer strips at edges and corner of forms.
3. Smooth steel trowel finish.
4. Extend 3-inches minimum indoors beyond perimeter of equipment unless otherwise shown.
5. 6-inch x 6-inch #8 wire reinforcement mesh.

## 3.6 OBSTRUCTIONS

A. The drawings indicate certain information pertaining to surface and subsurface obstructions, which has been taken from available drawings. Such information is not guaranteed, however, as to accuracy of location or complete information.
1. Before any cutting or trenching operations are begun, verify with Owner's representative, utility companies, municipalities, and other interested parties that all available information has been provided.
2. Should obstruction be encountered, whether shown or not, alter routing of new work, reroute existing lines, remove obstruction where permitted, or otherwise perform whatever work is necessary to satisfy the purpose of the new work and leave existing services and structures in a satisfactory and serviceable condition.

B. Assume total responsibility for and repair any damage to existing utilities or construction, whether or not such existing facilities are shown.

## 3.7 VANDAL RESISTANT DEVICES

A. Where vandal resistant screws or bolts are employed on the project, deliver to the Owner 2 suitable tools for use with each type of fastener used, and 25 percent spare fasteners.

B. Proof of delivery of these items to the Owner shall be included in the Operating and Maintenance Manuals.

## 3.8 PROTECTION

A. Protect work, equipment, fixtures, and materials. At work completion, work must be clean and in original manufacturer's condition.

B. Do not deliver equipment to this project site until progress of construction has reached the stage where equipment is actually needed or until building is closed in enough to protect the equipment from weather. Equipment allowed to stand in the weather shall be rejected, and the contractor is obligated to furnish new equipment of a like kind at no additional cost to the Owner.

## 3.9 COORDINATION OF BRANCH CIRCUIT OVERCURRENT AND PROTECTION DEVICES

A. Review with equipment specified which requires electrical connections. Review equipment shop drawings and manufacturer's nameplate data and coordinate exact branch circuit overcurrent protective device and conductors with equipment provided.
   1. Provide equipment manufacturer's recommended overcurrent protective device indicated on nameplate at no additional cost to the Owner.
   2. If branch circuit conductors and / or conduit sizing is less than the minimum required by equipment manufacturer, notify the Architect / Engineer immediately, prior to rough-in.
   3. If equipment manufacturer is a substitution to the specified equipment manufacturer, provide the greater of the conductors specified or those required for the installed equipment manufacturer’s minimum circuit conductors, at no additional cost to the Owner.
   4. If conductors indicated on plans are in excess of that permitted by equipment manufacturer, notify Architect / Engineer immediately, prior to rough-in.
   5. If conductors indicated on plans are in excess of that permitted by the equipment manufacturer, provide the maximum conductors permitted by the equipment manufacturer based on NEC ampacity tables, either in a single set, or as a set of parallel conductors as permitted by the NEC. Conductor size and quantity entering the equipment enclosures shall not exceed the equipment manufacturer’s maximum recommendations.

## 3.10 FAULT CURRENT AND ARC FLASH STUDY FOR OVERCURRENT DEVICE COORDINATION

A. Contractor shall provide a coordination study, fault current analysis, and Arc-Flash study report for new electrical distribution equipment downstream to the last new

overcurrent device in each feeder or branch circuit, conducted and prepared by the switchgear manufacturer. The coordination study and fault current analysis shall include the manufacturer's recommendations for all adjustable overcurrent devices specified or provided. Study does not require inclusion of existing switchgear, except it shall include existing or new overcurrent devices in existing switchgear serving new switchgear. Contractor shall submit the report results prior to submitting switchgear submittals to allow changes or modifications to equipment selection.

B. Contractor shall adjust all overcurrent device settings based on manufacturer's recommendations, or as directed by Owner / Architect at no additional cost to Owner. Settings for GFI shall be set at maximum as permitted by the NEC.

C. Arc-Flash & Shock-Hazard Warning Labels: Provide arc-flash and shock hazard-warning labels that comply with ANSI Z535.4 on switchgear, switchboards, transformers, motor control centers, panelboards, motor controllers, safety switches, industrial control panels and other equipment that is likely to require examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance while energized. Locate the marking to be clearly visible to qualified persons before examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance of the equipment. On renovation projects, install arc-flash warning labels on existing equipment where lock-out / tag-out will be required for the renovation work. Provide the information listed below on each label. Specify that arc-flash warning label information be produced by the electrical equipment manufacturer or supplier as a part of the final power system studies to be submitted by the Contractor in accordance with the electrical acceptance testing.
   1. Note: In addition to the final arc-flash analysis, the final power system studies include load flow and fault-current calculations, and an overcurrent protective device (OCPD) coordination study based on the actual equipment to be installed for the project.

D. Information to be determined and applied to electrical equipment:
   1. Arc-Flash Protection Boundary
   2. Arc-Flash incident energy calculated in accordance with IEEE Std 15841™
   3. Working distance calculated in accordance with IEEE Std 1584a™
   4. NFPA 70E Hazard / Risk Category Number or the appropriate personal protective equipment (PPE) for operations with doors closed and covers on.
      a. Typical operations include operating circuit breakers, fused switches, and meter selector switches.
   5. System phase-to-phase voltage
   6. Condition(s) when a shock hazard exists (e.g. "With cover off")
   7. Limited Approach Boundary as determined from NFPA 70E, Table 130.2(C)
   8. Restricted Approach Boundary as determined from NFPA 70E, Table 130.2(C)
   9. Prohibited Approach Boundary as determined from NFPA 70E, Table 130.2(C)
   10. Unique equipment designation or code (described under "Component Identification"
   11. Class for insulating gloves based on system voltage (e.g., Class 00 up to 500V)
   12. Voltage rating for insulated or insulating tools based on system voltage (e.g., 1000V)

13. Date that the hazard analysis was performed.
14. “Served from” circuit directory information including the serving equipment designation, location (e.g., room number), circuit number, and circuit voltage / number of phases / number of wires.
15. If applicable, the “serves” circuit directory information including the served equipment designation, location (e.g., room number), circuit number, and circuit voltage / number of phases / number of wires.
16. An abbreviated warning label may be used where it has been determined that no dangerous arc-flash hazard exists in accordance with IEEE 1584a™, paragraph 9.2.3.
17. Use a “DANGER” label where the calculated arc-flash incident energy exceeds 40 cal/cm.

E. Submittals: Submit four copies of coordination study and certified fault current study results to the Architect for review.

## 3.11 EQUIPMENT BACKBOARDS

A. Backboards: ¾ inch, fire retardant, exterior grade plywood, painted gray, both sides.
1. Provide minimum of two 4-ft. by 8-ft. sheets of plywood for each new telephone equipment terminal location.
2. Provide minimum of two 4-ft. by 4-ft. sheets of plywood for each new data / voice / video / communications equipment location / cable TV head end equipment, or security equipment location.

## 3.12 TESTING

A. The contractors for the various sub-systems shall submit proposed testing procedures for their systems, subject to review and approval and Owner acceptance. The contract will not be declared to be substantially complete until the functional operation of the subsystems have been demonstrated and verified and reports have been provided, reviewed and accepted.

B. The project will not be declared substantially complete until the following has taken place.
1. The “As-Built” drawings have been submitted, reviewed and accepted by the Architect / Owner / Owner’s Construction Representative.
2. The building emergency lighting system and other systems including but not limited to those listed below have been tested, completed factory start-up and programming and adjusting as required for a complete and fully operational system acceptable to the Architect and Owner.
    a. Occupancy Sensor and Lighting Controls
    b. Surge protective device equipment
    c. Overcurrent devices
    d. Motor Controllers
    e. Emergency Lighting
    f. Building Fire Alarm System

## 3.13 LOAD BALANCING

A. Balance the loads on each low-voltage feeder so that the voltage on each phase is within +/- 1.0% of the average voltage of the three phases. Refer to the DOE Office of Industrial Technologies, "Motor Tip Sheet #7" dated September 2005 available for download to PDF format at no charge at: http://www1.eere.energy.gov/industry/bestpractices/pdfs/eliminate_voltage_un_balanced_motor-systemts7.pdf

**END OF SECTION 26 05 00**

# SECTION 26 05 05 - ELECTRICAL ALTERATIONS PROJECT PROCEDURES

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Inspection and service of existing equipment and materials to remain or be reused.

B. Handling of equipment and materials to be abandoned.

C. Handling of equipment and materials to be removed.

### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Coordination with the Contractor prior to the disconnection or shutdown of existing equipment, or to the modification of existing operational systems.

### 1.3 CONTRACT DRAWINGS

A. There is the possibility that there exist conditions and devices that are affected by the work indicated on the drawings and called for in the specifications (project manual) that do not appear on the drawings. It is the Contractors responsibility to visit the site and determine all of the existing conditions and to consider these existing conditions when making and presenting a proposal, to have a complete proposal.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

A. Material used to upgrade and repair existing equipment shall conform to that specified.

B. Material used to upgrade and repair existing equipment shall not void existing warranties or listings of the equipment to be upgraded or repaired.

C. Material used to upgrade and repair existing equipment shall be new and shall be of the same manufacturer of the existing equipment, shall be acquired through the existing original equipment manufacturer's approved distribution channels, shall have manufacturer's warranties for the new material being used, and shall be listed for the use intended.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

A. Existing materials and equipment indicated on the drawings or in the specifications to be reused shall be inspected for damaged or missing parts. Notify the Architect / Engineer, in writing, accordingly.

B. If using materials specified or shown on the drawing voids or diminishes the warranty or operation of remaining equipment or systems, the Contractor shall notify the Architect / Engineer, in writing.

C. Verify field measurements and circuiting arrangements.

D. Verify that abandoned wiring, panelboards, and switchboards, disconnect switches, and equipment serve only abandoned facilities. Where abandoned wiring, panelboards, switchboards, and equipment which serve existing facilities are to remain, Contractor shall provide means and methods to ensure existing facilities remain energized with the correct voltage, overcurrent protection, conductors, and circuit ampacity required by the existing facilities to remain.

E. Demolition Drawings are based on casual field observation, and when available, existing record documents. Report discrepancies to Architect before disturbing existing installation, and immediately after such discrepancies are discovered.

**3.2 APPLICATION**

A. Existing materials and equipment indicated on the drawings or in the specification to be reused shall be cleaned and reconditioned, including tightening of feeder and bus bar lugs prior to installation and reuse in the modified system.

B. Remove existing luminaries for alterations/renovations. Use mild detergent to clean all exterior and interior surfaces; rinse with clean water and wipe dry. For each luminarie that is taken down for alteration and then reinstalled, replace damaged parts, provide new lamps and, with matching paint, touch-up scratched or abraded areas, and replace cracked, broken or missing lenses or diffusers. Replace unrepairable fixtures with new fixtures

C. Material and equipment removed that is not to be salvaged for Owner's use or for reuse on the project shall become the property of the Contractor and shall be removed from the site.

D. Prior to start of construction, Contractor shall walk areas to be renovated with Owner to identify and document items to be salvaged for Owner’s use.

E. Material or equipment salvaged for Owner's use shall be carefully handled and stored where directed by the Owner.

F. Materials and equipment not indicated to be removed or abandoned shall be reconnected to the new system.

G. Clean and repair existing materials and equipment that remain or are to be reused.

H. Panelboards Reused and Modified for Renovation: Clean exposed surfaces and check tightness of electrical connections. Replace damaged circuit breakers and provide closure plates for vacant positions. Provide typed circuit directory showing revised circuiting arrangement.

## 3.3 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Coordinate utility service outages with Utility Company, Architect and Owner.

B. Provide temporary wiring and connections to maintain existing systems in service during construction. When work must be performed on energized equipment or circuits use personnel experienced in such operations.

C. Existing Electrical Service: Refer to drawings for work in remodeled areas. Where facilities in these areas are to remain in service, any related work to keep the facilities in operation is specified in this Division. Maintain existing system in service until new system is complete and ready for service. Disable system only to make switchovers and connections. Obtain written permission from Owner at least 10 business days before partially or completely disabling system. Minimize outage duration. Make temporary connections to maintain service in areas adjacent to work area. Disclose the extent, exact time and expected duration of the outage in a written request to the Owner.

D. Remove and replace existing conduit, wiring, outlets, devices, lighting fixtures, panels and appurtenances as occasioned by new or remodeled construction. Re-establish service to lights, switches and devices that may be interrupted by remodeled construction.

E. Disconnect electrical systems in walls, floors and ceilings scheduled for removal. When outlets are removed, wire shall be pulled out of the conduit back to the nearest remaining box or cabinet.
   1. Remove exposed conduit that has been abandoned.
   2. Cap conduit beyond the finish line.
   3. Provide unswitched circuit leg for emergency battery powered equipment; circuit from same branch circuit breaker as switched normal lighting circuit.

F. Where new/existing luminaries or devices are shown being connected to existing circuits:
   1. Field verify existing system voltage
   2. Provide ballast / device to match system voltage

G. Verify the loading of each circuit affected by remodeling work. The maximum load of any branch circuit shall not exceed 80% of its rating.

H. Remove equipment, systems, conductors, wiring, raceways, etc. abandoned or not required for existing or new systems. Coordinate with Architect / Owner for salvage by Owner. Remove abandoned / not required raceways and wiring back to nearest box serving load to remain, or back to panel if not serving remaining load.

I. Existing Power, and Lighting and Appliance Branch Circuit Distribution System: Maintain existing system in service unless as noted or specified otherwise. Disable system only to make switchovers and connections. Notify Owner at least 72 hours before partially or completely disabling system. Minimize outage duration. Make connections to maintain service in areas adjacent to work area.

J. Existing Lighting System: Maintain existing system in service unless as noted or specified otherwise. Disable system only to make switchovers and connections. Notify Owner at least 72 hours before partially or completely disabling system. Minimize outage duration. Make connections to maintain service in areas adjacent to work area.

K. Existing Fire Alarm System: Maintain existing system in service. Disable system only to make switchovers and connections. Notify Owner and local fire service at least 72 hours before partially or completely disabling system. Minimize outage duration. Make connections to maintain service in areas adjacent to work area.

L. Existing Telephone System: Maintain existing system in service. Disable system only to make switchovers and connections. Notify Owner and Telephone Company at least 72 hours before partially or completely disabling system. Minimize outage duration. Make connections to maintain service in areas adjacent to work area.

M. Existing Paging and Sound Reinforcement Systems: Maintain existing system in service. Disable system only to make switchovers and connections. Notify the Owner at least 72 hours before partially or completely disabling system. Minimize outage duration. Make connections to maintain service in areas adjacent to work area.

N. Existing Data Network: Maintain existing system in service. Disable system only to make switchovers and connections. Notify the Owner at least 72 hours before partially or completely disabling system. Minimize outage duration. Make connections to maintain service in areas adjacent to work area.

O. Existing Video Distribution System: Maintain existing system in service. Disable system only to make switchovers and connections. Notify the Owner at least 72 hours before partially or completely disabling system. Minimize outage duration. Make connections to maintain service in areas adjacent to work area.

P. Existing Security System: Maintain existing system in service. Disable system only to make switchovers and connections. Notify the Owner at least 72 hours before partially or completely disabling system. Minimize outage duration. Make connections to maintain service in areas adjacent to work area.

Q. Existing Video Surveillance System: Maintain existing system in service. Disable system only to make switchovers and connections. Notify the Owner at least 72 hours before partially or completely disabling system. Minimize outage duration. Make connections to maintain service in areas adjacent to work area.

R. Prior to shutdown of existing power for any single extended period of time greater than 18 hours, provide at minimum 120/240 volt, 1-phase, 3-wire electrical service to provide temporary power to all critical loads as identified by Owner including but not limited to all security systems, fire alarm panel and associated remote power supplies. Contractor shall provide continuous operation temporary generator power or coordinate directly with local utility regarding temporary power service and metering and provide all necessary permits and fees at no cost to the Owner.

S. Provide a minimum 30 space panelboard with required branch circuit breakers as required and all associated temporary wiring as required. Remove all temporary power prior to substantial completion.

## 3.4 DEMOLITION AND EXTENSION OF EXISTING ELECTRICAL WORK

A. The Contractor shall modify, remove, and/or relocate all materials and items so indicated on the drawings or required by the installation of new facilities. All removals and/or dismantling shall be conducted in a manner as to produce maximum salvage. Salvage materials shall remain the property of the Owner, and shall be delivered to such destination as directed by the Owner's representative unless they are not wanted, then it will be the responsibility of this Contractor to remove such items and properly dispose of them. Materials and/or items scheduled for relocation and which are damaged during dismantling or reassembly operations shall be repaired and restored to good operative condition. The Contractor may, at his discretion, and upon approval of the Owner's representative substitute new materials and/or items of like design and quality in lieu of materials and/or items to be relocated.

1. Remove abandoned electrical distribution equipment, utilization equipment, outlets and accessible portions of wiring, raceway systems, and cables back to the source panelboard, switchboard, switchgear, communications closet, or cabinet. Abandoned wiring and raceways can result from actions that include the following:
    a. Equipment is removed or relocated
    b. Fixtures are removed or relocated
    c. System is no longer used
    d. There is no demonstrable near term future use for the existing circuit or raceway system.
2. Leave abandoned electrical equipment, conductors, and material in place only if one or more of the following conditions exist:
    a. The removal requires the demolition of other structures, finishes, or equipment that is still in use. An example is abandoned conduit above an existing plaster ceiling.
    b. Removal is not feasible due to hazards, construction methods, or restricted access.
    c. Removal of abandoned conductors may damage conductors that must remain operational.
3. Remove conduits, including those above accessible ceilings, to the point that building construction, earth, or paving covers them. Cut conduit beneath or

flush with building construction or paving. Plug, cap, or seal the remaining unused conduits. Install blank covers for abandoned boxes and enclosures not removed.

4. Extend existing equipment connections using material and methods compatible with the existing electrical installation and this division.
5. Restore the original fire rating of floors, walls, and ceilings after electrical demolition.
6. Use approved lock-out / tag-out procedures to control hazardous energy sources. Assure that an electrically safe work condition exists in the demolition area before beginning demolition. Where possible, disconnect the building from all sources of electrical power before beginning demolition.

B. All items to be relocated shall be carefully removed in reverse to original assembly or placement and protected until relocated. The Contractor shall clean, repair, and provide all new materials, fittings, and appurtenances required to complete the relocations and to restore them to good operative order. All relocations shall be performed by workmen skilled in the work and in accordance with standard practice of the trades involved.

C. When items scheduled for relocation and/or reuse are found to be in damaged condition before work has been started on dismantling, the Contractor shall call the attention of the Owner's representative to such items and receive further instructions before removal. Items damaged in repositioning operations are the contractor's responsibility and shall be repaired or replaced by the contractor as approved by the owner's representative, at no additional cost to the Owner.

D. Conduit and wiring to items to be removed, salvaged, or relocated shall be removed to points indicated on the drawings, specified, or acceptable to the Owner's representative. Conduit and wiring not scheduled for reuse shall be removed to the points at which reuse is to be continued or service is to remain. Such services shall be sealed, capped, or otherwise tied-off or disconnected in a safe manner acceptable to the Construction Inspector. All disconnections or connections into the existing facilities shall be done in such a manner as to result in minimum interruption of services to adjacent occupied areas. Services to existing areas or facilities that must remain in operation during the construction period shall not be interrupted without prior specific approval of the Owner's representative hereinbefore specified.

E. Disconnect abandoned outlets and remove devices. Remove abandoned outlets if conduit servicing them is abandoned and removed. Provide blank cover for abandoned outlets that are not removed. Replace existing wiring devices and cover plates with new wiring devices and new cover plates in renovated areas. Any corridor, room, or area indicated to have any new wiring devices installed shall have all of the existing wiring devices and cover plates replaced with new wiring devices and new cover plates.

F. Disconnect and remove electrical devices and equipment serving utilization equipment that has been removed.

G. Disconnect and remove abandoned luminaries. Remove brackets, stems, hangers, and other accessories.

H. Repair adjacent construction and finishes damaged during demolition and extension work.

I. Maintain access to existing electrical installations that remain active. Modify installation or provide access panel as appropriate.

J. Extend existing installations using materials and methods compatible with existing electrical installations, or as specified.

K. Existing conduit raceway found to need additional hangers installed and/or junction box covers shall be added at no additional cost to the Owner.

L. Disconnect and remove electrical devices and equipment serving utilization equipment that has been removed.

## 3.5 PROTECTION OF THE WORK

A. Provide adequate temporary support and auxiliary structure as necessary to ensure structural value or integrity of affected portion of work.

B. Provide devices and methods to protect other portions of work from damage.

C. Execute fitting and adjustment of products to provide a finished installation to comply with specified products, functions, tolerances and finishes.

## 3.6 IDENTIFICATION OF EQUIPMENT IN RENOVATED AREAS

A. Identification of Equipment: Provide new, typed panel directory cards (and card holders if needed) for existing panelboards located within the renovated areas. Ring out all new and existing circuits within these panelboards as specified in Section 26 05 00 Electrical General Provisions. Do not include the description “existing”. Provide new nameplates for all existing electrical equipment in renovated areas as specified in Section 26 05 00 Electrical General Provisions.

## 3.7 TESTING AND CORRECTIVE MEASURES FOR DAMAGE DURING CONSTRUCTION IN EXISTING LOW VOLTAGE SYSTEMS

A. Pre-construction testing of existing low voltage systems:
   1. Provide a complete operational test of the following systems prior to demolition and renovation. Verify operation of each circuit, device, panel, console, distribution equipment, and associated accessories. Test shall be performed by a contractor and technicians, each certified by the respective manufacturer of the existing special system to perform test, programming, and repairs to the respective manufacturer’s system. Testing of the existing system shall include all

areas served by the existing system including but not limited to the main campus, remote buildings, and temporary buildings:

a. Paging System.
b. Telephone System
c. Fire Alarm System
d. Data Network Communications System
e. Video Distribution System
f. Security Access Control System
g. Video Surveillance System.
h. Sound Reinforcement System

2. Provide a complete written report to the Architect, indicating any deficiencies of the existing system in relation to each component's intended function. Include in the written report evidence of current certification by the respective manufacturer for the contractor and individuals performing the tests. Provide the written report within 14 days of notice to proceed and prior to any demolition or renovation work.

B. Substantial completion testing of existing low voltage systems:

1. Provide complete operational tests of the following systems within 14-days prior to estimated date of substantial completion. Verify operation of each circuit, device, panel, console, distribution equipment, and associated accessories. Test shall be performed by a contractor and technicians each certified by the respective manufacturer of the existing system to perform test, programming, and repairs to the respective manufacturer's system. Testing of the existing system shall include all areas served by the existing system including but not limited to the main campus, remote buildings, and temporary buildings:

a. Paging System.
b. Telephone System
c. Fire Alarm System
d. Data Network Communications System
e. Video Distribution System
f. Security Access Control System
g. Video Surveillance System.
h. Sound Reinforcement System

2. Provide a complete written report to the Architect, indicating any deficiencies of the existing system in relation to each component's intended function. Include in the written report evidence of current certification by the respective manufacturer for the contractor and each individual performing the tests. Provide the written report within 14 days of expected date for substantial completion.

C. Repairs, equipment replacements, and corrections to low voltage systems due to damage caused by contractor:

1. Notify the Owner immediately of any disruption or damage to any low voltage system.
2. Any disruption or damage to the existing access control system or fire alarm system shall be corrected the same day as the disruption or damage occurred.

The access control system and fire alarm system shall be tested daily in the presence of the owner prior to the Contractor leaving the job site each day.

3. For each low voltage system other than access control or fire alarm system, a manufacturer certified contractor and certified technicians shall perform corrective measures to each system component that was functional prior to demolition and renovation and found defective or non-functional within 14-days prior to estimated date of substantial completion.
4. Corrective measures to all low voltage systems to correct components of the low voltage systems found damaged by the contractor shall be completed to the satisfaction of the Owner and Architect / Engineer prior to acceptance of substantial completion at no additional cost to the Owner.

**END OF SECTION 26 05 05**

# SECTION 26 05 09 - ELECTRIC UTILITY COORDINATION AND SERVICE ENTRANCE

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. General: Electrical service shall be provided by local utility company.

B. Power Company Data: Obtain from utility company information and installation standards for electrical service installation.

C. Responsibilities: Determine what equipment and labor is provided by utility company and what equipment and labor is required of this Contractor.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL

A. Service Data: Ensure that utility company service data is accurate and verified.

### 2.2 PRIMARY SERVICE

A. General: Division 26 shall provide primary service conduit, concrete transformer pads, concrete duct bank, utility service and metering equipment enclosures, manholes, and pull boxes as required and as specified.

B. Utility company shall provide primary cables, splices, utility metering instruments, terminations, and primary underground and overhead service conductors.

### 2.3 TRANSFORMERS AND SWITCHGEAR

A. General: Division 26 shall make provisions for service as required by utility company, including, but not limited to permanent or removable/lockable vehicular barriers, grounding rods, grounding conductors, and sleeves.

B. The utility company shall provide service transformers, primary switchgear, primary protective relaying, and connections to the customer service.

### 2.4 SECONDARY SERVICE CONDUCTORS

A. General: Division 26 shall provide secondary service entrance conductors, conduit and concrete duct bank.

### 2.5 SECONDARY SERVICE CABLE TAP BOXES

A. General: Division 26 shall provide secondary service cable tap boxes only if required or specified and as approved by the utility company. Where required or specified, enclosure shall be constructed of aluminum or stainless steel NEMA 3RX construction.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. Standards: The installation of the service entrance provisions shall comply with the published standards and requirements of the utility company, the utility company's specific construction requirements for this project, and with requirements of this Division.

B. Correction: Any failure to meet the standards and requirements shall be corrected to the satisfaction of the utility company and Owner without any additional cost to the Owner.

C. Contractor shall provide all construction materials and labor that the utility company determines to be the responsibility of the customer, at no additional cost to the Owner.

D. The materials and labor required by the for a complete installation shall be provided by the contractor and includes, but is not limited to permanent or removable / lockable vehicular barriers, grounding rods, grounding conductors, sleeves, concrete pads, concrete reinforced ductbanks, conduits, metering racks and metering enclosures.

E. Utility distribution poles and service entrance ductbank locations shall be staked and surveyed prior to pole installation by the Contractor to verify their proper placement is within the Owner's property and respective utility easements. Contractor shall verify by survey that the pole and service entrance ductbank location and easements do not interfere with existing easements, right-of-ways, or other restricted properties. Conflicts with existing easements and restrictions shall be brought to the attention of the Architect prior to construction.

F. Contractor shall initiate contact with the power provider (retail seller), utility (transmission and distribution), and Owner within 14 days of Notice to Proceed to ensure permanent power will be available to the site. Any delays resulting from lack of this coordination shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

**END OF SECTION 26 05 09**

# SECTION 26 05 10 - CONTRACT QUALITY CONTROL

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Contract quality control including workmanship, manufacturer's instructions, mock-ups and demonstrations.

### 1.2 QUALITY CONTROL PROGRAM

A. Maintain quality control over supervision, subcontractors, suppliers, manufacturers, products, services, site conditions and workmanship to produce work in accordance with contract documents. Submit a narrative outline of the Quality Control Program or Plan.

### 1.3 WORKMANSHIP

A. Comply with industry standards except when more restrictive tolerances or specified requirements indicate more rigid standards or more precise workmanship.

B. Perform work by persons qualified to produce workmanship of specified quality. Persons performing electrical work shall be required to be licensed. There shall be on-site supervision at all times, including punch list work, with that person having a minimum of journeyman license. Helpers, apprentices shall have a minimum of apprentice license.

C. Secure products in place with positive anchorage devices designed and sized to withstand stresses, vibration, and racking. Under no conditions shall material or equipment be suspended from structural bridging.

D. Provide finishes matching approved samples; all exposed finishes shall be approved by the Architect / Engineer. Submit color samples as required.

### 1.4 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

A. Comply with instructions in full detail, including each step in sequence.

B. Should instruction conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect / Engineer before proceeding.

### 1.5 MANUFACTURER'S CERTIFICATES

A. When required in individual Specification Sections, submit manufacturer's certificate in duplicate, certifying that products meet or exceed specified requirements.

### 1.6 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

A. When required in individual Specification Sections, manufacturer shall provide manufacturer's qualified personnel to observe:
   1. Field conditions
   2. Condition of installation
   3. Quality of workmanship
   4. Start-up of equipment
   5. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of equipment

B. Manufacturer's qualified personnel shall make written report of observations and recommendations to Architect / Engineer.

**1.7 MOCK UPS**

A. Assemble and erect the specified equipment and products complete, with specified anchorage and support devices, seals and finishes.

B. Do not proceed with any work involving a mock-up, until the related mock up has been approved in writing.

C. Acceptable mock-ups in place shall be retained in the completed work where possible.

D. Perform tests and submit results as specified.

**1.8 SCHEDULING OF MOCK-UPS**

A. Schedule demonstration and observation of mock-ups, in phases, with Architect / Engineer.
   1. Rough-in
   2. Finish with all appurtenances in place
   3. Demonstrations

B. Refer to other specification sections for pre-functional checklist for requirements to aid in preparing mock-ups.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 EQUIPMENT AND MATERIAL**

A. Comply with recognized National rating and approval agencies as well as all codes and ordinances at the federal, state and city levels.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 ADJUSTMENTS AND MODIFICATIONS**

A. Contractor shall provide all adjustments and modifications as requested by the

manufacturer's qualified personnel at no additional cost to Owner.

B. Coordination Drawings:
   1. Electrical room size and location required and to scale
   2. Equipment and accessories, switchgear and piping
   3. Indicate clearances and service access.

## 3.2 ELECTRICAL ACCEPTANCE TESTING

A. Perform electrical acceptance testing and inspections in accordance with the current edition of the International Electrical Testing Association (NETA), *Acceptance Testing Specification* (ATS).

B. Perform acceptance testing, inspection, function tests, and calibration to assure that installed electrical systems and components, both Contractor and user-supplied are:
   1. Installed in accordance with design documents and manufacturer's instructions.
   2. Tested and inspected in accordance with applicable codes and standards (e.g. NFPA 110 and NFPA 111).
   3. Ready to be energized.
   4. Operational within industry and manufacturer's tolerances.

## 3.3 INSPECTIONS BY LOCAL AUTHORITY HAVING JURISDICTION (AHJ)

A. Contractor shall notify design prime consultant and associated Architect / Owner's Construction Manager when he requests an inspection by the AHJ.

## 3.4 MOCK-UPS

A. Mock up the light fixture fireproofing for each type of light fixture to be located in fire rated ceilings. Demonstrate that the fire proofing material does not interfere with the mechanical operation of light fixture doors, hinges, or latches.

**END OF SECTION 26 05 10**

# SECTION 26 05 12 – ELECTRICAL SHOP AND COORDINATION DRAWINGS

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Prepare submittals as required by Division 1 and as outlined below.

B. Submit product data shop drawings only for the following and for items specifically requested elsewhere in the Contract Drawings and Specifications. Architect / Engineer reserves the right to refuse shop drawings not requested for review and to imply that materials shall be provided as specified without exception.

C. The term submittal, as used herein, refers to all:
1. Shop Drawings
2. Coordination Drawings
3. Product data

D. Submittals shall be prepared and produced for:
1. Distribution as specified
2. Inclusion in the Operating and Maintenance Manual, as specified, in the related section

### 1.2 ARCHITECT / ENGINEER REVIEW OF IDENTIFIED SUBMITTALS

A. The Architect / Engineer will:
1. Review identified submittals with reasonable promptness and in accordance with schedule. Specific equipment submittals that may be required to be expedited shall be submitted separately without other submittal items not requiring the same prompt attention.
2. Affix stamp and initials or signature, and indicate requirements for resubmittal or approval of submittal
3. Return submittals to Contractor for distribution or for resubmission

B. Review of submittals will not extend to design data reflected in submittals that is peculiarly within the special expertise of the Contractor or any party dealing directly with the Contractor.

C. Architect / Engineer's review is only for conformance with the design concept of the project and for compliance with the information given in the contract.
1. The review shall not extend to means, methods, sequences, techniques or procedures of construction or to safety precautions or programs incident thereto.
2. The review shall not extend to review of quantities, dimensions, weights or gauges, fabrication processes or coordination with the work of other trades.

D. The review and approval of a separate item as such will not indicate approval of the assembly in which the item functions.

## 1.3 SUBSTITUTIONS

A. Do not make requests for substitution employing the procedures of this Section.

B. The procedure for making a formal request for substitution is specified in Division 1.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

## 3.1 SPECIFICATION COMPLIANCE REVIEW

A. Mark up a complete copy of the specification section for the product to indicate a) acknowledgement of the specification requirement (Comply), or b) acknowledgement that the particular specification requirement does not apply to this specific project (Not Applicable) or, c) acknowledgement that the specification requirement cannot be made or that a variance is being submitted for review to the Architect / Engineer / Owner (Does Not Comply, Explanation:) Do not submit an outline form of compliance, submit a complete copy with the product data.

## 3.2 COMPOSITE COORDINATION DRAWINGS

A. Produce a set of composite coordinate drawings for review and comment within four (4) weeks of receipt of Owner's official Notice to Proceed. Show coordination of structural and architectural elements with HVAC piping, ductwork, mechanical equipment, electrical conduit, low voltage systems cabling, lighting, electrical switchgear and panels, security and CCTV systems, domestic water piping, roof drains and storm sewer piping, sanitary sewer piping and fire sprinkler piping and a composite above-ceiling plan, below slab coordination drawings, and a composite mechanical and electrical equipment room floor plan.
   1. Prepare the composite plans at one-quarter inch (1/4") equals one-foot scale. Include larger scale sections with vertical elevations of elements as required to confirm coordinate of all elements.
   2. For each room containing major electrical switchgear and each outside equipment area with major electrical switchgear and other equipment also include NEC working space, NEC equipment space, and NEC access to NEC working space, and housekeeping pad location and dimensions.
   3. Prepare coordination drawings to coordinate installations for efficient use of available space allowing for future additional equipment wherever possible, for proper sequence of installation, and to resolve conflicts. Coordinate with work specified in other sections and other divisions of the specifications.
   4. Identify field dimensions. Show relation to adjacent or critical features of work or products.

B. Submit composite coordination shop drawings in plan, elevation and sections, showing receptacles, outlets, electrical and telecommunication devices in casework, cabinetwork and built-in furniture.
   1. Verify location of wiring devices and outlets, communication devices and

outlets, safety and security devices, and other work specified in this Division.

2. Coordinate with drawing details, site conditions, composite coordination drawings, and millwork other equipment shop drawings prior to installation.
3. Submit coordination and shop drawings prior to rough-in and fabrication.

**3.3 EQUIPMENT SHOP DRAWINGS AND PRODUCT DATA**

A. Submittals shall not be combined or bound together with any other material submittal.

B. Submittal Specification Information:
   1. Every submittal document shall bear the following information as used in the project manual:
      a. The related specification section number
      b. The exact specification section title
   2. Submittals delivered to the Architect / Engineer without the specified information will not be processed. The Contractor shall bear the risk of all delays, as if no submittal had been delivered.

C. All product options specified shall be indicated on the product data submittal. All options listed on the standard product printed data not clearly identified as not part of the product data submitted shall become part of the Contract and shall be provided.

D. Mark each copy of standard printed data to identify pertinent products, referenced to specification section and article number.

E. Show reference standards, performance characteristics and capacities; wiring and piping diagrams and controls; component parts; finishes; dimensions and required clearances.

F. Modify manufacturer's standard schematic drawings and diagrams to supplement standard information and to provide information specifically applicable to the work. Delete information not applicable.

G. Submit drawings in a clear and thorough manner. Identify details by reference to sheet and detail, schedule, or room numbers shown on Contract Drawings.

H. Show all dimensions of each item of equipment in its to be installed assembled condition with all components assembled. Include a series of drawings of individual components as necessary for reference.

I. Identify field dimensions; show relation to adjacent or critical features or work or products.

J. Submit individually bound shop drawings and product data for the following when specified or provided. The Fault Current and Overcurrent Device Coordination Analysis shall be submitted prior to other switchgear.
   1. Fault Current and Overcurrent Device Coordination Analysis. Submit this analysis three (3) weeks prior to any overcurrent device submittal to allow modifications to overcurrent device product selection submittal based on the

manufacture’s analysis and recommendations at no additional cost to the Owner.

2. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers
3. Enclosed Motor Controllers
4. Panelboards and enclosures
5. Wiring devices
6. Lighting fixtures
7. Lighting Controls and Occupancy Sensors
8. Surge Protection Devices
9. Site Lighting Poles, Fixtures, Drivers, and Lamps
10. Electrical controls and time switches
11. Electrical Contactors
12. Motor control centers
13. Transformers
14. Switchboards
15. RTRC and/or PVC coated galvanized steel conduit and fittings conduit and fittings
16. Emergency/Standby generator sets and transfer switches
17. Surface Raceways
18. Architectural Dimming Systems
19. Theatrical Lighting Systems
20. Electrical cable trays
21. Electrical Grounding

**3.4 MANUFACTURERS INSTRUCTIONS**

A. Submit Manufacturer's instructions for storage, preparation, assembly, installation, start-up, adjusting, calibrating, balancing and finishing.

**3.5 CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES**

A. Review submittals prior to transmittal.

B. Determine and verify:
   1. Field measurements
   2. Field construction criteria
   3. Manufacturer's catalog numbers
   4. Conformance with requirements of Contract Documents

C. Coordinate submittals with requirements of the work and of the Contract Documents.

D. Notify the Architect / Engineer in writing at time of submission of any deviations in the submittals from requirements of the Contract Documents.

E. Do not fabricate products, or begin work for which submittals are specified, until such submittals have been produced and bear contractor's stamp. Do not fabricate products or begin work scheduled to have submittals reviewed until return of reviewed submittals with Architect / Engineer's acceptance.

F. Contractor's responsibility for errors and omissions in submittals is not relieved whether Architect / Engineer reviews submittals or not.

G. Contractor's responsibility for deviations in submittals from requirements of Contract Documents is not relieved whether Architect / Engineer reviews submittals or not, unless Architect / Engineer gives written acceptance of the specific deviations identified by the Contractor on reviewed documents.

H. Submittals shall show sufficient data to indicate complete compliance with Contract Documents:
   1. Proper sizes and capacities
   2. That the item will fit in the available space in a manner that will allow proper service
   3. Construction methods, materials and finishes

I. Schedule submissions at least 15 days before date reviewed submittals will be needed by the Contractor for processing or for making corrections for re-submittal.

J. Contractor’s Stamp of Approval
   1. Contractor shall stamp and sign each document certifying to the review of products, field measurements and field construction criteria, and coordination of the information within the submittal with requirements of the work and of Contract Documents.
   2. Contractor's stamp of approval on any submittal shall constitute a representation to Owner and Architect / Engineer that Contractor has either determined and verified all quantities, dimensions, field construction criteria, materials, catalog numbers, and similar data or assumes full responsibility for doing so, and that Contractor has reviewed or coordinated each submittal with the requirements of the work and the Contract Documents.
   3. Do not deliver any submittals to the Architect / Engineer that do not bear the Contractor's stamp of approval and signature.
   4. Submittals delivered to the Architect / Engineer without Contractor's stamp of approval and signature will not be processed. The Contractor shall bear the risk of all delays, as if no submittal had been delivered.

## 3.6 SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS

A. Make submittals promptly in accordance with approved schedule, and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Project or in the work of any other Contractor. Product and equipment related to site work or other trades which require extensive rough-in, foundations, or structural support shall be submitted as soon as possible after given notice to proceed with construction.

B. Number of submittals required:
   1. Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings: Submit one electronic data file (pdf) and three opaque reproductions.
   2. Product Data: Submit the number of copies the contractor requires, plus those

to be retained by the Architect / Engineer, and/or electronic data (pdf) files.

C. Accompany submittals with transmittal letter, in duplicate, containing:
   1. Date
   2. Project title and number
   3. Contractor's name, address and telephone number
   4. The number of each Shop Drawing, Project Datum and Sample submitted
   5. Other pertinent data

D. Submittals shall include:
   1. The date of submission
   2. The project title and number
   3. Contract Identification
   4. The names of:
      a. Contractor
      b. Subcontractor
      c. Supplier
      d. Manufacturer
   5. Identification of the product
   6. Field dimensions, clearly identified as such
   7. Relation to adjacent or critical features of the work or materials
   8. Applicable standards, such as ASTM or federal specifications numbers
   9. Identification of deviations from contract documents
   10. Suitable blank space for General Contractor and Architect / Engineer stamps
   11. Contractor's signed and dated Stamp of Approval

E. Coordinate submittals into logical groupings to facilitate interrelation of the several items.
   1. Finishes which involve Architect / Engineer selection of colors, textures or patterns
   2. Associated items requiring correlation for efficient function or for installation

**3.7 RESUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS**

A. Make resubmittals under procedures specified for initial submittals. Re-submittals shall be a complete submittal as if it were the initial submittal unless otherwise instructed in the review comments on the original submittal.
   1. Indicate that the document or sample is a resubmittal
   2. Identify changes made since previous submittals

B. Indicate any changes which have been made other than those requested by the Architect / Engineer.

**END OF SECTION 26 05 12**

# SECTION 26 05 16 - EXCAVATING, BACKFILLING AND COMPACTING FOR ELECTRICAL

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 apply to this section.

B. Refer to Instructions for substitution of materials and products.

C. Addenda issued during the bidding period that affect this section of the specifications.

### 1.2 WORK INCLUDED

A. Coordinating all excavating and backfilling for the electrical underground, and all related appurtenances. Provide concrete duct banks as specified in other related Division 26 specification sections.

B. The extent of raceways, excavation, and backfill shall be in conformance with the locations, raceways, elevations and grades shown on the drawings.

### 1.3 REFERENCES

A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) Use current edition.
   1. ASTM D698, Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft$^3$)
   2. ASTM D1556, Standard Test method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method
   3. ASTM D4253, Standard Test Methods for Maximum Index Density and Unit Weight of Soils Using a Vibratory Table
   4. ASTM D4254, Standard Test Method for Minimum Index Density and Unit Weight of Soils and Calculation of Relative Density

B. Local Authority Having Jurisdiction Standards

C. Local Governing Agencies or Utilities

### 1.4 WARRANTY

A. Provide written warranty against defects in the material and workmanship for the work of this Section for a period of one year from the Date of Substantial Completion of the Project. Refer to Division 1 for Warranty form.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MATERIALS

A. Concrete: Refer to other Division 26 specification section where concrete encasement is required or specified.

B. Cement-Stabilized Sand: Clean, local sand mixed with not less than 1-1/2 sacks of Portland cement per ton; mix in a mill-type mixer.

C. Sand: Clean, local sand

D. Earth Backfill: Clean local material consistent with the surrounding earth material and free of large clods, roots, organic materials, rocks or other debris.

# PART 3 – EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXCAVATION

A. General:
1. All utility trenches shall be constructed in conformance with OSHA trench safety standards.
2. Refer to project Geotechnical Report for additional requirements for excavating and backfilling of utility trenches.
3. Sheeting and shoring shall be accomplished to the extent necessary to maintain the sides of the trench in a vertical position throughout the construction period for trenches five feet in depth or deeper. Where approved, trench sides may be laid back in lieu of shoring to meet OSHA safety standards.
4. Utilities shall not be constructed or laid in a trench in the presence of water. All water shall be sufficiently removed from the trench prior to the raceway placing operation to ensure a dry, firm bed on which to place the raceway.

B. Appurtenances:
1. Any overdepth excavation below appurtenances shall be refilled with cement-stabilized sand.

C. Electrical Trenches:
1. Electrical underground raceways must be the minimum depth required by the local governing authority and Power Company.
2. Trench width for the electrical raceway shall be a minimum of the outside raceway encasement plus 12 inches.
3. Trenches shall be excavated to a depth of at least 6 inches below the conduit raceway. The conduit raceway bedding or concrete encasement shall then be placed in accordance with the specifications, local governing authority, and Power Company standard details.

## 3.2 BEDDING AND BACKFILL

A. Electrical Trenches:

1. Place backfill, consisting of sand or cement stabilized sand, to a depth of one foot above top of raceway or concrete duct bank and compact to 90% maximum density.
2. Backfill the remainder of the trench in 6 inch lifts with select excavated material and compact as required to achieve density of soil of surrounding area.

B. Utility Locators:
1. Provide metallic locators for utility company raceways as required by respective utility.
2. Refer to other specification sections for additional requirements for underground raceway locators and markers.

**END OF SECTION 26 05 16**

# SECTION 26 05 19 - CONDUCTORS AND CONNECTORS – 600 VOLT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Provide electrical conductors, wire and connector work as shown, and specified.

B. Types: The types of conductors and connectors required for the project include the following:
   1. 600V building conductors
   2. 600V building conductor connectors

C. Application: The applications for conductors and connectors required on the project are as follows:
   1. Power distribution circuitry
   2. Lighting branch circuitry
   3. Appliance, receptacle, and equipment branch circuitry
   4. Motor branch circuitry
   5. Control wiring
   6. Line voltage

D. Refer to other specific specification sections for voice, video, data, alarm and instrumentation cables.

### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. UL Label: Conductors and connectors shall be UL labeled.

### 1.3 REFERENCES

A. Refer to other specific specification sections regarding specialized wiring and connections.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CONNECTORS

A. General: Except as indicated, provide conductors and connectors of manufacturer's standard materials, as indicated by published product information, designed and constructed as instructed by the manufacturer, and as required for the installation.

B. Conductors: Provide factory-fabricated conductors of the size, rating, material, and type as indicated for each use. Conductors shall be soft or annealed copper wires meeting, before stranding, the requirements of ASTM B 3, Standard Specification for Soft or Annealed Copper Wire for Electrical Purposes, latest edition.
   1. Conductors for control wiring sized #14 AWG through #10 AWG shall be

stranded.

2. Conductors for power and lighting shall be stranded. Stranding shall be Class B meeting the requirements of ASTM B 8, Standard Specification for Concentric-Lay-Stranded Copper Conductors, Hard, Medium Hard, or Soft.

C. Insulation for standard building conductors: Insulation shall meet or exceed the requirements of UL 83, Standard for Thermoplastic Insulated Wires.
   1. All wiring inside lighting fixtures shall be temperature rated per NEC.
   2. Insulation for copper conductors shall be UL Type THHN/THWN, 90 degrees C.

D. Cable Lubricant: Fire resistant, nonflammable, water based type for standard building conductors. Provide cable lubricants for fire rated cables as recommended by the cable manufacturer.

## 2.2 COLOR CODES FOR CONDUCTORS FOR BRANCH CIRCUITS AND FEEDERS

A. Color coding for conductors as required by NEC 210.5. Color coding for phase and voltage shall be as required by local codes and local standards. Where such standards do not exist, color coding shall be as follows:

| **Color Code Table** | **USE CONTINUOUS COLOR CODED INSULATION THROUGHOUT** | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **System/ Phase** | **A** | **B** | **C** | **N** | **G** | **IG** |
| 120/208 3 Ph | Black | Red | Blue | White | Green | Green/Yellow Stripe |
| 120/240 3 Ph | Black | Orange | Blue | White | Green | Green/Yellow Stripe |
| 120/240 1 Ph | Black | N/A | Blue | | | |
| 277/480 | Brown | Purple | Yellow | Gray | Green | Green/Yellow Stripe |

Notes to Color Code Table:

1. 120/208, 120/240, and 277/480 Volt Systems shall be routed in separate raceways.
2. Switched legs of phase conductors for lighting and appliance branch circuits shall be of the same color as described above throughout the entire circuit.
3. Conductors shall be the same color from breaker to device or outlet.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install electrical conductors and connectors as shown, in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions, the requirements of NEC, the NECA Standard of Installation, and industry practices.

B. Coordination: Coordinate conductor installation work with electrical raceway and equipment installation work, as necessary for interface.

C. Conductors:
1. Provide a grounded (neutral) conductor for each branch circuit. Do not share grounded (neutral) conductors.
2. No more than six phase conductors shall be installed in a single raceway. Any combination of phase conductors and grounded (neutral) conductors in any raceway shall not exceed nine.
3. When any combination of four or more phase and grounded (neutral) conductors are installed in a raceway, the minimum size for all conductors including equipment ground conductor shall be #10 AWG, and they shall be de-rated accordingly.
4. When more than four (4) conductors are size #10 AWG, they shall be installed in a one-inch conduit.
5. Pull conductors together when more than one is being installed in a raceway. Whenever possible, pull conductors into their respective conduits by hand. Use pulling lubricant when necessary.
6. Before any conductor is pulled into any conduit, thoroughly swab the conduit to remove foreign material and to permit the wire to be pulled into a clean, dry conduit.
7. Run feeders their entire length in continuous section without joints or splices.
8. No wire smaller than #12 AWG shall be permitted for any lighting or power circuit. No wire smaller than #14 AWG shall be used for any control circuit, unless shown otherwise.
9. Provide the same size wire form the panelboard to last outlet on circuit. For 20 amp branch circuits operating at 150V or less, provide #10 AWG wire when the first outlet is over 75-feet from the panelboard. For branch circuits operating at 150 to 600 volts, provide #10 AWG wire when the first outlet is over 150-feet from the panelboard.
10. Branch circuit voltage drop shall not exceed 3% of rated voltage.
11. No tap or splice shall be made in any conductor except in outlet boxes, pull boxes, junction boxes, splice boxes, or other accessible locations. Make taps and splices using an approved compression connector. Insulate taps and splices equal to the adjoining conductor. Make splices or taps only on conductors that are a component part of a single circuit, protected by approved methods. Taps or splices in feed through branch circuits for connection to light switches or receptacles shall be made by pigtail connection to the device.
12. Support conductors in vertical raceways, as required by the NEC.
13. Do not permit conductors entering or leaving a junction or pull box to deflect to create pressure on the conductor insulation.
14. Make joints in branch circuits only where circuits divide. These shall consist of one through circuit to which the branch from the circuit shall be spliced.
15. Make connections in conductors up to a maximum of one #6 AWG wire with two #8 AWG wires using twist-on pressure connectors of required size.
16. Make connections in conductors or combinations of conductors larger than

specified using cable fittings of type and size required for specific duty.

17. After a splice is made, insulate entire assembly with UL-approved insulating tape to a value equivalent to the adjacent insulation.
18. Make splices and connections in control circuit conductors using UL-approved solderless crimp connectors.
19. All conduits shall be installed with an insulated grounding conductor per NEC 250.122. Where green conductor insulation is not available, the ground conductor shall be identified with green phasing tape at all accessible locations.
20. Neatly train and lace wiring inside boxes, equipment and panelboards. Provide tie-straps around conductors with their shared neutral conductor where there are more than two neutral conductors in a conduit.
21. Clean conductor surfaces before installing lugs and connectors.
22. Make splices, taps and terminations to carry full ampacity of conductors with no perceptible temperature rise.
23. Provide stranded conductors connected with pressure type connectors / compression fittings and terminal lugs UL listed for the type of conductor used (AL-CU) and correctly sized to the diameter of the bare conductors.
24. Run mains and feeders their entire length in continuous pieces without splices or joints.
25. Color code conductors.
26. Do not install a pull string in conduits containing conductors.
27. Conductors shall be the same color from load side of overcurrent protection device to outlet or utilization equipment.
28. Spare conductors shall not be installed in any conduit, gutter, raceway, panel or enclosure unless noted otherwise.

D. Identification: Label each phase conductor in each junction box with corresponding circuit number, using self-adhesive wire markers.

E. Splices and Joints:
   1. In accordance with UL 486A, C, D, E, and NEC.
   2. Aboveground Circuits (No. 10 AWG and smaller):
      a. Connectors: Solderless, screw-on, reusable pressure cable type, rated 600 V, 220˚ F, with integral insulation, approved for copper and aluminum conductors.
      b. The integral insulator shall have a skirt to completely cover the stripped wires.
      c. The number, size, and combination of conductors, as listed on the manufacturers' packaging, shall be strictly followed.

F. Aboveground Circuits (No. 8 AWG and larger):
   1. Connectors shall be indent, hex screw, or bolt clamp type of high conductivity and corrosion resistant material, listed for use with copper and aluminum conductors.
   2. Provide field-installed compression connectors for cable sizes 250 kcmil and larger with not less than two clamping elements or compression indents per wire.

3. Insulate splices and joints with materials approved for the particular use, location, voltage, and temperature. Splice and joint insulation level shall be not less than the insulation level of the conductors being joined.
4. Plastic electrical insulating tape: Per ASTM D2304, flame-retardant, cold and weather resistant.

G. Underground Branch Circuits and Feeders:
1. Submersible connectors in accordance with UL 486D, rated 600 V, 190˚F, with integral insulation.

## 3.2 TESTING

A. Pre-Energization Check: Before energizing, check cable and conductors for circuit continuity and short circuits. Correct malfunctions.

B. Service Entrance and Feeder Insulation Resistance Test: Each main service entrance conductor and each feeder conductor shall have its insulation resistance tested after the installation is complete except for connection at its source and point of termination. Testing shall be performed by qualified technicians who have been trained in testing procedures and in the use of all test equipment.
1. Make tests using a Biddle Megger or equivalent test instrument at a voltage of not less than 1000 VDC; measure resistance from conductor to conductor, conductor to neutral (if present) and from conductor to ground. Insulation resistance shall not be less than the following:

| Wire Size (AWG) | Insulation Resistance (Ohms) |
|---|---|
| #8 | 250 K |
| #6 through #2 | 100 K |
| #1 through #4/0 | 50 K |
| Larger than #4/0 | 25 K |

2. Conductors that do not meet or exceed the insulation resistance values listed above shall be removed, replaced, and retested.

C. Submittals: Contractor shall furnish instruments and personnel required for tests. Submit 4 copies of certified test results to Architect for review. Test reports shall include conductor tested, date and time of test, relative humidity, temperature, and weather conditions.

D. Voltage and Current Values: The voltage and current in each conductor shall be measured and recorded after connections have been made and the conductor is under load.

**SAMPLE DC HIGH VOLTAGE CABLE TEST REPORT**

(Specification Paragraph 3.2, C)

Date_____

Contract and Work Location: ___
Contract (Project) No.: _
Circuit Identification: __
(Dwg., Title, Number and Ckt. Number)

Test Equipment: _____
(Make, Model, Serial No., Etc.)
Applied Test Voltage _____
Normal Oper. Voltage _____
Cable Installation: New _____ Used _____
(Date) (No. Years)
Cable Size _____AWG
Cable Length _____Ft.
Cable Material _____Cu _____Al
Temperature _____ Humidity _____

TEST DATA - RESISTANCE IN KILO OHMS

| CONDUCTOR PER PHASE | A-N | B-N | C-N | A-G | B-G | C-G | A-B | B-C | A-C |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | | | | |

**END OF SECTION 26 05 19**

# SECTION 26 05 27 - EXPANSION OF EXISTING ELECTRICAL GROUNDING SYSTEM

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Grounding shall conform to the requirements of:
   1. National Electrical Code
   2. Governing local codes
   3. Local Utility Company

B. Ground effectively and permanently.
   1. Verify existing neutral conductor bonding at the main service disconnect and at other new/relocated or reused separately derived systems.
   2. All new/relocated conduit or cable tray systems and busway
   3. All new/relocated electrical equipment and related current carrying supports or structures
   4. All new / relocated metal piping systems
   5. All new building structural metal frames

### 1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ANSI/IEEE Standard 142 - "Recommended Practice for Grounding of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems."

B. ANSI/UL 467 - "Safety Standard for Grounding and Bonding Equipment."

C. Article 250 of the NEC (NFPA 70) for grounding.

D. NECA – Standard of Installation

E. NETA ATS – Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Distribution Equipment and Systems

F. EIA / TIA 607

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Copperweld

B. nVent ERICO

C. Burndy

D. O.Z. Gedney

E. Eaton

## 2.2 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

A. Driven Rod Electrode
   1. 3/4" x 10'-0" copper clad grounding electrode, UL listed
   2. UL listed grounding electrode connector
   3. Approved thermal fusion methods (exothermic)

B. Metal Frame of Building

C. Existing grounding electrode system

## 2.3 DRIVEN ELECTRODE ACCESS BOX AND COVER

A. Hubbell Tier 22 FRP 20-inch round bolt down cover with “GROUND” embossed on top.

## 2.4 MATERIALS AND COMPONENTS

A. Reference other sections of this specifications for materials specified there.

B. Heavy-duty, copper, two bolt type, copper alloy or bronze compression lugs for grounding and bonding applications, in configurations required for particular installation.

# PART 3 – EXECUTION

## 3.1 SYSTEMS 600 VOLTS OR LESS

A. In the existing service equipment, field verify existing condition of ground bus.
   1. Field verify existing bond of the ground bus to the existing service grounding conductor, to the neutral bar.
   2. Tighten existing ground lugs and connections.

B. Connect the grounding electrode conductor between the ground bus and the grounding electrode system.
   1. In rigid PVC conduit.
   2. Provide thermo fusion connection for each rod ground electrode.
      a. All rod electrodes shall be located outside the building in non-paved areas where available. Access cover top shall be flush with finish grade or floor.
      b. Install rod electrodes as indicated. Install additional rod electrodes as required to achieve specified resistance to ground.
      c. The minimum distance between driven ground rod electrodes shall be

10'.

3. The total ground resistance shall not exceed 10 Ohms for service entrance grounds and for equipment grounds.
    a. Where this condition cannot be obtained with one electrode, install a longer electrode, deep-driven sectional electrodes, or additional grounding electrodes until the required ground resistance is obtained.
    b. Refer to drawings for project specific ground resistance requirements.

C. Field verify the grounding electrode conductor between the ground bus and the grounding electrode systems are in compliance with the NEC.

D. Provide an insulated grounding conductor inside all new conduits, raceways, surface raceways and cables used for power distribution. The ground wire shall be bonded to each box. All bonding jumpers shall be routed inside conduit or raceway.

E. Provide an insulated, isolated equipment grounding conductor in addition to the insulated equipment grounding conductor for all isolated grounding feeders, branch circuits, outlets and receptacles.

F. Provide all new/relocated conduits terminating in switchgear, transformers, switchboards, and panelboards with grounding bushings, where required and ground wire extended to ground bus in equipment.

G. Where modifications to the main service disconnect are required, main bus and building grounding electrode conductor installation shall be witnessed by the Architect / Engineer.

H. Interface with lightning protection system when lightning protection system is specified.

I. Locate and install anchors, fasteners, and supports in accordance with NECA “Standard of Installation”.

J. Do not fasten supports to pipes, ducts, mechanical equipment, or conduit.

K. Do not use spring steel clips and clamps.

L. Do not use powder-actuated anchors.

M. Do not drill or cut structural members.

N. Do not use compression or mechanical connectors underground.

## 3.2 MISCELLANEOUS REQUIREMENTS

A. Continuity of the building equipment grounding system shall be maintained throughout the project. Grounding jumpers shall be inside conduit, fittings and boxes and shall be

installed across conduit expansion fittings, liquid-tight flexible metal and flexible metal conduit, light fixture pigtails in excess of 6', and other non-electrically continuous raceway fittings.

B. Grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductor shall be stranded copper conductors and run in a suitable PVC raceway. Grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductor shall be continuous, without joints or splices over their entire length, except as allowed by NFPA 70/NEC.

C. For separately derived alternating current system grounds, bond the case and neutral of each transformer secondary winding directly to the nearest available effectively grounded structural metal member as required in NEC 250.

D. Technology/Data/Voice Communications, CATV, CCTV, and MATV Equipment Grounding: Provide grounding electrode conductor from the communications service equipment to the building grounding system as required. Provide #6 ground conductor from telephone/voice/CATV/data company demarcation point to building electrical service entrance ground electrode connection and as required by all local utility companies.
   1. New MDF Closets Telecommunications Main Ground Bar (TMGB): Provide Erico Cadweld #B544A028 ground bar with 7/16-inch holes, wall mounted to the telecommunications plywood backboard. Provide one #3 AWG insulated ground conductor from ground bar to building steel. Provide #2/0 AWG insulated ground conductor to the building electrical service ground at the main electrical service disconnect.
   2. New IDF Closets Telecommunications Ground Bar (TGB): Provide Erico Cadweld #B542A004 ground bar with 7/16-inch holes, mounted to the telecommunications plywood backboard. Provide one #6 AWG insulated ground conductor from ground bar to building steel.
   3. Provide #2/0 AWG insulated ground conductor between each TMGB and all TGBs.
   4. Provide #2/0 AWG insulated ground conductor from TMGB to electrical service ground bus at main electrical service switch.
   5. Bond each equipment rack with #6 AWG insulated ground conductor to the TMGB / TGB.
   6. Route TMGB – TGB ground conductor using the shortest route practical with long radius curves.

E. Ground new and removed/replaced lighting fixture bodies to the conduit grounding system.

F. Receptacles: Provide a ground wire bonded to the conduit ground system, except where and insulated isolated grounding receptacle is specified.

G. Motor Frames: Ground the frame of each motor with a properly sized separate ground wire around flexible conduit.

H. Provide grounding access well for each driven ground electrode, not located in manholes or pull boxes.
   1. Access well top shall be flush with finish paved surfaces.
   2. Ground access wells located in non-paved areas shall be set two-inches above surrounding finished grade. Provide 12-inch wide by 8-inch deep reinforced concrete crown around neck or opening and sloped down away from pull box opening.
   3. Provide thermal fusion (exothermic) connectors approved for direct burial.

I. Ground all light poles and all exterior metal structures supporting conduit, switchgear, or light fixtures.

J. Exterior Electrical Equipment Racks:
   1. Provide driven ground electrode for racks mounted remote from building structure.
   2. Where mounted on roof, ground to be building structural steel.

K. Ground connections to building steel, grounding electrodes and all underground connections shall be by thermal fusion (exothermic).

L. Transformers: Provide driven ground electrode and building steel electrode at each transformer.

M. Bond hot water and cold water piping together at each domestic water heater.

## 3.3 COORDINATION

A. General: Coordinate installation of grounding connections for equipment with equipment installation work.

## 3.4 TESTING

A. Ground Resistance Test: Perform a ground resistance test for comparison to future inspection and testing data by the Owner. Test shall be performed using a Biddle Megger Earth Tester or equivalent test instrument. The test shall not be performed within 48 hours after the last rainfall.
   1. Inspect and test in accordance with NETA ATS except Section 4
   2. Grounding and Bonding: Perform inspections and tests listed in NETA ATS, Section 7.13

B. The Root Mean Square (RMS) AC measurements: The True RMS AC Measure test should be performed for all bonding conductors. The recommended maximum AC current value on any bonding conductor should be less than 1 ampere (A). The recommended maximum DC current value should be less than 500 milliamperes (mA). If abnormally high AC current levels are present on any bonding conductor, a dangerous faulty wiring condition likely exists within the room.

C. Two-Point Bonding Measurements: The two-Point Bonding test shall be performed for all bonding conductors. This test should be performed using an earth grounding resistance tester configured for a continuity test. The test is performed by connecting the meter leads between the nearest available grounding electrode (e.g., structural steel) and the TMGB or TGB. The recommended maximum value for the bonding resistance between these two points is 0.1 ohms (100 milliohms).

D. Submittals: Furnish instruments and personnel required for tests. Personnel shall be trained in all aspects of testing grounding systems and shall be formally trained on using all test equipment required. Submit 2 copies of certified test results for Owner's record and submit 4 copies of certified test results to Architect / Engineer for review. Test reports shall include date and time of tests, relative humidity, temperature, and weather conditions.

**END OF SECTION 26 05 27**

# SECTION 26 05 33 - CONDUIT SYSTEMS

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install a complete system of electrical conduits and fittings.

### 1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. National Electrical Code

B. Local codes and ordinances

C. UL

D. ETL

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Raceways:
1. Allied, International Metal Hose, Ipex, Heritage Plastics, Wheatland, Can-Tex, Carlon, Certain-Teed, Anamet, Inc., Electri-Flex Co., Western Tube and Conduit
2. PVC Coated RGC: Perma Cote or Plasti-Bond, – no exceptions
3. Stainless Steel: Calbrite, Gibson
4. Aluminum: American Conduit/Sapa, Wheatland, Eaton B-Line, Patriot Aluminum Products
5. Reinforced Thermosetting Resin Conduit (RTRC): FRE Composites, Champion Fiberglass, United Fiberglass

B. Fittings:
1. Appleton, Crouse Hinds, Topaz, Steel City, O.Z. Gedney, Carlon, Heritage Plastics, Raco, Ipex, International Metal Hose, Lew Electric Fittings Co.
2. PVC Coated ferrous fittings: Perma-cote or Plasti-Bond, – no exceptions
3. Stainless Steel: Calbrite, Gibson, Crouse Hinds
4. Aluminum: American Conduit/Sapa, Wheatland, Eaton B-Line, Patriot Aluminum Products
5. Reinforced Thermosetting Resin Conduit (RTRC): FRE Composites, Champion Fiberglass

C. Condulets and Conduit Bodies:
1. Appleton, Form 85
2. PVC Coated: Perma-cote or Plasti-Bond, – no exceptions
3. Stainless Steel: Calbrite, Gibson, Crouse Hinds
4. Reinforced Thermosetting Resin Conduit (RTRC): FRE Composites, Champion

Fiberglass

## 2.2 GENERAL

A. The minimum conduit size shall be ¾-inch unless indicated otherwise in Divisions 26, 27 or 28.
   1. Branch Circuits: Minimum conduit size for dedicated outlets shall be ¾-inch. Minimum conduit size from branch circuit panel to first outlet box of a multi-outlet branch circuit shall be 3/4-inch. Minimum conduit size from first outlet box to additional outlet boxes of a multi-outlet branch circuit where the conduit is installed above accessible ceilings or inside metal stud walls shall be ½-inch.
   2. Feeder Circuits: Minimum conduit size shall be ¾-inches.
   3. Technology, telecommunications, and low voltage systems: The minimum conduit size shall be ¾-inches unless noted or indicated otherwise.
   4. The minimum conduit size between buildings for technology, voice, data, fire alarm, video, security, surveillance, BMCS, and other telecommunications shall be 2-inch unless indicated otherwise.

B. The minimum conduit size for flexible metallic conduit for tap connections to individual light fixtures shall be ½ inch, or steel metal clad (MC) cable with insulated ground conductor maximum 6 feet.

C. Electrical nonmetallic tubing, flexible polyethylene or PVC tubing shall not be used on this project.

D. MC, BX and AC cable shall not be used on this project.

E. PVC elbows shall not be used on this project.

F. Intermediate metal conduit (IMC) shall not be used on this project.

## 2.3 RIGID METAL CONDUIT

A. UL labeled, Schedule 40:
   1. Mild steel pipe, zinc coated inside and out
   2. Aluminum Alloy 6063, T-1 temper
   3. Threaded ends
   4. Insulated bushings

B. Fittings shall meet the same requirements as rigid metal conduits.
   1. UL labeled
   2. Threaded fittings

## 2.4 ELECTRICAL METALLIC TUBING (EMT)

A. UL labeled, standard weight:
   1. Cold rolled steel tubing, zinc coated inside and out

2. Aluminum Alloy 6005, 6063. Temper T-1

B. Fittings shall meet the same requirements as EMT conduits.
1. UL labeled compression fittings only.
2. Insulated throat connectors
3. Steel fittings with lock nuts on threaded ends, no snap locks
4. Set screw and crimp type fittings are not approved
5. Cast metal fittings are not approved
6. Uni-couple type connectors are not approved
7. Split ring, anti-short bushings are not approved

## 2.5 RTRC CONDUIT FITTINGS AND CONDUIT BODIES

A. UL listed

B. Standard wall thickness sizes ¼-inch through 4-inch

C. Underground medium wall thickness sizes 5 and 6-inch

D. Conduit interface joints above grade, gasket joint below grade

E. Extra heavy wall for above ground and/or UL Class 1 Division 2 and Class 1 Zone 2 applications.

## 2.6 PVC COATED RIGID STEEL WITH URETHANE INTERIOR COATING

A. The PVC coated galvanized rigid conduit and fittings must be ETL Listed and Verified. The PVC coating must have been investigated and verified by ETL as providing the primary corrosion protection for the rigid metal conduit. Ferrous fittings for general service locations must be ETL Listed with PVC as the primary corrosion protection. Hazardous location fittings, prior to plastic coating must be UL listed for the hazard conditions to which they are to be used. All conduit and fittings must be new, unused material. Applicable UL standards may include: UL 6 Standard for Safety, Rigid Metal Conduit, and UL514B Standard for Safety, Fittings for Conduit and Outlet Boxes.

B. The PVC coated galvanized rigid conduit and fittings must be ETL Verified to the Intertek ETL SEMKO High Temperature $H_2O$ PVC Coating Adhesion Test Procedure for 200 hours. The PVC coated galvanized rigid conduit must bear the ETL Verified PVC-001 label to signify compliance to the adhesion performance standard.

C. The conduit shall be hot dip galvanized inside and out with hot galvanized threads.

D. A PVC sleeve extending one pipe diameter or two inches, whichever is less, shall be formed at every female fitting opening except unions. The inside sleeve diameter shall be matched to the outside diameter of the conduit.

E. The PVC coating on the outside of conduit couplings shall have a series of longitudinal

ribs 40 mils in thickness to protect the coating from tool damage during installation.

F. Form 8 Condulets, ½-inch through 2-inch diameters, shall have a tongue-in-groove gasket to effectively seal against the elements. The design shall be equipped with a positive placement feature to ease and assure proper installation. Certified results confirming seal performance at 15 psig (positive) and 25 inches of mercury (vacuum) for 72 hours shall be available.

G. Form 8 Condulets shall be supplied with plastic encapsulated stainless-steel cover screws.

H. A urethane coating shall be uniformly and consistently applied to the interior of all conduit and fittings. This internal coating shall be a nominal 2 mil thickness. Conduit or fittings having areas with thin or no coating shall be unacceptable.

I. The PVC exterior and urethane interior coatings applied to the conduit shall afford sufficient flexibility to permit field bending without cracking or flaking at temperatures above 30°F (-1°C).

J. All male threads on conduit, elbows and nipples shall be protected by application of a urethane coating.

K. All female threads on fittings or conduit couplings shall be protected by application of a urethane coating.

L. Independent certified test results shall be available to confirm coating adhesion under the following conditions
   1. Conduit and condulet exposure to 150°F (65°C) and 95% relative humidity with a minimum mean time to failure of 30 days. (ASTM D1151)
   2. The interior coating bond shall be confirmed using the Standard Method of Adhesion by Tape Test (ASTM D3359).
   3. No trace of the internal coating shall be visible on a white cloth following six wipes over the coating which has been wetted with acetone (ASTM D1308).
   4. The exterior coating bond shall be confirmed using the methods described in Section 3.8, NEMA RN1. After these tests the physical properties of the exterior coating shall exceed the minimum requirements specified in Table 3.1, NEMA RN1.

M. Right angle beam clamps and U bolts shall be specially formed and sized to snugly fit the outside diameter of the coated conduit. All U bolts shall be provided with plastic encapsulated nuts that cover the exposed portions of the threads.

N. All fittings, clamps, straps, struts, and hardware used with PVC coated conduit shall be PVC coated or 316 stainless steel

## 2.7 STEEL FLEXIBLE CONDUIT

A. Steel flexible metallic conduit:
   1. Zinc coated inside and out
   2. 18-inches minimum length, 24-inches maximum length

B. Steel flexible metallic conduit for tap connections to light fixtures where steel MC Cable fixture whips are not used:
   1. 18 inches minimum length; 6 feet maximum length

C. Liquid tight flexible steel conduit
   1. Type L.A. - Grounded - UL Approved
   2. 18-inches minimum length, 24-inches maximum length

**2.8 PVC CONDUIT**

A. UL labeled Schedule 40 and Schedule 80

B. PVC fittings and solvent welded joints

C. Acceptable PVC condulet manufacturer: Ipex, Cantex

**2.9 CONDULETS AND CONDUIT BODIES**

A. UL Labeled

B. Form 85

C. PVC Coated: Form 8

D. LBC Condulets shall be used for size 2 inch and above.

E. LL and LR Condulets shall not be used for 2 inch and above

**2.10 ROOF MOUNTED CONDUIT AND BOX SUPPORTS**

A. Conduit supports and pads suitable for direct sunlight, conduit size, weight, quantity and roof system with unistrut supports and accessories. Conduit supports shall allow for conduit expansion and contraction.

B. Refer to roofing specifications for additional information. The limitations and restrictions contained in any roofing specification shall prevail and supercede these specifications for roof mounted supports for conduits and boxes.

C. Approved Manufacturer:
   1. Portable Pipe Hangers
   2. Eaton B-Line
   3. Miro Industries, Inc.

## 2.11 ALUMINUM CONDUIT

A. UL Labeled

B. Aluminum fittings shall meet the same requirements of aluminum conduits, compatible steel fittings.
   1. UL Labeled for use with aluminum conduit.

## 2.12 STAINLESS STEEL CONDUIT

A. UL Labeled

B. Rigid Stainless Steel:
   1. Type 304 Stainless Steel
   2. Threaded ends
   3. Insulated Bushings

C. EMT:
   1. Type 304 Stainless Steel
   2. Compression Fittings
   3. Insulated Bushings

D. Fittings, elbows, nipples, strut, device box, clamps straps, etc.
   1. Type 304 Stainless Steel

## 2.13 ELECTRICAL NON-METALLIC TUBING (ENT)

A. UL labeled Schedule 40

B. PVC fittings and solvent welded joints

C. Acceptable manufacture: Carlon

## 2.14 EXTERIOR IN-GRADE PULL BOXES

A. Enclosures, boxes and covers are required to conform to all test provisions of the most current ANSI/SCTE 77 “Specification for Underground Enclosure Integrity” for Tier 22 applications. When multiple “Tiers” are specified the boxes must physically accommodate and structurally support compatible covers while possessing the highest Tier rating. All covers are required to have the Tier level rating embossed on the surface. In no assembly can the cover design load exceed the design load of the box. All underground enclosures are to be UL listed as proof that they meet the latest version of the above specification or test reports stamped by a registered Professional Engineer certifying that all test provisions of this specification have been met are required with each submittal:
   1. Tier 22 rated for non-deliberate traffic
   2. Conduit entry knock-outs as required

3. Bolt down covers with SS self-cleaning “auger” style bolts
4. Integral or separate bottom
5. Adjust to grade option if available
6. Extension as required for specified conduit depth
7. Place enclosures on a minimum of 6 inches of coarse gravel with a border of 6-inches beyond the enclosures exterior dimension.
8. If larger than 24x26x24-inches, brace the interior prior to backfilling and compaction.

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. Install electrical conduits and fittings for all wiring of any type unless specifically specified or instructed to do otherwise. Install conduits and fittings in accordance with local codes and applicable sections of the NECA “Standard of Installation”, concealed where possible.
1. Fasten conduit supports to building structure and surfaces; do not support to roof deck.
2. Arrange supports to prevent misalignment during wiring installation.
3. Do not support conduit with wire or perforated pipe straps. Remove wire used for temporary supports.
4. Do not attach conduit to ceiling support wires.
5. Arrange conduit to maintain head room and present neat appearance.
6. Maintain 4-inch clearance between conduit and rooftop surfaces.
7. Cut conduit square using saw or pipe cutter; de-burr cut ends.
8. Bring conduit to shoulder of fittings; fasten securely.
9. Conduit penetrations to all individual motor controllers, VFDs, and motor control cabinets shall only be made at the bottom of the enclosure. For other equipment, provide listed water sealing conduit hubs to fasten conduit to sides or tops of electrical equipment enclosures, device box, gutter, wireway, disconnect, etc.
10. Use suitable caps to protect installed conduit against entrance of dirt and moisture.
11. Ground and bond conduit as required.
12. Identify conduit as required.
13. Route all conduits above building slab perpendicular or parallel to building lines.
14. Do not use no-thread couplings and connectors for galvanized steel, PVC coated galvanized steel, or aluminum rigid conduit.

B. Group related conduits; support using conduit rack. Construct rack using steel channel; provide space on each for 25 percent additional conduits.

C. In areas where raceway systems are exposed and acoustical or thermal insulating material is to be installed on walls, partitions, and ceilings, raceways shall be blocked out proper distance to allow insulating material to pass without cutting or fitting. Also provide Kindorf galvanized steel channels to serve as standoffs for panels, cabinets and

gutters.

D. Securely fasten conduits, supports and boxes, to ceiling (not roof deck), walls, with Rawl Plugs or approved equal anchors. Use lead cinch anchors or pressed anchors. Use only cadmium plated or galvanized bolts, screws. Plastic anchors and lead anchors shall not be used for overhead applications.

E. Provide separate raceway systems for each of the following when specified, indicated or required:
   1. 120/208 volt circuits
   2. 277/480 volt circuits
   3. Emergency
      a. Life safety branch
      b. Critical branch
      c. Equipment branch
   4. Voice/Data
   5. Sound reinforcement
   6. Theatrical and Architectural Dimming Controls
   7. MATV/CATV
   8. Security CCTV
   9. Security System
   10. Communications / PA Systems / Sound System Line Input and Speakers
   11. Fire Alarm
   12. Lighting and Building Management Control Systems

F. Unless shown otherwise, do not install conduit in or below concrete building slabs.

G. Unless shown otherwise, do not install conduit horizontally in concrete slabs.

H. Roof penetrations shall be made in adequate time to allow the roofing installer to make proper flashing. Conduit for equipment mounted on roof curbs shall be routed through the roof curb. Conduit, gutters, pull boxes, junction boxes, etc. shall not be routed on roof unless specified otherwise. Where specifically indicated to be routed or mounted on the roof, supports shall be as specified, as recommended by roofing manufacturer and roof support manufacturer and as required by NEC. Place supports every five feet along conduit run and within 3 feet of all bends, condulets, and junction boxes. Provide roofing pad under stands at directed by Architect and as recommended by roofing manufacturer and roof support manufacturer. Provide additional unistrut supports and accessories as required.

I. PVC coated conduit shall have all nicks and cuts to the protective coating repaired using manufacturer's approved touch-up material as recommended by manufacturer. Provide a minimum of two-wraps of 3M-50 type tape over touch-up.

J. Installation of the PVC Coated Conduit System shall be performed in accordance with the Manufacturer's Installation Manual. To assure correct installation, the installer shall be certified by Manufacturer to install coated conduit. Submit copies of training certification with submittal. Contractor shall coordinate installation with manufacturer's

representative for field training and observation of installed PVC coated rigid galvanized conduit and fittings. Manufacturer's representative shall certify the installation is in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions. Submit copies of installation certification prior to cover-up of underground installation.

K. All conduit terminations at locations including but not limited to, switchgear, pull boxes, outlet boxes, stub-up, and stub-outs:
   1. Provide insulated throat connectors for EMT conduits.
   2. Provide insulated bushing on all rigid conduit terminations.
   3. Provide locknuts inside and outside of all boxes and enclosures.
   4. Provide threaded type plastic bushing at all boxes and enclosures

L. In suspended ceilings, support conduit runs from the structure, not the ceiling system construction.
   1. Do not support from structural bridging.
   2. Do not support from metal roof deck.

M. Completely install each conduit run prior to pulling conductors. All boxes are to be accessible after completion of construction.

N. All conduits must be kept dry and free of water or debris with approved pipe plugs or caps. Cap or plug conduit ends prior to concrete pours.

O. Ream ends of conduits after cutting and application of cutting die to remove rough edges.

P. Install all above concrete slab conduits perpendicular or parallel to building lines in the most direct, neat and workmanlike manner.
   1. Cable Tension:
      a. 0.008 lb./cmil for up to 3 conductors, not to exceed 10,000 pounds.
      b. 0.0064 lb./cmil for more than 3 conductors, not to exceed 10,000 pounds
      c. 1000 lbs. per basket grip.
   2. Sidewall pressure: 500 lbs./ft.
   3. Conduit runs within the following limits of bends and conduit length between pull points shall not exceed the above installation pulling tension and sidewall pressure limits.
      a. Three (3) equivalent 90-degree bends: not more than fifty feet (50') between pull points.
      b. Two (2) equivalent 90-degree bends: not more than one hundred feet (100') between pull points.
      c. One (1) equivalent 90-degree bend: not more than one hundred fifty feet (150') between pull points.
      d. Straight pull: not more than two hundred feet (200') between pull points.
   4. Indicate sizes of conduits, wireway sections, and cable tray sections on the as-built drawings.

5. Hold horizontal and vertical conduits as close as possible to walls, ceilings and other elements of the building construction. Conduits shall be kept a minimum of 6 inches clear of roof deck / insulation, and 2 inches clear of above floor deck / insulation.
6. Install conduits to conserve building space and not obstruct equipment service space or interfere with use of space. Conduit shall not be routed on floors, paved areas or grade.
7. Where a piece of equipment is wired from a switch or box on adjacent wall, the wiring shall go up the wall from the box, across at or near the ceiling, and back down to the equipment. Wiring shall not block the walkway between wall and equipment.
8. Horizontal runs of conduit on exposed walls shall be kept to a minimum.
9. Conduit for mechanical / plumbing equipment installed outdoors shall be routed with the associated mechanical / plumbing pipe support rack system where practical, coordinate with Divisions 22 and 23.
10. Conduits installed in public areas, not concealed by architectural ceilings, shall be supported by galvanized steel channel racks to bottom of roof deck or floor deck. Conduits shall be grouped for neat workman-like appearance.

Q. Install expansion and deflection fittings and bonding jumpers on straight runs which exceed 200-feet, on center, and at 200-feet maximum, on center, on straight runs which exceed 400-feet, and where conduits cross building expansion joints.

R. Provide grounding bushings at concentric/eccentric knockouts or where reducing washers are used.

S. Run conduit to avoid proximity to heat producing equipment, piping surfaces with temperatures exceeding 104 degrees F., and flues, keeping a minimum of 13-inches clear.

T. Install conduit as a complete system, without conductors, continuous from outlet to outlet and from fitting to fitting. Make up threaded joints of conduit carefully in a manner to ensure a tight joint. Fasten the entire conduit system into position. A run of conduit between outlet and outlet, between fitting and fitting, or between outlet and fitting shall not contain more than the equivalent of four quarter bends, including those bends located immediately at the outlet or fitting.

U. Conceal conduit systems in finished areas. Conduit may be exposed in mechanical and electrical rooms, and where otherwise shown or indicated only. Run the conduit parallel and perpendicular to the structural features of the building and support with malleable iron conduit clamps at intervals as required by NEC or on conduit racks, neatly racked and bent in a smooth radius at corners.

V. Conduit bends shall be factory elbows or shall be bent using equipment specifically designed to bend conduit of the type used to maintain the conduit's UL listing. Conduit hanger spacing shall be 10 feet or less and as required by the NEC for all conduit. Beam clamp attachments to steel joist chords is prohibited. Beam clamps may only be used at beams, no exceptions. Connections to joists shall be made with galvanized channel

extended between joist chords or with galvanized channel bearing on the vertical legs of joist chord angles.

W. Support conduit on galvanized channel, using compatible galvanized fittings (bolts, beam clamps, and similar items), and galvanized threaded rod pendants at each end of channel and secure raceway to channel and channel to structure. Where rod pendants are not used, channel supports are to be secured to structure at each end. Conduit supports are to be secured to structure using washers, lock washers, nuts and bolts or rod pendants; use of toggle bolt "wings" are not acceptable. Support single conduit runs using a properly sized galvanized conduit hanger with galvanized closure bolt and nut and threaded rod. Raceway support system materials shall be galvanized and manufactured by Kindorf, Unistrut, Superstrut, Caddy, or Spring Steel Fasteners, Inc. Provide chrome or nickel-plated escutcheon plates on conduit passing through walls and ceilings in finished areas. Do not support conduit from other conduit, structural bridging or fire rated ceiling system. Do not support more than one conduit from a single all-thread rod support. Provide electrical insulating sleeve or wrapping for aluminum conduit supported by zinc coated supports or fasteners. Channel supports shall have cut ends filed smooth. When installed outside of the building, or in areas subject to moisture, the cut ends shall be painted with ZRC galvanized paint or equivalent.

X. Terminate all motor connection conduits in mechanical room spaces with a floor pedestal and with "Tee" conduit at motor outlet height for flexible conduit.

Y. Where conduit is not embedded in concrete or masonry, conduit shall be firmly secured by approved clamps, half-straps or hangers. Tie wire and short pieces of conduit used as supports and or hangers are not approved.

Z. Where "LB" condulets are used, 2-inches and larger shall be type "LBD".

AA. No more than 12 conduits containing branch circuits may be installed in junction boxes, pull boxes or gutters.

BB. Flexible metal conduit and liquid tight flexible metal conduit shall only be used for final connections from junction box to equipment, light fixtures, power poles, etc. They are not to be used in lieu of conduit runs. They shall not be used for wall or roof penetrations unless they are installed in a PVC coated RGC conduit sleeve at least one size larger than the OD of the flexible conduit.

CC. Where 3-1/2-inch conduit is specified and the required or specified material is Schedule 80 PVC, provide 4-inch conduit.

DD. "Daisy Chaining" light fixtures installed for lay-in ceiling areas is not allowed. Each light fixture shall have its own fixture whip from junction box. The only exception being light fixtures installed end to end using chase nipples between them, or light fixtures recessed in non-accessible ceilings.

EE. In above ceiling applications, do not install raceways, junction boxes, gutters,

disconnects, etc. within 36 inches directly in front of HVAC control boxes or other equipment requiring access from a point starting from the top of control box / equipment down to ceiling.

FF. Do not install conduit, junction boxes, etc. within 18 inches of outside edges of roof access openings.

GG. Install minimum size 2 inch nipple, at least one, between multi-sectional panels for branch circuit independent of feeder conductors.

**3.2 CONDUITS**

A. Conduit above grade indoors:
   1. Concealed Conduits: EMT with set screw fittings
   2. Exposed conduits:
      a. Below nine feet AFF where not directly attached and against building walls, ceiling, or structure: Rigid metal conduit or x-wall RTRC.
      b. Where subject to physical damage: Rigid metal conduit or x-wall RTRC.
      c. Wet locations: PVC coated galvanized rigid steel or aluminum conduit
      d. Damp Locations: Aluminum rigid conduit or x-wall RTRC.
      e. Exposed conduits in mechanical rooms or electrical rooms shall be rigid galvanized steel or x-wall RTRC when installed below 18-inches above finished floor.

B. Conduit installed above grade outdoors:
   1. Galvanized rigid steel or x-wall RTRC for conduits up utility poles and where subject to physical damage or where located less than four feet above finished floor.
   2. Aluminum or x-wall RTRC where not subject to physical damage and where located four feet above finished floor.

C. Conduit where indicated underground:
   1. PVC Coated Galvanized rigid steel or RTRC conduit elbows and PVC, RTRC, or PVC coated galvanized steel straight run conduits.
      a. PVC conduit and fittings shall be used only for straight horizontal runs and for vertical risers at site lighting pole bases. Bending straight sections of PVC conduit to less than 25-foot radius or the use of PVC factory bends is not allowed.
      b. Change in direction of conduit runs, either vertical or horizontal, shall be with RTRC or PVC coated galvanized steel elbows or long sweep bends of straight PVC conduit sections. Long sweep bends of straight PVC 20-foot sections shall have a minimum radius of curvature of 25 feet and a maximum arc of 22.5degrees. Multiple long sweep bends of straight PVC sections shall be separated by a minimum of 20-feet of straight, linear, PVC sections.
      c. Provide RTRC or PVC coated rigid galvanized steel conduit elbows and fittings with urethane interior coating at all changes in direction with

radius of less than 25-feet and at all vertical runs to 18 inches above finished floor elevation. For interior slab penetrations, provide continuous RTRC or PVC coated rigid galvanized steel conduit and fittings with urethane interior coating from change in direction to 18 inches above finished floor elevation, except where stubbed-up under and inside equipment or switchgear where conduit shall be terminated at minimum two inches above concrete housekeeping pad.

d. Elbows for underground electrical service entrance, feeders, transformer primary / secondary, telecommunication, and low voltage conduits shall be RTRC or PVC coated rigid galvanized steel with long radius as follows:
   1) Up to 1-inch conduit, minimum 12-inch radius.
   2) 1.5-inch conduit, minimum 18-inch radius.
   3) 2-inch conduit, minimum 24-inch radius.
   4) 2.5-inch conduit, minimum 30-inch radius.
   5) 3-inch conduit, minimum 36-inch radius.
   6) 3.5 to 6-inch conduit, minimum 48-inch radius.

e. Conduit for all floor boxes shall be routed below building slab from floor box to nearest column, wall, or as indicated.

f. Conduits shall not be routed horizontally in building slab, grade beams or pavement.

2. Encase all underground conduits in concrete.
   a. Concrete shall be tinted red throughout with a ratio of 10 pounds of dye per yard of concrete unless prohibited by utility for utility conduits. Concrete encasement for utility installed conductors shall be as specified by the utility and comply with their standards and specifications. Where utility does not require but allows concrete encasement of conduits, provide concrete encasement as specified herein.
   b. Provide minimum 3-inch concrete encasement around conduits.
   c. Provide conduit spacers for parallel branch/feeder conduits.
   d. When prior written approval from Owner and Architect to omit concrete encasement of conduits below building slab is given, conduits either specified or approved in writing to be routed under building slab without concrete encasement for electrical branch circuits or voice / data / video / communications horizontal drops or outlets shall be installed 18 inches below finished floor and on select fill. All other conduits, including but not limited to electrical feeders, voice / data / video / communications vertical, riser, tie, trunk, or service cable conduits shall be installed 48-inches below finished floor and on select fill.
   e. Use suitable manufactured separators and chairs installed 4 feet on centers. Securely anchor conduit at each chair to prevent movement during backfill placement.
3. Install building voice / data / video / communications main service conduits and electrical service transformer primary and secondary conduits with top of concrete encasement minimum 48-inches below finished grade or pavement.

Voice / data / video / communications conduits and electrical service primary conduits for utility owned electrical service transformers shall also comply with the respective utility company requirements and standards. All other underground conduits outside of building other than voice / data / video / communications main service conduits and electrical service transformer primary and secondary conduits shall have top of concrete encasement at 36 inches minimum below finished grade or pavement.

4. Provide two “caution” plastic tapes at 6-inches and 18-inches below finished slab, grade, or pavement; identify as specified in Section 26 05 00.
5. Conduits located outside building, provide magnetic locator tape at top of first compacted layer of backfill or concrete.
6. During construction, partially completed underground conduits shall be protected from the entrance of debris such as mud, sand, and dirt by means of conduit plugs. As each section of the underground conduit is completed, a testing mandrel with diameter ¼-inch smaller than the conduit, shall be drawn through each conduit. A brush with stiff bristles shall be drawn through until conduit is clear of particles of earth, sand, or gravel. Conduit plugs shall then be installed.
7. Utility underground conduit for Utility Company cable shall be installed per Utility Company standards, and their specifications for this project.
8. Concrete shall be Portland Cement conforming to ASTM-C-150, Type 1, Type III or Type V if specified. Cement content shall be sufficient to product minimum strength of 2,500 PSI.
9. Contractor shall stake out routing and location of underground conduits using actual field measurements. He shall obtain approval of the Owner and Architect before beginning trenching, horizontal drilling, and excavation.
10. Verify location and routing of all new and existing underground utilities with the Owner and Architect on the job site. Stake out these existing utilities so that they will not be damaged. Stake out new utilities to provide coordination with other trades and with new and existing utilities, easements, property lines, restricted land use areas, and right-of-ways. Verify existing public utilities with Call811.

D. Conduit shown in concrete walls, floor or roof slab:
   1. PVC Coated Galvanized Rigid steel.

E. Conduits that penetrate concrete slab, or within 100 feet of cooling towers, or at designated corrosive locations.
   1. RTRC
   2. PVC coated galvanized rigid steel

F. Connections to equipment mounted on roof, rotating equipment, transformers, and kitchen or food processing equipment, or where flexible conduit is required outdoors.
   1. Liquid tight flexible metal conduit (1/2 inch may be used for roof top supply / exhaust fans only)
   2. Liquid tight flexible metal conduit for 24-inch maximum length

G. Light fixture whips:

1. Accessible ceilings and open structure: ½-inch flexible steel conduit, length not to exceed 6-feet.
2. Non-accessible ceilings: ½-inch flexible steel conduit. Length as required to make a tap at an accessible j-box. Recessed light fixtures in non-accessible ceilings may be daisy chained using the light fixture's integral, UL listed j-box or internal wire way that is accessible through fixture from below the ceiling.
3. Dedicated insulated ground wire.
4. Light fixture whips shall not rest on ceiling grid or tile.
5. Light fixture whips shall not be supported from the ceiling suspension system. Support from the structure with #13 AWG galvanized iron wire pendants and Caddy clips. Do not support conduit from structural bridging. Flexible conduit shall be kept a minimum of 2 inches clear of roof deck.

H. Conduits at Natatorium or therapeutic pool areas:
1. Underground conduit shall be as specified in this section.
2. Exterior conduits and boxes within 100 feet of exhaust openings shall be x-wall RTRC or PVC coated galvanized rigid steel or stainless steel.
3. Exposed conduits in chemical storage rooms, pool mechanical equipment (pump rooms, and pool equipment storage rooms shall be Schedule 80 PVC. Boxes shall be PVC, or 304 Stainless Steel.
4. Exposed conduits and boxes in indoor pool areas and all other indoor public areas shall be Type 304 Stainless Steel.

I. Conduits located inside greenhouses and natatorium pump and water treatment rooms:
1. X-wall RTRC
2. Schedule 80 PVC
3. PVC coated galvanized rigid steel conduit and fittings.

J. Conduits in classified hazardous (Classified) locations:
1. Conduit fittings and seals UL listed for the classification

## 3.3 CONDUIT PENETRATIONS, SLEEVES AND ESCUTCHEONS

A. Furnish sleeves for placing in construction for all conduit passing through concrete or masonry walls, partitions, beams, all floors other than grade level, and roofs. A conduit sleeve shall be one size larger than the size of conduit, which it serves except where larger sizes are required for manufactured water, fire, or smoke stop fittings.
1. Sleeves set in concrete floor construction shall be minimum Schedule 40 galvanized steel.
2. Sleeves shall extend 3-inches above the finished floor.

B. Sleeves in concrete or masonry walls shall be RTRC or Schedule 40 galvanized steel. Sleeves shall be set flush with finished wall.

C. Install manufactured UL listed water, fire, and smoke stop fittings, or caulk around conduit or cables in sleeves with sufficient UL listed fire safe insulation or foam to maintain wall or floor slab fire or smoke rating. Refer to Architecture drawings for

locations of rated walls.

D. Provide Linkseal Mechanical Seals around conduit penetrations through walls below grade. Provide a pull box to install a water stop inside wall penetration. Internally seal low voltage cabling conduit penetrations with waterproof caulking.

E. Sleeves penetrating walls below grade shall be Schedule 40 black steel pipe with ¼-inch thick steel plate secured to the pipe with continuous fillet weld. The plate shall be located in the middle of the wall and shall be 2-inches wider all around than the sleeve that it encircles. The sleeve should extend a minimum of 24-inches on either side of the penetration. The entire assembly shall be hot-dipped galvanized after fabrication. Do not sleeve or penetrate grade beams.

F. Conduit passing through the housing on connected equipment shall pass through a cleanly cut hole protected with a threaded steel bushing. Route conduit through roof openings, for piping and ductwork or through suitable roof jack, with pitch pocket. Coordinate location with roofing installation as required.

G. Conduit passing through fire rated wall shall be sealed with Fire Stop. Route conduit to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements, using materials and methods under the provisions of Division 7.

## 3.4 POWER DISTRIBUTION UNDERGROUND FEEDER CONDUIT AND UNDERGROUND SERVICE ENTRANCE CONDUIT

A. Power underground feeder and service entrance shall be of individual conduit encased in concrete. Unless shown otherwise, the type of conduit used shall not be mixed in any one underground conduit and shall be the size indicated on the drawings. The concrete encasement surrounding the underground conduit shall be rectangular in cross-section, having a minimum concrete thickness of 3-inches, except that conduit for 120V and above shall be separated from control and signal conduits by a minimum concrete thickness of 3-inches. Encasement concrete shall be tinted in red.

B. During construction, partially completed underground conduits shall be protected from the entrance of debris such as mud, sand, and dirt by means of conduit plugs. As each section of the underground conduit is completed, a testing mandrel shall be drawn through until each conduit is clear of particles of earth, sand, or gravel. Conduit plugs shall then be installed.

C. Furnish the exact dimensions and location of power underground conduit to be encased in time to prevent delay in the concrete work.

D. Conduit for service entrance underground conduits shall be as indicated on the drawings.

E. Primary power underground conduit shall be installed in accordance with utility company standards and the utility company specifications for this project.

## 3.5 TELECOMMUNICATIONS, LOW VOLTAGE AND EMPTY CONDUIT SYSTEM RACEWAYS

A. Conduit shall be installed in accordance with the specified requirements for conduit and with the additional requirements that no length of run shall exceed 100-feet for 1 inch or smaller trade sizes, and shall not contain more than two 90-degree bends or the equivalent. Pull or junction boxes shall be installed to comply with these requirements. Provide plastic bushings at all conduit terminations. Provide a grounding bushing on each data and voice conduit.

B. Conduits shall be installed from outlet box to above an accessible ceiling. All cables routed through open spaces (no-ceiling below roof deck or above floor deck) shall be routed in conduit. Telecommunications systems, CATV, CCTV, fire alarm and BMCS cables can be installed above accessible ceilings without conduit. Cables installed above accessible ceiling shall be plenum rated. Conduit rough in of these cables shall include a 90-degree turn-out to an accessible location with insulated bushings on the end of the conduit.
   1. Provide conduit from each telecommunications outlet box to accessible ceiling plenum.
   2. Provide conduit from each security / surveillance device outlet box to accessible ceiling plenum.
   3. Provide two conduits for each multi-media outlet box and each outlet box indicated to contain more than four data, audio, or video drops to accessible ceiling plenum.
   4. Provide the following minimum conduits for telecommunications and multi-media wall, floor, and ceiling mounted outlet boxes. Use the largest diameter conduit indicated below unless instructed otherwise in writing from the Architect:
      a. Non-masonry outlet box: Two 1-inch conduits.
      b. Masonry outlet box: Two 1-inch conduits, or three 3/4-inch conduits.
      c. Where indicated differently on plans or where conflicts arise, notify the Architect / Engineer prior to installation.

C. All conduit in which cable is to be installed by others shall have pull string installed. The nylon pull string shall have not less than 200 lb. tensile strength. Not less than 12-inches of slack shall be left at each end. Provide blank cover plate before substantial completion if box is for a future installation after substantial completion of the project. Conduit shall extend to a minimum six inches above nearest accessible ceiling, and be turned horizontally with plastic bushing at terminations.

D. Conduits for Building Entrance Facilities:
   1. Underground Outside Plant: Install a pull box every 300-feet or after 180 degree turns.
   2. Inside Plant: Install a pull box every 150-feet or after 180 degree turns. All turns shall be large sweeps, not sharp 90s, with the radius of the sweep at least 10X the diameter of the conduit. Hence, a 4-inch conduit requires a 40-inch minimum radial sweep. If field conditions absolutely mandate a sharp 90-degree bend to be installed, then a pull box shall be installed at that location regardless of distance.

3. Building entrance facilities shall not terminate in an IDF or any other space except the MDF.
4. Coordinate the termination location of the building entrance facilities in the MDF with the room layout and equipment configuration.
5. Provide 4-inch conduit unless indicated otherwise. Provide (3) fabric innerducts in each 4-inch conduit.

## 3.6 EXTERIOR IN-GRADE PULL BOXES

A. Provide pull boxes where specified and as required.

B. Pull boxes located in pavement shall be set with proper extensions so that top of cover is flush with pavement.

C. Pull boxes located in non-paved areas shall be set two-inches above surrounding finished grade. Provide 12-inch wide by 8-inch deep reinforced concrete crown around neck or opening and sloped down away from pull box opening.

## 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Conduit Systems: Provide adequate marking of conduit larger than one inch exposed or concealed in interior accessible spaces to distinguish each run as either a power (120/208V or 277/480V) or signal / telecommunication conduit (Fire Alarm, BAS, BMCS, Security, CCTV, Access Control, Intrusion Detection, Telecom, etc.). Except as otherwise indicated, use orange banding with black lettering. Provide self-adhesive or snap-on type plastic markers. Locate markers at ends of conduit runs, near switches and other control devices, near items of equipment served by the conductors, at points where conduit passes through walls or floors or enters non-accessible construction, and at spacing of not more than 50-feet along each run of exposed conduit. Switch-leg conduit and short branches for power connections need not be marked, except where conduit is larger than 1-inch.

**END OF SECTION 06 05 33**

# SECTION 26 05 35 - ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS FOR EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Electrical connections as required and scheduled, and as specified.

### 1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Refer to other Divisions for specific individual equipment electrical requirements.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. UL Label: Products shall be UL listed to the extent possible.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS AND COMPONENTS

A. General: For each electrical connection indicated, provide a complete assembly including, but not limited to, pressure connectors, terminals (lugs), electrical insulating tape, heat-shrinkable insulating tubing, cable ties, solderless wire nuts, and other items and accessories needed to complete splices and terminations.

B. Raceways: Refer to related sections.

C. Conductors and Connectors: Refer to related section. Conductors at equipment terminations shall be copper.

D. Terminals: Provide electrical terminals as indicated by the terminal manufacturer for the application.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A. General: Install electrical connections as shown, in accordance with applicable portions of the NECA Standard of Installation, and industry practices.

B. Conductors: Connect electrical power supply conductors to equipment conductors in accordance with equipment manufacturer's written instructions and wiring diagrams. Where possible, match conductors of the electrical connection for interface between the electrical supply and the installed equipment.

C. Splice Insulation: Cover splices with electrical insulation equivalent to, or of a higher rating than, insulation on the conductors being spliced.

D. Appearance: Prepare conductors by cutting and stripping covering, jacket, and insulation to ensure a uniform and neat appearance where cables and wires are terminated.

E. Routing: Trim cables and wires to be as short as practical. Arrange routing to facilitate inspection, testing, and maintenance.

F. Motor Connections: Where possible, terminate conduit in conduit boxes at motors. Where motors are not provided with conduit boxes, terminate the conduit in a suitable condulet, and make motor connections. Conduit passing through the housing on connected equipment shall pass through a cleanly cut hole protected with an approved grommet. For motors 10 HP and larger, at the motor connection do not use wire nuts. Provide copper alloy split bolt connectors or compression lugs and bolts. Insulate connection with Scotch Super 88 vinyl electrical tape over rubber tape, or Tyco Gelcap Motor Connection Kit.

G. Conduit connections to equipment including, but not limited to, Variable Frequency Drives, Manual and Automatic Transfer Switches, Surge Suppression Devices, motor controllers, electrical disconnects, food service / processing equipment, electronics, control panels and Owner furnished equipment:
   1. Make conduit penetrations only at the bottom flat surface of the equipment and only where permitted by the equipment manufacturer to avoid un-intentional water entry. Coordinate installation of electrical connections for equipment with equipment installation work. Where equipment manufacture does not permit a bottom conduit entry, verify with Owner/Engineer and locate the conduit entry at the side surface as close as possible to the bottom of the enclosure.
   2. Where conduit originates from an elevation above the conduit entry, provide a “T” condulet below the enclosure’s bottom elevation. Provide conduit from the condulet up to the enclosure bottom horizontal surface for electrical connection.

H. Identification: Refer to Electrical General Provisions for identification of electrical power supply conductor terminations with markers approved as to type, color, letter and marker size by the Architect. Fasten markers at each termination point, as close as possible to each connecting point.

I. Equipment and Furnishings: Refer to other Divisions. Coordinate power and control provisions shown for equipment and furnishings with the provisions required for the furnished equipment and furnishings. Where the power and control requirements are less than or equal to those specified, modifications to power and control provisions shall be made at no cost as a part of coordination. Where power and control requirements are in excess of those shown, notify the Architect in writing of the requirements.

J. Elevators and Escalators, and Wheelchair Lifts: Refer to Other Divisions. Coordinate power and control provisions shown with the provisions required for the furnished

equipment. Where the power and control requirements are less than or equal to those specified, modifications to power and control provisions shall be made at no cost as a part of coordination. Where power and control requirements are in excess of those shown, notify the Architect in writing of the requirements. Provide lockable disconnect switches for main power, control power, lighting power, etc. as required by the NEC and all local codes. Provide all necessary means of two-way communication for emergency phones.

**END OF SECTION 26 05 35**

# SECTION 26 05 37 - ELECTRICAL BOXES AND FITTINGS

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Provide electrical box and fitting work as required, scheduled, indicated, and specified.

### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. UL Label: Electrical boxes and fittings shall be UL listed.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FABRICATED MATERIALS

A. Interior Outlet Boxes: Provide galvanized steel interior outlet wiring boxes, of the type, shape, and size, including depth of box, to suit respective locations and installation. Construct with stamped knockouts in back and sides. Provide gang boxes where devices are shown grouped. Single box design; sectional boxes are not acceptable, except for wall mounted electronic displays.

1. Type of Various Locations:
    a. Wall mounted interactive media boards, video displays, televisions, electronic signage and similar installations; recessed wall mounted box for power and/or multi-media (low voltage) outlets: Arlington Industries #TVBS 613, 4-gang steel box with white trim plate.
    b. Technology, data, voice, video and multi-media outlet boxes at locations other than wall mounted interactive media boards, video displays, televisions, electronic signage and similar installations: minimum 4-inch square (2-gang), 3-inch deep interior outlet boxes. Raco #260H large capacity box with ½ through 2-inch knockouts.
    c. Security, access control, and video surveillance outlet boxes: single gang, 3-inch deep outlet boxes mounted long axis vertically.
    d. All other applications: minimum 4-inch square (2-gang) 2-1/8-inch deep boxes.
    e. Masonry Walls: Galvanized switch boxes made especially for masonry installations; depths of boxes must be coordinated for each installation.
    f. Surface: Type FS or FD box with surface cover.
    g. Corrosive locations or natatorium areas: 316 stainless steel construction suitable for the installation.
    h. Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Explosion proof boxes, seals and fittings.
    i. Special: Where above types are not suitable, boxes as required, taking into account space available, appearance, and Code requirements
2. Interior Outlet Box Accessories: Outlet box accessories required as for installation, including covers or wall device plates, mounting brackets, wallboard hangers, extension rings, plaster rings for boxes in plaster construction, fixture

studs, cable clamps and metal straps for supporting outlet boxes. Accessories shall be compatible with outlet boxes used and meet requirements of individual wiring.

B. Damp Location Outlet and Damp or Wet Location Switch Boxes: Deep type, hot dipped galvanized cast-metal weatherproof outlet wiring boxes, of type, shape, and size required. Include depth of box, threaded conduit ends, and stainless steel cover plate with spring-hinged waterproof caps suitable for application. Include faceplate gasket and corrosion-resistant, tamper / vandal proof fasteners.

C. Wet Location Outlet Boxes: Hot dipped galvanized cast-iron weatherproof outlet wiring boxes, of type, shape, and size required. Include depth of box, threaded conduit ends.

D. Junction and Pull Boxes: Galvanized sheet steel junction and pull boxes, with screw-on covers, of type, shape, and size, to suit respective location and installation.
   1. Type for Various Locations:
      a. Minimum Size: 4-inch square, 2-1/8-inches deep.
      b. 150 Cubic Inches in Volume or Larger: Code gauge steel with sides formed and welded, screw covers unless shown or required to have hinged doors. All boxes mounted above ceiling shall have screw covers. Boxes in all other areas with covers larger than 12-inches shall have hinged with screw covers. Knockouts factory stamped or formed in field with a cutting tool to provide a clean symmetrically cut hole.
      c. Exterior or Wet Areas: 304 stainless steel NEMA 4X construction with gaskets and corrosion-resistant fasteners

E. Conduit Bodies: Provide galvanized cast-metal conduit bodies, of type, shape, and size, to suit location and installation. Construct with threaded conduit ends, removable cover, and corrosion-resistant screws.

F. Bushings, Knockout Closures, and Locknuts: Provide corrosion-resistant punched-steel box knockout closures, conduit locknuts, and insulated conduit bushings of type and size to suit use and installation.

G. Outlet boxes in fire rated walls: Provide 2-hour rated gasket within box and below cover, equal to Rectorseal Metacaulk box guard and cover guard.

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION OF BOXES AND FITTINGS**

A. Install electrical boxes and fittings as shown and as required, in compliance with NEC requirements, in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions, in accordance with industry practices.

B. Provide recessed device boxes for wall mounted interactive media boards, video displays, televisions, electronic signage and similar installations.

C. Provide minimum 4-inch square (2-gang), 3-inch deep interior outlet boxes for technology, data, voice, video, and multi-media outlet boxes at locations other than wall mounted interactive boards, video or visual displays. Provide single gang only, 3-inch deep outlet boxes mounted long axis vertically for security, access control, and video surveillance, coordinate with security equipment installation. Provide minimum 4-inch square (2-gang) 2-1/8-inch deep boxes for all other applications. Where indicated differently on plans or where conflicts arise, notify the Architect / Engineer prior to installation. Box extenders or plaster rings shall not be used to increase size. Provide increased box size as required.

D. Junction and pull boxes, condulets, gutters, located above grid ceilings shall be mounted within 18-inches of ceiling grid. Junction and pull boxes above grid ceilings shall be mounted in the same room served. Junction boxes and pull boxes required for areas with inaccessible ceilings shall be located above the nearest accessible ceiling area. All junction box or pull box openings shall be side or bottom accessible. Removal of light fixtures, mechanical equipment or other devices shall not be required to access boxes. Outlet boxes above ceiling for low voltage terminations shall face towards the floor.

E. Use outlet and switch boxes for junctions on concealed conduit systems except in utility areas where exposed junction or pull boxes can be used.

F. Determine from the drawings and by measurement the location of each outlet. Locate electrical boxes to accommodate millwork, fixtures, marker boards, and other room equipment at no additional cost to the Owner. The outlet locations shall be modified from those shown to accommodate changes in door swing or to clear interferences that arise from construction as well as modifying them to center in rooms. The modifications shall be made with no cost as part of coordination. Check the conditions throughout the job and notify the Architect of discrepancies. Verify modifications before proceeding with installation. Set wall boxes in advance of wall construction, blocked in place and secured. Set all wall boxes flush with the finish and install extension rings as required extending boxes to the finished surfaces of special furring or wall finishes. Provide wall box support legs attached to stud to prevent movement of box in wall.

G. Unless noted or directed otherwise at installation, place outlet boxes as indicated on architectural elevations and as required by local codes.

H. Outlets above counters, mount long axis horizontally. Refer to architectural elevations and coordinate to clear backsplash and millwork.

I. Provide pull boxes, junction boxes, wiring troughs, and cabinets where necessary for installation of electrical systems. Surface mounted boxes below 9 feet and accessible to the public shall not have stamped knockouts.

J. Provide weatherproof boxes for interior and exterior locations exposed to weather or moisture.

K. Provide knockout closures to cap unused knockout holes in boxes.

L. Locate boxes and conduit bodies to ensure access to electrical wiring. Provide minimum 12-inch clearance in front of box or conduit body access.

M. Secure boxes to the substrate where they are mounted, or embed boxes in concrete or masonry.

N. Boxes for any conduit system shall not be secured to the ceiling system, HVAC ductwork or piping system.

O. Provide junction and pull boxes for feeders and branch circuits where shown and where required by NEC, regardless of whether or not boxes are shown.

P. Coordinate locations of boxes in fire rated partitions and slabs to not affect the fire rating of the partition or slab. Notify the Architect in writing where modification or construction is required to maintain the partition or slab fire rating.

Q. Exterior boxes installed within 50-feet of cooling towers or water treatment areas shall be of 304 stainless steel, weatherproof NEMA 4X construction.

R. Identification: Paint the exterior and cover plates of building interior junction boxes and pull boxes located above accessible ceilings or non-finished areas to correspond to the following colors:
1. Orange: - 480/277 VAC systems
2. Light Blue: - 240 VAC three phase delta systems.
3. Red – All Emergency circuits, regardless of load, and fire alarm system.
4. Light Green - 120/208 VAC 3 phase and 120/240 VAC single-phase systems
5. Yellow – Building Management and Control System - BMCS
6. White - Security and Surveillance equipment circuits

S. All box covers shall be labeled with Panel ID and circuit numbers of all circuits available in box using permanent black marker. Boxes containing main feeders are to list where fed from and load (example “MSB to Panel HA”). Information listed is to be legible, markovers are not acceptable. Multi-sectional panel numbers are not to be listed on covers (example “LA2” referring to Panel LA sec. 2 is to be listed as “LA”). Label covers for special applications explaining contents (example “Emerg. Gen. Annunciator controls”, “IDF ground”). Do not attach box covers that have both sides painted or labeled differently. In public areas where boxes are painted same color as room per architect, label inside covers. Boxes that are not used shall be labeled as not used and include panel ID. Example “Not Used Panel LA”. Unused raceways not in sight of panel shall be terminated in a box and labeled not used and include panel identification.

T. Align adjacent wall mounted outlet boxes for switches, thermostats, and similar devices.

U. Use flush mounting outlet box in finished areas unless specifically indicated as being used with exposed conduit.

V. Locate flush-mounting box in masonry wall to require cutting of masonry unit corner only. Coordinate masonry cutting to achieve neat opening.

W. Do not install flush mounting box back-to-back in walls; provide minimum 6 inches with stud separation. Provide minimum 24 inches with separation in acoustic rated walls.

X. Secure flush mounting box to interior wall and partition studs. Accurately position to allow for surface finish thickness. Provide UL listed materials to support boxes in walls to prevent movement. Ensure box cannot be pushed inside wall.

Y. Use stamped steel bridges to fasten flush mounting outlet box between studs.

Z. Install flush mounting box without damaging vapor barriers, wall insulation or reducing its effectiveness.

AA. Use adjustable steel channel fasteners for hung ceiling outlet box.

BB. Do not fasten boxes to ceiling support wires.

CC. Support systems are to hang vertically straight down. All-thread supports, when used, are not to be installed at an angle or bent.

DD. Use gang box where more than one device is mounted together. Do not use sectional box.

EE. Use gang box with plaster ring for single device outlets.

FF. Support outlets flush with suspended ceilings to the building structure.

GG. Mount boxes to the building structure with supporting facilities independent of the conduits or raceways.

HH. Where multiple feeders are in one pull box, conductors shall be wrapped with 3M No. 7700 Arc and fireproof tape.

II. Provide plaster rings of suitable depth on all outlet boxes. Face of plaster ring shall be within 1/8 inch from finished surface.

JJ. Equip boxes supporting fixtures designed to accept fixture studs with 3/8-inch stud (galvanized malleable iron) inserted through back of box and secured by locknut. Boxes not equipped with outlets shall have level metal covers with rust-resisting screws.

KK. Do not mount junction boxes above inaccessible ceilings or in inaccessible spaces. Do not mount junction boxes above ceilings accessible only by removing light fixture, mechanical equipment or other devices. At inaccessible spaces use junction box furnished with light fixture or light fixture wiring compartment UL listed for through wiring.

LL. No more than 12 conduits containing branch circuits may be installed in any junction or pull box.

MM. All junction boxes shall be protected from building finish painters' over spray and from fire proofing overspray. Remove protective coverings when painting and fire proofing are complete.

NN. Bond equipment grounding conductor to all junction and pull boxes.

OO. Do not mount boxes or conduit bodies on walls directly above electrical panels or switchgear located next to walls.

PP. Do not mount boxes or conduit bodies within 18 inches of outside edges of roof access openings.

QQ. Box extenders or plaster rings shall not be used to increase the Code mandated cable capacity of a box. Provide proper size box.

**3.2 ADJUSTING**

A. Adjust flush-mounting outlets to make front flush with finished wall material.

B. Install knockout closures in unused box openings.

**END OF SECTION 26 05 37**

# SECTION 26 05 40 - ELECTRICAL GUTTERS AND WIREWAYS

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Provide electrical gutter work as shown, as specified and as required.

B. Application: The types of electrical gutters required for the project include the following:
   1. Electrical wiring gutters
   2. Voice / Data / Video / Communication and signal distribution wireway

### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. UL Label: Gutters and wireways shall be UL labeled.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ELECTRICAL GUTTERS AND WIREWAYS

A. General: Provide hinged electrical gutters and wireways in the types and sizes indicated or required, minimum 16 gauge thickness, with rounded edges and smooth surfaces; constructed in compliance with applicable standards; with features required.

B. Size: Provide size indicated. Where size is not indicated, construct in accordance with the NEC and other standards. Gutters shall be of manufacturer's standard lengths, without field cutting or field extensions.

C. Accessories: Provide gutter and wireway accessories where indicated, constructed of same metal and finish as gutters or wireways.

D. Supports: Provide gutter and wireway supports indicated, conforming to NEC, and as recommended by the manufacturer, and as specified in Section 26 05 33 Conduit Systems.

E. Materials and Finishes: NEMA 1 gutters and wireways shall have gray powder coat finish over galvanized steel. Gutters and wireways installed outside shall be NEMA 3RX minimum. Gutters or wireways installed within 100-feet of cooling towers, at kitchen or food preparation areas, and natatorium, spa or therapy pool areas shall be of 304 stainless steel NEMA 4X construction.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Provide gutters and wireways only where specified or required. Use of gutters and

wireways shall be kept to a minimum.

B. Finishing: Remove burrs and sharp edges of gutters and wireways wherever they could be injurious to conductor insulation or jacket.

C. Installation: Install gutters and wireways where shown or required, in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions, NEC, NECA "Standard of Installation," and with recognized industry practices to ensure that the gutters and wireways comply with the specified requirements. Comply with requirements of NEMA and the NEC pertaining to installation of electrical gutters.

C. Grounding: Electrically ground gutters and wireways to ensure continuous electrical conductivity. Provide equipment grounding conductor.

E. Conductors:
   1. Complete gutter and wireway installation before starting the installation of conductors.
   2. Provide sufficient space to permit access for installing, splicing, and maintaining the conductors.

F. A maximum of 12 conduits containing branch circuits shall be allowed to be installed in any gutter or wireway.

**END OF SECTION 26 05 40**

# SECTION 26 05 50 – FIRESTOPS

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Provide firestop as required, and as specified. Refer to Architectural drawings for all fire and smoke rated partitions, walls, floors, etc.

B. Types: Firestop required for the project includes smokestop.

### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. UL Label: Firestops shall be UL labeled.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Nelson

B. 3M (Minnesota Mining Manufacturing)

C. Hilti

D. Specified Technologies, Inc.

### 2.2 MATERIAL AND COMPONENTS

A. General: Except as otherwise indicated, provide firestop manufacturer's standard materials and components as indicated by published product information, designed and constructed as recommended by the manufacturer, and as required for installation.

### 2.3 FIRESTOP

A. Conduits: Provide a soft, permanently flexible sealant for 1-1/2 to 2 hour rated fireproofing for steel conduits (up to 4" diameter).

B. Low Voltage Cables, Fiber Optic Cable and Innerduct: Provide Specified Technologies, Inc. EZ-Path single, double, or triple pathways as required.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF FIRESTOPS

A. General: Install firestops in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and industry practices to ensure that the firestops comply with requirements. Comply

with UL and NFPA standards for the installation of firestops.

**END OF SECTION 06 05 50**

# SECTION 26 08 00 - ELECTRICAL COMMISSIONING

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section outlines commissioning requirements and activities of the Contractor, Owner, CxA and Design Professionals as related to the Division 26 Electrical.

B. Related Sections:
1. Division 01 – General Requirements and Specification Section 01 91 13, General Commissioning
2. Division 22 – Plumbing
3. Division 23 – Mechanical
4. Division 26 – Electrical
5. Division 27 – Communications
6. Division 28 – Safety and Security

### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Refer to Specification Section 01 91 13, General Commissioning for definitions.

### 1.3 CONTRACT INFORMATION

A. The Owner will contract directly for commissioning services.
1. Commissioning Agent fee will be paid for directly by the Owner.
2. Contractor shall provide coordination with the CxA including but not limited to labor, materials, and testing equipment as required for the CxA as specified in this section.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 TEST EQUIPMENT

A. Contractor shall provide all standard and specialized testing equipment required to perform Start-up and Functional Performance Testing. Test equipment and other items required for Functional Performance Testing includes but not limited to those listed below. Data logging and software required for testing and corrective measures as required by the contract documents shall be provided by the Contractor.

B. All testing equipment shall be of sufficient quality and accuracy to test and/or measure system performance with the tolerances specified in the Specifications. Calibration tags shall be affixed or certificates readily available.

### 2.2 OTHER CONTRACTOR PROVIDED EQUIPMENT:

A. Ladders and/or lifts and appropriate fall protection as required by Contractor and the CxA.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 COORDINATION – GENERAL

A. Except for the activities to be performed by the CxA called for herein, all component and system installation work required by the Division 26 specifications, including specific contractor provided or furnished items indicated by this Section, shall be provided by the Contractor.

### 3.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Electrical:
   1. Lighting controls and lighting equipment submittals conforming to the contract documents.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT START-UP

A. Notification:
   1. Contractor shall provide ten Owner business day notice to CxA, Owner and Design Team of start-up dates. Owner business days are defined as the Owner's Construction and Maintenance Operations department's normally scheduled work days, typically Monday through Friday, excluding Federal, State, Local, and Owner scheduled Holidays.

B. Prior to start-up, Contractor shall:
   1. Verify that equipment and systems are complete, accessible, correctly connected and ready for operation. Perform all pre-start inspections and tests as called for in Division 26 and as recommended by the equipment manufacturer.
   2. Pre-start requirements of the manufacturer shall include but not limited to the Contractor's completed applicable documentation and completed inspection and check-list.
   3. Complete applicable sections of Pre-functional Checklists (PFCs).
   4. Coordinate start-up attendance by manufacturer or their authorized representative as required by the specifications and the manufacturer.

C. At start-up, Contractor shall:
   1. Supervise the activities of the manufacturer's authorized start-up technician and/or authorized manufacturer's representative.
   2. Verify proper voltage, overcurrent protection, phase, phase sequence, and any other conditions that may cause damage if not correct.
   3. Execute start-up under supervision of contractor personnel familiar with the installation and operation of equipment being commissioned and the equipment manufacturer's personnel in accordance with the manufacturer's instruction.
   4. Complete manufacturer start-up requirements and documentation. Provide a copy of documentation to the CxA for inclusion in the Cx Manual.

5. Complete PFC's and provide documentation to CxA.
6. Provide documentation of any issues and noted during start-up to CxA, Owner and Design Team. Outline recommendations for corrective action to comply with the Contract Documents and equipment manufacture's installation and operation requirements.

## 3.4 PRE-FUNCTIONAL CHECKLISTS

A. Contractor shall forward completed copies of PFC's to the CxA for inclusion into the Cx documentation. PFC's will be provided by the CxA. If approved by the Cx as an alternate, contractor may submit alternate versions of the PFC's to the CxA for review and comment.

B. Contractor shall complete PFC for each of the following equipment:
   1. Electrical.
      a. Lighting and lighting controls.

## 3.5 FUNCTIONAL TESTING

A. General:
   1. Contractor shall organize and schedule Contractor Team members to execute the functional testing , which will be directed by CxA.
      a. Lighting and lighting controls.

**END OF SECTION 26 08 00**

# SECTION 26 09 25 - ELECTRICAL CONTACTORS

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Miscellaneous electrical contactors as shown, required, scheduled, and specified.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Provide products produced by one of the following:
Schneider Electric - Square D
ABB-General Electric

### 2.2 CONTACTORS

A. Provide contactors as shown, required, and specified. The number of poles, ampere-ratings, and pole arrangements shall be as required. Contactors shall conform to the following:
1. Rated for continuous duty at full rated current in an unventilated enclosure. Eight-hour duty ratings are not acceptable.
2. Contacts shall be readily replaceable, self-aligning, silver alloy.
3. Load contactors shall be rated for not less than 30A continuous rating. Auxiliary contacts shall be rated for not less than 10 amperes.
4. Contactors rated for lighting and mixed loads shall have an interrupting capacity of 150% of their continuous duty rating.
5. Contactors shall be capable of successfully handling inrush currents at 20 times rating.
6. Provide a minimum of two spare load contacts on each individual contactor rated 60A or less for future use.

B. Electrically-held Devices shall conform to the following:
1. AC operated units shall have laminated low loss electrical steel core pieces with machine ground pole faces and shading coils.
2. Units rated at 300A and above shall have DC operating coils and include the necessary rectifier for the AC/DC operation.
3. Normally open contactors shall be spring-loaded open and magnetically closed.
4. Contactors for emergency lighting or power shall be normally closed.

C. Controls: Individual contactors operated by automatic controls shall have 30.5mm HAND-OFF-AUTOMATIC switches, otherwise provide HAND-OFF switches. Contactor controls shall be mounted in the contactor enclosure cover. Contactors serving receptacle loads controlled by local switching shall not have Hand-Off-Auto nor Hand-Off switching.

D. Control Power. Provide dedicated 120-volt circuit for contactor control power and indicator pilot lights. Do not use same circuit feeding load.

E. Enclosure:
   1. Contactors and control enclosures installed in indoor locations shall be NEMA 1 heavy-duty enclosures unless shown otherwise.
   2. Contactors and control enclosures installed at kitchen and food preparation locations, hose down areas, cooling towers, exterior locations, in greenhouses, and in other corrosive areas shall be NEMA 4X, stainless steel.

F. Minimum interrupting rating shall be 35KAIC.

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS ELECTRICAL CONTROLS**

A. Provide electrically held contactors, with line side wiring complete, in accordance with the National Electrical Code and manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Fuses: Install fuses where coil control power is fed from line side of contactor.

C. Adjustment: Adjust operating mechanisms for free mechanical movement.

D. Coordinate contactor control and operation requirements with the Building Management Control System.

E. Identify each contactor as specified in Section 26 05 00.

F. Contactors shall not be installed above ceiling and shall be readily accessible. Locate contactors in same room as panelboard serving the load unless otherwise indicated.

**3.2 INTERIOR AND EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL**

A. Parking lot lighting, building mounted exterior lighting, and exterior signage shall be controlled by separate lighting contactors by the specified Building Management and Control System. Interior lighting as noted on the plans shall be controlled as noted on the plans and as specified by the Building Management and Control System. Contractor shall circuit all systems to be controlled by the Building Management and Control System through contactors compatible with system controls and shall ensure the control and operation of lighting control system is complete.

B. Provide mechanically held contactors where control is three-wire, momentary control signal.

C. Provide electrically held contactors where control is two-wire, constant control signal for open or close.

D. Provide normally closed contactors for emergency lighting and power circuits where contactors are indicated or required.

E. Provide normally closed contactors for circuits controlled by “emergency power off” or teacher control switches in science classrooms, computer labs, and vocational instructional areas.

F. Provide control contactors and cabling for bi-level or tri-level LED drivers. Bi / tri level control contactors for exterior lighting shall be controlled by the Building Management Control System, with local BMCS manual override for both “ON” and “HIGH” settings. Bi / tri level controls for interior lighting shall be controlled by occupancy sensors and local control switch.

**END OF SECTION 26 09 25**

# SECTION 26 09 44 - LIGHTING CONTROLS

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Lighting control system and components:
   1. Touch panel controls
   2. Low and line voltage wall stations
   3. Power interfaces
   4. Sensors

### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. The lighting control system specified in this section shall provide manual lighting control, sensor-based (both occupancy and daylight control when indicated, specified, or required by AHJ.

B. The system shall be capable of turning lighting and plug loads on/off as well as dimming lights (if lighting load is capable and indicated to be dimmed). Dimmers shall be capable of smooth dimming lights to off.

C. All system devices within a group or controlled area shall be networked together, enabling wired or wireless digital communication between devices within that group.

D. The system architecture shall be stand-alone groups (areas) of devices.

E. The system shall not require any centrally hardwired switching equipment.

F. The system shall be capable of wireless, wired, or hybrid wireless/wired communication architectures. All powered devices shall be wired for power. Battery operation shall not be used unless specifically indicated on the drawings, typically due to existing conditions which prohibit wired power sources.

G. The term “occupancy sensor” shall be interchangeable with the term “vacancy sensor” as the control hardware shall be the same device and be capable of either function.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Specification line-by-line compliance review consisting of a marked-up copy of these specifications with contractor comments. Refer to Submittals specification section for additional instructions.

B. Product Datasheets (general device descriptions, dimensions, electrical specifications, wiring details, nomenclature)

C. Riser Diagrams – typical per room type (detailed drawings showing device interconnectivity of devices)

D. Other Diagrams – as needed for special operation or interaction with other system(s)

E. Example Contractor Startup/Commissioning Worksheet – must be completed prior to factory start-up and commissioning.

F. Hardware Operation Manuals

G. Other operational descriptions as needed.

## 1.4 PROJECT CLOSEOUT DOCUMENTATION

A. Provide a factory published manual
   1. Warranty
   2. Technical support contact
   3. Electronic manual on manufacturer's website for free download

B. Completed Startup/Commissioning Worksheet with Owner's acceptance and date clearly noted.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. All components and the manufacturing facility where product was manufactured must be RoHS compliant.

B. In high humidity or cold environments, the sensors shall be conformably coated and rated for condensing humidity and -40 degrees Fahrenheit (and Celsius) operation.

C. All applicable products must be UL or ETL Listed or other acceptable national testing organization.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Only install equipment after the following site conditions are maintained:
   1. Ambient Temperature 14 to 105 degrees F (-10 to 40 degrees C).
   2. Relative Humidity less than 90% non-condensing.

B. Standard electrical enclosures shall be permanently installed.

C. Equipment shall be protected from dust, debris and moisture.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

A. Five (5) year manufacturer's warranty parts replacement beginning upon completion of Factory Start-up and Commissioning date as noted on the Owner accepted Startup / Commissioning Worksheet.

## 1.8 MAINTENANCE & SUSTAINABILITY

A. Provide new parts, upgrades, and/or replacements available for a minimum of 5 years available to the end user.

B. Provide free telephone technical support.

C. Spare Parts: Provide minimum of 1 unit up to 5% of each hardware device product used, whichever is greater.

# PART 2 – PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
1. Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc.
2. Legrand North America, LLC
3. Eaton Corporation, PLC
4. Douglas Lighting Controls
5. Lutron - Athena
6. US LED

## 2.2 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

A. System shall have an architecture that is based upon three main concepts; 1) intelligent lighting control devices 2) standalone lighting control zones. Intelligent lighting control devices shall consist of one or more basic lighting control components; occupancy sensors, photocell sensors, relays, UL 924 emergency lighting relays, dimming outputs, manual switch stations, manual dimming stations. Combining one or more of these components into a single device enclosure is be permissible so as to minimize overall device count of system.

B. Lighting control zones shall consist of one or more intelligent lighting control components and fully functional in stand-alone operation.

C. Low voltage devices within a lighting control zone shall be capable of being connected with low voltage cabling in any order.

D. Lighting control zone shall be capable of automatically configuring itself for default operation without any start-up labor required.

E. Power for devices within a lighting control zone shall come from either resident devices already present for that zone. Standalone power supplies are not acceptable.

F. All switching and dimming for a specific lighting zone shall take place within the devices located in the zone itself (i.e. not in remotely located devices such as panels) to facilitate system robustness and minimize wiring requirements.

G. Individual lighting zones requiring or indicated with intelligent room controllers shall be capable of being segmented into several local channels of occupancy, photocell, and switch functionality for more advanced configurations and sequences of operation.

H. Operating modes shall be utilized only in manners consistent with local energy codes. Where daylight controls are indicated or required the photocell functions noted below shall be incorporated.

1. Auto-On / Auto-Off (via occupancy sensors)
    a. Zones with occupancy sensors automatically turn lights on when occupant is detected.
    b. Zones with occupancy and/or photocell sensors turn lights off when vacancy or sufficient daylight is detected.
    c. Pressing a switch will turn lights off. The lights will remain off regardless of occupancy until switch is pressed again, restoring the sensor to Automatic On functionality.
2. Manual-On / Auto-Off (also called Semi-Automatic or Vacancy)
    a. Pushing a switch will turn lights on.
    b. Zones with occupancy and/or photocell sensors turn lights off when vacancy or sufficient daylight is detected.
3. Auto On / Predictive Off
    a. Zones with occupancy sensors automatically turn lights on when occupant is detected.
    b. Zones with occupancy and/or photocell sensors turn lights off when vacancy or sufficient daylight is detected.
    c. Pressing the switch will turn the lights off and a short “exit timer” begins. After the timer expires, sensor scans the room to detect whether occupant is still present. If no occupancy is detected, zone returns to auto-on. If occupancy is detected, lights must be turned on via the switch.
4. Auto ON at 50% or less / Auto Off (Occupancy with dimming)
    a. Operating mode designed specifically IECC compliance using occupancy mode for specific areas.
    b. Zones with occupancy sensors automatically turn lights on to maximum 50-percent (adjustable and programmable to 50-perecent max) when occupant is detected.
    c. Pushing a switch will raise or lower light levels.
    d. Zones with occupancy and/or photocell sensors turn lights off when vacancy or dim accordingly when daylight is detected to maintain desired light level.
    e. Pushing a switch will turn lights off.
5. Manual-On to Auto-On/Auto-Off
    a. Pushing a switch will turn lights on.

b. After initial lights on, zones with occupancy and/or photocell sensors turn lights on/off according to occupancy/vacancy and/or daylight conditions.

## 2.3 INDIVIDUAL DEVICE SPECIFICATIONS

A. Occupancy sensors:
1. Occupancy sensors shall sense the presence of human activity within the desired space and fully control the on/off function of the lights.
2. Only passive infrared (PIR) technology, which detects occupant motion, shall be used to initially turn lights on from an off state, thus preventing false on conditions.
3. Dual technology sensors shall be used. Only where ultrasonic or microphonic technology might create a false occupied state, not allowing the lights to automatically turn off shall PIR only be used. Acceptable dual technology includes PIR/Microphonics technology (also known as Passive Dual Technology or PDT) which both looks for occupant motion and listens for sounds indicating occupants or PIR/Ultrasonic technology.
4. Sensors shall include a minimum of one integrated dry contact switching relay, capable of switching 1 amp at 24 VAC/VDC (resistive only) for BAS/BMCS control.
5. Sensors shall be available in multiple lens options which are customized for specific applications.
6. Embedded luminaire sensors shall be capable of both PIR and Dual Technology occupancy detection. Embedded sensors shall have an optional photocell.
7. Ceiling, fixture, recessed, & corner mounted sensors shall be available.
8. Sensors shall have optional features for photocell/daylight override, dimming control, and low temperature/high humidity operation.

B. Daylight (photocell and/or dimming) sensors:
1. Photocell shall provide for an on/off set-point, and a deadband to prevent the artificial light from cycling. Delay shall be incorporated into the photocell to prevent rapid response to passing clouds.
2. Photocell and dimming sensor's set-point and deadband shall be automatically calibrated through the sensor's microprocessor by initiating an "Automatic Set-point Programming" procedure. Min and max dim settings as well as set-point may be manually entered.
3. Deadband setting shall be verified and modified by the sensor automatically every time the lights cycle to accommodate physical changes in the space (i.e., furniture layouts, luminaire depreciation, or luminaire outages).
4. Combination units that have all features of on/off photocell and dimming sensors may be used
5. Luminaire mounted dimming photocells shall be embedded into luminaire such that only the lens shows on luminaire face.

C. Power (Relay) Packs:

1. Power Packs shall incorporate one Class 1 relay, a 0-10 VDC dimming output, and contribute low voltage power to the rest of the system.

2. Power Packs shall accept 120 or 277 VAC, rated for a minimum 16 Amps for any type of lighting load or motor load rated to 1 HP, provide 0-10 VDC dimming control, be plenum rated, and provide Class 2 power to the system.
3. Every Power Pack parameter shall be available and configurable locally.
4. Power Pack shall securely mount to junction location through a threaded ½ inch chase nipple or be capable of being secured within a luminaire ballast channel. Plastic clips into junction box shall not be accepted. All Class 1 wiring shall pass through chase nipple into adjacent junction box without any exposure of wire leads. Note: UL Listing under Energy Management or Industrial Control Equipment automatically meets this requirement, whereas Appliance Control Listing does not meet this safety requirement.
5. When required by local code, Power Pack shall install inside standard electrical enclosure and provide UL recognized support to junction box. All Class 1 wiring is to pass through chase nipple into adjacent junction box without any exposure of wire leads.
6. Secondary Packs shall be available that provide up to 5 Amps of switching and can line voltage dim 120 VAC incandescent/halogen lighting loads.
7. Secondary Packs shall be available that provide up to 5 Amps of switching and can dim line voltage 120/277 VAC magnetic low voltage transformers.
8. Secondary Packs shall be available that provide up to 4 Amps of switching and can dim 120 VAC electronic low voltage transformers.
9. Power/Secondary Packs shall be available that are UL924 listed for switching of Emergency Power circuits and control of 0-10 VDC dimming circuit.
10. Secondary Packs shall be available that control louver/damper motors for skylights.
11. Secondary Packs shall be available that provide a pulse on/pulse off signal for purposes of controlling shade systems via relay inputs.
12. Power (Secondary) Packs shall be available that provide up to 20 Amps switching of general purposed receptacle (plug-load) control.

D. Relay & Dimming Room Controller (Panel)

1. Panel shall incorporate up to 3 normally closed latching relays capable of switching 120/277 VAC or up to 2 Dual Phase relays capable of switching 208/240/480 VAC loads.
2. Relays shall be rated to switch up to a 30A ballast load at 277 VAC.
3. Panel shall provide one 0-10VDC dimming output paired with each relay.
4. Panel shall power itself from an integrated 120/277 VAC supply.
5. Panel shall supply current limited low voltage power to other devices in the same lighting zone.
6. Panel shall provide auxiliary low voltage device power connected wired directly to a dedicated terminal connection.

E. Auxiliary Input / Output (I/O) Devices for enhanced room controls:
1. Devices shall be plenum rated and be inline wired, screw mountable, or have an extended chase nipple for mounting to a ½" knockout.

2. Specific I/O devices shall have a dimming control output that can control 0-10 VDC LED drivers by sinking up to 20 mA of current.
3. Specific I/O devices shall have an input that reads a 0-10 VDC signal from an external device.
4. Specific I/O devices shall have a switch input that can interface with either a maintained or momentary switch and run a switch event (toggle the lighting load) or run a local/remote control profile.
5. Specific I/O devices shall sense state of low voltage outdoor photocells.
6. Specific I/O devices shall enable RS-232 communication between lighting control system and Touch Screen based A/V control systems.
7. Specific I/O devices shall sense momentary and maintained contact closures, and either toggle a connected load after a momentary contact or ramp the load high/low during a maintained contact (stopping when the contact releases).

F. Low Voltage Wall Switches & Dimmers:
1. Devices shall provide toggle on/off switch control.
2. Devices color shall match building standard line voltage wiring device color.
3. Devices with mechanical push-buttons shall provide tactile with LED user feedback.
4. Devices with mechanical push-buttons shall be made available with custom button labeling

G. Graphic Wall Station:
1. Minimum 3.5-inch full color touch screen for selecting up to 16 programmable lighting control preset scenes or acting as up to 16 on/off/dim control switches.
2. Color shall match building standard for line voltage switching.
3. Device shall enable configuration of all switches, dimmers, and lighting preset scenes via password protected setup screens.
4. Device shall enable user supplied .jpg screen saver image to be uploaded.
5. Surface mount to single-gang recessed switch box.
6. Micro-USB style connector for local computer connectivity.

H. Scene Controllers:
1. Two, three, four, or eight buttons for selecting programmable lighting control profiles or acting as on/off switches.
2. Color shall match building standard for line voltage switching.
3. Devices shall provide LED user feedback.
4. Device shall be capable of reprogramming other devices in its zone so as to implement user selected lighting scene.
5. Device shall have LEDs indicating current selection.

## 2.4 START-UP & SUPPORT FEATURES

A. To facilitate start-up, all devices daisy-chained together shall automatically be grouped together into a functional lighting control zone.

B. All lighting control zones shall be able to function according to default settings once adequate power is applied and before any field programming is performed.

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 GENERAL**

A. Provide the quantity of sensors required for complete and proper coverage to completely cover the controlled areas. Contractor shall verify room coverage and ceiling heights with manufacturer and provide the quantity and type of occupancy sensors as required. Rooms shall have one hundred (100) percent coverage of small motion detection to completely cover the controlled areas to accommodate all occupancy habits of single or multiple occupants at any location within the room(s). The locations and quantities of sensors shown on the drawings are diagrammatic and indicate only rooms that are to be provided with sensors. Proper judgment must be exercised in executing the work so as to ensure the best possible installation in the available space and to overcome local difficulties due to space limitations or interference of structural components, architectural components, or Owner installed equipment which may cause obstructions to sensor coverage.

B. Provide ceiling mounted sensors. Wall mounted sensors shall only be used where ceiling mounted sensors are proven by the manufacturer to be impractical, or if specifically indicated on the drawings.

C. For ceilings up to 12-feet AFF, control equipment shall be mounted above an accessible ceiling. Control equipment shall be wall mounted on 24x24-inch fire resistive 0.75-inch thick plywood back board mounted to the wall above the ceiling. Do not paint fire resistive plywood or obliterate the fire resistive labeling. Locate the control equipment directly above the space/area main entry wall switch station, observing good installation practice and shall be consistent throughout the project. Where the ceiling is over 12-feet, the control equipment shall be located in an adjoining ancillary room/area where the ceiling is 12-feet AFF or lower, typically adjacent to the ancillary room/area above ceiling control equipment location, verify exact location with Owner.

D. Control units used for the security or fire systems shall be powered from the emergency power source as indicated on the drawings. Other control units shall be powered from the lighting circuit, which they control.

E. Refer to other specification sections for line voltage wiring device requirements, including momentary on/off toggle switches used with low voltage sensors.

**3.2 INSTALLATION**

A. Use lighting control wiring with jacket color that matches Owner’s cable color standards.

B. Install the work of this Section in accordance with manufacturer’s printed instructions unless otherwise indicated.

C. The installing electrical contractor shall complete, prior to request of factory start up and site commissioning, complete installation of all devices, their respective loads landed and confirmed operations, switches installed, and confirmed operational.

D. The installing contractor shall, prior to request of factory start up and site commissioning, request an on-site meeting by including the manufacture's local authorized representative, the Owner and the general contractor, to assist in identification of any open-ended issues, thereby eliminating potential for delays and system commission interruptions.

E. Upon confirmation of progress by local factory representative, the installing electrical contractor shall complete the manufacture's start up request form(s), including any field changes from the contract documents.

F. The installing electrical contractor shall provide a preliminary as-built drawing prior to commissioning to the manufacturer's representative. Drawing shall include all wire routing, room by room device ID's and locations of all lighting control devices.

G. Install sensors in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, requirements of NEC, and in accordance with industry practices. Do not install devices until wall construction and wiring is completed.

H. Install sensors and switches only in electrical boxes that are clean, free from excess building materials, debris, and similar matter.

I. Install sensors plumb and aligned in the plane of the wall, or ceiling in where they are installed.

J. Install wall occupancy sensor switches in boxes on the strike side of doors as hung. Where more than one switch is in the same location, install switches in a multi gang box with a single cover plate.

K. Provide a cover plate for every switch. Refer to Architectural drawing, elevations, etc. for exact location of wall switches where indicated on the Architectural plans. Coordinate location of all wall switches with other specialty items and millwork and avoid conflicts. Coordinate with all trades to avoid conflicts during construction. Mounting heights of all switches shall comply with current Accessibility Standards and local codes.

L. Unless indicated otherwise, circuit relays/switchpacks ahead of local control switches. Source –> relay/switchpack –> local toggle switch(s).

M. Coordinate with BMCS/BAS Contractor for interface of BMCS/BAS System and wiring connections.

N. Low voltage cabling installed above ceiling shall be supported every 5 feet at a minimum height of 3 feet above grid/ceiling but no closer than six inches below deck. Support

system shall be ceiling wire attached to structure and clipped to ceiling support grid using Caddy drop wire securing clip #EC311. Cabling shall hang plumb to devices.

## 3.3 SENSOR TESTING AND ADJUSTMENT

A. At the time of installation, the contractor shall test and adjust each sensor for proper detection of motion appropriate to room usage. The contractor shall follow the testing and adjustment procedures as written in the manufacturer's installation instructions for each sensor model. Relocate sensors as needed for proper coverage.

B. Prior to testing and adjusting, verify with Owner/Architect the initial settings for each type of area based on its intended function and use.

C. Verify with Owner all adjustable functions of each type of occupancy sensor prior to installation. Set all adjustable functions of each type of occupancy sensor as directed by Owner. Initial settings unless directed by Owner / Architect (some settings may not apply to all sensors):
   1. Time delay = 10-miniutes
   2. Zero Time Delay = OFF
   3. Auto-On = OFF
   4. Manual-On = ON
   5. Self-Adjust = OFF
   6. Disable Self-Adjust = OFF
   7. Energy Saver (Dual Level) = ON
   8. Manual Override = OFF

D. Bi-level occupancy wall switches shall be initially set with the energy saver feature enabled.

E. Before energizing, check for continuity of circuits, short circuits, and grounding connections. After energizing, check devices to demonstrate proper operation.

F. Operate each wall switch with circuit energized and verify proper operation

## 3.4 FACTORY COMMISSIONING

A. Upon completion of the installation, the system shall be commissioned by the manufacturer's factory authorized representative who will verify a complete fully functional system.

B. The factory commissioning shall include the following services. Programming of all button stations, configuration and of all occupancy sensors and photocells.

C. Provide written or computer-generated documentation on the commissioning of the system including room by room description including:
   1. Sensor parameters, time delays, sensitivities, and daylighting set points.
   2. Sequence of operation, (e.g. manual ON, Auto OFF. etc.)

3. Load Parameters

D. The electrical contractor shall provide in writing to the manufacturer, General Contractor, Architect, and the Owner with 21 Owner's business days' written notice of the requested system startup and adjustment date.

E. The electrical contractor shall provide at least (1) journeyman electrician familiar with the installation of the system dedicated to assisting the factory start-up technician for the entire duration of the commissioning process.

F. Upon completion of the system commissioning the factory-authorized technician shall provide the proper training to the Owner's personnel on the adjustment and maintenance of the system.

G. Re-commissioning – After 90 days from full certificate of occupancy, re-calibrate all sensor time delays and sensitivities to meet the Owner's Project Requirements. Provide a detailed report to the Architect / Owner of re-commissioning activity.

**END OF SECTION 26 09 44**

# SECTION 26 12 17 - ULTRA HIGH EFFICIENCY K-RATED TRANSFORMERS

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Copper-wound three-phase transformer exceeding US Department of Energy 2016 Efficiency Standards, with extremely low no load losses.
   1. Transformers shall be designed to an efficiency standard higher than NEMA Premium.

B. Load Mix: Transformer shall be UL 1561 Listed to feed a mix of equipment load profiles such as computers without derating or significant degradation of efficiency.

### 1.2 REFERENCES

A. FEDERAL REGISTER – US Department of Energy, Office of Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy. 10 CFR Part 431. Energy Conservation Program for Commercial and Industrial Equipment: Energy Conservation Standards for Distribution Transformers; 2016 Standards

B. DOE Test Method For Measuring The Energy Consumption Of Distribution Transformers Under Appendix A To Subpart K Of 10 CFR Part 431.

C. Metering Standards:
   1. Computational algorithms per IEEE Std 1459-2000
   2. UL 916, UL 61010C-1 CAT III

D. IEEE-1100 – Recommended Practice for Powering and Grounding Sensitive Electronic Equipment
   1. IEEE Standard 1100 documents how typical transformers feeding electronic equipment produce substantially higher losses under electronic equipment load compared to under linear load, requiring derating.

E. LEED – Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design, U.S. Green Building Council.

F. ISO 9000:2000 – International Standards Organization - Quality Management System

G. ISO 14000:2004 – International Standards Organization - Environmental Management System

H. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code (Latest Edition)

I. NEMA ST20-2014 - Dry-Type Transformers for General Applications

J. NETA ATS - Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Distribution Equipment

K. US Department of Energy, 10 CFR Part 431, 2015. Energy Conservation Program: Energy Conservation Standards for Distribution Transformers; Final Rule.

L. IEEE C57.110-2008 – IEEE Recommended Practice for establishing transformer capability when feeding non-sinusoidal load currents.

M. ISO 17025 – International Standards Organization - General requirements for the competence of testing and calibration laboratories.

N. UL 1561 - Dry-Type General Purpose and Power Transformers.

**1.3 SUBMITTALS**

A. Submit product data including the following:
1. Copy of ISO 14001:2004 Certification of manufacturing operation.
2. Copy of ISO 9001:2000 Certification of manufacturing operation.
3. Construction Details including enclosure dimensions, kVA rating, primary & secondary nominal voltages, voltage taps, BIL, unit weight
4. Basic Performance characteristics including insulation class, temperature rise, core and coil materials, impedances & audible noise level, unit weight
5. Inrush Current (typical 3 cycle recovery)
6. Short Circuit Current data: Primary (Sym. O/P S/C) & Secondary (L-N/G S/C)
7. Efficiency Data
    a. No load and full load losses per NEMA ST20
    b. Linear load Efficiency data @ 1/6 load
    c. Linear load efficiency data @ 1/4, 1/2, 3/4 & full load
    d. Linear Load Efficiency @ 35% loading tested per NEMA TP-2.
    e. Efficiency under specified K rating load profile at 15%, 25%, 50%, 75%, 100% of nameplate rating.
8. Copy of Factory ISO 9001 documentation describing nonlinear load test program
    a. Meter and CT details including model, accuracy, serial numbers and calibration information.
9. Copy of Linear & Nonlinear load test report for a representative 75kVA transformer
10. 25 year Product Warranty Certificate

B. Description of manufacturer's factory nonlinear load test program.
1. In light of the significant degradation of transformer performance when feeding nonlinear load compared to linear load, it is mandatory that the manufacturer test the transformers under nonlinear load representative of real world load mix. Transformers that have not been subject to testing under nonlinear load will not be considered for this project due to the uncertainty related to their real world performance.
2. Given the lack of a standard for testing transformers under nonlinear load, the manufacturer must have a nonlinear Load Test Program operating in the production environment that is audited and documented per quality standard ISO 9001.
3. The nonlinear load bank shall consist of a phase-neutral loading with a specified K rating load profile, representative of a mix of typical commercial equipment.
4. Meters and CTs shall both be revenue class accurate. CTs shall be operated within their approved accuracy loading range. Dual meters shall gather simultaneous primary and secondary energy and harmonic data. Meter

and CT details including model, accuracy, serial numbers and calibration information.

5. Efficiency: Measurements shall be taken at multiple load levels and plotted to show compliance with specification and correlation to the designed efficiency curve.
6. Efficiency shall be determined purely by measurements using method and instrumentation per NEMA TP-2 Standard. Other methods are not acceptable.
7. Harmonic data including current and Voltage THD at the different load levels shall be included with the test report.

**1.4 SPECIFICATION COMPLIANCE REVIEW**

A. Mark up a complete copy of the specification section for the product to indicate a) acknowledgement of the specification requirement (Comply), or b) acknowledgement that the particular specification requirement does not apply to this specific project (Not Applicable) or, c) acknowledgement that the specification requirement cannot be made or that a variance is being submitted for review to the Architect/Engineer/Owner (Does Not Comply, Explanation:) Do not submit an outline form of compliance, submit a comlete copy with the product data.

**1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING**

A. Store and protect products

B. Store in a warm, dry location with uniform temperature. Cover ventilation openings to keep out dust, water and other foreign material.

C. Handle transformers using lifting eyes and/or brackets provided for that purpose. Protect against unfavorable external environment such as rain and snow, during handling.

**1.6 WARRANTY**

A. Transformer shall carry a 25-year pro-rated warranty, which shall be standard for the product line.

**1.7 INTERNATIONAL STANDARDS ORGANIZATION REGISTRATION OF MANUFACTURING PLANT**

A. Registration to current ISO standard is required.

B. Independent annual audits are conducted.

C. Product shall be manufactured in registered facility

D. ISO 9001:2000 Registered – Quality Management System
E. ISO 14001:2004 Registered – Environmental Management System
   1. Transformer manufacturing can produce significant emissions of volatile compounds and significant other waste. To minimize environmental impact, the transformer must the product of a manufacturing process that has been

independently audited to comply with the ISO 14001:2004 Environmental Management System Standard, where strict quality control of raw material sourcing and construction techniques maximize product efficiency and minimize emissions and waste byproducts.

2. ISO 14001:2004 ensures that a facility has had an independent environmental impact assessment of raw material sourcing and all manufacturing processes, and has implemented an independent annually audited program that minimizes environmental impact during manufacturing process and includes a strictly monitored continuous improvement program.

**PART 2 – PRODUCTS**

**2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS/PRODUCT**

A. Powersmiths E-Saver OPAL

B. Power Quality International (EY e-Rated)

C. Mirus - ULLTRA

**2.2 TRANSFORMER SPECIFICATION**

A. Minimum UL Listed and Labeled K-Rating: K7

B. Copper-wound, 3-phase, common core, ventilated, dry-type, isolation transformer built to NEMA ST20 and relevant NEMA, UL and IEEE standards; 200% rated neutral; 60Hz rated; Transformers 750 kVA and less, 600 volt primary and less, shall be UL Listed and bear the label. All terminals, including those for changing taps, must be readily accessible by removing a front cover plate. Windings shall be continuous with terminations brazed or welded. 10kV BIL.

C. Insulation System:
   1. Shall be NOMEX-based with an Epoxy Co-polymer impregnate for lowest environmental impact, long term reliability and long life expectancy
      a. Class: 220 degrees C
      b. Impregnate Properties for low emissions during manufacturing, highest reliability and life expectancy
      c. Epoxy co-polymer
      d. VOC: less than 1.65 lbs/gal (low emissions during manufacturing)
      e. Water absorption (24hrs @25C): less than 0.05% (superior insulation, longer life)
      f. Chemical Resistance: Must have documented excellent performance rating by supplier
      g. Dielectric Strength: minimum of 3200 volts/mil dry (for superior stress, overvoltage tolerance)
      h. Dissipation Factor: max. 0.02 @25C to reduce aging of insulation, extending useful life

D. Operating Temperature Rise: Maximum 115 degree C in a 40 degree C maximum ambient

E. Noise levels:
   1. 3dB Below NEMA ST-20
   2. Production Test every unit. Data to be available upon request.

F. Exceed minimum efficiency requirements of US Department of Energy, 10 CFR Part 431, April 18, 2013, Energy Conservation Program: Energy Conservation Standards for Distribution Transformers: Final Rule which takes effect January 1, 2016, and comply with the table of maximum no Load Loses, efficiency requirements at 1/6 load, efficiency at 35% load per 10 CFR Part 431, and efficiency at 25% load under the transformer specified K-rating load profile.

G. Maximum losses and minimum efficiency under linear load conditions per Table 1.

**Table 1**
Max and Min Values for Losses and Efficiency for "High Efficiency" Transformers
Under K1 Linear and Specified K-Rating Nonlinear Loading

| kVA Rating | No Load | 16.5% Load | | | | 25% Load | | | | 35% Load | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | K1 Linear | | Nonlinear | | Linear | | Nonlinear | | K1 Linear | | Nonlinear | |
| | Max Loss (kW) | Max Loss (kW) | Min Eff. (%) | Max Loss (kW) | Min Eff. (%) | Max Loss (kW) | Min Eff. (%) | Max Loss (kW) | Min Eff. (%) | Max Loss (kW) | Min Eff. (%) | Max Loss (kW) | Min Eff. (%) |
| 15 | 0.054 | 0.066 | 97.38 | 0.067 | 97.36 | 0.082 | 97.86 | 0.085 | 97.78 | 0.109 | 97.97 | 0.117 | 97.82 |
| 30 | 0.091 | 0.112 | 97.79 | 0.113 | 97.77 | 0.138 | 98.19 | 0.144 | 98.12 | 0.183 | 98.29 | 0.200 | 98.13 |
| 45 | 0.124 | 0.152 | 98.00 | 0.154 | 97.97 | 0.187 | 98.36 | 0.197 | 98.28 | 0.248 | 98.45 | 0.276 | 98.28 |
| 75 | 0.181 | 0.221 | 98.24 | 0.225 | 98.22 | 0.273 | 98.56 | 0.288 | 98.49 | 0.362 | 98.64 | 0.404 | 98.48 |
| 112.5 | 0.245 | 0.300 | 98.41 | 0.305 | 98.38 | 0.370 | 98.70 | 0.393 | 98.62 | 0.490 | 98.77 | 0.555 | 98.61 |
| 150 | 0.303 | 0.370 | 98.53 | 0.377 | 98.50 | 0.457 | 98.80 | 0.486 | 98.72 | 0.605 | 98.86 | 0.688 | 98.71 |
| 225 | 0.410 | 0.501 | 98.67 | 0.510 | 98.64 | 0.619 | 98.91 | 0.659 | 98.84 | 0.820 | 98.97 | 0.937 | 98.82 |
| 300 | 0.509 | 0.622 | 98.76 | 0.636 | 98.73 | 0.769 | 98.99 | 0.829 | 98.91 | 1.018 | 99.04 | 1.194 | 98.88 |
| 500 | 0.741 | 0.906 | 98.91 | 0.928 | 98.89 | 1.119 | 99.11 | 1.213 | 99.04 | 1.482 | 99.16 | 1.754 | 99.01 |

H. Voltage Taps: For transformers 30kVA-300kVA, provide two 2-1/2% full capacity taps above and below nominal primary voltage. For transformers 15kVA and smaller as well as 500kVA and larger provide one 5% full capacity tap above and below nominal primary voltage.

I. Impedance: Between 3.0% and 6.0% unless otherwise noted.

J. Enclosure type: Ventilated NEMA 2; NEMA 3RX aluminum or stainless steel when located outdoors, or as indicated otherwise

K. Finish Color: Provide light gray ANSI-61 paint finish for transformers located outdoors. Provide manufacturer's standard paint finish color indoors.

L. Transformer Options:
   1. Electrostatic Shield: Each winding is independently single shielded with a full-width copper electrostatic shield

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. General: Install transformers where shown, in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions and industry practices to ensure that the transformers meet the specifications. Comply with requirements of NEMA and NEC standards, and applicable portions of NECA Standard of Installation, for installation of transformers. Transformers shall be floor mounted. Ceiling mounted transformers are not acceptable.

B. Dry-Type Transformer Mounting: Indoor, floor mount transformer on properly sized Amber/Booth Type RVD rubber-in-shear vibration isolators. Transformer enclosures shall make no contact with wall surfaces.

C. Conduit directly connected to transformer enclosures shall be flexible liquid tight conduit extending for a minimum of 18-inches and a maximum of 24 inches from transformer enclosure as measured along the conduit centerline. Include a ground wire, size in accordance with NEC, internal in each length of flexible conduit.

D. Grounding: Ground and bond transformers as a separately derived system unless noted otherwise, refer to NEC 250. Installation of bonding strap or bonding conductor between ground and neutral bus shall be witnessed by the Engineer prior to applying power and terminating secondary conductors.

E. Check for damage and loose connections.

F.

G. Set the transformer plumb and level.

H. Provide Seismic restraints where required.

I. Coordinate all work in this Section with that in other sections.

J. Verify all dimensions in the field.

K. Adjust transformer secondary voltages to provide the required voltage at the loads.

**3.2 TESTING**

A. Insulation Tests: Before energizing, check transformer windings for continuity.

B. Winding Current: During initial no-load energizing, check current in each primary winding.

C. Tap Settings: Measure and record load current and voltage of transformers while loaded to verify proper transformer tap settings.

D. Submittals: Furnish instruments and personnel required for tests. Submit four copies of certified test results to Engineer for review. Reports include transformer tested, date and time of tests, relative humidity, temperature, and weather conditions.

E. Performance Validation: To ensure that the products shipped to the job site meet this specification, provide on-site revenue class accurate efficiency and harmonic measurements of transformers once installed and operating at customer's site. Data shall be collected from primary and secondary sides of the transformer simultaneously on a synchronized cycle by cycle basis. The use of two discrete meters that are not synchronized is not acceptable. Sampling shall be of 10% of transformers on the project once installed and operating, as selected by customer. Submit a detailed report to the project engineer.

F. Identify non-compliant products to the engineer and replace at no cost to the Owner.

G. Notification: Notify Engineer in writing of any deviation from manufacturer's pre-shipment test data.

**END OF SECTION 26 12 17**

# SECTION 26 19 13 - COMBINATION MOTOR CONTROLLERS

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Motor controller work as required, scheduled and specified.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Schneider Electric - Square D

B. ABB-General Electric Co.

### 2.2 MOTOR CONTROLLERS

A. General: Combination motor controllers shall consist of an integrally mounted, thermal magnetic or magnetic only circuit breaker disconnect or fused disconnect switch as specified in Section 26 24 25. Magnetic, full voltage non-reversing (FVNR) or two speed controller as required, in a heavy duty type, dead front enclosure, surface-mounted; size and number of poles as required. Controllers shall be constructed and tested in accordance with NEMA Standards. Refer to Division 23 for Variable Frequency Inverter furnished by Division 23, installed by Division 26. Minimum controller size shall be NEMA Size 1.

B. Contacts: Magnetic controller contacts shall be silver alloy, and not require any filing, dressing, or cleaning for the life of the controller.

C. Operating Coils: Operating coils shall be 120V, pressure molded and designed so that accidental exposure to excessive voltage up to 480V will not damage the coil. Design controller so that when a coil fails due to over voltage, the controller shall open, and not freeze in the closed position.

D. Overload Relays: Controllers shall have manual-reset, trip-free, solid state, overload relays in each phase conductor. Three phase FVNR controllers shall have three overload relays. Single-phase FVNR controllers shall have an overload relay in each ungrounded conductor. Two speed, full-voltage magnetic controllers shall have overload relays for all six ungrounded conductors. Overload relays shall not be field-convertible from manual to automatic reset. Provide reset button located in front cover to reset all overload relays.

E. LED Pilot Lights: Provide 30.5mm run and stop pilot lights for all motor controllers. Furnish additional pilot lights for motor controllers as shown. Provide FAST and SLOW pilot lights for two-speed controllers. Pilot lights shall be mounted in the controller enclosure cover. Pilot lights shall be operated from an interlock on the motor controllers, and not be wired across the operating coil.

Green - Stop

Red - Run
Yellow - Slow
Blue - Fast

F. Controls: Controllers shall have 30.5mm HAND-OFF-AUTOMATIC switches. Provide for FAST-SLOW, REMOTE-LOCAL speed selection from HVAC control system for two-speed controllers. Two-speed controllers shall have deceleration relays between fast and slow speeds. Coordinate motor controller controls with the requirements of Division 23. Motor controller controls shall be mounted in the controller enclosure cover. Control switches shall be un-keyed rotary switches.

G. Control Power: A single phase control power transformer shall be included with each controller for 120V control power. The primary shall be connected to the line side of the motor controller through two fuses; the secondary shall have one leg fused and one leg grounded. Arrange transformer terminals so that wiring to terminals is not located above the transformer.

H. Auxiliary Contacts: Each controller shall have two normally open and two normally closed nonconvertible auxiliary contact in addition to the number of contacts required for the holding interlock and control wiring. One or more additional auxiliary contacts can be field installed without removing existing wiring, or removing the controller from its enclosure.

I. Phase Failure Monitors: Provide a 3-phase failure monitor for each motor controller. Monitor on any or all phases, for phase reversal from A-B-C sequence, under/over voltage, and phase failure. Provide adjustable relay for trip range. Provide automatic reset upon restoration of power to all phases. Where solid state overload relays provide this specified requirement, separate phase failure relays may be omitted.

J. Unit Wiring: Unit shall be completely pre-wired to terminals to eliminate any interior field wiring except for: connection of power supply conductors to switch line side terminals; motor leads to the controller load side terminals; and control conductors to holding coil terminals.

K. Enclosure:
1. Motor Controllers installed in indoor locations shall be NEMA 1 heavy duty enclosures unless shown otherwise.
2. Motor Controllers installed at kitchen and food preparation locations, hose down areas, cooling towers, exterior locations, and in other corrosive areas shall be NEMA 4X, Type 316 stainless steel.

L. Minimum interrupting rating shall be 35KAIC.

## 2.3 MANUAL MOTOR CONTROLLERS

A. General: Manual motor controllers shall consist of an integral controller and overload protection in a common enclosure, surface mounted. Size and number of poles shall be as shown and required with pilot light.

B. Manual Motor Controller: Manual motor controller with overload protection, 1 HP maximum, 115 or 230V.

C. Enclosures:
   1. Manual motor controllers installed in indoor locations shall be NEMA 1 heavy duty enclosures unless shown otherwise.
   2. Manual motor controllers installed at kitchen and food preparation locations, hose down areas, cooling towers, exterior locations, and in other corrosive areas shall be NEMA 4X, Type 316 stainless steel.

D. Disconnect Switch: For self-protected motors where one pole toggle motor control switch is allowed, the switch shall be horsepower rated and as specified for toggle switches in Section 26 27 73.

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION OF MOTOR CONTROLLERS**

A. General: Install combination motor controllers where required or indicated and in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions, requirements of the NEC and NECA Standard of Installation, and industry practices. Do not install motor controllers above ceilings. Do not install motor controllers on roofs.

B. Overloads: Install overload relays with manual reset in each phase of motor controller. Overload adjustable settings shall be based on actual motor nameplate full load amps. Field verify nameplate full load amps and adjust all relay settings accordingly.
   1. Set overcurrent at motor service factor x motor nameplate FLA
   2. Set high voltage trip to 8.3 percent above nominal voltage
   3. Set undercurrent trip to four automatic restarts
   4. Set all other trips to zero auto restarts
   5. Phase Failure Relay: Adjust phase failure relay to 10 percent over voltage and 10 percent under voltage.

C. Coordination: Motor controllers shall be provided to coordinate with motors furnished by Division 23. Motor controller controls shall be provided to coordinate with controls specified in Division 23.

D. Supports: Provide individual and combination motor controllers with galvanized angle or other suitable supports if mounting on wall or other rigid surface is impractical. Controllers shall not be supported by conduit alone. Where motor controllers are mounted on equipment served, the switch shall not inhibit removal of any service panels or interfere with any required access areas. Manual motor controllers shall be installed plumb and aligned in the plane of the wall where they are installed.

E. Identify each motor controller as specified in Section 26 05 00.

F. Where motor controllers are indicated to be installed as part of a Motor Control Center, refer to the Motor Control Center specification.

## 3.2 TESTING

A. Provide the field services of the manufacturer to provide initial programming of all variable functions, start-up and commissioning of each motor controller.

B. Pre-Energization Check: Check motor controllers for continuous circuits and short circuits.

C. Post Hook-Up Test: After wire and cable hook-ups, energize motor controller to show it functions as specified.

D. Provide thermal infrared scan of the combination motor controllers rated 200 Amps or larger under full load prior to testing / maintenance and modifications and of the modified and new switchboard sections after construction as directed and witnessed by Owner. Make corrections as needed as soon as possible as directed by the Owner. Repeat the scan at the 11-month prior to closeout, and make corrections prior to closeout. Provide digital video documentation with test results for comparison between prior condition and post construction modifications and future tests.

**END OF SECTION 26 19 13**

# SECTION 26 24 14 - TESTING, MAINTENANCE, AND MODIFICATIONS TO EXISTING SWITCHBOARDS

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Work Included: Switchboard work to existing switchboards 600 volts or less as shown, scheduled, indicated, and specified.

B. Types: Switchboard work for the project includes power distribution switchboards.

### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Original Manufacturer’s Installation and Maintenance Instructions

B. NEMA Compliance: Comply with National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) Standard PB2, "Dead-Front Distribution Switchboards."

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Indicate Original Manufacturer’s Installation and Maintenance Instructions for testing, exercising, cleaning, and lubrication where available.

B. Include electrical characteristics including voltage, frame size and trip ratings, withstand ratings, and time current curves of all new equipment and components.

C. Original Manufacturer’s Inspection Report

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Replacement parts shall be manufactured by Original Equipment Manufacturer, (OEM) when available. When OEM parts are not available, third party, UL recognized, manufactured parts shall be used. Provide written confirmation on Manufacturer’s letterhead indicating OEM parts are not available.

### 2.2 MATERIALS AND COMPONENTS

A. Except as otherwise indicated, provide switchboard manufacturer's standard materials and components as indicated by published product information, designed and constructed as recommended, and as required for a complete installation.

### 2.3 DEAD-FRONT DISTRIBUTION SWITCHBOARDS-NEW SWITCHBOARD SECTIONS AND/OR

**ACCESSORIES**

A. New Indicating Instruments where indicated: Switchboard instrumentation shall be digital display, panel mounted, rated for 120V, 60 hertz. The display unit shall be UL listed in accordance with UL 508. The electronic metering device shall have the following features:

1. Voltmeter, phase to phase and phase to ground or neutral.
2. Current, per phase RMS and 3 phase coverage.
3. Demand current per phase.
4. Power factor per phase and 3 phase average.
5. Real power, 3 phase total.
6. Reactive power, 3 phase total.
7. Apparent power, 3 phase total.
8. Frequency.
9. Average demand real power.
10. Adjustable demand interval (5 to 60 minutes).
11. Nonvolatile memory.
12. Password protected set-up and reset.
13. 3 current transformers with primary to match bus size and 5 ampere secondary with metering class accuracy.
14. Full scale readouts with the following accuracy:
    a. Current and voltage measurement +/-0.1%
    b. Power and energy +/-0.2%
    c. Frequency +/-0.5%
    d. Power Factor +/-1.0%
    e. Data update time 0.5 seconds(4 wire)
15. Metering Output.
    a. Pulse output based on kWh, kvarh, or kVAh.
    b. Analog output 4-20mA based on kWh, kvarh, or kVAh.
16. Monitoring:
    a. Harmonic analysis through 63rd with THD and TIF.
    b. Event recorder.
    c. Waveform capture.
    d. Data logger.
    e. Triggered trace memory.
17. Communication:
    a. Front port and dual rear mounted RS485 ports.
    b. BACnet protocol (coordinate with BMCS contractor).
    c. Mini RTU: digital 4 in/4 out.
    d. Analog 1 in/4 out.
    e. Local/remote display of all values.
18. Software:
    a. Windows based software shall be provided to enable setpoint programming.

B. New Feeder and Branch Protective Devices where indicated or required, greater than

1,200 Amps shall be individually mounted:

1. Molded case circuit breakers:
    a. Adjustable: current, $I^2t$ settings, ground fault (where required), instantaneous trip, and short time trip. Solid state trip true RMS sensing, without fusible elements; 100-percent continuous current rating.
    b. Energy Reducing Maintenance System switch with local status indicator (ERMS).
    c. Shunt trip capability and wiring to terminal block for remote shunt trip switch wiring termination weather remote trip device is indicated or not.
2. Fusible switches:
    a. Each switch shall have an individual door over the front, equipped with a voidable interlock that prevents the door from being opened when the switch is in the ON position unless the interlock is purposely defeated by activation of the voiding mechanism. All switches shall have externally operated handles.
    b. Fused switches 600 Amps and below, equipped for class J fuses.
    c. Fused switches 601 Amps and above shall be equipped with Class R or L rejection type fuse holders. Class RK1 or L of ampere rating and type as indicated on the plans suitable for application of the system.
    d. When required by the latest edition of the NEC or the AHJ, 1,200 Amp switches regardless of fuse size installed shall have Energy Reducing Maintenance System switch with local status indicator (ERMS).

C. Feeder and Branch Protective Devices 1,200 Amps and below where indicated or required shall be group mounted:

1. Molded case circuit breakers:
    a. Greater than 250 Amp: Solid state true RMS sensing with adjustable: current, $I^2t$ settings, ground fault (where required), instantaneous trip, and short time trip; 80-percent continuous current rating.
    b. 250 Amp and smaller: Solid state true RMS sensing with fixed current setting by rating plug or dial. Breaker shall have adjustable instantaneous trip function with short time tracking.
    c. 1,200 Amp frame circuit breakers regardless of trip shall have Energy Reducing Maintenance System switch with local status indicator (ERMS).
2. Fusible switches:
    a. Quick-make, quick-break units utilizing the double-break principle of circuit interrupting to minimize arcing and pitting and shall conform to the ratings shown.
    b. Individual door over the front, equipped with a voidable interlock that prevents the door from being opened when the switch is in the ON position unless the interlock is purposely defeated by activation of the voiding mechanism. All switches shall have externally operated handles.
    c. 600 Amps and below equipped for Class J fuses.
    d. 601 Amps and above shall be equipped for Class R or L rejection type fuse holders.

e. When required by the latest edition of the NEC or the AHJ, 1,200 Amp fused switches regardless of fuse size installed shall have Energy Reducing Maintenance System switch with local status indicator (ERMS).

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION, MAINTENANCE, AND MODIFICATION OF SWITCHBOARDS**

A. Comply with the requirements of NEMA and NEC, and NECA Standard of Installation, for installation of switchboards. Comply with Original Manufacture's Operation and Maintenance Instructions for testing and periodic maintenance.

C. Torque all existing and new bus connections and tighten mechanical fasteners to manufacturer's specifications.

D. Install fuses, of ratings shown, in each new or modified fused switch.

E. Adjustment: Adjust operating mechanisms for free mechanical movement. Adjust circuit breaker time characteristic curves as directed by the OEM for coordination with downstream overcurrent devices.

F. Existing Indicating Instruments: Test and calibrate to original manufacturer's specifications. Replace batteries in existing digital instruments where batteries are required. Replace defective indicating instruments with new digital instruments. Provide new digital indicating instruments where indicated on the drawings.

G. Cleaning: Vacuum the interior of the existing switchboard enclosures of all dust and foreign matter. Clean all existing switch contacts according to manufacturer's instructions.

H. Lubrication: Lubricate all existing exposed switch contacts, pivot points and bearings according to manufacturer's instructions.

I. Remove any existing circuit breakers or fusible switches that are not functional or not suitable to be reused as "spares".

J. Provide filler plates where required.

K. Existing switchboards which indicate rust or corrosion shall be repainted; paint indoor switchboards with ALKYD enamel coat, and outdoor switchboards with epoxy enamel coat to match existing color. Do not paint over labels or listings.

L. Mimic bus: Update the existing mimic bus or provide new mimic bus to indicate busing, connections, and devices in single line form on the front panels of the switchboard using red colored plastic strips or match exiting material and color format, fastened flat against the panel face with screws.

**3.2 TESTING**

A. Provide the services of the Original Manufacturer's Field Services personnel for initial testing at no additional cost to the Owner. The Original Manufacturer's Field Services personnel shall provide at minimum, a visual inspection of the existing switchboards and shall provide a written report on the Original Manufacturer's letter head with recommendations regarding the existing condition and recommendations to further testing, maintenance, and in regard to the specified modifications of the existing switchboard. The report shall include any deficiencies of the existing switchboard in relation to each component's intended function. In addition, provide deficiencies of the existing switchboard with regard to the current National Electrical Code. Provide the written report to the Architect within 14 days of notice to proceed and prior to any demolition or construction. All other testing, maintenance, and modifications shall be provided by the Contractor as specified at no additional cost to the Owner.

B. Pre-Energization Checks: Before energizing, check switchboards for continuous of circuits and for short circuits. Test existing Bolted Pressure Switches according to Original Manufacture's Instructions.

C. Switchboard Insulation Resistance Test: Each switchboard bus shall be insulation resistance tested after installation and modification is complete except for line and load side connections. Tests shall be made using Biddle Megger or equivalent test instrument at a voltage of not less than 1000 vDC. Resistance shall be measured from phase-to-phase and from phase-to-ground. Minimum acceptable value for insulation resistance is 2 megohms.

D. Ground Fault Protection System Test: After completion of construction and before final acceptance testing, the ground fault protection system shall be field-tested and reset to the manufacturer's settings for both current and time by a representative of the manufacturer's engineering service department. After the test, set ground fault to 50 percent of the largest overcurrent device rating in the switchboard. Ground fault setting shall not exceed 1200 amperes.

E. Provide thermal infrared scan of the existing switchboard under full load prior to testing/maintenance and modifications and of the modified and new switchboard sections after construction as directed and witnessed by Owner. Make corrections as needed as soon as possible as directed by the Owner. Repeat the scan at the 11-month prior to closeout, and make corrections prior to close-out. Provide digital video documentation with test results for comparison between prior condition and post construction modifications and future tests.

F. Submittals: Furnish instruments and personnel required for tests. Submit 4 copies of certified test results to the Architect for review. Test reports shall include switchboard tested, date and time of test, relative humidity, temperature, and weather conditions.

**END OF SECTION 26 24 14**

# SECTION 26 24 16 - PANELBOARDS AND ENCLOSURES

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Panelboards and enclosures, including cabinet, as shown, scheduled, indicated, and specified.

### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. UL Standards: Panelboards and enclosures shall confirm to all applicable UL standards and shall be UL labeled.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Schneider Electric - Square D

B. ABB-General Electric Co.

### 2.2 MATERIALS AND COMPONENTS

A. General: Panelboards shall be dead-front type equipped with fusible switches or circuit breakers as shown and as required.

B. The overcurrent protective device short circuit, coordination and arch flash studies performed by the overcurrent protective device manufacturer shall be used by the respective switchgear vendor(s) to select appropriate equipment, switchgear, and overcurrent protective device characteristics such as but not limited to: equipment bracing, AIC rating, circuit breaker frame size and trip settings, and fuse type/class. The appropriate equipment suitable and required by the studies for code compliance shall be included with the submittal data for review and provided at no additional cost to the Owner. The appropriate equipment recommended by the studies for enhanced selective coordination or enhanced arc flash energy reduction beyond code compliance shall be included with the submittal data for review and consideration purposes by the engineer.

C. Busing Assembly: Panelboard phase, neutral, and equipment ground busing shall be copper. Bus structure and mains shall have ratings as shown and scheduled. Furnish a bare uninsulated ground bus inside each panelboard enclosure. Two section panelboards shall be connected with copper cable, with an ampacity conforming to the upstream overcurrent device. Neutral bus termination quantity for branch circuit panelboards shall match or exceed the maximum number of single pole circuit breakers the panelboard will accept.

D. Main circuit breakers and feeder / branch circuit breakers:

1. Less than 125 Amps: Thermal magnetic with factory fixed trip.
2. 125-600 Amps: Thermal magnetic with adjustable instantaneous trip of 5X – 10X with short time tracking.
3. 601 Amps and larger: Solid state true RMS sensing with adjustable: current set by rating plug or adjustable dial, $I^2t$ settings, ground fault (where required), instantaneous trip, and short time trip; 80-percent continuous current rating.
4. Provide permanent lock-off device where indicated or required for circuit breaker to be used as a remote safety disconnect switch.
5. General requirements:
    a. Make prepared space provisions for additional breakers or fused switches so that no additional bus or connectors will be required to add circuit breakers or fused switches in the available device mounting space.
    b. Two and three pole breakers shall have internal common trips.
    c. All circuit breakers used as the main or branch mounted back-fed main shall be bolt-on. All circuit breakers used in 600 Amp and smaller panelboards shall be bolt-on breakers. Circuit breakers for distribution panelboards rated 601 amps and larger shall have plug-on or bolt-on circuit breakers.
    d. Branch circuit panelboard shall have interrupting capacity as shown or as required, but in no case less 10k AIC for 120/208/240-Volt systems, and 18k AIC for 277/480-Volt systems.
    e. 15 and 20 Amp circuit breakers for lighting circuits shall be UL listed switch duty (SWD).
    f. Personnel ground fault interrupter (GFI) circuit breakers, where shown, shall be maximum 5 mA ground fault trip and shall include a TEST button.
    g. Equipment ground fault interrupter (EGFI/EGPD) circuit breakers, where shown or required shall be 30mA ground fault trip and shall include TEST button.
    h. Circuit breakers with 1,200 Amp and larger frame shall have Energy Reducing Maintenance Switching with local status indicator (ERMS).

E. Fusible Switches for distribution panelboards: Fusible switches shall be quick-make, quick-break type. Each switch shall be enclosed in a separate steel enclosure. The enclosure shall employ a hinged cover for access to the fuses. Interlock cover with the operating handle to prevent opening the cover when the switch is in the ON position. This interlock shall be constructed so that it can be overridden for testing fuses without interrupting service. The switches shall have padlocking provisions in the OFF position. Switches shall include positive pressure rejection type fuse clips for use with UL Class J fuses and be UL labeled for 200,000 AIC.

F. Spaces: Where space for future breakers or switches is shown, panelboard enclosure shall include removable blank panels or knockouts to allow installation of future breakers or switches, prepared spaces, and panelboard busing shall be complete, including required connectors.

G. Integrated Equipment Rating: Do not apply series ratings. Each panelboard, as a complete unit, shall have a short-circuit rating equal or greater than the available short circuit current. Rating shall have been established by tests on similar panelboards with the circuit breakers or fusible switches installed.

H. Panelboard Enclosures:
   1. Provide sheet steel enclosures, minimum 16-gauge nominal thickness, with multiple knockouts, unless shown otherwise. Provide all NEMA 1 panelboard fronts with spring-loaded door pulls, and flush lock and key, panelboard enclosures keyed alike to match the Owner's standard key system; coordinate with Owner.
   2. All NEMA 1 enclosure panelboards shall be hinged "door-in-door" type with interior hinged door with hand operated latch or latches, as required providing access only to circuit breaker or fusible switch operating handles, not to exposed energized parts. Outer hinged door shall be securely mounted to the panelboard box with factory bolts, screws, clips, or other fasteners, requiring a tool for entry. Hand operated latches are not acceptable. Push inner and outer doors shall open left to right. Manufacturer hardware (OEM), screws, and bolts shall be used to secure dead fronts and covers. Do not used third party hardware. Do not use power tools to secure panel hardware. Provide gray powder coat finish over a rust inhibitor.
   3. Equip with interior circuit directory frame, card, and clear plastic covering for panelboards.
   4. Panelboards located in kitchen preparation or natatorium areas shall have Type 316 stainless steel front, door, and trim with a NEMA 1 rating for the entire enclosure.
   5. Panelboards at exterior locations shall be NEMA 4X Type 316 stainless steel.
   6. Panelboards at hose down areas, cooling towers, in greenhouses, and other corrosive locations shall be NEMA 4X 316 stainless steel.
   7. Enclosure shall be for recessed or surface mounting as shown or as required.
   8. Enclosures shall be fabricated by the same manufacturer as panelboards to be enclosed. Multi-section panelboards shall have same physical dimensions.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF PANELBOARDS AND ENCLOSURES

A. General: Install panelboards and enclosures, as shown, including electrical connections, in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions, the requirements of NEC, NECA Standard of Installation, and industry practices. Circuit breakers shall be factory installed except for required field modifications due to actual site conditions.

B. Coordination: Coordinate installation of panelboards and enclosures with conductor and raceways installation work.

C. Anchoring: Anchor enclosures to walls and structural surfaces ensuring that they are permanently and mechanically secured.

D. Directory Card: Provide a typed circuit directory card(s) upon completion of work. Directory card shall be of super heavy-weight index card stock, 110 lb, white. Directory shall include type of load (i.e.: receptacles, lighting, exhaust fan, etc.) and location (i.e.: Room 102, Office, etc.) Room number shall be identified as the actual graphics room number assigned to the space and not the room number identified on the Plans. Circuits with shunt trip shall be identified with the control circuit operating the shunt trip (i.e.: Kitchen Hood No. 2). Shunt trip breakers with common trip circuit shall be grouped in the panelboard (i.e.: circuits 1, 3, 5 and 7).

E. Fuses: Install fuses, of the ratings and class shown.

F. Circuit Arrangement: Branch circuits shall be arranged to provide the best possible phase balance, unless shown otherwise.

G. Panelboards not intended to be used as service entrance (SE) rated or for establishing a separately derived neutral system shall have the factory installed neutral to ground bonding screws and straps removed and disposed of.

H. Recessed or flush mounted panelboards: Terminate spare conduits in junction box 18-inches above accessible ceiling close to panelboard location. Label junction box cover as “not used” and include panel identification.
   1. Provide (3) 1-inch and (3) ¾-inch spare conduits above accessible ceiling to j-box from each panelboard section.
   2. Where recessed panelboard is located above another building floor, also provide (3) 1-inch and (3) ¾-inch conduits to j-box in ceiling space on floor below.

I. Conductors shall be bent neatly opposite the fuse switch or circuit breaker to which they are to be attached. Vertically installed conductors shall be neatly tie-wrapped. Conductors shall be connected in a neat and professional manner. Conductors brought in from the top or bottom of the cabinet shall be bent neatly opposite the fuse or circuit breaker to which they are to be attached. Each conductor shall be run along the full height of the panel and returned to the circuit breaker or fuse location to allow relocation of the conductor to any position along the bus. Panelboard shall be cleaned of all construction debris prior to substantial completion review. Neutral and grounding conductors shall be installed similar to the phase conductors.

J. Circuit breakers and conductors installed for SPD devices shall be located at the top or bottom of the panelboard in respect to the location of the SPD device. Route all conductors to the SPD device with straight as possible run, using longest sweep bends and the shortest conductor length possible. Twist all SPD conductors and secure with tie straps wherever possible.

K. Install copper ground bus for copper ground conductors. Ground conductors size #1 and larger are to be landed to panelboard enclosure with mechanical lugs and not to ground bus.

L. Install panels so that breaker number 1 is the top left breaker.

M. In panels that contain multi-layered neutral bus, install neutrals beginning with the back neutral bus row and work forward. Do not make up neutrals on front neutral bus row unless all other rows are full.

N. Label breaker mounting space with stick-on number labels.

O. Mount the fully aligned panelboard such that the maximum height of the top circuit breaker above the finished floor shall not exceed 78-inches. Mount panelboards as high as practical and such that the bottom of the cabinets will not be less than 6 inches above the finished floor.

## 3.2 TESTING

A. Before energizing, energization, check for continuity of circuits and short circuits.

B. Provide thermal infrared scan of panelboards under full load as directed and witnessed by Owner. Correct any deficiencies causing abnormal heating and repeat the scan. Provide digital video documentation with deficiencies corrected for comparison to future test. Make corrections as needed as soon as possible as directed by the Owner. Repeat the scan at the 11-month prior to closeout, and make corrections prior to close-out.

**END OF SECTION 26 24 16**

# SECTION 26 24 25 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Safety and disconnect switch work where required, scheduled, indicated, specified, and required. For switches indicated or rated above 1,200 Amps, provide switchboard construction as specified for switchboards.

B. UL Approved: Safety and disconnect switches shall have UL approval and the UL label.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Schneider Electric - Square D

B. ABB-General Electric Co.

### 2.2 ENCLOSED SWITCHES

A. General: Provide heavy duty type, dead-front, sheet steel enclosed, surface-mounted safety switches of the type and size indicated. Safety switches shall be rated for the voltage of the circuit where they are installed. Safety switches used as motor disconnects shall be rated for the motor horse power served.

B. The overcurrent protective device short circuit, coordination and arch flash studies performed by the overcurrent protective device manufacturer shall be used by the respective switchgear vendor(s) to select appropriate equipment, switchgear, and overcurrent protective device characteristics such as but not limited to: equipment bracing, AIC rating, circuit breaker frame size and trip settings, and fuse type/class. The appropriate equipment suitable and required by the studies for code compliance shall be included with the submittal data for review and provided at no additional cost to the Owner. The appropriate equipment recommended by the studies for enhanced selective coordination or enhanced arc flash energy reduction beyond code compliance shall be included with the submittal data for review and consideration purposes by the engineer.

C. Switch Mechanism:
   1. Safety switches shall be quick-make, quick-break type with permanently attached arc suppressor. Constructed so that switch blades are visible in the OFF position with the door open. The operating handle shall be an integral part of the box, not the cover. Switch shall have provision to padlock in the OFF position. Safety switches shall have a cover interlock to prevent unauthorized opening of the switch door when the switch mechanism is in the ON position, or closing of the switch mechanism when the switch door is open.
   2. Cover interlock shall have an override mechanism to permit switch inspection by

authorized personnel. Current-carrying parts shall be constructed of high conductivity copper with silver-plated switch contacts. Lugs shall be suitable for copper conductors and front removable.

D. Neutral: Provide safety switches with number of switched poles indicated. Where a neutral is present in the circuit, provide a solid neutral with the safety switch. Where a ground conductor is present in the circuit, provide a separate solid ground with the safety switch.

## 2.3 ENCLOSED SWITCHES WITH OVERCURRENT AND/OR GROUND FAULT PROTECTION

A. Overcurrent protective devices 1,200 Amps and below:
   1. Where switch is intended as a building service disconnect provide solid neutral and ground bus and service entrance SE rating.
   2. Molded case circuit breakers:
      a. Greater than 800 Amp: Solid state true RMS sensing with adjustable: current, $I^2t$ settings, ground fault (where required), instantaneous trip, and short time trip; 80-percent continuous current rating.
      b. 800 Amp and smaller: Solid state true RMS sensing with fixed current setting by rating plug or dial. Breaker shall have adjustable instantaneous trip function with short time tracking.
      c. 1,200 Amp and larger frame circuit breakers regardless of trip shall have Energy Reducing Maintenance System switch with local status indicator (ERMS).
   3. Fusible switches:
      a. Quick-make, quick-break units utilizing the double-break principle of circuit interrupting to minimize arcing and pitting and shall conform to the ratings shown.
      b. Individual door over the front, equipped with a voidable interlock that prevents the door from being opened when the switch is in the ON position unless the interlock is purposely defeated by activation of the voiding mechanism. All switches shall have externally operated handles.
      c. 600 Amps and below equipped for Class J fuses.
      d. 601 Amps and above shall be equipped for Class R or L fuses.
      e. When required by the latest edition of the NEC or the AHJ, 1,200 Amp fused switches regardless of fuse size installed shall have Energy Reducing Maintenance System switch with local status indicator (ERMS).

B. Ground Fault Interrupter (GFI) protection: Where shown or required, ground fault protection shall be achieved with adjustable pickup for ground fault currents, field-adjustable from 200 amperes and instantaneous to 60 cycle time delay. The ground fault protection system shall include necessary current sensors, internal wiring, and relays to coordinate opening the monitored faulted circuits.
   1. Ground fault protection shall be set at minimum setting for both current and time during construction. The manufacturer shall include in the submittal data the minimum setting of the device and the recommended setting for normal building operation.

2. The ground fault system shall be factory-tested before shipment as specified:
   a. The manufacturer shall provide a factory ground fault protection system test for circuit testing and verification of tripping characteristics. The manufacturer shall pass predetermined values of current through the sensors and measure the tripping time for each phase and neutral. The measured time-current relationships shall be compared to the trip-characteristic curves. If the ground fault device trips outside the range of values indicated on the curve, the ground fault device shall be replaced or recalibrated.
   b. Relays, electrically operated switches, shunt-trip switches, circuit breakers, and similar items shall have proper voltages applied to their circuits and satisfactory operation demonstrated.
   c. Upon completion of the factory ground fault protection system test, the current and time on each ground fault device shall be set to minimum values.

## 2.4 ENCLOSURES

A. Enclosures in indoor locations shall be NEMA 1 unless shown otherwise.

B. Enclosures in exterior locations shall be NEMA 4X stainless steel.

C. Enclosures at kitchen and food preparation locations, exterior kitchen supply and exhaust fans, hose down areas, cooling towers, in greenhouses, and in other corrosive areas shall be NEMA 4X, stainless steel.

# PART 3 – EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install safety and disconnect switches where required or indicated, in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions, requirements of the NEC, NECA Standard of Installation, and industry practices. Provide fuse identification label when fused switches are required showing type and size inside door of each switch. Include devices in coordination study to indicate overcurrent devices will selectively coordinate.

B. Location: Provide safety switches within 50’ and in sight of motor served. There shall be minimum code required clearance in front of safety switch and a clear path in which to access the switch. (i.e.: not having to walk and/or stand on obstacles such as drain pans on floor to service).

C. Supports: Provide all safety and disconnect switches with galvanized angle or other supports where mounting on wall or other rigid surface is impractical. Switches shall not be supported by conduit alone. Where safety and disconnect switches are mounted on equipment served, the switch shall not inhibit removal of service panels or interfere with access areas, not void the warranty of the equipment served. Provide mounting hardware that will allow removal of safety and disconnect switches with common work

tools. Do not utilize drive pin anchors through enclosure.

D. Ground Fault Interrupter (GFI) test and settings: Where adjustable ground fault interrupter settings are provided or required, after completion of construction and before final acceptance testing, the ground fault protection system shall be field-tested and reset to the manufacturer's settings for both current and time by a representative of the manufacturer's engineering service department. After the test, set ground fault to 50-percent of the overcurrent device rating.

E. Safety and Disconnect Switches: Install disconnect switches for motor-driven equipment, appliances, motors, and motor controllers within sight of the controller position unless indicated otherwise.

F. Variable Frequency Drive (VFD) Warning Plaque: Provide VFD warning plaque at safety disconnect switches which are located down-stream of VFDs. Secure plaque to disconnect switch or immediately adjacent to disconnect switch with fasteners. Plaque shall be Yellow-White-Yellow 3-layer plastic laminated engraved with: “WARNING” (1/2 Inch Letters). “TURN OFF VFD BEFORE OPENING THIS SWITCH FOR MAINTENANCE.” (1/4 inch letters).

G. Provide disconnect switch for electric duct heaters.

H. Where disconnect switch is used or indicated as the utility service building disconnect, provide main bonding jumper and neutral to ground bond connected to the building’s grounding system. Do not bond neutral to ground when there is a neutral to ground bond upstream from the same derived neutral system serving the disconnect switch.

## 3.2 TESTING

A. General: Before energizing, check for continuity of circuits and short circuits.

B. Provide thermal infrared scan of the enclosed switches rated 200 Amps or larger under full load prior to testing / maintenance and modifications and of the modified and new switchboard sections after construction as directed and witnessed by Owner. Make corrections as needed as soon as possible as directed by the Owner. Repeat the scan at the 11-month prior to closeout, and make corrections prior to closeout. Provide digital video documentation with test results for comparison between prior condition and post construction modifications and future tests.

**END OF SECTION 26 24 25**

# SECTION 26 24 30 – FUSES

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Fuse work as shown and scheduled, and as specified.

B. Types: Fuses required for the project include the following:
   1. 250 volt current limiting fuses
   2. 600 volt current limiting fuses

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Provide products produced by Bussman or Littlefuse.

### 2.2 CURRENT LIMITING FUSES - 600 VOLTS AND LESS

A. General: Provide 200,000 amperes interrupting capacity (AIC) current-limiting fuses of the current ratings shown and voltage rating equal to or greater than the voltage at the point of application.

B. Types:
   1. Fuses in circuits supplying individual motors, groups of motors, or loads including motors, 600 amperes or less, shall be UL Class RK1 or Class J, time delay fuses, Bussman LPS-RK (600V) LPJ-SP (600V), LPN-RK (250V).
   2. Fuses in circuits supplying individual motors, groups of motors, or loads including motors, 601 to 4000 amperes, shall be UL Class L time delay fuses, Bussman KRPC "HI-CAP".
   3. Fuses in circuits supplying other than motor loads, 600 amperes or less, shall be UL Class RK1, time delay fuses, Bussman LPS-RK (600V), LPN-RK (250V).
   4. Fuses supplying surge protection devices (SPD) shall be surge rated for use with SPD devices.

### 2.3 SPARE FUSES

A. General: Provide spare fuses in the amount of 10% of each type and size installed, but not less than 3 spares of a specific size and type. Deliver to the Owner at the time of project acceptance. Fuses shall be encased in a labeled steel enclosure with padlock provision, to be wall mounted where directed.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install fuses in fuse holders immediately before energizing of the circuit where the fuses are installed. Fuses shall not be installed and shipped with equipment.

B. Labels: Place fuse identification labels, showing fuse size and type installed, inside the cover of each switch.

**END OF SECTION 26 24 30**

# SECTION 26 27 73 - LINE VOLTAGE WIRING DEVICES

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Provide wiring device work as shown, scheduled, indicated, and specified. Low voltage and/or digital control switches required for lighting controls and lighting control systems shall be as specified and required for the low voltage and / or digital control lighting system. Refer to drawings or other specification sections for low voltage / digital lighting control systems. Cover plates for lighting control systems shall be as specified in this section unless specifically required otherwise by the low voltage / digital control device bulkhead or form factor.

### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. UL Label: Wiring devices shall be UL labeled.

B. NEMA Standard WD1 and WD6.

C. Fed. Spec. WC596, W-S-896

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Mark up a complete copy of the specification section for the product to indicate a) acknowledgement of the specification requirement (Comply), or b) acknowledgement that the particular specification requirement does not apply to this specific project (Not Applicable) or, c) acknowledgement that the specification requirement cannot be made or that a variance is being submitted for review to the Architect/Engineer/Owner (Does Not Comply, Explanation:) Do not submit an outline form of compliance, submit a complete copy of the specification section with the product data.

B. Submit a sample of each style and color of 120-Volt duplex receptacle and each 120/277- Volt switch with related cover plate. Attach plate to wiring device and label back side of plate with job description with permanent black marker.

C. Submit manufacturer's product data sheet for each style of device and plate on the project.

D. Submit drawings of plans, elevation and sections of receptacles and outlets in casework, cabinetwork and built-in place furniture. Coordinate dimensions with millwork shop drawings and related architectural drawing series.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Toggle switches, straight blade and twist lock devices, interior cover plates:
   1. Leviton
   2. Hubbell
   3. Pass and Seymour
   4. Eaton

B. Dimming
   1. Leviton
   2. Lutron

## 2.2 WIRING DEVICE COLOR

A. Device color shall be gray except 20A, 125V receptacles and toggle wall switches which are directly supplied from an emergency source shall be red, and heavy duty 30 Amp and larger simplex devices which shall be black in color where the building standard color is not available. Provide equivalent hospital grade devices where red is not available in grade specified. Verify with Owner / Architect prior to submitting for approval. Color change kits as required for dimming switches. Low voltage lighting control devices specified elsewhere shall match the line voltage wiring device color specified in this section.

## 2.3 RECEPTACLES

A. Industrial grade tamper resistant smooth face duplex receptacles, 2 pole, 3 wire grounding, with ground connection and poles internally connected to mounting yoke, with metal mounting straps, locking plug-tail or back and side wired with screw type terminals, NEMA indicated, (X=color designation).
   1. 20A, 125V duplex NEMA #5-20R: Leviton #5362-SGX
   2. 20A, 125V isolated ground duplex NEMA #5-20R: Leviton #5362-IGX
   3. 20A, 125V ground fault circuit interruption (GFCI) NEMA #5-20R weather and tamper resistant: Leviton #G5362-WTX
   4. 20A, 125V weather resistant (WR), tamper resistant: Leviton #TWR20-GY
   5. 20A, 125V plug load control, split circuit marked for “controlled”, tamper resistant: Leviton #TDR20-S1G
   6. 15A, with 20A feed-through, NEMA #5-15R, 125V duplex, arc fault (AFCI), tamper resistant: Leviton #AFTR1-HGX

B. Heavy-Duty Simplex: Single heavy-duty type receptacles, with green hexagonal equipment ground screw, with metal mounting straps, back or side wiring, black molded phenolic compound.
   1. 15-60A, 125-250V, straight blade, NEMA configuration as indicated or as required by Owner.
   2. 15-50A, 125-480V, twist lock, NEMA configuration as indicated or as required by Owner.

C. Hospital grade receptacles, 2 pole, 3 wire grounding, with ground connection and poles internally connected to mounting yoke, with metal mount straps, locking plug-tail or

back and side wired with screw type terminals, molded phenolic compound, NEMA configuration indicated.

1. 20A, 125V grounded duplex NEMA #5-20R: Leviton #8300-X
2. 20A, 125V isolated ground duplex NEMA #5-20R: Leviton #8300-LIG (orange)
3. 20A, 125V ground fault circuit interruption (GFCI) with indicator light: Leviton NEMA 5-20R-8898-HGX
4. 20A/125V Tamper Resistant Duplex NEMA 5-20R: Leviton 8300-SGX

D. USB 2-port charger / tamper-resistant with 125-Volt receptacles:

1. USB type A/C, 1 type A and 1 type C port, 5.1A 5.0VDC charging. 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R: Leviton #T5833-HGX
2. USB A, 2 type A ports, 5.1A 5.0VDC charging. 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R: Leviton #T5832-HGX

E. USB 4-port charger:

1. USB type A+C, 2 type A ports and 2 type C ports. 5.0A 5.0VDC charging. Hubbell #USB4ACX.
2. USB type A, 4 type A ports. 5.0A 5.0VDC charging. Hubbell #USB4X.

## 2.4 WALL SWITCHES

A. Toggle: Industrial grade flush toggle switches, with mounting yoke insulated from mechanism, equipped with plaster ears, switch handle, back and side-wired screw terminals.

1. Single-pole, 120/277V, 20A switch: Leviton #1221-2X
2. Double pole 120/277V, 20A switch: Leviton #1222-2X
3. Three-way, 120/277V, 20A switch: Leviton #1223-2X
4. Four-way, 120/277V, 20A switch: Leviton #1224-2G
5. Pilot light single-pole, 120/277V, 20A switch: Leviton #1221-PL
6. Momentary, 120/277V, 20A, single-pole double throw, center off: Hubbell only, #HBL 1557G

B. Rotary key operated switch (verify manufacturer and keying with Owner prior to construction).

1. Single-pole, 120/277V, 20A key operated switch: Leviton #1221-KL
2. Two-pole, 120/277, 20A key operated, Leviton #1222-2KL.
3. Three-way, 120/277V, 20A key operated switch: Leviton #1223-3KL
4. Four-way, 120/277V, 20A key operated switch: Leviton #1224-4KL
5. Key switches shall be all keyed alike to match the Owner's standard key system. Leviton #WS-35 or as otherwise directed by Owner.

## 2.5 WALL DIMMERS

A. Wall Box Dimmers: Self-contained, wall box mounted, linear slide square law dimmers with ON/OFF switch. Dimmers shall operate continuously at rated load in an ambient temperature up to 40°C and an input of 100 to 277V. Heat sink fins may be removed only as approved by Owner / Engineer for narrow ganging after applying de-rating.

1. Single-pole, 120/277V, 1000/2308 Watt incandescent / magnetic low voltage: Leviton #AWSMT-MBW.
2. Single-pole, 120/277V, 1500/3463 Watt incandescent / magnetic low voltage, 2-gang heat sink: Leviton #AWSMT-MCW.
3. Single-pole, 120/277V, 1920/4432-Watt LED / fluorescent 0-10V dc, 75 mA current sink: Leviton #AWSMT-7DW.
4. Three, four- or five-way remote switch: Leviton #AWSRT-00W.
5. Color change kit as required.

## 2.6 GFCI – GROUND FAULT CIRCUIT INTERRUPTER, BLANK FACE

A. 20A, 125V, GFCI, switch rated, blank face feed through, Hubbell #GFBF20GYL, gray finish, stainless steel cover plate black laser engraved with device protected, (example: DRINKING FOUNTAIN GFCI).

## 2.7 INTERIOR WALL COVER PLATES AND FASTENERS

A. Type 302 non-magnetic stainless-steel with satin finish (also required for wall box device cover plates for low voltage and digital lighting controls specified elsewhere).

B. Cover plate laser plate engraving for device identification (other than low voltage lighting controls).
1. Provide laser cover plate engraving with black filling for all wiring devices indicating panelboard name, circuit, and voltage.
2. Wiring devices connected to emergency/stand-by generator or inverter shall include the word “EMERGENCY”.
3. Text orientation shall be upright, readable from left to right when cover plate is installed.
4. Remotely located lighting switches shall also indicate the room or area and zone controlled by each switch. Coordinate specific wording with Owner/Architect.
5. Blank face GFCI cover plates shall also intuitively indicate the load or equipment served, device, or area protected downstream (“EDF” for drinking fountains, “RM RECEPTS”, “HOOD RECEPTS”, “VENDING”, “REFRIG”, etc.) For other loads, Owner/Architect shall determine name plate wording.

## 2.8 EXTERIOR COVER PLATES

A. Thomas & Betts CK Series, cast aluminum standard depth, locking mount, while-in-use, wet location, universal configuration.
1. Vertical mount receptacle: #CKSUV
2. Horizontal mount receptacle: #CKMU
3. Two-gang: #2CKU
4. 30-60 Amp Devices: #CKLSUV

## 2.9 CORD REELS AND DROP CORDS

A. Cord Reels:

1. Lighted cord reels: Industrial grade, LED hand Lamp only, 125V, 45-foot 16/3 SJEO cord, white finish, LED hand lamp. Hubbell #HBLI45163LED with #HBL340PB pivot base.
2. 20 Amp (2) duplex receptacle cord reels: Industrial grade, 125V, (2) 20A duplex receptacles, GFCI protection, 45-foot 12/3 SJO cord, white finish, yellow outlet box. Hubbell #HBLI45123GF220 with #HBLI340PB pivot base.
3. 30 Amp receptacle cord reels: Industrial grade, 125/250V, 30A, 45-foot 10/4 SJO cord, white finish, yellow outlet box. Hubbell #HBLI45104 with #HBLI340PB pivot base. 30 Amp NEMA receptacle termination as required by Owner.
4. 50 Amp receptacle cord reels: Industrial grade, NEMA 4 wet location, 600V, 55A, 50-foot 6/4 SOOW cord, yellow finish, self-retracting, with NEMA 50-Amp maximum receptacle termination as required by Owner. KH-Industries RTMH4L-WW-K6K.
5. Recessed enclosure for 20 and 30-Amp cord reels recessed above T-grid drop ceilings: Hubbell #HBLIPRBOX recessed cord reel enclosure, white finish, plenum rated.

B. Drop cord receptacles:
1. 20A, 125V, 25-feet 600 VAC, 3-conductor 12 AWG SOOW cable, twist lock plug, two 125V, 20A duplex WR GFCI outlets, safety yellow rubber outlet box, mesh strain relief cord grips. KH Industries #PP4DD-520-B12F-520.
2. 20A, 125/250V, 25-feet 600 VAC, 4-conductor 12AWG SOOW cable, twist lock plug, four 125/250V NEMA L1420P outlets, safety yellow rubber outlet box, mesh strain relief cord grips. KH Industries #PP7DD-520-B12F-L1420.
3. 30-60 Amp, voltage, NEMA plug/receptacle as required by Owner, SOOW cable, number of conductors and length as required, mesh strain relief cord grips.

## 2.10 FIRST RESPONDER EMERGENCY REMOTE POWER OFF (FREPO) STATION

A. Knox Company Remote Power Rapid Access 4500 Series Shutdown Station
1. Recessed mount for public spaces and new construction, surface mount for when mounted to equipment or existing construction.
2. Single lock keyed for local Fire Department/AHJ, verify configuration and keying with Knox Company.
3. Red Finish
4. Tamper alert for integration with building security system.

# PART 3 – EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Cover plates for receptacles and toggle switches shall be of the same manufacturer throughout unless otherwise noted.
1. Key switches and keys shall be as specified and also as approved by Owner.
2. Submit samples for each specified toggle switch and duplex receptacle color to Architect.

B. Install wiring devices where shown and as required, in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, requirements of NEC, and in accordance with industry practices. Do not install devices until wall construction and wiring is completed.

C. Install receptacles and switches only in electrical boxes that are clean, free from building materials, debris, and similar matter.

D. Install wiring devices plumb and aligned in the plane of the wall, floor, ceiling or equipment rack.

E. Install switches in boxes on the strike side of doors as hung. Install so the up position will close the circuit or will be the highest level of illumination. Where more than one switch is in the same location, install switches in a multi-gang box with a single cover plate.

F. Provide a cover plate for every wiring device and blank cover plates for unused rough-in-only boxes that matches the building standard. Fasten all plates outdoors with type 302 Allen Head "tamper-proof" screws.

G. Mounting heights of all wiring devices shall comply with local accessibility standards and local codes, except where wiring devices are indicated for special purpose and access is only required by maintenance or service personnel.

H. Refer to Architectural drawing and elevations, etc. for exact location of wiring devices. Coordinate location of all wiring devices with other trades, specialty items, and millwork and resolve all conflicts prior to rough-in. Field coordinate exact mounting location with all trades to avoid and resolve conflicts during construction.

I. Locate receptacles for electric drinking fountains/coolers and bottle fill stations below equipment so that the receptacle is accessible and concealed as much as practical from public view by the equipment open cowling so that the receptacle remain readily accessible. For dual level basin equipment, locate receptacle under the upper basin.

J. Provide convenience outlet receptacle within 25-feet of all new electrically operated mechanical equipment.

K. Where exterior receptacles are intended for continuous use, mount in horizontal position with while in use cover plate. (Exterior electric drinking fountains, ice makers, ice storage bins, landscape lighting low voltage transformers, seasonal decorative lighting, etc.)

L. Install wall box dimmers to achieve full rating specified after de-rating for ganging as recommended by manufacturer.

M. Do not share neutral conductor on load side of dimming switches.

N. Install receptacles with grounding pole down, except in any of the following conditions where the grounding pole shall be installed in the up position: healthcare occupancies, if

required by local AHJ, if required by Owner's construction standards or if directed by Owner or Architect. If installed horizontally, install with neutral pole on top.

O. Connect wiring device grounding terminal to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.

P. Provide pigtail to each receptacle and each switch. Neutral and phase conductors shall be installed using side or rear entry lugs only. Do not wrap conductors around screw terminals. Tighten all screws and lugs as recommended by manufacturer.

Q. All receptacles and switches shall have a minimum of two wraps of Scotch 33 or equivalent tape around terminal screws.

R. Provide toggle switch within sight of all trap primers, circulation pumps, 120-Volt motors and motorized equipment to serve as the equipment disconnect switch.

S. Mount cord reels and cord reel recessed enclosures to structure with galvanized steel struts and as recommended by manufacturer. Field verify exact location of cord reels with Owner/Architect. Mounting location shall avoid conflicts with piping, light fixtures and ductwork, etc. when cord reel is extended and retracted. Set ball stop as directed by Owner / Architect. Provide hand lamp only type cord reels in commercial / educational automotive garages with classified (hazardous) locations. Provide local toggle switch at standard switch height for hand lamp only cord reels.

T. Mount drop cord suspension hook or j-box to structure to support the cord's weight and additional normal use pulling tension and as recommended by manufacturer. Use cable grips, either with cord grip hanging hook at open ceilings or with chrome plated escutcheon cover plate mounted to recessed j-box at finished ceilings. Field verify exact location, drop height, and NEMA outlet configuration of drop cords with Owner/Architect. Provide weatherproof receptacle cap or covers if located in wet location. Mounting location shall avoid conflicts with piping, light fixtures and ductwork, etc.

## 3.2 GROUND FAULT PROTECTION FOR PERSONELL

A. When GFCI personnel protection receptacles are not commercially available or cannot be installed at a readily accessible location or indicated otherwise on the drawings, GFCI personnel protection shall be provided by a remote blank face GFCI wiring device or by an up-stream GFCI receptacle that also provides downstream GFCI protection and located in a readily accessible location. When branch circuit breaker device with integral GFCI protection is required or specified, it shall be within the manufacture's recommended distance limitations of the connected receptacle(s) or load(s) for proper GFCI personnel protection at the farthest outlet.

B. GFCI personal protection locations include but are not limited to the following:
   1. For other than dwelling units: All single phase 125-250-Volt (150-Volts to ground or less) receptacles 50-Amperes or less, and all three phase 125-250-Volt (150-

Volts to ground or less) receptacles 100-Ampres or less in the locations indicated below.

2. Dwelling units: All single phase 125-250-Volt receptacles installed in the following locations indicated below.
3. Provide personnel GFCI protection as indicated above in the following locations and all additional locations as required by the NEC.
    a. Outdoors (with exceptions for not readily accessible receptacles with dedicated branch circuits for snow melting, deicing, pipeline/vessel heat receptacles. Provide these loads with 30mA EGFI circuit breaker protection).
    b. Bathrooms/toilets/restrooms
    c. Janitors/custodial closets and mop sinks.
    d. Laundry areas
    e. Parking structures, service garages, garages and accessory buildings
    f. Basements, crawl spaces (including 120-Volt lighting)
    g. Within 6-feet of all water sources including sinks, mop-sinks, lavatories, bathtubs, shower stalls, faucets, eye wash stations, emergency shower stations
    h. Indoor damp and wet locations
    i. Locker rooms
    j. Indoor swimming pools and natatoriums areas and adjacent corridor/hall convenience receptacle outlets located within 25-feet of all access doors.
    k. Non-dwelling unit therapeutic tubs/pools/whirlpool areas and adjacent corridor/hall convenience receptacle outlets located within 25-feet of all access doors.
    l. Receptacles serving dwelling unit kitchen counter tops
    m. Vending machines
    n. Elevators, dumb waiters, escalators, moving sidewalks: receptacles in pits, hoist ways, well ways or those mounted on the cars of elevators and dumb waiters.
    o. Electric vehicle charging equipment.
    p. All receptacles serving kitchen or food preparation counter tops.
    q. Automotive vacuum machines
    r. Drinking water fountains/coolers and bottle fill stations
    s. Corded high-pressure spray washing machines
    t. Tire inflation machines
    u. Dish washers
    v. Receptacles at end of cord reels or drop cords.
    w. Boat houses, boat hoist, and all pier/dock receptacles and lighting (excludes shore power that requires GFPE).
    x. Central plant, mechanical rooms and electrical rooms
    y. Wood, metal, or other material fabrication or vocational training shops.
    z. Receptacles that serve educational science and science prep room counter tops.

C. Where a GFCI protected receptacle outlet is required or indicated behind vending machine, refrigerators or other equipment, provide remote GFCI blank face in same

room as protected receptacle and at a readily accessible location with standard receptacle outlet behind equipment. Refrigerators shall be GFCI protected only where located within 6-feet of power cord distance from the edge of a sink to the surface of the refrigerator.

D. Unless indicated otherwise, locate blank face GFCI device near light switches at same height as light switches or ganged with the light switch. Provide GFCI protection for all receptacle outlets located below 42-inches in all infant through 2-year old day care and similar areas designated for occupancy by infant through 2-year old day care occupants so the GFCI device can easily be intentionally tripped or tested and reset.

E. Provide branch circuit breaker 30mA (EDP) or 100mA (EPE) equipment protection for utilization equipment as required by the NEC and where indicated on the drawings.

## 3.3 FIRST RESPONDER REMOTE EMERGENCY POWER OFF (FREPO) STATION

A. Provide Knox Company first responder remote emergency power off (FREPO) stations as indicated and/or where required by local AHJ. Mounting locations shall be as directed by the local AHJ and exact locations coordinated with the Architect. FREPOs shall be circuited only to shunt trip or shut-down control circuiting. FREPOs shall be recessed mounted in public locations and in all new construction when attached to building construction. Provide surface mount FREPOs when mounted to equipment or existing construction.

B. Integrate the FREPOs to shut-down the building non-emergency and non-legally required power sources which include the main electrical utility service disconnect circuit breaker(s), other than non-life safety or non-legally required distribution scale UPS equipment, and non-life safety or non-legally required local power generation equipment.

C. Provide FREPOs for fire pump, life safety, and legally required electrical generation equipment only when required by the AHJ. When required by the AHJ, fire pump, life safety, and legally required power generation and/or stored energy power supply equipment shall each have separate dedicated FREPOs that shut down only their associated power generation/stored energy equipment. FREPOs for emergency, and legally required systems shall have minimal 25-foot physical separation from the building main utility service FREPOs and clearly labeled with the equipment that they will shut down. FREPOs for fire pumps shall have minimal 25-foot physical separation from the any other FREPOs and from the building main utility service disconnect and clearly labeled with the equipment that it will shut down.

D. Integrate the FREPOs tamper switch with the building security or building management control system (BMCS) as directed by Owner.

## 3.4 TESTING

A. Before energizing, check for continuity of circuits, short circuits, and grounding connections.

B. After energizing, check wiring devices to demonstrate proper operation and receptacles for correct polarization, voltage and phase orientation if intended 3-phase equipment is phase orientation dependent for proper motor rotation or operation.

C. Test each individual GFCI receptacle and all downstream receptacles protected by an upstream GFCI device with simulated ground fault tester, make corrections as necessary.

D. Operate each wall switch with circuit energized and verify proper operation.

**END OF SECTION 26 27 73**

# SECTION 26 32 16 - DUAL PURPOSE MANUAL TRANSFER SWITCHES WITH INTEGRATED LOAD BANK AND GENERATOR QUICK CONNECTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install manual transfer switches with 4-poles, amperage, voltage, and withstand current ratings as shown on the plans or as required. Each manual transfer shall consist of a 3-position center off mechanically held power transfer switch unit and a mechanical operating mechanism to provide complete manual operation. Each manual transfer switch shall include integrated load bank and generator quick disconnects. All manual transfer switches and mechanical operating mechanism shall be the product of the same manufacturer.

### 1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. The Conditions of the Contract and applicable requirements of Division 1 and Section 26 05 00 govern this Section.

### 1.3 Acceptable Manufacturers

A. Basis of design: ASCO Series 300.

B. Alternate manufactures:
   1. Trystar
   2. PSI Power and Controls

### 1.4 Codes and Standards

**The manual transfer switches and accessories shall conform to the requirements of:**

A. UL 1008 Listed for Optional Standby Transfer Switches (Manual Transfer Switches)

B. UL 891 Switch Boards

C. CSA C22.2 No.178 –1978

D. EC 60947-6-1 Low – Voltage Switchgear and Controller

E. PA 70 - National Electrical Code

F. FPA 99 – Essential Electrical Systems for Health Care Facilities

G. EEE Standard 446 - IEEE Recommended Practice for Emergency and Standby Power Systems for Commercial and Industrial Applications

H. UL 508 Industrial Control Equipment

I. NEC Article 700

J. International Standards Organization ISO 9001

K. RoHs compliant (Restriction of Hazardous Substances)

L. Seismic qualification – International Building Code & OSHPD to SDS level of 2.5

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. NEC and NFPA Compliance: Comply with applicable portions of the NEC (NFPA 70) including, but not limited to, emergency and standby power generation systems.

B. IEEE Compliance: Comply with applicable Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (IEEE) standards pertaining to generator construction.

C. Supplier: All equipment provided shall be supplied by an authorized distributor of the manufacturer who has been continuously engaged in the distribution of industrial grade Power System products for a minimum of 10-years. The supplier shall provide initial start-up services, conduct field acceptance testing, and warranty service. The supplier is to be authorized to perform warranty service on all products provided.

## 1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittal drawings and information on the manual transfer switches including installation drawings, wiring diagrams, dimensions, weights, etc. shall be provided. Full descriptive information on accessory items shall be furnished. Indicate:
   1. Detailed dimensions for equipment footprint, front, rear, and side elevations.
   2. Conduit entrance locations and requirements and restrictions.
   3. Enclosure material, finish, and NEMA classification type.
   4. Nameplate legends.
   6. Metering and control wiring details.
   7. Electrical characteristics including voltage, ampacity, overcurrent device frame size and trip ratings, withstand ratings, and time current curves of all overcurrent devices and components.

B. Submit manufacturers' "Installation, Start-Up and Service" instructions, recommended conductors, overcurrent protection, and electrical interlocks.

C. Submit recommended clearance dimensions.

D. Submit sequence of operation in narrative form.

E. Instruction Data and Drawings: Commercial type operating instructions shall be

provided consisting of operating and maintenance manuals, parts books, dimensional drawings, and wiring diagrams.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

A. Provide one-year parts and labor warranty from date of substantial completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 Mechanically Held Transfer Switch

A. The manual transfer switch unit shall be manually operated and mechanically held. The switch shall be mechanically interlocked to ensure only one of three possible positions, Source 1, Source 2, or Center Off. Fused disconnect type switches shall not be acceptable.

B. The switch shall be positively locked and unaffected by momentary outages so that contact pressure is maintained at a constant value and temperature rise at the contacts is minimized for maximum reliability and operating life.

C. All main contacts shall be silver composition. Switches rated 600 amperes and above shall have segmented blow-on construction for high withstand current capability and be protected by separate arcing contacts.

D. Inspection of all contacts shall be possible from the front of the switch without disassembly of operating linkages and without disconnection of power conductors.

E. Transfer switch designs utilizing components of molded-case circuit breakers, contactors, or parts thereof which are not intended for continuous duty, repetitive switching, or transfer between two active power sources are not acceptable.

F. Neutral conductors shall be switched to electrically isolate the permanent generator from the temporary generator. The manual transfer switch shall be provided with fully- rated neutral transfer contacts.

G. The manual transfer switch shall be tested in accordance with UL 1008 for transfer switches. Switch ratings of 260 Amperes and less shall have endurance rating of 6000 cycles, 400 Ampere shall have endurance rating of 4000 cycles, and 600 – 3000 Amperes shall have endurance rating of 3000 cycles.

### 2.2 MANUAL OPERATIONS PROVISIONS

A. The manual transfer switch shall be arranged for manually actuated manual operation.

B. The manual transfer shall be actuated via a mechanical operating mechanism.

C. The manual operating handle shall be capable of external operation without opening

the enclosure door.

D. It shall have the same contact to contact speed as would be for automatic operation.

E. There shall be three positions for manual operation:
   1. Connected to Source 1 (preferred)
   2. Connected to Source 2 (alternate)
   3. Connected to center off (disconnected position)

F. Switch position when connected to Source 1, or Source 2 shall be pad – lockable.

**2.3 ENCLOSURE**

A. Manual transfer switches located outdoors shall be furnished in a NEMA type 3RX type 316 stainless steel enclosure. Manual transfer switches located indoors shall be NEMA 3R.

B. Enclosures shall be wall mounted or free-standing floor or pad mounted.

C. NEMA 3R enclosures shall be code gauge steel as per UL 50 with ANSI #61 powder coat finish.

D. 3RX enclosures shall be 316 stainless steel.

E. Provide strip heater with thermostat for Type 3R and 3RX enclosure requirements.

**2.4 MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL PERFORMANCE**

A. Mechanical position indicators (yellow) visible to the operator shall be included for Source 1 (preferred), Source 2, (alternate), and Center Off (disconnected).

B. Auxiliary position indicating contacts, rated 10 amps, 250 Vac shall be provided consisting of one closed when the manual transfer switch is connected to Source 1 (preferred), and one contact closed when the manual transfer switch is connected to Source 2 (alternate).

C. A form A contact shall be provided to indicate switch is in the Center Off (disconnected) position.

D. A Load Dump disconnect circuit breaker shall be provided between source 1 of the manual transfer switch and the 16 Series Outlets for Load Bank Connection. Load Dump circuit breaker shall include shunt trip and be sized for the full rating of the manual transfer switch and capable of carrying, at minimum, the full kW rating of the permanent generator for a minimum of 4-hours. Provided ground fault (GFI) protection for circuit breakers rated 800 Amperes or larger. Load dump disconnect circuit breaker

shall be Square D, or the same manufacture as the building's main service disconnect equipment.

E. Auto Start Destination Toggle Switch shall be provided to allow for the user to select which generator the ATS will start when the engine start signal is sent from the building automatic transfer switch.

F. The Dual-Purpose Manual Transfer Switch integrated quick connects shall provide a connecting means for connecting a portable generator or a load bank.

G. Generator quick connects:
   1. For 400A and below models, there shall be one (1) row of up to five (5) single pole connections.
   2. For 600A - 800A models, there shall be two (2) rows of up to five (5) single pole connections.
   3. For 1000A-1200A models, there shall be three (3) rows of up to 5 single pole connections.
   4. For 1600A models, there shall be four (4) rows of up to 5 single pole connections.
   5. For 2000A models, there shall be five (5) rows of up to 5 single pole connections.
   6. For 2500A models, there shall be seven (7) rows of up to 5 single pole connections.
   7. For 3000A models, there shall be eight (8) rows of up to 5 single pole connections.

H. Neutral connections are not required for Load Bank connections:
   1. For 400A and below models, there shall be one (1) row of up to four (4) series single pole connections.
   2. For 600A - 800A models, there shall be two (2) rows of up to four (4) single pole connections.
   3. For 1000A-1200A models, there shall be three (3) rows of up to four (4) single pole connections.
   4. For 1600A models, there shall be three (3) rows of up to 4 single pole connections.
   5. For 2000A models, there shall be five (5) rows of up to 4 single pole connections.
   6. For 2500A models, there shall be seven (7) rows of up to 4 single pole connections.
   7. For 3000A models, there shall be eight (8) rows of up to 4 single pole connections.

I. All electrical quick connectors shall be 16 Series cam type single pole connectors; color coded as per local industry standard practice:
   1. 240V and below: phase 1 = black, phase 2 = red or orange for hi-leg, phase 3 = blue (if required).

2. 480V: phase 1 = brown, phase 2 = purple or orange, phase 3 = yellow.
3. Ground shall always be green.
4. Neutral shall always be white.
5. A minimum of 25% phase ampacity shall be provided for ground connections for portable generator and load bank connections.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

A. Enclosure Heater(s): A 125-watt enclosure heater with transformer and thermostat (adjustable from 30° to 140 degrees F) shall be provided for outdoor installations where type 3R or 3RX, enclosures are specified. (This feature shall be equal to ASCO accessory 44G and shall be capable of being added to existing switches). Thermostat shall be set to 40-degrees F.

B. Surge Suppression – A SPD with a surge current rating of 65kA shall be provided with individually matched fused metal oxide varistors (MOVs). It shall include LED status indication of normal operation, under voltage, power loss, phase loss or component failure. Shall include form C dry contacts for external alarm or monitoring. The unit shall be enclosed in a Noryl housing rated NEMA 4, 12, and 4X. Shall comply with UL 1449 latest edition. (This feature shall be equal to ASCO accessory 73).

C. Shunt Trip Option on the Load Bank Breaker- 119LC - 24VDC Shunt Trip on the manual transfer switches load bank breaker to integrate with building automatic transfer switch. Load dump upon loss of utility source or automatic generator start signal from the automatic transfer switch. Circuit breakers 800 Amps and larger shall include GFI, Ground Fault Interrupter.

D. Power Meter - ASCO 5210 Power Meter Connected to Load Side (135L)

E. Accessory 171EP Base Package Bundle – Two form C contacts shall be connected to a terminal block that operate when Source 1 and Source 2 voltage is present at manual transfer switch terminals. The following indicators shall be provided:
1. Load Connected to Source 1 (Green).
2. Load Connected to Source 2 (Red).
3. Source 1 Available (Green).
4. Source 2 Available (Red).
5. Load Disconnect (Yellow)
6. Phase Rotation Monitor
7. Maintained Engine Start Switch and Common Alarm LED/Contact

## 2.6 WITHSTAND AND CLOSING RATINGS

A. The Manual Transfer Switch shall be rated to close on and withstand the available RMS symmetrical short circuit current at the terminals with the type of overcurrent protection shown on the plans.
1. Source 1 WCR ratings @ 480v shall be as follows when used with specific

circuit breakers or current limiting fuses:

| MTDQ Size | Source 1 Withstand & Closing Rating MCCB | Source 1 W/CLF |
|---|---|---|
| 150A - 600A | 50,000A | 200,000A |
| 800A - 1200A | 50,000A | 200,000A |
| 1600A - 2000A | 65,000A | 200,000A |
| 2500A - 3000A | 100,000A | 200,000A |

2. Source 2 WCR ratings @ 600V shall be as follows when used with any molded case circuit breaker:

| MTDQ Size | Source 2 Withstand & Closing Rating MCCB at Source Wired to Quick Connects |
|---|---|
| 105A - 600A | 22,000A |
| 800A - 1200A | 22,000A |
| 1600A - 2000A | 65,000A |
| 2600A - 3000A | 100,000A |

**2.7 TESTS AND CERTIFICATION**

A. The manual transfer switch shall be factory tested to ensure proper operation of the individual components and correct overall sequence of operation and to ensure compliance with the specification requirements.

B. Upon request, the manufacturer shall provide a notarized letter certifying compliance with all of the requirements of this specification including compliance with the above codes and standards and withstand and closing ratings. The certification shall identify, by serial number(s), the equipment involved. No exceptions to the specifications, other than those stipulated at the time of the submittal, shall be included in the certification.

C. The manual transfer switch manufacturer shall be certified to ISO 9001: 2008 International Quality Standard and the manufacturer shall have third party certification verifying quality assurance in design/development, production, installation and servicing in accordance with ISO 9001: 2008.

**2.8 SERVICE REPRESENTATION**

A. The manual transfer switch manufacturer shall maintain a national service organization of company- employed personnel located throughout the contiguous United States. The service center's personnel must be factory trained and must be on call 24 hours a day, 365 days a year.

B. The manufacturer shall maintain records of switch shipments, by serial number, for a minimum of 20 years.

C. For ease of maintenance, the manual transfer switch nameplate shall include drawing numbers and serviceable part numbers.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. General: Install manual transfer switches where shown, in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's written instructions and recognized industry practices to ensure that the transfer switch complies with the specified requirements and serve the intended purposes. Provide and install complete operating instructions in a Plexiglas enclosure for each type of transfer switch inside the enclosure.

B. Standard: Comply with NEMA standards, requirements of the NEC, and applicable portions of NECA Standard of Installation pertaining to installation of manual transfer switches.

C. Concrete Pad: Install free-standing floor or pad mounted manual transfer switches on a reinforced concrete pad. The pad shall extend 6" beyond the manual transfer switch base, unless shown otherwise. Furnish the exact position of any block outs, mounting bolts, and the dimensions and location of the manual transfer switch pad in a timely manner so as to prevent delay of the concrete work. Refer to Section 26 05 00 for housekeeping pads and Division 3 for Concrete Work.

D. Provide circuits, conductors, and raceways as required for manual transfer switch options and accessories as required or specified. Provide separate dedicated circuits from the emergency branch circuit panel board to the manual transfer switch when required for indicated options or accessories. Provide control circuits from building automatic transfer switch to load bank shunt trip circuit breaker for load bank dump upon loss of building utility power.

E. Provide shunt trip control of load bank circuit breaker to dump the load bank load if the building automatic transfer switch loses utility power.

**3.2 GROUNDING**

A. Ground the manual transfer switch to the building grounding system and provide a driven ground electrode at the manual transfer switch location or bond to the building grounding system ground rod(s) if in close proximity.

**3.3 CONTROLS**

A. Provide manual transfer switch load dump control wiring and raceway from the automatic transfer switch to the load bank shunt trip circuit breaker to dump the load bank load upon generator start signal from the building automatic transfer switch(es).

## 3.4 TESTING

A. Notify Owner's Commissioning Authority (CxA) prior to performing any tests so the CxA may witness tests at his/her discretion. Refer to Section 26 01 00 Commissioning of Electrical Systems. Testing shall be witnessed by owner and Engineer.

B. Coordinate testing of manual transfer switch with the testing of the permanent generator source and associated automatic transfer switches, including the generator load bank test.

C. Contractor shall furnish all instruments, load banks, and personnel required for test. Submit 4 copies of certified test results to Architect/Engineer for review. Test reports shall include date and time of test, relative humidity, temperature, and weather conditions.

D. Pre-energization checks: Before energizing, check for continuous of circuits and for short circuits.

E. Ground Fault Interrupter (GFI) test for load bank circuit breakers 1,000 Amps and larger: After completion of construction and before final acceptance testing, the ground fault protection system shall be field-tested and reset to the manufacturer's settings for both current and time by a representative of the manufacturer's engineering service department. After the test, set ground fault to 20 percent of overcurrent device rating or 600 Amperes, whichever is lower.

E. Provide thermal infrared scan of the manual transfer switch under full load as directed and witnessed by Owner. Correct any deficiencies causing abnormal heating and repeat the scan. Provide digital video documentation with deficiencies corrected for comparison to future test. Make corrections as needed as soon as possible as directed by the Owner. Repeat the scan at the 11-month prior to close out and make corrections prior to close-out.

F. Submittals: Furnish instruments and personnel required for tests. Submit 4 copies of certified test results to the Architect for review. Test reports shall include switchboard tested, date and time of test, relative humidity, temperature, and weather conditions.

## 3.5 TRAINING

A. Provide four hours training, one hour each for four persons, four separate days. Coordinate with the Owner for manual transfer switch training which may coincide with any other related or required generator or automatic transfer switch training.

**END OF SECTION 26 32 16**

# SECTION 26 36 00 - NEW AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES (Connected to Existing Emergency Generator)

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. The Conditions of the Contract and applicable requirements of Division 1 and Section 26 05 00 govern this Section.

### 1.2 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish and install new automatic transfer switches, complete with wiring and controls as shown on the drawings and as specified herein.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. NEC and NFPA Compliance: Comply with applicable portions of the NEC (NFPA 70) including, but not limited to, emergency and standby power generation systems (NFPA 99 & 110).

B. IEEE Compliance: Comply with applicable Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (IEEE) standards pertaining to automatic transfer switches.

C. Supplier: Authorized distributor of specified manufacturer with minimum three years documented experience.

### 1.4 AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCH WARRANTY

A. Provide two-year parts and labor warranty from date of substantial completion. Provide an additional three-year parts warranty after the second year.

### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit manufacturer's certified computer-generated performance and capacity data in accordance with specification requirements.

B. Submit manufacturer's Installation, Start-Up and Service instructions.
   1. Recommended conductors, overcurrent protection and disconnect size.
   2. Electrical interlocks.

C. Submit recommended clearance dimensions.

D. Submit internal wiring diagram of Control Center.

E. Submit sequence of operation in narrative form.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 AUTOMATIC STARTING SEQUENCE OF EVENTS

A. Sequence of Events:
   1. Upon drop in normal source voltage to 65 to 70% of rated voltage, or upon failure of the normal source of electrical supply, the engine shall be automatically cranked and brought up to the full operating speed.
   2. The cranking motor circuit shall be instantly broken when the engine starts.
   3. Within 10 seconds the generator shall be brought up to operating speed; the generator voltage shall operate the automatic transfer switch, disconnecting the load from the normal source of supply and connecting the emergency power to the load.
   4. Upon restoration of the normal source voltage to 92 to 95% of rated voltage or restoration of normal source of supply, the sequence shall be reversed, restoring the transfer switch to the automatic normal operating position, disconnecting the load from the emergency generator and reconnecting the load to the normal source of supply. The emergency generator set will continue to operate for a period of from 1 to 5 minutes after the restoration of the normal source of supply. Should the engine fail to start upon the first crank, there shall be two additional cranking attempts made with a 15 second rest between cranks, after which the cranking cycle shall cease and an alarm shall sound to indicate malfunctioning of the system.

B. Instruction Data and Drawings: Commercial type operating instructions shall be provided consisting of operating and maintenance manuals, parts books, dimensional drawings and wiring diagrams. Three copies of dimensional drawings and wiring diagrams shall be provided as specified.
   1. Operating Instructions: Provide and install in a suitable enclosure operating instructions for the automatic transfer switch.

### 2.2 AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

A. Rating and Construction:
   1. Refer to the project drawings for specifications on the sizes and types of transfer switch equipment, withstand and closing ratings, voltage and ampere ratings, and accessories. All transfer switches have switched neutrals and shall be electrically operated and mechanically held.
   2. All transfer switches and accessories shall be UL listed and labeled, tested per UL Standard 1008, and CSA Approved, and comply with NEMA ICS 2-447. When protected by molded case breaker withstand and closing ratings shall not be less than the following RMS symmetrical amps at 600 VAC:

| Switch Size in Amps | WCR @ 480 Volts |
|---|---|
| Up to 125 | 22,000 |
| 150 to 260 | 30,000 |

| | |
|---|---|
| 300 to 400 | 65,000 |
| 600 to 800 | 65,000 |
| 1000 to 1200 | 100,000 |
| 1600 and larger | 100,000 |

3. Provide one of the following standard products:
   a. Onan OTEC or OTPC Series as required
   b. Match Standby Generator System Manufacturer.
4. Electrical operation shall be accomplished by a momentarily energized single solenoid operating mechanism, which receives power from the source to which the load is being transferred. Fuse or thermal protection of the main operator is prohibited. The operating transfer time shall be 1/6 of a second or less. Mechanical locking in each position shall be accomplished without the aid of permanent magnets, latching solenoid, or motor operators.
5. Operation shall be inherently double-throw whereby all contacts move simultaneously and with no programmed delay in a neutral position. Electrical spacing shall be equal to or exceed those listed in table 15.1 of UL 1008. Only those main contact structures specifically manufactured for transfer switch service shall be acceptable. An overload or short circuit shall not cause the switch to go to a neutral position.
6. Inspection of all contacts (movable and stationary) shall be possible from the front of the switch without disassembly of operating linkages and without disconnection of power conductors. A manual operating handle shall be provided for maintenance purposes. The maintenance handle shall permit the operator to stop the contacts at any point throughout the entire travel to properly inspect and service the contacts when required.
7. All switches shall have fully rated neutral transfer contacts that momentarily interconnect the neutrals of the sources and load for 100 milliseconds maximum, during the transfer / retransfer operation. The neutrals shall remain so interconnected until the line contacts close on the alternate source. Line and neutral contacts shall be driven by a single main operator.
8. Enclosure shall be NEMA Type 12, indoor use, dust tight and drip-tight.

B. Controls and Accessories:
   1. Controls shall provide for the automatic starting sequence of the generator set.
   2. Automatic controls shall signal the engine-generator set to start upon signal from normal source sensors. Solid-state time delay start, adjustable from 0 to 5 seconds (factory set at 2 seconds) shall avoid nuisance start-ups. Battery voltage starting contacts shall be gold, dry type contacts factory wired to a field wiring terminal block.
   3. The switch shall transfer when the emergency source reaches the set point voltage and frequency. Provide a solid-state time delay on transfer, adjustable from 0 to 120 seconds.
   4. The switch shall retransfer the load to the normal source after a time delay retransfer, adjustable from 0 to 30 minutes. Retransfer time delay shall be immediately bypassed if the emergency power source fails.
   5. Control shall be solid state and designed for a high level of immunity to power

line surges and transients, demonstrated by test to IEEE Standard 587-1980. The control shall have optically isolated logic inputs, high isolation transformers for AC inputs, and relays on all outputs. Control shall be quick-disconnect for ease of service.

6. Automatic transfer switches shall have inherent phase balance protection logic to detect a 'single phasing' Solid state undervoltage sensors shall simultaneously monitor all phases of both sources. Pick-up and dropout settings shall be adjustable. Voltage sensors shall allow for adjustment to sense partial loss of voltage on any phase. Voltage sensors shall have field calibration of actual supply voltage to nominal system voltage. The transfer switch controller shall be equipped with a fault output terminal interconnected to a 24Vdc shunt trip, integral to the transfer switch and with built-in time delay, that functions to disconnect the utility source from the load should the standby emergency source fail to start.
7. Controls shall signal the engine-generator set to stop after a time delay, adjustable from 0 to 10 minutes, beginning on return to the normal source.
8. Power for transfer operation shall be from the source to which the load is being transferred.
9. The control shall include latching diagnostic indicators to pinpoint the last successful step in the sequence of control functions, and to indicate the present status of the control functions in real time.
10. The control shall include provisions for remote transfer inhibit and area protection.
11. Provide front panel devices mounted on cabinet front consisting of:
    a. A key operated selector switch to provide the following positions and functions:
        1) Test - Simulates normal power loss to control for testing of generator set. Controls shall provide for a test with or without load transfer. Refer to Part 3 for programming requirements.
        2) Normal - Normal operating position.
        3) Retransfer - Momentary position to override retransfer time delay and cause immediate return to normal source, if available.
12. Exerciser Clock: Provide solid state exerciser clock to set the day, time, and duration of generator set exercise/test period. Provide a with/without load selector switch for the exercise period. Refer to Part 3 for programming requirements.
13. Provide Phase Sequence Monitor/Balance Module to protect against inadvertent phase rotation hookup and monitor for voltage phase imbalance between phases.
14. Submittals:
    a. Submittal drawings and information on the transfer switches including installation drawings, wiring diagrams, dimensions, weights, etc. shall be provided. Full descriptive information on accessory items shall be furnished. All submittals shall be reviewed by the Engineer and approved prior to fabrication.
15. Instruction Data and Drawings:

a. Commercial type operating instructions shall be provided consisting of operating and maintenance manuals, parts books, dimensional drawings and wiring diagrams. Three copies of each are to be furnished per Contract Closeout specifications.
b. Operating Instructions: Provide and install in a plexiglass enclosure complete operating instructions for each type of transfer switch.

**2.3 ELECTRICAL AND MECHANICAL PERFORMANCE**

A. The switch must comply with UL 1008 and NEMA Standard Publication ICS 2-447. In addition, the switch must meet or exceed the following requirements and if so requested, be verified by certified laboratory test report.
1. Temperature Rise: Measurements shall be made after the overload and the endurance tests.
2. Withstand: UL listed to withstand the magnitude of fault current available at the switch terminals when coordinated with respective protective devices at an X/R ratio of 6.6 or less. The main contacts of the transfer switch shall not trip open or weld when subjected to fault currents.
3. Dielectric: Test, following the withstand current rating test, at 1960 volts AC rms minimum.
4. Transient Withstandability: Control panel voltage surge withstand capability test per IEEE Standard 472-1974 and voltage impulse withstand test per NEMA Standard publication ICS-1-109.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. General: Install automatic transfer switch where shown, in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's written instructions and recognized industry practices, to ensure that the automatic transfer switch complies with the specified requirements and serve the intended purposes.

B. Standard: Comply with NEMA standards, requirements of the NEC, and applicable portions of NECA Standard of Installation pertaining to installation of standby engine-driven generator sets and accessories.

C. Options and Accessories: Provide circuits, conductors, and raceways as required for options and accessories as specified.

D. Provide dry contacts and outputs to monitor transfer switch and generator alarm conditions and notify Owner’s Police or security personnel, and building management controls system and personnel, both when transfer to emergency occurs and when transfer to normal occurs.

**3.2 GROUNDING**

A. Install the generator automatic transfer switch as a non-separately derived system. Do not ground the generator neutral to the generator frame. Ground the generator frame to the building grounding system.

## 3.3 CONTROLS

A. Provide generator start-up control wiring and raceway from each automatic transfer switch to the respective standby generator set as required.

## 3.4 TESTING

A. Provide testing in accordance with NFPA 110. Provide manufacturer's start-up service to test emergency power system to demonstrate standby capability and compliance with specified requirements, including automatic start-up, controls and full load acceptance. Test shall include operation of standby power system with voltage check while the system is loaded to ensure proper operation of the emergency generator, transfer switches, and other system components. Operation of the system shall simulate standby power conditions, that is, loss of main electrical power to the building. Test period shall be trouble-free operation with at least four automatic transfer switch operations (each switch) within the period of operation.
   1. The generator shall be started cold and run for a four-hour test with building load connected and load bank to achieve 90 percent of rated generator capacity. Monitor and record available natural gas pressure and verify supply is adequate and stable during the entire test.
   3. Retransfer the load after test.
   4. After this test, the set shall cool for five minutes, then must start and carry 90% rated capacity load for four hours.
   5. Provide additional Owner witnessed testing for all ancillary equipment on generator. Demonstrate all specified functions and alarms.
   6. Demonstrate the cranking cycle and all engine safety devices. The Owner's authorized representative shall be instructed in the operation and maintenance of the unit. Provide minimum 4-hours training at each campus for 4-persons; one hour on four separate days

B. Provide separate written inspection report by manufacturer's factory representative regarding existing condition and/or deficiencies regarding the existing diesel generator operation.

C. Contractor shall furnish all instruments and personnel required for test. Submit 4 copies of certified test results to Architect/Engineer for review. Test reports shall include date and time of test, relative humidity, temperature and weather conditions.

D. Upon completion of all tests, Contractor shall notify the Owner / Architect in writing the fuel level of the existing fuel tank if generator is fueled by diesel.

## 3.5 MISCELLANEOUS

A. Provide circuits and receptacles to serve loads as directed by Owner / Architect, including, but not limited to:
   1. Telecommunications equipment
   2. Public Address Communication & Master Clock System
   3. Fire Alarm, Detection and Signaling Systems
   4. Security Systems (except for battery powered access control door hardware)
   5. Video Surveillance CCTV System including remote camera power supplies
   6. Technology/Computer data MDF/IDF equipment
   7. MDF/IDF dedicated HVAC equipment
   8. Selected refrigeration equipment
   9. Clinic refrigerator and selected clinic receptacles
   10. Building Access control System including remote power supplies, except do not power door electric strike or hinge hardware on emergency power.
   11. Owner's Radio Base Station / Radio Repeaters / Distributive Antennae System (DAS)
   12. Elevator
   13. Point of Sale Stations
   14. Kitchen Manager's Work Station
   15. Building Management and Control System (BMCS)
   16. Special education receptacles, one in each room.
   17. First responder Bi-Directional Distributive Antennae System (DAS) Systems

## 3.6 PROGRAMMING

A. Program automatic transfer switches for delayed transfer to emergency and sequential operation to transfer loads by priority based on manufacturer recommendation or as indicated below:
   1. Life Safety Loads – less than 10 seconds
   2. Critical Loads – more than 15 seconds, less than 30 seconds
   3. Equipment Loads – more than 40 seconds, less than 60 seconds
   4. Non-Legally required loads – more than 75 seconds, less than 120 seconds

B. Program automatic transfer switch voltage and frequency pick-up and drop out for load shedding based on load priority for voltage and frequency based on manufacturer recommendations or as indicated below:
   1. Life Safety pick-up 10%; drop out 20%
   2. Critical Loads pick-up 10%; drop out 15%
   3. Equipment Loads pick-up 8%; drop out 15%
   4. Non-Legally required loads pick-up 5%; drop out 10%

C. Exerciser clock (if this transfer switch is the transfer switch to exercise the generator): Program automatic transfer switch exerciser clock for generator to run every Tuesday, 8:00 AM, for 30-miniute run time, without load. Verify with Owner.

D. Test switch: Program automatic transfer test switch for generator to run with load, for maximum 30-miniute test time plus cool-down. Verify with Owner.

## 3.7 TRAINING

A. Provide 2 hours training, one hour each for four persons, four separate days.

**END OF SECTION 26 36 00**

# SECTION 26 43 00 - SURGE PROTECTION DEVICES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 DESCRIPTION

A. The Surge Protection Device (SPD) covered under this section includes service entrance type surge protection devices suitable for use as Type 1 or Type 2 Devices per UL1449 5th Edition, applied to the line or load side of the utility feed inside the facility. SPDs shall be connected in parallel with the facility's wiring system. The unit shall be manufactured in the USA by a qualified manufacturer of suppression filter system equipment, which has been engaged in the commercial design and manufacture of such products for a minimum of five years.

B. Contractor shall provide all labor, materials, equipment and incidentals as shown, specified and required to finish and install surge protection devices.

### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Reference Standard: Comply with the latest edition of the applicable provisions and recommendations of the following, except as otherwise stated in this document:
   1. UL 1449 Fifth Edition
   2. ANSI/IEEE C62.41, Recommended Practice for Surge Voltages in Low-Voltage AC Power Circuits.
   3. ANSI/IEEE C62.45, Guide for Surge Testing for equipment connected to Low-Voltage AC Power Circuits.
   4. IEEE 1100 Emerald Book.
   5. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA 70 (NEC), 75, and 78).
   6. UL 1283 – Electromagnetic Interference Filters

B. When requested for verification, provide copies of the following:
   1. Copies of actual let through voltage data in the form of oscilloscope results for both ANSI/IEEE C62.41 Category C3 (combination wave) and B3 (Ring wave) tested in accordance with ANSI/IEEE C6245.
   2. Copies of test reports from a recognized independent testing laboratory, capable of producing 200kA surge current waveforms, verifying the suppressor components can survive published surge current rating on both a per mode and per phase basis using the ANSI/IEEE C62.41 impulse waveform C3 (8 x 20 microsecond, 20kV/10kA). Test data on an individual module is not acceptable.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit shop drawings complete with all technical information for specific unit dimensions, let through voltage data, detailed installation instructions, maintenance manual, and wiring configuration.

B. Provide detailed marked-up copy of this specification with line-by-line compliance or exception statements to all provisions of this specification.

C. Copies of Manufacturer's catalog data, technical information and specifications on equipment.

D. Copies of documentation stating that the Surge Protection Device is listed from a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) (UL, ETL, etc.) and are tested and multi-listed to UL 1449 5th Edition and UL 1283.

E. Copy of warranty statement clearly establishing the terms and conditions to the building/facility owner/operator.

## 1.4 WARRANTY

A. The manufacturer shall provide a minimum 20-year warranty for high and very high exposure SPDs. Very high exposure unit warranties shall include exposure to temporary extended over-voltage conditions. Provide a minimum 15-year warranty for all medium exposure SPDs, and a minimum 10-year warranty for all other SPDs for parts from date of substantial completion against failure. Contractor shall assist the Owner with manufacturer warranty registration.

# PART 2 – PRODUCTS

## 2.1 APPROVED MANUFACTURER

A. Low exposure, minimum 10-year parts warranty, minimum 50k Amps per mode, 100k Amps per phase, Type 1 and Type 2.
   1. Recessed mount panelboard extension with brushed stainless-steel front:
      a. ACT Communications:471- ###V-050-SS-F-PB flush series.
      b. ABB Current Technology PX3-050-VVV- #X-SF-X-F- # series.
      c. SSI Surge Suppression, Inc. CSMx12-FMPxSS series.
      d. SST Southern Tier Technologies T45-VVVV-50-AWAJ2-C-RKSS(Stainless Steel front).
   2. Branch panelboard surface mounted:
      a. ACT Communications 455 series.
      b. ABB Current Technology CG3 60 series.
      c. SSI Surge Suppression, Inc. CSMx12 series.
      d. SST Southern Tier Technologies T45-VVVV-50AWAJ2-C

B. Medium exposure, minimum 15-year parts warranty, minimum 120k Amps per mode, 240k Amps per phase, Type 2.
   1. ACT Communications 471 series.
   2. ABB Current Technology CGP3 125 series.
   3. SSI Surge Suppression, Inc. CSMx24 series.
   4. SST Southern Tier Technologies T45-VVVV-120A series

C. High exposure, minimum 20-year parts warranty, minimum 200k Amps per mode, 400k Amps per phase, Type 2 SPD.
   1. ACT Communications 471 x200 series.

2. ABB Current Technology TG3 200 series.
3. SSI Surge Suppression, Inc. CHLxM series.
4. SST Southern Tier Technologies T45-VVVV-200A series

D. Very high exposure at service entrance 1,201 Amps and above: Minimum 20-year parts warranty; minimum 200k Amps per mode; 400k Amps per phase, Type 1 and 2 SPD:
1. ACT Communications 471 x200 SEL series.
2. ABB Current Technology SEL3 200 series.

The service entrance protector shall incorporate a combination of TPMOV and Selenium technology allowing for transient surge and temporary over voltage protection. The unit shall be able to prevent common temporary over voltages and high impedance faults from damaging the MOVs, increasing their longevity and ability to protect the critical load. Limited and Intermediate current TOVs can be caused by a loss of the neutral conductor in a split phase or three phase power system. The available fault current will be determined by the impedance of the loads connected to the phases opposite the SPD and are typically in the range of 30A to 1000A. Minimum 20-year parts warranty, extended over-voltage protection, minimum 200k Amps per mode, 400k Amps per phase, Type 2 SPD. The Selenium elements must limit voltage to the MOV as a percent of nominal as outlined below:

| Overvoltage seen by MOVs as % of Nominal | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | available current | | | |
| time | 30A | 100A | 500A | 1000A |
| 1 cycle | 120% | 130% | 150% | 160% |
| 10 cycles | 130% | 150% | 160% | 160% |
| 30 cycles | 140% | 150% | 160% | 160% |

*To verify damage to the MOVs has been mitigated, the percent overvoltage seen at the MOV must be less than 200% for split-phase applications or 173% for three-phase applications (100% is nominal).

## 2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS / ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Declared Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage (MCOV) shall be greater than 115 percent of the nominal system operating voltage and in compliance with test and evaluation procedures outlined in the nominal discharge surge current test of UL1449, section 37.7.3. MCOV values claimed based on the component's value or on the 30-minute 115% overvoltage test in UL1449 will not be accepted.

B. Unit shall have not more than 10% deterioration or degradation of the UL1449, Voltage Protection Rating (VPR) due to repeated surges.

C. Protection Modes SVR (6kV, 500A) and UL1449 VPR (6kV, 3kA) for grounded WYE/delta and High Leg Delta circuits with voltages of (480Y/277), (208Y/120), (600Y/347). 3-Phase, 4 wire circuits, (120/240) split phase shall be as follows and comply with test procedures outlined in UL1449: Values Depicted are based on a system Without Disconnect / With Disconnect

| System Voltage | Mode | MCOV | C3 Wave | UL 1449 VPR Rating |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 120/240 | L-N | 150 | 650/775 | 700/800 |
| 120/208 | L-G | 150 | 650/825 | 700/900 |
| | N-G | 0 | 500/500 | 900/1000 |
| | L-L | 300 | 950/1250 | 900/1200 |
| 277/480 | L-N | 320 | 1125/1225 | 900/1200 |
| | L-G | 320 | 1075/1225 | 1200/1200 |
| | N-G | 0 | 900/900 | 1200/1500 |
| | L-L | 550 | 1950/2200 | 1800/1800 |

D. Electrical Noise Filter- each unit shall include a high-performance EMI/RFI noise rejection filter. Noise attenuation for electric noise shall be as follows using the MIL-STD-220A insertion loss test method.
   1. 14 dB from 10 kHz to 1 MHz.

E. Each Unit shall provide the following features:
   1. Phase Indicator lights, Form C dry contacts, counter and audible alarm.
   2. Field testable while installed.
   3. High performance interconnecting cable.
   4. The UL 1449 Voltage Protection Rating (VPR) shall be permanently affixed to the SPD unit.
   5. The UL 1449 Nominal Discharge Surge Current Rating shall be 20kA
   6. The SCCR rating of the SPD shall be 200kAIC without requiring an upstream protection device for safe operation.
   7. The unit shall be listed as a Type 2 SPD per UL1449.
   8. Power wiring: SPD shall be equipped with mechanical lugs that can accept up to #2 AWG wire on High Exposure units and up to #6 on Medium and Low Exposure units.

## 2.3 POWER CABLES FOR CONNECTION

A. Power wiring: Conductors between all high and very-high SPDs and switchgear shall be high performance interconnect system “Low Z Cable” cables with Ultra Low impedance characteristics at 10kHz and above.

B. High Performance Low Impedance cable shall be #6 AWG minimum for Very High, High, and Medium Exposure SPDs and #10 AWG minimum for Low Exposure SPDs.

# PART 3 – EXECUTION

## 3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION

A. The unit shall be installed as close as practical to the facility's wiring system in accordance with applicable national/local electrical codes and the manufacturer's recommended installation instructions. Connection shall be with high performance, low impedance cables in conduit and shall not be any longer than necessary, avoiding

unnecessary bends. Minimum wire size and overcurrent protection device for disconnect shall be provided and as recommended by the manufacturer.

B. Units specified for lighting and appliance panel boards as panelboard extensions (EGPE) shall be mounted directly above or below the first section of the panel board it is protecting. Any other mounting location will not be acceptable and shall be corrected, without exception, at no additional cost to the Owner.

C. Units specified for panelboards, switchboards, or motor control centers shall be mounted directly above or adjacent to the panelboard, switchboard or motor control center using unistrut supports secured to structure as required. Conduit length between power distribution panelboard or switchboard shall be less than two inches. Mounting above equipment is not acceptable.

D. Overcurrent device and conductors for devices shall be the maximum recommended by the manufacturer. Manufacturer's recommendations shall prevail over the information given in the plans and specifications.

E. Provide recessed mounted panelboard extension type enclosures for devices protecting recessed panelboards. Enclosure front shall match panelboard front material and finish. Provide brushed stainless-steel front at kitchens and food processing areas.

## 3.2 UNIT SELECTION BASED ON EXPOSURE LEVEL

A. (SPDVH) Provide very-high exposure SPDs with Selenium and TPMOV technology for the following new electrical equipment or where indicated:
   1. Service entrance rated 1,201 Amps and above.

B. (SPDH) Provide high exposure SPDs for the following new electrical equipment or where indicated:
   1. Service entrance rated 801 – 1,200 Amps.
   2. Switchboards located outside.

C. (SPDM): Provide medium exposure SPDs at the following new electrical equipment or where indicated:
   1. Service entrance rated 401 - 800 Amps.
   2. Panelboards above 600 Amps.
   3. Motor control centers.
   4. Non-service entrance switchboards.

D. (SPDL): Provide low exposure SPDs at the following new electrical equipment or where indicated:
   1. Service entrance rated 400 Amps and below.
   2. Panelboards 600 Amps and below.

## 3.3 TESTING

A. Factory Trained Representative shall provide start-up to include initial verification of proper installation, shortest cable connection, and initiate factory warranty. The technician will be required to do the following as a minimum:
   1. Verify the installation follows applicable national / local electrical codes related to SPDs and the manufacturer's Installation, Operation and Maintenance Instructions and recommendations.

2. Verify overcurrent device rating.
2. Verify all wiring connections and installation conforms to manufacturer's recommendations.
3. Record information for each product installed and include in O&M Manual

B. A copy of the Factory diagnostic test report and written approval of the installation shall be included with the Electrical Operating and Maintenance Manual. The Contractor shall make all adjustments, changes, corrections, etc. as required by the Factory Trained Representative so that the installation follows the manufacturer's installation and operation instructions without additional charge to the Owner.

**END OF SECTION 26 43 00**

# SECTION 26 51 13 - LIGHTING FIXTURES

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Work Included: Lighting fixture work is as shown, scheduled and specified.

B. Applications: The applications of lighting fixtures required for the project include the following:
   1. General lighting
   2. Emergency lighting
   3. Outdoor area lighting

### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Provide interior building LED fixtures that comply with the Design Lights Consortium (DLC) standards and are DLC or DLC Premium listed as a Qualifying Product at time of proposal submittal date.

B. UL Standards: Lighting fixtures shall conform to applicable UL standards, and be UL or ETL labeled.

C. Light fixtures shall conform to the requirements of NFPA 101, and 70 (NEC).

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit product data for light fixtures, and emergency lighting equipment, including generator transfer devices.

B. Specification Compliance Review: Mark up a complete copy of the specification section for the product to indicate a) acknowledgement of the specification requirement (Comply), or b) acknowledgement that the particular specification requirement does not apply to this specific project (Not Applicable) or, c) acknowledgement that the specification requirement cannot be made or that a variance is being submitted for review to the Architect / Engineer / Owner (Does Not Comply, Explanation:) Do not submit an outline form of compliance, submit a complete copy with the product data.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Provide products produced by manufacturers shown or scheduled for each type of lighting fixture.
   1. Light fixtures:
      General Electric
      Acuity

Phillips
US LED

2. LED Drivers:
   Philips
   Osram Optotronic
   Eldo LED
3. Emergency Battery Packs with self-testing drivers/inverters:
   Bodine
   Chloride
   Lithonia
   Dual Lite
   IOTA
4. Emergency Generator/Inverter Load Control Bypass Relay (ELC); UL924 listed and 0-10Vdc compatible:
   Bodine
5. Emergency Generator / Inverter Branch Circuit Transfer Switch, UL 1008 listed and 0-10Vdc compatible:
   Bodine GTD20A

## 2.2 MATERIALS AND COMPONENTS

A. General: Provide lighting fixtures of the size, type, and rating indicated, with all accessories for a complete aesthetic installation.

B. Fixture Types:
   1. General:
      a. LED Lay-in edge lit or back flat panel / troffer fixtures: Opaque, edge or back lighted, 4000 Kelvin color temperature. 0-10 Vdc dimmable, L70: 60,000 minimum hours.
      b. Safety chains and wire guards at fixtures in mechanical and electrical rooms, and high abuse areas. Provide safety chains only for gymnasium fixtures which shall be inherently vandal proof, no wire guards.
      c. Fixtures located outdoors, in interior unconditioned spaces, and in wet locations shall be of aluminum construction.
      d. Fixtures with door frames shall be of aluminum construction, white finish where located in kitchens, food prep areas, toilets, restrooms, locker rooms, dressing rooms, showers, and unconditioned spaces.
      e. DLC, DLC Premium or Energy Star qualified unless specified otherwise.
      f. Warranty: 2x2 and 2x4 lay-in light fixtures: 5-year fixture warranty for fixture, driver, and light engine. All other light fixtures: 5-year replacement warranty for fixture, driver, and light engine.
      g. Outdoor fixtures shall include a discrete / replaceable surge suppression device in addition to the surge suppression incorporated in the LED driver.
      h. Operating temperature rating shall be between -40 degrees F and 120 degrees F.
      i. Color Rendering Index (CRI): ≥ 80 Indoor; ≥ 65 Outdoor

j. The manufacturer shall have performed JEDEC (Joint Electron Devices Engineering Council) reliability tests on the LEDs as follows: High Temperature Operating Life (HTOL), Room Temperature Operating Life (RTOL), Low Temperature Operating Life (LTOL), Powered Temperature Cycle (PTMCL), Non-Operating Thermal Shock (TMSK), Mechanical Shock Variable Vibration Frequency, and Solder Heat Resistance (SHR).

2. Downlight Fixtures: Provide recessed downlight fixtures with trim rings compatible with the ceiling material where fixture is to be installed.
3. LED Exit Signs: The exit lighting fixtures shall meet the requirements of Federal, State, and Local Codes.
   a. Gymnasiums, locker rooms, athletic/PE wing and associated corridors, black box theaters, auditorium stages, cafetoriums and kitchens: Vandal resistant, wet location cast aluminum with polycarbonate protective cover exit signs, Lithonia Extreme Series.
4. Emergency Lighting Units: Lead Calcium batteries with self-diagnostics. Provide full light output at 90 minutes of battery operation. LED lamps.
5. Gymnasium light fixtures, glass or acrylic refractors or lenses, round profile, single point swivel pendant or hook mounting, designed to be vandal proof without the need for wire guards, no wire guards.

C. LED drivers:
1. NEMA 410 compliant for in-rush current.
2. Starting Temperature: -40˚ F [-40˚ C].
3. Input Voltage: 120 to 480 (±10%) V.
4. Power Supplies: Class I or II output.
5. Surge Protection: The system must survive 250 repetitive strikes of “C Low” (C Low: 6kV/1.2 x 50 µs, 10kA/8 x 20 µs) waveforms at 1-minute intervals with less than 10% degradation in clamping voltage. “C Low” waveforms are as defined in IEEE/ASNI C62.41.2-2002, Scenario 1 Location Category C.
6. Power Factor (PF): ≥ 0.90.
7. Total Harmonic Distortion (THD): ≤ 20%.
8. Comply with FCC Title 47 CFR Part 18 Non-consumer RFI/EMI Standards.
9. Drivers shall be reduction of hazardous substances (ROHS)-compliant.

D. Voltage: Equipment for use on 120V systems shall be suitable and guaranteed for voltage range of 100V to 130V. Equipment on 277V systems shall be suitable and guaranteed for voltage range of 225V to 290V. Universal voltage equipment shall be suitable and guaranteed for a voltage range of 100V to 290V.

E. Light fixture housing for exterior use: Provide aluminum or stainless housing. Where stainless steel hardware is used, both male and female fasteners shall be stainless steel.

F. Emergency LED battery self-testing drivers and inverters; 5-year warranty. Basis of Design:
1. Bodine BSL-ST Series for OEM installation
2. Bodine BSL310-SI Series for field installation

3. Bodine ELI-S Series for line voltage sine wave inverter field installation

G. Emergency Battery Packs – Exit Signs: Nickel Cadmium battery with self- diagnostics; Minimum 3-year non-prorated replacement warranty.

H. Emergency Generator / Inverter Load Control Device (ELC):
1. 16 Amp minimum ballast / driver load
2. Compatible with 0-10 Volt dimmer switches
3. UL 924
4. Minimum 3-year warranty
5. Integral or remove test switch.

I. Emergency Generator / Inverter branch circuit transfer switch:
1. UL 1008
2. 20 Amp ballast/driver load
3. 0-10Vdc dimming compatible

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. General: Install lighting fixtures of the types indicated, where shown, and at indicated heights in accordance with the fixture manufacturer's written instructions and industry practices to ensure that the fixtures meet the specifications. Fixtures shall fit the type of ceiling system scheduled.

B. Standards: Comply with NEMA standards, applicable requirements of NEC pertaining to installation of interior lighting fixtures, and with NECA Standard of Installation.

C. Attachment: Fasten fixtures to the indicated structural support members of the building. Provide four separate wire supports for recessed ceiling mounted lighting fixtures, one at each corner of fixture. Check to ensure that solid pendant fixtures are plumb. Provide T-bar locking clips on all four sides for lay-in fixtures.

D. Coordination: Field coordinate and locate lighting fixtures in open ceiling areas including mechanical and electrical rooms so that light is not obstructed by piping, ductwork, etc. Locate light fixtures in front of electrical and mechanical equipment to provide adequate illumination for testing and maintenance. Relocate installed light fixtures as directed by Owner / Architect at no additional cost.

E. Final adjustment of all aimable exterior light fixtures shall be in coordination with, and to the satisfaction of, the Owner’s designated representative. Pre-aim all fixtures prior to scheduled final aiming and adjustment with Architect / Owner. Verify that all rotatable optics are in their proper orientation prior to final aiming.

F. Provide vandal resistant exit signs without wire guards in all physical education and athletic sports areas, including egress corridors adjacent to these areas, black box

theaters, auditorium stages, vocational shops, cafetoriums and kitchens.

G. Provide exit sign directional arrows as required. Provide a minimum of two and a maximum of 10% spare exit signs to be installed as directed by Architect.

H. Install in accordance with manufacturers instructions.

I. Install suspended luminaires using pendants supported from swivel hangers. Provide pendant length required to suspend luminary at indicated height.

J. Locate recessed ceiling luminaires as indicated on the Architectural reflected ceiling plan.

K. Install surface mounted luminaires plumb and adjust to align with building lines and with each other. Secure to prohibit movement.

L. Exposed Grid Ceilings: Support surface mounted luminaires on grid ceiling directly from building structure. Provide auxiliary members spanning ceiling Ts to support surface mounted luminaires. Fasten surface mounted luminaires to ceiling T using bolts, screws, rivets, or suitable clips.

M. Install recessed luminaires to permit removal from below.

N. Install recessed luminaires using accessories and fire stopping materials to meet regulatory requirements for fire rating.

O. Install wall-mounted luminaires at height as directed by Architect.

P. Install accessories furnished with each luminary.

Q. Connect luminaires to branch circuit outlets using flexible conduit as specified.

R. Make wiring connections to branch circuit using building wire with insulation suitable for temperature conditions within luminaires.

S. Bond products and metal accessories to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.

T. Provide emergency transfer devices for light fixtures powered by generator or inverter emergency lighting circuits which are used for normal lighting and to be switched with the switched normal lighting circuit in the same room, corridor or area.

U. Provide un-switched, constant-hot circuit to all battery powered emergency lighting equipment and emergency load control devices (ELC). Where normal light fixture circuit is switched or contactor controlled, non-switched battery charging or ELC circuit shall originate from same branch circuit breaker as switched lighting circuit.

V. Provide emergency powered light fixture in front of all electrical switchgear, including but not limited to panelboards, switchboards, motor control centers, low voltage

control panels, transfer switches, motor controllers and disconnect switches.

W. Provide emergency battery operated light fixtures at all transfer switch locations and at all central battery emergency lighting inverters.

X. Provide automatic controls for exterior light fixtures. Exterior building mounted light fixtures shall be circuited through lighting contactors. Lighting contactors shall be controlled by the Building Management System. Where no building management system is provided or specified, provide time clock switches, photocells, photosensors as specified, and required by the local energy codes.

Y. Lighting contactors shall not be installed above ceiling and shall be readily accessible, located in same room as panelboard serving load.

Z. Wall mounted light fixtures shall be attached to the studs in the walls. Attachment to gypsum board only is not acceptable. Where wall mounted fixtures attach to junction box only, firmly secure junction box to adjoining studs in wall.

AA. Lighting Fixture Supports:
1. Shall provide support for all of the fixtures. Supports may be anchored to channels of the ceiling construction to the structural slab or to structural members within a partition, or above a suspended ceiling.
2. Shall maintain the fixture positions after cleaning and relamping.
3. Shall support the lighting fixtures without causing the ceiling or partition to deflect.

BB. Hardware for surface mounting fixtures to suspended ceilings:
1. In addition to being secured to any required outlet box, fixtures shall be bolted to a grid ceiling system at four points spaced near the corners of each fixture. The bolts shall be not less than 1/4 inch secured to channel members attached to and spanning the tops of the ceiling structural grid members. Non-turning studs may be attached to the ceiling structural grid members or spanning channels by special clips designed for the purpose, provided they lock into place and require simple tools for removal.
2. In addition to being secured to any required outlet box, fixtures shall be bolted to ceiling structural members at four points spaced near the corners of each fixture. Pre-positioned 1/4-inch studs or threaded plaster inserts secured to ceiling structural members shall be used to bolt the fixtures to the ceiling. In lieu of the above, 1/4-inch toggle bolts may be used on new or existing ceiling provided the plaster and lath can safely support the fixtures without sagging or cracking.

CC. Lighting Fixture Supports for aluminum canopies:
1. Light fixtures mounted under aluminum canopies shall be UL wet location from above listed without a protective ceiling or cover. Light fixture shall not have conduit penetrations or mounting hole penetrations field made in the top of the fixture. Conduit penetration shall be at the end of the fixture only.

## 3.2 TESTING

A. General: Upon installation of lighting fixtures, and after building circuits are energized, apply electrical energy to demonstrate proper operations of lighting fixtures, emergency lighting, and controls. When possible, correct malfunctioning units at the site, then retest to demonstrate proper operation; otherwise, remove and replace with new units, and proceed with retesting.

B. Pre-Inspection Tasks: Immediately before final inspection, clean fixtures inside and out, including plastics and glassware, adjust trim to fit adjacent surfaces, replace broken or damaged parts, and lamp and test fixtures for electrical and mechanical operations. Any fixtures, or parts of fixtures that show signs of rust or corrosion at the time of completion, shall be removed, and replaced with protected metal parts.

C. Final aiming and Adjustment: Aim and adjust aimable and adjustable lighting fixtures for their intended purpose. Re-aim and re-adjust as required to the satisfaction of the Architect / Owner, including nighttime adjustment of exterior lighting in the presence of the Architect / Owner.

**END OF SECTION 26 51 13**

# SECTION 27 01 00 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE (O&M) MANUALS OF COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Compile product data and related information appropriate for Owner's operation and maintenance of products furnished under Contract. Prepare operating and maintenance data as specified in this Section and as referenced in other sections of specifications.

B. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation and maintenance of equipment and systems.

C. Submit three (3) electronic copies, on separate devices (USB Flash Drive or some type of pre-approved solid-state storage device), of complete O&M manuals in final form. The submitted manual shall be the system manufacturer's operations manual, supplemented with operations and maintenance instructions custom tailored for the system installed. Electronic documentation shall be provided in a non-proprietary PDF format, without password restrictions.

D. Hard copies shall be provided upon request of the Owner, Architect, and/or Consultant.

E. Recorded video of all training sessions shall be included in each copy, of each system's final submitted O&M.

F. The final submitted manual shall include a sing-in sheet and owner/consultant signed acceptance of all training sessions.

### 1.2 ELECTRICAL OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

A. Thirty (30) days after receipt of reviewed submittals bearing the Project Technology Consultant's stamp of acceptance (including re-submittals), submit for review, an electronic copy of the first draft of the System's O&M Manual. This copy shall contain as applicable to the specific system, a minimum of the following:

1. Table of Contents for each element
2. Contractor information
3. All shop drawings, coordination drawings and product data, bearing the Project technology Consultant's stamp of acceptance.
4. All parts and maintenance manuals for items of equipment
5. Warranties (without starting dates)
6. Certifications that have been completed; submit forms and outlines of certifications that have not been completed
7. Operating and maintenance procedures.
8. Form of Owner's Training Program Syllabus (including times and dates)
9. Control operations / equipment wiring diagrams
10. Coordination Drawings
11. Schedule of Speakers, Amplifiers, Sound Equipment, Etc.

12. Schedule of Handsets and other Peripheral Devices, Etc.
13. Schedule of Cable, Jacks, Outlets, Etc.
14. Access Control Door Schedules
15. Video Surveillance Camera Schedules
16. Other required operating and maintenance information that are complete.
17. Cable pathway layout drawings and station map, including through wall and floor penetration locations and sleeve sizes.

B. Copy will be returned to the Contractor within 15 days with comments for corrections.

C. Submit the electronic completed manuals (hard copies upon request) in final form to the Project's Technology Consultant.
1. Prior to substantial completion for Owner's use after the Owner accepts facility maintenance.
2. Include all specified data, test reports, drawings, dated warranties, certificates, training videos. along with other materials and information.

D. The Project's Technology Consultant shall review the manuals for completeness within 15 days.

E. The Contractor shall be notified of any missing or omitted materials. The Manuals shall be reworked by the Contractor, as required, in the office of the Project's Technology Consultant. The manuals will not be retransmitted.

F. Electronic and/or hard copies of the accepted manuals shall be delivered to the Owner prior to substantial completion.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 BINDERS**

A. Upon the request for hard copies of the O&M manuals, the binders shall consist of the following configuration:
1. Commercial quality black, 3-ring binders with clear, durable, cleanable plastic covers.
2. Minimum ring size: 1"; Maximum ring size: 3".
3. When multiple binders are used, correlate the data into related groupings.
4. Label contents on spine and face of binder with full size insert. Label under plastic cover.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 SYSTEM OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

A. Form for Manuals Submitted in Hard Copy Format:
1. Prepare data in form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's personnel.
2. Format:
a. Size: 8-1/2" x 11"

b. Text: Manufacturer's printed data or neatly typewritten.

3. Drawings:
   a. Provide reinforced punched binder tab and bind in text.
   b. Fold larger drawings to size of text pages.
4. Provide flyleaf indexed tabs for each separate product or each piece of operating equipment.
5. Cover: Identify each volume with typed or printed title "Operating and Maintenance Instructions". List:
   a. Title of Project
   b. Identity of separate structures as applicable
   c. Identity of general subject matter covered in the manual.
6. Binder as specified

B. Content of Manual:
1. Neatly typewritten Table of Contents for each volume arranged in systematic order as outlined in the specifications.
   a. Contractor, name of responsible principal, address and telephone number
   b. A list of each product required to be included, indexed to content of the volume.
   c. List with each product, name, address and telephone number of:
      1) Subcontractor or installer
      2) Maintenance contractor as appropriate
      3) Identify area of responsibility of each.
      4) Local source of supply for parts and replacement
   d. Identify each product-by-product name and other identifying symbols as set forth in Contract Documents.
2. Product Data:
   a. Include those sheets pertinent to the specific product.
   b. Annotate each sheet to:
      1) Identify specific product or part installed.
      2) Identify data applicable to installation.
      3) Delete references to inapplicable information.
3. Drawings:
   a. Supplement product data with drawings as necessary to illustrate:
      1) Relations of component parts of equipment and systems
      2) Control and flow diagrams
   b. Coordinate drawings with information in Project Record Documents to assure correct illustration of completed installation.
   c. Do not use Project Record Documents as maintenance drawings.
4. Written text as required to supplement product data for the particular installation:
   a. Organize in consistent format under separate headings for different procedures.
   b. Provide logical sequence of instructions for each procedure.
5. Copy of each warranty, bond and service contract issued
   a. Provide information sheet for Owner's personnel, giving:
      1) Proper procedures in event of failure

2) Instances that might affect validity of warranties or bonds

6. Shop drawings, coordination drawings and product data as specified.

C. Sections for Equipment and Systems

1. Content for each unit of equipment and system as appropriate:
   a. Description of unit and component parts:
      1) Function, normal operating characteristics, and limiting conditions.
      2) Performance curves, engineering data and tests.
      3) Complete nomenclature and commercial number of replaceable parts.
   b. Operating procedures:
      1) Start up, break-in, routine / normal operating instructions
      2) Regulation, control, stopping, shut down and emergency instructions
      3) Special operating instructions
   c. Maintenance procedures:
      1) Routine operations
      2) Guide to trouble-shooting
      3) Disassembly, repair and reassembly
      4) Alignment, adjusting and checking
      5) Routine service based on operating hours
   d. Manufacturer's printed operating and maintenance instructions.
   e. Original manufacturer's parts list, illustrations, assembly drawings and diagrams required for maintenance.
   f. Complete equipment field accessible wiring diagrams
   g. Each Contractor's coordination drawings
   h. Other data as required under pertinent sections of the specifications
2. Prepare and include additional data when the need for such data becomes apparent during instruction of Owner's personnel.
3. Additional requirements for operating and maintenance data as outlined in respective sections of specifications
4. Provide complete information for products specified in Division 27.
5. Provide certificates of compliance as specified in each related section.
6. Provide start up reports as specified in each related section.
7. Provide signed receipts for spare parts and material.
8. Provide training report and certificates.

**END OF SECTION 27 01 00**

# SECTION 27 05 00 - COMMUNICATIONS BASIC MATERIALS, METHODS, AND GENERAL PROVISIONS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Except as modified in this Section, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, applicable provisions of Division 01 General Requirements, and other provisions and requirements of the Contract Documents apply to work of Division 27 Communications.

B. Applicable provisions of this section apply to all sections of Division 27, Communications.

C. The general provisions of the Contract and the requirements of the following Sections apply to the Work specified in this Section. See following sections for related general and specific requirements following sections shall associate with this specification as applicable.
   1. Division 26 in its entirety.
   2. Division 27 in its entirety.
   3. Division 28 in its entirety.

D. The entire drawing and specification package apply to the work specified in the communication specifications and shall be complied with in every respect. The Contract Documents are comprised of the drawings and specifications. The Contractor shall examine these Contract Documents, and coordinate required work indicated in each.

### 1.2 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. All equipment and work performed shall comply with current and applicable Codes, Standards, Rules, Ordinances, Regulations, and Best Practices (both published and best practices) as well as any other authorities that may have lawful jurisdiction pertaining to the work specified. None of the terms or provisions of this specification shall be construed as waiving any of the rules, regulations, or requirements of these authorities (including those not specifically listed in this Specification). Applicable Codes and Standards shall consist of, but not be limited to the following:
   1. Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)
   2. Authorities Having Jurisdiction (AHJ) - Local
   3. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
   4. American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM) *Communications Cables - B694, B736, D4565, D4566, D4730, D4731, D4732*
   5. Building Industry Consulting Services International (BICSI)
   6. Code of Federal Regulations - Title 47
   7. Electronics Industries Association (EIA) *Standard Test Procedures for Fiber Optic Fibers, Cables, Transducers, Connecting and Terminating Devices - EIA-455 Series*
   8. Federal Communications Commission (FCC) - Communications Act and FCC

Rules

9. Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS) *Federal Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces - FIPS PUB 175, FIPS PUB 176*
10. The Insulated Cable Engineers Association (ICEA) *Communications Cable Stands - P-47-434, S-56-434, S-80-576, S84-608, S-85-625, S-86-634, S-87-640, S-89-648, S-90-661, S-98-688, S-99-689, S-100-685*
11. International Electro-technical Commission (IEC)
12. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE) *Local Area Networks/Metropolitan Networks Standards Collection - LAN/MAN 802 Series*
13. International Organization for Standardization (ISO) (ISO/IEC) *Premise Wiring Core and LAN/MAN Core Equivalents-11801, 8802, 14763-1*
14. International Telecommunication Union (ITU-T) *Telecommunications Standardization*
15. National Electrical Code (NEC) *National Electrical Code - NFPA 70*
16. National Electrical Contractor's Association (NECA) *Standards of Installation*
17. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) *Performance Standard for Twisted Pair Premise Voice and Data Communications Cable-WC 63.1, WC 63.2, WC 66*
18. National Electrical Safety Code (NESC)
19. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) - *National Fire Alarm Code NFPA 72, Life Safety Code NFPA 101*
20. Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers (SCTE)
21. Local Accessibility Standards
22. Telecommunications Industries Association (TIA) *(ANSI/TIA/EIA) Wiring and Cabling Standards - 526, 568, 569, 570, 571, 598, 606, 607, 758, TSB 31-B, 63, 67, 72, 75 and 95*
23. Uniform Building Code (UBC)
24. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (U.L.) - *497A, 910, 1077, 1863, 1283, 1459, 1604, 1651, 1681, 1690, 1778, 1977*

B. Resolve any code violations discovered in contract documents with the Engineer prior to award of the contract. After Contract award, any correction or additions necessary for compliance with applicable codes shall be made at no additional cost to the Owner.

C. This Contractor shall be responsible for being aware of and complying with asbestos NESHAP regulations, as well as all other applicable codes, laws and regulations.

D. Obtain all permits required.

**1.3 SUMMARY**

A. The work covered by the specifications includes furnishing materials, labor, transportation, tools, permits, fees, utilities, and incidentals necessary for the complete installation of work required in the Contract Drawings.

B. It is the intent of the Contract Documents to provide a new and/or an extension of the

existing installation, as shown in the associated specifications and drawings, complete in every respect.

C. Provide complete and working Communications Systems including equipment, conduit, wiring, material, labor and training as described in this Specification and the Drawings. The Communications Systems Drawings and Specifications are the sole property of the Architect and are not to be duplicated, scanned, loaned or in any way made available to persons not designated as authorized by the Architect. All Communications Systems plans, and specifications are to be returned to the Architect following completion of bid.

## 1.4 CONTRACTOR'S QUALIFICATIONS

A. An approved contractor for the work under this division shall be:
   1. A specialist in this field and have the personnel, experience, training, and skill, and the organization to provide a practical working system.
   2. Able to furnish evidence of having contracted for and installed not less than ten (10) systems of comparable size and type that have served their Owners satisfactorily for not less than 3 years.
   3. Perform work by persons qualified to produce workmanship of specified quality. Persons performing work shall be required to be licensed. Onsite supervision shall have minimum of the following:
      a. Licenses, as applicable to the system being installed
      b. Manufacturer's Certifications
         1) Firm Certification
         2) Installer Certification
         3) Programmer's Certification
         4) System Designer Certification.

## 1.5 DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS

A. The drawings and these specifications are complementary to each other, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by both.

B. If variations or departures from the drawings are deemed necessary by the Contractor, details of such departures and the reasons therefore shall be submitted to the Consultant for review. No departures shall be made without prior written acceptance of the Consultant.

C. Should the drawings or specifications disagree in themselves or with their counterpart, the better quality or greater quantity of work or materials shall be estimated upon, and unless otherwise directed by the Consultant in writing, shall be performed or furnished. In the case that the specifications should not fully agree with the Schedules, the latter shall govern. Figures indicated on drawings govern scale measurements and large-scale details govern small scale drawings.

D. The approximate locations of system equipment and components are indicated on the

Drawings. These Drawings are not intended to give complete and accurate details in regard to location of equipment, field devices, etc. Exact locations are to be determined by actual measurements at the building and will in all cases be subject to the Review of the Owner or Consultant, who reserves the right to make any reasonable changes in the locations indicated without additional cost to the Owner.

E. Items specifically mentioned in the Specifications but not shown on the Drawings and/or items shown on Drawings but not specifically mentioned in the Specifications shall be installed by the Contractor under the appropriate section of work as if they were both specified and shown.

F. Any discrepancies between the Contract Documents and actual job site conditions shall be reported to the Owner or Consultant, so that they will be resolved prior to the bidding, where this cannot be done at least 7 working days prior to bid; the greater or costlier of the discrepancy shall be bid. All labor and materials required to perform the work described shall be included as part of this Contract.

G. It is the intention of this Section of the Specifications, and associated drawings, to outline minimum requirements to furnish the Owner with a turnkey and fully operating system in cooperation with other trades.

H. The contract documents are schematic in nature in that they are only to establish scope and a minimum level of quality. They are not to be used as actual working construction drawings. The actual working construction drawings shall be the shop drawings accepted by project's consultant.

I. The Contractor shall be responsible for coordination and proper relation of his work to the building structure and to the work of all trades. The Contractor shall visit the premises and thoroughly familiarize himself with the existing site conditions, details of the work and the working conditions, and verify dimensions in the field. The Contractor shall advise the project's consultant of any discrepancy prior to bidding. The submission of bids shall be deemed evidence of the Contractor's site visit; coordination of existing conditions and include consideration for existing conditions.

J. These documents are conceptual in nature. It shall be the responsibility of the approved installer to furnish a complete and functional system, including the items shown on the drawings, in the specifications, and items not designated in either. The installer's shop drawings and product data submittals shall represent a complete system and documents accepted by the project's consultant shall not relieve the installer from being required to provide any materials, equipment, or labor to furnish a complete and functional system as recognized by the Project's Technology Consultant and the Owner.

**1.6 BUILDING CONSTRUCTION AND LAYOUT OF WORK**

A. General: It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to consult the Engineering Drawings and Details so as to thoroughly familiarize himself with the type and quality of

construction to be provided on this project.

B. The drawings are diagrammatic in nature and do not show every connection in detail or every line or conduit in its exact location. These details are subject to the requirements of all codes, ordinances, and standards; as well as all structural and architectural conditions. The Contractor shall carefully investigate structural and finish conditions and shall coordinate the separate trades in order to avoid interference between the various phases of work. Work shall be laid out so that it will be concealed in closed ceiling space and/or furred chases unless specifically noted or indicated to be exposed. Work shall be installed to avoid crippling of structural members. All work shall be run parallel or perpendicular to the lines of the building unless otherwise noted.

C. The approximate location of equipment items is indicated on the drawings. Exact locations are to be determined by coordination of dimensions from approved equipment submittals and site-verified field measurements and will in all cases be subject to the approval of the Consultant. The Consultant reserves the right to make any reasonable changes in the indicated locations prior to installation for no additional cost.

D. In areas of existing special ceiling construction, the removal and restoration must be carefully planned such that the existing condition of the ceilings is maintained. It may be necessary for the Contractor to procure a Subcontractor familiar with this work to achieve this requirement.

E. Consider space limitations imposed by contiguous work in selection and location of equipment and material. Do not provide equipment or material that is not suitable in this respect.

**1.7 RELATION WITH OTHER TRADES**

A. Carefully study all matters and conditions concerning the project. Submit notification of conflict in ample time to prevent unwarranted changes in any work. Review other Divisions of these specifications to determine their requirements. Extend electrical services and final connections to all items requiring same.

B. Because of the complicated relationship of this work to the total project, conscientiously study the relation and cooperate as necessary to accomplish the full intent of the documents.

C. Where cabling pass through walls or floors, metal sleeves shall be provided and shall be sealed to prevent spread of fire and smoke. In walls, they shall extend 3” beyond the finished surface. In pipe chases, they shall extend 8” inches above floor slab and be cemented in a watertight manner. Size of these sleeves shall be at least as required to maintain a maximum 40% conduit fill ratio.1/2 inch greater than outside diameter of the conduit.

D. Locate and size openings required for installation of work specified in this Division in

sufficient time to prevent delay in the work.

E. Refer to other Divisions of the specifications for the scope of required connections to equipment furnished under other Division. Determine from the General Contractor / Construction Manager for the various trades, the Owner, and by direction from the Architect / Engineer, the exact location of all items. The construction trades involved shall furnish all roughing-in drawings and wiring diagrams required for proper installation of the electrical work.
   1. Make final connections to all communications equipment indicated on the drawings, except as noted.

F. Request all Shop Drawings required in ample time to permit proper installation of all electrical provisions.

G. Extend services as indicated to the various items of equipment furnished by others. Rough-in for the various items and make final connections ready for operation upon placing of the equipment.

**1.8 CONCEALED AND EXPOSED WORK**

A. When the word "concealed" is defined as hidden from sight as in chases, furred spaces or above ceilings. "Exposed" is defined as open to view, in plain sight.

**1.9 GUARANTEE**

A. Guarantee work for a minimum of two years or as noted longer elsewhere from the date of substantial completion of the project. During that period make good any faults or imperfections that may arise due to defects or omissions in material, equipment or workmanship. At the Owner's option, replacement of failed parts or equipment shall be provided.

**1.10 MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT**

A. Furnish new and unused materials and equipment meeting the requirements of the paragraph specifying acceptable manufacturers. Where two or more units of the same type or class of equipment are required, provide units of a single manufacturer.

**1.11 NOISE AND VIBRATION**

A. Select equipment to operate with minimum noise and vibration. If noise or vibration is produced or transmitted to or through the building structure by equipment, piping, ducts or other parts of work, and judged objectionable by the Owner, Architect, or Engineer, rectify such conditions at no additional cost to the Owner. If the item of equipment is judged to produce objectionable noise or vibration, demonstrate at no additional cost that equipment performs within designated limits on a vibration chart.

## 1.12 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers names and catalog number specified under sections of Division 27 are used to establish standards of design, performance, quality and serviceability and not to limit competition. Equipment of similar design, equal to that specified, manufactured by a named manufacturer shall be acceptable on approval. A request for prior approval of equipment not listed must be submitted ten (10) days before proposal due date. Submit complete design and performance data to the Architect. The Architect and Owner issue approvals of acceptable manufacturers as addenda to the Construction Proposal Documents.

B. Where acceptable manufacturers are listed, only products of those manufacturers may be provided. Additionally, the product must meet all the detailed requirements of the specifications.

C. If no manufacturer's name is mentioned, the Contractor shall provide equipment and material which meet the specifications.

## 1.13 UTILITIES, LOCATIONS AND ELEVATIONS

A. Locations and elevations of the various utilities included within the scope of this work:
   1. Obtained from utility maps and other substantially reliable sources.
   2. Are offered separate from the Contract Documents as a general guide only without guarantees to accuracy.

B. Examine the site and verify the location and elevation of all utilities and of their relation to the work. Existing utilities indicated on the site plans are for reference only and shall be field verified by the Contractor with the respective public or private utility.

## 1.14 CONTRACT DRAWINGS

A. Contract drawings are diagrammatic only and do not give fully dimensioned locations of various elements of work. Determine exact locations from field measurements.

B. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to compare the scale of all electrical drawings with the scale of the architectural drawings and make adjustments to all electrical drawings which have the incorrect drawing scale so that his material takeoffs are not in error due to an incorrectly labeled drawing scale and his proposal is complete.

## 1.15 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

| | |
|---|---|
| A/V | Audio/Visual |
| AWG | American Wire Gauge |
| BCR | Building Communications Room |
| CATV | Cable Antenna Television |
| CCTV | Closed Circuit Television |
| CMP | Communications Media Plenum |

| | |
|---|---|
| CMR | Communications Media Riser |
| dB | Decibel |
| EMI | Electromagnetic Interference |
| ER | Equipment Room |
| FACP | Fire Alarm Control Panel |
| FCR | Floor Communications Room |
| Gbps | Giga Bits Per Second |
| Hz | Hertz |
| IC | Intermediate Cross-connect |
| IDF | Intermediate Distribution Frame |
| IM | Information Management |
| IS | Information Systems or Information Services (also see MIS) |
| IT | Information Technology |
| Km | Kilometer |
| LCD | Liquid Crystal Display |
| LED | Light Emitting Diode |
| M | Micron |
| MATV | Master Antenna Television *(A.K.A. Main Antenna Television)* |
| Mbps | Mega Bits Per Second |
| MC | Main Cross-connect |
| MDF | Main Distribution Frame |
| MHz | Megahertz |
| MIS | Management Information Systems or Services |
| NEXT | Near-End Cross Talk |
| nm | Nanometer |
| OFN | Optical Fiber Non-conductive |
| OFNP | Optical Fiber Non-conductive Plenum |
| OFNR | Optical Fiber Non-conductive Riser |
| OTDR | Optical Time Domain Reflectometer |
| PBX | Private Branch Exchange |
| POS | Point of Sale |
| PSELFEXT | Power Sum Equal Level Far-End Cross Talk |
| PSNEXT | Power Sum Near-End Cross Talk |
| SMATV | Satellite Main Antenna Television |
| TC | Telecommunications Closet *(Now referred to as TR)* |
| T.O. | Telecommunications Outlet |
| TR | Telecommunications Room *(A.K.A. TC - Telecommunication Closet)* |
| UTP | Unshielded Twisted Pair Wire |

Definitions:

Administration Subsystem - Cable, connectors, cross-connect and inter-connect hardware, patch cords, and other equipment that allows easy reconfiguration of the telecommunications system to accommodate personnel and floor plans changes.

Campus Backbone Subsystem - Connects telecommunications processing equipment in

different buildings on the same campus.

Communications Cabling - Any fiber optic, copper, coaxial or other transmission media used for transmitting or receiving communications systems data.

Communications System - Communications Systems and associated wired or wireless interconnection.

Communications Drawings - All floor plans, elevations, details, schematics, block diagrams, legends, tables, notes or attachments associated with any or all of the Communications Systems.

Distribution Cable - The telecommunications UTP wiring between the telecommunications room and the outlet connectors.

Equipment Subsystem - Telecommunications cable, connectors, support hardware, blocks, and protective devices that serve to connect the network interface and the backbone subsystem through the administrative subsystem.

Horizontal Subsystem - Telecommunications cable, outlets and distribution cords that extend the riser backbone from the administrative points in the TRs to workstations.

Information Systems - Software systems including operating systems, programs, data manipulation and management systems, control software and various forms of proprietary and off-the-shelf software.

Information Technology - The practical application of knowledge associated with designing, installing and maintaining the equipment, hardware and infrastructure utilized for control, distribution, or display of telecommunications, audio, video and data signals. Because computers are central to information management, computer departments within companies and universities are often called (IT Departments) and are responsible for MIS or IS personnel and services.

Low Voltage Wire - Wire or cable used for one or more systems that operate on 24 volts or less. Low Voltage Wire is used to install and interconnect one or more of the Communications Systems. Low Voltage Wire includes patch cords, jumpers and all portions of cable or wire used to make the Communications Systems operational or for system communications.

Management Information Systems - A class of software that provides managers with tools for organizing and evaluating their department. Typically, MIS systems are written in COBOL and run on mainframes or minicomputers. Within companies and large organizations, the department responsible for computer systems is sometime called the MIS department. Another name for MIS is Information Services (IS).

Multiplexer - A communications device that multiplexes (combines) several signals for

transmission over a single medium. A multiplexer is sometimes called a "mux". A demultiplexer is required to complete the process by separating multiplexed signals from a transmission line. Frequently a multiplexer and demultiplexer are combined into a single device capable of processing both outgoing and incoming signals.

Riser Backbone Subsystem - Telecommunications cable, splice enclosures, and associated hardware that provide the main cable routes in a building. It interconnects building floors and larger areas of a single floor. It also interconnects administrative points in satellite TRs to the administrative points in the building main equipment room.

Station Cable - The wiring between the outlet connections and the work area equipment.

Communications Systems - One or more of the following and associated equipment: Data/Networking Systems, Telecommunications Systems, Paging / Intercom Systems, Clock/Control Systems, Master Antenna Television Systems, Cable Antenna Television Systems, Broadcast Video Systems, Audio/Visual Presentations Systems, Microwave/Wireless Systems.

Telecommunications - The transmission, emission or reception of signs, signals, images, sound or intelligence of any nature by wire, radio, optical or other technical transmission system.

Work Area - Location of an employee or student and their data/telecommunications equipment or devices.

Work Area Subsystem - Station mounting cords, extension cords, connectors, adapters, and interface units that provide physical and electrical connectivity between workstation equipment and the horizontal subsystem.

**1.16 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

A. Equipment Standards:
   1. System and all components shall be brand new stock from manufacturer.
   2. All electronics shall be 100% solid state.
   3. System and all components shall bear a UL Label.

B. Contractor Qualifications:
   At the time of Proposal, the Contractor shall:
   1. Have manufactured, supplied or installed at least three (3) other systems of similar size, complexity, and general operation as the systems described in these specifications. The Contractor shall furnish in writing to Architect proof of compliance with this paragraph at the time of proposal.
   2. Hold all legally required Texas State Contractor's licenses necessary to accomplish the installation and activation of the described system at the facilities indicated. The Contractor shall submit copies of licenses to the

Architect prior to the start of work

3. Hold all legally required state registrations to meet local requirements for submittal drawings.
4. Have a local office within fifty (50) miles of the project site staffed with factory trained technicians who have experience on systems of similar complexity and function as the systems described in these specifications. These technicians shall be fully capable of system engineering support, installation supervising, system start-up, and providing the Owner with training and service on both hardware and software for the systems specified.
5. Certify complete and total compliance with the provisions of these specifications by letter or submittal of the proposal response forms, signed by an officer of the corporation, or a principal if other ownership currently exists. In addition, the letter or forms shall include a complete listing of exceptions, if any.

**1.17 SUBMITTALS**

A. Provide SUBMITTALS according to Division 01 and the following.

B. Requirements:

1. Submit paragraph-by-paragraph specification review indicating compliance or deviation with explanation.
2. Submit proof that all system components and cables are U.L. Listed.
3. An equipment list with names of manufacturers, model numbers, and technical information on all equipment proposed. Clearly mark exact model number proposed to be installed.
4. Product technical information sheets for each principal component in the proposed system, including cable, wire, terminal marking, and wire marking material.
5. Certification from the manufacturer stating that the system Contractor is an authorized distributor or installer of the proposed system when such certifications exist.
6. A statement listing every technical and operational parameter wherein the submitted equipment varies from that which was originally specified. If the submitter fails to list a particular variance and his submittal is accepted but is subsequently deemed to be unsatisfactory because of the unlisted variance, the submitter shall replace or modify such equipment at once and without cost to the Owner.

**1.18 EXAMINATION OF SITE**

A. The Contractor shall have visited the site and familiarized himself with all existing conditions prior to submitting his proposal and shall be prepared to carry out the work within the existing limitations. Failure or neglect to do so shall not relieve the Contractor of his responsibilities not entitle him to additional compensation for work overlooked and not included in his proposal.

B. The Contractor shall confirm the availability of the proper power source for each piece of specified equipment, through site visits and Drawings as necessary. Where proper power does not exist, the Contractor shall provide the required power, circuits, outlets, conduits, and wire as specified under Division 26.

**1.19 DATA ACCURACY**

A. Absolute accuracy of information regarding existing conditions cannot be guaranteed. The Drawings and Specifications are for the assistance and guidance of the Contractor and exact locations, distances, elevations, etc., shall be governed by actual field conditions. Where variations from the contract documents are required, such variations shall be approved by the Architect / Owner.

**1.20 SECURITY**

A. The Contractor is responsible for complying with all of the Owner's and facility security's requirements to prevent theft or damage to equipment, tools and materials. If any deviation from facility security requirements is necessary, approval for such deviation shall be coordinated with the Owner.

B. The Contractor shall not disclose any confidential information of the Owner. The Contractor acknowledges that such action is highly injurious and can do damage to the Owner. The Contractor will agree to and comply with the standard policies and provisions of the Owner regarding outside Contractors and Consultants.

**1.21 UTILITIES**

A. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to provide all temporary connection and cables, lighting, light stands and power. The facilities shall be used in accordance with all applicable regulations regarding operations, safety and fire hazards of the governmental Authorities Having Jurisdiction, provided they are not used in a wasteful manner.

**1.22 PERMITS**

A. All permits required for the specified performance and completion of the work shall be secured by the Contractor. These permits shall be presented and reviewed at the initial project progress meeting.

**1.23 NOTIFICATION**

A. The Contractor shall not shut off any existing systems. The Contractor shall give the Owner at least ten (10) calendar day’s notice of any requirements to shut off or interference with existing alarm, regulating, computer or other service systems. The Owner will arrange and execute any shutdown. All work such as splicing, connections, etc., necessary to establish or re-establish any system shall be completed by the

Contractor in close coordination with the Owner.

## 1.24 INTERFERENCES WITH THE OWNER

A. Transportation and storage of materials at the facility, work involving the facility, and all other matters affecting the habitual use by the Owner of its buildings, shall be conducted so as to cause the least possible interference, and at times and in a manner acceptable to the Owner. The Contractor shall make every effort to delivery equipment per the schedule required by the project.

## 1.25 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

A. Maintain at the job site a separate set of white prints (blue line or black line) of the contract drawings for the sole purpose of recording the "as-built" changes and diagrams of those portions of work in which actual construction is significantly at variance with the contract drawings. Mark the drawings with a colored pencil. Prepare, as the work progresses and upon completion of work, reproducible drawings clearly indicating locations of various major and minor feeders, equipment, and other pertinent items, as installed. Record underground and under-slab cables installed, dimensioning exact location and elevation of such installations.

B. At conclusion of project, obtain without cost to the Owner, electronic AutoCAD 2014 or later / Revit CAD files of the original drawings and transfer as-built changes to these. Provide the following as-built documents including all contract drawings regardless of whether corrections were necessary and include in the transmittal: “2 sets of CDs and prints for Owner’s use, one set of CDs, prints, and mylars for Architect / Engineers Records”. Delivery of these as-built electronic, reproducible and prints is a condition of final acceptance.
   1. 3 sets of electronic AutoCAD (2014 dwg or later) / Revit CAD drawing files, on CD-ROM media, of each contract as-built drawing.
   2. One reproducible Dayrex mylar film positive of each contract as-built drawing.
   3. Three sets of blue or black-line prints of each contract as-built drawing.

C. As-Built Drawings should indicate the following information as a minimum:
   1. Indicate all addendum changes to documents.
   2. Remove Engineer’s Seal, name, address, and logo from drawings.
   3. Mark documents AS-BUILT DRAWINGS.
   4. Clearly indicate: DOCUMENT PRODUCED BY:
   5. Indicate all changes to construction during construction. Indicate actual routing of all conduit and cables, etc that were deviated from construction drawings.
   6. Indicate exact location of all underground communications raceways, and elevations.
   7. Correct schedules to reflect (actual) equipment furnished and manufacturer.
   8. During the execution of work, maintain a complete set of Drawings and specifications upon which all locations of equipment, devices, and all deviations and changes from the construction documents in the work shall be recorded.

9. Exact location of all communications equipment in building. Label panel schedules to indicate actual location.
10. Exact location of all communications equipment in and outside of the building.
11. Location, size and routing of all communications cables, conduits, equipment, etc. shall be accurately and neatly shown to dimension.
12. Exact location of all roof mounted equipment, wall, roof and floor penetrations.
13. Cloud all changes.

**1.26 OPERATING TESTS**

A. After all communications systems have been completed and put into operation, subject each system to an operating test under design conditions to ensure proper sequencing and operation throughout the range of operation. Tests shall be made in the presence of the Architect / Engineer and Owner. Provide minimum 24-hour advance notice of scheduling of all tests. Make adjustments as required to ensure proper functioning of all systems. Special tests on individual systems are specified under individual sections. Submit 3 copies of all certifications and test reports adequately in advance of completion of the work to allow for remedial action as required to correct deficiencies discovered in equipment and systems.

**1.27 WARRANTY**

A. All equipment shall be covered for the full manufacturers warranty period and systems shall be warranted by the Contractor for a period of two years commencing with the filing date of substantial completion. The Warranty shall cover all costs for warranty service, including parts, labor, prompt field service, pick-up, transportation, delivery, reinstallation, and retesting. A contract for service shall cover the period starting with the first expected activation of each system and shall continue without interruption to cover the period to the end of the two-year warranty as defined above. The end of the warranty period shall be handled such that a smooth transition to a maintenance agreement with the Owner shall be achieved with no lapse in coverage.

B. Submit 3 copies of all warranties and guarantees for systems, equipment, devices and materials. These shall be included in the Operating and Maintenance Manuals.

**1.28 BUILDING CONSTRUCTION**

A. It shall be the responsibility of the sub-contractor to consult the Architectural and Engineering drawings, details and specifications and thoroughly familiarize himself as to the construction and all job-related requirements. All construction trades shall cooperate with the General Contractor / Construction Manager job site superintendent and lay out work so that all piping, cables, pathways, raceways, and other items are placed in the walls, furred spaces, chases, etc., so that there shall be no delay in the job.

**1.29 TEMPORARY FACILITIES**

A. General: Refer to Division 01 for general requirements on temporary facilities.

B. Temporary Wiring: Temporary power and lighting for construction purposes shall be provided under Division 26. Installation of temporary power shall be in accordance with NEC Article 305.

C. Temporary facilities, wire, lights and devices are the property of this Contractor and shall be removed at the completion of the Contract.

**1.30 EXTRA MATERIALS**

A. Keys: Provide three (3) sets of all keys for system cabinets.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 WORK INCLUDED**

A. All materials listed in PART 2 - PRODUCTS of this Division Sections and on the Drawings shall be provided by the Contractor unless specifically excluded or modified in other portions of this Specification or Addendums.

**2.2 GENERAL MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS**

A. Materials, in general, shall conform to the National Electrical Code requirements and shall be listed, inspected, and approved by the Underwriters Laboratories and shall bear the UL label where labeling service is available. The label or listing of the Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. will be accepted as evidence that the materials or equipment conform to the applicable standards of that agency. In lieu of this listing, the Contractor may submit a statement from a nationally recognized, adequately equipped testing agency, indicating that the items have been tested in accordance with required procedures, and that the materials and equipment comply with all Contract requirements.

**2.3 STANDARD PRODUCTS**

A. Materials and equipment shall be the standard catalog products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of products conforming to these specifications and shall essentially duplicate materials and equipment that have been in satisfactory use at least two (2) years prior to bid opening. Where custom or special items are required, these shall be fully described using drawings, material lists, etc., which fully describe in detail the item proposed for use on this project.

**2.4 MANUFACTURE'S INSTRUCTIONS**

A. The Contractor is responsible for furnishing the proper Communication equipment and/or material and for seeing it is installed as intended by the manufacturer. The Contractor shall, wherever necessary, request advice and supervisory assistance from

equipment manufacturers as required for the proper installation, operation, or start-up. The Contractor shall notify the Consultant, in writing, of any conflict between the Contract Documents and the manufacturer's recommendations and shall obtain, from the Consultant, instructions/direction before proceeding with the work. The Contractor shall pay for all costs resulting from deficiencies created by installation not in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations or the instructions of the Consultant.

## 2.5 RUST PREVENTION

A. Metallic materials shall be protected against corrosion. Exposed metallic parts of equipment exposed to the elements shall be given a rust inhibiting treatment and standard finish by the manufacturer. Components such as boxes, bodies, fittings, guards, and miscellaneous parts shall be protected in accordance with the ASTM A123 or A153, except where other equivalent protective treatment is specifically approved in writing.

## 2.6 STORAGE AT SITE

A. The Contractor shall not receive material or equipment at the job site until ready for installation or until there is suitable space provided to properly protect equipment from rust, weather, humidity, dust, or physical damage.

B. All electronic equipment, containing sealed lead acid batteries or gel cells, shall be stored in climate-controlled area until installed or reinstalled. Do not store in non-climate controlled connex storage units.

C. Storage is to be provided and secured by the contractor. In the event that the Owner should agree to furnish storage space, security of the space and its contents shall remain the responsibility of the contractor.

## 2.7 CONDITION OF MATERIALS

A. All materials required for the installation of the Communication systems shall be new and unused. Any material or equipment damaged in transit from the factory, during delivery to premises, while in storage on premises, while being installed, or while being tested, until time of final acceptance, shall be replaced by this Contractor without extra cost to Owner.

## 2.8 NAMEPLATES

A. Factory assembled components and equipment shall be provided with be factory stamped labeling. Labeling will have information required to specifically identify the component and/or equipment in the future such as the manufacturer's name, catalog number, serial number, etc. All data on the labels shall be legible at the time of final inspection.

## 2.9 ACCESS DOORS

A. Wherever access is required in walls or ceilings to concealed junction boxes, pull boxes, equipment, etc., installed under this Division, furnish a hinged access door and frame with flush latch handle to another Division for installation. Doors shall be as follows:
   1. Plaster Surfaces: Milcor Style K.
   2. Ceramic Tile Surfaces: Milcor Style M.
   3. Drywall Surfaces: Milcor Style DW.
   4. Install panels only in locations approved by the Architect.

## 2.10 SPACE LIMITATIONS

A. Equipment shall be chosen which shall properly fit into the physical space provided and shown on the drawings, allowing ample room for access, servicing, removal and replacement of parts, etc. Adequate space shall be allowed for clearances in accordance with applicable codes and standards. Physical dimensions and arrangement of equipment shall be subject to the approval of the Consultant.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. This project has a critical path, which must be closely followed in order to meet the completion date. The Contractor shall review the proposed schedule at the Award of Contract meeting and be prepared to staff his work force according to the schedule constraints presented at that time.

B. Aesthetics are an important consideration in this installation. All components shall be installed so as to have aesthetically pleasing results as determined by the Owner and Architect. Actual locations of all visible components shall be coordinated in advance with the Owner and Architect.

C. Install, make fully operational and test the system as indicated on the Drawings and in the Specifications. Where information is not available the worst-case condition must be assumed to ensure a complete, functional system.

D. Any interfacing with other systems shall be the Contractor's responsibility under this contract, and the details, both logical and physical, of such interfaces shall be reflected in the Submittals and As-Built drawings.

E. If appropriate, interfaces with the Owner's Data Network, Telecommunications and Communications System shall be coordinated with the Owner and Architect.

F. All necessary back boards, back-boxes, pull-boxes, connectors, supports, conduit, cable and wire shall be furnished and installed to provide a complete and reliable system.

Exact location of all backboards, boxes, conduit and wiring runs shall be presented to the Owner / Architect for approval in advance of any installation. Provide as required and as specified in Division 26.

G. Where required provide 120-VAC, 60 Hz power from nearest electrical panel through a junction box, to the system devices. Provide as required and as specified in Division 26.

H. Where required, install conduit, cable and wire parallel and square with building lines, including raised floor areas. Conduit fills shall not exceed 40%.

I. Ground busses shall be provided in each any room with communication equipment.

J. All equipment shall be mounted with sufficient clearance to minimize EMI as well as meet all applicable codes and facilitate observation and testing. Securely hand and/or fasten with appropriate fittings to ensure positive grounding, free of ground loops, throughout the entire system. Units shall be installed parallel and square to building lines.

K. Communications grounding system shall be a single point grounding from the building entrance electrical ground to each Communications room.

L. All Conduit systems, cabinets' racks, cable trays, protector blocks, SCTP patch panels and/or miscellaneous equipment, etc. shall be grounded by being connected to the common communications grounding system. The conductors shall be a # 6awg solid with a green jacket

M. Quiet and vibration-free operation of all equipment is a requirement of this installation. Properly adjust, repair, balance or replace any equipment producing objectionable (in the judgment of the Owner or Architect) noise or vibration in any of the occupied areas of any building and provide additional brackets and bracing if necessary. Any such additions or changes shall be at no additional cost to the Owner.

N. Installation shall comply with the CODES AND STANDARDS portion of this Section. Where more than one code or regulation if applicable, the more stringent shall apply.

O. Where new equipment is replacing old equipment, the Contractor is responsible for removing and disposing of the old equipment and doing whatever repair work is necessary as specified by the Owner / Architect.

P. Install firestopping, as specified in Division 26 for all penetrations in slabs and firewalls to meet code at the completion of work and prior to final testing demonstration to the Owner.

Q. The installation shall be performed in a professional manner.

R. On a daily basis, clean up and deposit in appropriate containers all debris from work

performed under the appropriate specification sections. Stack and organize all parts, tools and equipment when not being used.

S. Preparation, handling and installation shall be in accordance with the Manufacturer's written instructions and technical data appropriate to the product specified.

T. All work shall conform to the National Electrical Contractor's Association "Standard of Installation" for general installation practice.

U. At the conclusion of the installation, all work areas, including all enclosures and boxes, shall be vacuumed and cleaned to remove all debris and grease.

**3.2 COORDINATION WITH OWNER / ARCHITECT**

A. Close coordination with the Owner / Architect is vital to achieve a complete, aesthetically pleasing job. The Contractor shall ensure that the Owner / Architect is kept fully apprized of job progress.

**3.3 CUTTING, PAINTING, AND PATCHING**

A. Structural members shall not be drilled, bored or notched in such a manner that shall impair their structural value. Cutting of holes in structural members, if required, shall be done with core drills and only with the specific approval of the Owner / Architect for each instance.

B. All walls that require cutting or repair during the installation process shall be returned to their original condition, including the matching of colors and finishes to the satisfaction of the Owner / Architect, and at no additional cost to the Owner.

**3.4 WIRE AND CABLE**

A. All low voltage cable shall be low smoke plenum rated, limited energy, with 300-volt insulation.

B. All wires in exposed areas shall run through conduit as specified in Division 26.

C. Provide conduits, cable trays, raceways, wireways, boxes and outlets as specified in Division 26.

D. After installation, and before termination, all wiring shall be checked and tested to insure there are no grounds, opens, or shorts on any conductors. In addition, all wires between buildings or underground and all coax cables shall have insulation tested with a megohmmeter (megger) and a reading of greater than 20 megohms shall be required to successfully complete the test.

E. Run wires continuously from termination to termination without splices.

F. Wire and cable shall be supported in each equipment and terminal cabinet and in each terminal and pull box in vertical risers and horizontal runs with wire duct and strap-type supports. At any point where wire duct is required for good wire management, whether shown on elevations or not, install appropriate duct. Where terminal boards are used, wire ducts shall be supplied on both sides and at not rime shall wires cross over terminal boards. Arrange cables neatly to allow inspection, removal and replacement. Lace cables as required. Spot tie wire bundles with plastic cable ties and securely affix to panels. If screw type terminals are specified, terminal strip connections shall be locking, tongue style, pressure crimp, and solderless spade lug.

G. Visually inspect wire and cable for faulty insulation prior to installation. Protect cable ends at all times with acceptable end caps except during actual termination. At no time shall any coaxial cable be subjected to a bend less than a 6-inch radius. Protect wire and cable from kinks. Install 1 pull rope for all 2” or larger sized conduits.

H. Provide plastic bushings and strain relief material at all conduit exit points and where necessary, to avoid abrasion of wire and excess tension on wire and cable.

I. Cables above accessible ceilings shall not rest on ceiling tiles. Use Velcro tie wraps, J-hooks or D-rings to hold cables. Provide independent support for all cables. Support is to be from building structure (do not support from pipes or conduits). Communications cables shall not tie off on HVAC supports, all-thread, ceiling grid hanger wire or electrical / mechanical piping system.

J. Ground and bond equipment and circuits in accordance with NEC and Division 26.

## 3.5 IDENTIFICATION AND TAGGING

A. All cables, wires, wiring forms, terminal blocks and terminals shall be identified by labels, tags to other permanent markings in accordance with TIA/EIA-606. The markings shall clearly indicate the function, source, or destination of all cabling, wiring and terminals. All cables and wires shall be identified, utilizing heat-shrink, machine printed, polyolefin wire markers (Brady Type B-32 *or equal*). Handwritten tags are not acceptable.

B. Should a situation arise where the wire tagging format as shown on the drawings cannot be used, a substitute format shall be submitted which complies with the intent to provide documentation that will permit end-to-end tracing of all Communications Systems wiring.

C. All panels shall be provided with permanently attached engraved lamacoid labels with identifying names and functions. All terminal points shall be appropriately labeled. Labels shall be consistent in form, color, and typeface throughout the system and all must contain the name of the system or subsystem as part of the label textual information. Design, color, font and layout shall be coordinated with, and approved by,

the Owner.

D. Identification of Equipment:
   1. All major equipment shall have a manufacturer's label identifying the manufacturer's address, equipment model and serial numbers, equipment size, and other pertinent data. Take care not to obliterate this nameplate. The legend on all nameplates or tags shall correspond to the identification shown on the Operating Instructions.
   2. A black-white-black 3 layer laminated plastic engraved identifying nameplate shall be permanently secured to each wireway, terminal cabinet, and communications (voice, data, video) cabinet or rack.
      a. Identifying nameplates shall have 1/2-inch high, engraved letters. For equipment designation and ¼-inch letters indicating source circuit designation, (i.e.: “IDF(FCR) XXYY –served from MDF (BCR) XXGG).
   3. Permanent, waterproof, black markers shall be used to identify each communications grid junction box, clearly indicating the type of system available at that junction box.
   4. Pull Boxes: Field work each with a nameplate showing identity, and identifying equipment connected to it. Nameplates shall also indicate where pull box is fed from.
   5. Communication hardware located above accessible ceilings: Provide ½-inch high black name plate with white 1/4-inch letters glued to bottom of t-grid ceiling below hardware located above ceiling. Identification shall be as short as possible yet identifying device above ceiling, i.e. “A/V-EQ”.

E. Prohibited Markings: Markings intended to identify the manufacturer, vendor, or other source from whom the material has been obtained are prohibited for installation in public, tenant, or common areas within the project. Also prohibited are materials or devices that bear evidence that markings or insignias have been removed. Certification, testing (example, Underwriters Laboratories), and approval labels are exceptions to this requirement.

F. Warning Signs: Provide warning signs where there is hazardous exposure associated with access to or operation of communications facilities. Provide text of sufficient size to convey adequate information at each location; mount permanently in an appropriate and effective location. Comply with industry standards for color and design.

G. Wire and Cable Labeling: Provide wire markers on each conductor in all boxes, pull boxes, gutters, wireways. Identify with drop/circuit number.

H. Underground Warning Tape: Thomas and Betts or approved equal. Six-inch wide plastic tape, colored red or orange with suitable warning legend describing buried communications lines. All underground conduits shall be so identified. Tape shall be buried at a depth of 6-inches below grade and directly above conduits or ductbanks. Provide magnetic marking tape below all underground conduits.

## 3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

A. General: Comply with the requirements of Division 01 for the cutting and patching of other work to accommodate the installation of electrical work. Except as authorized by the Architect / Engineer, cutting and patching of electrical work to accommodate the installation of other work is not permitted.

## 3.7 INSTRUCTION OF OWNER'S PERSONNEL

A. Before proceeding with the instruction of Owner Personnel, prepare a typed outline in triplicate, listing the subjects that will be covered in this instruction, and submit the outline for review by the Owner. At the conclusion of the instruction period obtain the signature of each person being instructed on each copy of the reviewed outline to signify that he has a proper understanding of the operation and maintenance of the systems and resubmit the signed outlines.

B. Prior to substantial completion, conduct an on-site training program to instruct Owner's operating personnel in the operation and maintenance of the communications systems.
   1. Provide the training during regular working day.
   2. The Instructors shall be experienced in their phase of operation and maintenance of the systems and with the project.

C. Time to be allocated for instructions.
   The Contractor shall furnish the services of factory trained specialists to instruct the Owner's operating personnel. The Owner's operator training shall include training as specified per system specification,
   1. Minimum of four (4) hours dedicated instructor time
   2. 2-hour sessions on different, non-consecutive days
   3. Additional instruction time for specific systems as specified in other Sections.

D. Before on-site training, submit the program syllabus; proposed time and dates; for review and approval, minimum 48 hours prior to proposed training time and date.
   1. One copy to the Owner
   2. One copy to the Architect / Engineer

E. The Owner shall provide a list of personnel to receive instructions and shall coordinate their attendance at the agreed upon times.

F. Use operation and maintenance manuals as the basis of instruction. Review manual with personnel in detail. Explain all aspects of operation and maintenance.

G. Demonstrate start-up, operation, control, adjustment, troubleshooting, servicing, maintenance, and shut down of each item of equipment.

H. Demonstrate equipment functions (both individually and as part of the total integrated system).

I. Prepare and insert additional data in the operating and maintenance manuals when the need for additional data becomes apparent during instructions.

J. Submit a report within one week after completion of training. List time and date of each demonstration, hours devoted to the demonstration, and a list of people present, with their respective signatures.

K. At the conclusion of the on-site training program, have the person designated by the Owner sign a certificate to certify that he/she has a proper understanding of the system, that the demonstrations and instructions have been satisfactorily completed, and the scope and content of the operating and maintenance manuals used for the training program are satisfactory.

L. Provide a copy of the report and the certificate in an appropriately tabbed section of each Operating and Maintenance Manual.

## 3.8 OPENINGS

A. Framed, cast or masonry openings for boxes, equipment or conduits are specified under other divisions. Drawings and layout work for exact size and location of all openings are included under this division.

## 3.9 OBSTRUCTIONS

A. The drawings indicate certain information pertaining to surface and subsurface obstructions, which has been taken from available drawings. Such information is not guaranteed, however, as to accuracy of location or complete information.
   1. Before any cutting or trenching operations are begun, verify with Owner's representative, utility companies, municipalities, and other interested parties that all available information has been provided.
   2. Should obstruction be encountered, whether shown or not, alter routing of new work, reroute existing lines, remove obstruction where permitted, or otherwise perform whatever work is necessary to satisfy the purpose of the new work and leave existing services and structures in a satisfactory and serviceable condition.

B. Assume total responsibility for and repair any damage to existing utilities or construction, whether or not such existing facilities are shown.

## 3.10 VANDAL RESISTANT DEVICES

A. Where vandal resistant screws or bolts are employed on the project, deliver to the Owner 2 suitable tools for use with each type of fastener used.

B. Proof of delivery of these items to the Owner shall be included in the Operating and Maintenance Manuals.

## 3.11 PROTECTION

A. Protect work, equipment, fixtures, and materials. At work completion, work must be clean and in original manufacturer's condition.

B. Do not deliver equipment to this project site until progress of construction has reached the stage where equipment is actually needed or until building is closed in enough to protect the equipment from weather. Equipment allowed to stand in the weather shall be rejected, and the contractor is obligated to furnish new equipment of a like kind at no additional cost to the Owner.

## 3.12 EQUIPMENT BACKBOARDS

A. Backboards: ¾ inch, fire retardant, exterior grade plywood, painted gray, both sides.
   1. Provide minimum of two 4-ft. by 8-ft. sheets of plywood for each location shown.
   2. Provide minimum of two 4-ft. by 4-ft. sheets of plywood for each communications location.

## 3.13 SITE MANAGEMENT RESPONSIBILITY

A. The Contractor shall provide an on-site Project Manager as defined in CONTRACTOR'S QUALIFICATIONS portion of this Section.

## 3.14 DEMOLITION AND RELOCATION

A. The Contractor shall modify, remove, and relocate all materials and items so indicated on the drawings or required by the installation of new facilities. All removals and/or dismantling shall be conducted in a manner as to produce maximum salvage. Salvage materials shall remain as directed by the Owner. Materials and items scheduled for relocation and which are damaged during dismantling or reassembly operations shall be repaired and restored to the approval of the Owner. The Contractor may substitute new materials and items of like design and quality in lieu of materials and items to be relocated, if approved by the Owner.

B. All items scheduled for relocation and/or reuse shall be inspected by the Contractor and the Owner or his authorized representative. A written report of the condition of each item shall be made and provided to the Consultant. Where items scheduled for relocation and/or reuse are considered unsuitable for reuse, the Contractor shall so notify the Consultant and await reinstallation instructions before proceeding with removal. Items damaged in reinstallation shall be repaired or replaced by the Contractor as directed by the Owner at no additional cost to the Owner or the Consultant.

C. All items which are to be relocated shall be carefully removed in reverse to original assembly or placement and protected until relocated. The Contractor shall clean, repair,

and provide all new materials, fittings, and appurtenances required to complete the relocation and to restore the items to good operative order. All relocations shall be performed by workmen skilled in the work ad in accordance with standard practice of the trades involved.

D. Service lines and wiring to items to be removed, salvaged, or relocated shall be removed to points as indicated on the drawings, specified, or acceptable to the Owner. Service lines and wiring not scheduled for reuse shall be removed to the points at which reuse is to be continued or service is to remain. Such services shall be sealed, capped, or otherwise tied off or connections into the existing facilities in such a manner as to result in minimum interruption of services to adjacent occupied areas. Services to existing areas or facilities which must remain in operation during the construction period shall not be interrupted without prior specific written approval of the Consultant.

**3.15 EXISTING SYSTEM TESTING**

A. Contractor shall have each low voltage system tested prior to the commencement of construction. Systems shall include all systems that fall under the Division 27 umbrellas, as identified in the Division 27 of the Construction Specifications Institute (CSI) current Master Format . Test shall include the functionality of all field devices and equipment. Any failures or items found to be functioning not to specification, shall be reported prior to construction. Any items found to be improperly or non-functioning upon the completion of the project, shall be replaced and/or repaired, by the contractor, at no additional cost to the project or the owner.

B. Contractor shall document the location and any ID tag, MAC address, IP address, or bar code of any existing device that is to be removed from its current location. Devices that are to remain, shall be reinstalled in the exact location that they reside in prior to construction, unless noted otherwise.

C. Any individual/firm that will be removing, relocating, reinstalling, or tampering with any devices; shall be licensed by the state and certified by the manufacturer of the system.

D. Contractor shall remove any devices where construction occurs to prevent possible damage to the device. Removal of any devices which support user connection or other systems, shall be coordinated with the owner prior to removal and/or taking offline.

**3.16 START-UP RESPONSIBILITY**

A. The Contractor shall initiate System operation. The Contractor shall provide competent Start-Up personnel on each consecutive working day until all Communications Systems are functional and ready to start the acceptance test phase. If the Contractor, in the Owner / Architect’s judgment, is not demonstrating progress in solving any technical problems, the Contractor shall supply Manufacturer’s factory technical representation and diagnostic equipment at no cost to the Owner, until resolution of those defined problems. Where appropriate, the Contractor shall bring the Systems on-line in their

basic state (i.e., alarm reporting, facility code access control, etc.) It is the responsibility of the Owner to provide the specific database information that will be utilized for initial system programming.

B. Properly ground each piece of electronic equipment prior to applying power. Properly ground all shielded wire shields to the appropriate earth ground at the hub end only, not at the remote or device end.

C. Use a start-up sequence that incrementally brings each portion of the system on-line in a logical order that incorporates checking individual elements before proceeding to subsequent elements until the entire system is operational. The basic steps should include:
   1. Establish ground planes at the equipment rooms and hub end of the systems as specified in Division 26.
   2. Disconnect power, connect the first device, reconnect power, and verify operational correctness. Repeat until the entire system is verified and operational.

## 3.17 PREPARATION FOR ACCEPTANCE (SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION)

A. All systems, equipment, and devices shall be in full and proper adjustment and operation, and properly labeled and identified.

B. All materials shall be neat, clean and unmarred, and parts securely attached.

C. All extra material as specified shall be delivered and stored at the premises as directed.

D. Test reports of each system and each system's components and As-Built Project Drawings shall be complete and available for inspection and delivery as directed by the Owner.

## 3.18 SYSTEM ACCEPTANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Before final acceptance or work, the Contractor shall perform and/or deliver each of the following in the order stated.

B. The Contractor shall deliver three (3) composite "System Operations and Maintenance" manuals in three-ring binders, sized to hold the material below, plus 50% excess. Each manual shall contain in appropriately tabbed sections:
   1. A statement of Guarantee including date of termination and the name and phone number of the persons to be called in the event of equipment failure.
   2. A set of Operating procedures for the overall System that includes all required Owner activities, and that allows for the Owner operation of all attributes and facilities of the System.
   3. A section for each specific type of equipment containing the vendor manuals, instruction sheets, and any related literature that cam in the original shipping

container for that piece of equipment. Include all warranty cards.

C. Testing:
   1. The Contractor shall perform all tests required by Division 26 and those submitted as part of this Section.
   2. The Contractor shall activate all devices for proper system operation, including supervisory and trouble circuit tests. Similarly, audible alarms will not be activated except on a one-time, coordinated basis, to check the actual sounding devices.
   3. A test report for each piece of equipment shall be prepared by the Contractor and submitted to the Owner. This report shall include a complete listing of every device, the date it was tested, by whom and the results. The final test reports shall indicate that every device tested successfully. Failure to completely test and document the tests will result in a delay of final testing and acceptance.

D. As-Built Drawings:
   1. After completion of all the tests listed above, and prior to the final acceptance test, The Contractor shall submit the complete As-Built drawings as identified in PART 1 – PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS.
   2. The final As-Built Drawings shall consist on one set of reproducible prints, two (2) sets of Point-to-Point Detail Drawings, Equipment Schedules, and the complete detailed technical data that was shipped by the manufacturer with all installed equipment.

E. Final Acceptance Test: The Final Acceptance Test shall demonstrate the installed and activated System's performance and compliance with System Specifications. However, before this testing can begin the following must have received and reviewed by the Owner.
   1. System Operations and Maintenance Manuals
   2. System Test Reports
   3. As-Built Drawings

## 3.19 FINAL ACCEPTANCE

A. The date of final acceptance shall be the date of owner occupancy, or the date all punch list items have been completed or final payment has been received. Refer to Division 1 for additional requirements

B. When the Final System Acceptance Requirements described above including the Final Acceptance Test described above have been satisfactorily completed. The Owner / Architect shall issue a Letter of Completion to the Contractor indicating the date of such completion. The Notice of Completion shall be recorded by the Contractor upon receipt of the Owner / Architect completion letter. This date of record shall be the start of the warranty period.

**END OF SECTION 27 05 00**

# SECTION 27 05 07 - COMMUNICATIONS SHOP DRAWINGS, COORDINATION DRAWINGS & PRODUCT DATA

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Prepare submittals as required by Division 01 and as outlined below.

B. Submit product data shop drawings only for the following and for items specifically requested elsewhere in the Contract Drawings and Specifications. Architect / Engineer reserves the right to refuse shop drawings not requested for review and to imply that materials shall be provided as specified without exception.

C. The term submittal, as used herein, refers to all:
1. Shop Drawings
2. Coordination Drawings
3. Product data

D. Submittals shall be prepared and produced for:
1. Distribution as specified
2. Inclusion in the Operating and Maintenance Manual, as specified, in the related section

### 1.2 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Present drawings in a clear and thorough manner. Identify details by reference to sheet and detail, schedule, or room numbers shown on Contract Drawings.

B. Show all dimensions of each item of equipment on a single composite Shop Drawing. Do not submit a series of drawings of components.

C. Identify field dimensions; show relation to adjacent or critical features or work or products.

### 1.3 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

A. Present in a clear and thorough manner. Title each drawing with project name. Identify each element of drawings by reference to sheet number and detail, or room number of contract documents. Minimum drawing scale: 1/4"=1'-0".

B. Prepare coordination drawings to coordinate installations for efficient use of available space, for proper sequence of installation and to resolve conflicts. Coordinate with work specified in other sections and other divisions of the specifications.

C. For each room containing technology equipment and each rack with technology equipment, submit plan and elevation drawings. Show:

1. Actual technology equipment and components to be furnished.
2. NEC working space and NEC access to NEC working space.
3. Relationship to other equipment and components and openings, doors and obstructions
4. Rack location and dimensions

D. Identify field dimensions. Show relation to adjacent or critical features of work or products.

E. Verify location of communications station devices, telephone outlets and other work specified in this Division.
1. Coordinate with drawing details, site conditions and millwork shop drawings prior to installation.
2. Where required for clarification, submit shop drawings prior to rough-in and fabrication.

F. Submit shop drawings in plan, elevation and sections, showing outlets and other devices in casework, cabinetwork and built-in furniture.

## 1.4 PRODUCT DATA

A. All product options specified shall be indicated on the product data submittal. All options listed on the standard product printed data not clearly identified as not part of the product data submitted shall become part of the Contract and shall be provided.

B. Mark each copy of standard printed data to identify pertinent products, referenced to specification section and article number.

C. Show reference standards, performance characteristics and capacities; wiring and piping diagrams and controls; component parts; finishes; dimensions and required clearances.

D. Modify manufacturer's standard schematic drawings and diagrams to supplement standard information and to provide information specifically applicable to the work. Delete information not applicable.

E. Mark up a copy of the specifications for the product to indicate a) acknowledgement of the specification requirement (Comply), or b) acknowledgement that the particular specification requirement does not apply to this specific project (Not Applicable) or, c) acknowledgement that the specification requirement cannot be made or that a variance is being submitted for review to the Architect / Engineer / Owner (Does Not Comply, Explanation:)

## 1.5 MANUFACTURERS INSTRUCTIONS

A. Submit Manufacturer's instructions for storage, preparation, assembly, installation, start-up and adjusting.

## 1.6 CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Review submittals prior to transmittal.

B. Determine and verify:
   1. Field measurements
   2. Field construction criteria
   3. Manufacturer's catalog numbers
   4. Conformance with requirements of Contract Documents

C. Coordinate submittals with requirements of the work and of the Contract Documents.

D. Notify the Architect / Engineer in writing at time of submission of any deviations in the submittals from requirements of the Contract Documents.

E. Do not fabricate products, or begin work for which submittals are specified, until such submittals have been produced and bear contractor's stamp. Do not fabricate products or begin work scheduled to have submittals reviewed until return of reviewed submittals with Architect / Engineer's acceptance.

F. Contractor's responsibility for errors and omissions in submittals is not relieved whether Architect / Engineer reviews submittals or not.

G. Contractor's responsibility for deviations in submittals from requirements of Contract Documents is not relieved whether Architect / Engineer reviews submittals or not, unless Architect / Engineer gives written acceptance of the specific deviations on reviewed documents.

H. Submittals shall show sufficient data to indicate complete compliance with Contract Documents:
   1. Proper sizes and capacities
   2. That the item will fit in the available space in a manner that will allow proper service
   3. Construction methods, materials and finishes

I. Schedule submissions at least 15 days before date reviewed submittals will be needed.

## 1.7 SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS

A. Make submittals promptly in accordance with approved schedule, and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Project or in the work of any other Contractor.

B. Number of submittals required:
   1. Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings: Submit four opaque reproductions.
   2. Product Data: Submit the number of copies the contractor requires, plus those

to be retained by the Architect / Engineer.

C. Accompany submittals with transmittal letter, in duplicate, containing:
   1. Date
   2. Project title and number
   3. Contractor's name, address and telephone number
   4. The number of each Shop Drawing, Project Datum and Sample submitted
   5. Other pertinent data

D. Submittals shall include:
   1. The date of submission
   2. The project title and number
   3. Contract Identification
   4. The names of:
      a. Contractor
      b. Subcontractor
      c. Supplier
      d. Manufacturer
   5. Identification of the product
   6. Field dimensions, clearly identified as such
   7. Relation to adjacent or critical features of the work or materials
   8. Applicable standards, such as ASTM or federal specifications numbers
   9. Identification of deviations from contract documents
   10. Suitable blank space for General Contractor and Architect / Engineer stamps
   11. Contractor's signed and dated Stamp of Approval

E. Coordinate submittals into logical groupings to facilitate interrelation of the several items.
   1. Finishes which involve Architect / Engineer selection of colors, textures or patterns
   2. Associated items requiring correlation for efficient function or for installation

## 1.8 SUBMITTAL SPECIFICATION INFORMATION

A. Every submittal document shall bear the following information as used in the project manual:
   1. The related specification section number
   2. The exact specification section title

B. Submittals delivered to the Architect / Engineer without the specified information will not be processed. The Contractor shall bear the risk of all delays, as if no submittal had been delivered.

## 1.9 RESUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS

A. Make resubmittals under procedures specified for initial submittals.

1. Indicate that the document or sample is a resubmittal
2. Identify changes made since previous submittals

B. Indicate any changes which have been made other than those requested by the Architect / Engineer.

## 1.10 CONTRACTOR'S STAMP OF APPROVAL

A. Contractor shall stamp and sign each document certifying to the review of products, field measurements and field construction criteria, and coordination of the information within the submittal with requirements of the work and of Contract Documents.

B. Contractor's stamp of approval on any submittal shall constitute a representation to Owner and Architect / Engineer that Contractor has either determined and verified all quantities, dimensions, field construction criteria, materials, catalog numbers, and similar data or assumes full responsibility for doing so, and that Contractor has reviewed or coordinated each submittal with the requirements of the work and the Contract Documents.

C. Do not deliver any submittals to the Architect / Engineer that do not bear the Contractor's stamp of approval and signature.

D. Submittals delivered to the Architect / Engineer without Contractor's stamp of approval and signature will not be processed. The Contractor shall bear the risk of all delays, as if no submittal had been delivered.

## 1.11 ARCHITECT / ENGINEER REVIEW OF IDENTIFIED SUBMITTALS

A. The Architect / Engineer will:
1. Review identified submittals with reasonable promptness and in accordance with schedule. Specific equipment submittals that may be required to be expedited shall be submitted separately without other submittal items not requiring the same prompt attention.
2. Affix stamp and initials or signature, and indicate requirements for resubmittal or approval of submittal
3. Return submittals to Contractor for distribution or for resubmission

B. Review of submittals will not extend to design data reflected in submittals that is peculiarly within the special expertise of the Contractor or any party dealing directly with the Contractor.

C. Architect / Engineer's review is only for conformance with the design concept of the project and for compliance with the information given in the contract.
1. The review shall not extend to means, methods, sequences, techniques or procedures of construction or to safety precautions or programs incident thereto.

2. The review shall not extend to review of quantities, dimensions, weights or gauges, fabrication processes or coordination with the work of other trades.

D. The review and approval of a separate item as such will not indicate approval of the assembly in which the item functions.

**1.12 SUBSTITUTIONS**

A. Do not make requests for substitution employing the procedures of this Section.

B. The procedure for making a formal request for substitution is specified in Division 1.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 SHOP DRAWINGS AND PRODUCT DATA**

A. Submittals shall not be combined or bound together with any other material submittal.

B. Submit individually bound shop drawings and product data for the following when specified or provided:
1. Structural Cabling
2. Communications System
3. Sound Reinforcement System
4. CATV System

**3.2 COORDINATION DRAWINGS**

A. Submit coordination drawings as specified.

**END OF SECTION 27 05 07**

# SECTION 27 05 09 - CONTRACT QUALITY CONTROL

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Contract quality control including workmanship, manufacturer's instructions, mock-ups and demonstrations.

### 1.2 QUALITY CONTROL PROGRAM

A. Maintain quality control over supervision, subcontractors, suppliers, manufacturers, products, services, site conditions and workmanship to produce work in accordance with contract documents.

### 1.3 WORKMANSHIP

A. Comply with industry standards except when more restrictive tolerances or specified requirements indicate more rigid standards or more precise workmanship.

B. Perform work by persons qualified to produce workmanship of specified quality.

C. Secure products in place with positive anchorage devices designed and sized to withstand stresses, vibration, and racking. Under no conditions shall material or equipment be suspended from structural bridging.

D. Provide finishes to match approved samples; all exposed finishes shall be approved by the Architect / Engineer. Submit color samples as required.

### 1.4 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

A. Comply with instructions in full detail, including each step in sequence.

B. Should instruction conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect / Engineer before proceeding.

### 1.5 MANUFACTURER'S CERTIFICATES

A. When required in individual Specification Sections, submit manufacturer's certificate in duplicate, certifying that products meet or exceed specified requirements.

### 1.6 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

A. When required in individual Specification Sections, manufacturer shall provide a manufacturer’s qualified personnel to observe:
   1. Field conditions.
   2. Condition of installation.
   3. Quality of workmanship.

4. Start-up of equipment.
5. Testing and adjusting of equipment.

B. Manufacturer's qualified personnel shall make written report of observations and recommendations to Architect/Engineer.

**1.7 MOCK UPS**

A. Assemble and erect the specified equipment and products complete, with specified anchorage and support devices, seals and finishes.

B. Do not proceed with any work involving a mock-up, until the related mock up has been approved in writing.

C. Acceptable mock-ups in place shall be retained in the completed work where possible.

D. Perform tests and submit results as specified.

**1.8 SCHEDULING OF MOCK-UPS**

A. Schedule demonstration and observation of mock-ups, in phases, with Architect / Engineer.
1. Rough-in
2. Finish with all appurtenances in place
3. Demonstrations

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 REFERENCE APPLICABLE SPECIFICATION SECTIONS.**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 ADJUSTMENTS AND MODIFICATIONS**

A. Contractor shall provide all adjustments and modifications as requested by the manufacturer's qualified personnel at no additional cost to Owner.

**3.2 MOCK-UPS**

A. Mock-up a typical classroom, science lab of each type, and computer lab with all wiring devices, cover plates, rough-in boxes, conduits, etc. Provide all conductors from all wiring devices to above ceiling space to demonstrate conduit routing and conductor fill.

**END OF SECTION 27 05 09**

# SECTION 27 05 10 - FIRESTOPS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Provide firestop as required, and as specified. Refer to Architectural drawings for all fire and smoke rated partitions, walls, floors, etc.

B. Types: Firestop required for the project includes smoke stop.

### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. UL Label: Firestops shall be UL labeled.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Nelson.

B. 3M (Minnesota Mining Manufacturing).

C. Hilti

D. Specified Technologies, Inc.

### 2.2 MATERIAL AND COMPONENTS

A. General: Except as otherwise indicated, provide firestop manufacturer's standard materials and components as indicated by published product information, designed and constructed as recommended by the manufacturer, and as required for installation.

### 2.3 FIRESTOP

A. Conduits: Provide a soft, permanently flexible sealant for 1-1/2 to 2 hour rated fireproofing for steel conduits (up to 4" diameter).

B. Low Voltage Cables, Fiber Optic Cable and Innerduct: Provide Specified Technologies, Inc. EZ-Path single, double, or triple pathways as required.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF FIRESTOPS

A. General: Install firestops in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and industry practices to ensure that the firestops comply with requirements. Comply with UL and NFPA standards for the installation of firestops.

**END OF SECTION 27 05 10**

# SECTION 27 05 50 - TELECOMMUNICATIONS GROUNDING AND BONDING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Work covered by this Section shall consist of furnishing labor, equipment, supplies, materials tools and testing unless otherwise specified, and in performing the following operations recognized as necessary for the installation, termination and labeling of ground and bonding infrastructure as described on the drawings and/or required by these specifications.

### 1.2 REFERENCES

A. IEEE C2-2007 National Electrical Safety Code.

B. ANSI/TIA-07-B-2011 Commercial Building Grounding and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications.

C. NFPA 70™-2011 National Electrical Code

D. NFPA 70E*-2004 Standard for Electrical Safely in the Workplace

E. ANSI/NECA/BICSI-607-2011 Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding Planning and Installation Methods for Commercial Buildings

F. UL 467 Standard for Grounding and Bonding Equipment.

### 1.3 QUALIFICATIONS

A. Products specified in this Section shall be manufactured by a company with a minimum of three years' documented experience specializing in manufacturing such products.

### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. Backbone: A facility (e.g. pathway, cable or conductors) between telecommunications rooms, or floor distribution terminals, the entrance facilities, and the equipment rooms within or between buildings.

B. Bonding: The permanent joining of metallic parts to form an electrically conductive path that will assure electrical continuity and the capacity to conduct safely any current likely to be imposed.

C. Common Bonding Network (CBN): The principal means for effecting bonding and grounding inside a telecommunication building. It is the set of metallic components that are intentionally or incidentally interconnected to form the principal bonding network (BN) in a building. These components include structural steel or reinforcing rods,

plumbing, alternating current (ac) power conduit, ac equipment grounding conductors (ACEGs), cable racks, and bonding conductors. The CBN always has a mesh topology and is connected to the grounding electrode system.

D. EMI (Electromagnetic Interference): The interference in signal transmission or reception resulting from the radiation of electrical or magnetic fields.

E. Entrance Facility (telecommunications): An entrance to a building for both public and private network service cables (including antennae) including the entrance point at the building wall and continuing to the entrance room or space.

F. Equipment Room (telecommunications): A centralized space for telecommunications equipment that serves the occupants of the building. An equipment room is considered distinct from a telecommunications room because of the nature or complexity of the equipment.

G. Exothermic Weld: A method of permanently bonding two metals together by a controlled heat reaction resulting in a molecular bond.

H. Ground: A conducting connection, whether intentional or incidental, between an electrical circuit or equipment and the earth, or to some conducting body that serves in place of the earth.

I. Grounding Electrode Conductor: The conductor used to connect the grounding electrode to the equipment grounding conductor, to the grounded conductor, or to both, of the circuit at the service equipment, or at the source of a separately derived system.

J. Grounding Equalizer (GE): A bonding conductor that interconnects TGBs on the same floor, (formerly TBBIBC).

K. Mesh Bonding Network (Mesh-BN): A bonding network to which all associated equipment (e.g., cabinets, frames, racks, trays, pathways) are connected using a bonding grid, which is connected to multiple points on the common bonding network.

L. Primary Protector: A surge protective device placed on telecommunications entrance conductors in accordance with ANSI/NFPA 70 and ANSI/ATIS 0600318 and listed under ANSI/UL 497.

M. Rack Bonding Conductor (RBC): A bonding conductor used to connect the rack/cabinet directly to the TMGB/TGB/Mesh

N. Room (telecommunications): An enclosed space for housing telecommunications equipment, cable terminations, and cross-connect cabling, that is the recognized location of the cross-connect between the backbone and the horizontal facilities.

0. Telecommunications Bonding Backbone (TBB): A conductor that interconnects the telecommunications main grounding busbar (TMGB) to the telecommunications grounding busbar (TGB).

P. Telecommunications Equipment Bonding Conductor (TEBC): A conductor that connects the telecommunications main grounding busbar (TMGB) or telecommunications grounding busbar (TGB) to equipment racks or cabinets.

Q. Telecommunications Grounding Busbar (TGB): The interface to the building telecommunications grounding system generally located in telecommunications room. A common point of connection for telecommunications system and equipment bonding to ground and located in the telecommunications room or equipment room.

R. Telecommunications Main Grounding Busbar (TMGB): A busbar placed in a convenient and accessible location and bonded, by means of the bonding conductor for telecommunications, to the building service equipment (power) ground.

S. Unit Bonding Conductor (UBC): A bonding conductor used to connect u rack/cabinet mounted equipment unit to the grounding structure (i.e... conductor, busbar) utilized in that rack/cabinet.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 CABLE**

A. THHN: The telecommunications backbone shall be a copper conductor.
   1. Shall be rated, plenum-riser, depending on the environment, or bare copper may be acceptable in approved applications.
   2. Jacket color shall be green.
   3. Cable size per table in Part 3.

**2.2 BUSBARS**

A. Telecommunications Main Grounding Busbar (TMGB).
   1. Predrilled copper with holes to accommodate lug mounting holes
   2. 0.25” thick x 4” wide with varying length
   3. Sized for current applications and future growth
   4. Insulated from its support
   5. The TMGB use a copper plated busbar
   6. Maintain a 2” min clearance from wall
   7. Size
      a. 4” X 6” – Copper – Hubbell Part Number HBBB14416H
      b. 4” X 6” – Copper – Hubbell Part Number HBBB14420J

B. Telecommunications Grounding Busbar (TGB)
   1. Pre-drilled copper with holes to accommodate lug mounting holes
   2. 0.25” thick x 2” wide with varying length
   3. Sized for current applications and future growth

4. The TGB use a copper plated busbar
5. Maintain a 2” min clearance from wall
6. Size & material
    a. 4” X 6” – Copper – Hubbell Part Number HBBB14210A
    b. 4” X 6” – Copper – Hubbell Part Number HBBB14416H

C. Horizontal Cabinet or Equipment Rack Busbar - 19”
1. Mounts to standard 19” Rack or Frame
2. Capacity: 6 Double hole lugs
3. Size & material
    a. 0.75” x 19” x 0.25” – Copper - Hubbell Part Number HBBBHR19KT

D. Vertical Cabinet or Equipment Rack Busbar – 36 to 72”
1. Mounts to vertical rail or inside of cabinet in 19” or 23” Rack or Frame
2. Capacity: 9 Double hole lugs
3. Size & material
    a. 0.75” x 36” x 0.25” – Copper - Hubbell Part Number HBBBVR36KT

## 2.3 COMPRESSION LUGS

A. Shall be UL & CSA listed

B. Shall be able to accept 6 AWG to 3/0 AWG

C. Compression type

D. Two holes with various hole spacing to fit the busbar

E. Long barrel that will allow a minimum of two crimps with standard industry colors

F. An inspection window to verify that the conductor is fully seated in the lug

G. Have a traceable feature to ensure proper die size was used to make the crimp

H. Crimped according to manufacturer’s recommendation

I. Size (XX – specify AWG)
1. 0.250” holes X 0.625” spacing
    a. 0 degrees – Hubbell Part Number HGBLXXD
2. 0.250” holes x 0.750” spacing
    a. 0 degrees – Hubbell Part Number HGBLXXDA
3. 0.375” holes x 1.000” spacing
    a. 0 degrees – Hubbell Part Number HGBLXXDB.

## 2.4 TAPS

A. Connections to the Conductor shall be made with irreversible compression connectors.

B. Shall be UL & CSA listed

C. Shall be able to accept 6 AWG to 3/0 AWG

D. Have a traceable feature to ensure proper die size was used to make the crimp

E. Requires a minimum of (2) crimps for C Tap and H Tap, 1 crimp for I-Beam and busbar Tap

F. Crimp according to manufacturer's recommendation.

G. C Taps:

1. Main Run 6-4 AWG - Tap 6 AWG
   a. Hubbell Part Number HYC4C6
2. Main Run 6-4 AWG – Tap 4 AWG
   a. Hubbell Part Number HYC4C4
3. Main Run 2 AWG – Tap 8-4 AWG
   a. Hubbell Part Number HYC2C4
4. Main Run 2 AWG – Tap 2 AWG
   a. Hubbell Part Number HYC2C2
5. Main Run 1/0-2/0 AWG – Tap 8-2 AWG
   a. Hubbell Part Number HYC26C2

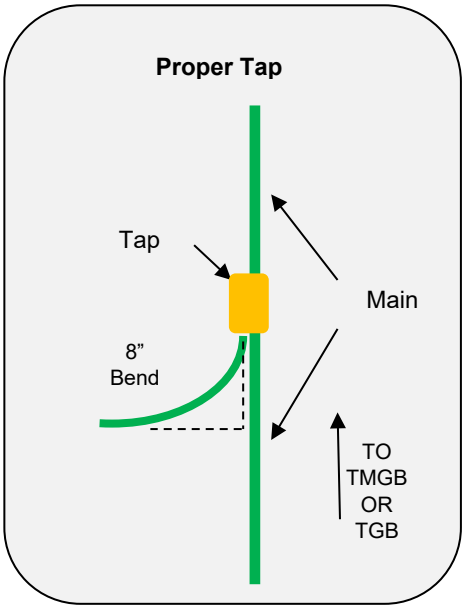



Illustration 1

6. Main Run 1/0-2/0 AWG – Tap 1/0-2/0 AWG
   a. Hubbell Part Number HYC26C26

H. I-Beam Tap

1. I-Beam steel with a Standard Flange
   a. Hubbell Part Number HYGIBS####
2. I-Beam steel with a Wide Flange
   a. Hubbell Part Number HYGIBW####

I. Busbar Tap

1. Busbar thickness 0.25", Main Run 2 AWG - Tap 6 AWG
   a. Hubbell Part Number HYG14B2TC2C6C
2. Busbar thickness 0.25", Main Run 2 AWG – Tap 2 AWG

a. Hubbell Part Number HYG14B2TC2C2C

3. Busbar thickness 0.25”, Main Run 4/0 – 1/0 AWG
   a. Hubbell Part Number HYGBTC28

## 2.5 LADDER RACK BONDING CONDUCTORS

A. Ground cord assembly
   1. Stranded THHN
   2. Color: green
   3. #6 AWG insulated bonding jumper
   4. Length: 9” - 12”
   5. Each end terminated with a two-hole compression lug or listing approved terminal
   6. Hubbell Part Number HGRKTD12D, HGRKTKLU9KLU5

B. Braided Jumper
   1. 0.94” Braid width
   2. Hole diameter 0.375”
   3. Hole Spacing 1.25”
   4. Length: 12”
   5. Hubbell Part Number HGBBD12

## 2.6 BASKET TRAY CONDUCTORS

A. Mounts to the basket tray metal runner

B. Accepts #6 AWG cable that spans the gaps between sections of basket tray

C. Hubbell Part Number HGBKS17, HGRKTWC45, HGRKTWB5

## 2.7 WRIST STRAP ESD PORT

A. Lug w/ 4mm banana plug to attach ESD wrist strap.

B. Two (2) hole lug

C. Placed inside cabinet or on equipment rack

D. Must be identifiable as an ESD connection point

E. Hubbell Part Number HGBESDKT10

## 2.8 RAISED FLOOR GROUNDING CLAMP

A. Ability to do both parallel and grid configurations
   1. HGBGXP1828RF - Grid or Parallel

B. Attached to the stringer of the raised floor

1. HGBGXP1828RF - 0.75”-1.5” Round or Square

C. Wire Range
1. HGBGXP1828RF 6 – 4/0 AWG

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 TELECOMMUNICATIONS MAIN GROUND BUSBAR (TMGB)**

A. The TMGB shall be:
1. Pre-drilled copper with holes to accommodate lug mounting holes
2. 0.25” t x 4” w with varying length
3. Sized for current applications and future growth
4. Insulated from its support
5. Maintain a 2” min clearance from wall
6. Installed to maintain clearances required by applicable codes
7. In an accessible location
8. As close to the panelboard as practicable min 36”
   a. Where a panelboard (electrical power panel) is located in the same room or space as the TMGB that panelboard’s alternating current equipment ground (ACEG) bus (when equipped) or the panelboard enclosure shall be bonded to the TMGB.
9. Be listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory
10. 36” from active electronics or the panelboard

B. The TMGB should:
1. Be located in the telecommunication entrance facility
   a. The ideal location of the TMGB is in the telecommunications entrance facility.
2. Have a mounting height adjusted to accommodate overhead or underfloor cable routing.
3. Minimize the length of bonding conductor for telecommunications
4. Provide for the shortest and straightest routing of the primary
5. Be located near backbone cabling and associated terminations
6. Serve telecommunications equipment that is located within the same room or space.

C. The TMGB use a copper plated busbar.

D. Attachments to TMGB:
1. Bonding Conductor – Electrical Distribution Panel
2. Primary protector
3. Building Steel
4. Outside plant cables
5. Backbone cables that incorporates a shield or metallic member
6. All metallic pathways for telecommunications cabling located within the same room or space as the TMGB.
7. Cable tray

8. Ladder rack
9. Conduit
10. Telecommunications equipment located in the TEF (e.g., multiplexer or optical fiber termination equipment).
11. TBB
12. TEBC
13. Primary protector grounding conductor
    a. A minimum of 1 ft. separation shall be maintained between this insulated conductor and any dc power cables, switchboard cable, or high frequency cables, even when placed in rigid metal conduit or EMT.

## 3.2 TELECOMMUNICATION GROUND BUSBAR (TGB)

A. The TGB shall:
1. Be a predrilled copper busbar provided with holes for use with standard sized lugs,
2. Have minimum dimensions of 6 mm (0.25 in) thick x 50 mm (2 in) wide and variable length to meet the application requirements and with consideration of future growth.
3. Be insulated from its support attachment a minimum of 2".
4. Be listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL).
5. Maintain 36" separation from active electronics.

B. It is acceptable that the busbar be electro-tin plated for reduced contact resistance. If not plated, the busbar shall be cleaned prior to fastening the conductors to the busbar, and an antioxidant should be applied to the contact area to control corrosion and reduce contact resistance.

C. The TGB is the grounding connection point for telecommunications systems and equipment in the area served by that telecommunications room or equipment room.

D. Where a panelboard is located in the same room or space as the TGB that panelboard's ACEG bus (ac electrical ground when equipped) or the panelboard enclosure shall be bonded to the TGB. When a panelboard for telecommunications equipment is not in the same room or space as the TGB, that TGB should be bonded to the panelboard that feeds the distributor.

E. The TBBs and other TGBs within the same space shall be bonded to the TGB with a conductor the same size as the TBB.

F. Where a grounding equalizer (GE) is required, it shall be bonded to the TGB.

## 3.3 TELECOMMUNICATIONS BONDING BACKBONE (TBB)

A. The intended function of a TBB is to reduce or equalize potential differences between telecommunication systems. While the TBB will carry some current under ac power ground fault conditions, it is not intended to provide the only ground fault return path.

B. The TBB shall:

1. Be connected to the TMGB & TGB.
2. Be a continuous copper conductor that should be sized no less than 6 AWG to a maximum of 3/0 AWG. The TBB shall be sized in accordance to the conductor table.

| TABLE 1<br>CONDUCTOR LENGTH VS AWG | |
|---|---|
| Linear length – ft. | Size (AWG) |
| Less than 13 | 6 |
| 14 – 20 | 4 |
| 21 – 26 | 4 |
| 27 – 33 | 2 |
| 34 – 41 | 1 |
| 42 – 52 | 1/0 |
| 53 – 66 | 2/0 |
| Greater than 67 | 3/0 |

3. Be consistent with the design of the telecommunications backbone cabling system.
4. The TBB conductors shall be installed and protected from physical and mechanical damage.
5. TBB conductors should be installed without splices.
   a. Where splices are necessary, the number of splices should be a minimum and they shall be accessible and located in telecommunications spaces.
   b. Joined segments of a TBB shall be connected using exothermic welding, irreversible compression-type connectors, or equivalent.
   c. Permit multiple TBBs as dictated by the building size.
   d. The metallic cable shield not be used as a TBB.

**3.4 GROUNDING EQUALIZER (GE)**

A. The GE shall be a continuous copper conductor that should be sized no less than 6 AWG to a maximum of 3/0 AWG. The GE shall be sized in accordance to the conductor table.

B. The GE connects the telecommunications grounding busbar(s) in the same-floor telecommunications rooms (TRs) on the first, top, and every third floor in a multistory building.

C. Cable shields do not satisfy the requirements for a GE.

3.5 TELECOMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT BONDING CONDUCTOR (TEBC)

A. Connects the TMGB/TGB to equipment racks/cabinets.

B. Shall be a continuous copper conductor that should be sized per the length of cable.

C. Shall be separated from ferrous materials by 2” or be bonded to the ferrous metal.
   1. May be routed within cable trays or suspended 2” under or off the side of the cable tray or ladder rack.

D. Shall be supported every 3ft.

E. 8” Bend radius – with no less than a 90-degree bend.

F. May come in contact with other cable groups at a 90-degree angle only.

G. Cable shields do not satisfy the requirements of a TEBC.

H. There may be more than one TEBC within each telecommunication room.

**3.6 RACK BONDING CONDUCTOR**

A. A bonding conductor used to connect the rack/cabinet directly to the TMGB/TGB/Mesh.

B. Metallic enclosures, including telecommunications cabinets and racks, shall be bonded to the mesh-BN, TGB, or TMGB using a minimum sized conductor of No. 6 AWG.

C. Cabinets, racks, and other enclosures in computer rooms shall not be bonded serially; each shall have their own dedicated bonding conductor to the mesh-BN, TGB, or TMGB.

**3.7 ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION PANEL (EDP)**

A. When located in the same room as the TMGB/TGB the EDP's equipment grounding bus or the panel board enclosure shall be bonded to the TMGB/TGB.

B. Using a bonding conductor for telecommunications (BCT) minimum 6 AWG to a maximum of 3/0 AWG depending on the length of cable required.

C. Use same AWB as TBB.

D. A qualified electrician shall make all connections within an AC electrical panel.

E. Outside of the scope of ANSI/TIA-607B.

**3.8 CONDUCTIVE FIBER OPTIC CABLES**

A. The metallic components of a conductive cable are capable of transmitting current.

B. Conductive fiber-optic cables should be bonded and grounded as specified in NEC Article 770.100

**3.9 LADDER RACK AND/OR CABLE TRAY**

A. To achieve the objective of potential equalization in the TR, all cable runway sections are bonded together and bonded back to the TMGB/TGB

B. Maintain a 8” Bend Radius on the TEBC

C. Keep a 2” separation from other cables, power and telecommunications

D. Remove any paint, oxidation, etc. from the runway surfaces that are being bonded

E. Drill two holes as required to accommodate the 2-hole compression lug

F. Apply a thin coat of antioxidant around the holes and on the surface where the lug will be in contact.

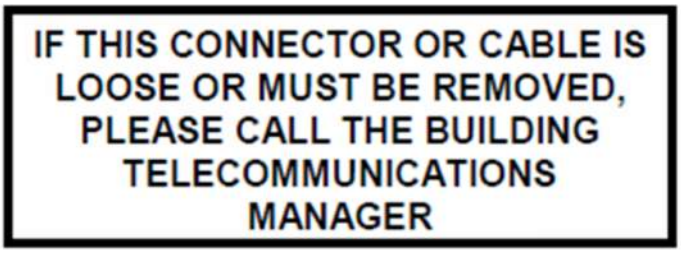
G. Attach straps to the runway using stainless steel hardware sized for the lug holes.

H. Tighten the hardware

I. Wipe off any excess antioxidant after installation of the lug.

**3.10 LABELING**

A. The format for the telecommunications main grounding busbar shall be FS-TMGB, while the format for the TGBs shall be FS-TGB.
   1. FS is the TS identifier for the space containing the busbar; Floor & space
   2. TMGB is the portion of an identifier designating a telecommunications main grounding busbar;
   3. TGB is the portion of the identifier designating a telecommunications grounding busbar.




B. Each telecommunications space or room shall be assigned an identifier unique within the building. The TS shall be labeled with the TS identifier inside the room so as to be visible to someone working in that room. The TS identifier shall have a format of FS.

C. All busbars and cables will have the label in Illustration 2 attached, and it will be visible .and readable.

**3.11 TESTING**

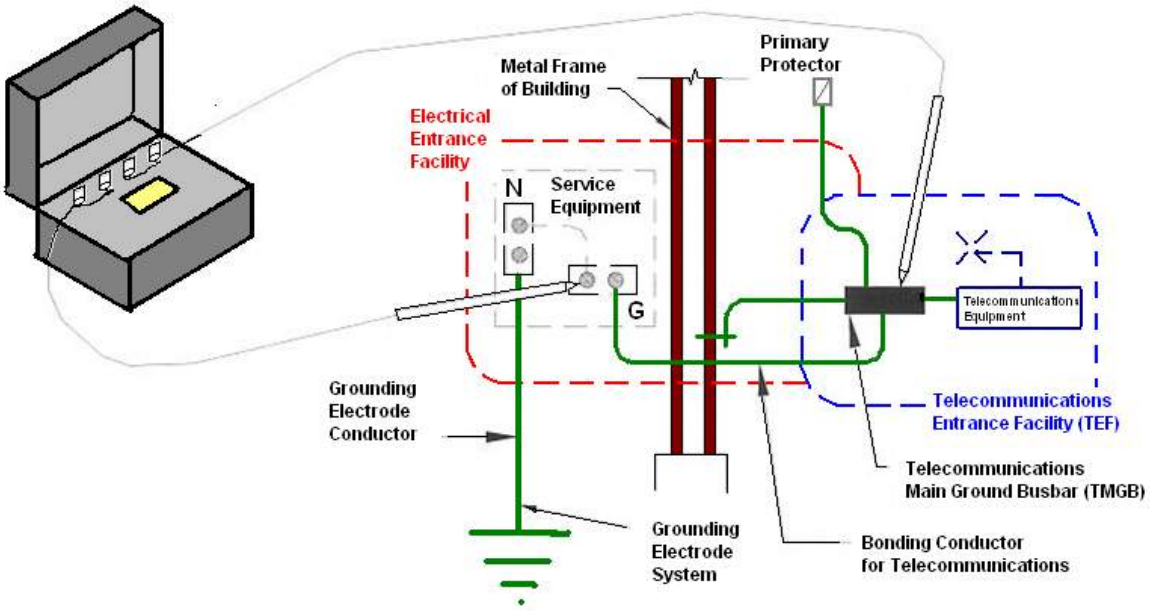
A. Earth ground resistance tester:

1. The earth ground resistance tester generates a specific test current: this current is less susceptible to the influences of stray currents on the grounding system. This makes the ground resistance tester a more accurate testing devise that a standard Volt-Ohm-multimeter.

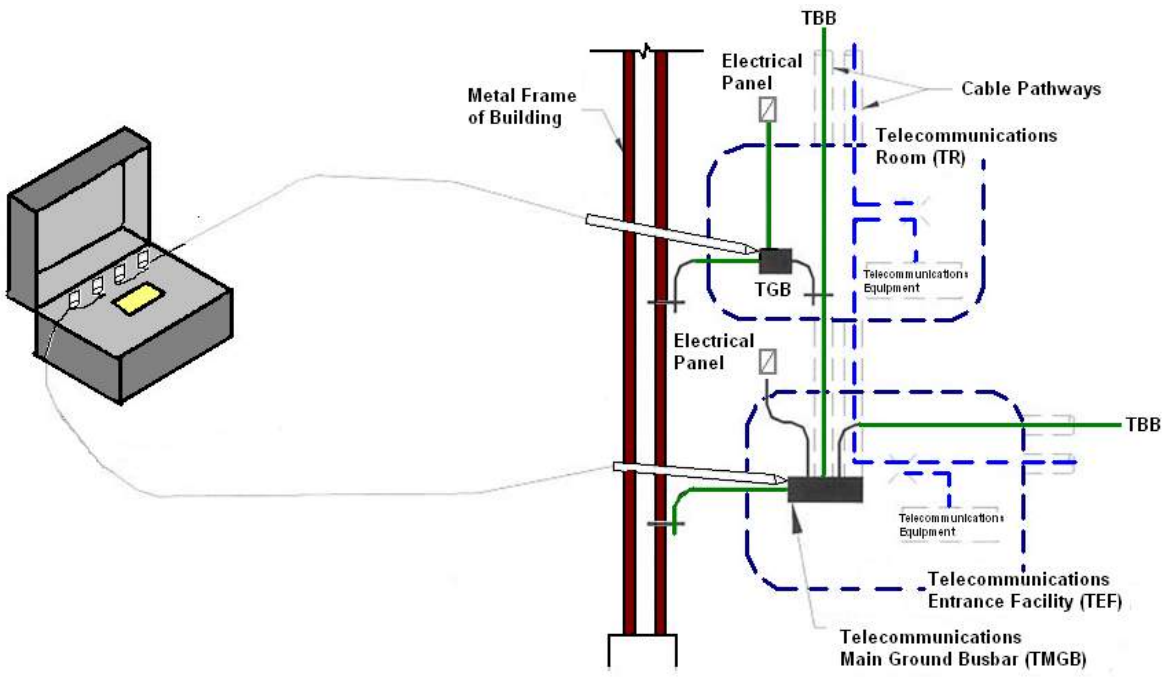
B. Two-point ground continuity testing:

1. Maximum value 100 milliohms

C. Follow manufacture instructions on setup and how to perform the test.




D. Care should be taken and safety precautions in place.




PART 1

**END OF SECTION 27 05 50**

# SECTION 27 10 00 – STRUCTURED CABLING SYSTEM (SCS)

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED WORK

The following, in their entirety and as applicable, shall apply to this section. Including any associated drawings.

A. Conditions of the Contract

B. Division 1

C. Division 26

D. Division 27

E. Division 28

### 1.2 DESCRIPTION

A. Summary of Work:

1. Reference Attachment 'A' of this specification for supplemental scope as it relates to the project and the Owner standards.
2. Provide a complete and tested Structured Cabling System (SCS) for the interconnections of the Local Area Network (LAN). The SCS shall include fully terminated unshielded twisted pair cables, fiber optic cabling, raceways, conduit, back boxes, copper/fiber optic termination components, station mounting hardware, fiber optic enclosures, patch panels, copper/fiber optic patch cables, relay cabinets/cabinets, and other incidental and miscellaneous premises wiring system hardware as required for a complete, tested, and usable system that is in compliance with the latest NEC, ANSI/EIA/TIA, BICSI, and Authorities Having Jurisdiction codes and standards. The installation shall comply with all applicable requirements, design guidelines, and standards in effect at the job site and as indicated in the Drawings and Specifications.
3. An IDF will be required when the distance between outlet terminations and MDF/IDF exceeds 280', including service loops. IDF's shall be selected and organized to be minimum in number while still reaching all locations to be wired.
4. If there are any discrepancies between the drawings and specification or among themselves, the contractor shall request clarification prior to providing pricing for the scope of work. If a request is not issued and a response not provided via a posted addendum, the contractor shall provide pricing for the costliest scenario and obtain clarification during the project.
5. These documents are conceptual in nature. It shall be the responsibility of the approved installer to furnish a complete and functional system, including the items shown on the drawings, in the specifications, and items not designated in either. The installer's shop drawings and product data submittals shall represent a complete system and documents accepted do not relieve the installer from

being required to provide any materials, equipment, or labor to furnish a complete and functional system as recognized by the Project's Technology Consultant and the Owner.

## 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Acceptable manufacturers:
   1. The equipment/products described herein and furnished per these specifications shall be the product of one manufacturer or must be able to obtain the full warranty of the combined solution. All references to model numbers and other detailed descriptive data is intended to establish standards of design performance, and quality, as required. The contractor shall not deviate from the part numbers listed. Any deviation from specified part numbers will result in the removal of non-specified materials and reinstallation of approved materials at no cost to the project.
   2. The approved manufacturers shall provide a complete End-to-End solution with the maximum product and performance warranty offered by the specified manufacturer.
   3. Only products listed in Attachment 'B' or approved in compliance with the project manual's approval requirements will be accepted.

B. Installer Qualifications:
   1. The Data Cable System Installer shall be licensed and shall meet all applicable regulations of the State Department of Labor insofar as they apply to this type of system. The proposer shall be a firm normally employed in the low voltage and data cabling industry and shall provide a reference list of ten (10) large-scale projects and contact names confirming successful Structure Cabling System installations.
   2. The SCS Installer shall be a Certified, local area, integrator of the manufacturer's product and must be able to provide the manufacturer's maximum available warranty for the solution on the entire SCS. The contractor's certification must have been obtained and held within 75 miles of the project's location.
   3. The installing contractor must have a full-time employed RCDD (Registered Communications Distribution Designer) on staff. Current RCDD certification shall be provided in the product submittals.
   4. All individuals installing the SCS must be employees of the certified installer and at least 25% of the installing staff shall have undergone a training class given by the manufacturer. Current certification indicating the successful completion of the training course shall be available upon request at the project and submitted in the contractor's product submittals.
   5. The proposing contractor and the installing contractor must be the same company. No subcontractor to the proposing SCS contractor will be allowed for any portion of the SCS scope of work.

C. Low Voltage Meeting Requirements:
   1. The successful Contractor shall attend a mandatory pre-construction meeting with the project's consultant individuals deemed necessary by the Owner's

representative prior to the start of the work. No SCS work shall begin prior to this meeting.

2. The successful contractor shall attend a mandatory bi-weekly meeting to discuss the project progress to help aid coordination with the Owner and Other contractors.
3. Prior to the installation of any items required for this scope of work the contractor must provide a purchase order with a detailed material list for all materials to be installed. The purchase order is not required to show cost, but part numbers must be provided. The purchase order will be reviewed during one of the regularly scheduled low voltage meetings.

D. Acceptance:
1. The Owner's representative reserves the right to reject all or a portion of the work performed, either on technical or aesthetic grounds.

E. Warranty:
1. The selected system installer shall be a certified installing contractor of product and hold current certification. Contractor shall provide the specified manufacturer's maximum end-to-end performance warranty on all products installed. The proposer shall provide current certification documentation. The performance warranty shall be issued by the manufacturer and shall warrant that ALL cable links have been tested bi-directionally (end to end) using a Level IIIe or better tester, per TSB-67, and that all test results conform to the most current ANSI/TIA-568.2-D.
2. The warranty will also cover multimode fiber optic cabling. Performance testing shall be conducted in accordance with ANSI/EIA/TIA-526-14 Standard, method B.
3. The warranty will stipulate that all products used in this installation meet the prescribed mechanical and transmission specifications for such products as described in ANSI/TIA/EIA-568.3-D. Quality and workmanship evaluation shall be solely by the Owner/Designer and designated representatives.

## 1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Standards: All work shall be performed in accordance with the latest revisions of the following standards and codes:
1. Latest Local Codes and Amendments
2. National Electrical Code, current version

B. Other References:
1. ANSI/TIA-568-C.0 – Generic Communications Cabling for Customer Premises...
2. ANSI/TIA-568-C.1 – Commercial Building Communications Cabling Standard Part 1: General Requirements.
3. ANSI/TIA 568-C.2 – Balanced Twisted-Pair Telecommunications Cabling and Components Standards
4. ANSI/TIA 568-C.3 – Optical Fiber Cabling Components Standard
5. ANSI/TIA-568-C.4, Coaxial Cabling Component Standard
6. ANSI/TIA-569-C – Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications

Pathways and Spaces.

7. ANSI/TIA-492.AAAC-B – Detail Specification for 850-nm Laser-Optimized, 50-um Core Diameter/125-um Cladding Diameter Class 1a Graded-index Multimode Optical Fibers (OM3/OM4). Current Edition
8. ANSI/ICEA S-83-596, Fiber Optic Premises Distribution Cable.
9. ANSI/TIA/EIA-598, Color Coding of Optical Fiber Cables
10. ANSI/ICEA S-87-640, Fiber Optic Outside Plant Distribution Cable.
11. ANSI/TIA/EIA-758: Customer-Owned Outside Plant Telecommunications Cabling Standard.
12. ANSI/TIA/EIA-526-7, Optical Power Loss Measurements of Installed Single mode Fiber Plant: OFSTP-7.
13. ANSI/TIA/EIA-526-14-A, Optical Power Loss Measurements of Installed Multimode Fiber Plant: OFSTP-14A
14. ANSI/TIA/EIA-TSB-125, Guidelines for Maintaining Optical Fiber Polarity Through Reverse-Pair Positioning
15. ANSI/TIA/EIA-TSB-140, Additional Guidelines for Field Testing Length, Loss, and Polarity of Optical Fiber Cabling Systems.
16. ANSI/TIA-606-B – Administration Standard for the Commercial Telecommunications Infrastructure
17. TIA/EIA-607-B - 2011 - Commercial Building Grounding and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications
18. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE 802.xLAN)
19. TIA/EIA 942 Data Center Standards
20. Current BICSI Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual
21. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code (NEC).
22. BICSI – TDMM, Building Industries Consulting Services International, Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual (TDMM).

C. Governing Codes and Conflicts: If the requirements of these specifications or the Project Drawings exceed those of the governing codes and regulations, then the requirements of these specifications and the Drawings shall govern. However, nothing in the Drawings or Specifications shall be construed to permit work not conforming to all governing codes, regulations, and manufacturer installation requirements.

## 1.5 ABBREVIATIONS

A. The following abbreviations are used in this document:

| | |
|---|---|
| IDF | Intermediate Distribution Frame |
| MDF | Main Distribution Frame |
| UTP | Unshielded Twisted Pair |
| SCS | Structured Cabling System |
| RCDD | Registered Communications Distribution Designer |

## 1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Project Initiation:

1. Within fourteen (14) days of Notice to Proceed, the data network system installer

shall furnish the following in a single consolidated submittal:

a. Permits: The Contractor shall obtain all required permits and provide copies to the Owner / Architect / Engineer.

b. Product Literature: Complete manufacturer's product literature for all cable, patch panels, cross-connect blocks, cable supports, cable labels, outlet devices, and other products to be used in the installation. In addition, whenever substitutions for recommended products are made, samples (when requested by the Owner / Designer) and the manufacturer's supporting documentation demonstrating compatibility with other related products shall be included. The submittal shall have some type of distinguishing marker or pointer to indicated what specific product is to be provided

c. Construction Schedule: A time-scaled Construction Schedule, using PERT/CPM, indicating general project deadlines and specific dates relating to the installation of the cable distribution system.

d. Testing: Proposed Contractor UTP cable test result forms, fiber optic cable test result forms and a list of instrumentation to be used for systems testing.

e. Specification Compliance: A letter shall be provided stating, by section and subsection, that the SCS installer complies with the entire specification section. If the installer intends to deviate from any portion of the specifications, a detailed explanation of reason in which the installer would like to deviate shall be provided in addition to the specification compliance letter. No deviations shall be acceptable until they have been approved by the Owner.

f. Each Submittal must have a detailed parts list with quantities.

g. Certifications: The contractor shall submit all certifications for approved products and the certifications must contain dates which are valid from the date of proposal and not expirer any sooner than 12 months after substantial completion of the project.

    1) BICSI RCDD Certification: This certification must be held by an on-staff, full-time employee of the SCS installer. The holder must be staffed out of the office that is located within 75 miles of the projected.

    2) Certifications must be obtained by the SCS installer's office that is located within 75 miles of the project and shall be a company certification, not and individual certification.

    3) Certifications must be held by at least 25% of the, on-site, staff and be made available at the site if requested by the owner, architect, and/or project's technology consultant.

    4) Fiber Optic Technician Certification: This certification must be held by the on-staff/on-site individual that is supervising the fiber optic installation and performing the fiber optic terminations and testing.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Submit the following items, for Owner review and approval, within twenty-

eight(28) days of notice to proceed:

a. Proposed circuit routing and circuit grouping plan prepared by a BICSI certified RCDD (Registered Communications Distribution Designer). The RCDD certification must be current. Identifiable, separate routing shall be shown for both the station cabling and the MDF-to-IDF tie cabling.

b. In addition to the cable routing, the submitted drawings shall indicate the following, even if the following is expected to be provided by the project's electrical or general contractor:

1) Location of wall penetrations (all penetrations shall be sleeved and contain protective bushings at both ends)
2) Location of sleeved wall pass-thru
3) Size of sleeve at each location installed
4) Quantity of cable passing through each sleeve
5) Location of drops in each room (quantity or labeling of drops are not required in the submittal plans. Labeling shall be provided in the closeout plans and quantities shall be as per the contract documents, addendums, and issued changes. Each drop shall be labeled for the type of outlet that it is)
6) Conduit routing, size, quantity, and stub-up locations for all floor mounted outlets.

c. Drawing Compliance: A letter shall be provided stating that the SCS installer complies with the entire project drawing, including all general, keyed, and notes to contractor. If the installer intends to deviate from any portion of the specifications, a detailed explanation of reason in which the installer would like to deviate shall be provided in addition to the specification compliance letter. No deviations shall be acceptable until they have been approved by the Owner.

d. All subcontractors shall provide submittals to general contractor for normal distribution to Architects, Engineers and the Owner's project managers.

C. At Substantial Completion: Provide drawings, to the Owner, to reflect installed cabling with correct labeling and cable routing.

D. Close-out Procedures:

1. Two (2) copies of the following documents shall be delivered to the building owner's representative at the time of system acceptance. Close out technology documents shall be separated from all other trade's documents. The close out finals shall include:

a. Inspection and Test Reports: During the course of the Project, the Contractor shall maintain an adequate inspection system to ensure that the materials supplied, and the work performed, conform to contract requirements. The Contractor shall provide written documentation that indicates that materials acceptance testing was conducted as specified. The Contractor shall also provide documentation, which indicates that all cable termination testing was completed and that all irregularities were corrected prior to job completion.

b. Provide complete test reports for all cabling and devices that comprise

system as outlined in this document.

c. Include the Name, address and telephone of the authorized factory representative with a 24-hour emergency service number.

d. The manual shall also include Manufacturer's data sheets and installation manuals/instructions for all equipment installed a list of recommended spare parts.

e. Generic or typical owner's instruction and operation manual shall not be acceptable to fulfill this requirement.

f. An up-to-date record ("as-built") set of approved shop drawing prints that have been revised to show each and every change made to the structure cabling system from the original approved shop drawings. Drawings shall consist of a scaled plan of each building showing the placement of each individual item of the technical cabling system equipment as well as raceway size and routing, junction boxes, and conductor size, quantity, and color in each raceway.

g. As-built Drawings shall include cable pathways, camera locations with correct labeling and MDF/IDF locations. A copy of the As-Built drawings reflecting the final locations of all cabling shall be given to the designated Owner's representative. The as-built drawings shall be prepared using AutoCAD 2012 or later. Provide the Owner with electronic versions of the as-builts on CD media.

h. All drawings must reflect final graphic numbering, point to point wiring, device address and programmed characteristics as verified in the presence of the engineer and/or the end user unless device addressing is electronically generated, and automatically graphically self-documented by the system.

i. A copy of the manufacturer's warranty on the installed system.

j. Any keys to cabinets and/or equipment and special maintenance tools required to repair, maintain, or service the system.

k. Operating and Maintenance Instructions for all devices within the system. These instructions shall reflect any changes made during the course of construction, and shall be provided to the Owner, for their use, in a three-ring binder labeled with the project name and description. (4 copies)

l. Upon completion of the work and at a time designated by the Architect or owner, provide formal training sessions for the Owner's operating personnel to include location, operation, and maintenance of all included systems and equipment. Minimum amount of training time shall be at least 4 hours.

m. One (1) 30" x 42" laminated floor plan sheets illustrating technology drops and cable designation with final graphic numbering. Contractor shall provide one complete floor plan sheet for each telecommunications room (MDF or IDF)

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL

A. Reference Attachment 'B' to this specification, which contains the minimum materials list for this specific project.

B. Installation:
   1. The cabling shall be installed per requirements of the manufacturer and the Project Documents utilizing materials meeting all applicable TIA/EIA standards. The Contractor is responsible for providing all incidental and/or miscellaneous hardware not explicitly specified below as required for a complete and operational system.

C. Materials:
   1. Materials shall be as listed or shall be approved equivalent products of other manufacturers meeting the intent and quality level of the TIA/EIA specifications.

D. Testing:
   1. All installed cabling shall be tested 100% good after installation by the Contractor. All final test results shall be delivered to owner at completion of project. Refer to closeout requirements.

E. Ratings:
   1. All products shall be new and brought to the job site in the original manufacturer's packaging. Electrical components (including innerduct) shall bear the Underwriter's Laboratories label. All communications cable shall bear flammability testing ratings as follows:

      CM Communications Cable
      CMP Plenum Rated Communications Cable
      CMR Riser-Rated Communications Cable

F. Initial Cable Inspection:

   1. The Contractor shall inspect all cable prior to installation to verify that it is identified properly on the reel identification label, that it is of the proper gauge, containing the correct number of pairs, etc. Note any buckling of the jacket that would indicate possible problems. Damaged cable or any other components failing to meet specifications shall not be used in the installation.

G. Cable Lubricants:
   1. Lubricants specifically designed for installing communications cable may be used to reduce pulling tension as necessary when pulling cable into conduit.
   2. Approved Products
      a. Twisted-pair cable: Dyna-Blue
      b. American Polywater

H. Fire Wall Sealant:
   1. Any penetration through firewalls (including those in sleeves) will be resealed with an Underwriter Laboratories (UL) approved sealant.

2. Approved Products
    a. 3M or
    b. Pre-approved equal

## 2.2 DATA CLOSET (MDF/IDF) HARDWARE

A. Equipment Cabinets/Cabinets:
1. Provide and install equipment cabinets and/or cabinets in locations indicated on the attached drawings for the following areas.
    a. For all MDF/IDF locations:
    Contractor shall provide and install a new floor mounted cabinet/rack system or a wall mounted cabinet where indicated on plans. Refer to floor plan and enlarged MDF/IDF room layouts for number of cabinets/racks to provide at each location. If an enlarged detail is not available, the contractor shall provide the required number of racks to accommodate 100% of all termination components and an equal amount of owner equipment; as well as (1) spare rack. If an MDF/IDF is located in shared space, the contractor shall provide a floor supported, wall mounted cabinet system with all required doors and side panels to secure the equipment and termination components.

B. Distribution Cabinet/Cabinet Grounding:
1. All Cabinets and/or Cabinets shall be grounded using stranded #6 AWG insulated copper conductor. Connect to service entrance grounding electrode. Provide all required bonding materials and hardware and bond to building grounding electrode subsystem at building electrical service entrance.

C. Fiber Optic Patch Panels:
1. The enclosures used shall provide termination panels for the specified type of connectors and be of sufficient size and capacity to terminate 110% of the fiber count of the inside of outside fiber optic cables. Patch panels must be 19” cabinet mountable. Provide all termination accessories, fiber patch cords, enclosures and test for a complete fiber optic distribution system.
2. Provide closet connector housing panels, size for 110% of total fiber count to be terminated.
3. ALL fiber strands must be terminated in fiber housing.

D. Patch Panels:
1. All patch cables shall be modular type patch panels to allow individual jacks to be inserted. All patch panels shall be fully populated with Jacks. Provide dust caps for all unused jacks. Furnish units that adhere to the performance requirements TIA/EIA-568A standards.
2. Provide cable support bars at the back of all patch panels to provide additional support at rear of panels. Provide one (1) support bar for each row of 24-ports. Support bars will not be required if the closet design consist of rear horizontal cable management above and below each patch panel.

E. Rack Electrical:
   1. A power strip shall be installed vertical at the back of each data relay rack.
   2. Project electrical contractor to provide and install one electrical receptacle for each UPS installed on the entire project. Coordinate receptacle type and location with the installed product requirements and the technology consultant prior to installation.

F. Cable Management Panels:
   1. Provide cable management panels as required for vertical cable management on ends and in between all racks on entire project.
   2. Provide Velcro straps for cable dressing in MDF/IDF rooms.

G. MDF/IDF Patch Cables:
   1. Cabling Contractor shall provide owner with one (1) patch cable for each data drop on entire project. These cables will provide connectivity from the front of the network patch panels to the network equipment. The patch cables are to be terminated properly with RJ-45 connections on each end with the proper pin-out assignments per project configuration.
   2. All patch cables shall be factory terminated. NO EXCEPTIONS.

## 2.3 CABLE ROUTING/PATHWAY

A. Cable Tray:
   1. Metal cable tray shall be provided to affix to the top of all floor mount cabinets. Cable tray shall be used to brace cabinets to walls and to route cable from walls to cabinets in communication closets.
   2. Contractor to provide and install all applicable installation accessories.

B. Cable Support System:
   1. All low voltage cabling shall be installed and supported using an approved cable support system installed at 48” intervals unless installed in conduit. Do not exceed manufacturer’s recommendation for the quantity of cables supported in an individual support.
   2. Cable supports shall not connect to any ceiling grid wire or on any support attached to the ceiling grid.
   3. Cable supports shall not exceed a serviceable height of more than 5’, but no closer than 2’, above the finished ceiling.
   4. Cable supports can be attached to vertical walls or the building’s structure.
   5. If attached to the building’s structure, 3/8” threaded rod shall be utilized to extend down within the serviceable heights mentioned above. Grid wire hangers will not be accepted.

C. All cable bundles shall be grouped together using plenum rated Velcro for the entire run above and below the ceilings.

D. Conduit Bushings shall be installed prior to the installation of any cable. If cable is found to be installed without the bushing the cable will have to be removed and re-installed. No

cut bushings will be accepted. If cable damage occurs during any portion of the installation, the cable will be removed and replaced at no cost to the project. This item will be strictly enforced and adhered too.

E. The projects electrical contractor shall provide and install all metallic conduit and backboxes indicated to be installed on the drawings. It is the SCS installer's responsibility to coordinate all conduit requirements with the electrical contractor to ensure that all conduit sizes and locations are correctly installed. If box locations and conduit sizes are found to vary from the project documents after installation the SCS installer will bare all financial responsibility to ensure these items are installed correctly. The RCDD for the SCS will be responsible for ensuring conduit sizes are sufficient for cable count while maintaining a 40% fill ratio. If there is not electrical contractor on the project, the SCS Installer shall bear responsibility for the provision and installation of all required raceways.

## 2.4 STATION WIRING

A Wire:

1. The data and voice wire provided for all outlets shall be four-pair, solid copper conductor, meeting the intent and quality level of the TIA/EIA-568 Commercial Building Wiring Standard.

B. Testing:

1. The four-pair UTP cable must be UL Performance Level tested. Each 1000-foot spool must be individually tested with test results affixed to the spool. All cable must be provided on new 1000-foot spools. No shorts will be allowed.

C. Rating:

1. Cable installed in conduit shall be non-plenum rated. Cable not installed in conduit shall be plenum rated if installed in plenum ceiling space, non-plenum rated otherwise.

D. All cable shall be routed to the center of the room in which it is serving and then route to the outlet location that it is intended for. Provide a 5' service loop in the center of the room and 5' service loop at each workstation outlet properly supported above ceiling. All workstation service loops shall be made in figure eight configurations, no exceptions.

E. Provide minimum of 10' service loop at all headend locations properly supported above ceiling.

F. Provide indoor/outdoor, plenum rated category cable at any outdoor data outlet or data outlets served by cabling that travels through subsurface conduit. This applies to station or horizontal cable runs only.

## 2.5 STATION HARDWARE

A. Information Outlet / Jack Modules:

1. Shall be high quality 8p/8c modular jacks with circuit board construction and IDC style or 110-style wire, T568B terminations. Jacks shall meet EIA/TIA TSB40 recommendations for connecting hardware
2. Shall be standard 8-position, RJ-45 Style, FCC compliant
3. Shall be designed for 4-pair, 100 Ohm balanced UTP Cable
4. Shall terminate 26-22 AWG solid or stranded conductors
5. Shall accept FCC compliant 6 position plugs.
6. Shall have attached wiring instruction labels to permit either T568A or T568B wiring configurations.
8. Shall meet or exceed transmission requirements for connecting hardware, as specified in ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-C2, Transmission Performance Specifications for 4-Pair 100 Ohm.
9. Shall be UL Listed and CSA certified.
10. Each jack shall have category rating identified on the front face.

B. Faceplates:
1. Faceplates shall be a minimum of 4-port.
2. Wall mounted telephone faceplates shall be 1-port.
3. All faceplates shall be single gang.
4. All blank inserts color shall be coordinated prior to procurement.

C. Outlet Patch Cables: Cabling Contractor shall provide owner with patch cable for each data drop on entire project. Each cable will be terminated properly with RJ45 connections on each end with appropriate pin-out assignments per project configuration.
1. Cabling Contractor shall provide owner with patch cable for each data drop on entire project. Each cable will be terminated properly with RJ45 connections on each end with appropriate pin-out assignments per project configuration.
2. Patch cords shall be stranded copper, matching the category of the installed cable.
3. All patch cables shall be factory terminated. No exceptions

**2.6 FIBER OPTIC PRODUCTS**

A. Multimode:
1. 50/125um, OM4+, multimode fibers, each with a color-coded PVC tight buffer shall have a maximum attenuation of 3.5 dB/km at 850 nm and 1.5 dB/km at 1300 nm. Minimum bandwidth shall be 2000 MHz/km at 850 nm and 500 MHz/km at 1300 nm.

B. Singlemode:
1. Single mode fibers, each with a color-coded PVC tight buffer shall have a maximum attenuation of 1.0 dB/km at 1310 nm and 1.0 dB/km at 1550 nm.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3.1 GENERAL

A. Fire Wall Penetrations:
   1. The contractor shall avoid penetration of fire-rated walls and floors wherever possible. Where penetrations are necessary, they shall be sleeved with metallic conduit and resealed with an Underwriter Laboratories (UL) approved sealant. Contractor shall also seal all floor, ceiling and wall penetrations in fire or smoke barriers and in the wiring closet.

B. Allowable Cable Bend Radius and Pull Tension:
   1. In general, communications cable cannot tolerate sharp bends or excessive pull tension during installation. Refer to the cable manufacturers allowable bend radius and pull tension data for the maximum allowable limits.

C. Cable Lubricants:
   1. After installation, exposed cable and other surfaces must be cleaned free of lubricant residue.

D. Pull Strings:
   Provide pull strings in all new conduits, including all conduits with cable installed as part of this contract. Pull test is not to exceed 200 pounds. Data and video cables can be pulled together with pull strings.

E. Conduit Fill:
   1. Conduit fill shall not exceed 40%.

F. Damage:
   1. The Contractor shall replace or rework cables showing evidence of improper handling including stretches, kinks, short radius bends, over-tightened bindings, loosely twisted and over-twisted pairs at terminals and cable sheath removed too far (over 1-1/2 inches).
   2. The Contractor shall replace any damaged ceiling tiles that are broken during cable installation.

G. Clean Up:
   1. All clean up activity related to work performed will be the responsibility of the Contractor and must be completed daily before leaving the facility.

H. Conduit and Back Boxes:
   1. The Contractor shall ensure that the appropriate back boxes and conduits, for the project, are provided as required.
   2. One (1) 1" conduit will be required each outlet that serves one to a maximum six (6) category 6 or a maximum of four (4) category 6A cables. Provide additional conduit for cable counts that exceed this number.
   3. One (1) double gang deep box will be required for each technology outlet. All boxes except Presentation outlets will be required to have a single gang reducer ring.

## 3.2 EQUIPMENT CABINET CONFIGURATION

A. Equipment Cabinets:
   1. Equipment racks shall be assembled and mounted in locations shown on the Drawings and as detailed. Each rack shall be securely mounted to the floor and braced to the wall with cable tray in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations. Racks shall be mounted such that the side rails are plumb with vertical cable management panels. Racks to be located such that future expansion can occur without relocating existing racks. Racks shall be grounded in accordance with NEC requirements.

B. Wire Management Components:
   1. Horizontal cable management panels shall be installed directly above and below each patch panel. Vertical cable management panels shall be installed on each side of the cabinet.

C. Cable Placement:
   1. Cable installation in the Wiring Closet must conform to the Project Drawings. All cabling shall be routed so as to avoid interference with any other service or system, operation, or maintenance location. Avoid crossing area horizontally just above or below any riser conduit. Lay and dress cables to allow other cables to enter the conduit/riser without difficulty at a later time by maintaining a working distance from these openings.

D. Cable Routing:
   1. Cable shall be routed as close as possible to the ceiling, floor or corners to ensure that adequate wall or backboard space is available for current and future equipment. All cable runs within the Wiring Closet shall be horizontal or vertical within the constraints of minimum cable bending radii. Minimum bend radius shall be observed. Cables shall not be tie-wrapped to electrical conduit or other equipment.

E. Installation:
   1. All incoming cables shall be routed on the cable tray and neatly dressed down to the patch panels. Cable bundles shall not exceed more than 48 cables to patch panel.

F. Hardware:
   1. Provide cabinet and jack panel hardware as required for all data station wiring.

## 3.3 STATION WIRING INSTALLATION

A. General:
   1. Cabling between wiring closet and workstation locations shall be made as individual home runs. No intermediate punch down blocks or splices may be installed or utilized between the wiring closet and the communications outlet at the workstation location.
   2. All cable must be handled with care during installation so as not to change

performance specifications. Factory twists of each individual pair must be maintained up to the connection points at both ends of the cable. There shall never be more than one and one-half inches of unsheathed UTP cable at either the wiring closet or the workstation termination locations.

3. All cable shall be routed to the center of the room in which it serves before routing to the outlet location and a 5’ service loop shall be provide. An addition 5’ service loop shall be provided above ceiling at the outlet location. All service loops shall be figure 8 loops.

B. Exposed Cable:

1. All cabling shall be installed inside walls or ceiling spaces whenever possible. Exposed cables and/or cables routing through mechanical rooms, electrical rooms, or restrooms shall be installed inside conduits, unless noted otherwise on the project drawings.
2. Additional exposed cable runs will require Owner approval and will only be allowed when no other options exist.
3. All cable routing through conduits and sleeves shall maintain a 40% maximum conduit fill ratio.

C. Placement:

1. All cabling and associated hardware shall be placed so as to make efficient use of available space. All cabling and associated hardware shall be placed so as not to impair the Owner’s efficient use of their full capacity.

D. Cable Routes:

1. All cabling placed in ceiling areas must be in conduit, or approved cable support with Velcro cable wrap at each location. Cable supports shall be permanently anchored to building structure or substrates. Provide attachment hardware and anchors designed for the structure to which attached and that are suitably sized to carry the weight of the cables to be supported. Do not route cable through webbing of structural steel. Cabling must be supported in dedicated supports intended to support cabling as described in this section. Contractor shall adhere to the manufacturer’s suggested fill ratio for each size cable support installed. No support shall have more than 48 cables.
2. Attaching cable to pipes or other mechanical items is not permitted. Communications cable shall be rerouted so as to provide a minimum of 18 inches spacing from light fixtures, sources of heat, power feeder conduits and EMI sources. Cabling shall not be attached to ceiling grid support wires. Cable runs shall be routed down the corridors; parallel or perpendicular to building structure. Multiple cables to be bundled together at and between each cable support installed.
3. Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating with other trades on the project so that the installed cable pathway does not interfere with the installation of other systems to insure that mechanical ducts, pipes, conduits, or any other above ceiling systems are not putting unnecessary stress on any portion of the install SCS.
4. All (48) cable bundles shall be routed directly to the MDF or IDF that serves the

area. All bundles shall remain separated for the length of the cable run.

a. Provide data outlet for irrigation controllers. Coordinate location with landscape consultant.
b. Provide data outlet for time clock appliance in main custodian office.
c. Provide OSP or flooded/gel filled cat6 cable at any outdoor data outlet or data outlets served by cabling that travels through subsurface conduit. This applies to station or horizontal cable runs only.

## 3.4 STATION HARDWARE

A. Flush Mount Jacks:
   1. Flush mount jacks shall be mounted in a faceplate with back box.

B. Placement:
   1. Where possible, the communications outlet shall be located so that its centerline is 18 inches above floor level or 12 inches above permanent bench surfaces. Outlets shall not be mounted on temporary, movable, or removable surfaces, doors, or access hatches.
   2. Outlets shall be installed within 3’-0” of power outlets

C. RJ-45 Jack Pin Assignments:
   1. Pin connections for data station cable outlets and patch panels shall match EIA/TIA 568 modular jack wiring recommendation T568B.
   2. Pin connections at data jack panels shall match pin connections at outlets (straight through wiring)

## 3.5 CABLE TESTING REQUIREMENTS

A. Notification:
   1. The Owner and Engineer shall be notified one week prior to any testing so that the testing may be witnessed.

B. Inspection:
   1. Before requesting a final inspection, the Contractor shall perform a series of end-to-end installation performance tests. The Contractor shall submit for approval a proposal describing the test procedures, test result forms and timetable for all copper and fiber optic cabling.

C. Procedures: 1. Trained personnel shall perform all testing. Acceptance of the test procedures discussed below is predicated on the Contractor’s use of the recommended products and adherence to the inspection requirements and practices set forth. Acceptance of the completed installation will be evaluated in the context of each of these factors.
   2. Acceptance shall be subject to completion of all work, successful post-installation testing which yields 100% PASS rating, and submittal and approval of full documentation as described above. Tests with the "* PASS" (asterisk) will not be acceptable. These circuits must be repaired to meet "PASS".

D. Errors:

1. When errors are found, the source of each shall be determined, corrected and the cable retested. All defective components shall be replaced and retested. Re-test results must be provided on Owner approved forms and witnessed by Owner.

E. Twisted Pair Cable Testing:

1. At a minimum, the Contractor shall test all station drop cable pairs from Data Closet termination patch panels to outlet device RJ45 jacks. Products shall be tested for compliance with ANSI/TIA/EIA 568A and ISO/IES 11801. Test equipment used shall meet TIA/EIA TSB-67, Level II accuracy. Further, the contractor shall have a copy of TSB-67 in their possession and be familiar with its contents.
2. Each wire/pair shall be tested at both ends for the following:
    a. Wire map (pin to pin connectivity)
    b. Length (in feet)
    c. Attenuation
    d. Near end cross talk (NEXT)
    e. Power Sum
3. Test equipment shall provide an electronic and printed record of these tests.
4. Test results for each four-pair UTP cable must be submitted with identification to match labels on all patch panel ports and RJ45 jacks and must match as-builts associated with that cable.

F. Fiber Optic Cable Testing:

1. Testing device for fiber optic cables shall be a high quality OTDR (Optical Time-Domain Reflectometer) equipped with a printer. The printed data shall show, in addition to any summary information, the complete test t0.and all relevant scale settings. The OTDR must have the capability to take measurements from bare fiber strands as well as SC connector terminations.
2. All fiber optic cable shall be tested on the reel before installation to ensure that it meets the specifications outlined herein.
3. After installation the Contractor shall test each fiber strand in accordance the EIA 455-171 Method D procedures (bi-directional testing) at both 850nm and 1300nm for multimode or 1310nm and 1550nm for single mode. A form shall be completed for each cable showing data recorded for each strand including length, total segment (end-to-end) loss (dB) and connector losses (dB) at each end. In addition, the printed data strip for each strand shall be attached to the form. Patch cables shall also be tested.
4. Acceptable fiber optic connector loss shall not exceed .75dB per mated pair. The Contractor is responsible for obtaining minimum loss in fiber connections and polishing per manufacturer specifications.
5. Singlemode:
    a. Singlemode fibers shall have a maximum attenuation of 1.0 dB/km at 1310 nm and 1.0 dB/km at 1550 nm.
6. Multimode:
    a. 50/125um micron multimode fibers shall have a maximum attenuation

of 3.5 dB/km at 850 nm and 1.5 dB/km at 1300 nm. Minimum bandwidth shall be 2000 MHz/km at 850 nm and 500 MHz/km at 1300 nm.

## 3.6 INSPECTION

A. Conformance to the installation practices covered above is to be verified when completed. In some cases, the Owner/Designer may inspect before acceptance.
   1. Written Test Report:
      a. Complete test results, including actual values associated with tests.
      b. Show all certifications for telecommunications wiring systems.
      c. Include cable maps showing each cable route and keyed to cable labels. Provide owner with complete floor plans identifying outlet location and cable routing drawing in AutoCAD format. Provide electronic copy of drawings to owner in AutoCAD version 2012 or greater.
      d. Documentation of outlet, cable and cabinet labeling system.

B. After performing all tests, tabulate results and bind together in format acceptable to Owner. Installer shall provide written certification in the test report that telecommunications cable is properly installed, and test results certify system to all specified standards.

ATTACHMENT 'A'

PROJECT SPECIFIC SCOPE OF WORK AND INSTRUCTIONS

**PART 1 – SUMMARY OF WORK**

**1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK**

A. This project consists of the provision and installation of a Structured Cabling System (SCS) as required to support network connectivity to workstations, telephones, video surveillance, access control, building automation, electrical lighting, and any other system requiring network connectivity. This project is a new, _____ Square Foot, _____ for _____. The project site will be located at _____ Rd., City of _____, State, ZIP Code.

B. The work includes provision and installation of a complete Cabling System (SCS) in compliance with these specifications and associated drawings, pre-proposal addenda, change orders, change directives and any other documents issued both pre-proposal and during the project.

C. The SCS Installer shall comply with all conditions of the contract and "Division 1 – General Requirements" as they apply to the SCS Scope of Work. It shall be the responsibility of the SCS Contractor to make themselves familiar with all documents.

D. It should not be assumed that any portions of a complete and functional system are to be furnished and/or provided by anyone, other than the SCS installer, unless specifically stated otherwise.

**1.2 STRUCTURED CABLING SYSTEM – ADDITIONAL INSTRUCTIONS**

A. Base Proposal:

1. The SCS Installer shall provide and install an End-to-End Structured Cabling System as per these specifications and associated drawings. The Base bid SCS shall consist of:
   a. Category 6 cable and connectivity to each Video Surveillance Camera, Wireless Access Points, Voice/Data Outlet, Access Controlled Door, and any other locations requiring Local Area Network Connectivity.
   c. Each connectivity solution be a complete Channel Solution; consisting of jacks, patch panel, and patch cables.
   d. Each channel solution shall be color coded to the system in which it serves.
2. The products specified in Attachment 'B' are to require quality, functionality, color, and standards. The following shall be considered preapproved equivalent for each specific portion of the SCS.
   a. Category 6 copper cable
      1) Commscope
   b. Category 6 copper termination components, and patch cables
      1) Commscope / Uniprise
   c. Fiber Optic Cabling and Components:
      1) Commscope / Uniprise
   d. Metals (racks, cable managers, and cable tray):

1) Racks and Cable Tray
   i. Commscope
2) Cable Managers
   i. Commscope

## 1.3 COPPER PATCH PANELS

A. The SCS Installer shall provide and install patch panels as per the instructions below.
   1. 24-port patch panels shall only be used for copper tie cables and demarcation extensions.
   2. Provide dedicated, 48-port patch panels for each of the following system (reference color code chart for designated insert and patch panel color coding per system):
      a. LAN and IP Telephones
      b. Wireless Access Points,
      c. IP Intercom
      d. Video Surveillance Cameras

## 1.4 COPPER AND FIBER OPTIC PATCH CABLE LENGTHS

A. The SCS Installer shall provide copper and fiber optic patch cables as per the instructions below. All patch cables shall be factory terminated and warrantied for the copper and fiber solutions specified.
   1. MDF/IDF Copper Patch Cables:
      a. Patch cables shall be category 6
      b. Provide one patch cable for each port on the entire project
      c. Patch cables to be installed by network equipment installer/programmer
      d. Patch cable lengths
         1) 99% shall be 1’
         2) 1% shall be 6’
   2. Work Area Outlet Copper Patch Cables:
      a. Patch cables shall be category 6
      b. Provide one patch cable for each port on the entire project
      c. Patch cables to be installed by the owner.
      d. Patch cable lengths
         1) 90% shall be 10’
         2) 10% shall be 15’
   3. Wireless Access Point Copper Patch Cables:
      a. Patch cables shall be category 6
      b. Provide one patch cable for each port on the entire project
      c. Patch cables to be installed by wireless system installer.
      d. Patch cable lengths
         1) Interior access points: 100% shall be 10’
         2) Exterior Access Points: 100% shall be 15’
   4. Video Surveillance Camera Copper Patch Cables:
      a. Patch cables shall be category 6

b. Provide one patch cable for each port on the entire project
c. Patch cables to be installed by the Video Surveillance System Installer.
d. Patch cable lengths
1) Interior Cameras: 100% shall be 10’
2) Exterior Cameras: 100% shall be 15’

5. IP Intercom Copper Patch Cables:
a. Patch cables shall be category 6
b. Provide one patch cable for each IP Intercom device on the entire project, plus an additional twenty (20) for future use.
c. Patch cables to be installed by the IP Intercom System Installer.
d. Patch cable lengths
1) 100% shall be 10’

6. MDF/IDF Fiber Optic Patch Cables:
a. Patch cables shall be OS2 (Single-mode).
b. Patch cable shall be duplex, LC to LC
c. Provide quantity sufficient for connecting all network equipment plus 20% for growth.
d. Patch cables to be installed by network equipment installer/programmer
e. Patch cable lengths
1) 100% shall be 3 meters

## 1.5 SYSTEM SPECIFIC COLOR REQUIREMENTS

A. The following information shall apply to the complete SCS Channel. All cable, patch cables, outlet terminations, and closet terminations shall be provided in the colors designated below:

| Item | Description | Horizontal | Insert | Patch Cables |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | PA System | Blue | White | White |
| 2 | Data | Blue | Blue | Blue |
| 3 | Telephone | Blue | Blue | Blue |
| 4 | Wireless | Gray | Gray | Gray |
| 5 | Camera | Lime Green | Lime Green | Lime Green |

## 1.6 DOCUMENTATION

A. Labels:
The Contractor will label all outlets using permanent / legible typed or machine engraved labels approved by the Owner (no handwritten labels permitted). Label patch panels in the wiring closet to match those on the corresponding data outlets. The font shall be at least one-eighth inch (1/8”) in height, block. All labels shall correspond to as-builts and to final test reports.

1. The following nomenclature shall be used when labeling data/voice jacks:
a. All cables being served by MDF closet shall begin with ‘1’ all IDF served cables shall begin with numerical digit 2 thru 25) designating the specific IDF’s identification.

b. Next identification letter shall refer to patch panel that is serving outlet (A, B, C…)
c. Next identification shall note what # data port on patch panel (01 thru 48).

Example:
Label of an outlet from 23rd port of the third patch panel from top of rack located at IDF-2 shall read: 2-C-23
Label of an outlet from the 5th port of the second patch panel from the top of rack located in the MDF shall read: 1-B-05

B. Floor Plan:
A floor plan clearly labeled with all outlet jack numbers shall be included in the as-built plans.

C. Cables: All cables shall be labeled at both ends. This includes but not limited to horizontal voice and data cabling, copper backbone tie cables, and fiber optic cables.

D. Fiber Optics: Fiber optic strands shall be labeled at both ends on the fiber distribution panel.

E. Equipment racks: Equipment racks shall bear at least one indicating label indicated MDF or IDF. If rack is installed in IDF, label shall include IDF #.

F. Access Points: Label ceiling grid with digital label according to location installed and a bright orange ¾" round dot sticker.

G. Contractor to provide a spreadsheet documentation of the intended labeling scheme to be reviewed by the project's consultant and Owner. Final approval to be provided by the Owner.

Attachment 'B'
Manufacturer and Material List

*The Communications Contractor shall perform no portion of the work requiring submittal and review of record drawings, shop drawings, product data, or samples until the respective documentation has been approved by project's Technology Consultant.

MATERIAL LIST

| MANUFACTURER | DESCRIPTION | PRODUCT NUMBER | NOTES |
|---|---|---|---|
| Hoffman | 4-post Equipment Rack (45U) 12-24 Tapped Rails, Black | E4DR19FM45U | Provide as shown on Drawing, minimum of one (1) in the Building's MDF. |
| Hoffman | 2-post Equipment Rack (45U) 12-24 Tapped Rails, Black | EDR19FM45U | Provide as shown on Drawing, minimum of one (1) in the Building's MDF and each IDF. |
| Hoffman | #6AWG, 2-Hole, Compression Lug | DGCL6* | * to be replaced with a numeric value depicting the dimension between holes. Contractor to coordinate with TGBB bonding point. Provide at TGBB and at each point bonding to the rack system. Each compression lug shall be bonded utilizing both holes. |
| Hoffman | Copper Ground Buss Bar, 1/4 in x 4 in x 12 in | DGTB412 | Provide one (1) in each MDF and IDF on the entire project |
| Commscope / Uniprise | Ready™ 1U Fiber Optic Internal Sliding Shelf, black | 760231449 \| SD-1U | Provide as per the project drawings. Or as required, to accommodate all fiber optics in the IDFs, if not shown on drawings |
| Commscope / Uniprise | Ready™ 2U Fiber Optic Internal Sliding Shelf, black | 760231456 \| SD-2U | Provide as per the project drawings. Or as required, to accommodate all fiber optics in the MDF/IDFs, if not shown on drawings |
| Commscope / Uniprise | Adapter Pack, Black, 1000-Type, with 1 TeraSPEED® 12 fiber, SM LC ganged adapter, blue, shuttered | 760148254 \| PNL-BK-012-SFA-LC12-BL | Provide as required to accommodate 110% of all fiber terminated in each MDF/IDF |

| MANUFACTURER | DESCRIPTION | PRODUCT NUMBER | NOTES |
|---|---|---|---|
| Commscope / Uniprise | Distribution Module Panel, Cat 5E, 1U, 24 port | 760180000 \| CPP-5E-DM-1U-24 | Provide in quantities as required to terminate 100% of all copper backbone cable. Reference project drawings. |
| Commscope / Uniprise | Distribution Modular Panel,2U, 48 port | 760207282 \| CPP-UDDM-M-2U-48 | Provide in quantities as required to terminate 100% of all distribution structured cabling, plus 25% for future growth. Reference project drawings. Voice/Data, Security, and WLAN shall have dedicated panels per system. |
| Commscope / Uniprise | Vertical Cable Management Kit, 8in X 84in (203mm X 2134mm) Double Sided, With Doors, Black | 760244780 \| VCM-DS-84-8B | Provide and install between each rack and at both ends of all rack systems |
| Commscope | Cable Runway 10 ft (3048mm) L x 12 in (305mm) W, Black | 760085647 \| CR-SLR-10L12W | Provide as shown on drawings. Tray shall route to and between all racks, in each MDF/IDF, on the entire project. In addition to cable tray shown, provide vertically installed sections at each location where cables enter the room, routing down and up vertical walls and at the Service Provider's entrance location |
| Commscope | Cable Runway, 90° radius flat corner bend, 12 inch (305 mm) W, black | 760085530 \| CR90FCB-12W | Provide as shown on drawings |
| Commscope | Cable Runway, 90° radius vertical bend, 12-inch, black, outside bend | 760086082 \| CR90OCB-12W | |
| Commscope | Cable Runway, 90° radius inside corner bend, 12 inch (305 mm) W, black | 760085688 \| CR90ICB-12W | |
| Commscope | Runway to Rack Mounting Kit, 19-inch | 760084053 \| CRR2RRMK | Provide one (1) per rack and Cabinet installed. |

| MANUFACTURER | DESCRIPTION | PRODUCT NUMBER | NOTES |
|---|---|---|---|
| | (482.6 mm) W, 5.375-inch (136.5 mm) D, black | | |
| Hoffman | Runway Stand-Off (Elevation) Kit, 4" - 6" | LEK6 | Provide one (1) per rack and Cabinet installed. |
| Commscope | Cable Runway, wall angle support kit, 6 inch (152 mm), 12 inch (305 mm) wall rail support kit, black | L760084145 \| CR6-12WRSKWASK122BLK | Provide one (1) at each location where cable tray terminates at a vertical wall |
| Commscope | Triangular Runway Wall Support Bracket Kit, 12 inch (305 mm) W, black | 760084095 \| CRTWSBK-12W | Provide one (1), every 5', for all tray that routes horizontally along a vertical wall. |
| Commscope | Cable Runway, protective end cap kit (2 caps), black | 760084012 \| CRPECK | Provide one (1) pair at each exposed end of all cable tray installed |
| Commscope | Cable Runway, junction splice kit, black | 760084046 \| CRTJSK | Provide one (1) set at each location where cable trays intersect. |
| Commscope | Cable Runway, butt splice kit, black | 760083899 \| CRBSK | Provide one (1) set at each location where cable tray ends butt together |
| Commscope | Cable Tray Grounding Kit | 760109124 \| CRGND | Provide one (1) at each junction and inline butt connection for all cable tray on the entire project. |
| Commscope | Cable Runway, rung drop out ,12 inch (305 mm) W, black | 760083956 \| CRDK-12W | Provide one (1) at each location where cables drop, from the cable tray into the termination rack. |
| Commscope | Cable Runway Vertical Wall Bracket Kit (2 Brackets), Black | 760084137 \| CRVWBK | provide as required to secure vertically mounted runway to the wall. |
| Commscope | Cable Runway, cable retaining post, 6 inch (152 mm) H (1 Each), black | 760083972 \| CRRP-6H | Provide one pair per every three feet of cable runway. |
| Commscope | CS34P ETL Verified Category 6 U/UTP Cable, plenum, blue jacket, 4 pair count, 1000 ft (305 m) length, CommPak | UN8740yyy14/10 \| CS34P yyy C6 4/23 U/UTP CPK 1KFT | 'yyy' to be replaced with alphabetic and/or numeric characters depicting the color of the cable. Colors shall comply with designated color of the system each cable is |

| MANUFACTURER | DESCRIPTION | PRODUCT NUMBER | NOTES |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | provided for. |
| Commscope / Uniprise | Modular Jack, RJ45, category 6, T568A/T568B, unshielded, without dust cover, blue | 7602377yy \| UNJ600-yy | 'yy' to be replaced with numeric character depicting the color of the Information Outlet (IO). Colors shall comply with designated color of the system each IO is provided for. |
| Commscope / Uniprise | Category 6 U/UTP Patch Cord, RJ45 to RJ45, 4-pair, Non-Plenum | UC1BBB2-0xFyyy | x' to be replaced with alpha or numeric character depicting the color of the patch cable. 'yyy' to be replaced with a numeric value depicting the patch cable length, in feet. Colors shall comply with designated color of the system each cable is provided for. Length to comply as stated in these specifications. |
| Commscope / Uniprise | 1-Gang SS Faceplate with label window | 760072yyy \| MyySP-L | 'yyy' or 'yy' to be replaced with numeric characters depicting the port quantity. Minimum port count shall be 4-port, with the exception of special outlet requirements (i.e.. Wall phones). All faceplates shall have label windows. |
| Commscope | TeraSPEED® Plenum Distribution Cable, interlocking aluminum armored with plenum jacket, 12 fiber single-unit | 760127803 \| P-012-DZ-8W-FSUYL | Provide for all MDF-to-IDF fiber optic backbone within a building |
| Commscope | TeraSPEED® Indoor/Outdoor Plenum Distribution Cable, interlocking aluminum armored with plenum jacket, 12 fiber single-unit | 760134924 \| P-012-OZ-8W-FSUBK | Provide for all exterior fiber optic backbone routing between buildings |

| MANUFACTURER | DESCRIPTION | PRODUCT NUMBER | NOTES |
|---|---|---|---|
| Commscope / Uniprise | TeraSPEED® Fiber Qwik II-LC Connector™, field installable, aqua | 760117895 \| SFC-LCF-09-8X | |
| Commscope / Uniprise | TeraSPEED® LC to LC, Fiber Patch Cord, 1.6 mm Duplex, Riser | FEWLCLC42JXF3 | |
| Commscope / Uniprise | 25-Pair PowerSUM U/UTP 2061F Series Plenum Cables | 2010B WH 25/24 R###### | Provide one (1) from the MDF to each IDF on the entire project. #### to be replaced with numeric characters that depict the cable length |
| Dynacom | Unwired, 66-Style Termination Block with clear, hinged cover | 66M1-50 | Provide one (1) for each 25-pair demarcation extension cable, located and installed next to the building demarcation point. |
| Dynacom | 66 wiring block, metal backboard, blue in color | 183C*M | * to be replaced with a numeric value depicting the board size. Provide at each demarcation point for the mounting of the 66 wiring blocks. Board size shall consist two (2) mounting brackets per 25-pair cable installed. |
| Ditek | 10GbE, Single Channel, RJ45/RJ45, PoE Surge Protector, STP Category 6/6A | DTK-MRJPOES | Provide one for each copper network cable associated with an exterior device, up to two (2) cables. Bond to TGBB per manufacturer's instructions |
| Ditek | Rack Mount,10GbE, 12-Channel, RJ45/RJ45, PoE Surge Protector, STP Category 6/6A | DTK-RM12NETS | Provide one for every four (4) to ten (12) copper network cables associated with an exterior device and originating at the same MDF/IDF. Bond to TGBB per manufacturer's instructions |
| Ditek | Rack Mount,10GbE, 24-Channel, RJ45/RJ45, PoE Surge Protector, STP | DTK-RM24NETS | Provide one for every Thirteen (13) to Twenty-Four (24) copper network |

| MANUFACTURER | DESCRIPTION | PRODUCT NUMBER | NOTES |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Category 6/6A | | cables associated with an exterior device and originating at the same MDF/IDF. Bond to TGBB per manufacturer's instructions |
| EXTENDED DISTANCE POWERED FIBER FOR WIRELESS AP AND VIDEO SURVEILLANCE CAMERAS | | | |
| CommScope | Power Express Distribution shelf with alarm module | PFP-PX-S1 | Power Express Class 2 shelf and starter kit, accommodates up to 4 modules of 8 SELV/Class 2 outputs, 1U |
| CommScope | Power Express Distribution module. | PFP-PX-8M | |
| CommScope | Power Express Blank Slot Panel | PFP-PX-SF | Provide one (1) for every empty slot. |
| CommScope | SPS Rectifier Power Distribution Shelf | PFP-SPS-1 | |
| CommScope | 1600W SPS Power Rectifier module | PFP-SPS-1600M | |
| CommScope | SPS Rectifier Controller Display | PFP-SPS-C1 | Provide one per SPS Rectifier Power Distribution Shelf |
| CommScope | SPS Rectifier Blank Slot Panel | PFP-SPS-SF | Provide one (1) for every empty slot. |
| CommScope | CS34O Category 6 U/UTP filled Cable, outdoor direct burial, black jacket, 4 pair count, 1000 ft (305 m) length, reel | UN884019904/10 \| CS34O BLK C6 4/24 U/UTP RL 1KFT | |
| CommScope | OS2, Outdoor, 4-Strand Fiber | PFC-S04012 | |
| Transition Networks | Gigabit SFP Module | TN-GLC-LH-SM. | Provide one (1) for each POE extender. |
| CommScope | PoE Extender, 2 Port Universal Mount, Outdoor, 60 Watt, 2-Port | PFU-P-C-0-060-02 | |
| Hoffman | 22" X "22" back panel | CP2424 | |
| Hoffman | 24"x24"x8" NEMA-4 junction box. | CSD24248 | |
| Hoffman | Padlock Handle | CWHPTO | |

**END OF SECTION 27 10 00**

# SECTION 27 41 16.10 – AUDIO AND VIDEO DISTRIBUTON FOR INSTRUCTIONAL SPACES

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED WORK

The following, in their entirety and as applicable, shall apply to this section. Including any associated drawings.

A. Conditions of the Contract

B. Division 1

C. Division 26

D. Division 27

E. Division 28

### 1.2 DESCRIPTION

A. Summary of Work:

1. Provide a complete and tested integrated audio-video system in various spaces. The video display system shall include:
   a. Provide and install all cable and components designated on the project drawings and within this specification section to furnish a complete audio-video solution. Areas shall include, as applicable, but not be limited to the following:
      1) Classrooms
      2) Additional locations Shown on Drawings: As applicable, these spaces shall have a fully integrated audio visual solution.
   c. Video displays and projectors shall be Owner Furnished and installed.
2. The installation shall comply with all applicable codes and standards in effect at the job site and as indicated in the Drawings and Specifications.
3. Reference project drawings for locations, quantities unless specified herein, and coordination with other trades.
4. The drawings and specifications are to be considered conceptual in nature and are intended to establish system standards insofar as manufacturer type and system configuration. The contractor shall provide pricing of a complete engineered system based on the issued conceptual documentation. The engineered system is to be submitted to the project's consultant for review prior to installation.
5. If there are any discrepancies between the drawings and specification or among themselves, the contractor shall request clarification prior to providing pricing for the scope of work. If a request is not issued and a response not provided via a posted addendum, the contractor shall provide pricing for the costliest scenario

and obtain clarification during the project.

6. Project scope includes replacing existing HDMI, 3.5mm and USB cabling between teachers desk and projector at the classrooms indicated on the drawings. Projectors, back boxes and raceway are existing to remain.

## 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. The contractor providing and installing the integrated audiovisual systems and associated infrastructure shall be an authorized dealer of the specified projector manufacturer and be capable of providing the manufacturer's maximum available product warranty.
2. All individuals installing the audio-video system must be employees of the authorized dealer and at least 75% of the installing staff shall have undergone a training class given by the manufacturer. Current certification indicating the successful completion of the training course shall be available upon request at the project and submitted in the contractor's product submittals.
3. The proposing contractor and the installing contractor must be the same company. No subcontractor to the proposing audio-video contractor will be allowed for any portion of the audio-video scope of work.
4. The System Installer shall meet all applicable regulations of the State and Department of Labor insofar as they apply to this type of system. The bidder shall be a firm normally employed in the audio-video industry and shall provide a reference list of ten (10) projects of equivalent size or larger and contact names confirming successful completion of projection system installations.
5. The bidder shall have an authorized service center, within 75-miles of the project's location, for the brand of equipment that is submitted for bid. The Owner, Architect, and Consultant reserves the right to perform an onsite inspection as they deem necessary.
6. The bidder must produce a letter from the manufacturer guaranteeing the delivery of all the equipment outlined in the specification herein.
7. The bidder shall have a full time local service personnel capable of servicing the projector system described herein.

B. Pre-Construction Meeting:

1. The successful Contractor shall attend a mandatory pre-construction meeting with individuals deemed necessary by the Owner's representative prior to the start of the work.
2. The contractor shall provide a mockup of the complete integrated audiovisual system solution for each of the typical spaces below before implanting the installation in multiple like rooms. Mock up shall include all products listed in part 2 of this specification. Coordinate with G.C., Architect, Consultant, and Owner for scheduling and location of mockup.
3. All proposing contractors must have ability to demonstrate a/v system being proposed and provide owner with completely installed system to evaluate performance and operation.

C. Acceptance:
   1. The Owner's representative reserves the right to reject all or a portion of the work performed, either on technical or aesthetic grounds.

D. Warranty:
   1. The selected system installer shall be factory authorized service center and shall provide an end-to-end performance warranty of not less than one (1) year. The proposer shall provide current certification documentation. The performance warranty shall be issued by the manufacturer and shall warrant that video projection system projectors have been tested to the district's approval. This end-to-end warranty shall cover the labor associated with removing/reinstalling any associated hardware or equipment as well as the replacement of all defective equipment or hardware.
   2. The bidder shall also submit with the materials mentioned in section 1.5 submittals of this specification a written explanation outlining the terms and conditions of product warranty of all parts and service of the integrated a/v solutions.

## 1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Standards: All work shall be performed in accordance with the latest revisions of the following standards and codes:
   1. Latest Local Codes and Amendments
   2. National Electrical Code, current version

B. Other References:
   1. TIA/EIA-568-A Commercial Building Telecommunications Wiring Standard
   2. EIA/TIA-569 Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunication Pathways and Spaces.
   3. TIA/EIA-606 The Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings.
   4. TIA/EIA-607 Commercial Building Grounding and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications.
   5. EIA/TIA 455-A Standard Test Procedure for Fiber Optic Fibers, Cables, Transducers, Sensors, Connecting and Terminating Devices and Other Fiber Optic Components.
   6. TIA/EIA TSB 67 Transmission Performance Specification for Field Testing of Unshielded Twisted-Pair Cabling Systems.
   7. TIA/EIA TSB 72 Centralized Optical Fiber Cabling Guidelines
   8. ISO/IEC 1180 Generic Cabling Standard
   9. EN 50173 Generic Cabling Standards for Customer Premises
   10. ANSI/EIA/TIA 526-14 Optical Power Loss Measurements of Installed Multimode Fiber Cable Plan.

C. Governing Codes and Conflicts:

1. If the requirements of these specifications or the Project Drawings exceed those of the governing codes and regulations, then the requirements of these specifications and the Drawings shall govern. However, nothing in the Drawings or Specifications shall be construed to permit work not conforming to all governing codes and regulations.

## 1.5 ABBREVIATIONS

A. The following abbreviations are used in this document:

| | |
|---|---|
| AV-1 | Audiovisual input station / Presentation Station |
| CMP | Ceiling Mounted Projector |
| WMP | Wall Mounted Projector |
| LCD / FSD / LED Flat Screen Display / TV / Monitor | |
| IVD | Interactive Video Display |

## 1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Project Initiation: Within fourteen (14) days of Notice to Proceed, the projection system installer shall furnish the following in a single consolidated submittal:

1. Permits: The Contractor shall obtain all required permits and provide copies to the Owner/Architect/Engineer.
2. Product Literature: Complete manufacturer's product literature for all, speakers, amplifiers, cable, cross-connect blocks, cable supports, cable labels, outlet devices, and other products to be used in the installation. In addition, whenever substitutions for recommended products are made, samples (when requested by the Owner/Designer) and the manufacturer's supporting documentation demonstrating compatibility with other related products shall be included.
3. Construction Schedule: A time-scaled Construction Schedule, using PERT/CPM, indicating general project deadlines and specific dates relating to the installation of the cable distribution system.
4. Testing: Proposed Contractor test result forms, and a list of instrumentation to be used for systems testing.
5. The contractor shall provide a letter from the manufacturer stating that the dealer is an authorized service center.
6. The resume and contact information of the full time service personnel responsible for the installed projection system.
7. Specification Compliance: A letter shall be provided stating, by section and subsection, that the installer complies with the ENTIRE specification section. If the installer intends to deviate from any portion of the specifications, a detailed explanation of reason in which the installer would like to deviate shall be provided in addition to the specification compliance letter. No deviations shall be acceptable until they have been accepted by the project's technology consultant.
8. Certifications: The contractor shall submit all of the following certifications and the certifications must contain dates which are valid from the date of proposal and not expirer any sooner than 12 months after substantial completion of the

project.

a. One (1) individual, employed by the installing firm, shall possess and maintain throughout the course of the project, an Avixa Certified Technology Specialist – Design (CTS-D) certification.

b. One (1) individual, employed by the installing firm, shall possess and maintain, an Avixa Certified Technology Specialist – Installer (CTS-I) certification. This certified individual will be required to onsite during any installation, modification, testing, configuration, and/or programming of any portion of the AV system

9. Provide specification with line by line acknowledgement of compliance.

B. Shop Drawings: Submit the following items, for Owner review and approval, within twenty-eight (28) days of notice to proceed:

1. Proposed wiring and connectivity diagram of the proposed projection system including all faceplates and sound reinforcing equipment

2. In addition to the wiring/connectivity diagram, the submitted drawings shall indicate the following, even if the following is expected to be provided by the project's electrical or general contractor:

a. Location of wall penetrations (all penetrations shall be sleeved and contain protective bushings at both ends)

b. Location of sleeved wall pass-thru

c. Size of sleeve at each location installed

d. Quantity of cable passing through each sleeve

e. Location of drops in each room (quantity or labeling of drops are not required in the submittal plans. Labeling shall be provided in the closeout plans and quantities shall be as per the contract documents, addendums, and issued changes. Each drop shall be labeled for the type of outlet that it is)

f. Conduit routing, size, quantity, and stub-up locations for all floor mounted outlets.

c. Drawing Compliance: A letter shall be provided stating that the installer complies with the entire project drawing, including all general, keyed, and notes to contractor. If the installer intends to deviate from any portion of the specifications, a detailed explanation of reason in which the installer would like to deviate shall be provided in addition to the specification compliance letter.

d. No deviations shall be acceptable until they have Been accepted by the project's technology Consultant.

C. Project Completion: As a condition for project acceptance, the Contractor shall submit the following for review and approval:

1. Samples: Complete manufacturer's product literature and samples (if requested) for all pre-approved substitutions to the recommended products made during the course of the Project.

2. Inspection and Test Reports: During the course of the project, the Contractor shall maintain an adequate inspection system to ensure that the materials supplied and the work performed conform to Contract requirements. The contractor shall

provide written documentation that indicates that materials acceptance testing was conducted as specified. The Contractor shall also provide documentation, which indicates that all cable termination testing was completed and that all irregularities were corrected prior to job completion.

3. Operating and Maintenance Instructions: Operating and maintenance instructions for all devices within the system. These instructions shall reflect any changes made during the course of construction and shall be provided to the Owner for their use on disc or USB drive with the project name and description (2 copies).
4. Provide schematic line diagram of system components as deployed in each installation.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

**2.1 GENERAL**

All products listed in this section shall be provided and installed by the contractor unless otherwise noted below. The following list is not intended to be a complete list of required equipment or cables as the project is to be Turnkey and may require equipment beyond the depth of this list. It is the contractor's responsibility to ensure that they are providing a complete and functional system with their proposal

A. Installation: The cabling shall be installed per requirements of the manufacturer and the Project Documents utilizing materials meeting all applicable TIA/EIA standards. The Contractor is responsible for providing all incidental and/or miscellaneous hardware not explicitly specified below as required for a complete and operational system.

B. Materials: Materials shall be as listed or shall be approved equivalent products of other manufacturers meeting the intent and quality level of the TIA/EIA specifications. All approved equivalent products will be published by addendum ten days prior to proposal for Architect/Engineer to review.

C. Testing: All installed cabling shall be tested 100% good after installation by the Contractor.

D. Ratings: All products shall be new and brought to the job site in the original manufacturer's packaging. Electrical components (including innerduct) shall bear the Underwriter's Laboratories label. All communications cable shall bear flammability testing ratings as follows:

CM Communications Cable
CMP Plenum Rated Communications Cable
CMR Riser-Rated Communications Cable

E. Initial Cable Inspection: The Contractor shall inspect all cable prior to installation to verify that it is identified properly on the reel identification label, that it is of the proper gauge, containing the correct number of pairs, etc. Note any buckling of the jacket that would indicate possible problems. Damaged cable or any other components failing to meet

specifications shall not be used in the installation.

F. Cable Lubricants: Lubricants specifically designed for installing communications cable may be used to reduce pulling tension as necessary when pulling cable into conduit.
   1. Approved Products
      a. Twisted-pair cable: Dyna-Blue
         American Polywater

G. Fire Wall Sealant: Any penetration through firewalls (including those in sleeves) will be resealed with an Underwriter Laboratories (UL) approved sealant.
   1. Approved Products
      a. 3M or
      b. Pre-approved equal

**2.2 FLAT PANEL DISPLAY**

A. Owner Furnished and Owner Installed

**2.3 INTERACTIVE FLAT PANEL VIDEO DISPLAY**

A. Owner Furnished and Owner Installed

**2.4 VIDEO PROJECTORS**

A. Owner Furnished, Owner Installed (excluding special venues)

**2.5 STANDALONE AV SYSTEM CABLING AND COMPONENTS**

A. Provide and install the following Cabling and components from all locations with a local audio video input to their associated video display or projection device
   1. Cabling:
      a) One (1) VGA Cable, from AV input plate to the AV output plate/projector.
      b) One (1) 3.5mm Stereo Audio Cable, C2G Product No. 405** (40516 = 25’ cable assembly).
      c) One (1) RCA(left, right, video) cable, from AV input plate to the AV output/projector.
      d) The (*), at the end of each product number above, shall be replaced with a numerical value depicting the length as required per location.
   2. Provide the following at each AV Input Wall Plate (AV-1, PS, AVI, etc.):
      1) Existing AV input plate is to remain.

   3. Provide the following at each AV Output Wall Plate associated with existing projector:
      1) Existing AV input plate is to remain.

## 2.6 AUDIO VISUAL PATCH CABLES

A. Provide and install the following Patch Cables
   1. Provide the following at each AV Input Outlet:
      a) One(1) 10’ VGA cable
      b) One (1) 10’ 3.5MM Stereo Audio Cable, C2G Product No. 22602
      c) One (1) 10’ RCA cable

   2. Provide the following at each AV Output Outlet:
      a) One(1) 6’ VGA cable
      b) One (1) 6’ 3.5MM Stereo Audio Cable, C2G Product No. 22601
      c) One (1) 6’ RCA cable

## 2.7 CABLE ROUTING/PATHWAY

A. Cable Support System: All audio-video cabling shall be installed and supported, using an approved cable support system, at 4’-0” intervals unless installed in conduit. Do not exceed manufacture recommendation for the quantity of cables supported in an individual support.

B. All cable bundles shall be grouped together using plenum rated Velcro for the entire run above and below the ceilings.

# PART 3 – EXECUTION

## 3.1 GENERAL

A. Contractor is required to properly mount integrated A/V solutions and connect all ceiling video/audio cables to projector component inputs.

B. Contractor is required to thoroughly test and verify operation of all A/V inputs and video modes prior to project completion.

C. Contractor is required to focus and adjust projector to properly project image on viewing surface (screen or multimedia board depending on location).

D. Contractor shall provide owner with written verification test process and results once all projectors have been installed, tested, and placed in final condition.

E. Damage:
   1. The Contractor shall replace or rework cables showing evidence of improper handling including stretches, kinks, short radius bends, over tightened bindings, loosely twisted and over-twisted pairs at terminals and cable sheath removed too far (over 1-1/2 inches).

F. The Contractor shall replace any damaged ceiling tiles that are broken during cable installation.

G. Clean Up:
1. All clean up activity related to work performed will be the responsibility of the Contractor and must be completed daily before leaving the facility.

## 3.2 DOCUMENTATION

A. Contractor shall provide owner with detailed serial number listing and associated graphical room number designation equipment was installed. Contractor shall use actual graphical package room numbers not architectural plan numbers from construction set.

## 3.3 STATION WIRING INSTALLATION

A. General:
1. All cable must be handled with care during installation so as not to change performance specifications. Factory twists of each individual pair must be maintained up to the connection points at both ends of all category 6 cable. There shall never be more than one and one-quarter inch of unsheathed enhanced Category6 UTP cable at either the wiring USB Transmitter or Receiver.

B. Exposed Cable:
1. All cabling shall be installed inside walls or ceiling spaces whenever possible. Exposed station cable will only be run where indicated on the Drawings. Additional exposed cable runs will require Owner approval, and will only be allowed when no other options exist.

C. Placement: All cabling and associated hardware shall be placed so as to make efficient use of available space. All cabling and associated hardware shall be placed so as not to impair the Owner's efficient use of their full capacity.

D. Cable Routes:
1. All cabling placed in ceiling areas must be in conduit, cable tray or PANDUIT® Corp. J-MOD™ modular cable support. Cable supports shall be permanently anchored to building structure or substrates. Provide attachment hardware and anchors designed for the structure to which attached and that are suitably sized to carry the weight of the cables to be supported. Do not route cable through webbing of structural steel. Cabling must be supported in dedicated supports intended to support cabling as described in this section. Contractor shall adhere to the manufacturer's suggested fill ratio for each size cable support installed.
2. Attaching cable to pipes or other mechanical items is not permitted. Communications cable shall be rerouted so as to provide a minimum of 18 inches spacing from light fixtures, sources of heat, power feeder conduits and EMI sources. Cabling shall not be attached to ceiling. Grid support wires. Cable runs shall be routed down the corridors; parallel or perpendicular to building structure. Multiple cables to be bundled together at and between each cable support installed.

3. Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating with other trades on the project so that the installed cable pathway does not interfere with the installation of other systems to insure that mechanical ducts, pipes, conduits, or any other above ceiling systems are not putting unnecessary stress on any portion of the install audio-video cabling.

## 3.4 STATION HARDWARE

A. Flush mounted components: all component shall be inserted to a flush mounted faceplate unless designated otherwise.

B. Placement: Where possible, the AV Input Outlets shall be located so that its centerline is 18 inches above floor level or 12 inches above permanent bench surfaces. Outlets shall not be mounted on temporary, movable, or removable surfaces, doors, or access hatches. The CMP outlet shall route directly to the rear of the projector and does not require any type of faceplates, except for the associated USB extender receiver outlet, which shall be installed at 18” AFF in the center of the presentation wall.

## 3.5 FINAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

A. Notification: The Owner and Engineer shall be notified one week prior to any testing so that the testing may be witnessed.

B. Inspection: Before requesting a final inspection, the Contractor shall perform a series of end-to-end installation performance tests. The Contractor shall submit for approval a proposal describing the test procedures, test result forms and timetable for all copper and fiber optic cabling.

C. Procedures: Trained personnel shall perform all testing. Acceptance of the test procedures discussed below is predicated on the Contractor’s use of the recommended products and adherence to the inspection requirements and practices set forth. Acceptance of the completed installation will be evaluated in the context of each of these factors. Testing procedures shall consist of, but not me limited to the following:
   1. Input locations to be tested utilizing multiple types of source equipment. Equipment to include:
      a. Personal Computer (laptop)
      b. Apple iMac
      c. Apple Mac Mini
      d. Google Chromebook
      e. Additional devices may be required at the time of testing
      f. contractor to provide devices on a single cart, to roll between inputs during testing.
   2. Routing of video, from any source, to each projector and display simultaneously and independently.
   3. Routing of audio, from any source, to each audio channel simultaneously and independently.
   4. Control of the entire system from each installed A/V Control Panel

5. Additional test requirements may be required at the Owner and/or Consultant's request.

**END OF SECTION 27 41 16.10**

# SECTION 27 41 16.20 – AUDIO AND VIDEO DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS FOR SPECIAL VENUES

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED WORK

A. The following sections shall associate with this specification as applicable.
   1. General Conditions
   2. Supplementary Conditions
   3. Division 1
   4. Division 26 in its entirety.
   5. Division 27 in its entirety.
   6. Division 28 in its entirety.

### 1.2 DESCRIPTION

A. Summary of Work:
   1. Provide all equipment specified well as all miscellaneous parts and materials required for the proper, complete, and functional Video and/or Sound Distribution System at the following Venues at Creekwood Middle School and Riverwood Middle School:
      a. Band Hall
      b. New Gym
      c. New Dance

   2. All applicable equipment shall bear the UL label.
   3. Governing Codes and Conflicts: If the requirements of these specifications or the Project Drawings exceed those of the governing codes and regulations, then the requirements of these specifications and the Drawings shall govern. However, nothing in the Drawings or Specifications shall be construed to permit work not conforming to all governing codes, regulations, and manufacturer installation requirements.
   4. Locate equipment to accommodate millwork, fixtures, marker boards and other room equipment at no additional cost to the owner.
   5. Plenum rated cable may be used as an option at the contractor's discretion. Wherever cabling is run exposed, conduit shall be used to cover and protect wiring.
   6. These documents are conceptual in nature. It shall be the responsibility of the approved installer to furnish a complete and functional system, including the items shown on the drawings, in the specifications, and items not designated in either. The installer's shop drawings and product data submittals shall represent a complete system and documents accepted do not relieve the installer from being required to provide any materials, equipment, or labor to furnish a complete and functional system as recognized by the Project's Technology Consultant and the Owner.

## 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:
   1. The contractor providing and installing the integrated audiovisual systems and associated infrastructure shall be an authorized dealer of the specified projector manufacturer and be capable of providing the manufacturer's maximum available product warranty.
   2. All individuals installing the audio-video system must be employees of the authorized dealer and at least 75% of the installing staff shall have undergone a training class given by the manufacturer. Current certification indicating the successful completion of the training course shall be available upon request at the project and submitted in the contractor's product submittals.
   3. The proposing contractor and the installing contractor must be the same company. No subcontractor to the proposing audio-video contractor will be allowed for any portion of the audio-video scope of work.
   4. The System Installer shall meet all applicable regulations of the State and Department of Labor insofar as they apply to this type of system. The bidder shall be a firm normally employed in the audio-video industry and shall provide a reference list of ten (10) projects of equivalent size or larger and contact names confirming successful completion of projection system installations.
   5. The bidder shall have an authorized service center, within 75-miles of the project's location, for the brand of equipment that is submitted for bid. The Owner, Architect, and Consultant reserves the right to perform an onsite inspection as they deem necessary.
   6. The bidder must produce a letter from the manufacturer guaranteeing the delivery of all the equipment outlined in the specification herein.
   7. The bidder shall have a full-time local service personnel capable of servicing the projector system described herein.

B. Pre-Construction Meeting:
   1. The successful Contractor shall attend a mandatory pre-construction meeting with individuals deemed necessary by the Owner's representative prior to the start of the work.
   2. The contractor shall provide a mockup of the complete integrated audiovisual system solution for each of the typical spaces below before implanting the installation in multiple like rooms. Mockup shall include all products listed in part 2 of this specification. Coordinate with G.C., Architect, Consultant, and Owner for scheduling and location of mockup.
   3. All proposing contractors must have ability to demonstrate a/v system being proposed and provide owner with completely installed system to evaluate performance and operation.

C. Acceptance: The Owner's representative reserves the right to reject all or a portion of the work performed, either on technical or aesthetic grounds.

D. Warranty:
   1. The selected system installer shall be factory authorized service center and shall provide an end-to-end performance warranty of not less than one (1) year. The

# SECTION 27 50 00 - BUILDING INTERCOMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM (Expand Existing)

CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT AND DIVISION 1, as applicable, apply to this Section.

**PART 1 – GENERAL**

**1.1 RELATED WORK**

A. The following sections shall associate with this specification as applicable.
1. General Conditions
2. Supplementary Conditions
3. Division 1
4. Division 26 in its entirety.
5. Division 27 in its entirety.
6. Division 28 in its entirety.

**1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

A. The contractor shall furnish and install all required materials to expand the existing, intercom system as shown on the project drawings. It shall be the responsibility of the installing contractor to design the expanded/renovated areas of the system in accordance with the latest codes and standards.

B. The contractor shall field verify the manufacturer, model, expansion capabilities, and location of the existing system.

C. The Braden Center Intercom System is and existing Bogen Multicom 2000. The system is located in MDF Room Number A60. Connect speakers to this system as designated on the project drawings.

D. The Community Center Intercom is an existing Valcom V-2924A. Connect speakers to this system as designated on the project drawings.

E. The system expansion shall be provided and installed by the manufacturer's authorized contractor. Certification shall be submitted verifying that the contractor is the manufacturer's authorized contractor. Included shall be certificates of attendance in manufacturer's installation / maintenance training by the contractors directly employed personnel. The communications contracting company shall have been in business for a minimum of 5 years, continuously furnishing the specified manufacturers' product lines and systems.

F. The system expansion assemblies shall be completely factory built and tested by manufacturers of established reputation, who have and can refer to similar systems which are currently installed and functioning properly. The factory pre-assembled cabinets, consoles, and power supplies shall be UL approved and listed.

G. The system's expansion shall be guaranteed for a period of one year from the date of acceptance or first beneficial use, whichever is first, against defects in materials,

workmanship, design, and improper adjustment. Any defects in the system's expansion shall be corrected at no expense to the Owner, provided the system does not show signs of abuse. During the guarantee period any work found not to be in conformance with the plans, specifications and addenda shall be brought into conformity with same at no additional cost to the owner.

H. The equipment described herein and furnished per these specifications shall be supplied by one communications contractor. The contractor shall hold the necessary License for this type of work. Equipment shall be manufactured by the same manufacturer of the existing system and all work shall be performed by a certified dealer of the existing manufacturer. Contractor is required to submit current certification from manufacturer with submittals.

I. Approval request for installation of equipment not as specified herein must be received by the architect not less than ten days prior to bid opening. Proposals must be accompanied by complete technical data as well as a list of at least 10 references for successful Telephone / Intercom / Clock system installations. All potential bidders submitting proposals for substitute system approval must provide a working demonstration system, for the owner's inspection prior to final acceptance, to ensure that the submitted components are equal to the specified in all functional aspects. Demonstrations shall be provided at the owner's chosen location at no cost or inconvenience to the owner's personnel.

J. Alternative proposals which are approved, for bidding purposes only, will be published by addenda. Proposals not complying with the prior approval requirements and conditions set forth will not be considered.

K. The contractor shall make available, and maintain a radio dispatched mobile service department capable of furnishing equipment inspection and timely service at the Owner's location.

L. The contractor shall be prepared to offer a service contract for the maintenance of the system beyond the warranty period.

M. The contractor shall instruct personnel designated by the owner in the proper use, basic care, and maintenance of the equipment. Such training shall be provided as an integral component of the system.

N. The contractor shall submit certificates of factory authorization and completion of the manufacturer's telephone installation and maintenance training.

O. These documents are conceptual in nature. It shall be the responsibility of the approved installer to furnish a complete and functional system, including the items shown on the drawings, in the specifications, and items not designated in either. The installer's shop drawings and product data submittals shall represent a complete system and documents accepted do not relieve the installer from being required to provide any materials, equipment, or labor to furnish a complete and functional system as recognized by the Project's Technology Consultant and the Owner.

**1.3 CONTRACTOR QUALIFICATIONS**

A. The installing contractor shall be the authorized representative of the intercom system to sell, install, and service the proposed manufacturer's equipment. The installing contractor shall have represented the intercom manufacturer's product for at least two years.

B. The installing contractor shall provide 24 hour, 365 days per year emergency service with factory trained, state licensed service technicians.

C. The installing contractor must have a permanent office within a 120-mile radius of the project site and be an approved dealer/integrator, of the proposed system, in the nearest major metropolitan area.

D. The installing contractor shall have been actively engaged in the business of selling, installing, and servicing systems in the surrounding area for at least ten (10) years.

E. All individuals installing the intercom system must be employees of the certified installer and at least 25% of the installing staff shall have undergone a training class given by the manufacturer. Current certification indicating the successful completion of the training course shall be available upon request at the project and submitted in the contractor's product submittals.

F. The entity providing pricing to furnish and install the system specified within this specification section and the physical installing entity of this system shall be one in the same. Absolutely no subcontracting on any portion of this system, by the system's proposing entity, will be allowed.

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

A. Product Data:
   1. Within fourteen (14) days of Notice to Proceed, the system installer shall furnish the following in a single consolidated submittal:
      a. Permits: The Contractor shall obtain all required permits and provide copies to the Owner/Architect/Engineer.
      b. Product Literature: Complete manufacturer's product literature for all cable, termination components, cable supports, cable labels, field devices, and other products to be used in the installation. In addition, whenever substitutions for recommended products are made, samples (when requested by the Owner/Designer) and the manufacturer's supporting documentation demonstrating compatibility with other related products shall be included. The submittal shall have some type of distinguishing marker or pointer to indicated what specific product is to be provided
      c. Construction Schedule: A time-scaled Construction Schedule, using PERT/CPM, indicating general project deadlines and specific dates relating to the installation of the cable distribution system.
      d. Testing: Proposed Contractor system test result forms and a list of instrumentation to be used for systems testing.
      e. Specification Compliance: A letter shall be provided stating, by section and subsection, that the system installer complies with the ENTIRE

specification section. If the installer intends to deviate from any portion of the specifications, a detailed explanation of reason in which the installer would like to deviate shall be provided in addition to the specification compliance letter. No deviations shall be acceptable until they have been accepted by the project's technology consultant.

f. Certifications: The contractor shall submit all of the following certifications and the certifications must contain dates which are valid from the date of proposal and not expirer any sooner than 12 months after substantial completion of the project.
   1) Manufacturer's Authorized Dealer/Installer Certification: This certification must be held by the proposing/installing contractor and state that the proposing/installing contractor is and authorized dealer/installer of the system specified within the project specifications. The certification must have been obtained by the office that is within a 120-mile radius of the project's location.
   2) Installer Certification: This certification must be held by at least 25% of the, on-site, staff and be made available at the site if requested by the owner, architect, and/or project's technology consultant.
   3) Licenses: This includes all licenses required by the state in which the work is being performed, the federal government, local authorities having jurisdiction, and any organization in that governs the specific system

B. Shop Drawings:
   1. Submit the following items, for Owner review and approval, within twenty-eight (28) days of notice to proceed:
      a. Proposed circuit routing and circuit grouping plan prepared by a system registered designer. The designer's certification must be current. Identifiable, separate routing shall be shown for both the station cabling and any backbone trunk cabling.
      b. In addition to the cable routing, the submitted drawings shall indicate the following, even if the following is expected to be provided by the project's electrical or general contractor:
         1) Location of all control equipment and remote power sources
         2) Locations of all field devices and outlets
         3) Location of wall penetrations (all penetrations shall be sleeved and contain protective bushings at both ends)
         4) Location of sleeved wall pass-thru
         5) Size of sleeve at each location installed
         6) Quantity of cable passing through each sleeve
         7) Location of drops in each room (quantity or labeling of drops are not required in the submittal plans. Labeling shall be provided in the closeout plans and quantities shall be as per the contract documents, addendums, and issued changes. Each drop shall be labeled for the type of outlet that it is)
         8) Conduit routing, size, quantity, and stub-up locations for all floor mounted outlets.

c. Drawing Compliance: A letter shall be provided stating that the system installer complies with the ENTIRE project drawing, including all general, keyed, and notes to contractor. If the installer intends to deviate from any portion of the specifications, a detailed explanation of reason in which the installer would like to deviate shall be provided in addition to the specification compliance letter. No deviations shall be acceptable until they have been approved by the project's technology consultant.

C. Close-out Procedures:

1. Four (4) copies of the following documents shall be delivered to the Architect/Engineer at the time of system acceptance. One (1) final copy of the same documents shall be delivered directly to the project's Technology Consultant upon final closeout of the project. The closeout submittals shall include:
   a. Inspection and Test Reports: During the course of the Project, the Contractor shall maintain an adequate inspection system to ensure that the materials supplied, and the work performed, conform to contract requirements. The Contractor shall provide written documentation that indicates that materials acceptance testing was conducted as specified. The Contractor shall also provide documentation, which indicates that all cable termination testing was completed and that all irregularities were corrected prior to job completion.
   b. Provide complete test reports for all cabling and devices that comprise system as outlined in this document.
   c. Include the Name, address and telephone of the authorized factory representative with a 24-hour emergency service number.
   d. The manual shall also include Manufacturer's data sheets and installation manuals/instructions for all equipment installed and a list of recommended spare parts.
   e. Generic or typical owner's instruction and operation manual shall not be acceptable to fulfill this requirement.
   f. An up-to-date record ("as-built") set of approved shop drawing prints that have been revised to show each and every change made to the structure cabling system from the original approved shop drawings. Drawings shall consist of a scaled plan of each building showing the placement of each individual item of the technical cabling system equipment as well as raceway size and routing, junction boxes, and conductor size, quantity, and color in each raceway.
   g. As-built Drawings shall include cable pathways, device locations with correct labeling, control equipment locations, remote power supply locations, cross-connect locations, lightning protection locations, and MDF/IDF locations. The as-built drawings shall be prepared using AutoCad 2002 or later. Provide the Owner with electronic versions of the as-builts on CD media and (1) hard copy per binder.
   h. All drawings must reflect point to point wiring, device address and programmed characteristics as verified in the presence of the engineer and/or the end user unless device addressing is electronically generated, and automatically graphically self-documented by the system.
   i. A copy of the manufacturer's warranty on the installed system.

j. Any keys to cabinets and/or equipment and special maintenance tools required to repair, maintain, or service the system.
k. Operating and Maintenance Instructions for all devices within the system. These instructions shall reflect any changes made during the course of construction, and shall be provided to the Owner, for their use, in a three-ring binder labeled with the project name and description. (4 copies)
l. Upon completion of the work and at a time designated by the Architect or owner, provide formal training sessions for the Owner's operating personnel to include location, operation, and maintenance of all included systems and equipment. Minimum amount of training time shall be at least 4 hours.
m. One (1) 30" x 42" laminated floor plan sheets illustrating technology drops and cable designation. Contractor shall provide one complete floor plan sheet for each telecommunications room (MDF or IDF)

**1.5 FUNCTION – INTERCOM**

A. General: The contractor shall verify and document the functions of the existing system. All function of the existing system shall remain and be expanded to the newly added devices installed per the project drawings.

B. Use materials and equipment that comply with referenced standards and manufacturer's standard design and construction, in accordance with published product information. Coordinate the features of all materials and equipment so they form an integrated system, with components and interconnections matched for optimum performance of specified functions.

**1.6 FUNCTION - MASTER CLOCK: THE MASTER TIME CONTROLLER IS EXISTING TO REMAIN.**

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 EQUIPMENT**

All head end equipment is existing to remain. The following system information if provided in the event that the information is not obtainable. Provide all necessary expansion equipment as required.

A. External Paging Amplifier
1. External paging amplifiers shall be provided as required to meet the load requirements to the system when activated in the all-page mode.
2. Program/paging amplifiers shall have the following:
a. Power output of 250 watts RMS.
b. Maximum .5% harmonic distortion from 45-20KHz.
c. Frequency response of 20Hz to 20 KHz (+0, -1 dB).
d. -90- dB signal to noise ratio at 20Hz to 20 KHz.
e. 1-volt RMS input sensitivity at 1 KHz.

B. Speakers, Ceiling, Pendant, and Beam Mounted
1. Lay-In Ceiling Speakers:
a. General Purpose Speaker: 8" speaker with 5 oz. magnet complete with

line matching transformer. Program rating shall be 5 watts continuous. The speaker shall be a Quam System 12, 2x2 lay-in at grid ceilings and Quam Solution 1 at hard ceilings. 25/70V transformers shall have primary taps of 0.25, 0.5, 1, 2 and 5 watts. Tap speaker at 0.25 watt. White finish unless indicated otherwise.

b. Classroom, office, conference, telephone, teacher lounge, workroom speakers: 8-ohm speaker with 5 oz. magnet, complete with line matching transformer. Program rating shall be 4 watts continuous. The speaker shall be a Quam System 12/VC 2x2 lay-in at grid ceilings and Quam Solution 2 at hard ceilings, with integral volume control. 25/70V transformers shall have primary taps of 0.25, 0.5, 1, 2, 5 watts; tap speaker at 0.5 watt.

2. Solid Ceiling Speakers:
   a. 8" O.D. loudspeaker with 10 oz. magnet, 4W/70V Transformer with 5 tap settings (0.25W, 0.50W, 1.0W, 2.0W, 4.0W). Quam Product No. C10X/B70/WS/VC
   b. Provide Backbox Enclosure, Quam Product No. ERD8U
3. Pedant Mount Speakers:
   a. 8" 2-way pendant mount speaker with 60-watt 70.7v transformer, Altas IED Product No. PM8FA-**
   b. ** to be replaced with the proper alphabetical characters that depict the device color. Coordinate color with the Project Architect prior to submittal and procurement.
4. Surface mount speaker/horn:
   a. Surface mount wide-angle loudspeaker with multitap line matching transformer. Quam Product No. H16/SVP
   b. Provide recessed back can for each speaker. System installer to coordinate backbox rough-in with the project's electrical sub-contractor.
5. Recessed Vandal proof wall mounted paging horn:
   a. Atlas Sound APF-15T with 193-8-6 square recessed back box and VP161-APF aluminum alloy grille, white finish, neoprene gasket.

C. Remote Source Output Volume Control:
   1. Rack mounted in remote source rack. Provide line level volume control of output of each remote source device. Label each volume control for each output device.

D. Wall Mounted Volume Control (Attenuators)
   2. Attenuator(s) shall be Atlas Sound AT Series Model AT10-PA auto transformer or approved equal. The power rating shall be 10W and total attenuation shall be 33dB. Attenuation per step for AT10-PA shall be 8 steps of 3dB and 6dB each for the last two positions. Attenuator shall be a step type control with a positive off position. There shall be no stop between the maximum and off positions. Switch shall have silver plated contacts to eliminate noise and contact loss. All terminations must be made via a removable terminal block. Unit(s) shall be supplied with stainless steel single gang face plates (with dial scale to indicate attenuator position).

E. Secondary Clocks:
1. General
a. Provide secondary clocks at locations shown on drawings.
b. Digital Clock: Microprocessor-controlled unit with red LED digital time display of hours and minutes.
1) Digital Clock: Microprocessor-controlled unit with red LED digital time display of hours, minutes, and seconds.
2) Display Height
i. Classroom: 2.5-Inch
ii. Corridor: 4-Inch
iii. Cafeteria: 4-Inch
iv. Gymnasium: 4-Inch
3) Display Format: Selectable between 12-hour (with "PM" indicator on LED display) and 24-hour formats.
c. Connections for Power and Correction:
1) Wired synchronous connection to master clock for both operating power and correction.
d. Clock Circuit Power Booster
1) Transformer power supply, mounted in steel cabinet with hinged door, and having fuse-protected input and output circuits.
e. Back Boxes
1) Box and cover plate assembly shall be furnished by device manufacturer and be suitable for device to be mounted. Back boxes shall be equipped with knockouts and hanger straps or mounting adapters arranged for flush mounting device, unless otherwise indicated.
f. Guards
1) Formed-steel wire, shaped to fit around guarded device, with 1-inch (25-mm) maximum clearance.
2) Mounting Provisions: Fixed tabs welded to guard and arranged for screw attachment to mounting surface.
3) Finish for Indoor Devices: Clear epoxy lacquer over zinc plating or powder coat painted finish.

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 MATERIALS**

A. Wire: Wire shall be #22 gauge at a minimum. Wire for communications system shall consist of 2 twisted pairs #22 solid copper under plenum jacket. No splices are permitted except in approved junction boxes. All terminations shall be made on telephone type punch blocks or at specified devices. Display, speaker, and specialty cables shall be as required for best operation under manufacturer recommendations.

B. Jacks: All station device terminations (except speakers) shall be terminated on USOC standard modular jacks. Jacks for wall mounted telephones shall have lugs for securely attaching the instrument to the wall.

C. Backboards: Provide 4 feet x 8 feet plywood backboards for mounting of system cross connect field. Mount as shown on the plans. Provide Modular Termination backboards with 110 type terminal blocks as required to terminate all cables. Provide Distribution and cross connect backboards equal to AT&T 110 Series for all cross connect wiring.

**3.2 INSTALLATION**

A. All work under this section shall be performed by persons having specific familiarity with telephone, data and sound system installation. Upon request the contractor shall submit resumes, references or other corroborating documentation, to the engineer to confirm the contractor's capabilities and experience.

B. Grounding: Except were specifically indicated otherwise, all exposed non-current carrying metallic parts of the communications system shall be grounded. This may be accomplished via a driven ground rod, cold water pipe or building power ground. If the building power ground is used, a separate ground conductor shall be used from the equipment to the grounding grid. All grounding shall be done with #6 solid copper wire or larger. The contractor shall use every effort to insure system stability and safety.

C. Wiring: A comprehensive, documented communications wiring system is to be installed. Wiring is to be identified by room number, segregated, neatly laced, and terminated on telephone type punch blocks. Back boards and cross connect fields shall be neatly organized as to function. (ie: intercom, telephone stations, data network etc.) All termination points are to be labeled with function. Data cables shall be certified as usable and checked using the cable certification sheet. Data cables shall be labeled as per the data identification scheme.

D. Speaker Wattage Taps: Tap all classrooms at ½ watt. Tap Corridor Speakers for 1 watt, Outside Horns 3.3 watts, Tap Speakers in High Ceilings (15FT +) at 4 watts. Rest rooms ½ watt.

**3.3 TESTING AND TRAINING**

A. Prior to connection of any terminal equipment all cables shall be tested as per REA spec. PC-4. Cables shall be tested for Opens, Splits, Crossed Pairs, Shorts to Ground and Shield Continuity. All defective cabling is to be replaced prior to device hook-up.

B. Upon completion of the installation the contractor shall test each room station speaker, handset or call switch for proper operation. All telephones, programming and functions are to be tested for proper operation. All emergency and program functions are to be tested. Any malfunction shall be corrected prior to final acceptance.

C. Operational guidelines shall be given in written form in sufficient numbers so that all key personnel have operational instructions of programming, station use and special features. Copies of these instructions shall be provided for permanent record in the operations and maintenance manuals specified in part 1.04 above.

**END OF SECTION 27 50 00**

proposer shall provide current certification documentation. The performance warranty shall be issued by the manufacturer and shall warrant that video projection system projectors have been tested to the district's approval. This end-to-end warranty shall cover the labor associated with removing/reinstalling any associated hardware or equipment as well as the replacement of all defective equipment or hardware.

2. The bidder shall also submit with the materials mentioned in section 1.5 submittals of this specification a written explanation outlining the terms and conditions of product warranty of all parts and service of the integrated a/v solutions.

## 1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Standards: All work shall be performed in accordance with the latest revisions of the following standards and codes:
   1. Latest Local Codes and Amendments
   2. National Electrical Code, current version

B. Other References:
   1. TIA/EIA-568-A Commercial Building Telecommunications Wiring Standard
   2. EIA/TIA-569 Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunication Pathways and Spaces.
   3. TIA/EIA-606 The Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings.
   4. TIA/EIA-607 Commercial Building Grounding and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications.
   5. EIA/TIA 455-A Standard Test Procedure for Fiber Optic Fibers, Cables, Transducers, Sensors, Connecting and Terminating Devices and Other Fiber Optic Components.
   6. TIA/EIA TSB 67 Transmission Performance Specification for Field Testing of Unshielded Twisted-Pair Cabling Systems.
   7. TIA/EIA TSB 72 Centralized Optical Fiber Cabling Guidelines
   8. ISO/IEC 1180 Generic Cabling Standard
   9. EN 50173 Generic Cabling Standards for Customer Premises
   10. ANSI/EIA/TIA 526-14 Optical Power Loss Measurements of Installed Multimode Fiber Cable Plan.

C. Governing Codes and Conflicts: If the requirements of these specifications or the Project Drawings exceed those of the governing codes and regulations, then the requirements of these specifications and the Drawings shall govern. However, nothing in the Drawings or Specifications shall be construed to permit work not conforming to all governing codes and regulations.

## 1.5 ABBREVIATIONS

A. The following abbreviations are used in this document:
   1. AV-*# Audiovisual input station / Presentation Station (Reference drawing legend) CMP Ceiling Mounted Projector LCD or LED Flat panel screen/monitor

## 1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Project Initiation: Within fourteen (14) days of Notice to Proceed, the projection system installer shall furnish the following in a single consolidated submittal:
   1. Permits: The Contractor shall obtain all required permits and provide copies to the Owner/Architect/Engineer.
   2. Product Literature: Complete manufacturer's product literature for all, speakers, amplifiers, cable, cross-connect blocks, cable supports, cable labels, outlet devices, and other products to be used in the installation. In addition, whenever substitutions for recommended products are made, samples (when requested by the Owner/Designer) and the manufacturer's supporting documentation demonstrating compatibility with other related products shall be included.
   3. Construction Schedule: A time-scaled Construction Schedule, using PERT/CPM, indicating general project deadlines and specific dates relating to the installation of the cable distribution system.
   4. Testing: Proposed Contractor test result forms, and a list of instrumentation to be used for systems testing.
   5. The contractor shall provide a letter from the manufacturer stating that the dealer is an authorized service center.
   6. The resume and contact information of the full-time service personnel responsible for the installed projection system.
   7. Specification Compliance: A letter shall be provided stating, by section and subsection, that the installer complies with the ENTIRE specification section. If the installer intends to deviate from any portion of the specifications, a detailed explanation of reason in which the installer would like to deviate shall be provided in addition to the specification compliance letter. No deviations shall be acceptable until they have been accepted by the project's technology consultant.
   8. Certifications: The contractor shall submit all of the following certifications and the certifications must contain dates which are valid from the date of proposal and not expirer any sooner than 12 months after substantial completion of the project.
      a. AMX authorized dealer certification
      b. Installer training certification
         1) Provide specification with line by line acknowledgement of compliance.

B. Shop Drawings: Submit the following items, for Owner review and approval, within twenty-eight (28) days of notice to proceed:
   1. Proposed wiring and connectivity diagram of the proposed projection system including all faceplates and sound reinforcing equipment
   2. In addition to the wiring/connectivity diagram, the submitted drawings shall indicate the following, even if the following is expected to be provided by the project's electrical or general contractor:
      a. Location of wall penetrations (all penetrations shall be sleeved and contain protective bushings at both ends)
      b. Location of sleeved wall pass-thru
      c. Size of sleeve at each location installed

d. Quantity of cable passing through each sleeve
e. Location of drops in each room (quantity or labeling of drops are not required in the submittal plans. Labeling shall be provided in the closeout plans and quantities shall be as per the contract documents, addendums, and issued changes. Each drop shall be labeled for the type of outlet that it is)
f. Conduit routing, size, quantity, and stub-up locations for all floor mounted outlets.

3. Drawing Compliance: A letter shall be provided stating that the installer complies with the ENTIRE project drawing, including all general, keyed, and notes to contractor. If the installer intends to deviate from any portion of the specifications, a detailed explanation of reason in which the installer would like to deviate shall be provided in addition to the specification compliance letter. NO DEVIATIONS SHALL BE ACCEPTABLE UNTIL THEY HAVE BEEN ACCEPTED BY THE PROJECT'S TECHNOLOGY CONSULTANT.

C. Project Completion: As a condition for project acceptance, the Contractor shall submit the following for review and approval:

1. Samples: Complete manufacturer's product literature and samples (if requested) for all pre-approved substitutions to the recommended products made during the course of the Project.
2. Inspection and Test Reports: During the course of the project, the Contractor shall maintain an adequate inspection system to ensure that the materials supplied, and the work performed conform to Contract requirements. The contractor shall provide written documentation that indicates that materials acceptance testing was conducted as specified. The Contractor shall also provide documentation, which indicates that all cable termination testing was completed and that all irregularities were corrected prior to job completion.
3. Operating and Maintenance Instructions: Operating and maintenance instructions for all devices within the system. These instructions shall reflect any changes made during the course of construction and shall be provided to the Owner for their use on disc or USB drive with the project name and description (2 copies).
4. Provide schematic line diagram of system components as deployed in each installation.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL

All products listed in this section shall be provided and installed by the contractor unless otherwise noted below. The following list is not intended to be a complete list of required equipment or cables as the project is to be Turnkey and may require equipment beyond the depth of this list. It is the contractor's responsibility to ensure that they are providing a complete and functional system with their proposal

A. Installation: The cabling shall be installed per requirements of the manufacturer and the Project Documents utilizing materials meeting all applicable TIA/EIA standards. The

Contractor is responsible for providing all incidental and/or miscellaneous hardware not explicitly specified below as required for a complete and operational system.

B. Materials: Materials shall be as listed or shall be approved equivalent products of other manufacturers meeting the intent and quality level of the TIA/EIA specifications. All approved equivalent products will be published by addendum ten days prior to proposal for Architect / Engineer to review.

C. Testing: All installed cabling shall be tested 100% good after installation by the Contractor.

D. Ratings: All products shall be new and brought to the job site in the original manufacturer's packaging. Electrical components (including innerduct) shall bear the Underwriter's Laboratories label. All communications cable shall bear flammability testing ratings as follows:

CM Communications Cable
CMP Plenum Rated Communications Cable
CMR Riser-Rated Communications Cable

E. Initial Cable Inspection: The Contractor shall inspect all cable prior to installation to verify that it is identified properly on the reel identification label, that it is of the proper gauge, containing the correct number of pairs, etc. Note any buckling of the jacket that would indicate possible problems. Damaged cable or any other components failing to meet specifications shall not be used in the installation.

F. Cable Lubricants: Lubricants specifically designed for installing communications cable may be used to reduce pulling tension as necessary when pulling cable into conduit.

1. Approved Products
   a. Twisted-pair cable: Dyna-Blue
      American Polywater

G. Fire Wall Sealant: Any penetration through firewalls (including those in sleeves) will be resealed with an Underwriter Laboratories (UL) approved sealant.

1. Approved Products
   a. 3M or
   b. Pre-approved equal

## 2.2 BAND HALL – AUDIO DISTRIBUTION

A. Contractor to provide and install a complete video and audio distribution system in compliance with the equipment specified in the table below and associated drawings. Installation shall turnkey, including programming, testing, and training.

| MFR | PRODUCT NUMBER | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|---|
| STRONG | Strong-SR-FS-SYSTEM-DC21U | Foundation Rack System with DC Fans |
| FURMAN | Furman M-8x2 | 15A standard power conditioner, 9 outlets, 1 ru, 6ft cord |
| ALESIS | Multimix 10 Wireless | 10 channel Mixer with Bluetooth |

| MFR | PRODUCT NUMBER | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|---|
| Tascam | Cd-400U | CD/SD/USB Player with Bluetooth receiver and AM/FM Tuner |
| QSC | QSC-GXD8 | Light weight class-d professional power amplifier with DSP, 2 channels, 800 watts/ch at 8 ohm |
| Gator | Gator-GRW-DRW2 | Rack drawer, 14.2” deep, lockable, 2U |
| Gator | Gator-GRW-DRW4 | Rack drawer, 14.2” deep, lockable, 4U |
| QSC | QSC-E112 | 12” 2- way, externally powered, live sound reinforcement loudspeaker – only available in block |
| QSC | QSC-E12-Yoke | Powder coated steel yoke for mounting the E12 or E112 horizontally or vertically - black |
| Roland | R-RCC-3-TRXM | Black Series 3ft interconnect cable ¼” TRS-XLR(male) |
| Roland | R-RCC-3-TRXF | Black Series 3ft interconnect cable ¼” TRS-XLR(female) |
| Roland | R-RCC-10-3535 | Black series 10ft interconnect cable, 3.5mm TRS –3.5mm TRS, Balanced |
| Shure | Shure KSM1237/SL Stereo | Two KSM137, two foam windscreens, A27M Stereo Microphone Adapter, carrying case. |
| Atlas | Atlas-AD-12BE | Surface mount male mic flange 5/8”-#27 thread ebony finish |
| Atlas | Atlas-AD-19B | Extension Tube 45 degree angle tube; 5/8” #27 thread chrome |
| Hosa | MCL-150 | Microphone cable, Hosa XLR3F to XLR3M, 50ft. |
| Denon | Denon-DN-900R | Network SD/USB Audio Recorder with Dante 2x2 interface |
| Mackie | Thump212 | 12” 1400W powered loudspeaker. Speaker at back of band hall. Transmit from the front mixer to this speaker wirelessly. Requires power. |
| OnStage | SS7322B | Adjustable Wal Mount Speaker Bracket, for mounting on flat surfaces. Angle Adj:30-90 degrees. Fits 1-3/8” cabinet inserts, black finish |
| Alto | Stealth Wireless MK2 | Stereo wireless kit for active speakers |

**2.3 NEW GYM AND DANCE – AUDIO DISTRIBUTION**

A. Contractor to provide and install a complete audio and video distribution system in compliance with the equipment specified in the table below and associated drawings. Installation shall turnkey, including programming, testing, and training. Gym and Dance

shall have the same head end location. Each space shall be independent and have its own DSP, AMP, speakers microphones, audio inputs, etc.

| MFR | PRODUCT NUMBER | DESCRIPTION |
|---|---|---|
| AtlasIED | 324-15 | Wall mount rack |
| AtlasIED | ECS-3 | Power sequencer/conditioner |
| AtlasIED | AP-GNL18 | Goosneck Lamp |
| AtlasIED | SD 3-14 | Storage drawer |
| BSS | Blu-100 | DSP |
| BSS | Blu-10 | Wall controller for Blu-100 |
| Shure | QLXD 124/85 | Wireless mic kit x4 |
| Shure | UA844+SWB | Wires antenna combiner |
| Shure | UA8100 | 100’ remote antenna cables x2 |
| Shure | UA8 | ½ wave antenna |
| Shure | UA834WB | Active antenna amplifier |
| Denon | DN-350UI | Internet radio media plater |
| Denon | DN-300C MKII | CD/Media Player |
| Proco | iRack | Rack mounted ipod input plate |
| | WP1004 | Single gang microphone jack |
| JBL | 328/CT | 2 way co-axial speakers |
| JBL | 312CS | High-Output 12 in. In-Ceiling Subwoofer Loudspeaker |
| ElectroVoice | EKX15P | Powered speaker(gym only) |
| ElectroVoice | TSP 1 | Tripod stands (2) with carry bag (gym only) |
| | P222CS | 22ga/2 conductor shielded wite |
| | P142C | 12ga/2 conductor wire |

## 2.5 AUDIO AND VIDEO COMPONENTS AND EQUIPMENT - ALL VENUES

A. Custom Plates
   1. Liberty Panel Crafters, Proco, or RCI are approved manufacturers.
   2. Provide custom plates as indicated on the drawings.

B. Equipment Rack: Provide and install equipment rack at locations designated on the contract drawings. Equipment rack shall consist of the following:
   1. Enclosure:
      a. Atlas Sound 300 Series wall mount rack with 6 spare keys. (1 per venue). Provide size to accommodate all equipment, plus an additional 25% for future growth.
   2. Additional Accessories:
      a. Middle Atlantic D3 (3) space rack drawer (1 per venue)
      b. Juice Goose JG 8LED Power Distribution Center with LED Lighting (1 per venue)
      c. Juice Goose CQ 1520 Sequenced Power Control System (1 per venue)
      d. Provide any additional hardware or lacing strips to make a complete installation

e. Provide blank panels necessary to enclose rack completely.

C. Miscellaneous Equipment
1. Provide the following equipment for each venue, unless noted otherwise. (excluding the Advanced Culinary Lab, Weight Room, and Wrestling Room)
a. (2) Shure SM58S-LC Microphones, per venue
b. (1) 25’ Microphone cable, per venue
c. (1) 50’ Microphone cable, per venue
d. (2) Atlas MS20E Mic Stand, per venue
e. (1) Atlas TL34-15E Boom Stand, per venue

D. Assistive Listening
1. Provide a remote antenna. Adjust DSP for “hard knee” compression on assisted listening output. Test and use equalization for maximum sound quality.
a. Listen LT-800-072-01 – Assisted Listening RF Transmitter
b. Listen LA-326 Universal Rack Mounting Kit
c. Listen LR-500-072-P1 Advanced Intelligent DSP RF Receiver
d. Listen LA-430 Intelligent Ear Phone/Neck Loop Lanyard
e. Listen LA-380-01 Intelligent 12-Unit Charging/Carrying Case
f. Provide quantities needed to fulfill the quantities stipulated in the Receivers for Assistive Listening Systems Table.
*if part numbers are obsolete update with manufacture recommended replacement

RECEIVERS FOR ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEMS TABLE

| Capacity of Seating in Assembly Area | Minimum Number of Required Receivers | Minimum Number of Required Receivers Required to be Hearing-aid Compatible |
|---|---|---|
| 50 or less | 2 | 2 |
| 51 to 200 | 2, plus 1 per 25 seats over 50 seats | 2 |
| 201 to 500 | 2, plus 1 per 25 seats over 50 seats | 1 per 4 receivers |
| 501 to 1000 | 20, plus 1 per 33 seats over 500 seats | 1 per 4 receivers |
| 1001 to 2000 | 35, plus 1 per 50 seats over 1000 seats | 1 per 4 receivers |
| 2001 and over | 55, plus 1 per 100 seats over 2000 seats | 1 per 4 receivers |

E. Programming shall be coordinated with the Owner and Project’s Consultant. Programming shall include, but not be limited to the following:
1. AV Control Panel Configuration
2. Audio routing from any source location through the DSP
3. Projector and screen control via the Audio / Video Control panel
4. Device resolution and over/under-scanning settings
5. Incorporation of any Owner furnished source equipment (maximum of 2)

## 2.6 DISPLAY AND PROJECTOR MOUNTING HARDWARE

A. Wall Mounted Monitors: Provide the following at each wall mounted flat screen display location on the entire project
   1. Universal Articulating Wall Mount: Peerless Product No. PLAV70-UNLP
   2. Provide Triple Stud Wall Plate for each, stud-wall, wall mounted solution: Peerless Product No. WSP(716 or 724). Coordinate exact model with stud-wall construction. Coordinate desired finish color with architect and owner at each location.

B. Provide the following mounting hardware at each Ceiling Mounted Projector location (if not associated with a projector lift).
   1. One (1) 2'x2' Above Suspended Ceiling Storage Box with Column Drop, Chief Product No. CMS492C
   2. One (1) Adjustable Extension Colum, Chief Product No. CMS####*
      a. Height adjustment in 1" increments
      b. 1.5" NPT, threaded on both ends
      c. '####' to be replaced with a numeric value depicting the minimum and maximum adjustment capabilities. The center setting shall be equivalent to the height at the top of the projection surface but shall not exceed a maximum extension capability of 5'.
      d. '*' to be replaced with a 'W' if required in white.
   3. One (1) Universal projector mount with keyed locking, Chief Product No. RPM#U*
      a. '#' shall be replaced with an alphabetical character that shall depict the product version
      b. '*' to be replaced with an alphabetical character depicting the mount color.
   4. All product finish colors shall be coordinated with the architect. Color should match the color of the mounted device and the finish of the surface it is mounted to.

C. Projector Lift
   1. 350 lb. Maximum Lift Capacity
   2. 15' to 17' extension capacity
   3. Provide the following optional accessories:
      a. Environmental Airspace Housing
      b. Ceiling Closure Panel, white in color
      c. Universal-Style Projector Mounting Bracket
   4. Approved Manufacture:
      a. Draper
   5. Coordinate installation location with screen and required throw distance.
   6. Provide one (1) projector lift at each of the following locations:
      a. Gymnasium

## 2.7 AUDIO VISUAL PATCH CABLES

A. Provide and install the following Patch Cables

1. Provide the following at each AV Input Outlet:
    a. One (1) 10’ HDMI Patch Cable, C2G Product No. 56784
    b. One (1) 10’ 3.5MM Stereo Audio Cable, C2G Product No. 22602
    c. One (1) 10’ USB(A)-to-USB(B) Cable, C2G Product No. 54175

2. Provide the following at each AV Output Outlet:
    a. One (1) 6’ HDMI Patch Cable, C2G Product No. 56783
    b. One (1) 6’ 3.5MM Stereo Audio Cable, C2G Product No. 22601
    c. One (1) 6’ USB(A)-to-USB(B) Cable, C2G Product No. 54174

## 2.8 CABLE ROUTING/PATHWAY

A. Cable Support System: All audio-video cabling shall be installed and supported using an approved J-Hook cable support system at 4’-0” intervals unless installed in conduit. Do not exceed manufacture recommendation for the quantity of cables supported in an individual support.

B. All cable bundles shall be grouped together using plenum rated Velcro for the entire run above and below the ceilings.

# PART 3 – EXECUTION

## 3.1 GENERAL

A. Contractor is required to properly mount integrated A/V solutions and connect all ceiling video / audio cables to projector component inputs.

B. Contractor is required to thoroughly test and verify operation of all A/V inputs and video modes prior to project completion.

C. Contractor is required to focus and adjust projector to properly project image on viewing surface (screen or multimedia board depending on location).

D. Contractor shall provide owner with written verification test process and results once all projectors have been installed, tested, and placed in final condition.

E. Damage: The Contractor shall replace or rework cables showing evidence of improper handling including stretches, kinks, short radius bends, over tightened bindings, loosely twisted and over-twisted pairs at terminals and cable sheath removed too far (over 1-1/2 inches).

F. The Contractor shall replace any damaged ceiling tiles that are broken during cable installation.

G. Clean Up: All clean up activity related to work performed will be the responsibility of the Contractor and must be completed daily before leaving the facility.

## 3.2 DOCUMENTATION

A. Contractor shall provide owner with detailed serial number listing and associated graphical room number designation equipment was installed. Contractor shall use actual graphical package room numbers not architectural plan numbers from construction set.

## 3.3 STATION WIRING INSTALLATION

A. General: All cable must be handled with care during installation so as not to change performance specifications. Factory twists of each individual pair must be maintained up to the connection points at both ends of all category 6 cable. There shall never be more than one and one-quarter inch of unsheathed enhanced Category6 UTP cable at either the wiring USB Transmitter or Receiver.

B. Exposed Cable: All cabling shall be installed inside walls or ceiling spaces whenever possible. Exposed station cable will only be run where indicated on the Drawings. Additional exposed cable runs will require Owner approval and will only be allowed when no other options exist.

C. Placement: All cabling and associated hardware shall be placed so as to make efficient use of available space. All cabling and associated hardware shall be placed so as not to impair the Owner's efficient use of their full capacity.

D. Cable Routes:
   1. All cabling placed in ceiling areas must be in conduit, cable tray or an approved J-Hook cable support. Cable supports shall be permanently anchored to building structure or substrates. Provide attachment hardware and anchors designed for the structure to which attached and that are suitably sized to carry the weight of the cables to be supported. Do not route cable through webbing of structural steel. Cabling must be supported in dedicated supports intended to support cabling as described in this section. Contractor shall adhere to the manufacturer's suggested fill ratio for each size cable support installed.
   2. Attaching cable to pipes or other mechanical items is not permitted. Communications cable shall be rerouted so as to provide a minimum of 18 inches spacing from light fixtures, sources of heat, power feeder conduits and EMI sources. Cabling shall not be attached to ceiling. Grid support wires. Cable runs shall be routed down the corridors; parallel or perpendicular to building structure. Multiple cables to be bundled together at and between each cable support installed.
   3. Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating with other trades on the project so that the installed cable pathway does not interfere with the installation of other systems to insure that mechanical ducts, pipes, conduits, or any other above ceiling systems are not putting unnecessary stress on any portion of the install audio-video cabling.

## 3.4 STATION HARDWARE

A. Flush mounted components: all component shall be inserted to a flush mounted faceplate unless designated otherwise.

B. Placement: Where possible, the AV input outlets shall be located so that its centerline is 18 inches above floor level or 12 inches above permanent bench surfaces. Outlets shall not be mounted on temporary, movable, or removable surfaces, doors, or access hatches. The CMP outlet shall route directly to the rear of the projector and does not require any type of faceplates.

## 3.5 PROGRAMMING

A. Programming shall be coordinated with the Owner and Project's Consultant. Programming shall include, but not be limited to the following:
   1. AV Control Panel Configuration
   2. Audio routing from any source location through the DSP
   3. Projector and screen control via the Audio / Video Control panel
   4. Device resolution and over/under-scanning settings
   5. Incorporation of any Owner furnished source equipment (maximum of 3)

## 3.6 FINAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

A. Notification: The Owner and Engineer shall be notified one week prior to any testing so that the testing may be witnessed.

B. Inspection: Before requesting a final inspection, the Contractor shall perform a series of end-to-end installation performance tests. The Contractor shall submit for approval a proposal describing the test procedures, test result forms and timetable for all copper and fiber optic cabling.

C. Procedures: Trained personnel shall perform all testing. Acceptance of the test procedures discussed below is predicated on the Contractor's use of the recommended products and adherence to the inspection requirements and practices set forth. Acceptance of the completed installation will be evaluated in the context of each of these factors. Testing procedures shall consist of, but not me limited to the following:
   1. Input locations to be tested utilizing multiple types of source equipment. Equipment to include:
      a. Personal Computer (laptop)
      b. Apple iMac
      c. Apple Mac Mini
      d. Google Chromebook
      e. Additional devices may be required at the time of testing
      f. contractor to provide devices on a single cart, to roll between inputs during testing.
   2. Routing of video, from any source, to each projector and display simultaneously and independently.
   3. Routing of audio, from any source, to each audio channel simultaneously and independently.
   4. Control of the entire system from each installed A/V Control Panel
   5. Additional test requirements may be required at the Owner and/or Consultant's request.

## 3.7 OWNER TRAINING AND DEMO

A. A/V integrator shall provide demonstration of all integrated a/v solutions to owner's staff that have any stake with the operation and maintenance of the a/v solutions. Integrator shall produce sign in sheets for record of who was trained and when. Copies of sign in sheets shall be submitted with close out paperwork. Coordinate training dates with owner at project completion.

B. Integrator shall provide factory training for owner's operations and maintenance personnel for each major component of the systems listed in the A/V solutions outlined in part 2 of these specifications. Training shall be a minimum of 4 hrs. per person. Re-training of staff shall be available, at no cost to the owner, to a maximum of 3 on-site training sessions up to 1 year from the date of project competition.

C. All training is to be recorded via video recording and a copy of the recorded video shall be provided to the owner upon completion. All video recording equipment, for the recording of training, shall be provided by the integrator.

**END OF SECTION 27 41 16.20**

# SECTION 28 01 00 - OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUALS OF ELECTRONIC SAFETY & SECURITY SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Compile Electronic Safety and Security (ESS) product data and related information appropriate for Owner's operation and maintenance of products furnished under Contract. Prepare ESS operating and maintenance data as specified in this Section and as referenced in other sections of specifications.

B. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation and maintenance of equipment and systems.

C. Submit three (3) electronic copies, on separate devices (CD, USB Flash Drive, or some type of solid-state storage device), of complete O&M manuals in final form. The submitted manual shall be the system manufacturer’s operations manual, supplemented with operations and maintenance instructions custom tailored for the system installed. Electronic documentation shall be provided in a non-proprietary PDF format, without password restrictions.

D. Hard copies shall be provided upon request of the Owner, Architect, and/or Consultant.

E. Recorded video of all training sessions shall be included in each copy, of each system’s final submitted O&M.

F. The final submitted manual shall include a sing-in sheet and owner/consultant signed acceptance of all training sessions.

### 1.2 ELECTRICAL OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

A. Thirty (30) days after receipt of reviewed submittals bearing the Project Technology Consultant’s stamp of acceptance (including re-submittals), submit for review, an electronic copy of the first draft of the System’s O&M Manual. This copy shall contain as applicable to the specific system, a minimum of the following:
   1. Table of Contents for each element
   2. Contractor information
   3. All shop drawings, coordination drawings and product data, bearing the Project technology Consultant’s stamp of acceptance.
   4. All parts and maintenance manuals for items of equipment
   5. Warranties (without starting dates)
   6. Certifications that have been completed; submit forms and outlines of certifications that have not been completed
   7. Operating and maintenance procedures.
   8. Form of Owner's Training Program Syllabus (including times and dates)
   9. Control operations / equipment wiring diagrams

10. Coordination Drawings
11. Schedule of Low Voltage Wire and Cable
12. Schedule of ESS Equipment
13. Schedule of ESS Field Devices
14. Access Control Door Schedules
15. Video Surveillance Camera Schedules
16. Other required operating and maintenance information that are complete.
17. Cable pathway layout drawings and station map, including through wall and floor penetration locations and sleeve sizes.

B. Copy will be returned to the Contractor within 15 days with comments for corrections.

C. Submit the electronic completed manuals (hard copies upon request) in final form to the Project's Technology Consultant.
   1. Prior to substantial completion for Owner's use after the Owner accepts facility maintenance.
   2. Include all specified data, test reports, drawings, dated warranties, certificates, training videos. along with other materials and information.

D. The Project's Technology Consultant shall review the manuals for completeness within 15 days.

E. The Contractor shall be notified of any missing or omitted materials. The Manuals shall be reworked by the Contractor, as required, in the office of the Project's Technology Consultant. The manuals will not be retransmitted.

F. Electronic and/or hard copies of the accepted manuals shall be delivered to the Owner prior to substantial completion.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 BINDERS**

A. Upon the request for hard copies of the O&M manuals, the binders shall consist of the following configuration:
   1. Commercial quality black, 3-ring binders with clear, durable, cleanable plastic covers.
   2. Minimum ring size: 1"; Maximum ring size: 3".
   3. When multiple binders are used, correlate the data into related groupings.
   4. Label contents on spine and face of binder with full size insert. Label under plastic cover.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 SYSTEM OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL**

A. Form for Manuals Submitted in Hard Copy Format:
   1. Prepare data in form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's personnel.
   2. Format:
      a. Size: 8-1/2" x 11"
      b. Text: Manufacturer's printed data or neatly typewritten.
   3. Drawings:
      a. Provide reinforced punched binder tab and bind in text.
      b. Fold larger drawings to size of text pages.
   4. Provide flyleaf indexed tabs for each separate product or each piece of operating equipment.
   5. Cover: Identify each volume with typed or printed title "Operating and Maintenance Instructions". List:
      a. Title of Project
      b. Identity of separate structures as applicable
      c. Identity of general subject matter covered in the manual.
   6. Binder as specified

B. Content of Manual:
   1. Neatly typewritten Table of Contents for each volume arranged in systematic order as outlined in the specifications.
      a. Contractor, name of responsible principal, address and telephone number
      b. A list of each product required to be included, indexed to content of the volume.
      c. List with each product, name, address and telephone number of:
         1) Subcontractor or installer
         2) Maintenance contractor as appropriate
         3) Identify area of responsibility of each.
         4) Local source of supply for parts and replacement
      d. Identify each product-by-product name and other identifying symbols as set forth in Contract Documents.
   2. Product Data:
      a. Include those sheets pertinent to the specific product.
      b. Annotate each sheet to:
         1) Identify specific product or part installed.
         2) Identify data applicable to installation.
         3) Delete references to inapplicable information.
   3. Drawings:
      a. Supplement product data with drawings as necessary to illustrate:
         1) Relations of component parts of equipment and systems
         2) Control and flow diagrams
      b. Coordinate drawings with information in Project Record Documents to assure correct illustration of completed installation.
      c. Do not use Project Record Documents as maintenance drawings.
   4. Written text as required to supplement product data for the particular installation:

a. Organize in consistent format under separate headings for different procedures.
b. Provide logical sequence of instructions for each procedure.

5. Copy of each warranty, bond and service contract issued
   a. Provide information sheet for Owner's personnel, giving:
      1) Proper procedures in event of failure
      2) Instances that might affect validity of warranties or bonds
6. Shop drawings, coordination drawings and product data as specified.

C. Sections for Equipment and Systems
1. Content for each unit of equipment and system as appropriate:
   a. Description of unit and component parts:
      1) Function, normal operating characteristics, and limiting conditions.
      2) Performance curves, engineering data and tests.
      3) Complete nomenclature and commercial number of replaceable parts.
   b. Operating procedures:
      1) Start up, break-in, routine / normal operating instructions
      2) Regulation, control, stopping, shut down and emergency instructions
      3) Special operating instructions
   c. Maintenance procedures:
      1) Routine operations
      2) Guide to trouble-shooting
      3) Disassembly, repair and reassembly
      4) Alignment, adjusting and checking
      5) Routine service based on operating hours
   d. Manufacturer's printed operating and maintenance instructions.
   e. Original manufacturer's parts list, illustrations, assembly drawings and diagrams required for maintenance.
      1) Items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
   f. Schedule of low voltage wire and cable
   g. Schedule of ESS equipment
   h. Schedule of ESS field devices
   i. Each Contractor's coordination drawings.
      1) As installed color coded wiring and cabling diagrams.
   j. List of original manufacturer's spare parts and recommended quantities to be maintained in storage.
   k. Other data as required under pertinent sections of the specifications.
2. Prepare and include additional data when the need for such data becomes apparent during instruction of Owner's personnel.
3. Additional requirements for operating and maintenance data as outlined in respective sections of specifications
4. Provide complete information for products specified in Division 27.
5. Provide certificates of compliance as specified in each related section.

6. Provide start up reports as specified in each related section.
7. Provide signed receipts for spare parts and material.
8. Provide training report and certificates.

END OF SECTION 28 01 00

# SECTION 28 05 00 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY BASIC MATERIALS, METHODS, & GENERAL PROVISIONS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Except as modified in this Section, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, applicable provisions of Division 01 General Requirements, and other provisions and requirements of the Contract Documents apply to work of Division 28 Electronic Safety and Security.

B. Applicable provisions of this section apply to all sections of Division 28, Electronic Safety and Security.

C. The general provisions of the Contract and the requirements of the following Sections apply to the Work specified in this Section. See following sections for related general and specific requirements following sections shall associate with this specification as applicable.
   1. Division 26 in its entirety.
   2. Division 27 in its entirety.
   3. Division 28 in its entirety.

D. The entire drawing and specification package apply to the work specified in the Electronic Safety and Security specifications and shall be complied with in every respect. The Contract Documents are comprised of the drawings and specifications. The Contractor shall examine these Contract Documents, and coordinate required work indicated in each.

### 1.2 CODES AND STANDARDS

A. All equipment and work performed shall comply with all of the current and applicable Codes, Rules, Ordinances, Regulations and Standards (including those not specifically listed in this Specification) as interpreted and enforced by the authorities having jurisdiction including:
   1. Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)
   2. Authorities Having Jurisdiction (AHJ) - Local
   3. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
   4. American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM) *Communications Cables - B694, B736, D4565, D4566, D4730, D4731, D4732*
   5. Building Industry Consulting Services International (BICSI)
   6. Code of Federal Regulations - Title 47
   7. Electronics Industries Association (EIA) *Standard Test Procedures for Fiber Optic Fibers, Cables, Transducers, Connecting and Terminating Devices - EIA-455 Series*
   8. Federal Communications Commission (FCC) - Communications Act and FCC Rules
   9. Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS) *Federal Building Standard for*

*Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces - FIPS PUB 175, FIPS PUB 176*

10. The Insulated Cable Engineers Association (ICEA) *Communications Cable Stands - P-47-434, S-56-434, S-80-576, S84-608, S-85-625, S-86-634, S-87-640, S-89-648, S-90-661, S-98-688, S-99-689, S-100-685*
11. International Electro-technical Commission (IEC)
12. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE) *Local Area Networks/Metropolitan Networks Standards Collection - LAN/MAN 802 Series*
13. International Organization for Standardization (ISO) (ISO/IEC) *Premise Wiring Core and LAN/MAN Core Equivalents-11801, 8802, 14763-1*
14. International Telecommunication Union (ITU-T) *Telecommunications Standardization*
15. National Electrical Code (NEC) *National Electrical Code - NFPA 70*
16. National Electrical Contractor's Association (NECA) *Standards of Installation*
17. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) *Performance Standard for Twisted Pair Premise Voice and Data Communications Cable-WC 63.1, WC 63.2, WC 66*
18. National Electrical Safety Code (NESC)
19. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) - *National Fire Alarm Code NFPA 72, Life Safety Code NFPA 101*
20. Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers (SCTE)
21. Local Accessibility Standards
22. Telecommunications Industries Association (TIA) *(ANSI/TIA/EIA) Wiring and Cabling Standards - 526, 568, 569, 570, 571, 598, 606, 607, 758, TSB 31-B, 63, 67, 72, 75 and 95*
23. Uniform Building Code (UBC)
24. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (U.L.) - *497A, 910, 1077, 1863, 1283, 1459, 1604, 1651, 1681, 1690, 1778, 1977*

B. Resolve any code violations discovered in contract documents with the Engineer prior to award of the contract. After Contract award, any correction or additions necessary for compliance with applicable codes shall be made at no additional cost to the Owner.

C. This Contractor shall be responsible for being aware of and complying with asbestos NESHAP regulations, as well as all other applicable codes, laws and regulations.

D. Obtain all permits required.

## 1.3 SUMMARY

A. The work covered by the specifications includes furnishing materials, labor, transportation, tools, permits, fees, utilities, and incidentals necessary for the complete installation of work required in the Contract Drawings.

B. It is the intent of the Contract Documents to provide a new and/or an extension of the existing installation, as shown in the associated specifications and drawings, complete in every respect.

C. Provide complete and working ESS Systems including equipment, conduit, wiring,

material, labor and training as described in this Specification and the Drawings. The ESS Systems Drawings and Specifications are the sole property of the Architect and are not to be duplicated, scanned, loaned or in any way made available to persons not designated as authorized by the Architect. All ESS Systems plans and specifications are to be returned to the Architect following completion of bid.

## 1.4 CONTRACTOR'S QUALIFICATIONS

A. An approved contractor for the work under this division shall be:
   1. A specialist in this field and have the personnel, experience, training, and skill, and the organization to provide a practical working system.
   2. Able to furnish evidence of having contracted for and installed not less than ten (10) systems of comparable size and type that have served their Owners satisfactorily for not less than 3 years.
   3. Perform work by persons qualified to produce workmanship of specified quality. Persons performing work shall be required to be licensed. Onsite supervision shall have minimum of the following:
      a. Licenses, as applicable to the system being installed
      b. Manufacturer's Certifications
         1) Firm Certification
         2) Installer Certification
         3) Programmer's Certification
         4) System Designer Certification.

## 1.5 DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS

A. The drawings and these specifications are complementary to each other, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by both.

B. If variations or departures from the drawings are deemed necessary by the Contractor, details of such departures and the reasons therefore shall be submitted to the Consultant for review. No departures shall be made without prior written acceptance of the Consultant.

C. Should the drawings or specifications disagree in themselves or with their counterpart, the better quality or greater quantity of work or materials shall be estimated upon, and unless otherwise directed by the Consultant in writing, shall be performed or furnished. In the case that the specifications should not fully agree with the Schedules, the latter shall govern. Figures indicated on drawings govern scale measurements and large-scale details govern small scale drawings.

D. The approximate locations of system equipment and components are indicated on the Drawings. These Drawings are not intended to give complete and accurate details in regard to location of equipment, field devices, etc. Exact locations are to be determined by actual measurements at the building and will in all cases be subject to the Review of the Owner or Consultant, who reserves the right to make any reasonable changes in the locations indicated without additional cost to the Owner.

E. Items specifically mentioned in the Specifications but not shown on the Drawings and/or items shown on Drawings but not specifically mentioned in the Specifications shall be installed by the Contractor under the appropriate section of work as if they were both specified and shown.

F. Any discrepancies between the Contract Documents and actual job site conditions shall be reported to the Owner or Consultant, so that they will be resolved prior to the bidding, where this cannot be done at least 7 working days prior to bid; the greater or costlier of the discrepancy shall be bid. All labor and materials required to perform the work described shall be included as part of this Contract.

G. It is the intention of this Section of the Specifications, and associated drawings, to outline minimum requirements to furnish the Owner with a turnkey and fully operating system in cooperation with other trades.

H. The contract documents are schematic in nature in that they are only to establish scope and a minimum level of quality. They are not to be used as actual working construction drawings. The actual working construction drawings shall be the shop drawings accepted by project's consultant.

I. The Contractor shall be responsible for coordination and proper relation of his work to the building structure and to the work of all trades. The Contractor shall visit the premises and thoroughly familiarize himself with the existing site conditions, details of the work and the working conditions, and verify dimensions in the field. The Contractor shall advise the project's consultant of any discrepancy prior to bidding. The submission of bids shall be deemed evidence of the Contractor's site visit; coordination of existing conditions and include consideration for existing conditions.

J. These documents are conceptual in nature. It shall be the responsibility of the approved installer to furnish a complete and functional system, including the items shown on the drawings, in the specifications, and items not designated in either. The installer's shop drawings and product data submittals shall represent a complete system and documents accepted by the project's consultant shall not relieve the installer from being required to provide any materials, equipment, or labor to furnish a complete and functional system as recognized by the Project's Technology Consultant and the Owner.

## 1.6 BUILDING CONSTRUCTION AND LAYOUT OF WORK

A. General: It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to consult the Engineering Drawings and Details so as to thoroughly familiarize himself with the type and quality of construction to be provided on this project.

B. The drawings are diagrammatic in nature and do not show every connection in detail or every line or conduit in its exact location. These details are subject to the requirements of all codes, ordinances, and standards; as well as all structural and architectural conditions. The Contractor shall carefully investigate structural and finish conditions and shall coordinate the separate trades in order to avoid interference between the various phases of work. Work shall be laid out so that it will be concealed in closed ceiling space

and/or furred chases unless specifically noted or indicated to be exposed. Work shall be installed to avoid crippling of structural members. All work shall be run parallel or perpendicular to the lines of the building unless otherwise noted.

C. The approximate location of equipment items is indicated on the drawings. Exact locations are to be determined by coordination of dimensions from approved equipment submittals and site-verified field measurements and will in all cases be subject to the approval of the Consultant. The Consultant reserves the right to make any reasonable changes in the indicated locations prior to installation for no additional cost.

D. In areas of existing special ceiling construction, the removal and restoration must be carefully planned such that the existing condition of the ceilings is maintained. It may be necessary for the Contractor to procure a Subcontractor familiar with this work to achieve this requirement.

E. Consider space limitations imposed by contiguous work in selection and location of equipment and material. Do not provide equipment or material that is not suitable in this respect.

**1.7 RELATION WITH OTHER TRADES**

A. Carefully study all matters and conditions concerning the project. Submit notification of conflict in ample time to prevent unwarranted changes in any work. Review other Divisions of these specifications to determine their requirements. Extend electrical services and final connections to all items requiring same.

B. Because of the complicated relationship of this work to the total project, conscientiously study the relation and cooperate as necessary to accomplish the full intent of the documents.

C. Where cabling pass through walls or floors, metal sleeves shall be provided and shall be sealed to prevent spread of fire and smoke. In walls, they shall extend 3” beyond the finished surface. In pipe chases, they shall extend 8” inches above floor slab and be cemented in a watertight manner. Size of these sleeves shall be at least as required to maintain a maximum 40% conduit fill ratio.1/2 inch greater than outside diameter of the conduit.

D. Locate and size openings required for installation of work specified in this Division in sufficient time to prevent delay in the work.

E. Refer to other Divisions of the specifications for the scope of required connections to equipment furnished under other Division. Determine from the General Contractor / Construction Manager for the various trades, the Owner, and by direction from the Architect / Engineer, the exact location of all items. The construction trades involved shall furnish all roughing-in drawings and wiring diagrams required for proper installation of the electrical work.
   1. Make final connections to all ESS equipment indicated on the drawings, except as noted.

F. Request all Shop Drawings required in ample time to permit proper installation of all electrical provisions.

G. Extend services as indicated to the various items of equipment furnished by others. Rough-in for the various items and make final connections ready for operation upon placing of the equipment.

**1.8 CONCEALED AND EXPOSED WORK**

A. When the word "concealed" is defined as hidden from sight as in chases, furred spaces or above ceilings. "Exposed" is defined as open to view, in plain sight.

**1.9 GUARANTEE**

A. Guarantee work for a minimum of two years or as noted longer elsewhere from the date of substantial completion of the project. During that period make good any faults or imperfections that may arise due to defects or omissions in material, equipment or workmanship. At the Owner's option, replacement of failed parts or equipment shall be provided.

**1.10 MATERIAL AND EQUIPMENT**

A. Furnish new and unused materials and equipment meeting the requirements of the paragraph specifying acceptable manufacturers. Where two or more units of the same type or class of equipment are required, provide units of a single manufacturer.

**1.11 NOISE AND VIBRATION**

A. Select equipment to operate with minimum noise and vibration. If noise or vibration is produced or transmitted to or through the building structure by equipment, piping, ducts or other parts of work, and judged objectionable by the Owner, Architect, or Engineer, rectify such conditions at no additional cost to the Owner. If the item of equipment is judged to produce objectionable noise or vibration, demonstrate at no additional cost that equipment performs within designated limits on a vibration chart.

**1.12 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS**

A. Manufacturers names and catalog number specified under sections of Division 28 are used to establish standards of design, performance, quality and serviceability and not to limit competition. Equipment of similar design, equal to that specified, manufactured by a named manufacturer shall be acceptable on approval. A request for prior approval of equipment not listed must be submitted ten (10) days before proposal due date. Submit complete design and performance data to the Architect. The Architect and Owner issue approvals of acceptable manufacturers as addenda to the Construction Proposal Documents.

B. Where acceptable manufacturers are listed, only products of those manufacturers may

be provided. Additionally, the product must meet all the detailed requirements of the specifications.

C. If no manufacturer's name is mentioned, the Contractor shall provide equipment and material which meet the specifications.

## 1.13 UTILITIES, LOCATIONS AND ELEVATIONS

A. Locations and elevations of the various utilities included within the scope of this work:
   1. Obtained from utility maps and other substantially reliable sources.
   2. Are offered separate from the Contract Documents as a general guide only without guarantees to accuracy.

B. Examine the site and verify the location and elevation of all utilities and of their relation to the work. Existing utilities indicated on the site plans are for reference only and shall be field verified by the Contractor with the respective public or private utility.

## 1.14 CONTRACT DRAWINGS

A. Contract drawings are diagrammatic only and do not give fully dimensioned locations of various elements of work. Determine exact locations from field measurements.

B. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to compare the scale of all electrical drawings with the scale of the architectural drawings and make adjustments to all electrical drawings which have the incorrect drawing scale so that his material takeoffs are not in error due to an incorrectly labeled drawing scale and his proposal is complete.

## 1.15 ABBREVIATIONS AND DEFINITIONS

Abbreviations:

| | |
|---|---|
| A/V | Audio/Visual |
| AWG | American Wire Gauge |
| BCR | Building Communications Room |
| CMP | Communications Media Plenum |
| CMR | Communications Media Riser |
| dB | Decibel |
| EMI | Electromagnetic Interference |
| ER | Equipment Room |
| ESS | Electronic Safety and Security |
| FACP | Fire Alarm Control Panel |
| FCR | Floor Communications Room |
| Hz | Hertz |
| IDF | Intermediate Distribution Frame |
| Km | Kilometer |
| LCD | Liquid Crystal Display |
| LED | Light Emitting Diode |
| M | Micron |
| MDF | Main Distribution Frame |

| | |
|---|---|
| MHz | Megahertz |
| NEXT | Near-End Cross Talk |
| nm | Nano-meter |
| OFN | Optical Fiber Non-conductive |
| OFNP | Optical Fiber Non-conductive Plenum |
| OFNR | Optical Fiber Non-conductive Riser |
| OTDR | Optical Time Domain Reflectometer |
| TC | Telecommunications Closet *(Now referred to as TR)* |
| TR | Telecommunications Room *(A.K.A. TC - Telecommunication Closet)* |
| UTP | Unshielded Twisted Pair Wire |

Definitions:

Low Voltage Wire - Wire or cable used for one or more systems that operate on 24 volts or less. Low Voltage Wire is used to install and interconnect one or more of the ESS Systems. Low Voltage Wire includes patch cords, jumpers and all portions of cable or wire used to make the ESS Systems operational or for system communications.

Electronic Safety and Security Systems - One or more of the following and associated equipment: Fire Detection/Alarm Systems, Intrusion Detection/Alarm Systems, Access Control Systems, Video Surveillance Systems,

**1.16 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

A. Equipment Standards:
   1. System and all components shall be brand new stock from manufacturer.
   2. All electronics shall be 100% solid state.
   3. System and all components shall bear a UL Label.

B. Contractor Qualifications:
   At the time of Proposal, the Contractor shall:
   1. Have manufactured, supplied or installed at least three (3) other systems of similar size, complexity, and general operation as the systems described in these specifications. The Contractor shall furnish in writing to Architect proof of compliance with this paragraph at the time of proposal.
   2. Hold all legally required Texas State Contractor's licenses necessary to accomplish the installation and activation of the described system at the facilities indicated. The Contractor shall submit copies of licenses to the Architect prior to the start of work
   3. Hold all legally required state registrations to meet local requirements for submittal drawings.
   4. Have a local office within fifty (50) miles of the project site staffed with factory trained technicians who have experience on systems of similar complexity and function as the systems described in these specifications. These technicians shall be fully capable of system engineering support, installation supervising, system start-up, and providing the Owner with training and service on both hardware and software for the systems specified.

5. Certify complete and total compliance with the provisions of these specifications by letter or submittal of the proposal response forms, signed by an officer of the corporation, or a principal if other ownership currently exists. In addition, the letter or forms shall include a complete listing of exceptions, if any.

## 1.17 SUBMITTALS

A. Provide SUBMITTALS according to Division 1 and the following.

B. Requirements:
1. Submit paragraph-by-paragraph specification review indicating compliance or deviation with explanation.
2. Submit proof that all system components and cables are U.L. Listed.
3. An equipment list with names of manufacturers, model numbers, and technical information on all equipment proposed. Clearly mark exact model number proposed to be installed.
4. Product technical information sheets for each principal components in the proposed system, including cable, wire, terminal marking, and wire marking material.
5. Certification from the manufacturer stating that the system Contractor is an authorized distributor or installer of the proposed system when such certifications exist.
6. A statement listing every technical and operational parameter wherein the submitted equipment varies from that which was originally specified. If the submitter fails to list a particular variance and his submittal is accepted, but is subsequently deemed to be unsatisfactory because of the unlisted variance, the submitter shall replace or modify such equipment at once and without cost to the Owner.

## 1.18 EXAMINATION OF SITE

A. The Contractor shall have visited the site and familiarized himself with all existing conditions prior to submitting his proposal and shall be prepared to carry out the work within the existing limitations. Failure or neglect to do so shall not relieve the Contractor of his responsibilities not entitle him to additional compensation for work overlooked and not included in his proposal.

B. The Contractor shall confirm the availability of the proper power source for each piece of specified equipment, through site visits and Drawings as necessary. Where proper power does not exist, the Contractor shall provide the required power, circuits, outlets, conduits, and wire as specified under Division 26.

## 1.19 DATA ACCURACY

A. Absolute accuracy of information regarding existing conditions cannot be guaranteed. The Drawings and Specifications are for the assistance and guidance of the Contractor and exact locations, distances, elevations, etc., shall be governed by actual field

conditions. Where variations from the contract documents are required, such variations shall be approved by the Architect / Owner.

**1.20 SECURITY**

A. The Contractor is responsible for complying with all of the Owner's and facility security's requirements to prevent theft or damage to equipment, tools and materials. If any deviation from facility security requirements is necessary, approval for such deviation shall be coordinated with the Owner.

B. The Contractor shall not disclose any confidential information of the Owner. The Contractor acknowledges that such action is highly injurious and can do damage to the Owner. The Contractor will agree to and comply with the standard policies and provisions of the Owner regarding outside Contractors and Consultants.

**1.21 UTILITIES**

A. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to provide all temporary connection and cables, lighting, light stands and power. The facilities shall be used in accordance with all applicable regulations regarding operations, safety and fire hazards of the governmental Authorities Having Jurisdiction, provided they are not used in a wasteful manner.

**1.22 PERMITS**

A. All permits required for the specified performance and completion of the work shall be secured by the Contractor. These permits shall be presented and reviewed at the initial project progress meeting.

**1.23 NOTIFICATION**

A. The Contractor shall not shut off any existing systems. The Contractor shall give the Owner at least ten (10) calendar day’s notice of any requirements to shut off or interference with existing alarm, regulating, computer or other service systems. The Owner will arrange and execute any shutdown. All work such as splicing, connections, etc., necessary to establish or re-establish any system shall be completed by the Contractor in close coordination with the Owner.

**1.24 INTERFERENCES WITH THE OWNER**

A. Transportation and storage of materials at the facility, work involving the facility, and all other matters affecting the habitual use by the Owner of its buildings, shall be conducted so as to cause the least possible interference, and at times and in a manner acceptable to the Owner. The Contractor shall make every effort to delivery equipment per the schedule required by the project.

**1.25 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS**

A. Maintain at the job site a separate set of white prints (blue line or black line) of the

contract drawings for the sole purpose of recording the "as-built" changes and diagrams of those portions of work in which actual construction is significantly at variance with the contract drawings. Mark the drawings with a colored pencil. Prepare, as the work progresses and upon completion of work, reproducible drawings clearly indicating locations of various major and minor feeders, equipment, and other pertinent items, as installed. Record underground and underslab cables installed, dimensioning exact location and elevation of such installations.

B. At conclusion of project, obtain without cost to the Owner, electronic AutoCAD 2014+ / Revit CAD files of the original drawings and transfer as-built changes to these. Provide the following as-built documents including all contract drawings regardless of whether corrections were necessary and include in the transmittal: “2 sets of CDs and prints for Owner’s use, one set of CDs, prints, and mylars for Architect / Engineers Records”. Delivery of these as-built electronic, reproducible and prints is a condition of final acceptance.
   1. 3 sets of electronic AutoCAD (2014+ dwg) / Revit CAD drawing files, on CD-ROM media, of each contract as-built drawing.
   2. One reproducible Dayrex mylar film positive of each contract as-built drawing.
   3. Three sets of blue or black-line prints of each contract as-built drawing.

C. As-Built Drawings should indicate the following information as a minimum:
   1. Indicate all addendum changes to documents.
   2. Remove Engineer’s Seal, name, address, and logo from drawings.
   3. Mark documents AS-BUILT DRAWINGS.
   4. Clearly indicate: DOCUMENT PRODUCED BY:
   5. Indicate all changes to construction during construction. Indicate actual routing of all conduit and cables, etc that were deviated from construction drawings.
   6. Indicate exact location of all underground ESS raceways, and elevations.
   7. Correct schedules to reflect (actual) equipment furnished and manufacturer.
   8. During the execution of work, maintain a complete set of Drawings and specifications upon which all locations of equipment, devices, and all deviations and changes from the construction documents in the work shall be recorded.
   9. Exact location of all ESS equipment in building. Label panel schedules to indicate actual location.
   10. Exact location of all ESS equipment in and outside of the building.
   11. Location, size and routing of all ESS cables, conduits, equipment, etc. shall be accurately and neatly shown to dimension.
   12. Exact location of all roof mounted equipment, wall, roof and floor penetrations.
   13. Cloud all changes.

## 1.26 OPERATING TESTS

A. After all ESS systems have been completed and put into operation, subject each system to an operating test under design conditions to ensure proper sequencing and operation throughout the range of operation. Tests shall be made in the presence of the Architect / Engineer and Owner. Provide minimum 24-hour advance notice of scheduling of all tests. Make adjustments as required to ensure proper functioning of all systems. Special tests on individual systems are specified under individual sections. Submit 3 copies of all

certifications and test reports adequately in advance of completion of the work to allow for remedial action as required to correct deficiencies discovered in equipment and systems.

**1.27 WARRANTY**

A. All equipment shall be covered for the full manufacturers warranty period and systems shall be warranted by the Contractor for a period of two years commencing with the filing date of substantial completion. The Warranty shall cover all costs for warranty service, including parts, labor, prompt field service, pick-up, transportation, delivery, reinstallation, and retesting. A contract for service shall cover the period starting with the first expected activation of each system and shall continue without interruption to cover the period to the end of the two-year warranty as defined above. The end of the warranty period shall be handled such that a smooth transition to a maintenance agreement with the Owner shall be achieved with no lapse in coverage.

B. Submit 3 copies of all warranties and guarantees for systems, equipment, devices and materials. These shall be included in the Operating and Maintenance Manuals.

**1.28 BUILDING CONSTRUCTION**

A. It shall be the responsibility of the sub-contractor to consult the Architectural and Engineering drawings, details and specifications and thoroughly familiarize himself as to the construction and all job-related requirements. All construction trades shall cooperate with the General Contractor / Construction Manager job site superintendent and lay out work so that all piping, cables, pathways, raceways, and other items are placed in the walls, furred spaces, chases, etc., so that there shall be no delay in the job.

**1.29 TEMPORARY FACILITIES**

A. General: Refer to Division 01 for general requirements on temporary facilities.

B. Temporary Wiring: Temporary power and lighting for construction purposes shall be provided under Division 26. Installation of temporary power shall be in accordance with NEC Article 305.

C. Temporary facilities, wire, lights and devices are the property of this Contractor and shall be removed at the completion of the Contract.

**1.28 EXTRA MATERIALS**

A. Keys: Provide three (3) sets of all keys for system cabinets.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 WORK INCLUDED**

A. All materials listed in PART 2 - PRODUCTS of this Division Sections and on the Drawings

shall be provided by the Contractor unless specifically excluded or modified in other portions of this Specification or Addendums.

## 2.2 GENERAL MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS

A. Materials, in general, shall conform to the National Electrical Code requirements and shall be listed, inspected, and approved by the Underwriters Laboratories and shall bear the UL label where labeling service is available. The label or listing of the Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. will be accepted as evidence that the materials or equipment conform to the applicable standards of that agency. In lieu of this listing, the Contractor may submit a statement from a nationally recognized, adequately equipped testing agency, indicating that the items have been tested in accordance with required procedures, and that the materials and equipment comply with all Contract requirements.

## 2.3 STANDARD PRODUCTS

A. Materials and equipment shall be the standard catalog products of manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of products conforming to these specifications and shall essentially duplicate materials and equipment that have been in satisfactory use at least two (2) years prior to bid opening. Where custom or special items are required, these shall be fully described using drawings, material lists, etc., which fully describe in detail the item proposed for use on this project.

## 2.4 MANUFACTURE'S INSTRUCTIONS

A. The Contractor is responsible for furnishing the proper Electronic Safety and Security equipment and/or material and for seeing it is installed as intended by the manufacturer. The Contractor shall, wherever necessary, request advice and supervisory assistance from equipment manufacturers as required for the proper installation, operation, or start-up. The Contractor shall notify the Consultant, in writing, of any conflict between the Contract Documents and the manufacturer's recommendations and shall obtain, from the Consultant, instructions/direction before proceeding with the work. The Contractor shall pay for all costs resulting from deficiencies created by installation not in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations or the instructions of the Consultant.

## 2.5 RUST PREVENTION

A. Metallic materials shall be protected against corrosion. Exposed metallic parts of equipment exposed to the elements shall be given a rust inhibiting treatment and standard finish by the manufacturer. Components such as boxes, bodies, fittings, guards, and miscellaneous parts shall be protected in accordance with the ASTM A123 or A153, except where other equivalent protective treatment is specifically approved in writing.

## 2.6 STORAGE AT SITE

A. The Contractor shall not receive material or equipment at the job site until ready for

installation or until there is suitable space provided to properly protect equipment from rust, weather, humidity, dust, or physical damage.

B. All electronic equipment, containing sealed lead acid batteries or gel cells, shall be stored in climate-controlled area until installed or reinstalled. Do not store in non-climate controlled connex storage units.

C. Storage is to be provided and secured by the contractor. In the event that the Owner should agree to furnish storage space, security of the space and its contents shall remain the responsibility of the contractor.

**2.7 CONDITION OF MATERIALS**

A. All materials required for the installation of the Electronic Safety and Security systems shall be new and unused. Any material or equipment damaged in transit from the factory, during delivery to premises, while in storage on premises, while being installed, or while being tested, until time of final acceptance, shall be replaced by this Contractor without extra cost to Owner.

**2.8 NAMEPLATES**

A. Factory assembled components and equipment shall be provided with be factory stamped labeling. Labeling will have information required to specifically identify the component and/or equipment in the future such as the manufacturer's name, catalog number, serial number, etc. All data on the labels shall be legible at the time of final inspection.

**2.9 ACCESS DOORS**

A. Wherever access is required in walls or ceilings to concealed junction boxes, pull boxes, equipment, etc., installed under this Division, furnish a hinged access door and frame with flush latch handle to another Division for installation. Doors shall be as follows:
   1. Plaster Surfaces: Milcor Style K.
   2. Ceramic Tile Surfaces: Milcor Style M.
   3. Drywall Surfaces: Milcor Style DW.
   4. Install panels only in locations approved by the Architect.

**2.10 SPACE LIMITATIONS**

A. Equipment shall be chosen which shall properly fit into the physical space provided and shown on the drawings, allowing ample room for access, servicing, removal and replacement of parts, etc. Adequate space shall be allowed for clearances in accordance with applicable codes and standards. Physical dimensions and arrangement of equipment shall be subject to the approval of the Consultant.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION:**

A. This project has a critical path, which must be closely followed in order to meet the completion date. The Contractor shall review the proposed schedule at the Award of Contract meeting and be prepared to staff his work force according to the schedule constraints presented at that time.

B. Aesthetics are an important consideration in this installation. All components shall be installed so as to have aesthetically pleasing results as determined by the Owner and Architect. Actual locations of all visible components shall be coordinated in advance with the Owner and Architect.

C. Install, make fully operational and test the system as indicated on the Drawings and in the Specifications. Where information is not available the worst-case condition must be assumed to ensure a complete, functional system.

D. Any interfacing with other systems shall be the Contractor's responsibility under this contract, and the details, both logical and physical, of such interfaces shall be reflected in the Submittals and As-Built drawings.

E. If appropriate, interfaces with the Owner's Data Network or Telecommunications System shall be coordinated with the Owner and Architect.

F. All necessary back boards, back-boxes, pull-boxes, connectors, supports, conduit, cable and wire shall be furnished and installed to provide a complete and reliable system. Exact location of all backboards, boxes, conduit and wiring runs shall be presented to the Owner / Architect for approval in advance of any installation. Provide as required and as specified in Division 26.

G. Where required provide 120-VAC, 60 Hz power from nearest electrical panel through a junction box, to the system devices. Provide as required and as specified in Division 26.

H. Where required, install conduit, cable and wire parallel and square with building lines, including raised floor areas. Conduit fills shall not exceed 40%.

I. All equipment shall be mounted with sufficient clearance to minimize EMI as well as meet all applicable codes and facilitate observation and testing. Securely hand and/or fasten with appropriate fittings to ensure positive grounding, free of ground loops, throughout the entire system. Units shall be installed parallel and square to building lines.

J. Quiet and vibration-free operation of all equipment is a requirement of this installation. Properly adjust, repair, balance or replace any equipment producing objectionable (in the judgment of the Owner or Architect) noise or vibration in any of the occupied areas of any building and provide additional brackets and bracing if necessary. Any such additions or changes shall be at no additional cost to the Owner.

K. Installation shall comply with the CODES AND STANDARDS portion of this Section. Where more than one code or regulation if applicable, the more stringent shall apply.

L. Where new equipment is replacing old equipment, the Contractor is responsible for removing and disposing of the old equipment and doing whatever repair work is necessary as specified by the Owner / Architect.

M. Install firestopping, as specified in Division 26 for all penetrations in slabs and firewalls to meet code at the completion of work and prior to final testing demonstration to the Owner.

N. The installation shall be performed in a professional manner.

O. On a daily basis, clean up and deposit in appropriate containers all debris from work performed under the appropriate specification sections. Stack and organize all parts, tools and equipment when not being used.

P. Preparation, handling and installation shall be in accordance with the Manufacturer's written instructions and technical data appropriate to the product specified.

Q. All work shall conform to the National Electrical Contractor's Association "Standard of Installation" for general installation practice.

R. At the conclusion of the installation, all work areas, including all enclosures and boxes, shall be vacuumed and cleaned to remove all debris and grease.

**3.2 COORDINATION WITH OWNER / ARCHITECT**

A. Close coordination with the Owner / Architect is vital to achieve a complete, aesthetically pleasing job. The Contractor shall ensure that the Owner / Architect is kept fully apprized of job progress.

**3.3 CUTTING, PAINTING, AND PATCHING**

A. Structural members shall not be drilled, bored or notched in such a manner that shall impair their structural value. Cutting of holes in structural members, if required, shall be done with core drills and only with the specific approval of the Owner / Architect for each instance.

B. All walls that require cutting or repair during the installation process shall be returned to their original condition, including the matching of colors and finishes to the satisfaction of the Owner / Architect, and at no additional cost to the Owner.

**3.4 WIRE AND CABLE**

A. All low voltage cable shall be low smoke plenum rated, limited energy, with 300-volt insulation.

B. All wires in exposed areas shall run through conduit as specified in Division 26.

C. Provide conduits, cable trays, raceways, wireways, boxes and outlets as specified in Division 26.

D. After installation, and before termination, all wiring shall be checked and tested to insure there are no grounds, opens, or shorts on any conductors. In addition, all wires between buildings or underground and all coax cables shall have insulation tested with a megohmeter (megger) and a reading of greater than 20 megohms shall be required to successfully complete the test.

E. Run wires continuously from termination to termination without splices.

F. Wire and cable shall be supported in each equipment and terminal cabinet and in each terminal and pull box in vertical risers and horizontal runs with wire duct and strap-type supports. At any point where wire duct is required for good wire management, whether shown on elevations or not, install appropriate duct. Where terminal boards are used, wire ducts shall be supplied on both sides and at not rime shall wires cross over terminal boards. Arrange cables neatly to allow inspection, removal and replacement. Lace cables as required. Spot tie wire bundles with plastic cable ties and securely affix to panels. If screw type terminals are specified, terminal strip connections shall be locking, tongue style, pressure crimp, and solderless spade lug.

G. Visually inspect wire and cable for faulty insulation prior to installation. Protect cable ends at all times with acceptable end caps except during actual termination. At no time shall any coaxial cable be subjected to a bend less than a 6-inch radius. Protect wire and cable from kinks. Install 1 pull rope for all 2” or larger sized conduits.

H. Provide plastic bushings and strain relief material at all conduit exit points and where necessary, to avoid abrasion of wire and excess tension on wire and cable.

I. Cables above accessible ceilings shall not rest on ceiling tiles. Use Velcro tie wraps, J-hooks or D-rings to hold cables. Provide independent support for all cables. Support is to be from building structure (do not support from pipes or conduits). ESS cables shall not tie off on HVAC supports, all-thread, ceiling grid hanger wire or electrical / mechanical piping system.

J. Ground and bond equipment and circuits in accordance with NEC and Division 26.

## 3.5 IDENTIFICATION AND TAGGING

A. All cables, wires, wiring forms, terminal blocks and terminals shall be identified by labels, tags to other permanent markings in accordance with TIA/EIA-606. The markings shall clearly indicate the function, source, or destination of all cabling, wiring and terminals. All cables and wires shall be identified, utilizing heat-shrink, machine printed, polyolefin wire markers (Brady Type B-32 *or equal*). Handwritten tags are not acceptable.

B. Should a situation arise where the wire tagging format as shown on the drawings cannot be used, a substitute format shall be submitted which complies with the intent to

provide documentation that will permit end-to-end tracing of all ESS Systems wiring. All panels shall be provided with permanently attached engraved lamacoid labels with identifying names and functions. All terminal points shall be appropriately labeled. Labels shall be consistent in form, color, and typeface throughout the system and all must contain the name of the system or subsystem as part of the label textual information. Design, color, font and layout shall be coordinated with, and approved by, the Owner.

C. Identification of Equipment:
   1. All major equipment shall have a manufacturer's label identifying the manufacturer's address, equipment model and serial numbers, equipment size, and other pertinent data. Take care not to obliterate this nameplate. The legend on all nameplates or tags shall correspond to the identification shown on the Operating Instructions.
   2. A black-white-black 3-layer laminated plastic engraved identifying nameplate shall be permanently secured to each wireway, terminal cabinet, and ESS cabinet or rack.
      a. Identifying nameplates shall have 1/2-inch high, engraved letters.
   3. Permanent, waterproof, black markers shall be used to identify each ESS grid junction box, clearly indicating the type of system available at that junction box.
   4. Pull Boxes: Field work each with a nameplate showing identity, and identifying equipment connected to it. Nameplates shall also indicate where pull box is fed from.

D. Prohibited Markings: Markings intended to identify the manufacturer, vendor, or other source from whom the material has been obtained are prohibited for installation in public, tenant, or common areas within the project. Also prohibited are materials or devices that bear evidence that markings or insignias have been removed. Certification, testing (example, Underwriters Laboratories), and approval labels are exceptions to this requirement.

E. Warning Signs: Provide warning signs where there is hazardous exposure associated with access to or operation of ESS facilities. Provide text of sufficient size to convey adequate information at each location; mount permanently in an appropriate and effective location. Comply with industry standards for color and design.

F. Wire and Cable Labeling: Provide wire markers on each conductor in all boxes, pull boxes, gutters, wireways. Identify with drop/circuit number.

G. Underground Warning Tape: Thomas and Betts or approved equal. Six-inch wide plastic tape, colored red or orange with suitable warning legend describing buried ESS lines. All underground conduits shall be so identified. Tape shall be buried at a depth of 6-inches below grade and directly above conduits or ductbanks. Provide magnetic marking tape below all underground conduits.

## 3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

A. General: Comply with the requirements of Division 01 for the cutting and patching of

other work to accommodate the installation of electrical work. Except as authorized by the Architect / Engineer, cutting and patching of electrical work to accommodate the installation of other work is not permitted.

## 3.7 INSTRUCTION OF OWNER'S PERSONNEL

A. Before proceeding with the instruction of Owner Personnel, prepare a typed outline, listing the subjects that will be covered in this instruction, and submit the outline for review by the Owner. At the conclusion of the instruction period obtain the signature of each person being instructed on each copy of the reviewed outline to signify that he has a proper understanding of the operation and maintenance of the systems and resubmit the signed outlines.

B. Prior to substantial completion, conduct an on-site training program to instruct Owner's operating personnel in the operation and maintenance of the ESS systems.
   1. Provide the training during regular working day.
   2. The Instructors shall be experienced in their phase of operation and maintenance of the electrical systems and with the project.

C. Time to be allocated for instructions.
   1. Minimum of 12 hours dedicated instructor time
   2. 4 hours on each of 3 days
   3. Additional instruction time for specific systems as specified in other Sections.

D. Before on-site training, submit the program syllabus; proposed time and dates; for review and approval, minimum 48 hours prior to proposed training time and date.
   1. One copy to the Owner
   2. One copy to the Architect / Engineer

E. The Owner shall provide a list of personnel to receive instructions and shall coordinate their attendance at the agreed upon times.

F. Use operation and maintenance manuals as the basis of instruction. Review manual with personnel in detail. Explain all aspects of operation and maintenance.

G. Demonstrate start-up, operation, control, adjustment, troubleshooting, servicing, maintenance, and shut down of each item of equipment.

H. Demonstrate equipment functions (both individually and as part of the total integrated system).

I. Prepare and insert additional data in the operating and maintenance manuals when the need for additional data becomes apparent during instructions.

J. Submit a report within one week after completion of training. List time and date of each demonstration, hours devoted to the demonstration, and a list of people present, with their respective signatures.

K. At the conclusion of the on-site training program, have the person designated by the Owner sign a certificate to certify that he/she has a proper understanding of the system, that the demonstrations and instructions have been satisfactorily completed, and the scope and content of the operating and maintenance manuals used for the training program are satisfactory.

L. Provide a copy of the report and the certificate in an appropriately tabbed section of each Operating and Maintenance Manual.

## 3.8 OPENINGS

A. Framed, cast or masonry openings for boxes, equipment or conduits are specified under other divisions. Drawings and layout work for exact size and location of all openings are included under this division.

## 3.9 OBSTRUCTIONS

A. The drawings indicate certain information pertaining to surface and subsurface obstructions, which has been taken from available drawings. Such information is not guaranteed, however, as to accuracy of location or complete information.
   1. Before any cutting or trenching operations are begun, verify with Owner's representative, utility companies, municipalities, and other interested parties that all available information has been provided.
   2. Should obstruction be encountered, whether shown or not, alter routing of new work, reroute existing lines, remove obstruction where permitted, or otherwise perform whatever work is necessary to satisfy the purpose of the new work and leave existing services and structures in a satisfactory and serviceable condition.

B. Assume total responsibility for and repair any damage to existing utilities or construction, whether or not such existing facilities are shown.

## 3.10 VANDAL RESISTANT DEVICES

A. Where vandal resistant screws or bolts are employed on the project, deliver to the Owner 2 suitable tools for use with each type of fastener used.

B. Proof of delivery of these items to the Owner shall be included in the Operating and Maintenance Manuals.

## 3.11 PROTECTION

A. Protect work, equipment, fixtures, and materials. At work completion, work must be clean and in original manufacturer's condition.

B. Do not deliver equipment to this project site until progress of construction has reached the stage where equipment is actually needed or until building is closed in enough to protect the equipment from weather. Equipment allowed to stand in the weather shall be rejected, and the contractor is obligated to furnish new equipment of a like kind at

no additional cost to the Owner.

**3.12 EQUIPMENT BACKBOARDS**

A. Backboards: ¾ inch, fire retardant, exterior grade plywood, painted gray, both sides.
   1. Provide minimum of two 4-ft. by 8-ft. sheets of plywood for each location shown.
   2. Provide minimum of two 4-ft. by 4-ft. sheets of plywood for each ESS location.

**3.13 SITE MANAGEMENT RESPONSIBILITY**

A. The Contractor shall provide an on-site Project Manager as defined in CONTRACTOR'S QUALIFICATIONS portion of this Section.

**3.14 DEMOLITION AND RELOCATION**

A. The Contractor shall modify, remove, and relocate all materials and items so indicated on the drawings or required by the installation of new facilities. All removals and/or dismantling shall be conducted in a manner as to produce maximum salvage. Salvage materials shall remain as directed by the Owner. Materials and items scheduled for relocation and which are damaged during dismantling or reassembly operations shall be repaired and restored to the approval of the Owner. The Contractor may substitute new materials and items of like design and quality in lieu of materials and items to be relocated, if approved by the Owner.

B. All items scheduled for relocation and/or reuse shall be inspected by the Contractor and the Owner or his authorized representative. A written report of the condition of each item shall be made and provided to the Consultant. Where items scheduled for relocation and/or reuse are considered unsuitable for reuse, the Contractor shall so notify the Consultant and await reinstallation instructions before proceeding with removal. Items damaged in reinstallation shall be repaired or replaced by the Contractor as directed by the Owner at no additional cost to the Owner or the Consultant.

C. All items which are to be relocated shall be carefully removed in reverse to original assembly or placement and protected until relocated. The Contractor shall clean, repair, and provide all new materials, fittings, and appurtenances required to complete the relocation and to restore the items to good operative order. All relocations shall be performed by workmen skilled in the work ad in accordance with standard practice of the trades involved.

D. Service lines and wiring to items to be removed, salvaged, or relocated shall be removed to points as indicated on the drawings, specified, or acceptable to the Owner. Service lines and wiring not scheduled for reuse shall be removed to the points at which reuse is to be continued or service is to remain. Such services shall be sealed, capped, or otherwise tied off or connections into the existing facilities in such a manner as to result in minimum interruption of services to adjacent occupied areas. Services to existing areas or facilities which must remain in operation during the construction period shall not be interrupted without prior specific written approval of the Consultant.

## 3.15 EXISTING SYSTEM TESTING

A. Contractor shall have each low voltage system tested prior to the commencement of construction. Systems shall include all systems that fall under the Division 28 umbrellas, as identified in the Division 2 of the Construction Specifications Institute (CSI) current Master Format7 Test shall include the functionality of all field devices and equipment. Any failures or items found to be functioning not to specification, shall be reported prior to construction. Any items found to be improperly or non-functioning upon the completion of the project, shall be replaced and/or repaired, by the contractor, at no additional cost to the project or the owner.

B. Contractor shall document the location and any ID tag, MAC address, IP address, or bar code of any existing device that is to be removed from its current location. Devices that are to remain, shall be reinstalled in the exact location that they reside in prior to construction, unless noted otherwise.

C. Any individual/firm that will be removing, relocating, reinstalling, or tampering with any devices; shall be licensed by the state and certified by the manufacturer of the system.

D. Contractor shall remove any devices where construction occurs to prevent possible damage to the device. Removal of any devices which support user connection or other systems, shall be coordinated with the owner prior to removal and/or taking offline.

## 3.16 START-UP RESPONSIBILITY

A. The Contractor shall initiate System operation. The Contractor shall provide competent Start-Up personnel on each consecutive working day until all ESS Systems are functional and ready to start the acceptance test phase. If the Contractor, in the Owner / Architect's judgment, is not demonstrating progress in solving any technical problems, the Contractor shall supply Manufacturer's factory technical representation and diagnostic equipment at no cost to the Owner, until resolution of those defined problems. Where appropriate, the Contractor shall bring the Systems on-line in their basic state (i.e., alarm reporting, facility code access control, etc.) It is the responsibility of the Owner to provide the specific database information that will be utilized for initial system programming.

B. Properly ground each piece of electronic equipment prior to applying power. Properly ground all shielded wire shields to the appropriate earth ground at the hub end only, not at the remote or device end.

C. Use a start-up sequence that incrementally brings each portion of the system on-line in a logical order that incorporates checking individual elements before proceeding to subsequent elements until the entire system is operational. The basic steps should include:
   1. Establish ground planes at the equipment rooms and hub end of the systems as specified in Division 26.
   2. Disconnect power, connect the first device, reconnect power, and verify

operational correctness. Repeat until the entire system is verified and operational.

## 3.17 PREPARATION FOR ACCEPTANCE (SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION)

A. All systems, equipment, and devices shall be in full and proper adjustment and operation, and properly labeled and identified.

B. All materials shall be neat, clean and unmarred, and parts securely attached.

C. All extra material as specified shall be delivered and stored at the premises as directed.

D. Test reports of each system and each system's components and As-Built Project Drawings shall be complete and available for inspection and delivery as directed by the Owner.

## 3.18 SYSTEM ACCEPTANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Before final acceptance or work, the Contractor shall perform and/or deliver each of the following in the order stated.

B. The Contractor shall deliver three (3) composite "System Operations and Maintenance" manuals in three-ring binders, sized to hold the material below, plus 50% excess. Each manual shall contain in appropriately tabbed sections:
   1. A statement of Guarantee including date of termination and the name and phone number of the persons to be called in the event of equipment failure.
   2. A set of Operating procedures for the overall System that includes all required Owner activities, and that allows for the Owner operation of all attributes and facilities of the System.
   3. A section for each specific type of equipment containing the vendor manuals, instruction sheets, and any related literature that cam in the original shipping container for that piece of equipment. Include all warranty cards.

C. Testing:
   1. The Contractor shall perform all tests required by Division 28 and those submitted as part of this Section.
   2. The Contractor shall activate all devices for proper system operation, including supervisory and trouble circuit tests. Similarly, audible alarms will not be activated except on a one-time, coordinated basis, to check the actual sounding devices.
   3. A test report for each piece of equipment shall be prepared by the Contractor and submitted to the Owner. This report shall include a complete listing of every device, the date it was tested, by whom and the results. The final test reports shall indicate that every device tested successfully. Failure to completely test and document the tests will result in a delay of final testing and acceptance.

D. As-Built Drawings:
   1. After completion of all the tests listed above, and prior to the final acceptance

test, The Contractor shall submit the complete As-Built drawings as identified in PART 1 – PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS.

2. The final As-Built Drawings shall consist on one set of reproducible prints, two (2) sets of Point-to-Point Detail Drawings, Equipment Schedules, and the complete detailed technical data that was shipped by the manufacturer with all installed equipment.

E. Final Acceptance Test: The Final Acceptance Test shall demonstrate the installed and activated System's performance and compliance with System Specifications. However, before this testing can begin the following must have received and reviewed by the Owner.
   1. System Operations and Maintenance Manuals
   2. System Test Reports
   3. As-Built Drawings

**3.19 NOTICE OF COMPLETION**

A. When the Final System Acceptance Requirements described above including the Final Acceptance Test described above have been satisfactorily completed. The Owner / Architect shall issue a Letter of Completion to the Contractor indicating the date of such completion. The Notice of Completion shall be recorded by the Contractor upon receipt of the Owner / Architect completion letter. This date of record shall be the start of the warranty period.

**END OF SECTION 28 05 00**

# SECTION 28 05 07 - SHOP DRAWINGS, COORDINATION DRAWINGS & PRODUCT DATA

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Prepare submittals as required by Division 1 and as outlined below.

B. Submit product data shop drawings only for the following and for items specifically requested elsewhere in the Contract Drawings and Specifications. Architect / Engineer reserves the right to refuse shop drawings not requested for review and to imply that materials shall be provided as specified without exception.

C. The term submittal, as used herein, refers to all:
1. Shop Drawings
2. Coordination Drawings
3. Product data

D. Submittals shall be prepared and produced for:
1. Distribution as specified
2. Inclusion in the Operating and Maintenance Manual, as specified, in the related section

### 1.2 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Present drawings in a clear and thorough manner. Identify details by reference to sheet and detail, schedule, or room numbers shown on Contract Drawings.

B. Show all dimensions of each item of equipment on a single composite Shop Drawing. Do not submit a series of drawings of components.

C. Identify field dimensions; show relation to adjacent or critical features or work or products.

### 1.3 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

A. Present in a clear and thorough manner. Title each drawing with project name. Identify each element of drawings by reference to sheet number and detail, or room number of contract documents. Minimum drawing scale: 1/4"=1'-0".

B. Prepare coordination drawings to coordinate installations for efficient use of available space, for proper sequence of installation and to resolve conflicts. Coordinate with work specified in other sections and other divisions of the specifications.

C. For each room containing ESS equipment and each rack with ESS equipment, submit

plan and elevation drawings. Show:

1. Actual ESS equipment and components to be furnished.
2. NEC working space and NEC access to NEC working space.
3. Relationship to other equipment and components and openings, doors and obstructions
4. Rack location and dimensions

D. Identify field dimensions. Show relation to adjacent or critical features of work or products.

E. Verify location of ESS station devices and other work specified in this Division.

1. Coordinate with drawing details, site conditions and millwork shop drawings prior to installation.
2. Where required for clarification, submit shop drawings prior to rough-in and fabrication.

F. Submit shop drawings in plan, elevation and sections, showing outlets and other devices in casework, cabinetwork and built-in furniture.

## 1.4 PRODUCT DATA

A. All product options specified shall be indicated on the product data submittal. All options listed on the standard product printed data not clearly identified as not part of the product data submitted shall become part of the Contract and shall be provided.

B. Mark each copy of standard printed data to identify pertinent products, referenced to specification section and article number.

C. Show reference standards, performance characteristics and capacities; wiring and piping diagrams and controls; component parts; finishes; dimensions and required clearances.

D. Modify manufacturer's standard schematic drawings and diagrams to supplement standard information and to provide information specifically applicable to the work. Delete information not applicable.

E. Mark up a copy of the specifications for the product to indicate a) acknowledgement of the specification requirement (Comply), or b) acknowledgement that the particular specification requirement does not apply to this specific project (Not Applicable) or, c) acknowledgement that the specification requirement cannot be made or that a variance is being submitted for review to the Architect / Engineer/Owner (Does Not Comply, Explanation:)

## 1.5 MANUFACTURERS INSTRUCTIONS

A. Submit Manufacturer's instructions for storage, preparation, assembly, installation, start-up and adjusting.

## 1.6 CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Review submittals prior to transmittal.

B. Determine and verify:
   1. Field measurements
   2. Field construction criteria
   3. Manufacturer's catalog numbers
   4. Conformance with requirements of Contract Documents

C. Coordinate submittals with requirements of the work and of the Contract Documents.

D. Notify the Architect / Engineer in writing at time of submission of any deviations in the submittals from requirements of the Contract Documents.

E. Do not fabricate products, or begin work for which submittals are specified, until such submittals have been produced and bear contractor's stamp. Do not fabricate products or begin work scheduled to have submittals reviewed until return of reviewed submittals with Architect / Engineer's acceptance.

F. Contractor's responsibility for errors and omissions in submittals is not relieved whether Architect / Engineer reviews submittals or not.

G. Contractor's responsibility for deviations in submittals from requirements of Contract Documents is not relieved whether Architect / Engineer reviews submittals or not, unless Architect / Engineer gives written acceptance of the specific deviations on reviewed documents.

H. Submittals shall show sufficient data to indicate complete compliance with Contract Documents:
   1. Proper sizes and capacities
   2. That the item will fit in the available space in a manner that will allow proper service
   3. Construction methods, materials and finishes

I. Schedule submissions at least 15 days before date reviewed submittals will be needed.

## 1.7 SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS

A. Make submittals promptly in accordance with approved schedule, and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Project or in the work of any other Contractor.

B. Number of submittals required:
   1. Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings: Submit four opaque reproductions.
   2. Product Data: Submit the number of copies the contractor requires, plus those

to be retained by the Architect / Engineer.

C. Accompany submittals with transmittal letter, in duplicate, containing:
   1. Date
   2. Project title and number
   3. Contractor's name, address and telephone number
   4. The number of each Shop Drawing, Project Datum and Sample submitted
   5. Other pertinent data

D. Submittals shall include:
   1. The date of submission
   2. The project title and number
   3. Contract Identification
   4. The names of:
      a. Contractor
      b. Subcontractor
      c. Supplier
      d. Manufacturer
   5. Identification of the product
   6. Field dimensions, clearly identified as such
   7. Relation to adjacent or critical features of the work or materials
   8. Applicable standards, such as ASTM or federal specifications numbers
   9. Identification of deviations from contract documents
   10. Suitable blank space for General Contractor and Architect / Engineer stamps
   11. Contractor's signed and dated Stamp of Approval

E. Coordinate submittals into logical groupings to facilitate interrelation of the several items.
   1. Finishes which involve Architect / Engineer selection of colors, textures or patterns
   2. Associated items requiring correlation for efficient function or for installation

## 1.8 SUBMITTAL SPECIFICATION INFORMATION

A. Every submittal document shall bear the following information as used in the project manual:
   1. The related specification section number
   2. The exact specification section title

B. Submittals delivered to the Architect / Engineer without the specified information will not be processed. The Contractor shall bear the risk of all delays, as if no submittal had been delivered.

## 1.9 RESUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS

A. Make resubmittals under procedures specified for initial submittals.

1. Indicate that the document or sample is a resubmittal
2. Identify changes made since previous submittals

B. Indicate any changes which have been made other than those requested by the Architect / Engineer.

## 1.10 CONTRACTOR'S STAMP OF APPROVAL

A. Contractor shall stamp and sign each document certifying to the review of products, field measurements and field construction criteria, and coordination of the information within the submittal with requirements of the work and of Contract Documents.

B. Contractor's stamp of approval on any submittal shall constitute a representation to Owner and Architect / Engineer that Contractor has either determined and verified all quantities, dimensions, field construction criteria, materials, catalog numbers, and similar data or assumes full responsibility for doing so, and that Contractor has reviewed or coordinated each submittal with the requirements of the work and the Contract Documents.

C. Do not deliver any submittals to the Architect / Engineer that do not bear the Contractor's stamp of approval and signature.

D. Submittals delivered to the Architect / Engineer without Contractor's stamp of approval and signature will not be processed. The Contractor shall bear the risk of all delays, as if no submittal had been delivered.

## 1.11 ARCHITECT / ENGINEER REVIEW OF IDENTIFIED SUBMITTALS

A. The Architect / Engineer will:
1. Review identified submittals with reasonable promptness and in accordance with schedule. Specific equipment submittals that may be required to be expedited shall be submitted separately without other submittal items not requiring the same prompt attention.
2. Affix stamp and initials or signature, and indicate requirements for resubmittal or approval of submittal
3. Return submittals to Contractor for distribution or for resubmission

B. Review of submittals will not extend to design data reflected in submittals that is peculiarly within the special expertise of the Contractor or any party dealing directly with the Contractor.

C. Architect / Engineer's review is only for conformance with the design concept of the project and for compliance with the information given in the contract.
1. The review shall not extend to means, methods, sequences, techniques or procedures of construction or to safety precautions or programs incident thereto.

2. The review shall not extend to review of quantities, dimensions, weights or gauges, fabrication processes or coordination with the work of other trades.

D. The review and approval of a separate item as such will not indicate approval of the assembly in which the item functions.

**1.12 SUBSTITUTIONS**

A. Do not make requests for substitution employing the procedures of this Section.

B. The procedure for making a formal request for substitution is specified in Division 01.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED.**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 SHOP DRAWINGS AND PRODUCT DATA**

A. Submittals shall not be combined or bound together with any other material submittal.

B. Submit individually bound shop drawings and product data for the following when specified or provided:
1. Low Voltage Wire
2. Electronic Access Control and Intrusion Detection
3. Electronic Surveillance
4. Fire Detection and Alarm

**3.2 COORDINATION DRAWINGS**

A. Submit coordination drawings as specified.

**END OF SECTION 28 05 07**

# SECTION 28 05 10 - CONTRACT QUALITY CONTROL

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Contract quality control including workmanship, manufacturer's instructions, mock-ups and demonstrations.

### 1.2 QUALITY CONTROL PROGRAM

A. Maintain quality control over supervision, subcontractors, suppliers, manufacturers, products, services, site conditions and workmanship to produce work in accordance with contract documents.

### 1.3 WORKMANSHIP

A. Comply with industry standards except when more restrictive tolerances or specified requirements indicate more rigid standards or more precise workmanship.

B. Perform work by persons qualified to produce workmanship of specified quality.

C. Secure products in place with positive anchorage devices designed and sized to withstand stresses, vibration, and racking. Under no conditions shall material or equipment be suspended from structural bridging.

D. Provide finishes to match approved samples; all exposed finishes shall be approved by the Architect / Engineer. Submit color samples as required.

### 1.4 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

A. Comply with instructions in full detail, including each step in sequence.

B. Should instruction conflict with Contract Documents, request clarification from Architect / Engineer before proceeding.

### 1.5 MANUFACTURER'S CERTIFICATES

A. When required in individual Specification Sections, submit manufacturer's certificate in duplicate, certifying that products meet or exceed specified requirements.

### 1.6 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

A. When required in individual Specification Sections, manufacturer shall provide a manufacturer’s qualified personnel to observe:
   1. Field conditions.
   2. Condition of installation.

3. Quality of workmanship.
4. Start-up of equipment.
5. Testing and adjusting of equipment.

B. Manufacturer's qualified personnel shall make written report of observations and recommendations to Architect / Engineer.

**1.7 MOCK UPS**

A. Assemble and erect the specified equipment and products complete, with specified anchorage and support devices, seals and finishes.

B. Do not proceed with any work involving a mock-up, until the related mock up has been approved in writing.

C. Acceptable mock-ups in place shall be retained in the completed work where possible.

D. Perform tests and submit results as specified.

**1.8 SCHEDULING OF MOCK-UPS**

A. Schedule demonstration and observation of mock-ups, in phases, with Architect / Engineer.
1. Rough-in
2. Finish with all appurtenances in place
3. Demonstrations

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 REFERENCE APPLICABLE SPECIFICATION SECTIONS**

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 ADJUSTMENTS AND MODIFICATIONS**

A. Contractor shall provide all adjustments and modifications as requested by the manufacturer's qualified personnel at no additional cost to Owner.

**3.2 MOCK-UPS**

A. Mock up a typical classroom, science lab of each type, and computer lab with all wiring devices, cover plates, rough-in boxes, conduits, etc. provide all conductors from all wiring devices to above ceiling space to demonstrate conduit routing and conductor fill.

**END OF SECTION 28 05 10**

# SECTION 28 05 50 - FIRESTOPS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Provide firestop as required, and as specified. Refer to Architectural drawings for all fire and smoke rated partitions, walls, floors, etc.

B. Types: Firestop required for the project includes smokestop.

### 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. UL Label: Firestops shall be UL labeled.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. Nelson.

B. 3M (Minnesota Mining Manufacturing).

C. Hilti

D. Specified Technologies, Inc.

### 2.2 MATERIAL AND COMPONENTS

A. General: Except as otherwise indicated, provide firestop manufacturer's standard materials and components as indicated by published product information, designed and constructed as recommended by the manufacturer, and as required for installation.

### 2.3 FIRESTOP

A. Conduits: Provide a soft, permanently flexible sealant for 1-1/2 to 2 hour rated fireproofing for steel conduits (up to 4" diameter).

B. Low Voltage Cables, Fiber Optic Cable and Innerduct: Provide Specified Technologies, Inc. EZ-Path single, double, or triple pathways as required.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF FIRESTOPS

A. General: Install firestops in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and industry practices to ensure that the firestops comply with requirements. Comply with UL and NFPA standards for the installation of firestops.

**END OF SECTION 28 05 50**

# SECTION 28 10 00 – ACESS CONTROL SYSTEM (ACS)

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED WORK

A. The following, in their entirety and as applicable, shall apply to this section. Including any associated drawings.
   1. Conditions of the Contract
   2. Division 1
   3. Division 26
   4. Division 27
   5. Division 28

### 1.2 WORK INCLUDED

A. Reference Attachment 'A' of this specification for supplemental scope and product material list as it relates to the project and the Owner standards.

B. The Contractor shall furnish and install a complete microprocessor-based access control system as specified herein. The system shall include, but not be limited to, all control equipment, power supplies, power circuits, signal initiating and signaling devices, conduit, wire, fittings, and all other accessories required to provide a complete and operable system.

C. Security system devices indicated are for reference and coordination purposes only. The installing contractor shall design and provide a complete system, meeting the requirement of specification. The Contractor shall provide all security system devices required for complete system perimeter coverage acceptable to all governing authorities, Architect and Owner.

D. The system shall include security for all access into building, including but not limited to the following:
   1. Door Hardware (as specified herein and/or in Division 08, door hardware)
   2. Control Panels
   3. Power Supplies.
   4. Interconnection of panels.
   5. Installation of new devices.
   6. Card reader.
   7. Magnetic locking hardware
   8. Request to exit devices
   9. Door position sensors
   10. Lockdown and Lockout Buttons
   11. Audio Intercom Systems
   12. Licensing
   13. All additional material, hardware, and labor required for a fully functional, turnkey system

E. The contractor shall connect each controller to the ACS Management System.

F. Access Control Programming:
   1. Access Control contractor to provide basic system programming to ensure proper system functionality and correct installation.
   2. Custom programming to be performed by District vender Pref-Tech ONLY. Programming cost for access control to be included in the general contractor's contract. Installing contractor shall coordinate with district vendor.

G. Licensing: The contractor shall NOT utilize any of the owner's existing licensing for this scope of work. All licensing shall be provided by the contractor, no exceptions. Including, but not limited to the following:
   1. Portal Licensing
   2. Controller Licensing
   3. Wireless Licensing
   4. Video Management Software Integration Licensing

H. Contractor to refer to specification 08 71 00 Door Hardware. Provide and install all hardware specified to be provided by the "Access Control Contractor", "Security Installer", "Division 28", or any variation thereof.

I. The documents issued for this project are conceptual in nature, including but not limited to specifications and drawings. It shall be the responsibility of the approved installer to furnish a complete and functional system, including the items shown on the drawings, in the specifications, and items not designated in either. The installer's shop drawings and product data submittals shall represent a complete system, and documents accepted do not relieve the installer from being required to provide any materials, equipment, or labor to furnish a complete and functional system as recognized by the Project's Technology Consultant and the Owner.

**1.3 REFERENCES**

A. Code of Federal Regulations (CFR).

B. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE):
   1. 802.3 Ethernet Standards.
   2. IEEE 1100 Recommended Practice for Powering and Grounding Electronic Equipment.

C. International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC).

D. International Organization for Standardization (ISO):
   1. ISO / IEC 10918 - Information technology -- Digital compression and coding of continuous-tone still images: Requirements and guidelines; JPEG.
   2. ISO / IEC 14496-10 - Information Technology - Coding Of Audio-Visual Objects - Part 10: Advanced Video Coding; MPEG-4 Part 10 ( ITU H.264).
   3. ISO / IEC 23008-2 - High Efficiency Coding and Media Delivery In Heterogeneous Environments - Part 2: High Efficiency Video Coding; MPEG-H Part2 (ITU H.265, HEVC).

E. Federal Communications Commission (FCC):
   1. FCC Part 15 – Radio Frequency Device

F. Underwriters Laboratories (UL):
   1. UL294 – Access Control Systems Units

G. Electronic Industries Alliance (EIA)
   1. RS485 - Electrical Characteristics of Generators and Receivers for use in Balanced Digital Multi-Point Systems

H. Federal Information Processing Standards (FIPS)
   1. Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) (FIPS197)
   2. FIPS201-2: Open Options DNA Fusion FIPS in conjunction with an E2-SSP-D2-FIPS, NSC-100-FIPS, RSC-2-FIPS and other listed components will provide an access control solution that is fully FIPS 201-2 compliant.
   3. Personal Identity Verification (PIV) of Federal Employees and Contractors

I. Homeland Security Presidential Directive 12 (HSPD12)

J. National Fire Protection Association Standards:
   1. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code
   2. NFPA 72 - National Fire Alarm Code
   3. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code

K. RoHS compliant

L. SIA AC-01-1996.10 - Access Control – Wiegand

M. Local & State Building Codes

N. Requirements of Local Authorities having Jurisdiction

O. Requirements of American Disabilities Act (Public law 101-336).

P. Texas Accessibility Standards (T.A.S.)

Q. Texas Insurance Code.

**1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

A. Contractor Qualifications:
   1. The installing contractor shall be the authorized representative of the Access Control Manufacturer to sell, install, and service the proposed manufacturer's equipment. The installing contractor shall have represented the security alarm manufacturer's product for at least two years.
   2. The installing contractor shall be licensed as required, by the State in which the project is located in, as a security services contractor to design, sell, install, and service security alarm systems.

3. The installing contractor shall provide 24-hour, 365 days per year emergency service with factory trained service technicians.
4. The installing firm shall have personnel on their staff that has been actively engaged in the business of designing, selling, installing, and servicing security alarm systems for at least ten (10) years.
5. All Contractors must submit to the owner prior to starting any work the factory training certificates for all personnel that will be working on the access control system. No person is allowed to work on the system without proper manufacturer's certification.
6. The proposing contractor for this system and the installing contractor of this system shall be of the same organization. Absolutely no subcontracting of any portion of this system by the proposing contractor will be allowed.
7. The proposing/installing contractor of this system must be an authorized dealer / integrator for the project's specified Video Surveillance and the Intrusion Detection systems as well as the system specified in this section.
8. For proper, smooth, and complete integration of the IP security camera, access control, and intrusion detection systems; the proposing/installing contractor of the video surveillance and intrusion detection systems must be the same contractors.
9. Contractor must be a current integrator of solution in the closest major metropolitan area marketplace, have a permanent office located within 75-miles of the project, and be able to include information on current support staff to be able to service this client.

**1.5 SUBMITTALS AND CLOSE-OUT**

A. Product Data:
1. Within fourteen (14) days of Notice to Proceed, the system installer shall furnish the following in a single consolidated submittal:
    a. Permits: The Contractor shall obtain all required permits and provide copies to the Owner / Architect / Engineer.
    b. Product Literature: Complete manufacturer's product literature for all system equipment, power supplies, cable, termination components, cable supports, cable labels, field devices, and other products to be used in the installation. In addition, whenever substitutions for recommended products are made, samples (when requested by the Owner/Designer) and the manufacturer's supporting documentation, demonstrating compatibility with other related products shall be included. The submittal shall have some type of distinguishing marker or pointer to indicated what specific product is to be submitted.
    c. Construction Schedule: A time-scaled Construction Schedule indicating general project deadlines and specific dates relating to the installation of the cable distribution system.
    d. Specification Compliance: A letter shall be provided stating, by section and subsection, that the system installer complies with the ENTIRE specification section. If the installer intends to

deviate from any portion of the specifications, a detailed explanation of reason in which the installer would like to deviate shall be provided in addition to the specification compliance letter. No deviations shall be acceptable until they have been accepted by the project's technology consultant.

e. Certifications: The contractor shall submit all of the following certifications and the certifications must contain dates which are valid from the date of proposal and not expirer any sooner than 12 months after substantial completion of the project.
   1) Manufacturer's Authorized Dealer/Installer Certification: This certification must be held by the proposing/installing contractor and state that the proposing/installing contractor is and authorized dealer/installer of the system specified within the project specifications. The certification must have been obtained by the office that is within a 75-mile radius of the project's location.
   2) Installer Certification: This certification must be held by at least 25% of the, on-site, staff and be made available at the site if requested by the owner, architect, and/or project's technology consultant.
   3) Licenses: This includes all licenses required by the state in which the work is being performed, the federal government, local authorities having jurisdiction, and any organization in that governs the specific system

B. Shop Drawings:
   1. Submit the following items, for Owner review and approval, within twenty-eight (28) days of notice to proceed:
      a. Proposed circuit routing and circuit grouping plan prepared by a system registered designer. The designer's certification must be current. Identifiable, separate routing shall be shown for both the station cabling and any backbone trunk cabling.
      b. In addition to the cable routing, the submitted drawings shall indicate the following, even if the following is expected to be provided by the project's electrical or general contractor:
         1) Location of all control equipment and remote power sources
         2) Locations of all field devices and outlets
         3) Location of wall penetrations (all penetrations shall be sleeved and contain protective bushings at both ends)
         4) Location of sleeved wall and/or floor pass-thru
         5) Size of sleeve at each location installed
         6) Quantity of cable passing through each sleeve
         7) Conduit routing, size, quantity, and stub-up locations for any floor mounted outlets or outlets installed in casework.
      c. Drawing Compliance: A letter shall be provided stating that the system installer complies with the entire project drawing, including all general,

keyed, and notes to contractor. If the installer intends to deviate from any portion of the specifications, a detailed explanation of reason in which the installer would like to deviate shall be provided in addition to the specification compliance letter. No deviations shall be acceptable until they have been approved by the project's technology consultant.

C. Close-out Procedures:

1. For review and acceptance, furnish an electronic copy of the following documents to the Architect / Engineer. Upon acceptance of the submitted close-out documents, provide four (4) copies on an electronic storage media (CD or USD Flash Drive) Labeled with the project name, date of submission, and the name of the submitting firm. Final copies shall be delivered directly to the project's Technology Consultant. The closeout submittals shall include the following and be packaged in a storable container with the physical storage media and any physical items listed:
    a. Inspection and Test Reports: During the course of the Project, the Contractor shall maintain an adequate inspection system to ensure that the materials supplied, and the work performed, conform to contract requirements. The Contractor shall provide written documentation that indicates that materials acceptance testing was conducted as specified. The Contractor shall also provide documentation, which indicates that all cable termination testing was completed and that all irregularities were corrected prior to job completion.
    b. Provide complete test reports for all cabling and devices that comprise system as outlined in this document.
    c. Include the Name, address and telephone of the authorized factory representative with a 24-hour emergency service number.
    d. The manual shall also include Manufacturer's data sheets and installation manuals/instructions for all equipment installed and a list of recommended spare parts.
    e. Generic or typical owner's instruction and operation manual shall not be acceptable to fulfill this requirement.
    f. An up-to-date record ("as-built") set of approved shop drawing prints that have been revised to show each and every change made to the system from the original approved shop drawings.
    g. As-built Drawings shall include cable pathways; device locations with correct labeling, control equipment locations, remote power supply locations, cross connect locations, and lightning protection locations. The as-built drawings shall be prepared using AutoCAD 2014 or later.
    h. All drawings must reflect point to point wiring, device address and programmed characteristics as verified in the presence of the engineer and/or the end user unless device addressing is electronically generated, and automatically graphically self-documented by the system.
    i. A copy of the manufacturer's warranty on the installed system.
    j. Any keys to cabinets and/or equipment and special maintenance tools required to repair, maintain, or service the system.

k. Operating and Maintenance Instructions for all devices within the system. These instructions shall reflect any changes made during the course of construction, and shall be provided to the Owner, for their use, in a three-ring binder labeled with the project name and description. (4 copies)

l. Upon completion of the work and at a time designated by the Architect or owner, provide formal training sessions for the Owner's operating personnel to include location, operation, and maintenance of all included systems and equipment. Provide a video copy of the training session as well as all sign in and training sign off sheets

m. One (1) 30" x 42" laminated floor plan sheets illustrating device locations, system wiring configuration, and cable designation. Contractor shall provide one complete floor plan sheet at each panel location.

**1.6 DEFINITIONS**

A. Abbreviations:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | ACS | Access Control System |
| 2. | VMS | Video Management System |
| 3. | NVR | Network Video Recorder |
| 4. | IDS | Intrusion Detection System |
| 5. | GUI | Graphical User Interface |
| 6. | IP | Internet Protocol |
| 7. | CR | Card Reader |
| 8. | DS | Door Station |
| 9. | MS | Master Station |
| 10. | PIR | Passive Infrared Sensor |
| 11. | LD | Lockdown |
| 13. | LO | Lockout |
| 14. | MDF | Main Distribution Frame |
| 15. | IDF | Intermediate Distribution Frame |

B. Definitions:

1. Access Card: A coded employee card, usually the size of a credit card, recognizable to the access control system and read by a reader to allow access. It can be used for photo identification of the cardholder and for other data collection purposes. Card technologies include magnetic strips, wiegand-effect, proximity (active/passive), barium ferrite, smart/intelligent cards, and NFC enabled applications on mobile devices.
2. Access Control System: An interconnected set of controllers, managing the entrance and exit of people through secured areas.
3. Access Level: The door or combination of doors and/or barriers an individual is authorized to pass through and the times they are permitted.
4. Anti-Pass back (Anti-Tailgating): This feature protects against more than one person using the same card or number. It defines each system card reader and card ID number as IN, OUT or other. Once a card is granted access to an IN

reader, it must be presented to an OUT reader before another IN reader access is granted. Cards will continue to have access to all authorized OTHER readers.

6. Alarm: A signal that indicates a problem.
7. Alarm input: A device that is monitored by the access control panel. An alarm signal will be generated if the device is activated.
8. Badge: Badge is a template or a design for creating a card. DNA Fusion includes a full-featured badge layout utility for designing, creating, and printing badges. Badge design includes magnetic stripe encoding, bar coding, signatures, and so on.
9. Bar Code: A method of encoding information using lines and blank spaces of varying size and thickness to represent alphanumeric characters.
10. Biometrics: A general term for the verification of individuals using unique biological characteristics (i.e. fingerprints, hand geometry, voice analysis, the retinal pattern in the eye).
11. Card and Card Holder: A card is an identity proof of a person and a card holder is a person who holds the card. Multiple cards can be assigned to a single card holder to provide different access.
12. Controller: A microprocessor-based circuit board that manages access to a secured area. The controller receives information that it uses to determine through which doors and at what times cardholders are granted access to secure areas. Based on that information, the controller can lock/unlock doors, sound alarms, and communicate status to a host computer.
13. Card Reader: A device that retrieves information stored on an access card and transmits that information to a controller.
14. Digital Video Recorder: A security system device that records the video from the surveillance cameras (IP and Analog) on a hard disk.
15. Door: A generic term for a securable entry way. In many access control applications, a "door" may be a gate, turnstile, elevator door, or similar device.
17. Duress: Forcing a person to provide access to a secure area against that person's wishes.
18. Input: An electronic sensor on a controller that detects a change of state in a device outside the controller.
19. Integrated lockset: An integrated, intelligent locking solution that typically runs on batteries, but can be externally powered, that contains most of the door components, i.e. reader, door contact, and request to exit in a single, mountable unit.
20. Keypad: An alphanumeric grid which allows a user to enter an identification code. A flat device which has buttons that may be pressed in a sequence to send data to a controller, and which differs from a typewriter-like computer keyboard.
21. Output Relay: A device that changes its state upon receiving a signal from a controller. Typically, the state change prompts an action outside of the controller such as activating or deactivating a device. The auxiliary relays found in access control panels or NODES that control external devices.
22. Shunt Time: The length of time a door open alarm is suppressed (shunted) after a valid card access or free egress request. This time should be just enough to allow a card user to open a door or gate, pass through, and then close it.

23. Time Schedules: Schedules that allow cards to function or not function depending on the time of day. This is used to limit access to the facility. The schedule may include not only time but which days of the week a card is valid.
24. Video Management System: An enterprise-class video management and storage solution

**1.7 PRE-INSTALLATION MEETINGS**

A. Convene minimum two weeks prior to starting work of this section.

**1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

A. Deliver and store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging bearing the brand name and manufacturer's identification until ready for installation.

B. Handling: Handle materials to avoid damage.

**1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS**

A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's recommended limits.

**1.10 SEQUENCING**

A. Ensure that products of this section are supplied to affected trades in time to prevent interruption of construction progress.

**1.11 WARRANTY**

A. The ACS furnished by the System Integrator including wiring, software, hardware and third-party products shall be fully warranted for parts, materials and labor for a minimum of 1 year from date of the final acceptance.

B. Manufacturer shall provide a limited 3-year warranty for the product to be free of defects in material and workmanship.

**PART 2 – PRODUCTS**

**2.1 Reference Attachment 'A' of this specification for supplemental scope and product material list as it relates to the project and the Owner standards**

**2.2 MANUFACTURERS**

A. Approved Manufacturers:
1. Genetec, Inc.

B. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Division 1. In the absence of direction by Division 1, substitution request must be submitted no less than ten (1) business days from the time of proposal.

**2.3 SERVERS AND USER INTERFACE**

A. Servers and Unser Interfaces are existing to remain. The system installer shall coordinate the installation of all new equipment and/or existing equipment that is affected by the project's scope. All equipment shall be modified and/or added in compliance with the existing systems parameters. The system installed shall provide and additional equipment to furnish a complete expansion of the system as shown on the project drawings, access control schedule, details, and legends.

**2.4 ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM (ACS)**

A. General: The ACS is a modular and networked based system providing physical access control security to a Wide Area campus enterprise. The system shall be capable of controlling and integrating multiple security functions including the configuration, management and monitoring of cardholder access, locking hardware units, events, alarms, visitors, and real-time tracking and reporting. The ACS is to be alterable at any time depending on the facility requirements and will allow for easy upgradeability or modification of network processors, controller, interface modules, card data, inputs, outputs, and remote workstations. The ACS shall include, but is not be limited to, the following:

1. Client/Server model operating central server host software modules and client workstation software applications in a multi-user and a multi-tasking environment.
    a. The ACS to permit multiple instances of client software applications to run simultaneously on the network. The base system shall include one (1) software application licenses per site with an unlimited number of licenses available subject to connection fees.
2. Partitioning: The system to support security partitioning enabling system administrator to segment the configuration database and group multiple entities within the security partition.
    a. Security partitions limit what users can view in the configuration database. Administrators, who have all rights and privileges, can segment a database into multiple security partitions. A user who is given access to a specific partition will only be able to view entities (components) within the partition they have been assigned.
3. Encryption: The system to support encrypted communication between the central server software and client software applications (sever-to-server and client-to-server) using a 128-bit AES encryption algorithm (at a minimum).
    a. Communication between the central server host software module and system controllers to be encrypted if supported by the controllers.
    b. The ACS client software applications to be password protected with passwords stored in the central server database in an encrypted

manner.

4. Distributed Processing: The system is a fully distributed processing application allowing information, including time, date, zones, valid codes, tasks, access levels, and similar data, to be downloaded from the central host station to controller interface devices allowing access-control decisions with or without central host station communication. If communications to a central host station are lost, the controllers will automatically buffer event transactions until communications are restored and events are automatically uploaded to the central host station.
    a. Provide for a higher level of distributed database management at defined perimeter access points such that no single point of failure will allow more than two access points to fail, or affect more than two access points at perimeter points system wide.
5. Single Data Base: The system to support a single database for access control site setup, credential and identity file creation, alarm and control setup, and system user operation and command functions.
6. System Access Management: The system to allow operators through password authentication the ability to make access granted or denied decisions, define access levels, time zones, holidays, assign cardholders, access groups, develop tasks, and generally manage access control, alarm monitoring and response activities system wide from a single login. Operator and user privileges are managed by a system administrator allowing for different levels of system access and system control. Authorization management is fully Owner definable.
7. Cardholder Management: The system to include a cardholder management system integrated within the access control system. This cardholder management functionality allows the enrollment of cardholders into the database, and import / export of employee data.
8. Access Groups and Access Levels: The system to provide adequate access groups and access level assignment capability to meet Owner requirements for the specified project. If required, software application can be expandable to support unlimited access groups and access levels.
9. Alarm Monitoring: The system is able to monitor, report, and provide information about the time and location of alarms, along with their priority.
10. Event Monitoring: The system is able to monitor, report, and archive network access control activity.
11. Transaction Logs: The system to support an unlimited number of logs and historical transactions (events and alarms) with the maximum allowed being limited by the amount of hard disk space available.
12. System Monitoring: The system to have ability to report on the integrity of all network assigned devices, circuits and communications and provide a diagnostics screen showing field level communications system wide
13. Lock/Unlock Commands: The system to allow an operator to manually lock and unlock doors overriding scheduled access control restrictions and configurations if necessary.
14. Hardware Interface: The system to integrate with and control specified electrified hardware, signaling and monitoring devices.
15. Report Generator: The system to have the ability to generate and output

reports with any and all combinations of system fields and data including, but not limited to: by cardholder, by door, by site, by time, by groups of doors and by cardholder field. Any and all combinations of fields must be available for reporting. The report feature to allow exporting of generated reports over a network connection or by remote printing.

16. Multi-User/Web Based Network Capabilities: The system to support multiple operator workstations via local area network/wide area network (LAN/WAN), the Internet, or VPN. The system to be capable of supporting minimum of concurrent users/clients with software expansions to an unlimited number of workstations based on the Owners network requirements.

B. Open Architecture: The access control system infrastructure will be based on an open architecture design capable of supporting multiple access control hardware manufacturers and integrate with multiple non-proprietary network processors, controllers, interface modules, integrated locking hardware, remote card readers, keypads and display terminals, and other third party applications.

C. Open Protocol: The ACS manufacturer to provide non-proprietary, open protocol hardware for the system control processors and associated device sub-controllers. Systems utilizing a single manufacturer solution that encompasses combined proprietary software and integrated electronic hardware combinations are not acceptable. In addition, integrated electronic locking hardware requiring a processor or sub-controller module upgrade, or extensive access control firmware upgrades to accommodate integrating with an alternate software package, will not be considered.

D. Network Support: Communication network connecting the central server host software modules, client workstation software applications, and hardware controllers to be designed to support all of the following:
   1. LAN/Ethernet enterprise ring topology and localized star topology based on TCP/IP.
   2. Direct-connected RS-232 and RS-485 communication cabling.
   3. Dial-up modem connection using a standard dial-up telephone line

E. Provide local communication port at each panel for local configuration of system with laptop.

F. Locate all main control panels in MDF and IDF rooms of each building.

G. Provide 120v at all controller and power supply locations.

H. Provide and transfer all required licensing to the owner.

I. Provide local communication port at each panel for local configuration of system with laptop.

**2.5 ACCESS CONTROL PANEL HARDWARE**

A. Enclosure:
   1. Typical 4-Door System Enclosure:
      a. Power supply board 75W, 6A/12V or 3A/24V | Secondary voltage power supply, 5-18V adjustable @ 4A max, class 2 power limited output | Eight output smart distribution module, fused at 3A per output | Four port network monitoring module | Enclosure, Size with backplate to accommodate the specified hardware.
   2. Typical 8-Door System Enclosure:
      a. Power supply board 150W, 12A/12V or 6A/24V | Secondary voltage power supply, 5-18V adjustable @ 4A max, class 2 power limited output | 16 auxiliary DC outputs class 2 power limited at 2.5A per output | Eight output smart distribution module, fused at 3A per output | Four port network monitoring module | Enclosure, (23W x 32H x 6.5D) with backplate to support the mounting of the specified hardware.
   4. Power supplies shall be connected to the Owner's network, allowing for remote management, including but not limited to the following:
      a. Allow the user to connect any network connected power within a local network or via the internet from any remote location.
      b. Allow for all connected power supplies to be monitored for status and firmware revision on a single screen.
      c. Allow batch firmware updates to maintain the latest feature sets and cybersecurity standards.

B. System Control Processor
   1. Intelligent two portal two reader combination system controller with 10/100Base-T Ethernet connectivity and dual reader interface module, minimum of 6MB RAM, 1 RS-232/485 host port, with a secondary RS-232/485 host port for redundancy, 1 two wire RS-485 channel for communication to a maximum of 31 I/O modules, support for up to two magstripe or Wiegand readers. Includes a minimum of two (2) door contacts, two (2) request to exit inputs, two (2) door strike relays, four (4) programmable inputs and two (2) output relays

C. Door Controllers
   1. Two Portal Two Reader interface module - support for up to two magstripe or Wiegand readers. Includes: two door contacts, two requests to exit inputs, two door strike relays, four programmable inputs and four output relays

D. Input Monitor Modules
   1. 16 normally open or closed, supervised or non-supervised inputs for monitoring vital alarm points or for providing elevator floor selection control. Includes: 2 programmable output relays and (32) 1K ohm resisters for supervisory wiring

E. Output Control Modules
   1. 16 programmable output relays with the option of being configured as fail-safe or fail-secure. These relays support "On", "Off" or "Pulse" modes for a variety of applications such as elevator control or any device requiring dry contacts.

F. System Back-Up Battery
1. Contractor to backup batteries as required to furnish ninety (90) minutes of run time to the complete system, including but not limited to lock power and system power.

G. RS-485 Communications Multiplexer:
1. Provide a multiplexer at each control board that is utilizing a RS-485 communication channel to panel interface modules and/or RS-485 type door hardware. There shall be no more than eight (8) RS-485 connections made on a single multiplexer.

**2.6 FIELD DEVICES**

A. General
1. Coordinate with door hardware and access control schedule as to whether each access control portal is wireless or directly connected to a control panel. Provide all Controllers, Sub-Controllers, and licensing as required to connect all card reader locations shown on plan.

B. Card Readers
1. Provide card readers as shown on the floor plans, access control schedule, and access control details.

C. Credentials
1. Coordinate Facility Code, External Start Number, and Internal Start number with the Owner prior to procuring credentials.

D. Miscellaneous Devices
1. Provide the following devices as designated per the project floor plans, access control schedules, and access control details:
   a. DP/DT Door Position Sensors (Door Contacts)
   b. PIR Motion Request to Exit Sensor
   c. Lockdown Buttons
   d. Door Release Buttons
   e. Video Intercom Door Stations
   f. Video Intercom Master Stations

**2.7 WIRING**

A. Ethernet cabling shall be provided by the Structured Cabling System Installer. In the event that there is not SCS installer on the project, cabling shall be provided and installed by the Access Control System Integrator and shall comply with the Division 27 Structured Cabling specification.

B. Conventional access control cable shall be a jacketed composite cable. The minimum conductor requirement shall be as follows:

1. Standard
    a. Lock Power: 4-conductor, 18AWG, shielded
    b. Card Reader: 6-conductor, 22AWG, OA shielded
    c. Door Contact: 2-conductor, 22AWG, shielded
    d. Request to Exit/Spare: 4-conductor, 22AWG, shielded
2. Extended Distance
    a. Lock Power: 4-conductor, 16AWG, shielded
    b. Card Reader: 6-conductor, 18AWG, OA shielded
    c. Door Contact: 2-conductor, 18AWG, shielded
    d. Request to Exit/Spare: 4-conductor, 18AWG, shielded

C. Wire scheme and conductor quantity shall be as required by the manufacture's specifications. Contractor to provide and install shielded cable as required.

D. All 120v Power shall be furnished by the Division 26 contractor. In the event that a division 26 contractor is not contracted for the project, the system installing contractor shall contract a licensed electrical firm to provide and install all materials required to furnish a complete and operational system.

E. All Security Conduit as required for a complete installation of this system shall be furnished by the division 26 contractor as part of their scope of work. In the event that a division 26 contractor is not contracted for the project, the system installing contractor shall provide and install all conduit required.

F. Coordination with the Division 26 contractor is the responsibility of the Security Contractor to ensure all conduit is in place for a complete installation.

G. All systems shall be connected to a dedicated circuit and on an emergency power source if available.

**PART 3 – EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. All wiring shall be in accordance with the National Electrical Code, Local Codes, and article 760 of NFPA Standard 70. All wiring sizes shall conform to recommendations of the equipment manufacturer, and as indicated on the engineered shop drawings.

B. All wire shall be UL Listed CL2 for limited energy (300V) applications and shall be installed in conduit. Limited energy MPP wire may be run open in return air ceiling plenums provided such wire is UL Listed for such applications and is of the low smoke producing fluorocarbon type and complies with NEC Article 760 if so, approved by the local authority having jurisdiction.

C. No AC wiring or any other wiring shall be run in the same conduit as security alarm wiring.

D. All wire shall be installed in an approved conduit/raceway system (except where

permitted by NEC and the local authority having jurisdiction). Maximum conduit "fill" shall not exceed 40% per NEC.

E. Minimum conduit size shall be 3/4" EMT. Install conduit per engineered shop drawings.

F. Systems utilizing open wiring techniques with low smoke plenum cable shall provide conduit in all inaccessible locations, inside concealed walls, all mechanical/electrical rooms, or other areas where wiring might be exposed or subject to damage.

G. All vertical wiring and all main trunk/riser wiring shall be installed in a complete raceway/conduit system. All riser boxes shall be adequately sized for the number of conductors transversing the respective box as well as the number of terminations required.

H. Network Connection Cable: Provide a 4 pair Category 6 data cable from the Master Control Panel to the MDF network rack. Category 6 cable shall be purple in color.

I. All plenum wiring is to be installed parallel and perpendicular to the building structure. Install wiring tight up against structure for protection. Cable shall be bundled on a maximum of 2'-6" and secured to the structure at a maximum of 5' on center. Bundling and support shall be with plenum rated cable ties.

J. Contractor is required to provide all mapping and software configuration required to operate system as per manufacturer’s recommendations.

**3.2 CABLE PATHWAYS**

A. Cable Support:
   1. All wire not installed inside conduit or a designated cable tray system shall be installed in a dedicated cable support system for the entire run of each cable. Including, but not limited to service loops.
      a. Approved Cable Support Product:
         1) Panduit
         2) Arlington
         3) Caddy
         4) Support system shall be sized appropriately for the number of wires being installed. Reference the manufacturer’s specifications for the suggested maximum cables per support size.
   2. The approved cable support system shall be attached directly to the building steel at a serviceable height. In the event that the building steel is not 5’ of the finished ceiling, the contractor shall provide a dedicated threaded rod extending within 5’ of the finished ceiling and mount the J-MOD™ support hook to the treaded rod.
   3. J-MOD™ cable support shall be installed at a maximum of 5’ on center.
   4. All cable installed shall be attached to the J-MOD™ support system with plenum rated Velcro and a plenum rated Velcro tie shall be installed between each J-MOD™ cable support to keep wires neatly bundled throughout the

entire run. Tie wraps will only be allowed to be used inside the control panels as required to manage the wires within each type of panel.

5. Absolutely no cable, not installed in conduit, will be allowed to be attached directly to the building's steel or supported in any other method than that stated above.
6. It is the responsibility of the installing contractor to coordinate with all other trades on the project to ensure that the pathway of this system does not interfere with the installation of the other trades and to prevent the installed product of other trades from putting strain on the installed wiring.

B. Conduit / Raceway:

1. All wire shall be installed in an approved conduit/raceway system (except where permitted by NEC and the local authority having jurisdiction). Maximum conduit "fill" shall not exceed 40% per NEC.
2. Conduit and raceway system shall be installed as specified under the general electrical section of the specifications, and per NEC.
3. Minimum conduit size shall be 3/4" EMT. Install conduit per engineered shop drawings.
4. Systems utilizing open wiring techniques with low smoke plenum cable shall provide conduit in all inaccessible locations, inside concealed walls, all mechanical/electrical rooms, or other areas where wiring might be exposed or subject to damage.
5. All conduit ends shall have a protective bushing to prevent cable damage. Bushings must be installed prior to installing cable. Cutting bushing to install around installed cables will not be accepted.

**3.3 SYSTEM ZONING AND PARTITIONING**

A. The system shall employ intelligent initiating devices and interface devices capable of being recognized and enunciated at the main system keypad and devices partition keypad.

**3.4 TESTING**

A. Submit a written test report from an authorized representative of the equipment manufacturer that the system has been 100% tested and approved. Final test shall be witnessed by Owner and the project's Technology Consultant and performed by the equipment supplier. Final test report must be received and acknowledged by the Owner prior to substantial completion.

B. Provide instruction as to proper use and operation of system, for the Owner's designated personnel.

**3.5 WARRANTY**

A. Entire system shall be warranted against defects in materials and workmanship for a period of one (1) year from the date of substantial completion.

**Attachment 'A'**
**Project Specific Scope of Work and**
**Equipment List**

## PART 1 – PROJECT SCOPE

### 1.1 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. This project consists of the provision and installation of a complete and functional Access Control System (ACS) as required to furnish controlled access and access detection to all controlled portals identified on the project drawings and associated Access Control Schedule. This project is a renovation and addition of the following campuses, for Humble Independent School District:
   1. Creekwood Middle School - 3603 W Lake Houston Pkwy, Kingwood, TX 77339
   2. Riverwood Middle School - 2910 High Valley Dr, Humble, TX 77345

B. It should not be assumed that any portions of a complete and functional system are to be furnished and/or provided by anyone, other than the ACS installer, unless specifically stated otherwise.

C. Access Control Programming
1. Access Control contractor to provide basic system programming to ensure proper system functionality and correct installation.

2. Custom programming to be performed by District vender Pref-Tech ONLY. Programming cost for access control to be included in the general contractor's contract. Installing contractor shall coordinate with district vendor.

## PART 2 – EQUIPMENT LIST

**2.1 The ACS installer shall perform no portion of the work requiring submittal and review of record drawings, shop drawings, product data, or samples until the respective documentation has been approved by project's Security Consultant.**

### 2.2 MATERIAL LIST

| MFR | DESCRIPTION | PRODUCT NUMBER | NOTES |
|---|---|---|---|
| Hammond | Service Can – Junction Box | CHK010104 | Wires to be connected by 12 lug terminal strip only. No wire nuts or connectors. Can located above door. |
| Eaton | 12 Lug Terminal Stri[ | TB-100-12 | |
| Mckinney | 15' wire harness | QC-C1500P | Run from service can to door frame |
| Life Safety Power | 16-door system enclosure | FPO150/250-3D8P2M8NL4E8M2/T16-A | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Enersys | 12V 7 AMP Battery Backup | NP7-12 | Backup panels |
| Gentec | IP Intelligent Controller | Synergis Cloud Link | |
| Mercury | Intelligent Controller (2 Rdrs, 8 Inputs, 4 Outputs | LP1502 | |
| Mercury | Dual Card Reader Interface | MR52-S3 | |
| STI | Blue Indoor Only Flush or Surface w/ Horn Key-to-Reset (Illuminated) Stopper Station with "LOCKDOWN" Label English | SS24A2LD-EN | Lockdown must kill power to doors with and without network communication. |
| Axis | Network Video Intercom Door Station, exterior/interior, mullion mounted | A8105-E | |
| Axis | Dual Audio input main unit. | F44 | One per security vestibule. |
| Axis | Recessed dome for discreet surveillance. | F4005-E | 4 cameras per F44. |
| Schneider Electric | Remote Door Release Contact Block | ZBE101 | Provide one for each door with remote door release capabilities. |
| Schneider Electric | Remote Door Release Push Button | ZB5AA3 | Provide one for each door with remote door release capabilities. |
| Schneider Electric | Remote Door Release Polycarbonate Enclosure | XALD0#CUST01 | #' to be replaced with a numeric value depicting the enclosure size required to accommodate the quantity of remote door release button installed. |
| Bosch | Rex motion device | DS150i | Should be installed on all double leaf exits to detect exit on non card reader door. |
| Edwards Signaling | Surface Mount Aluminum Housing armored cable contact, DPDT, Wide Gap, 1 ½" Gap Size, Double Pole Double Throw | 2507AD-L | Equivalent surface mount, double pole double throw will be acceptable. |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| HID | Access Cards | iClass Prox Card | 13.56 MHz Combination Contactless Smart Card and Proximity card. |
| Sargent | Card Readers | SELP10 | If discontinued provide manufacturer recommended replacement. |
| Norcon | 2-way Talk-Thru Electronic Communication System | TTU® -1X Series | Provide and install one (1) at each Reception talk-thru window |
| Belden | Access Control Composite Cable, Purple in Color, Standard Distance | 658AFJ | or equivalent as manufactured by Tappan |
| Belden | Access Control Composite Cable, Purple in Color, Extended Distance | 638AFJ | or equivalent as manufactured by Tappan |
| Belden | 2C/18AWG BC; CMP; Unshielded; LSPVC, purple | 6300UE 0071000 | or equivalent as manufactured by Tappan |
| Belden | 4C/18AWG BC; UnShielded; Plenum-CMP; LSPVC; purple | 6302UE 0071000 | or equivalent as manufactured by Tappan |
| Belden | 6C/18AWG BC; Unshielded; LSPVC, purple | 6304UE 0071000 | or equivalent as manufactured by Tappan |

*****ALL SYSTEM WIRING SHALL BE PURPLE IN COLOR.

**END OF SECTION 28 10 00**

# SECTION 28 15 00 - INTRUSION DETECTION SYSTEM

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Provide and install a fully functional intrusion detection system which shall include, but not be limited to, all control equipment, power supplies, power circuits, signal initiating and signaling devices, conduit, wire, fittings and all other accessories required to provide a complete and operable system.

B. Security system devices indicated are for reference and coordination purposes only. The installing contractor shall design and provide a complete system as specified. The Contractor shall provide all security system devices required for complete corridor perimeter coverage acceptable to all governing authorities.

C. The system shall include intrusion for all egress corridors in the building.
1. The Control System shall be the product of a single manufacturer.
2. Tag all conductors or cables at each end
3. Installation of security panels
4. Interconnection of security panels
5. Installation of new security devices
6. Full coverage of all egress corridors
7. Preconstruction meeting with Owner's personnel, installing technician and project superintendent

D. The system shall be wired as a Class B system for all circuits.

### 1.2 CODES AND STANDARDS

The system shall comply with the applicable Codes and Standards as follows:

A. Governing Authorities:
1. UL864 – Control Units System (L, CS, -A, M, SS, WF)
2. UL1610 – Central Station Burglar Alarm Units
3. UL609 – Local Burglar Alarm Units
4. UL365 – Police Station Burglar Alarm Units

B. Local & State Building Codes

C. Requirements of Local Authorities having Jurisdiction

D. Underwriters Laboratory Requirements and Listings for use in Security Alarm Systems.

E. Requirements of American Disabilities Act (Public law 101-336).

F. Local Accessibility Standards

G. State Insurance Code.

## 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Contractor Qualifications:
   1. The installing contractor shall be the authorized representative of the Security Alarm Manufacturer to sell, install, and service the proposed manufacturer's equipment. The installing contractor shall have represented the security alarm manufacturer's product for at least five years.
   2. The installing contractor shall be licensed by the State as a security services contractor to design, sell, install, and service security alarm systems.
   3. The installing contractor shall provide 24-hour, 365 day per year emergency service with factory trained service technicians.
   4. The installing contractor shall have been actively engaged in the business of designing, selling, installing, and servicing security alarm systems for at least five (5) years.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. The installing contractor and/or equipment supplier shall provide complete and detailed shop drawings and include:
   1. Complete point-to-point wiring diagrams.
   2. Riser diagrams.
   3. Complete floor plan drawings locating all system devices.
   4. Factory data sheets on each piece of equipment proposed.
   5. Detailed system operational description. Any specification differences and deviations shall be clearly noted and marked.
   6. Complete system bill of material.
   7. Line by line specification review stating compliance or deviation.

B. All submittal data will be in bound form with Contractor's name, supplier's name, project name, and state security license number adequately identified.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. DMP

## 2.2 BURGLAR ALARM SYSTEM

A. Main Panel
   1. Shall provide up to 58-Zones
   2. Shall have on-board ethernet communication
   3. Shall be DMP XT50

B. System Keypads
   1. Shall be two-line alphanumeric
   2. Shall be DMP 7073N

C. Siren
   1. Shall be Bosch LH1-10M10E or approved equal
   2. Provide necessary amplification equipment, tie to DMP board

D. Enclosure
   1. Shall be tan
   2. Shall have tamper switch
   3. Shall have lock and key

E. Motion Detectors
   1. Shall detect passive infrared and microwave
   2. Shall have 360-degree coverage
   3. Shall be Bosch DS9370

F. Duress Buttons
   1. Shall be wireless
   2. Shall be a dual contact button
   3. Shall be supervised for low battery, and send warnings

G. Door Contacts
   1. Shall be triple biased
   2. Double Pole/Double Throw

H. Door Chime
   1. Shall tie to the door contact
   2. Final location to be coordinated with owner

I. Silent Strobe
   1. Ceiling Mounted Blue
   2. Shall tie to the silent duress alarm, via DMP

J. Power Supply
   1. Shall have integral 12V lead-acid batteries
   2. Shall be DMP

K. False Alarm Prevention: The system shall include the following false alarm prevention features: audible exit delay, arm/disarm bell squawk, audible exit fault, urgency on entry delay, no entry arming/disarming. Swinger shutdown programmable by zone, transmission delay by zone, AC fail, TLM trouble and low battery trouble transmission delay, recent close code transmission, police code (cross zone) transmission, opening after alarm transmission, and arming/disarming from outside the protected space using access control.

L. Central Station Reporting: The system shall provide high speed 20 bps 1400/2300 Hz. handshake, contact ID and SIA reporting formats and shall be capable of being programmed to call up to 3 telephone numbers. The system shall also allow communication to a pager. The telephone numbers shall be programmable for "backup" dialing should the primary number fail. The system shall be programmable for split reporting such that alarms/restorals, openings/closing and miscellaneous events can be sent to different telephone numbers. The system shall report a separate account code for each partition and for non-partition (system) events.

1. The system shall provide opening/closing scheduled suppression to prevent opens and closes from being reported to the central station. The system shall be capable of reporting all alarms, trouble, and system status information by combinations of all communication methods installed including: digital communicator, a cellular transmitter, and DVAC.

M. System Printer: The system shall be capable of including a serial output for a hard copy printer installed anywhere on the Combus. All system events, alarms and restorals shall be printed and each event shall include the partition, date and time.

N. System Event Buffer: The system shall have a 3,000-event buffer. All events shall be printable from the system printer. The 2,800 most recent events shall be viewable by keypad LCD display. All events shall be viewable by upload/download PC.

O. Power Supply/Relay Output Modules: The systems shall be capable of including up to 64 fully programmable output relays with form 'C' contacts rated 2Amps at 30VDC. Relays shall be added in modules of four and may be located anywhere on the Combus. Each module shall include a supervised 350mA 12VDC battery charger, and integral power supply to supply up to 1.0Amp of auxiliary power at 12VDC to power direct connected devices or re-power the Combus.

P. Low Power Outputs: The system shall be capable of including up to 144 low power outputs with each output able to supply 50mA at 12VDC. Outputs shall be added in increments of 16 and may be added anywhere on the Combus.

Q. Remote Annunciation: The system shall be capable of remote zone alarm and system status annunciation, up to 144 points, by adding 32- and 64-point annunciators

anywhere on the Combus. Annunciators shall be capable of being flush mounted. The annunciators shall provide bulls eye and graphic annunciation capability.

R. System Software: The base panel shall come complete with all the software to implement every system feature and allow the addition of every expansion or functional module without changes or addition to the basic software.

S. System Programming:
1. The system shall be fully programmable via the LCD keypads and shall also allow event buffer viewing via the keypads.
2. Separate PC based upload/download software shall allow programming and operation from a directly connected local computer, or from a remote computer via a telephone line or LINKS cellular communications equipment. Remote access shall be controlled by the Owner to prevent unauthorized access.
3. All system programming shall be maintained in non-volatile memory such that program information is maintained even if all AC and battery power is removed.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 INSTALLATION**

A. All wiring shall be in accordance with the National Electrical Code, Local Codes, and article 760 of NFPA Standard 70. All wiring sizes shall conform to recommendations of the equipment manufacturer, and as indicated on the engineered shop drawings.

B. All wire shall be UL Listed CL2 for limited energy (300V) applications and shall be installed in conduit. Limited energy MPP wire may be run open in return air ceiling plenums provided such wire is UL Listed for such applications and is of the low smoke producing fluorocarbon type and complies with NEC Article 760 if so approved by the local authority having jurisdiction.

C. No AC wiring or any other wiring shall be run in the same conduit as security alarm wiring.

D. All wire shall be installed in an approved conduit/raceway system (except where permitted by NEC and the local authority having jurisdiction). Maximum conduit "fill" shall not exceed 40% per NEC.

E. Minimum conduit size shall be ¾-inch EMT. Install conduit per engineered shop drawings.

F. Systems utilizing open wiring techniques with low smoke plenum cable shall provide conduit in all inaccessible locations, inside concealed walls, at all mechanical/electrical rooms, or other areas where wiring might be exposed or subject to damage.

G. All vertical wiring and all main trunk/riser wiring shall be installed in a complete raceway/conduit system. All riser boxes shall be adequately sized for the number of conductors transversing the respective box as well as the number of terminations required.

H. Telephone Cable: Provide a 4 pair Category 6 telephone cable from the Master Control Panel to the Telephone Equipment Room.

I. Each motion sensor shall be an addressable zone.

J. All plenum wiring is to be installed parallel and perpendicular to the building structure. Install wiring in D-rings or J-hooks. Support D-rings or J-Hooks. Cable shall be bundled on a maximum of 2-foot-6-inches. D-rings or J-hooks shall be secured to the structure at a maximum of 5-foot on center. Bundling shall be with plenum rated cable ties. Cable shall not be directly attached to building structure.

## 3.2 SYSTEM OPERATION

A. When an alarm condition is detected by any of the alarm initiating devices, the following functions shall occur:
   1. The system keypad's interior audible device shall sound until silenced by using proper security code or after system time out.
   2. A custom system alarm message shall be displayed on the LCD display. This display will show the alarm device location in plain English. Location and partition custom messages shall be field programmable.
   3. The remote signaling tie connection shall be activated at the Owner's approved central security monitoring location and/or other Owner designated location.

## 3.3 SYSTEM ZONING AND PARTITIONING

A. The system shall employ intelligent initiating devices and interface devices capable of being recognized and enunciated at the main system keypad and devices partition keypad.

B. All zoning/device locations shall be field programmable.

C. Input control zones shall be as indicated on the drawings.

D. The zoning shall at a minimum partition in the following ways, coordinate all requirements with owner prior to final programming:

## 3.4 COMMISSIONING THE SYSTEM

A. The installing contractor shall be responsible for verifying that each component of the system is fully operational and in conformity with the specifications. He shall also be responsible for insuring that all elements function together as a system in accordance with the specifications.

B. A state licensed and factory trained technical representative of the manufacturer shall supervise the final control panel connections and testing of the system. Upon completion of the acceptance tests, the owner and/or his representatives shall be instructed in the proper operation of the system.

C. The installing contractor shall functionally test each and every device in the entire system for proper operation and response. Any items found not properly installed or non-functioning shall be replaced or repaired and retested.

D. The installing contractor shall provide a complete written report on the functional test of the entire system. A copy of the test report shall be provided with maintenance manuals. The test report shall be signed and dated by the licensed burglar alarm superintendent responsible for supervising the final system test and checkout.

E. The installing contractor's burglar alarm superintendent shall test the entire system in the presence of the local authorities having jurisdiction. The contractor shall be responsible for making any changes, adjustments, or corrections, as may be required by the local authorities. The Contractor shall affix his certification label and installation certificate to the interior of the main burglar alarm control panel.

F. The testing and acceptance shall be performed within 30 days after the burglar alarm installation is completed. The test shall be performed by a minimum of two qualified burglar alarm system technicians acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction. The test which is a comprehensive 100 percent inspection and test of all burglar alarm system equipment shall include the following:
   1. Burglar alarm control equipment: a visual and functional test of the burglar alarm control and auxiliary control equipment.
   2. A visual inspection shall be conducted to establish that all electrical connections and equipment, as required, are properly installed and operating.
   3. A functional fault simulation test shall be conducted on all relevant field wiring terminations to ensure that wiring is properly supervised as required.
   4. Indicators shall be tested to ensure proper function and operation.
   5. Control panel auxiliary functions shall be functionally tested to verify proper operation.
   6. Control panel supervisory and alarm current readings shall be taken to verify that the control panel has the appropriate power supplies and standby batteries to operate the system as required. A three-minute general alarm stress test, both under AC power and standby power, shall be conducted to further ensure complete operation of the system.
   7. Burglar alarm peripheral devices; All burglar alarm peripheral devices shall be

functionally tested, and the location and testing information recorded for each device.

8. Manual initiating devices:
    a. Each manual alarm station at each keypad shall be functionally tested for alarm operation.
    b. Each manual alarm station at each keypad shall be functionally tested for proper wiring supervision.
9. Automatic initiating devices:
    a. Each automatic initiating device shall be activated in accordance with manufacturer's instructions to ensure proper operation.
    b. Each automatic initiating device shall be functionally tested for proper wiring supervision.
    c. Each automatic initiating device shall be inspected to ensure proper placement and mounting as required by specifications.
10. Alarm signaling devices:
    a. Each alarm signaling device shall be tested and decibel reading taken at 10-feet from the device and recorded to ensure proper operation.
    b. Each alarm signaling device shall be functionally tested for proper wiring supervision.
    c. Decibel reading shall be taken to ensure that the alarm signal level can be clearly heard in all areas of the facility.
    d. All visual alarm indicators shall be functionally tested to ensure proper operation and that they are clearly visible.
11. Reporting: Upon completion of the initial verification audit, a report shall be sent to the Architect/Engineer indicating that all burglar alarm equipment has been tested and is in 100 percent operation. The report shall also contain the audit testing information as to the location and operational status of each peripheral device. The 100 percent audit shall be performed by a factory trained representative.

G. It is the intent of these specifications and of the Architect/Engineer that a continued program of system maintenance be provided by the Owner. It is mandatory that the installing Contractor provide such services and make available these services to the Owner upon completion of the project.

## 3.5 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

A. Each piece of equipment shall be provided with a permanently engraved or embossed or silk screen identification tag. The tag shall include the following information:
    1. Name of manufacturer.
    2. Manufacturer's equipment description.
    3. Serial number and model number.
    4. Voltage and current rating.

## 3.6 SPARE PARTS AND TOOLS

A. Interchangeable Parts: All spare parts furnished shall be directly interchangeable with the corresponding components of the installed system. Spare parts shall be packaged and identified by nameplate, tagging, or stamping. Spare parts shall be delivered to the site in unopened cartons for storage in a Contractor provided cabinet located in the building where directed by the Owner. Provide a wall mounted cabinet; factory finished, keyed like the burglar alarm control panel, and located in the emergency control center or as directed by Owner, Architect.

B. Spare Parts:
   1. Six spare fuses of each size used in the system
   2. Six spare detectors of each type in the system
   3. Spare system keys (6) of each
   4. Two copies of the final software programmed into the burglar alarm system.
   5. Devices listed above are to be installed as directed by Architect/Engineer or local code authorities at no additional cost to the Owner. Unused spare parts are to be parts for Owner's cabinet.

C. Parts list: Furnish a list, in duplicate, of all other parts and accessories the manufacturer of the system recommends to be stocked for maintenance.

## 3.7 KEYS

A. Keys and locks for all equipment shall be identical. Provide not less than six keys of each type required. Identify keys by an appropriate number stamped on each key or on a metal tag attached thereto. Provide a key numbering chart in each operation and maintenance manual furnished.

## 3.8 GRAPHIC FLOOR PLANS

A. Provide color coded floor plan detailed with room names, graphic room numbers and adequate information to direct people to the burglar alarm devices in alarm with Non-fading floor plan media.

B. Each plan shall clearly relate the room numbers on the annunciator to the area description on the floor plan. All burglar alarm devices located to correspond with the annunciator.

C. The floor plan shall be solvent welded in acrylic plastic.
   1. Mount in an extruded aluminum frame next to the main burglar alarm control panel.

D. Post minimum 11x17 size drawing, color laminated As-Built of system identifying all devices, key pads, panels and partitions on the wall near main control panel.

## 3.9 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A. The contractor is to ensure all areas of the egress corridors are covered with motion detectors.

B. Provide all accessories required for off-site monitoring. Coordinate with Owner for appropriate off-site monitoring service.

C. Alarm circuit power supplies and circuiting shall be designed and installed to accept an additional five (5) motion detection devices for future expansion. The initial design shall not exceed 70% of the rated power supply and circuit capability.

D. Provide surface mount door contacts on all outside odors and roof hatch. Do not wire intrusion detection devices inside door frames.

E. Do not place guard covers over motion detectors except in harsh environment such as gyms.

F. Alarm systems must have a dedicated 120 VAC circuit on an emergency power panel.

G. Intrusion detection shall be one system for entire building, armed and disarmed from any keypad in the building.

H. The inside hallways shall have motion detectors where indicated or required to eliminate any dead zones.

## 3.10 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

A. Final acceptance of the Burglar Alarm System by the Owner, local code authorities and Occupancy Permit has been issued.

## 3.11 WARRANTY

A. The new components and installation of the expanded burglar alarm system, including labor and material, shall be free from defects in workmanship and materials, under normal use and service, for a period of one year from the date of substantial completion. Any equipment or workmanship shown to be defective shall be repaired, replaced or adjusted during normal working hours at no cost to the owner within 4-hour notification.

B. Repair services and replacement parts for the system to be furnished under this Contract shall be available for a period of ten years after the date of final acceptance. Service during the warranty period shall be provided within four hours after notification

and all repairs shall be corrected within 24 hours after notification throughout the warranty specified in this section.

C. The installing contractor shall provide 24 hour, 365 days per year emergency service with factory trained, state licensed service technicians.

D. The equipment manufacturer shall be represented by a local service organization and the name of such shall be furnished to the Owner, Architect, and Engineer.

E. Provide a certified burglar alarm test of the complete system at the end of the warranty period and correct any and all items to bring the system to an approved status at no cost to the Owner.

F. Guarantee labor, materials, and equipment provided under this contract against all defects for a period of one year after the date of final acceptance and receipt and approval of “As-Built” drawings and schematics of all equipment.

**3.13 TRAINING**

A. Provide training course to all security personnel assigned by Owner’s Representative. The training shall include a course syllabus and hands-on participation. Training shall be conducted on a system identical to the one being installed on this project. The system shall be able to perform all system operations and simulate all types or forms of alarm conditions.

B. Provide a video of the training program to the Owner’s Representative to be used for periodic refresher course, training of the local security department and for training of new employees.

C. The training course shall include, in addition to the above, a system overview, and a review of the operation and maintenance manual.

D. The instructor shall be factory trained and shall be thoroughly familiar with all parts of the installation on which instruction is to be given. The instructor shall be trained in operating theory as well as in practical operation and maintenance work.

**3.15 SOFTWARE**

A. Provide two electronic copies of the final programming and program software to the Owner’s Security Supervisor after final approval.

**END OF SECTION 28 15 00**

# SECTION 28 46 00 – FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM SYSTEM

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Provide all detailed engineering, documentation, materials and devices, installation, calibration, software programming and check-out necessary for a complete and fully operational fire detection and alarm system in accordance with the full intent and meaning of the drawings and specifications including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Supply, install and connect all hardware necessary to provide a complete and operational fire detection and alarm system.
2. Supply, install and wire all field hardware, fire alarm control panel, power supplies, power circuits, alarm initiating devices, audible and visual alarm devices, auxiliary control relays, signal initiating and signaling devices, conduits, wires, fittings and all accessories required for the system to perform as specified as required.
3. Supply, install, debug and test all software required to provide all software functions described in accordance with the full intent and meaning of the drawings and specifications.
4. Coordinate the work specified under this Section with other trades and contractors to assure a complete and fully operational system.

B. The intent of fire detection and alarm system work is specified in this section and indicated on the drawings. The installing contractor shall design and provide a complete system, meeting the requirement of this specification. The Contractor shall provide all fire alarm and initiation devices required for a complete system acceptable to all governing authorities. Provide proper spacing and coverage of all devices.

### 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Divisions 22, 23 and 26

B. Sprinkler Systems

C. Elevators

D. Food Service

### 1.3 CODES / STANDARDS / REFERENCES (LATEST EDITIONS)

A. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

1. NFPA 13 Systems, Installation
2. NFPA 17 Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems
3. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code
4. NFPA 72 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code.
5. NFPA 80 Fire Doors and Fire Windows
6. NFPA 90A Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems.

7. NFPA 92A Smoke Control Systems
8. NFPA 101 Life Safety code.
9. NFPA 105 Smoke Control Door Assemblies
10. NFPA 2001 Fire Extinguishing Systems, Clean Agent

B. UL: Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.
1. 217 Single and Multiple Station Smoke Detectors.
2. 268 Smoke Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Services.
3. 864 Control Units for Fire Protective Signaling Services, 9th Edition.
4 864 Transient protection
5. 1480 Speakers for Fire Protective Signaling Systems
6. UL Fire Protection Equipment Directory.
7. UL Electrical Construction Materials Directory.

C. Factory Mutual P7825 Approval Guide

D. American National Standards Institute (ANSI).

E. National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA).

F. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE).

G. Electronic Industries Association (EIA-232-C): Interface between Data Terminal Equipment and Data Communication Equipment Employing Serial Binary Data Interchange.

H. Requirements of American Disabilities Act (Public Law 101-336).

I. Local Accessibility Standards

J. State Fire Marshall or Requirements of Local Authorities having Jurisdiction

K. State Insurance Code

L. International Building Code Adopted by Local Authority Having Jurisdiction

M. Local & State Building Codes

N. In addition the above requirements, comply with all local codes. Where discrepancies exist between codes, drawings or specifications, the more stringent requirement shall prevail. Installation shall be subject to approval, inspection and test of applicable regulatory agencies.

**1.4 MANUFACTURER'S, PLANNER'S AND INSTALLER'S QUALIFICATIONS**

A. The manufacturer shall regularly and presently produce, as the manufacturer's principle products, the equipment and material of the type and design specified for this project,

and shall have manufactured the item for at least 5 years.

B. Manufacturer's product shall have been in satisfactory operation on three installations of similar size, type and design as this project, for approximately 3 years.

C. Manufacturer shall submit at the time of bid a list of installations where the products have been in operation.

D. The installing contractor shall have been actively engaged in the business of designing, selling, installing, and servicing fire alarm systems for at least ten (10) years.

E. The entire Fire Detection and Alarm System shall be installed by an authorized representative of the Fire Alarm Manufacturer and certified by the manufacturer to distribute, sell, and install the specified fire alarm and smoke detection system. Include all components, elements, and testing and acceptance procedures.

F. If the submitted system is being supplied by an authorized distributor of the equipment manufacturer, the distributor shall have been actively engaged in the sale, installation and service of the type of system proposed for this project for a minimum of 10 years.

G. Any proposed installer who cannot show evidence of such qualifications may be rejected. The services of a technician provided and certified by the equipment manufacturer shall be provided to supervise the installation and tests of the system.

H. Furnish evidence there is an experienced and effective service organization, which carries a stock of repair parts for the system to be furnished.

I. The installing contractor shall be licensed by the State Fire Marshall to design, sell, install, and service fire alarm systems as required by the State Insurance Code.

J. The installing contractor shall have on his staff a minimum of two (2) Fire Alarm Planning Superintendent (APS) licensed by the State Fire Marshall's office for such purpose and under whose supervision installation, final connections, and check out will take place as required by the State Insurance Code.

K. The APS shall be a certified NICET Level III state licensed fire alarm planner under whose supervision system design shall take place. In lieu of a NICET certified state licensed fire alarm planner, the contractor or supplier may provide design supervision by a registered professional engineer, who regularly engages in the design of fire alarm systems as required by the Texas Board of Professional Engineers.

L. The installing contractor shall provide 24-hour, 365 days per year emergency service with factory trained, state licensed service technicians.

M. Material shall be new and in perfect condition when installed.

N. Electrical or electronic equipment provided under this Division which has been

damaged, exposed to weather, or is, in the opinion of the Architect/Engineer otherwise unsuitable because of improper fabrication, storage, or installation, shall be removed and replaced with new equipment, at no additional cost to the owner.

O. Quality Control Assurance:
1. All components of the fire alarm system shall be products of an Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. listed fire alarm manufacturer, and shall bear the UL Label. Partial listing shall not be acceptable.
2. All components of the fire alarm systems shall use the most current technology available.
3. Only new parts shall be installed at the time of initial installation and to repair the system during the warranty period. No reconditioned parts shall be used.
4. All devices shall be tested and certified that they meet or exceed the "Service Life Expectancy Rating" as outlined by UL and NFPA.

**1.5 COORDINATION**

A. It shall be the responsibility of the installing contractor to coordinate all requirements surrounding installation of the fire alarm system with all other trades.

B. Contractor shall schedule a pre-construction meeting with Owner/Architect regarding the Fire Detection and Alarm System.

**1.6 DEFINITIONS**

A. General: Wherever mentioned in this specification or on the drawings, the equipment, devices and functions shall be defined as follows:
1. Alarm Signal: A signal, which signifies a state of emergency requiring immediate action and immediate notification of the Fire Department. These are signals such as:
   a. The operation of a manual station.
   b. The operation of a fire suppression system switch.
2. Pre-Alarm Signal: A signal, which indicates a detection device, has operated. These signals require and immediate response, but do not require immediate notification of the Fire Department.
3. Supervisory Signal: A signal, which signifies the impairment of fire protection system, which may prevent its normal operation.
4. Trouble Signal: A signal, which indicates that a fault, such as an open circuit or ground, has occurred in the system.
5. Alarm Zone: An alarm initiating device or combination of devices connected to a single alarm initiating device circuit.
6. Pre-Alarm Zone: A detector or group of detectors connected to a single detector circuit, which can send an alarm to the central control panel.
7. Supervision Zone: A supervisory signal initiating device or combination of such devices connected to a single supervisory signal circuit.
8. Communication Zone: A fire alarm indicating device or series of devices arranged to visually and/or audibly indicate a fire alarm signal.

**1.7 SUBMITTALS**

A. Contractor shall meet with Owner's Fire Alarm System representative prior to submission of formal/final shop drawings to Architect to allow the Owner and Architect to review a preliminary draft copy of the submittal to verify compliance with the specifications and any detailed requirements of the project. After the draft submittal has been reviewed by the Architect / Owner / Engineer, and formal shop drawings have been reviewed by Architect and returned to the Contractor, the required pre-construction meeting shall take place with Owner / Architect / Engineer.

B. Before the final set of shop drawings are submitted to Architect / Engineer, submit drawings to the jurisdictions for approval. All approvals shall be noted on the drawings or by letter from the authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).

C. All preliminary and as-built design drawings and supporting documentation shall include: Floor Plan Drawings, riser diagrams, control unit wiring diagrams, point to point wiring diagrams, and typical wiring diagrams as described herein.
1. Name of Owner and Occupant
2. Date
3. Location, including street address.
4. Provide a complete written, item-by-item, line-by-line, specification review stating compliance or deviation in full description.
5. Device Legend
6. Input/output programming matrix
7. Licensed Designer Information – Registered Professional Engineer or Alarm Planning Superintendent (APS)
8. Battery calculations
9. Notification appliance circuit voltage drop calculations
10. Floor Plan
    a. Floor identification
    b. Point of compass
    c. Correct graphic scale
    d. All walls and doors
    e. All partitions extending to within 15 percent of ceiling height
    f. Room descriptions
    g. Fire alarm device / component locations
        1) Signal notification devices
        2) Initiation devices
        3) Smoke control systems
        4) Initiation of automatic extinguishing equipment
        5) Doors that unlock or close automatically
        6) Zone verification for detection devices
        7) Fire/Smoke damper control
        8) Fire alarm panel location
        9) Fire alarm annunciators
        10) Control valves to Fire Protection System

11) Duct smoke detectors
12) Supervisory devices
13) Elevator location
14) Elevator recall system location

h. Location of fire alarm primary power connections
i. Location of monitor/control interfaces to other systems
j. Riser locations
k. Methods for compliance with NFPA 72 24.3.13 for survivability (emergency voice systems) as required in NFPA 72 12.4 where applicable.
l. Ceiling height and ceiling construction details
m. Fire alarm system riser diagram
1) General arrangement of the system, in building cross-section
2) Number of risers
3) Type and number of circuits in each riser
4) Type and number of fire alarm components/devices on each circuit, on each floor or level

11. Control unit wiring diagrams shall be provided for all control equipment, power supplies, battery chargers, and annunciators and shall include the following:
a. Identification of control equipment depicted
b. Location(s)
c. All field wiring terminals and terminal identification
d. All indicators and manual controls, including the full text of all labels
e. All field connections to supervising station signaling equipment, releasing equipment, and fire safety control.
f. Typical Wiring Diagram shall be provided for all initiating devices, notification appliances, remote light emitting diodes (LEDs), remote test stations, and end-of-line and power supervisory devices.
12. Complete system bill of material of all hardware components.
13. Detailed system operational description. Any specification differences and deviations shall be clearly noted and marked.
14. Submittal sheets sequentially numbered with the format: sheet number of number total. For example: 1 of 3.
15. Complete set of manufacturer's operating instructions, circuit diagrams and the information necessary for proper installation, operation and maintenance.
16. Manufacturers catalog cut sheets shall be provide for each piece of equipment with the appropriate model or part number highlighted in cases where multiple model numbers or part numbers are shown.
17. Fire detection and alarm system's panel configuration complete with peripheral devices, batteries, power supplies, and interconnection diagrams.
18. Indicate visual alarm device initial candela setting required for coverage.
19. Sample of proposed graphic/text annunciation.

**1.8 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

A. Submit complete sets of operation and maintenance manuals. Manual, less as-builts, and sign-off sheets, shall be provided upon completion of the work. Approval of the manual will be required prior to substantial completion.

B. The Operation and Maintenance Manual shall consist of the following:

1. The manual shall include the names, addresses and telephone numbers of each Contractor installing products, and of the nearest service representative for each product. The manual shall have a Table of Contents and tab sheets. Update manuals to include modifications made during installation, checkout and acceptance. The manual shall include the sections described in the following paragraphs.
2. The Functional Design Section shall identify the operational requirements for the system and explain the theory of operation, design philosophy, and specific functions. Hardware and software functions, interfaces, and requirements shall be provided for system operating modes.
3. The Hardware Section shall describe equipment provided, including general description and specifications, installation and checkout procedure, electrical schematics and layout drawings. Alignment and calibration procedures, manufacturer's repair parts list indicating source of supply, interface definition, signal identification and wiring diagrams. Also, include a complete parts list of all components as well as a list of recommended spare parts. The spare parts list shall include, for each item, the manufacturer's name, the model of the part, and serial number, if appropriate, and a physical and electrical description of the part.
4. The Software Section shall describe programming and testing, starting with a system overview and proceeding to a detailed description of each software module, to instruct the user on programming or reprogramming any portion of the system and other information necessary to enable proper system usage.
5. The Operation Section shall provide instructions for operation of the system, including system start-up procedures, use of system and applications software, alarm presentation (where applicable), failure and recovery procedures, preventive maintenance schedule, parameter schedules and sequence definition, and system access requirements.
6. The Maintenance Section shall provide descriptions of maintenance for equipment including inspection, periodic preventive maintenance, fault diagnosis, and repair or replacement of defective components.
7. The Shop Drawings section shall include copies of all approved shop drawings and submittal materials updated to "AS BUILT".

**1.9 AS-BUILT DRAWINGS**

A. Prepare and submit detailed "As-Built" drawings. The drawings shall include certified test of the system, testing and acceptance sign-off sheets, and other items specified elsewhere to be performed after initial submission of operation and maintenance manuals, complete wiring diagrams showing connections between all devices and equipment, both factory and field wired. Include a riser diagram and drawings showing the as built location of all devices and equipment. The drawings shall show the system as installed, including all deviations from both the project drawings and the approved shop drawings. The drawings shall be prepared on uniform sized sheets, the same size as the project drawings. The plan drawings shall be 11x17 inch and inserted in the

specified Operations and Maintenance Manuals. Provide electronic copies in PDF and Autocad.dwg format.

**1.10 OPERATIONAL INSTRUCTIONS**

A. Provide a typeset printed or a laser jet printed instruction card mounted behind a lexan plastic or glass cover in a stainless steel or aluminum frame. Install the frame in a conspicuous location observable from the Fire Alarm Control Panel (FACP). The card shall show those steps to be taken by an operator when a signal is received as well as the functional operation of the system under all conditions, normal, alarm, and trouble. The instructions shall be approved by the Architect/Engineer before being posted.

**1.11 WARRANTY**

A. The fire alarm system, including labor and material, shall be free from defects in workmanship and materials, under normal use and service, for a period of one year from the date of substantial completion. Major components including but not limited to the main fire alarm panel, sub-panels, panel extenders, power supplies and emote annunciators. Any equipment or workmanship shown to be defective shall be repaired, replaced or adjusted during normal working hours at no cost to the owner within 4-hour notification. Any equipment replaced shall be complete with full factory warranty for that part beginning on the date of installation.

B. Repair services and replacement parts for the system to be furnished under this Contract shall be available for a period of ten years after the date of final acceptance. Service during the warranty period shall be provided within four hours after notification and all repairs shall be corrected within 24 hours after notification throughout the warranty specified in this section.

C. The installing contractor shall provide 24 hour, 365 days per year emergency service with factory trained, state licensed service technicians.

D. The equipment manufacturer shall be represented by a local service organization and the name of such shall be furnished to the Owner, Architect, and Engineer.

E. Provide a certified fire alarm test of the complete system no earlier than 30 days prior to the end of the warranty period and correct any and all items to bring the system to an approved status at no cost to the Owner. Clean all smoke detectors and replace all defective parts at no cost to the Owner.

F. Guarantee labor, materials, and equipment provided under this contract against all defects for a period of one year after the date of final acceptance and receipt and approval of “As-Built” drawings and schematics of all equipment.

G. All manufacturer’s warranties which extend past final completion shall be fully transferred to the Owner.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

**2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS – TIMBERWOOD MS**

A. Existing system is to be replaced.

B. Manufacturers acceptable contingent upon Products' compliance with the specifications:
   1. Notifier
   2. Silent Knight by a Farenhyt Dealer

C. Fire Alarm Communicator
   1. Teleguard TG-7FS, 5G LTE-M Cellular Communicator

**2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

A. System shall be a completely multiplexed addressable fire detection and alarm system, tested and left in first class operating condition. Voice evacuation systems where required or specified, shall have voice alarm notification wherever audible notification is required.

B. The system shall provide communication with initiating and control devices individually. All of these devices shall be individually annunciated at the fire alarm control panel. Annunciation shall include the following conditions for each point:
   1. Alarm
   2. Trouble.
   3. Open
   4. Short
   5. Device missing/failed.

C. System circuits shall be wired as follows: Initiating device circuit (IDCs) shall be Style B, indicating appliance circuit (IACs) shall be Style Y, and signal line circuit (SLCs) shall be Style 4 as describe in NFPA 72.

D. The system shall contain independently supervised initiating device circuits. The alarm activation of any initiation circuit shall not prevent the subsequent alarm operation of any other initiation circuit. All addressable loops shall have loop isolation protection devices to maintain partial fire alarm system integrity should a fault occur. A loop isolation device shall not exceed a maximum of 20 devices.

E. There shall be supervisory service initiation device circuits for connection of all sprinkler water flow switches and valves. Device activation shall cause a general alarm at the fire alarm control panel. Each flow and tamper switch shall have an individual address.

F. There shall be independently supervised and independently fused indicating appliance circuits for all alarm signaling devices. Disarrangement conditions of any circuit shall not affect the operation of other circuits.

G. Auxiliary manual controls shall be supervised so that an “off normal” position of any switch shall cause an “off normal” system trouble.

H. The incoming power to the system shall be supervised so that any power failure must be audibly and visually indicated at the fire alarm control panel. A green “power on” LED shall be displayed continuously while incoming power is present at the building fire alarm control panel.

I. The system batteries shall be supervised so that a low battery condition or disconnection of the battery shall be audibly and visually indicated at the building fire alarm control panel.

J. The system modules shall be electrically supervised for module placement. Should a module become disconnected, the system trouble indicator shall illuminate, and the audible trouble signal shall sound.

K. The system shall have provisions for disabling and enabling all circuits individually for maintenance or testing purposes.

L. The system shall be provided with sufficient battery capacity to operate the entire system upon loss of normal 120 VAC power in a normal or supervisory mode for a period of 24 hours with 20 minutes of alarm operation at the end of this period as a minimum. The system shall automatically transfer to the standby batteries upon power failure. All battery charging and recharging operations shall be automatic. If batteries are fully discharged, the charger shall recharge them back to full charge in four hours.

M. All external circuits requiring system operating power shall be 24 VDC and shall be individually fused at the respective fire alarm control panel.

N. All addressable devices shall have the capability of being disabled or enabled individually from the fire alarm control panel.

O. A maximum of 75 percent capacity of addressable devices shall be multi-dropped from a single pair of wires. Systems that require factory reprogramming to add or delete devices within the capability of the designed system are unacceptable. Expansion of the designed system shall be accomplished by factory reprogramming.

P. The communication format to the addressable devices shall be a completely digital poll/response protocol to allow t-tapping of the circuit wiring. A high degree of communication reliability must be obtained by using parity data bit error checking routines for address codes and check sum routines for the data transmission portion of the protocol.

Q. Each addressable device must be uniquely identified by an address code. The system must verify that proper type device is in place and matches the desired software configuration. All remote or external panels shall have an individual address for

monitoring.

R. Wiring type, distances, survivability, and wiring configuration types shall be approved by the equipment manufacturer. The system shall allow a line distance of up to 2,500 feet to the furthest addressable device on a Style Y circuit. Plenum rated fire alarm cable shall have an outer jacket insulation color of red. Minimum wire size shall be #18 AWG.

S. Each panel extender shall have an individual address.

**2.3 FIRE ALARM CONTROL PANEL (FACP)**

A. The FACP shall be capable of communicating with the types of addressable devices specified below. It shall display only those primary controls and displays essential to operation during a fire alarm condition. Keyboards or keypads shall not be required to operate the system during fire alarm conditions. Panel shall support a minimum of 500 addressable points.

B. The fire alarm control panel (FACP) shall be fully enclosed in a lockable steel enclosure as specified herein. All operations required for testing or for normal care and maintenance of the system shall be performed from the front of the enclosure. If more than a single unit is required to form a complete control panel, the unit enclosures shall match exactly. The system shall operate at 24 VDC.

C. Panel shall be large enough to accommodate all components and also to allow ample gutter space for interconnection of all panels as well as all field wiring. Each enclosure and each component shall be identified by an engraved red laminated phenolic resin nameplate. Lettering on the nameplate shall not be less than 1" high. Individual components and modules within the cabinets shall be identified by engraved laminated phenolic resin nameplates.

D. A local audible device shall sound during alarm, trouble, or supervisory conditions. This audible device shall sound differently during each condition to distinguish one condition from another without having to view the panel. This audible device shall also sound during each key press to provide an audible feedback to ensure that the key has been pressed properly.

E. The following primary controls shall be visible through a front access panel:
   1. Minimum 3-lines, minimum 40 alphanumeric characters per line display.
   2. Individual red system alarm LED.
   3. Individual yellow supervisory service LED.
   4. Individual yellow trouble LED.
   5. Green “power on” LED.
   6. Alarm acknowledge key.
   7. Trouble acknowledge key.
   8. Alarm silence key.
   9. System reset key.
   10. Additional control buttons as directed by Owner.

F. Under normal condition, the front panel shall display a “SYSTEM IS NORMAL” message and the current time and date.

G. Should an abnormal condition be detected, the appropriate LED (Alarm, Supervisory or Trouble) shall flash. The panel audible signal shall pulse for alarm conditions and sound steady for trouble and supervisory conditions.

H. The alphanumeric display shall provide the following information relative to the abnormal condition of a point in the system.
   1. 40-character custom location label.
   2. Type of device (i.e. smoke, pull station, water flow).
   3. Point status (i.e. alarm, trouble).
   4. Addressed device physical location to correspond to the actual graphic room numbers.

I. Alarm conditions shall be displayed on the alphanumeric display. The top line of 40 characters shall be the point label and the second line shall be the device type identifier. The system alarm LED shall flash on the control panel until the alarm has been acknowledged. Once acknowledged, this same LED shall latch on. A subsequent alarm received from another zone shall flash the system alarm LED on the control panel. The alphanumeric display shall show the new alarm information.

J. Each independently supervised circuit shall include a discrete readout to indicate disarrangement conditions per circuit.

K. Acknowledgment for each abnormal condition shall be provided. Acknowledge keys shall not be pass code protected. Acknowledge keys shall be protected by the locked enclosure only. After all points have been acknowledged, the LEDs shall glow steady and the audible device be silenced. The total number of alarms, supervisory and trouble conditions shall be displayed, along with a prompt to review each list chronologically. The end of the list shall be indicated by the message, “END of LIST”.

L. Pressing the appropriate acknowledge button shall display the first unacknowledged condition in the appropriate list (either alarm, supervisory or trouble), and shall require another acknowledge button for each subsequent alarm condition. Press to acknowledge shall only silence the displayed point.

M. Alarm silencing:
   1. Should the “Alarm Silence” button be pressed, all audible alarm signals shall cease operation.
   2. Visual signals shall not be extinguished during alarm silence inhibit mode.

N. System reset:
   1. The “System Reset” button shall be used to return the system to its normal state after an alarm condition has been remedied. The alphanumeric display or reset LED shall step the user through the reset process with simple English

Language messages.

2. Should an alarm condition continue to exist, the system shall remain in an abnormal state. System control relays shall not reset. The audible device and the alarm LED shall be on.
3. Should the alarm silence inhibit function be active, the System Reset and alarm silence key shall be ignored.

O. Additional function keys, or their equivalent, shall be provided to access status data and control the function for the following points:
1. HVAC - Bypass
2. Indicating appliance circuits bypass
3. Auxiliary relays points bypass
4. All other input/output points bypass.
5. Additional control buttons as directed by Owner.

P. The following status data or their equivalent shall be available:
1. Primary state of point.
2. Device, PID and card type information.
3. Current priority of outputs.
4. Disable/enable status.
5. Verification tallies of initiating devices.
6. Automatic/manual control status of output points.
7. Acknowledge status.
8. Relay status.

Q. LED supervision: Where provided, all slave module LEDs shall be supervised for burnout or disarrangement. Should a problem occur the alphanumeric display shall display the module and LED location numbers to facilitate location of that LED.

R. System trouble reminder: should a trouble condition be present within the system and the audible trouble signal silenced; the trouble signal shall resound at pre-programmed time intervals to act as a reminder that the fire alarm system is not 100% operational. Both the time interval and the trouble reminder signal shall be programmable.

S. The fire alarm control panel features shall include, but not be limited to:
1. Setting of time and date.
2. LED testing.
3. Alarm, trouble, and abnormal condition listing.
4. Enabling and disabling of each monitor point separately.
5. Activation and deactivation of each control point separately.
6. Changing operator access levels.
7. Walk test enable.
8. Running diagnostic function.
9. Displaying software revision level.
10. Displaying historical logs.
11. Displaying card status.
12. Point listing.

13. For maintenance purposes, the following lists, or their equivalent, shall be available from the system program and/or the point lists menu:
    a. All points list by address.
    b. Monitor point list.
    c. Signal list.
    d. Auxiliary control list.
    e. Feedback point list.
    f. LED/switch status list.
    g. Additional control buttons as directed by Owner.
14. Fire Drill:
    a. Fire drill activation switch shall activate all audio/visual devices only. Fire drill shall not enter into the alarm sequence of operation, shall not close smoke or fire/smoke dampers, shall not deactivate any HVAC systems, kitchen hoods, etc.
    b. Activation of any trouble or alarm condition shall supercede the evacuation drill.
    c. Fire drill shall be canceled by the system reset key, alarm silence, or drill key.
15. Scrolling through menu options or lists shall be accomplished in a self-directing manner. These controls shall be located behind an access door.
16. The alphanumeric display shall have an alpha numeric, back-lighted LCD, LED, or gas plasma display. The display shall support numeric and both upper- and lower-case letters. Lower case letters shall be used for soft key titles and prompting the user. Upper case letters shall be used for system status information. A cursor shall be visible when entering information.
17. The system shall be capable of being tested by one person. The actuation of the "enable walk test" program at the fire alarm control panel shall activate the "Walk Test" mode of the system, which shall cause the following to occur:
    a. The remote monitoring circuit connection shall be bypassed.
    b. Control relay functions shall be bypassed.
    c. The control panels shall show a trouble condition.
    d. The panel shall be capable of selecting either: the alarm activation of any initiation device causing the audible signals to activate for two seconds or the alarm activation of any initiation devices causing the audible signals to code a number of pulses to match the zone number.
    e. The panel shall automatically reset itself after signaling is complete.
    f. Any momentary opening of an initiating or indicating appliance circuit wiring shall cause the audible signals to sound for 4 seconds indicating a trouble condition.
    g. The control panel shall be capable of supporting up to 8 separate testing groups whereby one group of points may be in a testing mode and the other (non-testing) groups may be active and operate as programmed per normal system operation. After testing is considered complete, testing data may be retrieved from the system in chronological order to ensure device/circuit activation.
    h. Should the walk test feature be on for an inappropriate amount of time, it shall revert to the normal mode automatically.

18. Provide three (3) access levels with level 3 being the highest level. Level 1 action shall not require a pass code. Pass codes shall consist of up to ten (10) digits. Changes to pass codes shall only be made by Level 3 authorized personnel.
    a. When entering a pass code, the digits entered shall not be displayed. All key presses shall be acknowledged by a local audible sound and/or visual "*" in the display.
    b. When a correct pass code is entered, the new access level shall be in effect until the operator manually logs out or the keypad has been inactive for ten (10) minutes.
    c. Should an invalid code be input, access shall be denied.
    d. Access to a level shall only allow the operator to perform all actions within that level plus all actions of lower levels, not higher levels.
    e. The following keys/switches, or their equivalent shall have access levels associated with them:
       Set time/date.
       Manual control
       Disable/enable
       Clear historical alarm log
       Clear historical trouble log
       Walk test
       Change alarm verification
    f. The following keys/switches shall not be pass code protected and shall be protected by the lockable enclosure:
       Alarm Silence
       System Reset
       Acknowledge
19. The fire alarm system shall allow for loading and editing special instructions and operating sequences as required. The system shall be capable of being reprogrammed to accommodate system expansion and facilities changes in operation. All software operations shall be stored in a non-volatile programmable memory within the fire alarm control panel. Loss of primary and secondary power shall not erase the instructions stored in memory.
20. Resident software shall allow for full configuration of initiating circuits so that additional hardware shall not be necessary to accommodate changes in, for instance, sensing of normally open contact devices to sensing of normally closed contact devices, or from sensing of normally open contact devices to sensing a combination of current limited and non-current limited devices on the same circuit and being able to differentiate between the two, or changing from a non-verification circuit to a verification circuit or vice-versa.
21. Resident software shall also allow for configuration of indicating appliance and control circuits so that additional hardware shall not be necessary to accommodate change in, for instance changing a non-coded indicating appliance circuit to a coded circuit.
22. The main fire alarm panel shall have the resident ability to store a minimum of 600 system events in chronological order of occurrence. Event history shall include all system alarms, troubles, operator actions, unverified alarms, circuit/point alterations, and component failures. Events shall be time and date

stamped. Events shall be stored in non-volatile buffer memory. Access to history buffer shall be secured via 5-digit password security code. The system shall have the capability of recalling alarms and trouble conditions in chronological order for the purpose of recreating an event history. Loss of primary or secondary power shall not erase the events stored in the memory. Each recorded event shall include the time and date of that event's occurrence.

a. The following Historical Alarm log events shall be stored:
   Alarms
   Alarm acknowledgment
   Alarm silence
   System reset
   Alarm historical log cleared

b. The following historical trouble log events shall be stored:
   Trouble conditions
   Supervisory alarms
   Trouble acknowledgment
   Supervisory acknowledgment
   Alarm verification tallies
   Walk tests results
   Trouble historical log cleared

23. Alarm verification shall be by device, whereby only verification from the same device will confirm the first activation and cause the alarm sequence to occur.
24. The control panel shall have the capability to display the number of times (tally) a device has gone into a verification mode. Should this verification tally reach a pre-programmed number, a trouble condition shall occur.
25. The control panel shall have a dedicated supervisory service LED and a dedicated supervisory service acknowledge key. Pressing the supervisory service acknowledge key shall silence the supervisory audible signal while maintaining the supervisory service LED "ON" indicating the off-normal condition.
26. Activation of an auxiliary bypass key shall override the selected automatic functions.
27. The system shall have keys that will allow the operator to display all alarms, troubles, and supervisory service conditions including the time of each occurrence.
28. RS-232-C output: the fire alarm control panel shall be capable of operating remote generic consumer type printers; output shall be ASCII from an EIA RS-232-C connection with an adjustable baud rate. Each RS-232-C port shall be capable of supporting and supervising a remote display and printer. Data amplifiers shall be used to increase data line distance when required.
29. Panel shall be sized to accommodate all required equipment. Panel shall be equipped with locks and transparent door, providing freedom from tampering yet allowing full view of the various displays and controls.

T. The fire alarm control panel shall have a 25% spare initiating point and battery capacity for future use.

U. The power supply shall provide all control panel and peripheral power needs with

filtered power as well as unregulated 24VDC power for external audio-visual devices. The audio-visual power shall be increased as needed by adding additional modular expansion power supplies. All power supplies shall be designed to meet UL and NFPA requirements for POWER-LIMITED operation on all external signaling lines, including initiating circuits and indicating circuits. Design the system power supplies and power trunk wiring for all annunciation devices required, and to add a minimum of five (5) 110cd visual devices in the future. Individual design loading shall not exceed 70% of power supply and system wiring capacity.

1. Input power shall be 120VAC 60Hz. The power supply shall provide internal supervised batteries and automatic charger. The power supply shall provide positive and negative ground fault supervision, battery/charger fail condition, AC power fail indicators. The power supply shall also provide supervision of modular expansion power supplies as may be required.
2. Surge protection shall be integral to the control panels.
3. Each power supply shall be monitored and have an individual address.

V. Digital Fire Alarm Communicator:

1 Two line primary and secondary telephone line connections
2. Automatically seizes telephone line.
3. Automatic verification between panel and receiving station.
4. Transmits common trouble and supervisory conditions.
5. Dialer status LED.
6. Multiple communication formats including Ademco Contact ID.
7. Dual tone multi-frequency (DTMF) or Pulse modes.
8. Programming password protected.
9. UL approved.

W. IP Internet and Digital Cellular Communicator:

1. UL 864 listed
2. Supervise IP Ethernet connection every 90-seconds or less
3. Upload/Download capable
4. Transmit all signals and information from the DTMF communicator

X. Detector sensitivity shall be programmable from the control panel from the following sensitivities: 0.5, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0, 2.5, 3.0 and 3.7% obstruction. Detectors shall be able to be programmed to alert a trouble signal at a lower obstruction and shall report an alarm if the smoke density increases to a predetermined set point. Control Panel and Detectors shall be capable of “Day-Night” automatic sensitivity adjustments.

Y. Control Switches:

1. Acknowledge/step Switch
2. Signal Silence Switch
3. System Reset Switch
4. System Test Switch
5. Lamp Test

Z. Automatic Detector Test: The system shall include a special automatic detector test

feature, which permits reading and adjustment of the sensitivity of all intelligent detectors from the main control panel. An automatic detector test shall occur automatically fourteen times each twenty-four hour period or be initiated manually from the FACP as desired. In addition, the automatic test feature shall also permit the functional testing of any "intelligent" detector or addressable interface device individually from the main control panel. Automatic detector test sequencing shall be terminated upon receipt of an alarm condition. Detector test shall report all unprogrammed devices installed and report all programmed devices not installed.

AA. Emergency voice alarm communication system:

1. The emergency voice and tone communication system shall be a pre-built system and shall only require two wires from a polarity reversal circuit or a dry contact for activation. It shall supervise the NO dry contact (if used) and provide a form C trouble relay activation in the event of a system fault. The Voice Communication System shall incorporate minimum 50 watts true RMS amplifiers for both tone and speech amplification. The system shall have a load capacity of up to 100 watts. Optionally, the Voice Communication System shall be capable of providing 50 watts of audio with full backup. The Voice Communication System shall be capable of operating as a stand-alone system or follow the activation of the fire alarm/suppression system. The Voice Communication System shall include a regulated power supply and shall be capable of charging and housing its own batteries. There shall be no need to calculate the load requirements or draw any energy from the fire alarm/suppression system. The Voice Communication System shall come with one speaker supervisory zone as a standard and shall be capable of supervising any combination of up to 11 speaker and/or strobe monitoring modules.
2. A full set of control switches including an all call, tone interrupt, trouble silence and reset shall be available at the Voice Communications System. The Voice Communications System control panel shall also have a green POWER ON LED, a red ALARM LED, a yellow BROWN OUT LED and a yellow SYSTEM TROUBLE LED.
3. The Voice Communication System shall be able to detect a short on any speaker or strobe zone during the normal and alarm mode. The shorted zone shall be isolated from the system and a dedicated LED on the supervised zone shall indicate the short circuit condition. The system shall produce an audible and visual signal indicating that a trouble condition has occurred. Similarly an open circuit shall create a trouble condition and corresponding LED annunciation at the affected zone and at the main control module. Zones that are not shorted or opened shall remain operational.
4. The Voice Communications System shall be able to detect a brownout condition on the AC supply. In the brownout condition the Voice Communication System shall activate a dedicated LED and an audible trouble signal. Ground faults shall activate the system trouble LED and the audible trouble signal, as well as specific LEDs indicating negative and positive ground faults.
5. The Voice Communication System shall be field configurable for 25 or 70.7 volt RMS audio output via program jumpers.
6. The Voice Communication System shall have a digital message player / recorder. The digital message player / recorder shall be capable of storing alert and

evacuation tones as well as an emergency voice message. It shall be possible to modify the digital message and tones in the field using a built-in acoustic microphone or headphone jack connected to an audio device. There shall be no need for the burning of eproms in order to program the digital message player / recorder. The digital message player / recorder shall be supervised by the Voice Communication System. The Voice Communications System shall provide a backup evacuation tone in the event of a digital message player / recorder failure.

7. An alarm condition shall cause an audible signal and a red LED to activate. A Voice Communication System with a digital message player / recorder shall produce an ALERT tone followed by an emergency voice message, and in turn followed by an ALARM tone. The number of tone repetitions shall be configurable by the setting of DIP switches on the digital message player / recorder.
8. The sheet metal enclosure shall include a hinged deadfront allowing easy access to all the Voice Communication System components for the purposes of wiring, setting the system configuration and servicing. A door with a key lock shall be part of the Voice Communication System enclosure.

BB. Notifier ONYXWorks command interface gateway for remote monitoring and control:
1. Intelligent gateway interface for HISD's remote ONYXWorks fire monitoring workstation. Interface gateway shall facilitate complete monitoring and control of a NOTI-FIER-NET network, fire alarm panel software and programming and network diagnostics.

**2.4 FIELD DEVICES**

A. All devices shall be supervised for trouble conditions. The fire alarm control panel shall be capable of displaying the type of trouble condition (open, short, device missing/failed). Should a device fail, it shall not hinder the operation of other system devices.

B. Visual Signals:
1. Strobe lights shall be of the electronic flashing strobe type and operate on 24 VDC. The strobe light shall be capable of producing 75 candela on axis to comply with ADA and UL 1638 requirements, and 15, 30, or 110 candela to comply with UL 1971 requirements. Visual signals in common areas of illumination shall have synchronized flash. Provide white with red letters.
2. All wall mounted visual devices installed in gymnasiums, corridors, kitchen preparation and serving areas, vocational shops, athletic/drill team training rooms, student restrooms/toilets, cafeterias, corridors and commons areas, shall have a protective cover; STI Stopper #STI1221E Series. Provide enviro kit for locations where dampness, water or dust is present.

C. Combination Alarm Signal and High Intensity Visual Signals:
1. Strobe lights shall operate on 24 VDC. The strobe light shall be capable of producing 75 candela on axis to comply with ADA requirements, and 15, 30 or

110 candela to comply with UL 1971 requirements. Visual signals in common areas of illumination shall have synchronized flash. Each unit shall provide a Code 3 Temporal tone. The horn shall be capable of an output of 95dB at 10', and intensity adjusted accordingly for the area of coverage. Electronic Mini-Sounder or horn set on low setting shall be provided in interior rooms 900 square feet or less. Mini-sounder shall not be used in any corridors, mechanical electrical rooms and similar large spaces and areas of high ambient noise level. Provide white with red letters.

2. All combination audio / visual devices mounted in student toilets / restrooms, and student locker / dressing rooms shall have a protective cover. All wall mounted combination audio/visual units installed in gymnasiums, corridors, kitchens, preparation and serving area, vocational shops, athletic/drill team training rooms, student restrooms/toilets, cafeterias, corridors and commons areas, shall have a protective cover; STI Stopper #STI1220E Series. Provide enviro kit for locations where dampness, water or dust is present.
3. The audible emergency alarms shall produce a sound that exceeds the prevailing sound level in the room or space by at least 15 dba or shall exceed any maximum sound level with a duration of 60 seconds by 5 dba, whichever is louder with or without protective cover. Sound levels for alarm signals shall not exceed 110 dba at the minimum hearing distance from the audible appliance.

D. Exterior Audible / Visual Signal:
1. Provide semi-flush mounted, molded of high impact red thermoplastic and listed for exterior weatherproof locations.

E. Combination Voice Signal and High Intensity Visual Signals:
1. Strobe lights shall operate on 24 VDC. The strobe light shall be capable of producing 75 candela on axis to comply with ADA requirements, and 15, 30 or 110 candela to comply with UL 1971 requirements. Visual signals in common areas of illumination shall have synchronized flash.
2. If required to be wall mounted in student toilets, gymnasiums, corridors, student locker / dressing rooms, kitchens, vocational shops, athletic / drill team training rooms, cafeterias, commons areas, provide wire guard protective cover. Provide enviro kit for locations where dampness, water or dust is present.
3. The visual signal lens housing shall be white with red lettered FIRE or as approved by Architect. The speaker and visual signal shall be mounted to a common white speaker baffle. The visual signal shall flash at a rate of minimum of 1 Hz and maximum of 3 Hz, and shall use a strobe type lamp or other high intensity long life light source. The lamp intensity shall be a minimum of 75 candela.
4. The speaker shall be UL 1480 compatible with the control equipment. Unit shall operate within a temperature range of 150°F to -30°F. High output speakers, UL minimum 87dB at 10 feet with speaker taps of .33.66/1.25/2.5 watts. Standard output speakers, UL 75-81 dB at 10 feet with speaker taps of .5/1/1.75/2.75 watts. Capacitor for line supervision.

F. Ceiling mounted recessed mounted speakers shall be UL 1480 compatible with the

control equipment. Unit shall operate within a temperature range of 150°F to -30°F. UL minimum 78-87 dB at 10 feet with speaker taps of .25, .5/1.0/2.0 watts. Round, white baffle in gypboard or plaster ceilings, provide 2x2 lay-in grid with UL enclosure, tile bridge supports when recessed in lay-in ceiling tiles Capacitor for line supervision.

G. Surface mounted speakers shall be UL 1480 compatible with the control equipment. Unit shall operate within a temperature range of 150°F to -30°F UL minimum 100 dB at 15 watts at 10 feet. Speaker taps via 7-position selector switch, 25-vol., .48/.94/1.8/7.5/15 watts. Fully enclosed wiring terminals. Capacitor for line supervision. Raco #911 Series Life Safety Appliance back box and adapter, or appliance manufacturer back box.

H. Manual Pull Station: Addressable pull stations shall contain electronics that communicate the station's status (alarm, normal) to the control panel over two wires which also provide power to the pull station. They shall be manufactured from high impact red Lexan with white lettering. Station shall mechanically latch upon operation and remain so until manually reset by opening with a key common to all system locks. Pull stations shall be double action without glass rods. The front of the station shall be hinged to a back plate assembly and shall be opened with a key to reset the station. The key shall be common with the control panels. The addressable manual station shall have address setting programmed electronically and automatically from the fire alarm control panel. Manual stations shall be designed for semi-flush (surface) mounting on standard electrical box. All pull stations units shall have a protective cover, STI Stopper II #STI-1130 surface mounted cover with local alarm horn. Provide STI, Weather Stopper II #STI3150 for locations where dampness, water or dust is present, and in Natatoriums. Verify cover does not interfere with the operation or key reset function.

I. Intelligent Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:
   1. The detectors shall use the photoelectric principal to measure smoke density and shall, on command from the control panel, send data to the panel representing the ANALOG level of smoke density. The detector shall provide automatic sensitivity "drift" compensation. The detector shall also provide a "maintenance alert" feature whereby the detector shall initiate a trouble condition should the unit's sensitivity approach the outside limits of the normal sensitivity window.
   2. The detectors shall provide address-setting means electronically and automatically at the control panel and programmed for alarm verification.
   3. The detectors shall provide operational status and alarm state LED. Under normal conditions, the LED shall flash, indicating the detector is operational and in regular communication with the control panel. An output connection shall also be provided in the base for connecting an external remote alarm LED.
   4. The detector shall be semi-flush ceiling mounted and be provided with modular detector head with twist-lock base. No radioactive material shall be used.
   5. Voltage and RF transient suppression techniques shall be employed as well as smoke signal verification circuit and an insect screen.

J. Duct photoelectric smoke detectors:

1. Detectors shall be analog addressable type.
2. To minimize nuisance alarms, detectors shall have an insect screen and be designed to ignore invisible airborne particles or smoke densities that are below the factory set alarm point. No radioactive material shall be used.
3. Removal of the detector head shall interrupt the supervisory circuit of the fire alarm detection loop and cause a trouble signal at the control panel.
4. Voltage and RF transient suppression techniques shall be employed as well as smoke signal verification circuit and an insect screen.
5. Remote alarm/power LED indicator with test switch shall be provided. Unit shall be wall or ceiling mounted in readily visible and accessible area near the location of detector; exact location of unit to be approved by the Architect/Engineer.
6. Detectors shall operate on the same principles and exhibit the same basic characteristics as area type photoelectric smoke sensors. The detector shall operate in air velocities of 300 FPM to 4,000 FPM. Each detector shall interface directly to the system SLC loop without the requirement of interface zone modules.
7. The unit shall consist of a clear molded plastic enclosure (or remote mounted LED status indicator shall be provided next to the smoke detector) with integral conduit knockouts to provide visual viewing of detector/sensor for monitoring sensor operation and chamber condition. The duct housing shall be provided with gasket seals to insure proper seating of the housing to the associated ductwork. Each unit's sampling tubes shall extend the width of the duct and be provided with porosity filters to reduce sensor/chamber contamination.
8. The detectors shall provide alarm and power status indication by LED. Under normal conditions, the LED shall flash, indicating the detector is operational and in regular communication with the control panel. Steady illumination of the LED shall indicate that the control panel has detected and verified an alarm condition. An output connection shall also be provided in the base for connecting an external remote alarm LED.
9. The detectors shall provide address setting means electronically and automatically from the control panel and programmed for alarm verification.

K. Intelligent Thermal Detectors:
1. The detectors shall use dual electronic thermostats to measure temperature levels in its chamber and shall, on command from the control panel, send data to the panel representing the analog temperature level.
2. The detectors shall provide address-setting means electronically and automatically at the control panel.
3. The detectors shall provide operational status and alarm state LED. Under normal conditions, the LED shall flash, indicating the detector is operational and in regular communication with the control panel. An output connection shall also be provided in the base for connecting an external remote alarm LED.
4. The detector shall be semi-flush ceiling mounted and be provided with modular detector head with twist-lock base.
5. Thermal Detectors shall be combination rate-of-rise and fixed-temperature- rated at 135°F for areas where ambient temperatures do not exceed 100°F and

shall be 200°F for areas where ambient temperatures exceed 100°F but not 150°F. The fixed temperature element shall consist of a fusible alloy retainer and actuator shaft. Detectors shall have a smooth ceiling rating of 2,500 square feet. Detectors shall be located as specified and where required by local code authority.

6. Provide fixed temperature 190°F detector in kitchen and kiln room in lieu of combination rate-of-rise / fixed-temperature type.

L. Addressable Carbon Monoxide Detection:
1. System sensor #CO1224 with addressable identification of the CO Detector's alarm and trouble contact status. UL listed to Standard 2075 Standard for Gas and Vapor Detectors and Sensors.
2. Unit to be powered by the fire alarm system non-resettable 24 VDC supervised power supply.
3. Electro-chemical CO detection.
4. Integral 85db local alarm with local hush/test switch for silence or test.
5. Alarm contacts and trouble contacts for detector trouble, loss of power, and end of life.

M. Auxiliary AHU Relays: Air Products model MR-101C relays shall be provided for HVAC and AHU control and interface. Relays shall be heavy-duty type with contacts rated up to 10 amps at 120V AC, 60 HZ. Relays shall be provided with NEMA I dust cover assembly and be provided with DPDT contacts as well as activated LED indicator.

N. Voltage sensing relays: Addressable control modules for voltage sensing relay interface shall be FCM-1.

O. Monitor Module:
1. Addressable monitor modules shall be provided where required to interface to contact alarm devices.
2. The monitor module shall provide address-setting means electronically and automatically at the control panel. A status/alarm LED shall be provided which shall indicate that the monitor module is operational and in regular communication with the control panel, and indicate detection of an alarm condition.

P. Control Module
1. Control/relay modules shall be provided where required to provide audible alarm interface and/or relay control interface. The control module may be optionally wired as dry contact (form C) relay.
2. The control module shall provide address-setting means electronically and automatically at the control panel. A status/alarm LED shall be provided which shall indicate that the control module is operational and in regular communication with the control panel and indicate when the device is actuated via the fire alarm control panel.

Q. Auxiliary Interface Points: All auxiliary input points (fire suppression hoods, water flow,

fire pump, AHU shut-down points, tamper switches, fire extinguishing systems etc.) shall be connected as required, and addressed as a separate initiating point of annunciation at the fire alarm panel and any remote annunciator as required.

R. Water flow switches / Valve supervisory switches shall be provided and installed by the fire protection contractor and connected by the fire alarm contractor. Wiring of these field devices to the fire alarm system shall be the responsibility of the fire alarm contractor. It is the responsibility of this contractor to ensure the proper function of the system. Each fire protection zone (flow switch) and (Valve switch) shall be addressed electronically and automatically at the control panel as a separate point of annunciation at the fire alarm panel. Coordinate exact location with fire protection contractor and civil drawings.

S. Silent Knight SK-IP-2UD IP communicator command interface gateway for remote monitoring and control:
   1. Intelligent gateway interface for HISD's remote Honeywell VisorAlarm Plus fire monitoring workstation. Interface gateway shall facilitate complete monitoring and control of a networked fire alarm panel software and programming and network diagnostics.

**2.5 VESDA – VERY EARLY WARNING ASPIRATING SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEM**

A. Approved Manufacturers:
   1. System Sensor (FASAST) – Detection devices for Cooler / Freezer areas 200 square feet or larger, atriums / high ceiling areas with difficult access.
   2. Xtralis (VESDA) – Detection devices for Cooler / Freezer areas 200 square feet or larger, atriums / high ceiling areas with difficult access.

B. The system shall consist of highly sensitive LASER-based Smoke Detectors with aspirators connected to networks of sampling pipes, intelligent filtration arrangement with fail-safe operation, sub-sampling probe (inertial separator), built-in clean air zero capability, local USB configuration port and Ethernet networking port. VESDA detection system shall be networked with the specified Notifier Fire Alarm Control Panel.

C. Design Requirements
   1. The system shall consist of an air sampling pipe network to transport air to the detection system, supported by calculations from a computer-based design modeling tool.
   2. It shall be tested and approved to cover up to 2,000$m^2$ (20,000 sq.ft).
   3. It shall have a built-in simple user interface indicating alarm and fault status and include a reset / disable button.
   4. It shall provide absolute smoke detection.
   5. It shall be approved to provide very early warning smoke detection and provide four alarm levels corresponding to Alert, Action, Fire 1 and Fire 2. These levels shall be programmable and able to be set at sensitivities ranging from 0.05-20% obs/m (0.016–6.4% obs/ft.).
   6. The detector shall be specifically designed for industrial applications.

7. It shall consist of a highly sensitive LASER-based smoke detector with in-field clean air zero capability, aspirator, intelligent filter and secondary filter.
8. It shall be modular, with field replaceable detection chamber, aspirator, intelligent filter and secondary filter.
9. It shall have four pipe inlets for sample air.
10. It shall incorporate per pipe ultrasonic flow monitoring and provide staged airflow faults.
11. It shall have a built-in and field replaceable intelligent filter placed after the flow monitoring circuitry.
12. Intelligent filter shall:
    a. Dilute the sampled air for prolonged detector life.
    b. Combine sample air from all pipe inlets.
    c. Divide sampled air into filtered clean air and unfiltered air before mixing them together.
    d. Use HEPA filter with more than 99% efficiency for filtered clean air i.e. removing more than 99% of contaminant particles of 0.1microns or larger, to provide clean air for dilution.
    e. Use a mesh/screen for the unfiltered air for protection against lint type of particles.
    f. Be fail-safe and supervised for correct operation with built-in capability to alert for when replacement is required.
    g. Maintain consistent detector sensitivity over time.
    h. Have ultrasonic airflow monitoring of the unfiltered sampled air through the intelligent filter.
13. It shall have a field replaceable aspirator after the intelligent filter where the diluted sampled air flows through the aspirator prolonging its life.
14. The aspirator shall be a purpose-designed rotary vane air pump. It shall be capable of allowing for multiple sampling pipe runs up to 360m (1,200ft) in total, (4 pipe runs per detector) with a transport time per applicable local codes.
15. It shall have a sub-sampling probe (inertial separator) after the aspirator for reduced dust intake in to the detection chamber.
16. It shall have a secondary foam filter after the sub-sampling probe (inertial separator) where the sub-sampled air flows through the foam filter prolonging detection chamber life. The foam filter shall be capable of filtering particles in excess of 20 microns from the sampled air.
17. It shall have a field replaceable smoke detection chamber which stores the calibration values with the chamber assembly.
18. It shall have capability for in-field clean air zero to provide absolute smoke detection.
19. It shall have capability to measure blockages in the air path in to or out of the detection chamber.
20. It shall have an enclosure rating of IP54.
21. The detector shall allow for direct wall mounting or using a supplied mounting plate.
22. It may be inverted as required in specific applications.
23. It shall be self-monitoring for filter contamination.

24. It shall be configured via local USB port with Ethernet port for remote monitoring.

25. It shall have Fire and Fault relay outputs in addition to three configurable relays. The relays shall be software programmable to the required functions and must be rated at 2 AMP at 30 VDC.
26. It shall have at least one general purpose input (GPI).
27. It shall have Power In and Power Out connections to allow powering more than one detector from one power supply.
28. Optional equipment may include a dedicated Xtralis VSM graphics package.
29. It shall report any fault on the unit by using configurable fault relay outputs or via PC based configuration and monitoring system.
30. The detector shall have built-in event and smoke logging. It shall store smoke levels, alarm conditions, operator actions and faults. The date and time of each event shall be recorded. Each detector (zone) shall be capable of storing up to 18,000 events.

D. Programming Requirements

Using either USB or Ethernet port the detector shall allow programming of:

1. IP address and related fields to support Ethernet based networking
2. Four smoke threshold alarm levels
3. Time delays
4. Configurable relay outputs for remote indication of detector conditions
5. Holidays and day/night changeover times
6. Major and minor airflow fault limits
7. Aspirator speed
8. General purpose input function
9. Alarm and fault latching

E. Sampling Pipe

1. The sampling pipe shall be smooth bore. Normally, pipe with an outside diameter (OD) of 25mm or 1.05” and internal diameter (ID) of 21mm or ¾” should be used.
2. The pipe material should be suitable for the environment in which it is installed. VESDA pipe material shall be UL 1887 Plenum rated CPVC).
3. All joints in the sampling pipe must be air tight and made by using solvent cement, except at entry to the detector.
4. The pipe shall be identified as Air Sampling/Aspirating Smoke Detector Pipe along its entire length at regular intervals not exceeding the manufacturer’s recommendation or that of local codes and standards.
5. All pipes shall be supported at not less than 1.5m (5ft) centres, or that of the local codes or standards.
6. The far end of each trunk or branch pipe shall be fitted with an end-cap and made air-tight by using solvent cement. Use of an end-cap will be dependent on ASPIRE2 calculations.

F. Sampling Holes

1. Sampling holes shall not be separated by more than allowed for conventional point detectors as required by 30 feet as local codes and standards. Intervals

may vary according to calculations. For NFPA the maximum allowable distance is 30ft.

2. Each sampling point port shall be identified in accordance with Codes or Standards.
3. Provide per manufacturer's recommendations and standards in relation to the number of sampling points and the distance of the sampling points from the ceiling or roof structure and forced ventilation systems.
4. Sample port size shall be as specified by ASPIRE2 calculations.

G. Detection Alarm Levels:

The laser based ASD system shall have four (4) independently programmable alarm thresholds. The four alarm levels may be used as follows:

Alarm Level 1 (Alert)

Activate a visual and audible alarm in the fire risk area.

Alarm Level 2 (Action)

Activate the electrical/electronic equipment shutdown relay and activate visual and audible alarms in the Security Office or other appropriate location.

Alarm Level 3 (Fire 1)

Activate an alarm condition in the Fire Alarm Control Panel to call the Fire Monitoring Service and activate all warning systems.

Alarm Level 4 (Fire 2)

Activate a suppression system and/or other suitable countermeasures.

The alarm level functions as listed are possible scenarios. Program as directed by Owner to the best utilization of these facilities for each application and the requirements of local A.H.J.

H. Initial Detection Alarm Settings

1. Alarm Level 1 (Alert) 0.2% obs/m (0.064% obs/ft.)
2. Alarm Level 2 (Action) 0.3% obs/m (0.096% obs/ft.)
3. Alarm Level 3 (Fire 1) 0.40% obs/m (0.128% obs/ft.)
4. Alarm Level 4 (Fire 2) 2.0% obs/m (0.64% obs/ft.)

I. Initial (factory default) Alarm Delay Thresholds

Initial (factory default) settings for the alarm delay threshold shall be:

1. Alarm Level 1 (Alert) 10 seconds
2. Alarm Level 2 (Action) 10 seconds
3. Alarm Level 3 (Fire 1) 10 seconds
4. Alarm Level 4 (Fire 2) 10 seconds

J. Fault Alarms: The Detector Fault relay shall be connected to the appropriate alarm zone on the Fire Alarm Control Panel (FACP) in such a way that a Detector Fault would register a fault condition on the FACP. The Minor Fault and Isolate relays shall also be connected to the appropriate control system. Provide as required by local Codes, Standards or Regulations.

K. Power Supply and Batteries: The system shall be powered from a regulated supply of nominally 24V DC. The battery charger and battery shall comply with the relevant

Codes, Standards or Regulations. Typically 24 hours standby battery backup is required followed by 30 minutes in an alarm condition.

1. UL 1481 Listed -provided the power supply and standby batteries have been appropriately sized / rated to accommodate the system's power requirements.
2. Provide 120-volt 20-amp circuit from the life safety branch panel to each power supply.

**2.6 AUXILIARY EQUIPMENT MONITORING**

A. The fire alarm system shall monitor the status of the following equipment when provided as part of this project. A failed status shall activate the trouble alarm.
   1. Emergency generator: Run Status
   2. Emergency generator: Trouble Signal
   3. Fire Pump: Run Status
   4. Fire Pump: Trouble Signal

**2.7 MAGNETIC DOOR HOLDERS, AUTOMATIC FIRE DOORS / SHUTTERS, AND SECURITY GRILLES AND INTERIOR SPACE CONTROLLED ACCESS EGRESS DOORS WITH AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY EGRESS ELECTRIC LOCK EMERGENCY RELEASE**

A. Magnetic fire door hold open devices, interface for automatic roll down fire doors/shutters, and interface for security grilles and controlled access egress doors with emergency egress shall be provided. Coordinate with Division 8 and Architectural Drawings for exact location.

B. The operation of any alarm in the fire alarm system shall cause the following:
   1. Release of the magnetic fire door holding devices, permitting the fire doors to be closed by the door closer.
   2. Permit the automatic roll down fire doors/shutters to close automatically.
   3. Permit the security grilles with emergency egress to open automatically.
   4. Unlock the electrically controlled access doors in all interior spaces.

C. The magnetic door holders, automatic roll down fire doors/shutters, security grilles, and interior electrically controlled access doors with emergency egress, shall be associated with two smoke detectors located on the ceiling with one on either side of the fire door/shutter, security grille opening, or interior egress path electrically controlled door. The operation of either of these detectors shall also cause the magnetic holder to release the fire door, the automatic fire door/shutter to close, and the security grille with emergency egress to open.

D. The operation of smoke detectors associated with a magnetic door holder, automatic roll down fire door, security grille, or electrically controlled access door shall transmit a pre-alarm signal to the fire alarm panel.

**2.8 REMOTE ALPHA-NUMERIC DISPLAY ANNUNCIATORS**

A. Remote alpha-numeric annunciator(s) to annunciate all system events and duplicate the

displayed status at the main FACP. The annunciator(s) shall be an alphanumeric display similar to the main FACP and operate via the system RS485 or RS232 serial output terminal from the main FACP. The unit shall operate from FACP 24VDC power and function during system power failure while the system resides on standby batteries. The remote annunciator(s) shall include:

1. Integral time-date clock
2. System reset
3. System silence
4. System acknowledge
5. Display/step switch
6. Integral trouble buzzer
7. LCD contrast adjust
8. Fire Drill Operation
9. Owner's list of all additional remote annunciator control buttons.

B. Annunciator shall upon command display the first system alarm, last alarm, and system alarm count. The following primary controls shall be visible through a front access panel:

1. 80 character alphanumeric display, LCD, LED, or gas plasma
2. Individual red system alarm LED
3. Individual yellow supervisory service LED
4. Individual yellow trouble LED
5. Green "POWER ON" LED
6. Alarm acknowledge key
7. Trouble acknowledge key
8. Alarm silence key
9. System reset key
10. LED test

**2.9 REMOTE PAGING UNIT**

A. Remote all-call paging unit or to activate one of the pre-recorded messages over the speaker circuits.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

**3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

A. Installation shall include the delivery, storage, setting in place, fastening to the building structure, interconnection of the system components, alignment, adjustment and all other work, whether or not expressly specified, which is necessary to result in a tested and operational system.

B. All installation practices shall be in accordance with, but not limited to, the specifications and drawings. Installation shall be performed in accordance with the applicable standards, requirements and recommendations of NFPA 72 and the National Electrical Code and any authorities having jurisdiction. Proper protection against corrosion shall be provided on all electrical equipment in accordance with the

requirements of the National Electrical Code. The installation shall conform to all manufacturers' recommendations.

C. All equipment shall be firmly secured in place unless requirements of portability dictate otherwise. Fastenings and support shall be adequate to support their loads with a safety factor of at least three.

D. All boxes, equipment, etc., shall be plumb and square. The contractor must take such precautions as are necessary to prevent and guard against electrostatic hum, to supply adequate ventilation, and to install the equipment to provide reasonable safety for the operator.

E. Visual displays, GUIs, or other indicators for main fire alarm panel and all remote annunciators shall be at maximum 66 inches AFF.

F. All remote booster and associated equipment panels shall be mounted with top of enclosure maximum 66 inches AFF.

G. In the installation of equipment and cables, coordinate with Architectural drawings for possible conflicts with millwork, casework, marker boards, furniture, lockers, etc., and notify the architect of any discrepancies. Verify modifications before proceeding with installation.

H. Mount end-of-line resistor for each box circuit in backbox located at the last manual alarm station or automatic initiating device in a circuit. Mark device accordingly in the field.

I. Provide three dedicated Cat 6 cables from MDF/IDF to fire alarm panel. Cable shall be installed in 3/4" conduit. Two cables for phone POT lines and one Ethernet data connection.

J. Upright and/or Wall Post-Indicating Valve: Provide conduit and wiring from fire alarm control panel to post-indicating valve if electronically supervised, coordinate exact location of PIV with fire sprinkler contractor prior to rough-in. Coordinate final location with Civil Drawings and Fire Protection Contractor. Where equipment is located inside a vault, stub required conduit inside vault, turn up and cap.

K. Contractor shall submit on completion of system verification, a point-by-point check list indicating the date and time of each item inspected and issue a certificate confirming that the inspection has been completed and the system is installed and functioning in accordance with the Specifications prior to date of substantial completion.

L. Provide remote alphanumeric display annunciators in the administrative area in constantly attended area, as required by the local AHJ, and additional annunciators where indicated on the drawings as directed by Architect / Owner.

M. Alarm devices shall be ceiling mounted unless indicated specifically otherwise. Alarm

devices in Mechanical, Electrical, Communications, IDF / MDF Rooms and Central Plant shall be wall mounted and coordinated with other equipment, piping and ductwork.

N. Provide combination speaker strobes. Provide strobe only alarms when additional speaker placement will compromise voice intelligibility. Provide horn/strobes in coolers and freezers.

O. Detectors shall be installed per NFPA 90A and be listed with the fire alarm control panel.

P. Auxiliary Equipment Monitoring Wiring and connection to equipment shall be the responsibility of the fire alarm contractor.

Q. Power for magnetic door holders shall be provided from the nearest receptacle circuit wired through fire alarm relay.

R. Smoke detectors shall be mounted to a 4-inch octagon box with hanger bar or with box secured to building structure.

S. Provide power via 120-volt, 20-Amp dedicated circuits with lock-on provisions at the respective circuit breaker for the main fire alarm control panel, each panel extender and each remote power supply at no additional cost to the Owner. The complete fire alarm system shall be powered under emergency power when emergency life safety power is available at the project site. When emergency life safety power is not available at the project site, power shall originate from the nearest available 120-volt panel. Label 120V circuit origination (i.e.: “120-Volt Circuit ELA-3”)

T. Provide smoke detectors in the following locations:
   1. All paths of egress and adjoining spaces within the same HVAC envelope including but not limited to: corridors, hallways, stairs, lobbies, and elevator landings.
   2. At each electrical room, telecommunications/data room, elevator machine room, kiln room, and mechanical room not subject to un-treated or un-filtered outside air.
   3. At each computer lab/room.
   4. At each library, library office and library ancillary areas.
   5. At each storage room, stock room, or warehouse space.
   6. At each pre-K and kindergarten classrooms.
   7. At nurse’s area/clinic and patient care/cot areas.
   8. At each men’s and women’s restroom/toilet
   9. At each administrative work room or copy room.
   10. At each student toilet / restroom. Provide STI protective cover. Do not locate over plumbing fixtures or near partitions.
   11. At each special needs, life skills, adaptive behavior, developmental classrooms or similar designated areas without food preparation or cooking equipment.

U. Provide heat/thermal detectors in the following locations:
   1. At each electrical room, telecommunications/data room, elevator machine

room and mechanical room subject to un-treated or un-filtered outside air.
2. At each janitor's/custodial closets and laundry rooms.
3. At each commercial kitchen and adjoining storage rooms; at each food preparation area.
4. At each employee break room/lounge.
5. At each vocational shop.
6. At each science, physics, chemistry, or biology classroom and their associated preparation and storage rooms.
7. At each special needs, life skills, adaptive behavior, developmental classrooms or similar designated areas with food preparation or cooking equipment.

V. Provide carbon monoxide detection and smoke detection devices in all areas designated as day-care for minors.

W. Provide duct smoke detectors in all air handling units with air volumes of 2,000 cfm or larger.

X. Provide duct smoke detectors on outside air units only as required by local Code and / or A.H.J.

Y. Provide VESDA type detectors at the following locations when appropriate:
1. Atriums to avoid exposed conduits.
2. High ceiling areas 25 feet and higher where maintenance of spot type detectors will be difficult.
3. Skylights to avoid exposed conduits.
4. Coolers/Freezers 200 square feet and larger.

Z. Provide manual pull stations at each exterior exit and at each exit from all floors. Provide one manual pull station at the central reception area as directed by Architect/Owner.

AA Provide weatherproof exterior audio/visual alarm devices mounted on the building at the exact location as directed by Architect:
1. Main entry.
2. Courtyards and outdoor assembly areas adjacent to the building.
3. Mechanical yards adjacent to the building.
4. Covered playgrounds or covered assembly areas adjacent to the building.
5. Additional locations where indicated on drawings.
6. Outdoor paved play areas.

BB. Provide audio and visual alarm devices in all areas normally occupied by students or minors and all common use areas.

**3.2 CABLE AND BOXES INSTALLATION**

A. All fire alarm wiring to be red. All fire alarm circuits shall be identified at each termination and at each 25 feet between terminations. Minimum 18 AWG wire size for

data communications, minimum 14 AWG wire size for alarm circuits. Provide minimum 24 inch service loop for every device.

B. All circuits shall be protected to avoid interruption of service due to short-circuiting or other conditions, which might adversely affect the connected devices. Each individual signaling circuit shall be classified as a circuit pair.

C. All cabling in racks, cabinets and junction boxes shall be neatly strapped, dressed and adequately supported. Cable installation shall conform to good engineering practices and to the standards of the National Electrical Code.

D. Cables shall be terminated with the proper connector required for the associated operation of the equipment to which it is connected. Screw terminal blocks shall be furnished for all cables, which interface with racks, cabinets, consoles or equipment modules.

E. All cables within a rack, console or junction box shall be grouped according to the signals being carried to reduce signal contamination.

F. Where shielded conductors enter a panel or enclosure, and where power wiring exists, provision shall be made to provide physical isolation of signal and power conductors.

G. Supply and install all fittings and accessories whether or not they are specified, required for proper, safe and reliable operation of the system.

H. All wire shall be installed in an approved conduit/raceway system (except where permitted by NEC and the local authority having jurisdiction). Maximum conduit fill shall not exceed 40%.

I. Minimum conduit size shall be 3/4" EMT with insulated bushings. Install conduit per engineered shop drawings. All conduit terminations in all boxes shall have insulated bushings, and shall enter or exit the panel from the top only.

J. Systems utilizing open wiring techniques with low smoke plenum cable shall provide conduit in all inaccessible locations, inside concealed walls, all mechanical/electrical rooms, or other areas where wiring might be exposed to view and or subject to damage.

K. All vertical wiring and all main trunk/riser wiring shall be installed in a complete raceway/conduit system. All riser boxes shall be adequately sized for the number of conductors transversing the respective box as well as the number of terminations required.

L. All junction boxes containing fire alarm wiring are to be painted red and labeled.

M. All plenum wiring is to be installed parallel and perpendicular to the building structure. Cable shall be bundled with plenum rated cable zip ties on a maximum of 2'-6". Install cable in D-ring hangers, secured to the structure at a maximum of 5' on center. Cable

shall not lie on ceiling grid or ceiling tiles, light fixtures, piping, ductwork, or foreign equipment.

N. The system ground is to be connected to the local ground bus. Under no conditions shall the AC neutral either in a power panel or in receptacle outlets be used for a reference ground.

O. All wiring shall be in accordance with NFPA 72, the National Electrical Code, and Local Codes. All wiring sizes shall conform to recommendations of the equipment manufacturer, and as indicated on the engineered shop drawings.

P. All wire shall be UL Listed FPL for limited energy (300V) and fire alarm applications and shall be installed in conduit. Limited energy FPLP or MPP wire may be run open in return air ceiling plenums provided such wire is UL Listed for such applications and is of the low smoke producing fluorocarbon type and complies with NEC Article 760 and approved by the local authority having jurisdiction.

Q. No other wiring shall be bundled with or run in the same conduit as fire alarm wiring.

**3.3 FINISHES**

A. Main Fire Alarm Panel color shall be approved by Owner / Architect.

**3.4 ALARM SYSTEM SEQUENCE OF OPERATION**

A. General:
1. All fire alarm circuits shall be electrically supervised.
2. Automatic response functions shall be accomplished by the first device initiated. Alarm functions resulting from initiation by the first device shall not be altered by subsequent alarms. An alarm signal shall be the highest priority. A pre-alarm signal shall have second priority and supervisory or trouble signals shall have third and fourth level priority. Signals of a higher level priority shall take precedence over signals of lower priority even though the lower priority condition occurred first.

B. Fire alarm operating sequences shall be as follows:
1. Activation of any automatic detector, manual station, or sprinkler flow switch shall cause the location of alarm to be identified in an audible and visual manner at the building fire alarm control panel (FACP), and shall initiate the following events:
   a. The system common alarm LED on the CPU Module shall flash. The internal audible trouble device shall sound. Acknowledging the alarm condition shall silence the audible trouble device and revert the flashing common alarm LED to a steady state.
   b. The alphanumeric display shall indicate all applicable information associated with the alarm/trouble condition including: device location based on actual room graphic name and number (not architectural plan

names and numbers), device type, and time of alarm. Location and zoning messages shall be custom field programmed to respective premises. Provide abbreviations when required to fit the alarm panel's display format (verify exact requirements with Owner). Below are some examples which first indicate the physical location of the device hardware – then the TYPE of device at the end of the descriptor label:

1) "Corr 1100 at Rm 1102 - SMOKE" (at Room number shall be the nearest room door to the device).
2) "Corr 1200 at Rm 1203 - PULL STATION" (at Room number shall be the nearest room door to the device).
3) "Mech Rm 1352 AHU-11 - DUCT SMOKE"
4) "Mech Rm 1467 - WATERFLOW SWITCH"
5) "Mech Rm 1589 - TAMPER SWITCH"
6) "Kitchen 1623 - HOOD FIRE SUPPRESSION SYSTEM"
7) "MDF 1733 - DAS RADIO POWER SUPPLY"
8) "Mech 1855 for Atrium 1863 - VESDA SMOKE"

c. Any remote or local annunciator LED's associated with the alarm point shall be illuminated as herein specified.

d. The remote signaling connection shall be activated relaying the alarm signal to an approved central station (central station connection and service provided by Owner). Point ID and descriptor must be sent and received.

e. All automatic events programmed to the alarm point shall be executed and the associated indicating devices and/or outputs activated.

f. De-activate local sound reinforcement systems that are not UL listed nor integrated with the fire alarm system control panel for providing fire alarm or mass notification instructions. Building wide public address systems shall remain active only for manual mass notification. Public address system auxiliary audio inputs used for background music or other remote non-emergency audio sources shall be silenced to only allow priority level manual mass notification using the public address system.

g. Activate all audible/visual alarm devices. Where prerecorded voice announcement is required or specified, the prerecorded announcement shall be preceded with attention tone(s), followed by the approved prerecorded announcement and continue in a cycle until the system is reset. Manual voice announcement shall interrupt the prerecorded cycle and the prerecorded cycle shall resume automatically after three minutes.

h. De-activate all HVAC systems.

i. De-energize the kitchen hood supply/exhaust fans as required by local authority having jurisdiction.

j. Close all related smoke dampers.

k. Close all related smoke/fire dampers.

l. Release all magnetic door hold open devices.

m. Release the electric strike, unlocking, but not unlatching, locked doors controlled by an access control system.

n. Release Counter Shutters and hold-open devices on all fire and smoke doors.
o. Open all security grilles with emergency egress.
p. Activate to close all related fire and smoke doors and shutters.
q. Activate signaling connection to the elevator as required by the local authority having jurisdiction.
r. Signal the building automation system and security system, and Owner's security/police personnel as directed by Owner/Architect. The audible alarms shall be inhibited from being silenced for a period of 3 minutes after commencing operation unless alarm is acknowledged, and appropriate action has been taken.
s. Activate automatic recall operation of elevators as required by local authority having jurisdiction.

2. Activation of duct mounted smoke detector on the HVAC equipment, or a smoke detector mounted in the return/supply air stream of any fan shall shut down all units as required by NFPA. The activation of one of these detectors shall send an alarm signal to the control panel and also initiate the Alarm Sequence of Operation.
3. Activation of a control valve supervisory switch shall initiate the following events:
   a. The activation of any sprinkler valve supervisory (tamper) switch shall activate the system supervisory service audible signal and illuminate the LED at the building fire alarm control panel (FACP). Differentiation between valve tamper activation and opens and/or grounds on the initiation circuit wiring shall be provided.
   b. Activation of a sprinkler system control valve supervisory switch shall not prevent the events listed under Article 3.4.
   c. Restoring the valve to the normal position shall cause the supervisory service audible signal to pulse, indicating the restoration to normal position. The supervisory service reset key shall be provided to silence the audible signal.
4. Activation of the smoke detector and heat detector in the elevator machine room and at top of elevator shaft shall cause the elevators' controllers to be tripped by way of the shut trip breaker, and shall also initiate the events listed under Article 3.4.
5. Any subsequent fire alarm shall reactivate the alarm indicating appliances and activate the respective control sequences described above.
6. Upon silencing the alarm, all visible alarm devices shall remain active until system reset and all local sound reinforcement systems de-activated by the fire alarm system shall resume normal operation.
7. Upon reset of the fire alarm control panel, HVAC units shall be capable of being started, and resume normal operation.

C. Activation of the manual evacuation (drill) switch shall operate the alarm indicating appliances and de-activate local sound reinforcement system without causing other control circuits to be activated. However, should true alarm occur, all alarm functions should occur as described.

D. ALARM VERIFICATION shall be field programmed for each respective detector. Global verification will not be acceptable. The verification sequence is activated after a "check" procedure and the panel will wait a field programmable delay period (0-50 seconds) then proceed to re-sample the detector for continued presence of smoke. If the alarm condition still exists or a non-verified device is actuated during the verification period, the system will then initiate all alarm sequences specified herein. The system shall incorporate the ability to log in memory the number of verification events that have occurred for each selected device.

**3.5 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION**

A. Each panel or equipment enclosure shall be provided with a permanently engraved or embossed or silkscreen identification and information tags. The tags shall include the following information:
   1. Name of manufacturer.
   2. Manufacturer's equipment description.
   3. Serial number and model number.
   4. Voltage and current rating.
   5. Power circuit source identification with panel name and circuit number.
   6. Additional labeling inside panels: Provide stick-on label with white background indicating installation date (MM/DD/YY) on each battery.

B. All addressable devices shall be labeled with point and module number. Provide label maker style label on base of device. Provide additional address label on exterior of duct detector housings in addition to label on the duct detector component inside. Verify exact requirements with Owner.

C. All alarm notification devices and end of line resistors shall be labeled with their alarm circuit number and panel name.

**3.6 SPARE PARTS AND TOOLS**

A. Interchangeable Parts: All spare parts furnished shall be directly interchangeable with the corresponding components of the installed system. Spare parts shall be packaged and identified by nameplate, tagging, or stamping. Spare parts shall be delivered to the site in unopened cartons for storage as directed by the Owner.

B. Spare Parts: Provide minimum of two, or 5% of building total, whichever is greater unless noted otherwise.
   1. Spare shut down modules
   2. Spare detectors of each type in the system
   3. Spare alarm indicating devices of each type in the system
   4. Spare manual pull stations
   5. Spare protective covers of each type in the system.
   6. Spare relays/controls required for connection to smoke and fire/smoke dampers
   7. Devices listed above are to be installed as directed by Architect/Engineer or

local code authorities at no additional cost to the Owner. Unused spare parts are to be parts for Owner's cabinet.

C. Furnish one handheld diagnostic and programming tool, unused, in original manufacturer sealed shipping box to Owner, for Owner's use only.

D. Provide two copies of the final software programmed into the fire alarm system.

E. Parts list: Furnish a list, in duplicate, of all other parts and accessories the manufacturer of the system recommends to be stocked for maintenance.

**3.7 KEYS**

A. Keys and locks for all equipment shall be identical. Provide not less than six keys of each type required. Identify keys by an appropriate number stamped on each key or on a metal tag attached thereto. Provide a key numbering chart in each operation and maintenance manual furnished.

**3.8 SMOKE DAMPERS AND FIRE/SMOKE DAMPERS**

A. Smoke dampers and combination fire/smoke dampers shall be controlled by an automatic alarm initiating device. Smoke dampers installed to isolate the air handling system shall be arranged to close automatically when the system is in alarm.

B. Coordinate motor operator voltage with supplier.

C. Open all dampers prior to starting air handling equipment.

D. Provide 120V power from nearest general purpose 20A receptacle circuit as required, or as noted otherwise.

**3.9 GRAPHIC FLOOR PLANS FOR AHJ SITE PERMITTING INSPECTION AND OWNER USE**

A. It is the intent of these specifications that the fire alarm system shall pass AHJ inspection on the first try. The fire alarm system shall be fully functional, commissioned, and mapped both on fire alarm graphic maps and fire alarm annunciator device descriptions to fully and correctly described the device type and detailed location. Provide color coded floor plans detailed with project name, actual room names, actual graphic room numbers as directed by the Owner and adequate information to direct people to the fire alarm devices in alarm and to exits with non-fading floor plan media. Do not use architectural plan room names and numbers. Fire alarm maps shall include all relevant building information and fire alarm device information as required for the local AHJ permitting site walk-through inspection.

B. Each plan shall clearly relate the room numbers on the annunciator to the area description on the floor plan. All fire alarm devices located to correspond with the annunciator. Indicate location of all end-of-line resistors.

C. Provide two color coded floor plans for Owner's use that shall be solvent welded in acrylic plastic.
   1. Mount in an extruded aluminum frame next to the main fire alarm control panel and annunciator in main office. Minimum size 30x42 inches. Coordinate exact location with Architect / Owner.
   2. Provide a minimum 11 x 17 inch graphic print of building showing all rooms by graphic room numbers. Print shall show all detectors, major equipment and active detection devices. Print shall be framed in an extruded aluminum frame (24"x36") with clear plastic cover. Graphic shall be prepared in AutoCad version 2014 or newer. Data file (xxx.dwg) of graphic shall be provided as a part of the project.

D. Install graphic floor plans as directed by Architect/Owner prior to substantial completion. Each area or room designation shall be verified with the fire alarm device during testing.

**3.10 OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS**

A. Coordinate with Owner for appropriate off-site monitoring service and communication technology to be used. Provide all necessary programming for interfacing with the Owner's on-site and off-site remote signaling receiving station, including programming of descriptors and addresses at the receiving station.

B. Provide Fire Alarm System Operating Instructions for the following items including, but not limited to:
   1. Alarm Signal
      a. How to open panel door
      b. What to read and follow the instruction on display
      c. How to acknowledge alarm
      d. How to silence the signals
      e. How and when to reset the system
      f. How to return system to normal operation
   2. Trouble / Supervisory
      a. How to open panel door.
      b. What to read and follow the instruction on display
      c. How to acknowledge trouble condition
      d. Appropriate personnel to respond

C. Provide laminated instructions in extruded aluminum frame. Mount adjacent to the Fire Alarm Control Panel and remote annunciator panel(s) for ready reference.

**3.11 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS**

A. The contractor is to ensure all areas of the building are covered with visual and audio alarm devices for occupant notification of a fire alarm, including remote portable or temporary buildings.

B. Coordinate door hold devices with door and door hardware.

C. Provide interface with and coordinate shunt-trip circuit breakers and control devices with kitchen hood fire control systems and elevator equipment.

D. Alarm circuit power supplies and circuiting shall be designed and installed to accept an additional five (5) 110cd visual devices for future expansion. The initial design shall not exceed 70% of the rated power supply and circuit capability.

E. Provide programming or re-programming of all hot keys as directed by Owner including, but not limited to, fire drill, AHU shutdown bypass, horn/strobe disable, elevator test.

F. Provide one dedicated alarm circuit booster panel and audio amplifier for (future) portable (temporary) building(s) at designated portable building location, at exit door to portable building location.

G. Provide programming of HISD's existing remote Notifier ONYXWorks or Honeywell VisorAlarm workstation. Provide programming of the command interface gateway for remote monitoring and control of the fire alarm panel(s). Provide programming and electronic floor plans of the building for the Graphic User Interface (GUI) at the existing workstation. Provide network connectivity, LAN data drop(s), and all required associated hardware can cabling for remote monitoring and control of the fire alarm panel.

H. Provide programming of HISD's existing remote Notifier ONYXWorks workstation. Provide programming of the ONYXWorks command interface gateway for remote monitoring and control of the fire alarm panel(s). Provide programming and electronic floor plans of the building for the Graphic User Interface (GUI) at the existing workstation. Provide network connectivity, LAN data drop(s), and all required associated hardware can cabling for remote monitoring and control of the fire alarm panel.

**3.12 COMMISSIONING THE SYSTEM**

A. The installing contractor shall be responsible for verifying that each component of the system is fully operational and in conformity with the specifications. He shall also be responsible for insuring that all elements function together as a system in accordance with the specifications.

B. A state licensed NICET II minimum and factory trained technical representative of the manufacturer shall supervise the final control panel connections and testing of the system. Upon completion of the acceptance tests, the owner and/or his representatives shall be instructed in the proper operation of the system.

C. The installing contractor shall functionally test each and every device in the entire system for proper operation and response. Field testing shall include voice intelligibility as required by the latest edition of NFPA 72 Any items found not properly installed or non-functioning shall be replaced or repaired and retested. The final test indicating a

fully functional fire alarm system shall be recorded and an electronic Excel and printed copy submitted to the Architect, Engineer and Owner.

D. The installing contractor shall provide a complete written report in electronic form and printout of the functional test and intelligibility test of the entire system. A copy of the test report shall be provided with the Maintenance and Operation Manuals. The test report shall be signed and dated by the licensed fire alarm superintendent responsible for supervising the final system test and checkout. This test shall be witnessed and accepted by the Owner two weeks prior to testing for the local Fire Marshall to allow time to make corrections, prior to testing for the AHJ.

E. After the Owner has accepted the fire alarm system, the installing contractor's fire alarm superintendent shall test the entire system in the presence of the local authorities having jurisdiction. The contractor shall be responsible for making any changes, adjustments, or corrections, as may be required by the local authorities. The Contractor shall affix his certification label and installation certificate to the interior of the main fire alarm control panel. This test shall not be used to de-bug or correct deficiencies of the system.

F. The testing and Owner's acceptance shall be performed within 30 days after the fire alarm installation is completed. The test shall be performed by a minimum of two qualified fire alarm system technicians acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction. The test which is a comprehensive 100 percent inspection and test of all fire alarm system equipment shall include the following:
   1. Fire alarm control equipment: a visual and functional test of the fire alarm control and auxiliary control equipment.
   2. A visual inspection shall be conducted to establish that all electrical connections and equipment, as required, are properly installed and operating.
   3. A functional fault simulation test shall be conducted on all relevant field wiring terminations to ensure that wiring is properly supervised as required.
   4. Indicators shall be tested to ensure proper function and operation.
   5. Control panel auxiliary functions shall be functionally tested to verify proper operation.
   6. Control panel supervisory and alarm current readings shall be taken to verify that the control panel has the appropriate power supplies and standby batteries to operate the system as required. A three-minute general alarm stress test, both under AC power and standby power, shall be conducted to further ensure complete operation of the system.
   7. Fire alarm peripheral devices; All fire alarm peripheral devices shall be functionally tested and the location and testing information recorded for each device.
   8. Manual initiating devices:
      a. Each manual fire alarm station shall be functionally tested for alarm operation.
      b. Each manual fire alarm station shall be functionally tested for proper wiring supervision.
   9. Automatic initiating devices:

a. Each automatic initiating device shall be activated in accordance with manufacturer's instructions to ensure proper operation.
b. Each automatic initiating device shall be functionally tested for proper wiring supervision.
c. Each automatic initiating device shall be inspected to ensure proper placement and mounting as required by specifications.

10. Alarm signaling devices:
    a. Each alarm signaling device shall be tested and decibel reading taken at 10' from the device and recorded to ensure proper operation. Each area's voice alarm signaling devices shall be tested for intelligibility.
    b. Each alarm signaling device shall be functionally tested for proper wiring supervision.
    c. Decibel reading shall be taken to ensure that the alarm signal level can be clearly heard in all areas of the facility.
    d. All visual alarm indicators shall be functionally tested to ensure proper operation and that they are clearly visible.
11. Elevators: Each elevator shall be tested and automatic recall function verified.
12. Reporting: Upon completion of the initial verification audit, a report shall be sent to the Architect/Engineer indicating that all fire alarm equipment has been tested and is in 100 percent operation. The report shall also contain the audit testing information as to the location and operational status of each peripheral device. The 100 percent audit shall be performed by a factory-trained representative. The report shall include the voice intelligibility performance in each area and indicate compliance with NFPA and local AHJ requirements.

G. It is the intent of these specifications and of the Architect/Engineer that a continued program of system maintenance is to be provided by the Owner in compliance with NFPA 72. It is mandatory that the installing Contractor provide such services and make available these services to the Owner upon completion of the project.

H. Upon completion of installation and full acceptance testing, submit NFPA 72 certificate of compliance that the total fire alarm system, including any subsystems, is fully functional and that the components are UL listed for function intended.

**3.13 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION**

A. Final acceptance of the FIRE ALARM SYSTEM by the owner, local code authorities and Occupancy Permit has been issued.

B. All fire alarm system shop drawings, test reports, operating and maintenance manuals, maps and as-built drawings shall be submitted in electronic format to and accepted by the Architect / Owner prior to date of substantial completion.

C. Acceptance by County or Local Fire Marshall.

**3.14 TRAINING**

A. Provide training course to all fire personnel assigned by Owner's Representative. The training shall include a course syllabus and hands-on participation. Training shall be conducted on a system identical to the one being installed on this project. The system shall be able to perform all system operations and simulate all types or forms of alarm conditions.

B. Provide a video of the training program to the Owner's Representative to be used for periodic refresher course, training of the local fire department and for training of new employees.

C. The training course shall include, in addition to the above, a system overview, and a review of the operation and maintenance manual.

D. The instructor shall be factory trained and shall be thoroughly familiar with all parts of the installation on which instruction is to be given. The instructor shall be trained in operating theory as well as in practical operation and maintenance work.

**END OF SECTION 28 46 00**

# SECTION 28 55 00 - RF SURVEY FOR IN-BUILDING EMERGENCY RESPONDER RADIO COVERAGE (ERRC) AND TESTING OF EXISTING ERRC ENHANCEMENT SYSTEMS (EERCES)

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. The purpose of this specification is to establish the requirements and standards for surveys for public safety radio signal strength in buildings as required by the NFPA, IBC, IFC and local AHJ. This specification is only for a RF survey. If an existing ERRCES is on premise and is operational, provide verification and documentation of the existing ERRCES as specified.

1. This survey is required as part of the contract documents and shall be implemented as specified in this specification unless indicated or specified otherwise.
2. This survey is required for in all buildings with basements, all buildings four stories and taller, and all buildings with an aggregate total building area of 50,000 square feet or more; this survey may still be required for other buildings that do not meet these structural requirements.
3. This survey may not be required if the local AHJ has pre-determined that an Emergency Responder Radio Coverage Enhancement System (ERRCES) is not required for the subject building(s). If a survey is not required by the AHJ, notify the Architect, Engineer, Owner prior to scheduling the survey.
4. The survey requirements specified in this section are intended to be slightly more stringent than minimum IBC and IFC requirements. This is to help mitigate radio coverage deficiencies that could be caused by future minor variations in building use configurations and changing atmospheric conditions.

B. Where the subject building(s) do not have an existing ERRCES, this survey shall be for ERRC measurements and compliance evaluation only, it is not intended as a requirement for designing nor a requirement for providing an ERRCES.

C. Where the subject building(s) have an existing and operational ERRCES, this survey shall include a full yearly functionality test of the existing ERRCES hardware, antennae, wave guides, cabling, wiring, and connectivity as required by the local AHJ, IBC, IFC, and NFPA. This survey shall then be able to be used for the required yearly inspection and testing report of the existing ERRCES. If deficiencies of an existing ERRCES are observed or detected during field signal measurement, the contractor shall document those deficiencies and report them to the Owner in writing within two Owner's business days of completion of the testing so that the Owner can take immediate remedial action. Corrections and modifications to existing ERRCES are not part of this specification section requirements.

D. Technical information for this survey shall be obtained from the local AHJs pertaining the specific technical information and requirements for the emergency responder

communications coverage system. This information shall include but not be limited to the various frequencies required, the location of radio antennae sites, the effective radiated power of the AHJ radio antennae sites, the maximum propagation delay in microseconds, the applications being used, and other supporting technical information that would be necessary for an ERRCES design and to fully test an existing ERRCES.

E. Surveys for new construction shall be performed after the building is fully dried in, with interior wall construction and all exterior wall glazing completed, and prior to start of installation of electrical wiring. It is the intent that this survey be completed as soon as practical, results reported to the Owner and analyzed, and if required or specified as part of the contract documents or if it is to be provided by others, a radio antenna/repeater system can be designed, installed, fully operational, and commissioned without delaying the scheduled contract date for certificate of occupancy (CO) or the AHJs final inspection and approval for full Owner and public occupation of the building.

F. Conduct surveys using a RF Spectrum Analyzer, a calibrated system-compatible radio or another suitable instrument with traceable certificate of calibration to analyze the RF signal strength of Emergency Responder Radio Signal into the building and determine if amplification of the signal is required or that if existing, the existing ERRCES is functioning properly and providing the proper radio coverage. All test equipment shall have been calibrated within the previous 12-months of the date(s) of testing. Both inbound and outbound signal strength shall be determined, measured, calculated, and documented as required by code. General weather conditions and time of day during the test shall be documented as part of the survey report.

## 1.2 SURVEY CRITERIA

A. The required Public Safety Radio Signal Level inside the Owner's facility shall be as required by code, ordinance, AHJ, and as specified.

B. Survey shall be performed by an FCC licensed technician holding a current General Radiotelephone Operator License (GROL). Where required by the local AHJ, the licensed operator shall be registered with the AHJ as an ERRC Special Inspector (or equivalent designation given by the AHJ) with in-building emergency radio system certification issued by a nationally recognized organization, school, or the emergency radio system manufacturer of the equipment being tested where an existing ERRCES is being tested, or certification by the ERRCES if a new ERRCES is specified elsewhere to be installed as part of the contract documents.

## 1.3 REGULATIONS

A. Codes, regulations, and standards shall be the latest published standards. The latest national published standards listed below shall supersede any local standard unless doing so would violate the intent of the local code requirements.
   1. NFPA 1 – Fire Code

2. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code
3. IFC 510- Emergency Responder Radio Coverage
4. NFPA 101, Life Safety Code, and all local amendments and requirements.
5. NFPA 72 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code
6. FCC 47 CFR Telecommunications
7. FCC 47 CFR 90.219 Use of Signal Boosters
8. IFC - International Fire Code
9. Local or State Fire Codes
10. ADA "Americans with Disabilities Act" and any local or state or local accessibility standards and amendments.
11. FCC's OET 65 Standards "Guidelines for Human Exposure to Radio Frequency Electromagnetic Fields"
12. FCC Rules Part 22 Public Mobile Services, Part 90 and Part 101
13. NFPA 1221- Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems
14. IBC - International Building Code
15. UL 2524 - Standard for In-building 2-Way Emergency Radio Communication Enhancement Systems
16. NFPA 3000 (PS) - Standard for an Active Shooter/Hostile Event Response (ASHER) Program and if present, Owner's specific ASHER Program. Note: Although currently considered by the NFPA as a Provisional Standard (PS), the issued NFPA 3000 shall be considered part of this specifications as if it were a fully accredited document to NFPA standards. If the building Owner has established an ASHER Program, it too shall be considered part of this specification section requirements.

**1.4 DEFINITIONS**

A. Definitions:
1. Area: A enclosed space in a building consisting floor to ceiling walls with doors.
2. ASHER Program: Active Shooter Hostile Event Response Program. Program elements developed by the building's Owner to determine the necessary functions and actions related to preparedness, response, and recovery from an active shooter/hostile event response.
3. BDA: Bi-Directional Amplifier. A device used to amplify band-selective or multi-band RF signals in the uplink, to the base station and in the downlink from the base station to subscriber devices for enhanced signals and improved coverage.
4. BER: Bit Error Rate is the number of bit errors per unit time
5. DAS: Distributed Antenna System
6. ERRCES / ERRCS: Emergency Responder Radio Coverage Enhancement System / Emergency Responder Radio Coverage System. A two-way radio communication system installed to assure the effective operation of radio communications systems for fire, emergency medical services, or law enforcement agencies within a building or structure. A system used by firefighters, police, and other emergency services personnel.
7. FCC: Federal Communications Commission

8. Grid or test grid: The individual specified and/or code required imaginary spaces inside the building used for radio coverage testing. Typically a grid space consist of a square space with equal or almost equal side dimensions where the radio signal levels are measured at the center of each grid space to verify radio coverage. Grid spaces can consist of individual areas or rooms meeting the maximum size requirements.
9. GROL- FCC General Radiotelephone Operators License
10. OET 65 Standards: FCC's Bulletin 65 provides Guidelines for Human Exposure to Radio Frequency Electromagnetic Fields.
11. Public Safety/First Responder: Public Safety or First Responder agencies that are charged with the responsibility of responding to emergency situations. These include, but are not limited to law enforcement departments, fire departments, and emergency medical companies. Typically, there may be multiple agencies for each type of responder, including those administered by the building Owner.
12. RSSI: Received signal strength indicator RSSI is a relative measurement of the power present in a received radio signal.
13. Zone: The individual partitioned grid specified and/or code required imaginary space(s) inside large buildings. Typically, each zone shall be no more than 50,000 square feet and shall be contiguous on the same building floor. Zones are further sub-divided into smaller grid spaces so that radio signal levels can be measured at the center of each grid space to verify radio coverage. A zone can be an individual wing of a building or separate floors of a building that do not exceed 50,000 square feet each. Zones can be created for separate test report areas to ensure individual grid test spaces are not excessive in physical area size and detrimental to the accuracy and resolution of the test data measurement point locations. Each zone must pass the radio coverage test for the entire building to pass the test. Zones can exceed 50,000 square feet as long as the maximum allowable grid space size is not exceeded.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

**3.1 EXECUTION**

A. Testing Procedures and Parameters
1. The test shall be conducted using a calibrated portable radio authorized by the local AHJ, and of the latest brand and model used by the agency talking through the agency's radio communication system.
2. Testing shall include all critical areas required by the NFPA 1221 and others included in the list below. Critical areas shall be provided with a minimum 99-percent floor area radio coverage in each specific area. Critical areas include but are not limited to the following areas:
   a. Fire command centers
   b. Fire pump rooms
   c. Exit stairs
   d. Exit passageways

e. Elevator lobbies
f. Areas of rescue or refuge
g. Areas with or spaces adjacent to standpipe cabinets
h. Areas with or spaces adjacent to sprinkler sectional valve locations
i. Areas with or spaces adjacent to bleeding control kits.
j. Areas with or spaces adjacent to Automatic External Defibrillators (AEDs) for public use.
k. Areas designated for persons with special needs or areas for specifically designated for persons who are not ambulatory including those in wheelchairs but require physical assistance by others to evacuate the building.
l. Specific bullet resistant areas or spaces designated by the Owner or designated in the Owner's ASHER Program as a bullet resistant panic and safe room/areas or spaces.
m. Front lobby areas and/or building administrative areas with direct wired microphone or wired telephone handset access to the building's mass notification or building wide communication system when such system is existing or to be installed as part of this project.
n. Areas and/or building administrative areas with public safety radio base stations used for direct communications with Owner's police or security personnel.
o. Other areas deemed critical by the AHJ.

3. Testing grid spaces, areas, and zones shall be as required by the local AHJ and/or as specified in this specification. The more stringent requirements of the local code, AHJ, or those specified or indicated elsewhere in the contract documents shall apply. Specific requirement for the test grids, areas, and zones shall be follows:
   a. Testing shall be based on a minimum of 20 approximately equal size grid spaces per floor or zone with a maximum of 2,500 square foot per test space. Failure of more than one test space shall be considered a test failure.
   b. In the event that only two test spaces fail the 20-space grid test above, the same floor/zone shall be divided into 40 approximately equal size grid spaces or a maximum of 1,250 square feet per space and re-tested. Failure of only one or only two nonadjacent test spaces on that floor or zone shall result in a non-failure for that floor or zone. Failure of three or more spaces shall result in a test failure for that floor or zone. Failure of two adjacent test spaces shall result in a test failure of that floor or zone.
4. If there is an existing ERRCES and there are grid space test failures resulting in a failed test, notify the Owner in writing immediately about the failed spaces after the completed test and identify the specific areas of the building that are not compliant. The final test result formal submittal data may be submitted at a later date as specified. Contractor may provide recommendations for alterations or modifications to the existing system to the Owner/Architect/Engineer so that the deficiencies can be addressed by the Owner as soon as possible and

corrective measures taken by the Owner. Make corrective measures or modifications to the existing system only if specifically instructed by the Owner in writing.

5. Two-way radio communications shall be verified by testing the two-way communication to and from the outside of the building from a single point approximately at the center of each test grid space or room area. Retesting from a different point inside the same grid space or room area is prohibited if the first point selected fails the test. The initial failure shall be recorded as a failed test grid space or area.
6. Signal strength for a non-failure shall be sufficient to meet the requirements of the applications being utilized by public safety for emergency operations through the coverage area as required by the AHJ.
7. The minimum inbound signal strength shall be sufficient to provide usable voice communications throughout the coverage area as required by the AHJ. The inbound signal level shall be sufficient to provide not less than -95 dBm for analog systems or a Delivered Audio Quality (DAQ) of 3.0 for digital systems or an equivalent Signal-to-Interference-Plus-Noise-Ratio (SINR) applicable to the technology of either analog or digital signals.
8.. The minimum outbound signal strength shall be sufficient to provide usable voice communications throughout the coverage area as required by the AHJ. The outbound signal level shall be sufficient to provide not less than -95 dBm for analog systems or a Delivered Audio Quality (DAQ) of 3.0 for digital systems or an equivalent Signal-to-Interference-Plus-Noise-Ratio (SINR) applicable to the technology of either analog or digital signals.
9. Buildings with existing ERRCES: Verify the following, include the requested information report deficiencies to the Owner as part of the ERRC report.
    a. Verify the existing ERRCES is fully monitored by the building fire alarm system as required by NFPA 1221 and NFPA 72.
    b. If there is an existing remote ERRCES annunciator, verify all annunciators and indicators required by NFPA 1221 are operational and functioning properly.
    c. The gain values of all existing ERRCES amplifiers shall be measured and documented for comparison for future annual testing of the ERRCES.
    d. A spectrum analyzer or other suitable test equipment shall be used to verify spurious oscillations are not being generated by existing signal booster(s).
    e. Verify that the isolation between the donor antenna and all inside antennas is maintained to a minimum of 20dB above system gain.

**3.2 SURVEY REPORT SUBMITTALS**

A. Submit summary findings and detailed test report data within 14-days of notice to proceed.

B. Buildings not in compliance with the ERRC testing: Indicate areas of the building deficient in ERRC. Provide general recommendations of the necessary equipment and

means required to bring the building into full ERRC compliance for Owner review in the summary findings. This specification section is only intended for survey, report, and recommendation information only and is not intended for detailed design, modification, or corrective measures. The report data submittal shall be complete in such that it would be useful to assist in a detailed design of a ERRCES. Submit additional report data as indicated below.

C. Building in compliance with required ERRC: Include a copy of the inspection report to be issued to the AHJ(s) in the format required by the AHJ(s) and submit the report to the AHJ(s) as part of the building permitting process.

D. Report data submittals shall include but are not be limited the following:
   1. Include a copy of survey contractor's AHJ and FCC required licenses to perform the survey.
   2. Where there is an existing ERRCES, include an updated ERRCES technical document and yearly report which the Owner shall keep on file as required by NFPA 1221. Technical documents shall in include but may not be limited to the following information typically provided by the AHJ(s):
      a. Frequencies required by the AHJ(s) for the existing in-building enhancement system (EERCES).
      b. Location and effective radiated power (ERP) of radio sites used by the public safety radio enhancement system (ERRCES).
      c. Maximum propagation delay in microseconds.
      d. List of specifically approved ERRCES components.
      e. Other supporting technical information necessary for the existing system maintenance, or future modifications.
   3. Confirmation that the ERRC for the building that is subject of the report has been determined to meet the minimum coverage requirement as defined by the IBC/IFC, this survey specification section's requirements, and the local AHJ requirements.
   4. Include a scaled drawing of the building with RF measurements of each floor or zone of the building which indicates relative RF field strength for each frequency band of interest. Minimum drawing size 11x17-inch, maximum 30x42-inch.
   5. The drawings shall indicate clearly the areas that have passed or failed based on the more restrictive of the above parameters or those specifically required by the AHJ.
   6. When required by the AHJ, inspection reports by AHJ approved third-party inspector in the format required by the AHJ.

**END OF SECTION 28 55 00**

**SECTION 31 00 00**
**SITE EARTHWORK**

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Furnish all labor, materials, equipment, and incidentals required and perform all excavation, backfill, fill, and grading required to complete the work as shown on the Drawings and as specified herein. The work shall include but not necessarily be limited to; excavation and backfill for electrical manholes, handholes, conduits, cables, raceways and ducts; embankment and grading; disposal of waste and surplus materials; and all related work such as sheeting, bracing, and dewatering.

B. All excavation, trenching, and related sheeting, bracing, etc., shall conform to the requirements of OSHA's excavation safety standards, 29 CFR 1926.650 Subpart P.

C. Excavation, backfill, and compaction for structures and piping are included in other sections as listed below.

1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Grading Excavation and Fill is included in Section 31 23 00.

B. Trenching and Backfill for Utilities is included in Section 33 05 28.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

1. ASTM C33 - Specification for Concrete Aggregates.

2. ASTM Dl557- Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,00 ft-lb./ft (2,700kN-m/m)

3. ASTM D1682- Standard Test Methods for Breaking Load and Elongation of Textile Fabrics.

4. ASTM D2487 - Standard Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes.

5. ASTM D4751- Standard Test Method for Determining the Apparent Opening Size of a Geotextile.

B. Where reference is made to one of the above standards, the revision in effect at the time of bid opening shall apply.

1.4 PROTECTION

A. Sheeting and Bracing

1. Furnish, put in place and maintain such sheeting and bracing as may be required: by Federal, State and local safety requirements; to support the sides of excavations; to prevent any movement which could in any way diminish the width of the excavation below that necessary for proper construction; and to protect adjacent structures from undermining or other damage. Care shall be taken to prevent voids outside of the sheeting, but if voids are formed, they shall be immediately filled and rammed. Where soil cannot be properly compacted to fill a void, lean concrete shall be used as backfill.

2. In order to protect adjacent structures, installation or removal of sheeting by vibratory or hammering methods shall not be allowed.

3. Construct the sheeting outside the neat lines of the foundation, unless indicated otherwise, to the extent deemed desirable for the method of operation. Sheeting shall be plumb and securely braced and tied in position. Sheeting and bracing shall be adequate to withstand all pressures to which the structure or trench will be subjected. Any movement or bulging that may occur shall be corrected to provide the necessary clearances and dimensions.

4. Where sheeting and bracing are required to support the sides of excavations for structures, engage a professional Engineer, registered in the State of Texas, to design the sheeting and bracing. The sheeting and bracing installed shall be in conformity with the design, and certification of this shall be provided by the professional Engineer. Submit the P.E. Certification Form contained in Section 01 to show compliance with this requirement.

5. All sheeting and bracing not left in place shall be carefully removed in such manner as not to endanger the construction or other structures, utilities, or property. All voids left or caused by withdrawal of sheeting shall be immediately refilled with sand by ramming with tools especially adapted to that purpose, or otherwise as may be directed.

6. The right of the ENGINEER to order sheeting and bracing left in place shall not be construed as creating any obligation on his/her part to issue such orders and his/her failure to exercise his/her right to do so shall not relieve the CONTRACTOR from liability for damages to persons or property occurring from or upon the work occasioned by negligence or otherwise, growing out of a failure on the part of the CONTRACTOR to leave in place sufficient sheeting and bracing to prevent any caving or moving of the ground.

**SECTION 31 11 00**
**CLEARING AND GRUBBING**

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

A. This Section specifies the requirements for site clearing which may consist of:

1. Protection of trees indicated to be preserved.

2. Protection of above-ground and below-ground existing improvements indicated to be preserved.

3. Clearing, grubbing, removal and disposal of trees, stumps, brush, roots, vegetation, logs and rubbish.

4. Removal and disposal of above-ground and below-ground materials and existing improvements, including building demolition if any, as indicated.

5. Stripping and stockpiling of topsoil.

6. Stripping and stockpiling natural leaf mulch.

1.2 SUBMITTALS (NOT USED)

1.3 JOB CONDITIONS

A. Conduct demolition operations and removal of debris in accordance with governing regulations and Section 024117 - Demolition of these Specifications.

B. Ensure minimum interference with adjacent occupied or used facilities.

C. Exercise care to protect adjacent building, structures, and persons.

D. Above-ground and below-ground existing improvements, indicated to remain, shall be protected from damage prior to and during construction operations.

E. Tree Protection

1. Trees to be preserved shall be protected by barricades to avoid any confusion and damage prior to site clearing operations.

2. Contractor shall install barricades 3 ft. beyond drip line of trees to be protected. Construction equipment or storage activities shall not be permitted within the fenced area.

F. Protection of Existing Utilities and Adjacent Work

1. Prior to earthwork operations, existing utilities, facilities and permanent objects to remain shall be located and adequately protected. When working near public and private utility company lines, Contractor shall contact the local utility coordinating committee, or the utility company involved to locate their lines.

2. If unknown and uncharted utilities are encountered during excavation, promptly notify Owner and the governing utility company when determinable and wait for instructions.

3. If it is determined by Owner that such utility line has been abandoned, properly cap line at a depth approved by Owner or remove line as directed.

4. If such unknown utilities are encountered and work is continued without contacting the Owner for instructions, and the encountered utilities are damaged by continuation of the work, Contractor shall repair, at this own expense, such damage to the satisfaction of the Owner and the Utility Company. The Contractor shall be responsible for all costs to repair the damage.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CLEARING

A. Trees to be removed, stumps, brush, roots and vegetation shall be removed to a depth of not less than 2 feet below original or finish ground level, whichever is lower.

B. Miscellaneous vegetation, logs and rubbish shall be removed in their entirety, within the limits of improvements.

C. Topsoil shall be stripped to underlying subsoil. Topsoil shall be defined as friable organic clay loam surface soil, reasonably free of clay lumps, stones, weeds, roots and other objectionable material. Topsoil shall be safely stockpiled on the Site. Stockpiles shall be constructed to freely drain surface water.

D. Depressions caused by clearing, grubbing and stripping operations shall be filled with approved backfill material, unless further excavation is required by the construction operations. Backfill shall be placed in accordance with Section 312300 – Excavation, Grading, and Fill of these Specifications.

3.2 REMOVAL OF IMPROVEMENTS

A. Above-ground and below-ground existing improvements shall be removed in their entirety,except for utilities which shall be removed only to the extent indicated. Where utilities are indicated to be removed in part, the ends of the remaining utilities shall be permanently plugged with Class 3000 concrete.

3.3 DISPOSAL OF MATERIALS

A. Materials not scheduled to be salvaged shall become the property of the Contractor and shall be removed from the Site and legally disposed of. Burning or burying cleared, grubbed and demolition waste materials on the Site shall not be permitted.

B. Remove items, without damaging, scheduled to be salvaged as directed by the engineer and placed in designated storage area.

END OF SECTION 31 11 00

**SECTION 31 23 00**
**GRADING, EXCAVATION, AND FILL**

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Protection of Trees

B. Field Engineering for Site Layout.

C. Testing Laboratory Services.

D. Fill Material for Pavement Subbase.

E. Concrete Reinforcing.

F. Cast-In-Place Concrete.

G. Informational Reference to Site Survey and To Subsurface Conditions.

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Reference Standards:

1. ASTM D 698, Test for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils (Standard Proctor).

2. ASTM D 2922, Test for Density of Soil in Place by Nuclear Method.

3. ASTM D 2487, Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. SAMPLES:

1. Submit 10-pound sample quantity of fill materials.

2. Submit 20-pound sample quantity of topsoil material.

3. Pack tightly in containers to prevent contamination.

1.4 GRADES

A. Carefully compare new grade requirements with existing conditions.

B. Provide necessary earth, grading and shaping work.

C. Extra payment will not be authorized for overage or shortage of material.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Sub base material: unwashed pit run or crushed gravel, crushed stone, or crushed slag, naturally or artificially graded with maximum aggregate size of 1-1/2 inches, as acceptable to testing laboratory.

B. Backfill and fill material: soil materials free of debris, waste, frozen matter, vegetable and other deleterious matter, as acceptable to testing laboratory.

C. Select fill: imported lean clay with a narrow plasticity index (pi) range of 10 to 15.

D. Lime treated structural fill: on-site clay mixture, free of silt, loam, friable or soluble materials and organic matter; treated in 6-inch lifts with 36 pounds per square yard of hydrated lime.

E. Backfill:

1. Free from rocks larger than 3 inches in size, alkali, salt, petroleum products, debris, waste, roots, vegetable, and other deleterious matter.

2. Excess non-vegetated excavated soils available from site may be used if conforming to specified requirements.

F. Lime: material conforming to SDHPT item 264, "hydrated lime and lime slurry".

G. Soil filter fabric: Irafi "1405" is specified; Dupont "Typar" is acceptable or approved equal.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 OBSTRUCTIONS

A. Remove obstructions within lines of improvements.

B. Refer obstructions of questionable nature to engineer.

C. Remove abandoned foundations down to 12 inches below finished grade, or the finished elevation of pavements and walks unless indicated otherwise on the drawings.

D. Remove foundations of light standards completely.

3.2 STRIPPING

A. Strip entire area to receive pavement and slabs on grade to a minimum depth of six inches to remove soil containing vegetated material.

B. Remove vegetated material from site as waste.

C. Remove topsoil; spread on areas already graded and prepared for topsoil, or deposit in

storage piles convenient to areas subsequently to receive topsoil.Scarify existing asphalt surfacing and flexible base course material and remove from site.

D. Remove existing site improvements in areas scheduled to receive lawns, buildings, and pavements.

E. Stripped material becomes property of contractor; remove from project site immediately and dispose of properly.

F. Maintain site surface drainage during construction.

3.3 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

A. Excavate using ladder-type trenching machine or backhoe unless indicated otherwise.

B. Cut trench sides vertical from trench bottom to one foot above top of pipe; slope back on stable slope above that point.

C. Extend trench width minimum 6 inches and maximum 18 inches each side of pipe.

D. Excavate trench to a minimum depth of 4 inches below bottom elevation of proposed pipelines.

E. Leave no more than 500 feet of trench open at one time.

F. Where augured hole is indicated, provide opening no larger than one inch greater than outside diameter of pipe bell.

3.4 DEWATERING

A. Keep excavations dry; maintain dewatered condition for depth of one foot below excavation bottom.

B. Operate suitable pumps necessary to keep excavations continuously free of water.

C. Discharge drainage waterlines into approved sewers only with appropriate approvals; use of sanitary sewer is prohibited.

D. Direct surface drainage away from excavated areas.

E. Control grading adjacent to excavations to prevent water running into excavated areas.

3.5 PERIMETER BACKFILL

A. Backfill exterior side of perimeter of structure with lime-treated on-site clay materials, carrying such fill up to indicated sub grades.

B. Backfill systematically and as early as possible to allow maximum time for natural settlement and compaction.

C. Commence backfilling after underground work has been inspected, tested, forms removed, and excavation cleaned of trash and debris.

D. Place and compact backfill to minimize settlement and avoid damage to work in place.

E. Place backfill simultaneously on both sides of freestanding structures; prevent wedging action against structure.

F. Place materials in successive horizontal layers of not more than 8 inches (4 inches for hand- held tamping equipment) and uniformly compacted to 92% of maximum density as confirmed by testing laboratory.

3.6 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

A. Pipe bedding and backfill requirements for sanitary sewers shall be as specified in Section 333100, Sanitary Sewage Systems.

B. Pipe bedding and backfill requirements for storm sewers shall be as specified in Section 334100, Storm Sewage Systems.

C. Pipe bedding and backfill for water distribution system piping shall be in accordance with City of Baytown "Specifications for Water Main Construction and Materials" and "Specifications for Water Taps and Service Lines", 3/4-inch through 2-inch, with latest addenda and amendments thereto.

D. Backfill trench as soon as possible after pipe has been laid, jointed, and inspected; complete backfilling at end of each day.

E. Within pipe zone: place backfill material and hand tamp in 6-inch layers to one foot above top of pipe.

F. Use of bulldozer or similar tracked equipment is unacceptable for compaction.

3.7 PREPARATION OF SUBGRADE FOR PAVING, WALKS AND EXTERIOR SLABS

A. Cut and fill areas as required.

B. Proof roll sub grade with heavy roller. Cut out any soft area that cannot be compacted by surface rolling and replace with compacted select fill.

C. Provide select fill at areas where required to elevate sub grade. Lime stabilization: stabilize to depth of 8 inches with lime slurry in accordance with TxDOT Item 260. Subgrade beneath sidewalks shall not be lime stabilized.

D. Compact to not less than 85 to 92% of maximum density in accordance with ASTM D698 as confirmed by testing laboratory; with moisture content for compacted material within +/- 2% of optimum moisture.

E. Maintain site surface drainage during construction.

3.8 ROUGH GRADING

A. Shape sub grade to allow for maximum amount of natural settlement and compaction.

B. Remove debris, roots, branches, stones, in excess of 2 inches in size.

C. Remove subsoil which has been contaminated with petroleum products.

D. Excavate areas, to sub grade elevation, which are to receive paving and sidewalks.

E. Bring sub grade to required levels, profiles and contours, making gradual changes in grade; blend slopes into level areas.

F. Slope grade away from building minimum 2 inches in 10 feet unless indicated otherwise.

G. Cultivate sub grade to a depth of 3 inches where topsoil is to be placed; repeat cultivation in areas where equipment used for hauling and spreading topsoil has compacted sub grade.

H. Maintain site surface drainage during construction.

3.9 SURPLUS MATERIALS

A. Remove surplus subsoil from site.

B. Leave stockpile areas and entire job site clean and raked, ready to receive landscaping.

3.10 CLEAN-UP

C. Remove temporary structures, rubbish, and waste materials from work site daily.

END OF SECTION 31 23 00

**SECTION 31 25 00**
**EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL**

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

A. This Section pertains to the provisions for the control of erosion in the construction area and in stockpile areas including seeding, the construction of temporary swales and sedimentation basins as required and shown on the drawings. All areas where existing vegetation and grass cover have been bared by construction activities shall be protected from erosion.

B. Contractor is responsible for meeting all local, state and federal regulations regarding erosion control including the applicable provisions of the National Pollution Discharge Elimination System, Phase II, regulations from the Clean Water Act.

1.2 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including A-Procurement and Contracting Requirements, Division 00 and Division 01 apply to this section.

B. Section 31 11 00 Clearing and Grubbing

C. Section 31 23 00 Grading Excavation and Fill

D. Section 33 05 28 Trenching and Backfill for Utilities

E. Texas Department of Transportation's Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges (2014)

1.3 PERMITS (NOT USED)

1.4 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS (NOT USED)

1.5 PROTECTION OF ADJACENT WORK (NOT USED)

1.6 DEFINITIONS

A. Best Management Practices (BMP's) means physical facilities schedules of activities, prohibition of practices, maintenance procedures, and other management practices , when properly designed, installed, and maintained, will be effective to prevent or reduce the discharge of pollution associated with construction activities. BMP's also include treatment requirements, operating procedures, and practices to control site runoff, spillage or leaks, sludge or waste disposal, or drainage from raw material storage.

B. Block Sodding: Sodding for erosion control and for final stabilization shall consist of providing and planting Bermuda grass, San Augustine grass, or other acceptable sod along or across such areas as are designated on the drawings and in accordance with the specification requirements herein outlined.

C. Hydromulch Seeding: Seeding, followed by the application of a mulch erosion control blanket shall consist of preparing the ground, sowing of seeds, application of a fertilizer, and stabilization with mulch consisting of a biodegradable fiber along and across such areas as are designated on the plans and in accordance with these specifications

D. Silt Fence: The reinforced filter fabric barrier consists of geotextile fabric supported by a net reinforced fence stretched across and attached to supporting posts or frame and

entrenched. Work shall be performed during construction operations and prior to final stabilization to control erosion and sedimentation as designated on the plans and in accordance with these specifications.

E. Inlet Protection Barriers: The inlet protection barrier consists of a geotextile fabric (filter fabric) supported by a net reinforced fence structure and constructed around a storm drain inlet, catch basin, or culvert. An alternative design of the inlet protection barrier, as approved by the Engineer, consists of fiber rolls placed around a frame, staked in place (or weighted down with clean gravel bags), and constructed around a storm drain inlet, catch basin or culvert. This work shall be performed during construction operations and prior to final stabilization to control erosion and sedimentation. As designated on the plans and in accordance with these specifications.

F. Sediment Basins: A sediment basin is a temporary basin or dam constructed across a waterway or excavated location to intercept sediment-laden runoff and to trap and retain the sediment. A sediment basin is usually installed at points of discharge from drainage areas greater than 5 acres. Work shall be performed during construction operations and prior to final stabilization to control erosion and sedimentation as designated on the plans and in accordance with these specifications.

G. Stabilized Construction Access: This work shall consist of the installation of temporary erosion protection and sediment control stabilized construction access - type I, rock, utilized during construction operations and prior to final stabilization, in accordance with these specifications and construction drawings

H. Rock Filter Dams: Rock filter dams are temporary berms constructed of stone to intercept and slow storm water runoff to retain sediment on the construction site.

1. Depending upon the type of rock filter dam specified in the construction plans as Type 1, 2, 3, or 4, the aggregate fill may be unwrapped, wrapped in twisted hexagonal wire mesh, or confined in a gabion wire basket. Applications of RockFilter Dams are as follows:

a. Type 1 dams may be used at toe of slopes, around inlets, in small ditches, and at dike or swale outlets. Type 1 dams are recommended for erosion and sediment control from a drainage area of 5 acres or less.

b. Type 2 dams may be used in ditches and at dike or swale outlets.

c. Type 3 dams may be used in stream fl

d. Type 4 sack gabions may be used in ditches and smaller channels to form an erosion and sediment control dam

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Codes and Standards: Install and maintain erosion control systems in compliance with all authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.8 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS (NOT USED)

## 1.9 SUBMITTALS (NOT USED)

# PART 2 – PRODUCTS

## 2.1 SUSTAINABLE MATERIALS

A. Contractor shall strive to utilize sustainable materials, which include rapidly renewable materials, regional materials, regionally manufactured materials, regionally extracted materials, recycled contents.

2.2 GRASS

A. Materials for erosion control seeding shall conform to TxDOT Item 164.

B. Materials for erosion control sodding shall conform to TxDOT Item 162.

2.3 FERTILIZER

A. Materials for fertilizing erosion control seeding and/or sodding shall conform to TxDOT Item 166.2

2.4 WATER

A. Use clean potable water for maintaining the grass developed after erosion control seeding and/or sodding. Water shall be reasonably clean and free of oil, salt, acid, alkali, sugar, vegetable matter or other substances injurious to the finished product.

B. Water sources other than the local municipal domestic water supply must be approved by the Owner.

C. If onsite reclaimed water sources are used, tanks and apprentices must be clearly marked with the words “non-potable” water.

2.5 SILT FENCE

A. Geotextile fabric for Silt Fences must meet the TxDOT Departmental Material Specifications DMS 6230 Temporary Sediment Control Fence Fabric.

2.6 STRAW BALES

A. Standard rectangular hay bales bound by baling wire, clean and dry

2.7 INLET PROTECTION BARRIERS

A. Geotextile per 2.5 Silt Fence above.

B. Hardwood Posts shall be 2x2 minimum length 4 feet.

C. Net reinforced fence shall be 2 inch by 4 inch welded wire fabric mesh. The mesh support height shall be the equivalent height, or greater, of the geotextile fabric to be attached.

2.8 STABILIZED CONSTRUCTION ACCESS

A. Materials to be per TxDOT spec section 506.2.E.1 for Type 1

2.9 ROCK FILTER DAM

A. Materials. Geotextile fabric shall consist of a woven monofilament or spunbond nonwoven fibers consisting of long-chain synthetic polymers composed of at least 95 percent by weight of polyolefins. Geotextile fabric shall equal or exceed the following average roll values or as directed by the Engineer:

1. Minimum average roll value.

    a. Elongation – 50 percent.

    b. Grab Strength – 200 pounds.

    c. Puncture Strength – 75 pounds.

    d. UV Stability (retained strength) – 50 percent after 500 hours of exposure.

2. Maximum average roll value.

    a. Apparent Opening Size (AOS) – 0.6 mm/#30 US sieve.

B. Geotextile fabric shall be resistant to commonly encountered soil chemicals, mildew, rot, insects, and deterioration resulting from exposure to sunlight or heat. Geotextile fabric shall provide an expected useable life comparable to the anticipated construction period.

C. Aggregate for the rock filter dams shall consist of crushed stone. Aggregate particles shall be composed of clean, hard, durable materials free from adherent coatings, salt, alkali, dirt, clay, loam, shale, soft or flaky materials or organic and injurious matter. Aggregate shall be cubic or rounded form, not elongated, flat, shapes. Spalls, fragments, and chips shall not exceed 5 percent by weight. Crushed concrete shall not be substituted for the crushed stone unless as approved by the Engineer. Aggregate size shall depend upon the type of rock filter dam specified in the construction plans. Aggregate size based on type of rock filter dam is as follows:

1. Type 1: 3 inches to 5 inches, open-graded.

2. Type 2: 3 inches to 5 inches, open-graded.

3. Type 3: 4 inches to 8 inches, open-graded.

4. Type 4: 3 inches to 5 inches, open-graded.

D. Mesh is required for reinforced type rock filter dams. Mesh shall be 20 gauge galvanized double twisted hexagonal wire mesh with 1-inch diameter hexagonal openings. Mesh wire shall be zinc coated prior to being double twisted. Reinforcing spiral binders, lacing wire, and stiffeners shall be made of wire having the same coating material and same wire size as the wire mesh. Gabion wire baskets shall equal or exceed the requirements of the wire mesh.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 GENERAL

A. Protection

1. Protect benchmarks, monuments, existing structures, existing fences, existing roads, existing sidewalks, existing paving, existing curbs, and other features indicated on Drawings to remain, or not indicated to be removed, from damage and displacement. If damaged or displaced, notify Engineer and correct defects as directed.

2. Protect above and below grade utilities which are to remain.

B. Preparation:

1. Use all means necessary to control dust on and near the work, and on and near off-site storage, and spoil areas, if such dust is caused by performance of the work of this Section, or if resulting from the condition in which Project Site is left by Contractor.

2. Moisten surfaces, as required, to prevent dust from being a nuisance to the public, neighbors, and concurrent performance of other work on Project Site.

C. Install erosion control systems at the site's boundary at locations where stormwater runoff will leave the site prior to starting any clearing, stripping, or earthwork operations

D. Minimize the time areas are to be exposed without vegetative cover.

E. Properly dispose of solid waste, paints, solvents, cleaning compounds, etc.

F. Store construction materials in designated areas away from drainageways and low areas.

G. Provide portable toilets and properly dispose of sanitary sewage.

H. Construct containment berms and utilize drip pans at fuel and liquid storage tanks and containers.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EROSION CONTROL DEVICES

A. Install erosion control devices to protect adjacent and downstream properties from damage and pollution resulting from erosion caused by the work of this Contract.

1. Implement erosion control measures indicated on drawings and additional erosion control measures necessary to prevent damage to adjacent and downstream properties.

B. Install silt fence located along perimeter of site or grading limits immediately following site clearing operations specified under Division 31 Section 31 11 00 Clearing and Grubbing.

1. Install silt fence fabric from a continuous roll for the length of the silt fence whenever possible to minimize the number of joints.

a. Create joints in fabric by securely fastening fabric at the support post with overlap extending to the next post.

2. Drive support post into ground not less than 18 inches.

3. Excavate a 4-inch-wide by 4-inch-deep trench on up-slope side of silt fence.

a. Line trench with silt fence fabric material.

b. Backfill trench with soil or gravel.

C. Install straw bale fence at completion of grading operations in affected area as indicated on drawings.

1. Install erosion control devices at storm sewer inlets immediately after completion of the storm sewer.

2. Place straw bales in a single row, lengthwise on the contour, and embedded 4

inches into soil.

3. Secure each individual bale in place by stakes or reinforcement bars driven through bales into the ground to a depth of not less than 18 inches.

D. Install inlet protection barriers at curb inlets and at area inlets.

E. Install straw bale fences as ditch checks in drainage ditches.

F. Install Stabilized Construction Access per TxDOT specification 506.4.C.5.

G. Rock filter dams shall be installed so as to prevent downstream deposition of sediment and debris from the construction site. Rock filter dams shall be constructed to meet the following criteria:

1. Type 1:

   a. Non-reinforced.

   b. Height: 18-24 inches

   c. Top width: 2 feet minimum.

   d. Upstream and downstream side slope of dam: 2:1 maximum.

   e. Open graded aggregate 3-5 inches.

2. Type 2:

   a. Reinforced with wire mesh.

   b. Height: 18-36 inches.

   c. Top width: 2 feet minimum.

   d. Upstream and downstream side slope of dam: 2:1 maximum.

   e. Open graded aggregate 3-5 inches.

3. Type 3:

   a. Reinforced with wire mesh.

   b. Height: 36-48 inches.

   c. Top width: 2 feet minimum.

   d. Upstream and downstream side slope of dam: 3:1 maximum.

   e. Open graded aggregate 4-8 inches.

4. Type 4:

   a. Reinforced in a gabion wire basket.

b. Height: 30 inches minimum.

c. Top width: 2 feet minimum.

d. Upstream and downstream side slopes of dam: none specified.

e. Open graded aggregate 3-5 inches.

5. The separation geotextile fabric and wire mesh shall be sized and placed in accordance with the rock filter dam detail and as specified by the type of rock filter dam shown in the construction plans. The separation geotextile fabric may be omitted only as approved by the Engineer. The separation geotextile fabric and wire mesh shall be securely staked with wooden or metal stakes to the bottom and side slopes of the ditch or channel prior to aggregate placement. Sack gabions for Type 4 rock filter dams shall be securely staked with wooden or metal stakes to the bottom and side slopes of the ditch or channel, as well.

6. Aggregate fill shall be placed to the width, length, height and slopes in accordance with this specification and the rock filter dam detail and as specified by the type of rock filter dam shown in the construction plans. The height of the dam shall be measured vertically from the existing ground to the top of the filter dam. The length of the dam shall be measured across the top centerline of the dam from embankment to embankment and includes the additional length embedded into the embankment. Width of the dam shall be measured along the top face of the dam.

7. Wire mesh shall be folded upstream side over the aggregate fill and tightly secured to itself on the downstream side using wire tires. Hog rings may be substituted for wire ties.

8. Additional aggregate fill or gravel bags shall be placed and secured at the embedded section to prevent low flows from short circuiting the dam at the adjacent dirt embankment area.

9. The Contractor shall be responsible for periodic reshaping, repairing, and maintaining of rock filter dams as directed by the Engineer.

10. The Contractor is responsible for removal and proper disposal of sediment and debris from the rock filter dam. Removed sediment and debris shall not be allowed to flush into the storm sewer system, waterways, jurisdictional wetlands, or onto adjacent properties. Sediment deposits shall be removed before they reach one-third of the height of the dam. Uncontaminated sediment can be placed at the project spoil site or, if properly handled, spread out to supplement fill requirements. If sediment has been contaminated, then it shall be disposed of in accordance with the applicable federal, state, and local regulations. Offsite disposal shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. Contractor is encouraged to reuse aggregate and wire mesh if remaining materials meet original spec requirements.

## 3.3 EROSION CONTROL SEEDING

A. Exposed fill and stockpile areas shall be protected from windborne erosion if the phasing of the construction operations is anticipated to leave the exposed fill and stockpile areas unattended for 6 weeks or more. At completion of stockpiling operations, stockpiles shall be shaped and graded to drain. Provide a layer of mulch to all sides of the stockpile to protect the stockpile from windborne erosion.

B. Areas designated on the drawings to be seeded shall be seeded in accordance to the Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specifications, Item 164, titled "Seeding for Erosion Control". Broadcast seeding method shall be used as described in TxDOT, Item 164.4 unless otherwise instructed.

C. Areas to be seeded with slopes steeper than 10H:1V shall also utilize a soil retention blanket as specified in TxDOT Item 169 Soil Retention Blanket.

3.4 TEMPORARY SWALES

A. Temporary drainage swales shall be provided as required to carry drainage away from the work area to an approved outfall point.

B. Unless otherwise shown on the drawings, swales shall be earthen "V" shaped channels graded to a sufficient depth and slope to carry the anticipated runoff, but at least two (2) feet deep with a slope of 0.1%.

C. Swales not designated to remain in place at the completion of the contract shall be cleaned of any muck, debris and other unsuitable material and filled with approved fill before final grading operations begin.

D. Swales shall have erosion control barriers as required in these specifications.

3.5 FILL AND CUT SLOPES

A. Fill slopes in all cases shall be no steeper than 3:1 unless specifically stated on the plans or approved by the Owner's Geotechnical engineer.

B. When cut slopes exceed 2:1 for depths over three (3) feet, proper bracing and shoring per OSHA requirements shall be used and maintained.

C. For permanent slopes, cut or fill, between 2:1 and 10:1, erosion protection shall be provided with hydromulching seeding, sodding, or other method as approved.

D. Where cut slopes of more than 5 feet deep, extend more than 100 feet in length, contractor shall provide a backfill drain at the top of the slope to ease in drainage and erosion control.

3.6 SEDIMENTATION BASINS

A. Sedimentation ponds shall be provided when designated on the plans.

B. All drainage from cleared areas shall be routed through the sedimentation basin.

C. Contractor will be responsible for the operation and maintenance of the pond during construction.

3.7 MAINTENANCE

A. Check all erosion control measures after each rainfall event to ensure that they are in proper working order.

1. Immediately restore all measures to installed condition.

2. During the course of construction all temporary swales constructed for this

contract shall be maintained so as to allow proper drainage from the construction area. Before Contractor leaves the site at the end of construction, all temporary swales must be reworked to meet final conditions as set forth in the drawings and specifications.

3. The Contractor shall assure that all subwork with other contractors at the site understand the importance of the erosion control features. The Contractor shall require all subcontractors to respect the function of the erosion control features and enlist their coordination in maintaining existing swales and ditches.

B. Inspect silt and straw bale fences at least once a week.

1. Immediately replace damaged portions of the silt fences, including portions which have collapsed, contain tears, have decomposed, or have become ineffective.

2. Remove sediment deposits, as necessary, to provide adequate sediment storage and to maintain the integrity of fences. Dispose of accumulated sediment by spreading over upland areas of the site.

C. Maintain erosion control devices in place, as specified, until completion of the work of this Contract.

1. At completion of work, inspect all systems, make necessary repairs, remove and dispose of all accumulated sediment, and turn completely operable systems over to Owner for continued maintenance.

D. Where necessary for equipment and vehicular access to the work areas, adequately sized culverts shall be installed and maintained to provide the access without disturbing the site drainage.

E. Sedimentation Basins.

1. Contractor shall be responsible for maintaining the pond and the outfall and sediment retarding structure in good working condition throughout the time the pond is to be in operation.

2. When sediment and debris fill the pond to over one third (1/3) its designed capacity, the pond shall be cleaned out.

3. The sediment from the clearing operation shall be stockpiled with like materials per Specification 31 11 00 Clearing and Grubbing. If the material is found to not meet the stockpiling requirements listed in 31 11 00, they must be removed from the site as described in 31 11 00.

## 3.8 INSPECTIONS

A. Inspect all erosion control systems and devices at least once every seven calendar days.

B. Inspect all erosion control systems and devices within 24 hours of the end of any storm which results in precipitation of 1/2 inch or more.

C. During inspections, locations where stormwater leaves the site shall be inspected for evidence of erosion or sediment deposition.

D. Correct deficiencies within three calendar days.

E. Complete a report of each inspection. Report shall contain the following minimum

information:

1. Inspector's name
2. Inspection date
3. Observations of the effectiveness of erosion control systems
4. Actions taken if necessary to correct deficiencies
5. Listing of areas where construction operations have permanently or temporarily stopped
6. Authorized signature

END OF SECTION 31 25 00

**SECTION 32 13 13**
**PORTLAND CEMENT CONCRETE PAVING**

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

A. This Section specifies the requirements for providing, placing, curing and protecting Portland cement concrete paving, with or without reinforcement as indicated, constructed on a prepared subgrade.

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Reference Standards Applicable to this Section

1. ACI: American Concrete Institute

a. 301: Specifications for Structural Concrete for Buildings.

b. 316R: Recommendations for Construction of Concrete Pavements and Concrete Bases.

2. ASTM: American Society for Testing and Materials

a. A 615: Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement (with Supplement + S1).

b. C 150: Specification for Portland Cement Type I or Type II.

c. C 309: Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete.

d. C 881: Specification for Epoxy-Resin-Base Bonding Systems for Concrete.

e. D 1565: Specifications for Flexible Cellular Materials Vinyl Chloride Polymers and Copolymers (Open-Cell Foam).

f. D 1751: Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient bituminous Types).

g. D 1752: Specifications for Preformed Sponge Rubber and Cork Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction.

h. D 3405: Specification for Joint Sealants, Hot-Poured, for Portland Cement Concrete Pavement.

3. TxDOT: Texas Department of Transportation.

a. Standard Specifications for Construction of Highways, Streets, and Bridges -- Latest Edition.

b. Item 360, CONCRETE PAVEMENT

B. Formwork Tolerances

1. Formwork tolerances shall be as specified in ACI 316 R, Chapter 5.

C. Finishing Tolerance

1. The top surface of pavement shall have a Class B tolerance as specified in ACI 316 R, Chapter 12.5 and ACI 301, Chapter 11.9.

D. The Portland Cement Paving Contractor/Subcontractor shall provide Owner with evidence of his/her ability to perform the specified work. This evidence shall be in the form of at least five (5) successfully completed Portland Cement paving projects.

1. This list of projects shall be submitted to Owner prior to any paving operations beginning so that Owner will be able to inspect the quality of workmanship at the site and approve the Contractor/Subcontractor.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. The following submittals shall be submitted:

1. Reinforcement Materials

a. As required in Section 032100 – Site Concrete Reinforcement.

2. Concrete Materials

a. As required in Section 321313.79 – Site Cast-in-Place Concrete.

3. Joint Materials

a. As required in Section 321319 – Concrete Pavement Joints.

1.4 EXTENDED WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer of joint sealant shall provide at least a 1-year written warranty against material degradation or failure and water and foreign matter infiltration through the joint from the time of written acceptance of the Work. This warranty shall not limit Owner's rights or remedies as may otherwise be afforded under law or statute.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Forms

1. Metal forms, as indicated in ACI 316 R, Chapter 5.

B. Welded Steel Wire Fabric

1. Plain wire fabric, as specified in Section 032100 - Site Concrete Reinforcement of these Specifications.

C. Reinforcing Steel Bars

1. As specified in Section 032100 - Site Concrete Reinforcement of these Specifications.

D. Dowel Bars

1. Smooth, ASTM A 615 + S1, Grade 60, new billet steel, coated with a water-resistant lubricant immediately prior to placement of concrete in which unbonded ends of bars are to be embedded.

E. Dowel Bar Sleeves

1. Sleeves, PVC or plastic, slightly larger than dowel bars, closed end, a minimum of 6 in. long, with 1-1/2 in. long compressible insert.

F. Concrete

1. As specified in Section 321373.19 – Site Cast-in-Place Concrete of these Specifications.

G. Membrane Forming Curing Compound

1. ASTM C 309, Type 2, unless otherwise directed.

H. Joint Materials

1. Preformed Expansion Joint Filler: ASTM D 1751, ASTM D 1752, and D 1565.

2. Joint Sealing Material: See Section 321319, Concrete Pavement Joints of these Specifications.

I. Form Coating

1. Commercial formulation form-coating compounds that will neither bond with, stain, nor adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatment of concrete surfaces. Contractor shall submit sample for approval prior to use.

J. Precast Concrete Wheel Stops

1. Accurately formed and finished, of size and shape as indicated, reinforced and anchored as required. Fabricate wheel stops on Site or substitute approved precast units of like design and dimensions.

K. Epoxy Bonding Grout

1. ASTM C 881, Type I.
2.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION AND PREPARATION

A. Prepared subgrade shall be proof rolled to check for unstable areas and need for additional compaction. Do not begin paving work until such deficiencies have been corrected and subgrade is ready to receive paving.

B. Loose material shall be removed from the compacted subgrade immediately prior to placing concrete and subgrade shall be uniformly dampened.

3.2 SETTING FORMS

A. Forms shall be set in accordance with the recommendations of ACI 316 R, Chapter 5, and as specified herein.

B. Forms shall be set in sufficient quantity to allow continuous progress of concrete placement, and to ensure that forms shall remain in place not less than 24 hours.

C. Forms shall be cleaned after each use and coated with an approved form release agent prior to each use.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINTS, REINFORCEMENT, AND SEALANT

A. Joints and reinforcement shall be installed in accordance with the recommendations of ACI 316 R, Chapter 6, as specified in Section 032100 – Site Concrete Reinforcement of these Specifications, and in Section 321319 - Concrete Pavement Joints.

B. Sealant manufacturer's instructions and procedures shall be followed so as not to invalidate the warranty.

3.4 PLACING AND FINISHING CONCRETE

A. Concrete shall be placed and finished in accordance with the recommendations of ACI 316 R, Chapters 10 and 12.5, and as specified in Section 32 13 73.19 - Cast-in-Place Concrete of these Specifications.

3.5 CURING AND PROTECTING CONCRETE

A. Concrete shall be cured in accordance with the recommendations of ACI 316 R, Chapter 11, using the membrane curing method and materials.

B. Protection as recommended in ACI 316 R; Chapter 11 shall be provided until written acceptance by Owner.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE WHEEL STOPS

A. Install concrete wheel stops where indicated and in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions as required. Where dowels are to be embedded into concrete, embed with epoxy bonding grout.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Coring

1. After the pavement is placed and before final acceptance the Engineer may elect to determine pavement thickness by cores cut from the pavement or direct measurement of the edge thickness. Acceptable pavement thickness shall be deficient by no more than two tenths of an inch. Core holes shall be promptly repaired with concrete conforming to the requirements specified herein by the Contractor at no cost to Owner.

B. Deficient Pavement Price Adjustments

1. Where the average thickness of pavement is deficient in thickness by more than 0.2 inch, but not more than 0.75-inch, payment will be made at an adjusted price as specified in the following table.

Concrete Pavement Deficiency

| Deficiency in Thickness Determined by Cores Inches | Proportional Part of Contract Price Allowed |
|---|---|
| 0.00 to 0.20 | 100 percent |
| Over 0.20 to 0.30 | 80 percent |
| Over 0.30 to 0.40 | 72 percent |
| Over 0.40 to 0.50 | 68 percent |
| Over 0.50 to 0.75 | 57 percent |

2. Any area of pavement found deficient in thickness by more than 0.75 of an inch but not more than one inch or 1/8 of the plan thickness, whichever is greater, shall be evaluated by the Engineer. If, in the judgment of the Engineer, the area of such deficiency should not be removed and replaced, there will be no payment for the area retained. If, in the judgment of the Engineer, the area of such deficiency warrants removal, the area shall be removed and replaced, at the Contractor's entire expense, with concrete of the thickness shown on the plans. Deficient pavement shall be removed for the full area of the slab between joints or between pre-established limits.

END OF SECTION 32 13 13

**SECTION 32 13 19**
**CONCRETE PAVEMENT JOINTS**

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Joints for concrete paving; concrete sidewalks, concrete driveways, curbs, and curb and gutters.

B. Saw-cutting existing concrete or asphalt pavements for new joints.

1.2 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices.

1. Payment for street pavement expansion joints, with or without load transfer, is on linear foot basis.

2. Payment for horizontal dowels is on a unit price basis for each horizontal dowel.

3. No separate payment will be made for formed or sawed street pavement contraction joints and longitudinal weakened plane joints. Include payment in unit price for Concrete Paving.

4. No separate payment will be made for joints for Curb, Curb and Gutter, Saw-tooth Curb, Concrete Sidewalks, and Concrete Driveways. Include payment in unit price for Curb and Gutter, Concrete Sidewalks, and Concrete Driveways.

5. Payment will be made for Preformed Expansion Joints on a linear foot basis only when field conditions require that sidewalk be moved adjacent to existing concrete structure (i.e., street, back of curb, etc.).

6. Refer to City of Baytown Construction Project Division 1 Specifications for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price.

1.3 REFERENCES

A. ASTM A 615 - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.

B. ASTM D 994 - Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete (Bituminous Type).

C. ASTM D 1751 - Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types).

D. ASTM D 3405 - Standard Specification for Joint Sealants, Hot-Applied, for Concrete and Asphalt Pavements.

E. TxDOT Tex-525-C - Tests for Asphalt and Concrete Joint Sealers

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01.

B. Submit product data for joint sealing compound and proposed sealing equipment for approval.

C. Submit samples of dowel cup, metal supports, and deformed metal strip for approval. Submit manufacturer's recommendation for placing sealant(s).

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 BOARD EXPANSION JOINT MATERIAL

A. Filler board of selected stock. Use wood of density and type as follows:

1. Clear, all-heart cypress weighing no more than 40 pounds per cubic foot, after being oven dried to constant weight.

2. Clear, all-heart redwood weighing no more than 30 pounds per cubic foot, after being oven dried to constant weight.

2.2 PREFORMED EXPANSION JOINT MATERIAL

A. Bituminous fiber and bituminous mastic composition material conforming to ASTM D 994 and ASTM D 1751.

2.3 JOINT SEALING COMPOUND

A. Conform joint sealants to one of sealant classes described in this section.

B. Conform hot-poured rubber-asphalt compound to ASTM D 3405.

C. Two-component Synthetic Polymer.

1. Curing is to be by polymerization and not by evaporation of solvent or fluxing of harder particles.

2. Cure sufficiently at average temperature of 25 ± 1 C (77 ± 2 F) so as not to pick up under wheels of traffic in maximum three hours.

3. Performance requirements, when tested in accordance with TxDOT Tex- 525-C, shall meet above curing times and requirements as follows:

| Cold-Extruded and Cold-Pourable (Self-Leveling) Specifications | |
|---|---|
| Property | Requirement |
| Penetration, 25 C (77 F) 150 g Cone, 5 s, 0.1 mm (in.), maximum | 130 |
| Bond and Extension 50%, -29 C (-20 F), 3 cycles:<br>*Dry Concrete Block<br>*Steel blocks (Primed, if recommended by manufacturer)<br>*Steel blocks shall be used when armor joints are specified | Pass<br>Pass |
| Flow at 70 C (158 F) | None |
| Water content % by mass, maximum | 5.0 |
| Resilience:<br>* Original sample, % min. (cured)<br>* Oven-aged at 70 C (158 F), % min. | 50<br>50 |
| Cold-extruded material only - Cold Flow (10 minutes) | None |

4. After bond and extension test, there shall be no evidence of cracking, separation or other opening that is over 3 millimeters (1/8 inch) deep in sealer or between sealer and test blocks.

5. Provide cold-extruded type for vertical or sloping joints.

6. Provide self-leveling type for horizontal joints.

D. Self-Leveling, Low Modulus Silicone or Polyurethane Sealant for Asphaltic Concrete and Portland Cement Concrete Joints. This shall be a single component self-leveling silicone or polyurethane material that is compatible with both asphalt and concrete pavements. The sealer shall not require a primer for bond; a backer rod shall be required which is compatible with the sealant; no reaction shall occur between rod and sealant.

1. When tested in accordance with TxDOT Tex-525-C, self-leveling sealant shall meet following requirements:

| Self-Leveling, Low Modulus Silicone or Polyurethane Sealant | |
|---|---|
| Property | Requirements |
| Tack Free Time, 25 ± 1 C (77 ± 2 F), minutes | 120 maximum |
| Nonvolatile content, % by mass | 93 minimum |
| Tensile Strength and 24-Hour Extension Test:<br>* Initial, 10-day cure, 25 ± 1 C (77 ± 2 F), kPa (psi)<br>* After Water Immersion, kPa (psi)<br>* After Heat Aging, kPa (psi)<br>* After Cycling, -29 C (-20 F), 50%, 3 cycles, kPa (psi)<br>* 24 Hour Extension | * 21 to 69 (3 to 10)<br>* 21 to 69 (3 to 10)<br>* 21 to 69 (3 to 10)<br>* 21 to 69 (3 to 10)<br>* Pass (All Specimens)<br>After 24 hours, there shall be no evidence of cracking, separation or other opening that is over 3 mm (1/8 in.) deep at any point in the sealer or between the sealer and test blocks. |

2.4 LOAD TRANSMISSION DEVICES

A. Smooth, steel dowel bars conforming to ASTM A 615, Grade 60. When indicated on Drawings, encase one end of dowel bar in approved cap having inside diameter 1/16 inch greater than diameter of dowel bar.

B. Deformed steel tie bars conforming to ASTM A 615, Grade 60.

2.5 SUPPORTS FOR REINFORCING STEEL AND JOINT ASSEMBLY

A. Employ supports of approved shape and size that will secure reinforcing steel and joint assembly in correct position during placing and finishing of concrete. Space supports as directed by Project Manager.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 PLACEMENT

A. When new Work is adjacent to existing concrete, place joints at same location as existing joints in adjacent pavement.

B. If limit of removal of existing concrete or asphalt pavement does not fall on existing joint, saw cut existing pavement minimum of 2 inches deep to provide straight, smooth joint surface without chipping, spalling or cracks.

3.2 CONSTRUCTION JOINTS

A. Place transverse construction joint wherever concrete placement must be stopped for more than 30 minutes. Place longitudinal construction joints at interior edges of pavement lanes using No. 6 deformed tie bars, 30 inches long and spaced 18 inches on centers.

3.3 EXPANSION JOINTS

A. Place 3/4-inch expansion joints at radius points of curb returns for cross street intersections, or as located in adjacent pavement but no further than 80 feet apart. Use no boards shorter than 6 feet. When pavement is 24 feet or narrower, use not more than 2 lengths of board. Secure pieces to form straight joint. Shape board filler accurately to cross section of concrete slab. Use load transmission devices of type and size shown on Drawings unless otherwise specified or shown as "No Load Transfer Device." Seal with joint sealing compound.

3.4 CONTRACTION JOINTS

A. Place contraction joints at same locations as in adjacent pavement or at spaces indicated on Drawings. Place smoothed, painted and oiled dowels accurately and normal to joint. Seal groove with joint sealing compound.

3.5 LONGITUDINAL WEAKENED PLANE JOINTS

A. Place longitudinal weakened plane joints at spaces indicated on Drawings. If more than 15 feet in width is poured, longitudinal joint must be saw cut. Seal groove with joint sealing compound.

3.6 SAWED JOINTS

A. Use sawed joints as alternate to contraction and weakened plane joints. Use circular cutter capable of cutting straight line groove minimum of 1/4 inch wide. Maintain depth of one quarter of pavement thickness. Commence sawing as soon as concrete has hardened sufficiently to permit cutting without chipping, spalling or tearing and prior to initiation of cracks. Once sawing has commenced, continue until completed. Make saw cut with one pass. Complete sawing within 24 hours of concrete placement. Saw joints at required spacing consecutively in sequence of concrete placement.

B. Concrete Saw: Provide sawing equipment adequate in power to complete sawing to required dimensions and within required time. Maintain ample supply of saw blades at work site during sawing operations. Maintain sawing equipment on job during concrete placement.

3.7 JOINTS FOR CURB, CURB AND GUTTER

A. Place 3/4 inch preformed expansion joints through curb and gutters at locations of expansion and contraction joints in pavement, at end of radius returns at street intersections and driveways, and at curb inlets. Maximum spacing shall be 120- foot centers.

3.8 JOINTS FOR CONCRETE SIDEWALKS

A. Provide 3/4-inch expansion joints conforming to ASTM A 1751 along and across sidewalk at back of curbs, at intersections with driveways, steps, and walls; and across walk at intervals not to exceed 36 feet. Provide expansion joint material conforming to ASTM D 994 for small radius curves and around fire hydrants and utility poles. Extend expansion joint material full depth of slab.

3.9 JOINTS FOR CONCRETE DRIVEWAYS

A. Provide 3/4-inch expansion joints conforming to ASTM D 1751 across driveway in line with street face of sidewalks, at existing concrete driveways, and along intersections with sidewalks and other structures. Extend expansion joint material full depth of slab.

3.10 JOINT SEALING

A. Seal joints only when surface and joints are dry, ambient temperature is above 50 degrees F and less than 85 degrees F and weather is not foggy or rainy.

B. Use joint sealing equipment in like new working condition throughout joint sealing operation and be approved by Project Manager. Use concrete grooving machine or power-operated wire brush and other equipment such as plow, brooms, brushes, blowers or hydro or abrasive cleaning as required to produce satisfactory joints.

C. Clean joints of loose scale, dirt, dust and curing compound. The term joint includes wide joint spaces, expansion joints, dummy groove joints or cracks, either preformed or natural. Remove loose material from concrete surfaces adjacent to joints.

D. Fill joints neatly with joint sealer to depth shown. Pour sufficient joint sealer into joints so that, upon completion, surface of sealer within joint will be 1/4 inch above level of adjacent surface or at elevation as directed.

3.11 PROTECTION

A. Maintain joints in good condition until completion of Work.

B. Replace damaged joints material with new material as required by this Section.

END OF SECTION 32 13 19

**SECTION 32 16 13**
**CONCRETE CURBS AND CURB AND GUTTER**

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

A. This Section specifies the requirements for providing, placing, curing, and protecting Portland cement concrete curbs, and combination curbs and gutters, constructed on a prepared subgrade.

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Reference Standards Applicable to this Section

1. ACI: American Concrete Institute

a. 316R: Recommendations for Construction of Concrete Pavements and Concrete Bases.

2. ASTM: American Society for Testing and Materials

a. A 615: Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement (with Supplement + S1).

b. C 150: Specification for Portland Cement Type I or Type II.

c. C 309: Specification for Liquid Membrane - Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete.

d. D 1565: Specifications for Flexible Cellular Materials Vinyl Chloride Polymers and Copolymers (Closed Cell).

e. D 1751: Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient bituminous Types).

f. D 1752: Specifications for Preformed Sponge Rubber and Cork Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction.

g. D 3405: Specification for Joint Sealants, Hot-Poured, for Portland Cement Concrete Pavement.

3. FS: Federal Specifications and Standards

a. TT-P-86: Paint, Red-Lead-Base, Ready-Mixed.

B. Finishing Tolerance

1. The top surface of curbs and combination curbs and gutters shall have a Class A tolerance as specified in ACI 316 R, Chapter 12.5.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. The following Submittals shall be submitted:

1. Reinforcement Materials

a. As required in Section 032100 - Concrete Reinforcement of these Specifications.

2. Concrete Materials

a. As required in Sections 321373.19 - Cast-in-Place Concrete of these Specifications.

1.4 EXTENDED WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer of joint sealant shall provide at least a 1-year written warranty against material degradation and failure and water and foreign matter infiltration through the joint from the time of written acceptance of the Work. This warranty shall not limit LIT rights or remedies as may otherwise be afforded under law or statute.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Forms

1. Either wood or metal, of the size and shape necessary for forming the item, straight and free of warp.

B. Reinforcing Steel Bars

1. As specified in Section 032100 - Concrete Reinforcement of these Specifications.

C. Dowel Bars

1. Smooth, ASTM A 615 + S1, Grade 60, new billet steel, unbonded ends painted with red-lead- base paint, FS TT-P-86, Type I and coated with a water-resistant lubricant immediately prior to placement of concrete in which unbonded ends of bars are to be embedded.

D. Dowel Bar Expansion Caps

1. PVC or plastic cap, slightly larger than dowel bar, closed end, a minimum of 6 in. long, with 1- 1/2 in. long compressible insert.

E. Concrete

1. As specified in Section 321373.19 – Cast-in-Place Concrete of these Specifications.

F. Membrane Forming Curing Compound

1. ASTM C 309, Type 2, unless otherwise directed.

G. Joint Materials

1. Preformed Expansion Joint Filler: Nonextruding and resilient bituminous type, ASTM D 1751.

2. Joint Sealing Material: See Section 321319 of these Specifications.

H. Form Coating

1. Commercial formulation form-coating compound that will not bond with, stain nor adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatment of concrete surfaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION AND PREPARATION

A. Prepared subgrade shall be inspected for unstable or unsuitable areas and need for additional compaction. Notify the Engineer in writing of such deficiencies. Do not begin curb construction until all such deficiencies have been corrected.

B. Loose and foreign material shall be removed from the compacted subgrade immediately prior to placing concrete, and subgrade shall be uniformly dampened.

3.2 SETTING FORMS

A. Forms shall be set to the line and grade indicated and shall be securely staked to maintain set position during depositing and curing of concrete. The inside form shall be rigidly attached to the outside form.

B. Forms shall be set in sufficient quantity to allow continuous progress of concrete placement and to ensure that forms shall remain in place not less than 24 hours.

C. Forms shall be cleaned after each use and coated with an approved form release agent prior to each use.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINTS, REINFORCEMENT, AND SEALANT

A. Reinforcement shall be installed as indicated on the Drawings and as specified in Section 032100 - Concrete Reinforcement of these Specifications. Joints shall be installed where indicated on the Drawings and in accordance with Section 321319 – Concrete Pavement Joints of these Specifications.

B. Sealant manufacturer's instructions and procedures shall be followed so as not to invalidate the warranty.

3.4 PLACING AND FINISHING CONCRETE

A. Concrete shall be placed and finished as specified in Section 32 13 73.19 - Cast-in-

Place Concrete of these Specifications, and ACI 316 R, Chapters 10 and 12.5.

B. After concrete has been struck off and has sufficiently set, the exposed surfaces shall be worked with a wood float. The exposed edges shall be rounded using an edging tool.

C. After form removal, the surfaces of the curb or combination curb and gutter shall be plastered with a mortar consisting of one-part Portland Cement and two parts fine aggregate. Mortar shall be applied with a template constructed to the shape and dimensions of the item to be plastered. All exposed surfaces shall be brushed to a uniform smooth texture.

3.5 CURING AND PROTECTING CONCRETE

A. Concrete shall be cured in accordance with the recommendations of ACI 316 R, Chapter 11, using the membrane curing method and materials.

B. Protection as recommended in ACI 316 R; Chapter 11 shall be provided until written acceptance by the Engineer.

END OF SECTION 32 16 13

# SECTION 32 18 23 - SYNTHETIC TRACK SURFACING SYSTEM

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 SCOPE

A. The synthetic surfacing contractor shall furnish all labor, materials, equipment, supervision and services necessary for the proper completion of the BSS 1000 Full Pour Dual Durometer synthetic track surfacing and related work indicated on the drawings and specified herein

B. The synthetic surfacing contractor shall refer to the drawings for the required locations of synthetic track surfacing to be installed. All quantities and dimensions shall be field verified by the synthetic surfacing contractor.

### 1.02 SPECIFIC SCOPE OF WORK

A. Install an approved, full depth poured-in-place two-component, UV stabilized elastomeric polyurethane Dual Durometer synthetic surfacing system with embedded textured finish.

B. Layout and paint all track lines and event markings as required and specified by current UIL rules.

### 1.03 COORDINATION

A. The synthetic surfacing contractor shall coordinate the work specified with an authorized and appointed representative of the owner so as to perform the work during a period and in a manner acceptable to the owner.

## PART 2 - CODES AND STANDARDS

### 2.01 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

A. Codes and standards follow the current guidelines set forth by the International Amateur Athletic Federation (IAAF) and the National Collegiate Athletic Association (NCAA), along with the current material testing guidelines as published by the American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM).

### 2.02 PERFORMANCA STANDARDS

A. The BSS 300 synthetic track surfacing system shall exhibit the following minimum performance standards as required by IAAF:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. | Thickness: | 13mm |
| 2. | Force Reduction | 35-50% |
| 3. | Vertical Deformation: | 0.6mm-2.5mm |
| 4. | Coefficient of Friction: | ≥ 0.5 (47 TRRL Scale) |
| 5. | Tensile Strength: | ≥ 0.5 Mpa |
| 6. | Elongation: | ≥ 40% |

## PART 3 - QUALITY ASSURANCE

### 3.01 CONTRACTOR AND MANUFACTURER QUALIFICATIONS

A. The CONTRACTOR and the MANUFACTURER must be the same.

B. The Contractor must have a minimum of ten (10) years experience in the installation of poured-in-place, two-component elastomeric polyurethane synthetic track surfacing.

C. The Contractor shall be able to furnish evidence that they have been in business for a period of not less than three (3) years, under the present name, and if required, furnish financial statements for each of the past three (3) years.

D. The Contractor must have installed a minimum of ten (10) outdoor track facilities in the last 2 years using the exact, IAAF certified, poured-in-place, two- component elastomeric polyurethane synthetic track surfacing, as specified herein with the contractor bidding this project.

E. The Manufacturer must have a minimum of ten (10) years of experience with compound two-part polyurethane for athletic surfaces

F. The Contractor is required to provide documentation that shows the selected specified and installed product meets current IAAF Performance Standards for Synthetic Surfaced Athletics Tracks (Outdoor) and is certified in terms of the IAAF certification system as updated to present day.

G. Contractor is to provide a list of completed facilities, minimum of ten (10) which are certified to meet IAAF/NCAA rules & regulations, utilizing the same product as specified.

H. The Manufacturer must offer a minimum of six (6) IAAF Certified Track Systems.

I. All polyurethane components must be manufactured in the United States.

J. All polyurethane components must be manufactured in an ISO 9001 Certified facility.

## 3.02 SUBMITTALS

A. The following submittals must be received with bid submittal:
   1. Standard printed specifications of the synthetic track surfacing system to be installed on this project.
   2. An affidavit attesting that the synthetic track surfacing material to be installed meets the requirements defined by the manufacturers currently published specifications and any modifications outlined in those technical specifications.
   3. A synthetic track surfacing system sample, 12” x 12”in size, of the same synthetic track surfacing system to be installed on this project.
   4. A list of completed facilities, including the installing supervisor, of the exact Dual Durometer synthetic track surfacing system.
   5. A current IAAF Certificate proving the product to be installed meets the current IAAF Performance Standards for Synthetic Surfaced Athletics Tracks (Outdoor).
   6. A letter, signed by an authorized representative of the track surfacing manufacturer, that the proposed track surfacing material falls within the allowable limits of hazardous material identified by the EPA.

# PART 4 - MATERIALS

## 4.01 MATERIAL STORAGE

A. Track surfacing material shall be delivered in sealed containers identified with the manufacturer’s original labeling.

B. Materials shall be stored in a dry location, protected against damage and freezing temperature.

C. All track surfacing material shall be on site and available for inventory by the Owner prior to surfacing.

D. All empty track surfacing material drums and bags must remain onsite until all track surfacing material has been installed and their removal is approved by the Owner. The Owner will use the empty drums and containers for final inventory of installed materials.

## 4.02 ELASTOMERIC POLYURETHANE

A. Two-component U.V. stabilized elastomeric polyurethane compounded from polyol and isocyanate components, based on one hundred percent (100%) Methylene Diphenyl Isocyanate (MDI). No Toluene Diisocyanate Isocyanate (TDI) will be allowed.

B. The elastomeric polyurethane shall be red in color.

## 4.03 EPDM GRANULATE

A. The EPDM granulates shall be approximately one (1mm) to three (3mm) millimeters in size.

B. The EPDM granulates and the U.V. stabilized elastomeric polyurethane shall be color matched.

## 4.04 RUBBER GRANULATE

A. Fine mesh Styrene Butadiene Rubber (SBR) processed ground to a graded size not to exceed 20 mesh in size

B. A maximum of twenty percent, by weight of the SBR will be allowed in the force reduction layer.

## 4.05 LINE MARKING PAINT

A. Manufacturers recommended one (1) or two (2) component polyurethane pigmented paint with aliphatic additives.

## 4.06 TRACK PROTECTION

A. Provide black geotextile with galvanized steel chain wrap in gold vinyl at the edging of safety, durability, and protection from wind, cleats, and ground equipment. Size to be fifteen (15) feet wide by forty (40) feet long. Basis of design is Aer-Flo 2G Cross-Over Zone Track Protector. 800-823-7356. www.aerflo.com or approved equal.

# PART 5 - INSTALLATION

## 5.01 SUBBASE REQUIREMENTS

A. Asphalt Compaction
   1. The Synthetic Track Surfacing System shall be laid on an approved subbase. The General Contractor shall provide compaction test results of 92-96% for the installed subbase and asphalt surface
   2. The track surface, i.e. asphalt substrate, shall not vary from planned cross slope by more than +/- 0.2%, with a maximum lateral slope outside to inside of 1%, and a maximum slope of 0.1% in any running direction. The finished asphalt shall not vary under a 10' straight edge more than 1/8".
   3. It should be the responsibility of the asphalt-paving contractor to flood the surface immediately after the asphalt is capable of handling traffic. If, after 20 minutes of drying time, there are birdbaths evident, it shall be the responsibility of the architect, in conjunction with the surfacing contractor, to determine the method of correction. No cold tar patching, skin patching or sand mix patching will be acceptable.

B. Asphalt Quality
   1. No Recycled Asphalt Pavement (RAP) shall be used in the wear course asphalt mix design as the inclusion of RAP as an off-set to virgin asphalt binder results in a brittle

hot-mix asphalt (HMA) with significantly lower tensile strength and fatigue resistance. The sports surfacing contractor will not be held responsible for asphalt failures resulting from the inclusion RAP in the HMA mix design of the wear course.

2. Any oil spills (hydraulic, diesel, motor oil, etc.) must be completely removed, either by chipping out or removing and replacing with new, keyed in asphalt. The minimum depth of any asphalt replacement shall be one inch. The curing time for the asphalt base is 28 days. It shall be the responsibility of the surfacing contractor to determine if the asphalt substrate has cured sufficiently prior to the application of polyurethane surfacing system.

C. Responsibility of Others

1. It shall be the responsibility of the general contractor to determine if the asphalt substrate meets all design specifications, i.e. cross slopes, planarity and specific project criteria. After all the above conditions are met, the synthetic surfacing contractor must, in writing, accept the planarity of the asphalt receiving base, before work can commence.

## 5.02 THICKNESS

A. Total thickness of synthetic track surfacing system shall average thirteen millimeters (13mm).

## 5.03 SITE CONDITIONS

A. Installation shall not take place if adjacent or concurrent construction generates excessive dust, abrasives or any other by-product that, in the opinion of the installer, would be harmful to the track material, until completion of such works

B. Apply Synthetic Track Surfacing in dry weather when pavement and atmospheric temperatures are fifty (50) degrees Fahrenheit or above and are anticipated to remain above fifty (50) degrees Fahrenheit for twenty-four (24) hours after completing application.

C. The maximum temperature cannot exceed 105 degrees at any point during a 24 - hour period.

D. Rain cannot be falling. If there is a threat of rain, work shall cease until dry conditions can be re-established on the track pavement. Work is to proceed only when adequate curing can be guaranteed by the manufacturer.

## 5.04 SURFACING INSTALLATION

A. The synthetic track surfacing system components shall be processed and installed by specially designed machinery with automatic electronic portioning, which provides continuous mixing, feeding and finishing for accurate quality controlled installation.

B. No hand mixing is allowed.

C. Any security of the track necessary to protect the surface from vandalism is the responsibility of the Contractor.

D. Force Reduction Layer: The fine mesh SBR granules and UV stabilized elastomeric polyurethane shall be metered and mixed together on site to regulate the ratio/quantity of SBR, not to exceed fourteen percent in the system and to insure an even distribution of the granules throughout the force reduction layer. No multi-layered systems allowed.

E. Resilient Wearing Layer: The 1 to 3mm EPDM granules shall be mechanically integrated with a UV stabilized elastomeric polyurethane to the full depth of the wearing layer. The resilient textured finish shall be a dense matrix of embedded EPDM granules.

F. The Contractor shall be responsible for protecting all improvements (turf areas, fences, concrete edging, site paving, etc.) from damage or coloration during the surfacing operations. Any improvements or existing elements damaged or detrimentally affected will be cleaned, repaired or restored to equal or better than their original condition at no cost to the Owner.

## 5.05 SURFACE TEST AND REPAIR

A. After completion of the track surfacing and curing, track shall be flooded with water to determine areas that may hold water. All low areas holding water after thirty (30) minutes shall be clearly outlined so that necessary repairs can be made.

B. In areas holding water, the base mat shall be removed. Surface layer shall be replaced and shall be made level with adjacent surfaces.

C. The track surface will be randomly probed by the Contractor and Owner in at least ten (10) areas to determine the finished thickness of the track surface.
   1. When the probed measurement indicated a deficiency of not more than one millimeter (1mm) from the specified thickness, the track surface will be considered adequate. When measurements are deficient by more than one millimeter (1mm), two additional probes will be taken at ten (10) foot intervals from the deficient probes and the average thickness of the three probes will be determined.
   2. In calculating the average thickness of the track surface, measurements which are in excess of the specified thickness will be considered as specified thickness. Measurements which are deficient of the specified thickness will be considered as specified thickness less the deficiency. If the average measurement of the three (3) probes is not deficient more than one millimeter (1mm) from the specified thickness , the track will be considered adequate. If the average thickness of the three (3) probes is deficient more than one millimeter (1mm), additional exploratory probes at five (5) foot intervals parallel to the centerline of the track in each direction from the deficient probe until each direction a probe is taken that is not deficient by more that one millimeter (1mm) for the specified thickness. Exploratory probe measurements will not be used in averages for deficient track surfacing.
   3. Deficient areas in excess of one millimeter (1mm) of the specified thickness will be resurfaced to obtain the specified thickness at the track surface Contractor's sole expense.

## 5.06 TRACK SURFACE CURING TIME

A. A minimum of seven (7) days curing of the track surface material must occur before subjecting the track to any competition or heavy use.

# PART 6 - LINE STRIPING AND EVENT MARKINGS

## 6.01 LAYOUT

A. Line striping and event markings shall be laid out in accordance with current UIL rules and as directed by the Owner.

## 6.02 CERIFICATION

A. Upon completion of the installation, the owner shall be supplied with all necessary computations and drawings as well as a letter of certification attesting to the accuracy of the markings.

## PART 7 - GUARANTEE

### 7.01 GUARANTEE

A. Synthetic Track Surfacing System shall be fully guaranteed against faulty workmanship and material failure for a period of ten (10) years from the date of final acceptance. All surfacing shall be guaranteed to the extent that the surfacing:
   1. Has been manufactured and applied in accordance with these and the manufacturers specifications.
   2. Will hold fast and adhere to the concrete and HMAC base.
   3. Will perform as specified in these specifications and specifications of the product manufacturer.
   4. Will not bubble, blister, fade, crack or wear excessively during the guarantee period.

B. Synthetic surfacing material found to be defective as a result of faulty workmanship and/or material failure shall be replaced or repaired at no charge, upon written notification within the guarantee period.

C. Contractor shall, in the presence of the Owner, inspect the track surfacing at the end of the first year of the guarantee period and each year thereafter until the end of the ten (10) year guarantee period.

END OF SECTION 32 18 23

# SECTION 32 31 12 - CHAIN LINK FENCING AND GATES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. General Coordination Procedures, (Reference Specification Section 01 31 00) General Contractor shall coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Furnish all labor, materials, services and equipment required for chain link fence and gate as shown on the drawings and as herein specified.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 03 Section “Concrete”, concrete for footings.
   2. Division 05 Section “Metal Fabrications”, for welded tube steel gate frames.
   3. Division 8 Section “Door Hardware” for panic device door hardware installed on chain link gates.
   4. Division 31 Section “Earthwork” for coordination with site grading.

### 1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. Underwriter’s Laboratories (UL):
   1. UL325, Doors, Drapery, Gates, Louvers, Windows, Operators, and Systems.

B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
   1. ASTM A 90 - Tests for Weight of Coating on Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Iron or Steel Articles.
   2. ASTM A 116 - Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Woven Wire Fence Fabric.
   3. ASTM A 123 - Specification for Zinc (Hot- Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products.
   4. [ASTM F 668 - Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Coated Steel Chain Link Fence Fabric].
   5. ASTM F 567 - Standard Practice for Installation of Chain Link Fence.
   6. ASTM A 824 - Specification for Metallic-Coated Steel Marcelled Tension Wire Use with Chain Link Fence.
   7. ASTM F 1043 - Specification for Strength and Protective Coatings on Metal Industrial Chain Link Fence Framework.
   8. ASTM F 900 - Specification for Industrial and Commercial Swing Gates.
   9. ASTM F 1083 - Specification for Pipe, Steel, Hot-Dipped Zinc Coated (Galvanized) Welded, For Fence Structures.

C. Chain Link Fence Manufacturer's Institute (CLFMI): Product Manual, most current version.

### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE AND DELEGATED DESIGN

A. Source Limitation: Provide chain link as manufactured by a single supplier, including necessary erection accessories, fittings, and fastenings.

B. Installer Qualifications: Fencing by company specializing in commercial / institutional quality chain link fencing with minimum five years experience.

C. Engineering Design for Fencing and Gates:
   1. Design framework and fittings to fit dimensions and loads indicated by use. Design in accord with values assigned by most restrictive industry guidelines.
   2. Where required by authorities having jurisdiction, design and construct fencing and gates to comply with design standards of controlling authorities. Obtain and pay for all associated permits.

D. Chain link fencing work performed in conformance with Chain Link Fence Manufacturer's Institute standards.

## 1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data and installation instructions for metal fencing, fabric, hardware, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: Provide plan layout, elevations, grid and spacing of components including fittings, hardware, accessories, and anchorages. Show all components of construction in elevations.
   1. For gate. Include elevations, hardware details and installation details.

C. Informational Submittals:
   1. Certificates: Manufacturer's certificate certifying that Products meet or exceed specified requirements.
   2. Qualifications.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 GENERAL

A. Dimensions indicate form pipe, roll-formed, and H-sections are outside dimensions, exclusive of coatings. Conform to CLFMI Product Manual.

## 2.02 MATERIALS

A. PVC-coated Chain Link Fence: ASTM A 668-2b; 9 ga. (0.148") polyolefin ASTM F668-2b coated galvanized steel wire, 2 inch diamond mesh interwoven wire. Top and bottom selvages knuckled or knuckled and twist. Fabric, framework and fittings shall be pre-galvanized and extruded/coated polyvinyl chloride coating conforming to ASTM F668, ASTM F1234 and ASTM F626, respectively.
   1. Color shall be black.

B. Line Posts: Provide intermediate posts for supporting frame at 10' O.C. maximum. Minimum sizes per delegated design (where applicable), as indicated in Drawings, or as follows, whichever is greatest:
   1. Up to 6' tall fence: 2" diameter (Schedule 40) galvanized steel posts.
   2. Over 6' to 10’ high fence: 2 1/2” (Schedule 40) galvanized steel posts.
   3. Over 10' high fence: 3" (Schedule 40) galvanized steel posts.

C. End, Corner, and Terminal Posts: Minimum sizes per delegated design (where applicable), as indicated in Drawings, or as follows, whichever is greatest:
   1. Up to 6' tall fence: 2-1/2" diameter (Schedule 40) galvanized steel pipe.
   2. Over 6' to 10’ high fence: 3” diameter (Schedule 40) galvanized steel pipe.
   3. Over 10' high fence: 4" diameter (Schedule 40) galvanized steel pipe, .

D. Gate Posts: Minimum sizes per delegated design (where applicable), as indicated in Drawings, or as follows, whichever is greatest:

1. 3" Galvanized (Schedule 40) for all gates less than 6'-0" in width.
2. 4" Galvanized (Schedule 40) steel pipe for gates 6'-0" and over in width.
3. 6" Galvanized (Schedule 40) steel pipe for swing gate leafs over 6'-0" in width and nominal 8 feet high or taller, and swing gates over 10' in width.
4. Sliding gates of all sizes: 4" Galvanized (Schedule 40) steel pipe.

E. Fencing Horizontal and Bracing Members:
1. Top Rails: 1.66" outside diameter galvanized pipe with couplings minimum 6" long.
2. Bottom and Intermediate Rails: 1.66" outside diameter galvanized pipe with 6" long expansion type couplings, with means to attach securely to all adjacent posts.
3. Post Brace Assembly: Manufacturer's standard adjustable brace at all end and gate posts, and at both sides of corner posts, with horizontal brace located at mid-height of fabric. Use same materials as other rails for brace rail, and truss to line posts with 0.375 inch diameter rod and adjustable tightener.

## 2.03 ACCESSORIES

A. Post Tops: Provide weathertight closure cap with loop to receive tension wire or top rail as applicable; one cap for each post. Finish to match post.

B. Stretcher Bars: One-piece lengths equal to full height of fabric, with minimum cross-section of 3/16" x 3/4". Provide one stretcher bar for each gate and end post, and two for each corner and pull post, except where fabric is integrally woven into post.

C. Stretcher Bar Bands: Manufacturer's standard. Space not over 15" o.c. to secure stretcher bars to end, corner, pull and gate posts.

D. Gate Truss Rods: 3/8" diameter galvanized steel adjustable length truss rods.

E. Concrete Footings: Provide concrete consisting of Portland cement, ASTM C 150, aggregates, ASTM C 33, and clean water. Mix materials to obtain concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 2500 psi using at least 4 sacks of cement per cu. yd., 1" maximum size aggregate, maximum 3" slump, and 2% to 4% entrained air.

## 2.04 GATE FABRICATION

A. Manually Operated Swing Gates:
1. Fabricate perimeter frames of minimum 1.90" o.d. galvanized steel pipe. Provide intermediate horizontal and vertical members to ensure proper gate operation and attachment for fabric, hardware, and accessories. Space intermediate members not more than 8 feet on center, unless more stringent requirements are otherwise indicated.
2. Assemble gate frames by welding or with special fittings and rivets for rigid connections, providing security against removal or breakage connections, providing security against removal or breakage connections.
3. Provide same fabric as for fence, unless otherwise indicated. Install fabric with stretcher bars at vertical edges and at top and bottom edges. Attach stretcher bars to gate frame at not more than 15" o.c.
4. Install diagonal cross-bracing consisting of 3/8" diameter adjustable length truss rods on gates to ensure frame rigidity without sag or twist.

B. Swing Gate Hardware:
1. Hinges shall be of size and material to suit gate size, non-lift-off type, offset to permit 180 degree gate opening. Provide 1-1/2 pair of hinges for each leaf over 6' nominal height, 2 pair for each leaf for gates over 8' nominal height.
2. Latch shall be forked type or plunger-bar type to permit operation from either side of gate, with padlock eye as integral part of latch.

3. Provide gate keepers except for gates that do not swing past edge of paving, which automatically engages gate leaf and holds it in open position until manually released. [Keepers shall be of type that provide vertical load support the end of the gate in open position].
4. Provide gate stops and plunger rods for closed positon of double gates and open position of gates that do not swing past edges of paving, consisting of mushroom type flush plate with anchors, set in concrete, and designed to engage center drop rod or plunger bar. At double gates include locking device and padlock eyes integral to the latch, permitting both gate leaves to be locked with a single padlock.
5. Padlocks: Provided by Owner**.**

## 2.05 FINISHES

A. All fence posts, fabric and accessories shall be galvanized unless otherwise indicated.

B. At fencing indicated to be PVC coated, all fence posts, fabric, components and accessories shall be galvanzied with matching color PVC coating unless otherwise indicated.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 PREPARATION

A. Verify grading adjacent to fence locations, and other requirements for installation, are complete. Coordinate power location and requirements for gate hardware with electrical contractor. Coordinate requirements for gate hardware installed by other trades with hardware installer.

B. Lay out fence according to construction Drawings.

C. Verification of Conditions: Verify that field measurements, surfaces, substrates and conditions are as required, and ready to receive Work. Report in writing prevailing conditions that will adversely affect satisfactory execution of the Work of this Section. Do not proceed with Work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. By beginning Work, Contractor accepts conditions and assumes responsibility for correcting unsuitable conditions encountered at no additional cost to the Owner.

## 3.02 INSTALLATION

A. General:
1. Install fence in accordance with ASTM F 567 and manufacturer's published instructions.
2. Install gates in accordance with ASTM F 900, ASTM F2200 or ASTM 1184 as applicable and to manufacturer's published instructions.

B. Space line posts 10 feet on center maximum unless otherwise indicated in Drawings. Space line posts at equal distances in each run between corner posts, terminal posts, and gate posts unless otherwise indicated.

C. Excavation: Drill or hand excavate holes for posts to 36" deep and 10" diameter, or not less than four times the post diameter, whichever is greater; for gate and corner posts 16" dia. x 40" deep. Set bottom of posts a minimum of 36" inches below grade. Hold post in position while placing, consolidating, and finishing concrete.
1. Provide minimum 48" concrete post embedment where 6" diameter swing gate posts are required.
2. Provide greater size footings and post embedment depth where required by other design criteria.
3. Coordinate post footings with concrete mow strips where indicated in Drawings.

D. Brace Assemblies: Install braces so posts are plumb when diagonal rod is under proper tension.

E. Tension Wire: Install tension wires through post cap loops before stretching fabric and tie to each post cap with not less than 6 ga. galvanized wire. Fasten fabric to tension wire using 11 ga. galvanized steel hog rings spaced 24" o.c.

F. Fabric: Pull fabric taut and tie to posts, rails and tension wires. Install fabric on service area side of fence, and anchor to framework at 15" o.c. max. so that fabric remains in tension after pulling force is released. Position bottom within 1-1/2" maximum above finished grade from bottom of selvage to grade.

G. Stretcher Bars: Thread through or clamp to fabric 4" o.c., and secure to posts with metal bands spaced 15" o.c.

H. Tie Wires: Use U-shaped wire, conforming to diameter of pipe to which attached, clasping pipe and fabric firmly with ends twisted at least two full turns. Bend ends of wire to minimize hazard to persons or clothing. Tie fabric to line posts, with wire ties spaced 12" o.c.. Tie fabric to rails and braces with wire ties spaced 24" o.c.. Tie fabric to tension wires with hog rings spaced 24" o.c.

I. Fasteners: Install nuts for tension bands and hardware bolts on side of fence opposite fabric side. Peen ends of bolts or score threads to prevent removal of nuts.

J. Gates: Install gates plumb, level and secure for full opening without interference. Install ground-set items in concrete for anchorage. Adjust hardware for smooth operation and lubricate where necessary.

K. Construction Tolerances:
   1. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 1/4 inch.
   2. Maximum Offset from True Position: 1 inch.
   3. Locate fencing components completely within site boundaries. Do not infringe adjacent property lines.
   4. Maximum Fence Distance from Ground: 1 1/2 inches.
   5. Maximum Gate Clearance from bottom rail to Grade or Paving: 4 inches.

## 3.03 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

A. Verify all operable parts are properly lubricated and functioning. Check all mechanical connections for tightness and alignment.

B. Prior to substantial completion, clean the fence as recommended by manufacturer.

C. Remove post-hole excavation material, or if material is not detrimental to landscaping then scatter uniformly to grade prior to landscaping installation.

D. Remove excess jobsite materials.

END OF SECTION 32 31 12

# SECTION 32 92 00 - TURF AND GRASSES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Grass at track infield
   2. Seeding
   3. Hydroseeding
   4. Sodding.
   5. Turf renovation at areas damaged by construction processes.
   6. Erosion control materials and new turf/grasses
   7. Grass paving at new fire lane

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 31 Section "Site Clearing" for topsoil stripping and stockpiling.
   2. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavation, filling and backfilling, and rough grading.

### 1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Duff Layer: The surface layer of native topsoil that is composed of mostly decayed leaves, twigs, and detritus.

B. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.

C. Subgrade: Surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or top surface of a fill or backfill before planting soil is placed.

D. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile, and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.

E. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile at the Project site. In undisturbed areas, the surface soil is typically topsoil, but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.

### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
   1. Pesticides and Herbicides: Include product label and manufacturer's application instructions specific to this Project.

### 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Sod: Harvest, deliver, store, and handle sod according to requirements in "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Materials" and "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Transplanting and Installation" in TPI's "Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding." Deliver sod in time for planting within 24 hours of harvesting. Protect sod from breakage and drying.

### 1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with planting only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit planting to be performed when beneficial and optimum results may be

obtained. Apply products during favorable weather conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions.

## 1.07 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Initial Turf Maintenance Service: Provide full maintenance by skilled employees of landscape Installer. Maintain as required in Part 3. Begin maintenance immediately after each area is planted and continue until acceptable turf is established but for not less than the following periods:
   1. Sodded Turf: 30 days from date of Substantial Completion.

# PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.01 TURFGRASS SOD

A. Turfgrass Sod: Certified, complying with "Specifications for Turfgrass Sod Materials" in TPI's "Guideline Specifications to Turfgrass Sodding." Furnish viable sod of uniform density, color, and texture, strongly rooted, and capable of vigorous growth and development when planted.

B. Turfgrass Species: Bermudagrass (Cynodon dactylon).

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to be planted for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
   1. Verify that no foreign or deleterious material or liquid such as paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, or acid has been deposited in soil within a planting area.
   2. Suspend grading operations during periods of excessive soil moisture until the moisture content reaches acceptable levels to attain the required results.
   3. Uniformly moisten excessively dry soil that is not workable and which is too dusty.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.02 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities, trees, shrubs, and plantings from damage caused by planting operations.
   1. Protect grade stakes set by others until directed to remove them.

B. Install erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.

## 3.03 TURF AREA PREPARATION

A. Limit turf subgrade preparation to areas to be planted.

B. Newly Graded Subgrades: Loosen subgrade to a minimum depth of 4 inches. Remove stones larger than 2 inches in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
   a. Reduce elevation of planting soil to allow for soil thickness of sod.

C. Unchanged Subgrades: If turf is to be planted in areas unaltered or undisturbed by excavating, grading, or surface-soil stripping operations, prepare surface soil as follows:
   1. Remove existing grass, vegetation, and turf. Do not mix into surface soil.
   2. Loosen surface soil to a depth of at least 6 inches.

3. Remove stones larger than 2 inches in any dimension and sticks, roots, trash, and other extraneous matter.
4. Legally dispose of waste material, including grass, vegetation, and turf, off Owner's property.

D. Finish Grading: Grade planting areas to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Grade to within plus or minus 1/2 inch of finish elevation. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades. Limit finish grading to areas that can be planted in the immediate future.

E. Moisten prepared area before planting if soil is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.

F. Before planting, obtain Architect's acceptance of finish grading; restore planting areas if eroded or otherwise disturbed after finish grading.

## 3.04 SODDING

A. Lay sod within 24 hours of harvesting. Do not lay sod if dormant or if ground is frozen or muddy.

B. Lay sod to form a solid mass with tightly fitted joints. Butt ends and sides of sod; do not stretch or overlap. Stagger sod strips or pads to offset joints in adjacent courses. Avoid damage to subgrade or sod during installation. Tamp and roll lightly to ensure contact with subgrade, eliminate air pockets, and form a smooth surface. Work sifted soil or fine sand into minor cracks between pieces of sod; remove excess to avoid smothering sod and adjacent grass.
1. Lay sod across angle of slopes exceeding 1:3.
2. Anchor sod on slopes exceeding 1:6 with wood pegs or steel staples spaced as recommended by sod manufacturer but not less than 2 anchors per sod strip to prevent slippage.

C. Saturate sod with fine water spray within two hours of planting. During first week after planting, water daily or more frequently as necessary to maintain moist soil to a minimum depth of 1-1/2 inches below sod.

## 3.05 TURF RENOVATION

A. Renovate existing turf.

B. Renovate existing turf damaged by Contractor's operations, such as storage of materials or equipment and movement of vehicles.
1. Reestablish turf where settlement or washouts occur or where minor regrading is required.
2. Install new planting soil as required.

C. Remove sod and vegetation from diseased or unsatisfactory turf areas; do not bury in soil.

D. Remove topsoil containing foreign materials such as oil drippings, fuel spills, stones, gravel, and other construction materials resulting from Contractor's operations, and replace with new planting soil.

E. Mow, dethatch, core aerate, and rake existing turf.

F. Remove weeds before seeding. Where weeds are extensive, apply selective herbicides as required. Do not use pre-emergence herbicides.

G. Remove waste and foreign materials, including weeds, soil cores, grass, vegetation, and turf, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

H. Till stripped, bare, and compacted areas thoroughly to a soil depth of 6 inches.

I. Install new planting soil to fill low spots and meet finish grades.

J. Apply sod as required for new turf.

K. Water newly planted areas and keep moist until new turf is established.

## 3.06 TURF MAINTENANCE

A. Maintain and establish turf by watering, weeding, mowing, trimming, replanting, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable turf. Roll, regrade, and replant bare or eroded areas and re-mulch to produce a uniformly smooth turf. Provide materials and installation the same as those used in the original installation.
   1. Fill in as necessary soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes. Replace materials and turf damaged or lost in areas of subsidence.

B. Watering: Install and maintain temporary piping, hoses, and turf-watering equipment to convey water from sources and to keep turf uniformly moist to a depth of 4 inches.
   1. Schedule watering to prevent wilting, puddling, erosion, and displacement of seed or mulch. Lay out temporary watering system to avoid walking over muddy or newly planted areas.
   2. Water turf with fine spray at a minimum rate of 1 inch per week unless rainfall precipitation is adequate.

C. Mow turf as soon as top growth is tall enough to cut. Repeat mowing to maintain specified height without cutting more than 1/3 of grass height. Remove no more than 1/3 of grass-leaf growth in initial or subsequent mowings. Do not delay mowing until grass blades bend over and become matted. Do not mow when grass is wet. Schedule initial and subsequent mowings to maintain the following grass height:
   1. Mow bermudagrass to a height of 1/2 to 1 inch.

## 3.07 SATISFACTORY TURF

A. Turf installations shall meet the following criteria as determined by Architect:
   1. Satisfactory Sodded Turf: At end of maintenance period, a healthy, well-rooted, even-colored, viable turf has been established, free of weeds, open joints, bare areas, and surface irregularities.

B. Use specified materials to reestablish turf that does not comply with requirements and continue maintenance until turf is satisfactory.

## 3.08 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

A. Promptly remove soil and debris created by turf work from paved areas. Clean wheels of vehicles before leaving site to avoid tracking soil onto roads, walks, or other paved areas.

B. Erect temporary fencing or barricades and warning signs as required to protect newly planted areas from traffic. Maintain fencing and barricades throughout initial maintenance period and remove after plantings are established.

C. Remove nondegradable erosion-control measures after grass establishment period.

END OF SECTION 32 92 00

**SECTION 33 05 16**
**UTILITY STRUCTURES**

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Excavation and backfill.

B. Cast-in place concrete structures.

C. Precast concrete structures.

D. Metal components.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Concrete formwork, concrete reinforcement, cast-in-place concrete, Portland cement concrete, concrete repair and finishing, and precast concrete are specified in the various Sections under Division 3 - Concrete.

B. Interior trench drains and gratings for interior uses are specified in Submittals.

C. Duct banks are specified per submittals for Facility Services.

1.3 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. General: Measurement and payment for utility structures will be either by the lump-sum method or by the unit-price method as determined by the listing of the bid item for utility structures indicated in the Bid Schedule of the Bid Form.

B. Lump Sum: If the Bid Schedule indicates a lump sum for utility structures, the lump-sum method of measurement and payment will be in accordance with Section 01, Article 1.03.

C. Unit Price: If the Bid Schedule indicates a unit price for utility structures, the unit-price method of measurement and payment will be as follows:

1. Measurement:

a. Cast-in-place concrete and precast concrete units or structures and metal curb-and-gutter inlets will be measured for payment by the individual unit (each), installed in place. Each different type and size of concrete unit or structure will be measured separately for payment.

b. Manhole covers and frames, grates and frames, pipe inlets and outlets, manhole steps, ladders, miscellaneous metal, reinforcing steel, and grounding will not be measured separately for payment, but will be included as part of the utility structure to which it is attached or embedded.

c. Excavation and backfill for utility structures will be measured separately for payment as specified in Section 31 00 00 - Earthwork, as applicable.

2. Payment:

a. Utility structures will be paid for at the indicated Contract unit prices for the computed quantities as determined by the measurement method specified in Article 1.03.C.1, herein.

1.4 REFERENCES

A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

1. ASTM A36/A36M Specification for Structural Steel

2. ASTM A48 Specification for Gray Iron Castings

3. ASTM A108 Specification for Steel Bars, Carbon, Cold-Finished, Standard Quality

4. ASTM A123 Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products

5. ASTM A153 Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware

6. ASTM A536 Specifications for Ductile Iron Castings

7. ASTM B3 Specification for Soft or Annealed Copper Wire

8. ASTM B26/B26M Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Sand Castings

9. ASTM C33 Specification for Concrete Aggregates

10. ASTM C150 Specification for Portland Cement

11. ASTM C260 Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete

12. ASTM C270 Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry

13. ASTM C478 Specification for Precast Reinforced Concrete Manhole Sections

14. ASTM C618 Specification for Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use as a Mineral Admixture in Portland Cement Concrete

15. ASTM C789 Specification for Precast Reinforced Concrete Box Sections for Culverts, Storm Drains, and Sewers

16. ASTM C850 Specification for Precast Reinforced Concrete Box Sections for Culverts, Storm Drains, and Sewers with Less Than 2 feet of Cover Subjected to Highway Loadings

17. ASTM C858 Specification for Underground Precast Concrete Utility Structures

18. ASTM C891 Practice for Installation of Underground Precast Concrete Utility Structures

B. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):

1. UL 467 Grounding and Bonding Equipment

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Refer to Section 01, for submittal requirements and procedures.

B. Shop Drawings: When not indicated on the Contract Drawings in sufficient detail or definition, submit detailed drawings of cast-in-place and precast concrete utility structures and related metal work.

C. Product Data: Submit manufacturers' product data for standard manufactured precast concrete utility boxes and structures and for metal gratings and covers and other, related miscellaneous metal items.

D. Certification: Submit certification or other acceptable evidence that covers and grates to be provided for roadways and parking areas meet proof-testing requirements for H2O and HS2O loadings in accordance with Caltrans Bridge Design Specifications Manual, Section 3.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE STRUCTURES

A. Materials: Comply with requirements of Section 32 13 13 - Portland Cement Concrete, except as specified otherwise herein.

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C150, Type II, low alkali.

2. Cementitious Admixture: Provide fly ash or pozzolan conforming with ASTM C618, Class F or N, not to exceed 15 percent by weight of the cement content.

3. Aggregates: ASTM C33, fine aggregate and Size Nos. 56 or 57 (1-inch maximum size) coarse aggregate.

B. Mix Design: Obtain design of concrete mix as specified in Section 32 13 13 - Portland Cement Concrete, and incorporate the following requirements:

1. Concrete Strength: Class 4000 minimum in accordance with Table 03305-A of Section 32 13 13 - Portland Cement Concrete, except that electrical structures, such as vaults, pull boxes, and concrete for ductbanks, shall be Class 3000.

2. Maximum water-cement plus pozzolan ratio: 0.45.

3. Maximum slump: 4 inches.

## 2.2 PRECAST CONCRETE STRUCTURES

A. General: The Contractor may provide precast concrete structures that conform to the general configuration, capacities, and inverts indicated.

B. Fabrication Standards: Comply with requirements of ASTM C478, ASTM C789, ASTM C850, and ASTM C858, as applicable, and applicable manufacturers' standards.

C. Materials: Comply with requirements of Section 03 21 00 - Concrete Reinforcing, Section 32 13 13 - Portland Cement Concrete, except as specified otherwise herein. Provide fine and coarse aggregates conforming to ASTM C33, in size commensurate with structure and reinforcement clearances.

D. Portland Cement Concrete: Class 4000 minimum in accordance with Table 03305-A of Section 32 13 13 - Portland Cement Concrete. Concrete may be polymer or latex modified to achieve higher strengths and denser concrete. Concrete shall not deteriorate from chemical attack of sanitary waste.

1. Concrete for electrical utility structures shall be Class 3000.

E. Precast Covers: Precast covers shall have the utility identification, such as "PG&E Gas Valve," stamped into the cover.

F. Quality Control: In accordance with Section 01, the Contractor shall perform such inspections and tests as required to verify compliance with these Specifications.

## 2.3 METAL COVERS, GRATES, AND INLETS

A. Ferrous Castings:

1. Metal used in manufacture of castings shall conform to ASTM A48, Class 35B for Gray Iron, or ASTM A536, Grade 65-45-12 for Ductile Iron.

2. Castings shall be of uniform quality, free from blowholes, shrinkage, distortion or other defects. Castings shall be smooth and cleaned by shotblasting.

3. Minimum tensile strength shall be 35,000 psi.

4. Castings shall be manufactured true to pattern; component parts shall fit together in a satisfactory manner. Round frames and covers shall have continuously machined bearing surfaces to prevent rocking and rattling.

5. Where castings will be subjected to loads of H2O or greater, as indicated, provide ductile iron castings.

B. Aluminum Castings: Where required to reduce weights of larger covers for ease of handling, such covers may be manufactured of aluminum castings conforming to ASTM B26/B26M, Alloy No. 713.0. Minimum tensile strength shall be 32,000 psi.

C. Manhole Covers: Provide cast, manufactured manhole covers and frames with heavy-duty solid cover (lid) or vented cover (lid) as indicated. Covers shall be embossed or engraved with nonslip diamond or square cross-hatched pattern. Provide covers with embossed or engraved word identification, as indicated or appropriate, for the enclosed or underground utility.

D. Grates:

1. Cast Ferrous Grates: Grates for area drains and catch basins shall be heavy-duty, bicycle safe inlet grates and frames of size and configuration indicated. Grates in roadways and parking areas shall withstand H20 loadings when proof-tested in accordance with Caltrans Bridge Design Specifications Manual, Section 3.

2. Bar-Type Steel Grates: Bar-type steel gratings will be permitted only in areas where vehicular traffic will not be encountered.

E. Curb and Gutter Inlets: Provide cast, manufactured curb inlet frame, grate, and curb box of size and configuration indicated. Curb and gutter inlets shall conform to the contour and profile of the concrete curb and gutter. Grates shall be heavy-duty and bicycle-safe and shall withstand H20.

F. Cast Iron Manhole Steps: Provide cast, manufactured manhole steps with cross-hatched treads and with anchor configuration appropriate for cast-in-place concrete or precast concrete as indicated. Provide steps for installation 12 inches on center in vertical alignment.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS METAL

A. Requirements: Provide channel inserts, pulling eyes, ladders, and electrical grounding rods for electrical manholes and pull boxes as indicated.

B. Steel Materials: Standard structural sections, shapes, plates, bars, and rods, as indicated, conforming with ASTM A36/A36M. Bars conforming with ASTM 108 will be acceptable.

C. Anchors and Bolts: Bolts and studs, nuts, and washers shall be hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153.

D. Ladders: Provide standard-manufactured or custom-fabricated steel ladders as required to meet the conditions indicated. Steel ladders shall be hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.

E. Grounding and Bonding Materials: Conform with UL 467 and the following requirements:

1. Grounding Rods: Medium carbon steel core, copper-clad by the molten weld casting process, 3/4-inch diameter by 10 feet long in size.

2. Bare Conductors: ASTM B3, No. 1/0 AWG, Class B stranded, annealed copper conductor.

F. Fabrication: Form and fabricate the work as indicated. Include anchors, fasteners, and accessories to anchor and secure the work in place.

G. Galvanizing: All ferrous metal items shall be galvanized after fabrication by the hot-dip process in accordance with ASTM A123. Weight of the zinc coating shall conform with the requirements specified under "Weight of Coating" in ASTM A123.

## 2.5 MORTAR

A. Cement mortar for the sealing of openings for pipe penetrations, for cementing of joints of component parts of precast structures, for providing of flow characteristics for the bottoms

of drainage structures, and other features as indicated shall conform with the Texas Building Code, Chapter 21, Type S (without lime), with a minimum compressive strength at 28 days of 1,800 psi.

B. Mortar shall comply with applicable requirements of ASTM C270, including measurement, mixing, proportioning, and water retention. Ten percent by volume of the cement content of the mortar shall be fly ash or pozzolanic material conforming with ASTM C618.

C. Use mortar within 90 minutes after mixing. Discard mortar that has been mixed longer or that has begun to set. Re-tempering of mortar will not be permitted.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Requirements: Construct manholes, junction chambers, catch basins, curb and gutter inlets, trench drains, culverts, headwalls, wingwalls, pull boxes, utility boxes and vaults, and related utility structures in connection with the installation of pipe, conduits, ductbanks, and utility trenches, as indicated.

B. Excavation and Backfill: Provide excavation, prepared subgrade and aggregate base, and backfill as specified in Section 31 00 00 - Earthwork, Section 33 05 28 - Trenching and Backfilling for Utilities, Section 32 11 17 - Aggregate Subbase Courses, and Section 32 11 23 - Aggregate Base Course, as indicated.

C. Cast-in-Place Concrete Structures: Provide formwork, steel reinforcement, and concrete in accordance with applicable requirements of Section 03 21 00 - Concrete Reinforcing, and Section 32 13 73.19 - Cast-In-Place Concrete.

D. Precast Concrete Structures: Install as indicated. Comply with applicable requirements of ASTM C891. Provide such appurtenances and installation accessories, including cement mortar and sealants, as required for a complete installation.

E. Metal Components: Install manhole covers, grates and frames, curb and gutter inlets, metal steps, ladders, channel inserts, pulling eyes, and electrical grounding rods as indicated and in accordance with the respective manufacturer's instructions. Covers and grates in roadways, parking areas, and concrete walks shall be installed flush with adjacent, abutting pavement.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. The Contractor shall perform slump tests and strength tests of cast-in-place structures in accordance with the requirements specified in Section 32 13 13 - Portland Cement Concrete.

B. Acceptance of cast-in-place structures will be in accordance with Section 32 13 13, Portland Cement Concrete.

END OF SECTION 33 05 16

**SECTION 33 05 28**
**TRENCHING AND BACKFILLING FOR UTILITIES**

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Excavation, trenching, foundation, embedment, and backfill for installation of utilities, including manholes and other pipeline structures.

1.2 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices

1. No additional payment will be made for trench excavation, embedment and backfill under this Section. Include cost in unit price for installed underground piping, sewer, conduit, or duct work.

2. When Project Manager directs Contractor to over excavate trench bottom, Contractor will be paid by unit price bid per linear foot under bid item - 6-inches Over Excavation of Trench Bottom.

a. No payment will be paid if Project Manager does not direct Contractor to over excavate trench bottom.

b. No over excavation will be measured or paid when unsuitable conditions result from dewatering system not in conformance with Section 01.

3. No additional payment will be made for performing Critical Location exploratory excavation. Include cost in unit price for installed underground piping, sewer, conduit, or duct work.

4. Refer to Section 01 for unit price procedures.

B. Stipulated Price (Lump Sum). If Contract is Stipulated Price Contract, payment for Work in this Section is included in total Stipulated Price

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Pipe Foundation: Suitable and stable native soils that are exposed at trench subgrade after excavation to depth of bottom of bedding as shown on Drawings, or foundation backfill material placed and compacted in over-excavations.

B. Pipe Bedding: Portion of trench backfill that extends vertically from top of foundation up to level line at bottom of pipe, and horizontally from one trench sidewall to opposite sidewall.

C. Haunching: Material placed on either side of pipe from top of bedding up to springline of pipe and horizontally from one trench sidewall to opposite sidewall.

D. Initial Backfill: Portion of trench backfill that extends vertically from springline of pipe (top of haunching) up to level line 12-inches above top of pipe, and horizontally from one trench sidewall to opposite sidewall.

E. Pipe Embedment: Portion of trench backfill that consists of bedding, haunching and initial backfill.

F. Trench Zone: Portion of trench backfill that extends vertically from top of pipe embedment up to pavement subgrade or up to final grade when not beneath pavement.

G. Unsuitable Material: Unsuitable soil materials are the following:

1. Materials that are classified as ML, CL-ML, MH, PT, OH, and OL according to ASTM D 2487.

2. Materials that cannot be compacted to required density due to gradation, plasticity, or moisture content.

3. Materials that contain large clods, aggregates, stones greater than 4-inches in any dimension, debris, vegetation, waste or any other deleterious materials.

4. Materials that are contaminated with hydrocarbons or other chemical contaminants.

H. Suitable Material: Suitable soil materials are those meeting specification requirements. Materials mixed with lime, fly ash, or cement that can be compacted to required density and meeting requirements for suitable materials may be considered suitable materials, unless otherwise indicated.

I. Backfill: Suitable material meeting specified quality requirements placed and compacted under controlled conditions.

J. Ground Water Control Systems: Installations external to trench, such as well points, reductors, or deep wells. Ground water control includes dewatering to lower ground water, intercepting seepage which would otherwise emerge from side or bottom of trench excavation, and depressurization to prevent failure or heaving of excavation bottom. Refer to Section 01.

K. Surface Water Control: Diversion and drainage of surface water runoff and rain water away from trench excavation. Rain water and surface water accidentally entering trench shall be controlled and removed as part of excavation drainage.

L. Excavation Drainage: Removal of surface and seepage water in trench by sump pumping and using drainage layer, as defined in ASTM D 2321, placed on foundation beneath pipe bedding or thickened bedding layer of Class I material.

M. Trench Conditions are defined with regard to stability of trench bottom and trench walls of pipe embedment zone. Maintain trench conditions that provide for effective placement and compaction of embedment material directly on or against undisturbed soils or foundation backfill, except where structural trench support is necessary.

1. Dry Stable Trench: Stable and substantially dry trench conditions exist in pipe embedment zone as result of typically dry soils or achieved by ground water control (dewatering or depressurization) for trenches extending below ground water level.

2. Stable Trench with Seepage: Stable trench in which ground water seepage is controlled by excavation drainage.

    a. Stable Trench with Seepage in Clayey Soils: Excavation drainage is provided in lieu of or to supplement ground water control systems to control seepage and provide stable trench subgrade in predominately clayey soils prior to bedding placement.

    b. Stable Wet Trench in Sandy Soils: Excavation drainage is provided in embedment zone in combination with ground water control in predominately sandy or silty soils.

3. Unstable Trench: Unstable trench conditions exist in pipe embedment zone if ground water inflow or high-water content causes soil disturbances, such as sloughing, sliding, boiling, heaving or loss of density.

N. Sub-trench: Sub-trench is special case of benched excavation. Sub-trench excavation below trench shields or shoring installations may be used to allow placement and compaction of foundation or embedment materials directly against undisturbed soils. Depth of sub-trench depends upon trench stability and safety as determined by Contractor.

O. Trench Dam: Placement of low permeability material in pipe embedment zone or foundation to prohibit ground water flow along trench.

P. Over-excavation and Backfill: Excavation of subgrade soils with unsatisfactory bearing capacity or composed of otherwise unsuitable materials below top of foundation as shown on Drawings and backfilled with foundation bedding.

Q. Foundation Bedding: Natural soil or manufactured aggregate of controlled gradation, and geotextile filter fabrics as required, to control drainage and material separation. Foundation bedding is placed and compacted as backfill to provide stable support for bedding. Foundation bedding materials may include concrete seal slabs.

R. Trench Safety Systems include both protective systems and shoring systems as defined in Section 33 05 28 Trenching Backfill for Utilities. n

S. Trench Shield (Trench Box): Portable worker safety structure moved along trench as work proceeds, used as protective system and designed to withstand forces imposed on it by caving, thereby protecting persons within trench. Trench shields may be stacked if so designed or placed in series depending on depth and length of excavation to be protected.

T. Shoring System: Structure that supports sides of an excavation to maintain stable soil conditions and prevent cave-ins, or to prevent movement of ground affecting adjacent installations or improvements.

U. Special Shoring: Shoring system meeting special shoring as specified in Paragraph 1.08, Special Shoring Design Requirements, for locations identified on Drawings.

V. Vacuum Excavation: An excavation technique performed by an experienced subcontractor in which water or air jetting is used to slough off and vacuum away soil.

W. Large Diameter Water Line (LDWL): Water line that is 24-inches in diameter or larger. X. Emergency Action Plan (EAP): The EAP document should include a discussion of procedures for timely and reliable detection, classification (level of emergency) and response procedure to a potential emergency condition associated with a large diameter water line.

X. Subsurface Utility Exploration (SUE): Non-destructive excavation, unless otherwise approved by project manager.

1.4 REFERENCES

A. ASTM A 798 – Standard Practice for Installing Factory-Made Corrugated Steel Pipe for Sewers and Other Applications.

B. ASTM C 12 - Standard Practice for Installing Vitrified Clay Pipelines.

C. ASTM C 891 - Standard Practice for Installation of Underground Precast Concrete Utility Structures

D. ASTM C 1479 - Standard Practice for Installation of Precast Concrete Sewer, Storm Drain, and Culvert Pipe Using Standard Installations

E. ASTM C 1675 - Standard Practice for Installation of Precast Reinforced Concrete Monolithic Box Sections for Culverts, Storm Drains, and Sewers

F. ASTM C 1821 - Standard Practice for Installation of Underground Circular Precast Concrete Manhole Structures

G. ASTM D 558 - Standard Test Methods for Moisture-Density (Unit Weight) Relations of Soil-Cement Mixtures.

H. ASTM D 698 - Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lb/ft$^3$ (600 kN-m/m$^3$)).

I. ASTM D 1556 - Standard Test Method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by Sand-Cone Method.

J. ASTM D 2321 - Standard Practice for Underground Installation of Thermoplastic Pipe for Sewers and Other Gravity Flow Applications.

K. ASTM D 2487 - Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classifications System).

L. ASTM D 2922 - Standard Test Methods for Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).

M. ASTM D 3017 - Standard Test Method for Water Content of Soil and Rock in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).

N. ASTM D 4318 - Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils.

O. TxDOT Tex-101-E - Preparing Soil and Flexible Base Materials for Testing.

P. TxDOT Tex-110-E - Particle Size Analysis of Soils.

Q. Federal Regulations, 29 CFR Part 1926, Standards-Excavation, Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA).

1.5 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule work so that pipe embedment can be completed on same day that acceptable foundation has been achieved for each section of pipe installation, manhole, or other structures.

B. For proposed utility adjacent to or across existing LDWL:

1. Conduct a meeting between contractor, Drinking Water Operations and Utility Maintenance Branch prior to beginning excavation to coordinate the EAP in the event a water line shut down becomes necessary.

2. Notify Drinking Water Operations a minimum of 1 week prior to beginning construction activities.

3. Notify Drinking Water Operations a minimum of 48 hours prior to beginning SUE work near LDWL.

4. Unless otherwise approved by City Engineer, perform construction activities between 7 AM and 7 PM, Monday through Friday. No work permitted around a LDWL on weekends or City Holiday.

5. A City Inspector must be present during SUE or construction activities occurring within four feet or one diameter of the LDWL, whichever is greater, from a LDWL or appurtenance.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Section 01.

B. Submit planned typical method of excavation, backfill placement and compaction including:

1. Trench widths.

2. Procedures for foundation and pipe zone bedding placement, and trench backfill compaction.

3. Procedures for assuring compaction against undisturbed soil when pre-manufactured trench safety systems are proposed.

C. Submit backfill material sources and product quality information in accordance with requirements of Section 31 23 00 – Grading Excavation and Fill.

D. Submit trench excavation safety program in accordance with requirements of Section 02. Include designs for special shoring meeting requirements defined in Paragraph 1.08, Special Shoring Design Requirements contained herein.

E. Submit record of location of utilities as installed, referenced to survey control points. Include locations of utilities encountered or rerouted. Give stations, horizontal dimensions, elevations, inverts, and gradients.

F. Submit 11-inch by 17-inch or 12-inch by 18-inch copy of Drawing with plotted utility or obstruction location titled "Critical Location Report" to Project Manager.

G. For installation of proposed utility adjacent to or across existing LDWL, prepare and submit the following to Drinking Water Operations prior to beginning construction activities. Obtain approval from Drinking Water Operations prior to commencing prelocate or utility work near LDWL.

1. Trench details, shoring system designs, installation sequences, and flowable fill mix designs.

2. Emergency Action Plan (EAP) to address contingency plans in the event of damage to or failure of LDWL. Include the following:

a. Contact personnel and agencies including primary and secondary telephone numbers.

b. Contractor’s hierarchy of responsible personnel.

c. Traffic control measures.

d. Identification of resources to be available on or near project site in event of damage to or failure of LDWL.

1.7 TESTS

A. Testing and analysis of backfill materials for soil classification and compaction during construction will be performed by an independent laboratory provided by City in accordance with requirements of Section 01 and as specified in this Section.

B. Perform backfill material source qualification testing in accordance with requirements of Section 312300 – Grading Excavation and Fill.

1.8 SPECIAL SHORING DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

A. Have special shoring designed or selected by Contractor's Professional Engineer to provide support for sides of excavations, including soils and hydrostatic ground water pressures as applicable, and to prevent ground movements affecting adjacent installations or improvements such as structures, pavements and utilities. Special shoring may be a premanufactured system selected by Contractor's Professional Engineer to meet project site requirements based on manufacturer's standard design.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT

A. Perform excavation with hydraulic excavator or other equipment suitable for achieving requirements of this Section.

B. Use only hand-operated tamping equipment until minimum cover of 12-inches is obtained over pipes, conduits, and ducts. Do not use heavy compacting equipment

until adequate cover is attained to prevent damage to pipes, conduits, or ducts.

C. Use trench shields or other protective systems or shoring systems which are designed and operated to achieve placement and compaction of backfill directly against undisturbed native soil.

D. Use special shoring systems where required which may consist of braced sheeting, braced soldier piles and lagging, slide rail systems, or other systems meeting requirements as specified in Paragraph 1.08, Special Shoring Design Requirements.

2.2 MATERIAL CLASSIFICATIONS

A. Embedment and Trench Zone Backfill Materials: Conform to classifications and product descriptions of Section 31 23 00 – Grading Excavation and Fill and Section 02321 – Cement Stabilized Sand.

B. Concrete Backfill: Conform to requirements for Class B concrete as specified in Section 33 05 16 - Utility Structures.

C. Geotextile (Filter Fabric): Conform to requirements of Section 02621 Geotextile.

D. Concrete for Trench Dams: Concrete backfill or 3 sack premixed (bag) concrete.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.01 STANDARD PRACTICE

A. Install flexible pipe, including "semi-rigid" pipe, to conform to standard practice described in ASTM D 2321, and as described in this Section. Where an apparent conflict occurs between standard practice and requirements of this Section, this Section governs.

B. Install rigid pipe to conform to standard practice described in ASTM C 12, C 1479, or C 1675as applicable, and as described in this Section. Where an apparent conflict occurs between standard practice and requirements of this Section, this Section governs.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Establish traffic control to conform to requirements of Section 01. Maintain barricades and warning lights for streets and intersections affected by Work, and are considered hazardous to traffic movements.

B. Perform work to conform to applicable safety standards and regulations. Employ trench safety system as specified in Section 02.

C. Immediately notify agency or company owning any existing utility line which is damaged, broken, or disturbed. Obtain approval from Project Manager and agency for any repairs or relocations, either temporary or permanent.

D. Remove existing pavements and structures, including sidewalks and driveways, to conform to requirements of Section 02, as applicable.

E. Install and operate necessary dewatering and surface-water control measures to

conform to Section 01. Provide stable trench to allow installation in accordance with Specifications.

F. Maintain permanent benchmarks, monumentation, and other reference points. Unless otherwise directed in writing, replace those which are damaged or destroyed in accordance with Section 01.

3.03 CRITICAL LOCATION INVESTIGATION

A. Horizontal and vertical location of various underground lines shown on Drawings, including but not limited to water lines, gas lines, storm sewers, sanitary sewers, telecommunication lines, electric lines or power ducts, pipelines, concrete and debris, are based on best information available but are only approximate locations. Unless otherwise approved by Project Manager, at Critical Locations shown on Drawings, perform vacuum excavation to field verify horizontal and vertical locations of such lines within a zone 2 feet vertically and 4 feet horizontally of proposed work exclude water jetting at PCCP water line.

1. Verify location of existing utilities minimum of 7 working days in advance of pipe laying activities based on daily pipe laying rate or prior to beginning installation of auger pit or tunnel shaft. Use extreme caution and care when uncovering utilities designated by Critical Locate.

2. Notify Project Manager in writing immediately upon identification of obstruction. In event of failure to identify obstruction in minimum of 7 days, Contractor will not be entitled to extra cost for downtime including, but not limited to, payroll, equipment, overhead, demobilization and remobilization, until 7 days has passed from time Project Manager is notified of obstruction.

B. Notify involved utility companies of date and time that investigation excavation will occur and request that their respective utility lines be marked in field. Comply with utility or pipeline company requirements that their representative be present during excavation. Provide Project Manager with 48 hours notice prior to field excavation or relatedwork.

C. Survey vertical and horizontal locations of obstructions relative to project baseline and datum and plot on 12-inch by 18-inch copy of Drawings. For large diameter water lines, submit to Project Manager for approval, horizontal and vertical alignment dimensions for connections to existing lines, tied into project baseline, signed and sealed by R.P.L.S.

D. LDWL Prelocate Requirements:

1. Field-locate LDWL, appurtenances and laterals connected directly to LDWL through use of non-probing method such as a vacuum truck (non-water jetting method) at no greater than 50-foot intervals. Locate upstream and downstream of proposed work or utility installation.

2. Record crown and side of LDWL adjacent to proposed work or utility installation. Record LDWL locations horizontally and vertically using same coordinate system employed on proposed utility drawings.

3. Tie horizontal and vertical coordinates into project baseline. Submit recordings

performed by R.P.L.S to City a minimum of 14 days prior to mobilizing to site.

3.04 PROTECTION

A. Protect trees, shrubs, lawns, existing structures, and other permanent objects outside of grading limits and within grading limits as designated on Drawings, and in accordance with requirements of Section 01.

B. Protect and support above-grade and below-grade utilities which are to remain.

C. Restore damaged permanent facilities to pre-construction conditions unless replacement or abandonment of facilities is indicated on Drawings.

D. Take measures to minimize erosion of trenches. Do not allow water to pond in trenches. Where slides, washouts, settlements, or areas with loss of density or pavement failures or potholes occur, repair, re-compact, and pave those areas at no additional cost to City.

E. Contingency plans for proposed work or utility installation adjacent to or across a LDWL:

1. Conduct on-site emergency drill prior to commencing proposed utility installation, and at three month intervals to assure EAP is current.

2. In the event a LDWL shut down becomes necessary, secure site and provide assistance to City personnel to access pipe and isolation valves as needed.

3.05 EXCAVATION

A. Except as otherwise specified or shown on Drawings, install underground utilities in open cut trenches with vertical sides.

B. Perform excavation work so that pipe, conduit, and ducts can be installed to depths and alignments shown on Drawings. Avoid disturbing surrounding ground and existing facilities and improvements.

C. Determine trench excavation widths using following schedule as related to pipe outside diameter (O.D.). Excavate trench so that pipe is centered in trench.

| Nominal Pipe Size, Inches | Minimum Trench Width, Inches |
|---|---|
| Less than 18 | O.D. + 18 |
| 18 to 30 | O.D. + 24 |
| 36 to 42 | O.D. + 36 |
| Greater than 42 | O.D. + 48 |

Do not obstruct sight distance for vehicles utilizing roadway or detours with stockpiled materials.

D. Use sufficient trench width or benches above embedment zone for installation of well point headers or manifolds and pumps where depth of trench makes it uneconomical or impractical to pump from surface elevation. Provide sufficient space between shoring

cross braces to permit equipment operations and handling of forms, pipe, embedment and backfill, and other materials.

E. Upon discovery of unknown utilities, badly deteriorated utilities not designated for removal, or concealed conditions, discontinue work at that location. Notify Project Manager and obtain instructions before proceeding.

F. Shoring of Trench Walls.

1. Install Special Shoring in advance of trench excavation or simultaneously with trench excavation, so that soils within full height of trench excavation walls will remain laterally supported at all times.

2. For all types of shoring, support trench walls in pipe embedment zone throughout installation. Provide trench wall supports sufficiently tight to prevent washing trench wall soil out from behind trench wall support.

3. Leave sheeting driven into or below pipe embedment zone in place to preclude loss of support of foundation and embedment materials, unless otherwise directed by Project Manager. Leave rangers, walers, and braces in place as long as required to support sheeting, which has been cut off, and trench wall in vicinity of pipe zone.

4. Employ special methods for maintaining integrity of embedment or foundation material. Before moving supports, place and compact embedment to sufficient depths to provide protection of pipe and stability of trench walls. As supports are moved, finish placing and compacting embedment.

5. If sheeting or other shoring is used below top of pipe embedment zone, do not disturb pipe foundation and embedment materials by subsequent removal. Maximum thickness of removable sheeting extending into embedment zone shall be equivalent of 1-inch-thick steel plate. As sheeting is removed, fill in voids left with grouting material.

G. Use of Trench Shields. When trench shield (trench box) is used as worker safety device, the following requirements apply:

1. Make trench excavations of sufficient width to allow shield to be lifted or pulled freely, without damage to trench sidewalls.

2. Move trench shields so that pipe, and backfill materials, after placement and compaction, are not damaged nor disturbed, nor degree of compaction reduced. Re- compact after shield is moved if soil is disturbed.

3. When required, place, spread, and compact pipe foundation and bedding materials beneath shield. For backfill above bedding, lift shield as each layer of backfill is placed and spread. Place and compact backfill materials against undisturbed trench walls and foundation.

4. Maintain trench shield in position to allow sampling and testing to be performed in safe manner.

5. Conform to applicable Government regulations.

H. Voids under paving area outside shield caused by Contractor's work will require removal of pavement, consolidation and replacement of pavement in accordance with Contract Documents. Repair damage resulting from failure to provide adequate supports.

I. Place sand or soil behind shoring or trench shield to prevent soil outside shoring from collapsing and causing voids under pavement. Immediately pack suitable material in outside voids following excavation to avoid caving of trench walls.

J. Coordinate excavation within 15 feet of pipeline with company's representative. Support pipeline with methods agreed to by pipeline company's representative. Use small, rubber- tired excavator, such as backhoe, to do exploratory excavation. Bucket that is used to dig in close proximity to pipelines shall not have teeth or shall have guard installed over teeth to approximate bucket without teeth. Excavate by hand within 1 foot of Pipeline Company’s line. Do not use larger excavation equipment than normally used to dig trench in vicinity of pipeline until pipelines have been uncovered and fully exposed. Do not place large excavation and hauling equipment directly over pipelines unless approved by Pipeline Company’s representative.

K. When, during excavation to uncover pipeline company's pipelines, screwed collar or an oxy- acetylene weld is exposed, immediately notify Project Manager. Provide supports for collar or welds. Discuss with Pipeline Company’s representative and determine methods of supporting collar or weld during excavation and later backfilling operations. When collar is exposed, request Pipeline Company to provide welder in a timely manner to weld ends of collar prior to backfilling of excavation.

L. Excavation and shoring requirements for proposed work or utility installation adjacent to or across a LDWL:

1. Identify LDWL area in field and barricade off from construction activities. Allow no construction related activities including, but not limited to, loading of dump trucks and material staging or storage, on top of LDWL.

2. Employ a groundwater control system when performing excavation activities within ten feet of LDWL to:

   a. Effectively reduce hydrostatic pressure affecting excavations,

   b. Develop substantially dry and stable subgrade for subsequent construction operations,

   c. Prevent loss of fines, seepage, boils, quick condition or softening of foundation strata, and

   d. Maintain stability of sides and bottom of excavations.

3. When edge of proposed trench or shoring is within a distance equal to one diameter of LDWL from outside of wall of LDWL, valve or appurtenance:

   a. Maintain minimum of four (4) feet horizontal clearance and minimum of two (2) feet vertical clearance between proposed utility and LDWL.

b. Auger Construction

1) Maintain minimum of four (4) feet horizontal clearance between proposed utility and LDWL.

2) Dry auger method required when auger hole is 12-inches and larger in diameter.

c. Open Cut Construction and Auger pits

1) Perform hand excavation when within four (4) feet of LDWL.

2) Employ hydraulic or pneumatic shoring system. Do not use vibratory or impact driven shoring or piling.

3) Expose no more than 30-feet of trench prior to backfilling.

4) A maximum of one (1) foot of vertical trench shall be un-braced at a time to maintain constant pressure on face of excavated soil.

5) Upon removal of shoring system, inject flowable fill into void space left behind by shoring system. Comply with Standard Specification 02.

d. When edge of utility excavation is greater than one diameter of LDWL from outside wall of LDWL, use a shielding system as required by Project Manager and proposed utility standards and practices.

3.06 HANDLING EXCAVATED MATERIALS

A. Use only excavated materials, which are suitable as defined in this Section and conforming to Section 02. Place material suitable for backfilling in stockpiles at distance from trench to prevent slides or cave-ins.

B. When required, provide additional backfill material conforming to requirements of Section 02.

C. Do not place stockpiles of excess excavated materials on streets and adjacent properties. Protect backfill material to be used on site. Maintain site conditions in accordance with Section 01. Excavate trench so that pipe is centered in trench. Do not obstruct sight distance for vehicles utilizing roadway or detours with stockpiled materials.

3.07 TRENCH FOUNDATION

A. Excavate bottom of trench to uniform grade to achieve stable trench conditions and satisfactory compaction of foundation or bedding materials.

B. When wet soil is encountered on trench bottom and dewatering system is not required, over excavate an additional 6-inches with approval by Project Manager. Place non-woven geotextile fabric and then compact 12-inches of crushed stone in

one lift on top of fabric. Compact crushed stone with four passes of vibratory-type compaction equipment.

C. Perform over excavation, when directed by Project Manager, in accordance with Paragraph 3.07.B above. Removal of unstable or unsuitable material may be required if approved by Project Manager;

1. Even though Contractor has not determined material to be unsuitable, or

2. If unstable trench bottom is encountered and an adequate ground water control system is installed and operating according to Section 01.

D. Place trench dams in Class I foundations in line segments longer than 100 feet between manholes and not less than one in every 500 feet of pipe placed. Install additional dams as needed to achieve workable construction conditions. Do not place trench dams closer than 5 feet from manholes.

3.08 PIPE EMBEDMENT, PLACEMENT, AND COMPACTION

A. Remove loose, sloughing, caving, or otherwise unsuitable soil from bottoms and sidewalls of trenches immediately prior to placement of embedment materials.

B. Place embedment including bedding, haunching, and initial backfill as shown on Drawings.

C. For pipe installation, manually spread embedment materials around pipe to provide uniform bearing and side support when compacted. Protect flexible pipe from damage during placing of pipe zone bedding material. Perform placement and compaction directly against undisturbed soils in trench sidewalls, or against sheeting which is to remain in place.

D. Do not place trench shields or shoring within height of embedment zone unless means to maintain density of compacted embedment material are used. If moveable supports are used in embedment zone, lift supports incrementally to allow placement and compaction of material against undisturbed soil.

E. Place geotextile to prevent particle migration from in-situ soil into open-graded (Class I) embedment materials or drainage layers.

F. Do not damage coatings or wrappings of pipes during backfilling and compacting operations. When embedding coated or wrapped pipes, do not use crushed stone or other sharp, angular aggregates.

G. Place haunching material manually around pipe and compact it to provide uniform bearing and side support. If necessary, hold small-diameter or lightweight pipe in place during compaction of haunch areas and placement beside pipe with sand bags or other suitable means.

H. Place electrical conduit, if used, directly on foundation without bedding.

I. Shovel in-place and compact embedment material using pneumatic tampers in restricted areas, and vibratory-plate compactors or engine-powered jumping jacks in unrestricted areas. Compact each lift before proceeding with placement of next lift.

Water tamping is not allowed.

J. For water lines construction embedment, use bank run sand, concrete sand, gem sand, pea gravel, or crushed limestone as specified in Section 02. Adhere to the following subparagraph numbers 1 and 2.

1. Class I, II and III Embedment Materials:

a. Maximum 6-inches compacted lift thickness.

b. Compact to achieve minimum of 95 percent of maximum dry density as determined according to ASTM D 698.

c. Moisture content to be within -3 percent to +5 percent of optimum as determined according to ASTM D 698, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager.

2. Cement Stabilized Sand (where required for special installations):

a. Maximum 6-inches compacted thickness.

b. Compact to achieve minimum of 95 percent of maximum dry density as determined according to ASTM D 698.

c. Moisture content to be on dry side of optimum as determined according to ASTM D 698 but sufficient for effective hydration.

K. For Sanitary Sewers adhere to subparagraph number 1 and 2. For Storm Sewers provide cement stabilized sand per paragraph 2. This provision does not apply to Storm Sewers constructed of HDPE pipe installed under pavement.

1. Class I Embedment Materials.

a. Maximum 6-inches compacted lift thickness.

b. Systematic compaction by at least two passes of vibrating equipment. Increase compaction effort as necessary to effectively embed pipe to meet deflection test criteria.

c. Moisture content as determined by Contractor for effective compaction without softening soil of trench bottom, foundation or trench walls.

2. Class II Embedment and Cement Stabilized Sand.

a. Maximum 6-inches compacted thickness.

b. Compaction by methods determined by Contractor to achieve minimum of 95 percent of maximum dry density as determined according to ASTM D 698 for Class II materials and according to ASTM D 558 for cement stabilized materials.

c. Moisture content of Class II materials within 3 percent of optimum

as determined according to ASTM D 698. Moisture content of cement stabilized sands on dry side of optimum as determined according to ASTM D 558 but sufficient for effective hydration.

L. For Storm Sewers constructed of any flexible pipe product and installed under pavement provide flowable fill pipe embedment as specified in Section 02.

M. Place trench dams in Class I embedment in line segments longer than 100 feet between manholes, and not less than one in every 500 feet of pipe placed. Install additional dams as needed to achieve workable construction conditions. Do not place trench dams closer than 5 feet from manholes.

3.09 TRENCH ZONE BACKFILL PLACEMENT AND COMPACTION

A. Place backfill for pipe or conduits and restore surface as soon as practicable. Leave only minimum length of trench open as necessary for construction.

B. For water lines, under pavement and to within one foot back of curb, use backfill materials described below:

1. For water lines 20-inches in diameter and smaller, use bank run sand or select backfill materials up to pavement base or subgrade.

2. For water lines 24-inches in diameter and larger, backfill with suitable on-site material (random backfill) up to 12-inches below pavement base or subgrade. Place minimum of 12-inches of select backfill below pavement base or subgrade.

C. For sewer pipes (Storm and Sanitary), use backfill materials described by trench limits. For "trench zone backfill" under pavement and to within one foot back of curb, use cement stabilized sand for pipes of nominal sizes 36-inches in diameter and smaller to level 12 inches below the pavement. For sewer pipes 42-inches in diameter and larger, under pavement or natural ground, backfill from 12-inches above top of pipe to 120 inches below pavement with suitable on-site material or select backfill. Use select backfill for rigid pavements or flexible base material for asphalt pavements for 12-inch backfill directly under pavement. For backfill materials reference Section 31 23 00- Grading Excavation and Fill. This provision does not apply where a Storm Sewer is constructed of any flexible pipe product.

D. For Storm Sewers constructed of any flexible pipe product and installed under pavement provide flowable fill as specified in Section 02. For Storm Sewers constructed of any flexible pipe product and not installed under pavement provide cement stabilized sand.

E. Where damage to completed pipe installation work is likely to result from withdrawal of sheeting, leave sheeting in place. Cut off sheeting 1.5-feet or more above crown of pipe Remove trench supports within 5-feet from ground surface.

F. Unless otherwise shown on Drawings. Use one of the following trench zone backfills under pavement and to within one foot of edge of pavement. Place trench zone backfill in lifts and compact. Fully compact each lift before placement of next lift.

1. Class I, II, or III or combination thereof:

a. Place in maximum 12-inch thick loose layers.

b. Compact by vibratory equipment to minimum of 95 percent of maximum dry density determined according to ASTM D 698.

c. Moisture content within zero percent to 5 percent above optimum determined according to ASTM D 698, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager.

2. Cement-Stabilized Sand:

a. Maximum lift thickness determined by Contractor to achieve uniform placement and required compaction, but do not exceed 12-inches.

b. Compact by vibratory equipment to minimum of 95 percent of maximum dry density determined according to ASTM D 558.

c. Moisture content on dry side of optimum determined according to ASTM D 558 but sufficient for cement hydration.

3. Class IVA and IVB (Clay Soils):

a. Place in maximum 8-inch thick loose lifts.

b. Compaction by vibratory Sheepfoot roller to minimum of 95 percent of maximum dry density determined according to ASTM D 698.

c. Moisture content within zero percent to 5 percent above optimum determined according to ASTM D 698, unless approved by Project Manager.

G. Unless otherwise shown on Drawings, for trench excavations not under pavement, random backfill of suitable material may be used in trench zone. This provision does not apply to flexible pipe used for storm sewers.

1. Fat clays (CH) may be used as trench zone backfill outside paved areas at Contractor's option. When required density is not achieved, at any additional cost to City, rework, dry out, use lime stabilization or other approved methods to achieve compaction requirements, or use different suitable material.

2. Maximum 9-inch compacted lift thickness for clayey soils and maximum 12-inch lift thickness for granular soils.

3. Compact to minimum of 90 percent of maximum dry density determined according to ASTM D 698.

4. Moisture content as necessary to achieve density.

H. For electric conduits, remove form work used for construction of conduits before placing trench zone backfill.

3.10 MANHOLES, JUNCTION BOXES AND OTHER PIPELINE STRUCTURES

A. Below paved areas or where shown on Drawings, encapsulate manhole with cement stabilized sand; minimum of 2 foot below base, minimum 2 foot around walls, up to pavement subgrade or natural ground. Compact in accordance with Paragraph 3.09.F.2 of this Section

B. In unpaved areas, use select fill for backfill. Existing material that qualifies as select material may be used, unless indicated otherwise on Drawings. Deposit backfill in uniform layers and compact each layer as specified. Maintain backfill material at no less than 2 percent below nor more than 5 percent above optimum moisture content, unless otherwise approved by Project Manager. Place fill material in uniform 8-inch maximum loose layers. Compact fill to at least 95 percent of maximum Standard Proctor Density according to ASTM D 698.

C. For LDWL projects, encapsulate manhole with cement stabilized sand; minimum of 1 foot below base, minimum of 2 feet around walls, up to within 12-inches of pavement subgrade or natural ground. For manholes over water line, extend encapsulation to bottom of trench. Compact in accordance with Paragraph 3.09 F.2 of this Section.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test for material source qualifications as defined in Section 02320 - Utility Backfill Materials.

B. Provide excavation and trench safety systems at locations and to depths required for testing and retesting during construction at no additional cost to City.

C. Tests will be performed on minimum of three different samples of each material type for plasticity characteristics, in accordance with ASTM D 4318, and for gradation characteristics, in accordance with Tex-101-E and Tex-110-E. Additional classification tests will be performed whenever there is noticeable change in material gradation or plasticity, or when requested by Project Manager.

D. At least three tests for moisture-density relationships will be performed initially for backfill materials in accordance with ASTM D 698, and for cement- stabilized sand in accordance with ASTM D 558. Perform additional moisture-density relationship tests once a month or whenever there is noticeable change in material gradation or plasticity.

E. In-place density tests of compacted pipe foundation, embedment and trench zone backfill soil materials will be performed according to ASTM D 1556, or ASTM D 2922 and ASTM D 3017, and at following frequencies and conditions.

1. For open cut construction projects and auger pits: Unless otherwise approved by Project Manager, successful compaction to be measured by one test per 40 linear feet measured along pipe for compacted embedment and two tests per 40 linear feet measured along pipe for compacted trench zone backfill material. Length of auger pits to be measured to arrive at 40 linear feet.

2. A minimum of three density tests for each full shift of Work.

3. Density tests will be distributed among placement areas. Placement areas are: foundation, outer bedding, haunching, initial backfill and trench zone.

4. The number of tests will be increased if inspection determines that soil type or

moisture content are not uniform or if compacting effort is variable and not considered sufficient to attain uniform density, as specified.

5. Density tests may be performed at various depths below fill surface by pit excavation. Material in previously placed lifts may therefore be subject to acceptance/rejection.

6. Two verification tests will be performed adjacent to in-place tests showing density less than acceptance criteria. Placement will be rejected unless both verification tests show acceptable results.

7. Recompacted placement will be retested at same frequency as first test series, including verification tests.

8. Identify elevation of test with respect to natural ground or pavement.

F. Recondition, re-compact, and retest at Contractor's expense if tests indicate Work does not meet specified compaction requirements. For hardened soil cement with nonconforming density, core and test for compressive strength at Contractor's expense.

G. Acceptability of crushed rock compaction will be determined by inspection.

3.12 DISPOSAL OF EXCESS MATERIAL

A. Dispose of excess materials in accordance with requirements of Section 01.

END OF SECTION 33 05 28

**SECTION 33 11 13**
**WATER LINES**

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Requirements for installation of both small diameter water lines and large diameter water lines.

1. When specifications for large diameter water lines differ from those for small diameter water lines, large diameter specifications will govern for large diameter pipe.

1.2 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Unit Prices:

1. Payment for water lines installed by open-cut, augered with or without casing, aerial crossing, and pipe offset section on linear foot basis for each size of pipe installed. Separate pay items are used for each type of installation (open cut and auger) measured along the axis of the pipe and includes all restrained joint fittings and appurtenances.

2. When directed by Owner to install extra fittings, as required to avoid unforeseen obstacles, payment will be based on the following:

a. Extra fittings requested by the Owner and delivered to jobsite will be paid by the Owner.
b. Payment will include and be full compensation for items necessary for installation and operation of water line.

1.3 REFERENCES

A. ANSI A 21.11/AWWA C111 - Standard for Rubber-Gasket Joints for Ductile - Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings.

B. ANSI/NSF Standard 61 - Drinking Water System -Health Components.

C. ASTM A 36 - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel

D. ASTM A 536 - Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings

E. ASTM A 126 - Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings for Valves, Flanges, and Pipe Fittings.

F. ASTM B 21 - Standard Specification for Naval Brass Rod, Bar, and Shapes.

G. ASTM B 98 - Standard Specification for Copper-Silicon Alloy Rod, Bar, and Shapes.

H. ASTM B 301 - Standard Specification for Free-Cutting Copper Rod and Bar.

I. ASTM B 584 - Standard Specification for Copper Alloy Sand Casting for General Application.

J. ASTM E 165 - Standard Test Method for Liquid Penetrant Examination.

K. ASTM E 709 - Standard Guide for Magnetic Particle Examination

L. ASTM F 1674 - Standard Test Method for Joint Restraint Products for Use with PVC Pipe.

M. AWWA C 206 - Standard for Field Welding of Steel Water Pipe.

N. AWWA C 207 - Standard for Steel Pipe Flanges for Waterworks Service - Sizes 4 Inches through 144 Inches.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Conform to requirements of Division 1 Specifications.

B. Conform to submittal requirements of applicable Section for type of pipe used.

C. Submit, a minimum of 15 calendar days before beginning pipe laying operations, layout drawing identifying proposed sections for disinfecting, hydrostatic testing and site restoration for entire project for review and approval. Layout drawing to identify sequence of sections for:

1. Disinfection; not to exceed 2,000 linear feet per section.

2. Hydrostatic testing and transfer of services; to immediately follow sequence of disinfected section.

3. Site restoration; not to exceed limits specified; Sequence in order of disturbance.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Conform to applicable installation specifications for types of pipe used.

B. Employ workmen who are skilled and experienced in laying pipe of type and joint configuration being furnished. Provide watertight pipe and pipe joints.

C. Lay pipe to lines and grades shown on Drawings. Use adequate surveying methods and equipment; employ personnel competent in us of equipment. Horizontal and vertical deviations from alignment as indicated on Drawings shall not exceed 0.10 feet. Measure and record “as-built” horizontal alignment and vertical grade at maximum of every 50 feet on record drawings.

D. For pipe diameters 36 inches and greater, clearly mark each section of pipe and fitting with a unique designation on the inside of pipe. Minimum letter height shall be 4 inches.

E. Laying Large-Diameter Water Main:

1. Lay not more than 200 feet of pipe in trench ahead of backfilling operations.

2. Dig trench proper width as indicated. When operations cause trench width below top of pipe to become 4 feet wider than specified, install higher class pipe or improved bedding, as determined by Engineer. No additional payment will be made for higher class of pipe or improved bedding.

3. Prevent damage to coating when placing backfill. Backfill material shall be free of large rocks or stones, or other material which could damage coatings.

4. Before assembling couplings, lightly coat pipe ends and outside of gaskets with cup grease or liquid vegetable soap to facilitate installation. Groove pipe to manufacturer’s specifications.

F. Confirm that nine feet minimum separation from gravity sanitary sewers and manholes from potable waterline.

G. Where above clearances cannot be attained, and special design has not been provided on Drawings, obtain direction from the City before proceeding with construction.

H. Inform Owner if unmetered sprinkler or fire line connections exist which are not shown on Drawings. Make transfer only after approval by the City.

I. City will handle, at no cost to Contractor, operations involving opening and closing valves for wet connections and for chlorination. Contractor is responsible for handling necessary installations and removal of chlorination and testing taps and risers.

J. If asbestos-cement (A.C.) pipe is encountered, follow safety practices outlined in American Water Works Association's publication, "Work Practices for A/C Pipe". Strictly adhere to "recommended practices" contained in this publication and make them "mandatory practices" for this Project.

K. For pipe diameters 36 inches and greater, clearly mark each section of pipe and fitting with unique designation on inside of pipe along with pressure class. Locate unique identifying mark minimum of five feet away from either end of each section of pipe. Provide one unique identifying mark in middle of each fitting. Place markings at consistent locations. Use permanent black paint and minimum letter height of 4 inches to mark designations.

L. Contractor is responsible for assuring chosen manufacturer fulfills requirements for extra fittings and, therefore, is responsible for costs due to downtime if requirements are not met.

## 3.2 HANDLING, CLEANING AND INSPECTION

A. Handling:

1. Place pipe along project site where storm water or other water will not enter or pass through pipe.

2. Load, transport, unload, and otherwise handle pipe and fittings to prevent damage of any kind. Handle and transport pipe with equipment designed, constructed and arranged to prevent damage to pipe, lining and coating. Do not permit bare chains, hooks, metal bars, or narrow skids or cradles to come in contact with coatings. Where required, provide pipe fittings with sufficient interior strutting or cross bracing to prevent deflection under their own weight.

3. Hoist pipe from trench side into trench by means of sling of smooth steel cable, canvas, leather, nylon or similar material.

4. For large diameter water lines, handle pipe only by means of sling of canvas, leather, nylon, or similar material. Sling shall be minimum 36 inches in width. Do not tear or wrinkle tape layers.

5. Use precautions to prevent injury to pipe, protective linings and coatings.

    a. Package stacked pipe on timbers. Place protective pads under banding straps at time of packaging.
    b. Pad fork trucks with carpet or other suitable material. Use nylon straps around pipe for lift when relocating pipe with crane or backhoe.
    c. Do not lift pipe using hooks at each end of pipe.
    d. Do not place debris, tools, clothing, or other materials on pipe.

6. Repair damage to pipe or protective lining and coating before final acceptance.

7. Reject pipe with visible cracks (not meeting exceptions) and remove from project site.

B. Cleaning: Thoroughly clean and dry interior of pipe and fittings of foreign matter before installation, and keep interior clean until Work has been accepted. Keep joint contact surfaces clean until jointing is completed. Do not place debris, tools, clothing or other materials in pipe. After pipe laying and joining operations are completed, clean inside of pipe and remove debris.

C. Inspection: Before installation, inspect each pipe and fitting for defects. Reject defective, damaged or unsound pipe and fittings and remove them from site.

## 3.3 EARTHWORK

A. Conform to applicable provisions of Section 33 05 28 – Trenching and Backfill for Utilities.

B. Bedding: Use bedding materials in conformance with Section 33 05 28 – Trenching and Backfill for Utilities

C. Backfill: Use bank run sand or earth or native soil as specified in Section 33 05 28 – Trenching and Backfill for Utilities. Backfill excavated areas in same day excavated. When not possible, cover excavated areas using steel plates on paved areas and other protective measures elsewhere.

D. Place material in uniform layers of prescribed maximum 8-inch loose lifts and wet or dry material to approximately optimum moisture content. Compact to prescribed density Water tamping is not allowed.

E. Pipe Embedment: Including 6-inch pipe bedding and backfill to 12 inches above top of pipe.

3.4 PIPE CUTTING

A. Cut pipe 12 inches and smaller with standard wheel pipe cutters. Cut pipe larger than 12 inches in manner approved by the City. Make cuts smooth and at right angles to axis of pipe. Bevel plain end with heavy file or grinder to remove sharp edges.

3.5 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. General Requirements: (*Notify City immediately upon encountering wet conditions!)*

1. Lay pipe in subgrade free of water.

2. Make adjustments of pipe to line and grade by scraping away subgrade or filling in with granular material.

3. Properly form bedding to fully support bell without wedging or blocking up bell.

4. Open Cut Construction: Keep pipe trenches free of water which might impair pipe laying operations. Grade pipe to provide uniform support along bottom of pipe. Excavate for bell holes after bottom has been graded and in advance of placing pipe. Lay not more than nominal city block length of not more than 300 feet of pipe in trench ahead of backfilling operations. Cover or backfill laid pipe if pipe laying operations are interrupted and during non-working hours. Place backfill carefully and simultaneously on each side of pipe to avoid lateral displacement of pipe and damage to joints. If adjustment of pipe is required after it has been laid, remove and re-lay as new pipe.

B. Install pipe continuously and uninterrupted along each street on which work is to be performed. Obtain approval of the City prior to skipping any portion of Work.

C. Protection of Pipeline: Securely place stoppers or bulkheads in openings and in end of line when construction is stopped temporarily and at end of each day's work.

D. Perform Critical Location as shown on Drawings. Refer to Section 33 05 28 – Trenching and Backfill for Utilities.

E. Laying Large Diameter, 24-inch or greater Water Line

1. Lay not more than 200 feet of pipe (unless approved by the City) in trench ahead of backfilling operations.

2. Dig trench proper width as shown. When trench width below top of pipe becomes 4 feet wider than specified, install higher class of pipe or improved bedding, as determined by the City. No additional payment will be made for higher class of pipe or improved bedding.

3. Use adequate surveying methods and equipment; employ personnel competent in use of this equipment. Horizontal and vertical deviations from alignment as indicated on Drawings shall not exceed 0.10 feet. Measure and record "as-built"

horizontal alignment and vertical grade at maximum of every 100 feet on record drawings.

4. Prevent damage to coating when placing backfill. Use backfill material free of large rocks or stones (Maximum of 3-inch), or other material which could damage coatings.

5. Before assembling couplings, lightly coat pipe ends and outside of gaskets with cup grease or liquid vegetable soap to facilitate installation.

6. Prior to proceeding with critical tie-ins submit sequence of work based on findings from "critical location" effort.

F. Perform following additional procedures when working on plant sites.

1. Seventy-two hours prior to each plant shut down or connection, schedule coordination meeting with City personnel. At this meeting, present proposed sequencing of Work and verification of readiness to complete Work as required and within time permitted. Do not proceed with Work until the City agrees key personnel, equipment and materials are on hand to complete Work.

2. Prior to fully excavating around existing piping, excavate as minimal as possible to confirm type and condition of existing joints. Verify size, type, and condition of pipe prior to ordering materials or fully mobilizing for Work.

3. Do not proceed with connections to existing piping and identified critical stages of work unless approved by the City and the City's Utility Maintenance Division operator is present to observe.

4. Coordinate with City's Utility Department to obtain reduction in operating pressures prior to performing connections to existing piping.

5. Make connections to existing piping only when two valves are closed off between connection and source of water pressure. Do not make connection relying solely on one valve, unless otherwise approved by the City.

6. Perform critical stages of Work identified on Drawings at night or during low water demand months as specified in Division 1 specifications.

7. Excavation equipment used on plant sites to have smooth bucket; no teeth or side cutters.

8. Submit Lone Star Notification transmittal number to the City prior to beginning excavation.

9. Before each "dig" with mechanical excavator, probe ground to determine potential obstructions. Repeat procedure until existing pipe is located or excavation reaches desired elevation. Perform excavations within one foot to existing piping by hand methods.

10. Provide adequate notice to pipe manufacturer's representative when connecting or modifying existing prestressed or pretension concrete cylinder pipe.

11. Provide field surveyed (horizontal and vertical elevations) "as-builts" of new construction and existing underground utilities encountered. Submit in accordance with Division 1 specifications.

G. For tie-ins to existing water lines, provide necessary material on hand to facilitate connection prior to shutting down existing water lines. Provide the City a minimum of one week notice prior to shutting down existing water lines. All valves shall be operated by City staff only.

3.6 JOINTS AND JOINTING

A. Rubber Gasketed Bell-and-Spigot Joints for Concrete Cylinder Pipe, Bar Wrapped Pipe PVC, Steel, and DIP:

1. Lubricate gaskets with nontoxic water-soluble lubricant before pipe units are joined.

2. Fit pipe units together in manner to avoid twisting or otherwise displacing or damaging rubber gasket.

3. After pipe sections are joined, check gaskets to ensure that no displacement of gasket has occurred. If displacement has occurred, remove pipe section and remake joint as for new pipe. Remove old gasket, inspect for damage and replace if necessary before remaking joint.

4. Where preventing movement is necessary due to thrust, use restrained joints as shown on Drawings.

a. Include buoyancy conditions for soil unit weight when computing thrust restraint calculations.

b. Do not include passive resistance of soil in thrust restraint calculations.

5. Except for PVC pipe, provide means to prevent full engagement of spigot into bell as shown on Drawings. Means may consist of wedges or other types of stops as approved by Owner.

B. Flanged Joints where required on Concrete Cylinder Pipe, Bar Wrapped Pipe, Ductile Iron Pipe, or Steel Pipe:

1. AWWA C 207. Prior to installation of bolts, accurately center and align flanged joints to prevent mechanical prestressing of flanges, pipe and equipment. Align bolt holes to straddle vertical, horizontal or north-south center line. Do not exceed 3/64 inch per foot inclination of flange face from true alignment.

2. Use full-face gaskets for flanged joints. Provide 1/8-inch-thick cloth inserted rubber gasket material. Cut gaskets at factory to proper dimensions.

3. Black nuts and bolts to match flange material. Use cadmium-plated steel nuts and bolts underground. Tighten bolts progressively to prevent unbalanced stress. Maintain at all times approximately same distance between two flanges at points around flanges. Tighten bolts alternately (180° apart) until all are evenly tight. Draw bolts tight to ensure proper seating of gaskets.

4. Full length bolt isolating sleeves and washers shall be used with flanged connections.

5. Furnish kits in accordance with Owner's "Approved Products List."

C. Restrained Joints

1. Restrain pipe joints with Mega lugs or approved equal and concrete thrust blocks. Onsite mixing of concrete shall not be allowed. (Batch mix only).

2. Thrust restraint lengths shown on Drawings are minimum anticipated lengths. These lengths are based on deflections indicated and on use of prestressed concrete cylinder pipe for large diameter lines and ductile iron pipe for small diameter lines. Adjustments in deflections or use of other pipe material may result in reduction or increase of thrust lengths. Perform calculations by pipe manufacturer to verify proposed thrust restraint lengths. Submit calculations for all pipe materials sealed by a Registered Professional Engineer in State of Texas for review by the City. Make adjustments in thrust restraint lengths at no additional cost to the City.

3. Passive resistance of soil will not be permitted in calculation of thrust restraint.

4. Installation.

a. Install restrained joints mechanism in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

b. Examine and clean mechanism; remove dirt, debris and other foreign material.

c. Apply gasket and joint NSF 61 FDA food grade approved lubricant.

d. Verify gasket is evenly seated.

e. Do not over stab pipe into mechanism.

5. Prevent any lateral movement of thrust restraints throughout pressure testing and operation. Place 3000 psi concrete for blocking at each bend, change in direction of existing water lines, to brace pipe against undisturbed trench walls. Finish placement of concrete blocking, made from Type I cement, 4 days prior to hydrostatic testing of pipeline. Test may be made two days after completion of blocking if Type II cement is used.

D. Make curves and bends by deflecting joints or other method as recommended by manufacturer and approved by the City.

1. Deflection of pipe joints shall not exceed maximum deflection recommended by pipe manufacturer.

2. If deflection is equal to or exceeds 5 percent from that specified, remove entire portion of deflected pipe section and install new pipe.

3. Replace, repair, or reapply coatings and linings as required.

4. Assessment of deflection may be measured by the City at location along pipe. Arithmetical averages of deflection or similar average measurement methods will not be deemed as meeting intent of standard.

5. When rubber gasketed pipe is laid on curve, join pipe in straight alignment and then deflect to curved alignment.

3.7 SECURING, SUPPORTING AND ANCHORING

A. Support piping as shown on Drawings and as specified in this Section, to maintain line and grade and prevent transfer of stress to adjacent structures.

B. Where shown on Drawings, anchor pipe fittings and bends installed on water line by welding consecutive joints of pipe together to distance each side of fitting. Restrained length, as shown on Drawings, assumes that installation of pipe and subsequent hydrostatic testing begins upstream and proceed downstream, with respect to normal flow of water in pipe. If installation and testing differs from this assumption, submit for approval revised method of restraining pipe joints upstream and downstream of device used to test against (block valve, blind flange or dished head plug).

C. Use adequate temporary blocking of fittings when making connections to distribution system and during hydrostatic tests. Use sufficient anchorage and blocking to resist stresses and forces encountered while tapping existing water line.

3.8 POLYETHYLENE WRAP

A. Double wrap ductile iron pipe and appurtenances (except fire hydrants and fusion bond or polyurethane coated fittings) with 8-mil polyethylene film.

B. Do not use polyethylene wrap if pipe is cathodically protected.

3.9 CLEANUP AND RESTORATION

A. Cleanup and restore site as directed by the City.

3.10 CLEANING PIPING SYSTEMS

A. Remove construction debris or foreign material and thoroughly broom clean and flush piping systems. Provide temporary connections, equipment and labor for cleaning. Owner must inspect water line for cleanliness prior to filling.

3.11 DISINFECTION OF WATER LINES

A. Conform to TCEQ requirements for Disinfection of Water Utility Distribution.

3.12 FIELD HYDROSTATIC TESTS

A. Conform to requirements of Division 1 specifications.

END OF SECTION 33 11 13

**SECTION 33 16 53**
**TRAFFIC PAINT STRIPING**

## PART 1 - REFLECTORIZED MULTIPOLYMER PAVEMENT MARKINGS

### 1. DESCRIPTION.

This Item shall govern to furnish, and place reflectorized multi-polymer pavement markings as shown on the plans.

### 2. MATERIALS.

A. **Multi-Polymer Pavement Marking Materials.** Provide a prequalified multi-polymer resin material which is:

- toxic heavy metal free (lead, chromium, cadmium, and other toxic heavy metals as defined by the United States Environmental Protection Agency,)
- two-component (a predominantly multi-polymer pigmented resin component with a curing agent component),
- 100% solids, producing no toxic fumes when heated to application temperature,
- track-free in less than 40 minutes, and
- formulated and tested to perform as a pavement marking material with glass spheres applied to the surface.

Furnish in accordance with the requirements below.

**Table 1**
**Color Requirements**

| Federal 595 Color | | Chromaticity Coordinates | | | | | | | | Brightness (Y) |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | 1 | | 2 | | 3 | | 4 | | |
| | | x | y | x | y | x | y | x | y | |
| White | 17855 | .290 | .315 | .310 | .295 | .350 | .340 | .330 | .360 | 60 min |
| Yellow | 33538 | .470 | .455 | .510 | .489 | .490 | .432 | .537 | .462 | 30 min |

**Table 2**
**Physical Properties**

| Property | Test Procedure | Min | Max |
|---|---|---|---|
| Abrasion Resistance, loss, 750±38µm film, 72 hr cure, CS17 wheel, 1000 g, 1000 cycles | ASTM C501 | | 0.080 g |
| Hardness, Shore D | ASTM D 2240 | 75 | |
| Adhesion, 375±38 µm film, 72 hr cure, 25C | ACI 503, Appendix A.1 | Fail in Concrete | |
| Yellowness Index (White only), QUV, 375±38 µm film, 72 hr cure | ASTM 1925 | | 30 |

Prequalify materials with the Construction Division, Materials and Pavements Section. To prequalify, supply:

- a test report showing proposed multi-polymer pavement marking materials meet the requirements above,
- a 1-quart sample of each component for specification verification, and
- documentation of acceptable performance from TxDOT pavement marking field applications that have been in place for at least 1 year or published documentation from the National Transportation Product Evaluation Program showing a minimum retro reflectivity readings along the skip lines of 250 mcd for white and 200mcd for yellow after one year.

Formulation changes require a new prequalification.
The material supplied to the project will be tested against the prequalification sample to assure that no formulation changes are made without notifying the Construction Division. The testing to characterize the project samples will include but not be limited by those requirements listed in Table 3. Tests to be run and allowable variations are:

**Table 3 Material Requirements**

| Tests | Requirements |
|---|---|
| Density (Gallon Weight) | ±0.10 lb./gal |
| Viscosity (Krebs-Stormer) | ±7 KU |
| Viscosity (Cone & Plate) | ±0.5 Poises |
| Grind | Not Less than the Standard |
| % Non-Volatile Matter | ±1.0% |
| % Pigment (white) | ±3.0 % |
| % Volume Non-Volatile Matter | ±3.0% |
| Infrared Spectrum | Match Standard |

Provide certified test results for project materials prior to the start of the project.

B. **Glass Traffic Beads.** Furnish Type II or Type III drop-on glass beads conforming to DMS-8290, “Glass Traffic Beads.” Use Type II beads only as a part of a double drop system with Type III beads. For double drop systems, dispense each type bead with a separate dispenser system, with the ratio of Type II beads not greater than 50% by weight of the beads used.

C. **Labeling.** Use clearly marked containers that indicate color, mass, material type, manufacturer, and batch number.

**3. EQUIPMENT.**

A. **General Requirements.** Use equipment which:
- is maintained in satisfactory condition,
- meets or exceeds the requirements of the National Board of Fire Underwriters and Texas Railroad Commission for this application,
- uses an automatic bead dispenser attached to the pavement marking equipment, and
- can provide continuous mixing and agitation of the pavement marking material.

B. **Material Placement Requirements.** Use equipment which can place:

- at least 40,000 ft. of 4-in. solid or broken markings per day at the specified thickness.
- linear markings up to 8 in. wide in a single pass.
- markings other than solid or broken lines.
- a center-line and no-passing barrier-line configuration consisting of 1 broken line with 2 solid lines, at the same time, to the alignment, spacing, and thickness shown on the plans, for 3-line application;
- white line from both sides;
- lines with clean edges, uniform cross-section and thickness and reasonably square ends;
- skip lines between 10 and 10-1/2 ft., an approximate stripe-to-gap ratio of 1 to 3, and a stripe– gap cycle between 39-1/2 ft. and 40-1/2 ft., automatically;
- beads uniformly and almost instantly upon the marking as the marking is being applied;
- beads uniformly during the application of 2 adjacent lines. Each line must have an equivalent bead yield rate and embedment;
- each component within the component mix tolerances recommended by the manufacturer.

**4. CONSTRUCTION.** Place markings prior to opening to traffic unless short term or work zone markings are allowed.

(1) **General.** Obtain approval for the sequence of work and estimated daily production. On roadways already open to traffic, place markings with minimum interference to the operations of that roadway. Use traffic control as shown on the plans or as approved. Protect all markings placed under open-traffic conditions from traffic damage and disfigurement.

Establish guides to mark the lateral location of pavement markings as shown on the plans or as directed and have guide locations verified. Use material for guides that will not leave a permanent mark on the roadway.
Apply markings on pavement that is completely dry and meets all temperature and humidity requirements of the manufacturer: Apply markings:

- using widths, colors, and at locations shown on the plans;
- in proper alignment with the guides without deviating from the alignment more than 1 in. per 200 ft. of roadway or more than 2 in. maximum;
- free of blisters and with no more than 5%, by area, holes or voids;
- with uniform cross section and thickness;
- with clean and reasonably square ends;
- which harden properly with no tackiness;
- using personnel skilled and experienced with installation of pavement markings;
- which are reflectorized; and
- that meet requirements in Test Method Tex-828-B.

Remove all applied markings that are not in alignment or sequence as stated in the plans or as stated in the specifications at the Contractor's expense in accordance with Item 677, "Eliminating Existing Pavement Markings and Markers," except for measurement and payment.

**(2) Surface Preparation.**

(a) Surface preparation methods should be determined by the manufacturer and be in accordance to Item 678.

(b) Cleaning for Asphalt Surfaces Younger Than 3 Years, Old Hydraulic Concrete Surfaces

and All Retracing. Air-blast or broom old hydraulic cement concrete surfaces and all asphalt surfaces to remove loose material, unless otherwise shown on the plans.

(c) Cleaning for Asphalt Surfaces Older than 3 Years and New Hydraulic Concrete (No Existing Markings). Clean in accordance with Item 678, “Pavement Surface Preparation for Markings,” to remove curing membrane, dirt, grease, loose and flaking existing construction markings, and other forms of contamination.

**(3) Application.** Apply markings during good weather unless otherwise directed. If markings are placed at Contractor option when inclement weather is impending and the markings are damaged by subsequent precipitation, the Contractor is responsible for all costs associated with replacing the markings if required.

Adding thinner to the coating is not allowed.
Apply on surfaces with a minimum surface temperature of 50ºF.

**(4) Performance Requirements.** All markings and replacement markings must meet the requirements of this Item for at least 15 calendar days after installation. Remove pavement markings that fail to meet requirements and replace at the Contractor’s expense unless otherwise directed. Replace all failing markings within 30 days of notification.

If the material does not cure properly, remains soft and tacky, or discolors and the Engineer requires removal, at least 90% of the material must be removed by approved methods before restriping will be allowed.

Conduct visual inspections and instrument evaluations of placed pavement markings.

(a) **Visual Inspections.** Conduct a visual inspection of the stripe placement according to Tex-828-B, “Determining Functional Characteristics of Pavement Markings.” Conduct reviews during dry off-peak traffic periods without closing any lanes. Conduct the inspection within 7 days after the stripe has been placed. A department’s designated representative will be present for the inspection.

(b) **Instrument Evaluations.** Conduct instrument evaluations in areas as directed by the Engineer. For edge line markings; center-line/no passing barrier-line; and lane lines; meet the following initial minimum retro reflectivity values when measured between 5 and 15 days after application:

White markings: 250 millicandelas per square meter per lux

(mcd/$m^2$lux) Yellow markings: 200 mcd/$m^2$lux
Make all measurements in the direction of traffic flow, except for broken centerline on two-way roadways, where measurements will be made in both directions.

Provide a portable retro reflectometer, which uses 30-meter geometry meeting the requirements described in ASTM E 1710.

Provide a report to the Engineer of all readings taken and their approximate locations.

The Contractor is responsible for traffic control when making initial retroreflectivity measurements.

At locations approved by the Engineer, take a minimum of 1 measurement every mile on

each series of markings (i.e. edge-line, center skip line, each line of a double line…etc.). If more than one measurement is taken, the measurements will be averaged. For all markings measured in both directions, take a minimum of 1 measurement in each direction.

If the measurement taken on a specific series of markings within each mile segment falls below the initial minimum retroreflectivity values, take a minimum of 5 more measurements within that mile segment for that series of marking. If the average of these 5 measurements falls below the initial minimum retroreflectivity requirements, that mile segment of the applied markings is considered unacceptable. Restripe any unacceptable segments until initial minimum retroreflectivity requirements are met.

**(5) Warranty.** Before application of pavement markings, provide TxDOT a warranty by the Manufacturer that the Manufacturer will replace, at no cost to the department, except as noted below, any materials which fail to meet the *warranty* performance requirements as listed in this specification for 3 years from the date the portion of the facility containing those markings becomes operational.

If the markings fail to meet the requirements of Special Specification 1653, the manufacturer will provide the replacement materials and labor that will restore the pavement marking retroreflectivity values to warranty levels or greater.

(a) **Warranty Performance Requirements.** Pavement markings will meet the following performance requirements for the warranted life of the materials.
**Reflectivity.** When measured at 30-meter geometry, maintain a minimum retroreflectivity value of:
- White markings: 150 mcd/$m^2$lux.
- Yellow markings: 125 mcd/$m^2$lux.

**Durability.** Pavement markings will maintain the color (daytime and nighttime reflected), length, width, shape, and configuration shown on the plans. Nighttime and daytime color will be essentially the same color as the standard maintained by the department's Construction Division, Materials Section.
Deviations in length, width, shape, or configuration caused by, in the Engineer's opinion, pavement failure will not be considered as a failure of the pavement markings.

(b) **Reflectivity Determination.** The following procedures will be used to determine the performance of pavement markings for warranty purposes. Periodic visual night inspection will be made by TxDOT as described by TxDOT Test Method TEX-828-B, when deemed necessary by the Engineer. The Manufacturer's representative may accompany the Engineer on a subsequent inspection when pavement markings do not appear to meet minimum retroreflectivity or nighttime color requirements. All retroreflectivity measurements shall be made on a clean, dry surface at a minimum temperature of 40°F. The average retroreflectivity value for the Measurement Zone shall be used to determine if the minimum performance values have been met.

**Longitudinal Markings.** A Measurement Zone shall consist of either edge lines, center lines, or lane lines, but not in combination. Random sampling techniques shall be used to determine the average reflectivity throughout the zone.

(c) **Replacement.** Pavement markings that do not meet the *warranty* performance require

ments will be replaced by the Manufacturer normally within 15 days unless weather conditions or other conditions as approved by the Engineer dictate otherwise, but not more than 90 days. Notification will be by mail, return receipt requested, to an address as specified by the Manufacturer as indicated on the warranty.

The Manufacturer will be responsible for application, at no cost to the department, of all replacement materials covered by the warranty.

(d) **Exclusions.** Up to 5% of the markings on any project may at the discretion of the Engineer, be excluded from the replacement provisions provided that the failure is a result of outside causes rather than defective material as determined by the Engineer. Outside causes include, without limitation: Extreme wear at intersections or crossover areas, unusually large amounts of heavy vehicles. Outside causes exclude, without limitation: Linear, free rolling traffic regardless of ADT.

Pavement markings damaged by snow or ice removal operations or other natural occurrences such as flooding, earthquakes, or landslides are exempt from warranty.

**5. Measurement.** This Item will be measured by the foot; by each word, symbol, or shape; or by any other unit shown on the plans. Each stripe will be measured separately.

This is a plans quantity measurement Item. The quantity to be paid is the quantity shown in the proposal unless modified by Article 9.8, “Plans Quantity Measurement.” Additional measurements or calculations will be made if adjustments of quantities are required.

**6. Payment.** The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under “Measurement” will be paid for at the unit price bid for “Reflectorized Multipolymer Pavement Markings” of the types and colors, shape, width, size, and thickness as applicable. This price will be full compensation for materials, application of pavement markings, equipment, labor, tools, and incidentals.

Surface preparation, when shown on the plans, will be paid for under Item 678, “Pavement Surface Preparation for Markings.”

When replacement markings are required due to damage to the original markings from precipitation, and the original markings were placed at the direction of the Department, the plans quantity requirements under “Measurement” do not apply to the original and replacement markings. The Contractor will be paid for the actual quantity of original and replacement markings at the unit price bid for that bid item.

**END OF SECTION 33 16 53**

**SECTION 33 41 00**
**STORM SEWAGE SYSTEMS**

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

A. This Section specifies the requirements for providing storm sewers and appurtenant structures.

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Reference Standards Applicable to this Section

1. AASHTO: American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials

a. M 36: Specification for Metallic (Zinc or Aluminum) Coated Corrugated Steel Culverts and Underdrains.

b. M 190: Specification for Bituminous Coated Corrugated Metal Culvert Pipe and Pipe Arches.

c. M 252: Specification for Corrugated Polyethylene Drainage Tubing.

d. M 294: Specification for Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe 12 inch to 36-inch diameter.

2. ASTM: American Society for Testing and Materials

a. A 48: Specification for Gray Iron Castings.

b. A 74: Specification for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings.

c. C 40: Test Method for Organic Impurities in Fine Aggregate for Concrete.

d. C 76: Specifications for Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain and Sewer Pipe.

e. C 150: Specification for Portland Concrete

f. C 443: Joints for Circular Concrete Sewer and Culvert Pipe Using Rubber Gaskets

g. C 881: Specification for Epoxy- Resin-Base Bonding Systems for Concrete

h. D 618: Conditioning Plastics and Electrical Insulating Materials for Testing

i. D 1248: Polyethylene Plastics Molding and Extrusion Material

j. D 1693: Environmental Stress Cracking of Ethylene Plastics

k. D 1785: Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80 and 120

l. D 2239: Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SIDR-PR) Based on Controller Inside Diameter

m. D 2412: Determination of External Loading Characteristics of Plastic Pipe by Parallel-Plate Loading

n. D 2447: Specifications for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80, Based on Outside Diameter.

o. D 2466: Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40.

p. D 2467: Socket Type Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80.

q. D 2564: Solvent Cements for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings.

r. D 2665: Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste and Vent Pipe and Fittings.

s. D 2729: Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings.

t. D 2855: Making Solvent-Cemented Joints with Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe and Fittings.

u. D 3035: Specifications for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR) Based on Controlled Outside Diameter.

v. D 3212: Joints for Drain and Sewer Plastic Pipes Using Flexible Elastomeric Seals.

w. D 3261: Specification for Butt Heat Fusion of Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Fittings for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe and Tubing.

x. D 3350: Specification for Polyethylene Plastics Pipe and Fittings Material.

y. F 402: Safe Handling of Solvent Cements and Primers Used for Joining Thermoplastic Pipe and Fittings.

z. F405: Specification for Corrugated Polyethylene (PE) Tubing and Fittings.

aa. F 412: Standard Terminology Relating to Plastic Piping Systems.

bb. F 477: Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe.

cc. F 656: Specification for Primers for Use in Solvent Cement Joints of Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipes and Fittings.

dd. F 714: Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR) Based on Outside Diameter.

ee. F 913: Standard Specification for Thermoplastic Elastomeric Seals (Gaskets) for Joining Plastic Pipe.

ff. F 667: Specification for Large Diameter Corrugated Polyethylene Tubing and Fittings.

3. Federal Specification

a. SS-S-210A and Latest Amendments: Sealing Compound, Preformed Plastic, for Expansion Joints and Pipe Joints.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with Section 01 of these Specifications, the following shall be submitted:

1. Certificates

a. Manufacturer's certificates and load tickets stating that materials meet specified requirements.

2. Shop Drawings

a. Shop Drawings and details of all storm sewers and drains, including relationship to other systems and true position and details of all interfaces, connections, inlets, clean- outs, manholes, alignment and grade, changes of direction, offsets, bedding and protection, materials, manufacturer's installation and connection instructions and recommendations, and all other pertinent data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

A. Products for use within Port Arthur right-of-way shall meet the applicable requirements.

2.2 PIPES AND FITTINGS

A. Reinforced Concrete Pipe (RCP)

1. ASTM C 76, bell-and-spigot, Class III, Wall B.

B. Corrugated Galvanized Metal Pipe (CGMP)

1. AASHTO M 36, coated and paved in accordance with AASHTO M 190, Type C coating for pipe and Type A coating for coupling bands.

C. PVC Pipe in accordance with the following:

1. ASTM D 1785.

2. ASTM D 2241.

3. ASTM D 2466.

4. ASTM D 2467.

D. PE Pipe

1. ASTM D 2447.

2. ASTM D 3035.

3. ASTM D 3350 Type PE 3408.

4. ASTM F 714 Type PE 3408.

2.3 JOINTS

A. Gaskets for RCP in accordance with the following:

1. Federal Specification SS-S-210A.

2. ASTM C 443.

B. All joints in PVC plastic pipe shall be solvent cemented in accordance with the following:

1. ASTM D 2564.

2. ASTM D 2672.

3. ASTM D 2855.

4. ASTM F 402.

5. ASTM F 656.

C. All joints in PE plastic pipe shall be fusion butt-welded in accordance with ASTM 3261.

2.4 DRAINAGE STRUCTURES

A. Manhole

1. Type as indicated on the Drawings and conforming to applicable Standards for Port Arthur or Jefferson County Right-of-Way, or LSC Property. Frame and Cover ASTM A 48 Class 35 B.

B. Inlet

1. Type as indicated on the Drawings and conforming to applicable Standards in Port Arthur or Jefferson County Right-of-Way, or LSC Property. Frame and Grate ASTM A 48 Class 35 B.

C. Reinforcing Steel

1. As specified in Section 032100 - Concrete Reinforcement of these Specifications.

D. Cast-in-Place Concrete (Class 3000)

1. As specified in Section 321373.19 - Cast-in-Place Concrete of these Specifications.

E. Mortar (Type M)

2.5 CEMENT-STABILIZED SAND BACKFILL

A. Aggregate

1. Use clean sand; deleterious materials in the sand shall not exceed the following limitations, by weight:

| | |
|---|---|
| Material removed by denatation | 5.0 percent |
| Clay lumps | 0.5 percent |
| Other deleterious substances such as coal, shale, coated grains of soft flaky particles. | 2.0 percent |

2. Gradation Requirements:

| | |
|---|---|
| Retained on 3/8-in. sieve | 0 percent |
| Retained on 1/4-in. sieve | 0 - 5 percent |
| Retained on 20-mesh sieve | 15 - 50 percent |
| Retained on 100-mesh sieve | 80 - 100 percent |

3. Color test per ASTM C 40, color not darker than standard color.

B. Cement

1. ASTM C 150, Type I or II.

C. Water

1. Potable, from municipal supplies approved by the State or City Health Department.

D. Mixture

1. Use at least 1-1/2 sacks of cement per cubic yard of mixture. Use amount of water required to provide mix suitable for mechanical hand tamping and mix in approved mixer. Stamp load tickets at plant with time of loading. Material not in place within 1-1/2 hours after loading or that has obtained an initial set will be rejected and shall be removed from the Site and replaced with new acceptable mixtures at no additional cost to OWNER.

2.6 TIMBER POSTS

A. Southern Pine or Douglas Fir, pressure-treated in accordance with American Wood Preservers' Association (AWPA) Standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

A. All storm sewer work performed within Huntsville right-of-way shall meet the applicable requirements.

3.2 EXCAVATION

A. All excavation shall be in accordance with Section 330528 – Trenching & Backfill for Utilities of these Specifications.

B. Perform excavation for storm sewer and storm sewer drainage structures to line and grade required as shown on the Drawings and as specified herein.

C. If the excavation exceeds the permissible dimensions, extend the encasement or install pipe of higher strength, as directed.

D. Prevent surface or ground water from flowing into excavation. Install, operate, and maintain dewatering system to convey water away from excavation. Notify the Engineer in writing of delays to the Work caused by water intrusion.

3.3 PIPE ENCASEMENT

A. Place cement-stabilized sand bedding before laying pipe. Bedding shall be compacted and shaped to fully support the pipe.

B. After the pipe is laid, place cement-stabilized sand beside and above the pipe in 4 in. lifts to the limits shown on the construction drawings. Compact individual lifts with a hand-operated, motorized tamper; exercise care to avoid damaging the pipe.

3.4 LAYING PIPE

A. Install and joint pipe in accordance with the pipe manufacturer's instructions and as specified herein.

B. Provide a minimum of 6 in. clearance between storm sewer and sanitary sewer.

C. Seal open end of pipe with plug when pipe laying operation is temporarily halted. Plug shall remain in place until operation restarts.

3.5 BACKFILL

A. On completion of construction, backfill the excavation as specified in Section 312300 – Excavation, Grading, and Fill of these Specifications and in accordance with details on the construction drawings. Backfill only when the written approval of the Engineer is obtained to do so.

3.6 CONSTRUCTION OF MANHOLES AND INLETS

A. General

1. Construct manholes and inlets as soon as practical after sewer lines into or through the manhole or inlet locations are completed.

2. Construct manholes and inlets at locations and of the type indicated. All manholes within 9 feet of existing water lines shall be watertight.

B. Manholes

1. Provide base of the shape and size required with a minimum thickness of 12 inches.

2. Place axis of manholes directly over the centerlines of the lines, unless otherwise

indicated.

3. Shall be constructed of either precast or cast-in-place concrete.

C. Inlets

1. Shall be constructed of either precast or cast-in-place concrete.

3.7 CLEANUP

A. Remove temporary structures, rubbish, waste materials, and excess excavated materials from the Site and dispose of legally.

END OF SECTION 33 41 00